



88-198
3



SI jactare licet magnorum munera diuim,
 Sibi que veris fas placere dotibus;
 Cur mihi non videar fortunatissima pellus?
 Digna est malis, bona quæ parum novit sua.
 Vtima lanigeris animosus est India lucis,
 Suis superbus est Arabs odoribus.
 Thuriferis gaudet Pandaia dives arenis;
 Ibera flumen terra jactat aureum.
 Aegypti faciunt animos septem ostia Nili,
 Laudata Rheini vinatollunt accolæ.
 Lata nec uberibus sibi displicet Africa glebæ;
 Hæc portubus superbi, illa mercibus:
 At mihi nec fontes, nec dæia flumina defunt,
 Sulci ve pingues, præti nec ridentia.
 Fœta viris, fœcunda fenis, fœcunda metallis;
 Ne glorier, quod ambians largas opes
 Porrigit Oceanus, neu quod nec amicus ullæ,
 Cælum, nec aura dulcius spirat plagæ.
 Serus in occiduas mihi Phœbus conditur undas,
 Toror que noctes blanda ducit lacidas.
 Possem ego laudati commemorare vellera Bætis.
 Vbi villus albis mollior bidentibus?
 Et tua non nequeam miracula temnere Memphi.
 Verum illa major, justiorque gloria,
 Quod Latius, quod sum celebrata Britannia Gratiæ,
 Orbem vetustas quod vocarit alterum.

For the easier reading of the English-Saxon
words in this Booke, I thought good to prefixe
before the Characters of the English
Saxon Alphabet.

A b c d e e f g h i l m n o p q
r s f s u w X x y z
e Th rh and that

PUBLIUS OVIDIVS NASO.
*Nescio quā natale solum dulcedine cunctos
Ducit, & immemores non finit esse sui.*

PUBLIVS OVIDIVS NASO.

*Nescio quā natale solum dulcedine cunctos
Ducit, & immemores non finit esse sui.*



SERENISSIMO POTEN-
TISSIMOQUE PRINCIPI
IACOBO, BRITANNIAE
MAGNAE, FRANCIAE, ET
HIBERNIAE REGI, FIDEI
PROPVGNATORI AD
AETERNITATEM
BRITANNICI
NOMINIS IMPE-
RIIQUE NATO.


PERPETVAE PACIS
FVNDATORI.

PUBLICAE SECVRITATIS AVTHORI

GVILIELMVS CAMDENVS
MAIESTATI EIVS
DEVOTISSIMVS D. D.
CONSECRATQVE.

9 68
1 20
7 03

1820
1637
0/90



BRITAIN,

OR

A CHOROGRAPHICALL DESCRIPTION OF THE MOST

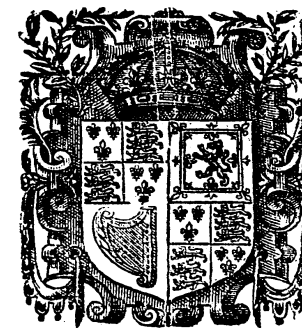
flourishing Kingdomes, ENGLAND,
SCOTLAND, and IRELAND, and the
Islands adjoyning, out of the depth
of ANTIQVITY:

BEAVTIFIED WITH MAPPEs OF THE
severall Shires of ENGLAND:

VVritten first in Latine by *William Camden*
CLARENCEUX K. of A.

Translated newly into English by *Philemon*
Holland Doctour in Physick:

Finally, revised, amended, and enlarged with sundry
Additions by the said Author.



LONDON,

Printed by F. K. R. T. and I. L. for Ioyce
Norton, and Richard Whitaker. 1637.

15104

Br 3.61 5. 90 .7

~~8491.4~~

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
1871, March 21.

Gift of
Francis Boardman Crowninshield,
of Boston.
(H. L. 1229.)



THE AVTHOR TO The Reader.



Hope it shal be to no discredite, if I now use againe by way of Preface, the same words with a few more, that I used twentie foure yeares since, in the first edition of this worke. Abraham Ortelius the worthy restorer of Ancient Geographie arriving heere in England, about thirtie foure yeares past, dealt earnestly with mee that I would illustrate this Isle of BRITAINE, or (as he said) that I would restore antiquitie to Britaine, and Britaine to his antiquitie; which was, as I understood, that I would renew ancientrie, enlighten obscuritie, cleare doubts, and recall home Veritie by way of recovery, which the negligence of writers and credulity of the common sort had in a manner proscribed and utterly banished from amongst us. A painfull matter I assure you, and more than difficult: wherein what toyle is to be taken, as no man thinketh, so no man believeth but hee that hath made the triall. Neverthelessse how much the difficultie discouraged mee from it, so much the glory of my country encouraged me to undertake it. So while at one and the same time I was fearefull to undergoe the burthen, and yet desirous to doe some service to my Country, I found two different affections, Feare, and Boldnesse; I know not how, conjoynd in me. Notwithstanding by the most gracious direction of the ALMIGHTY, taking INDUSTRY for my consort, I adventured upon it, and with all my studie, care, cogitation, continuall meditation, paine, and travaile I imploied my selfe thereunto when I had any spare time. I made search after the Etymologie of Britain & the first Inhabitants timorously, neither in so doubtful a matter have I affirmed ought confidently. For I am not ignorant that the first originals of nations are obscure by reason of their profound antiquitie, as things which are seene very deepe and far remote: like as the courses, the reaches, the confluencies, & the out-lets of great rivers are wel knowne, yet their first fountaines and heads lie commonly unknown. I have succinctly run over the Romans government in Britain, and the inundation of forraigne people thereinto, what they were, and from whence they came: I have traced out the ancient divisions of these Kingdomes, I have summarily specified the states, and judicall Courts of the same.

In the severall Counties I have compendiously set downe the limits (and yet not exactly by pearch and pole to breed questions) what is the nature of the soile, which were places of greatest antiquitie, who have bene the Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, Barons, and some of the most signall, and ancient families therein (for who can particulate all?) What I have performed, I leave to men of judgement. But time the most sound and sincere witness will give the truest information, when envy which persecuteth the living, shall have her mouth stopped. Thus much give me leave to say, that I have in no wise neglected such things as are most materiall to search, and sift out the Truth. I have attained to some skill of the most ancient British and English-Saxon tongues: I have travailed over all England for the most part, I have conferred with most skilfull observers in each country, I have studiously read over our owne country writers, old and new, all Greeke and Latine authors which have once made mention of Britaine. I have had conference with learned men in other parts of Christendome: I have been diligent in the Records of this Realme. I have looked into most Libraries, Registers, and memorials of Churches, Cities, and Corporations, I have pored upon many an old Rowle, and Evidence: and produced their testimonie (as beyond all exception) when the cause required, in

To the Reader.

their very own words (although barbarous they be) that the honour of veritie might in no wise be impeached.

For all this I may be censured unadvised, and scant modest who being but of the lowest fourme in the schoole of Antiquitie, where I might well have lurked in obscuritie, have adventured as a scribler upon the stage in this learmed age amidst the diversities of reliques both in wit and judgement. But to tell the truth unfainedly, the love of my Country which compriseth all love in it, and hath endeared me unto it, the glory of the British name, the advice of some judicious friends hath overmastered my modestie, and (wild I mild I), hath enforced me against mine own judgment to undergo this burden too heavy for me, & so thrust me forth into the worlds view. For I see judgements, prejudices, censures, reprehensions, obirectations, detractions, affronts, and confronts, as it were, in battaile array to environ me on every side: some there are which wholly contemne and avile this study of Antiquitie as a back-looking curiosity; whose authority as I do not utterly vilifie, so I do not overprize or admire their judgement. Neither am I destitute of reasons whereby I might approve this my purpose to well bred and well meaning men which tender the glory of their native Country: and moreover could give them to understand that in the studie of Antiquity, (which is alwaies accompanied with dignity, and hath a certaine resemblance with eternitie) there is a sweet food of the mind well besitting such as are of honest and noble disposition. If any there be which are desirous to be strangers in their owne soile, and forrainers in their owne City, they may so continue and therein flatter themselves. For such like I have not written these lines, nor taken these paines. Some there be who may object the silly web of my stile, and rough hewed forme of my writing. Verily I acknowledge it, neither have I waied every word in Goldsmiths scales, as Varro commanded, neither purposed I to picke flowers out of the gardens of Eloquence. But why should they object this, when as Cicero the father of Eloquence denieth that this kind of argument can ἀνευφωτισταί, that is, be flourished out, and as Pomponius Mela said, is incapable of all Eloquent speech.

Many happily will insult over me for that I have adventured to hunt after the originals of names by conjectures, who if they proceed on to reject all conjectures, I feare me a great part of liberall learning and humane knowledge will be utterly out-cast into banishment. For the edge of our understanding is so blunt that we are of necessitie enforced to prosecute many matters in all professions conjecturally. In Physick ζήμεια, τεκμήρια, εκκοτα, which are nothing else but conjectures, have their place, and stand in good stead, likewise in Rhetorick, Civil Law, and other arts they are admitted and allowed. And whereas conjectures are certaine detractions of things unknown, and as Fabius termeth them, directions of reason to verity, I have alwaies thought that they were to be accounted among the skippers wherewith Time worketh and draweth Veritie out of Democritus his deepe dungeon. But if these men may be induced to attribute ought to conjectures, I doubt not but my modesty and moderation in conjecturing may withall purchase my pardon; Plato in his Cratylus commandeth that we recall the originals of names to the barbarous tongues (for so he called all but Greek) as being most ancient. I thereupon in Etymologies and my conjectures have made recourse to the British, or Welsh tongue (so they now call it) as being the same which the Primitive and most ancient Inhabitants of this land used, and to the English-Saxons tongue which our Progenitors the English spake. He commandeth that the name be consonant to the nature of the thing, & the nature thereof to the name, if they be herein dissonant, I admit them not. In things, faith he, there is οὐκ, ζήμια, χρομα: that is, but I cannot aptly expresse them, A found, a forme, and colour, if these discover not themselves in the name I reject the conjecture. As for obscure Etymologies, far fetched, hardly wrested, and which may be drawne diversly; I have vouchsafed them no place in this worke, finally I have becue so sparing and cautelously forecasting in my conjectures that if I be not thought εὐτομος, that is, Happily adventurous, I shall not seeme to αμεροῦ, that is, Presumptuously audacious. And albeit I have once or twice framed two conjectures in one and the same name, yet I forget not in the meane time that Veritie is consecrated unto Veritie.

There are some peradventure which apprehend it disdainfully and offensively that I have not remembered this or that family, when as it was not my purpose to mention any but such as were more notable, nor all them truly (for their names would fill whole volumes) but such as hapned in my way according to the method I proposed to my selfe; And with Gods grace I

To the Reader.

may have a more convenient occasion to deserve well of the Nobilitie and Gentry. But happily they will be most offended herein who have least deserved of their country, or overvallew themselves most, or whose Gentry may be but newly blossomed. Of whom yet I protest I would not offend any, and therefore desire and hope their noble natures will not take it offensively upon such causelesse apprehensions.

Others will call me in question for that I have commended some persons now living; yet I have done it sparingly, and that out of an assurance of verity, out of the common consent and voice of such as can well judge of worth, & from no base flattery. By these sparing commendations (such as are commended may be lessened that their depertments may be answerable, and that they preserve and daily increase the same. Succeeding ages, which I respect more than the present, will render to every man his right whatsoever is now scribled in papers. In the meane time I wish them to remember, that to praise good men is but to shew a light of direction as out of a watch towre to posteritie. True is that saying of Symmachus. Imitation is encouraged with the seemly praises of the good, and imitating vertue is cherished by the example of others honour. If any say that I have sought occasion to commend some one or other, I confesse it. Neither is well-meaning without leasing to be blamed among the good, and well deserving, friends are not to be forgotten. Howsoever Vertue and Glory hath alwaies opposites, and men usually envie the present, and reverence what is past; yet God forbid that we should be so partially injurious as to thinke our times under most worthy Princes to be barren of praiseworthy persons. As for such as maligne the praise of the good, I feare me least in their owne guiltinesse they may apply the dispraise of the bad to themselves. As for my selfe I sensibly understand that which Plinie intimated to Tacitus in like case. There will bee great offence, and slender thanks, for albeit in the loosenesse of the world, there is much more to be discommended than commended; yet if you commend you shall be taxed as oversparing; if you discommend you shall be censured as overlavish, although you doe the one most compleatly, and the other most moderately.

Some will blame me for that I have omitted this and that towne and Castle, as though I purposed to mention any but such as were most notorious, and mentioned by ancient authours. Neither verily were it worth the labour once to name them, when as beside the naked name there is nothing memorable. Truly it was my project and purpose to seeke, rake out, and free from darkenesse such places as Cæsar, Tacitus, Ptolomy, Antonine the Emperour, Notitia Provinciarum, and other antique writers have specified and Time hath overcast with mist and darknes by extinguishing, altering, and corrupting their old true names. In searching & seeking after these, as I will not avouch uncertainties so I doe not conceale probabilities. That I have not found out every one although I have sought after them with painfull & chargeable inquiry let it bee no imputation to mee, as it is not to a Spadiard that worketh in Mines, who while he findeth & followeth the maine vaines, seeth not the hidden small fillets; or that I may use that which Columella did. As it is the commendation of a good Huntsman to find game in a wide wood, so it is no imputation if he hath not caught all, and likewise to me, Some things are to be left to the inquisitive diligence of others, Neither, as a learned man said, he teacheth well which teacheth all. An other age, and other men may daily find out more. It is enough for me to have begun, and I have gained as much as I looke for, if I shall draw others into this argument, whether they undertake a new worke or amend this.

There are certain, as I heare who take it impatiently that I have mentioned some of the most famous Monasteries and their founders. I am sorry to heare it, and with their good favour will say thus much, They may take it as impatiently, and peradventure would have us forget that our ancestors were, and we are of the Christian profession when as there are not extant any other more conspicuous, and certaine Monuments, of their piety, and zealous devotion toward God. Neither were there any other seed-gardens from whence Christian Religion, and good learning were propagated over this Isle, howbeit in corrupt ages some weeds grew out over-ranckly.

Mathematicians will accuse me as though I had wholly missed the mark in the Cosmographical dimensions of longitude, & latitude. Yet heare me I pray you. I have carefully cõferred the Locall tables new & old, Manuscript, and printed, of Oxford & Cambridge, and King Henry the Fifth. In the latitude they doe not vary much from Ptolomy, but agree wel together, neither do I thereupon imagine with Stadius, that the globe of the earth is removed from his

centre,

To the Reader.

centre, therefore I have relied upon them. But in the Longitude there is no accord, no consent at all. What should I then doe? When as therefore the moderne navigators have observed that there is no variation of the Compass at the Isles of Afores, I have thence begun with them, the account of Longitude as from the first Meridian, which yet I have not precisely measured.

As for obscuritie, fables, extravagant digressions I trust there is no cause to sue out my pardon. There will be no obscuritie but to them which have not sipped the first elements of Antiquitie, and our histories: upon fables I have no waies relied, and that I might not digresse extravagantly. I have had often recourse to the title of my booke (as Pliny adviseth) and estoones demanded of my selfe why I tooke penne in hand. Many have found a defect in this worke that Mapes were not adjoynd, which doe allure the eyes by pleasant portraiture, and are the best directions in Geographical studies, especially when the light of learning is adjoynd to the speechlesse delineations. Yet my abilitie could not compasse it, which by the meanes and cost of George Bishop, and John Norton is now performed out of the labours of Christopher Saxton, and John Norden, most skilfull Chorographers.

But least I should run at randome in my Preface. To accomplish this worke the whole maine of my Industrie hath been imploied for many yeares with a firme settled study of the truth, and sincere antique faithfulness to the glory of God and my country. I have done dishonour to no nation, have descanted upon no mans name, I have impaired no mans reputation, I have impeached no mans credit, no not Geoffrey of Monmouth whose historie (which I would gladly support) is held suspected amongst the judicious. Neither have I assumed upon my self any persuasion of knowledge, but only that I have been desirous to know much. And so I right willingly acknowledge that I may erre much, neither will I sooth and smother my errors. Who shooting all day long doth alwaies hit the mark? Many matters in these studies are raked under deceitfull ashes. There may be some escapes from memory, for who doth so comprehend particularities, in the treasury of his memory, that he can utter them at his pleasure? There may be mistakings in regard of my unskilfulness, for who is so skilfull that struggling with Time in the foggie darke sea of Antiquity, may not run upon rocks? It may be that I have been misled by the credit of authors and others whom I tooke to be most true, and worthy of credit. Neither is there verily (as Pliny saith) any easier slipping from truth, then when a grave Authour warranteth an untruth. Others may be more skilfull and more exactly observe the particularities of the places where they are conversant. If they, or any other whosoever, will advertise mee wherein I am mistaken, I will amend it with manifold thanks. If I have unwitting omitted ought, I will supply it, if I have not fully explicated any point, upon their better information I will more cleere it, if it proceed from good meaning, and not from a spirit of contradiction and quavelling, which doe not besit such as are well bred, and affect the truth. Meane while let your kind courtesie, my industry, the common love of our common mother our native Country, the ancient honour of the British name obtaine so much upon their entreaty, that I may utter my judgement without prejudice to others, that I may proceed in that course that others have formerly done in the like argument, and that you would pardon my errors upon my acknowledgement, which may be as well hoped as requested, from good indifferent and reasonable men: so I passe not for the unreasonable, and worse sort which gnaw upon all at tables, carp in conventions envy, back bite, slander, and detract. For I have learned of the Comicall Poet, that slander is the treasure of fooles which they carry in their tongues, and I know for certaintie that Envy is seated (I will say it although Envy stood at my elbow) in none but in degenerate, un-noble, and base minds. The honest good and noble natures as they detest envy, so they cannot envy. As for my selfe, and this worke, I doe most humbly submit it to the censure of the godly honest and learned with all respective reverence of whom if it be not approved, I hope in regard of my professed love to our native Country that it may be excused. Farwell.

TERENTIANVS MAVRVS.

Bookes receive their doome according to the
Readers capacite.

A

AD LECTOREM.

Magna per immensum celebrata Britannia mundum
Imperio, populo, rege beata suo,
Nunc prodit, renovata novis, ornata figuris:
Auctior illa tibi, notior illa tibi.
Camdeni liber est, satis est dixisse, scienti:
Camdenum nescis? perlege, notus erit.

GVILIELMVS SYDLEIVS Eques auratus.

Ad amicum suum Guil. Camdenum Georgii Buc
Equitis aurati Reg. Sp. C. Heptastichon.

SI quàm describis terram Camdene Britannam,
Tam graphice, tanta curâ, gravitate, fideq;
Heroum velles Britonum res scribere gestas,
(Hac etenim sola neglecti in parte jacemus)
Historiae poterat conferri nulla Britannæ.
Hoc tibi restat opus, vel non hoc fiet in ævo,
Secula quòd binos phœnices nulla tulere.

Ad Guil. Camdenum, Edw. Grant Sacræ Theologiæ
Doctör.

ERGONE priscorum lustras monumenta virorum,
Ve possis facili contexere singula filo,
Quæ latuere diu cæcis immerfa tenebris,
Antiquata usu, priscum sumptura nitorem?
Vnde Britannorum nomen? quo cœperit ortu?
Incola quis primus celebres habitaverit oras?
In quavis regione doces, quæcunque vetustæ
Sunt urbes, quæ vera simul Comitumq; Ducumq;
Stemmata: quæ terræ dotes: quis limes agrorum,
Ordine perspicuo perstringis singula plenè.
Egregium moliris opus, vel iudice Momo,
Quod semper præsens, quod postera prædicet ætas;
Te patriæ stimulavit amor, te docta vetustas
Excitat, ut cunctis patriæ spatiëris in agris:
Multi multa canunt, tu multum scribere tentas,
Hoc multo multos superas, qui multa tulerunt.
Tu Camdenus eris seros celebrandus in annos:
Ergo age, quo tendis gressu, patriamq; venusta,
Ne labor iste tuus desit cupientibus ista.

In antiquam Guilielmi Camdeni Britanniam.

DE te de quo tuo libro dum scribere carmen
Mens congesta vellet, meritaq; intexere laudes,
Insonuit mea Musa mihi, quid carmina queris?
Sic scripsisse satis, quod scripsit Horatius olim:
Hic meret æra liber Sossii, hic & mare transit,
Et longum noto scriptori prorogat ævum.

J. W. G.

In postremam *Guilielmi Camdeni* Antiquitatum editionem, Epigramma.
G. Ga.

Sementem sterili quoties tellure recondit,
Luditur optatâ fruge colonus iners.
Ventifuge nunquam dominus ditescit arenæ;
Pinguis ac irriguo humine terra beat.
Fœcundum facunde solum *Camdene* fecasti,
Illud & ingenii nobile flumen aquat.
Atq; ut opima solet jaçto cum semine gleba
Parturit innumeris granula adaucta modis:
Sic toties cufus tibi qui fuit antè libellus,
Cultior antiquo prodiit ecce liber.
Heu nusquam tanto respondent arua colono,
Cujus ab ingenio prominet his genius?
Sume animum. Cùm te hinc discedere jufferit ætas
Vt quæras tritâ pascua læta viâ;
Semper *Camdenus* simul atq; *Britannia* vivent:
Longæus nequit hic, dum manet illa, mori.

In *Guilielmi Camdeni* Britanniam.

Nescia penè sui, generisq; oblita prioris,
Anglia cum jacuit semisepulta situ,
O quis ait, tantum aut animis, aut arte valebit,
Vindice qui trahet vulnera nostra manu?
Camdenus patria lugentis imagine motus
Ingenium, artem, animos versat: opemq; tulit:
Mortua restituit veteris cognomina gentis,
Mortis & eripuit se patriamq; metu.
Æternam per te, *Camdene*, *Britannia* vivit,
Cumq; tua æternum, tu quoque gente manes.

G. Carleton.

Ad eundem.

Quæ vix nota sibi fuit antè *Britannia*, utriq;
Nunc *Camdene*, orbi munere nota tuo est,
Ignoteq; velut fuerat non ulla cupido,
Sic modo sic notam mundus uterque cupit.
Sed tamen incasum: nimia nam dote superba
Indignum nullum non fui amoris habet.

Ianus Gruterus I.C.

Camdeno suo Britannia.

Clarus ut *Eos* sol quando adverberat arces
Et procul invisi ferit astra liventia flammis
Nox petit Oceanum, vulsiq; enascitur orbi;
Si: *Camdene* tuum jubar ut fulgere per Anglos
Sen *Phœbi* capis, nox fugit, & hispida dudum,
Mulumq; benè squallens radiare *Britannia* capis,
Non mea nunc *Tibetis* cum deserit alba profundum
Gravior exurgit, pallentes murice viro
Instaurata genas, pigro nec fidus ab Orco,
Nec dux asporum de vertice vespè *Olympi*,
Illa ego quam timâ repolita *Britannia* mirâ
Mi: *Camdene* tuâ, nova nunc magna *Insula* ponto:
„ Illa ego ruper super sancto horrida, & horrida gesso,
„ Hinc p-lagi numen, dea spicæ visitur illinc,
„ Picosus vado *Nereus*, & classibus armat,
„ Atq; *Ceres* flavos spargit sua fœta per agros,

Frontispicii
explicatio.

„ *Saxea* deinde strues, & quæ depicta videmus
„ *Fronte* libri, veluti servens a fanibus unda,
„ Et surgens pyramis, nostræ miracula monstrant
„ *Telluris*, liber nequit (sua) omnia vester:
Exco nunc vultus exhaustos antè ruinis,
Et nunc flore meo marces pello victos,
Verum eris illa dies cum quæ micat Anglia forsan
Nebula quæretur, cinere occultata, sinque,
Atque alios lychnos dabis: Id *Camdene* negato
Historicum vincendo *Chaos*, qui notis abunde:
Hæc tibi præca, redæx, tuâq; usq; *Britannia* canto.

Edmundus Bolton

In *Britanniam* denuò illustratam
Iob. Stradlingu.

Infula in Oceano quondam notissima, cæcis
Delituit tenebris vix benè nota sibi.
Ingenii (*Camdene*) cui radiante tenebras
Lumine (seu fugiunt nubila sole) fugas.
Sic rediviva viget, nec quâ patet illa latere
Tu potes: Illam tu, te celebrem illa facit.

Eis Βρετανικὰ ἀρχαῖα καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ τὰ
ἐξ ἑστέρας Β. Δωδὶ καὶ ἄλλαι.

Πρὸς τὸν ἐκτελεστὴν τῆς, περὶ τῆς τῆς
καὶ τῆς τῆς πύργου καὶ τῆς ἐξ ἑστέρας
Πρὸς τὸν ἐκτελεστὴν τῆς, περὶ τῆς τῆς
καὶ τῆς τῆς πύργου καὶ τῆς ἐξ ἑστέρας
καὶ τῆς τῆς πύργου καὶ τῆς ἐξ ἑστέρας

Eis τὰς Βρετανίας ἱερὰ καὶ τὰ
καὶ τὰ.

Οἱ τὸν ὅλον, ὅς ἐστιν ὁ δὲ δὲ καὶ ὁ δὲ
ἀντιπαραρτῶν τῆς πύργου, ὅς ἐστιν ὁ δὲ
Πρὸς τὸν ἐκτελεστὴν τῆς, περὶ τῆς τῆς
καὶ τῆς τῆς πύργου καὶ τῆς ἐξ ἑστέρας
καὶ τῆς τῆς πύργου καὶ τῆς ἐξ ἑστέρας

H. Cusius.

Ad *Guilielmum Camdenum*, Britanniam
Historica veritate denuò
illustrantem.

CAMDENÈ, laus est invidenda, præclarum
Audire civem, patriæ que fervire.
Autoritati, & gloriæ perenanti.
CAMDENÈ, dum decus Britannia campum
In æternæ provehis sagax Famæ,
Nitore regio stiloque præclaro:
Præclarus inde civis audis, & jure.
Quid? non decore modò Britanniam maclus,
Honore maclus ipse & gloriæ punctis:
Sed hunc & illum luce tua reple mundum:
Vt, quæ sibi vix nota erat prius terra,
Vtramque nunc domum pulsaverit Solis.
CAMDENÈ, laudis hoc tux est. Et extensum
Quò latius volat Britannia nomen:

CAM-

CAMDENÈ, augustior tanto tibi sacro
Adorea in Memorie exultat altari.
Tam nominis cari est litasse regnorum
Famæ, inclytaque protulisse virtutes.

Caesar Dornavius. D.

In Britanniam redivivam Ri. Parker
Caio-Gonvil. carmen congra-
tulatorium.

Salut, grata redis (memoranda Britannia) terris
Quam juvenat & tenebris exilisse tuis:
Fallor? an antiquo mutatus fisor in orbe?
Aut te dum relego, secla priora lego?
Fallor? an *Arthuros*, *Egbertos*, *Cassibelinos*
Cerno redivos ducere castra sua?
Fallor? an hic acies sevas certare solebant?
Hic *Ossa*, hic rigidi tendere *Penda* soles?
Festino nimum. Quæ qualia, quantaq; cerno
Surgere sacra Deo, mania, templa, domus?
Quæ hic *Normannis* donari pradia legi?
Vnde sequens *Goboles* nomen & omen habet.
Sed quot cerno domus orbatas stirpe vetusta?
Hen quæ dislapidant alea, vina, *Venus*?
Vt vidi, ut dolui, novus ut nunc sedibus hospes
Diceret: hæc mea sunt, ito colone vetus.
Quis *Genius* talem (veneranda Britannia) nobis
Esse velit reducem? quo dnce tanta referi?
Scilicet hoc debes *Camdeno*: agnosco parentem,
Et *Genium*, cuius te tibi reddit amor.
Felix ipse suo libro: felicior ipsa
Præconem talem laudis habere tue.
Plus loquar, an fiteam? video tantum instar in ipse.
Quas *Musas* vocitem? sed (mea mens) sile.
Parvus amor loquimur: major stupescit adegit
Mirari hoc tacito, nec scio solus, opus.

In Britanniam à Guil. Camdeno illustratam
F. Aderb. Carmen.

Pictus atrox *Hebrides*, glaciale *Scotus* *Hibernem*
Moverat, *Attacotus* *Vararim*, *Saxosq;* *Visurgim*
Conjunctis armis, animisq; excindere gentes,
Subruere eximias cumulatâs cladibus urbes,
Atque *Britannorum* nomen demergere bellis.
Vt tamen emergant quæ sunt immersa ruinis,
Et decus antiquum rediviva *Britannia* cernat,
Ecce vetustatem *Camdenus* eruit omnem,
Magnarum verumscutatus magna sepulchra,
Submovit cineres, nigrantis dispulsi nimbros:
Inque prius retrò studiis se contulit eumq;
Contulit atque decus patriæque sibi que labore.

In antiquam *Camdeni* Britanniam. H. N. L.
ἐκτελεστῆς.

Priscæ Britannorum delevit nomina Tempus
Antiquas urbes exitioque dedit.

Cuncta triumphato *Camdenus* tempore reddit,
Ingenio priscum restituitque decus.
Ingenio cedat Tempus, cedatque vetustas:
Ingenium majus Tempore robur habet.

Ad eundem.

Errabas quærens Antiqua *Britannia* lumen,
At, *Camdene*, tuam vivis ut illa domum:
Invenit lumen, mansit, cupiensque poliri;
Hospes ait mihi sis, qui mihi lumen eris.

I. W.

In praise of the Translator.

Camden unto the learned did discover,
What Holland to the Whol-land doib recite;
Who can but read an English Author over,
May thereby reape much profit with delight,
Viewing the manners, lawes, & rites situation,
Of his owne native soile, explain d'so well;
With all can be desir'd of British Nation,
That now Great Britaine bath no Parrallell:
So richly deck'd, that her faire beauntious blaze,
By matchlesse Art of thine industrious spirit,
Adornes the World, like *Phœbus* golden waies.
Thou and thy workes æternall fame doe merite
Anagr.

Thou Onli-homland-help in admiration,
Like that rare " *Phoenix* cause of this translation.

THOMAS MERRILL
Master of Arts,

* Lady Eliza-
beth Berkley,
Mother to the
now R. H.
George Lord
Berkley.

Sonne of the Translator.

What *Camden* wrote for profit and delight,
Of British Isles, of blessings which have store;
In Latian language for each learned spire,
To reape such fruits as passe *Peruvian* ore
This Holland bath at suis of learned Dame,
With paines, transfus'd into our vulgar speech
His care of common good, deserves that fame,
Which unto late posteritie shall reach.
Wherefore all worthy wights which doe sake pleasure,
To know the stories of their Country sweet,
Ought kindly to accept this so great treasure;
And yield those thanks to th' Author which are meet.
I like his Pen and judgement eke no lesse,
For making choice of such a Patronesse.

HENRY STANFORD
Master of Arts.

In

In honour of the Translator.

THE PEN unspoil'd, though worne beyond a Pen,
The HAND unweari'd, though with toile oppress'd;
The HEAD diseas'd for ease of Englishmen,
(Yet still hold out) in motion heere doe rest.
They rest in motion; restless rest is that;
Yet that's the rest thy Pen, thy Hand, thy Head
Deere HOLLAND hath; which all (unwitt'g) translate
The greatest Volumes, greatest Braines have bred.
Life being so short as from the Birth to Beere
Is but a span; all times may well admire
How so much may be onely written here,
Where toile makes that short life more soone expire.
Had I an Angels tongue, or else a Pen
Made of his Pinion (might I judge of thee)
I should so speake and write that Gods and Men
Should see a Miracle of thee through me.
For, NATURE workes but still to hold her state;
And for that worke alone neglecteth all:
But thy workes doe her power in thee abate,
For others good; that's supernaturall.
So thou art a Miracle of Men, for Men;
Yet if this Miracle be thought untrue
To thy good HEART, from thy Head, Hand, and Pen
Give what is right, and then all is but due.
To count the Volumes most voluminous,
Which thou translated hast with care (past care)
And Art (past Art) were but superfluous:
For, all doe know them, see they famous are.
NATURES great Secretarie thou dost teach
To speake such English, as (though he be high
In cloudy matter) English eies may reach,
His highest Pitch; that tries the Eagles eie.
The Roman most renown'd Historian
Trajans great MASTER: Moralls (boundlesse bookes)
Smooth Tranquill, and the rugged Ammian,
Thou mad'st as smooth to speake, as Venus looks.
And, for thy last, (but so it cannot be
If life doe last, for still thou wilt be doing)
Here is a WORKE translated now by thee,
For which we long the Learned have beene wooing.
In this, through thee, wee see (as in a Glasse)
The wrinkled Face of grave ANTIQVITY:
Thy passing Amor here himselfe doth passe
O'er whom thou reign'st while he doth subject lie.
Camden, whose Fame nor Seas, nor Lands can bound
(Yet they best know him furthest from our ken;
For, English least doe know his voices sound)
Is made more famous by thy famous Pen
For, now the English knowes his worthinesse:
His Countrymen now see him as he is:
Before, they at his vertue could but guesse;
And guesse by Arlesse Aimes, that often misse.
Yet, Man of Art, behold! for all this All
How thou art subject (that deseru'st to raigne
In all mens loves) to hate of great and small,
That to be learn'd alone, take envious paine;
Who seek for Knowledge onely to be knowne:
(For, who know most, are knowne still most of all)
They deeme Wit, Folly; that to all is shewne;
And Goodnesse, Badnesse hold, if generall.

Who knows the voice of Envy, theirs doe know;
For, Envy speakes but onely by their tongues,
Who being a devill speakes (she cares not how)
By borrow'd Organs which to them belongs.
Alas poore Snakes! (hate Envious Instruments)
Poore in your Wit, and way-ward in your Will!
Yet little learne, so, hate the Ornaments
Of Arte in greater Wits of lesser skill.
Didye not doubt your owne defect of Wit
You would all Artes should sticke shorne to all;
And let the best Wit make best use of it,
For Wits renoune, and letters liberall.
Tea, you would wish the Babylonian towre
Were yet to build, while all one tongue impart;
That so, sole Wit might be Arts Governour,
Not tongues, that are the Essence of no Art.
But were yee good, and would all Good should know,
Who Envy this more learn'd, less-envious man,
You would the frankest praise on him bestow
That makes th' unlearn'd a learn'd Historian.
Shall English be so poore, and rudely-bast
As not be able (through meere penury)
To tell what French hath said with gallant grace,
And most tongues else of lesse facultie?
God shield it should; and Heav'n forefend that we
Should so debase our owne deere mother-tongue,
That shewes our thoughts (how ever high they be)
With higher tearmas, and eloquence among,
Then, let me muzzie those so dogged mouths
That byte and hark at what they should defend:
„ They liee doe love, that hidden would have Trueth;
„ And he is Verimes foe that's Errors friend.
But, kind Philémon, let thine active Muse
Still mount above these base detraiting spirits:
Looke not so low as Snakes that men abuse,
And highest Fame shall crowne thy lowest merits.
Goe forward (mangle backward Envious crabs,
That still goe backe) thy paines give others pleasure:
They play proud Miriams part, thou Ionadabs;
They skant our learnings list, thou giv'st us measure.
This Camdens-Britaine, that on wings of Art
Flies o're the World, knowne least where most it ought,
There thy free Pen to all doth it impart,
And mak'st them learn'd that almost are untaught.
For, Camden (whose all time out-wearing fame,
Sith he the learned hath so often gladded)
Hath, by thy Pen, now multipl'd his Name:
For, now to Camdens Britaine, Holland's added
Then, pregnant HOLLAND, Britaine fertile make
With learnings compest; till the croppes of Art
Be ready for our neighbours Sithe, and Rake,
That have lesse skill, than will to take our part;
So shall this stile (when thou art stile or sand)
Call Camdens-Britaine, Hollands richest land.

The unfained honourer of thee
and thine indeavours.

JAMN DAVIES of Hereford.





BRITAIN.

BRITAIN OR BRITANNIE, which also is ALBION, named in Greeke ΕΡΕΤΑΝΙΑ, ΕΡΕΤΑΝΙΚΗ, ΕΡΕΤΑΝΙΑ, ΑΛΒΙΟΝ, ΑΛΟΤΙΟΝ, the most famous Island, without comparison of the whole world; severed from the continent of Europe, by the interflowing of the Ocean, lieth against Germanie and France triangle-wise; by reason of three Promontories shooting out into divers parts: to wit, BELERIUM, i. the Cape of S. Burien in Cornwall, Westward; CANTIUM, i. the Fore-land of Kent, into the East; and TARVISIUM or ORCAS, i. the point of Carnesse in Scotland, Northward. On the West side, whereas Ireland is seated, VERGIVIVS, i. the Western Ocean, breaketh in; From the North, it hath the most vast and wide Hyperborean sea beating upon it; On the East, where it coasteth upon Germanie, enforced sore it is with the German sea; and Southward, as it lieth opposite to France, with the British. Disjoyned from those neighbour-countries all about by a convenient distance every way, fitted with commodious and open havens, for traffique with the universall world, and to the generall good, as it were, of mankind, thrusting it selfe forward with great desire from all parts into the sea. For betweene the said For-land of Kent and Calais in France it so advanceth it selfe, and the sea is so straighted, that some thinke the land there was pierced through, and received the seas into it, which before-time had beene excluded: For the maintenance of which their conceit, they alleage both Virgil in that verse of his,

See in Kent.

Et penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos:

And Britans people quite disjoyn'd from all the world besides.

Because Britaine, saith Servius Honoratus, was in times past joyned to the maine. And also Claudian, who in imitation of him wrote thus:

Nostra deducta Britannia mundo.

Britaine, a land, which severed is from this our [Roman] world.

Certes, that the outward face and fashion of this globe of Earth hath beene with the inundation of Noahs flood, as also by other causes altered; that some mountaines thereby increased in heighth, many places higher than others, settled low, and became even plaines and valleys; that waterie washes were dried up, and drie grounds turned to be standing waters; yea, and that certaine Islands have beene violently broken off from the firme land, carrieth some likelihood of truth. But whether the same be true indeed, or whether there were any Islands at all before the Deluge, it is not my purpose here to argue; neither take I pleasure, without good advisement, of Gods works to give my doome. That the providence of God hath ordained divers things to one and the same end, who knoweth not? and verily, that parcels of the earth dispersed here and there within the sea, serve no lesse to adorn the world, than lakes spread upon the earth and hilles raised aloft, aswell Divines as Philosophers have alwaies held.

Livius and Fabius Rusticus have likened the forme heereof unto a * long dish or * two edged axe, and so is it shapen indeed toward the South, as saith Tacitus, whereupon the same went of the whole. But Northward, that huge and enorne tract of

A

ground

* Scutula quæ longe.
* Bipenni. See the Annotations of Sir Hen. Savile, knight, upon this place in Tacitus.

The Panegyric
ricke Oratio-
on pronoun-
ced unto Cæ-
stantius, and
untruely enti-
tuled unto
Maximian.

ground running beyond unto the furthest point, groweth narrow and sharpe like a wedge, So large, and of such exceeding greatnesse in circuit, they in old time took it to bee, that Cæsar, hee who first of all the Romans discovered it, wrote, *How he had found out another world; supposing the same so great, as that it seemed to containe within it the Ocean, and not to be compassed about therewith*: and Iulius Solinus Polyhistor hath left in writing, that for the largenesse thereof it deserueth Well neere the name of a second world. Howbeit, this age of ours hath now at length by many and sundry voyages, found out in some sort the true dimension and iust compass of the whole Isle, For, from the point *Tarvisum* unto the cape *Belerium*, the reaches and crooked turnings of the sea-banks along the West considered, there are reckoned much about *ccccxii* miles: from thence, keeping the sea side, as it bendeth Southward untill you come to the Fore-land of *Kent*, *ccccxx* miles: whence coasting by the German sea, with crooked creeks and inlets for *ccccxiii* miles, it reacheth to the foresaid point *Tarvisum*: so that by this reckoning the whole Iland taketh in compass *mdcccxvii* miles. Which measure as it commeth farre short of Plinies, so is it also somewhat lesse than Cæsars. As for Schitinius Chius, I have no reason once to name him, who having in Apollonius among other wonders tolde us strange tales of fruits growing in Britaine without kernels, and of grapes without stone and seed, hath bounded it within the precinct of *ccc* stadia and no more. Much better yet hath Dionysius After in his Description of the world, reported of the British Ilands that is to say, Britaine and Ireland in this wise,

*Tantum pulchritudine oblectant; hinc mænia
Nævis circumstant spectant longæque*

Now, for their greatnesse verily, exceeding large they are;
And seeke through Ilands all, none may with *British Isles* compare.
And together with him, Aristides and other Greeke writers accord, who by way of excellencie, have truly called Britaine for the greatnesse thereof *Μεγάλη νῆσος*, that is, The great Iland.

Now, they that have more curiously compared the spaces of heaven above, together with the tracts of earth beneath, place Britaine under the 8. Climate, and include it within the 18. and 26 Parallel. They thinke also the longest day there, to be 18. Equinoctiall houres and an halfe. But the Cape of Cornwall, respecting the convectie of the earth, they describe to be situate 16 degrees & 50 scruples from the furthest point West: the longitude likewise of the Fore-land in Kent, to be 21. degrees; as for the latitude, in the fourth-coast they measure it by 50 degrees, and that of Carnet Northward, by 59 & 40 scruples over. So that, according to this site, Britaine is seated aswell for aire as soile, in a right fruitfull and most milde place. The aire so kinde and temperate, that not only the Summers be not excessive hote, by reason of continuall gentle windes that abate their heat (which as they refresh the fruits of the earth, so they yeeld a most holosome and pleasing contentment both to man and beast) but the Winters also are passing milde: For, the raine falling often with still showers, (to say nothing of the aire it selfe somewhat thicke and grosse) dissolveth the rigour of the cold so; and withall the sea which compasseth it, with moderate warmth doth comfort the land in such wise, as that the cold with us is much more remiss than in some parts of France and Italie. Whereupon it is, that Minutius Felix, proving that God by his providence hath a speciall regard of the severall parts of the world as well as of the whole, saith, *That Britaine though it want other whiles the aspect of the Sunne, yet refreshed it is with the warmth of the sea flowing round about it*. Neither neede you to marvell at his speech, concerning the warmth of the sea. *The seas*, quoth Cicero, stirred to and fro with the winds, do so wax warme, that a man may easily perceive, within this world of Waters there is inclosed a certaine heat. To the temperatenesse also of this Iland Cæscenius Getulicus a very ancient Poet seemeth to have respect, when he verified thus of Britaine;

*Non illic Aries verno ferit æra cornu,
Gnosia nec Gemini præcedunt cornua Tauri,
Sicca Lycæonius resupinus plaustro Bootes.*

Be natura De-
orum, lib. 2.

Prohm in Vir-
gilij Georgic.

The *RAM unkindly smites not there, in Spring, the aire with horn,
Nor *TWINs, the horned *BULL of Crete, untimely go beforen,
Where DRIVER, high *Arctophylax*, doth his drie waine upturn.

Where DRIVER, high *Arctophylax*, doth his drie waine upturn.
Cæsar likewise writeth thus: *The places in Britaine be more temperate (by reason that the weather is not so cold) than in France. Semblably Cornelius Tacitus; No extreme weather is of cold: and hee addeth moreover, and saith, The soile, setting aside the Olive, the Vine, and the rest, which are * proper to warmer countries, taketh all kind of graine, and beareth it in abundance: it ripeneth slowly, but commeth up quickly: the cause of both is one and the same, to wit, the overmuch moisture of ground and aire. For the aire, as Strabo writeth, is subject rather to showres of raine, than to snow. Howbeit, the ground enriched so with all sorts of corne, that Orpheus hath reported it to bee the very feat of Ladie Ceres: for, that which we read in his Poeme thus,*

*Id' iuxta Olympi' æthere
Aluq' æther,*

—Lo, heere, the stately hauls
Of Ceres Queene.—

is meant of this our Iland: yea, and it hath bene the very barne, garner, and store-house of victuals of the West Empire; from whence the Romans were wont yearly to transport into Germanie, with a fleet of 800. vessels bigger than barges, great store of corne, for the maintenance of their armies, which there defended the Frontiers. But lest I should seeme to exceed over-much in the praise of my native country, heare in stead of me, that ancient Oratour, who with open mouth resoundeth out the commendations thereof, in this manner: *O happy Britaine, and more fortunate than all other lands beside, which first sawest Constantine Emperour! for good cause hath nature endowed thee with all the blessed gifts of aire and soile; wherein there is neither excessive cold of Winter, nor extreme heat of Summer; wherein there is so great plenty of graine, that it serveth sufficiently both for bread and drink: wherein the Forrests are without savage beasts, and the ground void of noysome serpents. Contrariwise, an infinite multitude there is of tame cattell with udders strutting full of milke, and laden with fleeces: and verily, (that which for the use of our life we much esteemed) the daies there are very long, and the nights never want some light, whiles those utmost plaines by the sea side cast and raise no shadowes on high, and the aspect both of skie and starres passeth beyond the bound of the night, yea the very Sunne it selfe, which unto us seemeth for to set, appeareth there, onely to passe along and goe aside.*

Hearken also, if it please you, to another Oratour speaking unto Constantius the father of Constantine the Great in this wise: *And, I assure you, no small damage was it to the Common-weale, as to lose the bare name onely of BRITAINE, so to forgoe a land so plentiful in corne, so rich in pasturage, so full of mines and veins of metall, so gainefull in tributes and revenewes so accommodated with many havens, and for circuit, so large and spacious.*

Moreover, the singular love and motherly affection of Nature to this Iland, a Poet of good antiquitie hath by way of a speech made unto Britaine lively expressed thus, in this Epigram, which some have judged not unworthy to be divulged.

*Tu nimio nec stricta gelu, nec fydere fervens,
Clementi cælo temperique places,
Cum pareret Natura parens, varique favore
Divideret dotes omnibus una locis,
Seposuit potiora tibi, matreque professa,
Insula sis felix, plenaque pacis, æis.
Quicquid amat luxus, quicquid desiderat usus,
Ex te proveniet, vel alimde tibi.*

For aire, so mild and temperate right pleasing is thy feat;
Where reigneth neither chilling cold, nor yet excessive heat.
What time Dame Nature brought things forth, and of her onely grace,
Bestow'd her favours manifold and gifts on every place;

A 2

Like

* Aries.
* Gemini.
* Tauri.
* Bootes, others
wife called
Arctophylax.

* Vtually
grow in hot-
ter countries.

Zosimus,
Eustachius
de conspectu

Panegyric to
Constantius.

Panegyric to
Constantius.

Like mother kinde, the better part aside for thee she laid;
Oh, happie Island maist thou be and full of peace, she said:
What ever vaine excesses affects, what may mans need content,
Shall come from thee, or else to thee, from other lands be sent.

Fortunate
Islands.

In his Com-
mentaries
upon Lys-
siron.

1344.

This plentiful abundance, these goodly pleasures of Britain, have perswaded some that those fortunate Islands, wherein all things, as Poets write, do still flourish as in a perpetuall Spring tide, were sometime heere with us. For, this, doth one *Isidore* Tez-za a Greek Author of no small credit, affirme, and our ancestors seeme to have be- lieved the same as a certaine truth. For, what time as Pope Clement the sixth, as wee read in *Robert of Avesburie*, had elected *Lewis of Spaine*, to bee the Prince of those fortunate Islands, and for to aid and assist him, mustered souldiers in France and Italie, our countrymen were verily perswaded, That hee was chosen Prince of *Britaine*, and that all the said preparation was for *Britaine*, as one, saith he, of the fortunate Islands. Yea and even those most prudent personages themselves, our Legier Embassadors there, with the Pope, were so deeply settled in this opinion, that forthwith they with drew themselves from *Rome*, and hastned with all speed into *England*, there to certifie their countrey men and friends of the matter. Neither will any man now judge other- wise, who thoroughly knoweth the blessed estate and happie wealth of *Britaine*. For Nature tooke a pleasure in the framing thereof, and seemeth to have made it as a se- cond world, sequestred from the other, to delight mankind withall, yea and curiously depainted it of purpose, as it were a certaine portraict, to represent a singular beautie, and for the ornament of the universall world: with so gallant and glittering variety, with so pleasant a shew are the beholders eyes delighted, which way soever they glance. To say nothing of the Inhabitants, whose bodies are of an excellent good con- stitution, their demeanour right courteous, their natures as gentle, and their courage most hardie and valiant, whose manhood by exploits achieved both at home and a broad, is famously renowned thorow the whole world.

The first In-
habitants:
and reason of
the Name.

But who were the most ancient and the very first Inhabitants of this Isle, as also, from whence this word *Britan* had the originall derivation, sundry opinions one after another have risen; and many we have seene, who being uncertaine in this point, have seemed to put downe the certaine resolution thereof. Neither can we hope to attaine unto any certaintie heerein, more than all other nations, which setting those aside that have their originall avouched unto them out of holy Scripture) as well as wee, touching their point, abide in great darkenesse, error and ignorance. And how, to speake truly, can it otherwise be? considering that the truth, after so many revoluti- ons of ages and times, could not chuse but be deeply hidden. For the first inhabitours of countreys had other cares and thoughts to busie and trouble their heads, than to deliver their beginnings unto posteritie. And say, they had been most willing so to do, yet possibly could they not, seeing their life was so uncivill, so rude, so full of warres, and therefore void of all literature; which keeping companie with a civill life, by peace and repose, is onely able to preserve the memorie of things, and to make over the same to the succeeding ages. Moreover the *Druides*, who being in the olde time the Priests of the Britans and Gaules, were supposed to have knowne all that was past, & the *Bards*, that used to resound in song all valours and noble acts, thought it not law- full to write and booke any thing. But admit they had recorded ought; in so long continuance of time, in so many and so great turnings and overturnings of States, doubtlesse the same had bene utterly lost, seeing that the very stones, pyramids, obe- lisks, and other memorable monuments, thought to be more durable than brasse, have yeilded long agoe to the iniquitie of time. Howbeit, in the ages soone after follow- ing, there wanted not such as desired gladly to supplie these defects; and when they could not declare the truth indeed, yet at least way for delectation, they laboured to bring forth narrations, devised of purpose, with certaine pleasant varietie to give contentment, and delivered their severall opinions, each one after his owne conceit and capacitie, touching the originall of Nations and their names. Unto which, as there were many, who neglecting further search into the truth, quickly yeilded con- venance;

nivance; so, the most fort delighted with the sweetnesse of the Deviser, as readily gave credence.

But, to let passe all the rest, one Geoffrey Ap Arthur, of Monmouth among us (whom I would not pronounce in this behalfe liable to this suspicion) in the raigne of K. Henrie the Second, published an Historie of Britaine, and that out of the British tongue, as hee saith himselfe: wherein he writeth, That Brutus a Trojane borne, the sonne of Silvius, nephew of Ascanius, and in a third degree nephew to that great Aeneas descended from supream Jupiter, (for the goddesse Venus bare him) whose birth cost his mother her life, and who by chance slew his owne father in hunting, (a thing that the wise Magi had foretold) fled his country and went into Greece; where he delivered out of thraldome the progenie of Helenus K. Priamus sonne, vanquish- ed King *Pandrusus*, wedded his daughter, and accompanied with a remnant of Tro- jans, fell upon the Island *Leogeria*: where by the Oracle of Diana, he was adviced to goe into this Western Isle. From thence through the Streights of *Gebraltar*, where he escaped the Mer-maydes, and afterward through the Tuscan sea, hee came as farre as to * *Aquitaine*, in a pight battell defeated *Golfarius* the *Pict*, King of *Aqui- taine*, together with twelve Princes of Gaul; and after he had built the citie * *Tours* (as witnesseth Homer) and made spoile of Gaule, passed over sea into this Island inhabited of Giants, whom when he had conquered, together with *Gogmagog* the hugest of them all, according to his owne name he called it *Britaine*, in the yeare of the world 2855: before the first Olympiad 334. yeares; and before the nativite of Christ 1108. Thus saith Geoffrey [of Monmouth]. Yet others there bee, that fetch the name of *Britaine* from some other causes. Sir Thomas Eliot, by degree a wor- shipfull Knight, and a man of singular learning, draweth it from the Greeke foun- taine, to wit, *πρωτηνια*, a teame that the Athenians gave to their publike Finances or Revenues. Humfrey Lhuyd, reputed by our countrymen, for knowledge of Antiqui- tie, to carrie after a fort, with him all the credit and authoritie, referreth it confidently to the British word *PRID-CAIN*, that is to say, *a pure white forme*. *Pomponius Latius* reporteth, that the *Britons* out of *Armorica in France*, gave it that name. *Goropius Becanus* saith, that the Danes fought heere to plant themselves, and so named it *BRIDANIA*, that is, *Free Dania*. Others derive it from *PRUTENIA*, a region in Ger- manie. *Bodine* supposeth, that it tooke the name of *BRETTA* the Spanish word, which signifieth *Earth*: and *Forcatulus*, of *BRITHIN*, which, as wee read in *Athe- nus*, the Greeks used for drinke. Others bring it from the *BRUTII* in Italy, whom the Gracians called *brutii*. As for those smatterers in Grammar, who keepe a bab- bling and prating that *Britaine* should carry that name, of British manners, let them be packing.

* *Aquitaine*.
Brute.
* *Orbem Tu-*
ronum.
In the yeare of
the world,
2855.
Before the
Nativitie of
Christ, 1108.

These are all the opinions (to my knowledge) that have bene received touching the name of *Britaine*. But heerein, as wee cannot but smile at the fictions of strag- gers, so the devices coined by our owne countrymen passe not currant with generall allowance. And verily, in these and such like cases, an easier matter it is to impeach the false, than to teach and maintaine a truth. For besides this, that it were an absur- ditie to seeke the reason of this name in a forrein language, the generall consent of all Historiographers of better note, doth confute *Lælius*; who with one accord deliver unto us, that those *Armorica Britons* departed hence, and so from us carried the name with them. Againe, *Britaine* flourished under this name many hundred yeares before the names of *Dania* and *Prutenia* came up. But what doth the word *Britan- nia* to doe with the Spaniards *Bretta*? which I doubt, whether it be Spanish or no: and why should this Island be so termed, rather than other Land? That the drinke called *Brithin* was ever in use among our countrymen, can hardly be proved: and to give name to our nation of the Greekes drinke, were ridiculous. As for those *Brutii* in Italy, whom as *Strabo* witnesseth, the *Lucans* called *brutii*, as one would say, traiterous fugitives; it can never be proved, that they like runnagates ranne hither into *Britaine*. But to come now to our owne countreymens conjectures. Eliots *brutii* seemeth not probable; seeing that word was proper to the Athenians; and confi- dering

dering the Greeks called this Isle *Hyperborea*, not *Hyperborea*, Lhuys *Prid-Cain* for the Britans, seemeth not onely too farre fetched, but also over-hardly strained: to say nothing how that word, *Cain*, came from the Latines *Candidum*, and so crept into the provincial language of the Britaines.

But as touching those reports of *Brutus*; were they true, certaine, and undoubted, there is no cause why any man should bestow farther study and labor in searching out the beginning of the Britaines: The thing is dispatched to our hand, and the searchers of Antiquitie are eased of their troublesome and painfull travell. For mine owne part, it is not my intent, I assure you, to discredit and confute that story which goes of him, for the upholding whereof, (I call *Truth* to record) I have from time to time streined to the heighth, all that little wit of mine. For that were, to strive with the streame and currant of time; and to struggle against an opinion commonly and long since received. How then may I, a man of so meane parts, and small reckoning, be so bold, as to sit in examination of a matter so important, and thereof definitively to determine? Well, I referre the matter full and whole to the Senate of Antiquarians, for to be decided. Let every man, for me, judge as it pleaseth him; and of what opinion soever the Reader shall be of, verily I will not make it a point much material.

And yet I see (that I may tell you so much aforehand, beeing as I am a plaine honest and diligent searcher after the truth) how men most judicious and passing well learned, goe about divers waies to extenuate the credit of this narration; and so often as I stand in defence thereof, to come upon me fiercely with these and such like arguments. First, grounding their reason upon the time, they protest and say, that all is but fabulous (with reservation onely of the *Sacred Historie*) whatsoever is reported to have beene done before the first *Olympias*, to wit, the year 770. before the birth of Christ: like as these reports of *Brutus*, which are before the said time 300. yeares and more. And this they averre by the authoritie of Varro, the most learned writer of all the Romans: who as he named the first age immediately after mans creation unto the Deluge, *Abrah*, that is, uncertaine, by reason of the ignorance thereof, so he termed the second, even from the said Deluge unto the first *Olympias*, *Musius*, that is to say, *Fabulous*: because in that time there is related nothing else (for the most part) but tales, even among the Greekes and Latines, learned nations; much more then among the Barbarous and unlettered, such as in those daies they were in all this tract, every one. Then they alleage, that for the confirmation of this matter in question, the authoritie of sufficient writers, (which to the knowledge of things past maketh most, and is all in all) is altogether defective. Now, those they call sufficient writers, whose antiquitie and learning the greater it is, so is their credit the better accepted, who all of them, like as the ancient Britaines themselves (by their saying) knew not so much as the name of *Brutus*. Cæsar, say they, sixteene hundred yeares since, as he testifieth of himselfe, *By all the enquire that he could make, found no more but this, that the inland part of Britaine was inhabited by those, who, said they, were borne in the very Island; and the maritime coasts by such as from out of * Belgium passed over thither.* Tacitus also, a thousand and foure hundred yeares agoe, who searched diligently into these particulars, wrote thus, *What manner of men the first inhabitants of Britain were, borne in the land or brought in, as among barbarous people it is not certainly knowne.* Gildas, being himselfe a wise and learned Britaine, who lived a thousand yeares since, hath not one word of this *Brutus*, and doubteth whether the old Britaines had any records or writings, whereby they might convey unto posteritie, their own beginning and Historie; professing that he wrote, *by the relation which hee had from beyond sea, and not by any direction out of the writings of his owne country, or any records left by writers: which if there were ever any at all, either the enemies had burnt them, or else they were carried away farre off in some fleet of exiled persons, and so not extant.* Ninius also, discipule of *Eluodugus*, taking in hand to write a Chronicle, eight hundred yeares agoe, complaineth that the great Masters and Doctors of Britaine, had no skill, and left no memoriall in writing: confessing, that himselfe gathered whatsoever hee wrote out of the *Annals and Chronicles of the holy Fathers*. To these they adjoyne Beda,

William

Conferimus.

The Fabulous Time or Age.

At this day called Netherlands, or Low countries of Germany.

He flourished in the year 1440.

William of Malmesburie, and as many as wrote eleven hundred and threescore yeares since, who seeme not once to have heard of *Brutus* his name; so silent are they of him in all their owne writings.

Henceupon they have noted, that the name of that *Brutus* was never heard of in the world, before that in a barbarous age, and amid the thickest clouds of ignorance, one Hunibald a bald writer, fabled and feined, That *Francio* a Trojan, King Priams sonne, was the founder of the French Nation. Hence they collect, that when our country-men heard once how the French-men their neighbours drew their line from the Trojanes, they thought it a foule dishonour, that those should outgoe them in nobilitie of Stocke, whom they matched every way in manhood and proesse. Therefore, that *Geffrey Ap Arthur* of Monmouth, foure hundred yeares agoe, was the first, as they thinke, that to gratifie our Britans produced unto them this *Brutus*, descended from the gods, by birth also a Trojan, to bee the author of the British Nation. And before that time verily not one man, as they say, made any mention at all of the said *Brutus*.

They adde thus much moreover, that about the same time, the Scottish writers falsely devised *Scota* the Egyptian Pharaos daughter to bee the Foundresse of their nation. Then also it was, that some mispending their wit and time, yea and offering violent abuse unto the truth, forged out of their owne braines, for the Irish, their *Hiberus*; for the Danes, their *Danuis*; for the Brabanders, their *Brabo*; for the Goths, their *Gothus*; and for the Saxons, their *Saxa*; as it were the Stock-fathers of the said nations. But seeing that in this our age, which hath escaped out of those darke mists of fallall ignorance, the French have renounced their *Francio* as a counterfeit Progenitor: (Whereas the Frenchmen, quoth Turnibus a right learned man, stand highly upon their descent from the Trojanes, they doe it in emulation of the Romans, whom they seeing to beare themselves proud of that Pedigree and noble stocke, would needs take unto themselves also the like reputation.) And for that the Scots, such as be of the wiser sort, have cast off their *Scota*; and truth it selfe hath chased away *Hiberus*, *Danuis*, *Brabo*, and the rest of these counterfeit Demi-gods, and Worthies of the same stampe: Why the Britans should so much stick to their *Brutus*, as the name-giver of their Island, and to the Trojan original, they greatly wonder: as who would say, before the destruction of Troy, (which happened in the thousand yeare or there about after Noahs flood) there had beene no Britaines heere: and as if there had not lived many valorous men before Agamemnon.

Furthermore, they avouch, that very many out of the grave Senate of great Clerks, by name, Boccace, Vives, Hadr. Junius. Polydore, Buchanan, Vigneier, Genebrard, Molinæus, Bodine, and other men of deepe judgement, agree joyntly in one verdict, and denie, that ever there was any such in the world as this *Brutus*: also, that learned men of our owne country, as many, acknowledge him not, but reject him as a meere counterfet. Among whom, they produce, first John of Weathamsted, Abbat of S. Albanes, a most judicious man; who in his *Granarie* wrote of this point long since in this manner: *According to other histories, which in the judgement of some are of more credit, the whole Discourse of this Brutus is rather Poeticall than historicall, and, for divers reasons, built upon opinion more than truth indeede.* First, because their is no where mention made in the Roman stories, either of killing the father, or of the said birth, or yet of putting away the sonne. Secondly, for that, after sundry authors, *Ascanius* begat no such sonne who had for his proper name *Sylvius*: for, according unto them, he begat but one onely sonne, and that was *Iulus*, from whom the house of *Iulii* afterwards tooke their beginning &c. And thirdly, *Sylvius Posthumus*, whom perhaps *Geffrey* meaneth, was the sonne of *Aeneas* by his wife *Lavinia*; and hee begetting his sonne *Aeneas* in the eight and thirtieeth yeare of his reigne, ended the course of his life by naturall death. The Kingdome therefore, now called England, was not heerebefore, as many will have it, named Britaine of *Brutus* the sonne of *Sylvius*. Wherefore, it is in their opinion a vaine peece of worke, and ridiculous enough, to challenge noble blood, and yet to want a probable ground of their challenge. For it is not manhood only, that ennobleth a nation; the mind it is also with

* Epist. 44.

with perfect understanding, and nothing else, that gaineth gentilitie to a man. And therefore Seneca writeth thus, in his * Epistles out of Plato, That there is no King but hee came from slaves, and no slave but hee descended of Kings. Wherefore, to conclude, let this suffice the Britaines from the beginning of their Nobilitie, that they bee courageous and valiant in fight, that they subdue their enemies on every side, and that they utterly refuse the yoke of servitude.

In a second rancke they place William of Newborough a writer of much greater authority, who too too sharply charged Geoffrey the Compiler of the British history, for his untruth, so soone as ever it came forth, in these words: *A certaine writer quoth he, in these our daies hath risen up, who deviseth foolish fictions and tales of the Britaines, and in a vaine humour of his owne, extollet them farre above the valourous Macedonians and Romans both: he hath to name Geoffrey, and is surnamed Arthurius, for that the tales of Arthure taken out of the Britaines old fables, and augmented by inventions of his owne, with a new colour of Latine speech laid over them, hee hath invested into the goodly title of a Historie, who also hath adventured farther, and divulged under the name of authentike propheties, grounded upon an undoubted truth, the deceitfull conjectures and foredeemings of one Merlin, whereunto hee added verily a great deale of his owne, whiles hee did the same into Latine. And a little after: Moreover, in his booke which he entitleth, The Britains Historie; how malapertly and shamelesly hee doth in manner nothing but lie, there is no man that readeth the said booke can doubt, unlesse hee have no knowledge at all of ancient histories. For, hee that hath not learned the truth of things indeede, admitteth without discretion and judgement the vanitie of fables. I forbear to speake, what great matter this fellow hath forged of the Britains acts, before the Empire, and comming in of Julius Caesar, or else being by others invented, hath put them downe as authentike. In somuch, as Giraldus Cambrensis, who both lived and wrote at the same time, made no doubt to terme it, The fabulous story of Geoffrey. Others there bee, who in this narration of Brutus, laugh at the foolish Topographic set downe by this Geoffrey; as also how falsly hee hath produced Homer as a witnesse: yea, and they would perswade us, that it is wholly patched up of untunable discords and jarring absurdities. They note besides, that his writings, together with his Merlins propheties, are (among other books prohibited) forbidden by the church of Rome to be published. Some againe doe observe thus much, how these that most of all admire Brutus, are very doubtfull and waver to and fro about their Brutus. He, say they, that taketh upon him the name and person of Gildas, and annexeth certaine briefe glosses to Ninius, deviseth first, that this Brutus was a Consul of Rome; then, that hee was the sonne of Silvius, and lastly, of one Hesticio. And there wanteth not (as I have heard say) a certaine Count-Palatine, who would needs have our Brutus to be called Brotus, because, forsooth, in his birth he was the cause of his mothers death, as if ^{berk} founded so much in Greeke. In the judgement of others, they should have left the Originall of Britaines as probable, if they had fathered their progenie, either upon Brito the Centaure, whom Hingius mentioneth; or that Bretanus, of whose daughter Celice, Parthenius Nicaeus a very ancient authour, writeth that Hercules begat Celtus, the father of the Celtæ, and from whom Hesychius deriveth the word Britaine.*

As for these observations and judgements of other men, which I have recited, I beseech you, let no man commence action against mee, a plaine meaning man, and an ingenuous student of the truth, as though I impeached that narration of Brutus; forasmuch as it hath been alwaies (I hope) lawfull for every man in such like matters, both to thinke what he will, and also to relate what others have thought. For mine owne part, let Brutus be taken for the father, and founder of the British nation; I will not be of a contrary mind. Let the Britaines resolve still of their originall, to have proceeded from the Trojans (into which stocke, as I will hereafter prove, they may truly ingrasse themselves) I will not gainstand it. I wot full well, that Nations in old time for their originall, had recourse unto Hercules, & in later ages, to the Trojans. Let Antiquitie herein be pardoned, if by entermingling falsities and truthe, humane matters and divine together, it make the first beginnings of nations and cities

Descript. Cambrie. c. 7.

Bretanus.

Livius.

cities more noble, sacred, and of greater majestic: seeing that, as Plinie writeth, *Even falsly to claime and challenge descents from famous personages, implieth in some sort a love of virtue.* As for my selfe, I willingly acknowledge with Varro, the best learned of all Romans, such originals as these, fetched from the gods, to be profitable; that valourous men may believe, although untruly, that they are descended from the gods, and thereby the mind of man assuredly perswaded of some divine race, may presume to enterprize great matters more boldly, at the same more resolutely, and upon the very securitie thereof, performe all more happily. By which words nevertheless, S. Augustine gathereth, that the said most learned Varro confesseth (although not stoutly nor confidently, yet covertly) that these opinions are altogether truthlesse.

Forasmuch then, as all writers are not of one and the same mind, as touching the very name and the first inhabitants of Britaine, and I feare me greatly, that no man is able to fetch out the truth, so deeply plunged within the winding revolutions of so many ages, let the Reader of his candor and humanitie, pardon mee also among others, if modestly and without the prejudice of any man, I likewise interpose my conjecture; not upon any mind I have contentiously to wrangle, (be that farre from mee) but in my desire to search out the truth; which hath wholly possessed me and brought to this point, that in the question now in hand, I had rather aske forgiveness for my fault (if there be any) than commit no fault at all. Howbeit, to the end that the reason of this name, may if it be possible, more easily and with better success appeare, I will endeavour first (as I may) to find out the most ancient Inhabitours of the Island, albeit they lie so hidden in the utmost nooke and secretest closter of Antiquitie, as it were in a most thicke wood, where no pathwaies are to be seene, that very small hope there is or none at all, to fetch those things backe againe with all my diligence, which oblivion hath so long removed out of the sight of our ancestours.

But to seeke for this matter farther off, and to omit Caesar, with Diodorus and others, who would have the Britains to be * borne of themselves in the very land and meere * Aborigines; that is, Homelings and not forrein brought in: who also imagined, that men in the beginning sprang out of the earth, like unto mushrooms and root-stooles: we are taught out of the sacred Historie penned by Moses, that after the Deluge, Sem, Cham, and Japhet, the three sonnes of Noe, having multiplied their issue in great number, departed asunder from the mountaines of Armenia, where the Arke had rested, into divers parts and quarters of the earth, and so, propagated the nations throughout the wide world. That some of their posteritie came to this Isle after the families were by little and little spread and dispersed abroad, both reason it selfe, and also the authoritie of Theophilus Antiochenus, doe joyntly prove. When as, saith hee, in old time, there were few men in Arabia and Chaldaea, after the division of tongues they increased and multiplied more and more. Heereupon some departed toward the East, some gat them to the spacious and open main-land: others went forward into the North, seeking there to seat themselves: neither gave they over, to possesse ground every where, untill they came as farre as to Britaine, situate in the Northerne Climates. And Moses himselfe expressly sheweth the same, writing, that the Islands of the Gentiles were by the posteritie of Japhet divided in their Regions. The Islands of * Gentiles the Divines call those, which lie farthest off: and Wolfgangus Musculus a Theologer, not of the lowest ranke, thinketh that the nations and families which came from Japhet first inhabited the Isles of Europe, such as (saith he) be England, Sicillie, &c. Now, that Europe fell unto Japhet and his progenie, not Divines onely, but Josephus also and others have recorded. For Isidorus, out of an ancient writer citeth this, *The nations descended of Japhet, possesse from the Mountaine Taurus Northward, the one halfe of Asia, and all Europe so farre as to the British Ocean, leaving names both to places and people both: Of which very many afterward became changed, the rest remaine as they were.* And we have seene that blessing of Noe, [God enlarge Japhet, and let him dwell in the Tents of Sem, and let Chanaan be his servants] fulfilled in the people of Europe. For, Europe, which, as Plinie saith, bred

Augustinus de Civitate Dei. lib. 3. cap. 4.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei. lib. 3. cap. 4.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei. lib. 3. cap. 4.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei. lib. 3. cap. 4.

* Or Nations.

Origen. lib. 9. cap. 2.

Gen. cap. 9.

bred up a people conquerour of all nations, hath triumphed more than once over those other parts of the world which fell unto Sem and Cham: and in this part had the off-spring of Japhet spred it selfe farre and wide. For of his sonnes, Magog begg the Massagets, Javan the Iones, Thubal the Spaniards, and Mesech the Moschovites. But Gomer his eldest sonne, in these farthest and remotest borders of Europe, gave both beginning and name to the Gomerians, which were after called Cimbrians and Cimerians. For, the name of Cimbrians or Cimerians filled in some fort this part of the world: and not onely in Germanie, but also in Gaul spred exceeding much. They which now are the Gauls, were, as Josephus and Zonaras write, called of Gomer, Gomari, Gomerai and Gomerita. From these Gomerians or Gomerians of Gaul, I have alwaies thought that our Britaines drew their beginning, and from thence, for a proove of the said beginning, brought their name: the very proper and peculiar name also of the * Britains, hath perswaded mee thereunto. For even they call themselves ordinarily *Kumero*, *Cymro* and *Kumeri*: like as a * British woman *Kumeras*, and the tongue it selfe, *Kumeras*. Neither acknowledge they any other names: although some there be not of the greatest skill, who from hence have coined in the former age, these words, *Cambri* and *Cambria*. Yea, and that Gomerian whom Virgil in his Catalects so taunteth and termeth the Britaine Thucydides, Quintilian saith was a Cimbrian. And whence, trow yee, should wee thinke these names proceed, but from that Gomer, and the Gomerians in Gaul next adjoining: which was the seat of the old Gomerians. That the *Germans* came of *Aschenaz*, the Turks from *Togorma*, sonnes of *Gomer*, the learned doe verily thinke, because the Jewes even at this day call these, *Togormah*: like as the former, *Aschenas*. That the Thracians Iones, Riphæans and Moschi, &c. are the posteritie of Thirax, Javan, Riphaz and Moschus, no man denieth; for that the names sound not unlike: Semblably, that the Ethiopians were the seed of Chus, and the Egyptians of Misraim, because they carry the same names in their owne languages, no man there is but granteth. Why should not we then confesse, that our Britaines or Cumerians, are the very posteritie of *Gomer*, and of *Gomer* tooke their denomination: For, the name accordeth passing well: and granted it is, that they planted themselves in the utmost borders of Europe: Which thing also, the very name of *Gomer*, imposed first not upon some light occasion, but even by Divine providence and inspiration, doth signifie: For *Gomer* in the Hebrew tongue, betokeneth *bordering*. Neither let any man by way of reproch, object unto our *Cumeri* or *Cimbri*, what Sext. Pompeius hath written, That thieves in the French tongue are called Cimbri. For, albeit the Cimbri (among whom it is likely that our Cumeri were) living in that courageous and bold age of the world, wherein martiall proesse flourished, wandering (as Possidonius writeth), from these marches of Europe, warded by way of robbetrie, as farre as to the lake *Mæotis*; yet for all that, the word Cimbri no more signifieth a thiefe, than *Aegyptius*, one that is superstitious, or *Chaldeus*, an Astrologer, and *Sybarita*, a delicate dainty-mouthe. But because those nations were so given, therefore they that are such beare their names. And in this point agreeth right with mee, that singular ornament of learning Joseph Scaliger. Neither let any man marvell, wherefore I call not Berosus heere to take my part, out of whom writers in these daies furnish themselves with so great meanes. Certes, to speake my mind at once, the edge of that Berosus his authoritie, who commonly goeth under that name, is in my account so Blunt and dull, that I together with the best learned of our age, as namely Volaterran, Vives, Antonius Augustinus, Melchior Canus, and especially Gaspar Varrerius, thinke it to be nothing else, but a ridiculous figment of some craftie foister and jugling deceiver; which Varrerius in his *Censuræ of Berosus* Printed at Rome, is soone able to remove out of the Readers minds that error of theirs so deeply settled, concerning this writer.

This is mine opinion and conjecture rather of the Britains originall: For in things of so great Antiquitie, a man may more easily proceede by guesse, than upon grounded reason pronounce sentence either way. And verily this their beginning from *Gomer*

Gomeri, Cimeri, Cumeri, &c.

* i. Welch men.
* or Welch.

Lib. 8. cap. 3.

Phil. Melanct.

Ad Sextum Pompeium.
Berosus.
Censure upon Berosus.

and out of * Gaule seemeth more substantiall, ancient and true, than that from Brutus and Troy. Nay, that this foundeth rather to a truth, and that our Britaines are the very off-spring of the Gaulois, me thinkes I am able to prove, by the name, scite, religion, manners, and language: by all which the most ancient Gauls and Britaines have beene, as it were, in some mutuall societie linked together. And that I may this doe, let me, I pray you, with favourable good leave range abroad for a while at my pleasure.

As touching the name, because I have spoken thereof before, thus much onely will I repeate, that as the ancient Gauls are called Gomeræans, Gomeritæ, Gomeri, and by contraction Cimbri: so likewise our Britaines be named Cumeri and Kimbri. Now that the Gauls were called Gomeri, Josephus and Zonaras (as I said) doe joyntly prove. That they were named also Cimbri, may be gathered out of Cicero and Appian. Those Barbarians whom Marius defeated, Cicero plainly termeth Gauls. C. Marius, quoth he, *repressed the armies of the Gauls, entering in great numbers into Italy*. But all Historiographers witnesse, that they were Cimbrians: and the Habergeon of their King Beleus, digged up at * Aquæ Sextiæ, where Marius put them to flight, hath shewed the same: For engraven it was with strange letters thus, ΒΙΒΡΟΣ CΙΜΒΡΟΣ. Likewise, that they who under the conduct of Brennus spoiled * Delphi in Greece were Gauls, all writers with one voice and mind agree: and yet, that these were named Cimbri, Appian in his Illyricks doth testifie: The Celts or Gauls, quoth he, whom they call Cimbrians. And heere will I neither cite the testimonie of Lucane, who calleth the hacketer, that was hired and sent to kill Marius, a Cimbrian, whom Livie and others affirme to have beene a Gaule; nor allége Plutarch, who nameth the Cimbrians, Gallo-scythians, ne yet Reinerius Reineccius an excellent Historian, who constantly averreth out of Plutarch in his Sertorius, that the Gauls and Cimbrians used the same language. Neither will I urge and streine to my purpose that onely word of the Cimbrians which remaineth among authors; and is produced by Plinie out of Philemon, to wit, *Morimarusa*. i. *the dead Sea*, although it be mere British: For *Mor* with the * Britans signifieth *Sea*, and *Marw*, *dead*.

Seeing therefore, that these people agreed in the most ancient name, from whence passed the said name into this Isle, but even with the first Inhabitants, out of Gaule, lying so neere, and by a very small streight of sea severed from it: For the world was not altogether and at once inhabited; but grant wee must, that the countries neerer adjoining unto the mountaines of Armenia, (where the Arke rested after the flood, and from whence mankind was encreased) were peopled before others; and namely Asia the lesse, and Greece before Italy, Italy before Gaule, and Gaule before Britaine. The consideration whereof is most delectable, in that the highest Creator, had joynd regions, and withall dispersed the Islands so, as their is no such great distance betweene any of them, but that even those which lie farthest off, may from some one neere adjoining, be seen and plainly as it were discerned by the eie. And for no other purpose was this done; but that the nations when they should over-abound, might discover and describe some places to passe unto and disburthen themselves; so long, untill the universall world were to the glory of the Creator replenished with Inhabitants every where. Wee ought therefore to be perswaded, that the ancient Gomerians of Gaule (now France) either chased away by the pursuit of others, or cast out for lessening of the multitude, or else inflamed with a desire to travell and see farre countries, (a thing naturally inbred in men) crossed the sea and came over first into this Isle, which from the continent they were able to kenne. And it stands to verie good reason also, that every countie received the first Inhabitants from places neere bordering, rather than from such as were most disjoyned. For, who would not thinke, that Cyprus had the first Inhabitants out of Asia next unto it, * Crete and Sicilie out of Greece neereby, and Corsica out of Italy a neighbour countie: and, not to goe farre, Zeland out of Germanie the neereft unto it, as also Island out of Norway, rather than from the remote tracts of Tartarie and * Mauritania? In like manner, why should not wee thinke that our Britaine was inhabited at first by the

Gauls

* Now France.

* Now Frenchmen.

THE NAME

De Proenfa

* Aix.

Forcatulus out of the Annales of France.

1235.
* Now, Castrum or Salona.

Morimarusa.
* That is, Welch.

* The Scots

Erasmus Michael of Navigation.

* Or Candie

* Now Barbary.

Gauls their neighbours, rather than either by the Trojans or Italians, the Albi and Brutians, so farre distant and remooove: Neither doe writers fetch the origin and infancie (as it were) of the Britaines from any other place, than their neighbour country Gaul. The inner parts of Britaine, saith Cæsar, is inhabited of them; who themselves report out of their records to have bene borne in the Island: the Sea coasts those, who upon purpose to make warre had passed thither out of * Belgium in Gauls, all in manner carie the names of those cities and States out of which they came thither, after they had married, there remained. For there were in Britaine like as also in Gaul people named Belgæ, Atrebatii, Parisi, Cenomanni, &c. Semblably Tacitus, Gallia rally, quoth he, if a man consider all circumstances, it is most likely that the Gauls bene neighbours, peopled the land of Britaine next unto them. Yea and Beda, one that among all our writers favoureth the truth, At the first, saith hee, this Island had the Britaines onely to inhabit it (from whom also it tooke the name) who, by report, having sailed out from the tract of Armorica into Britaine, challenged unto themselves the same coasts thereof. Now, he calleth the tract of Armorica, the sea coasts of * Gaul, opposite unto our Island. This also seemeth to make for our purpose, that Cæsar reported How Divitiacus the Gauls even in his remembrance, held a good part both of Gaul and also of Britannie under his government; as also, (that which is of greatest moment) Plinie among the maritime people, just over against Britaine, neere unto the County of Bullen, reckoned the * Britaines: like as Dionysius after a more ancient writer than he, in these verses,

Τῆς οὖν τοῦτον μὲν ἰσθμὸν ἔχοντες ἡμεῖς
 ἄλλοις ἐν δὲ τῇ οὐρανῷ ἵστανται ἱερῶν
 Μελὸς ἢ ἡμεῖς ποιεῖμεν τὰς ἀρχαίας
 ὁμοῖα τὰς ἀρχαίας τῶν ἑλλήνων, ὅτι
 ἄνθρωποι τῶν ἀρχαίων ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρανῷ
 ἡμεῖς ποιεῖμεν τὰς ἀρχαίας ὁμοῖα τὰς ἀρχαίας

Word for word thus:

And verily, that utmost point and angle of this * part, Inhabite the Iberians, people of haughtie heart: Neere Gebraltar, at Hercules his pillars cal'd of old, Turning up the maine in length, what way the current cold Of Northern Ocean with strong tides doth interflow and swell, Where Britaines, and those faire white folke, the martiall Germans dwell.

For these words [where Britaines] seeme to have respect unto those other, [Turning upon the maine in length] and Eustathius, who did set forth his Commentaries upon this author, understandeth it of the Britons in Gauls, in these words, τὰς δὲ Βριτανίας οὐρανῶν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρανῷ ἡμεῖς ποιεῖμεν τὰς ἀρχαίας ὁμοῖα τὰς ἀρχαίας, that is, And of these Britons, the Isles of Britaine over against them tooke their denomination. Howbeit, Avienus and Stephen in his booke of Cities, are of a contrarie mind. Moreover the same Religion was of both people observed; Among the Britaines, saith Tacitus, there is to bee scene in their ceremonies and superstitious persuasions an apparant conformitie with the Gauls. The Gauls, quoth Solinus, after a detestable manner of sacred rites, not to the honor but rather to the injurie of religion, offered mans flesh in their sacrifices. That the Britaines did the very same, Dio Cassius beside others reporteth in his Nero. Both Nations also had their Druidæ, as Cæsar and Tacitus very sufficient writers doe witnesse. Concerning which Druidæ, let not the Reader thinke much to run over this whole passage out of Cæsar. The Druidæ are present at all Divine service. The overseers they be of publike and private sacrifices, the interpreters also of their religious rites and ceremonies. To these a great number of younge men doe flocke for to bee taught, and those doe they highly esteeme and honour. For lightly they decide and determine all controversies, as well publike as private: And in case any hainous fact bee committed, if there bee a murther or man-slaughter, if variance arise about inheritance, if strife about the bounds of lands, they in their discretion judge of the matter; they appoint rewards, they award penalties, and punishments, If any either private person, or body politike stand not to their Decree, they put them by all sacrifices, as excommunicate. And this among them

* Where now are Holland, Zeland, Flanders, Brabant, Gelderland & Cleve.

* France.

Britaines in Gauls.
 * Britones, yet in some Copies of Plinie, wee reade Britones.

* Of Europe.

Religion.

Druidæ.

em is the most grievous punishment. They that be thus interdicted, are reckoned as godlesse and most wicked persons: All men decline from them, they avoid both meeting and talking with them for feare of taking harme by contagion from them. Neither have they the benefit of Law though they request it, nor be capable of any office, though they sue for it. Moreover, all these Druides there is one President, who hath the greatest authoritie among them. When he is dead, looke who excelleth the rest in worth and dignitie, he succedeth him: But if there be many of equall estimation, chosen there is one by the voices of the Druides. Sometimes so they fall together by the eares, and take armes about this place of precedencie. These Druides at one certaine time of the yeare hold a solemne Session within a consecrated place, in the marches of the * Carnutes, a countrey held to be the middle of all France. Hither resort unto the terme from all parts, as many as have any controversies or suits in law: and to their judgements and decrees they yield obedience. Their learning and profession is thought to have bene first found and devised in Britaine, and so from thence translated into France: and now also in these daies they that desire more exact knowledge thereof, goe thither for the most part, to be instructed therein. The Druides are wont to bee freed from warfare: neither with the rest pay they tribute. Immunitie they have in exemption, as from war-service, so from all other charges whatsoever. Thus, many there bee who being excited with so great rewards, and of their owne accord meete together at Schoole for to learne, and are thither brought by their kinsfolke, friends and parents. There by report, they learne by rote a great number of verses. And so they continue still schollars for certaine yeares together; neither doe they thinke it lawfull to commit what they learne to writing; whereas otherwise in every thing almost, in publike also and private dealings, they use Greeke letters. This order they have taken, I suppose, for two reasons: because they would not have their doctrine divulged, nor their scholars by trusting to their written bookes, to neglect their owne memorie: a thing inconvenient lightly to most schollars; who presuming upon the helpe of writings, use lesse diligence in learning without booke, and as little in exercising their memorie. This one point principally they are desirous to perswade their scholars, That our soules are immortall, and after death passe out of one man into another; and by this meanes they suppose men, setting behind them all feare of death, are most of all stirred up unto vertue. Furthermore, concerning the starres and their motion, touching the greatnesse of heaven and earth, of the Nature of things, of the power and might of the immortall Gods, much dispute they make, and as many precepts they give to youth. Whereupon Lucan in this wise speaketh unto them:

Et vos barbaricos ritus, morèmq; sinistram
 Sacrorum, Druidæ, positis repetistis ab armis.
 Solis nosse Deos & Cali sydera vobis
 Aut solis nescire datum. Nemora alta remotis
 Incolitis lucis. Vobis autoribus, umbras
 Non tacitas Erebi sedes, Divisq; profundi
 Pallida regna petunt, regit idem spiritus artus
 Orbe alio: longe, cavitis si cognita, vita
 Mors media est. Certè, populi quos despiciit Arctos,
 Felices errore suo, quos, ille timorum
 Maximus, haud urget lathi metus: inde ruendi
 Inferrum mens prona viris, animaq; capaces
 Mortis: & ignavum est reditura parcere vite.

Yee Priests also hight Druidæ, your sacrifices leav'd
 And barbarous rites, which were forlet in wars surceasse, renew'd.
 Yee onely know, or yee alone know not the gods above
 And heavenly wights. Among high trees in groves remote, yee love
 To dwell, and teach that soules of men their bodies parted fro,
 Passe not to silent Erebus where Pluto reign's below,
 Among the pale and grisly ghosts: but spirit still the same
 Rul's limbs and joynts in other world: And death (if that yee frame

* About Chartres.

The Doctrine of the Druidæ found in Britaine.

Your

Your precepts grounded sure on truth and knowledge) is no more,
Than middle point twixt future life and that which went before.
Certes those Northerne people are right happie; whom we see
Perfwaded of such vaine conceits, wherein they nuzzled be.
No feare of death which men most dread, can once their stomacks dant,
This maketh them so resolute, so bold and valiant:
Vpon the pike and sword they runne, they passe not to be slaine;
T'is cowardise to spare that life, which will returne againe.

An Oke also
in the British
or Welch
tongue is
called *Druw*.

By what name soever these were knowne to their Celts or Britaines, it may seeme
this name of Druides came from a Greeke primitive head, to wit, *Druides*, that is, an Oke,
for that they held nothing more sacred than the Mistletoe of the Oke; whereof
Ovid writeth thus:

Adviscum Druidæ, Druidæ, cantare solebant.

To Mistletoe goe Druidæ, goe Druidæ, they did sing.

Lib. 16. cap. 4.

as who commonly dwelt within Oke-groves, and celebrated no sacrifice and did
service without the branches and leaves thereof. But this, will Plinie more amply
clare in these words of his: *The Druidæ* (for so they call their Diviners, *Wiser men*
estate of Clergie) esteeme nothing in the world more sacred then *Mistletoe*, and the
whereupon it groweth, so it bee an Oke. Now this you must take by the way; *These Priests*
or Clergie men chuse of purpose such groves for their divine service, as stood onely
Okes: Nay they solemnize no sacrifice, nor celebrate any sacred ceremonies without
ches and leaves thereof: so as they may seeme well enough to bee thereupon named *Druides*
in Greeke. And in very deed, whatsoever they find growing to that tree, beside the
fruit, they esteeme it as a gift sent from heaven, and a sure signe, that the God himselfe
whom they serve, hath chosen that peculiar tree. And no marvell; for *Mistletoe* is past
geason, and hard to be found upon the Oke: But when they meet with it, they gather it up
devoutly, and with many ceremonies. First, they principally observe that the *Mistletoe*
just six daies old: for upon that day begin they their new years, yea and the
severall ages, which have their revolutions every thirtie yeares, because (hee is thought)
then to bee of great power and force sufficient, and is not come to her halfe light or end
her first quarter. It they call in their Language, *All-heale*, [for they have an opinion
that it healeth all maladies whatsoever.] Now when they are about to gather it, after it
have duly prepared their sacrifices and festiwall cheere under the said tree, they bring thither
two young bullocks milke-white, whose hornes are then and not before bound
This done, the Priest arraid in a surplise or white vesture, climeth the tree, and with a golden
bill cutteth off [the *Mistletoe*] and they beneath receive the same in a white souldiers cassike.
Then fall they to kill the beasts aforesaid for sacrifice, mumbling many oraisons and praying
That it would please God to blesse this gift of his, to their good unto whom hee had vouchsafed
to give it. Now this conceite they have of *Mistletoe* thus gathered, that what living
creature soever, otherwise barren, drinketh thereof, it will presently thereupon become fruitful;
also that it is a soveraigne counterpoison and remedie against all venom. So superstitious
are people oftentimes in such frivolous and foolish toies as these. Heereto accordeth
well that Diodorus Siculus in the same sense hath termed these Priests of the Gauls
Druides, which word, (as they all know), who have skill in the Greeke tongue, betokeneth
Okes. And Maximus Tyrius writeth thus of the Celts, i. the Gauls; That they wor-
ship *Jupiter*, whose symbole or signe, is the highest Oke. Furthermore, it may seeme to
proceede from these Druides, that our Saxons (as we read in *Alfricus*) called a *Druid*
winer or wise man in their Language, *Eufy*. Of these if you bee willing to learne more, I
referre you to Mela, *Lactantius*, *Eusebius De Preparatione Evangelica*, and the *Comedie*
Aulularia of *Pseudo-Plautus*.

Saronide.

Dry.

Bardi.

The Frenchmen or Gauls, had likewise among their religious persons, the Bardi,
who to the tune of the Harpe sung Dirges in verse, containing the famous exploits of
brave and noble men. From whence it is, that the same Lucan before cited speaketh
thus unto them.

Vos quoq, qui fortes animas, belloq, percipitis,

Laudibus

*Laudibus in longum, vates, dimittitis avum,
Plurima securi fuditis carmina, Bardi.*

And yee the Poets, Bardi call'd, who knights redoubted prife
Praise-worthy most, that died in the field, and them doe eternise;
Pour'd fourth now many a verse in song, and that in carelesse wife.

And even those also doe our * Britains still at this day terme by the very same name: * Welchmen;
For them they call *Bard*, who besides the exercise of that function, doe especially ad-
dress themselves to the skill of Heraldry, and the drawing of Pedigrees. But whether
the Britaines in like manner as the Gauls, believed, That they were descended from
Pluto, we have no record to lead us. Whereas the Gauls did for that * cause; deter- * That is, their
mine and end all their spaces of times, by reckoning nights and not daies, so as the descent from
day might in order follow the night, the very same have our Britains observed. For,
that which the Latines call *Septimana*, and two *Septimane*, they terme *with-nor*, that
is, eight nights, and *Pimthec-nor*, that is, fifteene nights.

* That is, their
descent from
Pluto.

Likewise both peoples seeme to have framed unto themselves, one and the same
forme of Common weale and government. For, ruled they were not by one mans
scepter: but right as Gaul, so Britaine also had many Kings. And even as the Gauls
in cases of greater waight and danger called an assembly of the whole nation and e-
lected one chiefe governour: so did the Britaines also, as it may bee gathered out of
these words of Cæsar, *The severaignty of command, and managing the warre, was by a
common Counsell granted to * Cassivelaunus.*

Their Repub-
lique or com-
mon wealth,

Neither were these two Nations unlike in manners, customes and ordinances. For
to let this passe, that both of them were most warlike, and exceedingly given to
laughter: certaine it is, that in joyning of battels, and adventuring of dangers, they
were one as forward as the other: as may appeare by Strabo, Tacitus, Dio, Herodi-
an and others. For manners and conditions, faith Strabo, the Britains are in part like to
the Gauls: and anon he addeth, *In fight for the most part they be fierce and cruell like unto
certaine Gauls.* And Tacitus according with him, *The Britans, faith he, that were not
vanquished by the Romans, remaine such as the ancient Gauls were.* And in another
place, *Next neighbours to the Gauls and like unto them be the Britaines.*

* Cassivelaunus;
Their Man-
ners,

That the Britaines fought, armed after the Gaulish fashion, Mela doth report. The
Britaines in their wars use a number of Chariots as Strabo writeth, like as some of the
Gauls.

The manner was of the one people and the other, in time of warre to range their
battels apart by severall nations, that the distinct valour of them both might more
evidently appeare. That the Gauls practised this, Cæsar witnesseth in these words:
The Gauls being divided by their sundry cities and states kept the fowles and passages.
Which also Tacitus affirmeth of the Britaines in the battell of Catatacus, *The nation
stood by troupes and companies before the fortifications.*

The Gauls, faith Strabo, were of a docible wit, and apt to learne: as also the Britaines,
whose wits Agricola in Tacitus preferred before the students of Gaul, as being now curious
to attaine the eloquence of the Roman language, whereas they lately rejected the language.

The Gauls, Strabo reporteth to have been of an ingenuous nature and single hear-
ted: which Tacitus seemeth to note and observe in the Britans, writing that *they are
ready and willing to endure levies of men and money, and all other burdens imposed by the
Empire, if wrongfull insulences herein be forborne.*

Cæsar reporteth, that the Gauls upon an unconstant and variable mind that they
carried, loved evermore change and alteration in the government: The Britains like-
wise, faith Tacitus, were variable, given to factions and siding. By means of this in-
constancie of the Gauls, which Cæsar more mildly calleth an Infirmitie, so great cre-
dulitie crept into their minds, that the credulity of the Gauls grew to be a proverbe,
and one Poet hath written thus thereof:

*Et tumidus Gallæ credulitate fruar:
And full of this conceit will I
Make use of Gauls Credulitie.*

B 2

Neither

* Old wives
tales.

Neither have our Britans as yet therein degenerated from them, who most readily give care even to * Mileſian fables, and either through ſuperſtitious hope or like ſome doe preſently believe moſt fooliſh prophecies.

We read in Strabo, that the Gauls grieved exceedingly and tooke to heart the buſe which they ſaw done unto their kinred. That there is the ſame Sympathie and fellow feeling in our Britans above all other nations, it is better knowne than can be uttered, and riſe in every mans mouth.

Ambaſſi.

The Gauls, as Cæſar recordeth, according as every one excelled others in noble birth and wealthy eſtate, ſo kept they about them a greater traine of ſervants and dependants whom they called *Ambaſſi*: which was the onely grace, countenance, and port they carried. Neither know our Britiſh Noblemen or gentry of Wales at this day, any other ſhew of reputation: From whom, as it is thought, the Engliſh have learned to leade after them ſo great a retinue of followers and ſerving men: in which thing they have not long ſince out-gone all other in Europe.

That the Britiſh buildings were in every reſpect ſutable with thoſe in Gaul, and compaſſed round about with woods, Cæſar and Strabo doe ſhew unto us.

The Gauls, as witneſſeth Strabo, ware chaines of gold, about their necks: and Bunduica the Britiſh Lady, ſaith Xiphilius, had likewiſe a golden chaine, and was clad in a garment of ſundry colours. And where at this day is that ornament more in uſe than in this Iſle and among our Britans?

That Britans and Gauls both, adorned their middle finger with a ring Pliny doth report.

The ſame Strabo maketh mention of the Gauls, that they nourished the buſh of their heads; and Cæſar teſtifieth that the Britans went with long haire.

It appeareth in many authors, that the Gauls uſed certaine garments which in their mother tongue they termed *Brachæ*; that theſe were alſo common to our Britains, this verſe of Martiall doth prove;

Quam veteres Brachæ Britoniæ pauperis:

Than *Brachæ* old of Briton poore.

I paſſe over that which Silius Italicus writeth of the Gauls:

Quinetiam ingenio fluxi, ſed prima feroces,

Vaniloquum Celtae genus, ac mutabile mentis.

The Gauls though fierce at firſt, ſoone yield and hold not out, by kind; A nation given to vanitie of words and change of mind.

Beauſe theſe qualities are common to moſt nations, I might adde hereto other particulars, wherein theſe people have jumped juſt together: but I feare me leſt malicious evill-willers would wreſt them to the detraction and ſlander of the ſaid nations. Beſides, that ſaying pleaſeth me exceeding well, *All in a meane and within meaſure*: and the argument perhaps which is drawne from common manners, may ſeeme not of the greateſt validitie.

Language.

Now are we come to the language, in which lieth the maine ſtrength of this diſputation and the ſureſt prooffe of peoples originall. For no man, I hope, will deny, that they which joyne in communie of language, concurred alſo in one and the ſame originall. And if all the hiſtories that ever were had miſcarried and periſhed; if no writer had recorded, that we Engliſhmen are deſcended from Germans, the true and naturall Scots from the Irith, the Britons of Armorica in France from our Britans; the ſocietie of their tongues would eaſily confirme the ſame: yea and much more eaſily, than the authoritie of moſt ſufficient Hiſtoriographers. If therefore I ſhall prove, that the ancient Gauls and our Britans uſed one and the ſelfe ſame language, then the very truth will of force drive us to confeſſe, that they had alſo the ſame beginning. Neither paſſe I what Cæſar hath written, that the Gauls were of divers languages: ſince that Strabo ſaith, They differed only in dialect. They did not all, quoth hee, *every where uſe the ſame tongue, but ſomewhat, little though it were, it varied*. But that the language of the old Gauls was all one with the Britiſh (unleſſe haply in variety of dialect), Cæſar himſelfe doth ſhew, writing that the maner was of the French

or

Gauls who deſired further knowledge in the diſcipline and learning of the Druides, to goe over into Britaine unto our *Druidæ*. Now ſeeing that they had no uſe of bookes, it ſtands to good reaſon, that in teaching they ſpake the ſame tongue that the Gauls did. Which Cornelius Tacitus more plainly affirmeth; the *Britiſh ſpeech*, ſaith he, and the *French or Gauliſh differ not much*. Whence it is that Beatus Rhennanus, Deſſer, Horſtman, Peter Daniel, Picardus, and all others that have ſubſcribed and done honour to venerable antiquitie, are all become of this opinion: except ſome few who will have the Gauls to have ſpoken the German language. But leaſt my muſherin ſhould caſt duſt in our eyes, let us our of authors gather and conſider many words as we can out of the old Gauls, as it were ſhip-planes caught up from a ſhipwrecke (ſeeing that the ſaid tongue is now even drowned under the waves of oblivion). For very many words we ſhall ſee not hardly nor violently framed, but paſſing eaſily, and in manner without any wreſting, to agree with our Britiſh, both in ſound and ſenſe.

Luſtine in this verſe of his, writing of a fountaine at Burdeaux,

Divona Seltarum lingua ſons addite Divis:

Thou fountaine added to the Gods in *Gauliſh Divona* hight.

witneſſeth, that *Divona* in the French language ſigniſieth, *Gods fountaine*. Now doe our Britaines call God, *Dyn*, and a Fountaine, *Vonan*: of which is compounded *Divonan*, and by the Latine Analogie, and for the verſe ſake, *Divona*.

That Jupiter, whom the Greekes, of *Thunder* call *Jovis*, and the Latines *Jovans*, *Jovis* is, *Thunderer* was worſhipped of the Gauls under the name of *Taranis*; there bee writers, not a few that have reported. But *Taran* with the Britaines betokeneth *Thunder*. In which ſignification the Germans ſeeme to have named Jupiter, *Thor*: For Jupiters day or Thursday, they call *Thunderday*, which is as much, as *The Thunderers day*.

The Gauls had another God, by Lucane named *Hefus*, and by Lactantius *Hefus*, whom alſo the Author of *Querels* termed *Annubis laurus*; that is, *Barking Annubis*; for that, painted he was in the forme of a Dog: and *Huid* with our Welch Britaines betokeneth a Dog.

Moſt certaine it is that the Gauls worſhipped *Mercurius* under the name of *Tesates*, as the Inventors of Arts, and guide of their journeyes: And *Dio Taiſh* in the Britiſh or Welch tongue, is as much as the *God of Travelling*: And that Plato in his *Phædrus* and *Philebus* calleth *Mercurius Theus*, I am not ignorant. Howbeit I know there be ſome, who will have *Tesates* to be the ſame that the Germans called *Tuſco* in *Tacitus*, and is all one with *Mars*; as alſo that we the off-ſpring of Germans name thereupon *Mart day*, *Tuiſday*. Concerning theſe three Gods of the Gauls, take with you, if you pleaſe, theſe three verſes of Lucane,

Et quibus immis placatur ſanguine divo

Tesates, horrendi, ſeræ uharibus Heſus,

Et Taranis Scythicæ non miſior aræ Diana.

And they that uſe with curſed bloud their Idol-gods to pleaſe,

Tesates fell, and *Hefus* grim, whom thought elſe may appeale

But ſacrifice of humane fleſh: and *Taranis* likewiſe,

Worſhip'd as curſt *Diana* is, juſt after *Scythicke* guiſe.

That the ſoule Spirits named *Inebis*, were of the Gauls termed *Duffi*, becauſe they praſiſe that ſikky angleanneſſe of theirs continually. Saint Auguſtine and Iſidorus both doe teſtifie: But that which is continually and daily, the Britans ſtill doe expreſſe by the word *Durh*.

Pomponius Mela writeth, That the religious women attending upon a certaine God, whom the Gauls worſhipped, counted holy vorarics of perpetuall virginitie, were called of the Gauls, *Senn*, or *Lena* rather I would read if I durſt. For, ſuch conſecrated Virgins, whom now folke name *Nuns*, the Britans, as it is an old Gloſſarie, termed *Leanes*: whence a moſt ancient *Nunnery*, *Lean-minifter*, now called *Leamſter*, drew the name.

- Gesta.** The Gauls, saith Polybius, in their owne tongue called their mercenarie soldiers *Gestae*: and at this day the Welsh Britains doe call their hired servants *Gestae*.
- Gest.** Valiant men were, as Servius saith, named of the Gauls *Gestae*: and *Gestae* among the Britains importeth the same that in Latin, *Vir fortis & strenuus*, that is, valorous and hardie man.
- Gessum.** Hitherto may bee referred *Gessum*, which was a weapon proper to the Gauls, *Pilum* to the Romans, and *Framica* to the Germans. But of this, anon.
- Caterva.** As Phalanx was properly the Macedonians Legion, so was *Caterva* peculiar to the Gauls, as we may see in Vegetius. Neither is this word grown out of use with the Britains, who use to call a troupe *Caturfa*, and war *Kad*, and the strength of war which is in a Legion *Kaderne*, yea and *Carcna*, as is found in some Copies of Vegetius.
- Caesia.** To this *Kad*, may well be reduced *Caesia*, which was a kind of warlike weapon among the Gauls, as Isidorus reporteth.
- Gessa.** *Gessa*, a Gaulish weapon, Servius doth interpret to be a mans speare, whereas the British *Cethilou* seemeth to come neere, which Ninnius expoundeth to be as much as Stakes burnt at the end, and a warlike seede or generation.
- Trimarcia.** The Gauls whom Brennus marched with into Greece, named in their owne language that order of Horse fight which consisteth of three horses [in a ranke] as Paulanias, Trimarcia: For a horse they called *Marca*, which in that very signification is meere and British. For *Tri* significeth three, and *March* an horse.
- Thireas.** Paulanias in the same booke recordeth, that the Gauls termed their owne country shields *Thireas*: which even to this day the Britains name *Tarian*.
- Cesar.** Caesar hath in his Journals or *Day-booke* written, as Servius saith, That he in Gaul being caught up of the enemy, and armed as he was carried upon his horse backe, one of his enemies that knew him chanced to meete him, and insulting over him said, *Caesar*: which in the Gauls tongue is as much as *Let goe Caesar*: now, among the Britains Geduch betokeneth as much.
- Rheda.** *Rheda*, a Gaulish word, is of the same signification, saith Quintilian, that *Caruta*, that is, a chariot, or waggon, among the Latins. This word the British tongue doth not now acknowledge: howbeit, that it hath been in use among the Britains, *Rhediad* is a course, *Rheder* to run, and *Rhedesa* a race, doe plainly shew: which words that they spring from the same stocke, no man need to make doubt. And what absurditie wee find from hence to derive *Eporadia*, a City of the Salassians, which Pliny writeth, took that name of *Horse-breakers*.
- Eporadia.** Another kind of waggon a charriot there was, used of both these people, which by one name they called *Covinus*, and the driver *Covinarius*. And albeit this word together with that kind of waggon it selfe be quite growne out of use, yet the primitive thereof, as I may so say, remaineth still among the Britains: in whose language the word *Covain* significeth to carry or ride in a waggon.
- Essendum.** Essendum likewise was a Gaulish waggon or charriot rather, meet for the warres: which together with Caesar, Propertius attributes to the Britains in this verse,
- Essedacala in siste Britannia jugis.*
- Circius.** Stay there your British chariots with yokes so faire engravn.
- Circius* is a wind by name passing well knowne, unto which Augustus Caesar both vowed and also built a temple in *Gallia*. That the word is Gaulish, Phavorinus a Gaulois borne declareth in Agellius. Our Gauls, saith he, call the wind blowing out of their land, and which they find to be most fell and boisterous, by the name of *Circius*, of the whirling and whistling, I suppose, that it makes. Of all winds this is known to be most blustering and violent: now, *Cyrch*, with the Britains betokeneth force and violence, as may be scene in their Letany.
- Penninus.** The Pennine Alpes, which Caesar calleth the highest Alpes, had this name imposed upon them, as Livie writeth, not of Annibal Pœtus, that is the Carthaginian, but of that Hill which with the highest top among the Alpes the Mountainers of Gaul consecrated and named *Penninus*. But *Pen* with the Britains even in these daies significeth the tops of hills: whence the highest mountaines that we have, to wit, *Penninus*.

- Apenninus*, *Pendle*, *Pen*, *Pentob-cloud*, and *Pennigent* get their names. Neither have the high mountaines Apennini in Italy their name from ought els.
- The cities and States of Gaul coasting upon the Ocean, were called, as Caesar writeth, after the custome of the Gauls.
- Armerica*: with whom the Britains accord in the same name for the same thing. For, with them *Ar-more*, is as much as *by the sea*, or *upon the sea*: And in the very same sense Strabo nameth them in Greek *Armeria*.
- In the reigne of Dioclesian the Emperor, the rural people in Gaul made a commotion. And to the crue of that faction of theirs they gave the name *Baucade*. And among the Britains, Swineheards and country gnosfs, be called *Beichiad*.
- The inborne thieves of the land, the Gauls, saith Sidonius, named *Varge*: And I have found in the Glossarie of the Cathedrall Church of *Lbandaff*, that thieves in the British tongue were in old time knowne by the name of *Veriad*.
- The Allobroges, saith that ancient and excellent Scholiast upon Juvenal, were so named, because *Broge* in French significeth a land or Territorie, and *Alla*, another: As one would say, Translated out of another place. But *Bro* in British, is a region or country, and *Allan*, without, or external: so that the Erymologie in both tongues, holdeth very well.
- There is an herbe like to Plantain called in Gaul *Glastrum*, saith Plinie, wherewith the Britans died and coloured themselves, as writers testifie. This is the herbe which we terme *Wood*, and it giveth a blew colour: which colour at this day, the Britans terme *Glasfe*. This was the Greeks *Isatis*, by the testimony of Plinie, and the Diars, *vitrum*, by the authority of *Oribasius*. Whereby, Pomponius Mela may easily be corrected, if instead of *Ultro*, you put *Vitro*: where he saith thus, *Britanni incertum ob decorem, an ob quid aliud, ultro corpora infecti*, that is, whether the Britans died their bodies with wood for a beautifull shew, or in some other respect, it is uncertaine.
- The Gallathians who spake the same language, as S. Hierome witnesseth, that the ancient Gauls did, had a little shrub called *Coccus*; of which that deep red skarlet colour was made: and this very colour the Britans usually name *Coco*.
- That *Brache* were garments common to French and Britains we have shewed before. Diodorus Siculus calleth such, *unshorne, or undressed and of sundry colours*. And even now adaies the Britans terme foule and ragged clothes, *Bratt*.
- If *Laina* was an old Gaulish word, as Strabo seemeth to tell us, when he writeth thus, *The Gauls weave them cassocks of thicken wooll* which they call *Lainas*; the Britans are not gone far from them, who in their tongue name wooll *Glawn*.
- Bardus* in the Gauls tongue significeth a *Singer*, Festus Pompeius is mine author: and this is a meere British word.
- Bardocucullus*, as we are taught out of *Martial* and others, was the cloake that the Gaulish *Bardi* woore. And like as *Bard*, so the other part also of the foresaid word, remaineth whole among the Britans, who call such a cloake, *Cucull*.
- Gaul, saith Plinie, yeelded a kinde of Corne of their owne, which they called *Brance*, and we *Sandalum*, a graine of the finest and nearest sort. Among the Britans likewise, meale of the whitest graine is named *Guineth Urane*.
- The herbe which the Greekes, of five leaves doe call *Pentaphyllon*, was named of the Gauls *Pempedula*, as sheweth *Apuleius*. Now, *Pymp* in British, is five, and *Pempedula*, a leafe.
- As the Gauls by *Pymp* meant the number of five, so by *Petor*, foure, as wee learne out of *Festus*: who sheweth, that *Petorium* was a chariot or wagon of the Gauls, so called of foure wheeles: and this word *Pedwar* in the British tongue significeth foure.
- Among wooden instruments, *Canterium*, in English a Leaver, was among the Gauls called *Guvia*, as *Isidorus* writeth: and novv the same in the British language, is named *Gwif*.
- Beulla*, which we call *Byrch*, Plinie nameth a Gaulish tree. Hee would if he lived novv call it the British tree. For it groweth most plentifully in Britaine, and in the British tongue is named *Bedw*.

Dorcus.

Rath.

Scorvis.

Petonica.

Marga.

Glysmarga.

Tripetia.

Candetum.

Becca.

Galba.

Bulga.

Saldury.

* Vowing to

die and live

one with ano-

ther.

Plamarat.

Taxca.

Sichum.

Cervifia.

Ale, a drinke.

The Termination
of Ends of place
Names.

Gelig.

Lipsum, de Pro-
mutatione.
pag. 96.

* Garumna.

* Arar;

Wine delayed with water, as we read in *Athenis*, the Gauls called *Dorcus*, and among the Britans, *Dwr*, betokeneth water.

And even so, (not to profecure all that may be said :) in *Dioscorides*, the *Perne*, called in Latin *Filix*, and of the old Gauls, *Rath*, is in the British tongue termed *Redin*. The Elder tree, in Latine *Sambucus*, in the old Gaulish *Scorvis*, is in British *lfeaw*. The herbe in Italy, *Serapula*, in old Gaulish, *Petonica*, the Britans and we call *Betany*. That which in *Plinie* the Latines name *Terra adeps*, that is, the fat of the ground, the Gauls *Marga*, is of the Britans called *Marle*. The white or bright marble named of the Latines *Candida Marga*, of the Gauls *Glysmarga*, might of the Britans be termed *Glysmarl*: For *Gluy*, with them is as much as *Bright* or *Shining*. The three-footed stooke, which the Latines name *Sellula Tripes*: the Gauls, as we read in *Sulpinius Severus*, *Tripetia*, is among the Britans termed *Tribet*. That which the Latines mean by *Centum pedes*, that is, a hundred foot, the Gauls in *Columnella* understand by *Candetum*, and the Britans by *Cantrved*. A Birds bill, in Latine *Arvis rostrum*, the Gauls, as we read in *Suetonius*, called *Becca*, and the Britans name *Pic*.

Neither should I bee as fancy-full as *Coropine*, if I reduced *Suetonius* his *Galba*, which signifieth exceeding fat, to the British word *Galvus*, that betokeneth *passing high*, or *Bulga* in *Valerius Flaccus* for a leather *Budget*, unto the British *Burfiel*: or the *Soldan* in *Caesar*, put for men ** Devoted*, unto the Britans *Sandwys*: or *Plinie* his *Plamarat*, for a plough, unto *Arat*, which in the British tongue signifieth a plough: or *Isidorus* his *Taxca* for *Lard*, unto the Britans *Tew*, or *Diodorus Siculus* his drinke called *Zithum*, unto their *Sider*, or *Cervisia*, unto *Keirch*, that is, *Otes*, whereof the Britans in many places make that drinke (or rather by *Cwrms*) which we in English terme *Ale*.

That all these were the ancient words of the ancient Gauls, appeareth evidently out of those Authors; and you see how fitly they for the most part agree and accord as it were in consent with our British words, in sound and sense both.

Hereunto thus much moreover may be added, that seeing the ancient names of places end with both people in the same termination, to wit, in *Dunum*, *Briva*, *Rinn*, *Dunum*, *Magus*, &c. it may be gathered that these were not divers nations. And even from hence verily a sound reason may be drawn, that we Englishmen are sprung from the Germanes, for that the later and more moderne names of our townes end in *Bury*, *Berry*, *Ham*, *Steed*, *Ford*, *Thorp*, and *Wick*, which carrie a just and equall correspondence unto the terminations of the Dutch townes; *Burg*, *Berg*, *Heim*, *Stadt*, *Furd*, *Dorp*, and *Wic*.

Again, the reason of certaine old Gaulish words may bee so fitly given out of our British tongue, the property and nature of the thing agreeing also therunto, that of necessity we must confesse, either they were names imposed by the Britans, or els the Britans spake French. But let it suffice to alledge one or two for all.

The third part of Gaul, saith *Caesar*, they inhabite, *who in their owne language be named Celte*, and in ours *Galli*, but of the Greeks *Callatæ*. But whence they were called *Celte* and *Callatæ* the best learned of all the French, could never as yet tell: But let them consider and see, whether it come not of the British word *Emall*, which even yet among the Britans betokeneth the *haire* or *bush* of the head, as also *Gualtic*, that signifieth *Comata*, that is, *with long haire*: whereof it may seeme that *Celtica*, *Callatæ*, and *Galli*, are termes mollified by variety of pronunciation. Now that the *Celte* were called *Comati*, of their long haire which studiously they cherished, all learned men doe joyfully grant: and as for the letters, C. and K. Q. and G. how should one (considering their force and native sound) put a difference betweene them?

That the famous and noble river ** Carnum* in France carrieth a swelling stream, and as if the waves were angry and chafed, whereupon Poets name it with these attributes, *Validum*, *Aequoreum*, and *Rapidum Garumna*, that is, the strong, scalelike, and swift *Garumna*, it is so well knowne as nothing more: And all that doth *Garn* in the British tongue import.

The river ** Arar* passeth marvellous gently, so as by the celerity it can be discerned which way the streame goeth, whereupon the Poets give these Epithets unto it.

Arar.

Arar is *tardior*, and *Lentus Arar*, that is, *Slow* and *Still Arar*. But *Ars* with the Britans betokeneth *Still* and *Slow*.

Rhodanus, into which *Arar* doth fall, runneth downe amaine with an exceeding swift, and violent current: and therefore it is termed, *Incitus*, *Celer*, and *Præceps*, that is, *swift*, *quicke*, *running headlong*: Which name, *Rhodanus*, disagreeeth not much from the British *Rhedec*, that signifieth a speedynesse in running.

That the Hills ** Gebenna* runne out farre into Gaul, in manner of a long continued ridge, *Strabo* and others doe make mention. And that *Keven* among our Britaines poundeth as much as the backe or ridge of an Hill, appeareth by the British *Dictio*. *ie*: and I my selfe have seene a long chaine of hills in *Yorke-shire*, which the Inhabitants there doe call the *Kivin*.

Considering that stones were in old time erected in Gaul by the high waies side, at the distance just of every ** thousand* and five hundred paces: see it also that the Gaul-like *Leuca*, or *League*, containeth, as *Jornandes* writeth, just so many paces; and *Leuch* in the British tongue betokeneth a Stone, I would have the learned Frenchmen say, whether the said *Leuca* tooke not that name thereof. About the Sea side of that part of France, which was called *Narbonensis*, where (as the fabulous report goeth) *Hercules* and *Albion* fought together, there lie so many stones every where all abroad, that a man would verily thinke it had rained stones there: whereupon writers name it, the *Stonie Strond*, and *stonie field*: The French in these daies call it *Le Craux*. And yet they know not the reason of this name. But Stones in the British tongue, be termed *Craig*.

They that heretofore inhabited the maritime tract of Gaul, which is next unto us, were in their owne language called *Morini*: and seeing that the Sea is named *Mor* in British, it seemeth that thereupon they were so termed. For the Britans call such as dwell upon the Sea coast *Morinwy*: like as *Aremorica* betokeneth long since in Gaulish, and now in British, *By the Sea side*.

Thus *Arelate* a most famous citie of Gaul, seated in a moist and waerie soile, may seeme to have taken that name of the very cite thereof: For *Ar* in British signifieth *Vpon*, and *Laith*, *Moisture*.

Vxellodunum, saith *Caesar*, was a towne having on every side a steepe access unto it, and situate upon an high Hill. But *Vchell* among the Britaines is as much as *steepe* or *loftie*, and *Dunum* with the ancient Gauls, betokeneth a high place or hill: as *Plutarch* hath taught us out of *Clitophon*, in his booke of *Rivers*: and the same was also in use among the old Britaines.

The Promontorie ** Citharistes*, *Plinie* placeth in Gaul neere unto *Marfiles*, where now is seene the towne *Tolon*: but if you aske our Welsh Britains, what is *Cythara*, in their language, they will tell you by and by *Telen*.

Again, that no doubt may herein bee left behind, seeing it is evident that the *late* French tongue is come from the Latine and Germane, yet so as therein nevertheless there remaine very many words still of the old Language: I have heard of those that be skilfull in both tongues, that very many of those French words, which cannot be reduced, either to the Latine or Germane Originall (and therefore may be thought of the old Gallique) doe come as neere unto the British as is possible. As for example, the French men at this day use *Guerir*, and the Britans *Guerif* for *To heale*. The French say *Guaine*, the Britans *Gwain*, for a *sheath*: The French, *Derechef*, the Britaines *Dercheshu*, for *again*: The French *Camur*, the Britaines *Cam*, for *crooked*: the French *Bastien*, the Britaines *Bad*, for a *Boad*: the French *Gourmand*, for an *over-great eater*, the Britans *Gormod*, for *Overmuch*: the French *Bastion*, the Britans *Pastwn*, for a *stafte* or *cuttill*: the French *Accabler*, the Britans *Cablu*, for to *oppreffe*: the French *Haure*, the Britans *Aber*, for an *Haven*: and *Comb* is still used of both the nations for a *Valley*. There are of this sort very many more, which haply the Reader may distaste, although they serve especially for this purpose now in hand.

But whereas *Tacitus* writeth, that the people of the *Aestii*, used the fashions and habit of the *Suprians*, but in language came neerer to the Britans, that maketh nothing against my

Rhodanus.
Rhoſus.Gebenna.
* Montagnes
de Avergne or
Cevennes.* Mile and
halfe.
Leuca.Stony Stronds,
or stonie field.* Arelate.
Arelate.* Cadene in
Quecy or Tool-
dw.
Vxellodunum.
Dunum.Citharistes.
* That is, an
Harpe.

¶ p. 4.

* Little Tarta-
ria or Ptero-
copca.

my Assertion. For the Languages most remote, in some points agree. And of late *gerius Busbequius*, Embassadour from the Emperour to the great Turke, hath served many Dutch and English words in the Biland *Taurica Chersonesus*. Hereupon it may be concluded, that the ancient Gauls Inhabitants of the now named *France*, and Britaines of this Isle spake one and the same language by necessary consequence the originall of the Britaines is to bee reduced unto Gauls. For we must confesse, as I said before, that France or Gaul was peopled by Britain, as lying neerer unto Armenia: and as it was plentifull in corne, so, by the testimony of Strabo, more fruitfull of men: Seeing also, that the Gauls sent out planted their colonies all abroad, in Italy, Spaine, Germanie, Thracia and much more then by all reason and congruities in Britan so neere, and no lesse place than the rest. Neither can it chuse but make for the Britaines reputation even in the highest degree, to have derived their beginning from the ancient Gauls, who martiall prowesse have surpassed all others: with whom the Romans for many maintained war, not about superioritie in glory, but for the very main-chance of and living: and who (to use the Poets words rather than mine owne)

Per omnem

*Invecti Europam, quasi grando Aquilone vel Austro**Importata, gravi passim sonnere tumultu.**Scit Romanus ad huc, & quam Tarpeia videtis**Arx attollem caput illo in monte superbum;**Pannonies, Aemathii norunt. Scit Delphica rupes:*

Invasions made all Europe through; and like some storme uncouth
Of suddaine haile, brought in by force of wind from North or South,
A foule stir kept, with hideous noise, what way they ever went.
The Romans and their stately Towre, which rais'd with steep ascent
On Tarpeie cliffe doth mount aloft, full well this yet doe know
Pannonians, Aemathians eke, with Delphick rocke also.

And a little after

*Intravere Asia fines: prope littora Ponti**In gentem crevere novam, qua tenditur usque**Ad juga Pamphilium, Garamantica sycdera contra,**Inter Cappadoces posita & Bythinica regna:*

They entred then the Asian bounds, neere Pontus shore they go,
And grew there to a nation new, extending close unto
Pamphylian hils, where opposite the Garamants are scene,
Seated the Cappadocians and Bithyne realme betweene.

Neither must we here passe over in silence those reasons which others have alleged to prove the Britans first rising from the Gauls. George Buc, a man both well descended and well learned, observeth out of *Mekercus*, that the Germans call a French man *Wallon*: And when the Saxons of Germany came hither, and heard the Britans speake Gaul-like, they termed them *Walli*; that is, *Galli*, that is to say, *Gauls*. *Chananus* saith moreover, that [*Walch*] doth not simply among the Germans signifie a stranger, but rather in a better sense, a Gaul. And withall, he noteth thus much that the French at this day doe name that country *Galles*, which we call *Wales*: all that the ancient Scots divided all the British nations into *Gaul*, and *Galle*, that is to say after his Interpretation, into the *Gallaci* and the *Galli*.

But if our Britans will needs be descended from the Trojanes, they shall not want have me to gainsay them: and yet shall they in mine opinion ascribe their originall to the Trojanes best of all, by the old Gauls. For some say, as we read in *Aimarus*, that some few who after the destruction of Troy fled, possessed themselves of Gaul at the time void and unpeopled. But when wee thus consider these languages, we cannot but highly admire and set forth, the divine goodnesse of the most high Creatour towards our Britaines, the posteritie of that ancient *Gomer*: who although the Romans, Saxons and Normans have subdued them and triumphed over them, yet hitherto they

The British
Tongue.

they preserved their old name and originall language safe and sound: notwithstanding the Normans sought to abolish the same even by their lawes enacted for that purpose. So much as an old Britan, one of their nobilitie being demanded of *Henry* the second, King of England, what he thought of the Britans power and the Kings warlike preparation made against them, answered not impertinently after this manner; *This Nation, O King, may now by the assaults of your selfe and others be molested, and for the part destroyed or weakened, like us heretofore and oftentimes it hath been. But, be the disfigure of man what it will, unlesse the wrath of God concur withall, it will never bee utterly destroyed and consumed. Neither shall any other nation or language else, (as I suppose) answer in straight day of judgement before that supream Iudge (for this angle of the World) what may happen furthermore, than the Welsh, that is, the British nation*

Giraldus in
his Topogra-
phy of Wales.

THE NAME OF BRITAIN.

But you will say, If *Cumero* be the primitive name of the Inhabitants, whence comes Albion, whence comes Britaine? which name hath so growne in ure that in some sort it hath caused the other to be quite forgotten. But heare, I pray you, that, whereof I am most assured, because it is most true. As the selfe same things, may be considered by divers circumstances, so they may be called also by sundry appellations, as Plato teacheth in his *Cratylus*: if you run over all particulars severally both new and old; you shall find, that every nation was of others called by divers names, from those that they themselves used. Thus they that in their native tongue had Israelites to their name, according to the Greeks were called Hebrewes and Jewes, and by the Egyptians *Huasi*, as *Heseth* *Manetho*, because they had *Heardmen* for their governours. So the Greeks named them Syrians, who, as *Iosephus* writeth, calleth themselves *Aramaeans*. They that named themselves *Chusians*, were by the Grecians of their blacke faces called Ethiopians. Those which after their owne speech were named *Celtae*, the Greeks termed *Galatae*, of their milke-white colour, as some would have it, or of their long tush of haire, as I said erewhile. So, they that nominated themselves after their own language *Teutsch*, *Numidians* and *Hellenes*, by the Romans were named *Germans*, *Maurians* and *Grecians*. Even so in those daies, (not to speake of many other), they which in their owne Idome are called *Muselmans*, *Magier*, *Czecchi* and *Besermans*, are by all nations in Europe named *Turkes*, *Hungarians*, *Bohemians*, and *Tartarians*. And even wee our selves in England, called in our naturall speech *Englishmen*, are named by the * Britaines, Irishmen and the high-land Scots, *Sassons*, that is to say, Saxons. By the same reason we are to deeme, that our ancestours, which termed themselves *Cumero*, were upon some other cause either by themselves or others, named Britaines: From whence the Greekes framed their *Britania*, and delivered the same as it were from hand to hand unto the Romans. This ground being laid let us enquire now into the names of our Island.

* Welchmen.

As for the name *Albion* I passe not much, considering that the Greekes gave it to this Isle for difference sake, seeing that all the Islands bordering round about it were called *Britanish* and *Britaines*. The Island *Britaine* saith *Plinie*, renowned in the *Greek* records and ours both, lieth betwixt North and West over against *Germanie*, *France* and *Spaine*, but with a great distance betweene them, they being the greatest parts by far of all Europe. *Albion* it had to name when all the Isles adjacent were called *Britannies*. Whereupon *Caecilius* writing against *Caesar* said thus;

Hunc Gallia timent, timent Britannia.

Him Gaul doth feare, him Britaine dreads.

Who also in the same traine of verses, calleth it the utmost Isle of the West. And it may seeme that this name *Albion*, sprung from the vanitie, the fabulous inventions, and that unconstant levity of the Greeks in coining of names, which they themselves termed *deceit* or *fiction*. For seeing they have in fabulous wise named Italy *Hesperia* or *Hesperum*

¶ Id. 10. Sept.
Scalig. in Catal.

The shape
poutraiture
of Britaine.

De morbis lan-
taginis lib. 1.
Sweating
sicknesse.

* A Canticle
or Sonet.
Insula Caruli.

Hesperus the sonne of *Atlas*; France *Gallatia* of a sonne of *Polyphemus*: I cannot therwise believe, but that in the same veine also of fabling they called this Island *bion*, of *Albion* *Neptunes* sonne: which thing *Perottus* and *Lilius Giraldu* have downe in writing. Unless a man would derive it rather of *Albus*, which, as *Festus* saith, in Greeke signifieth *White*, whereupon the *Alpes* also have their appellation. For environed it is with white rocks, which *Cicero* termeth *Mirificas moles*, the wondrous Piles: and hereof it is that upon the coined pieces bearing the stamp of *Antoninus Pius* and *Severus*, Britaine is pourtraied sitting upon rocks in wondrous habit. And the British Poets themselves name it *Inis wen*, that is, *The white Isle*. I say nothing of *Orpheus* in his *Argonauticks*, (if so be they be his), who called this Island next unto *Hibernia* or *Irenis*, that is, Ireland, which must needs be this of *Albus* that is, the white land: and which a few verses before, he may seeme have named *Niber* or *Nibis*, for *Nibis* is *white*. *Fracastorius* also writing how that pestilence day-fever in Britaine, which commonly we call the British or English sweate, happened by occasion of the foile, as if the same had stood much upon plaister, supposeth this Island gat the name *Albion* of the said plaisterish foile. As for that pretty how *Albion* was also called of *Albina*, one of those thirtie daughters of *Diocles*, the King of *Syria*, which at their very wedding solemnitie, slew their husbands, being brought hither by ship without rowe tooke possession of this Island first, conceived by spirits, brought forth a breede of giants, who can abide to heare it without indignation, as the most loud lie of some leaud losell.

Neither is there any cause wherefore I should so curiously search, why Britaine that ancient * *Parodia* against *Ventidius Bassus*, is named *Insula Caruli*, confident that it is compassed round about with the Ocean, which the Poets call *Carulum*. Whereupon *Claudian* of Britaine, writeth thus:

Cuius vestigia verrit

Whose feet the Azure Sea
Doth sweepe.

ROMANIA.

I passe over to speake of *Aristides*, who named it *The great, and the furthest Isle*. That it was called also *Romania*, *Gildas* after a fort doth intimate, who writeth, *subdued it was of the Romans so, as that the name of Roman servitude stuck to the foile thereof*: and by and by after, so as it might not be counted *BRITANIA*, but *ROMANIA*: as one or two pages after, speaking of the same, *The Island*, quoth he, *keeping indeed the Roman name, but neither their custome nor law*. And *prosper Aquitanus* in expresse words called it the *Roman Island*: heereunto may be referred also thus much, that when the Statutes of *Tacitus* and *Florianus* the Emperors were by lightning overthrowne, the Soothsayers answered out of their learning, that an Emperour should arise out of their family, who among other things was to set presidents over *Taprobane*, and to be a Proconsull to the *Roman Island*, which the learned understand of our Britaine, though it was a Province * *Præsidiall*, and never Proconsular, as afterwards wee will declare. But that sometime it was named *Samothea* of *Samothes* the sixth Sonne of *Taptes*, believe it who that will, for me. Out of whose shop and forge this comes, I wote full well: even from *Annius Viterbiensis* forsooth, who under a goodly title, as the manner is of craftie retailers, hath in the name of *Berosus* published, and thrust upon credulous persons his owne fictions, and vaine inventions.

But touching the name and originall of Britaine, the truth by reason of the divers and sundry wits of men is very doubtfull and wavering. In which point, that I may lawfully interpose mine owne conjecture, I will by way of Preface, beseech our Britains to speake and think favorably of me, that while they are desirous to learne, they would be willing to pardon, and not debarre me of that course, which *Eliot*, *Leland*, *Lhuid*, and the rest have taken. For if it was lawfull for *Humfrey Lhuid* a most learned Briton, without any prejudice at all to *Brutus*, (nay if hee were commended rather for it,) to derive the name of Britaine otherwise, than from *Brutus*; let it not be imputed as a hainous offence unto me, who am unwilling to impugne the storie of *Brutus*.

Popiscus Florianum.

* Haply, governed by Presidents.

Brutus, to deduce it from somewhat else, if I can. And that out of the very British tongue, and from nothing else, which as it is least mingled with other languages, and withall most ancient, so in this search it seemeth greatly to helpe and further us. For, ancient tongues are reputed passing necessarie, for the searching out of Originals: and *Plato* teacheth us, *That the first names being through the long continuance of time growne out of use*, are preserved in barbarous tongues, as being more ancient than others. And although those things so farre remote from all memory, are over-cast with such mists and darkenesse, that the truth seemes rather to be wished than hoped for: yet for all that, will I doe my best to trace out the truth, and declare as briefly as I can, what my judgement is: not minding to put downe ought prejudiciall to any man, but most willing, if any one shall bring more probable matter to welcome and embrace the same. For I affect and love the truth not in my selfe more than in another, and in whom soever I shall see it, I will most willingly and gladly entertaine it.

First, by the Readers good leave, I will take this for granted and proved, that ancient Nations in the beginning, had names of their owne: and that afterwards, from these, the Greeks and Latines, by wresting them to the analogie or proportion of their speech, imposed names upon regions and countreys: to speake more plainly, That people were knowne by their names, before regions and places, and that the said regions had their denominations of the people.

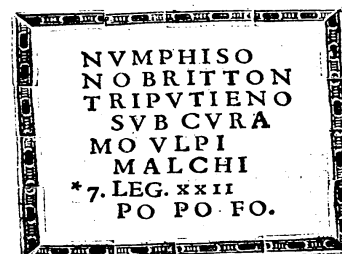
Who can deny that the names of the Jewes, Medes, Persians, Scythians, Almans, French or Gauls, Betulians, Saxons, Englishmen, Scots, &c. were before Jewry, Media, Persia, Scythia, Alamaine, France or Gaule, Betulia, Saxonic, England, Scotland, &c. And who sees not, that these words sprang out of the other? Of the Samnites, Insubres and Belgæ, we read that *Livie* and *Cæsar* first named the countreys themselves * *Samnitium*, *Insubrium*, and *Belgium*.

Of the *Franci* in the time of *Constantinus Maximus*, as is to be seene in his coines, the place where they were seated took the name of *Francia* first: & from the *Burgundi* *Sidonius Appollinaris* first framed *Burgundie*. In the same sort we must of necessity think, that this our Island Britaine, tooke denomination from the Inhabitants, or from the Gaules their neighbours: That these first Inhabitants were called *Brit* or *Brith*, some things induce me to thinke: First and formost, that verse which goeth about, under the name of *Sybilla*:

* *Επειτα δὲ Βριτανίαν καὶ τὴν Ἰνσουλὴν ἐκαλεῖται*
Βριτανίαν καὶ τὴν Ἰνσουλὴν ἐκαλεῖται

Twixt Brits and Gaules their neighbours rich, in gold that much abound,
The roaring Ocean Sea with bloud full filled shall rebound.

Moreover, the authoritie of *Martial*, *Juvenal* and *Ausonius*. *Procopius* also, who nameth this Isle *BRITTA*. In like manner the old Inscriptions set up by the Britaines themselves, wherein are read, *BRITO*, *BRITONES*, *BRITTUS*. *COH. BRITTON. ORDINIS BRITTON*: and at Rome in the Church of Saint Mary the round NATI-ONE *BRITTO*: as also in this which is seene at *Amerbachinm* in Germanie, which I will put downe here underneath because it maketh mention of *Triputium*, a place in Britaine, not knowne.



* *Βριτανία*

The

BRIT.

The Saxons also themselves called the Britans in their language *Briton*, and *Wend* chindas the Saxon every where named the Britans *Brita*: so that the word *Brit* is doubtlesse the primitive, from whence *Brito* is derived, and from whence the double of light leading to the word Britaine, seemeth to appear.

Considering now that Nations devised their names of that, wherein they excelled others or were knowne from others: whether in regard of their first leaders honour; as the *Iones* of Javan, the *Israelites* of Israëll, the *Chamanites* of Cham: the sonne of Cham: or whether in respect of their nature, conditions, and inclinations; as the *Iberi*, after the *Hebrew Etymologie*, because they were miners; the *Assi*, for that they were fraglers; the *Nomades*, because they gave themselves to breeding and feeding of Cattell; the *Alemans* or *Germanes*, for that they were armed valiant men; the *French* or *Frankners*, for being free; the *Pannonians*, for wearing coats with cloth-sleeves, as *Dio* conceiteth it: the *Ethiopians* of their black haire, and the *Albanes*, because they were borne with white haire: whereupon, (mark I pray you) as *Solinus* saith, *The colour of the haire upon the head gave name unto a people*. Seeing also that our country men, who were (by a name common to them and their neighbours) called *Cimbri* and *Cumeri*, had no marke whereby they might be distinguished and knowne from the borderers, better than by that manner of their top: their bodies: for the most sufficient Auhors that be, as *Cæsar*, *Mela*, *Plinie*, and the rest doe shew, that the Britaines coloured themselves with woade, called *Glass*, Latine *Glastum*, (and *Glass* at this day with them signifieth *Blew*.) What if I should conjecture, that they were called Britans of their depainted bodies? For, whatfoever is thus painted and coloured, in their ancient country speech, they call *Brith*. Neither is there cause why any man should thinke this *Etymologie* of Britaines to be idle and absurd; seeing the very words found alike, and the name also as an exact image representeth the thing, which in *Etymologies* are chiefly required. For *Brith* *Brit*, doe passing well accord: and that word *Brith* among the Britans, implieth which the Britans were indeed, to wit, *painted, depainted, died, and coloured*, as their *Antient Poets* describe them; and *Ambrosius*, that is, *having their backs pide, or medly dyed red*, as *Oppianus* termeth them.

Neither will it be impertinent, (as small a matter as it is) to note here, that as I have observed, in the names, of well nere all the most ancient Britaines, there appeare some signification of a colour: which no doubt, arose from this kind of painting. The red colour is of the Britaines called *Coch* and *Goch*, which in my judgement lieth couched in these names, *Cogidunus*, *Argentocoxus*, and *Segonax*. The same Britaine call the blacke colour, *Dû*, which after a sort sheweth it selfe in *Maudubrain*, *Cartimandua*, *Togodumnus*, *Bunduica*, *Cogidunus*. The white colour is with them named *Gwin*, the very prints, as it were, and expresse tokens of which word, me thinketh in *Venutius* and *Immanuentius*. *Gwellw* among them signifieth that, which *Color* among the Latines doth, that is to say, *a wan or waterish colour*: and this appeareth evidently in the names of *Fellocatus*, *Carnilius* and *Suella*. *Glass* in the British tongue is as much as *Blew*, which is seene in the name of King *Cuniglasus*. For *Gildas* interpreteth it to be all one with *Fulvus*, or as some copies have *Furvus Lano*: that is, *Lion tawny*, or coale blacke Butcher. *Aure*, which betokeneth a faire yellow golden colour, bewraith it selfe in *Cungetorius* and *Arviragus*. A lively and gallant colour is with them called *Teg*, which maketh some little shew in *Prasutagus* and *Crastacus*. But if we be perswaded, that the Britans borrowed the names of mingled colours, together with the very simple colours themselves of the Romans; for certaine it is that they tooke from the Romans, *Verith*, for *Viridis*, that is, *Greene*: *Melin*, for *Melinus*, that is a *Quince yellow colour*: then if I thinke that there lieth also some note of the colour *Prasinus*, that is, *Leeke blade greene*, in *Prasutagus*; and the *red vermillion* or *Sinopre colour*, called of the Latins *Minium*, in the name of *Adiminus*, King *Cinobelinus* his sonne, no man I hope will stand against mee. Moreover *Rufina*, that most learned British Lady, tooke that name of the colour *Rufus*, that is, *Red*: like as *Albane* the first martyr in Britaine of *Albus*, that is, *White*. And

Glass.

Britans,
whence they
tooke their
name.
Brith, what
it is.

Synagie. lib. 1.

Old Britans
names, drawn
from colours.

any one that is skilfull in the old British tongue, would examine the rest of British names, which in the ancient Writers are not past foure or five more in all, wee may well suppose, that he shall find in those names, as few as they be, some signification of a colour. Neither must we omit this observation, that the commonest names at this day among the Britans, *Gwin*, *Dû*, *Goch*, *Lhuid*, were imposed upon them, from the white, blacke, red, russet, or tawny colour. So that now it may be thought no wonder, that the whole nation it selfe, drew the denomination from painting: considering verily, that they in generall painted themselves: and the very Inhabitants, both in times past, and also in these our daies imposed upon themselves their names, of Colours. But now to the matter, if haply, all this hath bene beside the matter.

This also is certaine, that in stories a Britaine is called in the British tongue *Brithon*. care not for the note of aspiration, seeing that the Britaines (who, as *Chrysostome* saith, had a hissing or lipping pronuntiation) delight in aspirations, which the Latines have carefully avoided. Now, as *Brito* came of *Brith*, so did *Britannia* also in my opinion. *Britannia*, saith *Isidore*, *tooke that name from a word of the owne nation*. For what time as the most ancient Greeks (and these were they that first gave the Island that name) sailing still along the shore, as *Eratosthenes* saith, either as rovers, or as merchants, travailed unto nations most remote and disjoyned farre asunder, and learned either from the Inhabitants themselves, or else of the Gauls, who spake the same tongue, that this nation was called *Brith*, and *Brithon*; then they unto the word *Brith* added *TANIA*: which, as we find in the Greek Glossaries, betokeneth in Greek, a region: and thereof they made a compound name *Brithania*, that is, the *Britons-land*, for which they have written false, *Britania*. But *Lucretius* and *Cæsar*, the first Latines that made mention thereof, more truly *Britannia*. That this is so, I doe the more firmly believe, because that besides our Britaine, a man shall not find, over the face of the whole earth above three countries of any account and largenesse, which end in the termination *TANIA*: and those verily lying in this west part of the world, namely, *MAVRITANIA*, *LYSITANIA*, and *AQVITANIA*. Which names, I doubt not but the Greeks made and delivered to the Latines, as who first discovered and surveied these lands. For, of *Mauri* they framed *Mauritania*, as one would say, the country of the *Mauri*, which the home-bred people of that land, as *Strabo* witnesseth, called *Numbria*: of *Lusus* the sonne of * *Liber*, *Lusitania*, as it were, the land of *Lusus*: and *Aquita*, perhaps *ab aquis*, that is, of waters, as *Ivo Carnotensis* is of opinion, being a region seated upon waters: in which sense, as *Plinie* writeth, it was before time named *Arimorica*, that is, coasting upon the sea. As for *Turditania* and *Bastitania*, names of smaller countries, they may hereto also be reduced, which likewise were in this westeme tract, to wit, in Spain, and may seeme to signifie as much as the regions of the *Turdi* and the *Bastii*. Neither is it a strange and new thing, that a denomination should be compounded, of a forreign and a Greek word, put together. Names are compounded, saith *Quintilian*, either of our own, that is, Latine, and of a strange word put together, as *Bichinium*, that is, a roome with two beds or two tables: and contrariwise, as *Epitaphium*, that is, a garment worne upon a gowne; *Anticato*, that is, a book written against *Cato*: or of two forreign words joyned in one, as *Epirrhedum*, a kind of wagon. And this manner of composition is most usuall in the names of countries. Came not Ireland by composition of the Irish word *Erin*, and the English word *Land*: Did not *Angleterre*, that is, England, grow together of an English and of a French word: and did not *Frangland* (for so our Saxons named *Francia* or France) proceed from a French and Saxon word: Came not *Poleland* likewise from a Polonian word, which among them betokeneth a plaine, and a Germane: Lastly, was not *Danmarch* compounded of a Danish word, and the Dutch *March*, which signifieth a bound or limit: But in so plaine and evident a matter I will not use any more words. Neither have we cause to wonder at this Greeke addition *TANIA*, seeing that *S. Hierome* in his questions upon *Genesis*, proveth out of most ancient authors, that the Greeks inhabited along the sea coasts and Isles of Europe throughout, as far as to this our Island. Let us read, saith

* That is,
Welsh men.

In *Scrit. Penit.*
c. 11.

TANIA
So at this day
the Germans
unto the
names of
countries put
to Land, as
Gelderland,
Friesland,
Pomerland,
&c.

* Or Bacchus?

Lib. 1.

he, Varroes bookes of Antiquities, and those of Silius Capito, as also the Greeke word Phlegon, with the rest of the great learned men, and we shall see, all the Islands well neere all the sea coasts of the whole world, yea and the lands neere unto the sea, to have bene inhabited up with Greeke Inhabitants, who, as I said before, from the mountaines Amanus and Taurus even to the British Ocean, possessed all the parts along the sea side.

That the
Greeks came
to Britaine.

And verily, that the Greeks arrived in this our region, viewed and considered the scite and nature thereof, there will be no doubt and question made; if we observe what Athenæus hath written concerning Phileas Taurominites (of whom mention is made) who was in Britaine in the clx. yeare before Cæsars comming: if we call to remembrance the Altar with an Inscription, *Vno Phylles*, in Greek letters; and lastly, we marke what Pytheas before the time of the Romans time, hath delivered in writing as touching the distance of *Thule* from Britaine. For who had ever discovered unto the Greeks, Britaine, *Thule*, the * Belgicke countries, and their sea coasts especially, if the Greeks ships had not entred the British and German Ocean, yea and noted the description thereof unto their Geographers? Had Pytheas, thinke you, come to the knowledge of fixe daies sailing beyond Britaine, unlesse some of the Greeks shewed the same? Who ever told them of *Scandia*, *Burgos*, and *Nerigon*, out of which men may faile into *Thule*? And these names seeme to have been better knowne unto the most ancient Greeks, than either to Plinie or to any Roman. Whereupon may testifieth, That *Thule* was much mentioned and renowned in Greek letters: and Plinie likewise writeth thus; *Britaine an Island famous in the monuments and records both of the Greeks and of us*. By this meanes therefore, so many Greek words have crept into British, French, & withall, into the Belgicke or low-Dutch language. And if Lazæ Baysius, and Budæus, do make their vant and glory in this, that their Frenchmen have bene of old *antiquities*, that is, *Lovers and Students of the Greekes*, grounding their reason upon few (French) words of that Idiome, which retain some markes and tokens of the Greek tongue: if Hadrian Junius joyeth no lesse, because in the Belgicke words there ly covertly Greek Etymologies: then may the Britaines make their boast, whose language many words there be derived from the Greeks. Howbeit, Sir Thomas Smith Knight, sometime Secretary to Queene Elizabeth, a man most learned every way, thinketh verily, that this hapned thereupon, for that when all Europe began to be much troubled and shaken with wars, very many of the Greeks flocked hither for refuge, as it were into a sanctuary.

Greeke words
in the British
Language.

In his booke
of English
Orthographie.

Thus have you, as touching the Originall and name of Britaine mine error or conjecture, whether you wil, which if it swerve from the truth, I wish it were by the time it selfe reformed. In this intricate and obscure study of antiquitie, it is thought profitable, somewhat to erre: and remember we should withall, that such things as the first sight being slightly thought upon are deemed false, after a better review and further consideration oftentimes seeme true. Now if any man should summon me to appear before the Tribunall of Verity, I have no other answer at all to make. And for our countrymen the Britans, such as be of the learned sort, I doe most earnestly beseech and desire them to employ all their labour, industry, wit, and understanding in the searching out hereof, so long, untill at last, the truth with her owne cleare beames, may scatter and dissolve all mists of conjectures whatsoever.

THE MANERS AND CUSTOMES OF THE BRITAINES.



The Manners
of Britaines.

Concerning the Britaines, what A&S at the first they explored, what forme of common-wealth they used, after what order and lawes they lived, M. Daniel Rogers, a very good man, and lately well learned, and my especiall friend, promised in his writings to informe us: but for that he being cut off by untimely death, hath performed nothing, take here these few notes touching their ancient maners and customes collected word for word out of ancient authors.

Cæsar. The Britans use for their money, brazen pieces, or * rings of iron duly weighed ^{* Annulli.} divided to a certaine just poize. To taste of hare, hen, and goose, they thinke it unlawfull ^{Some read, lawfull, that is, thine places.} where, these they keepe for their delight and pleasure. Of them all, these are most civill and courteous by far, that dwell in Kent, which is a country altogether lying upon the sea coast: whether doe these Inhabitants differ much in custome from the Gauls. The Inlanders for the most part sow no corne, but live of milke and flesh; and clad themselves in skins. But the Britans all in generall depaite themselves with * woad, that maketh a blew colour; ^{* Luteo.} whereby they are the more terrible to their enemies in fight. The haire of their heads they keepe long, and shave all parts of the body, saving the head and upper lip. Ten or twelve of them together use their wives in common, and especially brethren partake with brethren, and parents with their children: but looke what children they beare, theirs they are reputed who first married them virgins. In battell for the most part, they were wont to employ their chariottiers. First these ride about into all parts of the battell, and sling darts ^{Effedavil.} with the very fearefull sight of horse, and with the rattling noise of the wheeles, they doe the most part breake the rankes and put them in disarray, and when they have once wounded themselves within the troopes of the horsemen, they alight from their chariots, and fight on foot. The chariot-guiders in the meane time depart a little out of the medly, and bestow themselves so, that if the other be overcharged with the multitude of enemies, they may readily and without let retire in safetie. Thus in their battels, they performe the nimble motion of horsemen, and steadinesse of footmen: by daily practise and experience so ready in their service, that they were wont to stay in the declivity of a steepe hill their horses being in their full carriere, quickly turne short and moderate their pace, runne along the spire and beame of the chariot, rest upon the yoke of and harness of their steeds, and from thence leape againe into the chariots most speedily at their pleasure. These chariottiers could retire also many times of purpose, and when they had trained and drawne our men a little way off from their legions, dismount from their chariots and encounter them on foot, having thereby the vantage of them in flight. Furthermore, they never fought thicke and close together, but thinn and with great distance betwene, having set stations or wards of purpose, so as one might succour another, receiving the wearied, and putting forth new and fresh supplies.

The manner
of their Effedavil
dances or Chariottiers fight.

Strabo. The Britans be taller of stature than the Gauls: their haire not so yellow, nor their bodies so well knit and firme. For proove of their talenesse, I saw my selfe at Rome very many and springalls, higher by halfe a foote than the tallest man. Many, they had but bad feet to support them. As for all other lineaments of the body, they shewed good making and proportionable feature. For disposition of nature they partly resemble the Gauls: partly they be more plaine, more rude and barbarous; inasmuch that some of them for want of skill, can make no cheeses, albeit they have plenty of milke: others againe, are altogether ignorant in hardening and planting of orchards, yea and in other points of husbandry. Many Lords and Potentates they have among them. In their warres they use a number of chariots, like as some of the Gauls. Woods stand them in stead of Cities and townes: for when they have by felling of trees, mounded and fenced therewith a spacious round plot of ground, there they build for themselves halles and cottages, and for their cattell set up stals and folds: but those only for the present use, and not to serve long.

Cæsar likewise. A towne, the Britaines call some thicke wood, which they have enclosed and fortified with a ditch and rampier, and made for a place of refuge and retreat, to avoid the incursions of the borderers.

Diodorus Siculus. The Britans live after the manner of the old world. They use chariots in fight, as the report goes of the ancient Greeks at the Trojane war. Their houses are for the most part of reed or wood. Their corne they inne and house with care and all: threshing out thereof from hand to mouth as their need requires. Faire conditioned people they are, plaine and of upright dealing, far from the subtiltie and craft of our men. Their food whereupon they live is simple, and nothing daintie nor like the full fare of rich men. Their Island is replenished with people.

Pomponius Mela. Britaine bringeth forth nations and Kings of Nations, but they be all uncivill, and the farther they are from the continent, the lesse acquainted they be with other kind

Glaſſes vel
vitro.
See before.

* France.

kind of riches: onely in cattell and lands they be wealthy. Their bodies are died with whether it bee for to make a gallant ſhew, or for what elſe, it is uncertaine. They pick of warre at their pleaſure to ſaſiſie their owne wills, and ſo oftentimes moleſt one another but principally upon an ambitious deſire of rule and ſoveraignty, and an encroaching they have to enlarge their owne poſſeſſions. Their fight is not onely with horſe or ſword but alſo with wagons and chariots harneſſed and armed after the Gaul-like manner, ſo they call Covinos: and in thoſe they uſe axeltrees armed at both ends with hooked ſides.

Cornelius Tacitus. The Britans neereſt unto * Gallia reſemble likewiſe the Gauls either becauſe they retaineth ſtill ſomewhat of the race from which they deſcended, or the countries butting one againſt another the ſame aſpects of the heavens doe yield the complexion of bodies. But generally, if a man conſider all, it is moſt likely, the Gauls lay neereſt peopled the land unto them. In their ceremonies and ſuperſtitious perſwaſions there is to bee ſeene an apparant conformitie: The language differeth not much: Likewiſe to challenge and ſet into dangers: when dangers are come, like feare in reſuſing: ſo that the Britans make more ſhew of courage, as beeing not mollified yet with long ſervice. For the Gauls alſo were once, as we read, redoubted in war, till ſuch time as giving themſelves over to eaſe and idleneſſe, cowardly crept in, and ſhipwrack was made both of valour and libertie together. And ſo is it alſo befallen to thoſe of the Britans which were reduced of old: The reſt remaine ſuch as the Gauls were before. Their ſtrength in the conſiſteth of footmen. Yet ſome countries there, make war in wagons alſo. The greater ſonage guideth the wagon, his waiters and followers fight out of the ſame. Heretofore they were governed by Kings, now they are drawne by petty Princes into Partialities and Factions: and this is the greateſt helpe wee Romans have, againſt thoſe puſſant Nations, they have no common counſell. Seldome it chanſeth that two or three States meete together and concur to repulſe the common danger: So, whiſt one by one fighteth, all are ſubdued.

In another place. An uſuall manner it was with the Britans to ſeek for the direction the Gods, by looking into the inward of beaſts: and to make warre under the conduct of women; neither mattereth it whether ſex beare rule over them. Whereupon learned Aristotle ſpake of the Britaines, where he writeth, That certaine warlike nations beyond the Celtes, were ſubject to the government of women.

Dio Nicanus, out of the Epitome of Xiphilinus, as touching the Britans in the North part of the Iſland. They till no ground: They live upon prey, veniſon and fruits. Few fiſh, although there is exceeding great plenty thereof, they will not taſte: their abode is in tents, naked and unſhod: Wives they uſe in common, and the children borne of them all doe ſoſter among them: the Comminaltie for the moſt part doth governe: moſt will they bee to practice robbing. In warre, their ſervice is out of Chariots: the horſes they be little and ſwift of pace: their footmen runne moſt ſpeedily: whiles they ſtand, they are the ſtrongest: the armour and weapons that they uſe, are a ſhield and ſhort ſpeare, in the other part whereof, there hangeth a round bell of braſſe like an apple, that when it is ſhaken they might with the ſound terrifie and maskre the enemies: they have daggers alſo. principally, they can endure hunger, cold, and any labour whatſoever. For, ſticking ſtill the bogs up to the head many daies together, they will live without food; and within woods they feed upon the barks and roots of trees. A certaine kind of meat they provide ready for all occaſions, whereof if they take but the quantitie of a Beane, they are not wonted to be hungry or thirſtie.

Herodian. They know no uſe at all of garments, but about their belly onely a necke, they weare yron; ſuppoſing that to be a goodly ornament, and a prooſe of their wealth like as all other Barbarians eſteeme of gold. For why? their very bare bodies they man with ſundry pictures, repreſenting all manner of living creatures; and therefore it is verily that they will not be clad, for hiding (for ſooth) that painting of their bodies. Now they are a moſt warlike nation, and very greedy of ſlaughter, content to bee armed onely with a narrow ſhield and a ſpeare, with a ſword beſides hanging downe by their naked bodies. Vnſkilfull altogether how to uſe either corſlet or helmet, ſuppoſing the ſame to be an hinderance unto them, as they paſſe over the bogs and marſh grounds: through

rough the hot vapours ariſing, from whence the ſkie and aire is there moſt part ſoggy.

The reſt of the particulars, which are very few, I will lightly gather, and crop here and there. Plinie writing of Magicke: But what ſhould I (quoth he) rehearſe theſe things, as an art that hath paſſed over the Ocean alſo, ſo far, as beyond which, nothing is to be diſcovered but aire and water? And even at this day verily, it is in Britaine highly honoured, where the people are ſo wholly devoted unto it, and that with all compliments of ceremonies, as man would thinke the Perſians learned all their Magicke from them.

The ſame Plinie. There groweth an hearbe in Gaule like unto Plantaine, named Glaſtum, hatis, Wood, with the juce whereof, the women of Britaine, as well married wives, as their young daughters annoint and die their bodies all over; reſembling by that tincture the complexion of Aethiopians, in which manner they uſe at ſome ſolemne feaſts and ſacrifices to goe naked. Againe, Their is not a daintier diſh of meate known in Britaine, than are the Cheneſes, ſowles leſſe than wild geefe. Alſo, The Britaines wore rings on their middle finger. Likewiſe, The Britaines manured their grounds with Marle inſtead of dung.

That they inammelled or branded themſelves (as it were) with certain marks which Tertullian termeth Britannorum ſtigmate, that is, The Britans marks, Solinus ſheweth: The Country (ſaith he) is partly peopled with Barbarians, who by the meanes of artificiall diſciplines of ſundry formes, have from their childhood divers ſhapes of beaſts incorporate upon them: and thus having theſe their marques deeply imprinted within their bodies, looke now a man groweth more and more, ſo doe theſe pictured characters likewiſe waxe. Neither doe theſe ſavage Nations repute any thing to ſignifie their patience, more than by ſuch durable ſcars to cauſe their limbs to drinke in much painting and colour.

Dio. The Britaines worſhipped as their Goddeſſes, Andate, that is, Victorie and Andates.

Cæſar and Lucan. Ships they had, of which the Keeles, the footſtocks alſo, or upright ſtandards were made of light timber: the reſt of the body framed of windings and Oſſer covered over with leather.

Solinus. How long ſoever they held on their courſe under ſayle, ſo long the Saylorſ forſwore to eat. They uſed a drinke made of barley: and ſo doe wee at this day, as Dioſcorides writeth, who nameth Curmi wrong for Kwrw, for ſo the Britaines call that, which we terme Ale.

Many of them together had but one wife among them, as Eufebius recordeth in Evangelica Preparatione 6.

Plutarch reporteth, That they lived one hundred and twenty yeares, for that the cold and frozen country wherein they dwelt, kept in their naturall heat.

But what thoſe ancient times of cruell Tyrants were, whereof Gildas writeth, I know not, unleſſe he meaneth them that in this country rooke upon them the ſway of government againſt the Romans, and were at that time called Tyrants: for ſoone after, he addeth ſuch much out of S. Hierome: Porphyrie raging in the Eaſt-parts as a mad dog againſt the Church, annexed thus much to his furious andraine ſtile: Britaine (ſaith he) a Province plentifull of tyrants. Neither will I ſpeake of their ancient religion, which is not verily to be counted religion, but a moſt lamentable and confuſed Chaos of Superſtititions: For when Satan had drowned the true doctrine in thicke miſts of darkeneſſe, The ugly ſpectres of Britaine (ſaith that Gildas) were meere Diabolically, exceeding well meere in number thoſe of Egypt: whereof ſome we doe ſee within or without deſert walles, with deformed lineaments ſtill, carrying ſterne and grim looks after their wonted manner.

But, whereas it is gathered, that the Britaines were together with Hercules at the rape of Heſione, and that, out of theſe verſes which they take to bee made by Cornelius Nepos, whiles he deſcribeth the marriage of Telamon and Heſione:

— Et in aurea pocula fuſi

Invitant ſeſe pateris plebs miſta, Britanni.

Mid cups of gold, a medly fort thus lying all along,

Boll after Boll quaſt luſtily, and Britans them among.

The Britans ?
Art Magicke.

Glaſtum.

Cheneſes.
Brants or
Soland
geefe.
Their manner
of painting.

The Britans
Navigation.

The Tyrants
of Britaine.

The religion
of the Britans.

That

That is altogether poetically, and I can cleerely by good evidences, as it were, under hand and seale prove, that the author thereof, was not, as the Germans would have it, Cornelius Nepos, but one Ioseph of Excester: who hath made mention of our King Henrie the second, and Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury.

Whether Ulysses entred thus farre, whose arrivall in *Caledonia*, a certaine is engraven with Greeke letters, as Solinus saith, hath testified, Brodæus maketh doubt, and I would judge, that erected it was rather in the honour of Ulysses, than by Ulysses himselfe: although they avouch Ulysses to bee the very same Elizza, that Japheth sonne. For, apparant it is out of Histories, and already I have said as much, that the most ancient Greeks undertooke long voyages by sea and land: no more, then it ought to seeme, if their be also some names and monuments of theirs found in divers places. And often times they derived those names, not so much from their owne denominations, as from Worthies, who were held in as much reverence, if more, among them, as were either Confessors or Martyrs among Christians. Like therefore the names of Saint John, Saint Dominicke, Saint Francis, and infinite other Saints departed, are imposed upon new-found places, so also that it happened time of mind with the Greeks, who will denie: but who among all the worthies, made either more wandring voyages, or of longer continuance at Sea, than did Ulysses? No marvel then, if Sailers made vowes very often unto him above all others; and unto those places where they arrived and landed, did consecrate according to the vowes, names from him. Thus * Ulyssippo upon the mouth of the river Tagus tooke the name: and thus elsewhere other monuments of Ulysses, Lactes and their companions; which are not properly to be referred unto Ulysses as the founder: but we must think, that by the Greeks who discovered strange and forraine coasts, they were dedicated in the honour of that Worthy, who of all others had travelled and seen most.

Whereas John Tzetzes in his Treatise intituled, *Varietie of Stories*, hath written that our British Kings bestowed upon that renowned Cato the elder, who had perpetual conflict with the manners of the Roman people, certaine presents for his troubles sake; let him make good and save his owne credit himselfe: yet thus much the world knoweth, how that Writer is full fraught with fables.

Neither would I have you believe, that Alexander the Great came out of the East Indies, to *Gades*, and so forward to Britaine, howsoever Cedrenus, many all other Historiographers, writeth thus: *Εκ τούτου δὲ τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου καὶ τοῦ Περσικοῦ ἱστορικοῦ* that is, *And from thence being come unto Phasis, Gades, the British nation, and having furnished himselfe with a thousand hulkes &c.* Of the same stampe is that also which Trithemius reporteth out of Hunnibald, that *Basianus put away his wife, the King of the Orkneys daughter*, in the 284. yeare before the birth of Christ, and thereupon he with the aid of the Britaines Kings, made warre upon *Basianus*.

Nor let any man thinke that Hanniball ever warred in Britaine, because wee read thus in Polybius in the Eclogues of his tenth Booke *οὗτος δὲ ἦν ὁ Ἰνδὸς, οὗτος δὲ ἦν ὁ Περσικὸς ἱστορικός* *Thus much in brieft; now that Hanniball was enclosed within the straits of Britaine.*

For the place is corrupt, and for *οὗτος δὲ ἦν ὁ Περσικὸς ἱστορικός*, as it is in *Dionysius* booke 42. For in both places there is a speech of the Brutii in Italie. And yet I may deny, but that about this time the Greeks came to our Island. For, Athenæus in describing out of Moschion a most ancient author, that ship of Hiero, at the hugeness and workmanship whereof all men wondred, reporteth, that the maine mast thereof was with much adoe found by a certaine swineheard in the mountaines of Britaine, and by Phileas Taurominites the Mechanick conveyed into Sicillie. But I feare, lest the Criticks judge that the true reading here also should bee *οὗτος δὲ ἦν ὁ Περσικὸς ἱστορικός* for *οὗτος δὲ ἦν ὁ Περσικὸς ἱστορικός*, and likewise understand it of the Brutian mountaine in Italy.

But it seemeth, that the Britaines were entermingled with the Cimbri and the Gauls in those expeditions which were made into Italy and Greece. For, besides the

name common to them both, it is recorded in a most ancient British Booke entitled *Triadum*, wherein mention is made of three mightie hosts leaved from among Britans, That a certaine forraine captaine leaved a marvellous puissant army from hence, which having wasted a great part of Europe, at the last sat him downe and a hard by the Greekish sea (meaning perhaps Gallatia). That Brennus a King so famous in Greek and Latine writers both, was a Britan, there be that thinke they can easily prove. For mine owne part, thus much onely I know, that his name is not yet come out of use with the Britans, who in their language call a King *Brennin*, whence in honorable memory of him I dare not determine. Certes, that Britomarus the famous captaine among them, of whom Florus and Appian speake, was a Britan, the same doth evince, which signifieth as much, as *A great Britan*. Neither will I say to my purpose for to make the said Brennus a Britan borne, that place of Strabo, wherein he writeth, That Brennus was by birth a Praufian. Ne yet dare I (wherein Ortho Frisingensis writeth, That the Briones, a generation of the Cimbri, seated themselves at the head of the river *Dravus*.) change *Briones* into *Britones*. And yet dare not our Criticks doe now daies?

But yet truly, to speake my mind once for all: As the Romans for all they grew that greatnesse above others, were not for a long time knowne, either to Herodotus or to the Greeks; the Gauls also and the Spaniards for many yeares utterly unknowne to the old Historiographers: so, of this mind I have alwaies beene, that late it were the Greeks and Romans heard of the Britans name. For, that little booke, *The World*, which commonly goeth abroad under the name of Aristotle, and maketh mention of the Britans, of Albion and Hierne, is not so ancient as the time where Aristotle lived, but of later daies by far, as the best learned men have judged. Pomponius verily, the famous Historian, who accompanying that noble Scipio travelled over a great part of Europe cccclxx. yeares or there about before Christs nativitie, is an ancient author; as far as I remember, that mentioneth the Britan Isles, where he saith: *Of the utmost Ocean, the Britan Isles, the plenty of tynne, gold and silver in Spaine, the writers with different opinions, have reported much.* But they seeme to have beene more than by name may be gathered by this hee writeth before in the same booke. *Whatsoever, saith he, betwene Tanis and Narba bendeth Northward, to this day there is no man knoweth: and whoever they be, that either speake or write any thing thereof, they doe but dreame.* And no lesse may they seeme to do in these daies, who in a prodigious humour of credulitie are perswaded, that *Himilco* being commanded by the King of Carthage to discover the Westerne sea-coast of Europe, entred into this many yeares before that time, seeing we have no records of the said navigation, but onely a verse or two in *Festus Avienus*. But why it was so late ere Britaine was knowne, the reason may seeme to be, partly the scite of the Island so remote and distanced from the continent: and in part, for that those old Britans, then barbarous as other people in these parts, and living close to themselves, had no great commerce and traffique with other nations. And surely in this point Dio is of the same opinion. *The ancientest, saith he, as well of Greeks as Romans knew not for certaine so much as that there was any Britaine at all: and those of later times after them, made question whether it was the maine or an Island: and much writing there was pro & contra of both opinions, by those who verily had no assured knowledge thereof (as who had neither seene the country nor learned of the native inhabitants of what nature it was) but relied onely upon bare conjectures every one according to his time and diligence employed that way.* But the first Latine writer to my knowledge, that made mention of Britaine, was Lucretius in these verses concerning the difference of aire:

*Nam quid Britannum calum differre putamus,
Et quod in Aegypto est, quâ mundi claudicat axis?*

For aite, what difference is there in Britaine Ile thinke we,
And Egypt land, where Artick pole to stoupe men plainly see?
Now that Lucretius lived but a little before Cæsar, no man denieth: at what time heare taught out of Cæsar himselfe, that Divitiacus King of the * Soissons, and the

The bookes of
Triades.

Brennus

Brennin

Britomarus a
Britaine.

Lib. 2. cap. 13.

Late ere Bri-
taine was
knowne to the
Greeks.

Lib. 3.

* In France,
most

Brodæus Mis-
cell. lib. 3.
cap. 4.
Ulysses never
in Britaine.

* Lisbon.

King Alexan-
der the Great,
never in Bri-
taine.

Hannibal ne-
ver in Britaine.

King Hiero
his ship.

Britaines with
the Cimbri in
their expedi-
tions.

most mightie Prince of all Gaule governed Britaine. But this is to bee understood of the maritime coasts. For Cæsar himselfe witnesseth, that no part of Britaine, save the sea-side, and those countreys which lie against Gaule, was knowne unto the Gauls. Howbeit, Diodorus Siculus writeth, that Britaine had experience of the reiners rule: for neither * Dionysius, nor Hercules, nor any other Worthy or Durable Acts is called Divus, was the first that subdued the Britans, and forced them to certain tribute.

* Bæabus.

Cæsarinus de
Diz Natali.Three times or
ages of the
world.

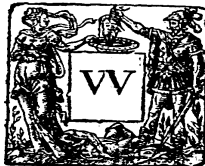
Uncertaine.

Fabulous.

Historicall.

From this time and no further off, must the writer of our Historic fetch his beginning, of his worke, if he thoroughly weigh with judgement what the learned hath in times past written, and my selfe already heretofore signified: Namely, there bee of times three differences: the first from the creation of man unto the Flood or Deluge, which for the ignorance of those daies is called *AAHAON*, that is, *scure & uncertaine*: the second from the Flood to the first *Olympias*, (being 3189 years after the Creation, and 774. before Christ) which in regard of many fabulous names reported in that time, is named *MOIKON*, that is, *Fabulous*: the third from the first *Olympias* unto our daies, and that is termed *ISTOPION*, that is, *Historicall*, because the Acts therein done, are contained in true Histories. And yet I am not ignorant, that albeit the learned nations (setting aside the Hebrews) have attained to knowledge of nothing before this age, yet the British History of Geoffrey, touching three hundred and thirtie yeares before the first *Olympias*, being a very ignorant age in these parts, which he called *Fabulous*. And even from hence, feare least the ground-woke being ill laid, the rest of the building would goe on better, because both the present place seemeth to require it, and also from it the slight may arise to the traine of the narration ensuing; let mee summarily gather matter here and there briefly deliver the acts of the Romans in Britaine, not onely feined fables, which were vanitie to recite, and meere folly to beleve, but out of incorrupt and ancient monuments: wherein, I will not intercept matter of glory or commendation from them, who shall take in hand to pursue this argument in ample manner.

ROMANS IN BRITAIN.



Julius Cæsar.

* France.

Pomponius
Sabinus out of
Seneca.* Those a-
bout Beau-
vois or Beau-
voisin.

When Fortitude and Fortune were so agreed, or Gods appointment rather had thus decreed, that Rome should subdue all earth, Caius Julius Cæsar, having now by conquests overcome Gauls, to the end, that by a successive traine of victories achieved both by land and sea, he might joyne those Lands together which nature had severed, (as if the Roman would not suffice) cast an eye unto the Ocean; and in the four and fiftieth yeare before the incarnation of Christ, endeavored to make a journey into Britaine; either for that in all his Gaulish warre, there was under-hand aid from thence, or because the Britaines had received the * Hellogari were runne from him, or as Suetonius writeth, allured with hope of the Britpearles, the bignesse and weight whereof hee was wont to prize, and trie by his hand, or rather upon an ardent desire of glorie: which wee must most easily believe, considering that he rejected the Embassadors of the Britaines, who having intelligence of his designement, repaired unto him, and promised to put in hostages, and to become obedient to the Roman Empire.

But his entrance into the Island, I will compendiously set down, even in his own very words: Considering the coasts, ports, and landing places of Britaine, were not well knowne unto Cæsar, he sent C. Volusenus before with a galley, to discover what he might: who, having taken what view of the countrey hee could in five daies space, returned. In the meantime, the resolution of Cæsar being made knowne unto the Britans by merchants, many particular States sent their Embassadors to him into Gallia, promising both to put in pledges,

also to submit themselves unto the Roman Empire. Having then exhorted these to continue in that mind still, he sent them home backe againe, and together with them Comius of Arras, a man in those countreys of great authoritie, (for the * Atrebatens had before time started out of Gaule, and planted themselves there) to perswade the said Cities and States to accept of the friendship and protection of the people of Rome. No sooner was hee set a foot on shore, but the Britaines cast him into prison and hung him upon him. Meane while, Cæsar having gotten together and put in readinesse about fourescore ships of burden, for the transporting of two Legions, and eightene others besides, which hee appointed for the * Morini at the third watch, and a * The coast of Picardy, sent out to sea from the countrey of the * Morini at the third watch, and at the fourth houre of the day arrived upon the coast, at an unfit landing place: the billes lay so steepe over the sea, that from the higher ground a dart or javelin might be cast upon the shore beneath. Having therefore at one time both wind and tide with him, hee weighed anchor, and sailed eight miles from that place unto a plaine and open shore, where hee rid at anchor. But the Britaines perceiving the Romans determination, sent horse and chariots before, and there kept the Romans from landing. Here the Romans exceeding much distressed; For, the ships were so great, that they could not ride nere the shore, where the sea was ebbe: the souldiers in strange and unknowne places, being then with heauey armour, were at one instant to leape downe of necessitie from those tall ships, withall to stand amid the very billowes, and to fight with their enemies: whereas contrariwise the Britaines were perfect in the knowledge of those places, lightly appointed, as being all parts of their bodies at libertie, fought either from the dry shore where they had footing, or wading not farre into the water. Hereupon the Romans being terrified, behaved not themselves with the like courage and alacritie as before time. But after that Cæsar caused the Gallies to be remoored from those hulkes, to bee rowed and laid against the open side of the Britaines, and so from thence the enemye to be beaten backe, and displaced with slings, ordinance, and shot of arrowes; the Britans being troubled with the strange forme of those Gallies, the stirring of the Oares, and the ununsual kind of their engines, recoiled. Then the Eagle-bearer of the tenth Legion, earnestly beseeching the Gods, that it might fall out happily for the Legion: Leape downe, quoth he, my fellow souldiers, unlesse ye will forsake your standard and betray it into the enemies hands: For mine owne part, I will bee sure to doe my devoir both to the common weale and also to my Generall: so forthwith hee cast himselfe into the sea; and began to advance the * Eagle against the enemye: so, all the rest followed hard at his heeles (But if we believe * Julian, Cæsar himselfe was the first that came downe from his ship). The fight on both parts was very eager. The Romans encombred with their heauey armor and weapons, tossed with the waves, were not able to get any firme footing; and put out of array, were wonderfully troubled; untill the time as Cæsar had caused the ship-boats, pinnaces and smaller vessels to bee manned with souldiers; and when he saw need of helpe sent them to rescue such as were overboard. As soone as the Romans got footing on the dry land, they made head together, and forced the Britaines and put them to flight: but they were not able to follow them in chase, want of the horsemen, that were not arrived in the Island. The Britaines being overcome in battell, presently dispatched Embassadors unto Cæsar to treat of peace, and to deliver with themselves the foresaid Comius of Arras; whom they had detained bound in prison, and withall, laid the fault upon the multitude, and excused all by their owne ignorance. Hee soon pardoned them, and commanded hostages to be delivered unto him: which they readily performed in part, and gave their word to bring in the rest. Thus was peace concluded four daies after that Cæsar was landed in Britaine.

* Atrebatens.
Those of At-
ras, and the
territories a-
bout it.* The coast
of Picardy.* That is the
maine stan-
dard.
* In Cæsaribus.

At the same time, those eightene ships which transported the horsemen, approaching so neere the coast of Britanny that they were within view, by reason of a suddaine tempest that rose, were cast upon the west part of the Island: from whence with much ado they recovered the continent of France. In the same night also it hapned, that the Moone being in full, and the tides very high, both the Gallies which were drawne up to the shore, were shaken with the tide, and the ships of burden also that lay at anchor, so shaken with the tempest, that they became altogether unserviceable. This being knowne to the Princes of Britaine, when they understood also, that the Romans now wanted horsemen, shipping, and provision

provision of corne, they rebelled and resolved to cut off their provision of grain suspecting that which fell out indeed, brought corne daily out of the fields into his camp with the timber and other stuffe of those twelve ships which were most weather beaten and dismembred, repaired the rest. While these things were in action, the seventh Legion sent out to fetch in corne, and busie in reaping, the Britains suddenly set upon, and so the horsemen and chariots all at once, encompassed them round about.

Assedart, Chariotiers.

The manner of their fight from out of these chariots, is thus, as I related a little First, they ride up and downe into all parts, and cast their darts; and with the vehemence of the horses, and rattling of the wheeles, often times disorder the ranks, and have wound themselves betwene any troups of horsemen, they forsake their chariots and fight on foot. In the meane time the guiders of the chariots, drive a little a side out of the way, and place their chariots so, as that if the other chance to bee overcharged with multitude of enemies, they might have an easie passage unto them againe. Thus they performe all their fights the nimble motion of horsemen, and the firme stabilitie of footmen: with daily practise & exercise, that in the declivity of a steepe hill, they could stay the in the very full carriere, quickly turn short, & moderate their pace, run along the beam of the Chariot, stand upon the yoke and harness of the horses, yea, and from thence thrice into their chariots againe. But by the coming of Caesar to rescue them in so good time, the Romans took heart afresh, and the Britains stood still, who having conceived good hope of themselves for ever, presuming upon the small number of the Roman forces, together with the scarcitie of corne among them, had assembled a great power, and were come into the camp of Caesar. But he received them even before the campe with a battell, put them to many of them, and burnt their houses far and neare. The same day came messengers from the Britains to Caesar, intreating peace, which they obtained: upon condition, that they should bring the number of their hostages, whom he commanded to be brought into Gaul. And after, because the * Aquinox was at hand, hee put to sea, hoised saile from Britaine, brought all his ships safe unto the continent of France. And thither, two onely of all the of Britaine sent hostages unto him, the rest neglected it. These exploits thus performed on the relation of Caesars Letters, the Senate decreed a solemne procession for the twentieth daies: although he gained nothing to himselfe, nor to Rome, but the glorious an expedition enterprized.

* In Autumn or September, when daies and nights are equall.

Dio. lib. 39.

The yeare next ensuing, Caesar having gotten together a great fleet, for what was for convey of corne and victuals, and what with other private vessels that every one built for to serve his owne turne, there was 800. saile and above, and the same with five Legions, and 2000. horsemen, he launched from the port called * Iccius, ded his forces in that part of the Isle, where hee did the yeare before. Neither was enimie to be scene in the place. For albeit the Britains had bene there assembled with power, yet terrified with so huge a number of ships, they had secretly withdrawn selves into the upland country. Here Caesar encamped in a place convenient, and cohorts, and three hundred horsemen as a garrison or guard for his ships. Himselfe he might marched forward twelve miles, espied the enemies: who having gone forward as to the river, began to give battell: but beaten backe by the cavallery, they committed themselves into a wood, and there lay hid, as lodging in a place strongly fortified, both by nature and mans hand. But the Romans with a Testudo, or target-roofe, which they may mount that they raised against their fortifications, tooke the place, and drove them into the woods; neither followed they them with any long pursuit, for they were to fortifie the that very place.

* Neere Calai.

The next day, Caesar divided his forces into three regiments, and sent them out to sue the Britains: but straightwaies called them back againe, for that hee had intelligence by messengers of such a tempest at sea the night before, that his navie was fore beaten, and against another, and cast on shore. And thereupon himselfe in person returned to the land, and with the labour of ten daies haled them all up to land, and enclosed them and his together within one and the same fortification, and so goeth to the place from whence he returned. Thither also had the Britains assembled themselves with greater forces, and conduct of Cassivellaunus or Cassibelinus, unto whom, in a publike counsell of all the

Cassibelinus.

the whole government and managing of the warre was committed; whose cavallery and chariots together, gave the Romanes a sharpe conflict in their march, wherein many of the Brits lost their lives: But the Britans after some intermission of time, whiles the Romanes were busie in fortifying their campe, charged fiercely upon those that kept ward before the campe, unto whom when Caesar had sent for rescue two cohorts, and those the principall and choicest of two legions, they most boldly, and with full resolution, brake through the thickest of the enemies, and from thence retired in safety. The next morrow, the Britans bewed themselves here and there in small companies from the hills; but about noone they made an assault upon three legions, and all the horsemen sent out for to forage, yet beaten backe they were, and a great number of them slaine. Now by this time were all their auxilliary forces that had met together, departed; neither encountered they afterward the Romanes with their maine power. Caesar then marched with his army to the river Thames, and so to the confines of Cassivellaunus: Upon the farther banke of this river, yea and under the water, they had covertly sticke sharpe stakes, and embattelled themselves with a great power. But the Romanes went and waded over with such violence, notwithstanding they had but their heads cleere above the water, that the enemy was not able to endure the charge, but left the banke, and betooke themselves to flight: not skared, as Polyenus writeth, at the sight of an Elephant with a turret upon his backe.

The river Thames.

Cassivellaunus having now no courage to contend any longer, retained onely foure thousand Chariotiers with him, and observed the Romanes journeys: and so often as their horsemen went forth and strayed out in the fields for forage or booty, he sent out his chariots, and kept them from ranging all abroad. Meane while, the * Trinobantes submit themselves unto Caesar, and intreated that he would defend Mandubratius (whom Eutropius and Bede out of the Fragments of Suetonius now lost, call Androgorius, and our Britans Androgeus) from the oppression of Cassivellaunus, and send him unto them to be their soveraign. Of them Caesar required and received forty hostages, and corne for his army, and thereunto sent Mandubratius. Then the * Cenimagni, * Segontiaci, * Ancalites, * Bibroci and * Cassi, following the example of the Trinobantes yielded unto Caesar: By whom he understood, that Cassivellaunus his towne was not far off, fortified with woods and bogs: which as he assaulted in two severall places, the Britans flung out at a back-way: but many of them in their flight were taken and put to the sword.

Trinobantes: * Where now Essex and Middlesex lie. Mandubratius, who also is named Androgous. Now Suffolk, Norfolk, Cambridge, Huntingdon-shires.

Whiles these things were a doing, foure petty Kings that ruled Kent, to wit Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus and Segonais, by a mandate from Cassivellaunus did set upon the campe where the Romanes navy was kept, but by a sally that the Romanes made, they were driven backe: and Cingetorix one of the said Kings was taken prisoner. Then Cassivellaunus, having received so many losses, and troubled most of all with the revolt of the states, sent Embassadour to Caesar by Catus of * Arras, tending unto him a surrendry. Whereupon Caesar, being determined to winter in the continent of France, commanded pledges to be brought unto him, and imposed a yearly tribute that Britaine should pay unto the people of Rome. But withall he inhibited Cassivellaunus and commanded him to doe no harme either to Mandubratius or the Trinobantes. And thus with a great number of captives he embarked his army, and transported it backe at two severall passages. Thus much Caesar of his owne warre in Britaine.

* About Holeshot and Silchester. * The Hundred of Henly upon Thames. * The hundred of Bray and Caithow. * Atreba.

But Eutropius out of some writings of Suetonius now not extant, addeth thus much moreover. Scava one of Caesars souldiers, with foure other fellow servitors, crossed over sea before, in a small barke unto a rocke neere the Island, and by the reflow or ebbe of the Ocean the while, was there left. The Britans many in number set upon the Romanes being but few: howbeit the rest who here and there had been his companions returned in a ship: Scava tarieth behind still undanted, notwithstanding he was overlaid with darts from every side: First he made resistance with his pike or masie speare: and at length tooke him to his sword and fought alone with many of them. When he was weary and wounded, and had with all lost his helmet and target after many a stroke, with two habergeons he swum unto Caesars campe, and craved pardon of his Generall for his fool-hardy rashnesse: whom Caesar advanced to the honor and degree of a Centurion.

Scava.

When Caesar came first into this Isle, (as Cotas, one who then in the campe had the

D

Athens.

the second place, hath put downe in a Greeke Commentary of his, concerning the Romane Common-wealth) of such temperance he was, and so far short of the pomp of our age, that he had no more servants and attendants ordinarily in his domestick retinue, but three.

What time as Cæsar, saith Seneca, travelled into Britaine, and could not containe his owne felicitie within the Ocean, he heard that his daughter was departed this life, drawing with her a traine of publike calamities, But he passed over this griefe of heart as lightly as was wont all things else. Being returned with conquest out of Britaine, he dedicated unto *Venus genitrix* in her temple, a breast-plate made of British pearles. Some of his British prisoners, he appointed for services in the Theatre, and about these rich hangings of Tapestry there, wherein he had woven in colours his victories in Britaine. Which the Britans were wont, being themselves therein wrought, to remove and take away whereupon Virgill,

Purpureaq; intextitollant aulee Britanni.

Let Britans purple Tapestry rid, wherein themselves are wrought.

Neither were the Britans appointed to the ministeries, and offices onely about the Theatre, but also (I note it by the way) to the Emperors Lictor, as it appeareth manifestly by an antique inscription of this age, wherein there is made mention of a *De curio*, over the British Lictor-bearers. Of this victorie of Cæsar, an old Poet hath thus written:

Vix invicta viri reparata classe Britannos

Vicit, & hostiles Rheni compefcuit undas.

Lo here the mans undaunted heart! with navie rigged new,
He Britans vanquish'd, and fell waves of Rhene he did subdue.

Hitherto may be referred those verses also of Claudian, touching the valour of the Romanes.

*Nec stetit Oceano, remisq; ingressa profundum,
Vincendos alio quæsit in orbe Britannos.*

In Ocean rhode it rested not, nor put to sea for nought,
But Britads in their otherworld, for conquest sake it fought.

Moreover Cicero in a certaine Poemenow lost, which hee entituled *Quadrigas*, caried Cæsar in poetickall *Chariots* of triumph, through the midst of all praise and commendation, for his acts achieved in Britaine, as Ferrerius of Piemont perswaderth us: for thus he writeth, *Pingam Britanniam coloribus tuis, penecillo autem meo*, that is, *I will depaint Britaine in your colours, but with mine owne pencill.* Howbeit in the judgement of others, he terrified onely the Britans with a fortunate fight, or as Lucane (who nothing favoured the house of the Cæsars) wrote;

Territa quæsit ostendit terga Britannis.

He fought the Britans, and for feare to them his backe he shew'd.

And Tacitus a right grave and substantiall author, writeth, *That he discovered onely, but delivered not unto the Romanes, Britaine:* and Horace implieth, that he scant touched them at all, when to flatter Augustus, hee saith, *That the Britaine was not medled withall, in these words:*

Intactus Britannus ut descenderet

Sacrâ catenatus uia:

Or that the Britans heretofore not dealt withall in fight,
Might, chained now, the sacred street descend, in all mens fight.

And Propertius,

Te manet invictus Romano Marte Britannus.

The Britans yet unconquered by Romanes, stay for thee.

So farre it is off, that it should be true which Velleius Paternulus, a flattering Historian of the Emperours Court wrote, *Bis penetrata Britannia à Cæsare*, that is, twice Cæsar passed through Britaine, when as hee scarce made entry into it: For many yeeres after this entrance of Cæsar, this Island was left to the free government of their owne Kings, and used their owne Lawes.

Augustus

Augustus seemeth of purpose, and with good advise to have neglected Britaine, when as he called that * *Consilium*, as Tacitus saith, that is, *Politicie, or a point of state*, haply because it was thought the best pollicie, and safest for the State, *That the Romane Empire should be kept, and held within bounds*, to wit, the Ocean, the rivers Ister and Euphrates limites set by nature, to the end it might be a State *Adamantine*, (for so Augustus himselfe speaketh in *Julian*,) that is, invincible; and left, as a ship of exceeding great bulke, it might not possibly bee well governed and managed; but endangered through the owne unweldy hugeness to sinke anone, and fall downe at once, which usually befallerth unto over-great States: or, as Strabo is of opinion, he despised it, seeing neither any cause at all of feare, nor hope of much profit from the Britans; and yet it seemed, that no small dammage would be presented from other nations, lying round about the said Island. But what cause so ever it was, certes, after Iulius, and the edge of Romane armes turned upon the Common-wealth it selfe, Britaine was a long time forgotten, even in time of peace. Neverthelesse at last Augustus departed from Rome, with a purpose to transerre the warre into Britaine: At which verie time Iostatus framed this kinde of prayer unto the Goddesse Fortune at *Antium*.

Serves iturum Cæsarem in ultimos

Orbis Britannos.

Save Cæsar now that readie is, a journey long to take,

Against the Britans most remote, a conquest there to make.

But after he was come into Gaule, the Britans sent Embassadors unto him to crave peace: and verily the British Princes and Potentates, having by Embassages and dutifull services obtained his amity, dedicated presents and oblations in the Capitol: and brought the whole Island in a manner to be familiar unto the Romanes, and as it were their owne: so as they could endure taxes and imposts, which now are nothing grievous unto them, raised out of such merchandise and commodities as are shipped to and from out of Gaule and Britannie: and those be Ivory workes, Bits and bridles, chaines and wreathes, * *vessels of the mettall * Electrum* and of glasse, with other base and common wares of like sort. And therefore there needes no garrison for that Island. For it would require *one Legion at the least, and some horsemen*; if tributes were to be levied from thence: and the said tributes would but countervaile the charges of maintaining a garrison there: for of necessity by imposing a tribute, the revenues coming by tollage and poundage and such like imposts, would be lesse: and if any violent course were used, some perill or other must be looked for. The yeare following likewise, Augustus intended a second expedition into Britain, because there was some variance about the Covenants: but by occasion of some insurrection made in Spaine by the Cantabri and others, that journey was staid. Neither hath any man reason to believe Landinus, or Servius, or Philargyrus, who have recorded that Augustus triumphed over the Britans, and that out of these verses of Maro.

Et duo rapta manu diverso ex hoste trophaa,

Bigâ triumphatas utroq; a littore gentes.

And trophies twaine caught by strong hand from divers enemies hoasts,
And nations twice triumphed of likewise from both the * coasts.

Surely, in regard of that surrendry of the Britans, Horace wrote thus;

Cælo tonantem credimus Iovem

Regnare: Præsens Divus habebitur

Augustus, adjectis Britannis

Imperio, gravibusq; Persis.

We thought before, that Jupiter in heaven above doth raigne
For thundering there: but now shall be on earth Augustus here
Reputed God, because he did to Romanes Empire gaine
Both Britans and fierce Persians, of whom they stood in feare.

Tiberius nothing transported with an inordinate desire of extending the Empire, seemeth to have rested in that Counsell of Augustus; For hee brought out a booke written with Augustus his owne hand, wherein was contained the whole wealth and

D 2

estate

In the Gardens of the Cardinall de Capento.

Strabo.

* *Electrina.*
* A pale and whitish gold.

* Of East and West.

Di.

Tiberius.

estate of the common-weale, what number as well of Romane Citizens as Allies were in arms, how many Navies, Kingdomes and Provinces, what tributes and imposts [belonged to the State] with a resolution annexed thereto of containing the Empire within the bounds. What advice and resolution of Augustus contented him so well, as Tacitus reporteth, that he would attempt nothing in Britaine, nor maintaine any garrison or deputies there. But whereas Tacitus reckoneth up the number of Legions, and what coasts or countries they defended at that time, he maketh no mention at all of Britain. And yet it seemeth that the Britans entertained amity with the Romans. For when as at the same time Germanicus failed the Ocean, some of his company by force of tempest driven to this Iland, were by the Princes thereof sent backe againe.

C. Caligula.

That Caius Caesar cast in his mind to enter this Iland, it is certaine: but that by his shittie braine, sudden repentance, and wonderfull attempts against Germany, it came to nothing. For to the end that he might terrifie Britain and Germany (over which he hovered) with the fame of some mighty piece of worke, he made a bridge between Baie and the Piles of Puteoli, three miles, and 600. paces in length. But having achieved no greater exploit, than taken to his mercy *Adminius* the sonne of *Cinobellinus* King of the Britans, who being by his father banished had fled over sea with small power and traine about him, he sent magnificent and glorious letters to Rome, as if the whole Ile had beene yielded up into his hands: warning and wishing the posts ever anon, to ride forward in their wagon, directly into the market place and the Curia: and in wise to deliver the said misdeeds unto the Consuls, but in the temple of Mars, and therein frequent assembly of the Senate.

Suetonius in Caligula,

Adminius,

After this to the Ocean he marcheth, as if he minded to translate the warre over into Britaine: Where even upon the very shore he embattelled his souldiers: himselfe tooke scaine Galley, and after he had lancht out a little way from the land, returned againe, and then mounting up an high pulpit, sate him downe, gave his souldiers the signall of battell, and commanded the trumpets to sound: and soon a sudden charged them to gather cockles, muskles, and other small shell-fishes. Having gotten these spoiles (as one indeed wanting enemies spoiles for to adorne a Trophye) he waxed proud as if he had conquered the Ocean: and having rewarded his souldiers, he brought some of those cockles, and the other shell fish to Rome, that there also he might shew the bootie which he had gotten. In token and memoriall of this brave victory he raised an high turret, out of which, as from a watch-tower, there might blaze all night long, lights and fires for the better direction of ships at sea in their course. The ruins whereof are sometimes seene at a low water in the shore of Holland, and by the people there inhabiting is called *Britenbuus*. Who also finde oftentimes stones engraven with letters: of which one had these Characters, C. C. P. F. which they (I wote not how truly) expound thus *Caius Caligula Pharum Fecit*, that is, *Caius Caligula the Pharum made*. But of this watch-tower more at large, I will write in my discourse of *British Islands*.

Dio.

* Watch-tower.

Claudius.

Afterwards, the inland parts of Britaine, wasted rather with *Civil* warres and factions, than by the force of the Romans, after sundry overthrowes and slaughters of both sides, came at the length by little and little under the subjection of the Romans. For, while the States fought severally one by one, they were all vanquished: running so one upon anothers destruction, that untill they fell to utter confusion, they had not in grosse, a feeling of the particular losses that each one sustained. And thus farre forth also wrought ambition in them, that many became false and disloyall, yea, and some fled from their country-men, making choise of the Romans protection, swearing allegiance unto them, and practising by all meanes to subject their native country, unto their government. Among whom the principall was one *Bericus*, who moved and persuaded *Claudius* the Emperour, to give the attempt upon Britaine, which none assaied to doe since the time of *Julius Caesar*, and which then was up in a broile and commotion, for that the said Fugitives were not rendered againe unto them. Whereupon he commanded *Aulus Plautius*, at that time *Prator*, to goe with an Army into Britaine: who had much ado to withdraw the said army out of *Gaul*, as being much dissatisfied to make warre without the compasse of the world; and therefore drawing out the

Bericus.

A. Plautius.

Dio.

time in length with many delays. But when *Narcissus* sent from *Claudius*, began to mount up into the Tribunal of *Plautius*, and to make a speech unto the host the souldiers more incensed with indignation straightwaies cried all at once, *Io. Saturnalia* (for the manner is of *Slaves*, during the *Saturnalia*, to celebrate that festivall time in the habit of their Masters) and so presently with willing hearts followed *Plautius*. The forces being divided into three parts, for feare lest if they arrived all in one place, they might be put by their landing; carried backe by a gale of wind, found some trouble in their passage: yet taking heart againe, because as they sailed along, there was seene a fire drake in the Element shooting from the East the West, they were conveyed over into the Island, and no man stopped them. For the Britans supposing verily, in regard of those things which I have related, that they would not come, had not assembled themselves: and therefore without any conflict, they lay hidden within bogs, marshes, and woods, in hope by lingring delays to wearie the Romans, that they should be forced without any service exploited to retire hence, like as it had befallen unto *Julius Caesar*. Wherefore, *Plautius* tooke great paines in seeking of them out. After he had found them (now they were not free States, but ruled under divers Kings) first he discomfited *Caractacus*, afterward *Togodumnus*, the sonnes of *Cunobellinus*, for their father was deceased. When these were fled, part of the *Bodunni*, who were subject to *Catuellani*, he received into his protection: and having left a garrison there, he went forward to a certaine river: but because the Britans thought the Romans could not possibly passe over without a bridge, they lay encamped more carelessly on the farther side thereof. *Plautius* therefore, set the Germanes, who were wont to wade through the most swift and violent rivers, even in their very armour. These comming upon the enemies at unawares, hurt not a man of them, but wounded the horses onely that drew their chariots, who when they were troubled and disordered, the men were not able to sit them. Then sent hee *Flavius Vespasianus*, (who afterwards became Emperour) and his brother *Sabinus* with him as Lieutenant, who likewise having passed over the river, surprised very many of the *Barbarians*, and slew them. Neither fled the rest away, but the morrow after joyned battell, where in the victorie remained doubtfull: untill such time as *C. Sidius Geta*, at the very point to have beene taken prisoner by the enemies, vanquished them so, as that for his good service, triumphall honours were granted unto him, although he had not been Consul. From thence the *Barbarians* retired themselves to the river *Thames*, where it dischargeth it selfe into the sea, and with the slowe thereof riseth high.

* A freed, servant of Claudius.

* Otherwise to *Dunelm*, *Glocestershire*, and *Oxfordshire*.
* Or *Catuechani*, that is, *Buckinghamshire*, and *Hartfordshire*.

This river they soone passed over, as being skilfull of such places as would afford them firme footing, and were passable fords. And the Romans in pursuing them were in danger. Soone after, when the Germanes had swum over a second time whiles some of them, passed over at a bridge, higher up the river, environing the *Barbarians* on every side, they made a great slaughter of them: but when unadvisedly they followed after the rest, they fell upon blind bogs and lost many of their men. Hereupon, and for that the Britans by occasion of *Togodumnus* his death abated not their courage one whit, but rather prepared themselves to fight the more fiercely in revenge of his death, *Plautius* for feare went no farther: but setting a guard to keep what he had gotten, sent for *Claudius*, having a warrant and commandement so to doe, in case he were overlaid with any extraordinary violence. For which expedition among much other Equipage, *Elephants* also were gotten together and prepared. *Claudius* advertised of these newes, committed the affaires of the City, and the souldiers likewise to the charge of *Vitellius* (upon whom, as also upon himselfe, he had conferred a Consulship for six moneths). Then went he downe in person by water from Rome to *Ostia*, and so from thence sailed to *Marshills*: and travelling the rest of the way partly by land and partly by sea came to the Ocean, embarked, crossed the channell into Britaine, and went directly forward to his forces expecting him by the *Thames* side. When he had received them into his owne charge, and passed over the river, he fought a set battell with the *Barbarians*, assembled against his comming, and obtained victory. Then tooke he in *Camalodunum* the roiall seat of *Cunobellinus*, and many thence he drave, others upon their yielding he tooke to mercy. For these acts performed, divers times he was stiled Emperator, a thing directly against the Romanes custome; for, lawfull it is not in one war to assume that name oftner than once. Furthermore, *Claudius* disarmed the Britans, and committed as

Elephants.

* Now *Maldon*.

* That had married his daughters.

well them to be governed, as the rest to be subdued, unto Plautius. Himselfe made speede Rome, sending before him Pompeius and Silanus his * sonnes in Law, with tidings of the victorie. Thus much Dio.

Howbeit Suetonius reporteth, that part of the Iland he tooke into his hands upon submission without any battell or bloodshed. Sixteene daies or thereabout himselfe stayed in Britain: in which time he remitted unto the Gentry and Nobility of the Britans the confiscation of their goods: For which benefit of his, they frequented his temple and adored him as a God. Thus returned he to Rome, in the first moneth after that he went forth from thence.

So great a matter it was and of such consequence to have conquered even so small a parcell of Britain, that the Senate thereupon decreed in the honor of Claudius, yearly Games, triumphall Arches both in Rome and also at * *Gessoriacum* in Gaul, and most honorable and stately triumph: to the beholding whereof the governors of Provinces also, yea and certaine banished persons were permitted to come into Rome: the Navall coronet was fixed upon the loure of the Palace, as it were the ensigne of the British sea subdued by him: the Provinces brought in Crownes of gold, and * Gallia Comara one above the rest, waighing 9. pounds: and the hither part of Spaine another of 7. pound weight. He mounted up into the Capitoll by the staires on his knees, supported and heaved up by his sonnes in Law on either side. He entered in triumphing wife the * Adriaticke sea, embarked in a vessell more like to some exceeding great house than a ship. Unto his wife *Messalina* was allowed by the Senate the highest place to sit in, as also to ride in a Carroch, or hanging coach. After this, he set forth triumphall plaies and games, having taken upon him for that purpose the Consular office and authoritie. The solemnities were exhibited at once in two Theatres, and many times when hee was gone aside from the fight, others had the charge thereof. Horse runnings for the prize hee promised as many as those daies would admit: Howbeit above ten there were not: for betwene every course of horses, Beares were killed, champions performed their devoirs, and choyce boies sent for out of Asia danced the warlike dance in armor. Moreover, upon Valerius Asiaticus, Julius Silanus, Silius Geta, and others, in regard of this conquest, hee heaped Triumphall ornaments. He suffered Licinius Crassus Frugi to follow after himselfe in this triumph, mounted upon a trapped courser with a rich caparison, and arraigned in a roabe of Date tree worke. Upon *Posidius* the Eunuch hee bestowed a speare staffe without an head: upon C. Gavius, cheines, bracelets, horse-trappings, and a coronet of gold, as is to be seene in an ancient marble at Taurinum.

In the meane time Aulus Plautius went on with the reliques of this war, and sped so well in his battels, that Claudius passed a decree, that he should ride in pety triumph ovant: and when he was entred into the City, himselfe went to meet him, giving him the right hand all the way both going and coming. And Vespasian even then shewed by the destinies, whom Claudius assumed unto him to beare a part of this British war, partly under the conduct of Claudius himselfe, and partly of Plautius, fought thirty battels with the enemy: two most mighty nations, and above twenty townes together, with the Isle of * Wight he subdued. For which worthy exploits, he received triumphall ornaments, and within a short space two facerottall dignities, with a Consulship beside which hee bare the two last moneths of the year. Thus also served here in quality of a Tribune under his father, with exceeding commendation for his industry and valour, (for valiantly he delivered his father when he was besieged): and no lesse report of his modest carriage: as appeareth by a number of his Images and titles to them annexed, thorowout the Provinces of Germanie and Britaine. The rest of the Occurrences which hapned in Britaine afterward unto the very latter end of Domitian, Tacitus, who best can do it, will declare by his owne words to this effect.

P. Ostorius Propator in Britan was welcomed at his first landing with troubles and tumults. The enemies ranged all over the Allies country, and used so much the greater violence, for that they thought the new capitaine was unacquainted with the army, (the win-

* Bolegne.

Plinie.

* France.

* Venice Gulfe.

Vespasian.

* Vellam.
Sueton. in Vespasian. cap. 4.

Sueton. in Tit. cap. 4.

P. Ostorius Propator.

ter also being now began) would not come forth to encounter. But he knowing well that the first successes alwaies breed either feare or confidence, gathered with all speed his readiest cohorts, advanced toward the enemy, and having slaine those which made head against him, pursued the rest that were dispered for feare they should joine againe: and left an basefull and faithlesse peace might give neither capitaine nor souldier any rest, he went about to disarme as many of them as he suspected, and by raising forts and setting garrisons upon the two rivers * *Anfona* and the * *Severn* to restrain and hem in the Britans. Which the Icenis first of all refused, a strong nation and unshaken with battels, because of their owne motion they had sought our alliance and amity. And at their instigation, the people adjoining chose a place to fight in, compassed about with a rude and rustical rampire, having a narrow entrance of purpose to hinder the coming in of horsemen. This sense the Romane capitaine, albeit he had under his conduct the power of his allies, alone without the maine forces of the Legion assaiesed to breake thorow: And having bestowed his cohorts in ranks setteth the troupes of horsemen in like readinesse to performe their service. Then after the signall given, they broke open the said rampire, and disordered the enemies encombred and penned within their owne hold. And they knowing in their owne conscience they were no better than rebels, and seeing all passages for escape stopped up, shewed great valour and courage in defending themselves. In which fight M. Ostorius the lieutenants sonne deserved the honor of saving a Citi-

zen. Upon the discomfiture and slaughter of these Icenis, they that wavered betwene warre and peace became settled and were quiet: and so the army was led against the * *Cangi*. Whose territory they wasted, harried and spoiled all over: whiles the enemies durst not shew themselves in the field, or if privily by stealth they attempted to cut off the taile of our armie as they marched, they paid for their craft and deceit. Now by this time were the Romanes come well neere to the sea coast that looketh toward Ireland, when certaine troubles and discords sprung up among the * the Brigantes, brought their leader backe, being certainly resolved to attempt no new matters, before he had felled the old. But as for the Brigantes, some few being put to death that began first to take armes, he pardoned the residue, and all were quieted. The * *Silures* could neither by cruelty nor faire meanes bee reclaimed but they would needs war: and therefore no remedy there was but to keepe them under with garrisons of Legionary souldiers. Which to performe more easily, the colonie called *Camalodunum* consisting of a strong company of old souldiers was brought into the countries by conquest subdued, for succour and safeguard against Rebels, and an inducement to traine the Associates to observe the lawes. Certaine Cities and States were granted by way of Donation to King *Cogidunus*, according to the ancient custome of the people of Rome, that they might have even Kings to be instruments of servitude and abridalome.

Then went the Romanes from thence against the *Silures*, who besides their owne stoutnesse trusted much in the strength of *Caractacus*, a man whom many dangerous adventures which he had waded thorow, and as many prosperous exploits by him achieved, had so lifted up, that he carried the reputation and preheminence above all the British Commanders. But he in subtilcraft, and knowledge of the deceitfull waies, having the advantage of us, though otherwise weaker in strength of souldiers, translated the warre into the country of the * *Ordovices*: and here, joining to him as many as feared our peace, resolveth to bazarde the last chance, having chosen a place for the battell, where the coming in, and going forth, with all things else might be in commodious to us. But for his very advantageous. Then, against the high hills, and wheresoever there was any easie passage, or gentle access, he stopped up the way with heaps of stones raised in manner of a rampier: withall, there ranne hard by a river having a doubtful foord, and the severall companies of his * best souldiers had taken their standing before the fortifications. Besides all this, the leaders of every nation went about, exhorted and encouraged their men, by making lesse all causes of feare, and kindling in them good conceits of hope, with all other motives and inducements to war. And verily *Caractacus* bestirring himself, and courting from place to place, protested, That this was the day, this the battell, which should begin either the recovery of their libertie forever, or else perpetuall bondage. And here, he called upon his ancestors by name, who had chased *Caesar* the Dictator from hence, through whose valour they were freed from the Romane axes, and tribunes, and enjoyed still the bodies of their

Anfonas, or *Anfonas*.
* The Nerin at Northampton.
* *Sabrina*.
Icenis.

Cangi.
Cheshire men as some think.

Brigantes.
Yorkshire, Lancashire, Bithoprick of Durham, Westmorland, Cumberland.
* Southwales, as Herefordshire, Radnorshire, Brecknockshire, Monmouthshire, and Glamorganshire.
Camalodunum a colonie.

Caractacus.

* *Ordovices*.
Northwales, as Montgomeryshire, Merionethshire, Carnarvanshire, Denbighshire, and Flintshire.
* *Majorum*, or *Nationum*, that is, of Nations or States.
* *Majorum*, or *Nationum*, of the Nations.

their wives, and children undefiled. As he uttered these and such like speeches, the general multitude of the souldiers made a noise about him, and bound themselves by oath every one according to the religion of his countrey, that they would not give way and yeeld; for any weapons or wounds whatsoever. This courageous and cheerefull alacrity of theirs, astonished the Roman captaine, considering the river just before his face, the rampier beside which they had cast up the high hills over their heads, nothing but terrible, and full of defendants, put him into a wondrous fright. Nevertheless the souldiers called hard for battell, crying still, that there was nothing which valour could not overcome. The Prefects and Tribunes also with like words, much enforced the ardour and courage of the whole armie. Then Ostorius having viewed round about what places were unpassable, and what yeelded passage, advanceth forward his men in boiling heat of choler, and easily wadeth over the river. Being come to the banke and rampier aforesaid, so long as the volley of darts continued on both sides, our men received more wounds, and in greater number were slaine. But after that by making of a target rooffe of fence, those rude and ill fashioned joyns of stones were plucked a sunder, and the fronts of both armies came close to hand-strokes, without ods; the Barbarians fled to the hill tops. But thither also, as well the heavie corslets, as the light armed souldiers brake in: whiles these shot their darts and javelins at them, the other preased thicke and close together upon them. Contrariwise the Britans ranks were broken and disordered, as who had neither head peece nor coat of fence. If they thought to resist our auxiliarie forces, they were beaten downe with the arming swords & masie pikes of the Legionarie souldiers: if they turned to make head against them, they were slaine with the Speares, and bastard swords of the auxiliaries. A noble and renowned victory this was. The wife and daughter both of Caractacus, were taken prisoners, his brethren also yeelded themselves. Himselfe, as generally there is no trusting to succour in adversitie, craving defence and protection of Cartismandua Queene of the Brigantes, was by her taken, bound with yrons, and delivered to the Conquerours, nine yeeres after the warre began in Britaine. Whereupon the same of him being carried over into the Islands, and spread abroad throughout the Provinces adjoining, was famous also in Italie: in so much as they desired to see who he was that so many yeeres had defied and contemned our forces. Neither was the name of Caractacus meanly esteemed of at Rome. And Caesar whiles he extolled his one worth and honour, made the conquered Prince more glorious. For why, the people also was assembled and called, as to see a notable spectacle. The cohorts of the Emperours guard stood all armed in good order within an open plaine lying before their campe. Then as King Caractacus his vassals and dependants marched before, the caparisons, chaines, and whatsoever he had wonne in wars against strangers, were brought in a shew: then, his brethren, wife and daughter: and lastly all himselfe was shewed to the people. The prayers of all the rest were by reason of feare, base, and nothing favouring of nobilitie: but Caractacus, neither hanging downe his head, nor with words craving any mercy, when he stood before the Emperours tribunall, spake in this wise.

If my moderation in prosperity had beene as great as my nobility and fortune was, I had come rather as a friend into this City, than a Captive: neither would you have disdained to receive me with covenants of peace, being a Prince descended of Noble Progenitors, and a commander over many nations. My present state, as it is to me dishonorable, so to you it is magnificent. I have had horses, men, armour and wealth: what marvell if against my will I have forgone them all? For if yee will be rulers over all men, it followeth that all men must abide servitude. If presently I had yeelded and been delivered into your hands; neither had my fortune nor your glorie been renowned: and oblivion would have followed my punishment. But if you save me alive, I shall be an example of your clemencie forever.

Upon these words Caesar pardoned him, his wife and brethren. And they being all bound, did their reverence likewise unto Agrippina, (who sat a loft not far off in another high seat to be seene) giving her the like praises and in the same degrees of stile as they did the Emperor himselfe. Surely a strange and unexampled precedent among all our ancestors, that a woman should sit and command the Romane ensignes. But shee carried herselfe as a fellow and associate in the Empire, gotten by her progenitors. After this, the Lords of the Senate were called together, who made long and glorious discourses as touching the captivity of Caractacus. Neither was this, as they affirmed, lesse honorable, than when Publius

Scipio

What became of his daughters, Tacitus?

Scipio shewed Siphax: Luc. Paulus Perfes, or whosoever else exhibited, conquered Kings unto the people. As for Ostorius, decreed it was hee should be honoured with triumphall ornaments.

These conquests of Britain, writers have numbred among the most famous monuments and testimonies of the Romans prowess. And thereupon Seneca writeth thus; Claudius might make his boast that he first vanquished the Britans: for Iulius Caesar did but shew them only to the Romans. And in another place, writing of the same Claudius,

Ille Britannos
Vltra noti
Littora Ponti,
Et caruleos
Scuta Brigantes,
Dare Romuleis
Colla catenis
Iussit, Et ipsum
Nova Romana
Iura securis
Tremere Oceanum.

The Britans, those, that seated are beyond the knowne sea coast,
And Brigants with blew-painted shields, he forced with his hoast,
To yeeld their necks in Romane chaines as captive to be led,
And even the Ocean this new power of Romane axe to dread.

And Seneca the Tragick poet in his Octavia, verified in this manner concerning Claudius,

Cuiq; Britanni
Terga dedere, ducibus nostris
Amic ignoti jurisq; sui.

And unto whom the Britans shew'd their backs, who erst unknowne
To all our Captaines liv'd by lawes and customs of their owne.

And in the same tragedie, for that he had passed over the Thames,

En qui ora Tamisis primus posuit jugum
Ignorantis classibus textis freta:
Interque gentes barbaras tutus fuit,
Et sœva maria; conjugis scelere--Occidis.

Behold, who first the mouth and coast of Thamis, did subdew
And spread with mightie fleets those Firths, the like that never never knew:
With nations rude, in raging seas, who lived safe and sound,
By wicked hand of cursed wife his death at home he found.

Semblably Egesippus, saith thus of Claudius, Witnesse here is Britaine, which living without the world, is by the might of Romans reduced into the world. Whom the former age knew not, the Romans victory hath discovered: and even they now are become servants, who knew not what servitude was: being born only for themselves, and alwaies free unto themselves: even they who being by the interflow of the sea divided from the power of their superiors, could not stand in feare of them whom they knew not. A greater matter therefore it was, to have passed over to the Britans, than to have triumphed over the Britans. And in another place, Britaine also, which lieth hid amidst the waves, he gained to the Roman Empire by force of armes: by the triumph over which Island, Rome was thought to be more welthy. Claudius reputed more wary and politick, and Nero esteemed more fortunate. Also in another passage, which deserveth most of all to be put downe here, The very Elements also, have done homage to the name of the Romans: to whom likewise even the round world hath sworn allegiance already, which is enclosed and bounded with the Romane Empire: and in one word is of many called the ROMANE WORLD. For if we search into the truth, the whole army it selfe is comprised within the Empire of the Romans: upon which the Roman valour, having gone forward still beyond the Ocean, hath sought for it selfe another world, and in Britaine an Island remote from the confines of Lands hath found out for a selfe another possession. To conclude, they who are denied

denied the benefit, not onely of the free burgesie of Rome but in manner also of all countries with men, are directed and awarded thither, there to dwell as persons banished out of the world. The Ocean now hath reined up his bounds: For the Romans know how to seeke into his inner secret parts. And Iosephus in the person of Titus, speaketh thus to the Iewes: What greater wall and barre than the Ocean? wherewith the Britans being fenced and inclosed, doe adore the Romans forces.

Moreover, as touching this argument, that renowned Ioseph Scaliger, in his C. taleets, hath saved and freed from rust and mouldineffe certaine verses of a most learned Poet though unknown: which, because they are not every where to bee found, I will not thinke much of my pains to put down: for they are as good as good may be. Now, that they be fundry Epigrams, and therefore distinctly to be considered, Iohn Obsopæus the German, a passing learned young man, hath out of ancient (manuscript) parchments very lately, enformed me:

*Ausonius nunquam tellus violata triumphis.
Ictus tu, Caesar, fulmine procubuit.
Oceanusq; tuas ultra se * respicit aras;
Qui finis mundo est * non erit imperiis.*

That Land whose honour never felt, by Roman triumph, wrong
By dint late of thy thunder-bolt, & Cæsar, lay along:
The Ocean seeth * beyond it selfe thine altars, to adore,
* That, will * not bound their Empire, now, which did the world before.

*Victa prius nulli, jam jam spectata triumpho,
Illobata tuos gens jacet in titulos.
Fabula visa diu, mediæq; resonat apertæ
Liberæ victori jam modò colla dedit.
Euphrates ortus, Rhenus * incluserit Arctos;
Oceanus medium venit in imperium.*

A people erst untouch'd, unfoil'd, and conquered of none,
Late scene in triumph, to thy stile hath title added one:
Though but a tale long time, as hid in mid-sea past all view,
To Victors yoke now yeelded necke, that never bondage knew.
How ever Rhene shuts up the North, Euphrates Easterne land,
It skills not, now that th' Ocean sea is whole at thy command.

*Liberæ non hostem, non passa Britannia Regem,
Aeternum nostro quæ procul orbe jacet;
Felix adversis, & sorte oppressa secunda
Communis nobis, & tibi, Cæsar, erit.*

Britaine most free, which enemy and Monarch never felt,
Far distant from this world of ours, wherein we ever dwell;
An happy state in adverse times, but wonne in prosperous dayes,
Shall be, & Cæsar, common now to thee and us alwaies.

*Ultima cingebat Tiberis tua, Romule, Regna:
Hic tibi finis erat, religiose Numæ.
Est tua, Dive, tuum sacra potentia cælo
Extremum citra constitit Oceanum.
At nunc Oceanus geminos interluit orbis
Pars est imperij, terminus ante fuit,*

Thy Kingdomes all, & Romulus, Tiberis sometime did bound

*Antonius Del-
via readerh o-
therwise in
some places:
the divers
readings
therefore, I
have here set
to.
* Prospicit,
that is, seeth
before him.
* Nunc, now.
Or before,
* prospicit if
respicit, be-
hinde.
* Non, if Nunc,
read thus.
* That will be
now thine
Empires
bound,
which was of
world before.
* reclusat.*

Past it, & Numa prince devout, thou had'st no foot of ground:
And even thy power right sacred now, and heavenly thought it be,
O Cæsar, staid within precinct of thine owne Ocean sea:
But now the Ocean interflow, s two worlds, by double shore,
And parcell of our Empire is, which was the bound before.

*Mars pater, & nostra gentis tutela Quirine,
Et magno positus Cæsar uterq; Polo.
Cernitis ignotos Latia sub lege Britannos,
Sol citra nostrum flectitur imperium.
Ultima cesserunt ad aperto claustra Profundo
Et jam Romano * cingimur Oceano.*

* Cingitur.

O father Mars & Romulus, Protector of our race,
And Cæsars both, late defied, in heav'n who have your place.
The Britans erst unknown, ye see the Latian lawes embrace
And short of our large Seignory the Sun turnes in his race.
The furthest frontiers soone gave way, when seas once opened were
The Romane Ocean now it is, wherein enclosed we are.

*Opponis frustra rapidum Germania Rhenum,
Euphrates prodest nil tibi, Parthe fugax.
Oceanus jam terga dedit, nec pervius ulli
Cæsareos fates, imperiumq; tulit.*

In vaine opposeth thou for fence, swift Rhene, & Germany
Euphrates (Parthian) boots thee nought, thou that in fight dost flie.
For th' Ocean is already fled, which passable to none
Hath now the Cæsars government, and Romes rule undergone.

*Illa procul nostro semota, exclusaq; cælo,
* Alluitur nostrâ victa Britannia aqua,
Semota, & vasto diijuncta Britannia Ponto
Cinctaq; inaccessis horrida littoribus:
Quam fallax æstu circuit Oceanus.
Quam fallax æstu circuit Oceanus.
Brumalem sortita * plagam: quæ frigida semper
Præfulget stellis Arctos in occiduis.
Conspicitq; tuo devicta Britannia, Cæsar,
Subdidit insueto colla premenda iugo
Aspice, confundit populos imper via tellus,
Coniunctum, est quod adhuc orbis, & orbis erat,*

* Semoto.

* Plagam.

That Britain from our clime far set and thence excluded quite,
Conquered of late is washed yet, with water ours by right.
Britain, I say, far set apart, and by vast sea disjoin'd,
Wall'd with inaccessible banks and craggy cliffs behind;
Which father Nereus fenced had with billowes most invincible
And Ocean likewise compassed with ebs and flowes as fallible.
Britain that hath a wintry clime allotted for her fear,
Where cold North-Beaere shines alway bright with stars that never set
Even at thy sight and first approach & Cæsar soone subdu'd,
Submitted hath her necke to beare strange yoke of servitude.
Behold, the earth unpassable of nations makes commixtion,
What heretofore was world and world is now conjoined in one.

Now

Now let Tacitus proceed in his Story. Untill this time all went well with Ostorius. Soone after, his fortune stood in dolefull termes: either for that upon the displacing of *ractacus*, as if thereby all had bene subdued and the warre ended, the Romans intended so carefully their militarie service: or because the enemies in compassion of so puissant a man were more fervently enflamed to revenge. For they environed the Camp-master and Legionary cohorts which were left behind to build fortresses in the *Silures* country: And the villages and forts next adjoining had not speedily come to rescue, they had bene to the sword every man. Nevertheless the Camp-Master, with eight Centurions and forwardest maniples of common souldiers were slaine; and not long after, they put to flight our forragers, and the very troupes of horsemen that were sent out to succour them. Ostorius setteth out certaine companies lightly appointed, and yet thereby could not their flight, had not the Legions come in and undertooke the battell. By their strength fought with small odds on either hand, but afterward wee had the better of it, and the enemy betooke himselfe to his heels and escaped with small losse, because the day was farre spent. After this, they had many skirmishes, and for the most part in manner of rodes and skirmishes; in woods, on marshes, rashly or with foresight it skilled not: according as it fell out, as occasion by chance, or their owne hearts served them: one while for anger, another for booty: sometime by commandement from their Captaines, and sometimes againe with their warrant and privitie: but principally through the wilfull obstinacie of the *Silures* who were exasperated with a speech of the Roman Generalls, that was bruted abroad came to their eares: which was this, That as the *Sugambri* were rooted out and transported over into Gaul, so the name of the *Silures* should utterly be extinguished. And in heat they intercepted two auxiliary bands, as they through the avarice of their Praefects were seized and spoiled without advised circumspection. Also by large giving away of spoiles and prisoners, they drew the rest of the Nations to revolt. And then Ostorius wearied with griefe of heart yielded up his vitall breath. Whereat the enemies rejoiced, as at the death of a Captaine not to be despised, who though he died not in battell, yet was toiled out and by reason of the warres.

But Caesar having intelligence of his Lieutenants death, lest the Province should be destitute of a governour, appointed *A. Didius* in his place. He being thither come with great speed, yet found not all in good state. For in the meane space, the Legion whereof *Maximus Valens* had the charge, met with an unlucky and disastrous fight. The same whereof enemies had made greater than it was, to terrifie the captaine which was comming: who so in the like policie multiplied all that he heard, to win more praise by appeasing those troubles, or to purchase pardon more easily, if they continued still. The *Silures* were they that wrought us this displeasure and damage, whereupon they overran the province far and wide untill such time as by *Didius* his comming they were driven backe.

About this time *Claudius* departed this life: and *Nero* succeeded him in the Empire, who had no heart at all to attempt any thing in warfare: nay he was minded once to withdraw the forces out of Britain: Neither gave he over that intent of his but onely for that lest he might have been thought to deprave the glory of *Claudius*. After that *Caracalla* was taken, *Venutius* a very expert man above the rest in military affaires, borne and bred to the state of the *Iugantes*, long time trusty to us, and defended by the Romanes power, being vowing to wife *Queene Cartismandua*, by occasion soone after of a divorce, and then of a war between them, rebelled also against us, and proceeded to plaine hostility. At the first the quarrell was onely between them two: untill *Cartismandua* by policie and craft had intercepted the brother, and neere kinsmen of *Venutius*. Whereupon our enemies kindled with rage, and pricked forward with an ignominious indignity, lest they should be brought under the yoke of a womans government, with a strong power of choise youth, by force of arms invaded her kingdome, which was foreseen by us: and thereupon were cohorts sent to aid her, and they fought a hot battell: The beginning whereof was doubtfull, but the more joifull. The Legion also which *Cesius Nafica* commanded, fought with like success. For, *Didius* [ye must thinke] being stricken in yeeres, and having many honours bequeathed upon him, thought it sufficient to execute his charge and keep off the enemy by the mimicry of others. For what was woon by others he held: onely a few fortresses he built forward

A. Didius A-
vitius Gallus
Propretor.

Nero.

Venutius.

* Or haply,
Brigantes.

rather into the country: whereby he might purchase the name of enlarging his office. These exploits although they were achieved by two Propretors *Ostorius* and *Didius* in many years, as I thought good to joine together, lest being severed, they should not so well have bene remembered.

After *Didius Avicus*, there succeeded *Verannius*, who having with small rodes spoiled the *Silures*, was hindered by death, for warring any farther: a man while he lived carrying great name of precise severitie, but in his last will he shewed himselfe manifestly ambitious. For after much flattering of *Nero*, he added this, That he would have subdued the Province unto his obedience, if he had lived the next two yeeres.

But then *Suetonius Paulinus* governed the Britans, one in martill skill, and opinion of the people (which suffereth no man without a concurrent) striving to match *Corbalo*; desirous to equall the honour which he won in recovering *Armenia*, by subduing the enemies that stood out in this country. And therefore hee maketh all the preparation hee can to invade the Isle of * *Monia*, peopled with strong Inhabitants, and a receptacle of traiterous fugitives. To this purpose hee buildeth flat-bottom-vessels, for the shallowes and uncertaine landing places. Thus the footmen passed over: and then followed the horsemen by the foord, if the waters were any thing high, by swimming they put the horses over. Against them the enemies stood upon the shore in divers places embastelled thicke in array, well appointed with men and weapons; with women also running among: who all in blacke and mournefull array, with their haire about their eares, carried firebrands before them in their hands like the Furies of hell. The Druide likewise round about them, lifting up their hands to heaven, and pouring out deadly and cursing praiers, with this so strange and uncouth sight, amazed the souldiers so, as they stood still as stockes and stirred not a foot; as if they would expose their bodies to receive all wounds presented unto them. But afterwards, being encouraged by their Captaine, and animating one another, that they should not feare a flocke of women and franticke people: they displayed their ensignes and advanced forward. Downe they went with such as encountered them and thrust them within their owne fires. This done they planted garrisons in their townes, and cut downe their woods and groves consecrated to their execrable superstitions. For they accounted it lawfull, to offer sacrifice upon their altars with the blood of captives; and to aske counsell of their Gods by inspection of mens fibres and entrails.

As *Suetonius* was busie in these actions, newes came unto him that the Province was suddenly revolved. *Prasutagus* King of the *Iceni*, in wealth surpassing all others, had set down in his will *Caesar* with two of his daughters to be his heires; supposing by this kind of flattery to curry favour, and to make his kingdome and house most secured from all injuries. Which fell out farre otherwise: in so much as his kingdome by Centurions, his house by slaves were spoiled and reputed lawfull booties. And to beginne withall, his wife *Boadicia* was whipped, and his daughters deflowered. The chiefe of the *Iceni*, as if the whole country had bene given them by way of gift, are turned out of their ancient inheritances, and the Kings kinsfolke reputed as slaves. By reason of which consuetudinous indignities, and for feare of worse, considering they had bene reduced into the forme of a province, the Britaines began among themselves to cast and thinke upon the miseries of servitude, to lay together their wrongs and oppressions, in ripping of them up to aggravate them by constructions to the highest, in these tearmes: that no other good was to be looked for by sufferance, but that more grievous burdens should be imposed upon them still, as men ready to beare all willingly. Thus whereas in times past, their states had but one King a piece, now there were two thrust upon them: the Lieutenants, cruelly to suck their blood, and the Procurator as greedy to prey upon that substance: That the variance of these rulers was the torment; and their agreement the undoing of the poore subjects: the one vexing by souldiers and Centurions, the other by exortations and reprochfull abuses: so that now there was nothing safe from their unsatiable avarice, nothing freed from their unbridled lust. In warre and battell yet, the stronger man commonly is hee that maketh spoile; but now cowards for the most part, and weaklings are they that dispossesse them of their dwelling houses, bereave them of their children, enioyne them to murther, as if they were men that knew not to doe any thing else, save only to die for their country. For otherwise, what a small handfull thinke ye of souldiers: have

Verannius
Propretor.

Paulus Suetonius
Propretor.

* Anglesey.

Boadicia.

* *Prasutagus*
victu, that is,
over the vanquished.

Prasutagus

Boodicia, who
also is named
Boaducia
Boudicia, *Vo-*
adica, and
Bundica.

come over to serve, if the Britaines would fall to reckon themselves: Thus Germany had ken off the yoke of obedience, and yet were defended by a river only: and not by the Ocean for these Romans, what motives have they of warre but their owne covetousnesse, rian, wanton lust? whereas we have our native country, our wives and children to provide thereto. Surely they would retire and bee gone as sometime Talus, their banished went his waies. if wee would endeavour to follow the valour and proesse of our ancestors and not be dismayed with the doubtfull event of one skirmish or two: and commonly in as are distressed and in miserie, there is more stomacke to attempt, and greater resolution continue. And even now the Gods also take pittie of the Britains poore estate, who keep Roman Generall out of the way, and confine the Lieutenant with his hands full in an Island: and themselves being assembled to advise together, had attained to the hardest part of all in an action of that nature, wherein without question it is more dangerous to be consulting, than in the very action.

With these and such inducements, inciting one another, they take armes under the conduct of Boadicia a Ladie of the roiall blood (for in matter of government in chiefe the Britaines make no distinction of sex) having stirred up the Tribunes to Rebellion, and as many as yet, not broken to the yoke of servitude, had in secret conspired, vowed to recover and resume their libertie, bearing a most bitter hatred against the old souldiers. For those who newly brought into the Colonie Camalodunum, thrust the ancient inhabitants out of their houses, disseized them of their Lands, Livings, calling them captives, slaves, while the new souldiers favoured, & maintained the insolent outrages of the old, in regard of conformitie in life & hope of like licentiousnesse. Besides, a Temple erected in the honour of Claudius of sacred memorie, as an Altar of perpetuall dominion over them, was another, & the Priests chosen under colour of religion, wasted & consumed all their wealth. Now it was not thought any hard piece of work to raze, & destroy that Colonie, not fenced with fortifications: a thing not circumspectly foretold of our captives, while they had greater taste of pleasure, than profit. Amid these occurrences, the image of victory set up in Camalodunum fell downe without any apparant causes, and turned backward, as if it would give place to enemies. And certaine women distempred with some fanaticall furie, went singing by night, fell house, their Theatre resounded with hideous howlings, and a strange spectre, or apparition was seen in the arme of the sea: there, a signe foretelling the subversion of that Colonie. Furthermore, the Ocean blowdy in shew, and the shapes of mens bodies left after an ebbe, with Britans construed favourably to feed their owne hopes; so the old souldiers interpreted to the increase of their feare. But because Suetonius was far off, they craved help of Catus Derianus the Procurator: who sent unto them not passing two hundred, and those but badly armed: and within the towne the number of souldiers which was not great, trusted to the fence of the Temple. And by reason that those among them, which being privy to the secret conspiracie of the town, troubled their designments, hindred them, they had neither made trench or rampier before the town, nor sent away their old folke, and women, keeping the lustie young men only, and so being secure, as it had been in the time of perfect peace, surprized they were at unawares, & enclosed round about with a multitude of barbarous people. And verily all other things were violently sacked or consumed with fire: the Temple only excepted, wherein the souldiers had gathered themselves round together, which also was two daies together besieged and so forced. Also, the Britans in their train of victory, encountering Petilius Cerealis Lieutenant of the ninth Legion, as he was coming with aid, put the legion to flight, & slew all the footmen. Cerealis himselfe with the Cavallery escaped to the campe, & saved himselfe within the fortifications. Upon which overthrow, & in regard of the provinciall peoples barred, driven through the feare, into Gaul. But Suetonius with constant resolution, passing through the midst of his enemies, went to Londinium, a towne verily by the name that it carried of a Colonie, nothing famous, but for concourse of merchants, & provision of necessities most of all other frequented. Being thither come, he stood doubtfull whether to chuse it for the seat of war or no. And considering well the small number of souldiers that he had, & by good proofs taught how Petilius paid for his rashnesse, he determined with the damage of one towne to save all the rest whole.

Neither

Neither could he bee won by the weeping and pitifull teares of those that besought his aide, but he would needs put out the signall of a remove, and receive all followers, as part of his armie to march along with him. As many therefore as weaknesse of sex, wearisomnesse of age, or pleasure of the place held back, were all put to the sword by the enemy. The like calamitie befell unto the free towne * Verulamium: because the Barbarians leaving the castles & forts of garrison souldiers, made spoile of the richest and fattest: and carrying their pillage into some place of safetie, as men glad of bootie, went on still to such as were of note and mark above the rest. And thus to the number of seventie thousand Roman citizens and associates together, by reports, were knowne to have been slaine in those places before named. For there was no saving of prisoners, no selling of them, nor any other commerce and traffique of war, but killing, hanging, burning and crucifying such haste they made to make havocke of all, as if they were requite the measure they had suffered, and anticipate in the meane while all revenge.

Now by this time Suetonius having with him the fourteenth Legion with the old souldiers, of the twentieth, & the auxiliaries from the parts next adjoining, was well neere ten thousand strong, when he resolved to lay aside all further delays, and to trie the chance of a main battell. And so he chooseth a place with a narrow entrance like a gullet, and enclosed behind with a wood: being well assured, that he had no enemies but in front, and that the plain lay open without feare of ambush. The Legionarie souldiers therefore, being marshalled in thick ranks, and close together, with the light armours about them, the horsemen were placed on either hand like wings. But the Britaine forces came leaping forth all abroad by troups and companies, in such a multitude as never the like else where at any other time, and with so fierce courage, as that they would needs bring their very wives with them, and place them in cars, which they had bestowed in the utmost parts of the plaine, to be witnesses of the victorie.

Boadicia, having her daughters before her in a chariot, ever as she came to any severall nation (for it was the custome verily of the Britans to make warre under the conduct of women) protested & told them, that she was come then, not as a Lady descended of so noble progenitors, to make either Kingdome or riches her quarrell, but as one of the common people, in revenge of her libertie lost, her body sore whipped, and her daughters chastitie assailed by maleforce handling: That the Romans lust and concupiscence, was growne to such a passe, that they spared no body, no not aged persons, nor left their Virgins undefiled. Howbeit, the Gods (which she) are with us, and favor just revenge. For the legion that came into the field, and durst hardly a battell, was cut in pieces: the rest are either hiddden within campe and hold, or else seek meanes to escape by flight: so that they will never abide so much as the noise and cry of so many shousands, much lesse then their violent charge, and close hand fight, if then they would weigh with her the power of their armed forces, and with all the motives of war, resolve they should either to vanquish in that battell, or to die: for her owne part, being but a woman, this was her resolution: the men might live if they pleased, and serve as slaves.

Neither could Suetonius himselfe, in so great an extremitie, hold his tongue: For although he presumed and trusted much upon valour, yet entered into exhortations & prayers. That they should contentment be lowd and waive threats of the Barbarians. Among whom there were more women to be seene, than lustie young men: & warlike as they were and unarmed, they would presently give ground, when they came once to feeble & acknowledge their weapons, & would of those conquerors, by whom so often they had bin put to flight. For given in many legions, a few they should carry away the honour of the battell, and to their greater glory, would turne, if with a small power they won the fame of a whole armie. Only this they must remember, marshalled close together as they stood, first with taunting their enemies, and afterwards with the bosses and pikes of their bucklers, and with their swords to continue in beating downe and killing them, and never so thinke all the while of any booty: for after victory, each goten, all would come to their share. These words of the Captaine, gave such an edge, and kindled their courage, so the old souldiers also experienced in many battels, had a bestirred themselves, and were so ready to let their darts fly, that Suetonius assured of the event, gave signall of forward. And first of all, the legion was stirring and foot, but keeping the straight of the place, after a while, as a sure defence, after that the enemies approached nearer within the just reach of shot, had spent all their darts, sathed out, as it were, in pointed battels. The auxilliary souldiers likewise were of the same stomack, and the horsemen stretching out their long lances, braked as

* Verulamium, neere to Saint Albans.
* Verulamium or Mithras.
* Deventer in tatum, that is, whiles the defendants flood not with safety upon their guard.
* Verulamium.

The Colony Camalodunum, that is, Maldon.

See Viphilius in Nero.

* Haply, the Fifth of Fama.

Petilius Cerealis.

* London.

* Commacatum.

* Sonoras, or Sonores, that is, the loud noise.

was in their way, and made head against them. The residue shewed their backs, and had much ado to flee and escape, by reason of the carts and waggons placed round about the plaine, which had blocked up the passages on every side. And the souldiers forbore not the execution so much as of the women: the very horses and draught beasts, were thrust through with darts, which made the heape of dead bodies the greater. This was a day of great honour and renowne, comparable to the victories of old time: for, some report, that there were slaine few lesse in number, than fourescore thousand Britons: but of our souldiers, there died not all out foure hundred, and not many more hurt. Boodicia ended her life with poison. And Pannius Posithmus campe-Master of the second Legion, understanding of this prosperous successe of the fourteenth, and twentieth Legions, because he had defrauded his owne Legion of the like glorie, and, contrary to the order of service, refused to obey the Captaines commandment, thrust himselfe through with his owne sword.

After this, the whole armie being rallied together, kept the field still, and lay encamped, to end the residue of the warre: and Caesar augmented their forces by sending out of Germany two thousand Legionarie souldiers, eight cohorts of auxiliaries, and a thousand horsemen: by whose coming, they of the ninth Legion, had their companies supplied, and made up with the Legioners. The cohorts and cornets of horse, were appointed to lodge in new wintering places: and all those nations of the enemies, which were either doubtfull or knowne adversaries, were wasted with fire and sword. But nothing distressed them so much as famine, being negligent in sowing of corne, by reason that of all ages they were given to warre: for that also they made full account to live of our provision, and as all other fierce and stout nations, slowly give care to peace, because Iulius Clesicianus, being sent to succeed Catus, and at variance with Suetonius, hindered the common good with private grudges, and had given it out abroad, that they were to expect and tarry for a new Lieutenant, who without any hostile rancour and pride of a Conqueror, would gently entreat and use with all clemencie such as yielded unto him. With all, he sent word to Rome, that they should looke for no end of warre, unlesse some one or other succeeded Suetonius, upon whose overthrow he laid all his ill proceedings, and attributed all fortunate successe to the happy fortune of the common weale.

To see therefore in what state Britaine stood, Polycletus one of Neros freed men was sent for, good hope he had; that by his authoritie there should not onely be wrought a perfect agreement betwene the Lieutenant and the Procurator, but also that the rebellious minds of the Barbarians would be won to peace. Neither failed Polycletus, being with his mightie bookeburden some to Italie and Gaul, after he had passed the Ocean sea, to shew himselfe terrible even to our souldiers also. But to the enemies he was but a laughing stocke: who, whiles libertie was still fresh on foot among them, knew not what the power of these freed men was: and they made a marvell of it, that a Captaine and an armie, which had achieved so great a war, should yield to obey slaves. But of all these things the best was made to the Emperor. And Suetonius being busied still in these affaires, for that he had lost afterwards some few Gallies upon the shore and the gallie slaves in them, as if the warre continued still, was commanded to deliver up the armie to Petronius Turpilianus, who now was newly out of his Consulship, as unto a man more exorable, unacquainted with the delinquencies of the enemies, and therefore more ready to accept of their repentance: who neither, incensing the enemy, nor provoked by him, colouring a lazy and idle life with the honest name of peace, after hee had dared and done no more, but composed former troubles and debates, delivered the charge of the province unto Trebellius Maximus.

But he, a man unfit for action, and altogether unexpert in war service, by a kind of courteous and mild regiment entertained the country in quiet. For now the Britaines also had learned the good manners, not rudely to repulse the sugred assaults of flattering vices, and the disturbance of civill dissensions coming between, ministred a lawfull excuse for his doing nothing. But much discord arose among them whiles the souldier, accustomed to warfare, waxt wanton with ease, and grew to be mutinous: and he for his niggardly sparing and base taking of bribes, was both despised and hated of the armie. This hatred of theirs against him, was enflamed by Roscius Calius Lieutenant of the twentieth Legion, an ancient enemy of his, but now by occasion of civill dissensions, they were fallen out farther, and brake into more heinous tearmes. Trebellius objected ever and anon to Calius, and charged him

Petronius
Turpilianus,
Propretor.

Trebellius
Maximus
Propretor.

him with factious behaviour, and confounding the order of discipline: Calius againe, that him with factious behaviour, and beggared the Legions. But in the meane time, whiles the Lieutenant Trebellius had spoiled and beggared the Legions. But in the meane time, whiles the Lieutenant thus jarred, the modest carriage of the armie was marred: and the discord as length grew so great, that Trebellius was driven away with the railing of the Auxiliaries also, in cohorts and wings sorting themselves to Calius side, was glad, as a man forsaken, to give place and flee to Vitellius. The Province although the Consular Lieutenant Generall was absent remained in quiet: whiles the Lieutenants of the Legions supplied the charge in right of equall authoritie: But Calius indeed bare the greater stroke, because he was of more boldnesse.

Whiles the Civill war betwene Galba, Otho and Vitellius grew hot, Vespasian Bolanus was by Vitellius sent to succeed him. Neither troubled he Britanny with any discipline. The same assaults continued still against the enemies, and the like licentiousnesse in the campe: saving onely that Bolanus a good honest harmlesse man, and not odious for committing any crime, had wonne himselfe love and good will in lieu of obedience: and albeit Vitellius sent for aids out of Britanny yet Bolanus made no hast for that Britain was never quiet enough. As for the Island, that great favour and reputation in warlike affaires, which Vespasian had gotten being Lieutenant there of the second Legion under Claudius, did easily win it unto him, yet without some stir of the other Legions: wherein many centurions and souldiers who had been advanced by Vitellius were loth to change that Prince whom they had proved already. And besides, the souldiers of the fourteenth Legion, called the subduers of Britain, removed from thence by Nero to the Caspian wars, and in the quarrell of Otho vanquished, were by Vitellius sent backe into Britanny, and called away againe by Mutianus letters.

For all this civill warre, no quarrell nor mutinies there were in the Britaine armie. And to say a truse, during all the troubles of civill warres, no Legions behaved themselves more harmlesse, either because they were farre off and severed by the Ocean, or for that they were taught by continuall service and souldierie, to hate the rather allbostility and dealing with enemies. Howbeit by meanes of these dissensions and rumours still of civill war, the Britaines tooke heart and rebelled, through the procurement of Vespasian: who besides a natural fiercenesse of courage, and hatred of the Roman name, was incensed particularly by private unkindnesse between him and his wife Quene Carishmandua. This Carishmandua was Queene of the Brigantes, of high and noble linage, who upon the delivery of King Caratacus whom shee tooke by fraud and sent to furnish and set out the triumph of Claudius (that glorious spectacle, I meane in manner of a triumph, wherein Caratacus was shewed) had woon favour with the Romans and greatly increased her strength. Whereupon ensued wealth: of wealth and prosperitie riotous and incontinent life: in so much, that casting off Venusius her husband, and intercepting his kinsfolke, shee joynd her selfe in marriage with Fellocatus his harnesser beaver, and crowned him King: which foule fact was the overthrow immediately of her house. The good will of the country went generally with the lawfull band: but the Quenes intemperate affections were peremptory and violent in maintaining her minion the adulterer. Whereupon Venusius, by the helpe of friends which he procured, and the revolt of the Brigantes themselves, made warre upon Carishmandua, and brought her into great extremities. Then upon her instant prayer unto the Romans for aid, our garrisons, cohorts and wings were sent to defend her: which after sundry skirmishes with divers event, delivered the Quenes person out of perill, but the kingdome remained to Venusius, and the warre unto us.

Now when as the state of Rome Citie, was for Vespasian governed by Mutianus, hee made Julius Agricola who was gone to side with Vespasian, and had behaved himselfe with great integritie and courage, Lieutenant of the two and twentieth Legion in Britanny, a Legion which slowly had sworne allegiance to Vespasian, in which province his predecessor by report seditiously demanded himselfe. For the said Legion was out of awe, or rather it over-awed even Lieutenants generall that had bene Consuls. Neither was the ordinarie Legions Lieutenant, who had bene but Prætor, of power sufficient to restrain and keepe it under, whether it were through his owne weaknesse, or the stubborn disposition of the souldiers: it is not certaine. Thus being elected both to succede and revenge, hee shewed an example of most rare moderation in making choice to bee thought rather to have found them, than to have made

Vespasian Bolanus
Propretor.

Vespasian
Emperor.
Jul. Agricola,
Lieutenant
over the
twentieth
Legion.

made them dutifull souldiers. And albeit that Vellius Bolanus Licutenant General of Britannie for the time being, governed in a gentler and milder manner, than was fit for so fierce a Province: Yet under him Agricola cunningly conforming himselfe to that humor, and unlearned to joyne profitable counsels with honest, tempered the heat of his owne nature that it might not grow upon him still.

Petilius Cerealis Proprætor.

But when as Vespasian recovered together with the rest of the world, Britanny also, brave capitaines, good souldiers were sent, and the enemies hope was greatly abated. For straightwaies Petilius Cerealis strooke a terror into them, by invading as his first entry the Brigantes, thought to be the most populous state of the whole Province. Many battels were fought, and some bloody: And the greatest of the Brigantes he either conquered or wasted.

Julius Frontinus Proprætor.

And whereas Cerealis would doubtlesse have dimmed the diligence and fame of another successor, Julius Frontinus a great man sustained also as bee might, after such a predecesser that weightie charge with reputation and credit: who subdued the puissant and warlike people of the Silures, where he had beside the verue of the enemy, struggled with the streights and difficult places.

Jul. Agricola Proprætor.

In this estate Agricola found the Province, and the wars thus far proceeded in, when as about the middle of summer he passed the seas: at what time the souldiers, as if the seasons were past, attended an end for that yeare of their service, and the enemy occasions to beginne to hurt. The Ordovices a little before he entred the land, had hewed almost wholly in pieces a wing which lay in their borders. Upon which beginning the countrey being awaked, as men desirous of warre allowed the example: and some staied to see how the new Licutenant would take it.

Anglesey.

Then Agricola, although the Summer was spent, and the bands lay dispersed in the Province, and his souldiers had fully presumed of rest for that yeare, which hindered much, and crossed directly his undertaking of warre, most men also being of opinion, rather to keepe and assure the places suspected, all this notwithstanding, resolved fully to encounter the danger, having gathered therefore the ensignes of the Legions, and some few Auxiliaries, because the Ordovices durst not descend into indifferent ground, himselfe before the vaward, to give others like courage in the like danger, led up in battell ray to encounter the enemy. And having slaughtered almost the whole nation, knowing full well that same must with instance be followed, and as the first fell out, so the rest would succede, hee deliberated to conquer the Island * Mona, from the possession whereof, as before I have rehearsed, Paulinus was revoked by the general rebellion of Britannie: But as in purposes not resolved on before, ships being wanting, the pollicie and resoluteness of the capitaine devised a passage over. For he commanded the most choise of the Aid-souldiers, to whom all the foords and shallows were knowne, and who after the usuall practise of their countrey, were able in swimming to governe all at once themselves, their armour and horses, laying aside their carriage, to put over at once, and suddenly invade them. Which thing so amazed the enemy, attending for a fleet, for shipping, for aide, that they surely believed nothing could be hard or invincible to men that came so minded to war. Whereupon they humbly intreated for peace, and yielded the Island. Thus Agricola at his first entry into this province (which time other consume in vaine ostentation or ambitious seeking of complements) entring withall into labors and dangers, became famous indeed and of great reputation.

Neither abused Agricola the prosperous proceeding of his affaires to vanity or braving in speeches, as to tearme it an exploit or a conquest, thus to have kept in order persons subdued before: or to bedeck with lawrell his letters of advertisement, but by stopping and suppressing the fame he augmented it the more: while men began to discourse, upon what great presumptions of future successe, hee should make so light an account of such great actions already performed, as not to speake a word of them.

Now as touching civill government: Agricola knowing right well the disposition and mind of the Province, taught also by the experience of others, that armes availed little to settle a new conquered State, if injuries and wrongs be permitted, determined to cut off all causes of warres. And beginning at home, his owne house first of all he reformed and restrained, a point of as much hardnesse with many as to governe a province. He committed no manner of publike affaires to bond men or freed: hee admitted no souldier, about his person either upon

upon private affection of partiall suiters; or upon the commendation and intreatie of Centurions, but elected simply the best presuming the same to be the most faithfull. He would see into all things, but not exact all things to the rigor: Light faults he would pardon, and the great severely correct: not alwaies proceeding to punish, but often content with repentance: choosing rather not to preferre unto office and charge such as were like to offend, than after offence to condemn them. The augmentation of corne and tributes he mollified with equall dividing of charge and burthen, cutting away those petty extortions, which grieved the subject more than the tribute it selfe. For, the poore people were constrained in a mockery to waite at the barnes fast locked against them, and first to buy the corne, then after to sell it at a price. Several waies were enioyned, and far distant places by the purveyors commandement: that the country should carry from the neere standing camps to those which were far off & out of the way, till that which lay open to all, and at hand, was turned in fine to the gaine of a few. By repressing these abuses presently in his first yeare, a good opinion was conceived from him of peace, which either by the negligence or connivence of former Lieutenants was now no lesse feared than warre.

At this time died Vespasian, unto whom for these victories of the leaders, and his owne vertue under Claudius, Valerius Flaccus before his Poeme thus speaketh;

Tuq, ô pelagi cui major aperti

Fama, Caledonius post quam tua carbasia vexit

Oceanus, Phrygius prius indignatus Iulos.

And thou, for seas discovery whole fame did more appeare,
Since time thy ships with sailes full spred in Northerne Ocean were,
Which of the Trojan Julii erst did scorne the sailes to beare.

But when that Noble Titus, THE LOVELY DEARELING AND JOY OF THE WORLD succeeded his father, Agricola when summer was once come, assembling his armie together, those souldiers of his who in marching behaved themselves in modest sort hee commended, the loose and dissolute straglers he checked. The places for pitching the campe hee designed himselfe: the friths he founded, and the thickets he proved first in his owne person: not suffering in the meane season any corner in the enemies countrey to be quiet: but wasting and spoiling with sudden excursions and roads: But when he had thoroughly terrified them, then would hee againe spare and forbear, alluring thereby their minds to friendship and peace. Upon which kind of proceeding, many states that stood upon termes of equalitie before that day, gave hostages and meekely submitted themselves: receiving garrison, and permitting to forisfe, which he so wisely and with such great foresight and reason performed that nothing was ever attempted against them: whereas before, no new fortified place in all Britannie escaped unassailed.

Titus Emperor.

The winter ensuing was spent in most profitable and politicke devises. For, whereas the Britaines were rude and dispersed, and therefore prone upon every occasion to warre, hee to induce them by pleasures unto quietnesse and rest, exhorted them in private, and helpt them in common to build temples, houses and places of publique resort, commending the forward and cheeking the slow: imposing thereby a kind of necessitie upon them while each man contended to gaine honour and reputation thereby. And now by this time the Noble mens sonnes hee tooke and instructed in the liberal sciences, preferring the wits of the Britaines before the students of France, as being now curious to attaine the eloquence of the Roman language, whereas they lately rejected their speech. After that, our atire grew to be in account and the Gowne much used among them. So by little and little they fell to these provocations of vices, to sumptuous gallies & banquets, yea and exquisite banquettings: which things the ignorant termed civility being indeed a part of their bondage. In the third yeare of his wars, he discovered new countrey, to which alone with him came to the first of * Faus: Which thing so terrified the enemies, that altho the arme was toiled out with cruell tempests yet durst they not assaile them: and the Romans moreover had leisure & space to fortifie there. They which were skilfull that way, observed what never any Capitaine did more adviſedly chuse his places. No Castle planned by Agricola ever was either forced by strength, or upon conditions surrendered, or as not defensible: for taken, at any times they issued forth: for, against a long siege, they were stored with victualles, so, they withstood them without feare, every garrison guarding it selfe and

Tau First.
Twede as
some thinke,

and needing no helpe of their neighbours, the enemies assailing sometimes, but in vaine, without success, and driven thereupon to despaire. For, the lasses of Summer they were commonly wont before, to repaire with winter events: but now, Summer and winter alike they ment the worse. In all these actions, Agricola never sought to draw unto himselfe, the glory of any exploit done by another: but were it Centurion, or of other degree, hee would faithfully witness the fact, and yield him alwaies his due commendation. By some, hee is said to have bene somewhat bitter in checks and rebukes: and indeed, the man was, as toward the good of a most sweet disposition, so to the bad and lewd persons unpleasant and sower enough. But this choler passed away with his words: closenesse in him and silence you needed not to feare: he esteemed it more honest to offend, then to hate.

The fourth summer was spent in perusing, and ordering that which he had over-run. And if the valiant minds of the armies, and glory of the Roman name, could have permitted or accepted it so, they needed not to have sought other limit of Britaine. For, Glotta and Baduria two armes of two contrary seas, shooting a mightie way into the land, are onely divided a furlong by a narrow partition of ground: which passage was guarded and fortified then with garison and castle: so that the Romans were absolute Lords of all on this side, having cast out the enemy, as it were, into another Island.

The fifth yeare of the warre, Agricola first taking sea there, went over, and subdued with many and prosperous conquests nations before that time unknowne: and he furnished with forces, that part of Britaine, which lieth against Ireland, more in hope, than for feare. For Ireland, if it might have bene wonne, lying between Britannie and Spaine, and fety also for the French sea, would aptly have united, to the great advantage of the one, and the other, these strongest members of the Empire together. In bignesse it is inferiour to Britannie: howbeit, bigger than the Islands of our sea. The soile, and temperature of the aire, the nature and fashions differ not much from the British. The ports and places of access, are better knowne by reason of more commerce and frequenting of marchants. Agricola had received before, a Prince of that country driven out by cruell diffention, whom under colour of courtship and friendship, he retained till occasion should serve. I have heard him oftentimes say, that with one Legion, and some few Aides, Ireland might be wonne and possessed: that it were also a strength for our British affairs. If the Roman forces were planted each where, and liketh banishes, as it were, quite out of sight.

About this time died Tiberius, who for these valiant Acts exploited by Agricola, was the fiftenth time named Imperator, as Xiphilinus writeth, and an ancient piece of coine witnesseth with him. Then Agricola under Domitian in the summer which began the sixth yeare of his office, because a generall rising in armes of all the farther Nations, beyond Bodotria was feared, & passages were all beset with a power of the enemies, manned a fleet to search the Creeks and Harbours of that ample region, which lieth beyond it. Which being by Agricola then first taken, and employed as a part of his strength, followed after a long, and made a goodly brave shew, while at one time warre both by sea and land went forward. And oft it so chanced, that the horseman, footman, and sea-souldier met, and made merrie in the same campe one with another, extolling and magnifying, each their owne promise and adventures: making their vaunts & comparisuns souldier-like, the one of the woods & high mountaines, the other of dangerous tempests and billowes: the one, of the land and enemy conquest, the other of the Ocean subdued. The Britains, as by the prisoners was understood, were amazed also, at the sight of the navie, as though now the secrets of their sea were discovered, and no refuge remained if they were overcome. Whereupon the Caledonians arming with great preparation, and greater bruit thereof, at the manner is of matters unknowne, having of themselves first set on hand to assault our Castles, braved our men, and put them in feare as Chalmers, in so much that some of our side, who would seeme to be wise, but were dastards indeed, counselled the Generall to retire on this side Bodotria, and that the best counsell was to depart of their own accord, rather than to be repelled with shame: in the mean while, Agricola taking knowledge, that the enemies meant to divide themselves, and to give the onset in severall Companies: whereupon lest hee should be enclosed about, and surrounded by their multitude, and still in the country, he also marched with his armie divided in three. Which when it was knowne to the enemy, they in a sodaine changing aduise, and uniting their forces together, joyntly assaulted

* The Fifth of Dunbritton.
* Edenborough Irish.

Ireland.

saulted by night the ninth Legion, as being of weakest resistance: and having slaine the watch, partly asleep, and partly amazed with feare, brake into the campe. And now were they fighting within the very trenches, when Agricola having intelligence given him by Spies, what way the enemies had taken and following withall their footsteps, commanded the lightest horsemen and footmen to play on their backs, and maintaine the skirmish, and the whole armie anone, to second them with a shout. And when it drew neere to day, the glittering of the ensignes was sene. So the Britains were quailed with a double danger: but the Romans recovered courage againe, and being past perill of their persons, fought now for their honour, freshly assailing their late assailers. And verily within the freights of the gates, the conflict was sharpe and cruell, till in the end the enemies were forced to flie: whilest both our armies contended: the one would seeme to have helped their fellows, the other to have needed none other to help them: and if the bogs and wood had not covered their flight, that one victory had ended the warre. Upon this battell so manfully fought, so famously wonne, the armie presuming, that to their prowess all things were easie and open, cried; To lead into Caledonia, and to find out the limit of Britan with a course of a continued Conquests: and even those who ere while were so warie and wise, waxt forward enough after the event, and grew to speak bigly: such is the hard condition of warres. If ought fall out well, all challenge a part, misfortunes are ever imputed to one. Contrariwise, the Britans presupposing that not valour, but the cunning of the Generall, by using the occasion had carried it away, abated no whit of their stomacke, but armed their youth, transported their children and wives into places of safetie, and sought by assemblies and religious rites, to establish an association of their Cities and States together. And so for that yeare both parties departed away incensed.

The same summer, a cohort of Vesprians, levied in Germanie, and sent over into Britan, committed a bawious and memorable Act. For having slaine a Centurion, and certaine souldiers, intermingled among other maniciples, and set over them for direction of discipline, they fled, and embarked themselves in three pinnaces, compelling by force the Master of the said vessels, to execute their charge: and only one doing his office, the other two being suspected, and thereupon slaine, this strange going out, and putting to sea, the fact as yet not noised abroad, was gazed and wondred at: afterwards being driven uncertainly hither and thither, and having skirmished with the Britains standing in defence of their owne, often prevailing and sometimes repulsed, they came at last to that miserie, that they were enforced to eat one another, first the weakest, then as the lot lighted. Thus after they had floated round about Britan, and lost their vessels for lacke of government, they were intercepted first by the Suerians, then by Frisians, as Pirates and Rovers. Now, some of them there were, that being bought by merchants as slaves, and by change of Masters brought to our side of the river grew into a name by giving first notice of so great and so rare an adventure.

In the beginning of Summer, Agricola was deeply touched with a grievous mischance, that happened in his owne house: for, he lost his owne Sonne about a yeare old. Which unfortunately hap, he neither bare out, as most of these great men do in the like case, vaine-gloriously, nor took it againe so impatiently with sorrow and lamentation, as women are wont: and amidst his mourning, used the warre as one of his remedies. Therefore having sent his fleet, afore which by spoiling in sundry places, should induce a greater and more uncertaine terror upon his enemies, hee made ready, and followed after with his armie, joyning thereto some of the valiantest Britains, whom by long experience in peace, he had found most faithfull, and so came as farre as to the mount Grampias, where the enemies were lodged before. For the Britans nothing daunted with the event of the former battell, and attending for nothing else but revenge or servitude, and being taught at length, that common danger must be repelled with concord, by embassages and league made, had raised the power of all their Cities and States together. And now by this time there were entered into the field, the view being taken, above thirty thousand armed men: besides an endlessse number of youth, which daily flocked to them, full, yea, and lusty old men renowned in warre, and bearing every one the badge due to their honour: at what time, among many other leaders, Galgacus for his valour & birth the principall man, seeing the multitude thus assembled holly to demand battell, is said to have used this speech unto them: When I view and consider the causes of this warre, and our present necessities, I have reason, me seemes, to presume, that this day, and this your agreeing consent, will give

* These about Zuthphen.

* Britaine is failed round about.

* Grantez bani.

Galgacus.

give a happy beginning to the freedome of the whole Island. For, both have we all hitherto lived in liberty; & besides, no land remaineth beyond, no, nor so much as sea for our safeguard. The Romanie navie, thus as you see, hovering upon our coasts: so that Combat and armie which valiant men desire for honour, the daftard must also use for his best securitie: in former battels which have with divers events been fought against the Romanes, had the hope and refuge resting in our hands: Because we, the flower of the British Nobilitie, seated therefore the furthestmost in, never seeing the coasts of the countries which serve to flaverie, have kept even our eyes unpolluted, and free from all contagion of tyrannie. Beyond us is no land, beside us none are free; us hitherto this very corner, and the inner recesses, as it were, of fame hath defended. Now the uttermost point of Britannie is laid open & things, the lesse they have bin within knowledge, the greater is the glory to achieve them. But no nation now is there beyond us; nothing but water, nothing but rockes, and the Romans even among them, more infest than all besides. Whose intolerable pride in vaine shall man seeke to avoide with any obsequious service, and humble behaviour: Robbers as they are of the world, who having now left no more land to spoile, search also the sea. If their enemies be rich, they covet their wealth: if poore, they seeke to gaine glorie: Whom neither the East nor the West, is ever able to satisfie: the onely men of all memorie, that seeke in all places, be they wealthy, or be they poore with like affection. To take away by maine force, to kill and to spoile, they falsly terme Empire and government: when they lay all waste to a wilderness, that they call peace. That every man should hold his owne children and blood most deare, Nature hath ordeined: and even those are pressed for souldiers, and carried away to serve as slaves elsewhere. Our wives and sisters, if they be not violently forced as in open hostilitie, are in the meane time under the colour and title of friends, and goods often abused. Our goods and substance, they draw from us for tribute, our corne for provision. Our verie bodies and hands they weare out and consume, in paving of bogs; and riding of woods, with a thousand stripes and reproachfull indignities besides. Slaves yet, which be borne to bondage, are bought and sold once for all, and afterwards fedde and found at their owners expences. But Britannie daily buyeth, daily feedeth, and is at daily charge with her owne bondage. And as in a private retinue of household servants, the fresh man and last commer, is laughed and scoffed at by his very fellows: even so, in this old servitude of the whole world, our destruction only is sought, as being the latest and vilest in account of all other. For, fields we have none to manure, no mines to be digged, no port trade in, for which purposes and employments we should be reserved alive. And as for the manhood and fierce courage of the subject, it pleaseth not much the jealous Sovereign. At this very corner being so secret and far out of the way, the more securitie it yeeldeth them, in them it works the greater suspicion. So seeing all hope of pardon is past, as the length of courage, to defend and maintaine your safety as well as your honor, things most deare and precious unto you. The Trinobantes, led by a woman fired a Colonic, forced campe and fled; and if such a lucky beginning had not ended in sloth and security, they might with ease have shaken off the yoke. We as yet were never touched, never failed nor subdued: as we therefore that mind to maintain their freedome, not for the present but for ever, let us shew straitwaies in the first joining, what manner of men Caledonia reserved in store for her selfe. Or do you thinke the Romanes to be as valiant in war, as they are wanton in peace? No: it is not by their owne vertue, but by our jarrings and discords they are grown into fame, and the faults of their enemies they abuse to the glory of their owne armie, composed of wretched nations, and therefore as by present prosperity holden together, so if fortune once should it doubtlesse will dissolve: unless ye suppose, the Frenchmen and Germanes, and (as I have said) many of our owne Nation which now lend their lives to establish a foreign usurper, and yet have beene enemies longer than servants, to be led and induced with true harted and loyall affection. Nay, it is feare and terror, weak links and bands of love. Remove them once, those which shall cease to feare, will soon begin to hate. All things tending unto victory are on our side. No wife to encourage the Romanes, no parents to upbraid them if they flee: most have either no country at all, or els some other. A few fearefull persons trembling and gazing all about at the strangeness of heaven's selfe, of sea, of woods, and of things els, the Gods have delivered, mixed up as it were and fettered, into our hands: the

Trinobantes.

the vaine shew and glittering of gold and silver terrifie us, which neither defendeth nor offends. And even amongst our enemies in the field we shall find of our side. The Britanes will agnize their owne cause. The French will call to remembrance their freedome and former estate: the rest of the Germans will leave and forsake them as of late the Visipians did. And what else then have we to feare? the Castles are empty, the colonies peopled with aged, and impotent persons: the free Cities discontent and in factions, whiles those which are under, obey with ill will, and they that doe governe, rule against right. Here is the Generall, and here is the armie: There are the tributes, there be the mettall mines, and other miseries inferably following them that live under the subjection of others: which either to continue and endure forever, or straight to revenge, it lieth this day in this field. Wherefore, as ye are going to battell, beare in your minds both the freedome of your ancestors, and the bondage of your posteritie.

This speech they cheerefully received, as well with a song after their barbarous manner, as with confused acclamations and dissonant noises. And as the companies clustered together and glittering armour appeared, whiles the boldest advanced forward, and withall, the ranks were putting themselves in array, Agricola, albeit his souldiers were glad of that day, and scarce with words could be withheld, supposing it best to say somewhat, encouraged them in this wise.

Fellow souldiers and companions in armes: Your faithfull service and diligence these 8. yeares so painfully shewed, by the vertue and fortune of the Roman Empire, hath conquered red Britanny. In so many journees, in so many battels, we were of necessity to shew our selves either valiant against the enemy, or patient and laborious almost above and against nature to selfe. In which exploits wee have hitherto borne our selves both, so that neither desired I better souldiers, nor you other Captaine. Inasmuch as we have exceeded the limits, I of my predecessor, and you of yours. To the end of Britannie wee have found, not by fame and report, but we are with our armes and pavillions really invested thereof. Britain I say, is found and subdued. In marching, when the passage over bogs, mountaines and rivers toiled you out, how oft have I heard every valiant souldier say, when will the enemy present himselfe? when shall wee fight? Lo, they are now put up out of their holes, and hither they are come. Your wish, lo, is here, and place for your vertue: yea and all things to follow in an easie and expedite course if you win: but all against you, if you lose. For, as to have gone so much ground, escaped through the woods, passed over the firths, is honourable forward: so if we do lose, the vantages wee have this day will become our greatest disadvantage. For wee are not skilled so well in the country, we have not the like store of provision: but hands wee have and weapons, and therein all things included. For my part, I am long since resolved, that it is no safetie either for souldier or Generall to shew their backs, and therefore a commendable death is better than life with reproach, and commonly, safetie and honour are dwelling together: or if ought should misshappen, even this will bee a glory, to have died in the uttermost end of the world and nature. If new nations and souldiers unknowne were in the field, I would by the example of other armies embolden and encourage you: now, recount you your owne victorious exploits, and aske your owne eyes. These are the same men, which the last yeare assailed one legion by stealth in the night, and were by a blast of your mouth overthrowne: These of all other Britans, have been the most nimble in running away, and therefore have escaped the longest alive. For, as in Forrests and woods, the strongest beasts are chased away by main force, the cowardly and fearefull are scared with the very noise of the hunters: so the most valiant of the British nation, long since have been by you dispatched and slaine, the rascall herd of daftardly cowards only remaineth: whom at length we have found, not as having intended to stay and make head, but at last overtaken, and by extreme passion of feare standing as stocks, presenting occasion to us in this place of a worthy and memorable victory. Make an end therefore once for all of your warfare: and to fiftie yeares travells let this day impose a glorious conclusion: Approve to your country, that the Armie could never justly be charged, either with protracting the warre, or presences for not accomplishing the conquest.

As Agricola was yet speaking, the souldiers gave great tokens of servencie, and when hee had ended, seconded the speech with a joyfull applause, and ran straightwaies to their weapons. Agricola seeing them sufficiently animated, and rushing furiously forward, ordered his men

in

in this manner. With the auxiliary footmen being eight thousand, he fortified the middle-tell: three thousand of their horse he put on both sides in the wings: commanding the Legions to stand behind before the trench of the camp to the greater glory of the victory, if we were obtained without shedding any Roman blood, otherwise for assistance and succour, if the vanguard should be repelled. The Britans were marshalled on the higher ground, full both for shew, and also to terrifie: The first battalion standing on the plaine, the rest in the ascent of the hill knit and rising, as it were, one over another. The middle of the field was filled with the clattering of chariots and horsemen. Then Agricola perceiving the enemy to exceed him in number, and fearing lest he should be assailed on the front and flank both at one instant: displayed his army in length: and although by that means his battell would become disproportionably long, and many advised him to take in the Legions, to being more forward to hope, than yielding to feare, he rejected the counsell, and leaving his horse advanced himselfe before the ensignes on foot.

In the first encounter before the joining, both sides discharged and threw: Wherein the Britans both employing art, and shewing resolution with their great swords and little targets voided our shot, or shooke them off: darting withall great store of theirs against us: till at length Agricola spying his vantage, exhorted three Batavian cohorts, and two of the Tungrians to presse forward and bring the matter to handy strokes and dint of sword: a thing, which they in respect of long service were able readily to performe: and contrariwise to the enemy prejudiciall and hurtfull, by reason of their small bucklers and huge swords. For the swords of the Britans being blunt pointed were no way for the close or for the open fight. Now as the Batavians began to deale blowes and lay about them, to strike with the pikes of their bucklers, to mangle their faces, and having overborne in the plaine all that resisted, to march up the hill, the rest of the cohorts gathering heart, upon emulation, violently beat downe all about them, and many halfe dead or wholly unoucht were left, for hast of winning the victory.

In the meane time, the troups of the horsemen began to flee: and the chariotters mingled themselves with the battell of the footmen: who albeit they had lately terrified others, were now distressed themselves, by the unevennesse of the ground, and thicke ranks of their enemies. Neither was the forme of this fight, like a loose skirmish of horsemen to and fro. But standing still, and maintaining their places, they fought withall by maine weight of horses to breake in and beare downe one another. The wandring waggons also and masterlesse horse affrighted, as feare carried them, over bare many times, those which met them, or thwarted their way. Now the Britans, which stood aloofe from the battell, on the height of the hill, and at their good leisure disclaimed our feewnesse, began to come downe by little and little, and to wheele about the backs of our men that were now in traine of winning the field, but that Agricola suspecting as much, opposed against them foure wings of horsemen purposely retained about him, for sudden dispatch, and all chances of war; and so, by repulsing them backe, as sharply as they ran fiercely to assaile, put them in rout. Thus the counsell of the Britans turned upon their owne heads, and the wing, by commandement of the leader turning quite from the battell in front, followed the enemy at the back, and pursued the chafe. Then might you have seen in the open fields a grievous and pittifull spectacle, cursing, wounding, taking, and killing of them that were taken, when others were offered. Now whole regiments of the enemies according to their severall dispositions, armed though they were, and more in number, turned their backs to the fewer: others unarmed sought their own death, offering themselves voluntarily to the slaughter. Every where there lay scattered, weapons, bodies, and mangled limbs, and the ground was every where embred with blood: and sometime even in them that were overcome, appeared both anger and valour: For when they approached the woods, uniting themselves; they entrapped unawares some of the foremost of our men which unadvisedly followed, not knowing the country. And but that Agricola with his presence every where assisted at need, setting about them certain cohorts of his bravest and most ready footmen, as it were in forme of a toile, and commanding some of his horsemen to forego their horses where the passes were narrow, and others, where the wood was thin to enter on horseback, no doubt we had taken some blow by our overmuch boldnesse. But after they saw our men again in strong array and good order to follow the chafe, they fled, not in troups

troups as before, and attending each other, but utterly disbanded and single, and eschuing all company, toward the farre remote and desert places. The night and our satietie of blood made an end of the chafe. Of the enemies side ten thousand were slaine: three hundred and forty of ours. Amongst whom was Aulus Atticus Capitaine of a cohort, upon a youthfull heat of his owne, and through the fierce spirit of his horse, being carried into the midst of his enemies. That night, the winners for their parts solaced themselves with the victorie and spoile: and the Britans scattering out of order, crying and howling, (men and women together) take and draw with them their hurt persons, call unto them that were not hurt, forsake their owne houses, and in despite also set them on fire themselves: chuse out holes for to lurke in, and straight-waies for sake them; communicate some counsels together, and then have some glimmering of hope: sometime at the sight of their dearest beloved moved to pittie, more often stirred to rage: and certaine it is, that some, as by way of compassion and mercie, slew their owne wives and children. The day following discovered more plainly the greatness of the victorie. Every where desolation and silence: no stirring in the mountaines: the houses fired and smoaking a far off: no man to meet with our spies; who being sent abroad into all quarters found by their footsteps the flight was uncertaine, and that they were no where in companies together. Whereupon Agricola, because the summer was spent, and the warre could not conveniently be divided; bringeth his armie into the borders of the Horrestians: where receiving hostages he commanded the Admirall of his navie to saile about Britaine, lending him souldiers and strength for that purpose, and the terror of the Roman name was gone already before. Himselfe, with easie and gentle journies, to terrifie the new conquered nations with the very stay of his passage, disposed his footmen and horsemen in their wintering places: and withall the navy with prosperous wind and successe arrived at the port * Truulensis, from whence it departed, and coasting along the neerest side of Britaine returned thither againe. Then and never before, the Roman fleet having doubled the point of the utmost sea discovered and reported, Britan to be an Island, and withall found out and subdued the Isles of Orkney, before that time never knowne, which Orosius and as many writers as follow him ascribe falsly unto Claudius. This state of affaires in Britaine Agricola signified by letter without any amplifying termes, to Domitian: who after his manner, with a cheerefull countenance and grieved heart, received the newes: being inwardly pricked, to think that his late counterfeit triumph of Germany, wherein certaine slaves bought for money were attired, and their haire dressed as captives of that country, was had in derision and justly skorned abroad: whereas now, a true and great victorie, so many thousands of enemies being slaine, was famous and currant in every mans mouth: that it were indeed a most perilous point if a private mans name should be exalted above the name of the Prince. Many then in vaine had he suppressed the study of Oratory, and all other worthy politick arts, if he should in military glory be despised by another: For other matters might more easily be passed over; but to be a good commander of an army was a vertue above private estate; and peculiar for a Prince. With these and the like cares being tormented, and musing much in his closet alone, which was atoken and signe of some crueltie intended, hee thought it yet best for the present to dissemble and put over his malice, untill the heat of Agricola his glory, and love of his souldiers were somewhat abated: for, as yet he remained in charge. Wherefore he commanded that all the honours of triumphall ornaments, image triumphall and what else usually was conferred in lieu of triumph, should in Senate be awarded unto him in most ample and honorable termes: and sending a successor, caused withall a bruit to be spread, that the province of Syria then lying void by the death of Atilius Rufus a consular Lieutenant, and reserved for men of great qualitie, was purposed unto him. And a common opinion went, that Domitian sending one of his most secret and trusty servants to Agricola, sent withall the patent of Syria with instruction, that if he were in Britaine it should be delivered: and that the same man meeting Agricola as he crossed the seas, without speaking unto him or doing his message, returned againe to Domitian. Whether this were true or fained and surmised probably, as correspondent to the Princes disposition, I cannot affirme: But in the meane season Agricola had delivered to his successor the Province in good and peaceable state. And left his arrivall at Rome should be noted, by reason of the multitudes of people, which would goe out to see or to meet him, cutting off that courtesie of his friends, he entered the City by night, and

* Now called Angule, as some thinke,

* Some read; Rhutupensis, which is supposed to be Richborow neere Sandwith. Britaine is for certaine avowed to be an Island. The Islands Orkneys.

in this manner. With the auxiliary footmen being eight thousand, he fortified the middle battell: three thousand of their horse he put on both sides in the wings: commanding the Legions to stand behind before the trench of the camp to the greater glory of the victory, if it were obtained without shedding any Roman blood, otherwise for assistance and succour, if the vanguard should be repelled. The Britans were marshalled on the higher ground, fifty both for show, and also to terrifie: The first battalion standing on the plaine, the rest in the ascent of the hill knits and rising, as it were, one over another. The middle of the field was filled with the clattering of chariots and horsemen. Then Agricola perceiving the enemy to exceed him in number, and fearing lest he should be assailed on the fronts and flanks both at one instant: displaid his army in length: and although by that means his battell would become disproportionably long, and many advised him to take in the Legions, yet being more forward to hope, than yielding to feare, he rejected the counsell, and leaving his horse advanced himselfe before the ensignes on foot.

In the first encounter before the joining, both sides discharged and threw: Wherein the Britans both employing art, and shewing resolution with their great swords and little targets a voided our shot, or shake them off: darting withall great store of theirs against us: till at length Agricola spying his vantage, exhorted three Batavian cohorts, and two of the Tungrians to presse forward and bring the matter to handy strokes and dint of sword: a thing, which they in respect of long service were able readily to performe: and contrariwise to the enemy prejudiciall and hurtfull, by reason of their small bucklers and huge swords. For the swords of the Britans being blunt-pointed were no way for the close or for the open fight. Now as the Batavians began to deale blowes and lay about them, to strike with the pikes of their bucklers, to mangle their faces, and having overborne in the plaine all that resisted, to march up the hill, the rest of the cohorts gathering hearts, upon emulation, violently beat downe all about them, and many halfe dead or wholly unioched were left, for hast of winning the victory.

In the meane time, the troupes of the horsemen began to flee: and the charriotters mingled themselves with the battell of the footmen: who albeit they had lately terrified others, were now distressed themselves, by the unevennesse of the ground, and thicke ranks of their enemies. Neither was the forme of this fight, like a loose skirmish of horsemen to and fro. But standing still, and maintaining their places, they fought withall by maine weight of horses to breake in and beate downe one another. The wandring waggon also and masterlesse horses affrighted, as feare carried them, over-bore many times, those which met them, or thwarted their way. Now, the Britans, which stood aloofe from the battell, on the height of the hills, and at their good leisure disdained our feawnesse, began to come downe by little and little, and to wheele about the backs of our men that were now in traine of winning the field: but that Agricola suspecting as much, opposed against them foure wings of horsemen purposely retained about him, for sudden dispatch, and all chances of war: and so, by repulsing them backe, as sharply as they ran fiercely to assaile, put them in rout. Thus the counsell of the Britans turned upon their owne heads, and the wing, by commandement of the leader turning quite from the battell in front, followed the enemy as the back, and pursued the chafe. Then might you have seen in the open fields a grievous and pitifull spectacle, cursing, wounding, taking, and killing of them that were taken, when others were offered. Now whole regiments of the enemies according to their severall dispositions, armed though they were, and more in number, turned their backs to the fewer: others unarmed sought their own death, offering themselves voluntarily to the slaughter. Every where there lay scattered, weapons, bodies, and mangled limbs, and the ground was every where embred with blood: and sometime even in them that were overcome, appeared both anger and valour: For when they approached the woods, uniting themselves; they entrapped unawares some of the foremost of our men which unadvisedly followed, not knowing the country. And but that Agricola with his presence every where assisted at need, setting about them certain cohorts of his bravest and most ready footmen, as it were in forme of a taile, and commanding some of his horsemen to forego their horses where the passes were narrow, and others, where the wood was thin to enter on horseback, no doubt we had taken some blow by our overmuch boldnesse. But after they saw our men again in strong array and good order to follow the chafe, they fled, not in troupes

A troupes as before, and attending each other, but utterly disbanded and single, and eschewing all company, toward the farre remote and desert places. The night and our satiate of blood made an end of the chafe. Of the enemies side ten thousand were slaine: three hundred and forty of ours. Amongst whom was Aulus Atticus Capitaine of a cohort, upon a yonshfull heat of his owne, and through the fierce spirit of his horse, being carried into the midst of his enemies. That night, the winners for their parts solaced themselves with the victorie and spoile: and the Britans scattering out of order, crying and howling, (men and women together) take and draw with them their hurt persons, call unto them that were not hurt, forsake their owne houses, and in despite also set them on fire themselves: chuse out holes for to lurke in, and straight-waies forsake them; communicate some counsels together, and then have

B some glimmering of hope: sometime at the sight of their dearest beloved moved to pittie, more often stirred to rage: and certaine it is, that some, as by way of compassion and mercie, slew their owne wives and children. The day following discovered more plainly the greatnesse of the victorie. Every where desolation and silence: no stirring in the mountains: the houses fired and smoaking a far off: no man to meet with our spies; who being sent abroad into all quarters found by their footsteps the flight was uncertaine, and that they were no where in companies together. Whereupon Agricola, because the summer was spent, and the warre could not conveniently be divided; bringeth his armie into the borders of the

C Horrestians: where receiving hostages he commanded the Admirall of his navie to saile about Britaine, lending him souldiers and strength for that purpose, and the serour of the Roman name was gone already before. Himselfe, with easie and gentle journeyes, to terrifie the new conquered nations with the very stay of his passage, disposed his footmen and horsemen in their wintering places: and withall the navy with prosperous wind and successe arrived at the port * Trutensis, from whence it departed, and coasting along the nearest side of Britaine returned thither againe. Then and never before, the Roman fleet having doubled the point of the utmost sea discovered and reported, Britan to be an Island, and withall found out and subdued the Isles of Orkney, before that time never knowne, which Orosius and as many writers as follow him ascribe falsely unto Claudius. This state of affaires in Britaine Agricola signified by letter without any amplifying termes, to Domitian: who after his manner, with a cheerefull countenance and grieved heart, received the newes: being inwardly pricked, to think that his late counterfeited triumph of Germany, wherein certaine slaves bought

D for money were attired, and their haire dressed as captives of that country, was had in derision and justly scorned abroad: whereas now, a true and great victorie, so many thousands of enemies being slaine, was famous and currant in every mans mouth: that it were indeed a most perilous point if a private mans name should be exalted above the name of the Prince. Many then in vaine had he suppressed the study of Oratory, and all other worthy politick arts, if he should in military glory be despised by another: For other matters might more easily be passed over: but to be a good commander of an army was a vertue above private estate; and peculiar for a Prince. With these and the like cares being tormented, and musing much in his closet alone, which was atoken and signe of some crueltie intended, hee thought it yet best for the present to dissemble and put over his malice, untill the heat of Agricola his glory,

E and love of his souldiers were somewhat abated: for, as yet he remained in charge. Wherefore he commanded that all the honours of triumphall ornaments, image triumphall and what else usually was conferred in lieu of triumph, should in Senate be awarded unto him in most ample and honourable termes: and sending a successor, caused withall a bruit to be spread, that the province of Syria then lying void by the death of Atilius Rufus a consular Lieutenant, and reserved for men of great qualitie, was purposed unto him. And a common opinion went, that Domitian sending one of his most secret and trusty servants to Agricola, sent withall the patents of Syria with instruction, that if he were in Britaine it should be delivered: and that the same man meeting Agricola as he crossed the seas, without speaking unto him or doing his message, returned againe to Domitian. Whether this were true or fained and surmised probably, as correspondent to the Princes disposition, I cannot affirme: But in the meane season Agricola had delivered to his successor the Province in good and peaceable state. And lest his arrivall at Rome should be noted, by reason of the multitudes of people, which would goe out to see & to meet him, cutting off that courtesie of his friends, he entered the City by night, and

* Now called Angule, as some thinke,

* Some read; Rhutupensis, which is supposed to be Richborow nere Sandwith. Britaine is for certaine avouched to be an Island. The Islands Orkneye.

and by night came to the palace as he was willed. Where, being admitted to the Prince's presence, and received with a short salutation and no speech, he sorted himself with the rest of the waiters.

Agricola had for his successor, as others thinke, Co. Trebellius, but, as I take it, Salustius Lucullus, whom Domitian straight after slew, because he suffered certain spears of a new fashion to be called Lucullæ. At which time also, Arviragus flourished in this Island, and not in the daies of Claudius, as Geoffrey of Monmouth dreameth. For these verses of Juvenall are to be understood of Domitian:

*Omen habes magni clariq; triumphi:
Regem aliquem capies, aut de temone Britanno
Excidet * Arviragus*

A powerfull offe and signe thou hast, presaging triumph great:
Some King (sure) thou shalt prisoner take in chafe or battell heate:
Or else Arviragus shall lose his British royall seat.

There flourished likewise at Rome Claudia Rufina, a British dame, passing well learned, and withall as beautifull, whom Martiall commendeth in these verses;

*Claudia caruleis cum sit Rufina Britannis
Edita, cur * Latia pectora plebis habet?
Quale decus forma? Romanam credere matres
Italides possunt, Atithides esse suam.*

Sith from blew Britans Claudia Rufina doth descend,
How comes a learned Latian brest her person to commend:
How beautifull! Italian dames may her a Roman make:
And Attick wives againe full well, her for their daughter take.

This was, as John Bale and Matthew Parker Archbishop of Canturburie have written, the very same woman, of whom S. Paul maketh mention in his latter Epistle to Timothy) neither is the computation of times repugnant, howsoever others be of a contrary opinion.

Thus under the Empire of Domitian, when that farther part thereof, as being rough and unfruitfull, was left unto the barbarous Britans, this hither side was reduced full and whole into the forme of a province: Which was not governed by any Consular or Proconsular deputy, but was counted * Præfidiālis, and appropriate to the Cæsars: as being a prouince annexed unto the Roman Empire after the division of Provinces ordained by Augustus, and had Propretors of their owne. Afterwards when as Constantinus Maximus had set downe a new forme of Common-weale, under a Prefect or Provost of Pretors degree of Gaule, there was set over it a vicegerent, and together with him in matters of war the * Count or Earle of Britan, an Earle or Count of the Saxony coast by Britan: and a Duke or Generall of Britan, besides Presidents, Auditors or Receivers & such others. Moreover out of those 29. Legions, which the Romans had appointed through their Imperial government, three of them lay in garison to restrain that Province, to wit, the second Legion Augusta, the first Legion *victrix*, & the twentieth *victrix*. But this is meant of the time of Severus: For before, we learn out of Authors, that other Legions there were, and more in number. And although Strabo writeth that there was neede of no more than one band of souldiers, to the keeping of Britaine in subjection, yet in the raigne of Claudius there were placed here, the second Legion Augusta, the ninth Legion Hispaniensis, & the fourteenth named *Gemina Martia victrix*. Yea and about the time of Vespasian, Josephus sheweth, that four Legions served in this Island: Britaine, saith hee, *is compassed about with the Ocean, and almost as big as our world. The Romans there inhabiting, have brought it under their dominion, and foure Legions doe keepe in subjection an Island peopled with so great a multitude.* And doubtlesse, the standing guards and Camps of Legions and Roman souldiers, were many times the Seminaries, as it were, and Seed-plots of Cities and townes, as in other provinces, so also in this our Britan. Thus was the yoke of subjection laid upon the Britans, first by a garison of souldiers, which alwaies with terror were ready to command the Inhabitants, afterwards by tribute and imposts: and in that

Salustius Lucullus Lieutenant General over Britaine. Arviragus the Britaine.

* The old scholiast upon Juvenal calleth him Arvilla.

Rufina, a British dame.

* By the like phrase in another Epigram he saith, *Abderitane pectora plebis habet*, speaking of a dolich and groote headed fellow.

Britaine became a Province. Britaine a Præfidiālis Province. * Governed under Emperors, with garisons lying in it. * Comes, heere, as much as a Lieutenant General. What legions served in Britaine. Dio, 5.

The beginning of Cities. The Roman yoke.

A that respect forced they were to have Publicans, that is to say, greedy cormorants and hordleeches, who sucked their blood, confiscated their goods and exacted tributes in the name of the dead: Neither were they permitted round the ancient lawes of their country, but magistrates were sent from the people of Rome, with absolute power and commission to minister justice even in capital matters. For, Provinces had Propretors, Lieutenants, Presidents, Pretors and Proconsuls. Every citie also and Towne had their municipall magistrats. The Pretor proclaimed yearly solemn sessions and Assizes, at which he determined the weightier causes sitting aloft upon a high Tribunal seat, and guarded with his Factors about him proudly executed his jurisdiction: on rods and whipping cheere were presented to the backs, the axe and heading to the necks of the common people, and every yeare they were forced to receive one new ruler or other allotted unto them. Neither was this sufficient: they maintained discord and dissention among them, some also they favoured among the rest, that they might have them to be the instruments of this their servitude.

This yoke of the Romans although it were grievous, yet comfortable it proved and a saving health unto them: for that healthsome light of *Iesu Christi* shone withall upon the Britans, whereof more hereafter, and the brightnesse of that most glorious Empire, chased away all savage barbarisme from the Britans minds, like as from other nations whom it had subdued. For Rome, as saith Rutilius.

*Legiferis mundum complexa triumphis
Federe communis utroque cunctis fuit:*

Compassed the world with triumphs bringing lawes;
And all to live in common league doth cause.

And in another place speaking unto the same Rome most truly and in these elegant verses;

*Fecisti patriam deversis gentibus unam.
Proferat in justis te dominante capis.*

Dunig, offers victis proprii consortia iura,
Præm fecisti quod prius orbis erat.

Thou hast of divers nations one entire country framed,
Happy it was for lawlesse folke, that they by thee were tamed.

For offering use, to them subdued, of thine owne proper lore,
One civill state thou mad'st of that, which was wild world before.

For, to say nothing of the rest of the Provinces, the Romans having brought over Colonies hither, and reduced the naturall inhabitants of the Island unto the society of civill life, by training them up in the liberall Arts, and by sending them into Gaule for to learne perfectly the lawes of the Romans (whereupon Juvenal

*Gallia caudicibus domui sacunda Britannus,
Gaule eloquent of Britans hath good pleading lawyers made.)*

E governed them with their lawes, and framed them to good manners and behaviour, so as in their diet and apparell they were not inferior to any other Provinces: they furnished them also with goodly houses and stately buildings, in such sort, that the reliques and rubbish of their ruines doe cause the beholders now, exceedingly to admire the same: and the common sort of people doe plainly say, these Roman workes were made by Giants, whom in the North parts they use to call in their vulgar tongue *Eitians*, for *Heathens* (if I be not deceived) or *Eithicks*. Certes, they are workes of exceeding great admiration, and sumptuous magnificence: but especially the *Wall*, whereof I will write more in due place: and those Caucies throughout the whole land; a wonderfull piece of worke, what with dreining and drying up the meres in some places, and what with casting up banks where low vallies were, in others so fenced and paved with stone, and withall of that breadth, that they can well receive and with roome enough, waies meeting one the other. Now what manner of Caucies these were, let Gallene tel you.

The wales, quoth he, Trajans repaired, by paving with stone, or casting with banks: as of such pieces of them as were most and myrie, by stocking up and ridding such as were rough

Rowardus in Pro tribunali

The Roman workes in Britaine.

The Fists wall. Highwaies made by the Romans.

Galen lib. 9 cap. 9. Methos medendi.

and overgrowne with bushes and briars: by making bridges over rivers that could not be waded through: where the way seemed longer then needed by cutting out another shorter: if any where by reason of some steep hill, the passage were hard and uneasy, by turning it aside through easier places: now in aſcēt were haunted with wild beaſts, or lay waſt and deſert, by drawing it from thence through places inhabited, and withall, by laying ſeverall ſmall uneven and rugged grounds. But now adaies theſe of ours, being diſmembred, as it were, and cut one piece from another in ſome places, by reaſon that the country people digge out graveſſes from thence, and ſcarcelly to be ſcene: yet elſewhere, leading through paſtures and by-grounds out of the rode way, the bankes are ſo high, that evidently they ſhew themſelves.

Theſe cauſeys or Street-waies, the Romans called *Vias Conſulares, Regias, Prætorias, Militares, Publicas, curſus publicos*, and *Actus*, as it is to be ſcene in Ulpian and Julius Frontinus. Ammianus Marcellinus termeth them *Aggeres itinerarios & publicos*: Sidonius Apollinaris, *Aggeres*, and *Tellures inaggeratas*: Beda and the latter writers, *Stratas*, that is Streets.

Our Chronicles, doubtleſſe herein deceived, doe hold, that there were but onely foure ſuch cauſeys as theſe: of which, the firſt was *Walling-ſtreet*, ſo called of one *Vitellian*, I wote not what he was, who had the charge thereof (and indeed the Britans named *Vitellian*, in their tongue *Gueſalin*) and *Werlam-ſtreet*, for that it went through *Verolanium*, which elſewhere alſo, the people dwelling nere unto it, named, *High dike*, *High ridge*, *Fortie-foot-way*, and *Ridge-way*. The ſecond they commonly call *Ikemildſtreet*, becauſe it began in the *ſcenes* country: The third, the *Foſſe*, for that (as men thinke) it was fenced on both ſides with a ditch; and the fourth *Ermiſ-ſtreet*, by a German word, of *Mercurie* (whom as I am informed by *Iohn okſpau* a greace learned man) under the name of *Ermifal*, that is, the *Colonne of Mercurie*, the Germans our ancient progenitors, worſhipped.

Now, that *Mercurie* had the charge of waies, his name was among the Greekes, may ſhew ſufficiently: as alſo his Statues with foure ſides, called in old time *Hermes*, which were ſet every where upon high waies. It hath been generally thought, that one *Mulmutius* (I know not what he ſhould be) many hundred yeares before the birth of Chriſt, made theſe cauſeys: but ſo far am I from believing it, that I dare confidently avouch, the Romans by little and little founded and railed them up. Whileſt *Agri-cola*, ſaith *Tacitus*, governed Britaine, ſeverall waies were enjoyed, and farre diſtant places (by the purveyors commandement) that the country ſhould carry from the neareſt ſtanding camps, or wintering places, to thoſe that were farre off, and out of the way: And the Britans complained, as the ſame *Tacitus* writeth, That the Romans wore out, and conſumed their bodies and hands, in cleering of woods, and paving the Fens, with a thouſand ſtripes & reprochfull indignities. And ſo we read in ancient records, That in the daies of *Honorius* and *Arcadius* there were made in Britaine certain beaten high waies from ſea to ſea. That this was the Romans worke, Beda witneſſeth: The Romans inhabited (ſaith he) within the wall, which, as I rehearſed before, *Severus* had made overthwart the Iſland toward the ſoutherne ſide, which the Cities, Churches, and ſtreet waies there made doe witneſſe at this day. About the making of ſuch cauſeys and high waies, the Romans were wont to exerciſe their ſouldiers, and the common multitude, left being idle, they ſhould grow ſadious, and affe alteration in the Sate. The Romans, as *Iſidorus* writeth, made *Cauſeys* in ſundry places, almoſt through the world, both for the direction of journeys, and alſo becauſe the people ſhould not be idle: and to the making and paving of ſuch cauſeys, priſoners were many times condemned, as may be gathered out of *Suetonius*, in the life of *Caius*. And there are to be ſcene in Spaine, the *Cauſeys* called *Salamantica* or *Argemica*, as alſo in France certain Rode waies, called *Via militares*, paved by the Romans; to ſay nothing, of the way *Appia*, *Pompeia*, *Valeria*, and others in Italie.

A long theſe *Cauſeys* and high waies, *Auguſtus* placed young men at firſt, as poſts within ſmall diſtances one from another: and afterward ſwift wagons, to give notice with all ſpeed and out of hand, what was doing in every place. Nere, or upon theſe *Cauſeys*,

Sueton. in Octavius.

A *Cawſies*, were ſeated Cities and Manſions, which had in them Innes furniſhed with all neceſſaries belonging to this life for travellers, and way-faring perſons to abide and reſt in, as alſo *Mutations*; For ſo they called in that age, the places where ſtrangers, as they journied, did change their poſt-horſes, draught beaſts, or wagons. He therefore that ſeeketh not about theſe Rode waies for thoſe places, which are mentioned in the Itinerarie of *Antoninus*, ſhall no doubt miſſe the truth, and wander out of the way.

Neither, thinke much of your labour, in this place to note, that the Emperors erected at every miles end, along theſe *Cawſies* certaine little pillars or *Obelisks*, with numerall Characters or Letters cut in them, to ſignifie how many miles: Whereupon *Sidonius Apollinaris*, writeth thus:

*Antiquis tibi nec teratur agger;
Cujus per ſpatium ſatis vetuſtus,
Nomen Cæſareum viret columna.*

That ancient cawſey, doe not decay,
Where on good old pillars along the way,
The Cæſars name ſtands freſh for aie.

Nere alſo unto theſe high waies, on both ſides were Tombs and Sepulchers, with Inſcriptions graven upon them in memorie of brave and noble men, that the paſſengers by, might be put in mind, that as thoſe ſometimes were mortall men, ſo themſelves are now. For the repairing likewise of the ſaid cawſeys, as wee may ſee in the *Code of Theodoſius* title, *de ſanere muniendo*, that is, Of making and mending waies, They all were willing upon a good and profitable devotion, who could doe beſt, and make moſt ſpeed in this buſineſſe. Furthermore, in our owne ancient lawes, there is mention made, *de pace quatuor Chemoniarum*, that is, *Viarum ſub majori iudicio*, that is, Touching the peace of the foure Rode-waies in ſome higher Court.

Under the raigne of *Nerva*, the writers have diſcontinued the ſtorie of Britannie. But in the time of *Trajanus*, the Britans may ſeem to have revolted and rebelled: and evident it is out of *Spartianus*, that ſubdued then they were. Moreover, while *Adrianus* was Emperour, *Julius Severus* ruled the Iſland: and when he was called away againſt the Jewes, who then were in an upſore, the Britans could not have beene kept in their allegiance to the Romans, had not *Adrianus* come among them in perſon: who being then Conſull the third time, in the yeare of Chriſt 124. ſeemeth by the proweſſe of his armie to have diſcomfited his enemies. For I have ſcene in one piece of mony of his coining, the ſtampe of an Emperour with three ſouldiers, whom I judge to repreſent three Legions, with this Inſcription, *EXER. BRITANNICUS*: and another bearing this Inſcription *RESTITUTOR BRITANNY*. This Prince reformed many things throughout the Iſland: and was the firſt that built a wall between the barbarous Britans, and the Romans foureſcore miles in length: laying the foundation thereof within the ground of huge piles or ſtokes; and faſtning them together, in manner of a ſtrong hedge or mound. For which expedition of his, *Florus* the Poet plaied upon him, thus:

*Ego nolo Cæſar eſſe
Ambulare per Britannos,
Scythicas pati pruinas.
I will in no wife Cæſar be,
To walke along in Britanic
The Scythicke froſts to feele and ſee.*

Unto whom, *Adrianus* wrote back in this wiſe:

*Ego nolo Florus eſſe,
Ambulare per tabernas,
Latitare per popinas,
Culices pati rotundos.
And I will never Florus be,
To walke from ſhop to ſhop, as he;
To lurke in Tavernes ſecretly,*

F 3

A Manſion.

A Mutation.

Part. li. de lingua Latin.

Code of Theodoſius.
The Lawes of S. Edward.

Nerva Trajanus.

Adrianus, Emperour.
Jul. Severus, Proprætor.

Spartianus.

And

Cl. Priscus Licinius, Proprietor of Britannic.

And thereto feele the round wine fly.
At this time M.F. CL. PRISCVS LICINIVS, was the Proprietor of Britannic, and emploied in the Journey of Jurie with Hadrian; as appeareth by this antique Inscription in a broken marble.

M.F. CL. PRISCO.
ICINIO. ITALICO. LEGATO. AVGVSTORVM
PR. PR. PROV. CAPPADOCIE
PR. PR. PROV. BRITANNIE LEG. AVG.

LEG. III. GALLICIAE. PRAEF. COH. III. LINGONVM. VEXILLO. MIL. ORNATO. A. DIVO. HADRIANO. IN EXPEDITIONE IVDAIC.

Q. CASSIVS. DOMITIVS. PALVMBVS.

Antoninus Pius, Emperor.

Lollius Urbicus Proprietor. Capitolinus. Pausanias in Arcadica.

Dig. lib. 36. Archigubernus.

Antoninus Philosophus, Emperor. Calphurnius Agricola, Proprietor.

Eumenius. Capitolinus.

Commodus Emperor.

Vipius Marcellus Proprietor.

Xiphilinus out of Dio.

Under Antoninus Pius (by whose ordinance as many as were in the Roman world, became Citizens of Rome) this warre brake out againe into a light fire, which hee so quenched by driving the barbarous Britans further off, under the conduct of Lollius Urbicus Lieutenant, and by making another wall of turfe, that thereupon he was named BRITANNICUS: and hee deserved singular commendation, for that hee had fined the Brigates with the losse of one part of their Lands, who had infested with roades Genouinia, a neighbour province under the protection and allegiance of the Romans. And at this time, as we collect out of Jabolenus, Sejus Saturnius was Archigubernus of the Navie in Britannie: But whether by this title, hee were an Admirall of the said Navie, or a principall Pilot, or the Master of a ship, I would have the Lawyers to tell.

But the Britans, giving occasions still of quarrels and warres, one after another began a commotion under Antoninus Philosophus: for the appeasing whereof, Calphurnius Agricola was sent, and seemeth to have ended the same with fortunate successe. Which commendation for the dispatching of this warre, Fronto, for Roman eloquence comparable to the best, and second to none, would needs give unto Antoninus the Emperour. For albeit he sitting still, and holding his Court in the very palace of Rome, gave out only his commission and warrants for to make this warre, yet he protesteth, that like unto the Pilot sitting at the helme to steere a galley, he deserved the glory of the whole course and sailing in that voyage. At the same time there served also in the wars of Britannie, Helvius Pertinax brought hither out of the Parthian warre, and here staid.

Whiles Commodus was Emperour, Britannie, was all of a Garboile, full of warres, and seditious troubles. For the barbarous Britans, having passed over the wall, made great waste, and hewed in pieces the Romans, both Captaine and Souldier. For the repressing of which rebels, Vipius Marcellus was sent: who had so fortunate an hand in taming their audacious stomacks, that his prowesse was soon defaced, and depraved with envie, and himselfe called backe. This Captaine was of all others most vigilant: and being desirous that the rest about him might be as watchfull, he wrote every evening xij. tables throughout, such as commonly are made of the Linden-tree wood: and commanded one of his attendants about him, to carry the same unto drivers of the souldiers, some at one houre of the night, and some at another, whereby they might thinke their Generall was ever awake, and so themselves might sleepe the lesse.

Of whose temperance thus much also is reported: And albeit otherwise his nature was able to resist sleepe, yet that he might doe it the better, he brought to passe by fasting and abstinence,

A sinence. For to the end that he would not feed of bread to the full, hee caused it to be brought from Rome to him into the campe; that by reason of the staleness of it, hee could not eat any whit more than was needfull. But when he, I say, was called backe, all licentious wantonnesse brake into the Campe, and the forces in Britannie, letting the raines loose of military discipline, became unruly, and refused the command & government of Commodus, although by some of his flatterers he was stiled Britannicus. Moreover, they that served in Britannie suborned and sent a thousand and five hundred of their owne ranke into Italy against Perrennius, a man that not onely carried an outward shew and countenance, but of all the Emperors minions could indeed do most with him: accusing him that he had made captaines over souldiers certain of the gentlemen's degree, and put Senators out of place, and withall, that he had laid wait to take away the Emperors life. Commodus gave care to this information, and believed it, whereupon he delivered the man into their hands: who after he had with many indignities bene whipped, lost his head, and was proclaimed a traitor to his country. Howbeit these seditious stirs Helvius Pertinax repressed, not without great danger, being himselfe almost slaine, and for certaine, left for dead among those that were slaine.

Now when Britannie was in peaceable estate, Clodius Albinus received it from Commodus, and withall, afterwards for his worthy exploits in Britannie the name of Cæsareus: but soone after, because in a publike assembly he had made an invective against the government of the Emperors, Junius Severus was placed in his roome.

At which very time, the thicke mists of superstition being scattered (not under M. Aurelius and L. Verus Emperors, as Beda writeth but under Commodus, when Eleutherus was Bishop of Rome) the heavenly light & brightness of Christianitie, by the means of King Lucius shone upon this Island. Which Prince, (as we find in the ancient * reports and lives of Martyrs, usually read in the Church) admiring the integrity and holy life of the Christians, made petition unto Eleutherus the Pope, by the mediation of Elvan & Meduan, two Britans, that both himselfe and his subjects might be instructed in christian religion. Then sent he hither forthwith, Fugiatius and Donatianus, two holy men, with letters, which at this day be extant, & (as very many are persuaded) are not forged but authentically, as bearing date, when L. Aurelius Commodus was second time Consul with Velpronius. Which holy men instructed the King and others in the mysteries of christian religion. Hereupon it is, that Ninnius writeth thus of this King, King Lucius quoth he, is surnamed Lever Maur, that is, a Prince of great glory, for the Faith which in his time came. Now for those that call these matters of King Lucius into question (as many doe in these daies) as if there had bene at that time no King in Britannie, which they suppose was full and whole reduced into a province before, I wish them to call to remembrance thus much, That the Romans by ancient custome had in their provinces Kings as the instruments of bondage; that the Britans even then, refused to obey Commodus; and that themselves possessed and

E held freely, those parts of the Island which were beyond the foresaid wall, had their Kings of their owne, and that Antoninus Pius a few yeares before, having ended warre, permitted Kingdomes to be ruled by their own Kings, and provinces by their own * Comites. What should let then, but that Lucius might be King over that part of the Island, unto which the Romans forces never came? And verily, that which Tertullian hath put downe, who wrote much about those daies, if we thoroughly weigh his words, and the time, may very aptly be referred to the Britans conversion unto Christ: Those places, quoth he, among the Britans, which yielded the Romans no access, are now subdued unto Christ: and somewhat after, Britannie is enclosed within the compasse of the Ocean. The nation of the Mauri, and the barbarous Getulians are beset by the Romans, for feare they might passe beyond the limits of their countries. What should I speake of the Romans, who with garrisons of their Legions fortifie their Empire? neither are they able to extend the power of their dominion, beyond those very nations. But the Kingdome and name of Christ reacheth farther still, it is believed in every place, and is worshipped of all those people above named, &c.

But our Ecclesiasticall writers who have emploied both time and diligence in the consideration

Helvius Pertinax Proprietor.

Clodius Albinus Proprietor. Capitolinus. Junius Severus Proprietor. Christian Religion in Britannie. K. Lucius.

* Martyrologists.

Capitolinus.

Lieutenants Generall, or Governors. Against the Jewes. cap. 7.

consideration of this point endeavor and labour to prove, and that out of ancient authors of credit, that before this time, in the very dawning and infancy of the Church, Britanny had received christian religion: and namely that Joseph of Arimathea a noble Senator, sailed out of Gaule into Britanny, and that Claudia Rufina the wife of Aulus Pudens, which woman, as it is credibly thought, S. Paul nameth in his latter Epistle to Timothy, and whom the Poet Martiall so highly commendeth, was a Britan boine. They cite also the testimony of Dorotheus, who commonly goeth under the name of the Bishop of Tyre, who in his Synopsis hath recorded, that Simon Zelotes, after he had travailed through Mauritania, was at last slaine and buried in Britanny: as also that Aristobulus, whom S. Paul mentioneth in his Epistle to the Romans, was made Bishop of Britanny: (whereto Nicephorus inclineth) notwithstanding he speaketh of Britania and not of Britannia: they report likewise upon the authoritie of Symeon that great Metaphrast, and of the Greeks * Menology, that S. Peter came hither and spread abroad the light of Gods word: out of Sophronius also and Theodoret that S. Paul after his second imprisonment in Rome, visited this our country. Whereupon Venantius Fortunatus if he may be beleevd as a Poet, writeth thus of him, namely he speaketh of his doctrine.

Transit Oceanum, & qua facit Insula portum

Quasq; Britannus habet terras, quasq; ultima Thule.

Pass'd over Seas, where any Isle makes either port or bay,
And lands, so far as Britans coast or cape of Thule lay.

But to this purpose maketh especially that which erewhile I alleged out of Tertullian; as also that which Origen recordeth, *How the Britans with one consent embraced the Faith, and made way themselves unto God by means of the Druides, who alwaies did bear upon this article of belife, That there was but one God.* And verily of great moment and importance is that with me, that Gildas writeth, after hee had mentioned the rebellion of Boodicia, and treated of the revenge thereof, *Meane while, quoth he, Christ, that true Sun, shining with his most glittering brightnesse upon the universall world, not from the temporall skie and firmament, but even from the highest cope of heaven, exceeding all times, vouchsafed first, his beames, that is to say, his precepts and doctrine in the time as wee know of Tiberius Caesar, unto this frozen Island full of Ice, and lying out as it were in a long tract of earth remote from the visible sunne.* Chrysostome likewise, (to note so much by the way) writeth of the Christian religion in this Iland, as followeth: *The British Islands seated without this sea, and within the very Ocean, have felt the power of the word (for even there also be Churches founded, and altars erected) of that word, I say, which is planted in the soules, and now also in the lips of all people.* And the same Chrysostome in another place: *How often have folke in Britanny fed of mans flesh? but now with fasting they refresh the soule.* Likewise S. Hierome; *The Britan divided from our world, if he proceed in religion, leaving the westerne parts toward the Suns setting, will seeke Hierusalem, a Citie known unto him by same only, and relation of scriptures. But now passe we forward from the Church to the Empire.*

When Commodus was slaine, Pertinax being called to the Empire, sent presently Albinus againe over into Britanny. But after that Pertinax within eight hundred and two daies was made away, Didius Iulianus, (who likewise was within a while killed) at Rome, Pescennius Niger in Syria, Clodius Albinus in Britanny, and Septimius Severus in Pannonia, all together at once take upon them the sovereignty of the Empire. Severus being next unto Rome, hastneth first to Rome, and, with consent of the souldiers and Senate, proclaimed Emperor, straightwaies (because he would not leave an enemy behind at his backe) craftily createth Albinus, Caesar: this Albinus, chiefe commander of the forces in Britanny and Gaule, and having stamped mony with his image upon it, set up his statutes, and conferred upon him the honorable dignitie of a Consul, wisely with good foresight dulceth and kindly intreateth the men. Then maketh he an expedition into the East against Niger, whom in plaine field hee gave battell unto, vanquished and slew. The City * Bizantium after 3. yeares siege he forced and wonne: the Adiabenes, Arabians and other nations hee brought to his sub-

jection.

A section. Being now puffed up with pride, for these fortunate victories, and impatient of a companion in government, he sent under-hand murderers of purpose to dispatch Albinus: but seeing his secret practises tooke not effect, hee openly proclaimeth him Traitor, and an enemy to the State, and with all the speede he could make, hastneth into Gaule against him: where Albinus with the choice and chiefe strength of the British armie made head neere unto * Lyons. The Albinians fought most valiantly, in so much as Severus himselfe, throwing from him his purple robe, began with his hands to fight. But when the said British forces, as if now the victorie had bene in their hands, displayed their ranks in thinner arrayes, and ran furiously upon their enemies backs, discomfited and in rout, Laetus, one of Severus his Captaines, who with his selfe and unfoiled troupees, waited untill then, for to see the issue of the battell (having heard withall that Severus was slaine) with a purpose and resolution now to take the Empire upon him, charged upon them, and put them to flight. And Severus, having by this time rallied his men, and resumed the purple Robe asore said, followed likewise fiercely upon them, and having slaine Albinus with a number of other, obtained a most fortunate victorie.

Upon this, Severus (having alone the Sovereignty of the whole world) sent first Heraclianus to seize upon Britaine, and to rule it: when Virius Lupus, as Proprætor and Lieutenant (whom Vlpian the Civill Lawyer nameth *President of Britaine*) who, as we shall relate in place convenient, built many new Castles there: howbeit, driven hee was in the end to redeeme his owne peace, at the hands of the *Maeatae*, with a great summe of money, after hee had recovered some few prisoners, considering that the Caledonians kept not their word, who had promised to keepe under the said *Maeatae*. And being not able after many losses and calamities sustained, to repress the sudden rodes, and assaults made by the enemies, of necessity hee sent for Severus himselfe, who gladly and thankfully taking hold of this good occasion, to withdraw and weane his sonnes (given to licentious rioting) from the delightfull pleasures of Rome-Citie, and therewith to augment his owne file with the addition of *Britannicus*: albeit, he was above threecore yeares of age, and gowtie besides, fully resolveth with his two sons, Bassianus (whom he had named Antoninus, & Augustus) D Geta Caesar, and the Legions, to enter Britaine. The Britans forthwith sent Embassadors unto him for peace. Whom after he had of purpose detained with him a good while, till he might prepare all things meet for warre, hee sent away, as they came without obtaining their suit: and leaving his sonne Geta, (whom hee created Augustus at his first arrivall in Britaine) in the higher part of the Province which continued in obedience to the Romans, for the civill jurisdiction and administration of the affaires there: himselfe with Antoninus went into the farther parts, where being occupied in cutting down woods, making bridges, and drying up the meres, he fought no battell: howbeit, what with the ambuscadoes of enemies, and what with sickness, hee lost fiftie thousand of his men: Thus writeth Dio. But Herodian hath recorded, that in certaine light skirmishes, whiles the barbarous Britaines kept the sennie bogs, and most thick woods, out of which they might more safely assaile the Romans he had the upper-hand. Yet he enforced them in the end to a league, with this condition, that they should yield unto him a good part of their Countrey. And that which is the greatest honour and ornament of his Empire, he fenced it with a wall over thwart the Island, from one coast of the Ocean to another: For these victories, he stamped certaine pieces of money with this Inscription, *VICTORIA BRITANNICA*, assumed the surname of *BRITANNICVS MAXIMVS*; and his sonne Geta named *BRITANNICVS* bare it, as appeareth by his coines. Howbeit, the Britans afterward (having broken covenant) began to rebell, and make alteration in the State, whereupon his wrathfull indignation against them brake out into such termes, as that in an assembly of his souldiers, he gave them in charge to make a generall massacre of them all, using these verses out of Homer, to this effect:

Let none escape your bloody hands, but be they sure to die,
Spare not the very babes unborne, in mothers wombe that lie.

The

Bale,
Matthew
Parker, John
Fox.

Brutij in Italy.

* The same
that Calen-
dar or Alma-
nack with us.

* Vpon Eze-
chiel.

Vnder Nero.

In a Sermon
upon the
Pentecost.
Epicaph, of
Marcella,
Widow.

Pertinax Em-
perour.
Severus Em-
perour.

Albinus Em-
perour.

* Afterwards
Constantino-
ple.

Heraclianus,
Proprætor.
Virius Lupus,
Proprætor.
Digest. lib. 28.
Tit. 6.
Who inhabi-
ted the coun-
try now
Northumber-
land.

These rebels when he had in some sort repressed by the helpe of his own forces, sickned, not so much upon any bodily dis ease, as for griefe and sorrow of mind, occasioned by the desperate and unreclaimable mildemeanour of his Sonne Antoninus, who once or twice gave the attempt to kill him with his owne hand, and so he ended up his vitall breath at Yorke, uttering at the point of death these his last words: *A troubled state of Common weale I found in every place: but, I leave it who in peace and quietnesse, even among the Britains.* His body here was in militarie fort, carried forth by his souldiers, bestowed in a funerall fire, and honoured with a solemne funeral, and running at Tilt, performed by his owne souldiers and sonnes. I might peradventure be censured for my vanitie, if I should relate in this place the prodigies that were before his death, and namely, as touching the footie and black hostes or Sacrifices, as also the coronet made of the deadie and moutnefull cypresse, which a scurrile Buffon and jester presented unto him with these words, *Thou hast bene all, now be a God:* but after what manner he was canonized a God, I will not thinke much of mine owne paine, to annex hereunto, considering that the knowledge thereof may delight the reader also.

The Apotheosis, or Deification of the Emperour.

Herodian.

A Custome the Romanes have, to consecrate those Emperours that die, their Sonnes or Successors surviving. And whosoever are in this wise honoured, are canonized and registered in the Rolles of their Divi, that is, Gods. Now, during this complement, they hold a generall mourning thorow the whole citie, and the same mixed with a festiveall solemnitie. For, after the Princes death, they burie the bodie honourably, and with sumptuous funeral, according to the manner of other men: But withall, they frame an image of waxe, resembling in all points the party deceased, and lay the same openly at the entry of the palace, upon a most ample and stately bed of Iworie, erected on high, and covered with cloth of gold. And verily, that image both with a patish and wan colour like unto a sicke man. About the bed on both sides, there sit a great part of the day, the whole bodie of the Senate on the right hand, arrayed in their blackes: and on the left hand certain Dames and Ladies, who are by the place and dignity of the husband, or parents worshipfull. And there, not one of them seeme to weare any gold about them, nor to be adorned with jewels, but clad in white and slender garments, they represent mourners. This do they for seven daies together: during which time, the Physicians resort daily into him to touch his pulse, and consider of his disease, and thereupon as of their patient, judicially pronounce, that he groweth worse and worse. This after a seven night, when it seemed that he was departed, certaine of the noblest, and choise young gentlemen, as well of the Senators as Knights degree, take up the foresaid bed upon their shoulders, and carrie it thorow the high street, called Sacra, into the old Forum, where the Roman Magistrates had wont to lay down their rule and governments. Here, on both sides were certaine greses or steps in manner of staires raised, upon which, on the one hand was placed a quire of boies of noblest birth, and of the Partisan degree, and on the other, a company of women likewise of noble parentage, singing in commendation of the dead Prince, hymnes and sonets, entuned in a solemne and mournfull note. Which done, they take up the said bed or hearse againe, and carrie it out of the Citie into Campus Martius: where, in the broadest place of the said field, a frame or turret foure square with equall sides was raised, and the same made in manner of a tabernacle, of no other matter than main great pieces of timber. And verily within it was all over filled with dry fennell: but without, adorned with rich hangings woven with gold wire between, with divers ivory portraicts of Imagerie, and sumptuous pictures. Over this frame there stood another somewhat lesse: butbeit, in forme and furniture very like unto the former, with windowes and doores standing open. And so a third and fourth turret, smaller every one than that next beneath it, and others likewise still one after another, until you come to the last and utmost, which is the least and highest of all the rest. The manner of this whole building a man may well compare to these lanternes or light-towers standing by haven sides, and are commonly called Phari, which give light by fire in the night time, and direct ships at sea in their course to safe harbours. The hearse then being mounted up into the second tabernacle, they get together spices and odours of all sorts, likewise all the sweet smelling fruits, hearbs, juices and liquors, that the whole world can yield, and thereon poutre the same forth

by

by heape-meale. For their is not a nation, citie or state, nor any person of worth and make above the rest, but strive a vie every one to bestow in honor of the Prince, those last gifts and presents. Now when there is a mightie heape of the said spices gotten together, so that the whole roome is filled therewith, then all the Gentlemen of the Knights order, first ride about that edifice, marching in a certaine measure: and there with in their courses and recourses observe a warlike kind of motion round, in just measure and number. The open chariots likewise are driven about by courtiers in purple roabes of honor sitting thereupon to guide and direct them with vizards on their faces resembling all the redoubted captaines and renowned Emperors of Rome. These ceremonies thus performed, the Prince that next succeedeth in the Empire, takes a torch, and first himselfe sets it to the tabernacle afore said: then, all the rest from every side put fire under, so that forthwith every place being full of the said dry fuel and odors, kindle and catch fire mightily. Then straightwaies from the highest and least tabernacle, as it were out of some lower or high turret together with the fire put underneath, an Eagle was let flie, and the same was supposed to carry up the Princes soule into heaven. And so from that time forward was the Emperour reputed and by the Romans adored among the rest of the Gods. Thus much by way of digression and beside the matter: now let us returne.

Antoninus Caracalla.

Antoninus Caracalla the sonne of Severus, pursued the reliques of the war by his Captaines for a while in Britaine: but soone after he made peace, surrendering to the enemy their territories and castles. Howbeit in a spirit of ambition hee assumed to himselfe in his stile the name of BRITANNICVS, yea and of BRITANNICVS MAXIMVS. His brother Geta likewise, took upon him the title and addition of BRITANNICVS. For we have seen his money coined with this Inscription, IMP. CAES. P. SEPT. GETAPIVS. AVG. BRIT. PONTIF. TRI. P. III. COS. II. PP.

Nonius Philippus Propretor.

From this time forward, writers have in long silence passed over the affaires of Britaine: For Alexander Severus was not slaine, as some would have it, in Sicilla a town of Britaine, but in Gaule. This certaine evidence onely have wee out of an antique stone, that Nonius Philippus was here Propretor under Gordianus the yonger. While Gallienus the Emperour gave himselfe over to all manner of riotousnesse, the State of Rome either through the careless managing of affaires, or by some inclination of the Destinies lay dismembred as it were, and maimed in all parts: and a heave rent there was and revolt of this Province from the Roman Captaine. For thirty tyrants there were who in divers places usurped rule and dominion: among whom Lollianus Victorinus, Posthumus, the Tetrici and Marius bare soveraigne sway, as I suppose, in this Island: For their coines are here in great abundance digged up daily.

Gallienus Emperour.

Panegyricke unto Constantinus, Thirty Tyrants.

Bonofus. Now, Languedoc Province and Dauphine.

Under Aurelian, that notable bibber Bonofus, a Britan borne entred upon the Empire together with Proculus, who claimed to himselfe all Britaine, Spaine, and Braccata Gallia, which provinces Florianus had for two moneths governed, but being in a long and bloody battell vanquished by Probus, he hanged himselfe, whereupon this jest went commonly on him, *There hangs a tankard, and not a man.*

Probus Emperour. Zolimus.

Howbeit Probus was welcomed into Britaine with new troubles and commotions: For one, whom Probus himselfe, induced by the commendation of his familiar friend Victorinus Maurus, had promoted to an office of state, practised a revolt. For which he fell out by way of expostulation with Victorinus, who having gotten leave to depart unto the said party, and feining that he fled and was escaped from the Emperour, being kindly entertained of the tyrant flue him in the night and returned to Probus, and therewith was the province rid of these broiles. But who this tyrant was no man hath related: Howbeit, he may seeme to be that Cl. Corn. Lælianus, whose pieces of coine are found in this Island, and not elsewhere. Moreover, Probus sent hither the Burgundians and Vandals whom he had subdued, and granted them places to inhabit: who afterwards, so often as any one went about to raise sedition, stood the Romans in good stead. Now, whereas Vopiscus writeth, that Probus permitted the Britans to have vines, there is a right learned man that feareth lest hee have inconsiderately put this down in writing, as if this land were unfit for vineyards: & yet it hath vines,

Lælianus Emperour. Burgundians and Vandals in Britaine.

Hierome,
Carus and
Carinus Em-
perours.

vines, and for certain it is knowne, that it had very many. In regard of so many tyrants rising up in these daies within this Province, Porphyrie, who lived in this age, crieth out in these termes, *Britaine a fertile Province of tyrants.*

After this, Carus Augustus the Emperour allotted by decree this our country, together with Gaule, Spaine and Illyricum unto his son Carinus. That he warred here, some there be that slightly indeed, but how truly I wot not, gather out of these verses of Nemesianus;

Nec tacam quæ nuper bella sub Arcto,

Fœdici Carina manu confecturâ, ipso

Pene prior genitore Deo:

Neither may I the wars in silence hide

Dispatcht of late with happy hand in North,

By thee, Carine, thy Father Deifi'd,

Who dost well nere surpass in works of worth.

Dioclesian
and Maximian
Emperours.
Bononiam
Galliz.

Under Dioclesian, Carausius a Menapian borne, a man of very base parentage, howbeit inventive and active withall, who for his valour shewed in battels at sea became renowned, was ordained Captaine of * Bologne in Gaule to put backe and drive away the Saxons and Frankners that troubled the seas. This Carausius having at first from time to time taken many of the Barbarians prisoners, and yet neither brought in all the bootie and pillage into the Emperours treasury, nor made restitution of goods unto the Provincials: afterwards when as hee vanquished and subdued but few of them, began deeply to be suspected, that of set purpose he admitted the Barbarians to enter, to the end in their passage by he might intercept them with booty, and so by this occasion enrich himselfe: whereupon Maximian Augustus the Emperour gave commandement that he should be killed. Whereof he having certaine intelligence, tooke upon him the Imperiall ensignes, and seized Britan into his own hands, withdrew the Navy that lay in defence of Gaule, built many ships after the Roman manner, adjoynd to himselfe the Roman Legion, kept out the companies of forreine souldiers, assembled and drew together the French Merchants to muster, fortified Bologne with a garrison, conveyed away, and tooke to his owne use the publike revenewes of Britan and Batavia, allured by the spoiles of whole provinces no small power of Barbarian forces to be his associates, and the Franks especially, whom he trained to sea-service, and in one word, made all the sea coasts every way dangerous for passage. To the vanquishing of him, Maximianus set forward with a puissant army, out of which * some there were who in the very voyage suffered death gloriously for Christs sake: but when he was come to the sea-side, being skared partly for want of sea-souldiers, and partly with the rage of the British Ocean, staied there; and having made a fained peace with Carausius, yielded unto him the rule of the Island, considering he was taken to bee the meeter man, both to command, and also to defend the Inhabitants against the warlike nations. Hereupon it is, that wee have seene in the silver coines of E Carausius two Emperours joyning hands, with this circumscription, *CONCORDIA AVO. C.* But Maximian turned his forces upon the Frankners, who then held * Batavia, and had secretly under hand sent aide unto Carausius: whom he surprized on such a sudden, that he forced them to submission. In this meane while, Carausius governed Britan with incorrupt and unstained reputation, and in exceeding great peace: against the Barbarians, as writeth Ninnius the disciple of Elvodugus, *hee reedified the wall betweene the mouthes of Cluda and Carunus, and fortified the same with 7. castles, and built a round house of polished stone upon the banks of the river Carun, which tooke name of him, erecting therewith a triumphall arch in remembrance of victory.* Howbeit Buchanan thinketh verily it was the Temple of Terminus, as we will write in Scotland.

* Of the Augusti, that is Emperours.
* Now Holland.

When Dioclesian and Maximian, as well to keepe that which was won, as to recover what was lost, had taken to them Constantius Chlorus, and Maximianus Galerius to bee Cæsars: Constantius having levied and enrolled an armie, came with great speed, and sooner then all men thought to Bologne in France, which also is called Gessoriacum, a towne that Carausius had fortified with strong garrison; and they laid

A laid siege unto it round about: by pitching logs fast into the earth at the very entry, and piling huge stones one upon another in manner of a rampire, he excluded the sea, and tooke from the towne the benefit of their haven: which damme, the strong and violent current of the Ocean beating against it forcibly for many daies together, could not breake, and beare downe: no sooner was the place yielded, but the first tide that rose made such a breach into the said rampire that it was wholly dis-joynd, and broken insunder. And whiles he rigged and prepared both heere and elsewhere an Armada for the recoverie of Britaine, he rid Batavia which was held by the Franks, from all enemies, and translated many of them into the Roman nations, for to till their waste and desert territories.

The Panegyrick of Eumenius.

B In this meane time Allectus a familiar friend of Carausius, who under him had the government of the State, slew him by a treacherous wile, and put upon himselfe the Imperiall purple robe. Which when Constantius heard, he having manned & armed divers fleets, drave Allectus to such doubtfull termes, as being altogether void of counsell, and to seek what to doe, he found then, and never before, that he was not fenced with the Ocean, but enclosed within it. And withall, hoyzing up saile in a tempestuous weather, and troubled sea, by meanes of a mist which over-spread the sea, hee passed by the enemies fleet unawares to them, which was placed at the Isle of Wight, in espiall and ambush to discoved, and intercept him: and no sooner were his forces

C. Allectus, Emperour.

C landed upon the coast of Britaine, but he set all his owne ships on fire, that his Souldiers might repose no trust in saving themselves by flight. Allectus himselfe, when he espied the Navy of Constantius under saile, & approaching toward him, forsooke the sea-side, which he kept, and as he fled, lighted upon Asclepiodotus Grand Seneschal of the Prætorium: but in so fearful a fit, & like a mad man, he hastned his own death, that he neither put his footmen in battell ray, nor marshalled those troopes which he drew along with him in good order, but casting off his purple garment, that he might not be knowne, rushed in with the mercenary Barbarians, and so in a tumultuary skirmish was slaine, and hardly by the discovery of one man found among the dead carcases of the Barbarians, which lay thick spread every where over all the plaines and hills.

D But the Frankners, and others of the barbarous souldiers, which remained alive after the battell, thought to sacke London, and to take their flight and be gone: at which very instant, as good hap was, the souldiers of Constantius, which by reason of a misty and foggy aire, were fevered from the rest, came to London, and made a slaughter of them in all places throughout the citie, and procured not only safetie to the citizens in the execution of their enemies, but also a pleasure in the sight thereof.

E By this victory was the Province recovered, after it had bene, by usurpation, held seven yeares or there about, under Carausius, and three under Allectus. Whereupon Eumenius unto Constantius, writeth thus; *O brave victorie of much importance, and great consequence; yea, and worthy of manifold triumphs, whereby Britaine is restored, whereby the nation of the Frankners is utterly destroyed, and whereby upon many people beside, found accessarie to that wicked conspiracie, there is imposed a necessitie of obedience, and allegiance, and in one word, whereby, for assurance of perpetuall quietnesse, the seas are scoured and cleansed. And as for thee, O invincible Caesar, make thy boast and spare not, that thou hast found out a new world, and by restoring unto the Roman puissance, their glorie for prowess at sea, hast augmented the Empire with an element greater than all Lands. And a little after, unto the same Constantius: Britaine is recovered so, as that those nations also which adjoyne unto the bounds of the same Island, become obedient to your will and pleasure.*

F In the last yeares of Dioclesian and Maximian, when as the East Church had bene for many years already polluted with the blood of martyrs, the violence of that furious persecution went on, and passed even hither also into the West, and many Christians suffered martyrdom. Among whom, the principall were * Albanus of * Uerlam; Julius and Aaron of Isca, a citie called otherwise * Caer Leon, &c. of whom I will write in their proper place. For then the Church obtained victorie with most honourable, and happy triumph, when as with ten yeares massacres it could not be vanquished.

Persecution in Britaine.

* S. Alban.
* Neere Saint Albans in Monmouthshire.

When

G

Constantius
Chlorus,
Emperour.

Baronius, in
his Ecclesi-
astical History.

Helena,
* Venerable,
and right de-
vout Emperesse.

* Inne keeper
or Hostesse.

Of the death
of Theodo-
sius.

Eusebius.

* Those in
Albanie, in
the North of
Scotland.

See Suidas,
why he was
called Poore.

Constantine
the Great,
Emperour.

Panegyrick
oration unto
Constantine
the Great.

When Dioclesian and Maximian gave over their Empire, they elected that Constantius Chlorus for Emperour, who untill that time had ruled the State, under the title of Cæsar: and to him befell Italie, Africke, Spaine, France, and Britaine: but Italy and Africke became the Provinces of Galerius; and Constantius stood contented with the rest. This Constantius, what time as hee served in Britaine under Aurelian, tooke to wife Helena daughter of Coelus, or Coelius a British Prince, on whom he begat that noble Constantine the Great, in Britaine. For so, together with that great Historiographer Baronius, the common opinion of all other writers with one consent, beareth witness: unless it be one or two Greeke authors of late time, and those dissenting one from the other, and a right learned man, grounding upon a corrupt place of Iul. Firmicus. Howbeit, compelled he was by Maximian to put her away, for to marry Theodora his daughter. This is that Helena, which in antike Inscription is called * VENERABILIS and PISSIMA AVGVSTA, and for Christian piety, for cleansing Ierusalem of Idols, for building a goodly Church in the place where our Lord suffered, and for finding the Saving Crosse of Christ, is so highly commended of Ecclesiastical writers. And yet both Iewes and Gentiles termed her by way of ignominy and reproach * *Stabularia*; because shee (a most godly Princeesse) sought out the crib or manger wherein Christ was borne, and in the place where stood that hostelry, founded a Church. Hereupon S. Ambrose: *They say that this Lady was at first an Inholder or Hostesse, &c. Well, this good hostesse Helena, hastned to Ierusalem and sought out the place of our Lords passion, and made so diligent search for the Lords crib: This good hostesse was not ignorant of that host, which cured the wayfaring mans hurts that was wounded by thieves: This good hostesse chose to be reputed a dung-farmer, that she might thereby gaine Christ.* And verily no lesse praise and commendation goeth of her husband Constantius for his piety and moderation; *A man, who having utterly rejected the superstition of the ungodly, in worshipping divers gods, willingly of himselfe acknowledged one God, the Ruler of all things.* Whereupon, to try the faith and beleefe in God of his owne Courtiers, hee put it to their free choice, either to sacrifice unto those gods, and so to stay with him, or els to refuse and depart: But those that would depart rather than renounce and forsake their faith to God, hee kept with him still: casting off all the rest, who he supposed would prove disloyall unto him, seeing they had abandoned their beleefe in the true God. This most noble and worthy Emperour, in his last British expedition against the * Caledonians and the Picts died at Yorke, leaving behind him his sonne Constantine Emperour, his successor and Cæsar elect.

Some few daies before the death of Constantius, his sonne Constantius rode from Rome to Yorke on post horses: and the rest which were kept at the charges of the State, hee maimed and lamed all the way as hee went, because no man should pursue him, and there he received his fathers last breath. Whereupon an ancient Orator spake thus unto him: *Thou entredst this sacred place not as a competitor of the Empire, but as heere apparant and ordained already, and forthwith that fathers house of thine saw thee, the lawfull successor. For, there was no doubt but that the inheritance duly belonged unto him, whom the destinies had ordained the first begotten sonne unto the Emperour.* Yet for all that, constrained in manner by the souldiers, and especially by the meanes of Ercus King of the Almanes, (who by way of aid accompanied him) advanced hee was to the Imperiall dignity. The souldiers regarding rather the publike good of the common-wealth, than following his affections, invested him in the purple roabe, weeping and setting spurs to his horse, because hee would avoid the endeavor of the armie that called so instantly upon him, &c: but the felicity of the common-wealth overcame his modesty. And hereof it is, that the Panegyrist crieth out in these words; *O fortunate Britaine and more happy now than all other lands, that hast the first sight of Constantine Cæsar!*

And now Cæsar at his very entrance, having first pursued the reliques of that war, which his father had begun against the Caledonians and other Picts, and set upon those Britans more remote, and the Inhabitants of the Ilands lying there, the witness as one said of the Suns setting, some of them hee subdued by force and armes,

others

A others (for you must thinke he aspired to Rome and higher matters) by offering fees and stipends he allured and drew to be associates: and there were besides of them, whom of open enemies he made his friends, and of old adversaries his very familiars. Afterwards, having vanquished the Frankners in Batavia, and that with so great glory, that he stamped certaine golden pieces of coine, (whereof I have scene one) with the Image of a woman sitting under a Trophee, and leaning with one hand upon a crosse-bow or a brake, with this subscription, FRANCIA: and this writing about it, GAV-DEVM ROMANORVM: Having also overthrowne the Barbarians in Germany, won unto him the German and French Nations: and levied souldiers out of Britaine, France, and Germany, to the number in all of 90000. foot, and 8000. horsemen, hee departed into Italie, overcame Maxentius, who at Rome had challenged to himselfe the Empire, and having conquered Italy, and vanquished the Tyrant, he restored unto the whole world the blessed gifts of secure libertie, and as we find in the Inscription of an Antiquitie, INSTINCTV DIVINITATIS, MENTIS MAGNITVDINE, CVM EXERCITV SVO, TAM DE TYRANNO QVAM DE OMNI EIVS FACTIONE, VNO TEMPORIS IVSTIS REMP. VLTVS EST ARMIS, that is, *By instinct of the divine power, with great magnanimitie, and the helpe of his owne armie, at one time in the behalfe of the Common-wealth, he was by lawfull warre revenged as well of the Tyrant himselfe, as of his whole faction.*

C Howbeit, that he returned againe into Italy, Eusebius implieth in these words: *Constantine, quoth he, passed over to the Britans enclosed on every side within the banks of the Ocean: whom when hee had overcome, hee began to compasse in his mind other parts of the world: to the end he might come in time to succour those that wanted helpe. And in another place: After he had furnished his armie with mild and modest instructions of pietie, he invaded Britaine, that he might likewise instruct those who dwell environed round about with the waves of the Ocean bounding the Suns setting, as it were with his coffs. And of Britan are these verses of Optatianus Porphyrius unto Constantine, to be understood:*

*Omnia ab Arctoia plaga sinibus borrida Cauro,
Paci amat cana et comperta perennia iura,
Ex tibi fida tuis semper bene militat armis;
Resq; gerit victorie tuas, populasq; feroces
Propellit, ceditq; libens tibi debita rata,
Et tua victores fors accipit hinc tibi sortes,
Teq; duce invicta sustollunt signa cohortes.*

From Northern bounds, the land throughout where bleak North-west winds
Lov's lawes of peace right ancient, and ever during known: (blowen
Prest alwaies in their loyaltie for service in thy right,
With valiant and courageous heart, dorch all thy battels fight.
Thus Nations fierce it drives to rout, and dorch in chafe pursue,
Yielding to thee right willingly all paiments just and due:
Victors from hence most valourous, thy lot it is to have,
And under thee unfoiled bands, advance their ensignes brave.

About this time as evidently appeareth by the Code of Theodosius, Pacatianus was the Vicarius of Britaine: for by this time the Province had no more Proprietors nor Lieutenants, but in stead thereof was a Vicar substituted.

This Emperour Constantine, was right happy for very many praises, & those I assure you most justly deserved: for hee not onely set the Roman Empire in free estate, but also having scattered the thicke cloud of Superstition, let in the true light of Christ, by letting open the Temples to the true God, and shutting them against the false.

F For now no sooner was the blustering tempest and storme of persecution blowne over, but the faithful Christians, who in the time of trouble and danger had hidden themselves in woods, deserts, and secret caves, being come abroad in open sight, repaired the Churches ruinate to the very ground, the Temple of holy Martyrs they found, build, finish, and erect, as it were, the banners of victorie in every place, celebrate festivall holy daies, and with pure heart and mouth also, performe their sacred solemnities. And thereupon he is renow-
ned

Gelasius Ci-
ciliensis lib. 1.
Aft. Concl.
Nican. cap. 3.

Pacatianus
Vicegerant
of Britaine,
in the thir-
teenth year
of Constant-
ine the
Great.

Gildas

ned under these titles. IMPERATOR FORTISSIMUS AC BEATISSIMUS, PISSIMVS. FORLIX. VRBIS LIBERATOR. QVIRITIS FVNDATOR. REIPUBLICAE INSTAURATOR. PUBLICAE LIBERTATIS AUCTOR. RESTITVTOR VRBIS ROMAE ATQVE ORBIS. MAGNUS. MAXIMUS. INVICTVS. INVICTISSIMUS. PERPITVUS. SEMPER AVGVSTVS. RERVM HUMANARVM OPTIMVS PRINCEPS. VIRTUTE FORTISSIMUS ET PIETATE CLEMENTISSIMUS. And in the Lawes, QUI VENERANDA CHRISTIANORVM FIDE ROMANVM MUNIVIT IMPERIVM. DIVVS. DIVAE MEMORIAE. DIVINAE MEMORIAE. &c. That is, *Most valiant and blessed Emperour. Most pious. Happie. Redeemer of Rome Citie. Founder of Peace. Restorer of Rome Citie, and the whole world. Great. Most great. Invincible. Most invincible. Perpetuall. Ever Augustus. The best Prince of the World. For vertue most valiant, and for pietie most mercifull. Also, Who fortified the Roman Empire with the reverend Faith of the Christians. Sacred. Of sacred Memorie; Of Divine memorie, &c.* And hee was the first Emperour, as farre as I could ever to this time observe, who in coines of money and publike workes, was honoured with this Inscription, DOMINVS NOSTER, that is, Our Lord. Although I know full well, that Dioclesian was the first after Caligula, who suffered himselfe openly to be called LORD.

Howbeit, in this so worthy an Emperour, his politike wisedome was wanting in this point, that he made the way for barbarous people, into Britaine, Germanie, and Gaule. For when he had subdued the northerne Nations, so, as that now he stood in no feare of them, and for to equall the power of the Persians, who in the East parts threatened the Roman Empire, had built Constantinople a new Citie: those Legions that lay in defence of the Marches, he partly translated into the East, and in their stead built forts and holds, and partly withdrew into Cities more remote from the said marches: so that soone after his death, the Barbarians forcing the townes and fortresses, brake into the Provinces. And in this respect there goeth a very bad report of him in Zosimus, as being the main, and first subverter of a most flourishing Empire.

Seeing moreover, that Constantine altered the forme of the Roman government, it shall not be impertinent in this very place to note summarily, in what sort Britaine was ruled under him, and afterward in the next succeeding ages. He ordained foure Praefects of the *Pratorium*, to wit, of the East, of Illyricum, of Italie, and of Gaule: two * Leaders or Commanders of the Forces, the one of footmen, the other of horsemen in the West, whom they termed *Prasentales*.

For civill government there ruled Britaine, the Praefect of the *Pratorium*, or Grand Seneschall in Gaule, and under him the Vicar Generall of Britaine, who was his Vicegerent, and honoured with the title *Spestabilis*, that is, notable or remarkable. Him obeyed respectively to the number of the Provinces, two Consular Deputies, and three Presidents, who had the hearing of civill, and criminall causes.

For militarie affaires, there ruled the Leader, or Commander of the footmen in the West: at whose disposition, were the * Count or Lieutenant of Britaine; the Count or Lieutenant of the Saxon-coast along Britaine, and the Duke of Britaine, styled every one, *Spestabilis*, that is, Remarkable.

The Count Lieutenant of Britaine, seemeth to have ruled the in-land parts of the Island: who had with him seven companies of footmen, and nine cornets or troupes of horsemen.

The Count or Lieutenant of the Saxon coast, namely, who defended the maritime parts, against the Saxons, and is named by Ammianus, *Comes maritimi tractus*, that is, Lieutenant of the Maritime tract, for defence of the Sea coast, had seven companies of footmen, two guidons of horsemen, the second Legion, and one cohort.

The Generall of Britan, who defended the Marches or Frontiers against the Barbarians, had the command of eight and thirty garrison forts, wherein kept their Stations 14000. foot, and 900. horsemen. So that in those daies, (if Pancirolus have kept just computation) Britaine maintained 19200. footmen, and 1700 horsemen, or much there about, in ordinarie.

Besides,

The Roman civill government in Britaine, under the latter Emperours. As I. L. chiefe Justices, Grand Seneschalls, or high Stewards.
* *Augustus Augustum*. Vicar of Britaine.

* *Comes*.

* *Spestabilis*. Comes of Britaine.

Comes of the Saxon shore.

Duke of Britaine.

A Besides all these, *Comes sacrarum Largitionum*, that is, The Receiver of the Emperours Finances or publike revenues, had under him in Britaine, the Rationall or Auditor of the summes and revenues of Britaine: the * Provost of the Augustian, that is, Emperours Treasures in Britaine, and the Procurator of the Gynegium or Draperie in Britaine, in which the clothes of the Prince, and souldiers were woven. The * Count also of private Revenues had his *Rationall*, or Auditor of private State in Britaine: to say nothing of the sword, *Fence Schoole*, Procurator in Britaine, (whereof an old Inscription maketh mention,) and of other officers of an inferior degree.

When Constantine was dead, Britaine fell unto his Sonne Constantine: who upon an ambitious humour, and desire of rule, breaking into the possessions of other men, was slaine by his brother Constans. With which victory hee was so puffed up, that he seized Britaine, and the rest of the Provinces into his owne hands, and with his brother Constantius came into this Island. And thereupon Julius Firmicus, not that Pagane the Astrologer, but the Christian, speaketh in this wise unto them: *See have in Winter time (a thing that never was done before, nor shall be againe) subdued under your oares the swelling and raging billowes of the British Ocean. The waves now of the sea, unto this time well neere unknowne unto us, have trembled, and the Britaines were sore afraid to see the unexpected face of the Emperour. What would ye more? the very Elements as vanquished, have given place unto your vertues.*

C This Constans it was that called a Councell to Sardica, against the Arians: unto which there assembled three hundred Bishops, and among them the Bishops of Britaine, who having condemned the Heretikes, and established the Nicene Creed, by their voices and judgements, approved the innocencie of Athanasius. But this Prince being youthfull, cast behind him all care of the Empire, and became drowned in pleasures: and thereby growing grievous to the Provincials, and nothing acceptable to his souldiers, was by Magnentius, * capitaine of the *Iovij* and *Herculij*, as he hunted, beset in a towne called Saint Helens, and there killed; fulfilling thereby a prophesie, which was, *That he should end his life in his grandmothers lap, of whom that towne indeed tooke the name.*

This Magnentius having a Britan to his Father, but borne among the *Lati*, a people in France, when he had now slaine Constans, invested himselfe in France into the Imperiall dignitie, and wonne Britaine unto him to take his part: but having been for three yeares together coursed by his brother Constantius, who sharply made war upon him, laid violent hands on himselfe: a fortunate Prince as ever any was, for seasonable temperature of the weather, for plentie of fruits, and securitie from dangers of Barbarians, points which are by the vulgar people reputed to make especially for the glorie of Princes. But why this Magnentius should be called Taporus in an old antiquitie of stone, digged up long since at Rome, let other men enquire: For thus it is read, speaking of the *obeliske*, erected in the birque or shew-place.

Interea Taporus Romam vastante Tyranno, Augusti jacuit, donum studiumq. locandi.

E Meane while that Tyrant Taporus of Rome did havocke make, * Augustus gift unplaced lay, none would it undertake.

At this time, the Generall of all the warre-forces throughout Britaine, was Gratianus surnamed *Funarius*, the father of Valentinian the Emperour. And called hee was *Funarius*, for that being yet but a stripling, or young springall, as he went about with a rope to sell, he gaue not ground to five souldiers that did set upon him, and assailed with all their force to snatch the same from him. This Gratianus being returned to his owne home, and discharged of his military oath, was fined by Constantius in the confiscation, and losse of his goods, because he was reported to have lodged Magnentius, and given him entertainment.

When Magnentius was dead and gone, Britaine submitted it selfe to the government of Constantius: and forthwith was hisher sent Paulus the Notarie a Spaniard Constantius borne, one verily under a smooth countenance lying secret and close, but exceeding subtil Paulus Catena, to devise and find out all the casts and wylie meanes to endanger men: That hee might bring

G 3

certaine

* Resembling the Lord Treasurer:
* *Comes rerum privatarum*: as one would say, *Receiver of the private purses*.
Constantine the Emperour.

Constans, Emperour.

Athanasius in Apolog.

Magnentius called also Taporus.
* *Comitem*.

Angelus Rothe.

* The Emperours.

Gratianus surnamed *Funarius*.
Am. Martellus.

certaine martiall and military men within danger who had conspired with Magnentius, when as they could not chuse nor make resistance, after he had outrageously come over them in manner of a flood hee suddenly seised upon the fortunes and estates of many. Thus went he on still making spoile, yea, and undoing a great number, imprisoning such as were free borne, and grieving their bodies with bonds, yea, & bruising some of them with manacles, and all by patching and piecing many crimes together laid to their charge, which were as false as might be. Whereupon was committed so wicked an act as branded the daies of Constantius with a perpetuall note of infamie. There was one Martin that ruled those provinces as Vicar or Vicegerent; who grievously lamenting the miseries and calamities of the innocent, and beseeching the said Paulus oftentimes, that the guiltlesse might be spared, when hee saw that hee could not prevaile, threatened to depart, to the end, that this malicious inquisitor, and persecutor, as leastwise for feare thereof, might give over at length, to envaile and induce into open dangers, men bred and nuzzled in quiet peace.

Paulus, supposing heereby, that his trade decayed, (as hee was a vengible fellow in linking matters together, whereupon he came to be surnamed Catena, that is, a Chaine) drew in the said Vicar himselfe, (who still maintained the defence of those whom he had sendred and spared,) to have his part in common perils: And hee went very neere to bring him also prisoner bound, with tribunes, and many others, before the Emperours privie Counsell. At which extremitie of mischief so imminent, he being throughly provoked, caught up a dagger, and assaulteth the same Paulus: but because his right hand failed him, so that he was not able to give him a deadly wound, hee stabbed himselfe into the side with the said weapon drawne as it was. And so by this foule kind of death departed hee this life; (a right just man) after he had assaid to stay, and delay the woefull and pitious cases of many. Which wicked parts thus committed, Paulus, all embred with blood, returned into the Princes Court: bringing many with him over-laden with chaines, as being men dejected, and plunged into miserable calamitie, and heavie plight. At whose comming the racks were made ready: the executioner prepared drags and tortures: and of them many were proscribed, and enslaved, some banished, and other suffred punishment by sword. At length himselfe also under Julian being burnt quicke, by the judgement of God the Revenger of such outrageous crueltie, paid most justly for his deserts.

After this when as in Britaine, Ammianus Marcellinus is mine Author,) upon the breach of peace, by the rodes of Scots and Piets, (savage nations) the places neere bordering upon them, appointed for the Frontiers, were forraied, and the provinces wearied with calamities past, that came so thicke one in the necke of another, and put in frightfull perplexitie, Julian whom Constantius had declared to be Cæsar, and colleague in the Empire, wintering about Paris, and distracted with sundry cares, feared to goe and aid the provincially people beyond-sea, as we reported that Constantius beforetime had done, lest he should leave Gaule without a governour: considering withall, that the Alamans were even then also incited, and set upon crueltie and hostilitie; thought good therefore it was to send over into these parts, for to compose and settle all matters, one Lupicinus, * Master at that time of the Armour: a warlike Knight, I assure you, and skilfull in military affaires; but a man of a haughtie spirit, and setting up his cie-browes aloft like hornes, and withall speaking bigge, and (as folke say) in a tragick Key upon the stage: concerning whom, the question was a long time, whether he were more covetous than cruell. Having raised therefore an aid of light appointed men, to wit, the Heruleans, Batavians, and many companies of the * Mærians, the foresaid Generall in the heart of Winter, came to Bologne: and there having gotten shipping, and embarqued all his fouldiers, observing a good gale of a forewind, arrived at Rhotupie, a place over against Bologne, and so set forward to London: that, from thence after counsell taken, according to the qualitie of his businesse, he might hasten the sooner to give battell.

Under this Constantius, who mightily favoured the Arians, their heresie crept into Britaine, wherein from the first yeares of the great Constantine, a sweete concord and harmonie of Christ the head, and his members had continued, untill such time, as that deadly and perfidious Ariamisme, like to a pestiferous Serpent from the other side of the sea,

Ammianus
Marcellinus,
lib. 14.

Martin, Vicar
of Britaine.

What tortur-
ing Instru-
ment this
Eculus was,
seene in Caro-
lus Sigonius.
De Iudicia lib.
3. cap. 17.

* Lupicinus,
Magister
Armorum.

* Now Bul-
garians.

Rhotupie,
London.

The heresie of
Arius,
Gildas.

A casting up her vendome upon us, caused brethren dwelling together, to be dis-jointed pitiously one from another: and thus, the way as it were, being made over the Ocean, all asher crocod and fell beasts wheresoever, shaking out of their horrible moushs the mortiferous poison of every heresie, inflicted the deadly stings and wounds of their sects upon this our civillitry, desirous evermore to heare some noveltie, but holding nought at all steadfastly. In favour of these Arians, Constantius summoned foure hundred Bishops of the West Church, to Ariminum: for whom the Emperour, by his commandement, allowed come and vicuals. But that was thought of the Aquitanes, French, and Britaines, an unseemly thing: refusing therefore that allowance out of the Emperours coffers, they chose rather to live at their owne proper charges. Three onely out of Britaine for want of their owne, had maintenance from the State, refusing the contribution offered unto them from the rest: reputing it more safe, and void of corruption, to charge the common treasure, than the private stase of any person.

After this, when Constantius was departed this world, Julianus that Apostata, who had taken upon him the title of Augustus against Constantius, first drave out Palladius, who had been master of Offices, into Britaine, and sent away Alphius, who had governed Britan as Deputy Lieutenant, to reedifie Jerusalem: but fearefull round balles of flaming fire breaking forth neere unto the foundations, skarred him from that enterprize, and many a thousand of Jewes who wrestled in vaine against the decree of God, were overwhelmed with the ruines. This dissolute * Augustus, and in his beards onely a Philosopher, feared (as hath crewhile been said) to come and aid the poore distressed Britans: and yet from hence he carried out every yeaere great store of corne to maintaine the Roman garrisons in Germany.

When Valentinian the Emperour steered the helme of the Roman Empire, what time as through the whole world the trumpets resounded nothing but the warlike Al, Arme, the Piets, Saxons, Scots and Attacots vexed the Britans with continual troubles and annoyances. Fraomarius then King of the Alinanes was translated hither, and by commission made Tribune or Marshall over a band of the Alinanes, for number and power in those daies highly renowned, to repress the incursions of those barbarous nations. Nevertheless Britaine was through the generall conspiracie of those barbarians afflicted and brought to extreme distresse, Nectaridius Comes or Lieutenant of the maritime tract slaine, and Bucholbaudes the Generall by an ambush of the enemies circumvented. The intelligence of which occurrences when it was brought unto Rome with great horror, the Emperour sent Severus, being even then Lord High Steward of his household, to redresse what was done amisse, in case his hap had beene to have seene the wished end: wha being within a while after called away, Iovinius went to the same parts, * sent hacket Provinsides in post, minding to crave the puissant helpe of an armie. For, they avouched that the urgent necessary occasions required so much. At the last, so many and so fearefull calamities were by daily rumors reported as touching the same Iland, that Theodosius was elected, and appointed to make speed thither, a man of approved skill in warlike affaires most fortunate he achieved, who having levied and gotten unto him a courageous company of young gallants, to furnish as well Legions as cohorts, put himselfe in his journey, with a brave show of confidence leading the way. At the same time the Piets divided into two nations the Discalvanes and Fecturiones, the Attacots likewise a warlike people, and the Scots, ranging in divers parts did much mischief where they went. As for the cohorts of Gaule, the Frankers and Saxons confining upon them, brake out and made rodes where ever they could either by land or sea, and what with driving booties, with firing towns, and killing poore captives, made foule worke there. To stay these woefull miseries, if prosperous fortune would have given leave, this most vigorous and valiant Capitaine intending a voyage to the most bounds of the earth: when he was come to the sea side at Bologne, which hath divided from the opposite tract of land, by a narrow * streit ebbing and flowing, where the water is wont to swell on high with terrible tides, and againe to fall downe flat and his like owne plains without any harme of sailer or passenger, from thence having sailed and safely crossed the said sea, he arrived at Rhotupie a quiet rode and harbour over against it: From whence after that the Batavians, Heruli, Iovij and Victores, (companies confident of their strength and

Sulpitius Se-
verus.

These calleth
Hilarius, The
Bishops of
the Provinces
of Britaine,
in an Epistle
unto the Bi-
shops.

Julian the
Emperour.
Am. Marcell.
lib. 10.

* Or Empe-
rour.

Valentinian
Emperour.

Ammianus
Marcellinus
lib. 27. and 28.

* This place
of the text is
haply cor-
rupted.

Theodosius,

Piets,
Scots,
Attacots,

* Called the
flece.

* Ribchester,
by Sandwich,
or Richbo-
row.

London cal-
led Augusta.

and power who followed) were come, hee departed: and marching toward London, an old towne, which the posteritie called Augusta, having divided his troopes into sundry parts hee set upon those companies of roving and robbing enemies, even when they were heavily laden with bootie and pillage. And having quickly discomfited those that drave before them their prisoners bound, and cattell, he forced them to forgoe the prey, which the most miserable tributaries had lost. In the end, after full restitution made of all, save onely some small parcels bestowed upon his wearied souldiers, he entred most joyfully into the citie, over set before with distresses and calamities, but now suddenly refreshed; so far forth as hope of recovery, and safetie might effect: and there being raised up with this luckie hand, to adventure greater exploits, and yet casting with him selfe projects promising securitie, he staied doubtfull of the future event; as having learned by the information of revolting fugitives and confession of captives, that so great a multitude of sundry nations, and a stiffe-necked people of so fell and fierce a disposition, could not possibly be vanquished but by secret wiles, and sudden excursions. Finally, after proclamations published, and promises made of impunity, he summoned as well the traiterous runagates as many others that went with free passport dispersed sundry waies, to present themselves ready for service. Upon which summons given, so soone as most of them were returned, he as one pricked forward with so good a motive, and yet held backe by heavie cares, called for *Civilis* by name, (who was to rule Britaine as Deputie,) to bee sent unto him; a man of a very quicke hasty nature, but a precise keeper of Iustice and righteousnesse: likewise for *Dulcitius*, a redoubted Captaine, and right skilfull in feates of armes. Afterwards, having gotten heart, and courage to him, he went from Augusta, which in old time they called Londinium, well appointed with industrious, and considerate souldiers, and so brought exceeding great succour to the ruinate, and troubled estate of the Britaines, gaining before hand all places every where for his advantage to forelay the Barbarians in ambush, and giving commandment of no service to the very common souldiers, but hee would him selfe cheerefully take the first assay thereof. In this sort performing as well the offices of an active and hardie souldier, as the carefull charge of a right noble Generall, having discomfited and put to flight divers nations, whom insolent pride fed with securitie incited, and set on fire to assaile and invade the Roman Empire, he having laid the foundation of quiet peace for a long time, restored both Cities and Castles, which verily had received manifold damages, to as good a passe as ever they were at. Now there had hapned while hee achieved these exploits, an horrible act like to have bred some great danger, but that in the very first enterprize it was quenched and suppressed. There was one *Valentinus* of *Valeria Pannonia*, a man of a proud spirit, brother to the wife of that pestilent *Maximinus*, first Deputie Lieutenant, & after President, for some notable offence banished into Britaine; who being impatient of rest like a noisome beast rose up in comotion against *Theodosius*, practising mischievous plots and an insurrection, upon a certaine swelling pride and envie, for that hee perceived him alone able to withstand his horrible designs. Howbeit, casting all about for many meanes both secret and apert, whiles the puffing humour of his infinite, and unsatiable desire still encreased, he solicited as well the banished persons as souldiers, when he espied his opportunity, promising reward, for to allure and draw them on to some actuall attempt. And now as the time drew neere when these enterprizes should bee put in execution, and take effect, the Generall being advertised of all these projects, and forwarder of the twaine to adventure, resolved also upon an high mind to take revenge of such as were attaint and convicted, committed verily *Valentinus* with some few of his inward complices unto Captaine *Dulcitius*, for to bee put to death: but forecasting withall, the future events, (as hee was a man in militarie skill surpassing all others of his time) he would not suffer any farther inquisition and examination to be had of the conspirators, for feare lest by striking a terror among so many, the tempestuous troubles of the provinces which were well appeased, might revive againe. Turning him selfe therefore from this businesse to the reforming of many enormities, which of necessitie were to be regarded, and having cleared all dangers (for evidently scene it was that fortune was so propitious and good unto him, as that he never forooke but sped his enterprizes) he recedified the Cities, and those garrison forts whereof we speake; he fortified also the frontiers with standing watches and strong fore-fences. Thus having recovered the province

Valentine
surreth up
dition in
Britaine.

which

which had yielded subjection to the enemies, hee so brought it to the former ancient state, that upon his owne motion to have it so, it both had a lawfull governour to rule it, and afterward also was called *V A L E N T I A*, for the Princes will and pleasure. The *Areens* a kind of men instituted by those of ancient times (concerning whom I have related in the Acts of *Constans* the Emperor) fallen by little and little unto vices, he removed from their stations, as being openly convicted that they were allured by great receipts, or promise at least waies of much reward, to have divers times discovered unto the Barbarians what soever was done or debated among us. For, this indeed was their charge, to run to and fro by long journeyes, to intimate and make knowne unto our Capitaines all sturs that the people neere adjoining were about to make. Thus, after he had with very great approofe exploited these acts above rehearsed, and others the like; he was sent for to the Princes court, and leaving the Provinces in much jollitie, no lesse honoured was he for his many and important victories, than either *Furius Camillus* or *Papirius Cursor*. And so being honorably accompanied and attended upon with the love and favour of all men as far as to the narrow seas, with a gentle gale of wind he passed over and came to the Princes camp, where with joy and praise hee was received. For these deeds of his so bravely atchieved, in honor of him, there was an image set up, resembling a man of armes on horsebacke, as *Symmachus* giveth us to understand, speaking to his son *Theodosius* the Emperor in this wise. The author, quoth he, of your kindred and stock, Captaine Generall sometime in *Afrik* and *Britaine* both, was among other ancient titles consecrated by the most honorable order with Images of Knighthood: And *Claudian* in his commendation with full pen wrote poetically thus;

*Ille Caledoniis posuit qui castra pruinis,
Qui medio Libye sub casside perulit aestus.
Terribilis Mauro, debellatorq; Britanni
Littoris, ac pariter Boreae vastator & Austri.
Quid rigor aternus? Cali quid sidera prosunt?
Ignotumq; fretum? maduerunt Saxone fuso
Orcades, incaluit Pictrorum sanguine Thule,
Scotorum cumulos flevit glacialis Hiberne.*

In frozen *Caledonian* fields hee that encamped lay,
And in his harness, *Liby* heats endured day by day:
The black *Mores* eke who terrified, and conquer'd British coast,
Who North and South subdu'd alike, and wasted with his host,
What did the lasting cold to them and frosty climats gaine,
Or seas unknowne embred all with blood of Saxons slaine.
The *Orkneis* were, with *Pictish* blood well heated *Thule* was,
And *ycie* *Ireland*, Scots by heapes bewail'd with Out-alas.
In another place likewise of the same Prince.

*Quem littus adusta
Horrescit Libye, ratibusq; impervia Thule,
Ille leves Mauros, nec falso nomine Pictos
Edomuit, Scotumq; vago mucrone sequutus
Fregit Hyperboreas remis audacibus undas;
Et geminis fulgens utroq; sub axe trophaeis
Tethyos alternas refusus calcavit arenas,*

Of whom the scorched *Libyan* coast doth stand in deadly feare,
And *Thule*, where no passage was for ships their saile to beare.
The nimble *Mores* hee was that tam'd, and *Picts* likewise subdu'd,
The *Picts*, I say, by right so call'd: and when he had pursued
The Scot with sword from place to place, the *Hyperborean* wave
With venturous ores he brake: and so in two fold trophees braue
All glittering under both the poles he marched to and fro
The sands upon, where either sea by turnes doth ebbe and flow.

And concerning him *Pacatus Drepanus* What should I speak, quoth he, of the Scot, driven back againe by him unto his fennes and bogs? The Saxon consumed with battels at sea,

Valentia
Arcania.

Gratianus
Emperour.

Maximus the
Tyrant.
Zosimus.
Orosius.

* Emperor.

Prosper.
Tyro.

* Treveria.
Gregorius.
Trevensis.

Cedrenus.

Zosimus.

Priscillianists.
Sulpitius Severus.
Turonus.

* Bone Reip.

Sulpitius Alex-
ander.

After him, Gratian took upon him the Empire, who also proclaimed Theodosius, the son of that Theodosius (of whom we have spoken already) Emperor: Whereat Maximus a Spaniard borne, his concurrent, and withall descended in right line from Constantinus the Great, who also had before time been General over the armie in Britan, was so highly discontented, that he took upon him the purple robe: or as Orosius reporteth, was against his will by the souldiers saluted Emperor; a valiant man, vertuous, & worthy of the title of * Augustus, but that against his allegiance, he had by way of his tyrannie & usurpation attained to the place. Who at the first courageously vanquished the Picts & Scots, that used to make many inrodes into the Province: afterwards with all the flower and strength well neere of British forces, arrived in the mouth of Rhene, and procured unto himselfe the whole puissance of the German armies: ordained the Royall seat of the Empire to be at * Triers (whereupon stiled he was by the name of *Trevericus Imperator*) & spreading, as Gildas saith, his wings the one as far as to Spaine, the other into Italy, with the terror only of his name, levied tributes and pensions for souldiers pay, of the most fell and savage nations in Germanie. Against whom Gratianus having led an armie, after five daies skirmishing, being forsaken of his owne souldiers, and put to flight, sent Saint Ambrose Embassadour to treat for peace: which he obtained indeed; but the same full of treacherous guile. For, Maximus suborned, and sent under-hand one Andragathius, riding in a close litter or carcho, with a rumour spread abroad, that therein rode the wife of Gratian. Unto which when Gratian was come for love of his wife, and had opened the said litter, forth leapes Andragathius, with his companie, and slew him outright in the place. Whole body for to demand, was Ambrose sent a second time: howbeit, not admitted, because he refused to communicate with those Bishops, that sided with Maximus. Who being lifted up, and proud of those things hapning to his mind, appointed his sonne Victor to be Caesar, dealt cruelly with Gratians Captaines, and settled the State in France. Theodosius Augustus, who governed in the East, at the requests or mandates rather of his Embassadours, acknowledged him Emperour, and exhibited his Image unto the Alexandrines for to be seene in publike place. And now having by violence, and extortion entred upon the estates of all men, with the utter undoing of the common-wealth, hee fulfilled his owne greedie avarice. Hee made the defence of Catholike Religion his pretences to colour his tyrannie; Priscillian, and certaine of his Sectaries convict of hereticall, and false doctrine in the Synode, or Councell of Burdeaux, and appealing unto him, hee condemned to death; although Martin that most holy Bishop of * Tourain or Tours, most humbly besought to forbear shedding the blood of those poore wretches: avouching that it was sufficient to deprive such as were judged heretikes, and put them out of their Churches, by the definitive sentence of Bishops: and that it was a strange and unexampled hainous deed, that a secular Judge should determine causes of the Church. And these were the first, that being executed by the civill sword, left a foule and dangerous precedent to posteritie. After this he entred Italie with so great terrour, that Valentinian, together with his mother, were glad to flee unto Theodosius, the cities of Italie received him, and did him all the honour that might be: but the Bononians above the rest, among whom this Inscription is yet to be seene,

DD. NN. MAG. C. MAXIMO, ET FL.
VICTORI, PIIS, FELICIBVS, SEMPER
AVGVSTIS. * B. R. NATIS.

To our Great Lords, C. Maximus & Fl. Victor, Pious,
Happy, Always Augusti, borne for the good of the Common-wealth.

Meane while Nannius and Quinctus, Masters in militarie skill, unto whom Maximus had committed the infancie of his sonne, and the custodie of Gaule, gave the Frankers, who annoyed Gaule with their incursions, a mightie great overthrow, and forced them to give hostages, and deliver into their hands the Authors of the warre. As for Valentinian, he earnestly besought Theodosius, to succour him dispoiled of his Empire

A Empire by a Tyrant, from whom for a good while, he could have none other answer, but this, *That no marvel it is, if a seditious servant became superiour to that Lord, who casteth off the true Lord indeed.* For Valentinian was corrupted with Arianisme. Howbeit, wearied at length with his importunate prayers, he sent forward in warlike manner against Maximus, who in the same time abode in Aquileia, very secure & careless. For he had before-hand fortified the streits between the mountains with garriisons, and the havens with shipping, so that with great alacritie, and much confidence at the first hee welcomed Theodosius with one battel before Syfca in Pannonia: & afterwards most valiantly received him with another, under the leading of his brother Marcellus; but in both of them he sped so badly, that he withdrew himselfe secretly into Aquileia, where by his owne souldiers, as he dealt money among them, taken he was, and de vested of his Imperiall ornaments, brought before Theodosius, who immediately delivered him into the hangmans hand to be executed, after that he had now worn the purple robe five yeares. Whereupon Ausonius writeth thus in praise of Aquileia:

*Non erat iste locus: meritò tamen unda recenti,
Non ainter clavas Aquileia cieberis urbes
Itala ad Illyricos objecta colonia montes,
Mœnibus & portu celeberrima: sed magis illud
Eminet, extremo quiddam sub tempore legit,
Solverat exacto cui iusta piacula lustro
Maximus, armigeri quondam sub nomine lixe:
Felix qui tanti spectatrix leta Triumpho,
Punxit Ausonio Rutupinum Marte Latronem.*

This was no place of name: but since that fresh desert gave grace,
Thou Aquileia of cities faire, shalt be the ninth in place,
A Colonie Italian, gainst hills Illyrian set,
For strong wals, and commodious haven right well renown'd: but yet
This passeth all the rest, that he his choice of thee, did make
Against his latter daies, who did revengement justly take
Of Maximus: a base campe-Squire that sometimes knowne to be,
Had now usurped five yeares past; and ruled with tyrannie.
Right happy thou, of Triumph such that hadst the joyfull fight,
Killing this Robber * Rhurupine by maine Italian might.

Andragathius, whose state was now most desperate; cast himselfe from shipboard headlong into the Sea. Victor the sonne of Maximus, was in France defeated, taken prisoner, and slaine. But those Britans, who tooke part with Maximus, as some writers doe record, forcibly invaded Armorica in France, and there planted themselves. Now Theodosius presently after his victorie, entred Rome with his Sonne Honorius in triumph, and published an Edict to this effect: *No man so hardy, as to challenge or claime that honour, which the bold Tyrant had granted: but that such presumption should be condemned, and reduced to the former estate.* And Valentinian, in these words, *All judgements and awards whatsoever, that Maximus the most wicked and detestable Tyrant that ever was, hath given forth to be promulged and enacted, we reverse and condemne.* But Saint Ambrose in his funerall Sermon of Theodosius, crieth out in these termes: *That Eugenius and Maximus, by their wofull example, doe testifie in hell, what a heaveie thing it is to beare armes against their naturall Princes.* To speake in a word, this victory was held to be so worthy and memorable, that the Romans from thence forward, solemnized that day every yeare, as festivall.

There succeeded Theodosius in the West Empire his sonne Honorius, a child ten yeares old; over whom was ordained as Tutor and Protector Flavius Stilicho, a man passing famous for a long time, as who being an inward companion of Theodosius in all his warres and victories, and by degrees of militarie service, advanced unto high authoritie, and the Princes affinitie, in the end cloied and glutted with prosperitie, and carried away through ambition, miserably lost his life. This man surely for certaine yeares, had a provident regard of the Empires good estate, and defended Britaine

* Or, full of

* Which, of the
Britains.

Procopius

Honorius
Emperours

taine against the invasion of Picts, Scots, and Vandals: And hereof it is, that Britaine speaketh thus of her selfe in Claudian:

*Me quod, vicinis pereuntem gentibus, inquit,
Munivit Stilicho, totam quum Scotus Hibernem
Movit, & infesto sumavit remige Thetis.
Illius effectum curis, ne bella timorem
Scotica, nec Pictum tremorem, ne litore toto
Prospicerem dubiis venientem Saxona ventis.*

And me likewise at hand, quoth she, to perish, in despite
Of neighbour Nations Stilicho protected 'gainst their might,
What time the Scots all Ireland mov'd, offensive armes to take,
And with the stroke of enemies ores, the Sea much some did make.
He brought to passe, (his care was such) that I the Scottish warre
Should feare no more, nor dread the Picts, ne yet ken from a farre,
(Along the shore whiles I looke still when wavering winds will turne)
The Saxons comming under saile, my coasts to spoile and burne.

And thus for that time Britaine seemed safe enough from any danger of enemies.
For in another place, that Poet writeth thus:

*Domito quod Saxona, Thetis
Mitior, aut fracto Secura Britannia Picto.*

What either seas more quiet now, that Saxons conquer'd are,
Or Britaine become secure, since Picts subdued were.

And when Alaricus King of the Gothes, hovered about Rome, seeking meanes to assault and spoile it: that Legion which in the marches kept Station against the Barbarians was called from hence, as Claudian signifieth, when he reckoneth up the aids sent for from all parts.

*Venit & extremis legio prætenta Britannis,
Qua Scoto dat fræna truci, ferroq; notata.
Perlegit * exanimis Picto moriente figuræ.*

* Or, exanguet.

The Legion also came which did for British frontiers lie
In garrison, that cubs fell Scots, and doth pursue with eie
Those yron-brent markes in Picts now scene, all bloudlesse as they die.

In these daies flourished Fastidius a Bishop of Britaine, and wrote bookes of divine learning, I assure you. Chrysanthus likewise the sonne of Bishop Martian, who having beene a Consular deputy in Italy under Theodosius, and made * Uicar of Britan, deserved that praise and admiration for his good manning of the common-weale that he was against his will entalled at Constantinople Bishop of the Novatians, who having made a schisme in that Church, and calling themselves * Cathari, had Bishops apart of their owne and sectaries, who stoutly but impiouly denied, that such as after baptisme received, fell by relapse into sinne, could not returne againe and bee saved. This is that Bishop, who as wee read in histories, of all Ecclesiasticall revenues and profits, was wont to reserve nothing for himselfe but two loaves of bread onely on the Lords day.

When as now the Roman Empire began to decline and decay, and barbarous Nations every way made foule havocke of the provinces all over the Continent; the British armes fearing least the flame of their neighbours fire might flash out and catch hold likewise of them; supposing also that they stood in need of some Generall & Sovereign commander, to expell the Barbarians, addrest themselves to the election of Emperours. First therefore, they enthronized in the royall seat Marcus, and him they obeyed, as one that in these parts bare the chief sovereignty. But afterward having made him away, because his carriage was not answerable unto theirs, they bring forth and set up Gratian, countryman of their owne: him they crowned and arraid in the regall purple, and him they dutifully attended upon, as their Prince. Howbeit upon a mislike that they tooke to him also, at foure moneths end, they deprive him of his Empire, take away his life, and made over the Sovereignty of State to one Constantine, a

souldier

* Fastidius,
Genadius,
Chrysanthus,
Niephorus,
* Lieutenant,
or Deputy.

* Pure.

Tripartite
Historie.

Marcus, Em-
perour.

Gratian, Em-
perour.

Constantine,
Emperour.

A souldier of the meanest place, onely because his name imported, as they thought, the offe of good luck. For they conceived assured hope, that he by the fortunate name of Constantine, would likewise constantly and fortunately governe the Empire and dispatch all enemies, like as that Constantine he Great had done, who in Britaine was advanced to the Imperiall dignitie. This Constantine putting to sea from Brian, landed at Bologne in France, and easily induced withal the Roman forces as far as to the Alpes to joyne with him in his war. * Valentia in France he manfully defended against the puissance of Honorius Augustus the Roman Emperor: the Rhene which long before had been neglected, he fortified with a garison: Upon the Alpes, as well * Cortize

* Valentia;

and * Peninæ, as those toward the * maritime coasts, where ever there was any passage, he built fortresses: In Spaine, under the leading and name of his sonne Constans, whom of a Monk he had denounced Augustus or Emperor, he warred with fortunate successe: and afterwards by letters sent unto Honorius, requesting to be held excused for suffering the purple forcibly to be done upon him by the souldiers, received at his hands of free gift, the Imperiall roabe. Whereupon he became prouder than before, and after he had passed over the Alpes intended to march directly to Rome: but hearing that Alaricus the King of the Goths (who had sided with him) was dead, hee retired himselfe to Arles, where he planted his Imperiall seat, commanded the Citie to be called *Constantina*, and ordained therein, that the assemblies for Assizes of 7 provinces should be held. His sonne Constans hee sendeth for out of Spaine, to the end that meeting together they might consult as touching the State. Who leaving the furniture of his Court and wife at * Cæsar Augusta, and committing the charge

* Montie Geni-
bre, or Mont
Cenis.
* Monte Majori
de S. Bernardo
* Montagna di
Carrara & Lun-
giana, in the
Countie of
Tendar.

C of all matters within Spaine to Gerontius, came speedily without intermission of journey to his father. When they had met together, after many daies, Constantinus seeing no feare of any danger from Italy, gave himselfe wholly to gluttony and bellicheere, and so advieth his sonne to returne into Spaine. But when he had sent his forces to march before, whiles he abode still with his father, newes came out of Spaine, that Maximus one of his vassals and followers was by Gerontius set up and advanced to the Empire; and having about him a strong power and retinue of barbarous nations prepared to come against them. Whereat they being affrighted, Constans and Decimus Rusticus, who of the Master of Offices was now become the Prefect, having dispatched Edoebuccus before unto the German Nations, together with the Frankners, Almans & all the militarie forces, went into France, intending out of hand to returne unto Constantinus. But as for Constans, Gerontius intercepted him by the way at Vienna in France, and killed him: Constantine himselfe he besieged within Arles: to raise this siege and to assaile him in hostile manner, when one Constantinus sent from Honorius made hast with an armie, Gerontius fearefully fled: whereupon his souldiers for anger and indignation beset his house round about, and drave him to those hard streits, that first he cut off Alanus his most trusty friends head, then he laid violent hands upon Nuanichia the said Alanus wife, who earnestly desired to die with her husband; and last of all perished himselfe. Constantinus being very straitly shut up, and withall utterly dejected and cast down with the unfortunate sight of Edoebuccus, after he had beene beleaguere four moneths, and reigned likewise foure years, laid away his purple habite, entred into a Church, and tooke the orders of priesthood, and soone after, having surrendered Arles, was led captive into Italie, and there beheaded, together with a sonne of his, whom he had named * *Nobilissimus*, and a brother called Sebastian. From that time returned Britaine, under the Empire of Honorius, and was refreshed a while, through the wisdome and prowess of Victorinus, who then ruled the Province, and repressed the outroides of Picts and Scots. In commendation of whom, in Rutilius Claudius, are these verses extant, answerable in worth to the Author.

* Carragoca.

Nicéphorus;
Callistus.

* As one
would say,
Heire appa-
rant.
Victorinus
Rector or
Ruler of Bri-
taine.

*Conscius Oceanus virtutum, conscia Thule,
Et quæcunq; ferox arva Britannus arat.
Quæ Præfectorum vicibus frenata potestas
Perpetuum magni fœnis amoris habet.*

H

Extremum

*Extremum pars illa quidem discessit in orbem,
Sed tanquam medio rector in orbe fuit.
Plus palma est illos inter voluisse placere,
Inter quos minor est displicuisse pudor.*

The Ocean maine his vertues knowes, and Thule witnesse will,
And all the fertile fields likewise, that Britans fierce doe till.
Where ever Rulers power by turnes successive bridled is,
Of much good love continuall increase he doth not misse.
That part indeed divided was from all the world befide,
And yet as if in mids thereof it were, he did it guide.
The greater prife and praise it is to seeke there for to please,
Where to controll lesse feare it were, lesse bashment to displease.

When Rome was forced by Alaricus, Honorius calleth Victorinus home with his army: and forthwith the Britans took armes, and engaging themselves into danger for the safety of themselves, freed their own cities and States from the barbarous people, that waited all opportunities to annoy them. Semblably, that whole maritime tract of * Armorica, and the rest of the Gaulois Provinces, accompanied the Britans, and in like manner delivered themselves, casting out the Roman Prefidents, and setting up a certain proper common-wealth at their owne pleasure. This revolt and rebellion of Britaine, together with the French Provinces hapned in the time that Constantine usurped the Kingdome, considering that the Barbarians, taking advantage of his negligence in government, boldly, and without restraint overcame those Provinces. Howbeit within a while after, the States of Britan importuned Honorius for succor: whom he without sending any aid at all, advised by his Letters to stand upon their owne guard, & look to themselves. The Britans upon the receipt of Honorius Letters, were stirred up, and put themselves in armes to defend their owne cities: but being not able to match the Barbarians that came upon them so on every side, they besought Honorius what they could, and obtained at his hands, that a Legion should be sent to their rescue and succour. Which being come over hither, defeated and overthrowed a great number of the enemies, chased the rest out of the marches of the Province, and took order for a wall or rampier of turfe to be made, from the Firth of *Edenburgh*, unto *Cluid*, which stood them in small or no stead. For by occasion that the said Legion was called backe to the defence of France, the barbarous enemies returned, breake downe with ease the frontier bounds, and in all kind of outrage and crueltie in every place carry, harrie, and make havocke of all. Then were dispatched a second time in lamentable sort Embassadors, with their garments rent, and heads covered with sand (marke the manner of it) for to crave aid of the Romans: unto whom, by the commandement of Valentinian the Third, were appointed certaine regiments of souldiers, conducted by Gallio of Ravenna, which most valiantly vanquished the Barbarians, and in some sort gave comfort to the poore distressed and afflicted Province. They made a wall directly by a straight line, and that of stone (not as the other) at the publike charges of the State, and with private mens purses together, joyning with them the miserable Inhabitants, after the wonted manner of building, to wit, traversing along the land * from one Sea to another, betweene those cities which haply were placed there for feare of enemies; to the fearefull people they gave good instructions, and exhortations to play the men, and left unto them paternes, shewing them how to make armour and weapons. Upon the coast also of the Ocean, in the tract of the South country, what way they had ships (because even from that side also they stood in feare of those barbarous and savage beasts) they planted turrets, and bulwarkes with convenient spaces distant one from another, yielding farre and faire prospect into the sea: and so the Romans gave them a small farewell, never to returne againe.

Now was the State every where in a most wofull and pious plight to see unto: to see the Empire drooping with extreme age, lay along maimed, dismembred, and as it were, benumbed in all the limmes and parts thereof: the Church likewise most grievously assailed by Heretikes (who amid the burning broiles of warre, cast

spread

* Bretagne,
little Britaine,
or Llydaw.

Zosimus.

Histor. Miscel.

Gallio Ravennas.

Gildas.

* Betweene
the mouth of
Tine and
Elton.

A spread their venome all abroad. Among whom Pelagius borne in this Island, taught here, to the prejudice of Gods meere grace, *That we might attaine to perfect righteousness by our owne works.* One Timothee also, impiously disputed among the Britans, *anno 428.* against the divine and humane nature both, in Christ.

Now also was the Roman Empire in Britaine, come to her full and snall period, to wit, the foure hundredth, seventh, and sixth year after Cæsars first entrie: what time, in the raigne of Valentinian the Third, the Romans having transported their forces with the foresaid Gallion, for the defence of France, and buried their treasure within the ground, left Britaine hereof her youth, waisted with so many musters and

The English
Saxon-Chronicle.

B levies, dispoiled of all succour and defence of garrison, unto the cruell rage of Picts and Scots. Hence it is, that Prosper Aquitanus wrote thus, and that right truly: *At this time, by reason of the Romans weakenesse, the strength of Britaine was utterly spent, and brought to nought. And our Historiographer of Malmesburie: When the Tyrants had left none in the country, but halfe Barbarians; none in the cities and townes, but such as wholly gave themselves to belly-cheere: Britaine destitute of all protection by her vigorous young men, bereaved of all exercise, and practise of good arts, became exposed, for a long time, to the greedy, and gaping jaws of Nations confining upon her. For, straightwaies, by the incursions of Scots and Picts, many a man was slaine, villages burnt, cities undermined and subverted, and throughout all laid wast with fire and sword. The Islanders in great trouble and perplexitie, thinking all other meanes safer, than triall by battell; partly be-tooke them to their heeles, and for their safetie fled unto the mountaine-Country: partly, after they had buried their treasure within the ground, whereof much is digged up in these daies, purposed to goe to Rome for to crave aide. But as Nicephorus truly wrote, Valentinian the Third, was not onely unable to recover Britaine, Spaine, and France, provinces plucked away from his Empire already, but also lost Africke beside. Not without just cause therefore Gildas in this age cried out thus: Britaine was dispoiled of all her armed men, her militarie forces, her Rulers (cruell though they were,) and of a mightie number of her stout and courageous youths. For, besides those whom that Usurper Maximus, and the last Constantine led away with them, it appeareth evidently by antike Inscriptions, D and the booke named *Notitia Provinciarum*, that these companies underwritten served the Romans in war, here and there dispersed over their Provinces, which also were from time to time evermore supplied out of Britaine.*

* Yet called
Gaul.

Ala Britannica Millitaria.

Ala IIII Britonum in Aegypto.

Cohors Prima Aelia Britonum.

Cohors IIII Britonum.

Cohors VII Britonum.

Cohors XXV I. Britonum in Armenia.

Britannici sub Magistro peditum.

Invicti juniores Britannici 2 inter auxilia

Excubatores jun. Britan. 5 Palatina.

Britones cum Magistro Equitum Galliarum,

Invicti Juniores Britones intra Hispanias.

Britones Seniores in Illyrico.

Hereupon, no marvaile it is, if Britaine exhausted daily with so many, and so great levies of souldiers, lay exposed unto the Barbarians, and heereby proveth that sentence of Tacitus true; *There is no strength in the Roman armies, but it is of forraigne strangers.*

In writing of these matters, concerning the Romans government in Britaine, which continued (as I said) cccclxxvi. yeares, or much there about, whiles I consider and think otherwhiles with my selfe, how many Colonies of Romans were in so long a time brought hither, how many souldiers continually transported over hither from Rome to lie in garrison, how many sent hither to negotiate either their own busines, or the affaires of the Empire, who joyning in marriage with Britans, both planted themselves, and also begat children here (For, *Wheresoever the Roman winneth, saith Seneca,*

How the Britans are descended from the Trojans.

H 2

neca,

neca, *there be wometh, and inhabiteth* :) I enter oft times into this cogitation, That Britans may more truly ingraffe themselves into the Trojans stocke, by these Romans, who are defended from Trojans, than either the * Arverni, who drawing their descent, from * *Ilian blood*, have named themselves, the Romans brethren; or the Mamertines, * Hedui, and the rest, who grounding upon a fabulous originall, have fathered themselves upon the Trojans. For Rome, that common Mother (as he saith) called those her Citizens,

Quos domuit, nexuq; pio longinqua revinxit :

Whom she subdued, and by a gracious knot,
United people farre diffite and remote.

And meet it we should believe, that the Britans and Romans in so many ages, by a blessed and joyfull mutuall ingrafting, as it were, have growne into one stocke and nation: seeing, that the * Ubij in Germanie within 28. yeares after that a Colonie was planted, where now Colein is, made answer as touching the Roman Inhabitants there, in this wise: *This is the naturall Countrey, as well to those that being conveyed hither in times past, are conjoynd with us by marriages, as to their off-spring. Neither can we thinke you so unreasonable, as to wish us for to kill our parents, brethren, and children.* If the Ubij and Romans in so small a time became parents, brethren, and children one to another, what should we judge of Britans and Romans linked and conjoynd so many yeares together? What also may we say of the Burgundians, who for that they mingled their blood with the Romans, whiles they held for a small time the Romans Provinces, called themselves a Roman off-spring: not to rehearse againe what I have said before, That this Island hath beene named *Romania*, and *Insula Romana*, that is, *The Roman Isle*.

Thus much have I fet downe summarily, and in compendious manner gathered out of the ancient monuments of Antiquitie, rejecting all fabulous fictions, as touching the Romans Regiment in Britaine, their Lieutenants, Propretours, Prefidents, * Vicars, and * Rectors. But more exactly and fully, [might I have done it] if Aufonius had performed his promise, and that come unto our hands : who said, he would reckon up such, as

*Aut Italūm populos Aquilonigenasq; Britannos
Præfecturarum titulo tenuere secundo.*

That ruled Nations Italike, and North-bred Britans all,
Entituled with happy stile, Lieutenants Generall.

But seeing it is agreed upon among all learned men, that there ariseth very much light to the illustration of ancient Histories, out of ancient Coines, I have thought good in this place to exhibit unto the Reader certaine pieces of money, as well of those Britaines, who first came under subjection of the Romans, as of Roman Emperours; such especially as appurtaine to Britaine, and those out of the Cabinet of the right Worshipfull Sir Robert Cotton of Conington Knight, who hath from all places with curious and chargeable search, gotten them together, and of his courtesie with heart and good will, imparted the same unto me.

* The people
of Auvergne
in France.
* Trojan.
* Burgundi-
ans.

Tacit. Histor.
lib. 4.
* Those of
Colein, and
thereabout.

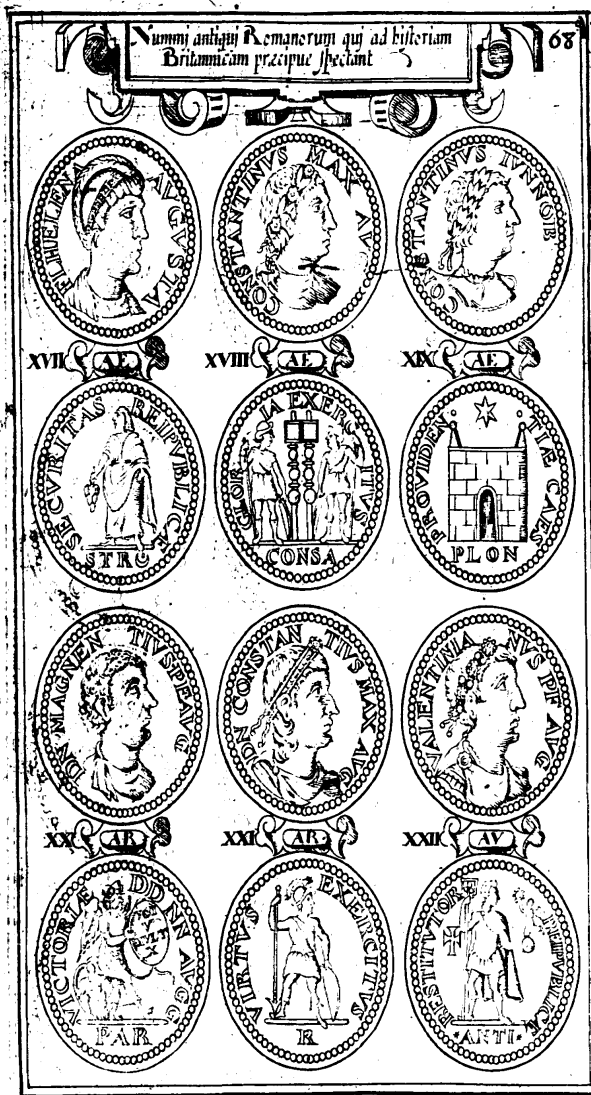
Ammian. Marcellin. lib. 28.

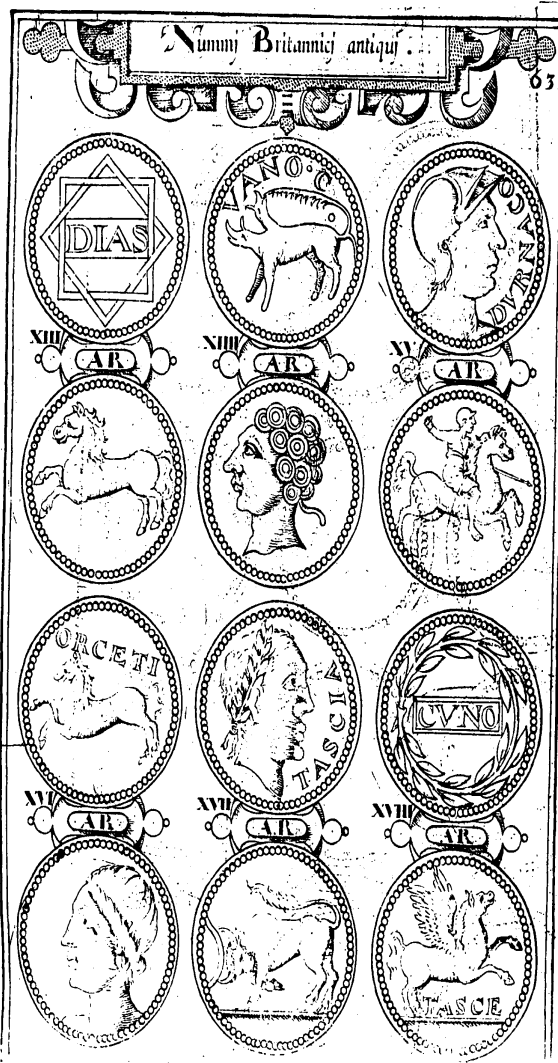
* Deputies.
* Regents.

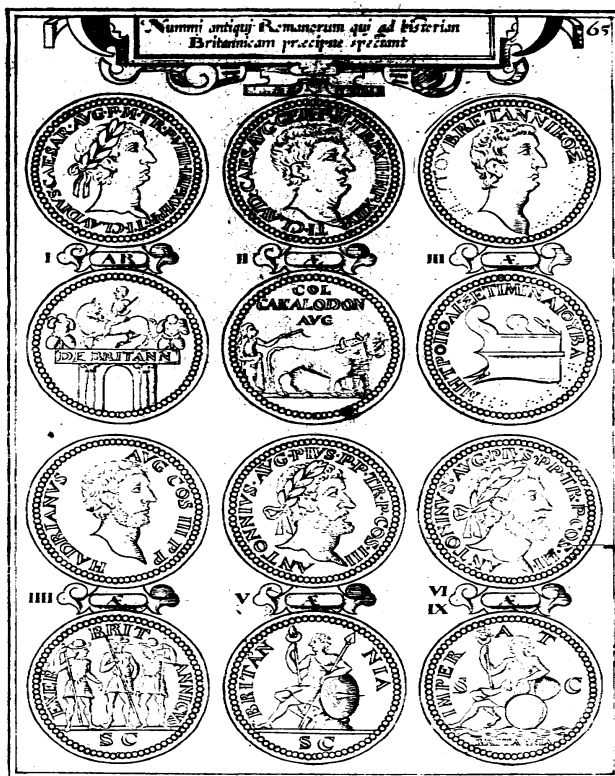


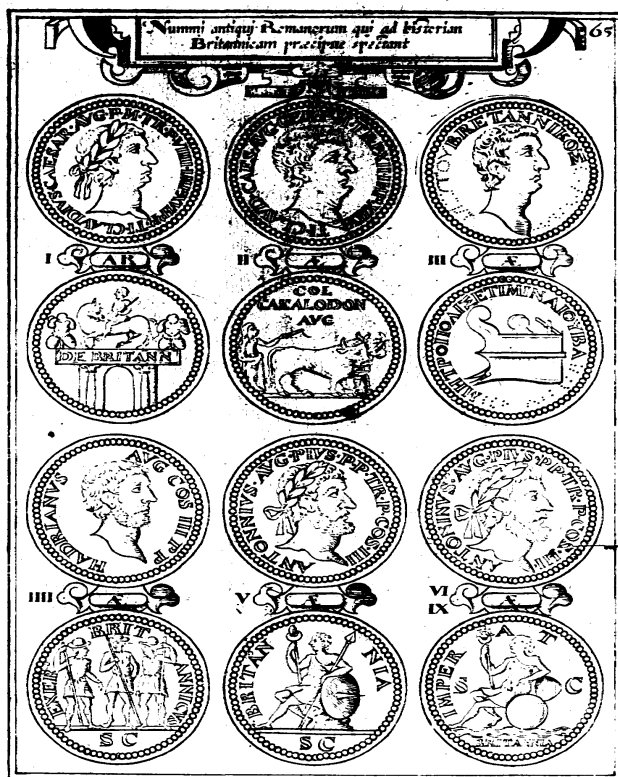
THE

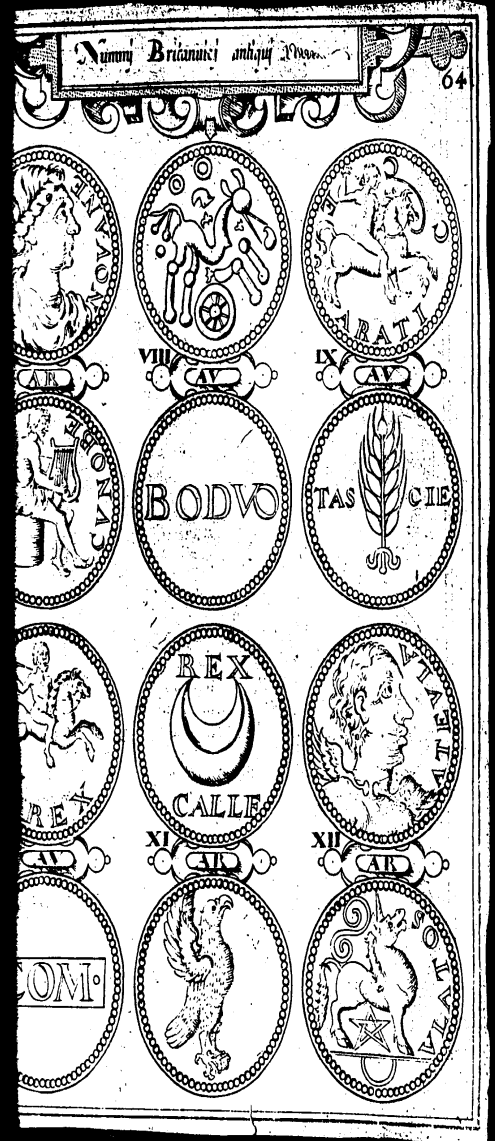
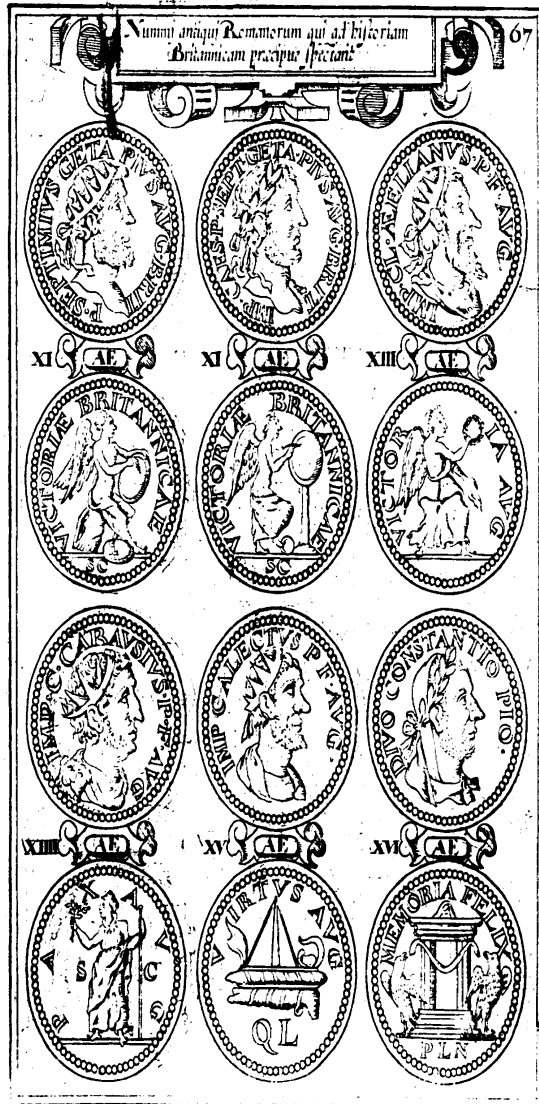
H 3















CONIECTVRES AS TOV. ching the British Coins.

The Britans Coines, the portraicts whereof I have here shewed, you looke haply, that I should adjoyne some briefe notes also. But what to adjoyne of such things as the revolution of so many ages past, hath altogether overcast with darkenesse, to professe plainly, I see not: and your selfe, when you shall read these slender guessees of mine, will avouch with me, that I walke in a mirke and mistie night of ignorance.

That the old Britans used brasse money, or rings, or else plates of yron tried to a certaine just weight, I have declared already before, out of Cæsar: and there be, who averre, that they have seen some of these found in little pitchers. Besides these, found there are other-whiles in this Island, pieces of gold, silver, and brasse of sundry fashions, and as different in poize: all for the most part of the one side hollow: some without letters, others with expresse Inscriptions of letters; of which sort, I could never here that any have been digged up elsewhere, untill such time as *Nicolaus Fabricius Pierscius*, a right noble young Gentleman of Provance in France, one for such antiquities, & old Medals or pieces of money, passing skilfull, and of judicious insight, very lately had shewed me the like found in France. But to come unto these of ours, which I have here proposed.

The first, is a coine of Cunobelinus, who flourished in the daies of Augustus and Tiberius: wherein, if I deceive not my selfe, are engraven the heads of two-faced Ianus: peradventure, because even at that time Britaine began to cast off, and leave their barbarous rudenesse. For we reade, how Ianus was the first, that changed barbarous manners into civill behaviour, and therefore was depainted with two fore-heads, to signifie, that he had of one shape made another.

The second also is Cunobelinus Coine, shewing his face, and Inscription [of the one side] and the Coiner or Mint-master on the other, with this word *TASCIA* set to it, which word among the Britans, betokeneth a *Tribute Penye*, as Master David Powell, a man most skilfull in the British language hath informed me: and is derived perhaps of the Latine, *Taxatio*. For, the Britans acknowledge not X. for their letter. And by the same reason the Inscription of *MONETA*, is seene oft times in pieces of Roman money.

In like manner, the third is a Coine of the same Cunobelinus, with an horse and *CVNO*. with a corne ear also, and *CAMV*, (as it should seeme) for *Camalodunum*, which was the Royall citie and seat of Cunobelinus.

The fourth with *VER*, may be thought a coine of the *Verlamians*.
The

The fifth againe, is one of Cunobelinus his pieces.

The sixth, because it giveth no light by letters, I wot not what to make of it.

The seventh, a Coine of Cunobelinus, having this Inscription, TASC. NOVANEL, with a womans head; whether it should imply a tribute piece of the Trinovants, over whom he was ruler, I cannot avow on the other side, *Apollo* with his Harpe, and *Cunobelin* putteth me in remembrance of that, which elsewhere I have observed as concerning the *God Belinus*: namely, that the * Gauls in old time worshipped *Apollo* under the name of *Belinus*: which *Dioscorides* also doth confirme, writing in plain & expresse termes, that the herbe * *Apollinariu*, with the juce whereof the Gauls were wont to annoint their arrowes, is in the Gauls tongue, called *Belinuntia*. So that, upon this I may be bold in some sort to conjecture, that the name of *Cunobelinus*, as also of *Casibelinus*, is drawn from the worship of *Apollo*, like as the names of *Phœbitius* and *Delphidius*. If not rather, like as *Apollo* for his bush of yellow haire, is named in Greeke, *ἡλίου*, in Latin, *Flavus*, that is, *yellow*: so likewise among the Britans, and Gauls, *Belin*. For that which is yellow, in * British speech they call, *Melin*, *Belin*, and *Felin*: and for the same cause, that ancient *Belinus*, *Cunobelinus*, and *Casibelinus*, who also goeth under the name of *Casivelaunus*, may seeme to be so named, as one would say, *Yellow Princes*. For that *Cuno* is a name of dignitie, the * Britans confesse, and a thing which is especiall and principall, they terme at this day, *Cynoc*. Certes, it hath been a name of honour, *Cungetorix*, *Cunobelinus*, *Cuneglasus*, * *Cunedas*, and *Cunedagius*, Princes names among the Britans; like as *Cyngetorix*, *Conviêtolitanus*, and *Conetodunnus*, among the ancient Gauls, doe after a sort make good and declare. Neither am I ignorant that *Gildas* hath translated *Cuneglasus*, in Latine, *Lani-nemfulvum vel furvum*, that is, *A Lion tawney, or darke hued Butcher*: whom others have interpreted, *Principem Caruleum, five vitrei coloris*, that is, *A Prince blew, or of a blewish, or woad-colour*: like as *Cunedas*, *Principem bonum*, that is, *A good Prince*. That the German *Koning*, and our *King*, came from *Cuno*, I dare not yet suppose. Let it suffice, by these my sundry guessees, to have thus dallied, lest I lay open my selfe to the scorn of others.

The eighth, with a chariot horse, and a wheele or shield underneath, having in the reverse BODVO; may seeme to be a Coine of the Nation called * *Boduni*: or else of the Queene *Bodicia*, who is diversly named *Voadicia*, and *Bunduica*.

The ninth, wherein is represented an horseman, with speare and shield, and these letters in scattering wise, CAERATIC. I would deeme to be a Coine of that warlike Prince *Caratacus*, whose praises *Tacitus* highly extolleth.

God Belinus.
* Ancient Inhabitants of France.

* Henbane.

* Welch.

Cuno.
* Welchmen.

* Vitrei coloris.

* Or Daluni,
Gloucester-shire, and Oxford-shire.

The tenth, upon the one side whereof, under an horseman, is the Inscription REX, and on the other COM, both I and some others are pleased with this conceit, that it was a coin of *Connius * Attre-batenis* whom *Cæsar* mentioneth.

The eleventh, which doth represent a little halfe moon with this Inscription, REX CALLE, is not much unlike the name of that most famous and frequented Citie, *Callena*.

The twelfth hath a winged head with this word ATEVLA; and in the reverse a Lion, and this Inscription, VLATOS. What the meaning might be of these words, I seeke and seek, but in vaine. Indeed by this very same portrature and image, I have seene upon pieces of Roman mony the Goddesse *Victorie* expressed. But, that *Victorie* should bee in the British tongue called *Ateula*, I never yet could find. Mary, that they named *Victorie*, *Andasa*, I have out of *Dio* reported already: and whether the same were *Andrata*, worshipped of the * *Vocontij* in Gaule, let some other say, for I dare not.

Here also may you behold the thirteenth, with this word DIAS, in an eight-angled figure, & an horse on the contrary side: the fourteenth with a swine, and these letters VANO C, the head also of a goddesse, haply *Venus*; or else *Venutius* whom *Tacitus* speaketh of. The fifteenth, with an head and helmet upon it; and this Inscription, DVRNA CO: and whether that were *Dumnacus* a Prince of the *Andes* whom *Cæsar* doth mention, I wot not. The sixteenth with an horse, & this word ORCEGI. The seventeenth with the image of *Augustus* and TASCIA, & on the reverse a bull boaking with his hornes: The eighteenth, with CVNO within a laurell garland; and upon the back part an horse, with the Inscription TASC E.

We have seen besides one other coine with the flying horse *Pegasus*, and CAMV: on the backe part whereof, the forme of a man with an helmet and shield, within standing corne, and CVNO: another, with an horse ill favouredly portraied, and EISV, peradventure for ISVRII, and on the back side, an eare of corne: also another with a souldier carying a speare, and on the other side, within a wreath or chein, SOLIDV. That it should be the piece of mony called *Solidus*, I doe not believe, because the said piece was in that age alwaies of gold; whereas this was of silver. More probable it is, that it should have a reference to *Solidurij*. For so the ancient French named men devoted to die in behalfe of others: Whose condition was this, that look unto whose friendship they had betaken themselves, they should together with them enjoy all the comforts and commodities of this life. If any violent accident hapned unto them, they were either to sustaine the same chance together with them, or else to kill themselves: neither hath ever any one of them bin found, who after the party was slain, unto whose friendship he had devoted himselfe,

Of Arras.

* Or Gallena; that is, Walsengford.

Victoria Andate.

* Those of the County of Beaufort.

* In Octage no.

* People of Anjou or Angiers.

Solidurij; Cæsar Com ment.

Soldiers.

himselfe, would refuse to die. Now whether from these, those soldiers tooke their name, who being sworne pensioners to any one Prince or State, take a certaine pension, and with most nations of Europe carry almost the very same name, to wit *Soldiers, Soldates, Soldados, &c.* I had rather others should thinke than my selfe determine: although for mine owne part, I would more willingly subscribe to this opinion, that in these later and more moderne times, they were termed *Solidarij*, for distinction sake, for those, who served in the wars in regard of their tenours, without pay of money.

Whether all these kinds of coine went commonly currant as money, from one to another and in ordinary trafficke and exchange, or were stamped at the first apart, for some speciall use and purpose, is a question debated among the learned. But in few words, take here my conjecture, if I may be so bold to interpose the same. Considering that Cæsar had appointed what Custome or Imposst the Britans should pay yearly, and whereas under Augustus they endured those payments for portages, or toll, as well in carrying forth as bringing in commodities: by little and little other tributes also were imposed upon them: to wit, for * *Corne-grounds, Plant-plots, Groves or Parks, Pasturage of greater and smaller beasts*: as being subdued now to obey as subjects, and not to serve as slaves: I have been of opinion, that those pieces of money were stamped at first for that use, namely, for greater beasts, with an horse; for smaller with a swine; for woods with a tree; for * *corne-fields* with an eare of corne: as in that piece of the *Verlamians*, which carrieth the Inscription *V E R V*.

Strabo.
Sativis.

Appian.

* Pol-silver.

Numisma
Census.

As for those with the head of a man or woman, they may seeme stamped for the Tribute * *Capitatio*, which was personall and imposed upon the poll or person of every one: of women from the twelfth, of men, from the fourteenth yeare of their age. Which imposition *Bunduica* or *Bodicia* a Queene of the Britans complained of unto her people in these words; *Tee doe both graze and also plough for the Romans, yea, ye pay an yearly tribute in respect of your very bodden*. For this purpose I have thought there was in old time one certaine kind of money stamped, seeing that in the scripture it is plainly called *Numisma Census*, and Hesichius expoundeth *Numisma Census*, is a kind of personall money paid for every poll. And the more readily believe I this, for that in some there is expressed the Mint-master marking money with *T A S C I A*, which among the Britans betokeneth a Tribute-Denier. Howbeit I denie not, but that afterwards these passed promiscuously as money from one to another. Neither am I yet of the same mind with those, that would have the Swine, the Horse, the Corne eare, Ianus, &c. to have beene the peculiar badges of nations, families, or Princes: considering, we may see in these, that one and the same Prince and nation used sundry badges.

A badges, as *Cunobelinus*, who stamped in his money a swine, an horse, a corne eare, and other things.

Now, whether these tribute pieces were coined by the Romans, or the Provinciaall people, or their Kings, seeing that the whole world was taxed by Augustus, I may not easily affirme. Conjecture I may that they were stamped by the British Kings, considering that Britaine from the time of Iulius Cæsar unto Claudius daies, used their owne lawes, and was committed to the government of their owne Kings, as *Dio* writeth: and withall, seeing that they represent the images and titles of British Princes. For, the Romans by a received custome had Kings in their Provinces as instruments to bring the people into servitude: who being now become, as it were, the Romans fellowes and associates, by little & little were framed, (a thing usuall with persons conquered) to their fashions, & so, as it seemeth, began after the Roman manner both to stamp money at a certaine poize, and also to imprint a name upon the pieces. But contrariwise in Iurie, as may be collected by the answer of Christ, marked they were with Cæsars face and superscription, and that in all likelihood by the Romans themselves. Which Cardinall Baronius a painefull Ecclesiasticall Historian, sheweth in these words: *The manner, saith he, among the Romans was, that money should be coined by the Emperours, in regard of Tribute or Taxe, and not to remaine alwaies the same, and after one sort, but according to the rise and fall of the said tributes, differ from other pieces of usuall money in this point, for that the value of these ordinarie pieces is alwaies one and the same, but those of Tax or tribute, ever as the qualitie of Tribute changed, were made proportionable to the said tribute.* But divers learned men accord not in this point with Baronius.

NOTES VPON THE ROMAN COINES.

E THE first Roman Emperour after [Iulius] Cæsar, that earnestly set his mind upon the conquest of Britaine, was Claudius: and he having put over sea hither with an armie, brought the South-part thereof into the forme of a Province: At which very time, this first piece of money may seeme to bee stamped, which carrieth this abbreviated Inscription, *TI CLAVD CAES AVG P M TR P VIII IMP XVI*. that is to say, *Tiberius Claudius Caesar, Augustus Pontifex Maximus, that is, High Priest, Triumvir in potestate IX. that is, In Tribunes authoritie the ninth time, Imperator XVI. that is, sixteene times Imperator.* But to explaine these titles once for all, ye shall understand, That after Iulius Cæsar, who



F *berius Claudius Caesar, Augustus Pontifex Maximus, that is, High Priest, Triumvir in potestate IX. that is, In Tribunes authoritie the ninth time, Imperator XVI. that is, sixteene times Imperator.* But to explaine these titles once for all, ye shall understand, That after Iulius Cæsar, who

who laid the foundation of the Roman Monarchie, and Octavius who was honoured with the name of Augustus, all their successors in honour of them would be called *Cæsares*, and *Augusti*, as though they far surpassed the nature of men. For such things as be of sacred Majestie, are named *Augustæ*: also, termed they were *Pontifices Maximi*, or *High Priests*, for that they were consecrated in all kinds of Priesthood, and overseers of all Sacrifices and religious ceremonies. They usurped likewise the Tribunitian power and authoritie (for Tribunes in no wise would they be termed) to the end, that they might have protection thereby and be inviolable. For, being once invested in this authoritie, if any man either gave cursed language or offered violence unto them, hee might without proceffe of condemnation be killed as a sacrilegious person: and this Tribunitian power they renewed every yeare, and thereby were reckoned the yeares of their Empire. Last of all they were stiled, *Imperatores*, because their command and rule was most large, & under that name the power of Kings and Dictators was contained. Now, they were entituled, *Imperatores*, so oft as they had achieved any worthy exploit in battell, either in their owne persons, or by their Captaines. But whereas in the reverse of this piece of money, there is to be seene a triumphall Arch, with the portrait of an horseman betweene two trophees, and this title, D E B R I T A N. I would judge, that thereby is meant a twofold victorie obtained, in the ninth yeare of Claudius his Empire, according to the number, that sheweth his Tribunitian authoritie renewed.

II. In the second piece, which also is a coine of Claudius * Augustus, out of this Inscription, T I C L A V D. C A E S. A V G. G E R. T R. P. XII. I M P. XIII. we are taught, that in the twelfth yeare of his raigne, he, for a victorie won in Britan was with joyfull acclamations saluted, *Imperator*, the eighteenth time: and at the same instant that the Colonie Camalodūnum was thither brought, which is signified expressly by an * husbandman imprinted upon it, with a Cow and a Bull: *The Romans* (saith Servius) *when they were about to found and build cities, being girt and clad after the Gabines fashion, that is to say, with one part of their gowne covering the head, and the other tucked up, yoked on the right hand, a Bull, and within forth a Cow, and held the crooked plough taile bending inward, so as all the clouds of the earth might fall inward. And thus having made a furrow, they did set out the places for wals holding up the plough from the ground, where the gates should be.*

III. The Son of Claudius, whose piece of coine the third is with Greek Characters, was by vertue of an act of Senate adorned with the surname of B R I T A N N I C V S, in regard of his fathers fortunate wars, that he might use the same as his owne proper addition. He it was, for whom Seneca praied in this wise, *That he might appease Germanie,*

A *manie, make way into Britaine, and solemnize both his Fathers triumphs, and also new* [of his owne.] But what should bee the meaning of an halfe ship in this coine, with this Inscription, *Metropoli Eriminij Regi*? Certes, I cannot for certaine affirme who that *Eriminius* was, unlesse a man list to imagine him to have beene the very same *Adiminus*, King *Cunobelinus* son, of whom Suetonius reporteth, That he ran away unto C. Caligula.

B That which you see in the fourth place, is a piece of Hadrians money, with this writing upon it, H A D R I A N V S A V G. C O N S V L I I I. P A T E R P A T R I A E. And in the other side, E X E R C I T V S B R I T A N N I C V S, that is, The Armie in Britaine represented by three souldiers. I would deeme, that it betokened the three Legions, to wit, *Secunda Augusta*, *Sexta victrix*, and *Vicesima Victrix*, which served in Britaine, Anno Christi 120. For then was he Consul the third time.

The fifth and sixth, which are the coines of Antoninus Pius, carrying this Inscription, *Antoninus Pius, Pater Patriæ, Tribunitia potestate, Consul tertium*: and in their reverse, the one having Britaine sitting upon rocks with a militarie Ensigne, a speare and a shield; the other, the selfe same Britaine, sitting upon a globe; seeme to have beene stamped by the Province Britaine, in honour of *Antoninus Pius*, when he began his Empire in the yeare of Christ 140. As for that militarie habit of the Province Britan, it signifieth, That Britan in those daies flourished in glory of martiall prowesse: like as that piece of money, which at the same time Italie stamped for the honor of him, hath such another figure sitting upon a globe, with *Cornucopia*, betokening plentie of all things: that also which Sicilie coined, hath the like figure with an ear of corne, in token of fruitfulness: semblably that which *Mauritania* stamped, hath a portraict or personage, holding two speares with an horse, to shew the glory of that Province in good horsemanship and chivalrie. Hitherto also is to be referred the ninth, which is a piece of the same *Antoninus*, but not set in his due place.

The seventh piece of money, stamped by Commodus, sheweth no more, but that he for a victorie against the Britans, assumed into his stile the name of B R I T A N N I C V S: for in the other side thereof is to be seene, *Victory*, with a branch of the Date-tree, holding a shield, and sitting upon the shield of the Britans vanquished, with this inscription, V I C T O R I A B R I T A N N I C A.

The eighth, which is a coine of Caracalla, and set here not in the right place, more expressly sheweth by the numerall figures, that hee vanquished his enemies in Britaine, in the yeare of our Salvation, 214: as also by the Trophee, which Virgil better than any engraver, portraied in these verses,

*Ingentem quercum decisis undiq; ramis
Constituit tumulo, fulgentiaque induit arma
Mexenti ducis exuvias, tibi magne trophaeum
Bellipotens: aptat roranteis sanguine cristas,
Telaeque trunca viri.*

A mightie Oke, the boughs whereof were shred from every side,
Vpon an hill he pight, whereon he goodly armour tide
Duke Mezence spoiles, a trophée brave, ô mightie Mars, to thee,
And fits therto his crests which yet with gore blood dropping be,
The truncheons of that Knight also —

XII. The same is to be thought of the twelfth, which also is one of the same Caracallaes.

X. XI. But in those of Severus and Geta, there is none obscuritie at all.

XIII. Who this Aebianus was, I am not yet fully resolved. Some reckon

* Or Vsurper. him to be A. Pomponius Aelianus, one of the 30. * Tyrants. Others will him to be *Cl. Aelianus*, one of the sixe Tyrants under *Dioclesian*.

* Or Vsurper. There are also that thinke he was the very same * Tyrant in Britain, under the Emperour *Probus*, of whom *Zosimus* made mention, but suppressed his name, and of whom I have written before. Surely, in what time soever he lived, we suppose that in Britaine hee was named *Augustus*, considering his pieces of money bee found in this Island onely, carrying this Inscription, *IMPERATOR CL. AELIANVS PIVS FOELIX AVGVSTVS*. In the reverse, there is to be read, *VICTORIA AVGVSTI*, which betokeneth, that he subdued some Barbarians.

XIII. The coine of *Carausius*, with this Inscription, *Imperator Caius Carausius Pius Felix Augustus*, and in the backside thereof, *PAX AVGVSTI*, seemeth to have beene stamped at the very time when hee had quieted the British Sea, which by reason of rovers was so dangerous.

XV. When *Allectus*, who made away *Carausius*, had put on the Imperiall purple, and fought manfully against the Barbarians, he stamped this piece with *VIRTVS AVGVSTI*. As for the Letters *Q. L.* some would have them to signifie a * *Quartarius*, stamped at London; others, *The Questor*, that is, Treasurer of London.

XVI. When as *Constantius Chlorus*, being departed this life at *Yorke*, was now solemnly consecrated, and after the Pagan manner deified, in honour and memoriall of him was this piece of money stamped, which appeareth evidently by the Inscription, and a Temple betweene two Eagles. these letters underneath *P. LON.* doe plainly imply *Pecuniam Londini*, that is, that the said money was stamped at London.

XVII. His wife *Flavia Helena*, a British Ladie borne, as our histories report, and as that most excellent Historiographer *Baronius* doth confirme,

A confirme, what time as her Sonne *Constantius Maximus* had discomfited the Tyrant *Maxentius*, and received these Titles, *Fundator quietis*, that is, *The founder of quietnesse*: and *Liberator Orbis*, that is, *The Deliverer of the world*, having procured securitie to the State and common-weale, had this piece stamped in honour of him at *Triers*, as appeareth by the Letters *S. T. R.* that is, *Signata Triens*, that is, to say, coined at *Triers*.

B *Flavius Constantinus Maximus Augustus*, the great ornament of *XVIII.* Britaine, stamped this coine at *Constantinople*, as we are taught by these characters underneath, *CONS. with this, G. L. O. R. I. A. EXERCITVS*, that is, *The glory of the Armie*, to currie favour with the souldiers, in whose choice in those daies, and not at the dispose of the Emperour, was the soveraigne rule and government.

Constantinus the younger, Son of that *Constantinus Maximus*, *XIX.* unto whom with other countries the Province *Britaine* befall, stamped this piece while his Father lived. For he is called only *Nobilis Caesar*, a title that was wont to be given to the Heires apparant, or elect Successours of the Empire. By the edifice thereon, and these words, *PROVIDENTIAE CAESS.* we understand, that he together with his brother, built some publike worke, like as by these letters *P. L. O. N.* that this piece of money was coined at *London*.

This coine carrying the Inscription, *Dominus noster Magnentius Pius Felix Augustus*, may seeme to have beene stamped by *Magnentius*, who had a Britan to his father: as also to win the favour of *Constantius*, after hee had put to flight some publike enemy. For, these Characters *D. D. N. N. AVGG.* that is, *Our L. O. R. D. S. AVGVSTI*, doe argue there were then two *Augusti*, or Emperours. And as for that Inscription, *VOTIS V. MVLTI. X.* it betokeneth, that the people at that time did nuncupate their vovves in these termes, *That the Emperour might flourish 5. yeares*, and by doubling the said number of 5. with lucky acclamations prayed for many 10. yeares. And hereto accordeth that speech in the *Panegyricke* oration of *Nazarius*, as followeth: *The * Quinquenniall feasts and solemnities of the most blessed and happy Caesars hold us wholly possessed with joyes; but in the appointed revolutions of ten yeares, our basting bowes and swift hopes have now rested.* The letters *P. A. R.* doe shew that this denier was stamped at * *Arelate*.

Constantius having defeated *Magnentius*, and recovered Britaine, *XXI.* in honour of his armie, caused this to be stamped. The letter *R.* in the basis thereof importeth haply, that it came out of the mint which was at *Rome*.

In honour of *Valentinian*, when hee had set upright againe the state of Britaine which was falling to ruine, and called that part of it by him thus recovered after his own name *Valentia*, this piece

was coined at Antiochia, as may be gathered out of the small letters underneath.

XXIII. Vnto the *Denier* of Gratianus, I can think of nothing to say more, save only that which erewhile I noted upon that of *Magnentius*.

XXIII. What time as *Magnus Maximus* was by the British armie created *Augustus*, and his son likewise *Flavius Victor* named *Cesar*, to grace

XXV. and glorifie the souldiers were these pieces coined: and *Theodosius* having subdued and made them away, for the very same cause, B

XXVI. stamped that with this, VIRTVTE EXERCITVS.

XXVII. Vpon that golden piece of *Honorius*, I have nothing to observe, but that by this Inscription, AVGGG. there were at the same time three * *Augusti*: namely after the yeare of Grace 420. when as *Honorius* ruled as Emperour in the west, *Theodosius* the younger in the East, and with them *Constantius*, by *Honorius* nominated *Augustus*, who had vanquished our *Constantine*, elected in hope of that fortunate name. As for that Inscription CONOB, it signifieth, that it was fine and pure gold, stamped at Constantinople. For that same CONOB, is no where read, so farre as ever I could hitherto observe, but in pieces of Gold, for CONSTANTINOPOLIOBRIZVM.

I could annex hereunto many more pieces of Roman mony, for infinite store of them is every where found among us in the ruines of cities and townes subverted, in treasure coffers, or vaults hidden in that age, as also in funerall-pots and pitchers. And how it came D to passe, that there should remaine still so great plenty of them, I much marvelled, untill I had read in the *Constitutions of Princes*, that it was forbidden to melt such ancient coines.

Having now already represented these antike pieces, as well of British as Roman mony in their owne formes, I thinke it also profitable for the Reader to insert in this very place a chorographically table or mappe of Britaine, (seeing it hath sometime bene a Province of the Romans) with the ancient names of places: and although the same be not exact and absolute, (for who is able to performe that?) yet thereby a man may learne thus much, if nothing else, that in this round Globe of the earth, there is daily some change: new foundations of townes and cities are laid; new names of people and nations arise, and the former utterly be abolished: and, as that Poet said,

Non indignemur mortalia corpora solvi,

Cernimus exemplis oppida posse mori.

Why fret should we that mortall men to death doe subject lie?

Examples daily shew that townes and cities great may die.

THE

THE DOWN-FALL OR DESTRUCTION OF BRITAIN.



When as Britaine now was abandoned of the Roman garrisons, there ensued an universall and utter confusion, full of woefull miseries and calamities, what with barbarous nations of the one side making incursions and invasions, what with the native Inhabitants raising tumultuous uprores on the other, whiles every man catcheth at the government of State. Thus, as *Ninnius* writeth, *They lived in feare 40. yeares or thereabout.* For, *Vortigern* then King, stood in great dread of the *Picts* and *Scots*: Troubled sore also he was with the violence of Romans, that remained heere, and no lesse stood he in feare of *Ambrosius Aurelius* or *Aurcleanus*, who during the conflict of these tempestuous troubles, wherein his parents that had borne the Imperial purple robe, were slaine, survived them. Hereupon, the Saxons, whom *Vortigern* had called forth of Germany to aid him, made bloody and deadly warre against those friends that invited and entertained them: insomuch as after many variable and doubtfull events of warre they wholly disceised the poore wretched Brittaines of the more fruitfull part of the Island, and their ancient native seat and habitation.

But this most lamentable ruine and downfall of Britaine, *Gildas* the Britaine, who lived within a little while after, all full of teares shall with his piteous pen depaint or deplore rather unto you. As the Romans were returning, quoth he, to their owne home, there, shew themselves avie, out of their carriages, wherein they passed over the * *Sciticke* wale, and as it were, at high noone. Sunne, and in fervent heat, issuing from out of most narrow holes and caves, whole swarmes of dusky vermin, to wit, a number of hideous high-land *Scots* and *Picts* in flocks, for manners and conditions in some respect different; but sorting well enough in one and the same greedy desire of blood-shed: Who having intelligence that the Roman associates and Maintainers of the Britans were returned home, with utter disclaiming and renouncing of all return, more confidently than their usuall manner had beene, seize into their hands all the Northern and utmost part of the land, and hold the same, (as naturall inborne Inhabitants) even as far as to the wall. Against these attempts opposed there was and placed upon an high fort and castle along the wall a garrison, nothing war-like, unfit for fight, with quaking hearts and altogether unmeet for service: which warding there day and night became lazie with doing nothing. Meane while, no stay there was, but those bare naked enemies approached the forts and wall with hooked weapons and engines, where-with the most miserable people were plucked from the walles and dashed against the hard ground. This good yet did this manner of hastling untimely death, unto those that by such E means were speedily rid out of the world, in that by so quick a dispatch they escaped and avoided the woefull imminent calamities of their brethren and deare children. To bee short, having abandoned their Cities and quit that high-wall, once againe they took them to flight, and were dispersed anew, in more desperate manner than before time. Semblably, the enemies follow hard in chase, and hasten to make fouler havocke and more cruell butchery of them. Like therefore as Lambs by bloody butchers, so are these woefull Inhabitants quarried and mangled by their enemies: insomuch as their abode among them might well be compared to the ravening of wild and savage beasts. For not only the poore and wretched people themselves forbore not to rob one another, for their short sustenance of small food, but also those hostile outward miseries and calamities were augmented with inward tumults and troubles: in that by these and such like pillages and spoiles practised so thicke, the whole country was ex- F haust of victuals the staffe and strength of life, save onely the small comfort that came by hunting. Whereupon the distressed remaines of them send their misgiving letters againe unto *Actius* a power-able man in the Roman state, in this tune;

To * *ETIVS* THRICE CONSULL.
THE GRONES OF BRITANS.

Gildas

Saxons called forth into Britaine,

Carroghes, Scitick vale. * The Irish sea.

This *Gildas* here in the Manuscript Copies of France is named *Querulus*, as the right worthy *Barriabas* *Brisonius* hath reported unto me.

In some Copies, *AGITIVS*, in other *Equitius* *Cof*, without any number.

The

The Barbarians drive us backe to the sea : The sea againe putteth us backe upon Barbarians. Thus betwene twene two kinds of death, either our throats be cut, or we are drowned :

Yet obtaine they no succour at all for those their distresses. Meane while in this wandering and declining condition of theirs, most notorious and horrible famine, preffeth them, which forced many of them without delay, to yield themselves into the hands of those cruell spoilers and robbers, that they might have some food (were never so little) to comfort and refresh their poore hungry soules: but with others they ver wrought so much, but they chose rather to withstand and rise against them continually, from out of the very mountaines, caves and thick woods, full of bushes, briars and brambles. And then verily, at the first they gave sundry overthrowes with much slaughter to their enemies for many yeares together (as they made spoile and drave away booties in the land), reposing their trust not in man, but in God: according to that saying of Philo, *The helpe of God is at hand when mans helpe faileth*. Thus for a while rested our enemies from their boldnesse, but yet our countrymen gave not over their wickednesse: The enemies, I say, retired from the people, but the people did not retire themselves from their wickednesse. For, an usuall manner it ever was of this nation (like as it is at this day also) to shew themselves feeble in repressing the enemies forces, but strong enough to civill warres, and to undergoe the burdens of sinne, &c. Well then, these shamelesse Irish ravenours returne home, minding shortly after to make repaire hither againe: and the Picts rested without molestation then first, and so from thenceforth, in the utmost part of the Province, yet not without wasting & harrying the country at sundry times. By means therefore of such surcease of hostility, the desolate peoples fore of famin was healed up clean and skinned, but another more virulent than it, secretly bred and brake forth. For, in the time that the Island was free from hostile wasting, there happened it in so fruitfull plenty and abundance of all things, as the like no age before had ever remembered: and therewith groweth ever more all manner of riot and excesse. For, so mightily it increased and came to so great an head, that very fity at the sametime it might be said, *Certainely it is hard, that there is such fornication, as the like is not among the Gentiles*. And not this sinne onely was rife, but all others also that are incident to mans nature: and especially (which likewise at this very day overturneth the state of all goodnesse in it) the hatred of Truth, and the maintenance thereof, the love also of lies with the forgers thereof, the admitting of evill for good, the respective regard of leawdnesse in stead of goodnesse, desire of darkenesse in lieu of the Sunne light, and accepting of Satan for an Angell of light. Kings were anointed not by God, but by such as were knowen more cruell than the rest: and soone after, the same were murdered by their owne aoinsters, without due examination of the truth, and others more fiercely and cruell elected. Now if any one of these Kings seemed more mild than other, and somewhat better inclined to the Truth, upon him as the subverter of Britaine the hatred and spitefull darts of all men without respect were levelled and shot. No difference made they of any thing that they tooke displeasure at, but things weighed all in equall ballance, saving that the better things indeed wrought ever discontent: in so much as, right justly the saying of the Prophet was denounced unto that people in old time might bee applied unto our country, *See lawlesse and corrupt children have forsaken the Lord, and provoked unto wrath the holy one of Israel: Why should ye be smitten any more, still multiplying iniquity? Every head is sicke, and every heart is heavy. From the sole of the foot unto the crowne of the head there is nothing sound therein. Thus did they all things that were contrary to their salvation, as if no phisicke or medicine had been bestowed upon the world by the true phisician of all. And not onely the secular or lay men did this, but also the selected flocke of the Lord and the shepheards thereof, who ought to have given example to the whole people. To speake of drunkennesse, numbers of them drenched, as it were, with wine, lay benumbed and senselesse: possessed they were with swelling pride, and therewith stomackfull, given to contentious brawles, armed with the catching claws of envie, and undiscree in their judgement, as putting no difference betwene good and evill. Inasmuch as, apparantly (even as now a*

Kings anointed.

daies) is seemed that contempt was poured forth upon the Princes, and the people were seduced by their vanities and error in by paths and not led the right way. In the meane time, when God was minded to purge his family and to recure it thus infected with so great corruption of sinnes, by heare say onely of tribulation, the winged flight (as one would say) of an headlesse rumour, pierceth the attentive eares of all men, giving notice of ancient enemies ready to arrive, and upon their coming fully minded to destroy them utterly, and after their wonted manner to possesse and inhabite the countrey from one end to another. Yet for all this were they never the better, but like unto foolish and senselesse horses, resisting the bridle of reason, and refusing to admit the bit (as they say) into their close-shut mouth, leaving the way to salvation, narrow though it were, ran up and downe at random all in the broad way of all wickednesse which leadeth directly and readily to death. Whiles therefore, as Salomon saith, the obstinate and stubborne servant is not amended with words, scourged hee is for a foole, and feelth not the whip. For loe, a pestilent contagion bringing much mortalitie falleth heavily upon the foolish people, which in a short space, when the enemies sword was gone destroyed so great a multitude of them, as that the living were not able to bury the dead. Neither verily were they the better for it, that the saying of Esay the Prophet might in them also bee fulfilled: *And God calleth them, quoth he, to sorrow and mourning, to baldnesse and sackcloth; but behold, they fell to killing of calves, to slaying of rams: Lo, they went to eating and drinking, and said withall, Let us eate and drinke, for to morrow wee shall die. And why? the time drew neere wherein their iniquities, like as those in times past of the Amorites, should come to the fulnesse. For, they fall to consult what was the best and most convenient course to be taken, for to repress so cruell, and so many invasions of the forenamed nations, with the booties which they raised. Then, all the Counsellors together with the proud tyrant become blinded and bewitched, devising such a protection, nay a destruction rather of their country as this; namely, that those most fierce Saxons, a people fouly infamous, odious both to God and man, should be let into this Island, as one would say, wolves into the sheep-folds, to repulse, forsooth, and beat backe the Northern nations. Than which, I assure you, nothing was ever devised and practised more pernicious, nothing more unhappy unto this land. O mist of sense and grossest understanding that ever was! O desperate dulnesse and blind blackishnesse of mind! Those whom in their absence they were inclined and given to dread more than very death, now of their owne record these foolish Princes of Egypt entertained, as I may say, under the rooffe of one house, giving (as hath bene said) fowd-foolish counsell unto Pharao.*

Pestilence

Saxons received into Britaine.

Then rushed forth out of the barbarous *Lionesses den a Kennell of whelps in three Vessels, * Germanie: called in her language Cyula, that is, Keeles, and in our Latine tongue, Longe naves, * Ciulæ. under full saile, carried with the wind of lucky sure presaging auguries, whereby fore-prophefied it was unto them, that for 300. yeares they should possesse and hold that land as their country, unto which they directed their course: and for an hundred and twentie, that is, the one moiety of the said space, oftentimes waste and depopulate the same. These being put on shore, first in the East-part of the Island, and that by commandement of this unfortunate tyrant, set fast their terrible paws and claws there, pretending unto the Islanders defence of their country, but more truly intending the offence thereof: unto which whelpes, the foresaid dam, * the Lionesse, finding that their first setting foote and marching forward sped * Germany. well, sends likewise a greater rabble of worrying freebooters, which being arrived here in Flotes conjoynded themselves with the former misbegotten crew. From hence it is, that the shoot-grifts of iniquitie, the root of bitterness, and virulent plants due to our deserts sprout and put forth in our soile, proudly bud, branch & lease. Well, these barbarous Saxons thus admitted into the Island, obtaine allowance of vittuals and wages, as for doury souldiers, and such as would endure hard service and much hazard (for so they falsly beare men in hand) in defence of their good hosts and friends for their kind entertainment. Which being given unto them a long time stopped (as wee say) the dogs mouth. Howbeit afterward they complaine that their * monthly wages was not well paid them, devising of purpose colourable occasions of quarrell, protesting and threatening, that unlesse they might feele more munificence poured and heaped upon them, they would with the breach of covenant spoile and waste the whole Island throughout. And without further delay they second these threats with very deeds:

* Epimenia.

deeds, (for the cause of deserved revenge for precedent wickednesse, was still nourished) the fire kindled, and set a flaming by these prophane men from sea to sea, ceased not to consume all the cities, and countreys bordering there about, untill such time as burning well neere all the inland soile of the Island it licked up with a red flaming, and terrible tongue all unto the westerne Ocean. In this violent furious invasion, comparable to that of the Assyrians in old time against Iuda, is fulfilled also in us (according to the historie) that which the Prophet by way of sorrowfull lamentation uttereth: They have burnt with fire thy Sanctuary, they have polluted in the Land the Tabernacle of thy name. And againe, O God, the Gentiles are come into thine heritage; they have defiled thy holy Temple, &c. In such wise, as all the Colonies by the force of many engines, and all the Inhabitants together with the Prelates of the Church, both Priests and People, by drawne sword glittering on every side, and crackling flame of fire, were at once laid along on the ground: yea, and that which was a piteous spectacle to behold, in the midst of the streets the stone workes of turrets, and high walles, rent and torne in sunder from aloft the sacred altars, and quarters of carcases (covered with imbrued work of imagerie) of a bloody hue, were scene all blended and mixed together (as it were) in a certaine horrible wine-presse, neither was there any Sepulcher at all abroad, save onely the ruin of buildings, and the bowels of wild beasts and fowles.

When we shall read these reports, let vs not be offended and displeased with good Gildas, for his bitter invectives against either the vices of his owne country-men the Britans, or the inhumane outrages of the barbarous enemies, or the insatiable cruelty of our Fore-fathers the Saxons. But since that for so many ages successively ensuing, we are all now by a certaine engrafting or commixtion become one nation, mollified and civilized with Religion, and good Arts, let us meditate and consider, both what they were, and also what wee ought to be: lest that for our finnes likewise, the supreme Ruler of the world, either translate other nations hither, when wee are first rooted out, or incorporate them into us, after we are by them subdued.

BRITANS OF ARMORICA.

Gildas.

DVring this most wofull, desperate, and lamentable tempestuous season, some poore remaines of Britaines, being found in the mountaines, were killed up by whole heapes; others, pined with famine, came and yielded themselves unto the enemies, upon composition to serve them as Bondslaves for ever, so they might not bee killed out of hand, which was repused a most high favour, and especiall grace. There were also that went over sea into strange lands, singing under their spread sailes with a howling and wailing note, in stead of the Mariners * Celestina, after this manner: Thou hast given us [O Lord] as sheepe to be devoured, and scattering us among the heathen. Others againe remained still in their owne country, albeit in fearefull estate, betaking themselves (but yet continually suspecting the worst) to high steepe hills and mountaines intrenched, to woods, and thicke growne forrests, yea, to the rockes of the sea. Of those who passed beyond-sea, no doubt were they who for to save their lives, went over in great number to * Armorica in France, and were kindly received of the Armoricans. That this is true, besides the communie of language, (the same in manner with that of our * Britans) and to say nothing of other authors, who all accord in this point; hee who lived neere unto that age, and was borne even in Armorica, and wrote the life of S. Wingular of the Confessor, sufficiently doth prove. An off-spring, saith he, of the Britans embarked in Flotes, arrived in this land, on this side the British sea, what time as the barbarous nation of the Saxons fierce in armes, and uncivill in manners, possessed their native and mother-soile. Then, I say, this deare off-spring seated themselves close within this nooke and secret corner. In which place they being wearied with travaile and soile, sate quiet for awhile without any warres. Howbeit, our writers report, that our Britans long before this time, ferled themselves in this coast. For, he of Malmesburie writeth thus: Constantinus Maximus being saluted by the Armie, Emperour, having proclaimed an Expedition into the higher lands, brought

* A song at their first setting out.

Bretagne, or little Britain.

* Or Welch-men.

away a great power of British souldiers, through whose industrie and forward service, having obtained triumphant victories to his hearts desire, and attained to the Empire: such of them as were past service, and had performed the painfull parts of souldierie their full time, he planted in a certaine part of Gaule westward upon the very shore of the Ocean: where at this day their posteritie remaining, are wonderfully grown even to a mighty people, in manners and language somewhat degenerate from our Britans. And true it is that Constantine gave commandment in this wise: Let the old souldiers according to our Precept enter upon the vacant lands, and hold them for ever freely. Ninnius likewise: Maximus the Emperour who slew Gratian, would not send home againe those souldiers which he had levied out of Britaine, but gave unto them many countries, even from the poole or Mere, which lieth above Mount. Iovis unto the Citie that is called Cantuac, & unto Cruc-occhidiner: And he that hath annexed briefe notes upon Ninnius, saileth besides in this manner: The Armorican Britans which are beyond-sea, going forth from hence with Maximus the tyrant in his expedition, when as they could not returne, wasted the west-parts of Gaule, even to the very bare soile: and when they had married their wives and daughters, did cut out all their tongues, for feare lest the succeeding progenie should learne their mother-language: whereupon we also call them in our tongue, *Lher vydyon*, that is, halfe silent or tongue-tied, because they speake confusedly. The authoritie of these writers here in I cannot in any wise contradict; yet I am of opinion rather, that the children of those old souldiers gladly afterward received these Britans that fled out of their country. Nevertheless, the name of Britans in this tract, I find not in all the writers of that age, before such time that the Saxons came into our Britain, unlesse it bee of those whom Plinie seemeth to place in *Picardie*, and who in some copies are named *Britanni*. For if any man out of the fourth booke of Strabo his Geographie, doe with Volaterane thinke, that Britaine was a citie of Gaule, let him but looke into the Greeke Booke, and he will soone informe himselfe, that he spake of the Island Britaine, and not of a citie. As for that verse out of Dionysius, which before I have alleaged, some would rather understand it with Stephanus of our Britans, than with Eustathius of the Armoricans, especially seeing that Festus Avienus, a writer verily of good antiquitie, hath translated it thus:

*Caurus nimium vicina * Britannia,
Flavag, casariam Germania porrigit ora.*

Britaine the North-west winds too neare,
And yellow haired Germanie her front doth forward beare.

Neither let any man thinke that the Britannicians mentioned in the booke *Notitia* came from hence, who in truth were certaine cohorts onely of souldiers enrolled out of this our Britaine.

Before the arrivall of our Britans, this country was at first called, *Aremorica*, that is, situate by the sea side: and afterwards in the same sense, *Llydaw*, in the British tongue, that is, *coasting upon the sea*, and thence in Latine by our writers living in the middle age, *Leitavia*. From when I suppose, were those *Leti* whom Zosimus nameth in Gaule, when he noteth, that *Magnentius* the Tyrant, was borne among the *Leti* in France, and had a Britan to his father. These Aremoricians when as that Constantine elected for the names sake became Emperour, and the barbarous nations over-ran Gaul, having cast out the Roman garrisons, instituted a common-wealth among themselves. But Valentian the younger by the meanes of Aetius, and at the intercession of Saint German, reclaimed them to allegiance. At which very time, it seemeth that Exuperantius governed them. Of whom Claudius Rutillius writeth thus:

Cujus Aremoricas Pater Exuperantius oras

Nunc post limum pacis amore docet.

Leges restituit, libertatemq; reducit.

Et servos famulis non sinit esse suis.

Whose Sire Exuperantius the coasts to sea that reach

Now after discontinuance long in love of peace doth teach:

He sets the lawes againe in force, reduceth libertie,

Ced. Theod. lib.
7. Tit. 20.

* Britanni

Britannici

Aremorica

Haply, Lexo
vij in Plinie.
Zonaras.
Procopius termeth them
Arborici: and another calleth the countrey, *Cornu Galie*.

And suffereth them unto his folke no more as slaves to be.

Out of which verses, I wot not whether Aegidius Maserius hath made some collection, when he wrote, That the Britans were servants under the Armoricans and against them erected a freedome. The first mention to my knowledge of Britans in Armorica, was in the year of our saluation 461. about the thirtieth year after that the Anglo-Saxons were called out of Germany into our Britan. For then, Manuetus a Bishop of the Britans, among other Bishops of France and Armorica, subscribed to the first Councell of Tours. In the ninth year after, these new Inhabitants of France, seeing the West-Goths to seize into their hands the most fertile territories of France, Anjou and Poitou, encountered them, and were a barre that the Gothes possessed not themselves of all France. For they sided with Anthemius the Roman Emperour against the Gothes, so far forth that Aruandus was condemned for treason, because in his letters sent unto the King of the Gothes, he had given counsell to set upon the Britans dwelling over the river * Loire, and to divide France betweene the Gothes and Burgundians. These Britans were a kind of people witty and subtle, warlike, tumultuous, and in regard of their valour, number, and association, stubborn: in which terms Sidonius Apollinarius complaineth of them unto Rithimus his friend, for so himselfe calleth him (but Jornandes nameth him King of the Britans) who afterward being sent for by Anthemius, came with a power of 12. thousand men to aid the Romans, but before that they joynd with them, being with his owne forces vanquished in open field by the Gothes, he fled unto the Burgundians confederate with the Romans. From that time the native Armoricans being by little and little subdued, the name of the Britans in these parts, where they were newly seated, grew so great, that generally all the Inhabitants there, passed by little and little into the name of Britans: like as this whole tract was called *Britannia Armorica*, and of the * Frankners *Britannia Cismarina*, that is, Britan on this side the sea: and thereupon, I. Scaliger verified thus:

*Vicit Aremoricis animosa Britannia gentes,
Et dedit imposito nomina prisca iugo.*

The nations Aremorican stout Britan overcame,
And with the yoke of servitude gave them her ancient name.

For, they turned the edge of their weapons upon those their friends that gave them entertainment, as appeareth evidently both by other testimonies, and also by these words of Regalis Bishop of Vennes as touching himself and his: *We living, faith he, in captivite under the Britans are subject to a grievous and heaveie yoke. Moreover, in the times succeeding, they courageously maintained themselves and their estates: First under petty Kings, afterwards under Counts and Dukes against the French; albeit as Glaber Rodolphus writeth; Their only wealth was immunitie from payments to the publique Treasurie, and plentie of milke: Also 500. yeares since, William of Malmesbury wrote thus of them: A kind of people they are needy and poore in their owne country; otherwise also with foraine money waged, and purchasing a laborious and painfull life. If they be well paid, they refuse not so much as to serve in civill war one against another without all regard of right or kindred, but according to the quantitie of money readie with their services for this part sooner you would have them.*

BRITANS OF WALES AND CORNWALES.

He rest of the Britans, who pitifully distressed in their own native country were put to seeke for their country, were overlaid with so great calamities, as no man is able sufficiently to expresse according to the nature of such horrible particulars as being not only molested grievously by the Saxons, Picts, & Scots, who made cruel war upon them far & neere, but also oppressed under the proud and intollerable rule of wicked tyrants, in all places. Now

A who those tyrants were and of what quality about the year of our Lord 500. have here in few words out of Gildas, who then lived and was an eye witness. Constantine a Tyrant among the * Danmonij, albeit he had sworn in expresse words before God and the companie of holy Saints, that he would performe the office of a good Prince, yet in two Churches under the sacred vesture of an Abbat, slew two children of the blood royall, together with their Follers, two right valiant men: and many yeares before having put away his lawfull wife, was foules defiled with a number of foule filthie adulteries.

B Aurelius Conanus, wallowing in the mire of Parricides and adulteries, hating the peace of his country, is left alone as a tree withering in the open field: whose father and brethren were with a wild, youthfull, and overweeming phantastie carried away, and by untimely death, surprized.

Vortigornus tyrant of the * Dimetia, the ungratious sonne of a good father, like to a Panther in manners, so variably spotted with vices of divers sorts: when his head was now waxen hoary and gray, sitting in his throne full of craft and guile, and the same defiled with Parricides, or murders of his owne kindred, and with adulteries beside, cast off his owne wife, (and filthily abused her daughter unawares, and unwitting) yea, and heooke also her life away.

Cuneglasus, in the Roman tongue, *Lania fulvus*, that is, the Lyon tawney Butcher, a Beare sitting and riding upon many, the driver of that chariot which holdeth the Beare, a contemner of God, an oppressor of the Clergie, fighting against God with grievous sinnes, and warring upon man with materiall armour, and weapons, turned away his wife, provoked the Saints and holy men with manifold injuries, proudly conceited of his owne wisdom, and setting his hope in the uncertaintie of riches.

Maglocunus, Dragon of the Isles, the deposor of many Tyrants out of Kingdoms and life, both the most forward in all mischief: for power and malicious wickednesse together, greater then many more: a large giver, but a more prodigall, and profuse spender: stronger in armes, higher also than all the Potentates of Britaine, as well in royall dominion, as in the stature and lineaments of his person. In his youthfull daies with sword and fire, he brought to destruction his Uncle by the mothers side, (being then King) together with many right hardy and redoubted servitors. After that phantastie of a viall course of rule according to his desire was gone, upon a remorse of conscience for his sinnes, vowed to bee a professed Monk: but some after returning to his vomit, breaking the said vow of Monach profession, he despised his first marriage, and became enamoured upon the wife of his brothers sonne, whiles he was living: the said brothers sonne, and his owne wife, (after hee had kept her for a certaine time) hee murdered, and then married that brothers sinners wife, whom hee before had loved. But I must leave the report of these things to History writers, who hitherto have fallily set downe, that these Tyrants succeeded one after another: whereas in truth as we may perceive by Gildas, who speaketh unto them severally, and personally one by one, they all at once, and the very same time usurped tyranny in divers quarters of the Island.

E And now to returne: The residue of Britans remaining alive, withdrew themselves into the western parts of the Island, naturally fenced with mountains, and inlets of the sea, to those parts (I meane) which now we call *Wales*, and *Cornwall*. The Inhabitants of the one the Saxons named *Britpeales*, of the other *Cornpeales*, like as those in *Gaulle*, *Galpeales*; For *Walsh* with them signifieth strange and foraine: whence also the Wallons in the low Countries, and the Vallachians upon the river * *Dunow* had their names.

The Britwales, or Welshmen, a very warlike nation, for many yeares defended their libertie under petty-kings: and albeit they were secluded from the English-Saxons by a Ditch or Trench which King Offa cast, (a wonderfull piece of worke) yet otherwhiles by fire and sword they spoiled their cities, and in like sort suffered at their hands all extremities of hostilitie whatsoever. At the length in the reigne of Edward the First, as he writeth of himselfe, The Divine providence which in the owne dispose is never deceived, among other good gifts dispensed by it, and with which it hath wondrously fed our Kingdome of England to bee adorned, hath converted now full, wholly, and entirely (of her good grace) the Land of Wales with the Inhabitants thereof (subject before time was

* *Amphibalus* a sacred vesture haire on both sides. An old Glo-faire.

* Aurelius Conanus, who also was called Caninus, &c. in an old booke.

* Vortigornus, Southwales, as Caermarden shire, Pembroke shire, and Cardigan shire. Cuneglasus.

* Maglocunus.

* Cornwallis, Britwales, Welch, Walli: * *Danubium*.

* Welchmen.

* Statute of Wales.

to us by fealtie and service) into our proper dominion, and without any let or barre whatsoever, hath annexed and unised it unto the Crowne of the foresaid Realme, as a part of one and the same bodie politicke. Howbeit in the age next ensuing, they could no way bee induced to undergoe the yoke of subjection, neither could the quarrels by any means possibly be taken up, nor the most deadly hatred betwene the two nations extinguished, untill that King Henry the seventh, who descended of them, assisted the oppressed Britans with his gracious hand, and King Henry the Eighth, admitted them unto the same condition of Lawes and Liberties, that the English enjoy. Since which time, yea and very often also before, the Kings of England have had triall of their constant fidelitie, and loyall allegiance. As for those *Cornwallians*, although they stoutly bent all their force together in defence of their Country, yet soone became they subject to the Saxons, as who neither marched them in number, neither was their Countrey sufficiently fenced by nature to defend them.

* Welchmen.

Let this suffice that hath bene said, touching the Britans and Romans: but since we treat of the Inhabitants, we may not in this place omit, (although wee have heretofore spoken thereof already) that which *Zosimus reporteth; How that Probus the Emperour, sent over into Britaine the *Vandals* and *Burgundians*, whom he had overcome, who having seated themselves here, stood the Romans in good stead, as oft as any one raised tumult and sedition. But where they were planted, I know not, unless it were in Cambridge-shire. For, Gervase of *Tilbury* maketh mention of an ancient rampier or hold in that shire, which he calleth *Vandelsbury*, and saith, it was the worke of the *Vandals*.

* Lib. 1.

Neither let any man surmise, that in the daies of Constantius the *Pæni* had their abode here, grounding upon these words of Eumenius the Rhetorician: [*Except perhaps no greater ruine had fallen upon Britaine, and borne it downe, than if it had bene drenched throughout; and overwhelmed with the over-flowing of the Ocean: which being delivered from the most deepe gulfe [Pænorum] began to appeare and shew it selfe as the view and sight of the Romans.*] For, in the old Copie belonging sometime to Humfrey Duke of Gloucester, and afterwards to the right honourable Baron Burghly, Lord high Treasurer of England, we reade [*Pænarum gurgitibus*] that is, The gulfes of punishment, and not *Pænorum gurgitib.* For he seemeth to speake of the calamities and miseries wherewith Britaine was afflicted under Carausius.

Whereas Agathias in the second booke of his Histories, hath these words, *Hunnica natio Britones sunt*, that is, *The Britons are a nation of the Hunnes*: I would have no man hereby raise a slander upon the Britans, or thinke them to bee issued from the savage cruell Hunnes. For, long since Francis Pithæus a very learned man, hath averred unto mee, and now of late *I. Lemenclaus*, a right worthy Historian, published in writing, that in a Greeke Copie it is read, *Britones*, and not *Britones*.

PICTS.

PICTS.

NOW let us come to the other Inhabitants of Britaine, and first unto the Picts, whom for Antiquitie next unto Britains, the Historiographers have accounted the second. Hector Boetius deriveth these from the Agathyrsti: Pomponius Lætus, Aventinus and others from the Germans: some from the Pictones in France, and Beda from the Scythians. It hapned, saith hee, that the nations of the Picts came in long *ships, and those not many, out of Scythia, (as the report goeth) into Ireland: and of the Scots whom they found there, requested (but in vaine) a place of habitation: by whose perswasion they went into Britaine, and inhabited the Northerne parts thereof, and that was about the yere of our Redemption, (as many would have it) 78. I for my part, in so great a variety of opinions, know not which I should follow: yet, (that I may speake what I suppose to be true, and deliver mine owne judgement) were it not that in this point the authoritie of venerable Beda, did over-weigh all the conjectures of all others,

* Gallies or Keeles.

others, I would thinke that the Picts came from no other place at all, but were very naturall Britaines themselves, even the right progenie of the most ancient Brittaines: those Britans, I meane, and none other, who before the coming in of the Romans, were seated in the North part of the Island, and of those who afterwards, casting off the yoke of bondage (as they are a nation most impatient of servillie) repaired unto these in the North. Like as when the Saxons over-ran the Isle, those Britaines which would not forgoe their libertie, conveyed themselves into the Westerne parts of the Island, full of craggie hills, as Wales and Cornwall: even so, doubtlesse, when the Roman warre grew hot, the Britaines left they should undergoe servitude, (which is of all the miseries the extreamest) gat them into these Northerne parts, frozen with the bitter cold of the aire full of rough and rugged passages, and full of washes and standing meeres. Where being armed not so much with weapons, as with a sharpe aire and climate of their owne, they grew up together with the native Inhabitants whom there they found, unto a mightie and populous nation. For, Tacitus reporteth, that the enemies of the Romans were by his wives father Agricola, driven into this part, as it were, into another Island: and no man doubteth, but Britans they where which inhabited these remotest parts of the Island. For, shall we dreame that all those Britans, enemies to the Romans, which brought out thirtie thousand armed men into the field against Agricola, who gave unto Severus so great overthrowes, that of Romans and Associates he lost in one expedition and journey 70000. were killed up every mothers sonne, and none left for seed, and procreation, that they might give roome unto forrainers out of Scythia and Thracia? So farre am I from beleeving this, although Beda hath written so much by relation from others, that I would rather affirme, they were so multiplied, that the very soile was not able either to relieve or receive them, and were enforced therefore to over-flow, and over-whelme, as it were, the Roman Province, which came to passe wee know afterwards, when the Scots came in unto them. But because Beda hath so written, as others in that time reported, may easily bee brought to believe, that some also out of Scandia, called in times past Scythia, (as all the Northerne tract beside) came by the Isles, that by a continued ranke lie betwene, unto those Northerne Britaines. Yet lest any man should imagine, that I seeke to countenance a lie, carrying likelihood and probability of a truth, me thinks I am able to prove, that the Picts were very Britans indeed, by the demeanor, name, and language of the Picts, wherein wee shall see they agreed passing well with Britaines.

Their manners and demeanour.

And to let passe among other reasons, that neither the Picts, according to Beda, nor the Britans, as Tacitus writeth, made by any distinction of sex for government in chiefe, or excluded women from bearing scepter, that custome of painting, and staining themselves with colours, was common to both nations. As touching the Britans, wee have proved it before: and for the Picts, Claudian proveth it for us, who writeth thus:

Nec falso nomine Pictos

Edomuit.

The Picts hee tam'd
So truly nam'd.

And in another place,

Ferroq; notatas

Perlegit exanimis Picto moriente figuras:

And doth peruse with eie

Those iron-brent marks in Picts well seene all bloudlesse, as they die.

Which *Isidore* doth shew more plainly: *The Nation of the Picts* (saith he) *have a name drawne even from their bodies, for that by the artificiall pricking therein of small holes with a needle, the workman wringing out the juce of greene grasse, encloseth the same within, that their Nobilitie and Gentry thus spotted, may carry these skarres about them, in their painted pounced limbes, as badges to be knowne by.* Shall we thinke now, that these Picts were Germans, who never used this manner of painting: or the Agathyrsti of Thracia, so farre distant from hence, or rather the very Britans themselves: seeing they were

Their name.

were in the selfe same lile, and retained the same guise, and fashion of painting.

Neither are those barbarous people, who so long time made such incursions out of the Forrest Caledonia, and from that farthest Northerne coast found the Romans worke, otherwise called than Britans, of the ancient writers, Dio, Herodian, Vopiscus, and others. Semblably, Tacitus who describeth at large the warres of Agricola, his wives Father, in this utmost coast of Britaine, calleth the Inhabitants by no other name than Britans, and Britans of * Caledonia: whereas notwithstanding, our later Writers have recorded, that the *Picts*, new comers hither, were arrived there ten or twelve years before; a thing that I would have you to note, considering that Tacitus in that age knew not of them at all. Neither would those Roman Emperors, who warred fortunately against them, to wit, Commodus, Severus, with Bassianus and Geta his sonnes, have assumed into their Stile that addition of *BRITANNICVS*, after they had vanquished them, unless they had bene Britans. Certes, if the Romans, for whose magnificence every thing made that was strange, had subdued any other nation there beside the Britans, and the same before time unknowne, (were they called *Picts* or Scots) they would (no doubt) have been knowne by the titles of *Pictorum* and *Scoticus* in their coines and inscriptions. Tacitus guesseth by their deep yellow bush of haire, and their large limbes, that they had their beginning out of Germanie: but straightwaies after, and more truly he attributeth all to the climate, and posture of the heaven, which yieldeth unto bodies their complexion and feature. Whereupon, Vitruvius also writeth thus: *Vnder the North Pole are nations bred and fostered, bigge and tall of bodie, of colour browne, with haire of head even, and straight, and the same ruddie.* In like manner, that the Caledones, (without all question Britans) were the selfe same nation of the *Picts*, the Panegyricke Author after a sort doth intimate, writing thus: *The woods of the Caledones, and of other Picts, &c.* as if the Caledones also, had bene none other but the *Picts*. And that those Caledonians were Britans borne. Martiall in this verse of his, implieth:

Quinte Caledonios Ovidi visure Britannos:

Quint Ovide, Britans Caledon, thou that dost mind to see.

Ausonius likewise, who sheweth withall that they were painted, while hee compareth their colour unto green mosse, distinguished with gravell between, in this wise:

Viridem distinguit glarea muscum;

Tota Caledonijs talis pictura Britannis:

Like to greene mosse with gravell rewe between,

The Britans Caledonian are all be painted seen.

But, as these for a long time were no otherwise known than by the name of Britans, and that, by reason of their depainted bodies: so afterwards, about the time of Maximian and Dioclesian, (neither before that, find wee the name of *Picts* in any writers) when Britaine had so long bene a Province, that the Inhabitants had learned the provinciall Latine tongue, then (it seemeth) began they to bee called *Picts*, for distinction sake, that they might be known from them that were confederate with the Romans, and called Britans. And whence should they bee called *Picts*, if it were not because they depainted themselves? Now if any one there be, who beleeveth not, that our Britans used the provinciall Latin tongue, little knoweth he certainly how earnestly the Romans laboured, that the Provinces might speake Latin, neither seeth he what a number of Latine words is crept into the British language: that I may not urge the authoritie of Tacitus, who saith, that in the Domitians time the Britans affected very much the eloquence of the Latine tongue. And as touching the name of *Picts*, the authoritie of Flavius Vegetius may soone cleare this doubt, who sheweth (after a sort) that the Britans used the word [*Pict*] in the very same sense, for a thing that is coloured, as the Latines doe. For, he writeth, that the Britans called these light Pinaces of espiall, *Pictas*; the sailes, gables, and other tacklings whereof were dyed with a blew or watchet colour, like as the mariners, and souldiers to them belonging, who were clad in blew apparell. Surely if the Britans called Ships, for their sailes and tacklings stained with the said blew colour, *Pictas*, what letteth but that they

* Now Albanic.

Lib. 4. cap. 37.

they should call the people *Picti*, who were painted with sundry colours, and with blew especially, for that is the colour that woad giveth.

This also maketh for us, that the Northerne *Picts*, whom Saint Columbane by preaching the word, and by his good example brought unto Christianitie, as in the ancient English Annals, named, *Brittae Pechtae*, as one would say, *Britan Picts*.

The cause whereof we draw not many proofes from the language, is this, for that of the *Picts* tongue, there can scarce one word be gathered out of Authors: yet it seemeth to be the same that the British. Beda wrote, that the Roman wall made against the incursions of the *Picts*, beganne in a place, which is the *Picts* Language is called, *Pennabel*: and *Pengwall*, among the Britans expressly signifieth, *The beginning or head of the wall*. Moreover, throughout all that tract of the Island, which the *Picts* held longest (and that was the East part of Scotland) the names of most places doe favour of a British originall: as for example, *Morria*, *Marnia*, for that they be countries adjoining to the sea, comming of the British word *Mor*, that is, *Sea*. *Aberden*, *Aberlothner*, *Aberdore*, *Aberneith*, that is, the mouth of *Den*, of *Lochnet*, of *Dore* and *Neith*, from the British word, *Aber*, which signifieth the mouth of a river. *Strathbolgi*, *Strath-dee*, *Strathearn*, that is, *The Dale or Vale of Bolgi*, *Dee*, and *Earne*, comming of *Strath*, which in the British tongue betokeneth, a Valley. Yea, and the chiefe seat of the *Picts*, doth acknowledge no other original than a British, I meane *Edenburgh*, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Castrum alatum*, that is, *the winged Castle*. For *Aden*, in British is, *a Wing*. Neither will I (by way of prooffe) take hold of this argument, that some of the British pettie Kings, were called *Baidij*, which is as much in the Britan language (as I have often said) as *Depainted*. Out of these premises verily, we may without any absurditie conclude, That the *Picts* Language, and the British differed not, and therefore the nations were not divers; howsoever Beda speaketh of the *Picts* and *Britans* tongues, as if they were distinct one from the other; in which place, hee may bee thought to have meant their sundrie Dialects.

Neither is there cause why any man should marvell, that the *Picts* wrought so much mischief, and gave so many overthrowes unto their country-men the Britans, considering that wee see at this day in Ireland, those which are within the English pale, have none so deadly foes unto them, as their owne countrey-men, the wilde Irish. For like; as we read in *Paulus Diaconus*, the Gothes, Hypogothes, Gepidians, and Vandals, varying their names onely, and speaking one and the selfe same language, encountered often times one another in open field with Banner displayed; even so did the *Picts* and *Britans*, especially when these *Britans* were become the Roman allies. These were the reasons, such as they be, that tooke hold of mee, and induced mee in a manner, to thinke the *Picts* a remnant of the *Britans*: but perhaps the authoritie of Beda weigheth downe all this; and therefore, if ye thinke so good, let the tradition of so reverend a man, grounded upon the relation of others, prevaile and take place before these conjectures.

These *Picts* Ammianus Marcellinus divideth into *Dicalidonianis*, and *Vecturiones*. I would rather read *Dencalidonianis*, and doe thinke they were planted about the Westerne coasts of Scotland, where the *Dencalidonian Sea* breaketh in. And albeit I have bene of opinion, that these were so called, as if a man would say, *Blacke Caledonians*, for *Dee* in the British tongue, signifieth *Blacke* (like as the Irish now adaeies terme the Scots of that tract, *Duf Allibawn*, that is, *Blacke Scots*, and so the *Britans* called the rovers and pirats, which out of these parts did much scath at sea, *Ula du*, that is, *the blacke armie*: yet now, mee thinkes we may guesse, (for guessees are free) that they tooke that name from their situation. For *Dencalidony*, betokeneth the Caledonians dwelling on the right hand, that is, Westward; like as the other *Picts*, who kept on the left hand, that is, Eastward, which Ninnius calleth, the left side, were named *Vecturiones*, by a word haply drawne from *Chwinic*, which in the British tongue, signifieth, *Left*; and these some thinke are corruptly called in *Ptolomee*, *Pennicones*. And an old Saxon fragment seemeth to give them the name of *Pogporth*, for so they terme an enemy-nation to the *Britans*: whereas the ancient Angles, or English called

Their Language.

Dicalidonijs.
Vecturiones.

called the *Picts* themselves, *Pebits* and *Peobtas*. And hereupon it is that wee read everie where in *Whitkindus*, *Pebiti*, for *Picti*.

The manners
of the Picts.

Bladus.

Honoriaci.

Bede.

* Reckoning
the said day.

* *Asterius* comes
Pictorum.

The manners of these ancient and barbarous Britans, who afterwards came to be named *Picts*, I have heretofore described out of Dio, and Herodian. It remaineth now, that I goe on with my webbe, and weave thus much to it: namely, that in the declining state of the Empire, when the Romans somewhat unadvisedly, and without good forecast enrolled cohorts of the Barbarians, certaine of these *Picts*, (when all was in quietnesse and peace) were taken into the militarie service of the Romans by Honorius, and therefore termed *Honoriaci*, who under that Tyrant Constantine (elected in hope of so fortunate a name) having set open the fortified entries of the Pyrenean hills, let Barbarians into Spaine. In the end, when first by themselves, and afterwards combining with the Scots their confederats, they had afflicted the Roman Province, they began, though late it were, to waxe civill. Those of the South, were by Ninias, or Ninianus the Britan, a most holy man, converted to Christ, in the year of Grace foure hundred and thirtie. But they of the North, who were secluded from the Southerne by a continuall ridge of high craggie mountaines, by Columbanus a Scot of Ireland, a Monke likewise of passing great holinesse, in the year 565. who taught them, whence soever hee learned it, to celebrate the feast of Easter, betwixt the fourteenth day of the Moone in March, unto the twentieth, but alwaies upon the Lords day, as also to use another manner of tonsure, or shaving their heads, than the Romans did, to wit, representing the imperfect forme of a Coronet. About these ceremonies hard hold there was, and eager disputation for a long time in this Island, untill that Naitanus a King of the *Picts* brought his owne subjects with much adoe unto the Roman observance. In which age very many *Picts* with great devotion, as the daies were then, frequented the Chappels and Shrines of Saints at Rome, and among others he that is mentioned in the Antiquities of Saint Peters Church there, in these words [*ASTERIVS COMES PICTORVM ET SYRACVM SVIS VOTVM SOLVERE*] that is, *Asterius a Count or Earle of the Picts, and Syria with their family performed their vowes*. At length, by the Scots that infested them out of Ireland, they were made to stoop, and after so daunted, as that about the year of our Lord 740. being vanquished in a most bloody battell, they were either utterly extinct, or else by little and little, quite passed into their Scottish name, and nation. Which very same thing chanced to the most puissant Nation of the Gaules, who being subdued of the Frankes by little and little, were turned into their name, and called with them, *Franci*, that is, French.

Whereas the Panegyrick author, giveth some inkling, that Britaine before Cæsars time used to skirmish with their enemies the *Picts* and *Irish*, halfe naked men, hee seemeth to speake after the manner of the time wherein hee lived: but surely in those daies, there were none knowne in Britaine by the name of *Picts*.

Also, whereas Sidonius Apollinaris in his Panegyrick to his wives Father poetically powred out these verses:

*Victoria Caesar
Signa Caledonios transvexit ad usq; Britannos,
Fuderit & quanquam Scutum & cum Saxone Pictum:*

In traine of Conquest Cæsar still his ensignes even as farre
As Britaine Caledonian advanc'd: and though no barre
Staid him, but that the Scots and Picts, with Saxons he subdued, &c.

I cannot chuse but with another Poet, crye out in this wise:

*Sit nulla fides augentibus omnia Idæis:
These Poets love to over-reach,
Believe them not, when so they teach.*

For, Cæsar who is prodigall in his owne praise, would never have concealed these exploits, if he had ever performed them. But these men seeme not unlike to those good, honest, and learned writers in our age, who whiles they patch together an historie of Cæsar, write forsooth, how he subdued the Franks in Gaule, and the Eng-

lish

lish men in Britaine, whereas in those daies the names of English, and French were not so much as heard of, either in the one or the other country, as who, many ages after, came into these Regions.

That the Pictones of Gaule, and our *Picts* were both one Nation, I dare not with *Ioannes Picardus* avouch, seeing the names of the Pictones in Gaule was even in Cæsars time very ripe and much spoken of, and for that our *Picts* were never called Pictones: yet am I not ignorant, how in one onely place of the Panegyrist among all the rest, through the negligence of the copier, there was foisted in *Pictorum*, in stead of *Pictorum*.

SCOTI.



Among the people of Britaine, after *Picts*, the SCOTISH Nation by good right challenge the next place: concerning whom, before I speake ought, for feare lest evill willers, & frowardly peevish, should calumniously misconstrue those allegations, which I, simply, ingenuously, and in all honest meaning, shall heere cite out of ancient writers as touching Scots, I must certifie the Reader before hand, that every particular hath reference to the old, true, and naturall Scots onely: Whose of-spring are those Scots speaking Irish, which inhabit all the West part of the Kingdome of Scotland, now so called and the Islands adjoining thereto, and who now adaies be termed *High-land men*. For, the rest which are of civill behaviour, and bee seated in the East part thereof, albeit they beare now the name of Scottish-men, yet are they nothing lesse than Scots, but descended from the same Germane originall, that wee English men are. And this, neither can they chuse but confesse, nor we but acknowledge; being as they are, teamed by those above said, *High-land men*, *Sassones*, as well as we; and using as they doe the same language with us, to wit, the English-Saxon, different onely in Dialect, a most assured argument of one and the same originall. In which regard, so farre am I from working any discredit unto them, that I have rather respectively loved them alwaies, as of the same blood and stocke, yea, and honoured them too, even when the Kingdomes were divided: but now much more, since it hath pleased our Almighty, and most mercifull God, that we grow united in one bodie, under one most Sacred head of the Empire, to the joy, happinesse, welfare, and safetie, of both Nations, which I heartily wish and pray for.

The beginning and Erymologie of the Scottish Nation, like as of other neighbour nations round about, is so full of obscuritie, and lies over-spread under the mist of darkenesse, in such sort, that even Buchanan himselfe, though otherwise a man of a very deepe insight, either hath seene little therein, or seene to himselfe alone: for in this point he hath come short of all mens expectation. Whereupon I have forborne a long time to take this enterprize in hand, lest with others in admiring fables, I should full sweetly please my selfe, and fall into folly. For, a man may with as great probability derive the Scots pedigree from the Gods, as from *Scota* that supposed and counterfeit daughter of the Egyptian King Pharaoh, wedded (forsooth) unto *Gaishe-lus*, the sonne of Cecrops founder of Athens. But, as this conceite arising from the unskilfulnesse of Antiquitie, is of the better sort of ingenuous Scots rejected: so, that other opinion of later daies, drawne without all sense from a Greeke fountain, that Scots should bee so called, as it were, *obscuri*, that is, *Obscure*, I utterly disallow and condemne, as a device of envious persons, to the slanderous reproach of a famous and valiant Nation. Neither doe all men like the derivation of our * *Florilegius*, namely, that Scots were so called, because they came of a confused mingle-mangle of divers nations: And yet I cannot but marvell, whence *Isidorus* had this: *The Scots* (saith he) *take their name in their own proper tongue of their painted bodies, for that they were marked with sharpe yron pricks, and inke, and so receive the print of sundry shapes*. Which also Rabanus Maurus, in the very same words (doubtlesse out of him) doth testifie

Scota, King
Pharaoh's
daughter.

* Flower-gatherer, the
name of an
Historic.
Lib. 9. cap. 2.

in

called the *Picts* themselves, *Pebits* and *Peobras*. And hereupon it is that we read everywhere where in *Whitkindus*, *Pebits*, for *Picti*.

The manners
of the Picts.

Blondus.

Honorici.

Bede.

* Reckoning
the said day.

* *Asterius* com-
mes. *Pictorum*.

The manners of these ancient and barbarous Britans, who afterwards came to be named *Picts*, I have heretofore described out of Dio, and Herodian. It remaineth now, that I goe on with my webbe, and weave thus much to it: namely, that in the declining state of the Empire, when the Romans somewhat unadvisedly, and without good forecast enrolled cohorts of the Barbarians, certaine of these *Picts*, (when all was in quietnesse and peace) were taken into the militarie service of the Romans by Honorius, and therefore termed *Honorici*, who under that Tyrant Constantine (elected in hope of so fortunate a name) having set open the fortified entries of the Pyrenean hills, let Barbarians into Spaine. In the end, when first by themselves, and afterwards combining with the Scots their confederats, they had afflicted the Roman Province, they began, though late it were, to waxe civill. Those of the South, were by Ninias, or Ninianus the Britan, a most holy man, converted to Christ, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred and thirtie. But they of the North, who were secluded from the Southerne by a continuall ridge of high craggie mountaines, by Columbanus a Scot of Ireland, a Monke likewise of passing great holinesse, in the yeare 565. who taught them, whence soever hee learned it, to celebrate the feast of Easter, betwene the fourteenth day of the Moone in March, unto the twentieth, but alwaies upon the Lords day, as also to use another manner of tonsure, or shaving their heads, than the Romans did, to wit, representing the imperfect forme of a Coronet. About these ceremonies hard hold there was, and eager disputation for a long time in this Island, untill that Naitanus a King of the *Picts* brought his owne subjects with much adoe unto the Roman observance. In which age very many *Picts* with great devotion, as the daies were then, frequented the Chappels and Shrines of Saints at Rome, and among others he that is mentioned in the Antiquities of Saint Peters Church there, in these words [ASTERIVS COMES PICTORVM ET SYRA CVM SVIS VOTVM SOLVERE] that is, *Asterius a Count or Earle of the Picts, and Syra with their family performed their voves*. At length, by the Scots that infected them out of Ireland, they were made to stoop, and after so daunted, as that about the yeare of our Lord 740. being vanquished in a most bloody battell, they were either utterly extinct, or else by little and little, quite passed into their Scottish name, and nation. Which very same thing chanced to the most puissant Nation of the Gaules, who being subdued of the Frankes by little and little, were turned into their name, and called with them, *Franci*, that is, French.

Whereas the Panegyrick author, giveth some inkling, that Britaine before Cæsars time used to skirmish with their enemies the *Picts* and *Irish*, *halfe naked men*, hee seemeth to speake after the manner of the time wherein hee lived: but surely in those daies, there were none knowne in Britaine by the name of *Picts*.

Also, whereas Sidonius Apollinaris in his Panegyrick to his wives Father poetically powred out these verses:

*Victoria Caesar
Signa Caledonios transvexit ad usq; Britannos,
Fuderit & quanquam Scutum & cum Saxone Pictum:*

In traine of Conquest Cæsar still his ensignes even as farre
As Britaine Caledonian advanc'd: and though no barre
Scaid him, but that the Scots and Picts, with Saxons he subdu'd, &c.

I cannot chuse but with another Poet, crie out in this wise:

Sit nullas fides augeatibus omnia Mafis:

These Poets love to over-reach,
Beleeve them not, when so they teach.

For, Cæsar who is prodigall in his owne praise, would never have concealed these exploits, if he had ever performed them. But these men seeme not unlike to those good, honest, and learned writers in our age, who whiles they patch together an historie of Cæsar, write forsooth, how he subdued the Franks in Gaule, and the Eng-

lish

lish men in Britaine, whereas in those daies the names of English, and French were not so much as heard of, either in the one or the other country, as who, many ages after, came into these Regions.

That the Pictones of Gaule, and our *Picts* were both one Nation, I dare not with *Pictones* *Ioannes Picardus* avouch, seeing the names of the Pictones in Gaule was even in Cæsars time very ripe and much spoken of, and for that our *Picts* were never called *Pictones*: yet am I not ignorant, how in one onely place of the Panegyrist among all the rest, through the negligence of the copier, there was foisted in *Pictorum*, in stead of *Pictorum*.

B

SCOTI.



Among the people of Britaine, after *Picts*, the SCOTISH Nation by good right challenge the next place: concerning whom, before I speake ought, for feare lest evill willers, & frowardly peevish, should calumniously misconstrue those allegations, which I, simply, ingenuously, and in all honest meaning, shall heere cite out of ancient writers as touching Scots, I must certifie the

Reader before hand, that every particular hath reference to the old, true, and naturall Scots onely: Whose ofspring are those Scots speaking Irish, which inhabite all the West part of the Kingdome of Scotland, now so called and the Islands adjoining thereto, and who now adaies be termed *Highland men*. For, the rest which are of civill behaviour, and bee seated in the East part thereof, albeit they beare now the name of Scottish-men, yet are they nothing lesse than Scots, but descended from the same Germane originall, that wee English men are. And this, neither can they chuse but confesse, nor we but acknowledge; being as they are, teamed by those above said, *Highland men*, *Sassones*, as well as we; and using as they doe the same language with us, to wit, the English-Saxon, different onely in Dialect, a most assured argument of one and the same originall. In which regard, so farre am I from working any discredit unto them, that I have rather respectively loved them alwaies, as of the same blood and stocke, yea, and honoured them too, even when the Kingdomes were divided: but now much more, since it hath pleased our Almighty, and most mercifull God, that we grow united in one bodie, under one most Sacred head of the Empire, to the joy, happinesse, welfare, and safetie, of both Nations, which I heartily wish and pray for.

The beginning and Etymologie of the Scottish Nation, like as of other neighbour nations round about, is so full of obscuritie, and lies over-spread under the mist of darkenesse, in such sort, that even Buchanan himselfe, though otherwise a man of a very deepe insight, either hath seene little therein, or seene to himselfe alone: for in this point he hath come short of all mens expectation. Whereupon I have forborne a long time to take this enterprize in hand, lest with others in admiring fables, I should full sweetly please my selfe, and fall into folly. For, a man may with as great probability derive the Scots pedigree from the Gods, as from *Scota* that supposed and counterfeited daughter of the Egyptian King *Pharaoh*, wedded (forsooth) unto *Gaishe-lus*, the sonne of Cecrops founder of Athens. But, as this conceite arising from the unskilfulnesse of Antiquitie, is of the better sort of ingenuous Scots rejected: so, that other opinion of later daies, drawne without all sense from a Greeke fountain, that Scots should bee so called, as it were, *obscuri*, that is, *Obscure*, I utterly disallow and condemne, as a device of envious persons, to the slanderous reproach of a famous and valiant Nation. Neither doe all men like the derivation of our * *Florilegium*, namely, that Scots were so called, because they came of a confused mangle of divers nations: And yet I cannot but marvell, whence *Isidorus* had this: *The Scots* (saith he) *take their name in their owne proper tongue of their painted bodies, for that they are marked with sharpe yron pricks, and inke, and so receive the print of sundry shapes*. Which also Rabanus Maurus, in the very same words (doubtlesse out of him) doth testifie

Scots, King
Pharaohs
daughter.

* Flower gar-
therer, the
name of an
Historie.
Lib. 9. cap. 2.

in

in his Geographic to *Ludovicus Pius* the Emperour, which is to be seene in the Librarie of Trinitie Colledge in Oxford.

But seeing that Scotland it selfe hath of her owne people such as might very well fetch their beginning from the inmost record of Antiquitie, and thereby best of all advance the glory of their Country, in case they would wholly set their minds, and bestow their carefull diligence for a time in this argument; I will point only with my finger to the fountaines, from whence haply they may draw the truth; and lay before them certaine observations, which I would wish them to marke, and consider more diligently: for, my selfe will in this matter play the Scepticke, and affirme nothing. And first, touching their originall; and then, of the place from whence they removed, and came over into Ireland. For, certainly knowne it is, that out of Ireland, an Isle inhabited in old time by Britans, as shall in due place be proved, they passed into Britan, and what time as they were first known unto writers by this name, seated they were in Ireland. For, Claudian the Poet hath written of their irruptions into Britaine, in these verses:

*Totum cum Scotus Hibernem
Movit, et infecto spumavit remige Thesis:*

What time the Scots all Ireland stir'd offensive armes to take,
And with maine stroke of enemies ores, the sea much fume did make.

And also in another place;

Scotorum cumulus flevit glacialis Hiberne:

And frozen Ireland, heapes of Scots bewail'd with many a teare.

Orosius likewise writeth thus; Ireland is peopled with Scottish Nations. Gildas calleth Scots, Irish Spoilers. And Beda; The Scots that inhabit Ireland, an Isle next unto Britaine: as also elsewhere. Yea, and in the daies of Charles the Great, Eginhardus in expresse words, calleth Ireland, The Isle of Scots. Moreover, Giraldus Cambrensis; That the Scottish nation (saith he) is descended out of Ireland, the affirmatie as well of their Language, as of their apparell, of their weapons also, and of their manners even to this day doe sufficiently prove. But now to come unto the points which I would have the Scots thoroughly to weigh.

For as much as they which are right and naturall Scots, acknowledge not this name of Scots, but otherwise call themselves *Gaoithel*, *Gael*, and *Albin*; seeing also, that very many people have other names given unto them by their neighbours, than they use themselves, whereby often times there is a secret light given unto nations of their descent: as for example; the Inhabitants of the lower Pannonia, who terme themselves *Magier*, are in Dutch named *Hungari*, for that they came first of the *Huns*: they that border upon the Forrest *Hercynia*, among themselves are called *Czechi*, but by others *Bohemi*, because they descended from the * *Boj* in Gaule: the Inhabitants of *Africke*, who having also a peculiar name among themselves, are by the Spaniards termed *Alarbes*, for that they be Arabians: the Irish, who call themselves *Erinach*, are by our * Britans named *Goidhil*: considering also, that as well those Irish, and these our * Britans, gave no other name to us English men, than *Saxons*, because wee are descended from the Saxons; I would have the learned Scottish men first to consider, whether they might not be called of their neighbours, as one would say, *Scythia*. For, even as the Flemings and other Netherlanders, expresse by this one word, *Scutens*, both the Scythians and Scots; so it hath bene observed out of our British writers, that they named both Scythians and Scots, *Y-Scot*. Ninnius also expresse calleth the Britans that inhabit Ireland, *Scythians*: and the narrow sea, through which they passed over out of Ireland into Britaine, *Gildas* nameth, *Vallem Scythicam*, that is, The Scythian Vale. For so hath the copie printed at Paris, where others without all sense read, *Stybiacum Vallem*. Moreover, King Alfred, who seven hundred yeares past translated the Historie of Orosius into the English-Saxon tongue, turned [*Scotas*] into [*Scyttan*] and our Country-men, who dwell next to Scotland, use to call them, not by the name of Scots, but *Scyttee*, and *Scytters*. For, like as (*Walsingham* is mine author) the same people be called *Getae*, *Getici*, *Gothi*, *Gothici*; so, from one and the same originall,

Ireland the
native Country
of the
Scots.

Gaoithel, or
Gathel, and
Gath.

* Bourbonnois.

* Welchmen.

* Welchmen.

Valle Scythica.

In Hypodig-
matt.

originall, *Scythia*, *Scitici*, *Scoti*, *Scoeci*, take their names.

But whether this name were imposed upon this nation by their neighbours, in regard of Scythian manners, or because they came out of *Scythia*, let them here advise well upon it. Surely, both * *Diodorus Siculus*, and also * *Strabo*, compare the first Britans inhabiting Ireland, (which is the native country indeed of the wild Irish, and those that be right Scots) with the Scythians for their savage nature. Besides, they drinke blood out of the wounds of men slaine: they establish leagues among themselves, by drinking one anothers blood; and suppose, that the greater number of slaughters they commit, the more honour they win: and so did the Scythians in old time. To this wee may adde, that these [wild] Scots, like as the Scythians, had for their principall weapons, bowes and arrowes. For, *Orpheus* termeth Scythians even as *Aelianus*, and *Julius Pollux*, *Sagittarios*, that is, Archers. And learned men there be, that thinke hereupon both nations had this name given unto them, for their skill in shooting. Neither may this seeme strange, that divers nations carried the same names, by occasion of the same manners: as they who have travailed all over the West-Indies, doe write, that all strange, and hardie men that doe so much mischief with bow and arrowes throughout all India, and the Isles thereof; are by one name called *Caribes*, although they be of divers nations.

Now, that these Scots came out of *Scythia*, the Irish Historiographers themselves doe report: For *Nemethus* the Scythian, and long after him, *Delas*, one of *Nemethus* his progenie, that is, of the Scythian stocke, they reckoned among the first Inhabitants of Ireland. Ninnius likewise a Disciple of *Eluodugus*, hath plainly written thus: In the fourth age of the world (that space I meane which was betwene the building of *Salomons* Temple, and the captivitie of *Babylon*) the Scythians possessed themselves of Ireland. And hereto accordeth the authoritie of later writers, to wit, of *Cisnerus* in his preface to *Crantzium*; and of *Reinerus Reineccius*, who writeth thus: There remaineth yet the nation of the Scots in Britaine, sprung from the Scythians, &c. And yet I verily doubt, although the *Getae* were a Scythicke nation, whether the Poet *Propertius* meaneth those Irish of ours, in writing thus:

Hiberniq, Geta, Picfoq, Britannia curru.

Both Irish *Getae* and Britaine with her painted chariot.

But the Scots should lose part of their honour and dignitie, unless they be brought out of Spaine into Ireland. For, both they themselves, and their Historiographers labour to prove with all their might and maine; and good reason, (I assure you) have they so to doe. Unless therefore wee find Scythians in Spaine, all our labour is lost. And that Scythians have bene in Spaine (to say nothing of a promontorie or point among the *Cantabri*, called *Scythicum* next unto Ireland, and how that *Strabo* writeth, that the * *Cantabri* and Scythians forred well together in their deportment) *Silius Italicus* a Spaniard borne, doth most plainly declare: for by these verses he sheweth, that the *Concani*, a nation of *Cantabria*, were begotten of the *Massagete*, that is, Scythians.

*Et qua Massagetem monstrans feritate parentem,
Cornipedis fusa satiaris Concani venâ.*

And ye your Parents Massagets in fiercenesse that doe show,
Hight *Concani*, drinke horses blood, as it from veine doth flow.

And after some few verses betwene, hee proveth, that the * *Sarmotæ*, whom all men confesse to have bene Scythians, built the Citie *Sufana* in Spaine, whiles hee singeth in this note:

Sarmaticos attollens Sufana muros:

Sufana, with high Sarmatian wals.

Of these Sarmatians or Scythians, the *Luceni*, whom *Orosius* placeth in Ireland, seem to be descended (considering that the Spaniards themselves put *Sufana* among the * *Lucensians* of Spaine) like as of those *Concani*, the *Gangani* of Ireland. For the *Lucensij* and *Concani* in *Cantabria*, were neighbour nations, even as the *Luceni* and *Gangani* in that coast of Ireland opposite to Spaine. Now if any man demand of me,

* Lib. 6.
* Lib. 4.

* *Caribes*,
Benzo. lib. 2.

Tom. 1. pag. 37.

Whence the
Scots came
into Ireland.

Scythians in
Spaine.

* Those of
Biscay, and
there about.
Concani.

Lib. 3.

* *Russians*,
and *Tartari-
ans*.

* *Capani*.

Luceni.

* Those about
Luca.

Germans in
Spaine.

*De consolatione
ad Albinum
lib. 4. cap. 12.*

me, what those Scythians were which came into Spaine. Verily I know not, unless a man would thinke them to have beene Germans: And I could wish that the Scots themselves would enter into a more serious and deepe consideration of this point. But, that the Germans long agoe entered into Spaine; beside Plinie, who calleth the Oretani in Spaine, Germans, Seneca which was a Spaniard borne will enforme us. *The mountaine Pyreneus (saith he) stopped not the passage of the Germans; the levities of men made shift to enter through places scant passable, and unknowne.* And that the Germans were called Scythians, we gather not onely out of Ephorus and Strabo, who termed all the nations in the North, Scythians, but also out of Plinie. *The name of Scythians (quoth he) extendeth it selfe farre and wide every way, even to the Samaritanus and Germans.* Aventinus also witnesseth, that Germans were by the Hungarians called *Scythe and Scythula*. And to derive descent from a Scythian stock, cannot be thought any waies dishonourable, seeing that the Scythians, as they are most ancient, so they have been the Conquerours of most Nations, themselves alwaies invincible, and never subject to the Empire of others. Neither must we forget in this place that the Cauca and Menapij, ranged among the most famous Nations of Germanie, are by *Prolemee* placed in Ireland under the same names, and in the very same vicinitie one to the other: so that by all likelihood, they derived from the same Germans, both their name, and also their descent.

If the Scots have not their originall from these, I would they pondred with themselves, whether they were not of those Barbarians, who (as it is recorded in King Alphonfus his Chronicles) were by Constantine the Great, driven out of Gallycia in Spaine: for out of those parts they will needs have it, that they came into Ireland. If they demand, who those Barbarians were: I doubt not but they will bee of the same minde with me, that they were Germans. For during the raigne of Gallienus the Emperour, the Germans dwelling in the farthest parts (saith *Orosius*) of Germanie, spoiled and held Spaine in subjection: and who should those remote Germans bee, unless they were meere Scythians? but *Aurelius Victor*, whom *Andrew Schot* hath published, called those Germans * *Frankes*. But seeing those Frankes and Germans, inhabiting the farthest parts of Germanie, putting to sea from thence, sailed in their heate and furie farre into the Ocean, and as *Nazarius* saith unto Constantine, greatly annoied, and did much harme by these our seas, even to the Spanish coasts also, who will believe that they preferred the dry and barren soile of Biscay, before Ireland, an Isle most fruitful, and fitly scited to endamage Spaine? Nay rather, as in the time of Charles the Great, and afterwards, the Norwegians out of Scandia, did often attempt and invade Ireland, yea, and seated themselves there: so wee may with good probabilitie conjecture, that the Frankes did the same before; and that they passed from hence into Spaine; and after they were driven out thence by Constantine the Great, retired backe againe into Ireland. Credible likewise it is, that more of them afterwards flocked thither, what time as the Vandales and Gothes depopulated Spaine, and as barbarous nations, warred among themselves, and made havocke of all; as also, when any storme of Sarazens lay sore upon the Spaniards, and drave a great number of them into Gallycia and Biscay. But I leave these overtures unto others for to prie further into: let it be sufficient for me, that I have beene but willing onely to remove this cloud out of the way.

But I beseech the learned Scots in this place to consider here, how it cometh to passe, that the Irish being the ancient forefathers and Progenitors of the Scots, yea, and the Scots themselves, beare them highly of this, that they be called *Gael* and *Gaithel*, and their Language *Gaithelac*, as also why they named that part of Britaine, which they first possessed, *Argathel*? Whence can they say, that these names sprang? From the Gallaci in Spaine, from whom very many, no doubt, flitted over into Ireland, and whose beginning is fetched from the Gallatae or Galles; or from the Goths, as some later Writers are of opinion, who would have this word *Gaithel* to proceed from the Gothes, as likely as Catholonia did in Spaine: Here should they have drawn arguments from the affinity, between the Gothicke Language, and the Irish: which notwithstanding,

Vallazus.

* Or Frankes.

Orosius lib. 7.

nor withstanding, so farre as ever I could finde, hath no resemblance at all of any other tongues in all Europe, save onely of the * *Welch* and *Dutch*. How truly *Henry Huntingdon* writeth; *The Scots came in the fourth age of the world out of Spaine into Ireland: and part of them who still remained there, use as yet the same Language, and are called Navarrians*: how truly (I say) he hath delivered this, let others speake. And here I omit *David Chabres* the Scottish-man, who hath beene enformed by certainee Jesuites, that the Scottish tongue is used in East India. I am afraid lest that countrey so farre remote as it is, made the credulous man bold, not to make a lie, but to tell a lie.

But if arguments in this case may bee taken from the habite and apparell of the people, surely the array and clothing of the wild Scots at this day, is all one with that of the Gothes in times past; as wee may by and by perceive out of *Sidonius Apollinaris*, who in describing a Goth, portraierh & depainteth unto us a wild Scot, as right as may be. *They are (saith he) of a flaming deepe yellow; died with saffron; they buckle upon their feete a paire of Broges made of raw and untanned leather up to their ankles; their knees, thighs, and calves of their legs are all bare; their garments high in the necke, straight made, and of sundry colours, coming scarce downe to their hammes; the sleeves cover the upper points of their armes and no more; their souldiers coats of colour greene, edged with a red fringe; their belts hanging downe from the shoulder; the lappets of their eares hidden under the curled * glibbes and lockes of haire lying all over them.* (For so a man may very rightly call the manifold branched, and parted twists of haire, which * *Scots & Irish* weare) they use also hooked spawes, which *Gildas* termeth, *Vincinata tela*, and axes to sling from them. *They wore likewise strait bodied coats (as saith Porphyrio) fitted close to their breasts, without girdles.* If this bee not for all the world the very right apparell of the wild Irish-Scots, let themselves be Judges. I would withall, they did consider these words of *Giraldus Cambrensis*, in his first booke of *The Institution of a Prince*. *When Maximus (saith he) was passed out of Britaine into Gaule, with the whole power of men, forces, and armour, that the Island could make, and all to seize into his hands the Empire, Gratian and Valentinian brethren, and partners in the Empire, shipped over these Gothes, (a Nation hardie and valiant in feats of armes, being also either confederate with them, or subject and obliged unto them for benefits, which they had received of the Emperours) from the borders of Scythia, into the North parts of Britaine, for to annoy the Britans, and cause the said Usurper to returne backe with his forces. But they, because they were exceeding puissant, (such was the inbred valour and warlike nature of the Gothes) and withall finding the Island destitute both of men and other meanes to defend it, becoming of pirats, and rovers neighbour dwellers, planted themselves in the said Northerne parts, and held by strong hand no small Provinces thereof, which they usurped as their owne.* Now, who these Gothes were, let others shew, and peradventure out of *Procopius*, they may find some light; in whom we read, That *Belisarius*, when the Goths expostulated with him, for that he had granted Sicilie to the Romans, answereth in these words: *And wee likewise permit the Gothes to have unto themselves Britaine a farre better countrey than Sicilie, and in ancient time subject to the Roman Empire: For, meete it is, that they who first have bestowed benefits, should either reape condigne thanks againe, or receive goodturnes reciprocally. To this also may seeme to bee referred, that the Scots write, How Fergusus the Scot, accompanied Alaricke the Goth in the sacking of Rome: that Irenicus likewise reporteth, How Genfricke King of the Vandals came over unto Scotland and Britaine: as also, that which Cambrensis delivereth unto us, (but whence himselfe had it, I know not) namely, how the *Gaideli*, that is to say, the Scots, drew both their descent, and also their name from the Vandals, who were all one with the Gothes, as *Paulus Diaconus* sheweth. Neither can it be any disparagement at all to the name and nation of the Scots, to acknowledge themselves the offspring of the Gothes, seeing that the most puissant Kings of Spaine, thinke it an honour to fetch their pedigree from hence; and the noblest houses in all Italie, either draw indeed, or else falsifie their lineall descent from the Gothes. The Emperor himselfe Charles the fifth, would often times give out, and that in good earnest; that all*

* Flagella cri-

num.

* That is, the

Redshank.

* Upon Ho-

race, De arte

Poetica.

Lib. 2. de bello

Gothorum.

Lib. 6. cap. 27.

the

the Nobilitie of Europe came out of Scandia, and from the stocke of the Gothes. But these reasons are not of such credit and importance with mee, as that I dare thereupon resolve, that the Scots are sprung and issued from the Gothes.

Diodorus Si-
culus.

Now, to end all in a word, I would have the learned Scots to consider seriously, whether they were of those most ancient Britans Inhabitants of Ireland (For, certaine it is that Britans in times past inhabited Ireland) and called Scythæ or Scoti, because they suted so well with Scythians in manners: or Scythians indeed, such as came out of Scandia or Scythia, unto whom the Gallæci, Françi, or Germanes driven out of Spaine, and Gothes or Vandals came afterwards, what time as Spaine with most hot and bloody warres was all in combustion: or rather a mishmash of sundry nations which conflowed into Ireland, and thereupon gat that name among other neighbors. The language, saith Giraldus, of the Irish is called Gaidelach, *as one would say, gathered out of all tongues.* And Florilegus (whencesoever he gathered it); *From Pids and Irish, quoth he, the Scots take their beginning, as people compounded of divers nations: For that is called Scot, which from sundry things groweth into one heape.* Likewise the Almans (by the testimonie of Aflinius Quadratus) carried that name, because they came of a commixture of divers men. Neither may any man thinke it strange, that so many nations in old time flowed into Ireland, considering the scite of that Island in the very midst betwene Britan and Spaine, and lying open so conveniently upon the French sea: seeing also it appeareth most certainly upon record, in the best approved Annals, that within these eight hundred yeares last passed the Norwegians, and Oustmans, that is, Easterlings out of Germany, the Englishmen, Welchmen, and Scots out of Britaine, planted themselves surely there. These are the points, I say, which I would wish the Scottish men in this matter diligently to thinke upon. But let them remember in the meane time, that I have affirmed nothing, but onely given an inkling of certaine things, which may seeme in some sort materiall and to make for the purpose. Whence, if the originall of the Scots shall receive no light, let them seek else where: For, I my selfe in this am stark blind, and have in vaine searched and hunted after the truth, that lieth still from me; howbeit with this consideration and circumspect care, that I have not, I hope, given the least offence to any whomsoever.

When the
Scots came
into Britaine.

Touching the time when the name of Scots became first famous, there is some question; and Buchanan a right good Poet, hath herein commenced an action against Humfrie Lhuid as good an Antiquarie: Because the said Lhuid averreth, that the name of Scots can no where be picked out of Authors before the time of Constantine the Great; he falls upon the man, is ready to take him by the throat, and with two silly arguments goeth about to give them the deadly stab; the one out of the Panegyrist, the other grounded upon a bare conjecture. Because we finde in the old Panegyrist, that Britaine in Cæsars time was wont to be troubled with Irish enemies; therefore, the Scots as then were seated in Britaine: but no man before him ever said, that so much as those Irish had then any settled place, much lesse, that they were Scots. No doubt, the Panegyrist, after the usuall and received manner of writers, spake according to his owne times, and not unto Cæsars. And as for the conjecture, it is none of his owne, but the conjecture of that most learned Joseph Scaliger. For he in his notes upon Propertius, whiles he was correcting (by the way) of that verse out of Seneca his entlude;

The Britans those that seated are beyond the knowne sea-coast
And Brigants with blew painted shields, he forced with his hoast;
To yield their necks in Roman chaines are captives to be led,
And even the Ocean this new power of Roman ax to dread.

<i>Ille Britannos</i>	<i>Vlra nos</i>	<i>Littora Ponti</i>
<i>Et caruleos</i>	<i>Scuta Brigantes</i>	<i>Dare Romuleis</i>
<i>Colla Caseni</i>	<i>Iussit, &c.</i>	

readeth *Scoto-Brigantes*, and straightwaies exclaimeth, that the Scots are now beheld unto him for their originall. But to this his opinion I cannot yield assent, though it

A it be somewhat against my will, who in many things have alwaies for his learning honored and admired the man. For, this conjecture ariseth not from the divers readings in bookes, but out of his owne braine; and the sense may beare, either [*Caruleos Scuta Brigantes*] as it is in all bookes, or [*Caruleos cute Brigantes*] that is, the Brigantes with blue died skins, as that most learned Hadrian Iunius readeth it. But Buchanan, who had rather disport himselfe sweetly in his owne conceit and the witty invention of one other, than to judge aright with the usuall and approved reading of that place, giveth a marvellous applause to this conjecture. First, because authors do not record that the Britans painted their shields; Then, for that Seneca called them *Scoto-Brigantes* for difference sake, to distinguish them from the Brigantes of Spaine and Ireland: Last of all, because in these verses hee makes a distinction betwene the Britans and Brigantes, as though they were divers nations. But if one would narrowlie sift and examine these matters what letteth but that they might paint their shields as well as themselves and their chariots? Why should he for distinction sake, coine this new word, *Scoto-Brigantes*: when he calleth them blew, and saith they were subdued by Claudius, doth he not sufficiently distinguish them from the other Brigantes? But that observation of his touching Britans and Brigantes, as if they were divers nations, doth scarce favour of a Poets head, which could not be ignorant of that poetical figure, and manner of speaking, wherein a part is used for the whole, and contrariwise. Wherefore, seeing these things make nothing to his cause, I will second Buchanan by way, as it were, of a fresh supply, with the aid of Egesippus, (who is commonly reputed a verie ancient writer:) For, thus writeth he, where he treateth of the Romans power: *They make Scotland to quake, which is beholden to no land for any thing; before them, Saxony trembleth, that for Marishes is inaccessible.* But heare you me, this author shal stand behind in the rereward, for he lived after Constantines daies, as may be gathered out of his owne writings: neither can it bee proved out of him, that the Scots dwelt in Britain, no more than out of that verse of Sidonius which erewhile I alleaged. Yea mary, but there is another reason of more weight and moment indeed, which M. Iohn Crag, a right famous and learned man, found by most exquisite and curious search in Ioseph Ben-Gorion, writing of the destruction of Ierusalem, to wit, that in an Hebrew copie, the Scots are expressly named, where Munster in his Latine translation hath untruelly put downe Britans for Scots. But in what age that Ben-Gorion lived, I cannot find for certaine: sure I am, that hee was after Flavius Iosephus, because he maketh mention of the Franks, whose name long after began to be knowne.

But surely, if I may be so bold as to interpose my selfe in this question, among so great Scholars: so farre as I have beene able to observe, the first time that ever the Scottish nation became named in authors, was whiles Aurelianus was Emperour. For Pophyrie, who then wrote against the Christians, as * Saint Ierome informeth us, mentioned them in these words: *Neither Britaine, a fertile Province of tyrants, nor, the Scottish nations, together with the barbarous people round about, as farre as to the Ocean, had any knowledge of Moses and the Prophets.* At which time verily, or somewhat before, those that are well scene in Antiquities have noted, that the names of the most potent nations of French and Almans, were not heard of before the time of Gallienus the Emperour.

It is no assured truth therefore, which some write, That the name and Kingdome of the Scots flourished in Britaine many hundred yeeres before the birth of Christ. But hearken to Girald, who will tell you the just time: *When Great O-Nel (saith he) held the Monarchie of Ireland, six sonnes of Mured King of Ulster, seized upon the North, parts of Britaine. Hereupon from them was there a nation propagated, which by a peculiar name called, Scotica, that is, Scottish, inhabiteth that part even to this day.* And that this befel at the very time when the Roman Empire in every mans sight grew to decay, it is, collected thus. Whiles Lagerius the sonne of that O-Nel reigned over the Irish, Patrick (the Apostle of the Irish-men) came into Ireland, much about the yeere after Christs nativitie 430. So as it may seeme, this hapned neere the daies of Honorius

As also for
their Etymo-
logie in his
notes upon
Eusebius
Chronology:
See them.

* That is, Ire-
land.
See in Ireland
and before.
Lib. 3. cap. 25.

* Vno Ctes-
phon against
Pelagians.

* Augustus

* Emperour.

* *Augustus*. For then, whereas before time, ranging up and downe without any certaine place of abode (as Amimianus doth report) they had long annoyed Britaine and the places appointed for the Marches, they seeme to have set their footing in Britaine. But they themselves will have it thus, that they did but returne then out of Ireland, whither they had retired before, what time they were put to flight by the Britans, and driven away: and so they understood that place out of Gildas, of this very time; *The Irish spoilers returne home, minding shortly to come backe againe*. And much about this time, some think that Reuda, (whom Bede mentioneth) either by force and armes, or through favour planted himselfe in this Island, upon an arme of the river *Cluid* Northward. And of this Captaine *Reuda* (saith he) the *Dalreudini*, even to this day take their name. For, in their tongue, *Dal*, signifieth a part: and others think, that from this *Reuda* it was, that wee called the Irish-Scots, *Redshanks*. It is thought also, that the same Simon Brech, whom the Scots avouch to bee the founder of their nation, flourished in these daies. Sinbrech in truth was the name of the man, which is as much to say, as *Sin*, with the freckled face, as we read in Fordon. And peradventure the same *Brech* he was, who about the time of S. Patrick, together with Thuibai, Mac-lei, and Auspac, Scots, infested Britaine, as wee read in the life of Saint Carantoc.

Alban and Albin.

But why the High-land Scots living in Britaine, call that countrey which they inhabit, *Alban*, and the Irish name it *Allabany*, were a question for an ingenious and liberall wit to travell in: as namely, whether this word *Allabany*, may not have it in some token of the ancient *Albion*: or whether it came of whitenesse, which they call *Ban*, and therefore may import as much in Scottish, as *Ellan-Ban*, that is, a white Island: or whether it bee derived of Ireland, which the Irish Poets name *Banne*; so that *Allabanny*, may sound as much, as another Ireland, or a second Ireland. For, Historiographers were wont to call Ireland, *Scotland the greater*, and the Kingdome of the Scots in Britaine, *Scotland the lesse*. Moreover, seeing these Scots in their own language terme themselves *Albin*, whereupon *Blondus* called the Scots, *Albioneses*, or *Albinenses*, and Buchanan, *Albini*, let Criticks consider, whether that in Saint Ierome, where hee inveigheth against a certaine Pelagian, a Scot borne, it should not be read, *Albinum* for *Alpinum*, when hee taketh him up in these termes; *The great and corpulent Alpine dog; and who is able to doe more harme with his heeles, than his teeth: for he hath his offspring of the Scottish nation, neere neighbours to the Britans*: of whom also in another place, he said, that hee was full fattened with Scottish postage & brevesse. Of Alpine dogs, I never remember that I have read ought; but that Scottish dogs were in much request at Rome in those daies, Symmachus sheweth unto us, *Seven Scottish Dogs there were* (saith he) *the day going before the Games, which in Rome they wondred at so, as they thought they were brought thither in iron-grated Cages*.

But after that the Scots were come into Britaine, and had joyned themselves unto the Picts, albeit they never ceased to vex the Britans with skirmishes and in-roads, yet grew they not presently up to any great state, but kept a long time in that corner, where they first arrived, not daring (as Bede writeth) for the space of one hundred and seven and twentie yeares to come forth into the field, against the Princes of Northumberland; untill at one and the same time, they had made such a slaughter of the Picts, that few or none of them were left alive: and withall the Kingdome of Northumberland, what with civill dissensions and invasions of the Danes, sore shaken and weakned, fell at once to the ground. For then, all the Northerne tract of Britaine, became subject to them, and tooke their name, together with that hitherto more countrey on this side *Cluid*, and *Edenburgh Frith*. For, that it also was a parcell of the Kingdome of Northumberland, and possessed by the English-Saxons, no man gain-saith: and hereof it is, that all they which inhabit the East part of Scotland, and be called *Lowland men*, as one would say, of the *Lower-countrey*, are the very offspring of the English-Saxons, and doe speake English. But they that dwell in the West coast, named *Highland men*, as it were, of the upper countrey, be mere Scots, and speake Irish, as I have said before: and none are so deadly enemies, as they be un-

Lib. x cap. ult.

Bede.

A unto the *Lowland men*, which use the English tongue as we doe.

Amimianus Marcellinus writeth; that together with the Scots, *Attacotti*, a warlike people, did much mischief unto Britaine; and those Humfrey Lhuid, guesseth, (how truly I know not) to have beene also of the Scottish nation. Saint Ierome telleth us plainly, that they were a British people. For he writeth, *that when he was a very youth*, (while Iulian as it seemeth was Emperour) *he saw in Gaule the Attacots, a British nation, feed of mans flesh, who when they found in the Forrests heards of swine, flocks of neat and other castell, were wont to cut off the buttocks of their heard-men, and keepers, the dugs also and paps of the women, and account the same the onely dainties in the world*. For, so according to the true Manuscript copies we are to read in this place, *Attacotti* and not *Scoti* with Erasmus] who acknowledgeth this text to be corrupted: Although I must needs confesse, that in one Manuscript wee read *Attigotti*, in another *Catacotti*, and in a third *Cattiti*. Neither can this passage bee any waies understood as the vulgar sort take it, of the Scots: considering that Saint Ierome treating there of the sundry orders and manners of divers nations, beginneth the next sentence following in this wise: *The nation of the Scots hath no proper wives of their owne, &c*. In another place also, where Saint Ierome maketh mention of the *Attacotti*, Erasmus putteth downe for them, *Azoti*. These *Attacotti*, as appeareth by the booke called *Nottitia*, served under the Romans in their warres, in the very decaying and declining state of their Empire. For, reckoned there are among the Palatine aids within Gaul, *Attacotti Iuniores Gallicani*, and *Attacotti Honoriani Seniores*: also, within Italie, *Attacotti Honoriani Iuniores*. By this addition *Honoriani*, they seeme to be of the number of those Barbarians, whom *Honorius* the Emperour entertained, and to no small damage of the Empire enrolled as souldiers to serve in his warres.

Among these nations also, which made rodes and invasions into Britain, Iohn Caius, a man much exercised with cares and endevours of the best kind, and one who hath passing well deserved of our Common-wealth of learning, reckoneth the * *Ambrones*, for that he red in Gildas, where he writeth of Picts and Scots, thus: *Those former enemies, like Ambrones, Wolves, even enraged for extreame hunger, with dry javes leaping over the sheep-fold whiles the shepherd is out of the way, being carried with the wings of ores, and armes of powers, set forward also with sailes helped with gales of winde, brake thorow the bounds, killing and slaying all where they came*. This good meaning old man thought of that which hee had read in Pectus, namely, that the Ambrones, together with the Cimbri, flocked by numbers into Italie: and being busied about another matter, it was quite out of his head, that [*Ambro*] as Isidorus noteth, doth signifie, a *Devourer*. Neither doth Gildas use that word in any other sence, nor Geoffrey of Monmouth, who called the Saxons also, *Ambrones*: nor any other Ambrones than these, could my selfe hitherto ever find in ancient Writers, to have invaded Britaine.

* Ambrones.

ENGLISH-SAXONS.



When as now the Romane Empire under Valentinian the younger did more than decline, and Britaine being exhaust through for many levies of all able men, and abandoned of the Romane garisons, could no longer withstand the force of Scots and Picts; *Portigern*, whom the Britans had made their Sovereigne and chiefe Governour, or who (as others thinke) had usurped the Monarchie, to the end that he might establish his imperially rule, and recover the State falling to ruine: (much awed hee was, saith Ninnius, by the Picts and Scots, he stood in feare of the Romanes forces, and was afraid of Aurelius Ambrosius) sent for the Saxons out of Germanie to aide him: who forthwith under the conduct of Hengist and Horsa, with their Cinles (for so they called their Flat-boats or Pinnaces) arrive in Britaine, and after they had in one or two battels gotten the victorie against the Picts and Scots, became

Anglo-Saxons.

Who also is called Guertigern.

verie much renowned: and seeing the Britans still relying upon their manhood and courage, they send for greater forces out of Germany, which should keepe watch and ward upon the borders, and annoy the enemies by land and sea. *Gwotigern* (saith Nin-nius) by the advice of *Hengist*, sent for *Oetha* and *Ebissa* to come and aid him: who being imbarqu'd in 40. *Cyules* or *Pinnaces*, and sailing about the *Picts* coasts wasted the Isles called * *Orcades*, yea and got many Isles and Countreys beyond the * *Frith*, as farre as to the confines of the *Picts*. But at length, after they had begun to fall in love with the Lands, the civill fashions, and riches of Britaine, presuming upon the weaknes of the Inhabitants, and making the default of pay, and want of victuals their quarrell, they entred into league with the *Picts*, and raised a most bloodie and mortall warre against the Britans, who had given them entertainment: they kill and slay them in every place being put in affright and amazednesse, their fields they harrie, their cities they raze, and after many doubtfull events of battell, fought against those two bulwarks of warre, *Aurelius Ambrosius*, who here tooke upon him to weare the purple roabe, wherein his parents were killed, and that warlike *Arture*, they disleize the Britans of the more fruitfull part of the Isle, and drive them out of their ancient possessions. At which time, to speake all in a word, the most miserable Inhabitants suffered whatsoever either conquerour might dare, or the conquered feare. For, supplies of aide flocked together daily out of Ger-manie, which still should renew warre upon warre against the wearied Britans: to wit, Saxons, Iutes, (for so must we read, and not *Vites*) and Angles, who by these proper names were knowne one from another, although generally, they were called English, and Saxons. But let us treat of these in severall, and summarily, that it be possible we may have a sight of our originall, and first cradles.

Howbeit, first will I adde hereto that which *Witichindus*, being himselfe both a Saxon borne, and also a writer of good antiquities, hath related, as touching the comming in of the Saxons. Britaine (saith hee) being by *Vespasian* the Emperour long since reduced among Provinces, and under the vassalage of the Romanes, standing them in stead, and serving to good use a long time, became assailed by their neighbour-nations: for that it seemed destitute, and abandoned of the Romanes helpe. For, the people of Rome, after that the Emperour * *Martial* was by his souldiers killed, being sore tired out with forraigne warres, was not able to assist their friends with supply of accustomed aides. Yet nevertheless, the Romanes having built a mightie peece of worke for the defence of the Countrey, reaching betwene the confines from sea to sea, where it was thought that the enemies would assaile the Inhabitants, left the Land. But no difficultie it was for the enemye fiercely bent, and alwaies ready to wage warre (especially where they deale with a nation, feeble and unable to make warlike resistance) to destroy the said worke. Therefore hearing by report of the worthy and fortunate exploits, achieved by the Saxons, they send an humble Embassage, to require their helping hand: and so the Embassadors having audience given them, came forth and spake, as followeth. Most noble Saxons, The poore and distressed * *Brets* out-toiled, and over-tired by the many incursions of their enemies, hearing the fame of those victories which yee have valorously achieved, have sent us suppliants unto you, craving that yee would not denie us your helpe and succour. A large and spacious Land, plentifull and abundant in all things, they yeeld whollie to be at your devotion and command. Hitherto have we lived liberally under the patronage and protection of the Romanes: after the Romanes, we know none of more prowesse than your selves: and therefore wee seeke for refuge under the wings of your valour. So that we may by your puissant vertue and armes, be found onely superiour to our enemies, what service soever ye impose upon us, willing we are to abide the same. To this petition the *Peeres* and *Nobles* of the Saxons briefly made answer in this wise. Know yee, that the Saxons will be fast friends unto the *Brets*, and preest at all times, both to assist them in their necessitie, and also to procure their wealth and commoditie. With joy returne these Embassadors home, and with this wished-for tidings, make their countrey-men more joyfull, Hereupon according to promise, an armie sent into Britaine, and joyfully received, in short time freeeth the Land from the spoiling enemies, and recovered the countrey unto the behoofe of the Inhabitants. For, the performance hereof required no great labour: the enemies who had long since heard of the Saxons, were terrified

* Orkney
Isles.
* *Mare Eref-cum*.

Aurelius Am-brosius.
Gildas cal-leth him, *Am-brosius Aure-lianus*.

* *Haply*, Mar-tian.

* *Brets*, for
Britans.

A terrified with the verie fame that was bruited of them: so that their very presence drove them farre off. For these were the nations that troubled the *Brets*, namely, *Scots* and * *Pehits*: against whom, the Saxons while they maintaine warres, received of the *Brets* all things necessary. They abode therefore in that country a good while, making use in civill sort of the *Brets* friendship reciprocally. But so soone as the Chieftaines of the armie saw the countrey to be large and fertile, and withall the hands of the Inhabitants flow, to practise feats of armes: and considered therewith, that themselves, and the greatest part of the Saxons, had no certaine place to seat themselves in, they send over to call unto them a greater power and more forces. Thus having concluded peace with the *Scots* and *Pehits*, they rise all together in common against the *Brets*, drive them out of the countrey, and divide the Land at their pleasure, as if it were their owne. Thus much *Witichindus*.

The originall and Etymologic of the Saxons, like as of other nations, not onely Monkes ignorant, as they were, in learned antiquitie, but also latter Writers, being men of some exact and exquisite judgment, have enwrapped with forged and fained fables. Some derive them and their name from *Saxo*, the sonne of *Negnon*, and brother of *Vandalus*: others from their stonie nature: some from the remaines of the *Ma-cedonian* armie; others of certaine knives, whereupon was made that rhyme in *Engel-hufius*:

*Quippe brevis gladius apud illos Saxa vocatur,
Vnde tibi nomen, Saxo traxisse putatur.*

For, *Sax*, with them, and *Short sword*, is the same,
From whence it's thought, the Saxon tooke his name:

But *Crantzius* deriveth them from the *Catti* in Germanie: and that learned *Cap-nio* from the *Phrygians*. Of these, let every man follow which he liketh best: For, such conjectural opinions as these, I will not labour to disprove. Howbeit, that conceit of the best learned Germans may seeme worthy of acceptance, and to be preferred before the rest, who suppose that the Saxons descended from the *Sacæ*, a most noble Nation, and of much worth in Asia, and so called, as one would say, *Sacæones*, that is, the sonnes of the *Sacæ*: and that out of *Scythia*, or *Sarmatia* * *Asiatica*, they came in companies by little and little, together with the *Getæ*, *Suevi*, *Daci*, and others into Eu-rope. Neither is this opinion of theirs improbable, which fetcheth the Saxons out of Asia, wherein mankind was first created and multiplied: for, besides that *Strabo* writeth, how those *Sacæ* (as before time the *Cimerij*) made invasions into countreys which lay farre off, and termed a part of *Armenia* after their owne name *Sacacena*: *Ptolomee* also placeth the *Saffones*, *Suevians*, *Maffages* and *Daci* in that part of *Scy-thia*: and *Cisner* observeth, that these Nations retained the same vicinitie or neigh-borhood in a manner in Europe, which was among them in former times when they were in Asia.

Neither is it lesse probable, that our Saxons descended from these *Sacæ* or *Saffones* in Asia, (call them whether you will) than the Germanes from those Germanes in *Perfia*, of whom *Herodotus* maketh mention: which they themselves after a sort doe affirme, by reason of the affinitie of their Language: for, that singular Scholer *Ioseph Scaliger* sheweth, that these words, *Fader*, *Moder*, *Tuchter*, *Band*, and such like, are at this day found in the Persian tongue, in the same sence as we use, *Father*, *Mother*, *Brother*, *Daughter*, and *Bond*. But when the Saxons began first to bee of any name in the world, they had their abode in *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, which wee now call *Denmarke*, wherein *Ptolomee* placeth them, who was the first author (as far as I find) that mention them. For, we should not indeed read, *Saxones*, (as it is in some bookes) but more truly, *Axones*, in that verse of *Lucan*:

Longisq; leves Axones in armis:

And *Axons* in side armour light and nimble.

Out of this *Cimbrica Chersonesus* in the time of *Dioclesian*, they (with the *Frankes* their neighbours) troubled our coasts and the seas with *Piracie*, in so much as for the defence of the countrey, and to repell them, the Romanes made *Carausius* their Generall. Afterwards they having passed over the river * *Albis*, part of them by little

* *Picti*.

Saxons, from
the *Sacæ* in
Asia.

Tartarie.

Lib. 11.
Mela lib.
Cisnerius.

Michael Ne-
ander.

Axones, peo-
ple of *Gaule*.

* *Riba*.
Zolimus.

and in their tongue, to the same sence, *Engla theod.*

About the time when they were admitted into Britaine by Vortigern, writers doe not agree: but to omit others, Bede and those that follow him, make this computation of those most confused times.

In the one and thirtieth yeere of Theodosius the younger, and of Christ 430. *The Britans pitiouſly crave aid, but in vaine, of * Aetius the third time Consul, for that they were sore oppressed by the Picts and Scots.*

Under Valentinian the third, Saint German once or twice came into Britaine against the Pelagians, and after he had powred out his praier unto God, led an armie [of Britans] against the Picts and Saxons, and gained the victorie.

In the first yeere of Martianus, and the yeere of our Lord 449, the nation of the English-Saxons arrive in Britaine.

But seeing it appeareth for certaine by the * Kalender of the Consuls, that the third Consulship of Aetius fell out to be in the 39. yeere of the said Theodosius, and after the birth of Christ 446. as also by the best and most approved authors, that Saint German died in the yeere of Grace 435: justly wee may suspect, that those numbers in Bede were corrupted, and that the Saxons had footing given them here, before the yeere of our Lord 449. For other wise, how could it be, that S. German, who departed this life *An. Do. 435*, should conduct the Britans against the Saxons, when as they were not yet come? Ninnius also writeth, *that Saint German returned out of Britaine into his owne country after the death of Vortigern*, who received the Saxons into Britaine: so that of necessitie their comming in was before the yeere of our Lord 435, which was the yeere wherein Saint German ended his life. In like manner, in the second yeere after that Leo Magnus was created Bishop of Rome, which was in the yeere of Christ 443, Prosper Tyro who then lived, writeth, *that Britaine after sundry overthrowes, was brought in subjection to the Saxons*, so that they doubtlesse must needs come in before that time, namely, the yeere of Christ 449. But to take away all scruples, and cleere all doubts in this point, this one note of computation adjoynd unto some copies of Ninnius, which is unto me in stead of all, may suffice.

*From the Consulship of the two Gemini, * Rufus and Rubellius, unto Stilico the Consul, are reckoned 373. yeeres.*

Item, from Stilico unto Valentinian the son of Placidia, and to the raigne of Vortigern, be 28. yeeres.

*From the raigne of Vortigern unto the * discord of Guitolin and Ambrose, are 12. yeeres. Which battell is Guoloppum, that is, Cathguoloph.*

Now Vortigern held the Kingdome of Britaine when Theodosius and Valentinian were Consuls: and in the fourth yeere of his raign, the Saxons came into Britaine, and were entertained by Vortigern, when Felix and Taurus were Consuls.

*From the yeere wherein the Saxons came into Britaine, and were received by Vortigern, unto * Decius Valerianus, are 69. yeeres.*

By casting therefore the account thus, the comming in of the English-Saxons into Britaine, was in the 21. yeere of Theodosius the younger: and this commeth nearest to the computation of Bede, in the yeere of our salvation 428. For then Felix and Taurus bare their Consulship: and so all circumstances of persons and times doe well cohere. This moreover I thinke good to tell you of, although I will not take upon me to be a Criticke, that in most copies of Gildas, whence Bede had that note of Erius, we read *Agitio 111. Consuli*, in others without adjection of number, *Agitio*: and in one, *Aequitio Cos.* But to this day never could I see in the Register and Kalender of Consuls, any Consul of that name: unlesse we might thinke that he was some Consul extraordinarie.

Well, what time soever it was that they came in, they made good prooffe of their singular valour and wisdom with all. For in a short space, their State, for number, for good customes and ordinances, for lands and territories grew to that height, that it became most wealthy and puissant, yea, and their conquest in some sort full and absolute. For all the conquered, except some few, whom in the Western tract the roughnesse

Anglo-Saxons, when they came into Britaine.

* or Aetius.

* or Register. Fasti Consulatus.

Baronius.

* Read Eufus.

* or battell.

* Elsewhere Decius Paulinus.

The Saxons conquest.

A roughnesse of the countrey defended and kept safe, became one nation, used the same lawes, tooke their name, and spake one and the selfe same language, with the conquerours. For, besides England it selfe, a great part of Scotland, being possessed by the English Saxons (and still to this day, the wilde and naturall Scots indeed, terme them Saffones) useth the same tongue that we do, varying a little in the Dialect onely. Which tongue we and they together for the space now of 1150. yeeres, have kept after a sort uncorrupt, and with the possession also of the Land. So that now it is proved vaine and false, (as other propheties of that kind) which the Saxon Prophets foretold, when as they spred their failles for this Iland, That they should inhabit here 300.

B yeeres and no more, and for one hundred and fiftie of them, often times waste and spoile the countrey. Now, the matter it selfe, and the place seeme to require, that somewhat should bee added as touching the ancient manners and demeanour of our Forefathers the Saxons: and surely, annex I will what I have observed in this behalfe.

This nation of the Saxons, was generally most warlike and martiall, *For courage of minde, strength of bodie, enduring of labour and travell, reputed of all the Germans, most valiant, as faith Zosimus. Most feared of the Romanes, because their invasions were sudden, as Marcellinus reporteth: Terrible for hardinesse and agilitie, as faith Orosius. Saxony is a region (by reason of Marishes) inaccessible, and environed with comber- some countreys, and unpassable. Which things although they may make them more secure for*

C war, and although it selfe also was led captive oftentimes to set out the Roman triumphs, yet have they the name to bee a most valorous kind of men; excelling all other in piracie: howbeit, trusting in their swift pinnaces and flibotes (not in fine force) provided rather for flight, than fight, as Egiptus recordeth of them. In imitation of whom, Isidorus writeth thus: *The Nation of the Saxons seated upon the coasts of the Ocean sea, and among unpassable Marishes, is for valour and nimblenesse meet for service: and thereupon they tooke their name, as being a kinde of people stout, hardy, and most valiant, yea and redoubted above all other for piracie. Men they are for their tall stature, the good feature of their limbs, and framing of their lineaments, conspicuous and notable. Whereupon Witichindus the Monke, writeth thus of them; The Franks had these men in admiration for*

D their excellencie as well in bodie as mind: they wondred at them for their new and strange habite, for their armour also, and shoulders overspread with the haire of their head; but above all for their constant resolution, and valiant courage. Clad they were in souldiers cassocks, and weaponed with long speares) they trusted upon their little bucklers, and wore great knives or steins at their backs. Howbeit, beforetime they used to shave their haire off, hard by the head to the very skinn, unlesse it were round about the crowne, and to wear a plate about their head, as Sidonius Apollinaris teacheth us in these verses:

*Istic Saxonacarnum videmus
Adusuetum ante salo, solum timere;
Cujus verticis extimas per oras
Non contenta suos tenere morsus,
Alsat lamina marginem comarum.
Et sic crinibus adentem recessis,
Decrescit caput, additurque vultus.*

The Saxons there in watcher clad, we see
On land a fraid, who east at sea were bold;
Whose bush of haire about the crowne that be
Plares not content to keepe their wonted hold
Rasse up in tufts, when all the rest is pold:
The Scalpe beneath thus shaven to the skin,
Their face seemes full, their heads but small and thin.

As far their apparell, you may understand what it was out of these words of Paulus Diaconus, as touching the Longobards, *Their garments were large, and loose, and most of all linnen, such as the English Saxons are wont to wear, trimmed and set out with verie broad gards or welts purfled and embroydered with sundry colours. Most skilfull sea men.*

Gildas.

The Saxons Manners.

Lib. 9. cap. 2. Originum.

The Saxons
shores or
coasts.

Comites lit-
toris Saxonici.

* Sperabat,
for timebat.

* Baiocw.

Saxones Bai-
ocassini.
Lib. 9. Epist. ad
Nemantium.

* Ciulj.

* By han-
ging them in-
different-
ly one with an-
other.

Lib. 2. Epist. 45.

men they were, as who a long time lived as Pirats, so that being accustomed to the sea they were afraid, as he saith, of the land: and wrought so much mischief upon the sea-coasts of Britaine and France, as farre as to Spaine, that there were both Captaines and souldiers appointed all along the shores of both Countries to restrain their roving and depredations, who thereupon were called *Counts or Earles of the Saxon shore along Britaine and France*. And heereto tend these verses of *Sidonius Apollinaris*:

*Quin & Aremorici piratam Saxonat tractus,
Sperabat* cui pelle salum fulcare Britannum
Ludus, & assuto glaucum mare findere lembo.*

The tract also that lies the Sea so neare,
Hight Armoricke, did Saxon pirate* feare:
Whose sport it is with leather-fitched boat,
Of British Sea to cut the waves afloat.

Yea and that which more is, within Gaule neere unto Armorica, they seized into their hands and held a long time the Country about the * Baiocasses, as is to be seen in *Gregorius Turonensis*, who termed them *Saxones Baiocassinos*, like as the common sort, *Sesnes Bessins*.

But with how great cruelty they committed outrages along these shores, heare if it please you, *Sidonius* himselfe. *The Messenger*, (saith he) *with whom we spent some time in talke, whiles for your sake we held him with us, constantly affirmed, that you of late sounded alarm at Sea, and performing the part in your owne person sometime of a souldier & sometimes of a mariner, bestirred your selfe up and downe the winding shores of the Ocean, so as from the* flat bottom barks of the Saxons: Of whom as many rowers as you see, so many Archpirats you may thinke you beheld: They all of them together, so command, obey, teach, and learne to rob and steale; that even now also you have greatest cause to be warmed, and to be most heedfull and wary of them. There is no enimie so cruell as this. He setteth upon others at unwares, himselfe slips away as warily: He setteth at nought such as encounter him, he bringeth to nought those that take no heed to him: whom he courteth, he surely overtaketh, when he flieth he is sure to escape. To this service, shipwracks inure him, they terrifie him not. Not onely skilfull they are in the dangers of sea, but also familiarly acquainted in some sort therewith. Be there a tempest up: the same of one side serveth to secure them were they in jeopardy to be taken; on the other side if they be to assaile others, it keepeth them from being despoiled and scene farre off. In the mids of waves and craggy rocks, they hazard their lives in hope of good successe. Besides this, before they take shipping into their owne Country and weigh their slowked anchors from the enemies shore, upon the point of returne, their manner is to kill every tenth captive with equall and* dolorous torment (a custome the more lamentable, because it is superstitious) and among the number of such as are gathered together to die, for to disperse the equity of lot, together with the iniquitie of death.*

*With such vowes they bind themselves, with such sacrifices they pay their vowes, and not so much purified by such sacrifices, as polluted with sacrilegies, the bloudie and abominable murderers thinke it a religious thing, rather to torment a prisoner to death, than to set him free for a ransom. Hitherto also may be referred that, which we collect of the fragment of an ancient Historie in *Isidorus*. The Saxons trust to their fly-boats and not to their strength, better appointed for flight than for fight. As also this testimonie of *Salvianus*, who then lived, writing thus of Barbarous nations. The *Alani* are a people vicious and uncleane, but not so perfidious. The *Franks* be given to lying, howbeit full of hospitalitie and kind to strangers. The *Saxons* in cruelty outrageous, yet for chastitie to be honoured. But so firme and resolute they were, (if I may be allowed to give it so good a terme) that they would chuse rather to kill themselves, and cast away their lives wilfully, than be mocked and laughed to skorne. And hereupon it was, that when *Symmachus* had provided a band of them against the publicke shewes which were to be exhibited, the very day on which they should have bene brought forth into the Theatre, for sword play to kill one another, they by strangling themselves prevented all hope of shewing bloudy sport and pastime unto the people. Of whom *Symmachus* himselfe writeth thus: The band or company of Saxons is lessened by death. For, when as the private guard*

restrained

A *restrained not the liberty of the impious hands of those desperate people; the first day of the sword-fight, shew saw nine and twenty of their necks broken without any halter.*

Moreover, this nation of the Saxons was very much addicted to superstition, & for that cause when they were to consult of weighty and important matters, beside Sooth-saying by inspection of beasts entrails, they observed especially the neighing of horses, as prefaging things to come. And thence perhaps it is, that the Dukes of Saxonic in ancient time gave the horse in their Armes. But why our first Progenitors *Hengist* and *Horsa*, tooke their names of an horse, (for both their names in the Saxon tongue do signifie, an horse,) surely I know not, unless it were for a lucky offe and fore-token of their warlike prowess, according to that verse of *Virgil*.

Bello armantur equi, Bella hæc armenta minantur:

For warre our horses armed are,
These beasts also doe threaten warre.

They used also casting and drawing of lots very much; for, they did cut downe a branch from some tree that bare fruit, and lived or cleft the same into slips and twigs, and when they had distinguished them with certain marks, they scattered them at hazard upon a white garment. Straight waies, if the consultation were publike, the Priest; if private, the goodman of the house, after prayers first unto the Gods, looking up to heaven, tooke each of them up three times, and having lifted them up, they interpreted them according to the marke set before upon them.

To trie out the event and issue of warres, they were wont to set a prisoner of that nation against which they denounced warre, and a man chosen out of their owne countymen, to fight together a combat, each of them with the weapon used in their countrie; and so to guesse by him that was victour, which nation should goe away with victorie. Above all other Gods they worshipped *Mercurie*, whom they called *Wooden*, whose favour they procured by sacrificing unto him men alive; and to him they consecrated the fourth day of the weeke, whereupon wee call it at this day, *Wednesday*: like as the sixth unto *Venus*, whom they named *Frea* or *Frico*, whence wee name that day *Friday*: even as we do *Tuesday* of *Tuisco*, the stocke-father of the German or Dutch nation. They had a Goddess also named *Eoster*, unto whom they sacrificed in the month of *April*: and hence it cometh, saith* *Beda*, that they called *April*, *Eoster*, *monath*, and we still name the feast of the *Resurrection*, *Easter*; but rather as I thinke of the rising of *Christ*, which our progenitors called *East*, as we do now that part whence the Sunne riseth. In generall (as saith *Tacitus*) the English and other neighbour nations worshipped *Hertbus*, that is, *Dame Earth*, for a Goddess, and they had an opinion, that she intermedied in humane affaires, and relieved the people. And even with us in these daies, that word *Earth* is in use, but growne out of use with Germans; who in stead of *Earth*, say, *Arden*. Of these superstitions that foresaid *Ethelward* writeth thus; respectively unto the time wherein he lived: So grievously seduced are the unbelievers of the North, that unto this very day, the *Danes*, *Normanes* and *Suevians*, worship *Woodan* as their Lord: and in another place; The *Barbarous* people honoured *Woodan* as their God, and the *Painims* offered sacrifice unto him, that they might be victorious and valorous.

But more fully *Adam Bremenensis* setteth these things downe. In a temple, saith he, (called in their vulgar and native speech *Yfolsa*) which is made altogether of gold, the people worship the statues of three Gods: in such manner as that, *Thor*, the mightiest of them hath anely a throne, or bed: on either hand of him *Woodan* and *Frico* hold their places. And thus much they signifie. *Thor*, say they, beareth rule in the aire, as who governeth thunder and lightning, winds, shewres, faire weather, corne and fruits of the earth. The second, which is *Woodan*, that is, stronger, maketh wars and ministreth manly valour against enemies. The third is *Frico*, bestowing largely upon mortall men, peace and pleasure, whose image they devise and portray with a great* viril member. *Woodan* they engrave armed, like as with us they use to cut and expresse *Mars*. And they seeme to represent *Thor*, with the scepter of *Jupiter*. But these errors, the truth of Christian religion hath at length chased quite away. After that these nations above said, had now gotten sure footing in the possession of Britain, they divided it into seven kingdomes, and established

An horse the
badge or
cognifiance of
the Saxons.

These ceri-
monies *Adam Bremen-*
sis ascribeth
to the Saxons
which *Tacitus* attri-
bute to the
Suevians.

The Saxons
Gods.

wednesday.
Friday.
Tuesday.

* De temporibus.
Eoster a
goddess.

Hertbus, a
goddess.

Earth.

Thursday
hath name
from this
Thor.

* Ingeni-
Priest.

A Monarchie
always in the
Englishmens
Heptarchie,
Lib. 2. cap. 5.
196.
* Augustine
the English-
mens A-
postle.
Englishmen
converted to
the faith.
Lib. 2. cap. 1.

an Heptarchie: In which notwithstanding, the prince that had the greatest power, was called, as we read in Beda, *King of the English nation*: So that in this very Heptarchie it may seeme there was alwaies a Monarchie. After this, *Augustine*, whom commonly they call the Apostle of the English men, being sent hither by Gregorie the great, having abolished these monstrous abominations of heathenish impietie, with most happy successe planting Christ in their hearts, converted them to the Christian faith. But for what cause and upon what occasion, this Gregorie was so diligent and carefull for the salvation of this English nation, Venerable Beda hath by tradition of his forefathers recounted unto us in these words: *The report goeth, that on a certaine day, when upon the comming of merchants lately arrived, great store of wares was brought together into the market place [at Rome] for to be sold, and many chapmen flocked together for to buy, Gregory also himselfe among others came thither, and saw with other things, boies set to sale, for bodies faire and white, of countenance sweet and amiable, having the haire also of their head as lovely and beautifull. Whom when he wisely beheld, he demanded, (as they say) from what countrey or land they were brought? Answer was made, that they came out of the Isle of Britaine, the people whereof were as well favoured to see unto. Then he asked againe, Whether those Islanders were Christians, or ensnared still with the errors of Paganisme? To which it was as it said, They were Paganims: but he fetching a long deepe sigh from his very heart root, Alas for pittie, quoth he, that the foule fiend and father of darknes should be Lord of so bright and lightsome faces, and that they who carryed such grace in their countenances should be void of the inward grace in their hearts & soules. Once againe he desired to understand by what name their nation was knowne. They made answer, That they were called * Angli: And well may they so be named, quoth he, for Angellike faces they have: and meete it is that such should bee fellow-beires with Angels in heaven. But what is the name of that Province from whence these were brought? Answer was returned, that the Inhabitants of the said province were cleped * Deiri: Deiri, quoth he, They are indeed Deira eruti, that is delivered from ire and wrath, and called in the mercie of Christ. How call you the King of that province, said he: Answer was given, that his name was Aelle: Then he alluding to the name, said, That Aelle-jah should be sung in those parts, to the praise of God the Creator. Comming therefore to the Bishop of the Romanee and Apostolicall See (for himselfe as yet was not made Bishop) he entreated, that some ministers of the word should be sent unto the English nation, by whose meanes it might be converted to Christ: and even himselfe was ready to under take the performance of this worke, with the helpe of God, in case it would please the Apostolicall Pope, that it should be so.*

Concerning this conversion, the same Gregorie the Great writeth thus: Behold, * he hath now entred already into the hearts of all nations, in manner, that are: Behold, in one faith he hath conjoined the limits of East and west: Behold, I say, the very British tongue, which could nought else but rudely bray Barbarous words, long since began in the Land of God to resound the Hebrew Allelu-jah. And in his Epistle to Augustine himselfe: Who is able heere to shew sufficiently, what great joy is risen up in the hearts of all the faithfull for that the nation of Englishmen by the operation of God almightie his grace, and the labour of your brotherhood, after the darknes of errors were chased and driven away, is illuminated with the light of holy faith: for that with most sincere devotion they now spurne and tread idles under their feet, who beforetime in superstitious feare lay prostrate before them: In an old fragment also written in that age, thus we read: *Augustine upon one day of Christs Nativite, which with the universall glorie of the Englishmen is for ever celebrated, did regenerate by lively Baptisme above ten thousand men, besides an innumerable multitude of women and young children. But, what a number of Priests, and other holy orders besides, could be sufficient to wash such a sort of people? Having hallowed and blessed therefore the river called in English Swale, the Archbishop (Augustine) commanded by the voice of Criers & Masters, that the people should enter the river confidently two by two, and in the name of the Trinitie baptize one another by turnes. Thus were they all borne againe with no lesse miracle, than in times past the people of Israel passed over the (red) Sea divided, and like wise Jordan when it turned backe: for even so, they were transported to the banks on the other*

The River Swale in York-shire. Beda reporteth all this of Paulinus Archbishop of York and not of Augustine.

* Christ.

* Englishmen.

* Hol-Deir-Ref.

A other side: and notwithstanding so deepe a current and chanell, so great and so divers differences of sex and age, not one person (who will ever thinke it?)ooke harme. A great miracle no doubt, but this miracle as great as it was a greater preeminence doth surmount: in that, all feeblenesse and infirmities was laid off in that river: whosever was sick and deformed returned out of it whole and reformed. O festivall spectacle for Angels and men to behold, when so many thousands of a nation suing for grace, came forth of one rivers channel, as out of one mothers wombe, and out of one poole so great a progenie sprung up for the celestiall and heavenly Citie? Hereupon the most gracious Pope Gregorie, with all the companies of Saints above, breaking forth into joy, could not conceale this, but wrote unto Saint Eulogius the Patriarch of Alexandria, that hee would most thankfully congratulate with him, for so great an host baptized upon one Christmas day.

No sooner was the name of Christ preached, but the English presently with such fervent zeale and devotion consecrated themselves unto Christ, that they tooke incredible paines in propagating Christianitie, in celebrating divine service, performing all functions and duties of pietie, building Churches and endowing them with rich livings, so that there was not another region in all Christendome that could make reckoning of more monasteries richly endowed: Yea, & divers Kings there were that preferred a religious and monasticall life before their Crowne and Kingdom. So many holy men also this land brought forth, which for their most firme profession of Christian religion, constant perseverance therein, and sincere pietie were canonized Saints, that it gave place to no other Christian province in this behalfe: And likewise Britaine was called of that prophane Porphyrie, a plenteous province of Tyrants; so England might truly be named, a most fruitfull Island of Saints.

Furthermore, they applied their minds to the bringing in againe of the better kind of arts and sciences, and sowed the seeds of Divinitie and good literature throughout all Germanie, by the means of Winifridus, Willebrodus, and others, which a German Poet sheweth in these verses:

Hactamen Arctois laus est aeterna Britannis,
Quod post Pannonicis vastatum incursum orbem,
Illa bonas artes & Graiae munera lingua,
Stellarumq; vias, & magni sidera caeli,
Observans, iterum turbatis insulis oris.
Quin se religio multum debere Britannis:
Servata, & late circum dispersa fatetur:
Quis nomen Winfride tuum, quis munera nescis?
Te duce, Germanis pietas se vera, fidesq;
Insinuans cepit ritus abolere profanos.
Quid non Alcuino facunda Lutetia debes?
Instaurare bonas ibi qui feliciter artes,
Barbariemq; procul, solus depellere cepit.
Quid? tibi divinumq; Bedam, doctissimus olim
Dum varias unus bene qui cognoverat artes,
Debemus.

Yet this immortall praise is due to Britain, Northern Isle,
That when the world was overrun and wasted all the while
By Pannonik invasions, it did reduce in ure
Those troubled countries, with good arts: also with knowledge pure
Of Greeke tongue: and observing still the stars in spacious skie,
And planets with their wandering waies, taught them Astronomie.
For true religion eke preserv'd, and sowne in many a land,
The world much bound to Britaine is; and to her helpfull hand.
Thy name and gifts, O Winifride, who knowes not: since by thee
The way was made in Germanie; where faith and pietie
First setting foote beganne to chase all rites profane away:
What ow I not to Alcuine now? may eloquent Paris say,

M

Who

The Religion of the Englishmen.

The learning of Englishmen.

Who happily went there in hand alone to plant a new,
Good arts and thence all barbarisme to banish far from view.
And unto thee for worthy Bede we are beholden much,
The only man for sundry arts, his learned skill was such.

Britaine
twice Schoole-
mistrie of
France.

The flitting
backe againe
of Anglo-
Saxons into
Germanie.

Peter Ramus saith moreover, that Britaine was twice Schoole-mistrie to France, meaning, by the Druidæ and Alcuinus, whose industrie Charles the Great used especially in erecting the Universitie of Paris.

They brought also into Germanie military knowledge of Armes, as well as learning and religion: yea, and, which you will marvell at, if wee may beleeve these words of Eginhardus, they gave unto those Saxons their first Originall, who now inhabite the Dukedome of Saxonic. The nation of the Saxons, saith he, as Antiquities do record, being departed from the English inhabiting Britaine, sailing through the Ocean, partly upon a desire they had, and partly driven of necessity to seek where they might seat themselves, arrived upon the coasts of Germanie, and landed at a place called *Haduloba*: what time as Theodericus King of the Franks warring upon *Hirminfridus* Duke of the Thuringers his Daughters husband, cruelly with fire and sword wasted their land. Now when as they had in two pight fields already, tried the doubtfull fortune of barraile, with lamentable slaughter of their people and uncertaine victorie, *Theoderich* disappointed of his hope to be Master of the field, dispatched Embassadors unto the Saxons, whose Duke was *Hadugao*: who having heard the cause of their coming, and taken their promise, that upon obtaining victorie they should cohabite together, led forth an armie with them to aide *Theodericus*. By means of which forces valiantly fighting now with him, as it were, for their libertie and native country, hee overcame his enemies: and when hee spoiled the naturall Inhabitants, killed them up, and in manner left not one alive, their land according to his promise hee set out and appointed for the Conquerours to possesse, who dividing the same by casting lots, seeing many of them were slaine in the wars, and that by reason of their fewnesse the whole country could not be occupied and peopled by them, part of it, that especially which lieth Eastward, they made over to coloners and new Inhabitants, to every one according as by lot it fell out, to be holden and tilled for a certaine rent and tribute: All the rest they themselves possessed. On the Southside verily, these Saxons have the Franks, and a remnant of the Thuringers, whom the precedent whirlwind of hostilitie had not touched, and are divided from them by the channell of the river *Uastrote*: Northward dwell the Normans, a most fierce Nation: East, from them the Obotrites inhabite: and Westward, the Frisians: from whom continually without intermission they defended their territories and marches thereof, either by Covenants of league or necessary skirmishing. But now returne wee to our English-Saxons.

For a long time the State and Empire of the Saxons flourished exceeding well under the foresaid Heptarchie, untill those Kingdomes bruised and impaired one of another with civill warres, came all in the end to bee subject unto the West-Saxons. For, Egbert King of these West-Saxons, having conquered already foure of these Kingdomes, and swallowed up (as it were) in hope the other twaine also, to the end that they which were subdued, and reduced to the rule of one Prince might bee conjoynd likewise in one name, commanded by an Edict and Proclamation, that the Heptarchie which the Saxons held, should bee called *Englelond*, that is, England: whereupon in Latine it was named *Anglia*, taking denomination of the Angles, as beeing of those three nations most in number, and of greatest prowess. For they kept in their possession the Kingdome of Northumberland, and Mercia, very great and large countries, together with East-England: whereas the off-spring of the Jutes held Kent only, and the Isle of Wight: The Saxons East-sex, South-sex, & West-sex, a small parcell verily if it be compared with those spacious territories & lands of the English, of whom, long before this they were generally throughout called *English*; & in their owne language *Englatheod*, *Anglænne Engl-cynn*, and *Englisc-mon*: albeit every Kingdome therein, had a speciall name of the owne by it selfe. And this appeareth for certaine,

England.

About the
year, 800.

Theod. that is,
a Nation.

A certaine, as well out of other writers, as Beda, who intituled his Story, *The Historie of the English-Nation*. Yea, and in that Heptarchie, those Princes that over-ruled the rest, were stiled *Gentis Anglorum Reges*, that is, Kings of the English nation: At this time, the name of Britaine, lay forgotten and growne quite out of use among the Inhabitants of this Island: remaining only in books, and not taken up in common speech. And hereupon it is, that Boniface the bishop of Mentz, descended frō hence, called this our country, *Saxony beyond the Sea*. Howbeit, K. *Eadred*, about the yeare of our Lord, 948, used in some Charters and Patents the name and title of *King of Great Britaine*: like as *Edgar* in the yeare, 970. bare this stile also, *The Monarch of all whole Albion*.

Epist. to Zacharie the Pope.

B Being now called Anglia or England, the state and puissance of these Angles was come to the full height, and therefore, (such is the revolution of all mortall things) hastened apace to their period and end. For, the Danes continually infesting our coasts many yeares together, at the length began to enter, ransacking and mangling this countrie most pittifully.

NAMES OF ENGLISH-SAXONS.

C MY purpose was, even here to have set downe the orderly succession of the English-Saxon Kings, both in the Heptarchie, and also in their Monarchie: but seeing that they seeme not properly to belong unto this place, neither is the bare heaping up of names onely delightfull to the Reader, perhaps it will be more acceptable, if I briefly annexe hereto what I have observed by much reading, and especially in *Alfricus* our ancient Grammarian, as touching the force, reason, and signification of the ancient English names. Not that my meaning is to interpret every name severally, (for, that were a piece of worke very laborious) neither can such barbarous names, in which there lieth couched great significance, succinct brevity, and some ambiguity, be easily delivered in another tongue. But considering that most of them bee compounded, and that of few simples: I will explaine the said simples, that the significations of the compound, implying all the esse and preface of good lucke, wished-for, and happie fortune, may evidently appeare, and that we may thoroughly perceive, there is among all nations that Orthotes of names, which Plato speaketh of.

Porphyrus de Theolog. Phil.

D AEL, EAL, and AL, in names compounded, like as αλ in Greeke compositions, signifieth, *Al*, or *Wholly*. Hereupon *Aelwin*, is as much, as *Wholly*, or *Fully Victorious*. *Albert*, *All*, bright and dread, *wholly* dread or reverend. *Alfred*, Altogether *Pacificall*, or *peacefull*. Whereunto in some sort are correspondent, in Greeke, *Pammachius*, *Pancratius*, *Pamphilus*, &c.

E AELF, which with varietie of Dialect, is pronounced, *Vlf*, *Wolpe*, *Hulpe*, *Hilp*, *vlf*, *Helfe*, and in these daies *Helpe*, carrieth in it a signification of *Helpe* or *Aide*: as for example, *Aelfwin*, that is, a victorious aide: *Aelfwold*, a helpfull Governour. *Aelfgiva*, she that giveth helpe: according to which are these Greeke names, *Boetius*, *Symmachus*, *Epicurus*.

ARD, betokeneth naturall disposition or towardnesse: as *Godard*, is as much, as *Divine* towardlinesse or inclination, *Reinard*, Sincere disposition, *Giffard*, a franke and liberal nature: *Bernard*, a filliall and sonne-like affection.

ATHEL, *Adel*, and *Ethel* import *Noble*. Thus *Aethelred*, that is, *Noble* in counsell, *Aethelard*, a noble nature or disposition: *Aethelbert*, famously *Noble*: *Ethelward*, a noble Tutor or Protector.

Aethel, and Ethel.

F BERT, the same that with us at this day, *Bright*, and in Latin, *Illustris*, and *clarus*, *Berti*, that is, *Splendent*, and *clear*: so, *Ecbert*, that is, *Bright* and *shining* for ever: *Sigbert*, a splendent conquerour: as also, thee whom the Germans named, *Bertha*, the Greeke called *Eudoxia*, as *Luitprandus* witnesseth. And of this sort were *Phædrus*, *Epiphanius*, *Photius*, *Lampridius*, among the Greekes; *Fulgentius* and *Illustris*, &c. among the Latins.

- Bald.** BALD, with the people of the North parts, is the same that *Audax* in Latine, that is, *Bold*, as *Jornandes* sheweth: a word, that yet is not growne out of use. So *Baldwin*, and by inversion *Winbald*, is the same, that, *Bold Victour*: *Ethelbald*, Nobly bold: *Eadbald*, Happily bold. Unto which are consonant, *Thrafcas*, *Thraffimachus*, and *Thraffibulus*, in Greeke, &c.
- Kin, and Kin.** KIN, and KIN, import, *Kinsfolke*, as *Kinulph*, an helpe to *Kinsfolke*: *Kinbelm*, a Defender of his kin: *Kinburg*, a defence to kinred: *Kinric*, powerfull in or to kinfolke.
- Cuth.** CUTH, beareth with it a signification of skill and cunning: so, *Cuthwin*, that is, a skilfull or politicke Conquerour: *Cuthred*, a learned counsellor: *Cuthbert*, Notable for his skill: neere unto these found the Greeke names, *Sophocles*, *Sophianus*, &c.
- Ead.** EAD in the compounds, and *Eadig*, in simple words, sheweth as much as *Happinesse*, and *Blessednesse*. Thus *Eadward*, is all one with, *Happie Saviour*, or *preserver*: *Eadulph*, Blessed helpe: *Eadgar*, happie power: *Eadwin*, Fortunate Conquerour: Of which there is some resemblance, in the Greeke names, *Macarius* and *Eupolemus*: in the Latine also, *Faustus*, *Fortunatus*, *Felicianus*, &c.
- Fred.** FRED, foundeth all one with peace, for, so our ancestors called *Sanctuaries*, *Fredstole*, that is, the seats of peace. Thus *Frederic*, is as much as *Powerable*, or wealthy in peace: *Winfred*, Victorious peace: *Reinfred*, Sincere peace.
- Gif.** GISLE, among the English Saxons betokeneth a pledge or hostage, as *Eredgifle*, a hostage of peace. *Gislebert*, a notable or famous pledge: like as in Greeke, *Homerus*.
- Hild.** HOLD, in the old Glossaries, like as *Wold* also, is interpreted, Governour, or chiefe Lieutenant: although in other places, it signifieth, *Love*: as *Holdlic*, *Lovely*, or *Amiable*.
- Helm.** HELM, is as much as *Defence*. Thus, *Eadhelm*, *Happie defence*: *Sighelm*, *Victorious defence*: *Berthelm*, *Notable*, or *famous defence*: even as these Greeke names, *Amymtas*, *Boetius*, &c.
- Hare, and Here.** HARE, and *Heré*, as they are diversly pronounced, betokened both an *Armie*, and also a *Lord*: so, *Harhold*, that is, the *Ruler of an Armie*: *Hareman*, A *Principall* or *Chiefe man in an Armie*: *Herebert*, *Excellent in an armie*: *Herwin*, a *Victorious armie*, or *Conquerour of an Host*: not unlike to those Greeke names, *Stratocles*, *Polemarchus*, *Hegestratus*, &c.
- Hild.** HILD, in *Alfricks Grammar* is expounded, *Lord*, and *Lady*: thus *Hildebert*, betokeneth a famous or brave *Lord*: *Mahild*, a *Virgin Ladie*: and in the same sense is *Wiga* found.
- Leod.** LEOD, that is to say, *People*: thus, *Leodgar*, is one mightie with the people.
- Leof.** LEOF, signifieth, *Love*: thus, *Leofwin*, He that winneth love: *Leoffan*, *Most deare* or *best beloved*: like as in Greeke, *Agapetus*, *Erasmus*, *Erastus*, *Philo*; and in Latine, *Amatus*, and *Amandus*.
- Mund.** MYND, betokeneth, *Peace*: whereof our Lawyers terme *Mundbreach* commeth, that is to say, *Breach of peace*: so, *Eadmund*, is *Happie peace*: *Aethelmund*, *Noble peace*: *Aelmund*, *Wholly peaceable*, or *Make-peace*: whereunto are well neere equivalent these names, *Irenaus*, and *Hesychius* in Greeke: *Lenis*, *Pacatus*, *Sedatus*, *Tranquillus*, in Latine.
- Rad, Red, and Rod.** RAN, RAR, and ROD, differing in Dialect, imply, *Counsell*: as *Conrad*, *Powerfull*, or *skilfull* in counsell. *Etheldred*, a noble Counsellor. *Rodbert*, notable for counsell: and in sense not unlike to *Eubulus*, *Thraffibulus*, in Greeke.
- Ric.** RIC, signifieth, *Potent*, *Rich*, and *Valiant*, as *Fortunatus* in these verses hath taught us:

Hilperice potens, si interpres barbarus adsit,

Adjutor, fortis, hoc quoq; nomen habet:

O Hilpericke so mightie thou, (stood here th' expounder by

Of bar'brous words) an helper strong, eke doth this name imply.

Like as *Alfric*, *Al* or wholly powerfull: *Aethelric*, Nobly valiant, or mighty. Unto which names

- A** names these in Greeke allude, *Polycrates*, *Crato*, and *Plutarchus*, *Opimius* also in Latine. *Sig*, usually among them, was put for *Victorie*, whereupon, *Sigbert*, *Renowned Sig*, or glorious for victorie; *Sigward*, a victorious Protectour: *Sigard*, Victorious to-wardnesse. And to the same sense in manner, *Nicocles*, *Nicomachus*, and *Nicander* with the Greekes: *Victor*, *Victorinus*, *Vincetius*, &c. among the Latines.
- B** *Stan*, was among those old Forefathers of ours, a termination of the Superlative degree, as, *Aethelstan*, that is, *Most noble*: *Betstan*, *best*: *Leofftan*, *most lief* or *deare*: *Wistan*, *most wise*: *Dunstan*, *most high*.
- C** *Wi*, the same that *Holy*, as *Wimund*, *holy* or *sacred peace*: *Wibert*, *Famous*, or *renowned* for holinesse: *Alwi*, *All holy*: like as in Greeke, *Hierocles*, *Hieronymus*, *Hosius*, &c.
- D** *Willi*, and *Vili*, among English Saxons, as *Billi* at this day, among the Germans carried a signification of *Many*: as *Willhelm*, a defender to many: *Wildred*, *Honoured*, or *reverend* of many: *Wilfred*, *Peace* to very many. To which in sense and signification accord, *Polymachus*, *Polycrates*, *Polyphilus*, &c.
- E** *Wold*, and *Wald*, betokened with them a *Ruler* or *Governour*: Hence commeth *Wold*, *Bellewold*, an excellent Governour: *Ethelwold*, a noble Ruler: *Herwald*, and by inversion, *Waldher*, the Governour or Ruler of an Armie.
- F** But lay a straw here, for in a trifling matter, others as well as my selfe, may thinke these notes sufficient, if not superfluous.
- But, of greater moment peradventure it will be, if I here commit to writing (if so be these papers be marked to long life) what we have seene: namely, that as *Egbert* commanded this hither part of Britaine, and which was his owne possession, to be named *England*: so now after 800. yeares, or there about, come and gone, even whiles we are perusing this worke, King *JAMES* invested in the Monarchie of the whole Isle, by the propitious favour and grace of God, in the right of his owne inheritance, and with the generall applause of all good men; to the end that this said Isle, which is one entire thing in it selfe, encircled within one compasse of the Ocean; in his owne person, under one Imperiall Crowne, and Diademe, in one communie of Language, Religion, Lawes, and Judicall processes; to the increase of perpetuall felicitie, and oblivion of old enmitie, should beare also one name: hath in the second yeare of his raigne by an Edict published and proclaimed through his Realmes, assumed the name, title, and stile of *KING OF GREAT BRITAINE*, in all matters generally, save only in Writs, and formalities of Law Instruments.

The name of Britaine brought into use againe.

THE DANES.

- E** What was the beginning of the Danes, the Danes themselves verily know not for certaine. For, the veritie it selfe hath hissed out of the Schoole of Antiquitie, not onely that Giant *Danus* the sonne of *Humblus*, but also *Goropius* (who deriveth it from a Henne.) *Andrew Velleius* a Dane and a very great scholler, fetcheth their originall from the *Dahs*, a people of *Scythia*, and from *Marc*, a word which should signifie not a limit but a Region: Our country man *Ethelward* was fully perswaded, that the name arose from the Cite of *Donia*. For mine owne part, I alwaies thought, that they sprung from the *Danciones*, (whom *Ptolomee* placeth in *Scandia*, and who by change of one letter, in some copies be named *Danciones*) and from thence voided themselves into the desert and forsaken fear of the English, to wit, into *Cimbrica Chersonesus*: untill that *Jonas Jacobus Venusinus*, a most learned man, right judicious, and passing well scene in the studie of Antiquitie, found out by diligent search and inquirie, the very expresse tracts, as it were, and marks of the Danes name, within *Sinus Codanus* or *Codanonia*, that is, the *Baltish sea*, or *Oost sea*; where *Pomponius Mela* made mention in this very tract. Which names pronounced somewhat grossly by the Northerne people, *Cadan* and *Cdanonum*, *Mela* forged and fashioned upon the Latine anvill, into *Coda-*

num and *Codanonia*: like as the posteritie after him, *Gdanum* have coined out with a more gentle sound *Dansk*; of *Clodonam*, *Lodovic*, of *Cnutus*, *Cannus*. And yet before the daies of Justinian the Emperour, about the yeare of our redemption 570. the world tooke no knowledge of their name. For then, begun they to rove upon the coasts of France and England, and were by the writers, that penned in Latine the histories of England, named *Wincingi*, for that they practised Piracie: for *Wicinga*, in the Saxon tongue, as *Alfricus* witnesseth, doth signifie a *Pirat* that runneth from creek to creeke: also *Pagani*, that is, *Painims*, because as yet they were not become Christians: but the Angles themselves in their language, termed them *Deniscan*, and of ten times *Heathon-man*, as one would say, *Ethnicks*. Of these Danes listen to * *Dudo* of Saint Quintins, an author of good antiquitie, out of the Librarie of John Stow (that most studious Antiquarie of the Citie of London) which was never shur from me. *The Danes swarmed from out of Scanzia*, that is, Scandia, like bees out of an hive, in manifold diversitie and barbarous manner, after they had in heat, lascivious lust, and wantonnesse engendred an innumerable of spring. Who after they were growne to ripenesse of yeares falling to hot contention for goods and lands with their fathers, and grand-fathers, yea and often times among themselves; when they once overflowed and grew so populous that they could have no roome sufficient for to inhabite in the place, wherein they presently dwelt: having gathered together by lot a multitude of youth and springals, after a most ancient custome, were thrust out into forraigne Realmes, to conquer unto themselves lands by dint of sword, wherein they might live.

But in the full performance of discharging those that should be thus sent out, and in mustering up their armies, they sacrificed unto *Tarx*, whom they worshipped in old time as their Lord; for whom they killed not any sheepe, oxen or other cattell, but offered mens blood: Thinking that to be the most precious * holocaust and sacrifice of all others, because when the Priest by casting lots had predestinated who should die, they were all at once deadly smitten upon the head with oxen yokes: and when every one that was chosen by lot had his braines dashed out, at one severall stroke, laid along hee was on the ground, and fought out there was with narrow prying the fibre, that is to say, the veine of the heart on the left side, and having after their manner drawne out the blood thereof and stricken it upon the heads of their friends, speedily they hoise up sailes, and thinking that they please their God with such an act, they immediatly put to Sea, and fall to their ores. Moreover, there is another manner, or rather a most foule and detestable superstition, which the Danes used in pacifying their Gods, and this doth *Ditmarus* the Bishop, who was of greater antiquitie somewhat than *Dudo*, in these words describe. But because I have heard strange, and wonderfull things of the ancient Sacrifices that the Danes and Normans used, I will not over passe the same. There is in these parts a place, and the chiefe it is of this kindome, called *Lederum*, in a province named *Selon*: where every ninth yeare in the moneth of Januarie, after the time in which we celebrate the * Nativitie of our Lord, they all assemble together, and there they kill and sacrifice unto their Gods ninetie and nine men, and as many horses, with dogs and cocks for the hawks, which the Gods sent them, certainly perswading themselves, as I said before, that by the same they should please them.

About the time of Egbert, in the yeare of Christ, 800. they first landed on our sea-coasts: afterwards with such tumults and hurliburlics as never the like was heard of, having for many yeares made foule havock over all England, razing cities, firing Churches, and wasting countries, they let out the raines loofe to all barbarous cruelty, driving, harrying, spoyling, and turning all upside downe where ever they went. Thus after they had killed the Kings of the Mercians & East-Angles, leazed up their Kingdomes, with a great part of the Kingdome of Northumberland. Then was there a tribute called, *Dangels*, imposed upon the poore people, for the repressing of their robberies and outrages: and that you may know what manner of imposition this was, I would have you to reade these few lines copied out of our ancient Lawes: *The payment of Dangels was at the first ordained for Pirats. For by sore annoying the country, they went on, and did what they could to waste it utterly. And verily to keepe downe their insolencie, it was enacted, that Dangels should yearly be paid, that is, twelve pence out of every*

Wincinga.

* Dod.

The Religion of the Danes. Hereupon peradventure we have our Thursday so called. * Burnt offering.

Lib. 1.

* Theopbania.

The waste and spoile that the Danes made.

Dangels.

every hide of land throughout the whole country: for to hire and wage those that might resist and withstand their invasion. Also, of this *Dangelt* was every Church freed and quit: as also, all lands that were in the proper * *Demises* of those Churches, wheresoever they lay, paying nothing at all in such a contribution as this, because they trusted more in the prayers of the Church, than in their defence by force of armes.

But when as now they assaile and set upon * *Aelfred* King of the West-Saxons, he one while by retiring and giving them ground, otherwhiles by preassing hard upon them with his victorious forces, not only did put them back from his owne country; but also having slaine a Danish-petty-king of the Mercians, expelled them in manner, quite out of all Mercia: and his sonne *Edward* the elder following in traine of his fathers victories, when he had put the Danes to flight, brought East-England to his subjection: like as *Adelstane* his base sonne, speedily marching to achieve victories, with great slaughter of the Danes subdued Northumberland, and so terribly pursued the Danes, that they were forced either to depart the realme, or to submit themselves unto him. By the valorous prowess of these Princes, England recovered out of the whirlepit of calamities, and rested from that bloody warre by the space of 50. yeares. But while *Etheldred* a man of a dull and soft spirit reigned, the Danes taking advantage of his cowardise, strooke up alarme and founded the battaile againe: and having wasted the country, constrained the Englishmen to redeeme their peace yearly with a great sum of monie: and so insolently they bare themselves, that the Englishmen conspired generally together, and in one night murdered all the Danes every mothers sonne of them throughout all England, thinking by the effusion of blood to quench the fire of Danish warre, which brake out neverthelesse into a more pernicious flame. For, *Sueno* King of the Danes, provoked with this slaughter of his people, invaded England with a puissant armie, and having in a furious and enraged mood made much spoile, he put *Etheldred* to flight, subdued the whole Kingdome, and left the same unto his sonne *Canutus*: who having encountered in many cruell and sharpe battailes, and those with variable fortune fought, with *Etheldred* now returned, and his sonne *Edmund* surnamed *Iron-side*, had two of his sonnes succeeded after him, to wit, *Harald* a bastard, and * *Canutus* the *Hardie*: After they were dead, and the Danish yoke shaken off, the Kingdome fell againe unto the English. For, *Edward*, who in regard of his holinesse was surnamed, *The Confessor*, the sonne of *Etheldred* by his second wife, recovered the Crowne and royall Dignitie. Now began England to take breath againe: but soone after, as faith the Poet,

—Mores rebus cessere secundis,
Prosperitie perverted manners.

The Priests were idle, drowfie, and unlearned, the people given to riot and loose life: they grew also through rest to be lither, discipline lay, as it were, dead, the commonwealth sick, as one would say, of an infinite sort of vices, lay in consumption and pined away: but pride above all, whose waiting maid is destruction, was come to a mightie head. And as *Gervasius* * *Dorobornensis*, of that time speaketh *They fell so fast to commit wickednesse, that to be ignorant of any sinfull crimes, was held to be a crime. All which most evidently foreshewed destruction. The Englishmen of those times, as William of Malmesburie writeth, went lightly appoynted with their garments, reaching but to the mid knee, their heads shorne, their beards shaven, but the upper lip uncut, where the mustaches grew continually, wearing massie bracelets of gold about their armes, carrying marks upon their skin: pounced in, of sundry colours: The Clergie contenting themselves, with triviall literature, could scarcely back and bew out the words of the Sacrament.*

* Otherwife called, Alured.

1012.

Cut in his coines.

The Danes afflicted England 200. yeares, and reigne about 20. * *Hardy-Knouts*. *Edward* the Confessor.

* Of Canter-bury.

THE

THE NORMANS.

Like as in ancient times out of that East coast of Germanie (in respect of us) which tendeth Northward, the Franks first, and then the Saxons, grievously annoied both France, Gaule, and Britaine, with their depredations, so that in the end, the one became Lords of Britaine, the other of France: even so in these later daies ensuing, the Danes first, and afterward the Normans succeeding in their place, from out of the same coast did the like. As if it were fatally given unto that tract, by the dispose and providence of Almighty God, to conceive still, and often times to send out of her wombe, nations to afflict France, and Britaine, yea, and to establish new Kingdomes therein.

These Normans were so called of the Northerne quarter or climate from whence they came: for, Normans be nothing else but *Men of the North*: in which sense also they are named *Nordleudi*, that is, a Northerne people (for, a mixt nation they were of the most valiant Norwegians, Suedens, and Danes.) In the time of Charles the Great, they practised roving and piracie, in such cruell manner about *Frisia, Belgia, England, Ireland, and France*, that when the said Charles the Great saw their roving ships in the Mediterranean sea, he shed teares abundantly, and with a grievous deepe sigh said: *Heavie I am at the heart that in my life time they durst once come upon this coast: and I foresee what mischief they will worke hereafter to my posteritie*: Yea, and in the publique Processions, and Litanies of Churches, this afterwards was added to the rest: *From the race of Normans, Good Lord deliver us*. They drave the French to that extremitie, that King Charles the * *Bald*, was forced to give unto *Hasting* a Norman Arch-pirate, the Earldome of Charters for to assuage the mans furie: King Charles the * *Grosle*, granted unto Godfrey the Norman a part of * *Neustria*, with his daughter also in marriage. But afterwards, by force, and armes they seated themselves neere unto the mouth of the river *Scin*, in a country which before time was corruptly called *Neustria*, because it had bene a parcell of *Westrasia*: For, so the writers of the middle time named that which the Germans used to call *Westen-riich*, that is, the West-kingdome: and doth comprise all that lieth betweene the rivers of *Loyre*, and *Seine*: Which tooke the name of *Normandie* afterwards of them, as it were the region of *Northerne* men, when King Charles the simple had confirmed it unto their Prince * *Rollo*, whose Godfather he was at his Baptisme, to bee held in Fee by homage, and withall bestowed upon him his daughter in marriage.

At which time, as we read in an old Manuscript belonging to the Monasterie of *Angiers*, *Charles*, surnamed * *Stultus*, gave *Normandie* to *Rollo*, and his daughter *Gisla* with it: This *Rollo* daigned not to kisse the foote of *Charles*, and when his friends about him admonished him to kisse the Kings foote as his homager, for the receipt of so great a benefit, he answered in the English tongue, *He te by God, which they interpret thus, NO BY GOD: The King then and his Courtiers deriding him, and corruptly repeating his speech, called him Bigod, whereupon the Normans be at this day called Bigodi*. Hence also peradventure it is, that the Frenchmen even still use to call hypocrites, and superstitious folke, *Bigod*.

This *Rollo*, who being baptised received therewith the name of *Robert*, some writers report to have become a Christian but in shew and colour onely; others upon good deliberation and in earnest: and they adde moreover, that hee was warned so to doe by God in a dreame: which I pray you give me leave, (being a man for all this, that doateth not upon dreames) to relate without suspicion of vanitie, from the credit of writers in those daies. The report goeth, that as he failed, he dreamed he saw himselfe foully infected with the leprosie, but when hee was washed once in a most cleare spring at the foot of an high hill, hee recovered, and was cleansed thereof, and anon climbed up to the top of the said hill. This Dreame when he reported, a Christian that was a captive in the same ship with him, interpreted it in this wise: *The Leprosie*

Nordmanni.
Nord leudi.
Helenodus.

The booke
of Sangall
concerning
the AEs of
Charles the
Great.
* *Calvus*.

* *Crasius*.
* *Normandy*.

Neustria.

* *Rou*.

* The Foole.

Bigod.

A *Leprosie* was the impious worship of Idol gods, wherewith he was tainted; that the spring, betokned the holy * *Laver* of Regeneration, wherewith being once cleansed, he should ascend * *Baptisme* up the hill, that is, attaine unto high honor, and heaven is selfe.

This *Rollo* begat *William* surnamed * *Long-espee*, of the long sword which he used to weare: and *William* begat *Richard*, the first of that name. Whose sonne, and nephew by his son carrying both his name, succeeded after him in the Duchie of *Normandie*: but when *Richard* the third was dead without issue, his brother *Robert* was Duke in his stead, who of his concubine begat that *William*, whom wee commonly name *The Conquerour*, and the *Bastard*. All these were every one for their noble acts, achieved both at home and abroad, most renowned Princes. Now whiles this *William* being of ripe yeares, ruled *Normandie*, *Edward* the holy, surnamed *CONFESSOR*, King of *England*, and the last of the Saxons line, departed out of this world unto his heavenly country, to the great misse and losse of his people, who being the sonne of *Ladie Emma* cosen to *William*, and daughter to *Richard*, the first of that name, Duke of *Normandie*, whiles hee remained in *Normandie* banished, had promised unto him, that he should succeed after him in the Crowne of *England*. But *Harold* the sonne of *Godwin*, and Great Master or Steward of King *Edwards* house, usurped the Kingdome: whom to dispossesse, his brother * *Tost* of one side, and the Normans of the other, did what they could, and left no stone unturned: But when he in a pitched field had, neere unto *Stamford-bridg* in *Yorkshire*, slaine his brother *Tost* and *Harold* King of *Norway*, whom *Tost* had drawn to take part with him in this war, and so obtained a bloody victorie, behold, within nine daies after the said *William* surnamed the *Bastard*, Duke of *Normandie*, taking hold of the promises of King *Edward* late deceased, and presuming of his adoption and neere alliance, having levied a great armie, arrived in *England* among the *South-Saxons*. Against whom *Harold* forthwith advanced, albeit his souldiers were sore wearied, and his power by the former battaile much empaired. And not farre from *Hastings* they encounter and joyned battaile: where *Harold* engaging himselfe into the midst of the medley, and fighting manfully lost his life with a great number of Englishmen left slaine in the place: but how many they were just, hard it is exactly to conceive and faithfully to put downe. *William* thus a *Conquerour* presently with banner displayed marched about in order of battaile by *Wallingford* to *London*: where being received, he was solemnly inaugurated King, as unto whom, by his owne saying, *The Kingdome was by Gods providence appointed, and by vertue of a gift from his Lord and Cosen King Edward the Glorious, granted*: and after some few lines the story runneth on and saith, that the most beauteous King *Edward* had by adoption ordained him his heire in the Kingdome of *England*. And if we list to believe the Historie of *Saint Stephens* in *Caen* of *Normandie*, at his last breath he uttered these words: *The Regall Diadem which none of all my predecessours ever wore, I got and gained by the grace of God only, and no right of inheritance. And a little after: I ordaine no man heire of the Kingdome of England, but I commend the same to the eternall Creator, whose I am, and in whose hands are all things. For I became not possessed of so great honour by any hereditary right, but by a terrible conflict, and with much effusion of blood I tooke it from that perjured King Harold, and after I had either slaine or put to flight his favourers, and adherents, I subdued it under my Dominion*.

C *William* surnamed the *Bastard*, Duke of *Normandie*, taking hold of the promises of King *Edward* late deceased, and presuming of his adoption and neere alliance, having levied a great armie, arrived in *England* among the *South-Saxons*. Against whom *Harold* forthwith advanced, albeit his souldiers were sore wearied, and his power by the former battaile much empaired. And not farre from *Hastings* they encounter and joyned battaile: where *Harold* engaging himselfe into the midst of the medley, and fighting manfully lost his life with a great number of Englishmen left slaine in the place: but how many they were just, hard it is exactly to conceive and faithfully to put downe. *William* thus a *Conquerour* presently with banner displayed marched about in order of battaile by *Wallingford* to *London*: where being received, he was solemnly inaugurated King, as unto whom, by his owne saying, *The Kingdome was by Gods providence appointed, and by vertue of a gift from his Lord and Cosen King Edward the Glorious, granted*: and after some few lines the story runneth on and saith, that the most beauteous King *Edward* had by adoption ordained him his heire in the Kingdome of *England*. And if we list to believe the Historie of *Saint Stephens* in *Caen* of *Normandie*, at his last breath he uttered these words: *The Regall Diadem which none of all my predecessours ever wore, I got and gained by the grace of God only, and no right of inheritance. And a little after: I ordaine no man heire of the Kingdome of England, but I commend the same to the eternall Creator, whose I am, and in whose hands are all things. For I became not possessed of so great honour by any hereditary right, but by a terrible conflict, and with much effusion of blood I tooke it from that perjured King Harold, and after I had either slaine or put to flight his favourers, and adherents, I subdued it under my Dominion*.

D But why doe I so briefly run over this so great alteration of the English state? Have therefore, if you thinke not much to read it, what my selfe with no curious pen, (haply with as little studie and premeditation, howbeit according to the truth of the Historie) wrote, when being but young, not well advised nor of sufficiency to undergoe so great a burthen, I purposed to set forth our Historie in the Latine tongue.

VVhen *Edward* the *Confessor* was now without issue departed this life, the Nobles and people of the land were in doubtfull care distracted about the setting up of a new King in his place. *Edgar* surnamed *Aetheling*, King *Edmund* from side his nephews nephew by

Dukes of
Normandie.
* *Longa spata*.

* *Dominus regis*
* *Or Tostre*.

Normans.
1066.

The Charter
of *William*
Conquerour.

The Historie
of *Saint*
Stephens
Abbey at
Caen in
Normandie.

The *Normans*
conquest.

* Hungarie.

by a sonne onely of all the issue male of the Saxons line remained alive, unto whom by right of inheritance the kingdome was due. But considering he was thought by reason of his tender yeares, not meete to mannage the State, and had beside intermingled his naturall disposition with forraign manners, as being borne in * Pannonia, and the sonne of Agathra daughter to the Emperour Henrie the third, who was in so remote a countrie farther off, than that he could conveniently assist the young Gentleman either with aid or counsell: in these regards hee was lesse affected of the Englishmen, who desired nothing more than to have a King, (as it were) out of their owne bodie: And therefore, all of them for the most part had their eyes fixed with much respect upon Harold Goodwins sonne, a man for his good parts as well in warre as peace very glorious. For albeit he was of noble parentage but by one side: and his father for his treacherie and treason, as also for pilling and polling had incurred everlasting infamie and shame, yet with his courteous affabilitie, gentill deportment, liberalitie, and warlike promesse he wound himselfe into exceeding great speciall favour with the people. For, there could not another bee set by him, in whom there was more resolute hardinesse to adventure upon danger, or more advised policie in the midst of dangers. His valour also and fortitude shined out so apparantly in the Welsh warres, which heretofore most happily hee had brought to an end, that he was reputed verily a man passing well furnished with all vertues required in a soveraigne Commander, and even borne to repaire the decayed state of England. Moreover, good hope there was that the Danes (who onely terrified this country) would bee the better contented and pleased with him, because he was the son of Githa, daughter to Sueno King of Denmarke. And in case there should arise any other power against him, either forraigne or domesticall, he was thought sufficiently enabled to make his part good, with the affectionate hearts of the common people, with the alliance also and affinity that hee had among the Nobility. For hee had to wife, the sister of Morcar and Edwin two brethren, men of exceeding great puissance: and Edric surnamed the Wild, a man of high spirit, and in chiefe authority was linked to him in the neereft bond of Affinitie: besides it fell out very well for him, that at one and the selfe same time, Sueno King of the Danes had his hands full of warre with Sweden; and betwene William Duke of Normandy, and Philip the French King, there fell some dislikes and emulation, for that Edward the Confessor during his exile in Normandie, had in expresse termes promised unto William of Normandie the Kingdome, if hee died without issue: For the performance of which promise, Harold became as it were, surety, and bound himselfe with an oath, (what time hee was detained prisoner in Normandie) but with this condition annexed, that he might espouse the daughter of the said William of Normandie. Whereupon most men thought it the wisest policy to set the Crowne upon William his head; to the end that by performing oath, and promise, the warre that they foresaw now threatened, and destruction (which alwaies waiteth as a due punishment upon perjurie) might be averted, and withall by laying Normandie to England, the Kingdome under so mightie a Prince might be surely established, and the common-wealth very much advanced. But Harold quickly preventing all consultations whatsoever; thinking it not good for him to linger and delay any whit: that very day on which King Edward was entered, contrary to the expectation of most men, entred upon the soveraigne government, and with the applause onely of such as were then present about him, who with acclamations saluted him King, without the due complements and solemnities of Coronation, set the Imperial Diadem upon his owne head. By which act of his, as being a breach of ancient ordinance, he exceedingly provoked and stirred up against him, the whole Clergie and Ecclesiasticall state. But he knowing well enough, how hard it was for a new Prince, and an usurper, to maintaine his royall place and dignitie without an opinion of pietie and vertue, for to blot out that his offence given, and to establish his Scepter, did all he possibly could for the promoting of religion, and preferment of Churchmen, and to beautifie and adorne Monasteries and religious houses: Edgar Aetheling Earle of Oxford, and all the nobles he entertained with all love and favour: the people he eased of their tributes: he gave bountifully a great largesse of money to poore people: and in one word, with faire speech and affable language, with mild bearing of causes, and equitie in deciding the same, he wonn to himselfe singular love, and no lesse authority and reputation. So soone as William Duke of Normandie was truly advertised of these newes, he seemed to take the death of King Edward very heavily, whiles in the meane time,

time, he was vexed at the heart that England which hee had in conceit and hope already swallowed and devoured, was thus caught away out of his very chawes. Forthwith therefore, by advice of his counsell and friends, he dispatcheth Embassadors to Harold, with instructions to put him in mind of the promises and stipulation past; but withall, in his name to make claime to the Crowne. Harold, after some pause and deliberation upon the point, returneth this answer: As touching the promises of King Edward, William was to understand, that the Realme of England could not be given by promise, neither ought he to bee tied unto the said promise, seeing the kingdome was fallen unto him by election and not by right of Inheritance. And as for his owne stipulation, extorted and wrang it was from him, then a prisoner, by force and by guile, in feare of perpetuall imprisonment, to the hinderance of the English common-wealth and prejudice of the State, and therefore void: which neither ought hee, if he could, nor might if he would, make good, since it was done without the Kings privitie and consent of the people. And a very hard and unreasonable demand it was of his, that hee should renounce and surrender unto a Norman Prince, a meere stranger and of forreign linage, that kingdome wherein hee was invested with so great assent of all sorts. With this answer William was not well pleased, and he thought that Harold thereby sought starting holes for to hide his perjurie. Others therefore he sent out of hand in Embassage about the same matter, who should admonish him, how religiously hee had bound himselfe by oath, and that forsworne persons should be sure of final perdition at Gods hands, and reproachfull shame among men. But when as now the daughter of William affianced unto Harold in the covenant, (the very strength and knot of the foresaid stipulation) was by Gods appointment taken away by death, the Embassadors were with lesse courtesie entertained, and received none other answer than before. So that now by this time, there was nothing like to follow but open warre. Harold rigged and prepareth his navie, musters and presseth souldiers and placeth strong garisons along the sea coasts in convenient places, and provideth all things in readinesse which were thought needefull and meet for to bear backe the Normans forces: Howbeit, the first tempest of warre, beside the expectation of all men, arose from Tofto the brother in whole blood of Harold. He being a man of a proud, hauntie and fell heart, ruled in great authority a good while over Northumberland, but growing outrageous in cruelty to his inferiors, in pride towards his Sovereigne, and in hatred to his brethren, was outlawed by Edward the Confessor, and so withdrewd himselfe into France, and now, by the advice of Baldwin Earle of Flanders, and perswasion of William Duke of Normandie, as it seemeth probable, (For Tofto and William married two daughters of Baldwin Earle of Flanders) began to trouble his brother with open warre, whom a long time hee deadly hated. From Flanders hee tooke sea with a flect of 60. rovers-ships, wasteth the Isle of Wight, and annoyeth the sea-coast of Kent: but terrified at the coming of the Kings navie, hee set up saile and directing his course toward the more remote parts of England, landeth in Lincolneshire, and there harried the Countrey: where Edwin and Morcar give him battell: but being discomfited and put to flight, into Scotland hee goes, from thence to renew his forces and so to warre afresh. Now were all mens minds held in suspense with the expectation of a twofold warre, of the one side out of Scotland, of the other out of Normandie: and so much the more because at the feast of Easter, there was seeme about a sevennight together a blazing starre of an hideous and fearefull forme, which turned mens minds already troubled and perplexed: (as it falleth out in a turbulent time) to the foreseeing of some unluckie events. But Harold carried an heedfull eye to all parts of his kingdome, and the south coast hee fortified with garisons. Lesse feare hee had from Scotland and Tofto, because * Malcolm King of the Scots was more disquieted with civill dissensions. Meane while, William much busied in his mind about England, casting about what course to take, ever and anon communicated with his Captaine about the point; whom hee saw cheerefull, and full of forward hopes: But, altho the difficulty was how to make money, for defraying the charges of so great a warre. For, when in a publike assembly of all the states of Normandie, it was propounded as nothing of substance, answer was made, That in the former warre against the French, their wealth was so much impaired, that if a new warre should come upon them, they were hardly able to hold and defend their owne: That they were to looke rather unto the defence of their proper possessions; than to invade the territories of others: and this warre intended, just though

A Comet.

Malcolm.
Earle of
Scotland.

Filius Osborni.

though it were, yet seemed it not so necessary, but exceeding dangerous: beside, the Normans were not by their allegiance bound to military service in forain parts. Neither could they by any means be brought to grant a levie of money, although William Fitzosbern, a man in high favour with the Duke and as gracious among the people, endeavoured what he could to effect it: yea, and to drawe others by his owne example, promised to set out fortie tall ships of his owne proper charges towards this warre. Duke William then, seeing he could not bring this about in a publike meeting, goeth another way to worke. The wealthiest men that were he sendeth forth, severally one by one to repaire unto him: he speaks them faire, and requireth them to contribute somewhat toward this warre. They then, as if they had strived avie who should helpe their Prince most, promise largely: and when that which they promised was presently registred in a booke, there was a huge masse of money quickly raised, and more than men would ever have thought. These matters thus dispatched, he craveth aid and helpe of the Princes his neighbours, to wit, the Earles of * Anjou, * Poictou, * Maine and * Bulloigne, and unto them he promisseth faire Lands and possessions in England. Philip also the French King he goeth unto, and solliciteth: voluntarily promising in case he aided him, to become his vassall and leege man, and for England to take the oath of fealitie unto him. But it being thought nothing good for the state of France, that the Duke of Normandie, who already was not so pliable and obedient to the French King as he ought, should be bettered in his state by the addition of England (for, the power of neighbour potentates is alwaies suspected of Princes) so far was the King from yielding any helpe, that he dissuaded him rather from invading England. But by no means could the Duke be reclaimed from his enterpryse, nay much more encouraged he was now and set on, being once backed with warrant from Alexander the Bishop of Rome (for even now began the Pope to usurpe authority over Princes:) who allowing of his cause and quarrell, had sent unto him a sacred and hallowed banner as a luckie fore-token of gaining both the victorie, and Kingdome: yea, and with all cursed whosoever should oppose themselves against him. He assembled therefore all the forces he could possibly raise, and gathered together a mighty navie before the Towne of Saint Valeris, which standeth upon the mouth of the river Some, where he lay a long time windbound: For the procurement whereof with many a vow he importuned Saint Valeric the patron-Saint of the Towne, and heaped upon him a number of gifts and oblations. Harold, who with his forces had waited very long in vaine for his comming, determined to dissolve his armie, to withdraw his navie, and to leave the sea-coast: both for that he was compelled thereto for want of provision, as also because the Earle of Flanders had written unto him, that William would not stirre that yeere: whom he soone beleeveth as thinking that the time of the yeere was such as had locked up the seas and barred all navigation, forasmuch as the [autumnall] * Equinox was neere: While he thus deviseth with himselfe, driven he was (upon an unexpected necessity of new warre) to call backe his armie: for, Harold surnamed the * Hard and Harfager, king of Norway, who had practised piracie in the North parts of Britaine, and already subdued the Isles of Orkney, being by Tostig solicited and called forth in hope of the Kingdome of England, arrived within the mouth of the river Tine with a fleet of 500. shibotes or thereabout, where Tostig also came and joined his owne fleet. When they had a good while forraged and spoiled the countrey heere, they weighed anchor, and sailing along the coast of Yorkshyre, put into Humber, and there began to commit outrages with all manner of hostilitie. For the repressing of whom, the two Earles, Edwin and Morcar led forth a power of soldiers, whom they had raised suddainly and in tumultuary haste: but they not able to abide the violent charge of the Norwegians, fled for the most part as fast as they could, and together with the Earles made shift to escape: howbeit, many of them passing over the river Ouse, were swallowed up with the waves thereof. The Norwegians then, goe in hand to lay siege unto the Citie of Yorke, which straight waite they get by surrender, hostages being given on both sides. But after some few dayes, King Harold having gathered his whole power from all parts together, speedeth him to Yorke, and from thence marcheth against the Norwegians, who lay encamped strongly in a most safe place: for backed they were with the Ocean, flanked on the left hand with Humber, wherein their fleet rid as anchor, and had for their defence on the right side and afront, the river Derwent. Howbeit King Harold courageously setteth upon them: where first, there

* Andium.
* Pictunum.
* Cenomannorum.
* Bovenic.

* When daies and nights be of a length: about the eleventh day of September.
* Durus.

Stanford bridge neere Yorke.

A was a cruell conflict at the Bridge, standing over the river Darwent, which one Norwegian souldier, by report, made good for a time against the whole armie of the Englishmen, and held out so long untill he was shot through with a dart, and died: after this continued the battell a good while within the very campe, fought with equall valour, and indifferent fortune on both sides: But in the end, the Norwegians were disarayred and scattered, and in the midst of the battell Harold himselfe King of the Norwegians, and Tostig, with the greater part of the Armie lost their lives. Upon this Victorie, there fell unto King Harold an exceeding rich bootie, a great masse both of gold and silver, and that huge Armado, except twentie small Barques onely, which he granted unto Paul Earle of Orkney and O-lave the Sonne of Harold who was slaine, for to carry away those that were hurt, taking their oath first, that from thence forward they should not attempt any hostilitie against England. This happie victorie encouraged Harold and set him aloft: Now, he thought that he should bee a terrour, yea, to the Normans, howsoever hee grew odious unto his owne people, because hee had not divided the spoile among his souldiers. Howbeit, wholly hee employed himselfe to reforme the disordered state of the countrey, which in this part was piteously out of frame and lay neglected. Meane while, William Duke of Normandie, finding a fit season for his purpose, about the end of September weighed anchor and launched forth: then with a gentle gale of winde, he sailed with all his shipping, and arrived at Pevensey in Suffex, where being landed upon the naked shore, for to cut off all hope of return from his men, he did set fire on his ships: and having erected a fortresse there, for his men to retire thither in safetie, forward he marcheth to Hastings, where also he raised another strong hold, and placed therein a garrison. Now by this time, he maketh proclamation, declaring the causes of this warre: namely, to revenge the death of Alfred his Cousin, whom together with many Normans Godwin the Father of Harold had murdered: Item, to bee avenged of the wrongs that Harold had done, who when he had banished Robert Archbishop of Canterburie, even then by intrusion entred upon the Kingdome of England now pertaining to him, (treading under foot the religious respect of his oath.) Howbeit, by an Edict he straightly charged his souldiers not in hostile manner to spoile the English men. Newes hereof in all hast was brought to King Harold, who by all means thinking it good to use prevention, and as speedily as might be to encounter the Duke, sendeth out his messengers every way, calleth earnestly upon his subjects to continue in their faithfull allegiance, assembleth all his forces in every place, and with great journeyes hasteneth to London: where there presented himselfe unto him an Embassadour from Duke William; but as he made many words in claiming the Kingdom, Harold in a furious fit of anger and indignation, went within a litle of laying violent hands upon the very person of the Embassadour. For a hard matter it was to bereave a fresh Victorie of his pride and confident hope. Forthwith he dispatched his Embassadours also unto William, by way of insolent termes to menace him, unlesse with all speed he retired backe into Normandie. Yet William gave him a gentle answer, and dismissed them with great courtesie.

E Meane time, Harold mustreth up souldiers in London, and findeth that by the former battell against the Norwegians, his forces were very much diminished: yet a mightie armie hee levied of Nobles, Gentlemen, and others, whom the love of their native countrey had raised and brought into the field, for to put backe & repell the common danger. Presently he leadeh forth into Southsex, not withstanding his mother (though in vaine) did what she could to stay him: and with an undaunted heart, encamping upon a faine plaine, scarce seven miles from Duke William, sat him downe. And thither also immediately the Norman approached with his Armie. First there were secretly sent out on both sides Espies: and they of the English part, either not knowing the truth, or disposed to lie, made incredible report of the Normans number, their furniture and provision, of their good order also and discipline, inasmuch as Gyth, a younger brother of King Harold, a man renowned for martiall exploits, thinking it no good policy to hazard all in the trial of one battell, advertised the King, that the events of war were doubtful, that victories oftener depend of fortune than of valour, & that holding off, and deliberate delay, was the chiefe point of militarie discipline: Also, he advised him, that in case he had made promise unto William of the Kingdom, he should for his owne person withdraw himself: for, surely he could not with all his forces be fenced against his conscience, and God no doubt, would require punishment for breach of faith & promise: neither, faith he, wil any thing strike greater

greater terror into the Normans, than if he should be levying and enrolling of a new Armie, whereby they might be received eftsoones with fresh battels. Furthermore, he assured him in his owne behalfe, that if he would commit the fortune of that battell into his hands, hee would not faile to performe the part of a good brother, and a valiant Capitaine: as who truiting upon the clearenesse of his heart, and a good conscience, might either more easily defeat his enemies, or else more happily spend his life for his country. The King was not well content to heare these admonitions and counsels which seemed to send unto his dishonour: for, as he could willingly abide the event and issue of warre, so in no wise could he endure the reproach of fearefull cowardise. And therefore, the praises of the Normans with bad words he depraved, neither thought he that it would stand with his owne dignitie, or the reputation of his former prowesse, being now come as it were to the utmost point of perill and hazard, like a milke-sop and dastard, to draw foot backe, and incurre the perpetuall staine and blot of shame. Thus, whom it pleased Almighty God to overthrow, hee first maketh them incapable of good counsell. Whiles these matters thus passed between them, Duke William upon a pious affection to preserve & maintaine the state of Christendome, and to spare the effusion of Christian blood, sendeth a Monke as a mediator between both, who proposed this offer & condition unto Harold, Either wholly to resigne up his Kingdom, or to acknowledge from thence forth, that he holdeth it of the Norman Duke as his superiour Lord, or else to decide the quarrell with William by combat, or at leastwise to stand to the judgment of the Pope of Rome, touching the Kingdom of England. But he as one having no rule of himselfe, and accepting of no condition whatsoever, referred the whole triall of the matter to the tribunall seat of God, & made answer, that the very next day following, which was the second* before the Ides of October, he would bid him battell: and this day upon a credulous error, he had assured himselfe would be fortunate unto him, because it was his birth day. All the night ensuing the Englishmen spent in licentious revels, in riotous excesse of banqueting, and in clamorous noises: But the Normans bestowed the same in prayers and vows for the safetie of the armie, and for victorie. The next morning by day light they embattell themselves on both sides: Harold placed in the vantage-guard, the Kentish men with their billes* and halberds, (for by an old custome the front of the battell was due to them:) and in the rereguard himselfe took place with his brother, and those of middle England with the Londoners. Of the Normans vaward Roger of Montgomery, and William Fitz osborne had the leading: the same consisted of horsemen out of Anjou, Perch, and little Britaine, the most part of whom served under Fergerius the Briton. The maine battell which stood of Poitouvins & Germans, Geoffrey Maitell, and a German Pensioner commanded. In the rereguard was the Duke himselfe with the whole manhood of Normans, and the flower of his Nobilitie and Gentrie. But in every place, were intermingled with the rest certaine companies of Archers. The Normans having with no confused nor untunable shout, sounded the battell, and advanced forward with their Battalions, & at the first encounter did let flie lustily on every side a volley of arrowes like haile, a kind of fight, which as it was strange to the Englishmen, so it terrified the exceedingly for, they flew so thicke, that they thought they had their enemies even in the midst of themselves. Then with a violent charge, they assaile the vaward of the English: and they for their parts, who resolutely had determined to cover the place which they had taken up with their bodies, rather than to give one foot of ground, bending all their forces, and keeping themselves close together right valiantly put the enemies backe, and slew a number of them: the Normans reinforced themselves againe upon them, and with an horrible noise, the battels of both sides gave the stroke. And now by this time were they come to the medley, wherein as if foot to foot, & man to man, they had coped together, there was for a good while a fierce & cruel fight: The Englishmen standing thick & close, as if they had stuck one to another, abid the brunt & charge of the enemies with constant resolution, inasmuch as after many a bloody wound received, they were now as the point to have reculed, had not William performing the part of a leader as well as of a souldier, with his authoritie restrained them. Thus the fight continuing still, the Norman horsemen brake in upon them, and withall from above, the arrowes flew so thicke about the English mens eares, that they were in manner overwhelmed with them: yet for all that, they kept their array unbroken. For, Harold neglecting no dutie of a valorous Capitaine, was ready in person every where: and William againe for his part bare himselfe as worthily, who having one or two horses stabbed and slaine under him, seeing that he could not

* 14. Octob.

* Or heavie Axes.

A by fine force, and true valour indeed get the upperhand, betooke himselfe to stratagems: commanding his men to sound the retreat, and keeping them still in good order and array, to give ground and retire. The English men supposing now, that they turned backe and fled, and that themselves had the victorie in their hands, display their ranks, and being thus distracted, presse hard upo their enemies, as making full account that the day was now sure enough theirs. Whereas the Normans casting themselves suddenly againe into array, and winding about, charge the English afresh, and thus setting upon them being scattered, and out of order, encloseth them round about, and made an exceeding great slaughter of them. Many of them whiles they stood doubtfull, whether to fight or to flie, were borne downe and slaine: but more of them having recovered an higher ground, casting themselves round into a ring, and comforted with the exhortation one of another, with good resolution, turned head and resisted a long time, as if they had made choice of that place for an honorable death: until that Harold being shot through the head with an arrow, together with his two brethren, Gyth, & Leofwin, lost his life. Then Edwin and Morcar with some others that remained alive, and escaped by flight, yielded to the hand of God, and gave place unto the time, considering that the battell had continued without intermission from seven of the clock in the morning unto the evening twilight. There were in this battell missed of Normans much about 6000. but of English many more by far. William now Conqueror, rejoiced exceedingly, & by way of a solemne supplication or procession, which he appointed, gave all honor to the Almighty and most gracious God: and when he had erected his pavilion in the midst of the bodies lying slain by heapes, there he passed that night. The morrow after, when he had buried his owne men, & granted leave unto the English men to do the like, himselfe returned to Hastings, partly to consult about following the traine of his victorie, and in part to refresh awhile his wearied souldiers. No sooner was the newes of this grievous overthrow by fearfull messengers brought to London, and to other cities of England, but the whole land generally was stricken into dumps, and as it were astonished. Githa the Kings mother, like a woman gave her selfe to plaints and lamentations, so, as that she would admit no consolation, but with most humble prayers intreated the Conqueror, for the dead bodies of her sonnes. And those she entereth in the Abbey of Waltham. Edwin sendeth Queen Alghitha his sister into the farther parts of the Kingdom: But the Lords and Peeres of the Realme, will the people not to cast downe their hearts, but lay their heads together about the State and Common wealth. The Archbishop of Yorke, the Citizens of London, and the Sea souldiers, whom they called Boten capten, gave their advice to consecrate Edgar King, and to begin warre againe with William: Edwin and Morcar plotted secretly to usurp the Imperiall rule and dignitie for themselves: but the Bishops, Prelates, and others, who were terrified with the flashing thunderbolts of the Popes curse, thought best to yield, and not by doubtfull battell to provoke the Conquerors heavie indignation against them: nor to strive against God, who now for the sinnet of the people calling for vengeance, had delivered England, as it were into the hands of the Norman. William all this while fortifying the Towne of Hastings, purposed to march directly with his armie in warlike manner to London: but because he would raise the greater terror abroad, and make all sure behinde, having divided his forces, he ranged over part of Kent, over Southsex, Suthrey, Southampton shire, and Berk shire, streich villages, and upland houses, driveth booties, at Wallingford hee passeth over the Thames, and terrifieth all the countrey as hee goeth. Yet for all this, the Nobles and Peeres wist not what counsell to take, neither could they be brought, to lay downe private grudges, and enmities, and with one heart to consult in common for the good of the state: The Prelates, to be absolved from curses of the Church, and censures of the Bishop of Rome, (whereby he now exercised his authoritie, not only over mens soules, but also over Kingdomes) seeing that the state of the Realme was now not decayed, but quite ruinate and past recovery, persisted in this mind to submit, in so much as many seeking to save themselves, secretly departed out of the Citie. But Alfred Archbishop of Yorke, Wolfstan Bishop of Worcester, and other Prelates, together with Eadgar Atheling, Edwin and Morcar, at Berkhamsted doe meete the Norman Conqueror, (who made them many and large promises:) and having given hostages, committed themselves to his protection, and submitted. Then forthwith speedeth he to London, where being received with great and joyfull acclamations, he was saluted King: for the solemnizing of his Coronation, which he appointed should

been Christmas day, he made all the preparation that might bee, and meane while bent his whole mind, and all his thoughts to the sealing of the State.

Now was the period and revolution of the English-Saxons Empire in Britaine come about, which was determined within the compasse of 607. yeeres, and a notable alteration and change made in the Kingdome of England: which some lay upon the base avarice of the Magistrates, and the superstitious lazinesse of the Prelates: others impute to that Comet or blazing Starre, and the powerable influence of celestially bodies: some againe made God the Author thereof, who in his secret judgements, and those never unjust, disposeth of Kingdomes. Others also there were, who looked into neerer secondarie causes, and they found a great want and lacke of wisdom in King Edward, in that whiles under a goodly shew and pretext of religious and vowed virginittie, he casting off all care of having issue, exposed the Kingdome for a prey to ambitious humours.

Vhat an insolent and bloudie victorie this was, the Monks that write of it, have declamed with full mouth: neither is it to be doubted, but in this Victorie, (as it hapneth in other) wickednes tooke head and bare the full sway. William the Conquerour, in token as it were of a Trophie for this conquest, abrogated some part of the ancient positive lawes of England, brought in some Customes of Normandie. and by vertue of a decree, commanded, That all causes should be pleaded in the French tongue. The English hee thrust out of their ancient Inheritances, assigned their lands and Lord-ships to his souldiers, yet with this reservation to himself, that he should still remaine chiefe Lord and bind them to doe due service and homage unto him and his successors, that is to say, That all of them should hold their lands in Fee or fealty. He caused also a Seale for himselfe to be made of purpose, with this inscription upon the one side:

Hoc Normannorum Guilielmum nosse Patronum,

The Normans Patron William know, by this stamp that you see:
And on the other:

Hoc Anglis signo Regem fatearis eundem:

By this, a King to Englishmen, acknowledge him to be.

Moreover, as William of Malmesburie doth report, in imitation of Casars policy, who expelled the Germans, (lying hidden within that huge Forrest Ardenna, and by many a salie from thence annoying his armie) not by the helpe of his owne Romans, but by the Gaules his confederates: to this end, that whiles strangers and aliens killed one another, himselfe might triumph with their bloud-shed: the very same course, I say, did William take with the Englishmen. For, against certaine of them, who upon the first battell of that unfortunate man Harold were fled into Denmarke and Ireland, and returned with a puissant armie in the third yeere after, he opposed meeke English forces and an English generall, permitting the Normans to sit still and keepe holiday: foreseeing hereby and providing for his owne great easement, whether of them soever should have the better. Neither was he in this point frustrate of his purpose. For, the English, having thus a prettie while skuffeled and skirmished one with another, in the end rendred up the entire Victorie to the King, without his paines taking. And in another place: Having undermined and quite overthrowne the power of the Laimen, he provided by a sure and irrevocable edict, to suffer no Monke or Clerke of the English Nation, to endeavour for to get any dignitie; much disagreeing herein from the clemencie and gentlenesse of King Cnuto in times past, who gave unto those that he conquered, all their honours entire. And hence it came to passe, that when hee was once dead, the naturall Inhabitants of the countrey upon light occasions fell to driving out of strangers, and recovered unto themselves their ancient right and freedome.

When he had brought this to passe, above all things hee laboured to turne away the storme of the Danish wars, that hung over his head, and to purchase peace, though it were with round sums of mony. Wherein he used Adelbert Archbishop of Hamburgh as his Instrument. For, Adam Bremenfis writeth thus: Betweene Suen and the Bayard there was continuall strife about England, although our Bishop being greased in the hand with Williams bribes, would have concluded a firme peace betweene the

Kings

A Kings. Which may seeme also to have beene established: for, since that time, England was never any whit afraid of the Danes. And William verily betooke himselfe wholly to the defence and maintenance of his Imperiall dignitie, and to governe the state by excellent lawes. For, as Gervase of Tilburie writeth; When the renowned Conqueror of England King William, had subdued the farther coasts of this Island, under his dominion, and thoroughly tamed the stomachs and hearts of rebels by terrible examples, lest that from thenceforth they should licentiously run into error and commit trespasse, he determined to reduce his subjects under the obedience of positive, and written Lawes. Having therefore all the lawes of England laid before him, according to the Tripartite Division, whereby they were distinguished, that is to say, Merchenlag, Denelag, and Westsex-enlag, when hee had rejected some of them, and allowed of others, he adjoynd thereto those Lawes of * *Neustria* beyond the seas, which seemed most effectfull to preserve the peace of his Kingdome. Afterwards, as mine Author Ingulphus saith, who flourished in those daies, He commanded every Inhabitant of England to doe him homage, and to sweare fealtie to him against all men: He tooke the survey and description of the whole Land, neither was there an Hide of England ibrough, but he knew both the value, and the owner thereof; there was neither plash nor place, but set it was in the Kings Roll: and the rent, revenue, and profit thereof, the very tenure of possession, and possessor himselfe was made knowne to the King, according to the credit and true relation of certaine Taxers, who being chosen out of every country, did put downe in writing the territorie properly belonging thereto. And this Roll was called, the *C* Roll of Winchester, and by the Englishmen (for the generalitie thereof, because it contained fully and exactly, all the tenements of the whole Land) named, Domesday. I have beene more willing to make mention of this booke, because it is to be cited & alleaged often times hereafter: which booke also, it pleaseth me to name, *Guilielmi librum Censuales*, that is, *The Tax-booke of William: Anglia Notitia*, that is, *The Notice of England: Anglia commentarios Censuales*, that is, *The Taxe Register, or Seising booke of England: and Anglia Lustrum*, that is, *the Survey of England*.

* Normandy.

Domesday booke.

But whereas Polydore Virgill writeth, how William that Conqueror, first brought in the Trial or Iudgement of * *twelve men*, there is nothing more untrue. For, most certaine it is, and apparant by the lawes of Etheldred, that it was in use many *D* yeares before. Neither hath he any cause to terme it a terrible Iudgement. For these 12. free-borne and lawfull men, are duely by order empannelled, and called forth of the Neighbourhood; these are bound by oath to pronounce and, deliver up their Verdict, * *de facto*: they heare the counsell pleading in courts on both sides before the Bench, or Tribunal, and the disposition of witnesses: then saking with them the evidences of both parties, they are shut up together; and kept from meate, drinke, and fire, (unlesse haply some one of them be in danger of death thereby) so long untill, they be all agreed of the fact: which when they have pronounced before the Judge, hee, according to right and law giveth his definitive sentence. For, this manner of triall our most sage and wise Ancestours have thought the best to finde out the truth, to avoid corruption, and cut off all partialitie and affections.

* A Jurie of twelve.
* As touching the fact.

Now, as touching martiall prowess, how much the Normans excelled therein, let others tell: this may suffice for me to have said thus much, that being planted among most warlike nations, they alwaies saved themselves, not by obsequious baseness, but by force of armes, and founded most noble Kingdomes in England, and Sicilie. For Tancrede, nephew unto Richard the second of that name, Duke of Normandie, and his posteritie, atchieved brave exploits in Italie, and having compelled the Sarazens to flie out of Sicilie, erected a Kingdome there. Whereupon the Sicilian Historiographer doth freely acknowledge, that the Sicilians are beholden unto the Normans, for that themselves remaine still in their native saile, live in freedome, and continue Christians. Likewise in the holy Land their martiall prowesse hath been seen with singular commendation. Hence it is also, that Roger Hoveden writeth in these termes; *Bold France having made triall once of the Normans warlike, durst not peepe out: Fierce England being conquered, yielded as captive unto them: Rich Apulia falling to the lot of their possession flourished a fresh: Famous Jerusalem, and renowned Antioch were both*

The warlike prowess of the Normans.

Th. Fazell, in the sixth book of the latter Decad.

N 3

subdued

subdued by them. And ever since their comming, England as well for martiall honour as civill behaviour, hath among the most flourishing Kingdomes of Christendome flourished with the best. In so much, as Englishmen were picked forth to guard the person of the Emperours of Constantinople. For, John the son of Alexius Comnenus, (as our writer of Malmesburie reporteth) *having their fidelitie in great esteeme, applied himselfe especially to their familiaritie, commending their love unto his son after him: and a long time since, they were the Yeomen of the said Emperours guard, called by Nicetes Choniata, Inglini Bipenniferi, that is, English Halberdiers or Bill men, and by Cuiropalata, Barangi. These attended upon the Emperour in every place, carrying Polaxes or Halberds upon their shoulders: which they tooke up, and held upright whensoever the Emperour shewed himselfe from out his Closet, and knocking then their Halberds one against another to make a clattering noise, they in the English tongue, praised for his long life.* As for that blot wherewith Chalcondilas hath besmirted our nation, for having wives in common, the truth it selfe washeth it cleane away, and represseth the overlasting vanitie of the Grecian. For, as faith that most learned man, and my singular good friend Ortelius in this very matter, those things be not alwaies true, which by every one are given out of all whatsoever. Well, these are the nations that seated themselves in Britaine, whereof remaine the Britans, Saxons, or English men, and Normans intermingled with them: the Scots also in the North: whereupon came the two Kingdomes in this Island, to wit, England and Scotland, long time divided, but most happily now in the most mightie Prince King James, under one Imperiall Diademe conjoynd and united.

Touching the Flemings, which flocked hither foure hundred yeares since, and by permission of the Kings, received a place in Wales to inhabit, it is not requisite to speake of them now, elsewhere I will treat of that matter. But let us conclude this argument with Seneca. By these, it is manifest that nothing hath continued in the same place, wherein it had the first beginning. There is a daily stirring and moving to and fro of mankind: some change or other there is every day in so great a revolution of this world. New foundations of Cities are laid: New names of nations spring up, whereas the old are either growne out of use, or altered by the comming in of a mightier. And considering that all these nations which have broken into Britaine, were Northern as all the rest, which about the same time over-ranne all Europe, and afterwards Asia; most truly from the authoritie of holy Scripture, wrote Nicephorus, *Like as terrors oftentimes are sent from heaven by God upon men, as lightning, fire, and tempestuous showers; oftentimes from the earth, as open gapings of the ground, and Earthquakes; often from the aire, as whirlwinds and extraordinarie stormes: so, these terrors of the Northerne and Hyperborean parts, God keepeth by him in store, to send them forth for some punishment, when, and among whom, it pleaseth him in his divine providence.*

THE DIVISION OF BRITAIN.

Now let us addresse our selves to the Division of Britaine. Countries are divided by Geographers, either *Naturally*, according to the course of rivers, and interpose of mountains: or *Nationally*, according as the people inhabit them: or *Diversly* and *Civilly*, according to the wils and jurisdiction of Princes. But forasmuch as wee shall treat here and there throughout the whole worke, of the first and second kinds, that third (which is civill and politike) seemeth properly pertinent to this place. Which yet is overcast with so darke a mist, through the iniquitie of former times, that much easier it is in this case to confute what is false, than to find out the truth.

Our Historiographers will needs have that division of Britaine to be most ancient, whereby they divide it into *Laegria, Cambria, and Albania*, that is, to speake more plainly, into England, Wales, and Scotland. But I would think this division to be of a newer and later edition, both because it is threefold, for it seemeth to have risen of those

Chalcondilas.

In Pembroke shire.

Of consolation to Albin.

Nicephorus.

How countries are divided.

A those three sorts of people, English, Welch, and Scottish, which last of all parted the Island among themselves: and also for that such a partition is no where extant in approved Authours before our Geffrey of Monmouth. For, the fable, (as the Critics of our age doe thinke) could not hang well together, unless he the said Geffrey had devised three sonnes of Brutus, to wit, Loocrine, Camber, and Albanact, because so many Nations flourished heere when he lived. Neither make they doubt, but hee would have found out more children of Brutus, if there had beene more nations distinct at the same time in Britaine.

The most ancient division of Britaine in the opinion of many learned men is that, which is found in Ptolomee, in the second booke of ** Mathematicall Construction*, * cap. 6. where he threatneth the Parallels: namely, into Britaine the GREAT, and the LESSER. But by their leave, as great learned men as they be, they themselves shal see, if it please them to examine thoroughly and exactly in that place, the proportion of distance from the *Aequator*, and compare the same with his Geographical Descriptions, that hee calleth this our Island there, *Britaine the GREAT*, and Ireland, *Britaine the LESSER*. Howbeit some of our later writers named the higher part of this Island toward the South, *GREAT*, and that farther part Northward, the *LESSER*: the Inhabitants whereof in times past, were distinguished into *MAIATAE*, and *CALEDONII*, that is to say, into the habitation of the Champian, or Plaines, and the Mountaigners: as now, the Scots are divided into *Hechtlandmen*, and *Lowlandmen*. But for as much

Britan Great and Small.

C as the Romans cared not for that farther tract, because (as Appian saith, it could not be profitable for them nor fruitfull; having set downe their bounds nor farre from Edenburgh, at the first they made this higher part reduced already into a Province, two-fold, to wit, the *LOVVER*, and the *HIGHER*, as it is gathered out of *Dio*. For, the higher or neerer part of England, together with Wales, he termeth the *HIGHER*, the farther and Northern part the *LOVVER*. Which thing the very sears, and abiding places of the Legions in *Dio* do prove. The second Legion *Augusta*, which kept at *Gaelleon* in Wales, and the twentieth surnamed *Victrix*, which remained at *Chester* or *Deva*, he placeth in the *Higher Britaine*: but the Sixth Legion *Victrix*, that was resident at *Yorke*, served, as he writeth, in the *Lower Britaine*. This division I would suppose, was made by the Emperour Severus, because Herodian reporteth, that hee after hee had vanquished *Albinus* Generall of the British forces, who had usurped the Empire, and therewith reformed, and set in order the State of Britain, divided the government of the Province in two parts, between two Prefects, or Governours.

Britaine the Higher, and the Lower.

After this, the Romans did set out the Province of Britaine into three parts, as is to be seen out of a manuscript of *Sextus Rufus*: namely, into *MAXIMA CAESARIENSIS*, *BRITANNIA PRIMA*, and *BRITANNIA SECUNDA*. Which, I take it, I have found out by the Bishops, and their ancient Diocesses. *Lucius* the Pope, in *Gratian*, insinuateth thus much, that the Ecclesiasticall Jurisdictions of the Christians, followed the Jurisdictions of the Roman Magistrates, and that Archbishops had their Seas in those cities, wherein the Romane Presidents in times past made their abode. The Cities and places (saith he) in which Primates ought to sit and rule, were appointed not by the Moderne, but long before the comming of Christ: to the Primates of which Cities &c. the Gentils also appealed in matters of greater importance. And in these verie cities after Christs comming, the Apostles and their Successors placed Patriarchs, or Primates, upon whom the affaires of the Bishops, and greater causes ought to be preferred. Whereas therefore Britaine had in old time three Archbishops, to wit, of *London*, of *Yorke*, and *Gaelleon* in Southwales, I suppose, that the Province which now we call of *Ganterburie*, (for thither the Sea of *London* was translated) made *BRITANNIA PRIMA*: *Wales* under the * Citie of *Caer Leon*, was *BRITANNIA SECUNDA*; and the Province of *Yorke*, which then reached unto the Limit or Borders, made *MAXIMA CAESARIENSIS*.

Tripartite Britaine.

Dis. 80. cap. 1.

F In the age next ensuing, when the forme of the Roman Empire was daily changing, either through ambition, that more men might attaine to places of honour, or the warie forecast of the Emperours, that the power of their Presidents which grew over great might be taken downe and abridged, they divided Britaine into five parts,

* Chester.

Britaine in
five parts.

Lib. 18.

TO WIT, BRITANNIA PRIMA, SECUNDA, MAXIMA CAESARIENSIS, VALENTIA & FLAVIA CAESARIENSIS. VALENTIA seemeth to have been the northerly part of *Maxima Caesariensis*, which being usurped and held by the Picts and Scots, Theodosius Generall under Valens the Emperour recovered out their hands, and in honour of him named it *Valentia*, which Marcellinus sheweth more plainly in these words: *The Province now recovered, which was fallen into the enemies hands, he restored to the former state, in such sort, as by his own procuring it had both a lawful governor, & was also afterwards called, VALENTIA, as the pleasure of the Prince.* Now that the son of this Theodosius, (who being created Emperour was named Flavius Theodosius, and altered very many things in the Empire) added *Flavia*, we may very well conjecture, for that before the time of this *Flavius* we read no where of BRITANNIA FLAVIA. Wherefore to make up this matter in few words, All the fourth coast which of one side lieth between the British sea, and the river Thames with the Severn sea on the other side, was called BRITANNIA PRIMA. BRITANNIA SECUNDA, was that which now is Wales. FLAVIA CAESARIENSIS, reacheth from Thames to Humber. MAXIMA CAESARIENSIS, from Humber to the river of Tine, or the wall of *Severus*. VALENTIA from Tine to the wall or rampier neere Edinburgh, which the Scots call *Gramedike*, and was the utmost limit of the Roman Empire in this Island, when this last division was in use.

And now I cannot chuse but note some want of judgement in certaine men, who otherwise being very learned, doe reckon Scotland in this account, which some of them make to have beene *Maxima Caesariensis*, and others, *Britannia Secunda*: As if (forsooth) the Romans neglected not that part of the Island, lying under a cold climate, and reckoned here those Provinces onely, which they governed by Consular Lieutenants, and Prefidents: for *Maxima Caesariensis*, and *Valentia* were ruled by Consular Lieutenants; *Britannia Prima*, *Secunda*, and *Flavia*, by Prefidents.

Now if any man would have me render a reason of this my division, and accuse me as a false bounderer and surveyor, let him heare in briefe, what hath induced mee to this opinion. Having observed thus much, that the Romans alwaies called those Provinces PRIMAS, which lay nighest to Rome: as *Germania Prima*, *Belgica Prima*, *Lugdunensis Prima*, *Aquitania Prima*, *Pannonia Prima*; all which lay neerer to Rome, than those that were named, *Secunda*: and that these *Prima*, were by the finer sort of writers, termed *Superiores*, or higher: the *Secunda*, *Inferiores*, or Lower: I resolved, that the South-part of our Island, and neerer to Rome, was *Britannia Prima*. By the same reason seeing the Provinces *Secunda* (as they call them) were more remote from Rome, I supposed Wales was the *Britannia Secunda*. Moreover, having noted this also, that in the decaying State of their Empire, those Provinces onely had Consular Magistrates, which lay against the enemies, not onely in Gaule, but also in Africke, as appeareth in the booke of *Notices*: also, that in the said Booke, *Valentia* with us, and *Maxima Caesariensis* be accounted Consular Provinces; I have judged them being next and exposed to the Scots and Picts, to lie in those places which I have spoken of. I can doe no other but guesse, that *Flavia Caesariensis* here, was in the midst betweene them all, and in the very heart of England: and so much the more confidently, because that ancient writer *Givaldus Cambrensis*, is just of the same opinion with me. And thus much of the Divisions of Britaine under the Romans.

Afterwards, when the Barbarians made invasion on every side, and civill war daily increased among the Britans, the Island, as bereft of all life and vigour, lay for a time languishing and forlorne, without any shew at all of government. But at length that part which inclineth to the North became two Kingdomes, to wit, of the Scots and the Picts, and the Romans Pentarchie, or five portions; in this hither part became in proceesse of time the Heptarchie, or seven Kingdomes, of the Saxons. For, they divided the whole Province of the Romans, (setting Wales aside, which the remnant of Britans possessed) into seven Kingdomes, that is to say, *Kent*, *Southsex*, *East-England*, *Westsex*, *Northumberland*, *Eastsex*, and *Mercia*.

But what this Heptarchie of the English-Saxons was, and what their names were in those daies, in this chorographical table here adjoynd you may (if you please) behold. Considering

The Saxons
Heptarchie or
seven King-
domes.

Considering that in a Chorographical Table or Map, by reason of so narrow a roome, those Regions or Counties which these Kingdomes contained, could not well and handsomely be described:

In this other Table heere, rather than by heaping many words together, I thinke good to propose, and set downe the same, that the Reader may once for all have a view of them.

B	1 The Kingdome of KENT contained	the Counties of	Kent.
B	2 The Kingdom of SUSSEX, or Southern Saxons, contained	the Counties of	Sussex. Sussex.
C	3 The Kingdome of EAST-ENGLAND, or East-Angles, contained	the Counties of	Norfolke. Suffolke. (of Ely. Cambridge shire, with the Isle
C	4 The Kingdome of WEST-SSEX, or West-Angles, contained	the Counties of	Cornwall. Devon shire. Dorset shire. Somerset shire. Wilt shire. Southampton. Berks shire.
D	5 The Kingdome of NORTHUMBRIA, or North-Angles, contained	the Counties of	Lancaster. York. Durham. Cumberland. Westmorland. Northumberland, and the Countries of Scotland to Edinburgh-frith.
E	6 The Kingdome of EAST-SSEX, or East-Saxons, contained	the Counties of	Essex. Middlesex, and part of Hertfordshire.
F	7 The Kingdome of MERCA, contained	the Counties of	Gloucester shire. Hereford shire. Worcester shire. Warwick shire. Leicester shire. Rutland shire. Northampton shire. Lincoln shire. Huntingdon shire. Bedford shire. Buckingham shire. Oxford shire. Stafford shire. Derby shire. Salop or Shropshire. Nottingham shire. Chester, or Cheshire. (Shire. The other part of Hertford Yct

England divided into Shires or Counties.

An Hide, as some thinke, is so much land, as one plough can eare in one yeare: as others thinke, 4. yard-lands.

Yet was not England when the Heptarchie flourished, thus divided into Counties, for so they be commonly called, but into certaine small regions with their Hides, which out of an old fragment that I had of Francis Tate a gentleman, most conversant in the Antiquitie of our Law, I have here put downe. But it containeth that country onely, which lieth on this side Humber.

Myrcna containeth 30000. * Hides. Nox gaga 5000. hides.
Woken-seina 7000. hides. Oht gaga 2000. hides.
Westerna 7000. hides. Hwynca 7000. hides.
Pec-seina 1200. hides. Cilicna-seina 4000. hides.
Elmed-seina 600. hides. Hendrica 3000. hides.
Lindes-farōna 7000. hides. Væccung-ga 1200. hides.
Suth-Gyrwa 600. hides. Arofeaina 600. hides.
North-Gyrwa 600. hides. Fearfinga 600. hides.
East-Wixna 300. hides. Belmiga 600. hides.
West-Wixna 600. hides. Wisberigga 600. hides.
Spalda 600. hides. East-willa 600. hides.
Wigesta 900. hides. West-willa 600. hides.
Herefinna 1200. hides. East-Engle 30000. hides.
Sweordora 300. hides. East-Sexena 7000. hides.
Eysla 300. hides. Cant-warena 15000. hides.
Wicca 300. hides. Suth-Sexena 7000. hides.
Wight-gora 600. hides. West-Sexena 100000. hides.

Although some of these names may at the first sight be discovered, yet others of them a man shall hardly picke out although hee studie upon them: and they require one I professe it, of much sharper wit and quicker insight than my selfe, to guesse what they should meane.

Afterwards, when Aelfred was sole Monarch, like as the Germans our ancestors, as Tacitus witnesseth, kept courts and ministred justice in every Territoric and town, and had a Hundred men out of the the Common people as companions and assistants to performe this function: even so, to use the words of Ingulphus of Crowland, He first divided England into Counties, for that the neighbour inhabitants after the example, and under colour of the Danes committed outrages and robberies. Besides, hee caused the Counties to be parted into Centuries, that is Hundreds, and Decimes, that is Tithings: and commanded with all that every Homelinge or naturall Inhabitant should bee in some one Hundred and Tithing. Hee divided also the governours of the Provinces, who before were called Vice-Domini, that is, Vice-Lords, into two offices, to wit, Iudges, now Iustices, and Vice-Comites, that is, Sheriffes, which still retain the same name. By whose care and industrie, peace so much flourished within short space through the whole Province, that had a way-faring man let fall in the fields or common highwaies, a summe of money, how great soever it had bene, if he returned thither the next morning or a month after he might bee sure to see it there safe and untouched. Which our Historiographer of Malmesburie will declare unto you more at large. By occasion, saith he, and example of the Barbarians, that is, Danes, the proper and naturall inhabitants also were very greedy of spoile, so that no man could passe to and fro in safety, without weapons for his defence. Aelfred therefore ordained Centuries, which they terme Hundreds, and Decimes, which they call Tithings, that every English man living under law, as a liege subject, should bee within one Hundred and Tithing, or another. And if a man were accused of any transgression, hee should bring in straightwaies some one out of the same Hundred and Tithing, that would bee bound for his appearance to answer the law: but he that could not find such a surety, should abide the severity of the Lawes. But in case any man standing thus accused, either before or after suretiship, fled, then all that Hundred and Tithing, incurred a mulct or fine to bee imposed by the King. By this device he brought peace into the Country, so as along the common causes and highwaies where they crossed one another, he commanded bracelets of gold to be hanged up,

Aelfred he is named in pieces of Coine: also Alured, in our English Chronicles.

Hundreds,

Wapentaks, Tithings and Lathes.

A To delude the greedinesse of passengers, whiles there was no man that durst take the away. But these Hundreds be in some places of the realme called Wapentakes: if you would know the reason thereof, I will tel you it out of the laws of Edward the Confessor. When a man received the government of a Wapentack, upon a certaine day appointed in the place where they were wont to assemble, all the elder sort met together and expected him: and as hee alighted from his horse, rose up unto him and did him reverence. Then he, setting his speare upright, received of them all, according to the custome, a covenant of Association. For, as many as came, with their speares touched his speare, and thus they assured themselves by touching of weapons, in peaceable manner. For, armes in English they call wapen, & Taccapē is as much as to confirme or establish: as if this were a confirmation of weapons: or, B to speak more significantly and expressly according to the English tongue, Wepentac, is the touching of weapons. For wapen soundeth as much, as armes, Tac is touching. There were besides, other governments and jurisdictions above Wapentakes which they called Dpiningar, for that this was the third part of a Province. And the rulers over those were termed Dpiningsepepar. Before these officers were brought those causes that could not be determined in the Wapentacks. And so, that which the Englishmen named a Hundred, these termed a Wapentack. And that which in English they called three or foure Hundreds, these named Dpiningse. Howbeit in some Provinces they called that Ley, which these terme Tithing: and that which could not be decided and ended in a Dpiningse, was brought into the Schyre.

C These Counties which you may properly and in Latine call, either Conventus or Fagos, we by a peculiar terme name Shires, of Scýpe a Saxon word, which significeth, to part or divide: and at the first division, were there in all but thirtie two. For, in the yeare after Christs nativitie 1016. whiles Etheldred raigned, the Chronicle of Malmesburie reporteth there was no more: For, thus writeth hee in the life of the said Etheldred. The Danes at this time when there bee reckoned in England thirty two Shires, invaded 16. of them. And in those daies, according to the varietie of lawes these counties or shires were divided. For the lawes of England were distinguished into three sorts: to wit, those of the West-Saxons which they called West-Saxenlage: those of the Danes, named Denelage, and those of the Mercians, termed Merchenlage. D To the law of the West-Saxons belonged nine counties, to wit, Kent, Suffex, Sushrie, Berkshire, Hantsire or Southampton, Wiltshire, Sommersetshire, Dorsetshire, and Den-shire. To the Danes law appertained 15. Counties, namely, Yorkshire, Darbyshire, Nottinghamshire, Leicestershire, Lincolnshire, Northamptonshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire, Hertfordshire, Essex, Middlesex, Northfolk, Suffolk, Cam-bridgehire, Huntingdonshire. The eight remaining, followed the law of the Mercians: there were, Gloucestershire, Worcestershire, Herefordshire, Warwickshire, Oxfordshire, Cheshire, Salop or Shropshire, and Staffordshire. But when William the First made a survey and taxed this Kingdome, there were reckoned, as wee read in Polychronicon, xxxvj. shires or counties: and yet the publike * record, in which he engrossed and registred this survey and taxe, doe make mention of 34. onely. For, Durham, Lancashire, Northumberland, Westmorland, and Comberland were not comprised in that number, because these three last were then subject to the Scots, as some will have it, and those other two were either free from payments and taxes, or comprehended under Yorkshire: but being afterwards added to the rest they made up in all, the number of 39. shires, which we have at this day. Unto which are adjoy-ned since 12. more in Wales: whereof sixe were in the time of Edward the First, the rest Henry the Eighth ordained by Parliamentarie authoritie.

F In these Shires there is appointed in troublesome times by the Prince, a Prefect or Deputie under the King, whom they call a Lieutenant, to see that the Common-weale sustaine no hurt. The first Institution of this Lieutenant, as it may seeme, is to be fetched from King Aelfred, who appointed in every Countie certaine Custodes or Keepers of the Kingdome: whom Henry the Third afterward did set up and restore againe, naming them Capitaines. For hee in the fiftieth yeare of his raigne, Held a Parliament as Iohn * of London writeth, wherein this wholesome ordinance was enacted, that

Lesh.

Shires;

The division of England according to the Lawes.

The manuscript booke of S. Edmund.

* Doomsday booke.

Wales divided into Shires.

* or, London. 897. Math. Westmonast.

that in every Countie there should be made at the Kings charge, one Capitaine, who with the helpe of the Sheriffe should restraine the cruel and outrageous robbers & theeves from stealth and rapine. Many therefore being frighted with this terror gave over, and so the Kings power began to breath againe and revive. With good forecast this was done verily by this Prince: but whether Canutus the Dane did more wisely, who in his Monarchie erected a Tetrarchie, let our Politicians and Statists dispute. For he, (Hermandus the Archdeacon is mine Author) being a prudent Prince, and watchfull every way, dividing the care of his Kingdome into foure parts, ordained Tetrarchs, such as hee had found to be most faithfull and trusty. The charge of the greatest portion, to wit, Westsex, hee tooke upon himselfe; of * Mercia, which was the second portion, he committed to one Edrich; the third, usually called Northumbrie, to Trinus, and to Turkil Earle of East-Englan, the fourth; which flowed in plenty and abundance of all wealth. For this instruction I am beholden to the diligence of Francis Thinn, a man, who with exceeding great commendation hath travelled very much in this Studie of Antiquities.

Now every yeare, some one of the Gentlemen Inhabitants, is made ruler of the countie wherein he dwelleth, whom we call in Latin *Viccomitem*, as one would say, the Deputie of the Comes or Earle, and in our tongue Sheriffe, that is, the Reeve of the Shire, who also may well be termed the Treasurer of the Shire or Province. For, it is his durie, to gather the common monies and profits of the Prince in his Countie, to collect and bring into the Exchequer all fines imposed, even by distraining: to be attendant upon the Judges, and to execute their commandements: to assemble and empanell the twelve men which in causes do enquire of the fact, and make relation thereof and give in their verdict to the Judges (for Judges with us sit upon the right onely of a cause: and not upon the fact) to see condemned persons executed, and to examine and determine certaine smaller actions. Moreover, there bee ordained in everie Shire, and that by the institution of Edward the Third, certaine Justices of peace, who examine Murders, Felonies, and Trespases, as they call them, yea and many other delinquencies. Furthermore, the King sendeth yearly into every Shire of England two Justices, to give Judgement of prisoners, and that I may use the Lawyers terme, to deliver the Goale. Of whom, more heereafter in the *Trease of Iudiciall courts and Indgments* treat.

As touching Ecclesiasticall jurisdiction, when the Bishops of Rome had assigned severall Churches to severall Priests, and laid parishes unto them, Honorius Archbishop of Canterbury, about the yeare of our Redemption 636. began first to diuide England into parishes, as wee reade in the Historie of Canterbury. But now hath England two provinces, and accordingly two Archbishops: to wit, the Archbishop of Canterbury Primate and Metropolitan of all England, and the Archbishop of Yorke. Under these are twenty five Bishops: to the Archbishop of Canterbury are subject twentie two, to the Archbishop of Yorke, the other three. Now what Bishopricks these be, with the shires and Diocesses that are at this day under their jurisdiction, that godly, and right reverend father Matthew Parker, [late] Archbishop of Canterbury, a man very studious and skilfull in antiquitie, and a worthy Patron of good learning, sheweth in these his owne words.

IN THE PROVINCE OF CANTERBVRIE.

THE Bishopricke of Canterburie together with that of Rochester containeth under it Kent it selfe. The Bishopricke of London hath under it Essex, Middlesex, & part of Hertfordshire. The Bishopricke of Chichester hath belonging unto it Suffex. The Bishopricke of Winchester compriseth Southampton shire, Surry, and the Isle of Wight, Gernsey also and Iersey, Islands lying against Normandy. The Bishopricke of Salisbury, compriseth Wiltshire and Berksheire. The Bishopricke of Excester containeth Deneshire and Cornwall. The Bishopricke of Bath and Wells joined together, hath under it Sommerfetshire: The Bishopricke of Gloucester hath belonging to it Gloucestershire. To the Bishopricke of Worcester, is subject Worcestereshire & part of Warwickshire. To the Bishopricke of Hereford, Herefordshire & part of Salop or Shropshire. The

He flourished
in the year,
1070.

* Mercia.

Sheriffe of the
Shire.

Twelve men.

Justices of
peace.

Justices of
Assizes.

England di-
vided into
Parishes.

Bishops.

- A Bishopricke of Coventrie and Lichfield joyned together, have under it, Staffordshire, Derbshire and the other part of Warwickshire, as also that part of Shropshire which lieth toward the river Repil. Then, the Bishopricke of Lincolnshire, which of all other is the greatest, is bounded with Lincolnshire, Leicestershire, Huntingdonshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire, and the other part of Hertfordshire. To the Bishopricke of Ely pertaine Cambridgeshire, and the Isle it selfe of Elie. Under the Bishopricke of Norwich is Norfolk and Suffolke. The Bishopricke of Oxenford hath under it Oxenfordshire. The Bishopricke of Peterborough compriseth Northamptonshire and Rutlandshire. Under the Bishopricke of Bristol, is Dorsetshire. Vnto which eigheteene Diocesses in England, are to be added those of Wales, which are both bereft of their owne peculiar Archbishopricke, and made also fewer in number; seven being brought scarce to foure: to wit, the Bishopricke of Meneva, having the seat at Saint Davids, the Bishopricke of Landaffe; the Bishopricke of Bangor, and the Bishopricke of Saint Asaph.

IN THE PROVINCE OF YORKE.

- C THE Bishopricke of Yorke comprehendeth Yorkeshire it selfe, and Nottinghamshire. The Bishopricke of Chester containeth, Cheshire, Richmondshire, Lancashire, part of Cumberland, of Flintshire, and of Denbshire. The Bishopricke of Durham, hath Durham it selfe under it, and Northumberland. The Bishopricke of Carleil containeth within it part of Cumberland, and the Countrey of Westmerland. To these you may adde, the Bishopricke of Sodor, in the Isle of Mona, which commonly is called Man. Among these, the Archbishop of Canterburie hath the first place: the Archbishop of Yorke the second: the Bishop of London the third: the Bishop of Durham the fourth: the Bishop of Winchester the fifth: the rest as they are consecrated or entailed first, so in prioritie they take the place. Howbeit, if any of the other Bishops happen to be Secretary to the King, hee challengeth by his right the fifth place. Besides, there are in England Deaneries xxvj. whereof thirteene were ordained by Henrie the Eighth in the greater Cathedrall Churches after the Monks were thrust out. Archdeaconries three skore: Dignities and Prebends five hundred fortie foure.

Numbered also there are parish-churches under Bishops, 9284: of which 3845, be *Appropriat*, as I find in a Catalogue exhibited unto King James, which here I have put downe underneath. Now, *Appropriat* Churches those are called, which by the Popes authority coming betwene, with consent of the King and the Bishop of the Diocese were upon certaine conditions tied, or as the forme runneth, of our Law, *united, annexed, and incorporate for ever*, unto Monasteries, Bishopricks, Colledges and Hospitals, endowed with small lands, either for that the said Churches were built with in their Lordships and lands, or granted by the Lords of the said lands. Which Churches afterwards when the Abbaies and Monasteries were suppressed, became *Laye Fees*, to the great dammage of the Church.

F

O

IN

	DIOCESES.	Parish-Churches.	Churches appropriated
In the Province of Canterbury in the Diocese,	Of Canterburie.	257	140
	Of London.	623	189
	Of Winchester.	362	131
	Of Coventrie and Lichfield.	557	250
	Of Sarisburie.	248	109
	Of Bath and Wels.	388	160
	Of Lincoln.	1855	577
	Of Peter-burgh.	293	91
	Of Excester.	604	239
	Of Gloucester.	267	125
	Of Hereford.	313	166
	Of Norwich.	1121	385
	Of Elie.	141	75
	Of Rochester.	98	36
	Of Chichester.	250	112
	Of Oxford.	195	88
	Of Worcester.	241	76
	Of Bristol.	236	64
	Of S. Davids.	308	120
In the Province of Yorke,	Of Bangor.	107	36
	Of Llandaffe.	177	98
	Of S. Asaph.	121	19
	Peculiar, in the Province of Canterburie.	57	14
	The summe of the Province of Canterburie.	8219	3303
	Of Yorke.	581	336
	Of Durham.	135	87
	Of Chester.	256	101
	Of Carlile.	93	18
	The summe of the Province of Yorke.	1065	592
	The totall Summe in both Provinces	9284	3845

Howbeit, in the booke of Thomas Wolsey Cardinall, digested and written in the

A They were 1520. by Counties are reckoned, 9407. Churches. How this variety should come, I cannot say, unless that in the former age some Churches were pulled downe, and the Chappels which belong unto Parishes be omitted, and others that are but bare Chappels, counted in the number of Parish-churches. Yet, out of this booke of Wolsey, have I put downe the number of Parish-churches to every Shire.

There were also, in the reigne of Henrie the Eighth (I hope without offence I may speake the truth) many religious places, Monuments of our fore-fathers pietie and devotion, to the honor of God, the propagation of Christian faith and good learning, and also for the reliefe and maintenance of the poore and impotent, to wit, Monasteries of Abbaies, and Priories, to the number of 645: of which when by permission of Pope Clement the seventh, fortie were suppressed by Cardinall Wolseies meanes, who then had begun to found two Colledges, one at Oxenford, the other at Ipswich: straight waies, about the xxxvj. yeere of the reigne of the said Henrie the Eighth, a sudden floud (as it were) breaking thorow the banks with a maine streame, fell upon the Ecclesiastical State of England; which whiles the world stood amazed, and England groined thereat, bare downe and utterly overthrew the greatest part of the Clergie, together with their most goodly and beautifull houses. For, that leave which the Pope granted to the Cardinall; the King with assent of the Parliament tooke to himselfe. Whereupon, in the yeere of our Lord, 1536. all religious houses every one, together with all their livings and revenues, as many I meane as might dispend by yeerely rent 200. pound or under, (and those amounted to the number of 376) were granted to the King. And in the yeere next following, under a faire pretence and shew of rooting out superstition, all the rest, together with Colledges, Chanteries and Hospitals were left to the dispose and pleasure of the King. At which time, the religious houses remaining, in number 605. were surveied, valued or taxed. Colledges there were, besides those in the Universties, 90. Hospitals 110. Chanteries and free Chappels 2374. All which for the most part, shortly after were every where pulled downe, their revenues sold and made away, & those goods & riches which the Christian pietie of the English nation had consecrated unto God, since they first professed Christianity were in a moment as it were dispersed, and (to the displeasure of no man be it spoken) prophaned.

Monasteries or Abbaies.

An hundred Priories of Monks Aliens, King Henrie the Fifth, had dissolved before.

THE STATES AND DEGREES of England.

E Touching the division of our Common-wealth, it consisteth, of a King or Monarch, Noblemen or Gentry, Citizens, Free-borne, whom we call, Yeomen, and Artisans or Handicraftsmen.

The King

THE KING, whom our ancestors [the English-Saxons] called Coning and Gyning, (in which name is implied a signification both of power and skill) and wee name contractly, King, hath soveraigne power and absolute command among us, neither holdeth he his Empire in vassalage, nor receiveth his investure or entailing of another, ne yet acknowledgeth any superiour but God alone: and as one said, *All verily are under him, and himselfe under none, but God onely*. Also, he hath very many rights of Majesty peculiar to himselfe, (the learned Lawyers terme them, *Sacra sacrorum*, that is *Sacred*, and *Individa*; that is, inseparable, because they cannot be severed: and the common sort *Royall prerogatives*) which they terme, *The flowers of his Crowne*, in which respect they affirme that the regall materiall Crowne is adorned with flowers. Some of these, are by positive or written law; others, by right of custome, which by a silent consent of all men without law, prescription of time hath allowed, the King justly enioieth: and most deservedly; considering that *His matchfull care defendeth the state of all, his painfull labour maintaineth the rest of all, his studious industry upholdeth the delights of all, and his busie employment affordeth ease to all*. But these are points of a loftier discourse, and not of the argument now in hand.

Arrian lib. 6. cap. 8.

Seneca.

The Prince.

* Nobilitas Cesar.
* Cesar Nobilitas.* Dux Cornu-
bie natus.

* Lords.

A Duke.

* Dukes.
* Earles.

The second or next to the King, is his first begotten sonne: who, like as among the Romans, the heire apparant, and assigned succellour to the Empire, was first entituled, *Principes Inventus*, that is, Prince of the youth; and afterwards (as flatterie did increafe) stiled by the name of *Cesar*, * *Noble Cesar*, and the * *most Noble*: so, with our Ancestors the English-Saxons, hee was named in their tongue, *Aetheling*, that is, Noble, and in Latine *Clito*, of the Greeke word, *κλυτο*, that is, *Glorious or Excellent* (see how that age affected the Greeke Language.) And hereupon, of that *Edgar*, the last heire male of the English blood royall, this old said law is yet rife in every mans mouth, *Eadgar, Edeeling, Englan, Eadeling*. And in the ancient Latine Patents and Charters of the Kings wee read often times, *Ego E. vel Ae. Clyto, Regis filius*: But this addition *Clyto*, I have observed to be given even to all the Kings sonnes. After the Norman conquest, no certaine or speciall title of honour was assigned unto him, nor any other to my knowledge, than singly thus, *The Kings sonne*, and, *The first begotten of the King of England*, untill that *Edward the first* summoned unto the high Court of Parliament his sonne *Edward*, by the name of *Prince of Wales*, and *Earle of Chester*; unto whom hee granted afterwards, the Dukedome also of Aquitaine: like as the same Prince, being now King *Edward the Second*, called unto the Parliament his young sonne *Edward*, not full ten yeeres old, by the title of *Earle of Chester*, and of *Flinth*. But the said *Edward*, having now attained to the Crowne, and being *Edward the Third*, created *Edward* his sonne, a most valiant and renowned man of warre, *Duke of Cornwall*. Since which time, the Kings first begotten sonne, is reputed * *Duke of Cornwall* at the houre of his birth. And soone after, he adorned the same sonne by solemne investiture and creation, with the title of *Prince of Wales*. And gave the Principality of Wales in these words, *To be held of him and his heires Kings of England*. And as the declared or elect Succellours of the Roman Empire, (as I said even now) were named *Cæsares*, of the Greeke *Empire*, * *Despote*; of the Kingdome of France, *Dolphins*, and of Spaine, *Infants*: so from thence forward, the Heires apparant of the Kingdome of England, were entituled, *Princes of Wales*. And this title continued unto the daies of *Henrie the Eighth*, when Wales was fully united to the Kingdome of England.

But now, whereas the Kingdomes of Britaine formerly divided, are by the happy good luck, and rightfull title of the most mighty Prince, *King James* grown into one, his Eldest sonne *Henrie*, the *Lovely Ioy and Dearing of Britaine*, is stiled, *PRINCE OF GREAT BRITAIN*: who, as he is borne thus to the greatest hopes, so all Britaine from one end to the other, prayeth unceasingly from the very heart, that God would vouchsafe to blisse him with the greatest vertues, and continuance of honour, that hee may by many degrees, and that most happily exceede our hope, surpass the noble Acts of his Progenitours, yea, and outlive their yeeres. As for our Nobilitie, or Gentry, it is divided into Superiour, and Inferiour. The Superiour or chiefe Noblemen we call, *Dukes*, *Marquesses*, *Earles*, and *Barons*: which have received these titles from the Kings of this Realme for their Vertue and Prowesse.

Dux, is the chiefe title of honour among us next after *PRINCE*. This was a name at first of charge and office, and not of dignitie. About the time of *Aelius Verus* the Emperour, those who governed the Limits and Borders, were first named *Duces*, and this degree in the daies of Constantine was inferiour to that of *Comites*. After the Romane government was heere in this Iland abolished, this title also remained as a name of office: and those among us, who in old Charters, during the Saxons time, are so many of them called *Duces*, were named in the English tongue onely *Ealdermen*: and the verie fame, that were named *Duces*, they called also, * *Comites*. As for example, that *William the Conquerour* of England, whom most call *Duke of Normandie*, *William of Malmsburie*, termeth *Comes*, or *Earle of Normandie*. But, as well *Duke* as *Earle*, were names of charge and office, as appeareth by this Briefe or Instrument of creating a *Duke* or *Earle*, out of *Marculphus* an ancient Writer. In this point especially is a Princes regall Clemencie fully commended, that throught the whole people there bee sought out honest and vigilant persons; neither is it meete to commit hand over head, unto every man a judicarie Dignity, unlesse his faithfulness

and

A and valour seems to have bene tried before: seeing then therefore, we suppose that we have had good proofs of your trustie and profitable service unto us, wee have committed unto you the government of that Earldome, Dukedome, Senatourship, or Eldership in that Shire or Province, which your Prowesse untill this time seemed to have exercised, for so manage and rule the same accordingly: provided alwaies, that you evermore keepe your faith untouched and unstained toward our Royall governance, and that all people there abiding may live, and be ruled under your regiment and governance, and that you order and direct them in the right course, according to law, and their owne customes: That you shew your selfe a Protector to widowes, and Guardians to Orphans: that the wickednesse of thieves and malefactors be most severely by you punished: that the people living well under your regiment, may with joy continue in peace quietly: and whatsoever by this very execution is looked for to arise, in profit due to the Exchequer bee brought yearly by your selfe into our Coffers, and Treasure. This title of *Duke*, began to be a title of honour under *Otho the Great*, about the yeere 970. For hee, to bind more treitly, and neerer unto him, martiall and polike men, endowed them with Regalities and Roialties, as hee termed them. And these Roialties were either Dignities, or Lands in fee. Dignities were these, *Dukes*, *Marquesses*, *Earles*, *Capitaines*, *Palatours*, *Palatines*. Later it was ere it came to be an Hereditarie ritle in France: and not before the time of *Philip the third King of France*, who granted, that from thence forth, they should bee called, *Dukes of Britaine*, who before time were indifferently stiled, both *Dukes* and *Earles*. But in England, in the time of the Normans, seeing the Norman Kings themselves were *Dukes of Normandie*, for a great while they adorned iose with this honour: nor before that *Edward the Third* created *Edward* his sonne, *Duke of Cornwall*, by a wreath upon his head, a ring on his finger, and a silver verge or rod: like as the *Dukes of Normandie* were in times past created by a sword, and banner delivered unto them: afterwards, by girding the sword of the *Duchie*, and a circle of gold, garnished with little golden roses in the top. And the same King *Edward the Third*, created in a Parliament his two sonnes, *Lionel Duke of Clarence*, and *John Duke of Lancaster*, by the girding of a sword, and setting upon their heads a furred chapeau, or cap, with a circlet or coronet of gold, pearle, and a Charter delivered unto them. From which time there have bene many hereditary *Dukes* among us, created one after another, with these or such like words in their Charter or Patent: *We give and grant the Name, Title, State, Stile, Place, Seat, Preheminence, Honour, Authority, and Dignitie of a Duke*, in N. and by the cincture of a sword, and imposition of a Cap and Coronet of gold upon his head, as also by delivering unto him a verge of gold, we doe really invest.

A *MARQUESS*, that is, if you consider the very nature of the word, a Governor of the Marches, hath the next place of honour, after a *Duke*. This Title came to us but of late daies, and was not bestowed upon any one, before the time of King *Richard the Second*: For, hee made his minion *Robert Vere*, who was highly in his favour, *Marquess of Dublin*: and then it began with us to be a title of honour. For before time those that governed the Marches, were commonly called, *Lord Marchers*, and not *Marquesses* (as now we terme them. Henceforth they were created by the King, by cincture of the sword, and the imposition of the Cap of honor and dignitie, with the Coronet, as also by delivery of a Charter or writing. Neither will I think it much to relate here, that which is found recorded in the * *Parliament Rols*. When *John de Beaufort*, from being *Earle of Sommerfet*, was by *Richard the Second* created *Marquess of Dorset*, and afterwards by *Henrie the Fourth*, deprived of that title; what time as the Commons of England made humble suite in Parliament to the King, that hee would restore unto him the title of *Marquess* which he had lost: he opposed himselfe against that petition, and openly said, *That it was a new dignitie, and altogether unknowne to his Ancestours*; and therefore hee neither craved it, nor in any wise would accept of it.

Earles, called in Latine, *Comites*, are ranged in the third place, and may seeme to have come unto us from our Ancestours the Germans: For, they in times past, as *Cornelius Tacitus* writeth, had their *Comites*, Who should alwaies give attendance upon their Princes, and bee at hand in matters of counsell and authority. But others thinke, that they

Sigmundus Regni
Italici lib. 5.Afterward a
golden rod
or verge was
used.

Marquess.

* An. 4. Henr.
vic. 4.

they came from the Romans to us, as also to the Fraks, or French. For, the Emperours, when as the Empire was growne now to the full strength, began to have about them a certaine privie Counsell, which was called *Comitatus*: and then those whose counsell they used in warre and peace, were termed *Comites*: whence it is that in ancient Inscriptions, wee find oftentimes *COMIT. IMPR.* And in few yeares the name of *Comes*, grew so ripe, that it was given to all Officers and Magistrates that observed or gave attendance upon the said sacred or privie Counsell, or that came out of it: and from hence afterward the name extended to all those which were the Provosts or Over-seers of any matters of state. And Suida defineth *Comes*, to be *The ruler of the people*, as *Cuiacius* hath taught us: who also teachth us, that before Constantine the Great, the name of *Comes* was not in use, to signify any honour. But he, when he altered the forme of the Roman Empire by new distinctions, and endeavored to oblige many unto him with his benefits, and them to advance unto honour, ordained first the title of *Comes* without any function or government at all to be a title of dignitie: and this *Comes* had a certaine power and priviledge, for to accompanie the Prince, not onely when hee went abroad, but in his palace also, in his privie chamber, and secret roomes, to have libertie likewise to be present at his Table, and private speeches. And hereupon it is, that wee read thus in Epiphanius, *quis est autem in Basilica ad dextram Regis sedens*, that is, *Who so obtained of the King, the Dignitie of Comites*. At length, to them which were beholden unto him for this honourable preerment, hee granted other dignities with charge: and againe, upon those that were in place of Magistracie, and executed any office of State, either at home or abroad, he bestowed that title of honour, *Comes Domesticorum*, L. Great Master of the Household; *Comes sacrum largitionum*, L. High Treasurer; *Comes sacra vestis*, Master of the Wardrobe; *Comes Stabuli*, Master of the Horle; *Comes Thesauri*, Treasurer; *Comes Orientis*, Lieutenant of the East; *Comes Britannia*, *Comes Africa*, &c. Herchence it came, that ever since the name of *Comes*, imported Dignitie, and authoritie, or government, at the first temporarie, afterward for terme of life. Moreover, in proceesse of time, when the Empire of the Romans became rent into many kingdomes, this title yet was retained: and our English-Saxons, called them in Latine, *Comites*, and *Consoles*, whom in their owne language, they named *Galdopmea*, and the very same the Danes termed in their tongue, *Eorlas*, that is, *Honourable*, as Ethelward writeth, by which name somewhat mollified, they are called of us at this day, *Earles*. And verily for a long time, they were knowne by this name simply: at length, with addition also of the place over which they were put in authoritie. Neither as yet descended this honour to the next heire by inheritance. Where, by the way thus much I note, that the first hereditarie Earles in France, were the Earles of Britaine. But when William of Normandy had made conquest of this Land, and seated himselfe in the absolute government of this Kingdom, Earles began to bee *Fendall*, *Hereditarie*, and *Patrimoniall*, that is, *By fee*, or *Tennure by service*, *by inheritance*, and *by Lands*, who also, as it appeareth in ** Doomesday booke*, were simply without any addition at all, named Earles, as *Comes Hugo*, *Comes Alanus*, *Comes Rogerus*; *Earle Hugh*, *Earle Alan*, *Earle Roger*, &c. Afterwards, as wee may see in ancient Charters, Earles were created with the name of a place joyned unto them, and the third pennie of the Shire was assigned unto them. As for example, *Mawd the Empreffe*, daughter and heire to K. Henry the First, created an Earle in these words, as appeareth in the very Charter which I have: *I Mawd, daughter of K. Henry, and Ladie of the Englishmen, doe give and grant unto Geoffrey de Magnavil for his service, & to his heires after him by right of inheritance to be Earle of Essex, & to have the third pennie out of the Sheriffs Courts, issuing out of all pleas, as an Earle should have through his Countie in all things*. And this is the most ancient Charter that hitherto I have seen, of an Earles creation, Likewise Henry the Second, King of England her sonne, created an Earle by these words: *Know yee, that wee have made Hugh Bigod, Earle of Norfolk, to wit, of the third pennie of Norwic, and Norfolk, as freely as any Earle of England holdeth his Countie*. Which words, an old booke of Battaille Abbey expoundeth thus: *An usuall and ancient custome it was throughout*

In parastile
ad Codicem.

P. Pitheuius
Memorab. Cam-
panie.

* An authent-
ticall record
of the Exche-
quer.

* or Maunde-
vil.

all England, that the Earles should have the third pennie to themselves of the Provinces, whereof they tooke the name, and were called Earles. Semblably, another booke without name, more plainly: *The Shire or Countie hath the name of the Earle or Count, or else contrariwise, the Count of the Countie*. And Count or Earle he is, because he receiveth the third part of those things, that accrew or arise, by plea in every Countie or Shire: But all Earles reape not these fruits, but those to whom the King hath granted them by right of inheritance, or in their owne persons. And hereupon Polydore Virgil writeth truly, and according to the manner of our age. *It is a custome in England, saith he, that the titles of Earldomes be given at the Princes pleasure, even without possession of those places, from whence the very titles are taken*. And therefore the King is wont to give unto them, that possess nothing in that Countie, some certaine pension or summe of money out of his owne revenues, in lieu of the possession.

Earles were created in old time without any complement or ceremonie at all, but onely by delivering unto them a Charter. Under Stephen who usurped the kingdom, during the heat of civill war, many also tooke upon them the titles of Earles, whom the Historie of Waverlew Church, and others of that age calleth *Pseudo-Comites*, that is, counterfeit Earles, and *Comites imaginarios*, that is, Earles in conceit, whiles it reporteth unto us, that Henrie the Second deposed them. And King Iohn, was the first by my observation, that used in creating of them, the cincture of a sword. For Roger of Hoveden writeth thus: *King Iohn upon the day of his Coronation girded William Mareschall with the sword of the Earldome of * Strigulia*, and Geoffrey Fitz-Peter with the sword of the Earldome of Essex: who albeit they had bene called Earles before and governed their Shires, yet were they not girt with the sword of an Earldome: and upon that day they waited at the Kings table, wearing those swords by their sides. In the age next ensuing, there came up the imposition of a chaplet cap, with a Circlet of gold, that now is turned into a coronet with raies or points onely, and with a robe of estate. Which three, to wit, a sword with a girdle, a cap or chaplet with a coronet, and a mantle or robe of estate, are by three severall Earles borne before him, that is to be created Earle: and betwixt two Earles arraied also in their robes of estate, brought he is in his Surcoat unto the King sitting in his throne, where kneeling downe while the Patent or Charter of his creation is a reading: at these words, *This same T. we erect, create, constitute, make, appoint, and ordaine Earle of S. and we give and grant unto him the name, title, state, stile, honour, authority, and dignitie of the Earle S. and in so it by the cincture of a sword really doe invest: Then is the robe or mantell of estate done upon him by the King: the sword hung about his neck, the cap with the Coronet put upon his head, and the said Charter of his creation being read before, delivered into his hand*. But these matters are beside my purpose. Now, whereas it is growen to bee a custome, that he which is to be created Earle, if he were not a Baron before, should be made a Baron first; it is a new ceremonie come up of late daies, and put in use, since the time of King Henrie the Eighth. But among Earles, most honorable are they by many degrees, which are called *Counts Palatine*: For, as this terme *Palatine* was a name common to all them that had offices in the Kings palace; so *Count Palatine* was a title of dignity conferred upon him that before had bene an Officer *Palatine*, with a certaine roiall authority to sit in judgment within his owne Territorie. As for the Earle Mareschall of England: King Richard the second gave that title first to Thomas Mowbray Earle of Nottingham, whereas before they were simply stiled Marshalls of England and after the banishment of Mowbray, he granted to T. Holland Duke of Surrey substituted Earle Mareschall in his place, that he should carrie a rodde of gold enamelled blacke at both ends, when as before they used one of wood.

After Earles, next follow in order *Vicomites*, whom we call *Vicounts*: An old name this is of an office, but a new title of dignitie, not heard of with us before Henry the Sixth daies, who conferred that title upon I. Lord Beaumont. In the ranke of the superiour or chiefe Nobility, *Barones* have the next place. And although I am not ignorant, what the learned doe write of this words signification in Tullie, yet willingly will I accord to the opinion of Isidore and of an old Grammarian, who will have

Cincture of
the sword.

* Penbrachie,
in another
place.

Count Pal-
atine.

Pitheui.

Vicomiti.

Barons.

have Barones to signifie, hired souldiers. For, that place in *Hirtius* so well knowne, A touching the warre of *Alexandria*, seemeth cleerely to prove the same: and this it is. *They came running together to defend Cassius; for, hee was wont alwaies to have about him Barones, and a great many chosen souldiers weaponed, from which the rest are severed apart.* Neither dissenteth from this, the old *Glossarie* with Latin before Greeke, which interpreteth *Baro*, by *Vir* that is, a man. And throughout the laws of the Longobards, *Baro* is used for *Vir*, that is, a man. And for the Etymologies of this word which some have forged, I like the not. The French *Heralds* deduce *Barones* from the French tongue, as one would say, *Par-hommes*, that is, men of equall dignitie: our English Lawyers would have them to be as much, as *Robora belli*, that is, the strength of war, Some Germans say they import, as it were, *Banner-heires*, that is, Lord-bearing Banners. *Isidorus* saith, they are so termed, as a man should say, *capit* that is, grave or weighty. *Alciaus* deriveth them of *Berones*, an ancient people in Spaine, who were, as he saith, in times past, *waged souldiers*. But that derivation out of the German tongue is the better, wherein *Bar* betokeneth *Free*, and him that is his owne man, and at libertie. When this name first came into this Island I know not for certaine. The Brittaines doe not acknowledge it for theirs. In the English Saxon Lawes it is no where to be scene; nor found in the Saxon *Glossarie* of *Alfricus* among the Vocables or termes of honour; where, *Dominus* is translated *Laforde*, which wee have contracted short into *Lord*. The Danes called their Free-Lords, such as these Barons be at this day, *Thani*, and so they terme them still, as *Andrew Vellius* witnesseth. Howbeit, in Burgundie the use of the name hath bene of great antiquitie: For, *Gregorie Turonensis* writeth thus, *The Barons of Burgundie as well Bishops as other Leudes, &c.* In a fragment of the laws of *Canutus* King of English-men and Danes, was the first mention made of a Baron with us, so far as ever I could hitherto observe: and yet therein, according to the variety of copies we read indifferently these termes, *Vironis*, *Baronis*, and *Thani*. But that a Baron is meant therby, evident it is out of the Lawes of William the Conquerour, into which those ordinances of *Canutus* are in the Normans tongue translated under the name of *Baro*: and loe what the very words are: *Exercituaia vero, &c.* That is, *Let the Heriots or Relevies be so moderate, as that they may bee tolerable. Of an Earle, as decent it is, eight horses, foure with saddles, and foure without saddles: foure Helmes, and foure shirts of mail: eight launces or speares, and as many shields, foure swords, and withall 200. mances of gold. Of a Viron or Baron to the King, who is next unto him, foure horses, two with saddles, and two without saddles, two swords, foure speares and as many targets, one helme, and one coate of maille, and with fifty mances of gold.*

Also in the first time of the Normans, *Valvasores* and *Thani* were ranged in degree of honour, next after *Earles* and *Barons*: and the *Valvasores* of the better sort, if wee may beleve those that write *de Feudis*, were the very same that now Barons are. So that the name [*Baro*] may seeme to bee one of those, which time, by little and little hath mollified and made of better esteeme. Neither was it as yet a terme of great honor. For, in those daies some Earles had their Barons under them: and I remember that I read in the ancient Constitutions and ordinances of the Frenchmen, how there were under an Earle, twelve Barons, and as many Capitaines under a Baron. And certaine it is, that there be ancient Charters extant, in which Earles, since the comming in of the Normans wrote thus, *To all my Barons as well French as English, Greeting, &c.* Yea even Citizens of better note were called Barons. For, the Citizens of Warwick, in *Domesday* book, were named *Barones*: likewise, Citizens of London; and the Inhabitants of the *Cinque-ports* enjoyed the same name. But, some few yeares after, like as at Rome in times past, they chose Senators for their worth in wealth: so were they with us counted Barons, who held lands of their own by a whole Baronie: that is, 12. Knights Fees, and a third part of one Knights Fee: reckoning every fee, as an old book witnesseth, at 20.li. which make in all 400. marks. For, that was the value of one entire Baronie: and they that had lands and revenues to this worth, were wont to be summoned unto the Parliament. And it seemed to bee a dignitie with a jurisdiction: which the Court Barons, as they terme them, in some sort doe prove: yea

In *Pavaria*.
See *Gol-*
datus,
pag. 14.

Lords.

About the
yeere, 180.

Heriots or Re-
levies.

Haply, *Man-*
cuse, that is,
30. deniers.

Many Thanes
in England,
in the Con-
querours time.

Court-Barons.

yea and the very multitude that was of these Barons perswaded me, to thinke them to be Lords of this nature, as that they might in some sort minister and execute justice within their circuit and seigniorie, such as the Germans call *Free-heires*, and especially, if they had Castles of their owne. For then, they jumped just with the definition of that most famous Civilian *Baldus*, who defineth him to be a Baron, *whosoever had a meere and subordinate rule in some castle, by the grant of the Prince.* And all they, as some would have it, that held Baronies, seeme to have claimed unto themselves this honor: so that, as divers learned in our lawes are of opinion, a Baron and a Baronie, a Count or Earle and a Countie, a Duke and a Dutchie, were *Conjugata*: that is, termes as one would say, yoked together. Certes, in those daies, Henrie the Third reckoned

Math. Paris.
pag. 1262.

B in England 150. Baronies. And hereupon it is, that in all the Charters and Histories of that age, all noble men in manner be called Barons: and verily that title then was right honorable, and under the terme of Baronage, all the superiour states of the kingdom, as Dukes, Marqueses, Earles and Barons, in some sort were comprised. But it attained to the highest pitch of honor, ever since that King Henrie the Third, out of so great a number, which was seditious and turbulent, called the very best, by writ or summon, unto the high Court of Parliament. For he (out of a writer I speake of good antiquity) after many troubles and enormous vexations, betwene the King himselfe, & Simon of Montfort with other Barons raised, & after appeased, did decree and ordaine, that all those Earles and Barons of the Realme of England, unto whom the King himselfe vouchsafed to direct his writs of Summons, should come unto his Parliament, and none others. But that which he began a little before his death, Edward the First and his successeur, constantly observed, and continued. Hereupon, they onely were accounted Barons of the kingdom, whom the Kings had cited by vertue of such writs of Summons, as they termed them, unto the Parliament. And it is noted, that the said prudent King Edward the First, summoned alwaies those of ancient families that were most wise to his Parliaments, but omitted their sonnes after their death, if they were not answerable to their parents in understanding. Barons were not created by Patent untill such time as King Richard the Second created *Iohn Beauchamp de Holt* Baron of Kidderminster by his letters Patent, bearing date the eighth day of October, in the eleventh year, of his raigne. Since that time, the Kings by their Parliaments, and the putting on of the mantle or robe of honour, have given this honour. And at this day, this order of creating a Baron by letters Patent, as also that other by writs of Summons, are in use: in which notwithstanding they are not stiled by the name of Baron, but of *Chevalier*; for the Common law doth not acknowledge *Baron* to be a name of dignity. And they that be in this wise created, are called Barons of the Parliament, *Barons of the Realme*, and *Barons of honor*, for difference of them, who yet according to that old forme of Barons, be commonly called *Barons*, as those of *Burford*, of *Walton*; and those who were Barons unto the Count Palatines of *Chester* and *Pembroch*, who were Barons in fee and by tenure.

Baronage of
England.

E These our Parliamentarie Barons carie not the bare name onely, as those of France and Germanie, but be all borne Peeres of the Realme of England, Nobles, Great States and Counsellors: and called they are by the King in these words, *To treat of the high affaires of the kingdom, and thereof to give their counsell.* They have also immunities and privileges of their owne, namely that in criminall causes they are not to have their triall but by a Iurie of their Peeres: that they be not put to their oath, but their protestation upon their Honor is sufficient: that they be not empannelled upon a Iurie of twelve men for enquest *de facto*. No supplicavit can be granted against them. A *Capias* cannot be sued out against them: Neither doth an *Effoigne* lie against them: with very many other, which I leave unto Lawyers, who are to handle these and such like. Besides these, the two Archbishops, and all the Bishops of England, be Barons also of the kingdom, and Parliament: even as in our Grandfathers daies, these Abbats and Priors following:

Bishops, Ba-
rons.
Abbats, Ba-
rons of the
Parliament.

Abbats

The Abbat of	Glaftenburie.	The Abbat of	Waltham holy Crosse. A
	S. Augustines in Canterbury.		Shrewsburie or
	S. Peter in Westminster.		Salop.
	S. Albans.		Sircester.
	S. Edmonds-Bury.		S. Peters in Gloucester.
	Peterburgh.		Bardney.
	S. Iohn of Colchester.		S. Bennets of Hulme.
	Evelham.		Thorney.
	Winchelcomb.		Ramsey.
	Crouland.		Hyde.
	Batraile.		Malmesburie.
	Reding.		S. Marie in Yorke.
	Abindon.		Selbey.

The Prior of Coventric. The order of S. Iohn at Ierusalem, who commonly is called Master of S. Iohns Knights, and would be counted the first and chiefe Baron of England.

Unto whom, as still unto the Bishops, By right and custome is appurtened, as to Peeres of the Kingdome, to be with the rest of the Peeres personally present at all parliaments whatsoever, there to consult, to handle, to ordaine, decree, and determine, in regard of the Baronies which they held of the King. For, William the first, (a thing that the Churchmen of that time complained of, but those in the age ensuing counted their greatest honor) ordained Bishopricks and Abbaies, which held Baronies in pure and perpetual Almes, and untill that time were free from all secular service, to bee under military or Knights service, enrolling every Bishopricke and Abbay at his will and pleasure, and appointing how many souldiers he would have every of them to find for him and his successors, in the time of hostilitie and warre. From that time ever since those Ecclesiasticall persons enjoyed all the immunities that the Barons of the Kingdome did, save onely that they were not to be judged by their Peeres. For considering that according to the Canons of the Church, such might not be present in matters of life and death: in the same causes they are left unto a iurie of twelve men to be judged, in the question of Feit, But whether this be a cleere point in law or no, I referre me to skilfull Lawyers.

Vassalors or Vassalors in old time, stood in the next ranke after Barons: whom the Lawyers derive from *Valva*, that is, leaved doores. And this dignitie seemeth to have come unto us from the French: For when they had soveraigne rule in Italy, they called those *Valvasores* who of a Duke, Marquesse, Earle or Captaine, had received the charge over some part of their people: and as *Butelere* the civill Lawyer saith, had power to chastise in the highest degree, but not the Libertie of faires and mercates. This was a rare dignitie among us, and if ever there were such long since by little and little, it ceased and ended. For, in Chaucers time it was not great, seeing that of his Franklin a good yeoman or Freeholder, he writeth but thus:

A Sheriffe had beene and a Countour,
Was no where such a worthy Vassalour.

Inferiour nobles are Knights, Esquires, and those which usually are called *Generosi* and *Gentlemen*.

Knights, who of our English Lawyers be termed also in Latin *Milites*, and in all nations well neere besides, tooke their name of *Horses*: for the Italians call them *Cavallieri*, the Frenchmen, *Chevaliers*, the Germans *Reiters*, and our Britains in Wales *Margogh*, all of riding. Englishmen onely terme them Knights, by a word that in the old English language, as also of the German, signifieth indifferently a servitor or minister, and a lusty young man. Heereupon it commeth, that in the Old written *Gospels* translated into the English tongue, wee read, for *Christs Disciples*, *Christs Learning* *Cnyghts*, and else where for a Client or Vassall, *Inmyght*: and Bracton our ancient civill Lawyer

Lawyer maketh mention of *Radnights*, that is to say, *serving horsemen*: who held their lands with this condition, that they should serve their Lords on horsbacke: and so by cutting off a peece of the name, as our delight is to speake short, I thought long since, that this name of Knights remained with us. But whence it came, that our countrey-men should in penning of lawes, and in all writings since the Normans conquest terme those Knights in Latin, *Milites*, I can hardly see. And yet I am not ignorant, that in the declining time of the Roman Empire, the Denomination of *Milites*, that is, Souldiers, was transferred unto those that converting neere about the Princes person bare any of the greater offices in the Princes Court or traine. But if I have any fight at all in this matter, they were among us at first so called, who held any lands or inheritances, as Tenants in Fee, by this tenure, to serve in the warres. For those Lands were termed Knights Fees: and those that elsewhere they named *Feudatary*, that is, Tenants in Fee, were here called *Milites*, that is, Knights: as for example, *Milites Regis &c.* The Kings Knights, Knights of the Archbishop of Canterbury, Knights of Earle Roger of Earle Hugh &c. For that they received those lands or manors of them with this condition to serve for them in the wars, and to yeeld them fealty and homage: whereas others who served for pay were simply called *Solidarij* and *Servientes*, that is, Souldiers and Servitors. But these, call them *Milites* or *Equites*, whether you will, are with us of foure distinct sorts: The most honorable and of greatest dignitie be those of the Order of S. George, or of the Garter: In a second degree are *Banerets*: in a third ranke, Knights of the Bath: and in a fourth place, those who simply in our tongue, be called Knights, in Latin *Equites aurati*, or *Milites*, without any condition at all. Of S. Georges Knights, I will write in due place, when I am come to Windfor. Of the rest thus much briefly at this time.

Banerets, whom others terme untruely Baronets, have their name of a Banner: For, granted it was unto them in regard of their martiall vertue and prowesse, to use a foure square ensigne or Banner, as well as Barons: whereupon some call them and that truly *Equites vexillarij*, that is, Knights-Banerets, and the Germans, *Bannerheires*. The antiquitie of these Knights Banerets, I cannot fetch from before the time of King Edward the Third, when Englishmen were renowned for Chivalrie: so that I would beleve verily, that this honorable title was devised then first, in recompence of martiall prowesse, untill time shall bring more certainty of truth to light. In the publicke records of that time, mention is made among military titles, of Banerets, of Men at the Banner, (which may seeme all one) and of Men at armes. And I have scene a Charter of King Edward the Third, by which he advanced Iohn Coupland to the State of a Baneret, because in a battell fought at Durham hee had taken prisoner David the Second, King of the Scots; and it runneth in these words: *Being willing to reward the said Iohn, who tooke David de Bruis prisoner, and frankly delivered him unto us; for the deserts of his honest and valiant service, in such sort as others may take example by this present to doe us faithfull service in time to come; we have promoted the said Iohn to the place and degree of a Baneret: and for the maintenance of the same state, we have granted for us and our heires to the same Iohn, five hundred pounds by the yeare, to bee received for him and his heires, &c.* Worth the remembrance it is, to set downe heere out of Froissard the very maner and forme, whereby Iohn Chandos a brave & noble warrior in his time was made a Baneret. What time as Edward Prince of Wales, saith he, was to fight a field in the behalfe of Peter King of Castile against Henry the Bastard and the Frenchmen, Iohn Chandos came unto the Prince and delivered into his hands his own Banner folded and rolled up, with these words: *My Lord, this is my Banner, may it please you to unfold and display it, that I may advance it into the field this day. For, I have by Gods favour renewed sufficient thereunto.* The Prince then, and Peter King of Castile who stood hard by, tooke the Banner into their hands, unfolding the same, delivered it again unto him with these or such like words: *Sir Iohn, in the name of God, who bleste this dayes service of yours, that it may speed well and turne to your glorie, Beare your selfe manfully, and give prooffe what a Knight you are.* Having thus received the Banner, to his companies he went with a cheerefull heart: My fellow

Wherefore
Knights be
called in Latin
Milites.

Solidarij.

Banerets.

Feas. 2. Pat. 15. 8. 3. m. 22. and 23.

** Hominum ad vexillum.
* Hominum ad arma.*

Nobles of an
inferiour
ranke.
Knights.

low souldiers, quoth he, Behold there is my Banner and yours, in case yee defend it courageously as your owne. Of later time, he that is to be advanced unto this dignity, either before the battell, that hee may bee encouraged; or after the battell ended, that hee may receive due honor for his valour, bearing an ensigne of a long fashion, such as they call a Pennon wherein his owne armes are depainted in their colours, is brought between two elderly Knights, with trumpeters and Heralds going before, into the presence of the King, or his Regent or Lieutenant generall: who after good words and wishes imparting happie fortune, commandeth the tip or point of the said pennon to bee cut off, that of a long pennon it might bee made a foure square banner.

Knights of
the Bath.

Concerning Knights of the Bath, in all my readings hitherto, I could find no greater Antiquitie thereof, than this, that they were in use among the ancient French: and that Henrie the Fourth King of England, that day whereon hee was crowned in the Tower of London, dubbed 46. Esquiers Knights, who the night before had watched and bathed: unto every one of whom, hee gave greene side coats reaching downe to their ankles, with streit sleeves, and furred with miniver: also, they they were upon their left shoulder two cordons of white filke with tassels thereto hanging downe. These in former times were wont to be created, and selected out of the flower of Nobilitie (which had not before taken the degree of Knighthood) at the coronation of Kings and Queenes, and at their marriages: sometimes also, when their sonnes were invested Princes of Wales, or Dukes, or when they solemnly received the cincture or militarie girdle of Knighthood, and that with many ceremonies, which now for the most part are grown out of use. But in our daies, they that are called by the King to enter into this order (neither will I handle this argument exquisitely) the day before they are created, being clad in an Eremits gray weed, with a hood, a linnen coife, and booted withall, come devoutly to divine service, to begin their warfare there, as if they would employ their service for God especially: they suppe all together: and upon every one of them, there wait two Esquiers, and one Page: After supper, they retire themselves into their bed-chamber, where for each of them is prepared a prettie bed, with red curtains, and their owne armes fastened thereupon, with a bathing vessell standing close by, covered with linnen clothes, wherein after they have said their prayers, and commended themselves to God, they bathe themselves, that thereby they might bee put in mind, to be pure in bodie and soule from thenceforth. The next morrow, early in the morning awakened they are, and raised with a noyse of Muscical Instruments, and doe on the same apparell. Then the high Constable of England, the Earle Marshall, and others whom the King appointeth, come unto them, call them forth in order: and tender an oath unto them, namely, that they shall serve and worship God above all, defend the Church, honour the King, maintaine his rights, protect widowes, virgins, orphans, and to their power repell and put by all wrong. When they have sworne thus to doe, by laying their hand upon the Gospels, they are brought with state to morning prayer, the kings Musicians and Heralds going before, and by them likewise, they are conducted backe to their bed-chambers: where after they have devedsted themselves from their Eremites weed, they put on a mantle of martiall redde Taffara, implying they should bee Martiall men, and a white Hat with a white plume of feathers over their linnen coife, in token of sincerity, and tie a paire of white gloves to the pendant cordon of their mantle. This done, they mount upon Steddes, dight with sadle and furniture of blacke leather, with white intermingled, and having a crosse in the frontlet. Before every one of them rideth his owne Page, carrying a sword with a gilded hilt, at which there hang gilt spurs, and of either hand of them ride their Esquiers. With this pompe, and trumpets sounding before them, to the Kings Court they goe, where when they are brought by two ancient Esquiers to the Kings presence, the Page delivereth the Girdle and Sword hanging thereto, unto the Lord Chamberlaine, and he with great reverence unto the King, who therewith girdeth the Knight overthwart, and commandeth therewith two elder Knights to put on the Spurres, who in times past were wont

with

A with good wishes, and prayers to kisse his knees that was to bee Knighted. And these new Knights thus created, used in old time to bring up the service of meates to the Kings Table: after this, they dine altogether, sitting to one side of the boord, every one under the Escutcheon of his owne Armes fastened over his head. At evening praier they repair to the chapel, offer their swords upon the high altar, and by laying downe a piece of money redeeme the same againe. Now, as they returne from divine service, the Kings Master-Cooke sheweth them his knife, and admonisheth them to performe the part of good and faithfull Knights, otherwise he would to their shame and reproch, cut off those Spurres of theirs. Upon the Coronation day, in that solemne pompe, they accompanie the King keeping their places, with their Swords girt to them, and their spurres on, in Joviall blew mantles, as a man would say, in the colour of just Jupiter, as a fore-token of justice, having the knot of white filke made in forme of a crosse, with an hood upon their left shoulder. But of these complements (which my purpose was not to prosecute in particular) this may bee thought sufficient, if not superfluous.

Now as touching those Knights, who simply without any addition bee called, Knights, and howsoever they are in order ranged last, yet by institution they be first, and of greatest Antiquitie. For, as the Romans, a gowned nation, gave unto them that were entering into mans estate, a virile and plaine gowne, without welt or gard: even so, the Germans our Ancestors bestowed upon their young men, whom they judged meet for to manage armes, armour, and weapons. Which Cornelius Tacitus will informe you of, in these words of his: *The manner was not for any one to take armes in hand, before the State allowed him as sufficient for Martiall service. And then, in the very assembly of Counsell, either some one of the Princes, or the father of the young man, or one of his kinsfolke furnish him with a shield and a javelin. This with them standeth in stead of a virile gowne, this is the first honour done to youth: before this they seeme to bee but part of a private house, but now within a while members of the Commonwealth.*

Knights.

De moribus
Germanorum.

D And seeing that such military young men, they termed in their language (as we in ours) *Knechts*, from them I deeme, the originall both of name and institution also, ought to be fetched. This was the first, and most simple manner of creating a Knight, this the Lombards, this the Franks, this our countrymen, all descended out of Germanie in old time used. Paulus Diaconus reporteth thus; among the Lombards, *This is the Custome, that the Kings sonne dineth not with his father, unlesse hee receive Armes before from some King of a forraigne nation.* The Annals of France record, that the Kings of the Franks, gave armes unto their sonnes, and to others, and girded them with a sword: yea, and our *Aelfred*, as William of Malmesburie witnesseth, when he dubbed Athelstan his nephew, Knight, being a child of great hope, gave him a scarlet mantle, a belt or girdle set with precious stones, and a Saxon-sword with a golden scabbard. Afterwards, when as religion had possessed mens minds so, as that they thought nothing well & fortunately done, but what came from Church-men, our Ancestors a little before the Normans coming received the Sword at their hands. And this, Ingulphus who lived in those daies, sheweth in these words: *He that was to be consecrated unto lawfull warfare, should the evening before, with a contrite heart, make confession of his sinnes unto the Bishop, Abbat, Monke, or Priest, and being absolved, give himselfe to prayer, and lodge all night in the Church, and when hee was to heare divine service the morrow after, offer his sword upon the Altar: and after the Gospel, the Priest was to put the sword first hallowed upon the Knights neck, with his Benediction, and so when hee had heard Masse againe, and received the Sacrament, he became a lawfull Knight.* Neither grew this custome out of use streight waies under the Normans: For, John of Sarisburie writeth in his Polycraticon, thus; *A solemne Custome was taken up and used, that the very day when any one was to be honoured with the girdle of knighthood, hee should solemnly goe to Church, and by laying and offering his sword upon the Altar, vow himselfe perpetuall service, and obsequious dutie unto the Lord.* Peter also of Blois, writeth thus:

Lib. 1. cap. 22.

P

A

Epist. 94.

At this day young Knights, and souldiers receive their Swords from the Altar, that they might professe themselves Sonnes of the Church, and to have taken the Sword for defence of the poore, for punishment and revenge of malefactors, and delivery of their Country. But in proceſſe of time (saith he) it is turned cleane contrary. For, in these daies since they are become adorned with the Knights cincture, presently they arise against the Anointed of the Lord, and rage upon the patrimonie of Christ crucified. And as for this ceremonie, that they would be girt with a Sword, it may seeme no doubt to have proceeded from the militarie discipline of the Romans; because as they denied it unlawfull to fight with their enemy before they were bound to their militarie oath, by a drawn sword: even so, our Forefathers thought they might not go to warfare lawfully, before they were by this ceremonie lawfully authorized: according to which wee reade, that William Rufus King of England, was dubbed Knight, by Lanfranke the Archbishop. But this custome by little and little grew to disuse, since the time that the Normans, as Ingulphus writeth, laughed and scorned at it; and in a Synode at Westminster, An. 1102. a Canon passed, That no Abbats should dubbe Knights: which some notwithstanding expound thus, That Abbats should grant no lands of the Church to be held, by Knights service, or in Knights fee, or service.

Afterwards, Kings were wont to send their sonnes unto the neighbour Princes to receive Knighthood at their hands: thus, was our K. Henrie the Second, sent unto David King of the Scots, and Malcolm King of Scots unto our Henry the Second, and our Edward the first unto the King of Castile, to take of them Militarie or Virile armes: for, these termes and phrases they used in that age for the creation of a Knight. Then it was also, that besides the sword and girdle, gilt spurs were added for more ornament; whereupon at this day, they are called in Latin, *Equites aurati*. Moreover, they had the priviledge to weare & use a signet: for before they were dubbed knights, (as I gather out of Abendon Booke) it was not lawfull to use a seale: Which writing (quoth he) Richard Earle of Chester purposed to signe with the seale of his mother Ermenstrud, considering that all Letters which he directed (for as yet he had not * taken the Militarie girdle) were made up and closed within his mothers signet. In the age ensuing, knights (as it may be well collected) were made by their wealth, and state of living: For, they which had a great knights Fee, that is, (if wee may beleve old records) * 680.akers of land, claimed as their right, the ornaments and badges of knighthood: Nay rather under Henry the Third, they were compelled after a sort to be knights, as many as in revenues of their lands might dispend fifteen pounds by the year: so as now it seemed a title of burden, rather than of honour. In the year 1256. there went out an edict from the King, by verue whereof, commandement was given, & proclamation made throughout the Realme, that whosoever had fifteen pounds in land and above, should be dight in his armes, and endowed with knighthood: so the end that England as well as Italie might be strengthened with Chivalrie: and they that would not, or were not able to maintaine the honour of knighthood, should fine for it, and pay a piece of money. Hence it is, that in the Kings Records, we meet so often with this: For respit of Knighthood, *A. de N. Lett. Eyc.* Also such like presentments from the Jurors, or sworne Enquest, as this *R. de S. Lawrence* holdeth an entire and whole Fee, is at full age, and not yet Knight, therefore in misericordia, that is, To be fined at the Kings pleasure. To this time and after, unless I faile in mine observation, in the Briefes and Instruments our law when twelve men, or Jurors are named, before whom there passeth trial or prooffe de facto, that is, of a fact, they be called, *Milites*, that is, Knights, who have a compleat Fee, and those *Milites gladio cincti*, that is, Knights with cincture of sword, who by the King are girded with the belt of knighthood. At which time when the King was to create knights, as the said Matthew Paris writeth, he sat gloriously in his seate of estate, arrayed in cloth of gold of the most precious and costly Bawdkin, and crowned with his Crowne of gold, and to every Knight he allowed or gave 100. shillings, for his * harnessments. And not only the King, but also Earles in those daies created Knights. For the same author reporteth, How the Earle of Gloucester invested with a militarie girdle his brother William, after he had proclaimed a Turnement. Simon likewise de Montefort Earle of

Leiceſter,

* Beene dubbed Knight.

* Others say 100.

* Complements.

Leiceſter, did the same by Gilbert de Clare: Like as in France, (a thing that evidently appeareth by the Patent or Instrument of * Nobilitation) he that hath obtained such letters of * Ennobliſhment, is enabled to be dubbed Knight, and receive the girdle of knighthood at any Knights hand that he will himselfe. But since that time, hath no man with us beene created Knight, but either by the King himselfe, or the Kings eldest sonne, warranted before by authoritie received from his father, or else by the Kings Lieutenant, or Deputie Generall in the Campe, and that in consideration either of some valiant acts achieved, or exploits to be performed abroad in armes: or else of wisdom and policie at home. And verily a most prudent and wise order was this, that our Kings tooke, since they had not any Fees or Lands now to bestow upon them. Neither was their (I assure you) any thing of more validitie, to give an edge unto the courage of hardy men, and to bind unto them their best subjects, and such as had deserved well, (being otherwise worshipfully descended, and of honourable parentage, and withall sufficient for estate and living) than kindly and lovingly to adorne them with this high esteemed title of Knighthood, which was before time the name only of charge and function: when this right worshipfull title was by the Prince conferred upon one, adviſedly and for desert, it went (no doubt) for an ample reward, was prized as a benefit, and accounted among the tokens of honour. For, Knights in this manner dubbed, made this esteeme thereof, that in it consisted the gerdon of their vertue and valour, the praise of their house and family, the memorie of their stocke and linage; and lastly, the glory of their name. Infomuch, as our Lawyers have in their bookes written, That [Knight] was a name of dignitie, but so was not Baron. For in old time a Baron (if he were not of this order of Knighthood) was written simply by his Christian, or fore-name, and the proper name of his family, without any addition, unless it were of *Dominus*, a terme fitting Knights also. And this name of Knight may seeme to have beene an honourable additament to the highest dignitie, when Kings, Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, and Barons, requested to have the dignitie, and name together. Heere it likes me well to inferre, what Matthew Florilegus hath written concerning the creation of Knights in the time of Edward the First. The King (quoth he) for to augment and make a goodly shew of his expedition into Scotland, caused publike proclamation to be made throughout England, that whosoever were to be Knights by hereditarie succession, and had wherewith to maintaine that degree, should present themselves in Westminster, at the feast of Whitsontide, there to receive every one, the ornaments of a Knight, (saving the equipage or furniture that belongeth to horses) out of the Kings Wardrobe. When as therefore there flocked thither to the number of 300. young gallants, the Sons of Earles, Barons, and Knights, purple liveries, fine silke Scarfes, Roabes most richly embroidered with gold, were plentifully bestowed among them, according as was besitting each one: And because the Kings Palace, (large though it were) was streited of roome, for so great a multitude assembled, they cut downe the apple trees about the new Temple in London, laid the walles along, and there set up pavilions and tents, wherein these noble young gallants might array, and set out themselves one by one in their gorgeous and golden garments. All the night long also, these foresaid youths, as many as the place would receive watched and prayed in the said Temple. But the Prince of Wales, by commandement from the King his father, held his wake, together with the principall and goodliest men of this company within the Church of Westminster. Now such sound was there of trumpets, so loud a noise of minstrelsie, so mightie an applause and cry of those that for joy shouted, that the chaunting of the Convent could not be heard from one side of the Quire to the other. Well, the morrow after, the King dubbed his Sonne Knight, and gave him the Girdle of Knighthood in his owne palace, and therewith bestowed upon him the Duchie of Aquitaine. The Prince then, thus created Knight, went directly into Westminster Church for to grace with the like glorious dignitie his seers and companions. But so great was the preafe of people thronging before the High Altar, that two Knights were thronged to death, and very many of them fainted; and were readie to swoone, yea, although every one of them had three souldiers at least to lead and protect him: The Prince himselfe by reason of the multitude praesing up to him, having divided

* Ennobliſhment. * Nobilitatio-nu.

* King or
Queene.

the people by the meanes of steeds of service, no otherwise than upon the high Altar girt him
fore said companions with the order of knighthood. But in our daies, hee that receiveth
the dignitie of a Knight, kneeleth downe, and then the * King with his sword drawne,
slightly smiteth him upon the shoulder, speaking unto him these words withall, in
French, *Sois Chevalier au nom de Dieu*, that is, *Be thou Knight in the name of God*: and af-
terwards hee faith moreover, *Avances Chevalier*, that is, *Arise Sir Knight*. As for all
things else appertaining to this order, namely, what an excellent and glorious degree
this of knighthood was esteemed with our Ancestours, how noble a reward to brave
minded men, such as desired glorie and honour, it was reputed, how carefully they
kept faith & troth, considering it was sufficient, if they undertook or promised ought
as faithfull Knights or upon the faith of a Knight, how far they were from base gaine
and lucre, and what manner of payment or Aid is to be levied for Knights fees, when
as the Prince, the Kings eldest son should be invested in this honour, &c. I leave it for
others to write: as also, when they had so far offended, that being to suffer death ther-
fore, they were first disposed of their ensignes, and of their degree, to wit, their mili-
tarie Girdle ungirted, the Sword taken away, their Spurs cut off with an hatchet, their
Gantlets or Gloves plucked from them, and the Escutcheon of their Armes reversed:
like as in the degrading * Ecclesiasticall order, all the Ecclesiasticall ornaments, booke,
chalice, & such like are taken away. Let the curious also enquire, whether those knights
were truly by some termed Knights Bachelars, or whether Bachelars were of a mid-
dle degree between these Knights and Esquires: For, in the Kings Record are read, *The*
names of Knights, of Bachelars, and of Valets of the Earle of Gloucester, and of others. Where-
upon there be that would have Bachelars so called, as one would say, *Baf-Chevaliers*,
that is, knights of low degree: although other derive that name from the French
verbe *Battailer*, which signifieth *to combat or fight it out*. Withall, let them weigh
and consider, whether these dignities of knighthood in times past so glorious, (as long
as they were more rare, and bestowed onely as the reward of vertue) may not be vili-
fied, when it becometh common, and lieth prostitute (as it were) to the ambitious
humour of every one. Whereof in the like case *Æmilius Probus* complained long
fince among the Romans.

* Priests.

In darfo Pat.
51. H. 3.

Esquires.

Next in degree after these Knights, are Esquires, termed in Latine, *Armigeri*, that
is, *Costrels*, or *Bearers of Armes*: the same that *Scutiferi*, that is, *Shield-bearers*, and *Ho-*
mines ad arma, that is, *Men at Armes*: the Goths called them *Schilpor*, all of carrying
the shield: as in old time among the Romans, such as were named *Scutarii*, who tooke
that name either of their Escutcheons of armes, which they bare as Ensignes of their
descent, or because they were armour-bearers to Princes, or to the better sort of the
Nobilitie. For, in times past every Knight had two of these waighting upon him: they
carried his Morion and shield, as inseparable companions, they stuck close unto him,
because of the said Knight their Lord they held certaine lands in Escutage, like as
the knight himselfe of the King by knights service. But now a daies, there be five di-
stinct sorts of these: for those whom I have spoken of already, be now no more in a-
ny request. The principall Esquires at this day those are accounted, that are select
Esquires for the Princes bodie: the next unto them be knights eldest sonnes, and their
eldest sonnes likewise successively. In a third place, are reputed younger sonnes of
the eldest sonnes of Barons, and of other Nobles in higher estate: and when such
heires male faile, together with them the title also faileth. In a fourth ranke are re-
coked those, unto whom the King himselfe, together with a title, giveth armes, or
createth Esquires, by putting about their necke a silver collar of * SS. and (in
former times) upon their heeles a paire of white spurs silvered: whereupon at this
day in the West part of the Kingdome, they be called *White-spurs*, for distinction
from Knights who are wont to wear gilt spurs: and to the first begotten sonnes
onely of these doth the title belong. In the fifth and last place be those ranged, and
taken for Esquires, whosoever have any superiour publike office in the Common-
weale, or serve the Prince in any Worshipfull calling. But this name of Esquire,
which in ancient time was a name of charge and office onely, crept first among other
titles

* Esqes.

titles of dignitie and worship, (so farre as ever I could observe,) in the raigne of Ri-
chard the Second.

Gentlemen, or the common sort of Nobilitie be they, that either are descended
of worshipfull parentage, or raised up from the base condition of people, for their
vertue or wealth.

Gentlemen;

Citizens or Burgeses, be such as in their owne severall citie execute any publike
office, and by election have a roome in our High Court of Parliament.

Citizens.

Yeomen, are they whom some call, *Free-borne*, or *Free-holders*, and our law termeth,
Homines Legales, that is, *Lawfull men*, and who of *Free-lands* may dispend fortie shil-
lings at least by the yeare.

Yeomen;

Lastly, *Craftsmen*, *Artisans*, or *Workemen*, be they that labour for hire, and name-
ly, such as sit at worke, *Mechanicke Artificers*, *Smiths*, *Carpenters*, &c. Which were ter-
med of the Romans, *Capite censi*, as one would say, *Taxed or reckoned by the poll*, and
Proletarii.

LAWV COVRTS OF ENGLAND.



S touching the Tribunals, or Courts of Justice of England, there
are three sorts of them among us: for, some bee Ecclesiasticall,
others Temporall, and one mixt of both, which being the great-
est, and most honourable of all, is called by a name of no great
antiquitie, and the same borrowed out of French, *The Parlia-*
ment. The Anglo-Saxons our ancestours termed it, *Wittena-*
ge-moot, that is, *An assembly of the wise*, and *ge-pædnirr*, that is,
A Councell, and *Wiciljynod*, of the Greeke word *Synodus*, that is, *A great Synod or*
meeting. The Latine writers of that, and the ensuing age called it, *Commune Concilium*,
Curiam altissimam, *Generale placitum*, *Curiam magnam*, *Magnatum Convantum*, *Presen-*
tiam Regis, *Pralatorum*, *Procerumq;*, *collectorum*, *Commune totius Regni Concilium*, &c.
That is, *The Common councell*, *The Highest court*, *The Generall Plea*, *The Great court*, *The*
meeting of States, *The Presence of the King*, *Prelates and Peeres assembled together*, *The*
Publike Councell of the whole Kingdome, &c. And like as the Generall Councell of all
Erolia is named by Livie *PANATOLIUM*, so this may well be termed *PANANGOLIUM*.
For it consisteth of the King, the Clergie, the superior Nobles, the elect Knights and
Burgeses; or to speake more significantly after the Lawyers phrase, of the King, the
Lords Spirituall, and Temporall, and the Commons, which States represent the bo-
dy of all England. It is not held at set and certaine times; but summoned by the King
at his pleasure, so often as consultation is to be had of high affaires and urgent mat-
ters, that the Common weale may sustaine no damage; at his will alone it is dissol-
ved. Now this Court hath soveraigne, and sacred authoritie in making, confirming,
repealing, and expounding Lawes, in restoring such as be attained or outlawed to
their former estates, in deciding of the hardest controversies betwene private per-
sons, and, to speake at a word, in all causes which may concerne either the safetie of
the State, or any private person whatsoever.

Parliament.

The next Court after this, in the daies presently following the Normans comming,
and some good while after, was, *The Court of the King himselfe*, and the same kept in
the Kings house or *Pallas*, &c. accompanying the King whither so ever he retired or went
in progresse. For, in the Kings Palace, a place there was for the Chancellor and clerks,
such as were employed about writs or proccesses, and the seale for Judges also that han-
dled as well Pleas (as they terme them) pertaining unto the Kings Crown, as betwene
one Subject and another. There was also the Exchequer, wherein the Lord Treasurer,
Auditours, and Receivers sat, who had the charge of the Kings revenues, treasure, and
coffers. Every of these being counted of the Kings household in ordinary, had allowed
them from the King, both diet, and apparell. Whereupon Gotzelinus in the life of S.
Edward, calleth them, *The Lawyers of the Palace*, & John of Salisburie, *The Court Law-*

The Kings
Court.

yers. But beside these and above them all, was one appointed for administration of Justice, named, *Iustitia Anglie, The Iustice of England; Prima Iustitia, The principall Iustice, The Iusticer of England, and chiefe Iusticer of England*, who, with a yearly pension of a thousand Marks, was ordained by a Commission or Charter running in these termes, *The King, to all Archbishops, Bishops, Abbats, Priors, Earles, Barons, Sherifes, Forsters, and all other liege and faithfull people of England, greeting. Whereas for the preservation of our selves, and the peace of our Kingdome, and for the ministring of Iustice, in all and every person of our Realme, we have ordained our beloved and trustie Philip Basse, Chiefe Iusticer of England, so long as it shall please us; wee charge you upon the faith and allegiance that yee owe unto us, and doe straightly enioyne you, that in all things which concern the office of our foresaid Iusticeship, and the preservation of our peace, and Kingdome, yee fully attend, and assistant unto him, so long as he shall continue in the said Office. Witness the King, &c.*

But when as in the raigne of Henry the Third, enacted it was that the Common Pleas of the Subjects should not follow the Kings Court, but be held in some certain place: within a while after, the Chancery and the Court of the Pleas of the Crowne, together with the Exchequer, were translated from the Kings Court, and established in certain places apart by themselves: as some, I know not how truly, have reported.

Having premised by way of Preface thus much, I will proceede to write briefly somewhat of these Courts, and others that arise from them, according as they are kept at this day. And whereas some of them bee Courts of Law, to wit; the King Bench, The common Bench or Pleas, the Exchequer, the Assises, the Star-Chamber, the Court of Wards, and the Admirals Court: others of Equitie, namely; The Chancery, the Court of Requests, The Counsell in the Marches of Wales, and in the North parts; of every of these in due order, somewhat, as I have learned of others.

Kings Bench. The Kings Bench, so called because the Kings were wont there to sit as President in proper person, handleth the pleas of the Crowne, and many other matters which pertaine to the King, and the Weale publique: and withall it sitteth and examineth the errors of the Common Pleas. The Judges there, beside the King when it pleaseth him to be present, are, the Lord chiefe Justice of England, and other Justices foure, or more, as the King shall thinke good.

Common Pleas. The common Pleas hath that name because in it are debated the common Pleas betweene Subject and Subject, according to our law, which they call common Heerein give judgement. The chiefe Iustice of the common Pleas, with foure Justices assistants or more. Officers attendant there be, *The Keeper of the Briefes or writs, Three Protonotaries*, and inferiour Ministers very many.

Exchequer. The Exchequer tooke that name of a boord or table whereat they sat. For, thus writeth *Gervase of Tilburie*, who lived in the yeere 1160. *The Exchequer is a four cornered boord, about ten foote long, and five foote broad, fitted in manner of a table for men to sit round about it. On every side a standing ledge or border it hath of the breadth of foure fingers. Upon this Exchequer boord is laid a cloth bought in Easter terme, and the same of black colour, and rewed with stripes distant one from another a foote or a span. And a little after. This Court, by report, began from the very Conquest of the Realme, and was erected by King William: howbeit the reason and proportion thereof, taken from the Exchequer beyond Sea. In this are all causes heard which belong unto the Kings treasury. Judges therein, be The Lord Treasurer of England, The Chancellor of the Exchequer, The Lord chiefe Baron, with three or foure other Barons of the Exchequer. The servitours and Ministers to this Court are, The Kings Remembrancer, The Lord Treasurers Remembrancer, The Clerke of the Pipe, The Controller of the Pipe: Auditors of the revenues five: The Forrein Opposer, The Clerke of the Estreights, The Clerke of the Pleas, The Mareſhall, The Clerke of the Summons, The Deputie Chamberlaines Secundaries in the office of the Kings Remembrancer two, Secundaries in the office of the Lord Treasurers Remembrancer two, Secundaries of the Pipe two, Clerkes in divers offices foure, &c. In the*

other part of the Exchequer called the Receipt, these bee the Officers: *Two Chamberlains, a vice Treasurer, Clerke of the Tallies, Clerke of the Pels, Tellers foure, Tynners of Tallies two, Deputie Chamberlaines two: The Clerke for Tallies, The Keeper of the Treasury, Messengers or Pursuivants ordinarie foure: Scribes two, &c.* The Officers likewise of the Tenth and first Fruits belong to this Court, who were ordained, when as the Popes authoritie was banished and abolished, and an act passed, by which it was provided that the Tenth, and first fruits of Churchmens Benefices should be paid unto the King.

Beside these three Kings Courts for law, to cut off delays, to ease the subject also of travell and charges, King Henrie the Second sent some of these Judges and others yearly into every Shire or Countie of the Realme, who were called *Iustices Itinerant*, and commonly *Iustices in Eyre*. These determined and gave judgement, as well of the Pleas of the Crowne, as the Common Pleas, within those Counties whereunto they were assigned. For, the said King, as Matthew Paris saith, *By the counsell of his sonne and the Bishops together, appointed Iustices to fixe parts of the Kingdome: in every part three, who should sweare to keepe and maintaine the right belonging to every man, sincerely and uncorruptly.* But this ordinance vanished at length under Edward the Third: Howbeit, within a while after by Parliamentary authoritie, it was in some sort revived. For the Counties being divided into certain Circuits, as wee termethem, two of the Kings Justices together twice in the yeare ride about and keepe their Circuits, for to give definitive sentence of the Prisoners, and as we use to speake, to deliver the Goales or Prisons. Whereupon in our Lawyers Latin, they bee called *Iusticiarii Gaole deliberanda*, that is, Justices for Goale deliverie: as also to take Recognizances of Assises of new *Defeisme*, &c. whereof they be named *Iustices of the Assises*, to end and dispatch controversies depending, and growne to an issue in the foresaid principall Kings Courts, betweene plaintifffes and defendants, and that, by their Peeres, as the custome is: whence they are commonly called *Iustices of Nisi prius*, which name they tooke of the writs sent unto the Sheriffe, which have in them these two words, *Nisi Prius*, that is, Unless before, &c.

The Star-Chamber or the Court rather of Kings Counsell, wherein are discussed and handled criminall matters, perjuries, couſenages, fraud, deceit, riots or excesses, &c. This Court in regard of time is right ancient, and for dignitie most honourable. For it seemes that it may claime antiquitie ever since the first time that Subject appealed unto their Sovereignes, and the Kings Counsell was erected. Now, the Judges of this Court are persons right Honourable, and of greatest reputation, even the Kings Privie Counsellors. As for the name of *Star-Chamber*, it tooke it from the time that this Counsell was appointed at Westminster in a Chamber there anciently garnished, and beautified with Starres: For we read in the Records of Edward the Third, *Counseil en la Chambre des Estoilles, pres de la Receipt at Westminster*, that is *The Counsell in the Chamber of Starres, neere unto the Receipt at Westminster*. But the Authoritie thereof, that most sage and wise Prince Henry the Seventh, by authoritie of Parliament so augmented and established, that some are of opinion, though untruly, hee was the first founder of it. The Judges heere, are *The Lord Chancellor of England, The Lord Treasurer of England, The Lord President of the Kings Counsell, The Lord Keeper of the Privy Seale*, and all Counsellors of the State, as wel Ecclesiasticall as Temporal: and out of the Barons of the Parliament, those whom the King will call: *The two chiefe Iustices of the Benches*, or in their absence two other Judges. The Officers heerein are these, *The Clerke of the Counsell, The Clerke of writs and processe of the Counsell in the Star Chamber, &c.* And causes here are debated and decided not by Peeres according to our common Law, but after the course of Civill Law.

The Court of Wards and Liveries hath the name of Pupils or Wards, whose causes it handleth; was first instituted by Henrie the Eighth; whereas in former times their causes were heard in the Chancery and Exchequer. For, by an old Ordinance derived out of Normandie, and not from Henry the Third (as some doe write) when a man is deceased, who holdeth possessions or Lands of the King in chiefe by *Knights service*, as well the heire as his whole patrimonie and revenues are in the Kings power, tuition, and

Iustices Itinerant.

Star-Chamber.

Court of Wards.

and protection, untill he be full one and twentie yeares of age, and untill by vertue of the Kings briefe or letter, restitution and re-delivery be made unto him thereof: In this Court, the Generall Master sitteth as Judge: under whom are these, *The Supra-wisor, or Survivor of Liveries, The Attorney generall of the Court, The generall Receiver, The Auditor, The Clerke of the Liveries, The Clerke of the Court, Forie Fedaries, and a Messenger.*

There have sprung up also in these later times, two other Courts, to wit, *Of reforming Errors*: whereof the first is, to correct *Errors in the Exchequer*, the other to amend errors committed in the Kings Bench. The Judges in the former of these twaine, are the *Lord Chancellor*, and *Lord Treasurer of England*, with others of the Kings Justices whom they are disposed to take unto them. In the later, *The Justices of the Common Pleas*, and the *Barons of the Exchequer*.

Admirals
Court.

The Admirals Court handleth Sea matters. In this are reckoned the *Lord Admiral of England*, his *Lieutenant*, and a *Judge*: two *Scribes*, a *Serjeant of the Court*, and the *Vice-Admirals of England*. Now proceede we to the Courts of Equitie.

Chancerie.

The Chancerie drew that name from a *Chancellor*: which name under the ancient Roman Emperours, was not of so greates esteeme and dignitie, as wee learne out of *Vopiscus*. But now adaeas a name it is of highest honour, and Chancellors are advanced to the highest pitch of civill Dignitie. Whose name *Cassiodorus* fetcheth from crosse grates or lattices, because they examined matters, within * places severd apart enclosed with partitions of such crosse bars which the Latins call *Cancelli*. *Regard*, saith hee to a Chancellor *what name you beare: It cannot bee hidden which you doe within Lattices.* For you keepe your gates lightsome; your barres open, and your doores transparent as windows. Whereby, it is very evident, that he sate within grates, where he was to be seene on every side, and thereof it may be thought he tooke that name. But, considering it was his part, being as it were the Princes mouth, eie, and eare, to strike and dash out with crosse-lines latise like, those letters, Commissions, Warrants, and Decrees passed against law and right, or prejudiciall to the common-wealch, which not improperly they termed to cancell, some thinke the name of Chancellor came from this Cancelling: and in a Glossarie of latter time thus we read, *A Chancellor is he whose Office is, to looke into and peruse the writings and answers of the Emperour: to cancell what is written amisse, and to signe that which is well.* Neither is that true, which *Polydore Virgil* writeth, namely, that *William the Conquerour* instituted a *Colledge or fellowship of Scribes*, to write letters patents, &c. and named the Master of that Societie, *Chancellor*: considering it is plaine and manifest that *Chancellors* were in England before the Normans Conquest. How great the dignitie and authoritie of the *Chancellor* is at this day, it is better knowne than I can declare: but of what credit it was in old time, have here in a word or two out of a writer of good antiquitie. *The dignitie of the Chancellor of England is this, He is reputed the second person in the Realme, and next unto the King, with the one side of the Kings Seale, (whereof by his Office he hath the Keeping) he may signe his owne injunctions, to dispose and order the Kings Chappell as hee liketh, to receive and keepe all Archbishopsricks, Bishopsricks, Abbeies, and Baronies, void and falling into the Kings hand, to be present at all the Kings Councils, and thither to repaire uncalled: also that all things be signed by the hand of his Clerke who carrieth the Kings Seale, and that all things be directed and disposed by advise of the Chancellor. Item, that by the helpfull merits of his good life through Gods grace, he need not die, if he will himselfe, but Archbishop or Bishop: And heereof it is, that the Chancellor-ship is not to be bought.* The forme and manner of ordaining a Chancellor, (for that also I will note) was in the time of King Henry the Second, by hanging the great Seale of England about the necke of the Chancellor elect. But in King Henry the Sixth daies, this was the order of it, according to the notes I tooke out of the Records. *When the place of the Lord Chancellor of England is void by death, the Kings three great Seales, to wit, one of gold, and other two of silver, which remained in the custodie of the Chancellor, presently after his death are shut up in a wooden chest fast locked, and signed with the Seales of the Lords then present, and so conveyed into the Treasurie: From thence brought they are to the King, who in the presence of many Noblemen*

* Secretum, that is, the place of Judgement. Epist. 6. lib. 11.

Robert Fitz-Stephen, who lived under Henry the Second.

*Noblemen delivereth them into the hands of him that shall be Chancellor, and undertaketh the charge of executing the Office of Chancellorship, taking before an oath of him, well and truly to exercise the same: first he delivereth the great Seale of silver, then that of gold, and so the other of silver: who receiving the same bestoweth them againe in the chest: and being signed with his owne Seale conveyeth it home to his owne house, and before certaine of the Nobilitie, causeth the Kings Patents and writs to be Sealed. When a Chancellor is discharged of his place, he delivereth up into the Kings hands in the presence of the Lords and Nobles, those three Seales, first, the Seale of gold, then one broad Seale of silver, and so another of a lesse forme. Howbeit at this day one Seale and no more is delivered unto the Chancellor, neither is there mention any where made of these three Seales, but in the raigne of Henry the Sixth. To this Chancellors Office in proceesse of time much authoritie and dignitie hath been adjoynd by authoritie of Parliament, especially ever since that Lawyers stood so precisely upon the strict points of Law, and caught men with the traps and snares of their law termes; that of necessitie there was a Court of equitie to be erected, and the same committed to the Chancellor, who might give judgement according to equitie and reason, and moderate the extremities of law, which was wont to bee thought extreme wrong. In this Court there sitteth as President, the *Lord Chancellor of England*, and as assessors or assistants to him, twelve *Masters of the Chancerie*: whereof the chiefe and principall is the *Keeper of the Rolls* belonging to the same Court, and thereupon he is called *Master of the Rolles*. There belong also to this Court very many Officers, of whom some attend especially upon the Kings Seale, namely, *The Clerke of the Crown*, *The Clerke of the Hanaper*, *The Sealer*, *The Chauff-wax*, *The Controller of the Hanaper*, *Cursitors twenty foure*, *A Clerke for the writs of Sub-paena*. Others are attendant upon Bills of complaint there exhibited, to wit, *A Protonotarie*, sixe *Clerkes*, or *Attornies of the Court*, and a *Register*. There belong also thereto the *Clekes of the Petty Bag*, *The Clerke of Presentations*, *The Clerke of Faculties*, *The Clerke for examination of Letters Patents*, *The Clerke for dismissions*, &c.*

There is another Court also derived out of the Kings Privie Counsell, called *The Court of Requests*, which giveth hearing likewise, as in the Chancerie, to causes betweene private persons, but such as before are presented unto the Prince, or his Privie Counsell, as also to others. In this are employed certaine *Masters of the Requests*, and a *Clerke or Register*, with two *Attornies* or three. But as touching those Counsels held in the Marches of Wales and in the North parts, wee will speake with the leave of God in their due place.

Court of Requests.

As for Ecclesiasticall or Spirituall Courts there be two principall; to wit, *The Synode*, which is called *The Convocation of the Clergie*, and is alwaies kept with the Parliament: and the *Provinciall Synods* in both Provinces.

Ecclesiasticall Courts. See the Antiquitie of the British Church. Court of the Arches.

After these are reckoned the Archbishop of Canterburies Courts, to wit, *The Court of the Arches*: wherein sitteth as Judge the *Deane of the Arches*. He is called *Deane*, for that he hath jurisdiction in xiiij. Parishes of London, exempt from the Bishop of London, which number maketh a *Deanrie*; and *Deane of the Arches*, because the principall of his Churches is, *S. Marias Church* in London, the tower, steeple or lantern whereof is beautifully built of arched worke. He hath to doe with appeales of all men within the Province of Canterbury. Advocates there bee in this Court xvj. or more, at the pleasure of the Archbishop, all Doctors of the Law; two *Registers*, and ten *Proctours*.

The Court of Audience, which entertaineth the complaints, causes and appeales of them in that Province.

Court of Audience.

The *Prerogative Court*, in which the Commissarie sitteth upon Inheritances fallen either by the Intestate, or by will and testament.

The Court of *Faculties*, wherein there is appointed a chiefe President, who heareth and considereth of their grievances and requests that are petitioners for some moderation and easement of the Ecclesiasticall law, sometimes over-strict and rigorous; and a *Register* beside, who recordeth the Dispenfations granted.

Court of Faculties.

The

The Court of Peculiars, which dealeth in certaine Parishes exempt from the Bishops jurisdiction in some Diocesses, and are peculiarly belonging to the Archbishop of Canterburie. Other Courts of meaner account I willingly overpasse. Neither doe I wisely, I assure you, thus to entermeddle heerein: and yet Guicciardine in his Description of the Neatherlands hath given me a precedent hereof to follow.

Heere in this place my purpose was to have interferred somewhat, (so farre forth especially as concerned antiquitie) as touching the chiefe Magistrates, and highest Offices of England, as namely, *The Lord Chancellor* aforesaid, *The Lord Treasurer*, *The President of the Counsell*, *The Lord Keeper of the Privie Seale*, *The Lord high Chamberlain*, *The Lord high Constable*, *The Mareschall*, and *Seneschal or Steward of the Kings household*, &c. But understanding that others were in hand with these matters, so farre am I from preventing them, that right willingly I shall impart even to them, whatsoever in this behalfe I have observed.

Some man perhaps heere looketh, that I should out of Astrologicall rules, adde to the rest, under what Signe and Planet our Britaine is seated. And verily I will say somewhat to satisfie the Curious; for in those learned errors I have, I may tell you, in my youth taken some paines: although the Conjecturers of Astrologers touching this point are so divers, that the very diversitie may seeme to weaken the thing it selfe, and leave no place for the truth. M. Manilius an ancient Poet in this verse of his, seemeth to intimate, that *Capricorne* heere beareth rule in Britaine:

*Tu Capricorne regis quicquid sub Sole cadente
Expositum.*

Thou Capricorne doest governe all,
That lies to Sun at his down-fall.

Ptolomee, Albumazar, and Cardane, doe make *Aries* our Tutelar Signe; *Iohannes de Muris*, the Planet Saturne: The Frier *Perusator*, *Esquidus* and *Henrie Silen*, the Moone; for that, as they say, it is in the seventh Climate. Roger of Hereford, Thomas of Ravenna, Philologus, and Hispalensis, are of opinion *Pisces* governe us; and last of all Schonerus, and Piratus, (see how they all disagree) have with no better reason than the rest, subjected us unto *Gemini*.

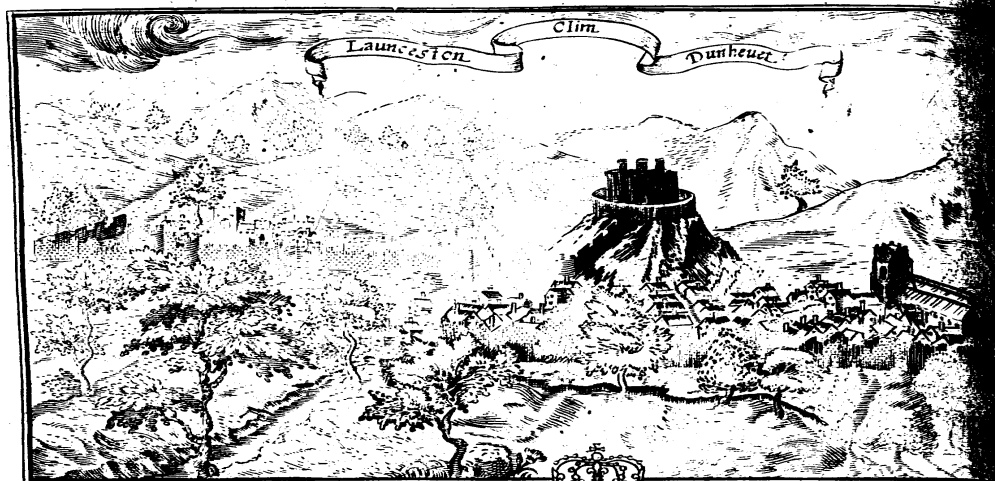
Now will I, by Gods assistance, make my perambulation through the Provinces or Shires of Britaine: wherein (according to the Preface that they used in old time, before they tooke any enterprize in hand) God grant me gracious good speed. In the severall discourses of every of them, I will declare as plainly, and as briefly as I can, who were their ancient Inhabitants; what is the reason of their names; how they are bounded; what is the nature of the soile; what places of antiquitie, and good account are therein; what Dukes likewise, or Earles have beene in each one since the Norman Conquest: And in this succession of Earles, to confesse frankly, by whom I have taken profit, I doe willingly and justly acknowledge that Thomas Talbot a most diligent Clerke in the Records of the Tower, a man of singular skill in our antiquities, hath given me much light.

And begin I will at the farthest parts in the West, that is to say, at Cornwall, and so passe over the other countries in order, imitating herein Strabo, Ptolomee, and the most ancient Geographers, who alwaies begin their description in the Western countries, as being first from the Meridian.

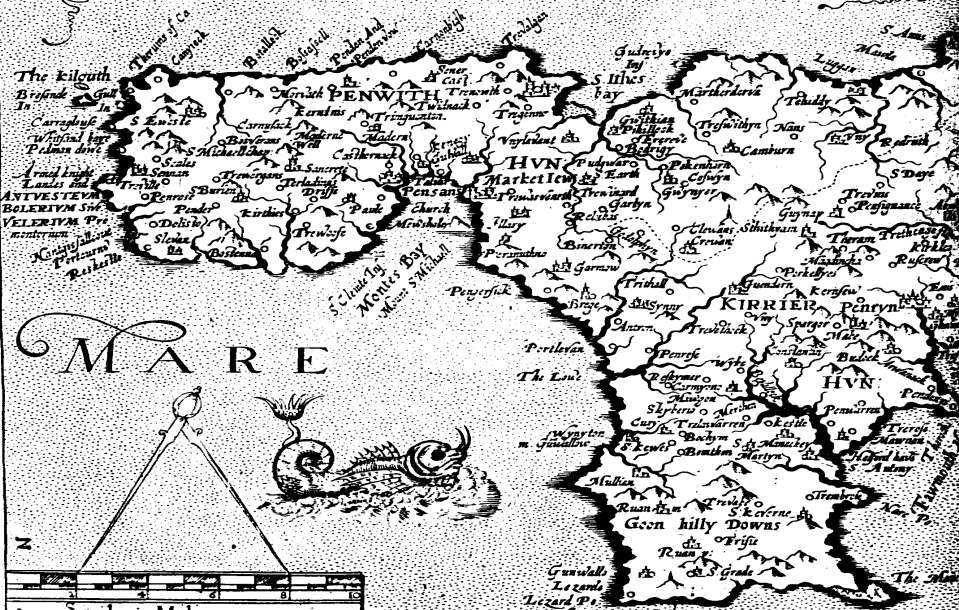
Under what
Signe in hea-
ven Britaine
lieth.

The order or
Method of
the worke
ensuing.

DANMONII.



MARIS HIBERN
VERGIVS PAR S



CORNWALL

OLIM PARS DANMONIORVM

William kyp Sculp.



N NICVM



DANMONII.

That Region, which according to the Geographers, is the first of all Britaine, and growing straiter still and narrower, shooteth out farthest into the West, and bath on the North side the Severne-Sea; on the South the British, and on the West, the Vergivian or Westerne Ocean, beating upon it; was in ancient time inhabited by those Britaines, whom Solinus called, DVNMONII, Ptolomee, DAMNONII, or (as we find in some other copies,) more truly DANMONII. Which name, if it bee not derived from those ever-continuing mines of tinne in this tract, which the Britans terme Moina; may seeme to come of the dwelling there under hils. For, their habitation all over this Country is somewhat low, and in valleys: which manner of dwelling is called in the * British tongue Dan-munith: in which sense also the Province next adjoining, in like respect is at this day named by the * Britans Duffneint, that is to say, Low valleys. Now whether the OSTIDAMNII, called also OSTAEI, and OSTIONES, of whom Strabo maketh mention out of Pitheas of Marfiles, be our Danmonij, I wish the studious searchers of Antiquity would weigh with themselves, and examine somewhat more diligently. For, seated they were, by their report, in the farthest parts of Europe, toward the West Ocean over against Spaine, not farre from the Isle Vxantissa, now called Vlhant, Which particulars every one doe very well, and in each point agree unto this Region of our Danmonij. And seeing that those Ostiones be called by Artemidorus COSSINI as Stephanus in his Cities seemeth to note, I wish likewise they would consider (because these people are termed also Corini) whether in stead of COSSINI, we are not to read CORINI: For, we read Fusij for Furij, and Valesij for Valerij. And surely, the Geographers have not so much as a glimpse where to seeke these Ostidamnij and Cossini, by the westerne Sea, if they be hence excluded. But the Country of this nation is at this day divided into two parts, knowne by later names of Cornwall and Denshire, whereof wee will speake in order.

CORNWALL.

Cornwall, which also by later Writers is called *Cornubia* in Latin, of all Britaine doth beare most Westward, and is inhabited by that remnant of Britans, which Marinus Scotus calleth *Occidentales Britones*, that is, Britaines of the West parts, who in the British tongue (for as yet they have not lost their ancient language) name it *Kernaw*, because it waxeth smaller

Corn and
Kern.

smaller and smaller in manner of an horne, and runneth forth into the Sea with little promontories, as they were hornes, on every side: For the Britaines call an horne, [Corn] and hornes [Kern,] in the plurall number: although others would have Cornwall to take the name of one *Corineus*, I know not what Companion of Brutus, and doe call it *Corinea*, according to this verse of a fabulous Poet;

Pars Corinea datur Corineo, de duce nomen

Patria, deq; viro gens Corinenfis habet.

To Capitaine Corineus, part was given, to hold by right:

Of him both coast Corinea, and people *Cornish* height.

* Percepsa.
or, Protopia.

But, no strange matter it is (if a man search Antiquities) for many places to have their denominations given them of such kind of scite as this. In Crete and * *Taurica Chersonesus*, there bee promontories termed, *Kerai promontoria*, that is, *Rams Foreheads*, because they shoote forth into the sea, after the fashion of Rams hornes. Semblably, *Cyprus* was of the Greekes in old time, called *Cerastis*, for that it butteth on the sea with promontories bearing out like hornes, so that it is no marvell, if the coast bee called *Kernaw*, and *Corn*, crookening inward as it doth, like unto an horne, and having divers smal capes and points sticking out, as it were hornes. Whereupon, when in the heat of the Saxons warre, many Britans retired themselves into this tract, trusting to the naturall strength of the place; for, they knew that the waies by land were hard enough to bee passed through by reason of mountaines, and crossed in divers places with armes of the Sea; that sailing likewise there, was comber some, because the places were unknowne: the Saxon being Conquerour, who called all forraigne things, and aliens or strangers, in their language *Wealh*, named the Inhabitants hereof *Cornweale*; and *Wetweale*. Hereof sprang the Latin name *Cornwallia*, and in the later age *Cornubia*, and in some writers *Occidua Wallia*. So farre it is off, that it should be called *Cornwallia*, of the Gaules that conquered it, which some there bee, that in flatterie of the French name and nation would uphold: who, if they were as quick-sighted at home, as they bee curious abroad, might find that their * Britaine lying upon the sea coast, opposite to this country, is so named of our Britan, and that *Cornovaille*, no small territorie therein, which speaketh the same language that our Cornishmen doe, tooke name of our country-men, that passed over hence to dwell there. For, as these our Britaines of the West parts, aided the Armorici of Gaule, inhabiting in that tract in their warres against Caesar; upon which occasion hee pretended a quarrell to invade Britaine, and they afterwards comming thither, as wee said before, changed the name of *Armorici*, and called it *Britaine*: so in the foregoing ages, readie they were, and ever at hand to helpe those Britaines their country-men against the French; and during the tempestuous troubles of the Danish warre, some of them put over thither also, and are thought to have left this name of *Cornovaille* behind them there. But to leave that *Cornovaille*.

Strabo.

This our Cornwall, as if nature made amends and recompence for the incroching in of the sea, is for the most part raised on high with mountaines, being in the vallies betweene of an indifferent glebe, with which the Sea weede, or reit commonly called *Orewood*, and a certaine kind of fruitfull Sea-sand, they make so ranke and battle, that it is incredible. The Sea coast, is beautified with very many Townes, able to set out a great fleet of Ships: the inland parts have rich and plenteous mines of tinne. For, there is digged out of them wonderfull store of tinne, yielding exceeding much profit and commoditie, where are made household pewter vessels, which are used throughout many parts of Europe in service of the table, and for their glittering brightnesse, compared with silver plate. The Inhabitants doe discover these mines by certaine tinne-stones lying on the face of the ground, which they call *Shoad*, being somewhat smooth and round. Of these Mines or tinne-works, there be two kinds: the one they call, *Lode-works*; the other *Stream-works*. This lieth in lower grounds, when by trenching they follow the veins of tinne, and turne aside now and then the streames of water comming in their way: that other, is in higher places, when as upon the hills they dig very deepe pits, which they call, *Shafts*, and doe under-

Orewood.

Tinne.

A mine. In working both waies there is seen wonderfull wit and skill, as well in draining of waters aside, and reducing them into one streame; as in the underbuilding, pinning and propping up of their pits: to passe over with silence their devices of breaking, stamping, drying, crasing, washing, melting, and fining the mettall, than which there cannot be more cunning shewed. There are also two sorts of Tinne, Blacke tinne, which is tinne-ore broken and washed, but not yet founded into mettall, and white tinne, that is molten into mettall; and that is either soft tinne which is best merchantable, or hard tinne lesse merchantable.

That the ancient Britans practised these tinne-works, (to omit Timæus the Historian in Plinie, who reporteth, That the Britans fetched tinne out of the Isle Ista, in wicker boats covered and stitched about with leather) appeareth for certaine out of Diodorus Siculus, who flourished under Augustus Caesar. For, hee writeth; that the Britans, who Inhabited this part, digged tinne out of stonie ground, and at a low water carried the same in carts, to certaine Ilands adjoyning. From whence Merchants transported it by ships into Gaule, and from thence conveyed the same upon horses within thirtie daies unto the spring-heads of the river * Eridanus, or else to the citie Narbone, as it were, to a Mart. Aethicus also, who ever hee was, that unworthily beareth title to be interpreted by S. Hierome out of the Slavonian tongue, infinuateth the very same, and saith, That hee delivered rules and precepts to these Tinne-workers. But it seemeth, that the English-Saxons neglected it altogether, or to have used the workmanship and labour of Arabians or Saracens. For, the Inhabitants in their language terme the mines *forlet* and given over, *Attal Sarifin*, that is, the leavings of the Saracens; if they did meane by that name, the ancient Panims.

Lib. 6. cap. 8.
c. 9.

* See

After the coming in of the Normans, the Earles of Cornwall gathered great riches out of these mines, and especially Richard brother to King Henrie the Third: and no marvell, sith that in those daies Europe had tinne from no other place. For, the incursions of the Moors, had stopped up the tinne mines of Spaine; and as for the tinne veins in Germanie, which are in Misnia and Bohemia, they were not as yet knowne: and those verily not discovered, before the yeere after Christs nativite, 1240. For then, (as a writer of that age recordeth) *was tinne mettall found in Germanie by a certain Cornishman driven out of his native soile, to the great losse and hindrance of Richard Earle of Cornwall*. This Richard began to make ordinances for these tin-works; and afterward Edmund his sonne granted a Charter, and certain liberties, and withall prescribed certaine Lawes concerning the same: which hee ratified or strengthened under his seale, and imposed a tribute or rent upon tin, to be answered unto the Earls.

These liberties, priviledges and lawes King Edward the Third, did afterwards confirme and augment. The whole common-wealth of those Tinner and workmen, as it were, one bodie, hee divided into foure quarters, which of the places they call *Foy-more*, *Black-more*, *Tremaynaile*, and *Penwith*. Over them all hee ordained a Warden, called, *L. Warden of the Stanniers*, of *Stannum*, that is, *Tinne*; who giveth judgement as well according to equitie and conscience, as Law; and appointed to every quarter their Stewards, who once every iij. weeks, (every one in his severall quarter) minister justice in causes personall betweene Tinner and Tinner, and betweene Tinner and Forrainger, except in causes of land, life, or member. From whom there lieth an appeal to the Lord Warden, from him to the Duke, from the Duke to the King. In matters of moment, there are by the Warden generall Parliaments, or severall assemblies summoned: whereunto Jurats are sent out of every Stannarie, whose constitutions do bind them. As for those that deale with tinne, they are of foure sorts: the owners of the soile, the adventurers, the merchants or regraters, and the labourers, called *F. the Spadiards* (of their Spade) who poore men are pitifully out-eaten by usurious contracts. But the Kings of England, and Dukes of Cornwall, in their times have reserved to themselves a præemption of tin (by the opinion of the learned in the Law) as well in regard of the proprietie, as being chiefe Lords and Proprietaries; as of their royall prerogative. Left the tribute or rent imposed, should be embellished, and the Dukes of Cornwall defrauded, unto whom by the old custome for every thousand pound waight of tinne there is paid forty shillings, it is by a Law provided, that all the

The Common wealth
of Tinner.L. Warden of
the Stannary.

Q

tin

tin which is cast & wrought, be brought to one of the foure appointed townes: where twice in the yeere it is weighed, and signed with a stampe, (they call it Coinage) and the said impost according paid: neither is it lawfull for any man before that, to sell or fend it abroad, under forfeiture of their tin. And now only tin is here found, but there with also gold and silver; yea, and Diamonds shaped, and pointed anglewise, smoothed also by nature it selfe: whereof some are as big as walnuts, and inferiour to the Orient Diamonds, in blacknesse and hardnesse only. Moreover there is found *Eryngium*, that is, *Sea Holly*, growing most abundantly every where along the shore. Furthermore, so plentifully is this countrey of graine, although not without great toile of the husbandman, that it hath not onely sufficient to maintaine it selfe, but also affoordeth oftentimes great store of corne into Spaine. Besides, a most rich revenue and commoditie they have by those little fishes that they call *Pilchards*, which swarming, as one would say, in mighty great skuls about the shores from Iuly unto November, are there taken, garbaged, salted, hanged in the smoake, laied up, pressed, and by infinite numbers carried over into France, Spaine, and Italie, unto which countreys they be very good chaffer, and right welcome merchandise, and are there named * *Fumados*. Whereupon Michael a Cornish Poet, and of Rhymers in his time the chiefe, in his Satyre against Henrie of *Aurenches*, Archpoet to King Henrie the Third, because he had unreverently plaied upon Cornishmen, as if they were seated in the nocke hole of the world; after much sarycally sharpnesse, came out with these round rhymes:

*Non opus est ut opes numerem quibus est opulenta,
Et per quas, inopes sustentat non ope lenta:
Piscis uti stanno nusquam tam fertilis ora.*

I need not here report the wealth, wherewith enrich'd it is,
And whereby alwaies to sustaine poore folke it doth not misse:
No coast elsewhere for fish and tinne, so plentiful, ywis.

And yet is Cornwall nothing happier in regard of the soile, than it is for the people; who as they were endued and adorned with all civilitie, even in those ancient times, (For by reason of their acquaintance with merchants sailing thither for tin, as Diodorus Siculus reporteth, they were more courteous toward strangers:) so they are valiant, hardie, wel picht in stature, brawny & strong limmed: such as for wrastling, (to speak nothing of that manly exercise, & feat of hurling the Ball which they use) so farre excell, that for slight and cleane strength together, they justly win the prize and praise from other nations, in that behalfe. Moreover, that Poet Michael, when as in the excessive commendation of his country men, hee had with gigging rimes refounded, how Arthur in his battels, gave them the honour, to give the first charge, he thus courageously concludeth in time.

*Quid nos deterret? si firmis in pede stemus,
Fraus ni nos superet, nihil est quod non superemus.*

What frighteth us? if footing sure we have on steady ground,
(Barre crafty sleights) there is no force but we can it confound.

And hereof peradventure ariseth the report so generally received, that Giants in times past inhabited this countrey. For, Havillan the Poet, who lived foure hundred yeares since, in describing of certaine British Giants, wrote pleasantly of Britaine, and the Cornish Giants, in this wise: ——— *Titanibus illa*

*Sed paucis famulosa domus; quibus udae ferarum
Terga dabant vestes, cruor haustus, pocula trunci,
Antra Lares, Dumeta thoros, caenacula rupes,
Præda cibos, raptus venerem, spectacula cades,
Imperium vires, animos furor, impetus arma,
Mortem pugna, sepulchra rubus: monstrisq; gererebas
Monticulis tellus: sed eorum plurima tractus
Pars erat occidui, terror majorq; premebat
Te furor, extremum Zephyri, Cornubia, limen.*

A lodge it was to Giants fell (though few) of Titans brood
Enthralled: whose garments were raw hides of beasts full wood;
Their blood they dranke, but cups they made of hollow blocks and stocks,
Caves

Cornish Diamonds.

Pilchards.

* Which peradventure be *Geryes* in Plinie.

Hurling.

Havillan in *Arbitrenio*.

Caves serv'd for cabins, bushes for beds, for chambers craggie rocks.
Prey slak'd their hunger, rape their lust, in murder tooke they Joy,
Force gave them rule, and furie heart, wrath weapons to annoy; (again
Fight brought the death, grieves were their graves: thus groan'd the ground
With mountain-Monsters. Howbeit, of them the number maine
Did pester most the westernne tract: more feare made thee agast
O Cornwall, utmost dore that art to let in Zephirus blast.

Now, whether this firme and wel compact constitution of the Cornish-men which proceedeth from the temperature of heat and moisture, is to bee referred unto the breeding-west wind and the Westernne situation thereof, like as wee see, that in Germanie the Baravians, in France the Galcoines who be farthest Westward are the ablest and most valiant, or rather to some peculiar and speciall reason of aire and soile; it is not my purpose to search curiously.

Now let us treat of the Promontories, Cities and Rivers, whereof ancient writers have made mention: For, this is my principall project: beginning at the furthest point, and so surveying first the Southerne shore, then the Northern, and lastly the course of the river * *Tamara*, which severeth this countie from Devonshire. The utmost Promontorie which lieth upon the Western Ocean, and is distant 17. degrees and no more in the globe or surface of the earth, from the Ilands called *Azores*, is

called by Ptolomee *Belerium*, and by *Diodorus*, *Belerium*; perhaps of the British word *Pell*, which signifieth a thing most remote or farthest off: by Ptolomee also the same is termed *Antivestium*, or *ANTIVESTAEVM*, by the Britans, I meane their *Bardie* onely or Poets, *Penringuad*; that is, the Promontorie of Bloud: For, the Welsh Historians name it *Penwith*, that is, the Promontorie on the left hand: The Saxons *Penip-ræopt*. For,

Stear with them betokeneth a peece of land shooting into the Sea: and hereupon all that Hundred of *Penwith* at this day is called by borderers in their language, *Pen von las*, that is, the end of the land: and in the same sence, we in English name it, *The lands end*; because it is the utmost part of the Iland toward the West. And if this Promontorie were sometimes called *Helenum*, as Volaterran and the late writers affirme, it came not of *Helenus* K. Priams sonne, but of *Pen-Elin*, which signifieth in the British tongue an *Elbow*, as *Ancon* doth in Greeke. And seeing that crooked and bending shores be termed of the Greekes *Amōnes*, as *Elbows*, for so Plinie witnesseth of *Ancon* in Italie, no absurditie is it at all, that this crooked and bowing shore should by the Britans in the same sence be called *Pen-elin*, and thereof that Latin name *Helenum* be derived. But as touching this name *Antivestium*, I was wont now and then to doubt, whether it favoured not of some Greek originall. For, seeing it was a common and usuall thing with the Greeks, to impose names upon places taken from the names of such as were opposite unto them, not only in Greece it selfe, where they have, * *Rhium*, and * *Antirrhium*, but also in the * *Arabian* gulf, where there is *Bacchium* and *Antibacchium*, as also upon the gulf of Venice, *Antibarium*, because it looketh towards

Barrium, lying over against it in Italie; I searched diligently whether any place named *Vestium*, lay opposite unto this our *Antivestium*: but finding no such thing, I betooke my selfe againe to the British tongue, neither yet can I here resolve my self. But the Inhabitants doe suppose, that this Promontorie heretofore ran further into the Sea; and by the rubbish which is drawne out from thence, the Mariners affirme the same: yea and the neighbor Inhabitants avouch, out of I wote not what fable, that the earth now covered there all over with the in-breaking of the Sea, was called *Lionesse*. In the utmost rocks of this Promontorie, when at a low water they be bare, there appeare veins of tin and copper, and the people there dwelling report, that there stood a watch-Tower upon it, from whence by the light of burning fire, there was a signe given unto Sailers: no doubt, ad *speculam Hispania*, according as Orosius hath put downe in writing, That the most high watch-towre of *Brigantia* in *Gallicia*, a rare and admirable peece of worke, was erected ad *speculam Britannia*: that is, if I well understand him either for the use of Mariners sailing out of Britaine toward Spaine, or else, over against the watch-Towre of Britaine. For, no other place of this Iland looketh directly

Westernne people most strong and hardie.

* *Tamei*.

Those of the *Tercieres* &c.

Belerium or *Antivestium*.

Seemeth what it signifieth.

* *Castellid* *Liparon*.
* *Mardi* *Me* *eba* or the *Red-sea*.

rectly to Spaine. Upon it there standeth now a little village named *S. Buriens* (in old time *Eglis Buriens*; that is, *The Church of Buriens* or *Beriena*) consecrated to *Buriens*, a religious Irish woman. For, this nation alwaies honoured Irish Saints as tutelar patrons of their owne, so all their Towns in manner they have consecrated unto them. This village King Athelstan, as the report goeth, granted to be a privileged place or Sanctuarie, what time as he arrived as Conquerour our of the * Iles of Syll: True it is, that he built here a Church, and that under William the Conquerour there was heere a Colledge of Chanons, unto whom the territorie adjoyning belonged. Neere unto this, in a place which they call *Biscaw Woune*, are to bee seene nineteene stones set in a round circle, distant every one about twelve foote from the other; and in the very center there is one pitched far higher and greater than the rest. This was some Trophee (or monument of victorie) erected by the Romans (as probably may bee conjectured) under the later Emperours, or else, by Athelstan the Saxon, when he had subdued the Cornish-men, and brought them under his dominion.

As the shore fetcheth a compasse by little and little from hence Southward, it lea-
reth in a bay or creeke of the Sea, in manner of a Crescent, which they call *Mount-
bay*: wherein, as the common speech goeth, the Ocean by rushing with a violent force
drowned the land. Upon this lieth *Moushole*, in the British tongue *Port Inis*, that is,
The Haven of the Island: For which, Henry of *Ticis*, a Baron in his time and Lord of
Alwerton and *Tiwernel* in this Country, obtained of King Edward the First the grant
to have a market there. Likewise there is seated upon this Bay *Pen-fans*, that is, *The
Cape or Head of Saints*, or as some thinke *Sands*, * a pretty market Towne: within a little
whereof is that famous stone, *Main-Amber*; which, being a great Rock advanced upon
some other of meaner size with so equall a counterpeize, a man may stir with the pith
of his finger, but to remove it quite out of his place a great number of men are not a-
ble: as also *Merkin*, that is, *Jupiters market*, (because Thursday anciently dedicated to
Jupiters is their market day) a dangerous roade for ships. And in the very angle and
corner it selfe *S. Michaels* mount, which gave name unto the foresaid Bay; sometime
called *Dinsol*, as wee find in the booke of Landaffe: the Inhabitants name it *Cary
Cose*, that is, *The hoary Crag or Rock*, the Saxons *Michel-top*, that is, *Michaels plat*,
as Master Laurence Noel, a man of good note for his singular learning, and who was
the first in our age that brought into ure againe and revived the language of our an-
cestours the Saxons, which through disuse lay forlet and buried in oblivion, hath
well observed. This Rocke is of a good height and craggy, compassed round about
with water so oft as it is floud, but at every ebbe joynted to the main-land, so that they
say of it, It is land and Iland twice a day. For which cause, Iohn Earle of Oxford, not
many yeeres ago, presuming upon the strength of the place, chose it for his chiefest
defence when he raised war against King Edward the Fourth, and valiantly held the
same, but with no good successe. For, his souldiers being assailed by the Kings for-
ces straightwaies yielded. In the very top heereof within the Fortresse, there was
a Chappell consecrated to *S. Michael*, the Archangell, where William Earle of Corn-
wall and Moriton, who by the bounteous gift of King William the First had great
lands, & large possessions in this tract, built a Cell for one or two monks, who avouch-
ed that *S. Michael* appeared in that mount: which apparition, or the like, the Itali-
ans challenge to their hill *Garganus*, and the Frenchmen likewise to their *Mi-
chaels* mount in Normandie. At the foote of this mountaine within the memorie of
our Fathers, while men were digging up of tin they found Spear-heads, axes, and
swords of brasse wrapped in linnen: such as were sometimes found within the Forrest
Hercinia in Germanie, and not long since in our Wales. For, evident it is by the
monuments of ancient Writers, that the Greeks, the Cimbrians and Britans used bra-
zen weapons, although the wounds given with brasse bee lesse hurtfull, as in which
mettall there is a medicinable vertue to heale: according as *Macrobius* reporteth
out of Aristotle. But happily that age was not so cunning in devising meanes to
mischiefe and murders, as ours is. In the rocks underneath, as also along the shore
every where breedeth the * *Pyrrhecorax*, a kind of crow with bill and feet red, and
not

S. Buriens.

* Silly, or
Sorlings.

A Trophee.

Barons of
Ticis.* Marine Am-
ber, that is,
Ambrose Stone.S. Michaels
mount.Michelsow.
Lau once - oel.Weapons of
Brasse.* Pyrrhecorax:
Cornish
chough.

A not, as Plinie thought, proper to the Alpes onely. This bird the inhabitants have
found to be an Incendiarie, and thevish beside: For, oftentimes it secretly conveierh
fire-sticks setting their houses a fire and as closely filcheth and hideth little pecces of
money. In this place the country is most narrow and groweth as it were into an *
isthmus, for it is scarce foure miles over from hence to the Severn or upper sea. A little
above this mount, there openeth a Creeke of good bredth, called of the mount,
Mountsbay, a most safe roade and harbour for ships, when the South and Southeast
winds are aloft and bluster, at a mid ebbe and returne of the Sea, six or seven fathom
deepe. More toward the East ariseth *Godolcan hill*, right famous for plentifull veins
of tin (they call it now *Godolphin*) but much more renowned in regard of the Lords
B thereof, bearing the same name, who with their vertues have equalled the ancient-
nesse of that house and linage. But that name in the Cornish language, came of a
white Aegle, and this family hath anciently borne for their armes in a shield Gules, an
Aegle dilpaled Argent, betwene three Flower-deluces of the same, id est Argent like-
wise in a shield Gules.

From *S. Michaels* mount Southward, immediately there is thrust forth a bi-land or
demi-Ile, at the very entrie whereof *Heilston* sheweth it selfe, called in their country
language *Hellas*, by reason of the salt water flowing thereto: a Towne of great resort
for their priviledge of marking and coinage of tin. Under which by the confluence
C and meeting of many waters there is made a lake two miles in length, named *Loo-
poolle*, divided from the Sea by a narrow banke running betwene, which whensoever
it is by the violence of waves broken thorow, a wonderfull roing of waters is heard
far and neere all over the country adjoining. And not far from thence there is to
be seene a militarie fence or rampier of a large compasse built of stones, heaped to-
gether and laid without mortar, they call it in their tongue, *Earth*; of which sort there
be others heere and there: raised, as I verily beleeve, in the Danish warre. Neither is
it unlike to those fortifications of the Britans, which *Tacitus* termeth *rudēs* & *informes*
saxorum compages, that is, *rude and unfavoured compacted piles of stone*. As for the said
D Demi-Iland, it selfe being of a good bignesse and replenished with villages, it is na-
med *Meneg*, and no doubt that *MENNA*, which out of *Cornelius* a writer of *An-
nals* (but whether he be *Tacitus*, I wor not) *Jornandes* in his *Geticks* describeth, and
is in some copies found written *Memma*. For, it is, as he saith, *In the utmost coast of
Britaine, having in it great store of mettall mines, very full of grasse and herbes, bringing
forth more plentifully all those things which serve for pastorage of beasts, rather than non-
ishment of men*. But where as he said, that it hath plenteous store of Mettals, it is now
so destitute, that it may seeme long since to have beene exhaust thereof. The Sailers,
at this day call the utmost South-West point thereof *Lisard*; *Pro-
montorie of the DANMONII*, add *OCRINVM*; *Aethicus* in that strange Geo-
graphie of his, *OCRANVM*; and he reckoneth it among the mountaines of the West

E Ocean. Which name whether it take of *Oera*, which by *Sext. Pompeius*, signifieth a
craggy hill, I dare not affirme. And yet among the Alpes, *Ocrea*, *Ocriscum*, and *Inter-
ocrea*, drew their denomination of their steepe and rocky site. But seeing that *Ochr*
betokeneth in the British tongue an *Edge*, what if I should thinke the name was gi-
ven to this Promontorie, because it hath a sharpe edge and groweth at the end pointed
in fashion of a cone? In the turning in of the shore from this *Meneg*, you meet with a
Bay very commodious for ships to harbour in, by reason of so many turnings, cones
and angled windings therein, receiving into it the little river *Vale*. Neere unto which
within the country, flourished sometime that ancient Towne *Voluba*, menti-
F oned by *Protolomee*: but it is long since either utterly decayed, or hath lost his name:
yet it remaineth partly in *Valemoonsh*; or *Falemoonsh* Haven. This Haven is as noble as
* *Brundisium* it selfe in Italie: of exceeding great capacity; for it is able to receive an
hundred ships, which may ride therein to a part by themselves, that out of never a one
of them the top of anothers Mast can be seene: and most safe withall under the wind,
by reason that it is enclosed on every side with brims of high rising banks. In the very
entrance of this Haven, there mounteth up an high and steep craggy rock, which the
inhabitants

* A narrow
passage be-
twene two
creeks or
armes of the
Sea.
Mountsbay.

Godolphin Hill.

The familie
of the Godol-
phins.

Loo poolle.

Memma, Ma-
neg.

Ocrinum.

The Lichard.

Voluba.

Falemoonsh.

* Brundisium.

inhabitants call *Crage*. The gullet on either hand, as well for the defense and safety of the place, as for terror to enemies, is fortified with block-houses: to wit, the castle of *S. Maudit* East-ward, and toward the West, the fort *Pendinas*, built both by King Henric the Eighth: Of which fortresses the * Antiquarian Poet writeth thus:

*Pendinas tenet asperi cacumen
Celsum montis, & intonat frequenter.
Mauditi quoque subidet rotundum
Castrum, & impetu fulminat furenti,
Portus ostia quâ patent Falensis.*

Pendinas mounted is aloft,
On craggy cliffe, and thundreth oft:
S. Maudit cke a castle round,
That stands beneath on lower ground
With gunshot makes *Fale* mouth resound.

But the Haven it selfe is by Ptolomee called *Ostium CENIONIS*, *The mouth of Cenion* ostium. *Cenio*, doublet of the British word *Genen*, which betokeneth a doore and entrance. And this to be true, the Towne *Tregenie* neere adjoining doth testifie: for it is much (if a man interpret it) as a little Towne by the Mouth. Upon the innermost creeks and nooks of this Haven, there stand some Townes: namely, *Peryn*, for a market well frequented, where *Walter Branscome* Bishop of Excester, in the yeare 1288, erected a Collegiat Church, (they call it *Glasnieth*) and twelve Prebendaries: *Armenak*, the seat of the ancient and noble family of the Killigrewes; *Truro*, in the Cornish tongue *Truru*, so called of three Streets encircled, as it were, with two rivers; a Maior Towne, as they call it, and endowed with many privileges, and coyneage of tin: also *Grampound*, which is seated farthest from the Haven, and neighbour to its Golden the inheritance of Tregian, a house ancient and well allied. But descending to the Havens mouth you may see *Fenten-Gollan*, in English *Harteswell*, lately the seat of *Carminow* a family anciently of high esteeme for bloud and wealth, between whom and the Lord Scrope two hundred yeeres since, was a plea commenced in the Court of Chivalry, for bearing in a shield Azure a Bend Or. Under which on the Sea side lieth the territorie of *Rosseland*; so named, as some thinke, as if it were a role plot: but as I suppose, because it is an heath or place of lings: for so *Ros* significeth in the British tongue. Whereof, *Rosse* in Scotland, and another *Rosse* in Wales have their names, as being tracts drie, hungry and barren: Howbeit, this heere, through the industrie of the husbandmen is more battle-ground and fruitfull. Beyond this *Rosseland* presently the Ocean (as the land retireth and giveth back) shooteth in and maketh a large Bay; they call it *Tru-ar-draith Bay*, which is by interpretation, *The Bay of the town upon the sand*: whereunto fall many fresh rilllets, amongst which that is principal which passeth by *Lanladron*, whose Lord *S. Serlo Lanladron* was summoned a Baron to the Parliament, in that age when the select men for wisdom and worth amongst the Gentrie were called to Parliament, and their posterity omitted if they were defective therein. Scarfe two miles from hence, whereas the river *Fawey* falleth into the Sea, lieth the Towne *Fowey*, *Feath* in Cornish, stretching out in length upon the sea banke: a Towne most renowned in former ages, for sea-fights: which the very armes of the Towne doe witness, as being compounded of the Cinque-ponts arms. By the haven it hath bulwarks on both sides built by King Edward the Fourth who shortly after being displeased with these townsmen of *Fowey*, for that when the warre in France was compounded, they practised piracy upon the French; took from them all their ships and furniture for shipping. Von the other bank over against it standeth *Hall*, situate on the hanging of an hill with a right pleasant vvalke, the habitation full well knowne of Sir *Reginald Mohun* Knight, of an ancient and noble house by birth, as descended from the *Mohunes*, of Somerset, and the Courtneys Earles of Devonshire. Farther within the countrie, and by the same river, *Vzella* mentioned by Ptolomee is seated: which townne having not lost altogether the old name, is at this day called *Left-ushell*. It stood anciently upon an high hill, where the old

The Mohuns.
Vzella.
Britans have
not the letter
X.

old castle *Leftmel* now sheweth his ruins: but it was removed lower into the valley. From the high situation it received the ancient name; for *Vchel* in the British tongue foundeth as much as [high] or [aloft]: whence * *Vxellodunum* also in France took the name, because the townne standing upon an hill had a very steep fall on every side. In the British storie, this is called *Pen-uchelcoit*; that is, *The high hill in the wood*: which some would have to be Excester. But the situation in Ptolomee, and the name remaining still, prove this to be the ancient *Vzella*. In these our dayes, a small townne it is and nothing populous, because the river *Fawey*, which aforetime was wont at every tide or high water to flow unto the very townne and to beare and bring in ships, hath his channell so choked and dammed up now with sands, coming from the tin-workes (where with all the havens in this province are like in proceffe of time to be choked up) as that it is hardly able to beare the least barge that is. Howbeit, the chiefe townne it is of the whole countie, where the Shiriffe sitteth judicially every moneth and determineth causes: and there the Warden of the Stannaries hath his prison. It enjoyeth also the privilege, by the bounteous favour, as themselves say, of Edmund Earle of Cornwall (who there in times past had his honor) to scale or coyne the tin. But there be two townes above the rest that hinder the light and eclipse the fame of this; to wit, on the East side thereof *Leskerd*, situate on the top of a very high hill, much frequented for the mercat, and renowned for an ancient castle there: and on the North side *Bodman*, which standeth on the side hand of it scarce two miles off: and is named (if I be not deceived) *Bosuenma* in the Cornish tongue, and *Bodminian* in old Deeds and Charters. This townne situate thus in no healthy seat between two hills, and lying out in length East and West, is for the mercat there kept, of great resort, for the inhabitants populous, beautifull enough for building, and of name for their privilege of coineage of tin: but more famous in ancient time for the Bishops See there. For, about the yeere of our salvation 905, when the State of the Church lay in this tract altogether neglected, by vertue of a decree from *Pope Formosus*, King Edward the Elder erected heere a Bishops See, and granted at that time unto the Bishop of Kirton, three villages in this countie, *Polton*, *Caling*, and *Lanwitham*, that from thence every yeere he should visit the people of Cornwall, to fetch out of them their errors: for, before time they did what they could to resist the truth, and obeyed not the Apostolicall decrees. But afterwards, in the furious heat of that terrible Danish warre, the Bishoprick was translated to Saint Germans. Hard by *Leskerd* lyeth that which sometime was the Church of *S. Guerin*, that is, (if you interpret it out of the British speech) *S. Leech* or *Physician*: where, (as writeth Asserius) King *Alfred* lying prostrate at his prayers, recovered out of a sicknesse. But when *Neotus* a man of singular holiness and learning, was afterwards entombed in the same Church, hee outshone the light of the other Saint, so as that in his memorie it was named *Neotestow*, that is, *The place of Neotus*, and now Saint Neoths: and the religious men that served God therein were named Saint Neoths Clerkes, and had for their maintenance rich and large revenues, as we may see in William Conquerours booke. Neere unto this, as I have learned, within the parish of Saint Clare, there are to be seene in a place called *Pennant*, that is, *The head of the vale*, two monuments of stone: of which the one in the upper part is wrought hollow in manner of a Chaire: the other, named *Otherhalfe stone*, hath an inscription of Barbarous characters, now in manner worne out, in this wise.

Vxellodunum
in France.

How the ha-
vens in
Cornwall
come to be
stopped up.

Leskerd.

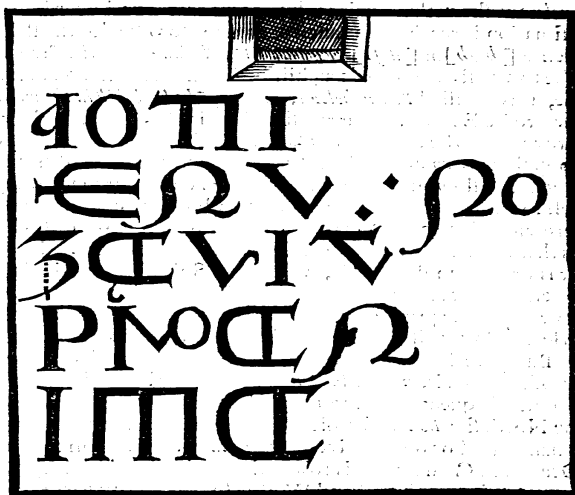
Bodman.

The books
of Win-
chester Ab-
bey.

S. Neots.

Doomesday.

Which



* *Dont*
Prayer for the
soule, &c.

Which as I take it, should be read thus, * *DONTI*: *ROGAVIT PRO ANIMA* unlesse it please you to give this conjecture, that those little prickes after *DONTI*, are the reliques of the letter E: and then to read it after this manner, *DONTI E* *ROGAVIT*, as if he had given and bestowed upon those religious men, that pecced land, for his soule. As for *Dont*, I cannot but thinke, he was that Prince of Cornwall, whom the Chronicles name *Dungeth*, and record, that he was drowned the yeece of our Salvation 872.

Wring-
cheefe.

Hard by, there is a number of good big rockes heaped up together, and under them, one Stone of lesser size, fashioned naturally in forme of a cheefe, so as it seemeth to be pressed like a cheefe, whereupon it is named, *Wring-cheefe*. Many other Stones besides in some sort foure square, are to be seene upon the plaine adjoining; of which seven or eight are pitched upright of equall distance asunder. The neighbour inhabitants terme them *Hurlers*, as being by a devout and godly error perswaded, they had bene men sometimes transformed into Stones, for profaning the Lords Day, with hurling the ball. Others, would have it to be a Trophée (as it were) or a monument, in memoriall of some battell: And some thinke verily they were set as meet stones or land marks, as having read in those authors that wrote of Limits, that those were gathered together of both parties, and the same erected for bounders. In this coast the river *Loo* maketh way and runneth into the sea: and in his very mouth giveth name to two little townes, joynd with a bridge together. That on the West side, which is the newer, flourisheth most: but the other Eastward, time hath much decayed: although it bee a Corporation retaining still the priviledge of a Maior and Burgesies. Somewhat West-ward from this lieth *Kilgarth* the habitation of the Bevis of especiall good note for antiquity and gentry. From *Loo* East-ward you meet with no memorable thing, but a small river passing by *Minbevet*, whereby is *Pole* the seat of the Trelawnies, to whom with others the inheritance of the Courtneys Earles of Devon accrewed: untill you come to the *Liver*, a little river stored with oysters, that runneth under *S. Germans* a small towne, unto which during the tempestuous Danish warre, the Bishops Sees were for feare translated: where there is a pretty Church dedicated unto *S. German of Auxiliodorum*, who rooted out the heresie of *Pelagius*, that

Hurlers.

The river
Loo.

S. Germans.

that sprung up againe in Britaine. Wherein after that some few Bishops had sitten, *Levinus* the Bishop of Kirton, who was in great favour with *Cnutus* the Dane, obtained by vertue of the Kings authoritie, that it should be joynd to his See. Since which time, there hath bene but one Bishop over this Province and Denhire both (whose seat is now at Exeter) and who appointed the little Towne of *S. Germans* to be the seat of his Suffragan. For at this day, it is nothing else but a village consisting of fishermens cabins, that make a good gainfull trade, by catching store of fish in the Ocean and rivers neere adjoining. Some few miles from hence, upon the same river standeth *Trematon*, bearing the name of a Castle, though the wall bee halfe downe; in which, as we find in *Domesday booke*, *William Earle of Moriton* had his Castle, and held his mercate, and was the capitall seat of the Baronie belonging to the Earles and Dukes of Cornwall, as we may see in the Inquisitions. When the *Liver* is past this Castle, neere unto *Saltash*, sometimes *Esse*, the habitation in old times of the * *Valtorts*, and now a Towne well replenished with Merchants, and endowed with many priviledges, it runneth into the river *Tamar*, the bound of the whole countrey: where at the East-side *Mont-Edgcombe*, the seat of that ancient family of the Edgcombs, siteth most pleasantly hath a prospect into an haven underneath it, full of winding creekes. Next unto which is *Anthony*, a Towne memorable for the elegant building thereof, as also for a fish poole that letteth in the Ocean, and yeeldeth sea-fish for profit and pleasure both: but more memorable it is for the Lord thereof, *Richard Carew*, who so maintaineth his place and estate left unto him by his ancestors, as that in ornaments of vertues he surmounteth them. Hitherto we have survied the South coast: now let us take a view of the Northern also. The Northern shore from the very lands end, having for a great length huge banks of sand driven upon heapes against it, shooteh out first to a Towne running into the sea with a long ridge like a tongue, called *S. Iles*, taking the name of one *Iia* an Irish woman that lived heere in great holinesse, for anciently it was named *Pendinas*. And from her the Bay underneath into which the little river *Haile* falleth, hath likewise received the name; for the Mariners call it *S. Iles Bay*. As for the Towne it selfe, it is now very small: For, the North west wind that playes the tyrant in this coast by drifts of sand hath so beaten upon it, that from thence it is translated and removed. From hence the countrey on both sides, still Eastward, waxeth broader, and the Northern shore with a more crooked winding holdeth on * North-east as far as *Padstow*: neither all that way along hath it any thing favouring of antiquity, save onely a Chappell built in the sands, to the honor of *S. Piran*, who being likewise an Irish Saint resteth heere entombed: unto whose Sanctitie a certaine vaine writer in his childish folly hath ascribed this miracle, that with three kine of his owne he fed ten Kings of Ireland and their armies eight dayes together: also that hee raised from death to life both pigs and men. Then, farther from the shore is seated *S. Columbs* a little mercate Towne, consecrated to the memoriall of *Columba* a right devout woman and a martyr, & not of *Columban* the Scot, as now I am given to understand for certaine, out of her life. Neere unto which, but more to the sea-ward, *Lhanheton* sheweth it selfe, the seat of the *Arondels*, a familie of Knights degree, who for their faire lands and large possessions were not long since called, the *Great Arondels*. In some places they are written in Latin, *De Hirundine*, and not amisse, if my judgement be ought: For *Hirundo*, that is, a Swallow, is named *Arondell* in French: and in a shield sables, they beare for their armes six Swallows argent. Certes, a very ancient and renowned house this is, spreading far and neere the branches of their kinred and affinity: unto the name and coat-armour whereof *William Brito* a Poet alluded, when as he describeth a valiant warriour out of this familie flying as it were upon *William of Bar* a French noble man, and assailing him, about the yeece of our Lord 1170. in these termes:

Trematon.

* *De vultu tertia.*

Edge-Combe.

Anthony.

S. Iles.

* *In Aquilone,*
nim, or
North.

S. Columbs.

Lhanheton.

Lib. 3. Philippus,
peius, of *William*
Brito,
who lived
ante 1170.

— *Hirundela velocior alite, qua dat*
Hoc agnomen ei, fert cuius in agide signum,
Se rapit agminibus medijs, clypeosq, nitenti

Quem

*Quem sibi Guilielmus leua pratenderat ulna,
Immergit validam praeacuta cuspidis hastam.*

* Swallow.

more swift, than bird hight * Arondell

That giv's him name, and in his shield of armes emblazoned well,
He rides amid the armed troupes, and with his speare in rest
(The staffe was strong, the point right sharpe) runs full upon the brest
Of Sir *Guillaume*, and pierceth through his bright and glittering shield,
Which on left arme he for defence, against him stoutly held.

Within a little hereof, there is a double rampire intrenched upon the pitch of a hill, with a causey leading thereto, named, *Castellan Denis*, that is, *The Dances Camp*; because the Dances when they preyed upon the coasts of England, encamped themselves there, like as they did in other places of this tract.

Castle Denis.

Nor farre from hence the river Alan, which also is called *Camb-alan*, and *Camel*, of the crooked windings & reaches that it makes in his course, (for so *Cam* with them doth signifie) runneth gently into the upper sea: which river at the very mouth thereof hath *Padflow* a pretty market towne, so called thort for *Petrockflow*, (as we read in the Histories of Saints) of one *Petrock* a Britan, canonized a Saint by the people: who, spent his daies here in the service of God, whereas before time it had the name of *Laderic* and *Laffenac*. The site of this Town is very commodious for traffique in Ireland, to which men may easily saile in foure and twentie houres. And much beautified it is with faire and goodly houses adjoyning thereto, in manner of a Castle, built by *N. Prideaux*, a Gentleman of ancient gentry in those West parts. At the Spring-head of this river *Alan*, standeth the little village *Camelford*, otherwise *Gaffelsford*. Leland Judgeth, it was in old time called *Kamblan*, who writeth also, That King Arthur our Hector was there slaine: For, as hee recordeth, peeces of armour, rings, horse-harness of brasse are otherwhiles digged up, and turned out of the ground by husbandmen: and the common fame that continued so many ages together, reporteth, that there was a notable battell fought in this place. There are also certaine verses in an unknowne Poet living in the middle time, of *Cambula* flowing with blood, shed in a battell of Arthur against Mordred: which I will not thinke much of my labour to put downe, because they may seeme to have bene written in no bad Poet's call vaine.

*Naturam Cambula fontis
Mutatam stupet esse sui, transcendit inundans
Sanguineus torrens ripas, & voluit in aquor
Corpora caesorum, plures natam videre
Et petere auxilium, quos nudis vita reliquit.*

Then *Cambula* was sore agast, the nature chang'd to see
Of his spring-head, for now the streame by this time gan to bee
All mixt with blood, which swelling high the banks doth overflow,
And carry downe the bodies' slaine, into the sea below.
There might one see how many a man that svum and helpe did crave,
Was lost among the billowes strong, and water was their grave.

And in very deed (not to deny this of Arthur) I have read in *Marianus*, that the Britans and Saxons fought in this place a bloody battell, in the yeere of our Lord 830, so that this may seeme a place consecrated unto Mars. And if it be true that Arthur here died, the same coast was destined unto him for his death, as for his birth. For, on the shore hard by, standeth *Tindagium* (the native place of that great Arthur) partly upon a little ridge, putting forth, as it were, a tongue; and partly within an Island, having both of them sometime a bridge betweene. They call it at this day *Tindagel*, beeing now a glorious ruine onely, in times past a stately Castle: of which a late Poet hath thus written:

*Est locus Abrini sinuoso litore ponti
Rupe situs media, refusus quem circuit aestus;
Fulminat hic laetæ turrito vertice castrum,
Nominis Tindagium veteres dixere Corini.*

There

Tindagel.

The place of
Arthurs Na-
tivity.

There is a place within the winding shore of Severne Sea
On mids a rocke about whose foote the tides turne-keeping play,
A Towry-topped Castle here farre thundreth over all,
Which Cornishmen by ancient name, *Tindagel* Castle call.

A long discourse it would aske to declare here out of *Geffries* history, how *Uther Pendragon* King of Britaine, within this Castle became enamoured upon the wife of *Gorlous* Prince of Cornwall, and how by Magick flights and delusions, taking the shape of her husband upon him, dishonourably violated the Ladie his wife, and of her begat the said renowned Arthur. It may suffice, if I doe but alleage the verses of our Poet *John Havillan*.

Arbitrarij.

*—Facie dum falsus adulter
Tindagel irrupit, nec amoris Pendragon aestum
Vincit, & omnificas Merlini consulit artes,
Mentiturq; ducis habitus, & rege latente,
Induit absens praesentia Gorlous ora,*

Whiles *Pendragon* that could not quench his flaming heats of love,
But beare a mind adult'rous still, by meanes brake in above
To *Tindagel*, disgui'd in face, by *Merlin* taught thereto,
By magicke and inchauntments strange, which all such feats could doe.
Duke *Gorlous* habite, absent then that was, he tooke by guile;
But preface of the King in place he did conceale the while.

This *Uther Pendragon* verily was a Prince flourishing in Martiall feats, & who valiantly upheld the decaying state of his countrey against the English Saxons: But whether came from him, *That Royall Banner in England*, having the portraict of a Dragon with a golden head, whereof neighbour nations have had experience, and which in far Lands beyond seas was under King *Richard the First*, terrible to the *Panims*, I dare not avouch: I would beleeve rather, it was received from the Romans, who a long time used the Eagle, after that *Marius* had rejected the Ensignes of a Wolfe, of *Minotaurus*, of an Horse, &c. And in the end under the latter Emperors, tooke them to the Dragon: Whereupon *Claudianus* writeth thus:

*Hij picta Draconum
Calla levanti*

The banners these advance aloft
With speckled necks of Dragons wrought.

And *Nemesianus*:

Signa micant sinuati, truces levis aura Dracones.

Their Ensignes shine, and Dragons tell that therein pictur'd show,
Wave to and fro with whiffes of wind, as it doth gently blow.

And *Hoveden* sheweth, that the West Saxon Kings used to carrie in their Banners, the Dragon. As for another Banner of the English, which *Beda* called *Tufa*, as also the Dances, *Reafan*, I will say nothing of them in this place, for feare I may seeme to have digressed too farre from my purpose. Betweene *Padflow* and *Tindagel*, inwardly there extendeth a fruitfull veine, and therein flourish the families of *Roscarrock*, *Carnsew*, *Penkevell*, *Carvell*, *Pencavell*, of ancient name and great respect in this coast.

Tufa, a Banner.

Forward still, Eastward on the same coast which is open, barren, and destitute of woods, there butteth upon the sea *Botereaux* Castle, corruptly by the common people, called *Boscastle*, built by the Lords *Botereaux*, who gave for their armes three Buffones, toads sable in a shield Argent. *William Botereaux* was the first famous man of honour in this familie, who married *Alice* the daughter of *Robert Corber*, whose sister was *Paramour* to King *Henrie the First*, of whom hee begat *Reginald* Earle of Cornwall. From this *William* there flourished eleven successively in order. But *Margaret* the onely daughter and sole heire of the last, was wedded unto *Robert Hungerford*: by whose posteritie the Inheritance is devolved upon the familie of the *Hastings*, which inheritance was augmented, and became more honourable by marriages;

Botereaux.

* De Sancto
Laud.

Stow.
Greenwils.

* Rous.

Stratton.

The river
Tamar.

* Canonici.
Launton.

Salt-Effe.

ges, that those of Botereaux contracted with the heires of the Noble houses, *De Mules, S. Laud*, commonly called, *S. Lo*, and *Thweng*.

From hence the Land shooting forth into the Sea, extendeth it selfe so farre northward, that the countrey carrieth here full three and twenty miles in breadth, between the two seas, which hitherto went on still drawn after a fort together into a narrow streit. In this greatest breadth of it, standeth *Stow* upon the sea-side, the ancient habitation of the *Greenwils*: which verily for Antiquitie and Noblenesse of birth is a famous house: out of which one Richard, in the reigne of William * Rufus, was for his valour much renowned among those worthy Knights that subdued Glamorganshire in Wales: and another of late daies surnamed likewise Richard, for his magnanimitie surpassing the Nobilitie of his blood, fighting most valiantly against the Spaniards at the Ilands of *Tercera*, lost his life, as I shall shew more fully in my Annals. To this *Stratton* lieth close to a market Towne of no meane name amongst the neighbours for their gardens, and good garlicke: and next unto it *Lancel* a faire new seat of that old family, *de Calvo monte*, or, *Chammond*.

The river *TAMARA*, now *TAMAR*, shewing his head here not farre from the northern shore, takerh his course with a swift running streame southward; encreased with the channels of many rivelets hard by *TAMARA*, a Towne mentioned by *Prohmee*, now called *Tamerton*, by *Tamar* an ancient Mannour of the Trevisions, to whom by marriage, the Inheritance of *Walesborough* and *Ralegh* of *Neclested* descended, also, by *Laustaphadon*, that is, *Saint Stephens*, commonly and contrarily *Launton*, which standeth farther off from his banke: a proper little Towne this is, situate upon the pitch of a prettie hill, which of two Burgards, *Dunnevet* and *Newport*, is grown as it were, into one Burgh. At the first comming of the Normans, *William Earle of Moriton*, built a Castle there; and had a Colledge of * Chanons, or Secular Priests, as appeareth out of *Domesday book*, wherein it is named *Launston*, of that Colledge no doubt, built in the honour of *Saint Stephen*, which *Reginald Earle of Cornwall*, about the yeere of our Lord 1150, turned into a monasterie. Against which worke of his, the Bishops of *Excester*, carried away over much and seduced with mane and private affection, were verie maliciously bent, as fearing exceedingly, lest day it would become a Bishops seat, and so prejudice and impeach their jurisdiction. At this day this Town is best knowne, by reason of the common Goale of the countrey, and the Assises, which are often times kept there.

Then *Tamar* looketh up unto an high hill stretched out in length, with a vast head, which *Marianus* nameth *Hengerdoun*, and interpreteth it, *Hengists mount*, commonly called, *Hengston-hill*. Which in times past was so plentifull of Tinne veins, that the countrey people had this by word of it, [*Hengston downe well wrought*,] [*Is worth London deere bought*.] And it was an ordinarie place, where every seven or eight yeere, the Stannarie men of *Cornwall* and *Denhire*, were wont in great frequencie, to assemble together, and to consult about their affaires. At this hill in the yeere of salvation DCCCXXXI, the British *Danmonij*, who calling the Danes to aid them of purpose to break into *Devonshire*, that they might drive out the English from thence, who already possessed themselves of the countrey, were pitiouly defeated by *King Egbert*, and slaine almost to the very last man. Beneath it *Tamar* leaveth *Halion* the habitation of the *Roufes*, anciently *Lords of Little Madbery* in *Devonshire*, and running nigh unto *Salt-Effe*, a prettie market Towne seated in the descent of an hill, which hath a Major and certaine priviledges of their owne, as I said erewhile, it containeth the river *Liver*, on which standeth that same Towne of *Saint German*, whereof I spake before. And now by this time spreading broader, dischargeth it selfe into the Ocean, making the haven which in the life of *Saint Indractus*, is called *Immerworth*, after it hath severed *Cornwall* from *Denhire*. For *Athelstane*, the first English King that brought this countrey absolute under his dominion, appointed this river to be the bound or limit, between the Britans of *Cornwal*, and his Englishmen: after he had remooved the Britans out of *Denhire*, as witnesseth *William of Malmsburie*, who calleth it *Tambra*. Whereupon *Alexander Necham*, in his *Praises of b*

vine wisedom, writeth thus: *Loegria Tamaris divisior Cornubiæ,*
Indigenas ditat pinguibus Ificiis.

Tamar that *Lhoegres* doth divide from *Cornwall* in the west,
The neighbour-dwellers richly serves with *Salmons* of the best.

The place requirerh here, that I should say somewhat of the holy and devout virgin *Urula* descended from hence, as also of the eleven thousand British Virgins. But such is the varietie of Writers, whiles some report they suffered martyrdom under *Gratian* the Emperour about the yeare of our Lord CCCXXXII, upon the coast of *Germanie*, as they failed to *Armorica*; others by *Attila* the Hun, that scourge of God, in the yeare ccccl. at *Coline* upon *Rhene*, as they returned from *Rome*; that with some it hath brought the truth of the History into suspition of a vaine fable. And as touching that *Constantine*, whom *Gildas* termeth a tyrannous whelpe of the uncleane *Danmonian Lianesse*; as also of the *Disforesting* of all this countrey, (for before-time it was reputed a Forrest) let *Historians* speake, for it is no part of my purpose.

As for the *Earles*, none of British blood, are mentioned but onely *Candorus* (called by others *Cadocus*) who is accounted by late writers, the last Earle of *Cornwall*, of British race, and as they which are skilfull in *Heraldry*, have a tradition, bare x v. Be-faunts v. IIII. III. II. and I. in a shield Sable. But of the Normans blood the first Earle was *Robert* of *Moriton*, halfe brother to *William Conqueror*, by *Herlotta*, their mother; after whom succeeded *William* his sonne: who when hee had sided with *Robert* of *Normandie* against *Henry* the First, King of *England*, being taken prisoner in battell, lost both his libertie, and his honours; and at last turned Monke at *Bermondsey*. Then *Reginald*, a base sonne of *Henrie* the First, by the daughter of *Sig Robert Corbet*, (for that King plied getting children so lustfully, as that hee was father of thirteene Bastards) was placed in his roome. This *Reginald* dying without issue male legitimate, *King Henry* the Second, having assigned unto his daughters certaine lands and Lordships, reserved this Earledome to himselfe, for the behoore of his owne youngest sonne *Iohn*, a child of nine yeares old, upon whom his brother *Richard* the First conferred it afterwards with other Earledomes. This *Iohn* afterward was crowned King of *England*, and his second sonne *Richard*, was by his brother *King Henry* the Third, endowed with this honour, and the Earledome of *Poitou*: a Prince verily in those daies puissant, in Gods service devout and religious, in war right valiant, for counsell sage and prudent, who in *Aquitaine* fought battels with fortunate successe, and shewed much valour: and having made a voyage into the Holy Land, enforced the *Sarazens* to make truce with him: the Kingdome of *Apulia*, offered unto him by the Pope he refused; the troubles and tumults in *England*, he often times composed; and in the yeare of our Lord MCCCXII. by some of the Princes Electours of *Germany* was chosen King of the Romans, and crowned at *Aquisgrane*: whereupon, as if he had made meanes thereto by money, this verse was so ripe and currant every where.

Nummus ait pro me, nubit Cornubia Rome.

For me, my money, saith this,
Cornwall to *Rome* now wedded is.

For, so well monied he was before, that one, who then lived, hath put downe in writing, that for ten yeares together hee might dispend one hundred markes a day. But when as *Germanie* was all on a light fire with civil warres among competitors of the Empire, he returned quickly into *England*, where he departed this life, and was interred in the famous Monastery of *Hales* which he had built; a little after that his first begotten son *Henry*, newly in his return from the Holy Land, whiles he was at divine service, devoutly occupied within a church at *Viterbium* in *Italy*, was by *Guy de Montfort*, son of *Simon Montfort* Earle of *Leicester*, in revenge of his fathers death, wickedly slaine. *Edmund* therefore, his second son succeeded in the Earledome of *Cornwall*, who died without any lawfull issue: and so his high and great estate of inheritance returned to *King Edward* the First, as who was the next unto him in blood, and * found (as our Lawyers say) his heire. Whereas that *Richard* and *Edmund* his sonne, Princes

R

Saint Vrula,
and 1100.
Virgins.

Earles of
Cornwall.

Robert de
Monte. 1175.

* Heres inven-
tus.
of

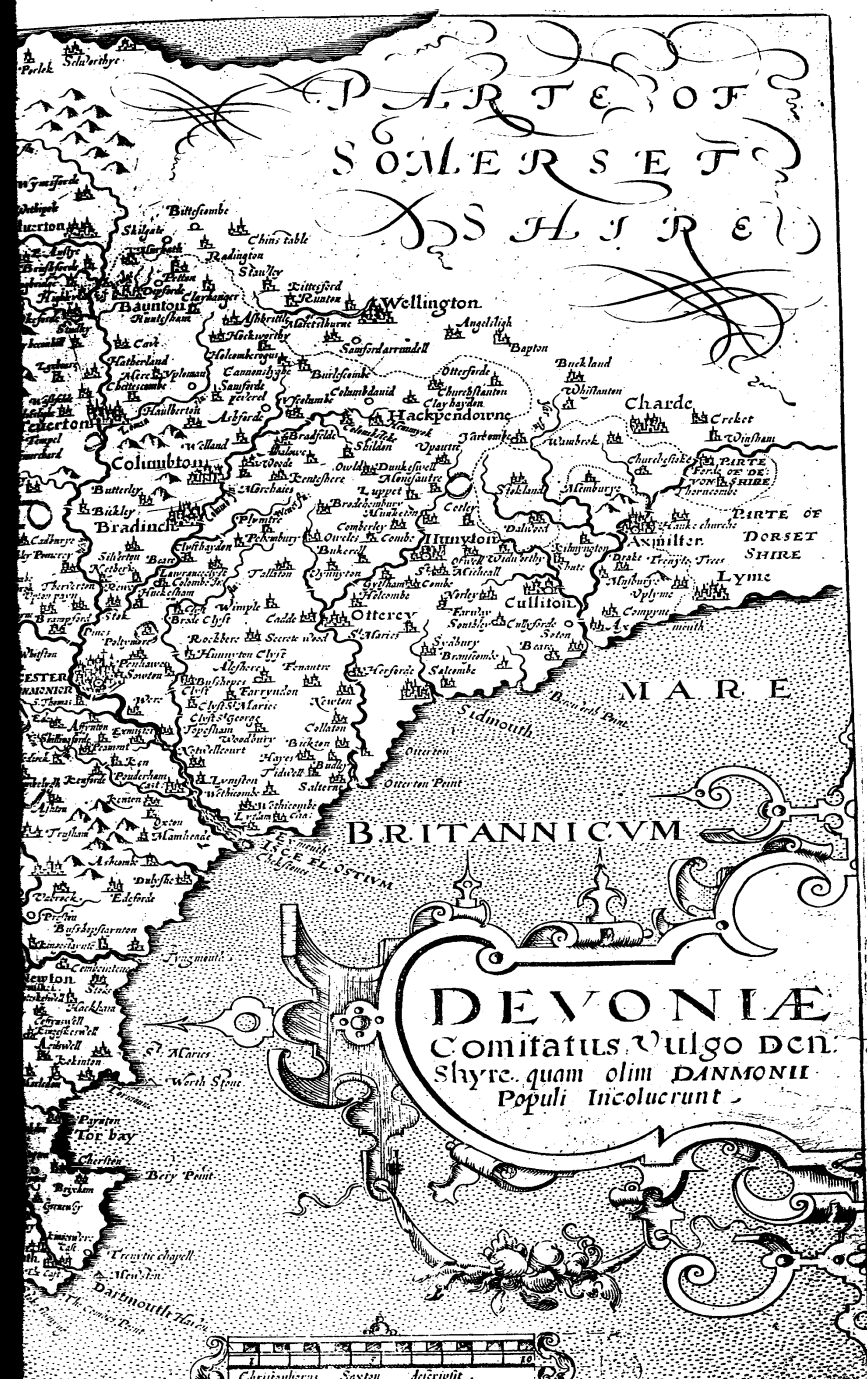
of the bloud Royall of England, bare divers Armes from the Armes Royall of England, to wit, in a shield argent, a Lyon rampant, gules crowned, or, within a border fa-
bles Bezante, I have with others oftentimes much marvelled at: neither (I assure you)
can I allage any other reason, but that they in this point imitated the house Royall
of France, (for the manner of bearing Armes came from the French men unto us.)
For, the younger sonnes of the Kings of France, even to the time wee now speake of,
bare other coats than the Kings themselves did, as we may see in the family of *Per-*
mandois, Dreux, and *Courtney*: and as Robert Duke of Burgundy, brother to Henrie
the First, King of France, tooke unto him the ancient shield of the Dukes of Burgun-
die: so we may well thinke, that this Richard having received the Earledome of
Poitou, from Henry the Third his brother, assumed unto him that Lyon gules crow-
ned, which belonged to the Earles of *Poitou* before him, (as the French writers doe
record) and added thereto the border garnished with Befaunts, out of the ancient coat
of the Earles of Cornwall. For so soone as the younger sonnes of the Kings of France
began to beare the Armes of France with differences, semblably they did among us,
and began first at Edward the First his children. But whither am I carried away from
my purposed matter, as forgetting my selfe in the delight I take of mine owne studie
and profession? When Cornwall was thus reverted unto the Crowne, King Edward
the Second, who had received from his father faire lands and possessions here, be-
stowed the title of Earle of Cornwall, upon *Piers Gaveston* a Gascon, who had ensla-
ved his youth by the allurements of corrupt life: But when as hee for corrupting the
Prince, and for other heinous crimes, was by the Nobles intercepted, and beheaded;
there succeeded him Iohn of *Eltham*, a younger sonne of Edward the Second, advan-
ced thereto by his brother Edward the Third, who dying young, and without issue
also, Edward the Third erected Cornwall into a Dukedome, and invested Edward
his sonne a Prince most accomplished with martiall prowesse, in the yeare of Christ
1336. Duke of Cornwall, by a wreath on his head, a Ring upon his finger, and a silver vey.
Since which time, that I may note so much under warrant of record, (let the skilfull
Lawyers judge thereof) the King of Englands eldest sonne is reputed Duke of Corn-
wall by birth, and by vertue of a speciall Act, the very first day of his nativite is pre-
sumed and taken to be of full and perfect age, so that he may sue that day for his live-
rie of the said Dukedome, and ought by right to obaine the same, as well as if hee had
beene full one and twentie yeares old: and he hath his Royalries in certaine actions,
in Stannary matters, in wracks at sea, customes, &c. yea, and divers ministers or offi-
cers assigned unto him, for these and such like matters. But more plainly, and fully in-
structed are we in these points by Richard Carew of *Anthony*, a Gentleman innobled
no lesse in regard of his Parentage, and descent, than for his vertue, and learning, who
hath published, and perfected the description of this countrey more at large, and not
in a slight, and meane manner, whom I must needs acknowledge to have given me
much light herein.

* *Bande d'Or*
de d'Azur ala
bordeure de
Guzules.
Memoriales de
Aquitaine.

Dukes of
Cornwall.

Orig. 35. H. 6.

There be in this Countie Parishes 161.



DENSHIRE.



He neerer or hithermore region of the Danmonians, that I speake of, is now commonly called Denshire, by the Cornish-Britaines *Deninan*, and by the Welsh Britaines *Duffneint*, that is, *Low valletes*, for that the people dwell for the most part beneath in vales: by the English Saxons *Deven-schipe*, whereof grew the Latine name *Devonia*, and by that contraction, which the vulgar people useth, Denshire, and not of the Danes, as some smatterers of meane knowledge most stisly maintaine: a countrey which as it extendeth it selfe both waies wider than Cornwall, so is it harborous on either side with more commodious Havens, no lesse enriched with tin mines, especially West-ward; garnished with pleasanter meadows, sightly with greater store of woods, and passing well replenished with Townes, and buildings. But the soile in some places againe, is as leane, and barren: which not withstanding yieldeeth fruit to the Husbandman plentifully, so that he be skilfull in husbandry, and both can take paines, and be able withall to defray the cost. Neither is there in all England almost any place where the ground requireth greater charges: For, in most parts thereof it groweth in manner barren, if it be not overstrewn, and mingled with a certaine sand from the Sea, which is of great efficacie to procure fertilitie, by quickning, as it were, and giving life unto the glebe: and therefore in places far from the shore it is bought at a deare rate.

Sand, making grounds fruitful.

In describing of this region, I will first travell over the West-side, as the river Tamara runneth along, and then the South coast which bordereth on the Ocean: From whence by the Easterne bounds where it confineth upon Dorset, & Sommerfet shires, I will returne backe unto the Northern, which is hemmed in with the Severne Sea.

Tamar which divideth these two shires, first on this part receiveth into it from the East a rivelet called Lid, which passeth by *Coriton*, and *K. Sidenham* small townlets, but which have given surnames to ancient, and worshipfull families, to *Lidstow* a little mercate Towne, and *Lidford*, now a small village, but in ancient time, a famous Towne, which in the yeare 997. was most grievously shaken, and dispoiled by the furious rage of the Danes, (which as it is written in that booke, whereby William the First tooke the survey and value of England) was not wont to be rated and assessed at any other time, nor otherwise than London was. That little river Lid, here at the bridge, gathered into a streight, and pent in between rocks, runneth downe amaine, and holloweth the ground daily more and more so deepe, that his water is not seene; only a roaring noise is heard to the great wonder of those that passe over.

Beneath it, Tamar receiveth Teave a little river, on which *Teavistok*, commonly called *Tavistoke* flourisheth, a town in times past famous for the Abbey there, which *Ordulph*, the son of *Ordgar* Earle of Devonshire, (admonished by a vision from heaven) built about the yeare of our Saviour Christ Dccccxj. a place, as William of Malmesburie describeth it, *Pleasant in regard of the groves standing so conveniently about it, and of the plenteous fishing there, for the handsome and uniforme building also of the Church, for the sewers from the river passing downe along by the houses of office, which runne with such a force of their owne, that they carry away with them all the superfluitie they find. Saint Rumon is much spoken of, and lies as Bishop there. There is to be seene also in the same Abbey, the Sepulchre of that Ordgar before named: and the huge bignesse of his sonnes tomb, who was called Ordulph, is thought to be a rare thing worth the sight: for he was a man of a mighty stature giant like, and of exceeding great strength, as who was able to burst in sunder the bars of great gates, and to stride over the rivelet there, ten foote broad; if ye list to believe the said William. But scarcely had this Abbey stood thirty yeare after it was first founded, when the Danes in their spoyling rage burnt it to the ground: yet it flourished againe, and by a laudable ordinance, lectures therein were kept of our ancient*

Tavistoke. The Charter of the foundation.

Lectures of
the Saxon
tongue.

Plimmouth.
13. Henry 4.
* De valle tortis.

* Valle tortis,
five de valle
torta.
* Custodias.
* Prætor.

Gogmagog.

ent language (I mean the English Saxon tongue) which continued even to our fathers daies; for feare lest the said language (a thing that now is well neere come to passe) should be forgotten. Tamar having thus received the Teave, draweth now very neere unto his mouth, where he and the river *Plime* together fall into the Ocean: of which river the Towne adjoining to it, is called *Plimmouth*: sometime named *Sutton*: and seemeth to have consisted of two parts. For, we read in the Parliamentary Acts, of *Sutton* * *Vautort*, and *Sutton Prior*, because it belonged partly to the family of the *Vautorts*, and partly to the *Prior*. Of late time it became of a poore fisher village to be a great Towne, and for the number of Inhabitants growne to that passe, (as now it is to be scene) that it may bee compared with a Citie. Such is the commodiousnesse of the haven, which without striking faile admitteth into the bosome thereof the tallest ships that be, & doth harbour them very safely, as well within *Tamar* as *Plime*, and beside against hostilitie sufficiently fortified: For, before the very midst of the havens mouth, lieth *S. Michaels* Isle, strongly fortified both by nature, and art: as for the haven it selfe at the very Towne, it hath fortifications on both sides, and is chained over when need requirerh, having on the South side a Pier against it, and upon an hill next adjoining a Castle built, as it is thought, by the * *Vautorts*. The whole Towne is divided into foure * *Wards*, governed by a * *Major*, ordained there by *K. Henry* the Sixth, and under him every ward had in times past a *Captaine* set over it, each of them likewise had his inferiour officers. As touching that fabulous wrestling betweene *Corinamus*, and *Gogmagog* the Giant in this place, let it suffice to set downe a versetwo out of *Architenius* concerning the same, and the Westerne Giants.

*Hos, audum belli robur Corinam Averno
Præpititis misit, cubitis ter quatuor alsum
Gogmagog Herculeâ suspendit in ære luctâ;
Anthemûq; sum scopulo destruxit in aquor.
Posavitque dato Thetis ebria sanguine fluctus,
Divisumq; tulit mare corpus, Cerberus umbram.*

These martiall monsters, Giants strong, by *Corinamus* slaine;
With *Gogmagog* twelve cubits high, a combat did remaine:
Whom up he hang'd twixt heaven and earth, (thus once *Alcides* hung
Antæus fell) and from the rock into the Sea him flung.
His bloud gave *Thetis* the waves to drinke (her selfe therewith was drunke)
His grisly ghost had *Cerberus*, when body torne was funke.

As for that rock, from whence, they say, this Giant was cast down, it is now called the *Haw*: a very hill standing between the Town and the Ocean: on the top whereof, which lieth spred into a most pleasant plaine, there is a right delectable, and goodly prospect every way, and for the use of Sailers a very faire *Compass* erected. The circuit of this Town not great, but much renowned it is among forraigne nations: and not so much for the commodious haven, as the valour of the Inhabitants in sea services of all sorts. For (to say nothing of all others) from hence was *Sir Francis Drake* that famous Knight, and most skilfull man at sea in our daies; who first (as I have heard himselfe relate) to repair the losses which he had sustained at the Spaniards hands, for two yeares space together with victorious successe held and kept the Bay of Mexico as it were besieged, and travailed over the * *Isthmus* of *Dariena*: From whence when he had once beheld the South sea (as the Spaniards call it) as another *Themistocles* stirred up with the *Trophees* of *Miltiades*, thought hee should have neglected himselfe, his country, and his owne glory, unless he failed over it, which continually presented it selfe as an object to his adventurous mind. In the yeare therefore 1577. putting to sea from hence, he entred into the streits of *Magellan*, and in two yeares and ten moneths, through many alternative varieties of fortune, God being his guide, and valour his confort, was the next after *Magellanus*, that sailed round about the world. Whereupon, one wrote thus unto him.

*Drake, pererrasti novit quem terminus orbis,
Quemq; semel mundi vidit uterq; polus.*

Francis
Drake.

* Narrow
passage.

*Si taceant homines, facient te sidera notum,
Sol nescit comitis immemor esse sui.*

Sir Drake, whom well the worlds end knows, which thou did'st compass round:
And whom both poles of heaven once saw, which North and South doe bound:
The Starres above will make thee knowne, if men here silent were,
The Sunne himselfe cannot forget his fellow-travailler.

The rest of his noble exploits, and of others who descended from hence taking example by him, flourished in glorious archivements by sea, seeing it belongs not to this place, let Historians record in writing. Neither have I ought else to say more of this Towne, but that in the raigne of *William* * *Rufus*, there flourished heere one *Ealphege*, a learned and married Priest. For, untill the yeare 1102. Priests in England were not forbidden to have their wives. Then, *Anselme* Archbishop of *Canterbury* violently forced both the sacred Scripture, and nature also, as our writers in those daies doe complaine, and namely, *Henry* of *Huntingdon* expressely of *Anselme* in these termes: *He prohibited English Priests to have wives, who before-time were not prohibited. Which, as some thought to be a matter of greatest puritie: so others againe tooke it to be most perilous, lest while by this means they aimed at cleanness above their power, they should fall into horrible uncleannesse, to the exceeding great shame of Christianitie.*

* Rous.

The first time
that Priests
were forbid-
den marriage.

More inward in the country, and yet not farre from the water of *Plim*, is *Plimpton* seated, a mercate Towne, well frequented, where the remnants, and deformed ruines of a Castle shew themselves: of which many men have holden as our Lawyers terme it, in *Castle guard*; for it was the chiefe seat of the *Redverses*, or the *Riparii*, (for both we read) who were Barons of *Plimpton*, and Earles of *Dentshire*. Next unto this, stood *Plimpton S. Mary*, the glorie whereof then fell to decay, when as not long since the Colledge there of Canons was dissolved, which *William Warlewast*, Bishop of *Exeter*, in old time had founded. More, Eastward you see *Modburie*, a little Towne, which acknowledgeth it selfe to appertaine to the ancient and right worshipfull family of the *Campernulphs*, Knights, who also are called in old Deeds *De campo Arnulphi*, but commonly *Champernouns*, which received much advancement and reputation by the heire of the *Vautorts*.

From *Plims* mouth, where the South shore of this region beginneth, the countrey runneth along with a large and great front as farre as to *Stert*, a cape or promontorie (for, so the word in the English Saxon tongue signifieth) but so soone as the shore hath drawne it selfe back land-ward, the river *Dert* breaketh out, which arising from the inward part of the country runneth downe apace, through certaine leane and high grounds, called thereupon *Dertmore*, (wherein of late were Lode stones found) and carrieth downe with it certaine grit, and sand out of the *Tin-mines*, (which by little and little choke up the channell) through the Forrest of *Dortmore*, where *David* of *Sciredun* held lands in *Sciredun*, and *Siplegh*, by this tenure or service, to find two arrowes, when the King his soveraigne Lord should come to hunt in that Forrest: From thence by *Dertinton*, a Baronic sometimes of the *Martins*, who were Lords of *Keimes* in *Wales*, it holdeth in his streame unto *Totnes*. Which being an ancient little Towne standing pendant upon the fall of an hill, East, and West, flourished sometime in great honour. It paid no * *tribute*, as we find in *Doomesday*, the survey-book of *England*, but when *Exeter* paid; and then it yielded xl.d. and did service, if any expedition marched by land, or went by sea: and *Totnes*, *Barnestaple* and *Lidford* served and paid, as much as *Exeter*. King *John* granted unto it power to chuse a Major for the chiefe Magistrate: *Edward* the First enriched it with sundry liberties; and about that time it was fortified with a Castle by the *Zouches*, as the Inhabitants are perfwaded. The possession it was in times past of one *Induël*, surnamed *De Totnais*; afterwards of *William Briwer* a right noble personage, by one of whose daughters it came to the *Brooses*, and from them by a daughter likewise to *George De* * *Cantelupo*, Lord of *Abergeveny*, whose sister *Melicent* wedded unto *Eudo De la Zouch*, brought it in by her marriage to the family of the Barons *La Zouches*: and theirs it was, untill that *John*, Lord *Zouch* being attaint and proscribed, because hee tooke part with *King Richard*

Stert crada
in Dutch a
Taile.

Totnes.

* Non geldbau.

* Cantlow.
Lord Zouch,
called usually.

the Third, Henry the Seventh bestowed it frankly (as I have heard say) upon Peter Edgecombe a noble and wife gentleman. Adjoyning to this towne is *Berie Pomerie*, so called of the Pomeries a right noble house in those parts, which a little more Eastward, and somewhat farther from the river side, had a very proper Castle of their owne. These derive their pedigree from Radulph Pomerie, who in William Conquerors time held *Wich, Dunwinesdon, Braverdine, Pudeford, Horewood, Teriland, Hekcom*, and this *Berie, &c.* Of this *Totnes*, the frond or shore adjoyning, was called in old time *Totonesse*: where (as the British Historie saith) Brutus the founder of the British nation first landed, and Havillanus, as a Poet, relying thereon verified in this wife:

*Inde dato cursu, Brutus comitatus Achae,
Gallorum spoliis cumulat is navibus aquor
Exarat, & superis, auram, faventibus usus,
Littora felices intrat Totonesia portus.*

Thence hoisting sailes with Gaulish spoiles the fleet freight sea doth take
Our Brutus with his trustiest friend; and through waves way doth make:
The Gods lookt cheerefull on his course, the wind he had at will;
At *Totnesse* shore, that happy haven, arriv'd he and stood still.

But, that river *Dert*, whereof I spake, having passed beyond *Totnes* bridge, at which it leaveth whole heape of lands brought downe by his streame from out of the *Tin* mases, hath for prospect on both sides, nothing but fruitfull fields, untill he come all weary with his long course, to his mouth; over which upon a hill reaching forth in length, standeth *Dertmouth* a Port Towne, by reason of the commodious haven, defended with two Castles, much frequented with Merchants and furnished with very good shipping. A Major it hath, by the grant of King Edward the Third. For Lords it acknowledged long since the *Zouches, Nicolas of Tenkesbury*, and the *Briems*, according to the variable change of the times; and hath sundry times defended it selfe stoutly against the French: but especially in the yeare of Christ 1404. *Monsieur De Castell*, a Frenchman, who by his men of warre and piracies had stopp'd all intercoure of traffique in those parts, and burnt *Plimmouth*, whiles hee invaded this place, was by women, and country people intercepted, and slaine with all his compaignie. And heere I must not passe over in silence *Stoke Fleming* that lieth hard by, and which taking that name of a noble man of Flanders, sometime Lord thereof, came by the daughter of *Mohun* to the *Carewes*.

From this place, as the shore giveth backe Northward, the sea followeth in upon it, and by that meanes with a large and spacious creeke, which taketh about ten miles in circuit maketh a bay, called now *Torbay*: a very safe rode and harbour for ships when the South-west wind is aloft; and hath fast by it a little village so called, where sometime the *Briewrs* dwelt, and built a religious house, who in the daies of King Richard the First, and King John, were men of great renowne and revenue: and afterward the habitation it was of the *Wakes*. Neere unto it is *Cockington*, where the family of the *Caries* (a different house from that of the *Carewes*) hath flourished a long time in great honour and estimation; out of which the Barons of *Hunsdon*, concerning whom I will speake more in due place, are descended. A little higher appears in sight *Hacombe*, the habitation in old time of Sir *Jordan Fitz-Stephen* Knight, surnamed of this place, *de Hacombe*: by whose daughter and heire *Cecilie*, it came into the familie of the *Archdeacons*; From which likewise by *Hugh Courtney* in proceesse of time, it was devolved upon the *Carewes*, whose house in these parts is reputed very worshipfull, and spread into many branches. For, *Jane* the daughter of the said *Hugh*, and heire to her mother, being joynd in marriage to *Nicolas Baron Carew*, brought him many children: and when the eldest of them, named *Thomas*, used not his mother with such dutifull respect as a sonne ought, she made a conveyance of that great, and wealthy inheritance to her three younger sonnes (from whom those three families of the *Carews, de Hacombe, Anthony*, and *Bery* are sprung) and to *John Vere*, a sonne that she had by a second husband, from whom the *Earles of Oxford* are issued.

Then

A Then meet you with *Teignemouth* a little village at the mouth of the river *Teigne*, whereof it hath also the name: where the Danes that were sent before to discover the situation of Britaine, and to sound the landing places, being first set a shore about the yeare of Salvation 800. and having slaine the governour of the place, tooke it as an ominous good token of future victorie; which indeed afterward they followed with extreme crueltie through the whole Island. More inward, neere unto the source of the river *Teigne* is *Cheggford* seated, where flourished sometime the noble family of the *Prows*: then *Chidley*, which gave the name to that great house, and linage of the *Chidleyes*: and next unto the very mouth thereof, *Bishops Teignton*, so called because it belonged to the Bishops; in which because there was a Sanctuarie, *John Grandison* descended out of *Burgundy*, Bishop of *Exceter*, as presaging what would ensue in future time built a very faire house, to the end that his Successors (these are the very words of his testament) might have a place whereon to leane, and lay their heads, if happily their Temporalities should be seized into the Kings hands. But so farre was it off that his purpose tooke effect, that his successors have not only lost that house, but also beene quite defleized now well neere of all the rest.

About six miles from thence, the river * *Ifc*, whereof *Ptolomee* maketh mention, which the Britaines call *Ifc*, and the English-Saxons *Ex*, with a large channell runneth into the Ocean. Whether it tooke this name of *Ifcaw*, that signifieth in the British tongue Elders trees, I wot not. Some fetch it from *Reeds*, which the Britaines call *Hesk*, wherewith Northerne nations, (and such are the Britaines) thatched, and covered their houses, yea and fastened together, as it were, with soder, the joynts of their ships. But considering that there be no reeds heere found, I am not hasty to give credit thereto. This river hath his head, and springeth first in a weely, and barren ground named *Exmore*, neere unto *Severn* sea, a great part whereof is counted within *Sommerfetshire*: and wherein, there are seene certaine monuments of anticke worke, to wit, Stones pitched in order, some triangle wise, others in a round circle, and one among the rest with an Inscription in Saxon letters, or Danish rather, to direct those (as it should seeme) who were to travaile that way. Now this *Ex* or *Ifc* beginning his course first from thence Southward by *Tnisfordon*, so called of two foorde, but commonly *Teverton*, a Towne standing much upon clothing, to the great gaine, and credit thereof, passeth forward through a faire country of good, and fertile fields, and is augmented with two especial rivelets, *Creden* from the West, and *Columb* from the East. Upon *Creden* in the Primitive Church of the Saxons, there flourished an Episcopall See, in a Towne of the same name, anciently called *Cridiantun*, now by contraction *Kirton*: where that *Winifride* or *Boniface* was borne, who converted the *Hesians*, *Thuringers*, and *Frisians* of Germany unto Christ, and for that was accounted the Apostle of Germany, and canonized a Saint. At this present, it is of no great reckoning, but for a small market, and the Bishop of *Exceter* his house there: E but within our fathers remembrance of much greater name, and request it was for a Colledge there of twelve Prebendaries, who now are all vanished and gone. The river *Columb* that commeth from the East, passeth hard by *Columbton*, a little Towne bearing his name: which King *Alfred* by his Testament, bequeathed to his younger sonne: and neere unto *Poltimore* the seate of that worshipfull, and right ancient family of *Bampfild*, intermingleth it selfe with the waters of *Ex*. And now by this time, *Ifc* or *Ex* growing bigger, and sporting himselfe, as it were, with spreading into many streames, very commodious for mills, hieth apace, and commeth close to the Citie of *Exceter*, unto which he leaveth his name: whereupon *Alexander Neckam* writeth thus, in his Poem of Divine sapience:

*Exonia fama celebrimur Iscianomen
Præbuit.*

To *Exceter*, *Ex* a River of fame
(First *Ifcia* call'd) impos'd the name.

This Citie *Ptolomee* calleth *Isca*, *Antoninus Isca Dvnm Oniorvm*, for *DANMONTORVM*; others (but falsely) *Augusta*, as if the second Legion *Augusta* had there beene

Danes when
they first en-
tered Britaine.

* The River
Ex.

Plinie.

Anticke
stones.

Tiverton.

Poltimore.
* Ex.

Dertmouth.

Stoke Fleming.

Briew.

See Sommerfetshire.

Carie of Cockington.

Hacombe.

The familie of the Carews.

* Caer Leon
or Vske in
Monmouth
shire.
Excefter.
Welchmen.
Caer, what it
signifieth.

beene resident; Whereas, wee shall shew hereafter that it kept station, and residence in * *ISCA SILVRVM*. The English Saxons termed it *Exancester*, and *Monketon*, of the Monks, at this day it is called Excefter, in Latine *Exonia*, in British *Caerisk*, *Caeruth*, and *Pencaer*, that is, a head or principall Citie. For Caer, (to tell you once for all) with our * Britans is as much to say, as a Citie, whereupon they use to name *Jerusalem*, *Caer Salem*; *Lutetia* or *Paris*, *Caer Paris*; *Rome*, *Caer Ruffaine*. Thus Carthage in the Punick tongue, was called, as Solinus witnesseth, *Carthaea*, that is, the new Citie. I have heard likewise, that Caer in the Syriack tongue, signified, a Citie. Now seeing that the Syrians, as all men confesse, peopled the whole world with their Colonies, may seeme probable, that they left their tongue also to their posteritie, as the mother of all future languages. This Citie, as saith William of Malmesbury, *albeit the soiled, joyning bee wet, foule and wealie, scarce able to bring forth hungry oates, and many times empty huskes without graine in them, yet by reason of the flatnesse of the place, the riches of the Inhabitants, and frequent concourse of strangers, all kind of traffique, and commerce of merchants is there so fresh, that a man can aske there for no necessary, but hee may have it.* Scituate it is on the Eastward banke of the river *Ex*, upon a little hill gently arising with an easie ascent to a pretty heighth, the pendant whereof lieth East, and West, environed about with ditches, and very strong walles, having many turrets orderly interposed, and containeth in circuit a mile and a halfe, having suburbs running out a great way on each side. In it there are xv. Parish-Churches, and in the very highest part thereof, neere the East gate, a Castle called *Rugemont*, sometime the feat of the West Saxon Kings, and afterwards of the Earles of Cornwall: but at this day commended for nothing else, but the antiquitie and situation thereof. For it commandeth the whole Citie, and territorie about it, and hath a very pleasant prospect into the sea. In the East quarter of the City, is to be seen the Cathedrall Church in the midst of many faire houses round about it, founded as the private history of the place witnesseth, by King *Athelstan* in the honour of Saint *Peter*, and replenished with Monks: which Church at length Edward the Confessor after he had removed some of the Monks from thence to Westminster, and translated thither the shops Sees of Cornwall, and *Kinton*, adorned with Episcopall Dignitie, and made *Leofrike* the Britan first Bishop there: whose Successours augmented the Church both with Edifices, and also with revenues: and William *Bruier* the ninth Bishop after him, when the Monks were displaced, brought in a Deane, and twentie and four Prebendaries. In which age flourished *Joseph Ifcanus* borne heere, and from hence taking his surname, a Poet of most excellent wit, whose writings were so well approved, as that they had equall commendation with the works of ancient Poets: For, his Poem of the Trojan war, was divulged once or twice in Germanie under the name of *Cornelius Nepos*.

When this Citie * *Isca* came under the Roman Jurisdiction it appeareth not for certaine: For, so farre off am I from thinking that *Vespasian* wonne it, (as *Gessney* of *Monmouth* affirmeth) what time as he warring in Britaine under *Claudius* the Emperour, was shewed by the Destinies unto the world, that I thinke it was then scarcely built. Yet in the time of the Antonines, it may seeme to have beene well knowne: for hither, and no farther this way did *Antonine* specifie any place in his way-faring book. It came not fully to the English-Saxons hands before the 465. yeare after their entrance into Britain. For, at that time *Athelstane* expelled the Britans quite out of the Citie, who before had inhabited it in equall right with the Saxons, yea, and drave them beyond *Tamar*, and then fortified the Citie round about with a rampire, and wall of fouresquare stone, and other bulwarks for defence. Since which time, many benefits by the Kings have beene bestowed upon it, and among the rest, as we read in William the Conquerours * booke, *This Citie paid no tribute, but when London, Torke, and Winchester paid, and that was halfe a marke of silver for a souldiers service. And when there was any expedition set out either by sea or land, it served in proportion in five hides.* It hath bene likewise from time to time much afflicted, once spoiled and fore shaken, by the furious outrages of the Danes, in the yeare of our redemption

Cornel. Nepos.

* Excefter.

William
Malmesbury.

* Domesday.

tion 875. but most grievously by *Suen* the Dane in the yeare 1003. at which time by the treacherie of one *Hugh* a Norman Governor of the citie, it was rased and ruined along from the East gate to the West. And scarcely began it to flourish againe, when *William* the Conquerour, most straightly beleaguered it: when the Citizens in the meane while thought it not sufficient to shut their gates against him, but malapartly let flie taunts, and flouts at him: but when a piece of their wall fell downe, by the speciall hand of God, as the Historians of that age report, they yielded immediately thereupon. At which time, as we find in the said survey-booke of his, *The King had in this Citie three hundred houses: it paid fifteene pounds by the yeare, and fortie houses were destroyed after that the King came into England.* After this it was thrice besieged, and yet it easily avoided all: First, by *Hugh Courtney* Earle of Denhire in that civill warre betweene the two houses of Lancaster and Yorke: then, by *Perkin Warbeck* that imaginarie, counterfeit and pretended Prince, who being a young man of a very base condition, faining himselfe to be *Richard Duke of Yorke*, the second sonne of King *Edward* the Fourth, stirred up dangerous stirres against *Henrie* the Seventh: thirdly, by seditious Rebels of Cornwall, in the yeare of Christ 1549: at which time the Citizens, most grievously pinched though they were with scarcitie of all things, continued neverthelesse in their faith and allegiance, untill that *John Lord Russell*, raised the siege, and delivered them.

But Excefter received not so great damage at these enemies hands, as it did by certaine dammes, which they call *Weares*, that *Edward Courtney* Earle of Denhire, taking high displeasure against the Citizens, made in the river *Ex*, which stop the passage so, that no vessell can come up to the Citie; but since that time all merchandize is carried by land from *Topesham* three miles off. And albeit it hath beene decreed by Act of Parliament, to take away these *Weares*, yet they continue there still. Hereupon, the little Towne adjoining is call *Weare*, being aforetime named, *Heneaton*: which was sometime the possession of *Augustine de Bas*: from whom in right of inheritance it descended to *John Holland*, who in his signet which my selfe have seene bare a Lion rampant, gardant among flowers de Lys. The civill government of this Citie is in the power of foure and twenty persons: out of whom there is from yeare to yeare a Major elected; who with foure Bailiffes ruleth heere the State. As touching the Geographickall description of this place, the old tables of Oxford have set downe the longitude thereof to be nineteene degrees, and eleven scruples: the latitude fiftie degrees, and fortie scruples or minutes.

This Citie; that I may not omit so much, hath had three Dukes. For, *Richard* the Second of that name, King of England, created *John Holland* Earle of Huntingdon and his brother by the mothers side, the first Duke of Excefter: whom *Henrie* the Fourth deposed from this dignitie, and left unto him the name onely of Earle of Huntingdon: and soone after for conspiracie against the King he lost both it and his life by the hatchet. Some few yeares after, *Henry* the Fifth set in his place *Thomas Beaufort* of the house of Lancaster, and Earle of Dorset, a right noble and worthy warriour. When he was dead leaving no issue behind him, *John Holland* sonne of that aforesaid *John*, (as heire unto his brother *Richard* who died without children, and to his father both) being restored to his blood, by the favour and bounty of King *Henry* the Sixth recovered his fathers honor; and left the same to *Henry* his sonne, who so long as the Lancastrians stood upright, flourished in very much honor; but afterwards when the family of Yorke, was a float and had rule of all, gave an example to teach men, how ill trusting it is to great Fortunes. For this was that same *Henry*, Duke of Excefter, who albeit he had wedded King *Edward* the Fourth his sister, was driven to such miserie, that he was seene all tottered, torne, and barefooted to begge for his living in the Low countries. And in the end after *Barnet* field fought, wherein he bare himselfe valiantly against *Edward* the Fourth, was no more seene, untill his dead bodie (as if he had perished by Shipwracke) was cast upon the shore of Kent. A good while after this, *Henry Courtney*, Earle of Denhire, the sonne of *Margarine* daughter to King *Edward* the Fourth, was advanced to the honour of *Marquesse*

Weare.

Ch. 24. Ed. 3.

Dukes of Excefter.

See the Earles of Dorset.

Philip Comtesse, cap. 50.

Marqueſſe of
Exceſter.

1605.

Ponderham.
* Redvers or
Rivers.Holcombe.
Burnet.

Exmouth.

Otterey.

Honnyton.

Moridunum.

Wiſcomb.

See in Som-
merſet ſhire.

Axminiſter.

queſſe of Exceſter by Henry the Eighth, and deſigned heire apparant. But this Ma-
queſſe as well as the firſt Duke was by his high parentage, caſt into a great tempeſt of
troubles, wherein as a man ſubject to ſuſpitions, and deſirous of a change in the State,
he was quickly overthrowne. And among other matters becauſe he had with money,
and counſell aſſiſted *Reginald Poole* (afterwards Cardinal) then a fugitive, practiſing
with the Emperour and the Pope, againſt his owne Country, and the King who had
now abrogated the Popes authoritie; he was judicially arraigned, and being condem-
ned, with ſome others, loſt his head. But now of late by the favour of King *James*,
Thomas Cecill Lord Burleigh, enjoyeth the title of Earle of Exceſter, a right good
man, and the worthy ſonne of ſo excellent a father, being the eldeſt ſonne of William
Cecill Lord Burleigh, high Treafurer of England, whoſe wiſedome for a long time
was the ſupport of peace, and Englands happy quietneſſe.

From Exceſter, going to the very mouth of the River, I find no monument of
Antiquitie, but *Exminiſter*, ſometime called *Exanminiſter*, bequeathed by King *El-*
fred to his younger ſonne; and *Pouderham Caſtle* built by *Iſabell de * Riparius*, the ſea
long time of that moſt noble family of the Courtneys, Knights: who being lineally
deſcended from the ſtock of the Earles of Denſhire, and allied by affinity to moſt
honorable houſes, flouriſh ſtill at this day, moſt worthy of their deſcent from ſo high
Anceſtors. Under *Pouderham*, *Ken* a pretty brooke entrencheth into *Ex*, which riſeth
neere *Holcombe*, where in a Parke is a faire place built by Sir Thomas Denis, whoſe
family fetcheth their firſt off-ſpring and ſurname from the Danes, and were ancient-
ly written *Le Dan Denis*, by which name the Corniſh called the Danes. But lower
upon the very mouth of the river on the other banke ſide, as the name it ſelfe doth
teſtifie, ſtandeth *Exmouth*; knowne by nothing elſe but the name, and for that ſome
fiſhermen dwelt therein.

More Eaſtward, *Otterey*, that is, *The River of Otters*, or *River-Dogs*, which we call
Otters, as may appear by the ſignification of the word, falleth into the ſea; which
runneth hard under *Honnyton*, a Towne not unknowne to thoſe that travell into theſe
parts, and was given by *Iſabell*, heire to Earles of Devonſhire, to King Edward the
Firſt, when her iſſue failed: and doth import his name to certaine places. Among
which theſe are of greateſt note: above *Honnyton*, *Mohuns Ottery*, the poſſeſſion
times paſt of the *Mohuns*, from whom by right of marriage it came to the *Carews*:
beneath *Honnyton* Saint Maries *Otterey*, ſo called of Saint Maries Colledge, which *Joh*
Grandiſon Biſhop of Exceſter founded, who drew the whole eſtates of all the Clergie
men in his Dioceſſe to himſelfe. For he perſwaded them in their Wills to give up, and
make over all that they had unto his hands, as who would beſtow the ſame to godly
uſes, in cadowing Churches, and in building of Hoſpitals, and Colledges therewith,
which verily he (by report) performed accordingly very devoutly.

From the mouth of this *Otterey*, the ſhore runneth Eaſtward with many winding
reaches, and turning creekes, by *Budley*, *Sidmouth*, and *Seaton*, famous Ports in times
paſt, but now the havens there are ſo choked up with ſand, brought in with the re-
procall courſe of the tides, and heaped up againſt them, that they have almoſt utter-
ly loſt all that benefit. As for *Seaton*, I would gheſſe it to be that *MORIDUNUM*,
which Antoninus ſpeaketh of, and is placed betwene *DYNOVARIA* and *Iſca*, (ſee
the booke be not faultie) and called in *Peutingerius* table by a name cut ſhort, *RIDV-*
NVM, conſidering both the diſtance, and the ſignification of the name. For, *Mari-*
dunum in the Britiſh tongue is the very ſame that *Seaton* in Engliſh, to wit, *A Towne*
upon an hill by the ſea. Hereto adjoyneth *Wiſcomb*, a Towne memorable in this reſpect
that in it there dwelt William Lord *Bonevill*, whoſe heire *Cecilie* by her marriage
brought the titles of Lord *Bonevill*, and *Harington* with a goodly inheritance in theſe
parts, unto Thomas Grey Marqueſſe *Dorſet*.

Under theſe Townes the River *Ax* diſchargeth it ſelfe at a very ſmall chan-
nell, after it hath paſſed downe by *Ford*, where *Adelize* daughter to *Baldwine* of
Okehampton, founded an Abbey for Ciſtercian Monkes, 1140. and by *Axminiſter*,
a Towne renowned in the ancient Hiſtories onely for their Tombes of the Saxon
Princes,

A Princes, who were ſlaine in that bloody battell at *Brunnaburg*, and tranſlated hither;
and ſituate it is in the very frontire and limit of this Province. Neere unto which
Reginald *Mohun of Duſſer*, unto whom the Mannour of *Axminiſter* in right of inhe-
ritance fell by the Fourth daughter of William *de Briewr*, built the Abbey of *Newen-*
ham in the yere of Grace 1246. Hence the Eaſt-bound runneth crookedly north-weſt-
ward, by villages of no fame toward Severn ſide, along w^{ch} now let us take our way.

From Cornwall the firſt ſhore in this ſhire that stretcheth out it ſelfe in length to
the Severn Sea, is by Ptolomee called, THE PROMONTORIE OF HERCULES, and
retaineth ſtill ſome little remnant of that name, being called at this day *Herty*.
B point, and hath in it two pretty townes, *Herton*, and *Hertland*, famous in old time for
the reliques of that holy man Saint Neſtan. In honour of whom there was erected
heere a little Monaſterie, by *Githa* Earle Goodwins wife, who had this Neſtan in
eſpeciall reverence, for that ſhe was perſwaded, that for his merits her husband had
eſcaped the danger of ſhipwracke in a violent and raging tempeſt. Howbeit after-
wards, the *Dinants*, who alſo are named *Dinhams*, that came out of *Bretagne* in France,
whoſe demeanors, as in fee it was, were counted the founders thereof: and from them
deſcended *Baron Dinham*, Lord high Treafurer of England, under K. Henry the Se-
venth, by whoſe ſiſters, and heires, the inheritance was divided between Lord *Zouch*,
Bourchier Fitz-warin, *Carew*, and *Arundell*.

C The name of this Promontorie hath given credit to a very formall tale, That
Hercules (forſooth) came into Britaine, and vanquiſhed here I wot not what Giants.
But if it be true as * Mythologers affirme, that there was never any Hercules, but
that by him the power of humane wiſedome is underſtood, whereby wee overcome
pride, luſt, envie, and ſuch like monſters: or if, according to the Gentiles divinitie,
by Hercules they meane the Sunne, and by thoſe twelve Labours, endured and per-
formed by Hercules, the twelve ſignes of the Zodiack, which the Sunne in his yearely
courſe paſſeth through; what it is they ſay, let them looke to it themſelves. But for
mine owne part, I willingly believe that there was an Hercules, nay, I could be con-
tent to grant with Varro, that there were of them fortie and three, all whoſe acts were
aſcribed to that Hercules, who was the ſonne of Alcmena; yet can I not perſwade
my ſelfe, that ever Hercules came hither, unleſſe haply hee failed over the Ocean in
that Cup which God Nerius had given him, whereof *Atheæus* maketh mention.
But you will ſay, that *Franciſcus Philoſophus* in his Epistles, and *Lilius Giraldus* in his
Hercules, averre no leſſe. Pardon mee, I pray you; theſe latter writers may well
moove mee, but they are not able to remoove mee, conſidering that *Diodorus Si-*
culus, who went on with the Greekiſh hiſtorie in order, even from the moſt remote,
and firſt records of all Antiquitie, in plaine termes affirmeth, that neither Hercules,
nor Father Bacchus went ever into Britaine. I am therefore verily perſwaded, that

E the name of Hercules even to this place, came either through the vanitie of
Greekes, or from the ſuperſtitious Religion of Britaines. For, as theſe being a
moſt warlike Nation themſelves, had valiant men in marvellous admiration, and as
highly eſteemed of ſuch as vanquiſhed Monſters: ſo, the Greekes againe, what-
ſoever was any where ſtately, and magnificent, that they referred to the glory of
Hercules: and becauſe hee had bene a great traveller, ſuch as travelled were wont
to offer ſacrifice unto him; and to him likewiſe conſecrate the places where they firſt
arrived. Hereof came *Hercules-rocke* in * Campania, *Hercules Haven* in * Liguria, *Her-*
cules Grove in Germanie: hence likewiſe, the Promontories of Hercules in Mauritania,
Galatia, and Britaine.

As the ſhore giveth backe againe from this Promontorie of Hercules, the two
Rivers, *Towridge*, and *Taw*, which are the onely Rivers in this north part of the Coun-
ty, diſcharge themſelves into the ſea at one mouth. *Towridge* ſpringing not farre
from *Herty point* above ſaid, runneth South-Eaſtward, and taking into him the river
Ock, whereof *Ock-hampton* a little market towne tooke the name, where *Baldwine*
the Vicount had his Caſtle in William the Conquerour time (as appeareth out of
Domelday booke) from whom it deſcended to the Courtneys; ſuddenly turning
his

The Register
of Newen-
ham.Hercules his
Promontory.

Saint Neſtan.

William of
Malmesbury.

Dinham.

Whether ever
Hercules
came into
Britaine.
* Expounders
of Morall
Tales.* Terra di La-
vra.
* Riviera di
Genoa.

Podridge.

Bediford.

John Hooker
of the Bishops
of Excester.
Berstable.* *Se aquar
fundis in aquor.*John Jewell.
Thomas Har-
ding.

Ralege.

Kinwith.

The Danes
Banner.

his channell maketh way Northward, insulating in a manner *Podridge* the Manse of the Familie, furnamed, *Monke*. Happily for that some one of them being a professed Monke by dispensation to continue his house, returned to temporall state, as that Noble house in France furnamed *Archevesque*, that is, *Archbishop*, tooke the name to continue the memorie that one of the Progenitours of an Archbishop, returned by dispensation to be a Temporall man. Certainly, whencesoever the name came, it is ancient, and they have worshipfully matched; and not long since with one of the daughters of Arthur Plantagenet, Vicount *Lisley*, naturall sonne to King Edward the Fourth. Hence *Towridge* hasteneth to *Tourington*. which it giveth name unto, standing over it in a great length upon the brow of a little hill: by *Bediford* so, a towne of right good name for the frequent resort of people, and number of inhabitants, as also for a goodly stone bridge, with arched worke, where straightwaies windeth it selte into the *Taw*. This *Taw* breaking forth out of the very midst and heart of the shire, first runneth downe by *Chimligh* a little market towne, not far from *Cheshampton* a small Village, where *Hyertha*, canonized a Shee-Saint, lay interred: from thence having passed by *Tawton*, where *Westfane*, and *Putta*, the first Bishops of Denshire had their See, about the yeare of our Lord 906, and *Tawfoke* over against it, now the seate of the right honourable Earle of Bathe, it maketh haste to *Berstable*. Reputed this is a very ancient Towne, and for elegant building, and frequency of people held chiefe in all this coast, situate amidst hilles in forme of a semicircle upon the river, being as it were, a diameter. Which River at every change and full of the Moone, by the swelling of the Ocean, overfloweth the fields so, as the very Towne it selte seemeth to be a demie Island: but when, (as one saith) * the sea receiveth it selte backe againe into the sea, it is so shallow, creeping betweene sands and shelves, as it hardly beareth smaller vessels. On the fourth side it hath a stately bridge built by one Stamford a Citizen of London: In the North part, where *North End* little river or brooke runneth, are seene the reliques of a Castle, which by the common report, King Athelstane, but (as others say) *Iudaël of Totenais* built: for the keeping, and defence whereof certaine Lands adjoyning therabout, are held in *Collegiate guard*. It had sometimes a wall about it, but now there remaine scarce any small remains thereof: The said *Iudaël of Totenais* received it in free gift in fee of King William the First: after him the Tracis held it for a long time: then, the Martins: and whom in the rainge of King Richard the Second, it came to John Holland Earle of Huntingdon, who afterwards was Duke of Excester; and last of all it fell to the Crowne. But Queene Mary gave the Mannour to Thomas Marrow, whose son sold it away. In K. William the First his daies, as we find in Domesday booke, *It had with in the Burgh fortie Burgeses, and nine without*. King Henrie the First, endowed it with many privileges, and King John with more. A Major, and two Bailiffes for a long time it had: but Queene Mary ordained there a Major, two Aldermen, and a Court fell of twentie and foure. The Inhabitants (for the most part) are Merchants, who by France, and Spaine trade, and traffique much. Neither must this be passed over with silence, that out of this Towns-Schoole, their issued two right learned men, and renowned Divines, John Jewell Bishop of Sarisbury, and Thomas Harding the publicke professor in Lovain, who most horly contended, and wrote learnedly one against the other, concerning the truth of Religion.

From hence, the river *Taw* saluting (as it were) *Ralegh*, which in times past had noble Lords of that name, but now is the possession of a right worshipfull house, furnamed *Chichester*: and afterwards encreased by *Towbridge* water, falleth into the Severne Sea, but it meeteth not with *Kinwith* Castle, whereof *Afferius* maketh mention. For, here about such a Castle there was of that name, for seite of the ground about it, very safe on every side, save onely on the East quarter: at the which in the yeare of Christ, 879. *Hubba* the Dane, who with many slaughters and overthrowes had harried the English Nation, was (with many other Danes) slaine. And thereupon the place afterwards was called by our Historiographers, *Hubbestow*. And then it was that the Englishmen wan the Danes banner, called, *Reafan*. Which, I note there

fore the rather, because it may be gathered out of a pretty tale in *Afferius Meneven*, who hath delivered these things in writing, that the Danes bare in their Ensigne a Raven wrought (by report) in needle-worke, by the daughters of *Lothbrooke*, that is, *Leather-breech*, the Dane, with such an opinion of good lucke, as they thought that it never should be wonne.

After this, nothing there is to bee seene upon this coast but *Ilfarcomb*, a good and sure rode for ships, and *Comb-Marton* bordering hard upon it: under which, old mines of lead, not without veins of silver, have of late beene discovered. As for this word *Comb*, (to observe so much once for all) which is an usuall adjection to names of places in this tract, it signifieth, a low situation, or a Vale: and derived it may seeme to be of *Kum* a British word, that betokeneth the same: and the French men in their tongue retaineth it still in the very same sense, from the ancient Gallique language; the same with old British.

More South-East from hence, and neere unto Somersetshire *Bampton*, sometimes *Bacinn*, sheweth it selfe: which under William the Conquerour befell unto *Walter de Dorey*, with other right large and faire lands else where: of whose posteritie *Iulianus* Inheritrix, married to William Paganell, commonly *Paynell*, bare * *Fulk de Bampton*: and he begat William, and Christian the wife of Cogan of Ireland whose posteritie succeeded in the possession thereof; for that the issue of the said William died without children. But from the Cogans, the possession descended at length hereditarily unto the *Bourchiers* now Earles of Bathe, by an heire of *Hancford*, who had married likewise an heire of the Lord *Fitz-warin*.

In the prime and infancy of the Normans Empire, (to say nothing of *Hugh* the Norman whom Queene Emnia had before time made Ruler over this countrey) King William the First ordained one Baldwin to be the hereditarie Sheriffe, or Vicount of Denshire, and Baron of *Okehampton*: after whom succeeded in that honour Richard his sonne, who died without issue male: Then, King Henrie the First, bestowed upon *Richard de Redversis*, First *Tiverton*, and afterwards the honour of *Plampton* with other places appertaining thereto: and consequently created him Earle of Denshire, by granting unto him the third partie of the yearly revenues growing out of the same Countie. Now the revenue of the Countie which in those daies was due to the King, was not above thirtie marks: out of which, the said Earle tooke unto him for his part, ten marks yearly. After this hee obtained of the said King, the Isle of *Wigh*: whereupon styled hee was, Earle of Denshire, and Lord of the Isle. Hee had a Sonne named Baldwin, who siding with Maude the Empreffe against King Stephen was banished the Realme: Howbeit, Richard his Sonne recovered this honour of his Fathers: and hee left behind him two Sonnes, Baldwin, and Richard, who in order successively were Earles of Denshire, and died without issue. The honour therefore reverted backe againe to their unkle by their fathers side, named, William, furnamed, *de Vernon*, because he was there borne. This William begat Baldwin, who departed this life before his father: yet before his death, he had begotten of Margaret, daughter to *Gwarin Fitz-Gerold*, Baldwin the third of that name, Earle of Denshire. This Baldwin had two children, to wit, Baldwin the last Earle out of this family, that died without issue 1261. who changed the Ghryphon, clapping and crushing a little beast, (which mark his Ancestours used in their seate) into a Scutcheon, or with a Lyon rampant; azur; and * *Isabell*, who being espoused to William * *de Fortibus*, Earle of *Albemarle*, bare to him a Sonne, named Thomas, who died soone after, and *Avellina* a daughter married to Edmund Earle of Lancaster, whom she mightily enriched, with the inheritance of her father, and died issueless. After some time, King Edward the Third, by his letter missive onely, without any other complement of ceremonies, created *Hugh Courtney*, Earle of Devonshire, and linked as cousin, and next heire to the said *Isabel*. For he commanded him by vertue of those missives, to use that title, and by a precept to the high Sheriffe of the Shire, commanded he should be so acknowledged. *Reginald Courtney* was the first of this family that came into England, brought thither by King Henry the Second, and by him advanced with the marriage of the heire of the

S

Comb, what it
signifieth.
Nicotius.

Bampton.

Paganelli, or
Painels.
* *Fulco: em.*Earles of De-
vonshire.Register of
Ford Abbey.
* *Redvers* for
Rivers.* Called, *Isa-
bella de Forti-
bus*.Claufr. Edm.
1261. M. 35.
b. verso.

the Baronie of *Okehampton*, for that he procured the marriage betweene the said King and Eleonor his heire of *Peitzu* and *Aquitaine*. But whether hee was branched from the house of Courtney before it was matched in the bloud royall of France after which our Monks affirme, but *Du Tillet* Keeper of the Records of France doubteth, I may say somewhat in another place. After the first Earle Hugh, succeeded his sonne Hugh; whom Edward his Grand-child, by Edward his Sonne followed, who died before him; and when he died, he left it to his sonne Hugh: and hee likewise Thomas his sonne, who died in the thirtieth and sixth year of King Henry the sixth his raigne. The said Thomas begat three sonnes, namely, Thomas, Henric, and Iohn: whose estate during the heate of those mortall diffensions betweene the houses of Lancaster and Yorke, was much tossed and shaken, whiles they stood resolutely and stiffly for the Lancastrians. Thomas taken at *Towton* field, was beheaded at Yorke: Henry his brother, and Successour seven yeares after, dranke of the same cup at *Salisbury*. And although King Edward the Fourth, advanced Sir Humfrey Stafford of *Suthwicke* to the Earledome of *Denshire*, who within three moneths revolting from King Edward his advancer most ingratelously, was apprehended, and without processe executed at *Bridg-water*: yet Iohn Courtney afore said, the youngest brother, would not leave this title, but with his life, which hee lost in the battell of *Tewksbury*. For a long time after, this family lay in some sort obscured: yet under King Henric the Seventh, it resourised: for, hee advanced againe Edward Courtney the next heire male unto the honors of his Progenitors. He begat William Earle of *Devonshire*, who matched in wedlocke with Katherine, daughter to King Edward the Fourth: of whom he begat Henry Earle of *Devonshire*, and Marquesse withall of *Excester*, who under King Henry the Eighth, lost his head, as we have now shewed: whose Sonne Edward was restored againe by Queene Mary, a most noble young Gentleman, and of passing good hope, but he died an untimely death at *Padua* in *Italy*, for, the best men (as saith *Quadrigrarius*) are of least continuance. In the fortieth and sixth year after his death: King James gave the honorable title of Earle of *Devonshire*, to Charles Blunt Lord Mountjoy, and Lieutenant Generall of *Ireland*; which title hee assumed, as descended from a Cousin, and heire of Humfrey Stafford Earle of *Devonshire*. He was a worthy personage, as well for martiall prowesse, and ornaments of learning, as for ancient nobilitie of birth: for that he had recovered *Ireland* into the former good estate, by driving out the Spaniards, and by subduing or enforcing the Rebels to submission: Him (I say) he created Earle of *Devonshire*, him hee heaped with favours, and according to the bountifull munificence of a King mightily enriched. But within a small while, death envied him the fruition both of honour and wealth, which he enjoyed as few yeares, as his Predecessour Humfrey Stafford did moneths.

9. Edward the Fourth.

1603.

There be contained in this Countie Parish-Churches 394.

DVROTRI



DVROTRIGES.



Ext unto the *Danmonians* Eastward, *Ptolomy* placeth in his Geographicall tables ΔΟΤΡΟΤΡΙΓΕΣ, as hee wrote in Greeke, who in the Latine copies are written DVROTRIGES. The same people were named by the Brittaines about the yeare of Salvation 890. *Dwr-Gwyr*, as saith mine Authour *Afferius Menevensis*, who lived in that age and was himselfe a Britaine borne. The English-Saxons called them *Dop-jettan*, like as we at this day call this County, the County of *Dorset*, and *Dorset-shire*. That name DVROTRIGES, being ancient and meere British, may seeme by a very good and probable Etymologie to be derived of *Dovr*, or *Dwr*, which in the British tongue signifieth Water, and of Trig, that betokeneth an Inhabitant, as if a man would say, dwellers by the water or Sea-side. Neither verily from any other fountaine than from water are we to fetch those names of places in old France or Gaule, which used in times past the very same language that our ancient Britans did, which either begin with *Dur*, and *Dour*, or doe end in the same, As for example, DVROCASSES, DVROCOTTORVM, DVRAIVS, DORDONIA, DVROLORVM, DOROMELLVM, DIVODVRVM, BREVIDVRVM, BATAVODVRVM, GANODVRVM, OCTODVRVM, and a number of that sort, as well in Gaule as in Britaine. As for that English-Saxon word *Dop-jetta*, compounded of both tongues, British and English, it carryeth the same sence and signification that DVROTRIGES doth. For, *Setta* with our old Forefathers, like as with the rest of the Germans, foundeth as much as to inhabit or dwell upon. And therefore they termed mountaners in their language *Dun-jettan*: the Inhabitants of the Chiltern-hilles, *Cyltepn-jettan*: the dwellers by the river *Arow*, *Apop-jettan*: even as the Germans called the Inhabitants of Woods and Forrests *Holt-fatten*: because they dwelt within or among the Woods. Neither went our Britans from the reason and meaning of the old name, when they termed these DVROTRIGES, of whom we now treat, *Dwr-Gwyr*, that is to say, Men bordering on the Maritime or Sea-coast. For, their country lieth stretched out with a shore full of turnings or windings in, and out, for a long tract, to wit by the space of fiftie miles or there about, full upon the British sea, from West to East.

What it signifieth.

Setta what it is.

S 2

DORSET-

DORSET-SHIRE.



The Countie of Dorset as it is on the Northside bounded with Somersetshire and Wiltshire, on the West with Devonshire and some part of Somersetshire, on the East with Hampshire: so on the South part, where it carrieth the greatest length, it lieth all open to the Sea, bearing upon the British Ocean as I said ere-while for fiftie miles together or much thereabout. A fruitfull soile it is: The North part thereof being overspred with woods and forrests; from thence garnished with many a greene hill, whereon feede flocks of sheepe in great number with pleasant pastures likewise and fruitfull vallies bearing corne: it hath a descent even to the very Sea shore, which in my description I will follow as it leadeth me, for that I can find no better order.

In the very entrance into this, out of Denshire the first place that sheweth it selfe on this shore is *Lime*, a little towne scituate upon a steepe hill, so called of a small river of the same name running hard by: which scarcely may challenge the name of a Port or Haven towne though it be frequented with fishermen, and hath a rode under it called the *Cobbe*, sufficiently defended from the force of winds with rocks and high trees. In ancient booke I can hardly find any mention thereof: onely thus much I have read, that King *Kinwulfe* in the yeare of our Lord 774. gave (by these words) the land of one *Mansion* unto the Church of *Scireburne*, hard by the *Wersterne* bank of the river *Lime*, not farre from the place where he hideth the course of his streame within the Sea: to this end, that for the said Church salt might be boyled to the sustaining of manifold necessities,

Neere thereunto the river *Carr* dischargeth it selfe into the Sea, and there standeth *Carmouth* a little village: where the bold roving Danes having good successe in sea-fights, wonne two victories of the English, first vanquished King *Egbert* in the yeare of Christ 831. and then eight yeares after King *Aethelwulfe*. Then theris *Burport*, or more truly *Birtport*, placed betweene two small rivers which then meete together: In this towne, in the daies of King *Edward the Confessor*, there were reckoned one hundred and twenty houses, but in *William the Conquerors* raigne, as we find in his booke of *Doomesday*, one hundred and no more. In our time in respect of the soile yeilding the best hemp, and skill of the people for making ropes and cables for ships, it was provided by a speciall statute, to remaine in force for a certaine set time, that ropes for the Navie of England should be twisted no where else. Neither is this place able to maintaine the name of an haven, albeit in the mouth of the river being on both sides enclosed within little hilles, nature seemes as it were of purpose to have begun an haven, and requireth in some sort art and mans helpe to accomplish the same.

From hence the shore winding in and out shooteth far into the Sea: and a banke called *Chefil* of sands heaped up thick together (with a narrow frith betweene) lieth in length for nine miles which the South-wind when it is up, commonly curteth & sunder and disperseth, but the Northerne wind bindeth, and hardneth againe. By this Banke or Sand-ridge, *Portland*, sometime an Island is now adjoynd to the main-land: The reason of which name is altogether unknowne, unlesse it were so called because it lyeth full against the Port *Weymouth*: but it soundeth more neere unto the truth, that this name was given it of one *Port* a noble Saxon, who about the yeare of our Salvation 703. infested and fore annoied these coasts. This *Portland* in the declining state of the Saxons Empire (for before-time writers never spake of it) felt as much as any other place, from time to time, the violent rage of the Danes. But when the Danish warre was ended, it fell to the possession of the Church of Winchester. For, what



DORCESTRÆ
Comitatus Vulgo Dorset
Vbi olim DVROTRIGES Incederunt.

PART E
O F

SOMERSE

SHIRE



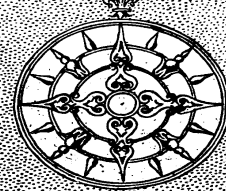
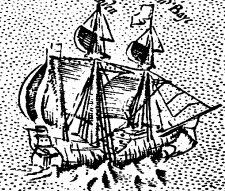
MARE

BRITANNICV



William King Sculp

Salisbury Plane
PART E OF WILT SHIRE



what time as *Emme* mother to King Edward the Confessor (whose name was called in question, and she charged for incontinenzie with *Aldwin* Bishop of Winchester) had gone bare-foot upon nine culters red hot in Winchester Church without harme (an unusuall kind of triall in those daies, and then called *Ordalium*) and so cleared her selfe of that imputation, that she made her chastitie by so great a miracle more famous to posteritie: She for a memoriall thereof, gave nine Lordships to the Church of Winchester: and King Edward her sonne, repenting that hee had so wrongfully brought his mothers name into question bestowed likewise upon the said Church this Island with other revenues. It is in compasse scarce seven miles, rising up about the sides with high rocks, but lying flat and low in the midst: Inhabited scatteringly heere and there: plentifull enough of corne, and good to feed sheepe: but so scant of woods, that in default of other fewell they make their fire with oxen and cow dung dried. The Inhabitants, of all English-men were the cunningest slingers; and very often doe find among the weeds or reeds of the sea, *Isidis Plocamos*, that is, *Isis haire*, which as Plinie reporteth out of Iuba, is a shrub growing in the Sea nor unlike unto Corall without leafe: cut it up it turneth into a black colour, and if it fall, it soone breaketh. On the East-side it hath one onely Church, and very few houses standing close thereto, and on the North a Castle built by King Henry the Eighth, which also defendeth the entrance into the haven of *Weimouth*. A little towne this is, upon the mouth of *Wey* a small river, over against which on the other side of the banke standeth *Melcomb*, surnamed *Regis*, that is, *Kings Melcomb*, divided from the other onely by the haven betweene. But the priviledges of the haven were awarded from them by sentence of the Parliament; howbeit afterwards recovered.

Weymouth.

These stood both sometimes proudly upon their owne severall priviledges, and were in emulation one of another: but now (God turne it to the good of both) many they are by Authoritie of Parliament incorporated into one body, conjoynd of late by a bridge, and growne very much greater, and goodlier in buildings by sea-adventures than heretofore.

From thence the shore stretcheth out directly along by the Isle of *Purbeck* (as they call it) which for a great part of it is an heath and Forrest like indeed replenished with Deere both red and fallow, having also veins of marble running scatteringly heere and there under the ground. In the midst whereof, there is an old large castle named *Corfe* seated upon a great stony hill, which after a long combat with time somewhat yielded as overcome, unto time, untill of late it hath bene repaired, and is a notable testimony and memoriall of a Stepmothers hatred. For, *Alfrith* to make way for her owne sonne *Etheldred* to the Crowne, when Edward her sonne in law King of England, came to visit her in this castle from his disport of hunting, set some villaines and hacksters to murder him, and like a most wicked Stepmother fed her eyes with his blood. For which deed repenting herselfe when it was too late, she sought afterward marvellously to wash out that sinfull stain, by taking her selfe to the mantle, and ring in the habite of an holy Votarie, and to building religious houses. *This Purbeck* is called an Isle, although it be onely a Demy Island, compassed round about with the sea, save onely on the West-side: For, on the East, the sea bendeth the banks inward, and breaking in at a very narrow straight betweene the two shores (against which a small Isle with a block house called *Brensey* standeth) maketh a broad and wide bay. On the North side wherof in the said Biland, there standeth over it the towne Poole, so as it is wholly environed with waters except it be on the North-side, where it closeth with the continent & hath one gate and no more leading unto it. We may well thinke it so named, because that bay aforesaid lying under it, in calme weather whē the waters be still resembleth a pond, such as we call a poole in our language. This of a Sedgeplot, & of a few fishermens cotages, in the last foregoing age, grew to be a mercate towne exceeding rich and wealthy, beautified also with goodly houses: and K. Henry the Sixth by consent of the Parliament granted unto it the priviledges of a port or haven towne which he had taken from *Melcomb*, and licensed the *Major* thereof, to wall it about: which worke afterward was begun at the haven, by King Richard the Third, a Prince

A Stepmother
hatred, that
is, her husbands
sonne.

who deserved to be ranked among the worst men and the best Kings. But ever since that time, by what fall destinie, I know not, or rather through the idleness and sloth of the townesmen, it is decayed: in so much as for want of Inhabitants, the very houses at this day, runne to ruine. Into the West Angle of this Bay falleth the greatest, and most famous river of all this tract, commonly called *Frome*, but the English-Saxons, as witnesseth *Aerius*, named it *Frau*; whereupon perhaps, for that this Bay was in old time called *Fraumouth*, the posteritie ensuing tooke the rivers name to be *Frome*. The head thereof is at *Eureshot* neere unto the West limit of this shire: From whence he taketh his course Eastward by *Frompton*, whereto it gave the name, and from the North receiveth a little river running downe by *Cerne Abbey*: which *Augustine* the Apostle of the English nation built, when hee had broken there in pieces, * *Heil* the Idol of the heathen English-Saxons, and chased away the fog of paganish superstition. Here was first bred among the religious men (as I have read) *Iohn Morton* Cardinall, and Archbishop of Canterbury borne at *S. Andrews Milborne*, worthily advanced to so high places for his good service in working Englands happinesse by the union of the two houses, of Lancaster, and York; and of this family there hath issued both R. Bishop of Worcester, and many gentlemen of very good note in this country, and elsewhere. Under this somewhat lower, the *Frau* or *Frome* (chuse whether you will) maketh an Island, and so goeth to see that most ancient towne [*Dorchester*] which in Antoninus his *Itinerarium* is termed *DVERNORIA*, that is, the river Passage or Ferry, and seemeth by Ptolomee to be named untruly, in sundry copies *DVERNIVM* and *DVNIVM*. This is the head Towne of the whole Shire, and yet is neither great nor beautifull, being long since depoyled of the walles by the Danes, who raised as it is thought certaine trenches; whereof one is called *Mambury* being an acre inditched, an other *Poundbury* somewhat greater: and the thirde mile off as a Camp, with five trenches containing some ten acres, called *Maiden castle*, which a man may easily conjecture to have bene a summer station or campe of the Romans. But of her antiquitie it sheweth daily expresse tokens, namely the Roman caufey of the *Fosse* high way, and coine of the Romans both copper and silver found there, and especially at *Fordington* hard by which the common people there call *King Dorn his pence*, whom by some allusion to the name, they dreame full sweetly, to have bene the founder of the towne. It had anciently a castle in that place where the Grey-friers built their Convent out of the ruines thereof, and hath now but three parish Churches, whereas the compasse of the old towne seemeth to have bene very large. But the most grievous hurt that it tooke, was when *Suen* the Dane had in most outrageous crueltie renewed the Danish warre: and Hush the Norman who ruled these countries a man of a perfidious and treacherous mind, suffered all to be spoiled and harried. But in what estate it stood soone after the Normans first coming in, take knowledge if it please you, out of *Domesday* booke being the Survey of England. In King Edwards daies there were in *Dorchester* 170. houses, and these for all the Kings service discharged themselves, and paid according to ten Hides: but to the use of Houscarles one marke of silver, excepting the customes which pertaine ad firmam nostris, that is, to the entertainment of the King for one night. There were in it two Mint Masters. Now there be therein but 82. houses: and one hundred have bene utterly destroyed since the time of Sheriffe Hugh. If these termes seeme to be very obscure (as *Sextus Cecilius* said in the like matter) impute it not to the fault of the writers, but to their ignorance who cannot conceive the meaning.

From hence *Frome* runneth by *Woodford*, where in old time *Guy Briant* a Baron and renowned warriour had a little Castle of his owne: which afterward was the habitation of *Hugh Stafford* of *Suthwick*; by one of whose daughters Inheritrices, it came as I have heard to *Thomas Strangwaies*, who being borne in Lancashire, and brought hither by the first Marquess *Dorset*, obtained a great and rich inheritance in these parts, and his issue built a very faire house at *Milbery*. Then holdeth hee on his course besides *Byndon*, in the Saxon tongue *Beannon*, which also had a monasterie, where *Kinegilfus* in the year 614. in a doubtfull, and dangerous battell vanquished the

* Good health.

Morton.

Strangwaies.

the Brittaines. Not long since it was the seat of the Lord *Marney*: now it giveth the honourable title of Vicount unto the Lord *Thomas Howard* Knight of the order of *S. George*: whose father *Thomas* the second sonne of *Thomas Howard*, the second of that name Duke of *Norfolk*, Queene *Elizabeth* created Vicount *Howard of Bindon*, when he having matched in marriage with the daughter and heire of Baron *Marney*, was seized heere of a very great inheritance of the *Newborows*. These who were anciently named *de Novo Burgo*, and commonly *Newboroughs*, derive their pedigree from a younger soone of Henry the first Earle of *Warwick* of the Norman line: and held heere *Winfrott*, with the whole Hundred of the gift of King Henry the First, per *servitium Camerarii* (these be the words out of the booke of the Offices) in Capite de *Domino Rege*: that is, by service of Chamberlaine, in Chef, from our soveraigne Lord the King. But under Edward the Third I have read, that this was held by Sergeantie, namely, by holding the *Laver* or *Ewre* for the King his soveraigne Lord to wash, upon his Coronation day. Also *Raulph Moien* held the Mannour of *Owres* neere adjoining by service of Sergeantie in the *Kitchin*, of the gift likewise of King Henry the First: and *R. de Welles* the Mannour of *Welles* heereabout, since the Conquest of England, by the service of the Kings Baker. Which I note, onely by the way.

Bindon.

Newborough.

Grand Serjeantie.

Where *Frome* maketh his issue into that Bay, whereupon *Poole* is situate, hard by the very mouth is planted *Warham*, in the Saxon tongue *Weapeham*, a towne strongly seated on every side but Westward, as being fenced on all parts beside, with the rivers *Trent*, *Frome*, and the Sea together: In King Edward the Confessors time, it had two Mint maisters: but whiles William the Conquerour reigned it could not reckon above seven dwelling houses in it. Yet afterwards it flourished againe, fortified with the wall, furnished with a mint house, a great number of Inhabitants, and a most strong Castle, which that King William the First built, it continued in a most flourishing state untill the daies of King Henry the Second, who when hee came to challenge the Crowne of England in the year 1142, hee arrived heere, besieged and tooke the Castle which was defended by *Robert Lacy*, against him in behalfe of King *Stephen*, and afterward *Robert of Lincolne* a man of mightie possessions in these parts defended the same against King *Stephen*. But from that time, by occasion partly of warres, and partly of suddene casualtie by fires, by reason also that the sea by little and little which draweth the commoditie of an haven, it is almost run to ruine: and in the very heart of the old towne it bringeth forth store of garlick. At this mouth likewise is discharged another small river with *Frome*, *Aerius* calleth it *Trent*, but now the Inhabitants thereby name it *Piddle*: From the North banke whereof scarce three miles off I saw the ruins of *Middleton Abbey*, which King *Athelstane* founded as a satisfaction to appease the ghost and soule of his brother *Edwine*, whom hee had deprived both of his Kingdome, and life. For when that solicitous desire of reigning had caused him quite to forget all Justice, hee put the young Prince heire apparent to the Crowne, with one page, into a little whirrey without any tackling or furniture thereto, to the end he might impute his wickednesse to the waves. And so the young Prince overcome with griefe of heart, and unable to master his owne passions, cast himselfe headlong into the sea. Under this *Middleton*, there is voided also another river, which runneth hard by *Bere* a little mercate towne, where for a long time, that ancient, and famous family *de Turbida willa*, commonly, *Turbervill* had their chief habitation, whereof as some were famous, so *Hugh Turbervill* in the time of King Edward the First was infamous for his traitorous practises with the French.

But to goe backe againe to the West part of the shire: At the spring head of *Frome*, where the soile is most fruitfull, the Forrest of *Blackmore* sometimes thicke, and full of trees, but now thinner growne, yeildeth plentiful game for hunting. This by a more common, and better knowne name is called *The Forrest of white hart*. The reason of which name, the Inhabitants by tradition from their forefathers report to be thus. When King Henry the Third came hither to hunt, and had taken other Deere, he spared a most beautifull and goodly White-Hart, which afterwards *T. de la-Lynde* a gentleman of this countrey with others in his company tooke and killed:

but

Forrest of White-hart.

White hart
silver.
Shirburne.

but how perillous a matter it was to bee twitching (as they say) of a lion they soone found and felt. For, the King conceived great indignation, and high displeasure against them, put them to a grievous fine of money for it, and the very lands which they held, pay even to this day every yeare by way of amercement a piece of money into the Exchequer, which is called *White hart silver*. There joyneth neere to this Forrest *Shirburne* towne, named also *Shirburne Castle*, in old time Seigneburn, which by interpretation is *Fons Limpidus*, or as it is else where written *Fons clarus*, that is, *Pure fountaine or cleare well*, scited on the hanging of an hill, a pleasant and proper seate, as William of Malmesburie saith, as well for the frequent number of Inhabitants, as the situation: and now it is the most populous, and best haunted towne of all this country, and gainerth exceeding much by clothing. In the yeare of our redemption 704, an Episcopall seat was heere erected, and *Aldelme* the first Bishop there consecrated: afterwards also in the raigne of *Etheldred*, *Herman* the Bishop of *Sunning*, having obtained this Bishoprick, translated his Episcopall see hither, and joynd the said Bishoprick of *Sunning* unto this, which under William Conqueror the same Bishop translated to *Sarisbury*, and reserved *Shirburne* to bee a retiring place for his Successors, unto whom it belongeth as yet: And one of them, namely, *Roger*, built a strong Castle in the East-part thereof, under which lay sometime a wide meere, and many fish pooles: and now being filled up are converted into most pleasant, and rich meadow ground. As for the Cathedrall Church, presently upon the translation of the See, it became a monasterie againe, and beareth shew of great antiquitie, although not many yeares past, in a broile betwene the townsmen and the Monks it was fired: which the burnt and scorched colour upon the stones doth as yet most evidently shew. Under this, the river *Iuell*, whereof I will speake some where else, winding in and out with many curving reaches, runneth Westward to *Chifton*, the seate sometime of the lineage of *Maulbauch*, from which it descended hereditarily unto the family of the *Horfeies* Knights, where it entrench into *Sommerfetshire*.

Chifton.

More toward the East the most famous river *Stoure* passing full of tenches and Eeles especially, arising in Wiltshire out of six fountaines commeth downe to *Sturton*, the honor and seat of the Barons of *Sturton*. So soone as it entered in this Shire it passeth through *Gillingham* Forrest, in which *Edmund* (urnamed *Iron-side* in a memorable battell put the Danes to flight: and three miles from thence saluteth *Shafisbury* standing upon an hill top, very defective of water, sometimes called by the Britains as it is commonly, but falsely thought, *Caer Paladur*, and in Latine by later writers *Septonia*: by the Saxons *Sceapterbypys*, perhaps of the Churches Spire steeple, such as they termed *Scheafis*. A little before the Normans time it had in it 104. houses, and three Mint masters, as we read in that * booke so often by me alleadged. And afterwards, it flourished the more, by reason of a Nunnerie which *Elfgiva* a most godly and devout Lady, wife to *Edmund* that was King *Aelfrids* nephews sonne had erected, and of ten parish Churches besides, or there about. But most famous in this place, by occasion of a pretie fable that our Historians doe report of *Aquila* prophesying here of the conversion or change of the Britaines Empire: For, some will have the bird, *Aquila*, that is, an *Eagle*, others a man so named to have foretold here, that the British Empire after the Saxons and Normans should returne againe to the ancient Britains: and these men affirme and maintaine that this place is of greater antiquitie than *Sarurne* himselfe, whereas most certaine it is, that it was first built by *Alfred*. For, the Historiographer of *Malmesbury* hath recorded, that in his daies there was an old stone translated from the ruines of the wall into the *Chapter house* of the Nuns, which had this Inscription:

The prophesie of *Aquila*.

ANNO

ANNO DOMINICÆ INCARNATIONIS ÆLFREDVS
REX FECIT HANC VRBEM. DCCC. LXXX. REGNI
SVI VIII.

That is,
In the yeare of the incarnation of our Lord, King *Aelfred* built this Citie, 880.
of his raigne the eighth.

This Inscription I have the more willingly put down here for prooffe of the Truth, because in all the copies which I have seen it is wanting, save only in that in the Librarie of the late Lord *Burghley*, high Treasurer of England, and I have beene informed that it continued there untill the time of King Henry the Eighth. Yet the Inhabitants have a tradition that an old Citie stood upon the place which is called the *Castle-Greene*, and by some, *Bolt-bury*; now a faire plaine so scited that as of one side it joyneth to the Towne, so of another it is a strange sight to looke downe to the vale under it: whereby in the West end of the old Chappell of S. Iohn, as I heare now, standeth a Roman Inscription reversed. From thence the *Stoure*, by *Marnhill*, of which place L. Henry Howard brother of *Thomas* last Duke of Norfolk received of King James the title of *Baron Howard*, of *Mernhill*, before that he was created Earle of Northampton, makes speed to *Stourminster*, which is as much to say, as the *Monasterie* or *Minster* upon *Stoure*. A small towne this is, standing somewhat with the lowest: from which there is a stone bridge built reaching to *Newton Castle*; where offeth it selfe to be seene a lofty mount cast up (as they say) to that height with great labour, but of the Castle there remaineth nothing at all, but only the bare name. Of these, I have nothing of more antiquitie to say than this, that King *Aelfred* bequeathed *Stourminster* to a younger sonne of his. Hard by, at *Silleston* there rise two good great hills, the one named *Hameldon*, the other *Hodde*, and both of them fortified with a three fold Ditch and rampier. And not far from thence (but the very place I cannot precisely set downe) stood *Okeford*, the Capitall honour of the Baronie of *Robert*, the some of *Pagan*, commonly named *Fitz-Payne*, who married the daughter of *Guido de Brient*, who also in this West part enjoyed the honor of a Baron under King Edward the Third: but for default of heire males of those *Fitz-Paynes*, it came to the *Poynings*, Barons likewise in those daies, and at length by a daughter and heire of *Poynings* in the raigne of Henry the Sixth, these Barons titles, *Fitz-Payne*, *Brient*, and *Poynings* were conjoynd in the *Percies* Earles of *Northumberland*: Howbeit within our fathers remembrance through the favour of King Henry the Eighth, the title of Baron *Poynings*, reflowered in Sir *Thomas Poynings*, sonne of Sir *Edward Poynings* a martiall man and fruitfull father of much bafe brood; but with him it soone vanished away, as E. bastardly slips feldome take deepe root.

Barons Fitz-Payne.

Baron Brient.

Barons Poynings.

From hence *Stoure* passeth on by *Brienton*, that is, *Brients* towne, where the *Regerses* dwell, an ancient family of Knights degree, to *Market Blandford*, which since in our time it chanced to be burnt downe, arose againe, built more elegantly, and is better peopled with Inhabitants. Then *Stoure* from thence, by *Tarrent*, where *Richard Poer* Bishop of *Sarisbury* founded a Cell, for Virgins Votaries, speedeth himselfe apace to that most ancient towne *VINDOGLADIA*, where *Antoginus* maketh mention. Which in the Saxons tongue is called *pynburnham*, commonly *Winburne*, and of the Monasterie, *Wenburnminster*: and from hence to *Dorchester* are counted fixteene miles just so many as the Emperour *Antonine* in his Itinerarie reckoned betwene *Vindogladia* and *Durnovaria*. The name, as I conjecture, it taketh of the situation, because it is seated betwene two rivers: for, so in the British tongue *Windugledy* foundeth as much as betwene two Swords: now that the Britains, by a peculiar phrase of their owne, terme rivers, Swords, it appeareth by *Aberduyledian*, the British name of *Milford Haven*, which is as much to say, as the mouth of two rivers, for that two rivers named with them *Glediau*, that is, *Swords*, runne into it. The latter

Blandford.

Vindogladia.

Winburn.

Burne in the Saxon tongue what it signifies.

Annales of the English-Saxons.

latter name also of this town seemeth to be fet from Rivers: For *Winburn* is compounded of *Win*, a parcell of the old name, and the Saxon word *Burne*, which among them betokeneth a river: and by the addition thereof the Saxons were wont to name places standing upon rivers. The very town it selfe is seated upon the piece of an hill large in compasse, & replenished with Inhabitants, but few faire buildings. In the Saxons time right famous it was and much frequented for no other cause, I believe, but for that those daies there remained divers tokens of the Romans majestie. In the yeare 713, *Cuthburga* sister to *Ina* King of the West-Saxons, when upon a loathing wearinesse of wedlocke she had sued out a Divorce from her owne husband King of *Northumberland*, built heere a Nunnerie: which yeilded unto the injurie of time, and fallen to decay, there arose in the very place thereof, a new Church with a faire Vault beneath under the quier, and an high spire besides the Toure-steeple. In which were placed Prebendaries in lieu of those Nuns. Over whom, in our fathers daies Reginald Pole was Deane, who afterwards being Cardinal, and Archbishop of Canteburie, over and above the nobilitie of his house (for descended he was of the Royall blood) became highly renowned for pietie, wisdom, and eloquence. King *Esheldred* a right good and vertuous Prince brother of *Aelfred*, slaine in the battell at *Wittingham* against the Danes, lieth entered in this Church: upon whose Tombe, which not long since hath bene repaired, this new Inscription is to be read:

IN HOC LOCO QUIESCIT CORPVSS. ETHELDREDI
REGIS WESTSAXONVM MARTYRIS, QVI ANNO DOMINI
DCCC LXXII. XXII. APRILIS PER MANVS
DANORVM PAGANORVM OCCVBIT.

That is,
Heere lieth at rest the bodie of *Esheldred* King of the West-Saxons, Martyr,
who died in the yeare of our Lord, 872. the 23. of April, by the hands
of the Danes, * Infidels.

* Or Painsims: Paganorum.

Near unto whom lieth entombed Gertrude Blunt Marchionesse of Excester, daughter to William Lord Montjoy, and mother to *Edward Courtney* the last Earle of Devonshire of that house: and on the other side of the quier *Iohn de Beaufort* Duke of Somerset with his wife *Margaret* daughter and heire to Sir *Iohn Beauchamp* of *Blanchhoe*: whose daughter *Margaret* Countesse of *Richmond*, and mother of King Henry the Seventh, a most godly and vertuous Prince, erected a Schoole heere for the training up of youth. But now will I turne my pen from the Church to the Towne; when the Danes by their crafty devices went about to set the Englishmen together by the cares, and would have broken that league, and unitie which was betweene King *Ethelward* the Elder, and his cosen *Aethelwald*; *Aethelwald* then lusting after the Kingdome and wholly set against his liege Prince, fortified this towne as strongly as possibly he could: But so soone as *Edward* came towards him with his forces, and pitched his tents at *Basdan-bipig*, now called *Badbury*, he fled and conveyed himselfe to his confederates the Danes. This *Badbury* is a little hill upon a faire dune, scarce two miles off, environed about with a triple trench, and rampier, and had by report in times past a Castle, which was the seate of the West-Saxon Kings: But now, if ever there were any such, it lieth so buried in the owne ruines, and rubbish, that I could see not so much as one token thereof. But, hard by, a sight I had of a village or mannour called *Kingston Lacy*, because together with *Winburne* it appertained to the Lacies Earles of *Lincolne*: unto whom by covenant it came from the Earles of *Leicester*, by the means of *Quencie* Earle of *Winchester*. For King Henry the first had given it to *Robert* Earle of *Mellent* and of *Leicester*: and at the last, both places, from the Lacies fell unto the house of *Lancaster*, whose bountie, and liberalitie *Winburne* had good triall of.

From this *Winburne* Stoure as it passeth, admitteth *Alen* a little brook, over which standeth

Badbury.

Kingston Lacy.

standeth *S. Giles Winburne*, the habitation of the worshipfull and ancient house of *Astleys* Knights, also *Wickhampton*, the inheritance sometime of the Barons *de Maltravers*: of whom the last, in the raigne of Edward the Third, left behind him two daughters onely, the one wedded unto *Iohn de Arundell*, grandfather to *Iohn* Earle of *Arundell*, who left unto his posteritie the title of Barons *de Maltravers*: the other, wife of *Robert Le-Rose*, and afterwards of Sir *Iohn Keines*, Knight. From hence the Stoure passeth on by *Canford*, under which not long ago, *James Lord Montjoy*, studious in Minerall matters began to make *Calcanthum* or Vitriol (we call it *Copras*) and to boile Alome: And out of which, in old time *Iohn* Earle of *Warren*, to the great disteining of his owne good name, and the damage of England, tooke, as it were, by strong hand and carried away, as it is to be seene in our Chronicles, *Dame Alice Lacey*, the wife of *Thomas* Earle of *Lancaster*. And now by this time Stoure leaveth Dorsetshire behind him, and after hee hath travelled through some part of *Hants*shire, at length taketh up his lodging in the Ocean: and yet not before hee hath entertained a pretty river that runneth to *Cranburne*, a place well watered. Where in the yeare of Salvation 930. *Aethward* a noble Gentleman, furnished for his whitenesse *Meau*, founded a little monasterie: which, *Robert Fitz-Haimon* a Norman, unto whom fell the possessions of the said *Aethward*, leaving heere one or two Monkes in a cell, translated to *Theoksbury*: From whom in order of succession, by the *Clares* Earles of *Glocester*, and *Burghs* Earles of *Ulster*, it came to *Lionell* Duke of *Clarence*, and by him to the Crowne. But now *Cranborne* hath his Vicount, now Earle of *Salisbury* whom King *James* for his approved wisdom and worth, honored first with the title of Baron or Lord *Cecil of Essendon*, and the next yeare after, of Vicount *Cranborne*. South from hence lieth Woodland emparked, sometime the seat of the worshipfull family of *Filioll*, the heires whereof were married to *Edward Seimor* after Duke of *Somerset*, and *Willoughby* of *Wallaton*.

Canford, Coperose or Vitriol. Alum. Tho. Walsingham. 13 17.

Cranburne.

Vicount Cranborne. 1604. Filioll.

Earles and Marquesses of Dorset. The life of *Osmund*, manuscript.

See the Dukes of Somerset.

* In Normandie.

As touching the Earles and Marquesses of this shire, King William the Conqueror, having now by conquest attained to the Kingdome of England, made *Osmund* that was Earle of *Seez* in *Normandie*, both Bishop of *Salisbury*, and afterward also the first Earle of *Dorset*, and his Chancellor; highly admiring the godly wisdom of the man, and his notable good parts. Long after that, King Richard the Second in the one and twentieth yeare of his raigne, advanced *Iohn de Beaufort*, *Iohn* of Gaunt his sonne and Earle of *Somerset*, to be Marquess of *Dorset*, of which dignitie King Henry the Fourth in hatred of Richard the Second deprived him. And when as in the high Court of Parliament, the Commons of England there assembled, who loved him very dearly, made earnest intercession that the said dignitie of Marquess might bee restored unto him, hee himselfe distasting this new title, and never heard of before those daies, utterly refused it. And then his younger brother named *Thomas Beaufort* was created Earle of *Dorset*: who after ward for his warlike prowesse and valour was by King Henry the Fifth adorned with the title of Duke of Excester, and with the Earledome of * *Harcourt*. For, he valiantly defended *Harflew* in *Normandie* against the Frenchmen, and in a pitched field encountering the Earle of *Armignac* put him to flight. After he was dead without issue, King Henry the Sixth nominated out of the same house of *Lancaster*, *Edmund*, first Earle, afterwards Marquess of *Dorset*, and lastly Duke of *Somerset*: whose sonnes being slaine in the civil wars, *Edward* the Fourth, when as now the family of *Lancaster* lay as it were, over troden in the dust, created *Thomas Grey* out of the house of *Ruthin*, who was his sonne in law (for the King had espoused the mother of the said *Grey*) Marquess of *Dorset*: when in right of his wife he had entred upon a great state, and inheritance of the *Bonvilles* in this country, and the territories adjoining. After him, succeeded in the same honour *Thomas* his sonne, and *Henrie* his nephew, by the said *Thomas*, who also was created by King Edward the Sixth Duke of *Suffolk*, having wedded Lady *Frances* daughter of *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolk*, and Neece unto King Henry the Eighth by his sister. This Duke in Queene *Maries* daies being put to death for high treason, learned too late, how dangerous a thing it is to marrie into the blood royall; and to feed ambitious

1553.

ambitious hopes, both in himselfe and in others. From that time the title of Dorset was bestowed upon none, untill King *James* at his first entrance into this Kingdom exalted *Thomas Sackvill*; Baron of *Buckhurst*, and Lord high Treasurer of England, a man of rare wisdom, and most carefull providence, to the honour of Earle of Dorset, who ended his life with suddaine death 1608. and left Robert his sonne his successor who deceasing within the yeare, left the said honour againe to Richard his hopefull sonne whom he begot of the Lady

Margaret Howard Daughter to the late Duke of Norfolk.

(* * *)

In this Countie are numbered Parishes 248.

BELGÆ.



BELGÆ.

B Pon the North and East side of the Durotriges, bordered in times past the Belgæ, who as it is by the name probable, and by authority of writers very likely, passed over from the Belgæ, a people in Gaule, into Britaine. For, those Belgæ having their beginning (as Cæsar according to the information he had from the men of Rhemes) of the Germans, and in old time being brought over the Rhene, finding the sweetnesse and fertility of the place, expelled the Gaules and planted themselves there: From whence, as the same Cæsar saith, they gat them over into Britaine for to spoile, and in warlike manner to invade the country: and were all of them called after the name of those countreyes from whence they came: where, after they had made warre they remained and began to till the grounds. But at what time they came hither to dwell, it is not certainly known, unlesse Divitiacus King of the Sueffones, who flourished before Cæsars time, brought over the Belgæ hither: For, a great part as well of Gaule as of Britaine he had under him. Whence also they were named Belgæ, it is not sufficiently shewed. Hubert Thomas of Liege, a great learned man, supposed Belgæ to be a German word for that the Germans use to call the French and the Italians Wallen, as strangers, yea and some of them Welgen. Iohn Goropius himself a Belgian, maintaineth it to be derived of the word Belke, which in the Belgicke tongue signifieth wrath or anger, as if they would be sooner incensed with choler than others. But seeing that the name of the Belgæ, seemeth not to be sought for out of that tongue which the Germans of the Low-countries use at this day, and is almost the same that our English-Saxon language (for from the Saxons it came, whom Charles the Great brought over into Brabant and Flanders) for my part I will in no wise diminish their credit, who fetch it forth of the ancient Gaules tongue, which remayneth in manner uncorrupt among our Welch-Britans, and will have them called Belgæ of Pell, which in that tongue betokeneth Remote or far off. For, of all Gaule they were the furthest, and as they were furthest from the civill behaviour and humanity of the Roman Province, so they were also in situation and seat: and the Poet hath shewed that the Morini were the people of all Belgica most remote, when he wrote thus: Extremiq; hominum Morini, that is, The morini of all men furthest. But come we now to our Belgæ, who inhabited far and wide in Somersetshire, Wiltshire, and the inner parts of Hantsire.

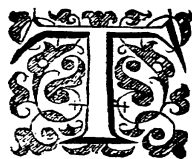
Belgæ, from the Belge in Gaule. Low-countries. The Nether Lands.

Belgæ, whence they were named.

T.

SOMER-

SOMERSETSHIRE.



He Countie of Somerset, commonly called, Somersetshire, is a verie large and wealthy Region: the North side whereof the Severne Sea beateth upon: the West part confineth with Den- shire: in the South it bordereth first upon Devonshire, and then upon Dorsetshire: Eastward, upon Wiltshire: and North-east, upon part of Gloucestershire. The Soile verie rich, yeelding for the most part thereof passing great plentie, both of pasture and corne, and yet not without stonie hilles: Exceeding populous, and full of Inhabitants furnished also with commodious havens, and ports sufficiently. Some thinke it was so called, for that the * aire there, is so mild and summer-like: and in that sence the Welch Britans at this day terme it *Gladerhaf*, borrowing that name out of our English tongue. And verily, howsoever in summer time it is a right summer-like Country, yet surely, in winter it may worthily be called, a winterish Region, so wet, and weely, so miry and moorish it is, to the exceeding great trouble and encombrance of those that travell in it. But I will beleve, that this name without all question grew from *Somerton*, a famous Towne in ancient time, and of all others in the shire most frequented, considering that *Asserius* a writer of great antiquitie, calleth this Countie in every place, *Somertunensis*, that is Somertunshire. In the very first limit of the shire Westward, where *Exrith* in a solitarie and hilly moore, first appeareth *Dulverton*, a filly marker, according to the soile, and neere unto it was a small religious house of Black-chacons at *Barelinch*, who in latter times acknowledged the Fetyplaces their founders.

* Or, weather.

Den-shire.

Dunster
Castile.

The Familie
of the Mo-
huns, or Mo-
ions.

Commons.

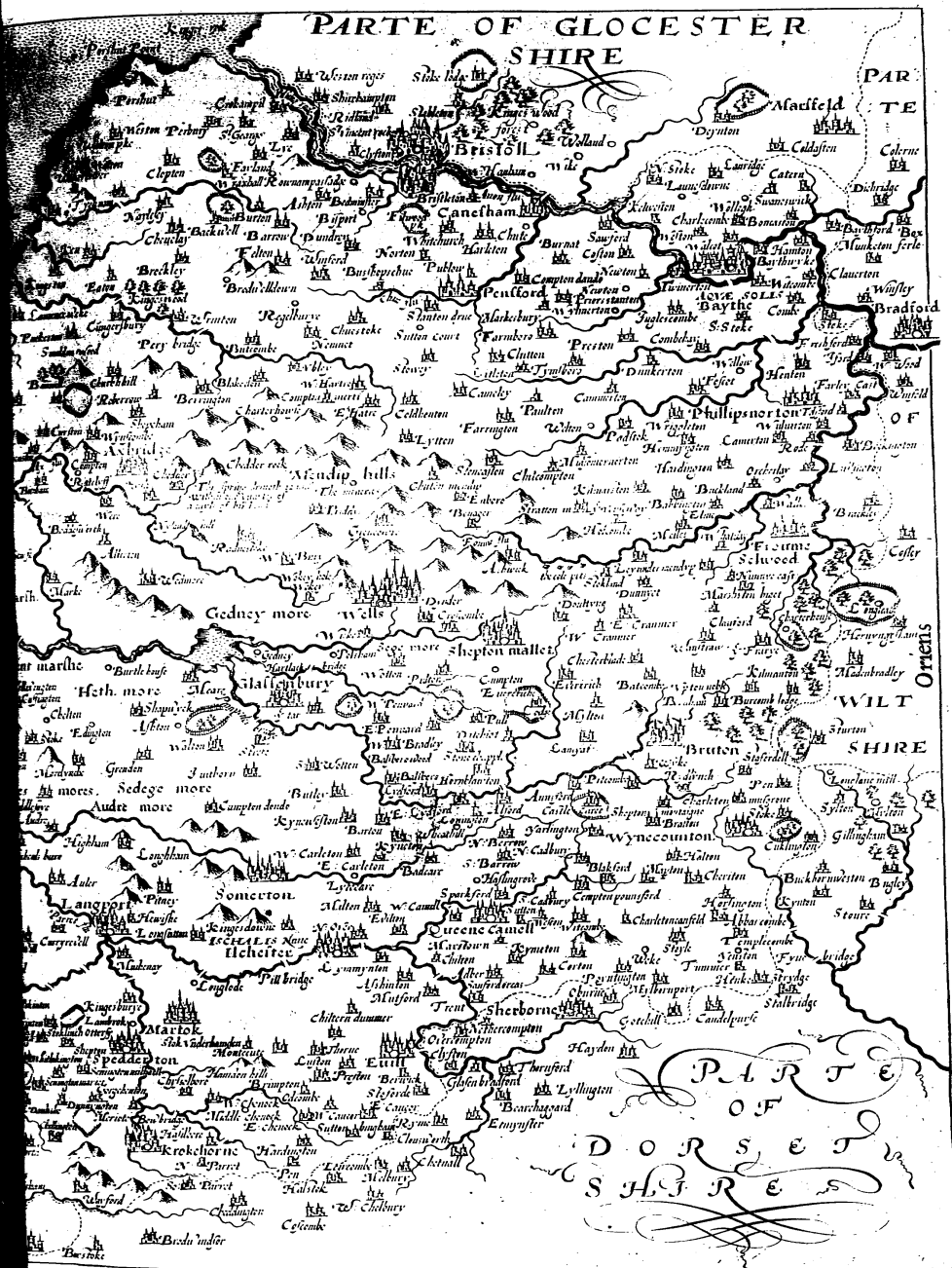
Saint Decu-
manus.

* Or, *Martyr-
rologie*, that is,
a legend of
Martyrs.

Higher upward on the Severne side, where this shire confineth upon Devonshire, first we meet with *Porlock*, (in the English-Saxon tongue *Portloean*, and *Waschet*) in times past *Wecepoort*, roades both, and harbours for ships, the which in the yeere 886. were most grievously afflicted by the Danish cruell piracies. Betwixt them standeth *Dunster Castle* upon a flat and low ground, enclosed round about with hilles, fa- ving to the Sea-ward; built by the *Moions*, or *Mohuns*. From whose heires by agree- ments and compositions it came in the end to the Lutterels. A right noble and migh- tie house this of the *Mohuns* was for a long time, and flourished from the verie Con- querours daies, (under whose raigne that Castle was built,) unto the time of King Richard the Second. Two Earles there were of this Countie out of that familie, as I shall shew hereafter, William and Reginald, who in the Barons warre lost that honor. The Posteritie afterwards were repured Barons: of whom the last named Iohn, left three daughters, Philip wife to Edward Duke of Yorke; Elizabeth, wedded to Wil- liam Montacute, Earle of Sarisburie, the second of that name; and Maud, Joyned in marriage to the Lord Strange of *Knokin*: The Mother of which three Ladies, as the report goes, obtained of her husband so much pasture-ground in Common by the Towne side for the benefit of the Inhabitants, as she could goe about in one day bare- foot.

Neere to this Castle, there lie two little Villages consecrate unto two peculiar Saints of those places: the one of them is named *Caranton*, of Carantoc the Britan: the other, Saint Decombs of *Decuman*; who putting to sea out of South-wales arri- ved here, in a waste and *Desert Wildernesse*, as we read, in an old * *Agonell*, overgrown with shrubs, bushes, and briars, among woods of great thicknesse, reaching out farre in length and breadth, lying out with high and steepe hilles one way, and wonderfully w- even with as deepe and hollow vallyes another way, where he bidding worldly vanity fare- well, was by a murderer stabbed to death, and of the people honoured as a Saint. And betwene these Clives, was an old Abbey of white Monkes, founded by William de *Romara*, Cosen to the Earle of Lincoln. Somewhat farther from the

sea



sea is seated *Stoke-Cury*, a Barony so named of the Lords thereof, the dwelling place of William *De Cury*, Sewer to King Henric the First. Out of which Familie, Iohn Cury (as some write) issued, that conquered *Vlster* in Ireland, whom nature framed for magnanimitie, gravitie, and all other vertues, a great person and a noble: the record and testimonie of whose approved valour, is to bee fetched out of the ancient Annals of Ireland. From thence the shore by little and little beareth out to *Stertpoint*, where the two greatest Rivers of all this Shire, meeting in confluence together, at one mouth runne forth into the Severne sea. Ptolomee calleth this confluence *Uzella* *Æstuarium*, of the river *Ivel*, which now hath lost his name alreadie before he came hither. It springeth in Dorsetshire, and no sooner entreth into Somersetshire, but he giveth name to *Evel* a great market towne, which rose by the decay of *Ilchester*, and taketh into him a rill, neere which is *Camalet* a steepe hill, and hard to get up: on the top whereof are to bee seene expresse tokens of a decayed Castle, with triple rampires of earth cast up, enclosing within it many acres of ground; and there appeare about the hill five or six ditches, so steepe, that a man shall sooner slide downe, than goe downe. The Inhabitants name it, *King Arthurs Palace*: That it was the Romans worke, appeareth by peeces of money of their coine daily digged out there. But what name it had among them, I know not, unlesse it be the same which in Ninnius his Catalogue of ancient Cities, is called *Caer Camelion*, in stead of *Camelion*, by transposition of the letters. Hereby are two townes, *West Camalet*, and *East Camalet*, or *Queens Camalet*, happily for that it hath been in dowrie to some Queene. As for *Cadburie* a little towne next unto it, we may guesse verie probably to have been that *Cathbregion*, where K. Arthur, (as Ninnius writeth) defeated the English-Saxons in a memorable battell. The other of that name, called, *North, Cadbury*, K. Henry the Third, gave unto *Nicolas de Moeles*, who had married * *Hawisia*, one of the heires of Iames of *Newmarket*, whose posteritie continued a long time in great fame and honour, untill that Iohn dying in the time of Edward the Third, left two daughters, *Muriel* and *Isabel*; the one wife to William *Botereaux*, and the former to Thomas *Courtney*. Here to digresse aside from the River *Ivel*, *Wincaunton*, no meane market, is neighbour to this *North Cadbury*, and neere thereunto is *Pen*, an obscure village now, but anciently famous, being ordained by destinie as it may seeme to the overthrow both of Britans and Danes. For at this verie place *Kenwalch* a West Saxon, had such a day of the Britans, that they would scarcely ever after abide to come into the field against the English-Saxons. And many a yeere after that, King *Edmund* surnamed *Iron-side*, gave there a notable foile to the Danes, as he pursued *Canutus* their King, then usurping the Crowne of England from place to place. The house of *Lorty*, called in Latine Records, *de Vrtiaco*, was great hereabout, possessing *Stoke Triske*, *Cocklington*, and other Mannours, and Henric *Lorty* of this house, was summoned a Baron to the Parliament, in the time of King Edward the First.

Now to returne: the river *Ivel* from hence runneth to *Ischalys*, mentioned by Ptolomee, now *Iwelcester*: named in the Catalogue of Ninnius (if I be not deceived) *Pontavel Coit*, for *Pont-Ivel Coit*, that is, *Ivel bridge in the wood*: by Florentius of Worcester, *Givelcester*: at this day of small account, but onely for the antiquitie, and the market there kept: for peeces of the Roman *Cæsars*, or Emperours money, of gold,* brasse, and silver, are other whiles here digged up. That in old time it had been a great towne, and on some sides strengthened with a double wall, the ruines declare, and two towers upon the Bridge. About the time of the Normans comming in, well peopled it was, and much frequented: For, reckoned there were in it one hundred and seven Burgeses. A sure place also in those daies, and well fortified: for in the yeere of Grace 1088, when the Nobles of England had conspired, & plotted against King *William Rufus*, to put him downe,* and set up his brother Robert Duke of Normandie in his Roiall throne, Robert Mowbray a warlike man, having burnt Bath, forcibly assaulted this towne, but with lost labour; yet, what hee could not doe then, long proceffe of time hath now partly effected, and in some sort over-mastred it.

The Familie
of the Cur-
cies.
Iohn de Cury.

Vzella;

Evell.

Camalet.

Cadburie.

Moeles.
* *Avia*.
De novo Moeles.

*
1796.
Wincaunton
Pen.

* *Lorty*, Baron
of *Vrtiaco*.

Ischalys.
Iwelcester,
commonly,
Ilcheester.

* Or, Copper.

Meehelney.
The River

Pedred.

Pedderton.

Montacute in
Domeyday
booke, *Mon-*
*tagud.*Annales of
Glaston.* *Drogo Iu-*
na.
Lords Mon-
tagute.

Odcombe.

* *Grice.*
Briewers Ba-
rons.Register of
Dunkeswell.

Gornays.

Newtons.

A little beneath, by *Langport* a proper market town, the Rivers *Iwel* and *Pedred* run-
ning together, make between them an Iland, called *Meehelney*, that is to say, *The*
great Iland, wherein are to be seen the defaced walles and ruines of an old Abbey,
built by King *Athelstane*, as writers report. This *Pedred*, commonly named *Rare*,
hath his beginning in the verie edge or skirt of the shire southward, and holding on
a crooked and winding course thorow *Crockborne*, in the Saxon tongue, *Croceborne*,
and *Pedderton*, to whom it gave the name, sometime *Pedridan*, the Roiall seat of
King *Ina*, (which towne now adayes is of none account, unlesse it be for the mar-
ket, and faire there held; which *Henric Daubeney* obtained of King *Henric the*
Sixth) at this place runneth into *Iwel*, and robbeth him of his name, when hee is
come downe three miles Eastward, and hath bidden farewell to *Montacute*. For-
med by the Earle of Moriton, brother by the Mothers side to King *William the*
Conquerour, (who built a Castle upon the verie hill top, and at the foot thereof a
Priorie) because the said hill riseth up by little and little to a sharpe point: for, be-
fore time it was called *Logoresburgh*, and *Biscopeston*. As for the Castle, it came to
nothing many yeeres since: the stones thereof being had away to the repairing of
the Monasterie and other houses. Upon the pitch of the said hill, there was a Cha-
pell afterwards fer, and dedicated unto Saint *Michael*, built with arch-woke, and
an embowed rooffe overhead all of stone, right artificially: to which for halfe a
mile wel nere, men ascended upon stone-staires, which in their ascent fetched a com-
passe round about the hill. But now that the Priorie and chapell both be pulled down,
the faire and goodly house, which *Sir Edward Philips Knight*, and the Kings Sargeant
at Law built lately at the hill foote, maketh a very beautifull shew. This high place
Montacute hath given surname to that right honourable family of *Montacute*, which
had their beginning of *Dru* the younger. Out of which there were foure Earles of
Sarisburie: the last of them left one daughter onely, *Alice*, who by *Richard Nevil*,
pare *Richard* that renowned Earle of *Warwick*, who kept such stirres, and made
all England to shake, also *Iohn Nevil Marquesse Montacute*, who were both slain
at *Barnet* field, in the yeere 1472. Afterward King *Henric the Eighth* conferred the
title of Lord *Montacute*, upon *Henric Poole*, sonne of *Margaret*, daughter to *George*
Duke of Clarence, that came of the daughter of that *Richard Nevill* aforesaid, Earle
of *Warwicke*: and when hee had so done, straightwaies made him shorter by the
head: afterwards *Queene Marie* advanced *Anthonie Browne*, whose Grandmother
was a daughter of *Iohn Nevill Marquesse Montacute*, to the title and honour of Vi-
count *Montacute*, which his Grandchild *Anthonie* who succeeded him now honour-
ably enjoyeth.

And here I must not forget neither, *Preston*, sometime the seat of *Iohn Sturton*
younger sonne to the first Lord *Sturton*, one of whose heires was married to *Siden-*
ham of *Brimston* thereby; neither *Odcombe* adjoyning thereto, as small a towne as it
is, seeing it had a Baron of the owne, *William de Briewer* (for so was his father na-
med, in the Norman-French, because he was borne in an * heath) who being taken
up in the new Forrest, by King *Henric the Second* in a hunting journey, proved a
great man, and gracious in the Court (as whom King *Richard the First* highly fa-
vored as his minion, and all the world embraced and loved) grew unto a verie wealthy
estate, married *Beatrix of Vannes*, widow to *Reginald Earle of Cornwall*, and his
daughters, for that his sonne died without issue, by their marriages brought great
possessions to their husbands *Breos Wake*, *La-fert*, and *Piercy*. Under this towne hard
by, lieth *Stoke under Hamden*, where the *Gornaies* had their Castle, and built a Col-
ledge. This familie of *Gornaico*, commonly named *Gornay*, was verie ancient, and
of good account, descended from the same stocke, out of which the *Warrens* Earles
of *Surrie*, and the *Mortimers* are sprung: but in the fore-going age it failed, and
some of their lands defended by the *Hamptons*, to the house of the *Newtons*
Knights, who willingly acknowledge themselves to bee come out of *Wales*; and
not long since to have beene named *Caradocks*. Neither must I passe over in silence,
how *Matthew Gournay*, a most famous warriour in the rainge of *Edward the Third*,
was

A was buried heere; who in the fourescore and sixteenth yeere of his age, ended this life
when (as appeareth by his Epitaph) he had fought at the siege of *Algizer*, against the
Saracens, in the battels of *Benamazin*, *Scluse*, *Crestie*, *Ingenos*, *Poitiers*, and *Nazars* in
Spain. Then * *Pedred* watereth *Marstocke*, a litle market Towne, which in times past
William of Boloigne King *Stephens* sonne gave unto *Faramuse of Boloigne*, whose sole
heire *Sibyll*, was wedded to *Ingeltraine Fienes*, from whom descended the *Fienes*, *Bar-*
ons of Dacre, and *Lords Say* and *Sels*.

Parret from hence thorow the mire and moorish plaine countrey, holding his
course Northward, passed by *Langport* a market Towne well frequented, and *Aulre*,
B a Village consisting of a few poore Cottages, which seemeth to have beene a Towne
of good account: for, when King *Elfred* had given the Danes such an overthrow in
battell, and by strait siege compelled them to yeeld, so farre forth, that they tooke an
oath immediately to depart out of his dominions, and *Godrus* their King promised
to become Christian, (as writeth *Afferius*) at this very place he with great pompe
was Godfather to the said *Godrus* at the sacred Font.

Beneath this place from the West, Parret receiveth into it the river *Thone*,
which springing farre of in the West part of this Countrey, very neere unto *Devon-*
shire, runneth thorow most rich and pleasant fields, passing downe neere *Wivelscomb*,
assigned anciently to the Bishops of *Bathe*, and by *Wellington*, which in the time of
C King *Edward the elder* was a land of six * *Manentes*, what time hee granted it to-
gether with *Lediard*, that had twelve *Manentes*, Hides, unto the Bishop of *Shirburne*.
Now, a prettie market Towne it is, and graced most by the habitation there of *Sir*
Iohn Popham (For, *vertuous men*, and such as have so well deserved of their countrey, are
not to be passed in silence) a man of an ancient worshipfull house, and withall a most
upright Iusticer, and of singular industry, who being Lord chiefe Iustice of the Kings
Bench, administred his office toward malefactours with such holefome and avail-
able severity, that England hath beene beholden unto him a long time for a great part
of her private peace, and home-securitie.

Forthence with a soft streame, and gentle fall, *Thone* runneth by *Thanton*,
D commonly *Taunton*, and giveth it his name. A very fine and proper Towne this is
indeed, and most pleasantly seated: in a word, one of the eyes of this shire: where
Ina King of the West Saxons, built a Castle, which *Desburgia* his wife raced, and laid
even with the ground after shee had expelled from thence *Eadbritch*, King of the
South-Saxons, who now had made himselfe Lord thereof, and used it as a bridle to
keepe the countrey under, that he had subdued. When *Edward the Confessour* was
King, it paid tribute (as wee find in the Kings Survey-Booke of England) after the
rate of fiftie and foure Hides: and had in it threescore and three Burgers: *The Bi-*
shop of Winchester held it as Lord, and his courts or Pleas were kept heere thrice in the yeere.

E And these Customes appertaine to *Taunton*, *Burgheriffs*, *Theeves*, * *Breach of peace*, *han-*
nifare, *pence of the Hundred*, and *pence of Saint Peter de Circeto*, thrice in the yeere to
hold the Bishops Pleas without warning, to goe forth to warfare with the Bishops men. The
Country heere, most delectable on every side with greene meadows; flourishing
with pleasant Gardens and Orchards, and replenished with faire Mannour houses;
wonderfully contenteth the eyes of the beholders. And among these houses; those
of greatest note are these: *Orchard*, which had in times past Lords of that name,
from whom in right of Inheritance it descended unto the *Portmans*, men of
Knights degree: *Hach Beauchamp*, and *Cory Mallet*, bearing those additions of their
Lords. For, this was the seat of the *Mallets*, that came of the Norman race, and
from them in short time, it fell by the female heire to the *Pointzes*. From among
F whom in the rainge of *Edward the First*, *Hugh* was ranged in the rank of Parliament
Barons, and out of that familie some remaine at this day of great reputation, and
Knights in their Countrey. As for those *Beauchamps*, or *de Bello Campo*, they flour-
ished in high places of honour, from the time of King *Henric the Second*: but es-
pecially since, that *Cecilie* * *de Fortibus*, which derived her pedigree from the Earles
de Ferrarjs, and that great Marshall of England *William Earle of Pembroke*, match-

* Parret.

Faramuse
of Bolen.
Fienes.

Aulre.

Wellington.

* Hides.
Lediard.Iohn Pop-
ham.

Taunton.

* Penaltie for
peace-brea-
king, *Pace*
Infractio.

Mallet.

Pointzes.

Beauchamps
Barons.

* Forts.

Vicount
Beauchamp.

ed in marriage with this familie. But in the raigne of Edward the Third, the whole inheritance, was by the sisters divided betwene *Roger de S. Mauro*, or *Seimor*, *J. Maria*, men of ancient descent, and great alliance. And hereupon it was, that King Henrie the Eight, when he had wedded Iane Seimor, mother to King Edward the Sixth, bestowed upon Edward Seimor her brother, the titles of Vicount *Beauchamp*, and Earle of *Hertford*, whom King Edward the Sixth afterwards honoured, first with the name of Lord and Baron Seimor to bee annexed to his other titles, left (as the King saith in the Patent) the name of his mothers familie should bee overshadowed with any other stile, and yet afterward created him Duke of Sommerfet.

As you goe from thence, where *Thone* windeth himselfe into *Parret*, it maketh a pretty lland betwene two rivers called in times past *Aethelinge*, that is, *The Isle of Nobles*, now commonly known by the name of *Athelney*: a place no lesse famous among us for King *Alfreds* throwding himselfe therein, what time as the Danes now had brought all into broile, then those Marishes of *Minturny* among the Italians, wherein *Marius* lurked, and lay hidden. For, touching that King an ancient Poet, wrote thus:

— Mixta dolori
*Gaudia semper erant, spes semper mixta timori.
Si modo victor erat, ad crastina bella pavebat,
Si modo victus erat, ad crastina bella parabat.
Cui vestes sudore jugi, cui sica crure
Tincta jugi, quantum sit onus regnare probant.*

With dolour great his joyes were mixt, his hope was joyn'd with dread,
If now he victour were, next day of warres he stood affraid:
If vanquish now, the morrow next forthwith hee thought it good
For to prepare for warre: his sword was aye begoird in blood.
His garments eke with painfull sweat, were evermore bestain'd.
Which well did shew what burden great he bare while that he raign'd.

And in truth, this Isle afforded him a very fit shrowding corner: for that by reason of waters partly standing there in plasches, and partly resorting reflowing thither, which *Asferius* termed *Gronnas*, Latinizing a Saxon word) there is in manner necessary into it. It had sometime a bridge betwene two castles, built by *Aelfred*, and a very large grove of *Alders*, full of goates and wild beasts: but of firme ground scarce two acres in breadth: on which, as saith *William of Malmesbury* (whose words these are and not mine) hee founded a little Monasterie: the whole frame whereof, hanged upon foure maine posts pitched fast in the ground, with foure round isles of Spherick work contrived and brought round about the same. Not far from this Isle *Parret* having received the said river runneth alone swelling with certaine sandy shelles sometime in his channell, by the Hundred of *N. Pederton* anciently acknowledging the *Blunts* to have bene Lords thereof, who are thought to have brought that name from *Bluet* in litle Britaine: Heere it taketh into him an other river from East to beare him company which openeth it selfe neere *Castle Cary* which *William Lovell* Lord thereof held against *K. Stephen* in the behalfe of *Mawd* the Empresse right inheritor of the Crown of England, whose issue male failing in the time of King Edward the Third, by heire female it came to *Nicholas de S. Mauro* a Baron (of a distinct familie from that which was a few lines before mentioned) and shortly after about the time of Henrie the Fifth by an heire female againe to the Lord *Zouches* of *Harringworth*: as a moitie of the lands of Lord *Zouch* of *Ashby de la Zouch* came before by coheires to the house of this *S. Mauro*. But when the Lord *Zouch* was attainted by *K. Henrie* the Seventh for assisting King *Richard* the Third, this Castle was given by the *K.* to *Robert Willoughby* Lord Brooke as his lands at *Bridge-water* to the Lord *Daubeney* and then hee was restored in blood. From *Castle Cary* this water passeth by *Lites-Cary* to bee remembered in respect of the late owner *Thomas Lyte* a gentleman studious of all good knowledge, and so to *Somer-ton*, the Shire towne in times past, as which gave the name thereto. A Castle it had of the West Saxon Kings, which *Ethelbald* King of *Mercia* forcing a breach through

Lovell.
Lupellus in
Latin.
Castile Cary.

Lord Saint
Mauro.

A the wals sieged and kept: But now time hath gotten the mastery of it so, as that there is no apparance at all thereof: and the very Towne it selfe would have much a doe to keepe that name, were it not for a Faire of oxen and other beasts which is kept, there from *Palme-Sunday* untill the midst of June, with much resort of people; for that the countymen all there about are very great Graiers, breeders, and feeders of cattell.

No sooner hath *Parret* entertained this river, but he speeds him apace toward, a great and populous towne, commonly called *Bridge-water*: and is thought to have taken that name of the Bridge and water there: but the old records and evidences gaine say this opinion: wherein it is alwayes called in plaine words *Burg-water*, that is, *Walters burgh* or *Burgh-walter*: and (as we may very probably conjecture) of that *Walter de Duaco*, or *Doway* who served under *William Conqueror* in his wars, and received at his hands many faire mannors in this shire. Neither carrieth it any other name in that grant or donation, whereby *Fulke Paynes* Lord of *Bampton* passed the possession of the place over unto *William Briwer*, to curry favour with him, being so great a man and so gracious a favourite with King *Richard* the First: This *Williams* sonne and bearing his name, bettered this haven, having obtained licence of King *John* to fortifie a Castle, built heere a Fortresse: which now time hath wrought her will of: and began a bridge which one *Strivet* a gentleman of *Cornwall* with infinite cost finished: founded also the Hospitall of *S. John* heere, and *Dunkeswell Abbey*.
C But when this *William Briwer* the younger left this life without issue, in the partition of his heritage it fell to *Margaret* his sister, in right of whose daughter that she had by *William De la fort*, it came to the house of *Cadurci* or *Chaworths*, and from it hereditarily to the Dukes of *Lancaster*, as some lands heereabout by an other sister came to *Breos*, and so by *Cantalupe* to Lord *Zouch*. But the greatest honor that this place had, was by the title of an Earldome, that King *Henrie* the Eight adorned it withall, what time as he created *Henrie Daubeney*, Earle of *Bridge-water*, whose sister *Cecilie*, was married unto *John Bourchier* the first Earle of *Bath* out of that house.

Earles of
Bridge-water.

Beneath this, some few miles off, *Parret* voideth it selfe into the *Severne* sea at a wide mouth, which, as we said, *Ptolomee* called *Vzella astuarium*: and some even at this day, *Evelmouth*: but the old English-Saxons *Peopsean muð*, at which place, as *Marianus* mine author writeth, *Salisan* Bishop of *Shirburne* about the yeere of *Salvation* 845. discomfited the Danish forces as they were stragling abroad. At the same mouth where we saw *Honifpell* an ancient Mannour of the *Coganes*, men of great fame in the conquest of *Ireland*, there meeteth it another river called of some *Brius* which ariseth out of that great and wide wood in the East-side of this shire, which the Britans named *Cort Maur*, the Saxons *Selwood*, that is, (by *Asferius* interpretation) *The great wood*, but now not so great. This river first visiteth *Bruiton*, to which he leaveth his name: (a place memorable, for that the *Mobuns* there entombed, who built a religious house of the *Fitz-lames*, runneth a long way by small villages and encreased with some other brooks, it watereth goodly grounds, untill it meete with softer soile then and there, it maketh certaine marshes and meres, and when the waters rise, environeth a large plot of ground, as an Isle, so called of old time in the British tongue, the Isle of *Avalon*, of *Appulis*: afterwards, named *Inis Witrin*, that is, *The Glassy Isle*, like as in the Saxon Idiom, the same sense *Glar-ton-ey*, and in Latin *Glasconia*. Of which, a Poet of good antiquity writeth thus.

Vzella.

Selwood.

Bruiton.

*Insula pomorum quæ fortunata vocatur,
Ex renomen habet, quia per se singula profert.
Non opus est illi sulcantibus arva colonis,
Omnis abest cultus, nisi quem natura ministrat,
Vltro secundas segetes producit, & herbas,
Nataque poma suis prætonso germine sylvis.*

F

The Apple-Isle and Fortunate, folke of the thing so call,
For of it selfe it bringeth forth corne, Forage, fruit and all.
There is no need of country clowns to plough and till the fields,

Nor

Nor scene is any husbandry, but that which nature yeelds.
Of the owne accord there commeth up, corne, grasse and herbs good store,
Whole woods there be that apples beare, if they be prun'd before.

William Mal-
mesbury, of
Glastenburys
antiquity.

See Romans
in Britanic.
in confirm.
Henric. 2.

In this Isle under a great hill rising in great height with a tower thereon, which they call the *Tor*, flourished the famous Abbay of *Glastenbury*, the beginning whereof is very ancient, fetched even from that Ioseph of *Arimathæa*, who entered the bodie of Iesus Christ; and whom Philip the Apostle of the Gauls sent into Britaine for to preach *Christ*. For, thus much both the most ancient records and monuments of this Monasterie testifie, and also Patrick the Irish Apostle (who lived there a Monke thirtie yeeres) in an Epistle of his hath left to memorie. Whereupon this place was by our Ancestors named, *The first land of God*, *The first land of Saints in England*, *The beginning and fountaine of all religion in England*, *The tombe of Saints*, *The mother of Saints*, *The Church founded and built by the Lords Disciples*. Neither is there any cause why we should much doubt thereof, sithence I have shewed before, that the beames of Christian religion in the very infancy of the primitive Church were spread and thined upon this Iland, yea and *Freculphus Lexoviensis* hath written, that the said Philip conducted barbarous nations, neere unto darknesse and bordering jurg upon the Ocean, to the light of knowledge and port of faith. But to our Monasterie, and that out of *Malmesburie* his booke touching this matter. When that old Cell or little chappell which Ioseph had built by continuance of time was in the end decayed, *Devi Bishop* of Saint Davids erected a new one in the same place, which also in time falling to ruine, twelve men coming out of the North part of Britaine repaired it, and lastly King *Ina* (who founded a schoole in Rome for the training up and instruction of English youth, & to the maintenance thereof, as also for almes to be distributed at Rome, had laid an imposition of Peter-pence upon every house thorowout his realme) having demolished it, built there a very faire and stately Church, to *Christ*, *Peter*, and *Paul*: and under the very highest coping thereof round about caused to be written these verses:

*Syderi montes, speciosa cacumina Sion,
A Libano gemina flore comante, cedri;
Celorum porta lati duo lumina mundi.
Ore tonat Paulus, fulgurat arce Petrus:
Inter Apostolicas radiant luce coronas,
Doctior hic monitis, celsior ille gradu,
Corda per hunc hominum referantur, & astra per illum:
Quis docet iste stylo, suscipit ille polo.
Pandit iter cæli hic dogmate, clavibus alter,
Est via cui Paulus, janua fida Petrus.
Hic Petra firma manens, ille Architectus habetur,
Surgit in huius templum quo placet ara Deo.
Anglia plaude lubens, mittit tibi Roma salutem,
Fulgor Apostolicus Glasconiam irradiat.
A facie hostili duo propugnacula surgunt,
Quod fidei turres urbs caput orbis habet.
Hæc pius egregio Rex Ina refertus amore,
Dona suo populo non moritura dedit.
Totus in affectu divæ pietatis inhaerens,
Ecclesieque iuges amplificavit opes.
Melchisedech master meritò Rex, atq; Sacerdos,
Complexit veræ religionis opus,
Publica jura regens, & celsa palatia servans,
Unica Pontificum gloria, norma fuit.
Hinc abiens, illinc meritorum fulget honore,
Hic quoque gestorum laude perennis erit.*

These verses
with some
little change
are found in
the fourth
booke of *Pe-
nantina Fortu-
natus* his Po-
ems: in the
praise partly of
the Church in
Paris and
partly of
Nants.

Two mountaines high that reach the stars, two tops of Sion Faire,
From Libanon two cedar trees their flouring heads doe beare.
Two royall gates of highest heaven, two lights that men admire,
Paul thundreth with his voice aloft, Peter he flasheth fire.
Of all the Apostles crowned crew, whose raies right glittering bee,
Paul for deepe learning doth excell, Peter for high degree.
The one doth open the hearts of men, the other heaven doore,
For Peter lets those into heaven, whom Paul had taught before.
As one by meanes of doctrine shewes the way how heaven to win,
By vertue so of th' others Keys, men quickly enter in.
Paul is a plaine and ready way for men to heaven hie,
And Peter is as sure a gate, for them to passe thereby.
This is a rocke remaining firme: a Master builder hee:
Twixt these a Church and altar both, to please God, built we see.
Rejoice ò England willingly; For, Rome doth greet thee well,
The glorious Apostles light in Glaston now doe dwell.
Two bulwarks strong afront the Foe are rais'd; These towres of faith
In that this Citie holds, the head even of the world it hath.
These monuments King *Ina* gave of perfect meere good will
Unto his subjects; whose good deeds remaine and shall doe still.
He with his whole affection in godlinesse did live,
And holy Church to amplifie great riches also give.
Well might he our *Melchisedech*, a Priest and King, be thought,
For he the true religious worke to full perfection brought.
The lawes in common weale he kept, and state in Court beside,
The onely Prince that prelates grac'd, and them eke rectified.
And now departed hence to heaven, of right he there doth reigne,
Yet shall the praise of his good deeds, with us for ay remaine.

In this first age of the primitive Church, very holy men and the Irish especially applied the service of God in this place diligently, who were maintained with allowances from Kings, and instructed youth in religion and liberall sciences. These men embraced a solitarie life, that they might the more quietly studie the Scriptures, and by an austere kind of life exercise themselves to the bearing of the crosse. But at length, *Dunstan* a man of a subtil wit and well experienced, when he had once by an opinion of his singular holinesse and learning wound himselfe into the inward acquaintance of Princes, in stead of these, brought in Monks of a later order, called *Benedictines*, and himselfe first of all others became the Abbat or ruler heere of a great convent of them; who had formerly, and afterward gotten at the hands of good and godly Princes a royall revenue. And having reigned as it were in all affluence 600. yeres (for all their neighbours round about were at their beck) they were by K. Henry the Eighth dispossessed & thrust out of all, & this their Monastery, which was growne now to be a pretty Citie, environed with a large wall a mile about; & replenished with stately buildings, was razed and made even with the ground: and now onely sheweth evidently by the ruines thereof, how great and how magnificent a thing it was.

Now, I might be thought one of those that in this age have vanities in admiration, if I should tell you of a Walnut tree in the holy Churchyard here, that never did put forth leafe before *S. Barnabees* feast, and upon that very day was rank and full of leaves; but that is now gone, and a young tree in the place: as also of the Hawthorne in *Wiral-park* hard by, which upon Christmasday sprouteth forth as well as in May. And yet there bee very many of good credit, if we may beleieve men of their word, who avouch these things to be most true. But, before I returne from hence, I wil briefly set downe unto you that, which *Giraldus Cambrensis* an eie-witnesse of the thing, hath more at large related touching *Arthurs* Sepulchre in the Churchyard there.

When Henric the Second King of England, tooke knowledge out of the Songs of British Bards, or Rhythmers, how Arthur that most noble *Worthy* of the Britans who

Arthur, the
warlike Wor-
thy.

by

by his Martial prowesse, had many a time daunted the fury of the English-Saxons, by buried heere betwene two Pyramides, or sharpe-headed pillars, hee caused the Bodie to be searched for: and scarcely had they digged seven foot deepe into the earth, but they lighted upon a Tomb or Grave-stone, on the upper face whereof was fastned a broad Crosse of lead grossly wrought: which being taken forth shewed an inscription of letters: and under the said stone almost nine foot deeper, was found a Sepulchre of oake made hollow, wherein the bones of that famous Arthur were bestowed, which Inscription or Epitaph, as it was sometime exemplified, and drawn out of the first Copie in the Abbey of Glascon, I thought good for the antiquitie of the characters here to put downe. The letters being made after a barbarous maner, & resembling the Gothick Character, bewray plainly the barbarisme of that age, when ignorance (as it were) by fatall destinie bare such sway, that there was none to be found, by whose writings the renowne of Arthur might bee blazed, and commended to posteritie. A matter and argument doubtlesse, meet to have bene handled by the skill and eloquence of some right learned man, who in celebrating the praises of so great a prince, might have wonne due commendation also for his owne wit. For, the most valiant Champion of the British Empire, seemeth even in this behalfe onely, most unfortunate, that he never met with such a trumpetter, as might worthily have founded out the praise of his valour. But behold the said Crosse and Epitaph therein.



Neither will it be impertinent, if I annex hereunto what our Countrey man, Ioseph, [a Monke] of Excester, no vulgar and triviall Poet, versified, sometime of Arthur in his Poeme *Antiocheis*, wherein he described the warres of the Christians for recoverie of the Holy Land, and was there present with King Richard the First, speaking of Britaine.

*Hinc celebri fato felici claruit ortu
Flos Regum Arthurus, cuius cum facta stupori,
Non micere minus, totus quod in aure voluptas,
Et populo plaudente favus. Quemcumq; priorum
Inspice, * Pelam commendat fama tyrannum,
Pagina Casarcos loquitur Romanatriumphos,
Alcidem domitis attollit gloria monstris.
Sed nec pinetum coryli, nec sydera solem
Aequant: Annales Latios, Graecisq; revolve,
Prisca parem nescit, aequalem postera nullum
Exhibitura dies. Reges supereminet omnes,
Solut praeferitis melior, majorq; futuris.*

* Alexandrum
Magnum.

For famous death, and happie birth, hence flourish'd next in place,
Arthur the flower of noble Kings: whose acts with lovely grace
Accepted and admired were, in peoples mouth and eare,
No lesse than if sweet hony they, or pleasant musicke were.
See former Princes, and compare his worth even with them all:
That King in Pella borne, whom we great Alexander call,
The trumpe of fame doth sound aloft. The Roman Stories eke
Much praise and honour both, of their Triumphant Caesars speake.
And Hercules exalted is for taming Monsters fell:
But Pine-trees, hazels low, (as Sunne the Starres) doe farre excell:
Both Greeke and Latine Annals read: no former age his Peere,
Nor future time his match can shew. For this is plaine and cleere,
In goodesse hee and greatnesse both, surmounts Kings all and some,
Better alone, than all before, greater than those to come.

And this worthy Knight, (that I may note so much also by the way out of Ninnius the Britan, if it be worth the noting) was called, *Mab iwer*, that is, *A terrible or dreadful Sonne*, because hee was from his childhood cruell; and *Artur*, which in the British tongue importeth as much as a horrible beare, or any yron mall, wherewith the Lions jawes are bruised and broken.

Lo here also, if it please you, other monuments of this place, though they bee not of the greatest antiquitie, out of the foresaid William of Malmesburie. *That* (quoth he) *which to all men is altogether unknowne, I would gladly relate, if I could picke out the truth: namely, what those sharp pillars or pyramides should meane which beeing set distant certaine feet from the old Church, stand in the front, and border of the Churchyard. The highest of them, and that which is neerer to the Church, than the rest, hath five stories, and carrieth in height six and twentie foot: Which albeit for age it be ready to fall, yet hath it certaine antiquities to be seene, that plainly may be read, although they cannot so easily bee understood. For in the uppermost storie, there is an Image in habit and attire of a Bishop: in the next under it, the statue of a King in his royall robes, and these Letters, HER. SEXI. and BLISVVERH. In the third, these names likewise, and nothing else, WHEMCHREST. BANTOMP. WINEVEGNE. In the fourth HATE. WVLERDE. &c. EANFLEDE. In the fifth, which is the lowest, a portait, and this writing, LOGVVOR. WESLIELAS, &c. BREGDENE. SVVBLVVS. HVVINGENDES. BERNE. The other Pyramis is eightene foot high, and hath foure stories or stories; in which you may read, HEDDE * Bishop, &c. BREGORRED, &c. BEORVVALDE. What all this should signifie, I take not upon me rashly to define: but by conjecture I gather, that in some hollowed stones within, are contained the bones of those, whose names are read without. Surely LOGVVOR is affirmed for certaine, to be the same man, of whose name*

The Pyrami-
des of Gla-
sconburie.

* Episcopus.

the place was sometime called *Loovvereseborgh*, which now they call *Mam-mus* And *Beorvalde* semblably was Abbat next after *Hemgiselvs*.

Edgar the
Peaceable.

To reckon up here the Kings of the West-Saxons, that were buried in this place, would be but needlesse: Howbeit, King Edgar the Peaceable, who alwaies rendered peace, in regard thereof, if there were nothing else, I cannot but remember, and put downe his Epitaph,

*Auctor opum, vindex scelerum, largitor honorum,
Scep-triger Edgarus regna superna petis.
Hic alter Salomō, legum pater, orbis pacis,
Quod caruit bellis, clarnit inde magis.
Templa Deo, templis monachos, monachis dedit agros,
Nequitia lapsus, Iustitiæq; locus.
Novit enim regno verum perquirere falso,
Immensum modico perpetuumq; brevis.*

That well of wealth, and scourge of sinne, that honour-giver great,
King Edgar hence is gone to hold in heaven his royall seat:
This second Salomon that was, laws-father, Prince of peace,
In that he wanted warres, the more his glorie had increase.
Churches to God, to Churches Monkes, to Monks faire Lands he gave,
Downe went in his daies wickednesse, and Iustice place might have:
A pure crowne for a counterfeite he purchased once for all,
An endlesse Kingdome for a short, a boundlesse for a small.

Godney
Moore.

Beneath *Glascon* three Rivers which there meete, doe make a meere, and issuing forth at one litle mouth, rume all in one channell West-ward, to *Uzel-la* Frith, first by *Gedney* or (as others will have it) *Godney more*, which (they say) signifieth, *Gods* land, and was granted to Ioseph of *Arimathea*: then, by *Week moore*, a Mannour of King *Ælfreds*, which by his last Will and Testament, he gave as a legacie to his sonne Edward, and so by that moory or fenny-country *Crentmashe*, that runneth out verie farre, which the Monkes of *Glastenbury* interpreted to bee the Country of *Fen Frogges*, like as the litle Towne *Brenknoll* there, which signifieth, *Frog-hill*.

Mendip-hills.

From thence Eastward, *Mendippe hills* extend themselves in length and breadth, Leland calleth them *Minerarios*, that is, the *Minerall hills*; and rightly (as I suppose) being they be in old writings named *Minneduppe*: for, rich they are in lead mines, and good to feed cattell. Among these hills there is a cave or denne farre within the ground: wherein are to be seene certaine pits and rivelets, the place they call *Osh-hole*, whereof the Inhabitants feine no fewer tales, nor devise lesse dotages, than the Italians did of their Sibyls Cave in the mountaine *Apeninns*. The name (no doubt) grew of *Ogo*, a British word, that betokeneth, a *Den*: even of the like den, the Isle *Eubæa*, was by such another name sometime called *Ocha*. Not far hence, in the raigne of K. Henrie the Eighth, was turned up with the plough, a table of lead somewhat long, which lay long at *Lambith* in the Duke of Norfolkes house, erected sometime for a trophee in token of victorie, with this inscription:

Strabo.

T. I. CLAUDIUS CAESAR. AVG. P. M.
TRIB. P. VIII. IMP. XVI. DE BRITAN.

This Tribuneship of Claudius here mentioned, fell out to be in the 802. yeere after the foundation of Rome, when *Antistius* and *M. Sullius* were Consuls, what time *P. Ostorius* Governour of Britaine as Vice-Pretour, was welcomed thither with many troubles. Out of this time, give me leave, I pray you, to frame certain conjectures: That in this yeere Claudius erected two Trophees, or monuments of victorie over the Britans, his owne ancient coine sheweth as a most certaine witnesse, in the fore-
part

part whereof is this plaine Inscription, T. I. CLAUD. CÆSAR. AVG. P. M. T. R. P. VIII. IMP. XVI. P. P. and in the reverse thereof, DE BRITAN. and there is expressely stamped a triumphall Arch, with an Image of one galloping on horsebacke, and with two triumphall pillars. What Britaines these were then vanquished, Tacitus sheweth, testifying that this yeere Claudius by the conduct of Ostorius subdued two Nations of the Britans this yeere, to wit, The *ICENI*, and the *CAN-*
Cangi, a peo-
ple of Brit-
taine.
nus (as it were) in another climate. What if I said, this Trophee was set up in token of victorie over the Cangi, a smaller nation among our *Belge*, and that those *CANGI*, were seated in these parts. For, not far from hence is the sea, that lieth toward Ireland, neere which he placeth the *Cangi*, of whose name there seemeth as yet in certaine places of this tract, some shadow to remaine, namely, in *Cannington*, & *Cannings*, pettie countries and Hundreds: as also in *Wincauntion*, which elsewhere is called *Cangton*. But of these matters let the reader be judge; my selfe (as I said) doth no more but conjecture, whiles I seeke to trace out these their footsteps, and hope to find them out some where-else.

Among these hills standeth *Chuton*, which was the habitation, (if I take not my markes amisse) of William Bonvill, whom King Henrie the Sixth called by his writ of Summons to the Parliament, by the name *William de Bonvill* and *Chuton*, among other Barons of the Realme, made him Knight of the Garter, and richly matched his sonne in marriage with the sole daughter of Lord Harington. But when he (unthankfull man that he was) in the heare of civill warre, revolted, and tooke part with the house of Yorke, as if vengeance had pursued him hard at heeles, that only sonne of his he saw taken from him by untimely death, and his nephew by the same sonne, Baron of Harington, slaine at the battell of Wakefield: and immediately after, (that his old age might want no kind of miserie) whiles he waited still, and long looked for better daies, was himselfe taken prisoner in the second battell of Saint Albans, and having now run through his full time by course of nature, lost his head, leaving behind him for his heire, his Grand-childs daughter Cecillie, a Damselfe of tender yeares, who afterwards with a great inheritance, was wedded to Thomas Greie, Marquess
D Dorset. But his blood after his death was by authoritie of Parliament restored.

Bonvill.

Under *Mendip hills* northward, there is a litle village, called, *Cangersburie*, so named of one *Conger*, a man of singular holinesse. Capgrave hath written, that hee was the Emperours sonne of *Constantinople* who lived there an Eremite: also *Harpetre*, a Castle by right of inheritance, fell to the *Gornaies*, and from thence descended to the *Ab. Adams*, who as I have read, restored it to the *Gornaies* again. Southward, not farre from the foresaid hole, where *Mendip* slopeth downe with a stony descent, a litle citie with an Episcopall See, is scituate beneath at the hill foot, sometime called, (as faith Leland) but whence he had it, I wot not, *Theodorodunum*, now *Welles*, so named of the Springs, or Wells, which boile and walme up there: like as *Susa* in Persia, *Crota* in Dalmatia; and *Pagase* in Macedonia, were named of the like fountaines; in their country speech: whereupon this also in Latin, is called, *Fontanensis Ecclesia*, as one would say, *Fountain-Church*. For multitude of Inhabitants, for faire and stately buildings, it may well and truly chalenge the preheminece of all this Province. A goodly Church it hath, and a Colledge, founded by King *Ina*, in honour of Saint Andrew, and soone after endowed by Princes, and great men with rich livings, and revencues: among whom King Kinewolp by name, in the yeare of our Lord 766. granted unto it very many places lying thereabout. For, in a Charter of his wee read thus, *I Kinewolp, King of the West-Saxons, for the love of God, and (that which is not openly to be spoken) for some vexation of our enemies, those of the Cornish Nation, with the consent of my Bishops and Nobles, with most humbly give and consecrate some parcell of Land to Saint Andrew the Apostle, and servant of God, that is to say, as much as cometh to * Eleven Hides, neere to the River called Welwe, for the augmentation of that Manasterie, which standeth neere the great fountaine that they call Wiclea. This Charter have I set downe, both for the antiquitie, and because some have supposed, that the place tooke name of this River; verily, neere the Church there is a Spring, called*
Saint

Edward. 4.

Harpetre.

Welles.

See h. in urbi-
bo, and Bar-
leuus.

Manentium. XI.

Saint Andrewes Well, the fairest, deepest, and most plentiful that I have seene, by and by making a swift Brooke. The Church it selfe all throughout is very beautifull, but the Frontispiece thereof, in the West end, is a most excellent and goodly piece of worke indeede, for it ariseth up still from the foot to the top all of imagerie, in curious and antike wise wrought of stone carved, and embowed right artificially, and the Cloisters adjoining very faire and spacious.

A gorgeous pallace of the Bishops, built in manner of a Castle, fortified with walles, and a moate standeth hard by, Southward; and on the other side faire houses of the Prebendaries. For, Seven and Twenty Prebends, with nineteene other petty Prebends, beside a Deane, a Chaunter, a Chancellour, and three Archdeacons belong to this Church. In the time of K. Edward the elder, a Bishops See was here placed. For, when the Pope had suspended him, because the Ecclesiasticall discipline and jurisdiction in these westerne parts of the Realme, began openly to decay, then he knowing himselfe to be a maintainer, and Nurse-father of the Church, ordained three new Bishopricks, to wit, of * Cridie, Cornwall, and this of Welles, where hee made Eadulph the first Bishop. But many yeares after, when Giso late Bishop there, Harold Earle of the West-Saxons, and of Kent (who gaped so greedily for the goods of the Church) so disquiereed and vexed him, that hee went within a little off quite abolishing the dignitie thereof. But King William the Conquerour, after hee had overthrowne Harold, stretched out his helping hand to the succour of banished Giso, and reliefe of his afflicted Church. At what time, (as witnesseth *Doomesday booke*) the Bishop held the whole towne in his owne hands, which paid tribute *after the proportion of fiftie Hides*. Afterwards in the raigne of Henry the First, *Johannes de Villula*, of Tours in France, being now elected Bishop, translated his See to Bathe, since which time the two Sees growing into one, the Bishop beareth the title of both; so that hee is called, *The Bishop of Bathe and Welles*. Whereupon the Monkes of Bathe, and Canons of Welles, entred into a great quarrell, and skuffled, as it were, each with the other about the choosing of their Bishops: Meane while, *Savarnicus* Bishop of Bathe, being also Abbat of Glastenbury, translated the See of Glastenbury and was called Bishop thereof: but when hee died, this title died with him: and the Monkes and Canons aforesaid, were at length brought to accord, by that Robert, who divided the Patrimoine of Welles Church into Prebends, instituting a Deane, Sub-deane, &c. Joceline also, the Bishop about the same time, repaired the Church with new buildings, and within remembrance of our Grand-fathers, Raulph of Shrewsburie, (so some call him) built a very fine Colledge for the Vicars and singing-men, fast by the North side of the Church, and walled in the Bishops Palace. But this rich Church, was dispoiled of many faire possessions in the time of King Edward the Sixth, when England felt all miseries which happen under a Child-King. As ye goe from the Palace to the market-place of the towne, Thomas Beckington the Bishop built a most beautifull gate: who also adjoynd thereto passing faire houses all of uniforme height neere the Market-place; in the midst whereof is to be seene a Market-place, supported with seven Columns or pillar without, arched over-head right daintily, which William Knight the Bishop, and Wolman the Deane founded for the use of people resorting thither to the Market. Thus much of the East-part of the towne: In the West-side thereof, I have seene the parish Church of Saint Cuthberts: next unto which standeth an Hospitall, founded by *Nicolas Burwisch* Bishop for foure and twentie poore people.

Out of those Mendip or Mine-hills, springeth the River *Frome*, which running East-ward, by Cole-pits, before it hath held on a long course that way, turneth North-ward, and serveth in stead of a bound confining this shire and Gloucestershire, and passeth hard under Farley, a Castle not long since of the Lord Hungerfords, scituate upon a Rocke, where Humfrey Bohun built sometime a Monkerie, not farre from *Philips Norton*, a greate Market-towne, which tooke the name of a Church, consecrate to Saint Philip.

Lower

Combes.

* Kirton.
905.Historic of
Bathe.See in the
Decretals. Ne
fede vacante
aliquid intro-
uetur.
1193.Farley.
Philips Nor-
ton.

A Lower than it, *Selwood*, whereof I spake erewhile, spreadeth long and large: a wood standing well and thicke of trees, whereof the country round about adjoyning was named (as *Ethelward* mine Author writeth, *Selwoodshire*: and a towne steepely seated thereby is yet called *Frome Selwood*, which gaineth very much by the trade of cloathing: From which, Westward, not full two miles, there sheweth it selfe, a Castle (little though it be) yet fine and trim consisting of foure round Turrets, which being built by the *Delamars*, and named thereupon *Monney de la Mare*, from them came by way of inheritance to the *Powlets*. And not farre from thence is *Wisham*, where King Henry the Third erected a Nunnerie, which afterward was the first house, and as it were, mother to the *Carthusians* or Charter-house Monks in England; as *Hinton* not far off neere *Farley Castle* was the second. And now by this time, *Frome* grown bigger by some rivelets issuing out of this wood, joyneth with the noble river *Avon*: which holding on a crooked course, runneth anone to that ancient Citie which of the hote *Bathes* Ptolomee called *ῬΑΤΑΘΕΡΜΑ*, that is, *Hote waters*: *Antoninus*, *AQVAE SOLIS*, that is, *The waters of the Sunne*: the Britaines *Tr ennaint Twymyn* and *Caer Badon*, the Saxons *Bapancegryp*, hat *Bapan*, and of the concourse thither of diseased people *Akmanchester*, that is, *The Citie of sickely folke*: *Stephanus* nameth it *Badiza*, we at this day *Bath*, and the *Latinists* commonly, *Bathonia*. Seated it is low in a plaine, and the same not great; environed round about with hills almost all of one height, out of which certaine rilles of fresh river waters continually descend into the Citie, to the great commoditie of the Citizens. Within the Citie it selfe there bubble & boile up three springs of hote water, of a blewish or sea-colour, sending up from them thin vapours, and a kind of a strong sent withall, by reason that the water is drilled, and strained through veins of Brimstone, and a clammy kind of earth called *Bitumen*. Which springs are very medicinable, and of great vertue to cure bodies over-charged, and benumbed (as it were) with corrupt humours: For, by their heat they procure sweat, and subdue the rebellious stubbornnesse of the said humours. Yet are not they wholesome at all houres: For, from eight of the clocke in the forenoone unto three after noone, they are in manner skalding hote, and doe D worke: and being thus troubled cast up from the bosome certaine filth: during which time they are shut: neither may any body goe into them; untill by their sluces they cleanse themselves, and rid away that filthinesse. Of these three, *The Crosse Bath* (so called of a crosse standing upright in old time in the midst of it) is of a very mild and temperate warmth: and hath twelve seates of stone about the brinke or border thereof, and is enclosed within a wall. The second, distant from this not fully 200. foot is much hotter: whereupon it is termed *Hote Bathe*: Adjoyning to these, is a Spittle or Lazar house, built by *Reginald* Bishop of Bath for the reliefe of poore diseased persons. And those two are in the midst of a Street on the West-side of the Citie. The third, which is the greatest, and after a sort in the very bosome and heart of the Citie, is called the *Kings Bath*, neere unto the Cathedrall Church, walled also round about, and fitted with 32. seates of arched worke: wherein men and women may sit apart, who when they enter in put upon their bodies linnen garments, and have their guides. Where the said Cathedrall Church now standeth, there was in ancient time, as the report goeth, a Temple consecrated to *Minerva*. Certes, *Solinus Polyhistor* speaking (no doubt) of these hote Bathes saith thus, *In Britaine, there are hot springs very daintily adorned and kept for mens use: the patronesse of which fountaines is the Goddesse Minerva: in whose Temple the perpetuall fire never turneth ashes, and dead coales, but when the fire beginneth to die, it turnes into round masses of stone*. Howbeit *Athenans* writeth, that all hote Bathes which naturally breake out of the bowels of the earth are sacred to Hercules. And in very deece, there is to be seene in the walles of this Citie an ancient Image (such as it is) of Hercules grasping in his hand a Snake, among other old monuments by the injurie of time now altogether defaced: But that we may not contend about this matter, let us grant (if it be so thought good) that Bathes were consecrated to Hercules, and *Minerva*, joyntly. For the Greeks doe write that *Pallas* first ministred water unto Hercules for to bath him, after

Selwood.

Monney de la
Mare.Bathe.
Aqua Solis.

Hot Waters:

The Temple
of Minerva.

Caer Palladus.

Britans ad-
dified to
Magick.

ter he had atchieved his labours. For my purpose it shall suffice, if I be able to prove by the authoritie of *Solinus* (who writeth that Pallas was the Patronesse of these Bathes) this Citie to be the same which the Britans in their tongue called *Caer Palladus*, that is, *The Citie of Pallas-water*, or *Vrbs Palladia Aqua*, if a man turne it into Latine. For, the matter, the name, and signification doe most firly agree. The finding out of these Bathes our Fables attribute to the King of Britans *Bleyden Cleyth*, that is, *Bleyden the Magician*; but with what probability, that I leave to others. Plinie indeed affirmeth, that the Britans in old time used the practice of magick with so great ceremonies, that it seemed they taught it the Persians: yet dare I not ascribe these Bathes to any art magicall. Some of our writers, when their minds were busied in other matters, report *Julius Caesar* to have bene the first finder of them: But my opinion is, that later it was ere the Romans had knowledge of them, seeing *Solinus* is the first that hath made mention of them. The English-Saxons about the 44. yeare after their comming into Britaine, when they had broken league and covenant, and kindled againe the coales of war which had already bene quenched, besieged this Citie: But when the warlike *Arthur* came upon them, they tooke the hill named *Mon Badonicus*, where, when courageously a long while they had fought it out to the uttermost, a great number of them were slaine. This hill seemeth to be the very same, which now is called *Bannesdowne*, over a little village neere this Citie, which they call *Bathstone*, on which there are bankes, and a rampier as yet to be seene. Yet some there be, I know, who seeke for this hill in *Yorkshire*: But *Gildas* may bring them backe againe to this place: For, in a manuscript Copie within *Cambridge-Librarie*, where he writeth of the victorie of *Aurelius Ambrose*, thus we read: *Untill that year wherein siege was laid to the hill of Badonicus, which is not farre from Severne mouth*. But in case this may not perswade them, know they, that the vale which runneth here along the river *Avon*, is named in British *Nant Badon*, that is, *The Vale of Badon*: and where we should seeke for the hill *Badonicus*, but by the *Vale Badonica*, I cannot hitherto see. Neither durst the Saxons for a long time after, set upon this Citie, but left it for a great while to the Britans. Howbeit in the yeare of Christ 577. when *Cowlin* King of the West-Saxons, had defeated the Britans at *Deorham*, in *Gloucestershire*, being both straightly besieged, and also assaulted, it yielded at first: and within few yeares recovering some strength grew up to great dignity and therewith got a new name, *Ackmancester*, as I said: For, *Osbrich* in the yeare 676. founded a Nunnery there: and immediately after, when the Mercians had gotten it under them, King *Offa* built another Church, both which in the time of the Danish broiles were overthrowne. Out of the ruines of these two, arose afterwards the Church of *S. Peter*, in which *Edgar* surnamed the Peace-maker, being crowned, and sacred King, bestowed upon the Citie very many Immunities, the memorie of which thing the Citizens yearly with Solemne plaies doe yet celebrate. In *Edward the Confessors* time, (as we read in *Domes-booke of England*) it paid tribute according to 20. Hides, when as the Shire paid. There, the King had 64. Burgers, and 30. Burgers of others. But this prosperitie of theirs endured not long: for, soone after the Normans comming in, *Robert Mowbray* Nephew to the Bishop of *Constance*, who had raised no small Sedition against King *William Rufus*, sacked and burned it. Yet in short space it revived, and recovered it selfe, by meanes of *John de Vikula of Tours* in France, who being Bishop of *Welles*, for five hundred markes (as saith *William of Malmesburie*) purchased this Citie of King *Henry the First*, and translated his Episcopall chaire hither, retaining also the title of *Bishop of Welles*, and for his owne See built a new Church: which being not long since ready to fall, *Oliver* Bishop of *Bathe* began to found another hard by that old (a curious and stately piece of worke, I assure you) and almost finished the same: Which if he had performed indeed, it would no doubt have surpassed the most Cathedrall Churches of England. But the untimely death of so magnificent a Bishop, the iniquitie and troubles of the time, and the suppression of religious houses ensuing, with the late avarice of some, who have craftily conveyed the money collected throughout England for that use, another way (if it be true that is reported) have

A have envied it that glory. But neverthelesse this Citie hath flourished as well by clothing, as by reason of usuall concourse thither for health twice every yeare, yea and hath fortified it selfe with walles, wherein there are set certaine Antique Images and Roman Inscriptions for the prooffe of their antiquitie, which now by age are so eaten into, and worn, that they can hardly be read. And that nothing might be wanting to the state and dignitie of *Bathe*, some noble men it hath honoured with the title of Earle. For, we read, that *Philibert of Chandew* descended out of *Bretaigne* in France, was by King *Henry the Seventh* stiled with this honor. Afterwards, King *Henrie the Eighth*, in the 28. yeare of his reigne created *John Boucher* Lord *Fitzwarin*, Earle of *Bathe*. Who died shortly after, leaving by his wife the sister of *H. Danbney* Earle of *Bridge-water*, *John second Earle of this familie*, who by the daughter of *George Lord Roos* had *John Lord Fitz-Warin*, who deceased before his father, having by *Fr. the daughter of S. Thomas Kitson of Hengrave* *William now third Earle of Bathe*, who endeavoureth to beautifie and adorne his nobilitie of birth, with commendable studies of good letters. The longitude of this Citie is according to Geographers measure 20. degrees, and 16. minutes. But the Latitude 51. degrees, and 21. minutes. And now for a farwell, loe here *Nechams* verses, such as they bee, of these hot waters at *Bathe*, who lived 400. yeares since.

Earles of
Bathe.Inquisit. 31.
Henric 8.

Bathonia thermas vix praefero Virgilianas;
Confecto profunt balnea nostra seni.
Profunt attritis, collis, invalidisque,
Et quorum morbis frigida causa subest.
Prævenit humanum stabilis natura laborem;
Servit natura legibus artis opus.
Igne suo succensa quibus data balnea fervent,
Aenea subter aquas vasa latere putant.
Errorem figmenta solent inducere passim.
Sed quid? sulphureum novimus esse locum.

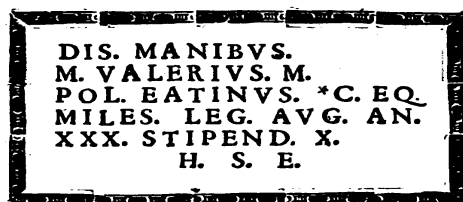
D Our Bathes at Bath, with Virgils to compare,
For their effects, I dare almost be bold:
For feeble folke, and crasse good they are,
For bruised, consumed, far-spent, and very old:
For those likewise, whose sicknesse comes of cold.
Nature prevents the painfull skill of man;
Arts worke againe, helps nature what it can.
Men thinke these Baths of ours are made thus hot,
By reason of some secret force of fire,
Which under them as under brazen pot
Makes more or lesse, as reason doth require,
The waters boile, and walme to our desire:

E Such fancies vaine, use errors forth to bring,
But what? we know from *Brimstone* veins they spring.
Have heere also, if you list to read them, two ancient Inscriptions very lately digged up neere the Citie in *Waldcot field*, hard by the Kings high way side, which *Robert Chambers*, a studious lover of antiquities, hath translated into his garden: From whence I copied them out.

G. MVRRIVS. C. F. ARNIENSIS.
FORO. IVLI. MODESTVS. MIL.
LEG. II. *AD. *P. *F. IVLI. SECVND.
AN. XXV. STIPEND.
*H. S. E.

* Adjutriciu.
* Pie.
* Falcicu.
* Hic situs est.

* *Cobertia Ro-*
quitum.



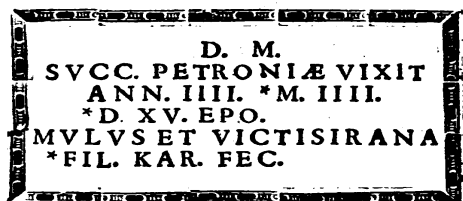
I have seene these Antiquities also fastened in the walles on the in-side, betweene the North, and West gates; to wit, Hercules bearing his left hand aloft, with a club in his right hand. In the fragment of a stone in great and faire letters.

* *Decurioni.*
* *Glevi*, that is,
of Gloucester.

*DEC. COLONIAE *GLEV.
VIXIT. AN. LXXXVI.

Then, leaves folded in, Hercules streining two Snakes: and in a grave or Sepulcher-table, betweene two little images, of which the one holdeth the Horn of *Malthea*, in a worke character which cannot easily be read,

Dia Manibus
that is, To the
dead ghost.
* *Manibus*, that
is, *Manibus*.
* *D. Dies*, that
is, *Dies*.
* *Filia chariss-*
ma fecerat.



A little beneath in the fragment of a stone in greater letters

VRN. IOP.

Betweene the West, and South gates, *Ophiuchus* enwrapped with a serpent, two mens heads with curled haire within the cope of the wall, a hare running, and annexed thereto upon a stone in letters standing overthwart.

VLIA. ILIA.

A naked man laying hand as it were, upon a fouldier, within the battlement also of the wall: two lying along kissing and clipping one another: a footeman with a sword brandishing and bearing out his shield, a footeman with a speare, and upon a stone with letters standing overthwart.

III. VSA.
IS VXSC.

And *Medusa's* head with haire all Snakes.

Along the said river of *Avon*, which now is heere the bound between this shire and Gloucestershire, upon the banke Westward we have a sight of *Cainham*, so name of one *Keina*, a most devout and holy British virgine, who (as the credulous age before-time, perswaded many) transformed serpents into stones, because there be found there in Stone quarries, such strange workes of nature, when she is disposed to disport herselfe. For, I have seene a stone brought from hence resembling a serpent, winding round in manner of a wreath, the head whereof being somewhat unperfect bare up in the Circumference thereof, and the end of the taile tooke up the centre within.

A most of these are headlesse. In the fields neere adjoyning, and other places beside, is found *Perceper*, an hearbe peculiar unto England. Bitter it is in taste, and hath a biting sharpnesse withall: it never groweth above a span high, and commeth up all the yeare long of it selfe: small leavy flowers of a greenish hew it beares, without any stalke at all: Which herbe mightily, and speedily provoketh urine: and of it the distilled water serveth for great use, as P. *Pena* in his Animadversions or Commentaries of Plants hath noted.

Scarce five miles from this place, the river *Avon* passeth through the midst of *Bristol*. *Bristol*. In Welch-British, *Caer oder*, *Nant Badon*, that is, *The Citie Oder, in the Vale of Badon*. In the Catalogue of ancient Cities, *Caer Brito*: In Saxon *Brighstrop*, that is, *Abright or shining place*. But such as have called it *Venta Belgarum*, have deceived both themselves and others. This Citie standing partly in Somerset, and partly in Gloucestershire, is not to be reputed belonging either to this, or that, having Magistrates of the owne by it selfe, and being of it selfe entire, and a County incorporate. Scituate it is somewhat high betweene *Avon* and the little river *Frome*, sufficiently defended with rivers and fortifications together: For, environed it was sometime with a double wall. So faire to behold by reason of buildings as well publike as private, that it is fully correspondent to the name of *Bright flow*: With common *Sewes or Sinks*, (they call them *Goutes*) so made to run under the ground for the convenience, and washing away of all filth, that for cleanlinesse, and holiness a man would not desire more: whereupon there is no use heere of carts: so well furnished with all things necessaric for a mans life, so populous, and well inhabited withall, that next after London, and York, it may of all Cities in England justly challenge the chiefe place. For, the mutuall entercourse of trafficke, and the commodious haven, which admitteth in ships under saile into the very bosome of the Citie, hath drawne people of many countries thither. For the *Avon*, so often as the Moone declineth downward from the meridian point, and passeth by the opposite line unto it, so swelth with the tide from the Ocean, that it raiseth up the ships there riding, and lying in the oze 11. or 12. elles afloat in water. And the Citizens themselves are rich Merchants, and trafficke all over *Europe*, yea, and make Voyages at sea so farre as into the most remote parts of *America*. But, when, and by whom it was built, it is hard to say. Old it seemeth not to be, for as much as in all those spoiles, and sackages that the Danes made, there is no mention of it in our Historians. And verily mine opinion is, that it first grew up to some name, when the English-Saxons Empire was much declining, seeing that it is no where named before the yeare of our Lord 1063; when *Harold* (as *Florentinus* of Worcester writeth) embarked himselfe, and his armie, and put to sea from *Bristol* to *Wales*. In the first yeares of the Normans, *Berton*, a manor adjoyning, and *Bristol* paid unto the King (as we find in the booke of Dome(sday) 110. markes of silver, and the Burgers said, that Bishop G. hath 33. markes, and one marke of Gold. After this, Robert Bishop of *Constance* that plotted seditious practises against King *William Rufus*, chose it for the seate-towne of the whole warre, fortified it, being then but a small Citie, with that inner (wall as I take it) which at this day is in part standing. But a few yeares after, the circuit thereof was every way enlarged. For on the South, *Radcliffe*, wherein there stood some small houses under the Citie side, is by a stone bridge, with houses on each hand built upon it, more like a streete than a bridge, joyned to the Citie: enclosed within a wall, and the Inhabitants thereof enfranchised Citizens: yea & hospitals in every quarter thereof for the benefit of poore people, and faire Parish-Churches to the glorie of God were erected. The most beautifull of all which by farre, is S. *Maries* of *Radcliffe* without the walles, into which there is a stately ascent upon many staires: so large withall, so finely, and curiously wrought, with an arched roofover head of stone artificially embowed, a steeple also of an exceeding height, that all the Parish-Churches in England which hitherto I have seene, in my judgement it surpasseth many degrees. In it, *William Cannings* the founder, hath two faire monuments: upon the one lieth his image portraied in an Aldermans robe: For, five times he had bene Major of this Citie: upon the other,

other, his image likewise in sacerdotall habite; for that in this old age hee tooke the orders of priesthood, and was Deane of that colledge which himselfe instituted at *Westburie*. There is hard by, another Church also, which they call the *Temple*, the lantern or tower whereof when the bell rings shaketh to and fro, so as it hath cloven and divided it selfe from the rest of the building, and made such a chinke from the bottome to the top, as it gapeth the bredth of three fingers, and both shutteth and openeth whensoever the bell is rung. And heere I must not overpasse in silence *S. Stephens Church*, the tower steeple whereof being of a mightie heighth, one *Shipward*, alias *Barstable*, a Citizen and Merchant, within the memorie of our grandfathers, right sumptuously, and artificially built. From the East-side also & the North, augmented it was with a number of edifices, enclosed within a wall and fenced with the river *Frome*, which having runne by the wall side gently falleth into the *Avon*, and yieldeth a dainty harbour for ships, with a wharfe convenient for the shipping and unlading of Merchandise in and out, (they call it the *Key*.) Under which betweene the confluences of *Avon* and *Frome*, there is a plaine beset round about with trees, yielding a most pleasant walking place: South-east, where no rivers are to guard it, *Robert* the base sonne of King Henry the First, whom they commonly name *Robert Rufus*, and Confull of Gloucester, because he was Earle of Gloucester, built a large and strong Castle for the defence of this Citie, and of a pious and devout affection appointed every tenth stone to the building of a Chappell neere unto the Priory of *S. James*, which he likewise founded by the Citie side. This *Robert* had to wife *Mabile* the onely daughter and heire of *Robert Fitz-Hamon*, who held this towne by vassalage in *Capite*, of King William Conquerour. This Castle was scarcely built, when King *Stephen* besieged it, but with lost labour: for, he was compelled to raise his siege and depart: and a few yeares after, was imprisioned in the same, giving thereby a testimony and prooffe how uncertaine the chance of war is. Beyond the river *Frome* which hath a bridge over it, at *Frome-gate* there riseth an high hill, with a steepe and crooked ascent, so as it is painefull to goe up unto it: From whence ye have a most faire and goodly prospect to the Citie and haven underneath. This hill in the very top and pitch thereof, spreadeth presently into a large, greene and even plaine, which in the midst is shadowed with a double row and course of trees, and among them stands a pulpit of Stone, and a Chapell, wherein (by report) lich entered *Jordan* the companion of *Augustine* the Englishmens Apostle. Now it is converted to a Schoole, and on both sides (to say nothing of the neare and fine houses of private men) beautified it is with publike and stately buildings. Of the one side was a Collegiat Church called *Gaunts*, of the founder one *Henry Gaunt* Knight, who relinquishing the world, in this place betooke himselfe to the service of God: but now through the bounty of *Thomas Carr* a wealthy Citizen, converted to the keeping of Orphans: on the other side directly over against it stand two Churches dedicated to *S. Augustine*, the one (which is the lesse) a Parish Church: the other, that is greater, the Bishops Cathedrall Church, endowed with fixe Prebendaries, by King *Henrie* the Eighth: the greatest part whereof is now destroyed, where the Colledge-gate workmanly built carrieth in the front this Inscription.

REX HENRICVS II. ET DOMINVS ROBERTVS FILIVS HARDINGI FILII REGIS DACIÆ, HVIVS MONASTERII PRIMI FVNDATORES EXTITERVNT.

That is,

King Henry the Second, and Lord Robert the sonne of Harding, the King of Denmarks sonne, were the first founders of this Monasterie.

This

A This *Robert*, called by the Normans *Fitz-Harding*, descended of the bloud royall of Denmarke was an Alderman of *Bristol*, of King Henry the Second so entirely beloved, that by his meanes *Maurice* his sonne married the daughter of the Lord of *Barkley*. Whereby his posteritie, who flourished in great honor, are unto this day called *Barons of Barkley*; and some of them have bene buried in this Church.

Barons de Barkley.

From hence as *Avon* holdeth on his course, there are on each side very high cliffes by nature set there (as it were) of purpose, the one of them which on the East-side overlooketh the river beareth the name of *S. Vincents rocke*, so full of Diamonds, that a man may fill whole strikes or bushels of them. These are not so much set by, because they be so plentiful. For, in bright, and transparent colour they match the Indian Diamonds, if they passe them not: in hardnesse onely they are inferior to them; but in that nature her self hath framed them pointed with fixe cornerd or foure cornerd smooth sides; I thinke them therefore worthy to be had in greater admiration. The other rock also on the West-side is likewise full of Diamonds, which by the wonderfull skill and worke of nature, are enclosed as young ones within the bowels of hollow, and reddish flints: for, here is the earth of a red colour. When *Avon* hath left these rocks behind him, with full channell at length he disengorgeth himselfe into the Severn-sea.

C Then remaineth now to reckon up the Earles and Dukes of this County. The first Earle of Somerset, by tradition, was William de Mohun, or Moion, who may seeme to be the very same, whom *Mauide* the Emperesse in a charter whereby she created William de Mandevill Earle of Essex, taketh as a witnesse under this name, Comes. W. de Moion. Neither from that time meete we with any expresse and apparent mention of Earles of Somerset, unless it be in these letters Patents of King Henrie the Third, unto Peter de * *Mawley*, which, that I may draw out the judgement of others, I will heere set downe literally. Know ye, that we have received the homage of our well beloved Uncle William Earle of Salisbury for all the lands that he holdeth of us, & principally for the

Earles, and Dukes of Somerset.

Patent. Anno primo Henrici. tertii. * De malo lacu.

* De Comitatu.

* County or Earledome of Somerset, which we have given unto him with all appurtenances for his homage and service, saving the royaltie to our selves: and therefore we will & command you, that ye see he have full seisine of the foresaid Earledome, and all the appurtenances thereto, and that ye entermeddle not in any thing from henceforth, as touching the County or Earledome aforesaid, &c. And commandement is given to all Earles, Barons, Knights, and Freeholders of the County of Somerset, that unto the same Earle they doe fealtie, and homage, saving their faith and allegiance unto their Sovereigne Lord the King, and that from henceforth they be insentive and answerable unto him as their Lord. Whether by these words in the Patent he was Earle of Somerset, as also of Deneshire (for, of the same William he wrote likewise in the very same words unto Robert de Courtney) I leave for other men to judge. Under this King Henry the third (as wee finde in a booke written in French, which pertaineth to the house of the Mohuns Knights) it is recorded,

E that Pope Innocentius in a solemne feast, ordained Reginald Mohun Earle de Esst, (that is, as the Author doth interpret it, Of Somerset) by delivering unto him a golden consecrated rose, and an yearly pension to be paid upon the high Altar of *S. Pauls*, in London. So that this Reginald may seeme to have bene not properly an Earle, but an Apostolicall Earle. For, so were they termed in those daies who had their creation from the Bishop of Rome, (like as they were called Earles Imperiall whom the Emperour invested) and such had power to institute Notaries and Scribes, to legitimate such as were base borne, &c. under certaine conditions. A long time after Iohn de Beaufort the base sonne of Iohn of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster by Katherine Swinesford, being made legitimate by King Richard the Second, together with his brethren and sister, with consent of the Parliament, was preferred to the honor of Earle of Somerset, and afterwards created Marquesse Dorset; but soone after deprived thereof by King Henrie the Fourth, having the title onely of the Earle of Somerset left unto him. The said Iohn had three sonnes, Henry Earle of Somerset, who died in his tender age; Iohn, created by King Henry the Fifth, the first Duke of Somerset, who had one sole daughter named Margaret, mother to King Henry the Seventh: and Edmund

Earle Apostolicall.

See Earles of Dorset.

Edmund who succeeded after his brother in the Dukedome: and having beene a certaine time Regent of France, being called home, and accused for the losse of Normandie, after hee had suffered much grievance at the peoples hands in that regard, was in that wofull war betweene the houses of Lancaster and Yorke slaine in the first battaile of *S. Albans*. Henric his sonne being placed in his roome, whiles hee served the times, siding one while with Yorke, and anotherwhile with Lancaster, in the battaile at *Exham* was by those of the houses of Yorke: taken prisoner, and with the losse of his head paid for his unconstant levitic. *Edmund* his brother succeeded him in his honor, who of this family was the last Duke of Somerset, and when the whole power of the Lancastrians was discomfited at *Tewkesbury*, was forcibly pulled out of the Church into which all embred with bloud he fled as into a Sanctuary, and then beheaded. Thus all the legitimate males of this family being dead and gone, first King *Henry* the Seventh honored with title *Edmund* his owne son a young child, who shortly departed this world: afterwards King *Henry* the Eighth, did the like for his base sonne, named *Henry Fitz-Roy*. And seeing he had no children, King *Edward* the Sixth, invested Sir *Edward de Sancto Mauro*, commonly, *Seimor*, with the same honour, who being most power-able, honorable, and loaden with titles, for thus went his stile, *Duke of Somerset, Earle of Hertford, Vicount Beauchamp, Baron Seimor, Vncle to the King, Governour of the King, Protector of his Realmes, Dominions, and subjects, Lieutenant of the forces by land and sea, Lord high Treasurer, and Earle Marshall of England, Capitaine of the Isles Gernsey, and Iersey, &c.* Was suddenly overwhelmed, as it were by a disport of fortune which never suffereth suddaine over-greatnesse to last long, and for a small crime, and that upon a nice point subtilly devised, and packed by his enemies, bereaved both of those dignities, and his life withall.

In this Countie are numbered Parishes. 385.

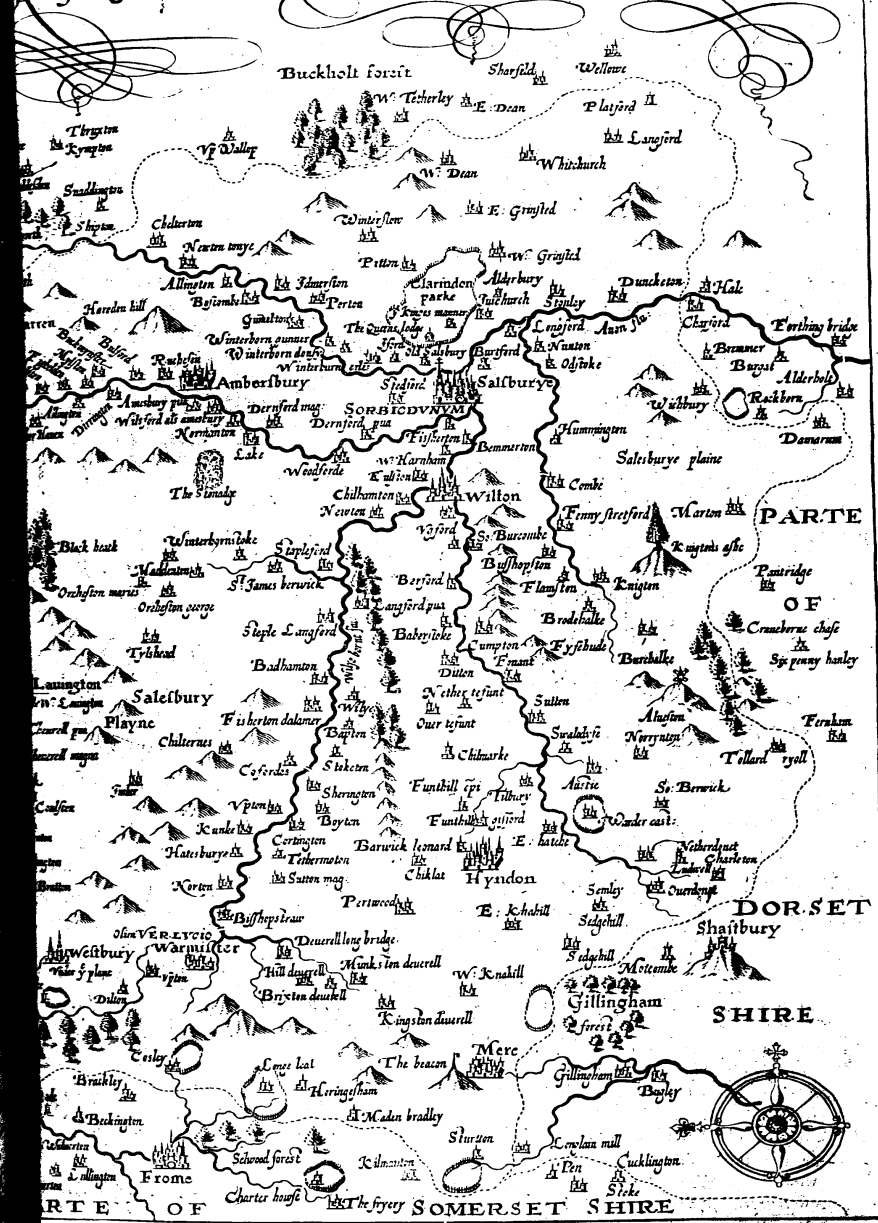
WILSHIRE.

WILTONIÆ
Comitatus herbida
Planicie nobilis vulgo will
Shire pars olim BELGARVM.

PARTE OF BARK
SHIRE



PARTE OF HAM SHIRE



WVILSHIRE.



WVilshire, which also pertained to the *BELOAR*, called in the English-Saxon tongue, *Wil-rettva*, in Latine commly termed, *Wiltonia*, taking that denomination of *Wilton*, sometime the chiefe towne, like as it of the River *Willy*, is altogether a mediterranean or mid-land country. For, enclosed it is with Somersetshire on the West, Berkshire and Hampshire on the East; on the North, with Gloucestershire; and on the South, with Dorsetshire, and a part of Hampshire. A Region, which,

as it breedeth a number of warlike and hardy men, who in old time, with Cornwall and Deanshire together challenged by reason of their manhood, and martiall prowesse the prerogative in the English armie of that regiment, which should second the maine battell, (as saith Iohn of Sarisburie in his *Polycraicon*) so is it exceeding fertill, and plentifull of all things, yea, and for the varietie thereof, passing pleasant and delightful. The Northern and upper part, which they call, *North-Wilshire*, riseth up somewhat with delectable hils, attired in times past with large and great woods, (which now begin to grow thinne) and watered with cleare rivers. For, *Isis* the principall, and, as it were Prince of all the English Rivers; which afterwards taketh to him the name of *Tamisis*, that is, *Thames*, being now as yet but little and shallow, together with other Rivers of lesse name, which I will speake of in their proper places, water it plentifully. The South part with large grassie plaines, feedeth innumerable flocks of sheepe, having his Rivers, swelling Brookes, and rils of everliving fountains. The middest of this shire, which for the most part also, lieth even and plain, is divided overthwart from East to West, with a Dike of wonderfull worke, cast up for many miles together in length: The people dwelling there about, call it *Wansdike*, which upon an errour generall received, they talke, and tell to have beene made by the diuell upon a Wednesday. For in the Saxon tongue it is called, *Wodenewic*, that is to say, *The Ditch of Wooden or Mercurie*, and as it should seeme, of *Wooden* that false imagined God, and Father of the English-Saxons. But I have alwaies beene perswaded, that the Saxons made it, as a limit to divide the two Kingdomes of the Mercians, and West-Saxons asunder. For, this was the very place of battell betweene them, whiles they strove one with another, to enlarge their Dominions. And neere unto this Dike standeth, *Wodensburg* a little Village, where *Ceanline*, the most warlike King of the West-Saxons, in the yeare of grace 590. whiles hee defended his Marches, in a bloody fight, received such a foile and overthrow by the Britans and Englishmen, that he was forced to flie his countrey, and to end his daies in exile, a pitious and lamentable spectacle, even to his very enemies. And at this Dike, to say nothing of other accidents, Ina the West-Saxon, and Ceolred the Mercian, joyned battell, and departed the field on even hand: Like to this was that ditch, whereby King Offa kept the Britans off from his Mercians; called even at this day *Offa's dike*: others also are still to be seene, among the East-Angles in Cambridgeshire, and Suffolk, wherewith they limited their territory, and defended themselves from the inrodes and invasions of the Mercians.

In the North-part of Wilshire, which is watered with *Isis*, or the *Thames*, there is a towne called *Creckelade* by Marianus, by others *Greekelade* of Greecke Philosophers, as some are ready to beleve; who, as the historie of Oxford reporteth, began there an Universitie, which afterwards was translated to *Oxford*. West from that is *Highworth* highly seated, a well knowne Market, but South from *Creckelade*, I saw *Lediard Tregoze*, the seat of the Familie of Saint-Iohn, Knights: the which *Margaret de Bello Campo*, or *Beauchamp*, afterwards Duchesse of Somerset, gave to *Oliver of Saint Iohn* her second sonne. For, to her it came as an inheritance, by *Patishul*, *Grandison*, and

The river *Isis* or *Ouzg*.

Wansdike.

Dikes of the Marches.

Lediard, Saint Iohn.

Wood-toun,
or, Wotton
Basset.

Breden For-
rest.
* Prince of
the blood.

Malmesbury.

Ingleborne.
Maidulph the
Scot.

Aldeme.

and *Tregeze*, names of great honour. *Wotton Basset* bordeth hard upon this, having this primitive name from *Wood*, the addition doth prove, that it belonged to the Noble house of the Bassets. But in the latter fore-going age, it was (as I have heard say, the habitation of the Duke of Yorke, who made there a verie large Parke, for to enclose Deere in. From hence *Breden wood*, now *Breden Forrest*, stretched it selfe farre and wide, which in the year 905. by Ethelwald * *Chyso*, and the Danes that aided him, was laid waste, and the Inhabitants endured all calamities of warre.

On the West side whereof, the River *Avon*, above mentioned, gently runneth, which breaking forth almost in the North limit of this shire, keepeth his course southward, and (as Aethelward noteth,) was sometime the bound betwene the Kingdoms of the West-Saxons, and the Mercians: upon which many great battels from time to time were fought: while it is but small, he slideth under Malmesbury hill, and receiving another streame, well neare encloseth the place. A very proper towne this is, and hath a great name for clothing, which (as wee read in the *Eulogie* of Histories) *Quintus* Mulmutius, King of the Brittaines, built together with *Lacock* and *Tetbury* two Castles, and named it *Caer Baldon*, which being at length by heat of warres destroyed, out of the ruines thereof there arose, as writers record, a Castle which our Ancestors in their tongue, called, *Ingelbope*: at which time, the Saxon petie Kings had their royall palace at *Caerdurberge*, now *Brokenbridge*, a little village scarce a mile off. Neither verily was this towne for a long time knowne by any other name than *Ingleborne*, untill one *Maidulph* an Irish Scot, a man of great learning, and singular benesse of life, taking delight to a pleasant grove, that grew up heere under the hill, lived for a time a solitary Heremite there: and afterwards teaching a Schoole, and with his schollers betaking himselfe to a monasticall life, built him a little monastrie, or Cell. From this time, of that *Maidulph*, the towne began to bee called, *Maidulphesburge* for *Ingleborne*, termed by *Beda*, *Maidulphi Urbis*, that is, *Maidulphesburge*, and afterwards short, *Malmesburies* and in some of our Histories, and ancient Donations made unto this place, *Meldunum*, *Malduburie*, and *Malduniburg*. Among the Disciples of this *Maidulph*, flourished chiefly *Aldeme*, who being elected his successour, by the helpe of Eleutherius, Bishop of the West-Saxons, unto whom the place of right belonged, built there a very faire Monastrie, and was himselfe the last Abbat thereof: of whom also in a certaine manuscript, this towne is called *Aldemesbirig*. But this name soone perished, yet the memorie of the man continueth still: for canonized he was a Saint: and on his festivall day, there was heere kept a great Faire, at which usuall there is a band of armed men, appointed to keepe the peace among so many strangers resorting thither. And right worthy is he, that his memorie should remaine fresh for ever, in regard, not onely of his Holinesse, but of his learning also, as those times were. For the first, he was of the English nation, who wrote in Latine, and the first that taught Englishmen the way, how to make a Latine verse: the which in these verses, hee both promised of himselfe, and performed,

*Primus ego in patriam mecum, modo vita super sit,
Aonio rediens deducam verberice Musas.*

I will be first, God lending life, that into country mine,
From Aon top at my returne, shall bring the Muses nine.

This *Aldeme* after his death, *Athelstane* that Noble Prince, chose to be his peculiar protector and tutelar Saint, and for that cause bestowed very great immunities upon this towne, and enriched the monastrie with a large and ample endowment. In which he made choise to bee buried, and his monument the Inhabitants shew to this day. After *Athelstane*, this Monastrie flourished long in continuall wealth, and among other famous Clerks, and great Scholars, brought forth *William* successour thereof *Malmesburiensis*, unto whom for his learned industry, the Histories of England both Civill, and Ecclesiasticall, are deeply indebted. The towne also maintained and upholden, as it were, by the meanes of the Monastrie, was likewise

William
Malmesbury.

ified by Roger Bishop of Salisburie, who in the beginning of the warres betwene *Henric* of Anjou, and King *Stephen* strengthened it with walls, and a Castle, which being once besieged by King *Henric* the Second, defended it selfe. Moreover that magnificent Bishop, both here and at *Salisburie* built houses, for recit very large, for cost as sumptuous, and for shew right beautifull; so even and orderly were the stones couched, and laid together, that the joynts could not be seene, and the whole wall throughout seemed to be the one entire stone. But the Castle not many yeares after by *K. Johns* permission, was pulled downe to the use of the Monkes (for enlarging their monastrie) who encreased it still continually both in buildings, livings, and revenue, untill that fatall thunder-clap overthrew all the Monasteries of England. Then their lands, rents, and riches that had bene so many yeares in gathering, and heaping up together, which were (as our Forefathers reputed them) *The vovues of the faithfull, the ransom, and redemption of sinnes, and the patrimony of poore people*, were quite scattered: and the very Minister it selfe should have sped no better than the rest, but bene demolished, had not *T. Stumpes* a wealthy clothier, by much suit, but with a greater piece of money, redeemed and bought it for the townesmen his neighbours, by whom it was converted to a Parish-Church, and for a great part is yet standing at this day.

Councell at
Aix.

From this *Maidulphs Citie*, or *Malmesburie*, as *Avon* runneth, it cometh to *Dante-sey*, that gave name unto the possessions thereof, worshipfull Knights of old time in this tract: from whom by the *Easterlings*, commonly called *Stradlings*, it came unto the family of the *Danvers*. Out of which, *Henry Danvers*, through the favor of King *James*, obtained of late the title and honour of *Baron Danvers of Dantesey*. Sixe miles from hence, *Avon* taketh unto him from the East, a Brooke, which runneth through *Calne*, an old little towne situate upon a stony ground, having in it a faire Church to commend it: at which place when great adoe there was betwene the Monkes, and Priests about single life, a frequent Provinciaall Councell, or Synod was holden in the year of our redemption, 977. But behold, while they were debating the matter, the Convocation house, wherein the States sat, by breaking of the maine timber-work, and falling asunder of the floore, fell suddenly downe, together with the Prelates, Nobles, and Gentlemen there assembled: with the fall whereof many were hurt, and more flaine outright: onely *Dunstane*, President of the said Councell, and held with the Monkes, escaped without harme: which miracle (for so that age took it) is thought wonderfully to have credited the profession of Monkerie, and weakened the cause of married Priests.

Dantesey.

Baron Dan-
vers.
Calne.

A Synode as
touching the
single life of
Priests.

From hence *Avon* now growne greater, *Chippenhams*, in Saxon *Cyppanham*, of note at this day for the market there kept; whereof it tooke the name: For, *Cyppan*, in the Saxon tongue, is as much to say as to buy, and *Cyppman*, a buyer, like as with us, *Cheapen*, and *Chapman*: and among the Germans, *Coppman*. But in those daies, it was the Kings manour: and by King *Elfred* in his testament, bequeathed to a younger daughter of his. Nothing is there now worth the sight but the Church, built by the Barons *Hungerford*, as appeareth every where by their coats of Armes set up thereon. Directly over against this, but somewhat farther from the banke, lieth *Colham*, now a little village, but sometime King *Etheldreds* mansion house, and for that the Earles of Cornwall, were wont to retire themselves, and sojourn there, it was of good account: within view whereof, is *Castilecombe*, an old Castle, ennobled sometimes by the Lords of it, the *Walters* of *Dunstavill*, men of great renowne in their time: out of whose house, the *Writthostles* Earles of Southampton are descended, * *Petronilla* or *Parnell* daughter and sole heire of the last *Walter*, was wedded unto Robert de *Montfort*, and bare unto him *William* his Sonne, who sold this Castle, with the rest of his lands, and possessions unto *Bartholomew Badilsmer*: from whom (as I have heard) it passed to the *Sceopes*, who ever since have held it. But now returne we unto the river: upon which are seated, *Leckham*, the possession of the noble family of the *Bainards*, where pieces of Roman money have oftentimes bene found: and *Lacocke*, where the most godly and religious woman, *Dame Elizabeth Countesse*

Chippinham.

Cyppan;
what it is.

Colham.

Castilecombe.

Dunstavile.

* Pernell.

Leckham.

Lacocke.

Countesse of Salisburie (being now a widow) built a Monasterie, (like as shee did another at *Hemton*) in the year 1232. to the honour of the blessed Virgin Marie, and Saint Bernard, in which her selfe devoutly dedicated, both her bodie and soule to the service of God.

Avon from hence shadowed with trees, holding on his course, not far from *Bromham*, an inhabitation (in times past) of the Baron *Samond*, or truly *De Sancto Amand*, *Saint Amand*, afterward of the *Baintons* from them: before hee admitteth to him, little rivelet from the East, that putteth forth his head neere unto the Castle *De Pies*, *Devizes*, or the *Pies*. Florentius of Worcester calleth it *Divisio*, and *Neubergum*, *Divise*. Heretofore a stately place, I assure you, very strong as well by naturall situation, as by mans hand, but through the injurie of time, now decayed and defaced. This Castle, that it might disgrace, and put downe all other Castles in England, *Roger* Bishop of Salisburie (whom from a poore masse-Priest, Fortune had exalted unto the highest authoritie next the King) at his excessive charges built. But Fortune (as one saith) hath set no man so high, but she threatneth to take from him as much, as she hath permitted him to have. For, King *Stephen* upon a displeasure, wrung from him both this Castle, and that also of *Shirburne*, together with all his wealth and riches, as great as it was, yea, and brought the silly old man so low in prison, with hunger, and what with other miseries, that betweene the feare of death, and the ments of this life, he had neither will to live, nor skill to die. At which time was handled, canvased, or rather tossed to and fro, this question, whether by the Canons and Decrees of Church, Bishops might hold Castles; or if this be by indulgence tolerated, whether they ought not in dangerous and suspected times, surrender them up to the Kings hands.

Avon having received this rivelet to beare him company, maketh away westward, and straight waies another brook from the South runneth into him, which hath given name to the house standing upon it, called likewise Barons *Brooke*, which as it afforded habitation in old time to John Pavely, Lord of *Westburie* Hundred, so afterwards it gave the title of Baron, to *Robert Willoughby*, because by the *Chemies* hee derived his pedigree from *Paveley*, what time as King *Henrie* the Seventh, advanced him to the rons dignitie, as being high in his favour, Steward of his house, and appointed (by report) for a while, Admirall. Whereupon he used the Helme of a ship for a scale to his ring, like as *Pompey* in times past, Governour of the Roman Navie, the stern or Prow thereof in his coines. But this family fading, as it were, and dying in the warie blade, quickly came to an end. For, he left a sonne Robert Lord *Brooke*, who after former wife, begat Edward his sonne that died before his father, leaving a daughter married to Sir *Foulke Grevil*, and of a second wife two daughters, by whom a great inheritance, and rich estate, conveyed to the Marquesse of Winchester, and Lord *Montjoy*.

Neere unto this, Eastward lieth *Edindon*, in old time *Eathandune*, where King *Alfred* in as memorable a battell as any time else, most fortunately vanquished the bold, insolent, and outrageous Danes, and drave them to this hard passe, that they sworne a set forme of oath, *forthwith to depart out of England*. In which place also *William de Edindon*, Bishop of Winchester, whom King *Edward* highly favoured, here bome and taking his name from hence, erected a Colledge, * *Bonus hominibus, Bon homes*, as they called them, that is, for good men. But at the little river aforesaid, somewhat higher, standeth upon a hill *Trubridge*, sometimes *Trupabrig*, that is, a sure and trusty bridge. But for what cause this name was set upon it, it is not for certaine knowne. In great name and prosperitie it is in these daies, by reason of clothing, and sheweth the remaines of a Castle, which belongeth to the Duchie of Lancaster, and sometime of the Earle of Salisburie. *Avon* thus increased by this rivelet, watereth *Bradford*, in the foregoing times *Bradansford*, (so named of a broad foard) situate upon the descent or fall of an hill, and built all of stone: where *Kenilwalch* King of the West-Britans, embred his sword with blood in civill warre against *Cuthbert* his neere kinsman. Here *Avon* biddeth Wil-shire farewell, and entreth closely into the Countie

Saint Amand
Barons.
The Vics.
Devizes.

Edindon.

* Bon-homes.

Trubridge.

Bradford.
anno 652.

of *Somerset*, minding to visit the Bathes.

The West limit of the shire goeth down directly from hence southward, by *Long-leat*, the dwelling place of the *Thins*, (descended from the *Bottewills*) a very fair, neat, and elegant House in a foul soil, which although once or twice it hath been burnt, hath risen eftsoones more fair. Also, by *Maiden Bradely*, so called of one of the inheritrices of *Anaflasse Bassett*, a most noble personage in his time, who being herself a Maiden infected with the Leaproe, founded an house here for Maidens that were Leapers, and endowed the same with her own Patrimony and Livetide, like as her Father before time had thereabout erected a Priory: Likewise, by *Stourton*, the seat of the Lords *Stourton*, whom King *Henry* the Sixth raised to this dignity, after their estate had been much bettered in lands and revenues, by marriage with the Daughter and heir of the family, *Le Moigne*, or *Monk*, of *Essex*, and not of *Mobum*, as some hitherto have been fallly persuaded: and hereupon it is, that they have borne for their Crest, *A Demi-Monk, with a whip in his hand*. The place took his name of the River *Stour*, that under this town walmeth out of six fountaines: which the *Stourtons* Lords of the place, have brought into their shield fables.

By *Maiden Bradely* aforesaid, glideth *Dever-rill*, a pretty small Rill so called, for that, like as *Anas* in Spain, and *Mole* in Surry, (which took their names thereupon) it divideth (as it were) under the ground, and a mile off rising up here again hasteneth toward *Verlucio*, a most ancient town, whereof the Emperor *Antonine* maketh mention in his Itinerary: which having not quite lost the name, is called, *Worminster*, compounded of that old name, and the English Saxon word, *Worm*, which signifieth, a Monastery. In times past it enjoyed great immunities and freedoms: For as we read in the Book of King *William* the Great, *Nec geldavit, nec bidata fuit*: That is, *It paid no Tribute, nor was rated by the Hide*. Now onely for a round Corn-market, it is exceeding much frequented: For hardly a man would believe, what a mighty deal of Corn is weekly brought hither, and quickly sold: But for remnants of Roman Antiquities, I could discover none here, onely on the East-side are seen some Trenches upon the Hills, and on the West, a natural round and high copt Hill, called *Clay-hill*.

Hereby beginneth, North, South, and Eastward thorow the midst of the Shire, the Plains so wide and open, that hardly a man can see from one side to another, and do limit the Horizon; whereupon they are named, *The PLAINS*, they are but rarely inhabited, and had in late time a bad name, for Robberies there committed. On the South-side thereof, there run quietly two most still Rivers, *Willey-bourn*, which *Afferius* nameth *Gnilou* and *Nadder*, commonly called, *Adder-bourn*. *Willey-bourn* rising at *Worminster*, runneth near *Heitebury*, or *Hegtrebury* an antient mansion place of the Family of *Hungerford*; but in the Church which hath been Collegiate, there is seen but one defaced monument of them. The last Lord *Hungerford*, created by King *Henry* the Eighth, had his denomination of this place, but enjoyed that honour a short while, being condemned of a crime not to be uttered. Hence it hieth to *Willey*, a Village some few miles distant over against it: a very large warlike Fence or Hold, and the same fortified with a deep, and duple Ditch: The Neighbour-dwellers call it *Tanesbury-Castle*. And by the form and manner of making, a man might easily know it was a Roman Camp. There are who verily think it was *Vespasians* Camp, considering, that he being Lieutenant of the twentieth Legion, under *Claudius* the Emperour, subdued unto the Roman Empire, two Nations of this tract: and they suppose, that in the name *Tanesbury*, there remain some reliques still of *Vespasians* name. Opposite to this, on the other side of the Water, is a nother lesse Camp place singly ditched called, *Dun-sbat*, and about one mile and a half from *Tanesbury*, another likewise with a single Trench, named *Woldsbury*. I have noted the names, as the country people term them, that other may collect some matter thereby, more than I can: as for *Nadder*, that springeth out of the south limit of the shire, it creepeth with

Long-leat.

Maiden Bradely.

Dever-rill.

Verlucio.

Worminster.

Sarisbury
Plains.

Lord Hungerford
of
Heiteburie.

Tanesburie.

Wardour
Castle.

Baron Arundell.

Aquædum.

1595.

Count Imperial.

L. Hack.

Hinden.

Wilton.

Ellandunum.

Alan the river.

Sorbi-
dunum.

crooked windings, like an Adder, (whereof it may seem to have been so called) far from Wardour, a proper fine Castle, appertaining sometime to the Progeny, named *Saint Martins*. But (to say nothing of many owners between, and among them of the Lord Brook, who repaired it and dyed at it) now it belongeth to *Mas Arundell*, who being of late by King James, created Baron Arundell of Wardour, is worthy to be with praise remembered: For, that he being a young Gentleman, he of a pious and godly mind, undertaking a journey to serve in the wars against the Turks, two enemies of Christendom, for his singular prowess shewed in the winning of *Strigonium* in Hungary, deserved by honourable Charter, (from *Rodolph* the second of that name, Emperor) to be made a Count of the Empire, Tenour of which Patent, isthus: For that he had borne himself valiantly, manfully in the field, and in assaults of Cities and Castles, and shewing good proofe of valour in forcing of the water Tower, near *Strigonium*, took from the Turks, with his own hands their Banner, both himself, and all and every one of his children, heirs and issue, whatsoeuer of both Sexes descending from him lawfully, either born already, or that ever shall, from generation to generation be born, we have created, made, and named, Counts and Countesses, have endowed and adorned, and with the title, honor, and dignity of a Count Imperial, Over against it lieth *Hack*, a place at this day of small reckoning, but which in the time of King Edward the first, had his Lord *Eustach de Hack*, summoned among the Peers of the Realm for a Baron, unto the high Court of Parliament. And a few miles from thence is *Hinden* a quick Market, and known for nothing else that I could see.

At the meeting of these two rivers, *Willey* giveth his name to *Wilton*, a place well watered, and sometime the head town of the whole Shire, which thereof took the name. In ancient times it was called *Ellandunum*: for so we are informed by the testimony of old parchment records, which have in expresse terms *Woolsthan-Paid Ellandunum*, that is to say, of *Wilton*: and in another place, that he founded a little Monastery at *Ellandunum*, that is, at *Wilton*. By this name *Ellan*, I am partly induced to think, that this is the river *Alan*, which *Ptolomee* mentioneth in this Countie of the Country. At this town it was, that in the year of our redemption 821. *Egbert* King of the West-Saxons, obtained a victory against *Beor Wulf* of *Mercia*, but so mortall a battel it was to both parties, that the very river flowed commixt with the blood of those, who were allied in blood, and dislevered in factions. At this town also, the year of salvation 871. *Ælfred* joyning battle with the Danes, had the best hand at first, but immediately the alternative fortune of war coming about, he was put to the worst, and driven to retire. In the Saxons time it flourished with the multitude of numbers of Inhabitants, and *K. Edgar*, as our Chronicles bear witness, beautified it with a Nunnery, whereof he made his own daughter *Edith*, Prioresse. But the ancient Charter of *Eadgar* himself, bearing date *An. 874*, it appeareth certainly to be of more antiquity. For therein it was thus written. *The Monastery which by King Edward my great Grandfathers Grandfather, was founded in a well frequented and populous place, that by a known name is by the Inhabitants called Wilton. And in the life of King Edward the Confessor, we read thus, While S. Edward went in hand, with the building of the Monastery of S. Peter in Westminster, Editha his wife began at Wilton, (where she was brought up) a Monastery princely built of stone in lieu of the Church made of timber following the Kings good affection with the like devotion of her own. And albeit the Dane spoiled this town most grievously in the raging heat of hostility, yet it did not so greatly to decay, untill the Bishops of *Salisbury* turned another way, the common passage, that lay before through it, into the West countries. For then the little and little it fell to ruin, and is now, as it were a small Village, having nothing to boast of but a Major for their head Magistrate, and in it a passing fine house, the Earls of *Pembroke*, raised out of the ruins of the old religious house. But though all, it was over-topped, and shadowed first by *SORBIODUNUM*, and then by *Salisbury*, that is risen out of the ruin thereof. For so *Antoninus* in his Itinerary, calleth that which the Saxons afterwards named; *Seapýrbyr 3*, and the vulgar*

Latin

Latinists *Sarum, Sarisburia, & Salisburialis*. Moreover, the account taken by miles of distant places from it, and the tracts remaining of the name, testifie no less, if it should say never a word. For, who would ever make doubt, that *Sareshbirig* proceeded from *Sorbi-dunum*, by addition of the Saxon word, *Byrrs*, which signifieth, a Burg or town, in stead of *Dunum*, which the Brittaines and Gauls, both used to put into places seated on higher grounds, such as this *Sorbi-dunum* was? In so much (as I have been told by one right skilfull in the British tongue) that *Sorbi-dunum*, is by interpretation, as much, as *The dry hill*: a conjecture surely more probable that theirs, who with much ado have derived the name from one *Saron* in *Berolus*, or from the Emperor *Severus*, and have named it, forsooth, *Soverna*. For it mounted upon a high hill, and as our Historiographer of *Malmesburie* saith, *In stead of the Citie, there was a Castle fenced with a wall of no small bignesse, indifferently well provided otherwise of necessaries, but so scant of water, that it is good chaffer there, sold at a wonderfull price. Whereupon these verses were made of old Sorbi-dunum, by one living in those daies.*

What *Dunum* signifieth among the Brittaines and Gauls.

*Est tibi defectus lymphæ, sed copia cretæ,
Sevis tibi ventus, sed philomela flet.*

No water there, but chalker yee have at will:

The winds there found, but nightingales be still:

By the ruines yet remaining, it seemeth to have beene a strong place sufficiently fortified, and to have contained in circuit some halfe a mile. *Kimia* the Saxon, after he had wonne a most fortunate Victorie of the Britains, was the first of all the Saxons that forced it, in the year 553: and *Canutus* the Dane about the year 1003, by setting it on fire, did much harme unto it. But it revived, when by the authority of a Synode, and the ascent of William the Conqueror, *Herman* Bishop of *Shirburne* and *Sunning*, translated his See hither: whose next successor *Osmond* built a Cathedrall Church. And King William the Conquerour, after he had taken the survey of England summoned all the States of the Kingdom hither, to sweare unto him fealtie: at which time (as it stands upon record in *Domesday booke*) it payd after the rate of 50. hides. * Of the third penny of *Salisbury* the King hath xx. shillings. ad pensum, de *Cremens*, xx. libras ad pondus. Which I note therefore, because in our forefathers daies, like as among the old Romans, money was wont to be paid as well by the weight as tale, but not many yeares after, in the raigne of *Richard* the first, partly for the infolencie and mis-rule that the garison souldiers made there, against the Church-men, and in part for want of water, the Church-men first, and then the Inhabitants began to leave it, and planted themselves in a lower ground scarce a mile off, South-East from it, where there is a receit, as it were, of many rivelets, and where *Avon* and *Nadder* meet. Of this their removing *Petrus* * *Blesensis* in his Epistles maketh mention. For, thus of old *Salisburie* he wrote. *A place that was, open to the winds, barraine, dry, and desert: In it stood a towre, like that of Siloam, which oppressed the townes-men with the burthen of long servitude. And againe: The Church of *Sarisburie* was captive in that hill. Let us therefore in Gods name goe downe to the plaine cuntry, where the vallyes will yield store of wheat and other corne, where also the large fields are rich fat in pasture. And the Poet afore-said, in verse thus:*

*Quid Domini domus in castro? nisi federis arca
In templo Baalim; carcer uterque locus.*

What is Gods house in Castle pent, but like the Arke of blisse

In *Baalims* temple Captivate? Each place a prison is.

And the place whereunto they descended he thus describeth:

*Est in valle locus nemori venatibus apto
Contiguus, celebræ fructibus, uber aquis.
Tale Creatoris matri, natura creata
Hospitium toto quasit orbe din.*

Neere to a Parke well stor'd of game, there lies in vale, a ground,
Where corne and fruits in plentie grow, where water-streames abound.

* Of Bloys. New *Sarisburie*.

Such lodging long throughout the world, when nature daughter deere,
Had for Creatours mother sought, at last she found it heere.

When they were now come downe, because they would begin first with the house
of God, *Richard Poore* the Bishop, in a most delectable place, named before *Canterbury*
field, began to found a most stately, and beautifull Minster. Which with an exceeding
high spired steeple, and double crosse yles on both sides, carrying with it a venerable
shew as well of sacred hilaritie as religious majestie, was with great cost finished forty
yeares after: and in the yeare of our Lord 1258. dedicated even in the presence of
King Henrie the third: Whereof the said old Poet hath these pretty verses:

Regis enim virtus templo spectabitur isto.

Presulis affectus, artificumq; fides.

For why? This Church a Prelats zeale sets forth unto the sight,

The workmens trusty faithfulness, a Princes power and might.

But much more elegantly the most learned *Daniel Rogers*, as concerning the said
Church:

Mira canam, Soles quot continet annus in una

Tam numerosa, ferunt, ad, fenestra micat.

Marmoreasq; caput suas tot ab arte columnas,

Compressas hinc quot vagus annus habet.

Totq; patent porta, quot mensibus annus abundat,

Res mira, at vera res celebrata fide.

Wonders to tell: How many daies in one whole yeare there beene,

So many windows in one Church (men say) are to be scene.

So many pillars cast by Art, of marble there appeare,

As houres doe sit and flie away throughout the running yeare.

So many gates doe entry give, as monthes one yeare doe make,

A thing well knowne for truth though most it for a wonder take.

For, the windowes as they reckon them: answer just in number to the daies,
pillars great and small, to the houres of a full yeare, and the gates to the
monthes. A cloister it hath beside on the South side, for largeness and fine work-
manship inferior to none: whereunto joyneth the Bishops palace, a very faire and
goodly house: and on the other side a high bell towre and passing strong withall, be-
ding by it selfe apart from the Minster. Moreover, in short time it grew to be
in goods, and endowed with so great renewes, that it still maintained a Dean,
Chauncer, a Chauncellor, a Treasurer, and three and thirty Prebendaries: of whom
the Residents, as they terme them, have very goodly houses also adjoyning to the
Church, and all these buildings stand within the close wall severed from the
Church. As the Bishop was busied about erecting of Gods house, the Citizens likewise in
their parts did their best to found the Citie, they established their civill government,
derived rilles and servers of waters into every street, and cast a deepe ditch all along
that side, on which it is not fenced with the running river, having obtained licence of
Simon the Bishop thus to strengthen and fortifie the same. And in such sort grew
this new Salisbury by little an little, out of the ruines of old *Sorbiadunum*, that by
soone as they by the Kings warrant, had turned hither the high-way, that leadeth unto
the West parts, it became the second Citie in all this tract, passing well inhabited and
frequented, plentifull of all things, especially of fish, adorned with a very stately mar-
ket place, wherein standeth their common Hall of timber worke, a very beautifull
edifice. But nothing is there, whereof it may so much boast, as of *John Iewell* not
long since Bishop there, a wonderfull great, and deepe Divine, a most stout and en-
nest maintainer of our reformed religion against the adversaries by his learned books.
Old *Sorbiadunum* from thence forward decayed more and more, and in the reigne
of King Henrie the Seventh, became utterly desolate, so as at this day, there remaineth
neth onely a towre or two of the Castle, which notwithstanding a long time after
the departure of the townsmen from thence, was the dwelling house of the Earles of
Salisbury: and about which in King Edward the Thirds time, there arose a memor-

ble controversie and suite. For, *Robert* Bishop of Salisbury stirred *William Montacute*
Earle of Salisbury by vertue of a proceffe which our Lawyers terme *Breve de Recto*,
that is, *A writ of right, for this Castle*: and hee made answer that hee would defend
his right by combat. Whereupon, at a day appointed, the Bishop brought forth his
champion to the railes or bars of the Lifts, clad in a white garment reaching downe
to his mid-leg: upon which he had a mandilion or cassocke garnished with the Bi-
shops Armes: at whose heeles followed a Knight carrying a staffe, and a page with a
shield: Immediately after, the Earle brought in by the hand his owne champion
also, arraigned in the like apparell, accompanied with two Knights bearing white flaves.
Now when these Champions were to enter the Lifts, commanded they were to
withdraw themselves aside; that their weapons of both parts might be viewed, and
they searched whether they had any Amulers or Enchantments about them. But all
on a suddaine, unlooked for came the Kings precept, to reprove and defer the matter
to a further day, that the King might loose thereby none of his right. Meane while,
they grew to this composition: That the Earle for the summe of 2500. markes paid
and received, should yield up all his title and interest in the Castle, to the Bishop and
his successors for ever.

This *Salisbury* had long agoe Earles of that name, whose pedigree I will derive
somewhat farther off and more truly out of the short reports of *Lacock Historie*. *Wil-*
liam Conqueror of his bounry & liberalitie, assigned unto *Gualter de Evereaux* Earle
of *Rosmar* in Normandie, faire lands and large possessions in this shire, which he left
unto Edward named *de Sarisburia* a younger sonne borne in England: like as to *Wal-*
ter his eldest sonne, other lands in Normandie, with the Title of Earle of *Rosmar*:
whose issue within a while after was extinct. That Edward of *Sarisburie* aforesaid,
flourished in the twentieth yeere of the Conquerours reigne, and is often times bare-
ly named, in the *Indiciarie booke of England*, without the title of Earle. His sonne
Walter built a little monasterie at Bradenstocke, and there in his old age tooke him
to the habit of a Canon, or Regular priest, after he had first begotten his sonne *Pa-*
tricke (the first Earle of *Salisbury*) upon *Sibil de Cadurcis*: This *Patricke*, I say, the
first Earle, in his returne from his pilgrimage at *S. James* of compostella in *Spain* in the
yeere of our Lord 1169. being slaine by one *Guy of Lusigniam*, left *William* his sonne
to succcede: who died in King Richard the first his time. His onely daughter *Ela*,
through the favour of the said King Richard, was married to *William Long Espee*,
surnamed so of a long sword that he did usually weare, a base sonne of King Henrie
the second, and her marriage honoured him with the title of Earle, and her owne coat
of Armes be Azur: adorned with sixe *Lions Cenx*. This *William* had a sonne na-
med likewise *William Long-Espee*, against whom King Henrie the Third concei-
ving great displeasure, for that without licence obtained, he was gone to serve in the
holy land, taking the crosse (as they termed it upon him) took from him both the ti-
tle of Earle and also the Castle of *Salisbury*. But he holding still his purpose went in-
to Egypt with *S. Lewis* King of France, and neere unto *Damiata* which the Christians
had wonne, carrying a brave and valorous minde, fighting manfully among the thick-
est troops of his enemies died an honorable and glorious death, a little before that
holy King was unfortunately taken prisoner. His sonne named likewise *William*, li-
ved without the title of Earle, and begat one onely daughter *Margaret*, who never-
theless being reputed Countesse of *Salisbury*, became the wife of *Henry Lucy* Earle
of *Lincoln*, unto whom the bare one only daughter *Alice* wedded to *Thomas* Earle
of *Lancaster*: Who being attainted, King Edward the Second seized upon those pos-
sessions, which he had granted and demised unto her husband: out of which King
Edward the Third gave way unto *William Montacute*, *Trowbrid*, *Winterbourne*, *Am-*
hurst, and other Lordships in these words: *So fully and wholly as the Progenitours of*
Margaret Countesse of Salisbury at any time held the same. And even then, hee preferred
the said *William Montacute* to be Earle of *Salisbury*, and by the cincture of a sword in-
vested him in the said Earledome. This *William* became Lord of the Isle of *Mann*, and
begat two sonnes, *William* who succeeded in his Fathers honour, and died without
issue

29. Edw. 3.
Tearm. Hilarii.
Combat for
the Cattle of
Sarum or
Shirburn, as
some will
have it.

Earles of Sa-
lisburie.
Historie of
Lacock Ab-
bey.

Walsingham
pag. 74.

issue having unhappily slain his onely sonne while he trained him at Tilting: and John a Knight, who died before his brother, leaving behind him a sonne named John Earle of Salisbury, whom hee had by Margaret daughter and heire of Thomas Mont-Hermer; who being of an unconstant and changeable nature, and plotting the destruction of King Henrie the Fourth, was in the year of our Lord 1400. killed at Chichester, and attainted afterwards of high treason. Howbeit, his sonne Thomas was fully restored, a man worthy to be ranged with the bravest Captaines and Commanders, whether you respect paines taking in his affaires, industrie in action, or expedition in dispatch, who lying at the siege before Orleanse in France, was with a bullet levelled out of a great piece of Ordnance wounded in the year 1428. and thereof died. Alice his onely daughter, being wedded unto Richard Nevill, augmented his honour with the title of Earle of Salisbury, who siding with the house of Yorke, was in the battell fought at Wakefield, taken prisoner and beheaded: leaving to succcede him Richard his sonne, Earle of Warwick and Salisbury; who delighting in dangers and troubles enwrapped his native countrey within new broiles of Civill warre, wherein himselfe also left his life. The one of his daughters named Isabell was married unto George Duke of Clarence, brother to King Edward the Fourth, and shee bare him a sonne called Edward Earle of Warwick who being a very child and innocent, was by King Henrie the Seventh beheaded like as his sister Margaret, suffered the same death under King Henrie the Eighth. An usual policie and practise among suspicious Princes: For the securitie of their own person and their posteritie, by one occasion or other, that evermore are soone offered and quickly pickt, to make away or keepe under the next of their blood. Anne, the other daughter of Richard Nevill Earle of Warwick and Salisbury, became wife to Richard Duke of Gloucester, brother to King Edward the Fourth, and brought him a sonne, whom his uncle King Edward in the 17. of his reigne created Earle of Salisbury, and Richard his father usurping the kingdome made Prince of Wales. But hee parted this life in his tender yeares, about that time that his mother also died, without suspicion of poison. King Henry the Eighth afterward, about the fifth year of his raigne in a full Parliament restored and enabled in blood Margaret daughter to George Duke of Clarence to the name, stile, title, honour, and dignitie of Countesse of Salisbury, as sister and heire to Edward late Earle of Warwick and Salisbury. And about the 31. year of the said King, she was attainted in Parliament with divers others, and beheaded when she was 70. yeares old. Since which time that title of honour was discontinued untill in the year of our Lord 1603. our Sovereigne Lord King James honored therewith S. Robert Cecil second sonne of that Nestor of ours, William Cecil: upon whom for his singular wisdome, great employments in the affaires of State to the good of Prince and Countrey, he had bestowed the honorable titles of Baron Cecil of Essendon, and Vicount Cranburn. Thus much of the Earls of Salisbury.

Lower still, and not far from this Citie, is scituate upon Avon, Dunstons or Danton, a burrough (as they say) of great antiquitie, and well knowne by reason of the house therein of Beavois of Southampton, whom the people have enrolled in the number of their brave worthies for his valour commended so much in rhymet posteritie.

This Salisbury is environed round about with open fields and plaines, unlesse it be Eastward, where lieth hard unto it Clarindon, a very large and goodly parke, passing fit for the keeping and feeding of wild beafts, and adorned in times past with an house of the Kings. Of which parke, and of the twentie groves inclosed therein Master Michael Maschert Doctor of the Civill lawes, hath prettily verified in this wise.

*Nobilis est lucus, cervis clausura, * saronam
Propter, & a claro vertice nomen habet.
Viginti hinc nemorum partito limite, boscu
Ambitus est passus mille cuisq, fons.*

This name
himselfe poe-
tically devised.

Part. 2. Henr. 6.
1461.

A famous Park for Stag and hind, near Salisbury doth lie,
The name it hath of one fair down or hill, that mounts on high:
Within the same stand twenty groves enclosed with severall bound:
Of which, in compasse every one a mile contains in ground.

Famous is this Clarindon, for that here in the year 1164. was made a certain recognition and record of the customs and liberties of the Kings of England, before the Prelats, and Peers of the Kingdom, for the avoiding dissensions between the Clergy, Judges and Barons of the Realm, which were called *The Constitutions of Clarindon*. Of the which so many as the Pope approved have been set down in the Tomes of the Councils, the rest omitted; Albeit Thomas Becket then Archbishop of Canturburie, and the rest of the Bishops approved them all. Hereby is Ivy Church sometime a smal Priory, where, as a tradition runneth, in our grandfathers remembrance was found a grave, and therein a corps of twelve foot, and not far off a stock of wood hollowed, and the concave lined with lead with a Book therein of very thick parchment, all written with capital Roman letters. But it had lien so long that, when the leavs where touched, they fouldred to dust. S. Thomas Eliot who saw it, judged it to be an History. No doubt he that so carefully laid it up, hoped it should be found, and discover some things memorable to posterity.

Toward the North, about six miles from Salisbury, in this plain before named, is to be seen a huge and monstrous piece of work, such as Cicero termeth *Insanabilem Substructionem*. For, within the circuit of a Ditch, there are erected in manner of a Crown in three ranks or courses one within another certain mighty and unwrought stones, whereof some are 28. foot high, and seven foot broad, upon the heads of which, others like overthwart peeces do bear and rest crossewise, with a small tenets, and mortecis, so as the whole frame seemeth to hang: whereof we call it *Stonehenge*, like as our old Historians termed for the greatnesse *Chorea Gigantum*; *The Giants Dance*. The description, or draught whereof such as it is, because it could not so fitly be expressed in words, I have caused by the gravers help to be portraied here underneath, as it now standeth weather beaten and decayed.

*
Constitutione
ons of Cl
rinders.

An ancient
beck.

Stonehenge.

Our



- A. Stones called Corsestones, Weighing 12. tunne, carrying in height 24. foot;
 in breadth, 7. foot; in compasse, 16.
 B. Stones, named Cronetts, of 6. or 7. tunne weight.
 C. A place, where mens bones are digged up.

Our countrie-men reckon this for one of our wonders and miracles. And much they marvaile: from whence such huge stones were brought, considering that in all those quarters bordering thereupon, there is hardly to be found any common stone at all for building: as also by what meanes they were set up. For mine owne part, about these points I am not curiously to argue and dispute, but rather to lament with much griefe that the Authors of so notable a monument are thus buried in oblivion. Yet some there are, that thinke them to bee no naturall stones hewne out of the rocke, but artificially made of pure sand, and by some glewie and unctuous matter knit and incorporate together, like as those ancient Trophies or monuments of victorie which I have seene in Yorkshire. And what marvaile? Read we not, I pray you, in Plinie, that the sand or dust of * Puteoli being covered over with water, becommeth forthwith a very stone: that the cesterne in Rome of sand digged out of the ground, and the strongest kind of lime wrought together grow so hard, that they seeme stones indeed: and that Statues and images of marble chippings, and small grit grow together so compact and firme, that they are deemed entire and solid marble: The common saying is, that Ambrosius Aurelianus, or his brother Vther did reare them up by the art of Merlin that great * Mathematician, in memorie of those Brittaines who by the treachery of Saxons were there slaine at a parley. Whereupon Alexander Neckam, a Poet of no great antiquitie, in a poeticall fit, but with no speciall grace, and favour of Apollo, having his instructions out of Geffreys British historie, come out of these verses:

* Made Stones.

* Puzzote.

* Magician.
* Mathematici.

Nobilis est lapidum structura, Chorea Gigantum,
 Ars experta suum posse, peregit opus.
 Quid ne prodiret in lucem segnius, artem
 Se, viresq. suas consuluisse reor.
 Hoc opus adscribit Merlino garrula fama,
 Filia figmenti fabula vana refert.
 Illa congerie fertur decorata fuisse
 Tellus, quæ mittit tot Palamedis aves.
 Hinc tantum munus suscepit Elbernia gaudens,
 Nam virtus lapidi cuiuslibet ampla satis.
 Nam resperis aquis magnam transfundit in illa
 Vim, quæ curari sepius eger eget.
 Vther Pendragon molem transvexit ad Ambri
 Fines, devicto victor ab hoste means.
 O quot nobilium, quot corpora sacra virorum,
 Illic Hengesti proditione jacent.
 Intercepta fuit gens inclita, gens generosa
 Intercepta, nimis credula, causa minus.
 Sed tunc enituit præclari Consul Eldol
 Virtus, qui læso septuaginta dedit.

The Giants Daunce, a famous stone-work stands,
 Art did her best in bringing it to passe,
 Vaine prating fame, reports by Merlins hands
 In manner strange this worke effected was.

The stones (men say) in their land first did lie,
 * Whence * Cranes in flocks so many use to flie.
 From thence conveyed, as things of charie price,
 The Irish soile received them with joy.
 For why? their vertue in a wondrous wise,
 Oft cures the griefe that dorth sicke folke annoy,
 For, waters cast and sprinkled on these stones,
 Their vertue take, and heale the grieved ones.
 The noble Vther that Pendragon hight,
 Them over seas to Ambresburie brought;

* Scythia.
* Palamedis
aves.

Returning

Returning thence, where he by martiall might
Had quell'd his foes in battell fiercely fought.

O worthy Wights, how many on that plaine,
Of you lie dead by Hengists treason slaine!

The Britans brave, that race of noble blood,
Entrap't by little heed and too much trust,
Were kild alas, in parley as they stood,

Through faithlesse fraud of enemies unjust.

But Eldol Earle his manhood excellent
Then shewed, to death who severie persons sent.

Others say, that the Britaines erected this for a stately Sepulchre of the same Ambrose in the very place where hee was slaine by his enemies sword: that hee might have of his countries cost such a piece of worke, and tombe set over him as should for ever be permanent, as the *Alar of his vertue and manhood*. True it is, that many bones have many times beene digged up heere, and the village lying now on one side, is called *Ambresbury*, that is to say, *Ambrose his towne*: where, certaine ancient Kings, by the report of the British Historie, lay interred. And the booke called *Eulogium* saith, that a Monasterie stood there of three hundred Monkes: which, King Gurmundus (I wot not what Pagan and Barbarian) spoiled and rifled. In that place afterward *Alfritha* King *Edgar* his wife, by repentance and some good deed, to expiate, and make satisfaction for murdering of King *Edward* her sonne in Law, built a stately Nunnerie, and endowed it with livings: In which Queene *Eleanor* King *Henric* the Thirds widdow, renouncing all royall pompe, and princely state, devoted her selfe unto God among other holy Nuns. The said Ambrose Aurelianus, who gave name unto the place, when the Romane Empire drew now to an end, tooke upon him the Imperiall purple Roabe in Britaine, (as saith *Paulus Diaconus*) succoured his decaying countrey, and the aide of that warlike Arthur repressed the violent rage of the enemies, overthrew puissant armies, consisting of the most courageous Nations of Germany, and at the last in a battell fought upon this Plaine, lost his life in the defence of his countrey. Now, seeing both *Gildas*, and *Bede* do write, that his Parents wore the purple Roabe, and were slaine, why may not I suppose him to be descended of that Constantine, who in the Fourth Consulship of Theodosius the younger, was elected Emperour heere in Britaine in hope of his luckie name, and afterwards slaine at *Arles*. I have heard that in the time of King *Henric* the Eighth, there was found neere this place a table of mettall, as it had beene tinne and lead commixt, inscribed with many letters, but in so strange a Character, that neither *Sir Thomas Eliot*, nor master *Lilye* Schoole-master of *Pauls*, could read it, and therefore neglected it. Had it beene preserved, somewhat happily might have beene discovered as concerning *Stonehenge*, which now lieth obscured.

Scarce foure miles from *Ambresbury*, (on this side *Avon*) there is a Warren of hares, commonly called *Everlie Warren*, where there is great increase of hares for Gentlemen in the countrey there dwelling, to disport themselves with game: yet not such store as that the neighbour Inhabitants should require the helpe of souldiers in their defence against them, as the men of the *Iles Baleares* sometime did, by *Plinius* relation: albeit, they did likewise much harme heere unto the Corne fields: and neere neighbour unto it is *Lusgershall*, where stood sometimes (as I read) the Castle of *Geffrey Fitz-Peter*, Lord chiefe Justice of England in his time, and Earle of *Essex*, a man of exceeding great wealth. Not much higher is *Wolfsall*, which was the house of the Noble Familie of *Seimor*, now Earle of *Hertford*, or of *Saint Maur*, to whom by marriage accrewed a great inheritance of the *Essexmies* in this tract, who bare argent three *Demy-Lions* Gules: and from the time of King *Henric* the Second, were by right of inheritance, the Bailiffs and Guardians of the Forrest of *Savenac* lying hard by, which is of great name for plenty of good game, and for a kind of *Ferne* there, that yieldeth a most pleasant savour. In remembrance whereof, their Hunters borne of a mightie bignesse, and tipped with silver,

Ambresbury.

Ambrosius Aurelianus.

The Emperours before.

Leporarium.

Wolfsall.

Essexmies or Sturmy.

Savernac Forrest.

A the Earle of *Hertford* keepeth unto this day, as a monument of his progenitors.

More somewhat into the East, the River *Cunetio*, in the Saxon tongue *Cynetan*, commonly *Kenet*, ariseth neere unto a little Village of the same name, which some would have to be that *Cynetio* mentioned by *Antoninus*: but the distance of both sides gain-saith it. Heere *Selburie* a round hill mounteth up aloft, to a great height, which by the forme of the hill it selfe, and the outward setting of the earth beneath, may seeme to have beene cast up by mans hand. And many of that sort, round and with sharpe tops are to be seen in this tract: *Burrowes* they call them

Kenet River.

B and *Barrowes*, raised, happily in memoriall of Souldiers there slaine. For bones are found in them, and read I have, how an usuall thing it was with the Northerne nations, that every souldier remaining alive after a foughten field, should carry his head-piece full of earth toward the making of their fellowes tombes that were slaine. Although I am of opinion rather, that this of *Selburie*, was set there in stead of a limit, if not by the Romans, then certainly by the Saxons: Like as that fosse called *Woden'sdike*, considering that betwene the Mercians and the West-Saxons there was much bickering in this Shire many a time, about their Marches: and both * *Boetius* and the * *Grammaticall Writers* have made mention of such Mounts raised for bounds. Within one mile of *Selburie*, is *Aiburie*, an up-landish

Barrowes and Burrows Tombes.

In his Geomoorie. 198. Aibury.

C village built in an old Campe as it seemeth, but of no large compasse, for it is environed with a faire trench, and hath foure gappes as gates, in two of the which stand huge Stones as jambs, but so rude, that they seeme rather naturall than artificiall, of which sort, there are some other in the said village. This River *Kenet* runneth at the first Eastward, through certaine open fields, out of which there stand up aloft every where stones like rockes, and off them a little village there is, called, *Rockley*: among which there breaketh out sometimes at unawares water in manner of a streame or sudden Land-flood, reputed the messenger, as it were, and forerunner of adearth, and is by the rusticall people of the countrey, called *Hunger-borne*. From hence * *Kenet* holdeth on his course to a towne bearing his name, called of *Antoninus*

Rockley.

D *Cynetio*, and is placed from *Verlucio* twenty miles. At which distance just, from thence, that ancient towne called by a new name *Marleborow*, in old time *Marlberge*, standeth upon this river * *Cunetio*, now *Kenet*, stretching out East and West on the pendant of an hill. Whether this name *Marleborow* came in latter ages of *Marga*, which in our language we call *Marle*, and use in stead of dung to manure our grounds, I am not ready to affirme. Certes, it lieth neere a chaulkey hill, which our Ancestours before they borrowed this name *Chaulke* of the Latine word *Calx*, named *Marle*. But the Etymologie thereof, that *Alexander Necham* in his Booke of divine wisdom hath coined and drawne from *Merlins* Tombe (as appeareth by this Distichon of his making) is ridiculous.

* *Famis vion-lu*. * *Kenet*, *Cunetio*, a towne. *Marleborow*. * *Kenet*.

E
Merlini tumulus tibi Merlebrigia nomen
Fecit, testis erit Anglica lingua mihi.
O Merlebridgetowne, of Merlins Tombe
thou had'st thy name:
Our English tongue will testifie,
with me the same.

The fatall end of this towne *Cunetio*, and the name together, and the estate thereof with the ancient memorie also, from the coming in of the Saxons unto the Normans time, is utterly vanished and gone: for, in all this space betwene, our histories doe not so much as once name it. But in the age next ensuing, we read, that *John* * surnamed *Sine terra*, that is, *Without Land*, (who afterwards was King of England) had a Castle heere, which when hee revolted from his brother King *Richard* the First, *Hubert* Archbishop of *Canterburie*, tooke by force:

* Or nick-named, *John Lack-land*.

Y

and

and which afterwards was most famous by reason of a Parliament there holden, wherein by a generall consent of the States of the Kingdome there assembled, a law passed for the appeasing of all tumults, commonly called, the Statute of *M. arleborow*. But now being daunted by time, there remaineth an heape of rammell and rubbish, witnessing the ruines thereof, and some few reliques of the walles remaine within the compasse of a drie ditch, and an Inne there is adjoining thereto, which in stead of the Castle, hath the signe of a Castle hanging out at it: The Inhabitants of the place, have nothing to make greater shew of, than in the Church of *Presbut* hard by, of a Christning Font, as it seemeth, of Touchstone, or of Obsidian stone, in which (by their report certaine Princes (I wot not who) were in times past baptized, and made Christians. Neither verily can I conceale that which I have read, that every Burger heere admitted, is by an old order and custome among them, to present unto the Major, a brace of hounds for the hare, a couple of white Capons, and a white Bull.

The blacke
Prince as they
say.

Ramesburie.

William
Malmesburie,
of Bishops.

Littlecot.

On the same River, and the same side thereof, is seated *Ramsburie*, a prettie village, having nothing now to commend it but pleasant meadowes about it, howsoever in old time famous it was for the Bishops See there, who had this Shire for their Diocese: but that seate being by Herman the Eighth Bishop, laid unto that of *Shirburne*, and at length (as I said before) translated to *Salisburie*, carried away with it all the name and reputation of this place, because at *Ramesburie*, there was never any Covent of Clerkes, nor ought for their maintenance. From the other side of the River more Eastward, *Littlecot* sheweth it selfe not long since a seate of the *Darels*, a place worthy to be remembered, for the late Lord thereof Sir Iohn Popham, who being the chiefe Iudge in the Kings Bench executed justice, (as I have said already) against malefactors, to his high praise and commendation. And heereby runneth the limit betweene this Shire, and *Berkshire*.

*Pro summario.
Haply a
Sumpter horse.
Ore, what it is.

Thus farre forth have we taken a slight view and survey of *Wilshire*, which (as wee find in the *Domesday booke*, and worth the noting it is) paid unto the King tenne pounds for an *Hawke*, twentie shillings * for a strong Steed, for every one hundred shillings, and five ores: now what kind a piece of money, and of what kind that Ore was, I wot not; but out of a Register of *Burton Monastrie*, I have observed thus much, that twentie Ores, are worth two Markes of silver.

Earles of Wil-
shire.

This province can reckon out of divers and sundry houses, but few Earles, besides those of *Salisburie*, whom I have named before: for to omit *Woolstun* before the Normans Conquest, it had none to my knowledge, unto King Richard the Second his daies, who preferred *William le Scrope* to that one honour. But this mans good fortunes stood and fell together with his Prince. For, when the one was deposed, the other lost his head. After whom, within short time succeeded James Butler Earle of Ormund, advanced to that dignitie by King Henrie the Sixth. Howbeit, when the Lancastrians were downe the wind, and hee was attainted, his estate forfeited, and Iohn Stafford a younger sonne of Humfrey Duke of Buckingham, by the favour of King Edward the Fourth received this title, whose sonne Edward succeeded him, and died without issue. The same honour afterwards King Henrie the Eighth, bestowed upon Henrie Stafford of the same house of Buckingham, who having enjoyed it a little while, departed likewise, and left no children behind him. In the end, the favour of the said King brought it into the family of the *Bullens*: for Thomas Bullen Vicount Rochford, Sonne to one of the Daughters and coheires of Thomas Butler Earle of Ormund, hee created Earle of *Wilshire*: whose Daughter *Anne*, the King tooke to wife: A marriage this was to her selfe, and her brother unhappie and deadly, to her Parents wofull, but for all England right happy. For it brought forth to us

Queene Elizabeth.

Queene Elizabeth, a most gracious and excellent Prince, worthy of superlative praise

praise, for her most wise and politique government of the Common-wealth, and for her heroicke vertues farre above that sexe. But when the said Thomas Bullen, overcome with the griefe and sorrow that hee tooke for the infortunate fall, and death of his children, he ended his daies without issue: this title lay still, untill that King Edward the Sixth, conferred it upon William Powlet Lord Saint Iohn, whom soone after hee made Marquesse of Winchester, and Lord Treasurer of England, in whose family it remaineth at this day.

See Basing in
Hantshire.

This Countie containeth in it Parishes. 304.

Y 2

HANTSHIRE.

HANTSHIRE.



Ext to Willshire is that Country which sometimes the Saxons called *hantſcherchſſp*, and is now commonly named Hantshire: of which, one part that beareth farther within the land, belonged, no doubt, to the *Belge*, the other which lieth upon the sea appertained, without question, to the *Regni*, an ancient people of Britaine. On the West it hath Dorsetshire, and Willshire, on the South the Ocean to bound it: on the East it joineth to Suffex, and Surrie, and on the North it bordereth upon Barkshire. A small prvince it is, fruitfull in corne, furnished in some places with pleasant woods standing thicke, and well growne; rich in plenteous pasture, and for all commodities of sermost wealthy, and happie. It is thought that it was with the first brought under subjection to the Romans. For, our Histories report, that *Vespasian* subdued it, and very probable reasons there are inducing us to beleeve the same. For, *Dionysius* witnesseth, that *Plautius*, and *Vespasian*, when they were sent by the Emperour *Claudius* against the Britaines, did give the attempt upon this Island, with an armed divided into three parts, least if they should have ventured to land in one place onely they might have bene driven backe from the shore. *Suetonius* also writeth, that in this expedition *Vespasian* fought thirtie battailes with the enemy, and subdued the Isle of Wight which lieth against this country, and two other right puissant nations within. For which his victories, as also for passing over the Ocean so safely. *Valerius Flaccus* speaketh unto *Vespasian* himselfe, as one more fortunate than *Iulius Caesar*, in this manner.

*Tuq, O Pelagi cui major aperti
Fama, Caledonius post quam tua Carbaso vexit
Oceanus, Phrygius prius indignatus Iulos.*

And thou for Seas discoverie whose fame did more appeare,
Since that thy ships with sailes full spread in Northren Ocean were,
Which skorn'd before, of Phrygian line the Julii to beare.

And of the very same *Vespasian*, *Appolinus Collatius Novariensis*, the Poet versified thus:

*Ille quidem nuper felici Marte Critannos
Fuderat.*

He verily of late by happy sight.
Had won the field, and Britains put to flight.

But how in this war *Titus* delivered *Vespasian* his father, when he was very streightly besieged by the Britans: and how at the same time likewise, an adder grasped him about, and yet never hurt him, (which he tooke as a lucky foretoken of his Empire) you may learne out of *Dio* and *Forcatulus*. I, for my part, (to come to my purpose) beginning at the West side of this province will make my preambulation along the sea-coast, and the rivers that runne into the Ocean, and after that survey the more in-land parts thereof.

Hard by the Westerne bounds the river *Avon* carrieth a still streame, and no sooner runneth into this shire, but it meeteth with the foard of *Cerdicus*, in old time *Cerdicks-foard*, afterward *Cerdefoard*, and now by contraction of the word, *Chardfoard*, so named of *Cerdic* that Warlike English-Saxon. For, heere the said *Cerdic* in a sea-battle so daunted the Britaines, that not onely he enlarged the bounds of his Empire, but also delivered an easie warre unto his posteritie: having before time in the year of our Salvation 508. after great conflicts in this tract, vanquished the most mightie King of the Britaines, *Natanleod*, called also *Nazaleod* by others, with many of his people. Of whose name likewise, a small region reaching unto this place was

*Cerdici vadum
Ceroicks ford.*

5091.

*Natanleod or
Nazaleod.*

returned

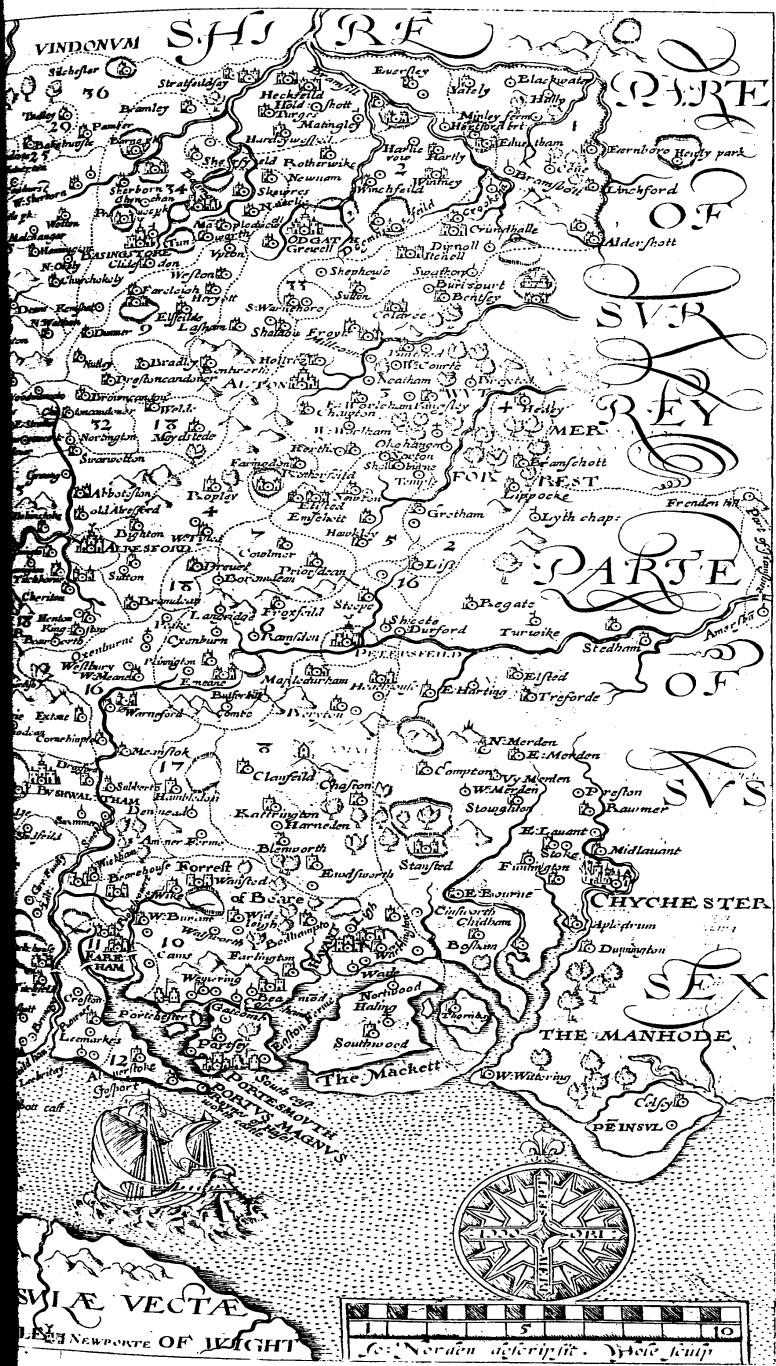
HAMSHIRE

OLIM PARS BELGARVM

- MARKET TOWNES**
- Parishes & places of cure
 - Hampshire & Winchester
 - Churches of note
 - Heales of antiquities
 - Ordinary houses of name
 - Places ruinous and decayed
 - Cities
 - Old towns and fortifications
 - Monasteries and priories
 - Beliefs of antiquaries

HUNDREDES

- | | |
|----------------------|----|
| Cranston Hundred | 1 |
| Osney | 2 |
| Alton | 3 |
| Sutton | 4 |
| Southampton | 5 |
| East Meon | 6 |
| Barthampton | 7 |
| Farnham | 8 |
| Belmeham | 9 |
| Portsmouth | 10 |
| Portsmouth & Gosport | 11 |
| Titchfield | 12 |
| Mantbridge | 13 |
| Wotton | 14 |
| Meonstoke | 15 |
| Hampden | 16 |
| Farnham | 17 |
| Finchley | 18 |
| Boston | 19 |
| Isle of Wight | 20 |
| Portsmouth | 21 |
| Andover | 22 |
| Andover | 23 |
| Horsham | 24 |
| Farnham | 25 |
| Palmer | 26 |
| Thornhill | 27 |
| King's Cliffe | 28 |
| Overton | 29 |
| Midwater | 30 |
| Portsmouth | 31 |
| Portsmouth | 32 |
| Portsmouth | 33 |
| Portsmouth | 34 |
| Portsmouth | 35 |
| Portsmouth | 36 |
| Portsmouth | 37 |
| Portsmouth | 38 |
| Portsmouth | 39 |
| Portsmouth | 40 |



termed *Natanleod*, as we read in the *Annales* of the English Saxons: which I sought very curiously for, but hitherto could not find so much as any small signe or sample of that name: neither can I guesse who that *Natanleod* should be. But most certaine it is, that *Aurelius Ambrose*, at the very same time skirmished otherwhiles with the Saxons in this tract with alternative fortune: and those *Chronicles* of the English Saxons no where made mention of him; as who, (a thing that I have observed) being overmuch affectionate to themselves, reported onely their owne fortunate battailes, and victories, but never made words of their foiles and overthrowes. From thence the said river runneth on by *Regnewood* or *Ringwood*, called in the *Domesday* booke of England *Rincewood*. Which, that it was the same *REGNUM*, the chiefe towne of the *Regni* wherof *Antoninus* maketh mention, the account of the distance from other places, the remaines of the name and the very signification thereof doe plainly prove. For, *Ring-wed* by that Saxon addition seemeth to signifie the *Wood of the Regni*. A towne in ancient time of great fame, as may bee gathered by the *Hundred* adjoyning, which is named thereof: but now it is a well frequented mercate towne and no better: Aven being departed from hence, entertaineth the river *Stoure* comming downe out of *Dorset* shire, where betweene the meeting of these two streames, there standeth a pretty towne of trade and well peopled. At this day of a Church there dedicated unto *Christ*, named *Christ-Church*: but in old time *Twinamburne*, because it is situate betweene the two rivers, right in the same sense that *Interamna* in *Italie* hath his name. It was fortified in times past with a Castle, and beautified with an ancient Church of *Prebendaries*, which being built in the Saxons time and after repaired by *Raulph Flammard* Bishop of *Durham* (who was *Deane* there) in the raigne of *William Rufus*, and by *Richard de Ripariis* Earle of *Devonshire* (whom King *Henry* the First enfeoffed in this place) endowed also with great rents and revenues, continued in very great name untill the daies of King *Henric* the Eighth, and that fatall and finall houre of the *Monasteries* of England, Under this towne *Stoure* and *Aven* joyning together doe emprise themselves into the sea at one mouth, which *Ptolomee* called the mouth of the River *Alaun*; and rightly too: For I cannot resolve with my selfe to thinke, that that river properly was named *Aven*, considering this is a common name, and the Britaines by that terme, called all rivers. But I would take it, that some time it was called *Alaun*, because there remaine yet some reliques (as it were) of that name in the villages upon it; to wit, in *Allington*, *Allingham*, &c.

Whether
Natanleod
and Aurelius
Ambrose be
the same.

Christ-church.

Along the East banke of this river in this Shire, King *William* of *Normandie* pulled downe all the townes, villages, houses, and Churches farre and neere, cast out the poore Inhabitants, and when he had so done brought all within thirty miles compasse or there about into a Forrest and harbour for wild beasts, which the Englishmen in those daies termed *Ytene*, and we now call *New Forrest*. Of which Act of his, *Gwalter* *Map* who lived immediately after, wrote thus. *The Conquerour tooke away land both from God and men, to dedicate the same unto wild beasts, and Dogs-games: in which space he threw downe sixe and thirtie Mother-Churches, and drove all the people thereto belonging quite away.* And this did he, either that the Normans might have safer and more secure arrivall in England, (for it lieth over against *Normandie*) in case after that all his wars were thought ended, any new dangerous tempest should arise in this Island against him: or for the pleasure which he tooke in hunting: or else to scrape and rape money to himselfe by what meanes soever he could: For, being better affected and more favourable to beasts than to men, he imposed verie heaveie fines and penalties, yea and other more grievous punishments, upon those that should meddle with his game. But Gods just judgement not long after followed this so unreasonable and cruell act of the King. For, *Richard* his second sonne, and *William Rufus* King of England, another sonne of his, perished both in this Forrest: *William* by chance shot through with an arrow by *Walter Tirell*; the other blasted with a pestilent aire. *Henric* likewise his Grand-child by *Robert* his eldest sonne, whiles hee hotely pursued his game in this Chase was hanged amongst the boughes and so died: that wee may

New Forrest.

Elegium.

learne thereby. How even childrens children beare the punishment of their Fathers. There goe commonly abroad certaine verses, that *Iohn White* Bishop of Winchester made of this Forrest: Which although they falsly make *William Rufus* to have ordained the same, yet because they are well liked of many, I am likewise well content heere to set them downe.

*Templa adimit Divis, for a civibus, arva colonis
Rufus, & instituit Beaulensi in rure forestam:
Rex ceruini insequitur, Regem vindicta, Tirellus
Non bene provisum transfixit acumine ferri.*

From God and Saint King *Rus* did Churches take,
From Citizens town-court, and mercate place,
From Farmer lands: *New Forrest* for to make,
In Beaulew tract, where whiles the King in chase
Pursues the Hart, just vengeance comes apace,
And King pursues. *Tirrell* him seeing not,
Unawares him slew with dint of arrow shot.

He calleth it *Beaulwy* tract, for that King *Iohn* built hard by, a pretty Monastery, for the pleasant situation called *Beaulieu*, which continued ever unto our Fathers memory, of great fame as being an unviolated sanctuary and a safe refuge for all that fled to it: in so much that in times past, our people heere thought it unlawfull, and a heinous offence by force to take from thence any persons whatsoever, were they thought never so wicked murderers or traitours: so that our Ancestors when they erected such Sanctuaries, or Temples (as they terme them) of *Mercie*, every where throughout England, seemed rather to have propoed unto themselves *Romulus* to imitate than *Moses*: who commanded that wilfull murderers should bee plucked from the Altar and put to death: and for them onely appointed Sanctuaries, wholly meere chance had killed any man.

But least the sea coast, for so long a tract as that Forrest is heere, should lie without defence all open and exposed to the enemy, King *Henrie* the Eighth began to strengthen it with forts, for, in that foreland or promontorie shooting farre into the sea: From whence we have the shortest cut into the Isle of *Wight*. hee built *Hurst Castle*, which commandeth sea ward every way. And more toward the East hee set up also another fortresse or blockhouse, they name it *Calshot Castle* for *Calshot*, to defend the entrie of *Southampton Haven*, as more inwardly on the other are the two Castles of *S. Andrew*, and *Nesly*. For, heere the shores retiring as it were themselves a great way backe into the land, and the Isle of *Wight* also; butting full upon it doe make a very good harbour, which *Ptolomee* calleth *The mouth of the river Trisanton*, (as I take it) for *Traish Anton*: that is, *Anton Bay*. For *Ninnius* an old writer giveth it almost the same name when he termeth it *Trahannon mouth*. As for the river running into it, at this day is called *Test*, it was in the foregoing age (as wee read in the Saints lives) named *Terstan*, and in old time *Ant*, or *Anton*: as the towne standing upon it, namely *Ant port*, *Andover* and *Hanton* in some sort doe testifie.

So farre am I of (pardon me) from thinking that it tooke the name of one *Hammon* Roman, (a name not used among Romans) who should be there slaine. And yet *Goffrey of Monmouth* telleth such a tale, and a Poet likewise his follower who prettily maketh these verses of *Hammon*.

*Ruit hic, illucque ruentem
Occupat Arviragus, ejusque in margine ripa
Amputat ense caput, nomen tenet inde perempti
Hammonis Portus, longumque tenebit in avum.*

While *Hammon* rusheth here and there within the thickest ranke,
Arviragus encountreth him, and on the rivers banke,
With sword in hand strikes off his head: the place of him thus slaine,
Thence forth is named *Hamons Haven*, and long shall so remaine.

But upon this Haven standeth *South-hampton*, a little Citie, neere unto which on

Sanctuaries.
Exod. 21.
Iosephus, Antiquitatum
lib. 4.

Hurst Castle.

South-Anton.

the North-east, there flourished in old time another of that name: which may seeme to be *Antonine* his *CLAVSBNTVM*, by the distance of it; as well on the one side from *Ringwood*, as from *Venta* on the other. And as *Trisanton* in the British language signifieth the Bay of *Anton*, so *Clavsentum* in the same tongue, is as much as the Haven of *Entum*. For, I have heard, that *Clavdb* among the Britans, is that which the Græcians call *κλεινὸν*, that is, a forced Haven made by digging and casting up the earth. Now, that this place was called *Hanton*, and *Henton*, no man needs to doubt, seeing in that booke wherein King *William* the first made a survey of all England, this whole shire is expressly named *Hantsyre* and in some places *Hentsyre*, and the very towne it selfe for the South situation of it, *South hanton*. What manner of towne that *Clavsentum* was, it is hard to say: but seated it was in that place, where the field is which now they call *S. Maries*; and reached even to the Haven: and may seeme also to have taken up the other banke or strand of the river: For, a little above at *Bittern* over against it, *Francis Mills* a right honest gentleman there dwelling, shewed unto me the rubbish, old broken walls, and trenches of an ancient castle, which carrieth halfe a mile in compasse, and at every tide is compassed for three parts of it with water a great breadth. The Romañe Emperors ancient coines now and then there digged up, doe so evidently prove the antiquity thereof, that if it were not the Castle of old *Clavsentum*, you would judge it to be one of those forts or fences which the Romans planted upon the South coast of the Ocean, to repress, as *Gildas* writeth, the piracies and depredations of the Saxons. When all became wasted, by the Danish warres, old *Hanton* also was left as a prey in the yeere of our Lord 980. to be sacked and rifled by them: and King *William* the Conqueror in his time had in it but fourescore men and no more in his demaine. But above 200. yeeres since when *Edward* the Third King of England and *Philip Valois*, buisted for the very Kingdom of France, it was fired by the French and burnt to the ground. Out of the ashes whereof, presently sprung the towne which now is to be seene, but situate in a more commodious place betweene two rivers: for number of houses and those faire built much renowned, for rich Inhabitants & concourse of merchants wealthy: fenced round about with a double ditch, strong wals, and turrets standing thicke betwene: and for defence of the Haven a right strong Castle it hath of square stone, upon a Mount cast up to a great height, built by King *Richard* the Second. And afterward King *Henrie* the Sixt granted to the Major, Balives and Burgeses that it should be a Countie by it selfe, with other liberties. Memorable is that of the most puissant *Canutus* King of England and of Denmarke, by which he in this place represented a flatterer who bare the King in hand that all things in the Realme were at his will and command. He commanded (saith *Henrie of Huntingdon*) that his chaire should be set on the shore, when the sea began to flow. And then in the presence of many, said he to the sea as it flowed. Thou art part of my Dominion, and the ground on which I sit is mine, neither was there ever any that durst disobey my commandement and went away free and unpunished. Wherefore, I charge thee, that thou come not upon my land, neither that thou wet the clothes or body of thy Lord. But the sea according to his usuall course flowing still, without any reverence of his person wet his feet. Then he retiring backe said. Let all the Inhabitants of the world know, that vaine and frivolous is the power of Kings, and that none is worthy the name of King, but hee, to whose command the heaven earth and sea by bond of an everlasting law are subject and obedient, and never after that time set hee the crowne upon his head, &c.

Of these two rivers, betweene which this *South-anton* standeth, that in the West now called *Test*, and in times past *Anton*, (as I suppose) springing out of the Forrest of *Chate*, goeth first to *Andover*, which in the Saxon language is *Anoeapapan*, that is, The passage or Ferry over *And*: where in the yeare of our salvation 893. *Aethelred* King of England, when the Danes harried and spoiled his Kingdom on every side, to the end that hee might at length refresh and cherish his weakened and wearied countries with sure and quiet peace, inserted into his owne familie by way of adoption *Aulaf* the Dane: which not withstanding soone after tooke small or none effect:

For,

Tibury, some
say for Titus-
bury.

Wallop.

Brige.

Rumsey.

Redbridge.

* Regesti.

For, this great honour done to the barbabrous Dane, could not reclaime and stay his minde, from rapine and spoyling still. From thence it runneth downe and reacheth from the East a brooke passing by *Bullington*, in whose parish is a place called *Tibury hill*, and containeth a square field by estimation of ten acres ditched about, in some places deeper than other, wherewith hath beene found tokens of Wells, and above which the ploughmen have found squared stones, and Roman coines, as they report, for the place I have not scene. This brooke entrench into *Test neere Wormehill*, whence *Queene Aelfrith* built a Monasterie to expiate and make satisfaction for that most foule and heinous fact, wherewith so wickedly she had charged her soule by making away King Edward her husbands son: as also to wash out the murdering of her former husband *Aethelwold* a most noble Earle, whom King *Edgar* trained forth hither a hunting, and then strake him through with a dart, because hee had deluded him in his love secrets, and by deceitfull and naughtie means prevented him and gotten for himself this same *Aelfrith* the most beautifull Lady that was in those daies. After this *Test* having taken into it a little river from *Wallop*, or more truly *Well-hop*, that is, by interpretation out of our forefathers ancient language, *A pretty well in the side of a hill*, whereof that right worshipfull familie of the *Wallops* of *Knights degree* dwelling by, tooke name: seeketh for *BRIGE* or *BRAGE*, an ancient towne likewise placed by *Antonine* nine miles from *Sarbiadunum*: at which distance betweene *Salisbury* and *Winchester* he findeth not farre from his banke, *Broughton* a small country towne: which if it were not that *BRAGE*, I verily believe it was then utterly destroyed when *William* of *Normandie* laid all even with the ground heere abouts to make that forest, before mentioned. Then goeth this river to see *Rumsey*, in Saxon speech *Rum-reg*. A nunnery founded by King *Edgar*, the large Church whereof yet standeth; out of the which *Mary* daughter of King *Stephen* being there Abbess, and his only daughter surviving, was conveyed secretly by *Mathew* of *Alsace* sonne to the Earle of *Haders*, and to him married. But after she had borne to him two daughters, was ordered by sentence of the Church to returne hither again according to her vow. Thence glideth this water straight into *Anton Haven*, at *Arundinis Vadum*, as *Bede* called it, and interpreteth it himselfe *Reedford*: but now of the bridge where the fount was named, for *Redeford*, *Sedbridge*: where, at the first springing up of the English Saxon Church, there flourished a Monasterie, the Abbat whereof *Cymbresh*, as *Bede* writeth, baptized the two brethren being very little ones of *Arundanus* the pettie King of *Wight*, even as they were ready to be put to death. For, when *Cedwalla* the Saxon set upon the Isle of *Wight*, these small children to save their lives fled to a little town called *Ad lapidem*, and hid themselves there, untill at length being betrayed, they were at *Cedwalla's* commandement killed. If you aske mee, what this little town *Ad lapidem*, should bee, I would say it were *Stoneham*, a small village next to *Redbridge*, which the very signification of the name may evidently prove for mee. The other river that runneth forth at the East-side of *Southampton*, may seeme to have beene called *Alre*: For, the mercate towne standing upon the banke thereof, not farre from ponds out of which it issueth, is called *Alresford*, that is, *The fount of Alre*. This towne, (to use the words of an old Record of *Winchester*): *Kingdom the religious King instructed in the Sacraments of faith by the Bishop Birinus at the very beginning of Christian religion (in this tract,) with great devotion of heart gave unto the Church of God at Wema.* In the year of grace 1220. *Godfrey Lucy* Bishop of *Winchester* made a new market place heere, and called it *Novum forum*, that is, *New market*, in regard haply of old *Alresford* adjoyning thereto. But this new aime continued not long with the people, who in the matter of speech carry the greatest stroke. Neere hereunto is *Tichburne*, which I must not omit, for that it hath given name to a worshipfull and ancient familie.

Upon the West banke of this river is situate the most famous Citie of the British Belgians, called by *Ptolomee* and *Antoninus* *Venta Belgarum*, by the Britaines of *Wales* even at this day, *Caer Gwent*: by the Saxons in old time *Winvancea*, &c. in *Latine* commonly *Wintonia*, and by us in these daies of *Winchester*. Yet there be

some

some which affirme this to be *Venta Simenorum*, and do grace *Bristow*, with the name of *Venta Belgarum*. But that there were never any *Simeni* at all in this Island, I will prove when I come to the *Iseni*. In the meane season, though they should seeke all the townes that *Antoninus* placeth on every side in the way to, or from *Venta Belgarum*, as narrowly as *Emmors* paths, yet shall they find nothing for their purpose to make good this their assertion.

The Eymologie of this name *Venta*, some fetch from *Ventus*, that is, *Wind*, others from *Vinum*, that is, *Wine*, and some againe from *Wina* a Bishop: who all of them be farre wide, and should doe well to pray for better judgement. Yet like I rather the opinion of *Leland*: who hath derived it from the British word *Guin* or *Guen*, that is, *White*, so that *Caer Guin* should signifie as much, as the *White Citie*. And why not seeing the old Latines named these their Cities, *Alba longa*, and *Alba regia*, of whitenesse: yea, and the Grecians also had their *Leuca*, *Leucas*, and other nations also many places taking name of whitenesse. For, this *Venta*, like as the other two of the same name, to wit, *Venta Silvrvm*, and *Venta Icenorum*, are seated all three in a soile that standeth upon chalke, and a whitish clay.

A Citie it was no doubt, flourishing even in the Romans times, as in which the Emperours of *Rome* seeme to have had their sacred of houses weaving and embroidering peculiar to their owne persons, and uses: seeing among all the *Ventas* in Britaine, it was both the chiefe, and also nearest unto *Italic*. For, in the booke of *Notitia*, mention is made of the *Procurator* [Master or Governour] *Cynegii VENTENSIS* or *BENTENSIS*, in Britaine: where the onely flowre of Lawyers, *James Cujacius* readeth *Cynacii*, and in his *Paratitles* upon the *Code* interpreteth it, *Sacrum texturinum*, that is, *The sacred workhouse or shop of embroidering and weaving*. And right of his mind is *Guidus Pascirolus*, who writeth that those *Gynacia* were instituted for the weaving of the Princes, and souldiers garments, of Ship-sailes, of linnen sheetes, or covering, and such like cloaths, necessarie for the furniture of mansions. But *Wolfangus Lazius* was of opinion, that that the *Procurator* aforesaid, had the charge heere of the Emperours dogs. And to say truth, of all the dogs in Europe, ours beare the name; in so much, as *Strabo* witnesseth, our dogges served as souldiers, and the ancient Galles made speciall use of them even in their wars. And of all others, they were in most request both for those baitings in the Amphitheaters, and also in all other publique huntings among the Romans. For as the same *Strabo* writeth, they were *improvisi* made the *curiositates*, that is, of a generous kind and framed naturally for hunting. Whereupon *Nemesianus* wrote thus:

*divisa Britannia mittit
Veloces, nobisque orbis venatibus aptos.*

Though Britaine from this world of ours doth lie secluded farre,
Swift hounds it sends which for our game most fitly framed are.

Gratius also, of their price and excellencie, saith thus:

*Quod freta si Morinum dubio refluentia ponto
Veneris, atque ipsos libeat penetrare Britannos,
O quanta est merces, & quantum impendia supra?*

If that to Calice streights you goe,
Where tides uncertaine ebbe and flow.
And list to venture further more,
Crossing the seas to British shore:
What meede would come to quite your paines:
What overdeale befide, of gaines.

Yea and that very dog with us, which of the old name *Agasus*, we call yet at this day a *Gafehound*, those ancient Greekes both knew, and also had in great price. And this will *Oppian* in his first booke of his *Cynegeticks* tell you, in these Greeke verses.

A Gafe-
hound.
Agasus, a
British hound.

Ἰσὺν δὲν οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλος ἀνθρώπων ἵππων τελευτῶν,
Βαλὺν αὖτις, μαλακὸν ἀνθρώπων ἱπποδρόμου.
Τὸν ἄρα οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδὲν ἄλλοις ἀνθρώπων,
Ἀγαστὸν ὀνόματι οὐδὲν ἄλλοις ἀνθρώπων.
Τὸν οὖν οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλος ἀνθρώπων ἵππων τελευτῶν,
Βαλὺν αὖτις, μαλακὸν ἀνθρώπων ἱπποδρόμου.

Which

Which Bodine turned into Latine thes :

*Est enim catuli species indagine clara,
Corpus huic breve, magnifico sed corpore digna,
Picta Britannorum gens illos effera bello
Nutrit, Agasæosq; vocat, vilissima forma
Corporis, ut credas parasitos esse latrantes.*

And may be Englished in this wise.

Stout hounds there are, and those of finders kind,
Of bodie small but doughtie for their deed:
The painted folke, fierce Britans as we find,
Them Gashounds call, for they with them doe breed.
In making, like house dogs, or at a word,
To lickercouseurs that craven at our bord.

Claudian also, touching our Mastives writeth in this sort :

Magna, taurorum fracturi colla Britanni.

And Britith mastives downe that puls,
Or breake the necks of sturdy bulls.

I have too far digressed about dogges, yet hope a favourable pardon.

In this Citie as our owne Historiographers doe report, in the time of the Romans, was that *Conitans* the Monke, who by his father Constantine was first elect *Cafe*, and afterwards *Augustus* : that Constantine I say, who upon hope of this name had assumed the Imperiall purple roabe, that is, usurped the Empire against *Honorius*. For long since, (as *Zosimus* recordeth speaking of those times) as well in villages as in Cities, there were great colledges peopled (as it were) with Monks, who before time flying the light lived scattering heere and there among mountaines, woods, and forests all solitary by themselves, whereof also they were so called. Now, of this Colledge wherein the said *Conitans* was, those old broken walles which are scene of that thickness and strength, at the West-gate of the Cathedral Church, may seeme to be the ruines and reliques. But this imperiall Monke taken out from hence suffered soone after condigne punishment, both for his fathers ambition and also for the contempt of his professed religion. During the Heptarchie of the Saxons, this *Can* albe it once or twice it suffered much calamity and miserie, yet it revived, and recovered againe : yea, and became the seat royall of the West-Saxons Kings, adorned with magnificent Churches, and a Bishops See : furnished likewise with six mint houses by King *Aethelstane*. In the Normans time also it flourished very much, and in it was erected an office for keeping of all publike records and evidences of the Realme. In which prosperous estate it continued a long time : but that once or twice it was defaced by misfortune of suddaine fires, and in the civill war betweene Stephen, and Maude about the Kingdome of England, sacked by the unruly and insolent fouldiers. Whereupon Necham our countriman who lived in that age, writeth thus :

*Guintoniam titulis claram, gazisque repletam
Noverunt veterum tempora prisca patrum.
Sed tam sacra fames auri, jam cecus habendi,
Vrbibus egregiis parcere nescit amor.*

Our ancestours knew Winchester sometimes a goodly Towne,
In treasure rich and plentifull, in name of great renowne :
But now, for hunger after gold our men lo greedy are ;
That even such Cities excellent, they know not how to spare.

But of these losses it recovered it selfe by the helpe of Edward the third, who here appointed the Mart for wooll and cloth, which we commonly call the Staple. What was the face and outward shew of this Citie in these foregoing times, a man can hardly tell, considering that, as the said Necham writeth :

*Flammis toties gens aliena dedit.
Hinc facies urbis toties mutata, dolorem
Præstendit, casus nuntia vera sui.*

See before in
the Empe-
rours.

So many times a nation strange
Hath fir'd this towne, and made such change ;
That now her face and outward hue
Her griefe bewray's, and tels full true.

In these daies of ours it is indifferently well peopled and frequented, having water plentiful, by reason of the River turned and conveyed divers waies into it, lying somewhat in length from East to West, and containeth about a mile and a halfe in circuit within the walls : which open at fixe gates, and have every one of them their suburbs reaching forth without, a good way. On the South side of the West gate there mounteth up an old Castle, which oftentimes hath beene besieged, but most sore and straightly, above the rest what time as Mawd the Emperesse held it against King Stephen, and at length by a rumour given out that she was dead, and causing her selfe to be caried out in a coffin like a course deceived the enemy. As concerning that round table there, hanging up against the wall which the common sort useth to gaze upon with great admiration, as if it had beene King Arthurs table, I have nothing to say but this, That, as a man which vieweth it well may easily perceive, it is nothing so ancient as King Arthur. For, in latter times when for the exercise of armes and feates of warlike prowess, those runnings at tilt, and martiall joustings or torneaments, were much practised : they used such tables, least any contention or offence for priority of place should through ambition arise among Nobles and Knights assembled together. And this was a custome of great antiquitie, as it may seeme. For, the ancient Gaules, as Athenæus writeth, were wont to sit about round tables, and their Esquires stood at their backs, holding their shields. About the midst of the citie, but more inclining to the South, *Kenelwalch*. King of the West-Saxons after the subversion of that Colledge of Monkes which flourished in the Romans time, (as William of Malmesburie saith) *First founded to the glory of God, the fairest Church that was in those daies ; in which very place, the posteritie afterwards in building of a Cathedral seat for the Bishop, although it were more stately than the first, yet followed just in the very same steps.* In this See, there have sitten since *Wina*, whom the said *Kenelwalch* ordained the first Bishop there, Many Bishops some renowned for their wealth and honourable port, and some for holiness of life. But among other, Saint Swithin continueth yet of greatest fame, not so much for his sanctitie, as for the raine which usually falleth about the Feast of his translation in Iuly, by reason the Sunne then Cosmically with *Præsepe* and *Aselli*, noted by ancient writers to be rainie constellations, and not for his weeping, or other weeping Saints Margaret the Virgine, and Mary Magdalen, whose feasts are shortly after, as some superstitiously-credulous have believed.

This by the way, pardon me I pray you, for I digresse licentiously. Thus Bishops of Winchester have beene anciently by a certaine peculiar prerogative that they have, Chancellours to the Archbishop of Canterbury, and for long time now Prelates to the order of the Garter : and they have from time to time to their great cost reedified the Church, and by name, *Edington* and *Walkelin*, but *Wickham* especially : who built all the West part thereof downe from the quire, after a new kind of worke, I assure you, most sumptuously. In the midst of which building is to be scene his owne tombe of decent modestie betweene two pillars. And these Bishops have ever and anon consecrated it to new Patrons and Saints, as to Saint *Amphibalus*, Saint *Peter*, Saint *Swithin*, and last of all to the holy *Trinitie* : by which name it is knowne at this day. The English Saxons also, had this Church in great honour for the sepulture of certaine Saints and Kings there, (whose bones *Richard Fox* the Bishop gathered, and shringing them in certaine little gilded coffers placed them orderly with their severall Inscriptions in the top of that wall which encloseth the upper part of the quire) and they called it in times past *Ealden Wýnþeser*, that is, *The old Minster*, for difference from another more lately built, which was named *Nepan Wýnþeser*, that is, *The new Minster* ; which *Elfred* founded ; and for the building of houses of office belonging to the same purchase of the Bishop a plot of

The round
Table.
Torneaments.

*Dei pnesopbiß,
lib. 4.*

Bishops of
Winchester.

William
Malmesburie.
of

of ground; and for every foot of it paid him downe a marke after the publike weighe.

This monasterie as also that other the older, was built for married Priests, who afterwards, upon I know not what miracle of a Crosse that spoke, and disliked their marriage, were thrust out by *Dunslane* Archbishop of Canterbury, and Monkes put in their place. The walls of these two monasteries stood so neere and close together, that the voices of those that sung in the one troubled the chaunting of the other: whereupon there arose grudge and heart-burning betwene these Monkes, which afterwards brake out into open enmities: By occasion whereof, and because at the new monasterie there gathered and stood much water which from the *Wellgate* came downe thither along the current of the streets, and cast forth from it an unwholsome aire, the Minster Church two hundred yeares after the first foundation of it, was removed into the Suburbs of the citie on the North parr, which they call *Hide*. Where, by the permission of King Henry the First, the Monkes built a most stately and beautifull monasterie; which a few yeares after by the craftie practice of *Henrie de Blois* Bishoppe of Winchester (as the private historie of this place witnesseth) was pitiously burnt. In which fire, that Crosse also was consumed, which *Canutus* the Dane gave, and upon which, as old writings beare record, he bestowed as much as his owne yeares revenewes of all England came unto. The monasterie nevertheless was raised up againe, and grew by little and little to wonderfull greatnesse, as the very ruines thereof even at this day doe shew, until that generall subversion, and finall period of our monasteries. For then, was this monasterie demolished: and into that other of the holy *Trinitie*, which is the Cathedral Church, when the monkes were thrust out were brought in their stead, a Dozen, twelve Prebendaries, and there placed. At the East side of this Cathedral Church, standeth the Bishops palace, called *Wolvesey*: a right goodly thing, and sumptuous; which being towred and compassed almost round with the streame of a pretie river, reacheth even to the Citie walls: and in the South-suburbs, just over against the holdeth a faire Colledge: which *William Wickham* Bishop of this See, the great father and Patron (of all Englishmen) of good literature, and whose praise for ever to the worlds end will continue, built for a Schoole, and thereto dedicated it, in which, both for Church and Common-wealth there riseth a most plentiful increase of right learned men. For, in this Colledge, one warden, ten fellowes, two Schoole-masters, and threescore and ten schollers, with divers others are plentifully maintained. There have bene also in this Citie, other faire and goodly buildings, (for very many were here consecrated to religion) which I list not now to recount, for time and avarice hath made an end of them. Onely, that Nunnery, or monasterie of veiled Virgins, which *Elfwida*, the wife of King *Elfred* founded, I will not overlook: seeing it was a most famous thing as the remainder of it now doth shew: and for that, out of it King *Henrie* the First tooke to wife *Mawde* the daughter of *Malcolm* King of Scots, by whom the Royall blood of the ancient Kings of England became united to the Normans, and he therefore wonne much love of the English nation. For, his nephew hee was in the second degree of descent, unto *Edmund Iron-side*, by his sonne *Edward* the Banished. A woman, as adorned with all other vertues meet for a Queen, so especially inflamed with an incredible love of true pietie and godlinesse. Whereupon was this *Tetrastich* made in her commendation:

*Prospera non letam fecerit, nec aspera tristem:
Aspera risu ei, prospera terror erant.
Non decor effecit fragilem, non sceptrum superbam,
Sola potens humilis, sola pudica decens.
No prosperous state did make her glad,
Nor adverse chances made her sad:
If fortune frown'd, she then did smile;
If fortune frown'd, she feared the while.
If beauty tempted, she yet said nay,
No pride she tooke in scepters sway:*

Hide Abbey.

Wickham
Colledge.

William
Wickham.

Saint Mary's
Abbey.

* Matildis
Mawde wife
to King Hen-
ry the first.

Shee onely high, her selfe debaf'd,
A lady onely faire and chaste.

Concerning Sir *Guy* of Warwick, of whom there goe so many pretty tales, who in single fight overcame here that Danish giant and *Goliath*, *Colbrand*: and of *Walbeof* Earle of Huntingdon, that was here beheaded, where afterwards stood Saint *Giles* chappell: as also of that excellent Hospital of *Saint Crosse* there adjoining, founded by Henry of *Blois* brother to King Stephen, and Bishop of this City, and augmented by Henry *Beauford* Cardinall, I need not to speake: seeing every man may read of them in the common Chronicles.

As touching the Earles of *Winchester*, to say nothing of * *Clyto* the Saxon whom the Normans deprived of his ancient honour King *John* created *Saier Quincy*, Earle of Winchester, who used for his armes a military belt, they call it a *Fesse*, with a labell of seven as I have seene upon his seales. After him succeeded *Roger* his sonne, who bare, Gules, seven *Masles voided*, Or: but with him that honour vanished and went away, seeing he died without issue male. For, he married the eldest daughter and one of the coheires of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway* in *Scotland* by a former wife, in right of whom he was Constable of *Scotland*. He had by her three onely daughters, the first married to *William de Ferraris* Earle of *Derbie*, the second to *Alan de la Zouch*, the third to *Comine* Earle of *Buchanan* in *Scotland*. A long time after *Hugh le Despencer*, having that title bestowed upon him for terme of his life, by King *Edward* the second, whose minion he was, and only beloved, felt together with his sonne what is the consequence of Princes extraordinary favours: For both of them envied by most, were by the furious rage of the people put cruelly to shamefull death. And long it was after this, that through the bounty of King *Edward* the Fourth, *Lewis* of *Bruges* * a Netherland Lord of *Gruthuse*, Prince of *Steinhuse*, &c. Who had given him comfort and succour in the Netherlands, when hee was fled his native cuntry, received this honour with Armes resembling those of *Roger Quincy*, in these words, *Azur a dix Masles D'or en orm d'un Canton de nostie propre Armes d'Engleterre, cest-à-dire, de Goul un Leopard passant d'or, armee d'azur.*

Earles of
Winchester.

P. p. Pat.
Anno 12. E. 4.

All which, after King *Edward*'s death, he yielded up into the hands of *Henrie* the seventh. But lately within our memorie King *Edward* the sixth, honoured Sir *William Pawlet* Lord Treasurer of England, Earle of *Wilshire*, and Lord *Saint John* of *Basing*, with a new title of Marquesse of Winchester. A man prudently pliable to times, raised not sodainly but by degrees in Court, excessive in vaste informous buildings; temperate in all other things, full of yeares, for he lived nintie seven years, and fruitfull in his generation, for he saw one hundred and three, issued from him by *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter to Sir *William Capell* Knight. And now his grand-child *William* enjoyeth the said honours: For the Geographical position of Winchester, it hath bene observed by former ages to be in longitude two and twenty degrees, and in latitude fiftie one.

From Winchester more Eastward the river *Hamble* at a great mouth emptieth it selfe into the Ocean. *Beda* calleth it *Homelea*, which, as he writeth, by the lands of the *Inte* entreth into *Solente*: for so termeth he that frith our narrow sea, that runneth betwene the Isle of *Wight* and the main land of Britain: in which the tides at set houres rushing in with great violence out of the Ocean at both ends, and so meeting one another in the midst, seemed so strange a matter to our men in old time, that they reckoned it among the wonders of Britaine. Whereof, read heere the very words of *Beda*. The two sides of the Ocean which about Britaine breake out of the vast Northern Ocean daily encounter and fight one against another, beyond the mouth of the river *Homelea*: and when they have ended their conflict, retorne backe, from whence they came and runne into the Ocean. Into this Frith that little river also sheddeth it selfe, which having his head neere *Warnford*, passeth betwene the Forrests of *Waltham* (where the Bishop of Winchester hath a goodly house), and of *Bere*, whereby is *Wickham* a mansion of that ancient family of *Puedal*, and then by *Tichfield*, sometime a little monasterie founded by *Petre de Rapibus* Bishop of Winchester * where the marriage

Hamble.
Solente frith.

* Roche,
riage

Portsey.

Portus Magnus.

Portsmouth.

* Roch.

British salt.

Hexameron.
lib. 5. cap. 11.Meanuari.
Bede lib. 4.
cap. 13.

riage was solemnized betwene King Henry the sixth, and Margaret of Anjou; and now the principall seate of the Lord Writhelesles Earles of South-hampton. From thence forthwith, the shore with curving crookes draweth it selfe in, and the Island named Portsey maketh a great creeke, within the more inward nooke or corner whereof sometimes flourished Port-peris; (where, by report Vespasian landed) An haven towne which our Ancestours by a new name called Port-chester, not of Port the Saxon, but of the port or haven. For, Ptolomee tearmeth it *Misus rapidus*, that is, THE GREAT HAVEN, for the widenesse of it, like as that Portus Magnus also in Africk, as Plinie witnesseth. And verily there remaineth yet a great Castle which hath a faire and spacious prospect into the haven underneath. But when as the Ocean by with-drawing it selfe, tooke away, by little and little the commoditie of the haven, the Inhabitants flitted from thence into the Island Portsey adjoyning, which taketh in circuit much about fourteene miles, being at every full sea floated round about with salt-waters, out of which they boile salt, and by a bridge that hath a fortreffe adjoyning unto it, is united to the Continent. This Island Athelfleda King Eadgars wife had given to the New monasterie of Winchester. And in it at the very gullet, or mouth where the sea enteth in, our fore-fathers built a towne, and thereupon named it Portsmouth, that is, the mouth of the haven. A place alwaies in time of warre well frequented, otherwise little resort there is to it: as beeing more favourable, and better affected to Mars and Neptune, than to Mercurie, that is, to warre rather than to traffique. A Church it hath of the old building, and an Hospitall (Gods house they call it) founded by Peter de * Rupibus, Bishop of Winchester. Fortified it was with a wall made of timber and the same well covered over with thicke bankes of earth: fenced with a platforme also or mount of earth in times past on the North-east, nere to the gate: and two block-houses at the entry of the haven made of new hewen stone: Which being by King Edward the fourth begunne, King Henry the seventh as the Inhabitants report, did finish, and strengthened the towne with a garrison. But in our remembrance, QUEENE ELIZABETH at her great cost and charges so armed it (as one would say) with new fortifications, as that now there is nothing wanting, that a man would require in a most strong and fenced place. And of the garrison, souldiers some keepe watch and ward both night and day at the gates: others upon the towre of the Church, who by the ringing or sound of a bell give warning how many horse or foote are comming, and by putting forth a banner shew from what quarter they come.

From hence as the shore fetcheth a compasse and windeth from Portes-bridge, wee had the sight of Havant a little mercate towne, and hard by it, of Wablington, a goodly faire house belonging some-times to the Earles of Salisbury; but now to the family of the Cortons Knights. Before which, there lie two Islands, the one greater, named Haling, the other lesse, called Thorney, of thornes there growing: and both of them have their severall parish Church. In many places along this shore, of the sea-waters flowing up thither, is made salt of a palish or Greene colour: the which by a certaine artificious devise, they boyle untill it bee exceeding white. And of this sea, or Bay-salt, and not of ours made out of salt springs, is Saint Ambrose to bee understood, when hee writeth thus; *Consider methose things which are usual with many very grace-full: namely, how water is turned into salt, of such hardnesse and soliditie, that often-times it is hewed with axes. This in the salts of Britaine is no wonder, as which carrying a shew of strong marble, doe shine and glitter againe with the whitenesse of the same metall, like unto snow, and bee holesome to the bodie, &c.*

Farther within the land, the MEANVARI dwelt, whose countrey together with the Isle of Wight Edilwalch King of the South Saxons received in token of Adoption from Wlpher King of Mercians, Godfather unto him at the Font, when he was baptized. The habitations of these Meanuari, scarce changing the name, at this day is divided into three hundreds; to wit, Means-borow, East-mean, and West-mean: and amongst them there mounteth up an high Hill, environed in the top with a large rampier,

A rampier, and they call it old Winchester: at which, by report, there stood in old time a citie, but now neither top nor toe, as they say, remaineth of it: so as a man would quickly judge it to have beene a summer standing campe, and nothing else. Under this is Warnford seated where Adam de Portu a mightie man, in this tract and of great wealth in the reigne of William the first, reedified the Church a new, as a couple of rude verses set fast upon the wall doe plainly shew. Upon these, more high into the land, those SEGONTIACI, who yeilded themselves unto Julius Caesar, had their seate toward the North limite of this shire, in and about the hundred of Holeshot: wherein are to bee seene Mercate Aulun, which King Elfred bequeathed by his will unto the keeper of Leodre: also Basingstoke a mercate towne well frequented: upon the descent of an hill, on the North side whereof standeth solitarie a very faire Chappell consecrated unto the holy Ghost by William, the first Lord Sands, who was buried there. In the arched and embowed roofof whereof is to bee seene the holy history of the Bible painted most artificially, with lively portraicts, and images representing the Prophets, the Apostles, and the Disciples of Christ. Beneath this, Eastward lieth Basing, a towne very well knowne, by reason of the Lords bearing the name of it, to wit, Saint Iohn, the Poinings, and the Powlets. For, when Adam de Portu, Lord of Basing matched in marriage with the daughter and heire of Roger de Aurenall, whose wife was likewise daughter and heire to the right noble house of Saint Iohn, William his sonne, to doe honour unto that familie assumed to him the surname of Saint Iohn, and they who lineally descended from him have still retained the same. But when Edmund Saint Iohn departed out of this world without issue in King Edward the third his time, his sister Margaret, bettered the state of her husband Iohn, Saint Philibert, with the possessions of the Lord Saint Iohn: And when she was dead without children, Isabell the other sister wife unto Sir Luke Poinings, bare unto him Thomas, Lord of Basing, whose Neice Constance by his sonne Hugh, (unto whom this fell for her child's part of Inheritance) was wedded into the familie of the Powlets, and she was great Grandmother to that Sir William Powlet who being made Baron Saint Iohn of Basing by King Henrie the Eighth, and created by King Edward the Sixth first Earle of Wiltshire, and afterward Marquesse of Winchester, and withall was Lord Treasurer of England, having in a troublesome time runne through the highest honours, fulfilled the course of nature with the fatietie of this life, and that in great prosperitie, as a rare blessing among Courtiers) after he had built a most sumptuous house heere, for the spacious largenesse thereof admirable to the beholders, untill for the great and chargeable reparations his successors pulled downe a good part of it. But of him I have spoken before.

Nere unto this house, the Vine sheweth it selfe, a very faire place, and Mansion E-house of the Baron Sands, so named of the vines there, which wee have had in Britaine, since Probus the Emperours time, rather for shade than fruit. For, hee permitted the Britaines and others to have vines. The first of these Barons was Sir William Sands, whom King Henrie the Eighth advanced to that dignitie, being Lord Chamberlaine unto him, and having much amended his estate by marrying Margerie Bray, daughter and heire of Iohn Bray, and cousin to Sir Reinold Bray, a most worthy Knight of the Order of the Garter, and a right noble Banneret: whose Son Thomas Lord Sands, was Grandfather to William L. Sands that now liveth. Neighbouring hereunto is Odiam glorious in these daies for the Kings house there: and famous for that David the Second King of Scots, was there imprisoned: a Barrough corporate, belonging in times past to the Bishop of Winchester: the fortreffe whereof in the name of King Iohn, thirteene Englishmen for fifteene daies defended most valiantly, and made good against Lewis of France, who with his whole armie besieged and assaulted it very hotly.

A little above, among these Segontiaci, toward the North side of the countrey, sometimes stood VINDONVM, the chiefe citie of the Segontiaci, which casting off his owne name, hath taken the name of the Nation, like as Lutetia hath assumed unto it the name

Warnford.
ade hic Portu
benedicac Solu
ab Ortu Gens
Deo dicata; per
quem sic sum
renovata.
Let Church-
men and reli-
gious folke,
from time that
Sun doth rise,
Blesse Adam
Port, by whom
I am rebuil-
ded in this
wife.
Segontiaci.
Basingstoke.

Basing
Saint Iohn.

Out of an old
Mistall of the
Family of
Powlet.

Vines in Bri-
taine.
Vopiscus.

Barons Sands.

Odiam.

Matthew
Paris.

Vindonum.

Silceſter.

name of the Pariſians there inhabiting; for, called it was by the Britaines *Caer Segontis*, that is to ſay, the Citie of the *Segontiaci*. And ſo Ninnius in his catalogue of cities named it: wee at this day called it *Silceſter*: and *Higden* ſeemeth to clepe it of the Britaines *Britenden*: that this was the ancient *Vindonum*, I am induced to thinke by reaſon of the diſtance of *Vindonum* in Antoninus, from *Gallena*, or *Guallenford*, and *Venia* or *Wincheſter*: and the rather, becauſe betwene this *Vindonum* and *Venia*, there is ſtill to bee ſcene a cauſey, or ſtreet-way. Ninnius recordeth, that it was built by Conſtantius the ſonne of Conſtantine the Great, and called ſometime *Murimintum*, haply, for *Muri-vindum*, that is, the wals of *Vindon*. For, this word *Mur* borrowed from the provincially language, the Britaines retained ſtill, and *V*. the conſonant, they change oftentimes in their ſpeech, and writing into *M*. And to uſe the verie words of *Aſinnius*, though they ſeeme ridiculous, the ſaid Conſtantius, ſowed upon the ſoile of this citie three ſeedes, that none ſhould be poore that dwelt therein at any time. Like as *Dinocrates*, when *Alexandria* in Egypt was a building, ſtrewed it with meale or flower (as *Marcellinus* writeth) all the circular lines of the draught, which being done by chance, was taken for a fore-token, that the citie ſhould abound with all manner of victuals. He reporteth alſo, that Conſtantius died here, and that his Sepulchre was to be ſcene at one of the gates, as the Inſcription ſheweth. But in theſe matters let Ninnius cleere his owne credit; for, ſtuffed hee hath that little booke with many a pretty lie. Yet this I may be bold to affirme, that it flouriſhed in great honour about that time: and I my ſelfe have lighted here upon very many peeces, of the coine of Conſtantine, the younger ſonne to Conſtantine the Great: which in their reverſe have the portraict of an houſe with this Inſcription *PROVIDENTIA CAES.* Now that this Conſtantius whom he maketh the builder of this Citie, died at *Mopſueſtia* in Cilicia, and was interred in Conſtantinople in the Sepulchre of his Anceſtors, is knowne for certaine, and confeſſed. Yet I will nor denie, but that hee might have in this citie a monument erected in honour and remembrance of him. For, many there were that had ſuch monuments built, about which the ſouldiers, were wont yearly to juſt, and keepe ſolemne turneaments in honour of the dead.

Sepulchres of honour.

When the declining Roman Empire haſtened to an end, and barbarous nations began every where to waſte and ſpoile the Provinces: their Armies heere in Britaine, fearing leaſt the flame of this fire, wherewith their next neighbours in France were conſumed, would catch hold of them, ſet up and created Emperours to themſelves: firſt *Marcus*, then *Gratian*, whom they ſoone ſlew: and laſt of all in the yeare after Chriſts birth 407, our Conſtantine for his names ſake, they forced, wild he, mild he, poſurper the Empire, and to put on the Imperiall Purple robe in the citie *Caer Segontis*, as both Ninnius, and *Gervafe* of *Canterburie*, do witneſſe. This Conſtantine putting to ſea out of Britaine, landed at * *Bologne* in France, and drew all the Roman armies even as farre as the Alpes to ſide and joyne with him in his warres. Hee ſtoutly defended *Valentia* in France, againſt the power of *Honorius* the Emperour: the River *Rhene* which long before had beene neglected, hee fortified with a garrifon. Upon the Alpes, where any paſſage was, hee built fortrefſes. In Spaine, under the conduct of his ſonne *Conſtans*, whom of a Monke he had declared Emperour, he warred fortunately: and afterwards having ſent his letters unto *Honorius*, and craved pardon for ſuffering the ſouldiers, to put upon him the purple perforce, whether hee would or no; he accepted at his hands the Imperiall inveſture, which hee freely gave him. Whereupon being puffed up with pride, after hee had paſſed the Alpes, his mind was wholly ſet upon a journey to Rome. But hearing that *Alaricus* the Gothe who had favoured his part was dead, hee returned to Arles, where hee ſetled his Imperiall ſeat, cauſed the Citie to be called *Conſtantina*, and commanded the courts and aſſemblies of ſeven Provinces, there to be holden. In the meane time *Gerontius* excited the ſouldiers againſt their Lord, and when he had treacherouſly ſlaine his ſonne *Conſtans* at *Vienna* in France, beſieged Conſtantine alſo himſelfe within Arles. But after that one *Conſtantius* ſent by *Honorius* with a great armie, made head againſt him, *Gerontius* killed himſelfe. And Conſtantine being now ſtreitly

Conſtantine Emperour, choſen in hope of his name.
* *Bononia*.

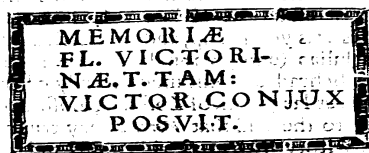
ly beſieged, and by reaſon of the unhappie ſucceſſe of his men paſt all hope, laid aſide the Purple and his great eſtate entred into the Church, became a Prielt: and ſtraight-waies when Arles was yeilded up, and hee tumbled into Italie, was himſelfe, together with his ſonne *Julian* (unto whom he had given the title of * *Nobiliffimus*) and his brother *Sebaſtian*, beheaded. Thus much briefly of theſe occurrents, (which before are diſcourſed more at large) out of *Zozimus*, *Zofomenus*, *Nicephorus*, *Oroſius*, and *Olympiodorus*, to the end that *Veritas* may triumph over their vanitie, who have beſprinkled this ſtory with moſt ridiculous and fooliſh lies of their owne deviſing.

* Heire apparant.
Julianus Nobiliſſimus.

Moreover, in this citie (our Hiſtoriographers write) that our warlike *Arthur* was inveſted and crowned King. But not long after it was razed quite, either in the Saxons warres, or when *Adelwolp* being offended with his brother King *Edward*, upon a malicious mind, together with the helpe of the Daniſh Rovers, waſted this countrey even to *Baſingſtoke*. And now remaineth nothing ſave the wals, which although they want their battlements, Gurtaine, and coppe, yet they ſeeme to have beene of a very great height. For, the earth is ſo growne up with the rubble, that I could ſcarce with ſtouping low paſſe through an old poſterne, which they call, *Onions Hole*. Theſe walles in ſome ſort continue whole, but that they be broken through in thoſe places where the gates were: and out of the very walles, I ſaw grow oakes of that bigneſſe, and thoſe ſeeming (as it were) bredde with the very ſtones, with ſuch huge roots claſping one another a great way, and ſpreading forth ſo mightie armes and boughes all abroad, that it would make the beholders to wonder thereat. Theſe walles take in compaſſe about two Italian miles. Whereupon haply the Saxons called this citie *Selceſter*, as one would ſay, *The great Citie*: for *Sel* may ſeeme to ſound with them as much as *Great*, ſeeing *Aſſerius* hath interpreted the Saxon word, *Selwood*, *The Great wood*. And before the walles Weſtward, where is a plaine, there lieth a banke of a great length, raiſed and caſt up for a defence and fortification. The ſcite of this old citie, containeth about foureſcore acres of ground within, which being a ſoile ploughed up and tilled, are divided into corne-fields; with a little grove in the Weſt ſide: but on the Eaſt, neere unto the gappe in the wall, there ſtandeth a Farne-houſe, and a pretty Church more lately built, in which, while I ſearched for ancient inſcriptions, I found nothing, but onely in the windowes certaine armes, to wit, in a ſield ſable, ſeven Fuſils argent in Bend, likewise in a ſield ſables, a Feſſe between two Cheverons, and in an Eſcutcheon Or, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, gules. This laſt, I have heard ſay, was the coat of the *Blewets*, unto whom this land came, about the Conquerours time. The ſecond belonged unto the ancient houſe of the *Bainards* of *Leckham*: but the firſt to the *Cufanz*, by whom from the *Blewets* it deſcended hereditarily, to the ſaid *Bainards*. But in the raigne of *William* the Conquerour, it was the poſſeſſion of *William de Ow*, a Norman, who being accuſed of high treaſon, and deſirous to prove his innocencie by combat, was overcome in fight, and by commandement of King *William Rufus*, had his two eyes pluckt out of his head, and loſt both his generals. This is found by continuall obſervation (as I have learned of the Inhabitants of this place) that although the ground be fertile and fruitfull enough, yet in certaine places croſſing one another, the corne doth not thrive ſo well, but cometh up much thinner then elſe where, by which they ſuppoſe the ſtreets of the citie went in old time. There are heere daily digged up, bricks ſuch as wee call Britaine-bricks, and great ſtore of Roman coine which they terme *Onions pennies*. For, they dreame that this Onion was a Giant, and dwelt in this citie. There are digged up alſo many times inſcriptions, of which the unſkilfull rurall people envie us the having. Onely one was brought from hence to London, which was to be ſcene in the gardens of the right honourable Sir *William Cecill*, Lord *Burghley*, and high Treafurer of England, to wit:

Sel, what it is.

Armes of the
Blewets, *Bainards*, and
Cufantes.



That this Tombe was erected for that *Victorina* which was called *Mater Caesarum*, that is, *The mother of the Campe*, and who against Gallienus the Emperour, exiled in Gaule; and Britaine, the two *Victorini*, her sonne, and sonnes sonne, *Posthumus* like wife, *Lollianus*, *Marius*, and *Fetricus*, *Caesars*, I would not with others affirme. Yet have read, that two of the *VICTORS*, were in some place here in Britaine, and those at one and the selfe same time, the one *Maximus* the Emperour his soone, the other *Præfectus Prætorio* to the same Emperour, of whom Saint Ambrose maketh mention in his Epistles, but I dare avouch, that neither of these twaine reared this monument for his wife.

As one high way or street of the Romans went straight from hence Southward to Winchester, so there was another ran west-ward through *Pamber Forrest*, very full of trees, and other by-places now standing out of the way, hard by *Litchfield*, that is, the field of dead bodies, to the Forrest of *Chine* pleasant for coole shade of trees, & plentiful game: in which the Huters and Forresters themselves do wonder at the bank or ridge thereof, so evident to be seene, paved with stone, but broken here and there.

More toward the North, in the very edge and frontier of this Shire, we saw *King-cleare*, a market towne in these daies well frequented, the residence in times past of the Saxon Kings, by it Fremantle in a parke where King Iohn much haunted, the *Sidmanton*, the habitation of the *King's Mills*, Knights: and *Burgh-Cleare* situated on an high hill, in the top whereof a warlike rampire (such as our countrey men call *Burgh*) hath a trench taking a great compasse about it: from whence, there being faire and open prospect every way over the countrey lying underneath, there standeth a * Beacon, that by light burning fire the enemies comming, may be shewed to all the neighbour-Inhabitants round about. And verily such warches or signals as this, we terme in common speech Beacons, of the old word *Beacnian*, that is, to shew by a signe, and for these many hundred yeares, they have bene in right great request, and much used among us: in some places, by heaping up a deale of wood, in others by barriels full of pitch fastened to the top of a mast or pole in the highest places of the countrey, at which, by night some doe evermore watch: and in old time, there were set horsemen as posts in many places, whom our Ancestors called *Hobblers*, who in the day time should give notice of the enemies approach.

This shire, like as the rest which hitherto we have run over, belonged to the well-Saxon Kings: and when they had deposed Sigeber from his Kingdome, for his tyrannie, evill entreating and lewd managing of his province, this countrey, as *Marianus* writeth, was assigned unto him, least hee should seeme altogether a private person. Whom notwithstanding afterward, for his wicked deeds, they likewise expelled from hence: and so far was it off, that this afflicted state of a King moved any man to take pitie of him, that a Swine-herd in the end, slew him in the wood *Anderida*, where he had lurked, and hidden himselfe.

This Shire can reckon but very few Earles, besides those of Winchester which have already named. In the first time of the Normans, *Bogo* or *Beavoise* the English man, who fought against the Normans in the battell at *Cardiff* in Wales, is reputed to have bene Earle of South-hampton, a man for warlike prowesse much renowned, whom while the Monks laboured to set out with their fained fables, they have obscured his doughtie deeds in greater darknesse. From which time unto the daies of *Henry the Eight*, there was no Earle of South-hampton that I read of: but he created

William

A *William Fitz-williams* descended from the daughter of *Marquesse Montacute*, both Earle of South-hampton, and also Admirall of England, when he was now well stricken in yeares. Who dying straight after without issue; King Edward the Sixth, in the first year of his raigne conferred the said honour upon *Thomas Wriothesley* Lord Chancellor, whose grand-child *Henric* by his sonne *Henric*, enjoyeth the same at this day: and in the prime and flowre of his age hath by good literature and militarie experience strengthened his honorable parentage, that in riper yeares he might be more serviceable to his Prince and countrey.

B

There be found in this shire Parishes 253. and mercate townes 18.

VECTA INSVLA ISLE OF WIGHT.

C
D
E
F
O this Countie of South-hampton belongeth that Island which lieth out in length over against the midst of it South-ward, called by the Romans in times past *VECTA*, *VECTIS*, and *VECTIS*, by *Ptolomee* *OTIKTHIZ*, by Britaines *Guith*, by English-Saxons *Wuit-land*, and *Wicp-Ea*; (For, an Island they termed *Ea*) and by us in these daies, the Isle of Wight and the *Whight*; by so small a streight running betweene, anciently called *Solent*. It is severed from the maine land, that it may seeme to have bene conjoyned to it: whereof that British name of it *Guith*, which berokeneth a separation; as *Ninnius* saith, is thought to have bene given: even as *Sicilie* also being broken off (as it were) and cut from *Italie* got the name from *Secundo* the Latin word (which signifieth cutting) as the right learned *Iulius Scaliger* is of opinion. Whereupon, (under correction alwaies of the Iudicious Criticks) I would read in the sixth *Quest. Naturall. of Seneca*, thus; *Ab Italia Siciliaresecta*, that is, *Sicilie cut from Italie*: whereas it is commonly read there, *rejecta*. By this *Vicinitie of scite*, & *Affinitie of name*, we may well thinke, this *Vecta* to be that *Ista*, which as *Diodorus Siculus* writeth, seemed at every tide to be an Island, but when it was ebbe, the ancient Britaines were wont that way to carry tinne thither by carts, which should bee transported into France. But yet I would not deeme it to be that *Mictis* in *Plinie*, which likewise commeth very neere unto *VECTA*: For that in it there was plentie of tinne, but in this of ours there is not to my knowledge any veine at all of metall.

This Isle, betweene East and West in ovall forme, stretcheth out twentie miles in length, and spreadeth in the midst, where it is broadest twelve miles: having the one side turning to the North, and the other Southward. The ground (to say nothing of the sea exceeding full of fish) consisteth of soile very fruitfull, and is thankfull to the husbandman, in so much as it doth afford corne to be carried forth: breeding every where store of conies, hares, partridges and pheasants. One little forrest it hath likewise, and two parkes replenished with deere, for game and hunting pleasure. Through the midst thereof runs a long tract or chaine of hills, yeilding plentie of pasture, and forrage for sheepe. The wool of which, next unto that of *Lemster* and *Cotswold*, is esteemed best, and in speciall request with *Clothiers*, whereby there groweth to the Inhabitants much gaine and profit: The North part is all over greene with meddows, pastures, and woods: the South side lieth wholly in manner, bedecked

bedecked with cornfields enclosed, where at each end the sea on the North doth so inbosome, encroach within it selfe, that it maketh almost two Islands: and verily so the Islanders call them: namely, *Fresh-water Isle* which looketh West, and *Bimbrige Isle*, Eastward. In *Beda* daies it was counted to containe a thousand and two hundred Hides: now it reckoneth upon 36. townes, villages and Castles: which for Ecclesiasticall jurisdiction belong to the Bishop of Winchester, and for civill government, to the Countie of South-hampton. The Inhabitants of this Isle were wont merily to make their boast, that their case was happier than all others, because they had neither hooded monks, nor cavilling Lawyers, nor yet crafty foxes.

Newport.

The places of greater name be these, *Newport*, the principall mercate towne of the whole Isle, called in times past *Medena*, and *Novus Burgus de Meden*, that is, *The new Burgh of Meden*: whereof the whole countrey is divided into *East Meden* and *West Meden*, an ordering as to their situation East or West either way. *Caeres-brake* an old Castle, so clepid and clipped short for *White garesburg*, is in the very heart and midst of the Isle, taking the name of *Whitgar* the Saxon, of whom more hereafter: and of late magnificently reedified by the meanes of the Captaine: unto which Castle there belonged very many *Knights Fees*, and above all other places it hath heere the glory for antiquitie: Brading, another mercate Towne, *Newton* and *Tarmouth* anciently called *Eremue*, which have their Majors, and send Burgeses to the Parliament. This *Tarmouth* and *Sharpnose* have Castles in them, which together with *Worsleys* fort or Blockehouse (so named of a worshipfull familie) defend the Sea-shore at the North-west. Just over against it, scarcely two miles off standeth *Hurst* a fortification of South-Hamptonshire, situate upon a little necke of land lying into the Sea: *Quarr*, where was founded a Nunnerie in the yeare of our Lord 1131: *Gods-Hill*, in which *John Worsley* erected a Schoole for the training up of young wits, *West-Cove* and *East-Cove*, that is now ruinous: both which, King Henry the Eighth built at the very-trie of *New port*: and concerning them *Leland* wrote in this wise:

*Covae fulminee duae cornu scant
Hac casum colit, ille Solis ortum
Victam quæ Neoportus intrat altam,*

Two Cowes full opposite there stand,
At West and East, in all mens sight:
Then flashen fire from either hand,
Where *Newport*, entreth Isle of Wight.

Also on the North-East side *Sandham Castle*, furnished as the rest, with great ordnance. Neither are there wanting for the defence of this Isle naturall fences. For, encircled it is with a continuall ridge and raunge as it were of craggy cliffs; there are under the waters likewise hidden stones: and every where there lie against it, banks and rockes perilous for failers: but the most dangerous of all the rest are the *Needles*, so called because they are so sharpe, and the *Shingles*; which stand forth against the West angle of the Isle: as also the *Owers* and *Mixon* that lie before the East. Besides these, *The Brambles*, which are *Shelves* and perilous for Sailers, in the North-coast. Moreover if there be any place that seemeth open and meete for a landing place, the same by an old order and custome among them is piled with strong stakes driven and pitched deepe into the ground.

The Inhabitants.

But verily this Isle is neither with these rockes, nor with these fortresses above said so well fenced, as with the very Inhabitants themselves, who naturally being most warlike, bold, and adventurous, are through the diligence and care of the Captaine of the Isle, confirmed so by continuall exercise in strength and militarie discipline, that they exactly know before hand, (what accidents of service soever may happen in warre) namely with their peeces to shoot point-blanke and not misse the mark, to keepe their ranks, to march orderly, and in ray, to cast their squadrons if need be close into a ring, or to display and spread the same at large, to take paines, to runne, and ride, to endure both Sunne and dust, and fully to performe whatsoever warlike

doth

doth require. Of these souldiers thus trained the Isle it selfe is able to bring forth into the field 4000. and at the instant of all affaires appointed there bee three thousand more of most expert and practised servitours out of Hampshire, and two thousand beside out of Wilshire, to bee ever prest, and in readinesse for the defence of the Isle. And to the end that all hostile forces whatsoever might bee withstood more speedily, and with greater facilitie, the whole countrey is divided into eleven parts: and every of them hath their severall Centoner, as one would say, Centurion, their *Vintons* also, leaders as it were, of twenty, their great peeces of Ordnance, their Sentinels and warders. Who keepe watch and ward at the Beacons standing on the higher grounds: their Posts also, or runners, whom by an old name growne almost out of use, they terme still *Hoblers*, who presently give intelligence of all occurrents to the Captaine and Governour of the Isle.

The first that brought it in subjection to the Romans, was *Vespasian*, whiles he served as a private person under *Claudius Caesar*: For, thus writeth *Suetonius* of him. *Under the Emperour Claudius, by speciall favour of Narcissus, he was sent into Germanie as Lieutenant of a Legion: and from thence being remooved into Britaine, he fought thirtie battailes with the enemy. Two most mightie nations, and above twentie townes, together with the Isle of Wight, lying next to the said Britaine hee subdued, under the conduct partly of A. Plautius a Consular Lieutenant, and in part of Claudius himselfe. For which service he received triumphall ornaments, and in short space two sacerdotall dignities, &c.* At this Isle also, the navie of *Allectus*; after he had usurped the Imperiall dignitie in Britaine, lying in espiall and ambush, awaited the Romans comming against him, who notwithstanding by the happy meanes of a mist passed by their enemies undescried, gat to land, and set fire on their owne ships, that there might bee no refuge for them, to escape unto by flight. Lord *Cerdic* was the first English-Saxon that subdued it, and he granted it unto *Stuffa*, and *Whitgar*, who joyntly together slew well-near all the British Inhabitants (for few there were of them remaining) in *Whitgaraburge* a towne so called of his name, and now by contraction shortened into *Caesbrake*. After, *Wolpher* King of the Mercians reduced the Isle of Wight under his obedience, and assigned it over to *Edelwalch* King of the South-Saxons, together with the province of the *Menwari*, what time as hee became his Godfather, and answered for him at his Baptisme. Then, *Ceadwalla* King of the West-Saxons, when the said *Edelwalch* was slaine, and *Arvandus* the petty King of the Island made away, annexed to it the Dominion, and in a tragical, and lamentable massacre killed every mothers child almost of the inborne Inhabitants, and the fourth part of the Isle, to wit as much land as contained 300. Hides, hee gave unto Bishop *Wilfrid*. The first that instructed the Islanders in the knowledge of Christian religion. But these matters *Beda* will informe you best, writing as he doth, in these words.

After then that *Ceadwalla* had obtained the kingdome of the Gewissi, hee wonne also the Isle of Wight: which unto that time had beene wholly given to Idolatrie; and then endeavoured what he could to make a generall massacre and tragicall slaughter of all the native Inhabitants thereof, and in stead of them to plant there people of his owne province; binding himselfe with a vow, although he was not yet regenerate and become Christened, and in case he wonne the Isle, he would give unto God a fourth part both of it and also of the whole booty. Which vow he so paid, as that he offered this Isle, unto *Wilfrid* the Bishop (who being of his nation hapened then to come thither & be present to the use and glory of God. The measure of the same Island according to the English mens estimation is proportionable to one thousand and two hundred hides of land. Whereupon the Bishop had possession given him of so much Land as rose to three hundred Hides. But hee, commended that portion which hee received unto one of his Clarkes named *Bernwin*, and his sisters sonne he was, giving unto him a priest named *Hildila*, for to minister unto all that were desirous of salvation, the word and laver of life. Where I thinke it not good to passe over in silence, how, for the first fruits (as one would say) of those who of the same Isle were saved by their beleife, two young children brethren, of the Royall blood, to wit, the sonnes of *Arvandus* King of the Isle, were by the especiall favour of G O D crowned with martyrdom) For, when the enemies approached

In Vespasian. cap. 4.

Anno D. 530.

Beda lib. 4. cap. 13.

Beda lib. 4. cap. 16.

proached hard unto the Island; these children slept secretly out of the Isle, and were removed into the province next adjoining; where being brought to a place called Ad Lapidem, when they had committed themselves upon trust, to be hidden from the face of the King the was conquerour, betrayed they were and commanded to be killed. Which when a certaine Abbat and Priest named Cynbreth heard, who not farre from thence had his manastere in a place named Reodford, that is the Ford of reed, hee came unto the King, who then in those parts lay secretly at cure of those wounds which hee had received whilst hee fought in the Isle of Wight, and requested of him, that if there were no remedie but that the children must bee murdered, they might yet bee first taught the Sacraments of Christian faith before their death. The King granted his petition, and hee then having catechised them in the word of truth, and bathed them in the fount of salvation, assured them of their entrance into the everlasting Kingdome of heaven. And so within a while after, when the executioner, called instantly for them, they joyfully suffered that temporall death of the body, by which they made no doubt of their passe unto the eternall life of their soules. In this order and manner therefore after all the Provinces of Britaine had embraced the faith of Christ, the Isle of Wight also received the same: in which notwithstanding for the calamitie and trouble of forraigne subjection, no man tooke the degree of Ministerie, and See Episcopall before Daniell, who at this day is the Bishop of the West Saxons and the Geviss. Thus much Beda.

From this time forward our writers for a great while have not one word of Wight unto the yeare of our Lord, one thousand sixtie six, in which, Tostie King Haralds brother with certaine men of warre, and Rovers ships out of Flanders in hatred of his brother invaded it, and after he had compelled the Islanders to pay him tribute, departed. Some few yeares after, as we read in the old booke of Carew broke Priorie, which Master Robert Glover Somerset, shewed me, who carried as it were the Sunne light of ancient Genealogies and Pedigrees in his hand. Like as, faith this booke, William the Bastard conquered England, even so William Fitz. Osbern his Marechal and Earle of Hereford, conquered the Isle of Wight, and was the first Lord of Wight. Long after this, the Frenchmen in the yeare 1377. came suddenly at unawares under faile, invaded and spoiled it: and the same French in the yeare 1403. gave the like attempt, but in vaine: For valiantly they were driven from landing even as in our fathers daies, when the French Gallies set one or two small cottages on fire and went their way.

Lords of the
Isle of Wight.

Christ-
Church.

As touching the Lords of this Isle, after that William Fitz. Osbern was forthwith slaine in the warre of Flanders, and his sonne Roger outlawed and driven unto exile, it fell into the Kings hands: and Henric the First, King of England gave it unto Richard Ridvers (otherwise called Redvers and de Riparius) Earle of Deneshire, and with all, the Fee or Inheritance of the Towne Christ-Church. Where, like as at Carisbroke, that Richard built certaine Fortresses: but Baldwin his sonne, in the trouble some time of King Stephen, when there were in England so many Tyrants, as there were Lords of Forts and Castles, who tooke upon them every one to stampe money and challenged other rights of Regall Majestie, was by Stephen disseized and expelled from hence. Howbeit, his posteritie recovered their ancient right, whose Genealogie wee have already put downe when wee treated of the Earles of Deneshire.

But in the end, Isabell widow to William de Fortibus, Earle of Albemarle and Holderneshe, sister and heire of Baldwin the last Earle of Devonshire of that house, after much intreatie was overcome to make over by charter all her right and interest, and to settle it upon King Edward the First, with the Manours of Christ Church, and Fawkeshaul, &c. For foure thousand Markes.

Ever since which time, the Kings of England held the Isle, and Henry de Beauchamp Earle of Warwick was by King Henric the Sixth, unto whom hee was most deere, crowned King of Wight, and afterwards nominated, The first or principal Earle of all England. But together with him this new and unusuall title died and vanished quite. Afterwards Richard Widevile Earle Rivers was by King Edward the fourth stiled Lord of the Isle of Wight, & Sir Reginald Bray took it of King Henry the

Seventh

A Seventh, (with whom he was most inward) in Fee farme, for a rent charg'd, of three hundred markes yearly to be paid. Also, beside these Lords, this Isle had a noble Familie, named *de Insula*, or *Lisle*, out of which in the raigne of King Edward the Second, one was summoned unto the Parliament by the name of Sir John Lisle, of the Isle of Wight.

ATTRE.



ATTREBATII.

* Or Gaule.



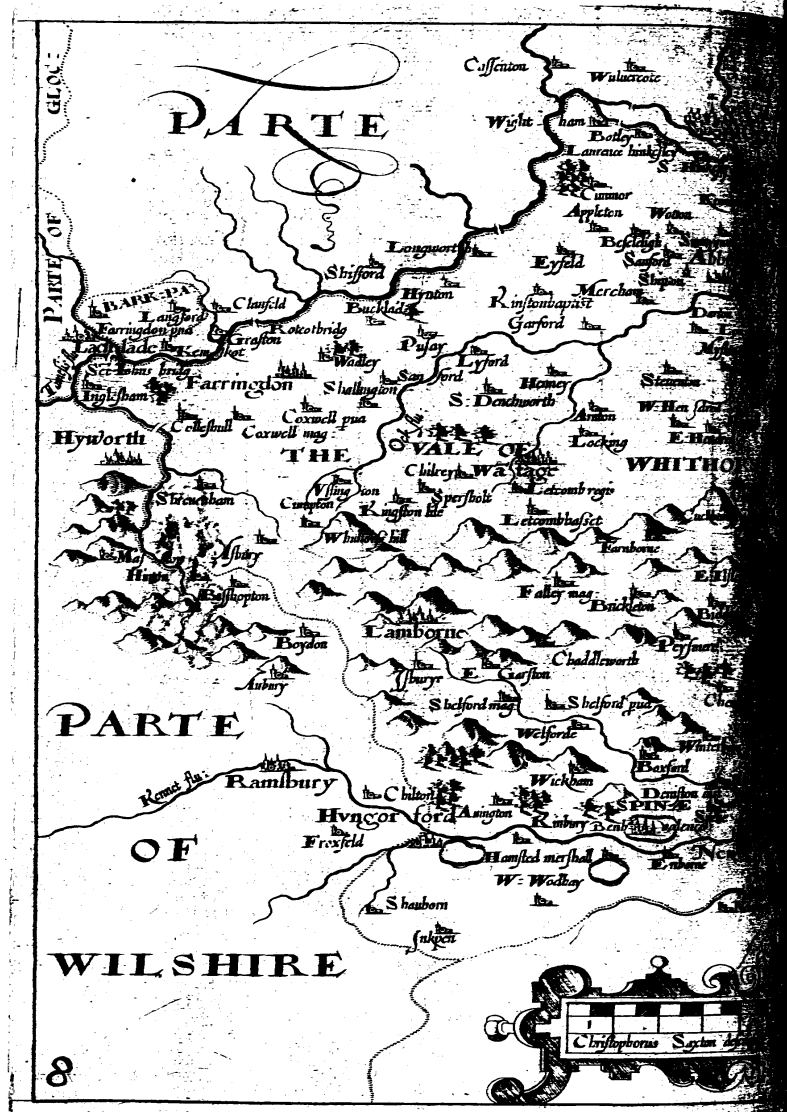
France.

Cominus Attrebatensis.

In stratagemat.

*S in * France, so also in Britaine, next adjoyning with the Belgæ, are ATTREBATII, which name being altogether out of use, the place which they inhabited commonly called Barkshire. For, let this stand as granted, (seeing Cesar writeth the forrainers comming out of Gallia Belgica inhabited the sea coasts of Britaine and retained still the names of their countries) that these our ATTREBATII ATTREBATES of Gaule: who as Ptolomee recordeth, held the maritime part of Gaule, lying upon the river Sein, and namely, that my country, which after a sort lieth full opposite and over against our Attrebatii. It was not therefore without good cause, if Cesar wrote, that Cominus Attrebatensis was of great authority in these countries, namely among his owne countrymen; and that after hee was by Cesar vanquished, he fled hither: what time, as Frontinus writeth, whiles his ships were grounded upon a shelve, he commanded his sailes to be hoised up, and so appointed Cesar (who pursued him) of his purpose: who kenning a farre of, his full sailes, and supposing that with a good gale of forewind he sailed away, gave over further pursuit. Whence these Attrebatii were so called, it resteth doubtfull: For whereas some fetch the originall from Attrebat, which in the old Gauls tongue they would have to signifie a land of Bread, I neither approve nor disprove their opinion. Sufficient it may be for us, to have shewed from whence they came into Britaine; as for the derivation of their name, let others search into it.*

BARKSHIRE



BARKSHIRE.



That countrie which we call Barkshire, the late Latine writers terme *Bercheria*, and was sometime by the English Saxons named *Beppocrype*. Which name *Afferius Menevensis* deriveth from a certaine wood called Berroc where grew good store of box: others from a naked, or bare oake (for so much the name *Beroc* it selfe importeth) unto which, the Inhabitants in dangers and troublesome times of the commonwealth were wont in old time to resort, there to consult about their publike affaires. The North part hereof the river *Ist* which afterwards is called *Tamisis*, that is, the Tamis, running with a winding channell full of reaches, but carrying a very gentle streame, doth pleasantly water it, and first severeth it from Oxfordshire, afterwards from Buckinghamshire. The South side, where it beareth toward Hantshire, the river *Kenet* cutteth through, untill it runnes into the Tamis. In the West, where it bordereth upon Wiltshire and carrieth the greatest breadth, as also in the middle part, rich it is of it selfe and full of commodities, yeelding corne in plenty; especially where it falleth lower to a valley: which I wote not from what shape of a white horse imagined to appeare in a whitish chalky hill, they terme, *The vale of Whitehorse*. As for the East part that confineth with Surrie, it groweth very barraine, or at least wise the soile is lesse fertile, as standing upon forrests and woods that take up a great ground in length and breadth.

In the West march thereof neere unto *Ist*, standeth Farendon, seated high: famous now, for a mercate there kept, but in times past, for a certaine Foit, which *Robert Earle of Gloucester* built against King *Stephen*, who notwithstanding wonne it with bloody assaults, and laid it so levell with the ground, that now it is not to be seen. But the plot of ground whereon it stood, as we finde in the *Chronicle of Warley Abbey*, King *John* in the yeere of our Lord 1202. prevented by divine inspiration granted with all the appurtenances to the building of an Abbey for the *Cistercians* order.

From hence the river having with a great turning compasse after much wrestling, gotten out towards the North, passeth a long hard by many villages of small reckoning till at length with a returne, and disporting it selfe with winding branches and divisions, hecommeth to Abbendon, a proper towne, and populous: called at first by the English Saxons *Sheoverham*, then *Abbandune*, no doubt, of the Abbey, rather then of one *Abben* I wote not what Irish *Eremit*, as some have written. A place this was (as we finde in an old booke of *Abbandon*) upon the plaine of an hill very faire and delectable to see too a little beyond the town, which now is called *Suniggewelle*, betweene two most pleasant rivelets, which enclosing within them the place it selfe (as it were a certaine nooke) yeeld a delightful sight to the beholders, and a meete succour to the Inhabitants. The very same was in times past called *Sheoverham*, a Citie famous, goodly to behold, full of riches, compassed about with most plentious fields, with greene meadows, spacious pastures, and stockes of cattell spinning forth milke abundantly. Heere was the Kings seat: hither resorted and assembled the people, when soever there was any treaty about the chiefe, and highest affaires of the Kingdom. But so soone as *Cissa* King of the West Saxons had built the Abbey, it beganne by little and little to lay downe the old name, and to be called *Abbandon*, and *Abbingdon*, that is, Abbey-towne.

This Abbey had not long flourished, when all of a sodaine in a tempestuous fury of the Danes it was subverted; Yet soone after it was reared againe through the bounty of King *Edgar*, and afterwards by the meanes, & travaile of the Norman Abbats grew by little and little to such magnificence, that among all the Abbaies of Britaine for

A a

riches,

Afferius.

* Ouze.

Farendon.

Guil.
New brigen-
sis.Abbandune
or Abington.

Herica Quin-
tus quarto fun-
davit anno.
Rex, pontem
Burford super
widus, atq;
Culhamford.

K. Henry of
that name the
fifth the fourth
year of his
reigne, both
Burford Bridge
and Culham-
ford, did found
on River
mayne.

Now, Af-
bury neere to
White horse
hill.

Besides Lee,
Feiplace.

* Ouse.

Vicount
Lisle.

See the Earles
of Shrews-
bury.

1605.

riches, and stateliesse it would hardly give place to any. Which the very rubble and ruins at this day doe testifie. As for the towne, albeit along time it had a great stay of the Abbay, yet since the yeere of our saluation 1416. in which King Henrie the Fifth built Bridges over the River Isis or Ouse (as witnesseth a verse written in a window of Saint Helens Church there) and turned the Kings high way hither for to make a shorter passage, it beganne to bee frequented and traded so, that among all the townes of this shire, it goes for the chiefe, hath a Major in it, and maketh great gaine by the steeped barly sprouting and chitting againe, which the Greekes terme *Byne* and were Male: and besides, hath a Crosse, of singular workmanship in the mids of the mace place (which by report, in the reigne of King Henrie the sixth, the Brother of Saint Crosse instituted by him, did erect).

As *Cissa* founded this monasterie for Monkes, so *Cissa* out of an old booke I speake the sister of King *Cedwalla* built the Nunnerie at *Helselowe* neere the *Tamis*, where in selfe was *Ladie* Abbasse over the Virgins, who afterwards were translated to *Wubam*. And whiles the warre grew hote betwene *Offa* and *Kinulph*, when a Castle was there built, the Nunnies retired themselves out of the way. For, after that *Kinulph* was overtrowne, who ever lay under his jurisdiction from the towne of *Wallengford* in the South part, from the midstreete unto *Essebury*, and in the North side to the river *Tamis*. King *Offa* usurped and seized into his owne hands.

Neere unto it, Northwest lieth *Lee*, which by the daughter of a certaine worthie full Knight furnished thereupon, *de Lee*, fell to the familie of *Befiles*, and thence came to bee called *Befiles Lee*: and from that house in right of marriage, to *Richard Feiplace*: whose Progenitor *Thomas* brought some honor to his posterity by marrying with *Beatrice* the base daughter of *John* the first, King of Portugall, and widow to *Gilbert* Lord *Talbot*, of whom they are descended. But now, let us returne. Had by *Abendon*, *Ocke* a little river that runneth by the South side of the towne, (over which in times past *Sir John* of Saint Helens, Knight, built a bridge,) gently fallerh into * *Isis*: This *Ocke* springeth in that vale of *Whitehorse* scarce a mile or two from *Kington-Lisle*, in olde time the possession of *Warin de Insula*, or *Lisle*, a noble Baron. From whom when as *Sir John Talbot* the younger sonne of that renowned warrior, *John* Earle of *Shrewsburie* was defended by his mother, hee was created by King *Henrie* the Sixth Lord *Lisle*, like as *Warin de Insula* in times past in regard of the possession of this place, (as if that dignity were annexed thereto) and afterwards *Vicount Lisle*: by a Patent without any such regard. This title through the gracious favor of Kings flourished still in his posterity one after another successively. For, bricly to knit up their succession, When *Sir Thomas Talbot* sonne of the said *John* departed this life without issue, being deadly shot into the mouth with an arrow in a skirmish defending his possessions against the Lord *Barkley*. *Sir Edward Grey* who had married his sister, received the same at the hands of King *Richard* the third, and left it to *John* his sonne, and successor. Whose onely daughter and heire King *Henrie* the Eighth assured to *Sir Charles Brandon*, and thereupon created him *Vicount Lisle*. But when as shee died in tender yeeres before the marriage was solemnized, hee also relinquished that title. Which King *Henrie* afterward bestowed upon *Sir Arthur Plantagenet* base sonne to King *Edward* the fourth. Who had wedded *Elizabeth* sister to *Sir John Grey* *Vicount Lisle*, and widow of *Edmund Dudley*. And when hee deceased without heires male, the said King honoured therewith *Sir John Dudley* sonne of *Edmund* by the same *Elizabeth Grey*, who in the time of King *Edward* the sixth was created Duke of *Northumberland*, and afterward attainted by *Queen Marie*. His sonne *Sir Ambrose Dudley* being restored in blood, was by *Queen Elizabeth* on one and the selfe same day created Lord *Lisle*, and Earle of *Warwick*, who ended his life issuelesse. And now lately *Sir Robert Sidney* his sisters sonne was honoured with the stile of *Vicount Lisle* by King *James*, who had before created him (being Chamberlaine to the Queene his wife) *Baron Sidney of Penshurst*.

Then runneth the river *Ocke* aforesaid, betwene *Pusey*, which they that are ne-

med *de Pusey* hold it yet by the horn from their ancestors, as given unto them in ancient time by *K. Canutus* the Dane, and the two *Dencheworths* the one and the other; where flourished for a long time two noble and auncient houses, to wit, *de Hide* at the one, and *Feiplace* at the other, which families may seeme to have sprung out of one and the same stocke, considering they both beare one and the same coat of armes. Then enteraineth *Ocke* a namelesse river, which issueth out of the same vale, at *Wantage* called in the English Saxon tongue *Wanacing*, where some time there was a Manour house of the Kings, and the place wherein *Aelfred* that most noble and renowned King was borne and bred, which at his death he bequeathed to *Alfrith*. Long time after, it became a mercate towne by the meanes and helpe of *Sir Fulke Fitzwarin* that most warlike Knight, upon whom *Roger Bigod* Mareschall of England had bestowed it for his martiall prowesse, and at this daie it acknowledgeth for Lords thereof the *Bourchiers*, Earles of *Bath* descended from the race of the *Fitzwarins*, of whose familie some were here buried.

Isa being departed once from *Abendon*, straight waies receiveth into it out of *Oxfordshire*, the river *Tame* (of which elsewhere) and now by a compound word being called *Tamisis*, first directeth his course to *Sinodun* an high hill, and fenced with a deepe trench, were stood, for certaine, in old time a fortresse of the Romanes: for, the ground being now broken up with the plough, yeeldeth otherwhiles to the ploughmea, store of Roman pieces of coine, as tokens of antiquitie. Under it at *Brewell*, there was a Castle, (if it were not that upon this hill) which King *Henry* the Second wonne by force, a little before that he made peace with King *Stephen*. From hence *Tamis*, holdeth on his way to the chiefe Citie in times past of the *Attrebatians*, which *Antonius* termeth, *GALLIYA* of *Attrebats*, *Protonice* *GALLIYA*, but both of them through the carelesse of the *Scrivears* name it wrong, for, *GALLIENA*: and they likewise in their Greeke copies have thrust upon us, *Galena*, for, *Gallena*, by transposition of letters. I have thought it was so named in the British tongue, as it were, *Gual hen*, that is, *The old rampier or fort*. Which name being still kept, and [*Ford*] added thereto, which is a shallow place in the river, the Englishmen in old time called it *Guallenagapord*, and *Wallengapord*, and we at this day, shorter *Wallengford*. In King *Edward* the Confessors time, it was counted a *Burgh*, and contained (as we find in that Booke wherein *K. William* the First, tooke the Survey of all England, two hundred, threescore, and sixteene *Hages*, that is to say, *Houses*, yielding nine pound and a Gable, and those that dwelt there, did the King service on horsebacke, or by water. Of those *Hages*, eight were destroyed for the Castle. In old time it was compassed about with walles, which, as men may see by their tract, tooke up a mile in circuit. It hath a Castle situate upon the river, very large (I assure you) and stately, so fortified in times past, that the hope in it, (as impregnable and invincible) made divers overbold and stout. For, when England burned (as a man may say) in a general flame of warres, we read, that it was by King *Stephen* belaid once or twice with sieges, but all in vaine. The greatnesse and magnificence thereof I much wondered at when I was young, and removed thither from *Oxford* (for a place it is now for the Students there of *Christ Church*, to retire unto) as having a double range of walles about it, and being compassed round likewise with a duple rampier and ditch: and in the midst of it, there standeth a tower to keepe, raised upon a mightie high mount: in the steepe ascent whereof by steps, we saw a Well of an exceeding depth. The Inhabitants are verily perswaded, that it was built by the Danes; but I should rather judge, that something was here erected by the Romans, and afterwards rased by Saxons, and Danes, what time as *Sueno* the Dane, ranging and roving this way spoiled, and harried the countrey. That it was at length reedified under King *William* the first, we know assuredly by *Domesday* booke, seeing that it yeeldeth record (as even now I noted) of eight *Hages* or *Houses* destroyed for the Castle. Yet *William* *Gemetensis* makes no mention of this Castle, when he writeth, that *William* of *Normandie* having defeated *Harold*, led his armie forthwith to this citie (so he termeth it) and after he had passed over the *Tamis* at the ford, pitched his tents heere before hee came

Pusey:
Dencheworth.

Wantage.

Fitzwarin.

Tamisis or
Tamis the
River,
Sinodun.

Brewell.
Robert Mont-
ensis.

Gallena.

Wallengford.

Domesday
booke.

Records of
Wallengford.

Filius Comit.

Of the honor
of Walleng-
ford, in Testa.
Mortuaria in the
Exchequer.A most grie-
vous Peiti-
lence.

Moules-ford.

Carew.

Aldworth.

The River
Kenet.
Hungerford.1. pers. dupl.
patent. Norm.
6. H. 5.
Barons of
Hungerford.

came to London. At which time *Wigod* an Englishman was Lord of Wallengford, who had one onely daughter given in marriage to Robert D'Oyley, of whom he gat Mawd his sole heire, first wedded to Miles Crispin, and after his death, through the goodnesse and favour of K. Henrie the first, married unto Briant, called Fitz Count. Who being brought up in warlike feates, and taking part with Mawd the Emperesse, most manfully defended this Castle against King Stephen, who had raised a fort over against it at Craumesh: and he made it good, untill that peace so much wished of all England, was concluded in this place: and that most grievous dissention about the Crowne, betwene K. Stephen, and Henrie the Second ended. For, then the love of God tooke such place in the hearts of the said Briant, and his wife, that they call of this fraile and transitorie world, and devoted themselves in religious life unto Christ: so was this Honour of Wallengford escheated into the Kings hand. Which appeareth out of an old Inquisition in the Exchequer, by these words. *To his most beloved Lords, the King our soveraigne Lord, his Iustices, and Barons of the Exchequer, the Constable of Wallengford sendeth greeting. Know ye, that I have made diligent enquiry by the Knights of my Bayliwicke, according to a commandement of my Lord the King, directed unto me by the Sheriffe: and of the Inquisition thus made, this is the summe. Wigod of Wallengford, held the honour of Wallengford in King Harolds time, and afterwards in the daies of King William the First: He had by his wife a certaine daughter whom he gave in marriage to Robert D'Oyley. This Robert begat of her a daughter, named Mawd, who was his heire. Miles Crispin espoused her, and had with her the honour aforesaid of Wallengford. After the decease of Miles, our soveraigne Lord King Henrie the first, bestowed the aforesaid Mawd upon Briant Fitz Count, who both tooke themselves to a religious life, and King Henrie the Second seized the honour into his hand, &c.* Yet afterwards in the time of King Henrie the Third, it belonged to the Earles of Chester: and then to Richard King of the Romans, and Earle of Cornwall, who repaired it, and unto his sonne Edmund, who within the inner Court founded a Collegiate Chappell, who dying without issue, it fell againe to the Crowne, and was annexed to the Dukedome of Cornwall: since which time it hath by little and little decayed. And verily about the time when that most mortall Plague which followed the conjunction of *Saturne* and *Mars* in *Capricorne*, reigned hotely throughout all Europe, in the yeare of our Lord 1348. This towne was so dispeopled by reason of continuall mortaliitie there, that whereas before time it was passing well inhabited, and had twelve Churches in it, it can now now no more than one or two. But the cause of this desolation the Inhabitants lay rather upon the bridges of *Abbindon* and *Dorchester*, whereby *London* portway was cut from thence.

From hence Southward, the *Tamis* passeth most mildly betwene very rich and fertile fields on both sides, by *Moules-ford*: which K. Henrie the first gave unto *Guilf* Fitz-Walter, from whence the Noble family of the *Carewes* is descended. To this house, much lands, honour, and reputation accrewed, in Ireland by descent, and in England by matching in marriage with right noble families of the *Mohuns*, *Dinkins*, and others. Not farre from hence is *Aldworth*, where be certaine tombes and portraictures, bigger than the ordinary proportion of men: which thereupon the learned multitude keeps a wondering at, as if they had been Giants: whereas indeed, they were but of certaine Knights of the Family of *la Beche*, which heere had a Castle, and is thought in the raigne of King Edward the Third to have bene extinguished for default of issue male. And now at length, *Tamis* meeteth with *Kenet*, which River, as I said ere-while, watereth the South part of this shire, at his first entry when he hath left *Wiltshire* behind him, runneth under *Hungerford*, named in old time *Wiglesford Charnam-fleet*: a very small towne, and seated in a moist place; howbeit, it hath given name and title to the honorable family of the Barons of *Hungerford*, which was first raised to greatnesse by *Walter Hungerford*, who under King Henrie the Fifth, being Seneschall or Steward of the Kings house, was for his warlike prowesse liberally rewarded by the said king and infeofed in the Castle and Barony of *Honmet* in *Normandie*, To have and to hold unto him and his heires males by homage and fe-

A vice, to find the Kings and his heires at the Castle of Roan, one Launce with a Foxtaile hanging downe thereat: which pleasant conceit, I thought not a misse to insert here among serious matters. The same *Walter* in the raigne of Henrie the Sixth, being high Treasurer of England, and created withall Baron *Hungerford*, as well by his singular wisdom, as his marriage with *Katherine Peverell* (descended from the *Moels*, and *Courtneys*,) mightily augmented his state. His sonne Robert, who wedded the daughter and heire of the Lord *Botereaux*, enriched the same house verie much, Sir Robert likewise his sonne, who matched with *Eleanor*, the daughter and heire of *William Molines* whereupon he was summoned among the Barons of the Realme by the name of Lord *Molines* and during the civill warre betwene the two houses of *Lancaster* and *Yorke*, was beheaded at *Newcastle*, advanced the name not a little. His sonne *Thomas*, slaine at *Salisbury*, while his father was living, left his onely daughter named *Marie*, whom *Edward Lord Hastings*, tooke to wife with a great and rich inheritance. But *Walter*, brother to the said *Thomas*, begat *Edward Hungerford*, father of that *Walter*, whom King Henrie the Eighth created Baron *Hungerford* of *Heitesbury*, and condemned him afterwards for a crime not to be spoken of: howbeit, *Queene Marie* restored his children unto all his estate, save onely the name and title of Barons. Not farre from hence Southward is *Widehay*, the seat for a long time of the Baron * *Saint Amand*, whose inheritance *Gerard Braybrooke* caried upon in right of his wife, whose eldest Niece by his sonne *Gerard*, named *Elizabeth*, by her marriage brought the same unto *William de Beauchamp*, who being summoned to the Parliament by the name of *William Beauchamp de Saint Amand*, flourished among other Barons, like as his sonne *Richard*, who left no issue lawfully begotten.

Kenet keeping on his course downward from thence, betwene *Hemsted Marshall*, which sometimes was held by the rod of *Marshallsee*, and appertained to the *Mareschals* of England where *S. Thomas Parry* Treasurer of *Queene Elizabeths* household, built a very proper house, and *Benham Valence* in a Parke so called, because it belonged to *William de Valencia* Earle of *Pembroch*. But *Queen Elizabeth* gave it to *John Baptista Castilion* a *Piemontese*, of her privie chamber for faithfull service in her dangers. So the river passeth on to that old town *Spine*, wherof *Antonine* made mention: which retaining still the name is at this day called *Spene*: but now in steed of a towne it is a very little village standing scarce a mile off from *Newbury* a famous towne that arose and had beginning out of the ruins of it. For *Newbury* with us is as much to say, as the *Newburgh*, in respect no doubt, of that more ancient place of habitation which is quite decayed and gone, and hath left the name also in a peece of *Newburie* it selfe which is called *Spinham Lands*. And if nothing else, yet this verily might prove that *Newburie* sprang out of *Spine*, because the inhabitants of *Newbury* acknowledge the village *Spene* as their mother, although in comparison of *Spene* it be passing faire and goodly, as well for buildings as furniture: become rich also by clothing, and very well seated in a champian plaine, having the river *Kenet* to water it. This towne at the time that the Normans conquered England, fell to *Ernulphe de Hesdin* Earle of *Perch*: whose successor *Thomas* Earle of *Perch*, being slaine at the siege of *Lincolne*, the Bishop of *Chalons* his heire sold it unto *William Marescall* Earle of *Pembroke*, who also held the Manour of *Hemsted* hard by (whereof I have spoken) and his successors also *Mareschals* of England, untill that *Roger Bigod* for his obstinacie lost his honor and possessions both, which notwithstanding by intreaty he obtained againe for his life time.

Kenet passeth on hence and taketh into him *Lamborn* a little river, which at the head and spring thereof imparteth his name to a small mercate towne, that in old time by vertue of King *Alfreds* testament belonged unto his cousin *Alfrink*, and afterward to the *Fitz Warens*, who of King Henrie the Third obtained libertie of holding a mercate, but now appertaineth unto the *Essexes*, Knights: A familie that fetcheth their pedigree from *William Essex* Vnder-treasurer of England under

Aa 3

King

Widehay.
* Dr S. Amand
Barons de S.
Amand.Beauchamp
De S. Amand.

Spine;

Newbury.

Lamborn.

King Edward the Fourth, & from those who in times past carried the same surname, & flourished as men of very great fame in Essex. From thence he runneth under *Dunnington*, which others call *Dunnington* a little castle, but a fine and proper one, situate with a faire prospect upon the brow of a pretty hill full of groves, and which inwardly for the most part letteth in all the light. Built, they say, it was by Sir Richard de Abberbury Knight, who also under it founded for poore people a * *Godehouse*. Afterward, it was the residence of *Chaucer*, then of the *De la Poles*, and in our fathers daies of *Charles Brandon Duke of Suffolke*.

*Almeshouse.

Aldermaston.

Reading.

Kenet having now finished a long course, by *Aldermaston* which King *Henrie* the First gave unto *Robert Achard*: From whose posterity by the *Delamars* it came at length in right of marriage to the *Fosters* a familie of Knights degree, falleth at the last into *Tamis*, presently after it hath with his winding branches compassed a great part of *Reading*. This towne *Reading*, called in the English Saxon tongue *Rheabyge*, of *Rhea*, that is, *The River*, or of the British word *Redin*, that signifieth *Fearne*, (which groweth heere in great plentie) excelleth at this day all other townes of this shire in faire streets, and goodly houses: for wealth also of the Townsmen, and their name in making of cloth, although it hath lost the greatest ornaments it had, to wit, a beautifull Church and a most ancient Castle. For this the Danes kept as their hold, (so *Asterius* writeth) when they made a rampier betweene *Kenet* and *Tamis*, and into this they retired themselves for safety when at *Inglefield* (a village neere unto it, which gave name to an ancient familie) they were by King *Aethelwolve* discomfited, and put to flight.

But King *Henrie* the Second so rased it (because it was a place of refuge for King *Stephens* followers) that nothing now remaineth of it but the bare name in the next streer. Nigh whereunto, King *Henrie* the First having plucked downe a little *Nunnerie* that *Queene Alfrith* had founded in former times, to make satisfaction for her wicked deeds, built for Monks a stately and sumptuous Abbey, and enriched it with great revenewes. Which Prince, to speake out of his very Charter of the foundation, *Because three Abbaies in the Realme of England were in old time for their sinnes destroyed, to wit, Reading, Chelseie, and Leonminster, which a long time were held in Lay mens hands: by the advise of the Bishops, built a new Monastrie of Reading and gave unto it Reading, Chelseie, and Leonminster.* In this Abbey was the founder himselfe King *Henrie*, buried with his wife both veiled and crowned for that shee had beene a *Queene*, and a professed *Nunne*, and with them their daughter *Mawde*, as witneseth the private Historie of this place, although some report, that she was enterr'd at *Becc* in *Normandie*. This *Mawde* as well as that *Lacedemonian Ladie Lampido*, whom *Plinie* maketh mention of, was a Kings daughter, a Kings wife, and a Kings mother: that is to say, daughter of this *Henrie* the First, King of England, wife of *Henrie* the Fourth, Emperour of *Almaine*, and mother to *Henrie* the Second, King of England. Concerning which matter have you here a *Distichon* engraven on her tombe, and the same verily in my judgment conceived in some gracious aspect of the Muses.

*Magna ortu, majorque viro, sed maxima partu, -
Hic jacet Henrici filia, sponsa parens.*

The daughter, wife, the mother eke, of *Henrie*, lieth heere;
Much blest by birth, by marriage more, but most by issue deere.

And well might she be counted greatest by her issue: For, *Henrie* the Second her sonne, as *Iohn* of *Salisbury* who lived in those daies wrote, *was the best and most vertuous King of Britaine, the most fortunate Duke of Normandie and Aquitain: and as well for valiant exploits, as for excellent vertues highly renowned. How courageous, how magnificent, how wise and modest he was even from his tender yeeres, envy it selfe can neither conceale nor dissemble: seeing that his acts bee fresh and conspicuous: seeing also, that he hath extended forward and held on in a continued traine, the titles of his verum from the bounds of Britaine unto the marches of Spaine. And in another place of the same King, Henrie the Second the most mighty King that ever was of Britaine, sheweth*

King Henry the second.

A his puissance about the river *Garumna*; and laying siege to *Tolose*, with fortunate successe terrified not onely those of Province as farre as to *Rhose* and the *Alpes*, but also by raising fortresses & subduing nations, he made the princes of *Spaine* and *France* to quake for feare, as if he had beene ever more at the point to set upon them all. I will, also if it please you, adjoyne heere to a word, or two concerning the same King, out of *Giraldus Cambrensis*. From the *Pyrenean* mountaines, saith hee, unto the *Westerne* bounds, and furthest limits of the North Ocean, This our *Alexander* of the West hath stretched forth his arme. As farre therefore as nature in these our parts hath enlarged the land, so farre hath hee marched with Victories. If the bounds of his expeditions were sought for, sooner would the globe of earth faile, than they end. For where there is a valiant and courageous minde, how soever earth and land faile, victories cannot faile: well may there bee wanting matter of triumph, but triumphs will never bee wanting. How great an addition to his glorious titles and triumphs was *Ireland*: with how great valour and praise-worthy promise pearced he through the very secrets and hidden places of the Ocean? But lo heere an old verse of his death, which briefly in one word containeth fully both all this, and also the renowne of his sonne King *Richard* the first.

Mira cano, Sol occubuit, nox nulla sequuta est.

A wonder great, the Sunne was set, and night there followed none.

For, so farre was King *Richard* his sonne from bringing darknesse with him, that with the beames of his victories atchieved in *Cypres* and *Syria*, he made our countrey of England most famous and renowned through the world. But these are things without our Element. Let us returne againe from persons to places. This Monastery wherein that noble King *Henrie* the first was buried is now converted to bee the Kings house, which hath adjoyning unto it a very goodly stable stored to the full with princelike and most generous steeds. But as touching this place, listen also to the Poet describing the *Tamis* as he passeth heereby.

King Richard the first.

*Hinc videt exiguum Chawfey, properatque videre
Redingum nitidum, texendis nobile pannis.
Hoc docet Aelfredi nostri victricia signa,
Begfegi cadem, calcata cadavera Dani:
Vique superfluo maduerunt sanguine campi.
Principis hic Zephro Cauroque parentibus ort
Cornipides crebris implent humilitibus auras,
Et gyros ducunt, gressus glomerantque superbos
Dum cupiunt nostri Martis servare lupatis.
Haccine sed pietas? heu dira piacula, primum
Neutrius Henricus situs hic, inglorius urna
Nunc jacet erectus, tumulum novus advena quarit
Frustra; nam regē tenues invidit arenas
Auri sacra fames, Regum metuenda sepulchris.*

E From hence he little *Chawfey* seeth, and hastneth for to see
Faie *Reading* towne, a place of name, where Cloth's ywoven be.
This shewes our *Aelfrids* victorie, what time *Begfeg* was slaine;
With other Danes, whose carcasses lay trampled on the plaine;
And how the fields ydrenched were with blood upon them shed;
Where as the Prince in Stable now hath standing many a steede
Of noblest kind, that neigh and snort into the aire a lowd
Tracing the ring and keeping pace that stately is, and proud,
Whiles they desire to learne with all in our warres for to serve,
F But where (alas) is piety? Such cursed deeds deserve
Purged to be by sacrifice. A King of Normans race
Henry the first, entered heere, now turn'd out of his place,
An out cast lies dishonoured. Who seekes his tombe shall misse:
For Covetise envied that King the small mould which was his.
See see, how Princes monuments it ransacks where it is.

Scarce

Sunning.

Bisham.

Grandifon.

Maidenhead.

Bibroci.

Windesore.
* Bray.

Scarce halfe a mile from *Reading*, betwixt most greene and flowring meadowes, the *Kenet* is coupled with the *Tamis*, who now runneth with a broader streame by a small village called *Sunning*, which a man would mervail to have beene the See of eight Bishops who had this shire & Wiltshire for their Diocesse (yet our Historians report as much) the same afterwards by Herman was translated to *Sbirburne*, and in the end to *Salisbury*, unto which Bishopricke this place still belongeth. Heereby falleth *Ladden* a small water into the *Tamis*, and not farre off standeth *Laurents Waltham*, where are to be seene the foote foundations of an old fort, and divers Romane coines often times digged up; and next to it *Biltingsbere* the inhabitation of *Sir Henry Nevill* issued from the Lords *Abergevenny*. From *Sunning* the *Tamis* passeth by *Bisfleham*, now called short, *Bisham*, at first a Lordship of the Knights Templars, then of the *Montacutes*, and amongst them, *William* the first Earle of *Salisbury* of his familie founded a Priory, wherein, some say, hee was buried. Certes his wife the daughter of the Lord *Grandison* was buried there, and in the Inscription of her tombe it was specified, that her father was descended out of *Burgundie*, cosin-german to the Emperour of *Constantinople*, the King of *Hungary*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, and brought into England by *Edmund* Earle of *LANCASTER*. Now is the possession of *Sir Edward Hoby* Knight, of me especially to be observed, whose singular kinnesse toward me the often consideration thereof shall keepe so fresh, that it shall never vanish out of my remembrance.

Tamis having now left *Bisham* behind it, fetcheth it selfe with a compasse about to a little towne named in the former ages *Southe alington* afterward *Maiden-hill*, and at this day *Maidenhead*, of the superstitious worshipping of I wote not what British *Maidens-head*, one of those eleven thousand Virgins, who as they returned from *Rome* into their country with *Vrsula* their leader, suffered as *Martyrs* at *Colein* in *Germanie*, under that scourge of God, *Attila*. Neither is this towne of any antiquity: for, no longer agoe then in our great Grandfathers daies, there was a Ferry in a place somewhat higher, at *Babhams* end. But after they had built heere a bridge of timber piles, it beganne to flourish with Innes, and goe beyond her mother *Bray* hard by, which notwithstanding is farre more ancient, as having given name to the whole Hundred. This parcell of the shire, I have beene of opinion that the *BIBROCI*, who yeelded themselves under *Cesars* protection, inhabited in times past: And why should I thinke otherwise? The reliques of them remaine yet most evidently in the name. For, *BIBRACTE* in France is now also drawn shorter into *Bray*: and not far from hence *Cesar* passed over the *Tamis* with his armie, as I will shew in due place, what time as the people of that small Canon put themselves to the devotion of *Cesar*. Certes, If a man should hunt for these *Bibroci* elsewhere, he should I beleve, hardly find them.

Within this Hundred of the * *Bibroci*, *Windesore* beareth a goodly shew: in the Saxon tongue, haply of the winding shore called *Wynðlerþora* for so it is named downe in the Charter of King *Edward* the Confessour, who in this forme of words made a grant unto the Monks of *Westminster*. To the praise of almighty God, I have granted as an endowment and a perpetuall Inheritance to the use and behoofe of those that serve the Lord, *Windle shore* with the appurtenances. And I have read nothing more ancient, concerning *Windesore*. But the Monks had not long held it in possession, when *William* of *Normandie* by making an exchange drew it backe to himselfe. For in this tenure goeth his Charter. With the consent and favour of the venerable *Abbas* of *Westminster*, I have made a composition for *Windlefor* to be the Kings possession, because that place seemed profitable and commodious by reason of water hard adjoining to it: and the wood fit for game, & many other particulars lying there meet & necessary for Kings: and a place very convenient to receive and entertaine the King: in lieu whereof I have granted to the Monks *Wokendane* and *Ferings*.

Surely a Princes seat cannot lightly have a more pleasant site, For, from an high hill that riseth with a gentle ascent, it enjoyeth a most delightfull prospect round about. Fore-right in the Front it overlooketh a vale lying out farre and wide, garnished

Order of the
Garter.Shame to him
that evill
thinketh.Sovereignes.
fix

A garnished with corne-fields flourishing greene with meadowes, decked with groves on either side, and watered with the most mild and calme river *Tamis*. Behind it arise hills every where, neither rough nor over-high, attired, as it were with woods and even dedicated as one would say by nature to hunting game. With the pleasures of this place Princes were allured, very often to retire themselves hither: and heere was *Edward* the Third that most puissant King borneto conquer *France*: who heere built new out of the ground a most strong Castle in bignesse equall to a pretie Citie, fortified with ditches and bulwarks made of stone: and forthwith after he had subdued the French and Scots, held at one and the selfe same time *John* King of *France*, and *David* King of *Scotland* prisoners together in the same. This Castle is divided into courts: the inner more toward the East, containeth in it the Kings pallace, than which for the order and contriving, there can be no building more lightesome, nor more magnificent. On the north side, where it looketh downe to the river, *Q. Elizabeth* adjoyned a most pleasant Terrace, or open walking place. The utter base court hath at the very first entrance a most stately Church consecrated by King *Edward* the Third unto the blessed *Virgine Marie* and to *Saint George* of *Cappadocia*: but brought unto that sumptuous magnificence, which now we see it carrie, by King *Edward* the Fourth, and *Sir Reginald Bray*.

In this place, king *Edward* the third, for to adorne martiall prowesse, with honors, the guerdon of vertue, ordained that most noble order and society of Knights, whom (as some report) for his owne garter given forth as signall of a battaile that sped fortunately, hee called Knights of the Garter: who wear on their left legge somewhat under the knee a blew garter: carrying this Impresse wrought with golden letters in French; *HENRY SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE*, and fasten the same with a buckle of gold as with the bond of a most inward society, in token of concord and unity, that there might bee among them a certaine consociation and communion of vertues. But others there be, that doe attribute it unto the garter of the Queent, or rather of *Joan* Countesse of *Salisbury*, a Lady of incomparable beauty, which fell from her as shee daunced, and the King tooke up from the floore: for, when a number of Nobles and Gentle men standing by laughed thereat, he made answer againe, that shortly it would come to passe that garter should be in high honour and estimation. This is the common and most received report: Neither need this seeme to be a base originall thereof, considering how, as one saith,

Nobilitas sub amore jacet.

Nobility lies under love.

There be also, that would have the invention of this order to be much more ancient, fathring it upon King *Richard* the first, and are verily perswaded, that King *Edward* at length brought it into use againe: but how truly, I know not. Yet in the verie booke of the first Institution, which *William Dethicke* Garter, principall King of armes, a Gentleman most studious in all such things as concerne Honour, shewed unto me, thus we read. *Richard cum contra Turcas & Agarenos, &c.* that is, when *K. Richard* warred upon the *Turkes* and *Saracens*, *Cypres* and *Acon*, and was wearie of so long delay, whiles the siege continued long in wonderfull care & anxiety, as length upon a divine inspiration, by the coming in & apparition (as it was thought) of *S. George*, it came into his mind to draw upon the legs of certaine choise Knights of his a certaine Garter or tache of leather, such onely as he had then readie at hand, whereby they being distinguished, and put in minde of future glorie promised unto them, if they would the victorie, they might be stirred up, and provoked to performe their service bravely, and fight more valiantly: in imitation of the *Romans*, who had such varietie of Coronets, wherewith militarie men for divers and sundry causes, were rewarded accordingly: to the end that by these instigations (as it were) cowardise being shaken off, the valour of mind and courage of heart might arise and shew it selfe more resolute. But upon what occasion soever it beganne, the mightiest Princes of *Christendome*, reputed it amongst their greatest honour to be chosen and admitted into this companie: and since the first institution thereof, there have beene already received, and enrolled into this order, which consisteth of

six and twentie Knights, two and twentie Kings, or thereabout, besides our Kings of England, who are named Sovereignes thereof: to speake nothing of Dukes, and others of most high calling, verie many. And here I am willing to set downe their names that were first chosen into this order, and be commonly called, *the Founders of the Order*: for, their renoune is not to be abolished, who in those daies for flow courage, and warlike prowesse, had few or no peeres, and were in that regard advanced to this honour.

Edward the Third King of England.
Edward his eldest Sonne, Prince of Wales.

Henrie, Duke of Lancaster.
Thomas, Earle of Warwicke.

The Capdall de Buch.

Ralph, Earle of Stafford.

William de Montacute Earle of Sarisburie.

Roger Mortimer, Earle of March.

Sir John Lisle.

Sir Bartholomew Burgwalsh.

Sir John Beauchampe.

Sir John Mohun.

Sir Hugh Courtney.

Sir Thomas Holland.

Sir John Grey.

Sir Richard Fitz Simon.

Sir Miles Stapleton.

Sir Thomas Walle.

Sir Hugh Wrothesley.

Sir Neel Loring.

Sir John Chandos.

Sir James Audley.

Sir Otes Holland.

Sir Henrie Erme.

Sir Zanchet D' brige court.

Sir Walter Pavely.

On the left side of the Church, are the houses of the Custos, or Deane, and twelve Prebendaries. On the right side standeth an house, not unlike to the Græcians *Py-tæum*: wherein twelve aged militarie men, Gentlemen borne, are maintained: who wearing every day a red or skarlet kirtle, reaching down to there ankles, with aupper mantle of purple over it, are bound daily to be present at divine service, there to commend unto God in their prayers, the Knights of this Order. Betwixt the two Courts before said, there riseth up an high mount, on which is set a round tower, and hard by it ariseth another loftie tower, called *Winchester tower*, of William Wickham Bishop of Winchester, whom King Edward the Third made overseer of the works, when he built the Castle. Some report, that the said Wickham, after he had built and finished this Tower, in a certaine inner wall, engraved these words, *This made Wickham*: which maner of speech in the English tongue, that seldome maketh distinction of cases, carrieth such a doubtfull construction, that uncertaine it is, whether he made these buildings, or the buildings made him. Hereof information was given to the King by some privie back-biters for to worke him a displeasure; and that in such termes, as if Wickham did arrogantly challenge to himselfe all the honour of the building. Which when the King tooke in verie evill part, and sharply rebuked him for it: he made this answer, *That he had not arrogated, and ascribed to himselfe the praise of so sumptuous, and princely an adifice, but accounted this building, and peere of wite to have bene the meanes of all his dignities and preferments: neither have I (quoth he) made this Castle, but this Castle hath made me, and from low estate raised me unto the Kings favour, unto wealth, and dignitie.* Under the Castle toward the West and South, lieth the towne of good bigneffe and populous withall, which from the time of King Edward the Third began to flourish: and the other which standeth farther off, and is now called, *Old Windsor*, fell by little and little to decay. In which, (whiles William the First reigned, as we read in his booke) there were an hundred Hages, or houses, whereof two and twentie were quit from Gable, out of the rest there went thirtie haling. No other memorable thing is here to be found, but *Eton*, which is hereto adjoynd by a wooden bridge over the *Tamis*, and in it a faire Colledge, and a famous Schoole of good literature, founded and built by King Henrie the Sixth: wherein, besides the Provost, Eight fellowes, and the singing Choristers, there are three score Schollers, instructed in Grammar, and in due time perfected to the University of Cambridge.

Founders of the Order.

Alme Knights.

Wickham his Apophthegm.

*Or, free.

Eton.

Cambridge. But this towne and Colledge is in Buckingham-shire, and not in Barkshire: Now there remaineth nothing to say more of *Windsore*, but that there is an honourable family of Barons, furnamed of *Windsore*, who fetch their originall from Walter the son of Ocher, Castellan of *Windsore* in the time of K. William the First: from whom also master Robert Glover most studious, and skilfull in Heraldrie, and who in the company of Heralds, bare the title of *Somerfet*, hath prooved, the Fitz-Giralds in Ireland, Earles of *Kildare* and *Desmond* to bee derived. Neither thinke much of your labour, to runne over these verses of *Windsore*, taken out of the Poem, entituled, *The marriage of Tame and Isis*, and penned certaine yeeres past: wherein father *Tamisis* endeavoureth to set forth, as well the dignity of the place, as the majestie of Queene Elizabeth, keeping her Court therein.

Barons of Windsor.

Iam Windsore surgunt in culmina ripa
Turrigera, celsa lambentes vertice calum.
Quas ubi conspexit doctæ gratatus Etona,
Quæ fuit Orbilijs nimium subjecta plagosis;
Caruleum caput ille lavans, ita farier insit.
Aeris moles, gradibus surgentia templa,
Ferratos postes pinnas, vivaria, verè
Perpetuo letos campos, Zephiroq; colono
Florentes hortos, Regum cnabula, regum
Auratos thalamos, Regum præclara sepulchra,
Et quæcunq; refers: nunc Windsore referri
Desine. Cappadociæ quæquam sis clara Georgi
Militia, procerumq; cohors chlamydata nitenti
Cincta pericelidi furas, te lumine tanto
Illustret, tantis radijs perscringat & orbem,
Pram Phryxæum spernat Burgundia vellus,
Condemnat cochleis variatos Gallia torques,
Et cruce conspicuas pallas, Rhodus, Alcala, & Elba,
Solæq; militia sit splendida gloria vestra;
Desine mirari, letari desine tandem.
Omnia concedunt uni, superatur in uno
Quicquid habes: tibi major homos, & gloria surgit,
Accola quod nostra ripe sit, & incola vobis
Elizabetha. (simulq; suo quasi poplite flexo
Tamisis en placidè subsidet, & inde profatur)
Elizabetha suis Diva & Dea sola Britannis:
Cujus en exhaustas laudes si carmine nostro
Complecti cuperem, Melibocco promptius Alpes
Imponam, numeremq; meas numerosus arenas.
Si quasdam tacuisse velim, quamcunq; tacebo
Major erit; Primos ætius, veteresq; labores
Prosequar? ad sese revocant præsentia mentem.
Iustitiam dicam? magis at Clementia splendet.
Vicitrices referam vires: plus viciit inermis.
Quod pietas floret, quod non timet Anglia Martem,
Quod legi nemo, quod lex dominatur & omni,
Quod vicina tract non servit Scotia Gallo,
Exiit atq; suos sylvestris Hibernia mores,
Crimiger Phœnix, quod jam mitescere discit;
Laus cadit hæc illi, nil non debetur & illi.
Crimina quæ pellunt, tanta quæ principe digna
Omnes templa sacro posuerunt pectore Divæ;
Religio superos sanctæ mavet esse colendos,
Iustitia utilibus semper præponere iustum.

Edocet;

*Edocet, ut praeceptis nil sit Prudentia suadet;
Temperies ut casta velis, cupiatq; pudica
Instruit; immotam mentem Constantia firmat.
Hinc Eadem Semper, recte sibi vindicat illa.
Proferet undoso quis tantus carmine laudes?
Solatenet laudum quicquid numerabis omnes.
Sit felix, valeat, vivat, laudetur, ametur;
Dum mihi sunt fluctus, dum cursus, dum mihi ripa.
Angligenum felix Princeps moderetur habenas;
Finiat una dies illi annos, Et mihi cursus.*

And now the tour-supporting banks, at *Windſore* mount on hie,
That with their loftie-headed tops reach to the cloudy kie.
Which when * he saw, and had withall greeted that learned *Eaton*,
Where Masters too too rigorous, have ſchollers overbeaten.
His Sea-like head he lifting up in this wise gan to say;
Thy long discourse (O *Windſor*) I wish thee now to stay,
Of high rail'd mounds, of temples tall that rise with stately staire,
Of yron-bound beames, of battlements, and pinnacles so faire:
Of gamefull parks, of meadowes fresh, ay-spring-like pleasant fields,
Of goodly gardens clad with flowers, that holeſome Zephyrus yields,
Of nurseries, gilt-marriage bowers, and sumptuous tombes of Kings,
Relate no more, but make an end of all such glorious things.
What though thou much renowned be, by many a Georgian Knight,
And Nobles clad in mantles rich, with costly garter dight,
Doe cause thy name to shine so much, and thence to thy great praise
Through out the world are ſpred abroad so bright and glittering raies,
That Burgundie deſpiſeth now his goodly *Toiſon D'or*,
And France of colars gartriſht faire with cockles ſets no ſtore,
Nor Rhodes, with *Alcal* and *Elba*, regard the robes with Croſſe
Sightly beſet; ſo that they count their Orders all but droſſe,
Compar'd with *Knighthood* this of thine, which onely beaſtes the name;
Ceafe now to joy, ceafe now at length to wonder at the ſame.
All yeeld to one, what ev'r thou haſt in one is drowned all,
For greater glorie grow's to thee, and honour more doth fall,
In that there dwels upon my banke, and ſeated is in thee,
Elizabeth (and therewith *Tamris* ſeeming to bow his knee,
And gently crouch, obeifance made, and then he thus went on)
Elizabeth, of Engliſhmen ſole Goddeſſe, Saint alone.
Whoſe praiſe-worth vertues, if in verſe I now ſhould take in hand
For to comprize, on *Meliboc* an hill that high doth ſtand,
I might as eaſily ſet the Alps, or number all my ſand.
If ſome I would in ſilence paſſe, what ever I ſuppreſſe,
Will greater proove than all the reſt: If I my ſelfe addreſſe,
Her formoſt acts, and travailes old to count, I then ſhall find,
That thoſe of preſent times, to them will draw away my mind.
Say, that of juſtice I relate; more thin's her mercies lore;
Speake I of her victorious armes; unarm'd ſhe gained more.
That piety now flouriſheth, that England feares no warre,
That none rules law, but unto law all men obedient are,
That neighbour Scots be nor enthrall'd to Frenchmen rigorous,
That Irith wild doe now caſt of their faſhions barbarous,
That ſtag-hai'd Ulſter *Kern*, doth learne civility anew,
The praiſe and thanks is hers alone. What is not to her due?
Thoſe Goddeſſes that vices chaſe, and are beſeeming beſt
A Prince ſo rare, are ſeated all, and ſhrined in her breſt.
Religion Firſt, puts her in mind to worſhip God aright,

Queene Eli-
zabeth.

And

And Juſtice teacheth to preferre before all gaine, the right.
Prudence adviſeth naught to doe raſhly without fore-caſt.
Then Temperance perſwades to love all things both pure and chaſt.
And Conſtancie her reſolute mind doth ſettle firme and faſt.
Hence juſtly ſhe, *ALWAYS THE SAME*, claimes and keepes to the laſt.
Who can diſcribe in * in waving verſe ſuch noble vertues all:
Praiſe-worthy parts ſhe hath alone, what all ye reckon ſhall.
Then happineſſe, long life and health, praiſe, love, may her betide,
So long as waves of mine ſhall laſt, or ſtreame and bankes abide;
So long may ſhee, moſt bleſſed Prince, all Englands ſcepter ſway,
Let both my courſe, and her life end, in one and ſelfe-ſame day.

The reſt of * *Barkſhire* which lieth Southward from *Windſor*, is ſhadowed with woods, and thickets, commonly called, *the Forreſt of Windleſor*, in which the townes and villages ſtand but thinne (whereof *Ockingham* is of greateſt name, by reaſon of the bigneſſe thereof, and trade of clothing;) but very full it is of game in everie place. Now, for as much as we have oftentimes made mention, and ſhall ſtill, of the Forreſts: what a Forreſt is, and the reaſon of that name, if you deſire to know, (but ſee you laugh not thereat) take it heere out of the blacke booke of the Exchequer. A Forreſt is a ſafe harbor, and abiding place of deere or beaſts, not of any whatſoever, but of wilde, and ſuch as delight in woods: not in every place, but in ſome certaine and meet for that purpoſe, and hereupon a forreſt hath the name, as one would ſay, *Fereſta*, that is, a ſtation of wild beaſts. And incredible it is how much ground the kings of England have ſuffered every where to lie untilld, and ſet a part for to empale & encloſe ſuch deere, or, as they uſe to ſay, have afforeſted. Neither can I think, that any thing elſe was the cauſe thereof, but onely the overmuch delight in hunting, or to maintaine the Kings houſhold (although ſome attribute it to the infrequencie of the people to inhabit the country) ſeeing that ſince the Danes were heere, they for a long time afforeſted more and more, and for the maintenance, and keeping of ſuch places ordained moſt ſtraight lawes, and an overſeer, whom they cal, *Protoforeſtarius*, that is, *Chiefe forreſter*, or *Maſter of the Forreſts*, who ſhould heare cauſes belonging unto Forreſts, and puniſh either by death or loſſe of limb, whoſoever killed Deere within any parke or chaſe. But Iohn of Sarisburie ſhal in his own words tell you theſe things briefly out of his *Polycraticon*; that which you may marvell more at, to lay grins for birds, to ſet ſnares to allure them with nooze or pipe, or by any waies laying whatſoever to entrap or take them, is oftentimes by vertue of an *Ediſt*, made a crime, and either amerced with forfeiture of goods, or puniſhed with loſſe of limbe and life. You have heard that the fowles of the aire, and fiſhes of the ſea are common: But theſe ywis belong unto the King, which the Forreſt Law taketh hold of, and claimeth whereſoever they flie. With-hold thy hand, forbear and abſtaine leſt thou alſo bee puniſhed for treaſon, fall into the hunters hand as a prey. Husband-men are debarred their fallow fields whiles Deere have libertie to ſtray abroad, and that their paſture may bee augmented, the poore farmer is abridged, and cut ſhort of his grounds. What is ſowne, planted, or graſſed, they keepe from the husbandmen that bee tenants: both paſtorage from herdsmen, drovers and graziers, and Bee-hives they exclude from ſloury plots: yea, the very Bees themſelves are ſcarcely permitted to uſe their naturall libertie. Which courſes ſeeming too inhumane, were the occaſion otherwhiles of great troubles and uproares, ſo long, untill in the end by the riſing and revolt of the Barons, there was wreſted from King Henry the third, the *Charter de Foreſta*: wherein thoſe rigorous laws being made void he granted others more indifferent, whereunto they are bound even at this day, who dwell within compaſſe of the Forreſts. And from that time, two Juſtices were appointed for theſe cauſes, whereof the one overſeeth all Forreſts on this ſide the river *Trent*, the other, all the reſt beyond *Trent* as farre as Scotland, with great authoritie. Throughout all this Province or county (as wee find in the Survey booke of England,) *The Taine* or *Kings Knight*, holding of him as Lord, whenſoever he died, left unto the King for a reliefe all his armour, one horſe with a ſaddle, and another without a ſaddle. And if he had either hounds or hawks, they were tendered and preſented

Queene Eli-
zabeths Mor,
or Empreſſe.

* Flowing or
rolling.

* Or, the *At-
trebatii*.

Windſor
Forreſt.
Chafes or
Forreſts.
Forreſt, what
it is, and
whence ſo
called.

*Protoforeſta-
rius*.

Juſtices of
the Forreſts.

The Kings
Knight.

presented unto the King, that hee might take them if he would. When Gelt was given in the time of King Edward [the Confessor] generally throughout all Barkshire, an Hide of Land yeilded three-pence halfe-penny before Christmas, and as much at Whitsontide. Thus much of Barkshire, which (as yet) hath given the title of Earle to no man.

Within the compasse of this shire, are parishes. 140.

The King-
dome of
West-Saxons.

Gegufes.

THese Regions which hitherto we have travailed thorow, that is to say, of the *Danmonij*, *Durotriges*, *Belgæ*, and *Attrebatij*, what time as the Saxons bare Sovereigne rule in Britaine, fell to the Kingdome of the West-Saxons, which they in their language, called, *Waj-ſ-beaxanpic*, and themselves *Geguſſir*, of *Cerdics Grandfather*, who first erected this Kingdome. Whence they were termed *Geſiſſi*, and by others also *Viſi-Saxones*, from their West situation, like as the Westerne Gothes, are named *Viſi-Gothi*. These at the length in the best and flourishing time of the Empire, reduced the English Heptarchie into the Saxons Monarchie: which notwithstanding afterward, through the lither cowardise of their Kings, quickly aged, and soone vanished. So that herein, that may be verified which we daily see. The race or issue of the most valiant men, and noblest Families, like as the of-spring of plants, hath their springing up. their flowering and maturitie: and in the end begin to fade, and by little and little to die utterly.

REGNI



REGNI.



Ext unto the Attrebatii Eastward, called the people in Latine REGNI, by Ptolomee PHINOI, inhabited those Regions which we at this day, doe commonly terme Surry, and South-sex, with the Sea-coast of Hants-shire. As touching the Etymologie of this named, I will passe over my conceits in silence, because peradventure they would carry no more truth with them, than if I should thinke they were by Ptolomey, PHINOI, for that it was Regnum, that is, a Kingdome, and the Romans permitted the people thereof to remaine under a regall government. For, in this tract it was, that as Tacitus writeth, certaine Cities according to an old Custome of the people of Rome, were given to Cogidunus, a British King, that they might have even Kings also, as instruments to draw others into bondage and servitude. But this conjecture seemeth to my selfe not probable, and haply to others absurd, I utterly reject: and willingly embrace the Saxon original of these latter names: to wit, that South-sex, taketh denomination of the South-Saxons, and Suthrey of the South situation upon the River, for, no man may denie, that Suth-rey importeth so much, considering that Over-rey, in the old English tongue, signifieth, Over, or beyond the river.

Rhey.

(* * *)

B b 2

SVTHREY.

SVTH-REY.



SVTH-REY, which *Bede* nameth *Suthriona*, commonly called *Suthrey*, and *Surrey*, and by the Saxons, of bordering *South* (upon the river, *Suð-pea*, for *Suð*, with them betokeneth the *South*, and *pea* a river or floud) from the *West*, boundeth partly upon *Barkshire* and *Hantshire*, from the *South* upon *Suffex*: and from the *East* on *Kent*: toward the *North* it is watered with the River *Tamis*, and by it divided from *Middlesex*.

A country it is not very large, yet wealthy enough, where it beareth upon *Tamis*, and lieth as a plaine and champion country: it yieldeth com meetely wel, and forrage abundantly, especially towards the *South*, where a continuall valley falling lowe by little and little, called in times past *Holmesdale* of the woods therein, runneth downe very pleasant to behold, by reason of the delectable variety of groves, fields, and meadows. On each side there be prety hills rising up a great way along in the country, parkes every where replenished with *Deere*, rivers also full of fish: whereby it affordeth for pleasure faire game of hunting, and as delightfome fishing. Likened it is by some unto a course freeze garment with a green guard, or to cloath of a great spinning and thin woven, with a greene list about it, for that the inner part is but baraine, the outward edge or skirt more fertill. In my perambulation through this shire, I will follow the *Tamis* and the rivers running into it as guides of my journey: so shall I be sure to omit no memorable thing, seeing that the places which are of greater marke and antiquitie doe all a-butte upon these rivers.

The *Tamis* (that we may follow his course with the streame, as it runneth downe) so soone as hee hath taken his leave of *Barkshire* passeth hard by *Chertsey*, which *Beda* calleth the Isle of *Cerutus*. Now scarce halfe an Island, unlesse it bee by waxes, waters: wherein, as in a place severed from all intercourse and commerce with men, *Friethwald*, as he calleth himselfe in the charter of the foundation, a perty Prince or Regent of the Province of *Surrey*, under *Wolpber* King of the *Mercians*, and *Ethelwald* Bishop of *London* in the first rising of the English primitive Church, founded a little monasterie, wherein for a time that most devout King *Henry* the sixth lay incarcerated, whom, being deposed from his Regal dignitie, the house of *Yorke* to establish their kingdome securely, deprived also of his life, and here without any honour, buried him. But King *Henry* the Seventh afterwards having translated his body to *Windsor*, and bestowed it in a new tombe, solemnized his funeralls after a princely manner, and so much admired his Godly and holy vertues (for, hee was the lively patterne of Christian piety and patience) that he dealt with Pope *Julius*, to have him made a Saint. But the reason why this tooke no effect was the Popes covetousnesse, who demanded too great a summe of money for a Kings Canonization, as they terme it, so that hee might seeme ready to grant those kind of honours not for the Princes holinesse sake, but for gold. A little beneath this, the river *Wey* runneth into *Tamis*, which flowing forth out of *Hantshire*, so soone as it is come into *Suthrey* visiteth *Feornham*, commonly termed *Farnham*, so named of much fence growing in that place: which *Ethelwald* King of the West Saxons to use his owne words *Gave unto the Bishop* and * *Congregation of Winchester Church*. Here, about the year of our Lord 893. King *Elfred* with a small power put to flight the Danes as they spoiled and harried the country: and afterwards when King *Stephen*, had granted leave to as many as sided with him to build Castles, *Henry* of *Blou* brother to King *Stephen* erected a spacious Castle upon an hill that overtopped the towne: which being a place of refuge for rebellious and seditious persons, King *Henry* the Third cast it downe: howbeit the Bishops of *Winchester*, unto whom it belonged built it up againe. And not farre from hence, at *Waverley*,
William

Chertsey.

666.

Henry the sixth.

Hisor. of Canterburie.

Farnham.

* Congregation.

SURREY

of the seats
REGNORVAL



A *William Giffard* Bishop of Winchester founded an Abbey for Monkes of the Cistercian order commonly called, White Monkes. Which Abbey being a grand child as they termed it from *Cisterce* in Burgundy, was so fruitfull here in England that it was mother to the Abbeies of *Gerondon, Ford, Tame, Cumb,* and grandmother to *Bordesley, Bidlesden, Bruner, Bindon, and Dunkewell.* For so religious orders were wont to keepe in pedegree manner the propagation of their Orders, as a deduction of Colonies out of them. From thence, Wey holding on his course by *Godelming*, which King *Elfred* bequeathed unto *Ethelwald* his brothers sonne, not farre from the Manour of *Cateshull*, which *Hamon* of *Gatton* held to bee the Mareshall of harlors when the King came into those parts: not farre from *Loseley*, where wee saw a large faire house belonging to the family of the *Mores*, knights, within a parke; it cometh to *Guilford*, in the Saxon tongue *Gulde-foppo*, and in some copies, written *Gegldford*. A mercate towne it is now well frequented, and full of faire Innes, but in old time it was a royall mansion of the English Saxon Kings, which also that noble *Ethelwald* held as a legacie from his Uncle by the fathers side. The King hath now thereby a decaying house, and not farre from the river are to be scene the broken walles of an old large Castle. But in the midst of the towne there is a Church, the west end whereof made of arched worke, and embowed over head seemeth to bee very ancient. Heere, as it is to bee scene in *William* the first his booke, the King had seventy five *Hages*, that is, houses, wherein remained one hundred seventy and five men. But for nothing it is so famous, as for the treacherie, and crueltie of *Goodwin* Earle of Kent, who in the yeare of Christ 1036. When *Elfrid* King *Etheldreds* son, and heire apparent to the Crowne of England came out of Normandie to claime his right, entertained him with faithfull promise of safety, but forthwith hardly entreated him contrary to his word: For, sodainly in the dead of the night, hee surprised and put to death in this place fixe hundred Normans, who had accompanied the young Prince, by tithing them, as our Writers report. Neither slew hee every tenth man of them drawne by lot according to the old militarie custome, but even as hee had killed nine, he let the tenth man goe by: and even these tenth men thus reserved

D hee went over againe, and most cruelly retithed them. As for *Elfred* himselfe hee delivered him into the hands of *Harold* the Dane, who after hee had pulled both eies out of his head, over-layed him with irons, and kept him in close prison, even unto his dying day.

Waverley.

Cateshull.

Guilford.

Haga.

Decimation.

Oking, or Woking.

William Ockham.

Pater Nominatum.

Where Caesar crossed the Tamis.

Wey beeing passed from hence with a long course Northward, sheweth nothing memorable besides *Sutton*, the residence of the Westons an ancient family of Knights degree bettered by an heire of *T. Camel*, Oking, where King *Henry* the seventh repaired and enlarged the Manour house beeing the inheritance of the Lady *Margaret* Countesse of *Richmont* his mother, who lived there in her later time, *Newark* sometime a small Priory invironed with divided streames: *Pyriford*, where in our remembrance *Edward* Earle of *Lincolne* Lord *Clinton*, and Admirall of England built him an house; and *Ockham* hard by, where that great Philosopher and father of the Nominals *William de Ockham* was borne and whereof hee tooke that name: as of the next village *Ripley*, *G. de Ripley* a ringleader of our Alchimists, and a mysticall impostor. But where this Wey is discharged into *Tamis* at a double mouth, Orelands a proper house of the Kings offereth it selfe to bee scene within a parke: neere unto which, *Caesar* passed over *Tamis* into the borders of *Cassivelaunus*. For, this was the onely place where a man might in times past goe over the *Tamis* on foote and that hardly too, which the Britaines themselves improvidently bewraied unto *Caesar*. For, on the other side of the river, there was a great power of the Britaines well appointed and in readinesse: and the very banke it selfe was fenced with sharpe stakes fastned affront against the enemye, and others of the same fort pitched downe in the channell, stucke covered with the river. The tokens whereof, saith *Beda*, Are scene this day, and it seemeth to the beholders that every one of them carrying the thicknesse of a mans thigh and covered over with lead, stucke unmoveable, as being driven hard into the bottome of the river. But the Romans catted the

river with such force, when the water reached up to their verie chinnes, that the Britaines could not abide their violence, but left the banke and betooke themselves to flight. In this thing, I cannot bee deceived, considering that the river here is scarce fixe foote deepe, the place at this day of those stakes is called Coway-stakes, and Cæsar maketh the borders of Cassivelaunus where hee setteth downe his passage over the river to be about fourescore Italian miles from the sea which beateh upon the East-coast of Kent, where he landed: and at the very same distance is this passage of ours.

Within some few miles from thence the river *Mole*, having from the South side passed through the whole country, hasteneth to joyne with the *Tamis*; but at length being letted by overthwart hills, maketh himselfe a way under the ground in manner of mouldwarpe, like unto that famous river *Anas* in Spaine: whereof it may seeme it tooke name, seeing that creature living within the ground, is called also in English a *Mole*. But upon this river, there is not any thing of note, save onely a good way off from the spring and head of it, and neere unto an old port way of the Romans making which men call *Stanystreet* there stands the towne *Aske*, commonly *Ockley*: so-named of *Okes* where *Ethelwolph* the sonne of *Egbert*, who having bene professed in the holy Orders and releafed by the Popes authority, when hee had possession of his fathers kingdome by right of inheritance, joyed battaile with the Danes, fought with good successe, and slew all the valiant men amongst them: Yet did hee little, or no good to his native country, the Danes evermore renewing their forces still as they were overthrowne, like unto that serpent *Hydra*. A little from the fountaines where this river springeth, standeth *Gatton* which now is scarce a small village, though in times past it hath bene a famous towne. To prove the antiquitie thereof, it sheweth Roman coines degged forth of the ground, and fendeth unto the Parliament two Burgeses. Lower than it, is seated *Rhie-gat*, (which if a man interpret according to our ancient language, is as much as the *Rivers course*), in a vale running out farre into the East, called *Holmesdale*; the Inhabitants whereof, for that once or twice they vanquished the Danes as they wasted the country, are wont in their owne praise to chaunge this Rhythme.

The vale of Holmesdall,
Never wonne, ne never shall.

This *Rhie-gate* carrying a greater shew for largenesse than faire buildings, hath on the South-side a Parke thicke sette with faire groves, wherein the right Noble *Charles*, Earle of Nottingham, Baron of Effingham, and Lord Admirall of England, hath a house, where the Earles of Warren and Southrey had founded a pretty Monasterie. On the East-side, standeth a Castle mounted aloft, now forlorne and for age ready to fall; built by the same Earles and of the vale wherein it standeth, commonly called *Holmecastle*: under which I saw a wonderfull vault carried under the ground of arch-work over head, hollowed with great labour out of a loft grinde and crombling stone, such as the whole hill standeth of. These Earles of Warren, as wee finde in the Offices or inquisitions held it in chiefe of the King * in their Baronic, * from the conquest of England. Hence runneth this river downe by *Bathworth* Castle, for which Sir *Thomas Browne* obtained of King Henry the Sixth the libertie of holding a Faire. For it is the habitation of the *Brownes*, Knights: one of which family since our grand-father can remember, when Sir *Anthony Browne* had married Lady *Lucie* the fourth daughter of *John Nevil* Marquess of *Mont-gomery*, Queene *Mary* honoured his sonnes sonne with the title of *Vicomte Mont-gomery*. Some few miles from hence Westward *Effingham* sheweth it selfe, the possession not long since of *William Howard* (son to that Noble *Thomas* Duke of Norfolk that triumphed over the Scots) who being created by Queene *Mary* Baron *Howard of Effingham*, &c made Lord High-Admirall of England, was first Lord Chamberlain unto Queene *Elizabeth* of most happy memorie, and then Lord privie Seale: whose sonne *Charles* now flourisheth, Lord great Admirall of England, whom in the year of

Coway-stakes.

The river Mole.

Anas a river in Spaine.

Ockley.

Gatton.

Rhie-gate.

Holmesdale.

Holmecastle.

* Or Inquisitions.
* In Baronia sua de Conquestu Anglie.

Effingham.

our Lord 1597. the same Queene *Elizabeth* honoured also with the title of Earle of Nottingham, of whom more in my Annales, but now returne we to the river.

The *Mole* now being come as farre as *Whitehill*, whereon the Box tree groweth in great plenty, & the foote thereof hideth himselfe, or rather is swallowed up, and thereof the place is called the *Swallow*: but after a mile or two neere unto *Letherbed* bridge boyling up and breaking forth, taketh joy to spring out againe. So that the Inhabitants of this tract may boast as well as the Spaniards, that they have a bridge which feedeth many flocks of sheepe: For, this is a common by-word, most ripe in the Spaniards mouthes, as touching the place where their river *Anas*, now called *Gadiana*, hideth himselfe for ten miles together. Thus our *Mole* rising up a fresh hasteneth faire and softly by *Stoke Dabernoun* so named of the ancient possessors the *Dabernouns* gentlemen of great good note, afterward by inheritance from them the possession of the Lord Bray; and by *Ascher* sometimes a retrying place belonging to the Bishops of Winchester. And then very neare *Molesey* whereunto it giveth name, sheddeth himselfe into the *Tamis*.

After *Tamis* hath taken unto him the *Mole*, hee carrieth his streame Northwardly and runneth fast by *Kingstone*, called in times past *Moreford*, as some will have it; a very good mercate towne for the bigneffe, and well frequented; well knowne also in old time by reason of a Castle there belonging to the *Clares* Earles of Gloucester. Which towne had beginning from a little towne more ancient then it of the same name, standing upon a flat ground and subject to the inundation of *Tamis*. In which when England was almost ruined by the Danish warres, *Athelstan*, *Edwin*, and *Ethelred* were crowned Kings upon an open stage in the Market place, and of these Kings here crowned, it came to be named *Kingstone*, as one would say, *The Kings Towne*. *Tamis* now turning his course directly Northward, visiteth another place: which the Kings chose for themselves sometimes to sojourne at, which of the shining brightnesse they call *shene*: but now it is named *Richmond*, wherein, the most mighty Prince, King *Edward the Third* when he had lived sufficiently both to glory and nature, died, with sorrow that hee conceived for the death of that most valiant and Marriall prince his sonne, which sorrow pierced so deepe, and stucke so neere him and all England beside, that it farre exceeded all comfort. And verily at this time if ever else, England had a good cause to grieve: For, within one year after, it lost the true praise of military prowesse and of accomplished vertue: For, both of them by bearing their victorious armes throughout all France, struke so great a terrour where-soever they came, that as the father might most worthily with King *Antiochus* carrie the name of *Thunder-bolt*, so his sonne with *Pyrrhus* deserved to be named the *Eagle*. Heere also departed Anne wife to King *Richard the Second*, sister of the Emperour *Wenzelau*, and daughter to the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, who first taught English women the manner of sitting on horsebacke which now is used: whereas before time, they rode very unfeemly astride, like as men doe. Whose death also her passionate husband tooke so to the heart, that he altogether neglected the said house, and could not abide it.

Howbeit King Henry the Fifth readorned it with new buildings, and in *Shene* a pretty village hard by, he joynd thereto a little religious house of *Carthusian Monks*, which he called, *The house of Iesu of Bethlems*. But in the raigne of Henry the seventh, this Princely place was with a woefull sudden fire consumed almost to ashes; Howbeit rising up againe forthwith farre more beautifull and glorious as it were a *Phoenix* out of her owne ashes, by the means of the same King Henry: it tooke this new name *Richmond*, of the title hee bare, being Earle of *Richmond*, before he obtained the Crowne of England. Scarce had that Noble King Henry the Seventh finished this new worke, when in this place he yeilded unto nature, and ended his life; through whose care, vigilancy, policy, and forecasting wisdome for time to come, the State and common-weale of England hath to this day stood established and invincible. From hence likewise his sonnes daughter Queene *Elizabeth* a most gracious Ladie sinetic and foure yeares after, having lived fully to the contentment of nature, (For,

The Swallow, or Swallow hole.

A bridge on which flocks of sheepe are pastured.

L. Bray.

Richmond: Both the place and the village before the time of King Henry the Seventh called *shene*. Edward the Third.

The death of
Queene Eli-
zabeth. 1603.

70. year old she was or much thereabout) when it pleased God to call her out of this world, was received into the sacred and coelestiall society. A Prince above her sex of manly courage, and high conceit, who lively resembled as well the royall qualities of her Grandfather, as she did his princely presence and countenance, the Worlds love, and joy of Britaine. And so farre was she, a woman though shee were, from degenerating and growing unlike her noble Progenitors in that continued course of their vertues, that if she surmounted them not, surely she equalled them to the full. Well, posteritie may one day hereafter be to thankfull as to yield heere a gracious credit (neither doe I heere by way of flatterie set a false colour and glosse upon the truth) that a Virgin for the space of fortie foure yeares, so ruled the royall Scepter, as that her subjects loved her, enemies feared her, and every one with admiration honored her, a thing in all foregoing ages of rare example. For, whose death England throughout, running all to teares, amid mones, and groines should have lien forlorne in most piteous case comfortlesse, had not presently upon her departure out of this world, the most mild and gracious King James (on whom as the true and undoubted heire to her Crowne all mens minds were set, and eies fixed with his sacred and bright beames shone unto us, and thereby put us into most comfortable hope of endlesse joy. Whom so long as we behold heere, wee beleeeve not that she is deceased. And why should we once say that she is deceased? whose vertues live still immortall, and the memoriall of whose name consecrated in mens hearts, and eternitie of times, shall surrive for ever.

How farre the
Tamis ebbeth
and floweth.

Why Tamis
ebbeth and
floweth so far
within Land.

Thus farre swelleth the Tamis with the acceffe of the flowing tide of the sea, about lx. Italian miles by water from his mouth. Neither to my knowledge is there any other river in all Europe, that for so many miles within land feeleth the violence of the Ocean forcing and rushing in upon it, and so driving backe and with-holding his waters. to the exceeding great commodity of the inhabitants bordering thereupon. Whither this cometh by reason that from hence he hath in manner no crooked turnings and winding reaches, but with a more streight and direct channell carrieth his currant into the East, as being for the most part restrained, and kept in with higher banks, and dilating himselfe with a wider mouth than all other rivers, lyeth more expoid and open to the Ocean, which by that most swift whirling about of the coelestiall Spheres from East to West is forceably driven and carried that way (as sometimes I have beene of opinion) let Philosophers discusse, unto whom I willingly leave these matters and such like to handle. Yet some few verses as touching these places and this argument, have heere out of the *Marriage betweene Tame and Isis*, if haply they may content your taste:

*A dextra, nobis Richmondia, Shena vetustis
Celsa nitet, sapiens namque hanc Richmondia dici
Henricus voluit, sibi quod retulisset honorem
Et titulos Comitū Richmondia jure paterno:
Hectoria Edwardi sed deslet funera nostri;
Proh dolor! hic illi regi mens libera cecidit
Corpore contempto, sedes aditura supernas.
Quem si non subito rapuissent ferrea fata,
Aut te Palesias rapuisset Gallia victor,
Aut tibi Valesios.*

Then on the right hand Richmond stands, a faire and stately thing,
So cal'd of us, (but Shene of old) which name that prudent King
* Henry it gave, because to him it brought in fathers right
The Honor and the Scile, whereby, he Earle of Richmond hight.
But it of * Edward King (*halas*) our Hector, wailes the death,
Whose soule here freed from body which it scorn'd, with vitall breath,
Departed hence right willingly, in heaven to live for ay:
Whom had not cruell-fudden death untimely fetcht away,

* The seventh.

* The Third.

He would by sword have thee bereft, O France, of Valois line,
Or them of thee.

And after a few verses set betweene,

*Tamisis alternum sentit reditumque fugamque:
Huc refusus pelagi, quoties vaga Cynthia pronos
Occidit librat celi statione jugales.
Aut tenet oppositam varianti lumine plagam,
Pleuior increfcit celeremque recurrit in aestum:
Atque superbus ait, concedant flumina nobis,
Nulla per Europæ dotatas nomine terras
Flumina, tam longè sic certis legibus undas
Alternas renouant, nisi fratres Scaldus, & Albis.*

Tamis heere by turnes alternative doth feele both ebbe, and flow
Of Sea, by course of wandering Moone that rules tide heere below.
As oft as the with each eight point of heaven above doth meete,
Or holds the points full opposit, as lights doe change and fleete.
He growes more full, and sooner hath recourse to flowing tide:
And then in pride of heart he saith. *All rivers else beside
Vaile unto me.* No streame so farre through Europe keeps againe
His tide so just, unlesse the Scheld, and Elb my brethren twaine.

About foure miles from the Tamis within the Country, *Nonefuch* a retiring place of the Princes putteth downe, and surpasseth all other houses round about: which, the most magnificent Prince King Henry the Eighth, in a very healthfull place called *Cuddington* before, selected for his owne delight and ease, and built with so great sumptuousnesse and rare workmanship, that it aspireth to the very top of ostentation for shew; so as a man may thinke, that all the skill of Architecture is in this one piece of worke bestowed, and heaped up together. So many statues, and lively images there are in every place, so many wonders of absolute workmanship, and workes seeming to contend with Romane antiquities, that most worthily it may have, and maintaine still this name that it hath of [*Nonefuch*] according as *Le-land* hath written of it:

*Hanc quia non habeant similem laudare Britanni
Sapè solent, Nulliq; parem, cognomine dicunt.*

The Britans oft are wont to praise this place, For that through all
The Realme they cannot shew the like, and *Nonefuch* they it call.

As for the very house selfe, so invironed it is about with Parkes full of Deere, E such daintie gardens and delicate orchards it hath, such groves adorned with curious Arbors, so pretty quarters, beds, and Alleys, such walkes so shadowed with trees, that *Amenitie* or *Pleasantnesse* it selfe may seeme to have chosen no other place but it: where she might dwell together with healthfulness. Yet *Queene Mary* made it over to *Henry Fitz-Alan* Earle of Arundell for other Lands: and he, when he had enlarged it with a Librarie passing well furnished, and other new buildings, passed over all his right when he died to the *L. Lumley*, who for his part spared no cost, that it might be truly answerable to the name: and from him now is it returned againe by compositions and conveiances to the Crowne. Neere hereunto (and worth the noting it is) there is a vaine of potters earth highly commended, and therefore the dearer sold, for the making of those crucibles and small vessels which Goldsmiths use in melting their gold.

Nor farre from hence the cleare rivelet *Wandle* in Latin * *Vandalis*, so full of the best Trouts, issueth forth from his head neare *Cashalton* and *Wodcot* where by a tuft of trees upon an hill-top there are to be seen manifest signes of a pretty towne, and diverse wells built of flint stones: Concerning the populoufnesse and wealth whereof the

* Vandalis.
Woodcot.
Noviomagus.

the neighbour Inhabitantes report very much: This in my conceit was that Cite which Ptolomee called *Noviomagus*, and the Emperour *Antonine* *Noviomagus*. Neither neede wee to seeke from else where prooffe hereof, but from the correspondence of distance. For as the old Itinerary noteth, it is ten miles from London, and twenty eight from *Pagmarj* now Maidston. Many a mile therefore were they out of the way that placed *Noviomagus* either at Buckingham, or at Guildford. This was a principall Cite of the *Regni* not knowne to *Marinus Tyrinus* a most ancient Geographer, whom Ptolomee taking upon him to censure, for that he had set *Noviomagus* of Britaine by Climate more North, and by account of miles more South than London.

Wandle while it is yet small receiveth his first increase by a rill springing at *Croidon*, in times past called *Cradiden*: which standeth under the hills is very well known, as well for the house of the Archbishops of Canterbury, unto whom it hath belonged now this long time; as for Char-coles which the townesmen make good chaffer of: The inhabitants report, that in old time there stood an house of the Kings in the West part of the towne neere unto *Haling*, where the husbandmen dig up otherwhiles rubble stone, which house the Archbishops having received it by gift from the King, transfused unto their owne neerer the river. And neere unto this, the right reverend father in God *D. John Whitgift* Archbishop of Canterbury of most praise worthy Memory in his pious affection founded and endowed with living a very faire Hospitall for the reliefe of poore people, and a schoole for the furtherance of learning. As for that sudden swelling water or *Bourne* which the common people report, to breake forth heere out of the ground, presaging, I wote not how, either dearth of corne, or the pestilence, may seeme not worthy once the naming, and yet the events sometime ensuing hath procured it credit. Neere unto this place stands *Beddington*, wherein is to be seene a very faire house beautified with a delightfull flow of right pleasant gardens and orchards, by *Sir Francis Carew* Knight: For, the ancient seat it is of the *Carews*, who being descended from the *Carews* of *Atoulesful* (of whom also are come the *Carews* of Devonshire) have for a long time flourished in this country: but especially since *Sir James Carew* matched in marriage with the daughter and one of the coheires of the Baron *Hoo and Hastings*. To digresse a litle from the river, Eastward from *Croidon* standeth *Addington* now the habitation of *Sir Oliff Leigh* wherby is to be seene the rubble of a Castle, of *Sir Robert Aguilon* from him of the Lords *Bardolph*, who held certaine lands here in fee by Scutancy to find in the Kings kitchen at the Coronation one to make a dainty dish which they called *Mapigermoun*, and *Dilgerunt*. What that was I leave to the skilfull in ancient Cookerie, and returne to the river. *Wandle* increased with *Croidon* water passing by *Morden*, divideth it selfe to water *Merton*, in the old English tongue *Wespean*, situate in a most fruitfull soile. A towne made famous in times past by the death of *Kimulph* King of the West Saxons who was by a *Clito*, that is, a Prince of the blood, slaine here in a small cottage of an harlot upon whom hee was enamoured, and *Clito* himself by *K. Kimulphs* followers immediately stabbed, suffered condigne punishment for his disloyall treachery. Now it sheweth onely the ruines of a Monastery, that *K. Henry* the First founded for blacke Chanons by the procurement of *Gilbert High* Sheriffe of Surry in the year 1127. which was famous for the Statute of *Merton* enacted here in the 21. of King *Henrie* the Third, and also for *Water de Merton* founder of *Merton* Colledge in Oxford borne and bred heere. Above *Merton* further from the river is seated *Wibandune*, now commonly *Wimbledon*: where, when once much prosperitie had hatched civill broiles among the English Saxons; after the British warres were now ceased; *Eshelbert* King of Kent struck up the first Alarme to vill warre against his owne country men: but *Ceanlin* King of the West Saxons discomfited him in this place with a mightie great slaughter and losse of his men having slaine his principall leaders *Oslan* and *Kneben*, of whom peradventure that *corrochial* rampier or fort which wee have heere seene of a round forme, is called *Bensbury* for *Knebenburh*.

But now, the greatest ornament of this place is that goodly house so beautifull for building, and so delectable for faire prospect and right pleasant gardens, which *Sir Thomas Cecill* Knight, sonne to that most prudent Counsellour of State Lord *Burleigh*, built in the year 1588. when the Spanish Armado made saile upon the coast of England.

Wandle now after a few miles entreth the *Tamis*, when it hath given name to *Wandleworth*, betwene *Putney* the native soile of *Thomas Cromwell* one of the flowing-stocks of fortune, and *Batersey*, sometimes in the Saxon tongue called *Patpseja*, and in latine *Patricii Insula*, that is, *Patrickes Isle*: and, which now wee seeke, an house of the Kings termed *Kennington*, whereunto the Kings of England in old time were wont to retire themselves, but now finde wee neither the name nor the rammell thereof. Then, is there *Lambith* or *Lomehith*, that is to say, a Lomy or clayish rode, or hith, famous in former times for the death of * *Canutus the Hardie*, King of England, who there amid his cups yielded up his vitall breath. For hee, being given wholly to banqueting and feasting, caused royall dinners foure times every day, (as *Henry of Huntingdon*, reporteth) to be served up for all his court, choosling rather to have his invited guests, to send away whole dishes untouched, than other commers unbidden to call for more viands to be upon his table. But now this place is of the greater name and more frequented by reason of the Archbishop of Canterburie his palace. For, *Baldwine* Archbishop of Canterbury about the year of Christ 1183. having made an exchange with the Bishop of *Rochester*, purchased a manour in this place wherein hee began to build a palace for himselfe and his successours: which they by little and little encreased. But when they went about to erect a collegiat Church heere also, good GOD, what posting was there to Rome with complaints and appeales, from the Monkes of Canterburie, how many fiery thunderbolts, menaces and censures were sent out from the Bishop of Rome against these Archbishops? For these Monkes were in bodily feare, least this would bee their utter undoing, and a prejudice unto them in the Elections of the Archbishops. Neither were these blustering stormes allaid, untill the said Church newly begonne was laid levell with the ground. Adjoyning hard to this, is the most famous mercate towne and place of trade, in all this shire which at this day they call, *The Burrough of Southwarke*, in Saxon speech *Suthpeke*, which is the Southworke or building; because it standeth South over against London, the Suburbs whereof it may seeme in some sort to bee: but so large it is and populous, that it gives place to few Cities of England, having bene as it were a corporation by it selfe, it had in our fathers daies Bayliffes, but in the reigne of King *Edward* the Sixth it was annexed to the Cite of London, and is at this day taken for a member as it were of it: and therefore, when wee are come to London, wee will speake more at large thereof.

Beneath this Burrough, the *Tamis* forsaketh *Surry*, the East bound whereof passeth in a manner directly downe from hence Southward, neere unto *Lagham*, which had their Parliamentarie Barons called *Saint John de Lagham*, in the reigne of *Edward* the First, whose Inheritance came at length by an heire generall to *John Leddard*: and some-what lower in the very angle well neere, where it bendeth to *Southsex* and *Kent*, stands *Streborow Castle*, the seate in ancient time of Lord *Cobham*, who of it were called, of *Sterborow*: where the issue proceeding from the bodies of *John Cobham*, Lord of *Cobham* and *Cowling*, and the daughter of *Hugh Nevil*, flourished a long time in glory and dignitie. For, *Reginald Cobham* in King *Edward* the thirds daies being created Knight of the Garter, was Admirall of the sea-coasts, from *Tamis* mouth West-ward. But *Thomas* the last male of that line wedded the Lady *Anne*, daughter to *Humfrey* the Duke of *Buckingham*, of whom he begat one onely daughter named *Anne*, married unto *Edward Burgh*, who derived his pedigree from the *Percies*, and Earles of *Arhole*: whose sonne *Thomas* made by King *Henry* the Eighth Baron *Burgh*, left a sonne behind him named *William*. And his sonne *Thomas* a great favourer of learning, and Lord Governour of *Briell*,

Putney.
See Earles of
Essex.

Kennington.

Lambith.

* Hardy-
Cautie.

Southworke.

Barons Saint
John of Lag-
ham.

Sterborow.

Lord Borough
or Burgh.

Briell, Queene *Elizabeth* made Knight of the Garter, and Lord Deputy of Ireland, where hee honourably ended his life, pursuing the rebels. As touching Dame *Eleanor Cobham* descended out of this family, the wife of *Humphrey Duke of Gloucester*, whose reputation had a flawe, I referre you to the English Historie, if you please.

Earles of Surrey, who also are called Earles of Warren.

Now are wee to reckon up the Earles of this shire, *William Rufus* King of England made *William de Warren*, who had married his sister, the first Earle of Surrey: For in that Charter of his, by which hee founded the Priory of *Lewis*, thus wee read: *Donavi, &c.* that is, *I have given and granted, &c.* For the life and health of my Lord King *William* who brought mee into England, and for the health of my Lady *Queen* Mawd, my wives mother: and for the life and health of my Lord King *William* her sonne, after whose comming into England I made this charter, who also created me Earle of *Surry*, &c. whose sonne *William* succeeded and married the daughter of *Hugh* Earle of *Vermandois*, whereupon his posteritie (as some suppose) used the Armes of *Vermandois*, *vz.* Chequy Or and Azure. His sonne *William* dying in the Holy-land about the yeare 1148. had issue, a daughter onely, who adorned first *William*, King *Stephen* sonne, and afterward *Hamelin* the base sonne of *Gefferey Plantagenet* Earle of *Anjou*, both her husbands, with the same title. But whereas her former husband died without issue, *William* her sonne by *Hamelin* was Earle of *Surry*, whose posterie assuming unto them the name of *Warrens* bare the same title. This *William* espoused the eldest daughter, and a coheire of *William Marescall* Earle of *Pembroch*, the widow of *Hugh Bigod*, who bare unto him *John*, who slew *Alan de la Zouch*, in presence of the Judges of the Realme. This *John*, of *Alice* the daughter of *Hugh le Brune*, halfe sister by the mothers side of King *Henry* the third, begat *William*, who died before his father: and hee of *Ioan Vere* the Earle of *Oxfords* daughter begat *John Posthumus*, borne after his decease, and the last Earle of this house, who was styled, as I have seene in the circumscription of his seale, *Earle of Warren, of Surry and of Strathern in Scotland, Lord of Bromfield and of Yale, and Count-palatine*. But hee dying without lawfull issue in the twelfth yeare of *Edward* the thirds raigne, *Alice* his sister and heire wedded unto *Edmund* Earle of *Arundell*, by her marriage brought this honour of *Surrey* into the house of *Arundells*. For *Richard* their sonne who married in the house of *Lancaster* (after his father was wickedly beheaded for siding with his Sovereigne King *Edward* the Second, by the maligne envie of the Queene) was both Earle of *Arundell* and *Surrey*, and left both Kingdomes to *Richard* his sonne, who contrary-wife lost his head for siding against his Sovereigne King *Richard* the Second. But, *Thomas* his sonne, to repaire his fathers dishonour, lost his life for his Prince and country in *France* leaving his sisters his heires for the lands not entailed, who were married to *Thomas Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolke*, &c. to *Sir Powland Lenthall*, and *Sir William Beauchampe*, Lord of *Abgeveny*. After by the *Mowbraies*, the title of *Surrey*, came at length to the *Howards*. Howbeit, in the meane while after the execution of *Richard* Earle of *Arundell*, King *Richard* the Second bestowed the title of Duke of *Surry* upon *Thomas* *Hil* land Earle of *Kent*, which honour he enjoyed not long; For, while hee combined with others, by privie conspiracies to restore the same King *Richard* to his libertie and kingdom, the conspiracie was not carried so secretly, but contrary to his expectation brake forth and came to light: then fled hee, and by the people of *Cirencester* was intercepted and cut shorter by the head. After him *Thomas Beaufort*, Chancellour to the King, (if we give credit to *Thomas Walsingham*) bare this dignity. For, in the yeare of our Lord (as hee saith) 1410. *The Lord Thomas Beaufort Earle of Surrey left this world*. Now, let *Walsingham* in this point make good that which he writeth: for, in the Kings Records there is no such thing found, but onely this, that *Thomas Beaufort* about that time was made Lord Chancellour. But certaine it is, and that out of the Records of the Kingdom, that King *Henry* the Sixth, in the nine and twentie yeare of his raigne, created *John Mowbray*, the sonne of *John* Duke of *Norfolke*, Earle *Warren* and of *Surry*. And

Earles of March in France.

And *Richard* second sonne of King *Edward* the Fourth having married the heire of *Mowbray*, received all the titles due to the *Mowbraies* by creation from his father. Afterward King *Richard* the Third, having dispatched the said *Richard* and by impious cruell meanes usurped the kingdom, that hee might by his benefits oblige unto him the house of the *Howards*, created in one, and the same day *John Lord Howard*, Duke of *Norfolke* as next cosin and heire to the *Mowbraies* and his sonne *Thomas*, Earle of *Surrie*: in whose offspring this honour hath ever since bene resplendent, and so continueth at this day.

This County hath in it Parish Churches. 140.

Cc

SVS-

SVSSEX.

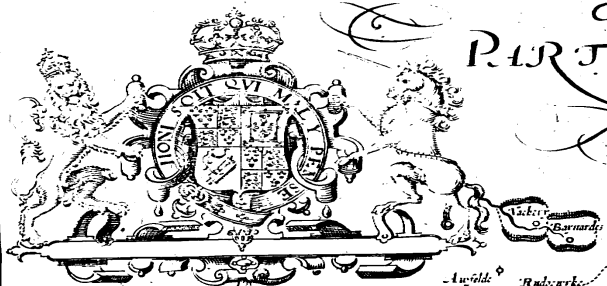


Under *suth-rey* toward the South lieth stretched out in a great length *Suth-sex*, which also in times past the *Regni* inhabited in the Saxon tongue called *Suð-sex*, & at this day *Suffex*, which is as much to say, as the Region of the South Saxons, a word compounded of the site thereof Southward, and of the Saxons who in their Heptarchie placed here the second kingdome. It lieth upon the British Ocean all Southward with a streight shore (as it were) farre more in length than bredth: Howbeit it hath few harbours, by reason that the sea is dangerous for shelves, and therefore rough, and troublous, the shore also it selfe full of rocks, and the South-west wind doth tyrannize thereon, casting up beach infinitely. The sea coast of this countrie, hath greene hills on it mounting to a greater height, called the *Downes*, which because they stand upon a fat chalcie or kinde of marle yeeldeth corne abundantly.

The middle tract, garnished with medowes, pastures, corne-fields, and groves, maketh a very lovely shew. The hithermore and Northern side thereof, is loaded most pleasantly with woods, like as in times past the whole country throughout, which by reason of the woods was hardly passable. For, the wood *Andradswald* in the British language *Coid Andred*, taking the name of *Anderida* the City now, adjoining, tooke up in this quarter, a hundred and twentie miles in length, and thine in bredth; memorable for the death of *Sigebert* King of West Saxons, who being deposed from his royall throne, was in this place stabbed by a Swinheard, and so died. Many pretty rivers it hath, but such as springing out of the North-side of the shire forthwith take their course to the Ocean, and therefore not able to beare any weight of burden.

Full of iron mines it is in sundry places, where for the making and fining whereof, there bee furnaces on every side, and a huge deale of wood is yearly spent, to which purpose divers brookes in many places are brought to runne in one channell, and the dry medowes turned into pooles and waters, that they might bee of power sufficient to drive hammer milles, which beating upon the iron, resound all over the place adjoining. And yet the iron here wrought, is not in every place of like goodnesse, but generally more brittle than is the Spanish iron, whether it be by the nature, or timour and temper thereof. Howbeit, commodious enough to the iron Maisters who call much great ordnance thereof, and other things to their no small gain: Now whether it bee as gainfull and profitable to the common-wealth may bee doubted, but the age ensuing will bee better able to tell you. Neither want here glasse-houles, but the Glasse there made, by reason of the matter or making, I wot not whether, likewise nothing so pure and cleare, and therefore used of the common sort onely.

This whole region throughout, after the civill manner of partition is divided into sixe parts, which by a peculiar name they call *Rapes*, to wit, of *Chichester*, *Arundell*, *Brembe*, *Levis*, *Pevensey* and *Hastings*, every of which beside their hundreds, have a castle, river, and forrest of their owne. But for as much as the limits within which they are bounded bee not so well knowne unto mee, I am determined to take my way along the shore from West to East. For, the inner parts besprinkled with villages, have in manner nothing therein worth relation. In the very confines of Hantshire and this county, standeth *Bosenham*, commonly called *Bosham*, a place environed round about with woods and the sea together; where (as Bede saith) *once the Scottish Monke had a verie small Cell, and in it, five or sixe religious men lived poorely, in service of the Lord*, which many yeeres after was converted into a ring place of ease, for King *Harold*. Whence hee when upon a time for his recreation



PART E OF ST

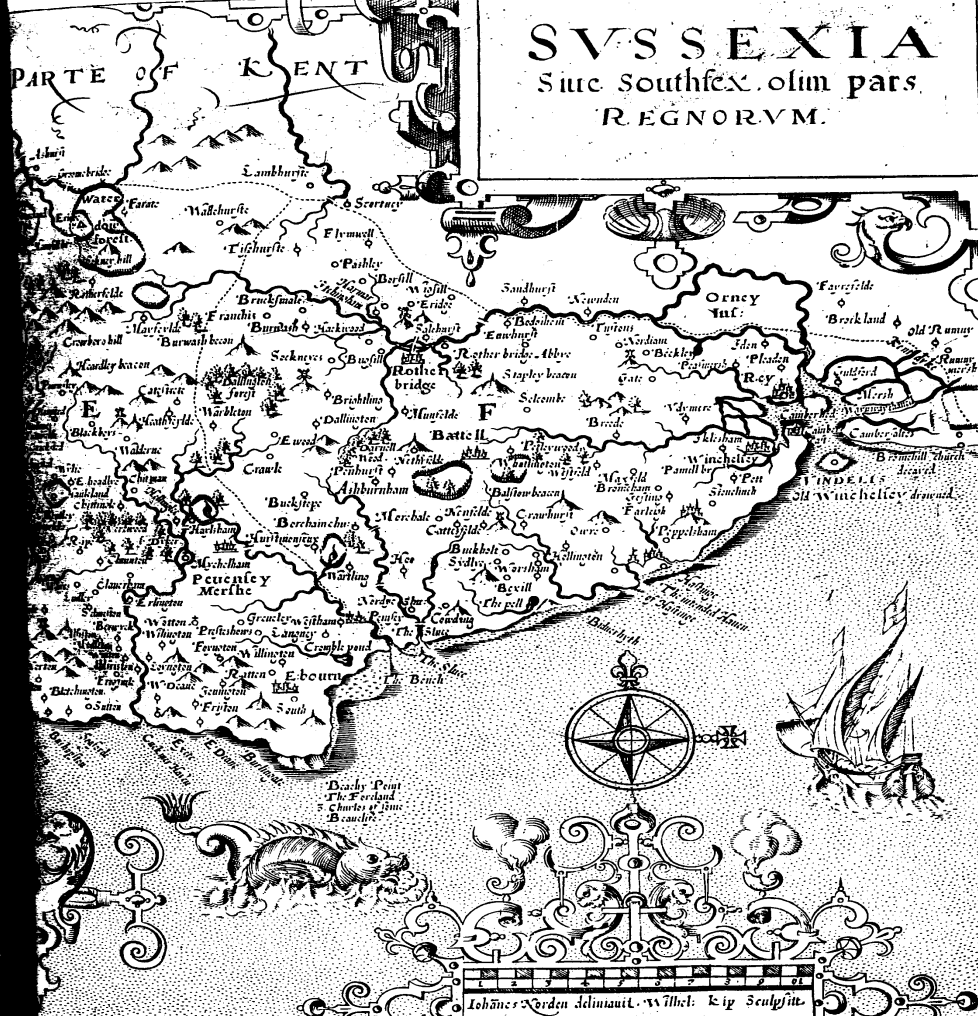
PART E
OF HAM
SHIRE



OCEANVS BRITANNICVS

This shire
is divided
into
A B C D E F
the R of

PART E OF KENT



SUSSEXIA
Sive Southsex. olim pars
REGNORVM.



tion, hee made out with a little barke into the maine sea, was with a contrary pirrie carried violently into Normandie, and there detained in hold, until he had by oth assured the Kingdome of England unto William of Normandie, after the death of King Edward the Confessor. Whereby he presently drew upon himselfe his owne ruine and upon England the danger of finall destruction. But, with what a crafty Ambassie or Acquivocation, that subtrill and captious catcher of syllables Goodwin Earle of Kent this Harolds father, caught this place, and how with a wily word-trap, hee deceived the Archbishop of Canterburie, Walter Mapæus, who lived not many yeares after shall out of his booke entituled *Of Courtiers toies* tell you in his owne verie words. *This Bofeam underneath Chichester, saith hee, Goodwin saw and had a minde to it: beeing accompanied therefore with a great traine of Gentlemen, hee comes smiling and jesting unto the Archbishop of Canterburie, whose towne then it was, My Lord, saith he, Give you mee * Bofeam? The Archbishop mervailing much what hee demanded by that question: I give you, answered, Bofeam. Then he forthwith, with that company of his Knights and Souldiours, fell downe, (as he had before taken order) at his feete, and kissing them with many thankes went backe to Bofeam, kept possession of it as Lord by strong hand, and having the Testimony of his friends and followers, praised in presence of the King the Archbishop as Donor thereof, and so held it peaceably. Afterwards as wee read in *Testa Nevilli* (which was an Inquisition of Lands made in King Johns time) King William, who attained to the conquest of England, gave this unto William Fitz Aucher and to his heires in fee farme paying out of it yearly into the Exchequer fortie pounds of silver tried and weighed; and after that William Marefcall held it as his inheritance. Chichester in the British tongue named *Caercci*, in the English Saxon language *Cirran-cear-cep*, in Latine *Cicestria*, lieth farther within, at the same nooke in a Champion plaine. A Cittie large enough, and walled about, built by Cissa a Saxon the second King of this Province and of him so named. For *Cissan-Ceaſter* is nothing els, but the Cittie of *Cissa*: whose father *ælla*, was the first Saxon that here erected a Kingdome. Yet was it before the conquest of small or no name, and knowne onely by a monasterie of Saint Peter and a little Nunnerie. But in the reigne of William the first, as wee read in the *Domes-day-booke*, there were in this, one hundred Hages, and this Cittie was in the hand of Earle Roger * and there are in the said * three-score Mansions houses more than had bene before. It paid fifteene pounds to the King, and ten to the Earle. After this, when during the reigne of the said William the first, a decree was enacted, that Bishops Sees should be translated out of small townes unto places of greater name and resort, it was graced with the Bishops residence which was before at Selfey, and beganne to flourish: not many yeares after Bishop Raulfe built there a Cathedrall church, which before hee had fully finished it, was sodainely by mishap of a feare fire burnt downe. Yet by his endeavour and the bounteous liberality of King Henrie the first, it was raised up againe, and now, beside a Bishop, it hath also a Deane, a Chaunter, a Chancellor, a Treasurer, two Archdeacons and thirty Prebendaries. And at the same time the verie Cittie it selfe beganne to flourish, and had growne indeede to a most wealthie estate, but that the haven is badde and somewhat to farre off, and in that regard not so commodious: which neverthelesse the Cittizens goe now in hand to make more convenient by digging of a new channell. It is walled about in a circular round forme. The Lavant a pretty riveret running hard by it, on the West and South sides. Foure gates it hath opening to the foure quarters of the world: from whence the streets lead directly and crosse themselves in the mids, where the market is kept, and where Bishop Robert Read, erected a faire stone market place, supported with pillars round about. As for the Castle that stood not farre from the North gate, it was in times past the habitation of the Earles of Arundell, who hereupon stiled themselves, Earles of Chichester: but afterwards it became converted into an house of the Franciscan Friers. All that space which lieth betweene the West and South gates, is taken up with the Cathedrall Church, the Bishops palace, and the Deanes and Prebendaries houses. All which about King Richard the*

Earle Goodwin doth equivocate.

* Alluding happily to Bafum, that is a Buffle, which was in times past used, in doing homage.

* Of Montgomerye

* Hages or Houses.

Earles of Chichester.

First his time were burnt againe. And Seffride the second Bishop of that name reedified all anew. The Church it selfe truly is not great, but very faire and neat, having a spire steeple of stone, rising up passing high, and in the South Crosse like the Church, of the one side is artificially portraied, and depainted the historie of the Churches foundation, with the Images of the Kings of England: on the other, the Images of all the Bishops, as well of *Selfey* as of *Chichester*, at the charges of Robert Shirburne Bishop, who greatly adorned and beautified this Church, and every where for his Empresse, set these *Mots CREDITE OPERIBVS*, that is, *TRUST ME* ACCORDING TO THEIR DEEDS; and *DILEXI DECOREM DOMVS TVAL DOMINE*, that is, I HAVE LOVED (O LORD) THE BEAVTIE OF THY HOUSE. Neither hee onely adorned the Lords house, but repaired also the Bishops house. But that great high tower which standeth neere unto the west dore of the Church, was built by R. Riman, as the report goeth (when he was forbidden to erect a castle at *Aplerham* his habitation hard by) of those stones, which for that Castle he had provided afore. Neere the haven of *Chichester* is *W. Witering*, where, as the monuments of the Church testifie, *Alla* the first founder of the Kingdome of *Suth-sex* arrived. *Selfey* before said, is somewhat lower in the Saxon tongue, *Seal-sey*, that is to say, *The Isle of Sea-calves*, (for these in our language wee call *Scales*, which alwaies seeke to Islands, and to the shore, for to bring forth their young, but now it is most famous for good cockles, and full Lobsters. A place (as *Beda* saith) compassed round about with the Sea, but onely in the West side, where it hath an entrie into it by land, as *brut* as a slings cast. It was reckoned by Survey taken, to containe fourscore and seven Hides of Land, when *Edilwalch* King of this Province gave it to *Wilfride* Bishop of *Yorke*, whiles hee was in exile: who first preached Christ unto this people, and as he writeth, not only by baptisme saved from thraldome under the divell, two hundred and fiftie bond-men, but also by giving freedome, delivered them from the yoke of bondage under man. Afterwards *K. Cedwalla*, who vanquished *Edilwalch*, founded here a Minster, and beautified it with an Episcopall See, which by *Stigand* the two and twentieth Bishop, was translated to *Chichester*, where it now flourisheth, and doth acknowledge *Cedwalla* to bee the founder. In this Isle remaineth onely the dead carkeasse, as it were, of that ancient little citie, wherein those Bishops sat: and the same hidden quite with water at everie full sea, but at a low water, evident, and plaine to be seene.

Then maketh the shore way for a river, which out of *Saint Leonards* Fort stretcheth downe, first by *Amberley*, where *William* Read Bishop of *Chichester*, in the raigne of *Edward* the third, built a castle for his successours: and so from thence by *Arundell*, seated on the hanging of an hill, a place greater in name than deede, and yet is not that name of great antiquitie: for before *Alfreds* dayes, who bequeathed it by testament to *Anthelme* his brothers sonne, I have not read it, so much as once named. Unlesse perhaps I should thinke, that *Portus Adurni*, is corruptly so called, by transposition of letters, for *Portus Arundi*. The reason of this name is fetched neither from that fabulous horse of *Sir Beavois* of *Southampton*, nor of *Charadum*, a promontorie in *Denmarke*, as *Goropius Becanus* hath dreamed, but of the valley or dale, which lieth upon the river *Arun*, in case *Arun* bee the name of the river, as some have delivered, who thereupon named it in Latine, *Arundina vallis*, that is, *Arundale*. But all the fame it hath, is of the Castle, that flourished under the Saxon Empire, and which (as we read) presently upon the coming in of the Normans *Roger Montgomery* repaired, who thereupon was stiled, Earle of *Arundell*. For, a stately place it is, both by naturall situation, and also by mans hand verie strong. But his sonne *Robert de Belismo*, who succeeded his brother *Hugh*, being by *King Henrie* the first proscribed, lost that, and all his other dignitie. For, when he had perfidiously raised warre against the King, he chose this Castle for his surest hold, while the warre lasted, and fortified the place with many munitions, but speeded no better than traitours use to doe. For, the Kings forces environing it everie way, at the last wonne it. Whenas *Robert* now had forfeited his estate, and was banished, the

* In King Henrie the Eight his time.

Selfey. Scales.

Were be the best Cockles.

slaves.

Amberley.

See the Earle of Shrewsburie.

King gave this castle, and all his Lands besides unto * *Adeliza*, daughter to *Godfrey* *Barbarus* of *Lorraine*, Duke of *Lorraine* and *Brabant*, for her Dowrie; whom he tooke to be his second wife. In whole commendation a certaine English man in that unlearned age, wrote these not unlearned verses.

*Anglorum Reginas Adeliza decoro
Ipsa referre parans Musa, stupore riget.
Quid Diadema tibi, pulcherrima, quid tibi gemma?
Pallet gemma tibi, nec diadema nitet.
Deme tibi cultus, cultum natura ministrat:
Non exornari forma beata potest.
Ornamenta cave, nec quicquam luminis inde
Accipis, illa micant lumine clara tuo;
Non puduit modicas de magnis dicere laudes,
Nec pudeat Dominam te precor esse meam.*

When Muses mine thy beauties rare, (faire *Adeliza* Queene Of England) readie are to tell, they starke astonied beene. What booteth thee so beautifull, gold-crowne or pretious stone? Dimme is the Diademe to thee, the gemme hath beautie none. Away with trimme and gay attire; nature attireth thee, Thy lovely beautie naturall, can never better be. All Ornaments beware; from them no favour thou dost take; But they from thee their lustre have, thou dost them lightsome make. I shamed not on matters great to set small praises heere, Bath not, but deigne (I pray) to be my Sovereigne Ladie deere.

She, after the Kings death, matched in marriage with *William de * Albeney*, who taking part with *Maud* the Empresse against *King Stephen*, and defending this Castle against him, was in recompence of his good service, by the said *Maud* the Empresse and Ladie of Englishmen, (for this title she used) created Earle of *Arundell*: and her sonne *King Henrie* the Second gave the whole Rape of *Arundell* to that *William*: To hold of him by the service of fourescore and foure Knights fees, and one halfe. And to his sonne *William*, *King Richard* the first granted, in such words as these, *The Castle of Arundell with the whole Honor of Arundell, and the Third penny of the Plee out of Sussex, whereof he is Earle*. And when after the fifth Earle of this surname, the issue male failed, one of the sisters and heires of *Hugh* the fifth Earle was married to *Sir Iohn Fitz-Alan*, Lord of *Clun*, whose great graund sonne *Richard*, For that he stood seised of the Castle, Honour and Lordship of *Arundell* in his owne demesne as of Fee, in regard of this his possession of the same Castle, Honour and Seignorie, without any other consideration or Creation to be an Earle, was Earle of *Arundell* and the name, state and honor of the Earle of *Arundell*, &c. Peaceably he enjoyed: as appeareth by a definitive judgement given in Parliament, in the behalfe of *Sir Iohn Fitz-Alan* challenging the Castle and title of *Arundell* by force of an entaile against *Iohn Mowbray*, Duke of *Norfolke* the right Heire, in the neere degree. Whereby it was gathered, that the name, state and dignitie of Earle, was annexed to the Castle, Honour and Seignorie of *Arundell*, as it is to be seene in the Parliament Rolls of *King Henry* the Sixth, out of which I have copied forth these notes word for word. Of these *Fitz-Alans*, *Edmund* second Earle sonne to *Richard* married the heire of the Earle of *Surry*, and was beheaded through the malicious furie, of Queene *Isabell* not lawfully convicted, for that hee opposed himselfe in *King Edward* the Seconds behalfe against her wicked practices. His sonne *Richard* petitioned in Parliament to be restored to blood, lands, and goods, for that his father was put to death not tried by his Peeres according to the law and great Charter of England: nevertheless whereas the attainder of him was confirmed by Parliament, hee was forced to amend his petition, and upon the amendment thereof, hee was restored by the Kings meere grace. *Richard* his sonne, as his grandfather died for his Sovereigne, lost his life for banding against his Sovereigne, *King Richard* the Second. But *Tho.* his sonne more honourably ended his

* D'aubeney, some write him, de Albeney, and de Albinace. Earles of Arundell, and of Sussex. charta antiqua X. in 29.

Parl. 1.1.116.

229.

4. Edw. 3.

See before
the Earles of
Surrey.

his life serving King Henrie the Fifth valerously in France, and leaving his *heires* generall; Sir *Iohn of Arundell* Lord *Maltravers* his next cofin, and being obtained of King Henrie the fixt the Earldome of Arundell, as we even now deduced, and also was by the said King for his good service created Duke of *Towre*. Of the succeeding Earles I find nothing memorable. *Henrie Fitz Alan* the seventh and last Earle of that surname lived in our daies, in great honor as you shall see. After whom leaving no issue male *Philip Howard* his daughters sonne succeeded, who not able to digest wrongs and hard measure offered unto him, by the cunning sleights of some envious persons, fell into the toile and net pitched for him, and being brought into extreame perill of his life, yeelded up his vitall breath in the Tower. But his sonne Thomas a most honorable young man, (in whom a forward spirit and fervent love of vertue and glorie, most befeeming his nobility, and the same tempered with true courtseie shineth very apparently) recovered his fathers dignities being restored by King *Iames*, and Parliament authoritie.

Besides the Castle and the Earles, Arundell hath nothing memorable. For the Colledge built by the Earles, which there flourished, because the revenue or living is alienated and gone, now falleth to decay. Howbeit, in the Church are some monuments of Earles there enterred, but one above the rest right beautifull, of *Abasser*, in which lieth in the mids of the Quire Earle *Thomas*, and *Beatrice* his wife daughter of Iohn King of *Portugall*. Neither must I overpasse this Inscription faire guilt, set up heere in the Honor of *Henrie Fitz-Alan* the last, Earle of this because some there be whom liketh it well.

CONSECR

CONSECRATED TO VERTUE, AND HONOUR.

THE MAGNANIMOVS, AND VVORTHY KNIGHT VVHOSSE PERSONAGE IS HERE SEENE, AND VVHOSSE BONES HERE VNDERNATHLY ENTERRED, VVAS EARLE OF THIS TERRITORY: ACCORDING TO HIS HOVSE, AND LINAGE SVRNAMED FITZ ALAN LORD MALTRIVERS, CLVN, AND OSVALDESTRE, PRINCIPAL HONOURS: STILED ALSO LORD AND BARON OF THAT MOST NOBLE ORDER OF THE GARTER, THE AVNCIENTEST COMPANY VVHILES HE LIVED OF WILLIAM EARLE OF ARVNDELL, THE ONLY SONNE AND SVCCESOR, COMPARTNER ALSO OF ALL HIS VERTVES: VVHO BEING OF THE PRIVY COUNSEL TO KING HENRIE THE EIGHT, KING EDVARD THE SIXT, MARIE, AND ELIZABETH, KINGS AND QUEENES OF ENGLAND, VVAS GOVERNOR ALSO OF THE TOWNE OF CALES: AND VVHAT TIME AS THE SAID KING HENRIE BESIEGED BVLLEN VVAS HIGH MARESCHAL OF HIS ARMY, AND AFTER THAT LORD CHAMBERLAIN TO THE KING: ALSO VVHEN EDVARD HIS SONNE VVAS CROWNED KING, HE BARE THE OFFICE OF L. MARESCHAL OF THE KINGDOME: AND VNTO HIM LIKE AS BEFORE VNTO HIS FATHER BECAME LORD CHAMBERLAINE. MOREOVER IN THE REIGNE OF QUEENE MARIE DYKING THE TIME OF HER SOLEMNE CORONATION, HE VVAS MADE LORD HIGH CONSTABLE, AFTER VVARD STEVARD OF HER ROIAL HOVSE, AND PRESIDENT OF THE COUNCEL: EYEN AS TO QUEENE ELIZABETH ALSO, HE VVAS LIKEVISE, LORD HIGH STEVARD OF HER HOVSHOLD.

THVS THIS MAN, NOBLE BY HIS HIGH PARENTAGE, MORE NOBLE FOR VVEL PERFORMING THE PVBLICKE OFFICES OF STATE, MOST NOBLE, AND RENOWNED BOTH AT HOME, AND ABROAD: FLOURISHING STILL IN HONOUR, BROKEN VVITH TRAVEL, MVCH VVORNE VVITH YEERES, AFTER HE VVAS COME TO THE LXVIII OF HIS AGE, AT LONDON THE XXV. DAY OF FEBRVARY, IN THE YEERE OF OVR SALVATION BY CHRIST M. D. LXXIX. GODLY, AND SVETLY SLEPT IN THE LORD.

JOHN LYMLEY, BARON OF LYMLEY, HIS MOST LOVING AND AFFECTIONATE * SONNE IN LAVV, EXECVTOR OF HIS LAST VWIL, AND TESTAMENT, NOVW THAT HIS MOST SVET FATHER IN LAVV AND VERY GOOD PATRON IS RIGHT HONORABLY, AND SVMTVOWSLY BVRIED, HATH IN MOST DEVOT MANNER VVITH ABUNDANT TEARES NOT FOR ANY MEMORIAL, VVHICH HIMSELF ALREADY BY HIS MANIFOLD VERTVES HATH AETRNIZED, BUT IN REGARD OF HIS MORTAL BODY NOVW BESTOVVED IN HOPE OF AN HAPPY RESVRRECTION, CONSECRATED VNTO HIM, FOR THE LAST DVTY HE COULD PERFORME, THIS KNIGHTLIKE STATVE, VVITH HIS DVE ARMORIES.

* As having
married his
daughter.

As for the river *Arun*, which springing out of the North part of the Shire runneth heereby, it is encreased by many brooks falling into it from all sides, but the cheefe of them is that which passeth beside *Cowdrey*, a very goodly house of the *Vicounts Montacute*, which for building oweth much to the late Vicount, & formerly to Sir *William Fitz-Williams*, Earle of South-hampton. Here by is *Midberst* that is *Middlewood* which braggeth of the *Bobunes* Lords thereof, who carried for their coate of armes a Croffe azur in a field Or, and from *Ingelricus de Bobun* under King Henrie the first, flourished unto King Henrie the seventh his daies, who gave in marriage

Spigurnell
what it is.

Petworth.

The Percies.
See in the end
of Northum-
berland.

Dantry.

Burton.

Horsham.

Michelgrove.

Shelley.
Offington.
The familie
of the Weits.

* De Cantelupe.

Barons de la
Ware.

Cisburie.

Cimenshore.

Brood-water.
Lord Camois.
Camois.A wife given
and granted
to another.Parlam. 30.
Edw. primi.

marriage the daughter and heire of *Iohn Bohun* unto Sir *David Owen* Knight, the sonne of *Owen Theodor*, with a rich inheritance. These *Bohuns* (to note so much by the way for the antiquity of a word now growne out of use) were by inheritance for a good while the Kings *Spigurnells*, that is, *The Sealers of his writts*, which office together with Serjeancie of the Kings chappell, *Iohn de Bohun* the sonne of *Franco* retained unto King *Edward the First*, as wee reade in an old Charter made, as touching that matter. Then this river leaveth about a mile off *Petworth* which together with one and twenty Knights fees *William de Albeney* Earle of *Arundell*, bestowed upon *Ioscelin of Lovaine* the Brabander, brother to *Queene Adeleza*, and the younger sonne of *Godfrey Duke of Brabant*, descended from the stocke of *Charles the Great*, what time as hee tooke to wife *Agnes* the onely daughter and heire of the *Percies*. Since which time, the posterity of that *Iosceline*, having assumed the name of *Percie*, (as I will els where shew) held it. A Familie, I assure you very ancient and right noble, which deriveth their pedigree from *Charles the great* more directly, and with a race of Ancestors lesse interrupted, than either the Dukes of *Lorraine* Or of *Guise* that so highly vaunt themselves thereupon. *Iosceline* aforesaid, as I have seene it in his Donations, used this title: *Ioscelin of Lovain, brother to Queene Adeleza, and Castellan of Arundell*. And here about the Familie of *Dantry*, Or *De alu ripa* hath bene of right worshipfull esteeme, as on the other side of the river the name of *Goring* at *Burton*, who were acknowledged founders of *Hardham* Or *Hordham* a Priory of blacke Canons, a little off. Where this *Arun* meeteth with another river of a deeper and bigger streame, which springeth neare *Horscham* an indifferent mercat, which some suppose to have taken name from *Horsa* the brother of *Hengist*, who were the first leaders of the English Saxons into this isle of *Britaine*. Thus *Arun* increased, with sundry creekings, by *Arundell* before mentioned, holdeth on his course to the sea.

As the shoare giveth backe from the mouth of *Arun*, inwardly is *Michelgrove*, that is, *Great grove*, the heire generall whereof so surnamed, was married to *Ihon Shelley*, whereby, with the profession of the law, and a marriage with one of the coheirs of *Beknap* the familie of *Shelley* was greatly enriched: *Offington* is not farre off well knowne by his ancient possessor the *West's Barons de la Ware*. This of the *West's* is noble and ancient Familie, whose state beeing bettered by marriage with the heire of * *Cantlow of Hemston* and *Fitz-Reginald Fitz Herbert*, was adorned also with the title of Baron, by the heire generall of the Lord *de la Ware*. Hard by, there is a son compassed about with a banke rudely cast up, wherewith the Inhabitants are persuaded that *Caesar* entrenched and fortified his camp: But *Cisburie* the name of the place, doth plainly shew and testifie, that it was the worke of *Cissa*: who beeing of the Saxons line the second King of this petty kingdome, after his father *Aella*, accompanied with his brother *Cimen*, and no small power of the Saxons, at this shoare arrived and landed at *Cimenshore*, a place so called of the said *Cimen*, which now hath lost the name: but that it was neere unto *Wittering*, the charter of the donation which King *Cedwalla* made unto the Church of *Selfey*, most evidently prooveth. Another fort likewise two miles from *Cisburie* is to be seene, which they use to call *Chenburie*.

As you goe forward, standeth neere unto the sea, *Broodwater*, the Baronie of the Lords of *Camois*, who from the time of King *Edward the First*, flourished unto the daies of King *Henrie the Sixt*, what time the inheritance came by heires generall unto the *Lewknors & Radmilds*. Out of this familie (a thing neither in that age, nor in ours ever heard of (or exampled before) Sir *Iohn Camois* the son of the Lord *Raulph Camois*, of his owne free-will (the verie words these be in effect, exemplified out of the Parliament Records) gave and demised his owne wife *Margaret*, daughter and heire of *Iohn de Gaidesden* unto Sir *William Panell Knight*, and unto the same *William*, gave granted, released and quit claimed all the goods and chattels, which she hath, or otherwise hereafter might have: and also whatsoever was in his hands of the foresaid *Margaret's* goods, and chattels with their appurtenances: so that neither he himselfe, nor any man else in his name, might

A make claime, or challenge any interest, nor ought for ever, in the foresaid *Margaret* from hence forth, or in the goods and chattels of the said *Margaret*: Which is as much, as in one word they said in old time, * *Et omnia sua secum haberet, That she should have away with her all that was hers*. By which graunt, when shee demanded her dowie in the Manour of *Torpull* which had been the possession of Sir *Iohn Camois* her first husband, theregrew a memorable suite and controversie in Law: but wherein shee was overthrowne and sentence pronounced. That she ought to have no dowie from thence: upon a Statute made against women absenting themselves from their husbands, &c.

B These matters, I assure you, it goes against my stomacke to relate, but yet I see, it was not for nought that *Pope Gregorie* long since wrote unto *Lanfranke* Archbishop of *Canterburie*, *How hee heard say*, there were some among the Scots that not onely forsooke, but also sold their wives, whereas in England they so gave and demised them.

Somewhat lower upon the shore appeareth *Shoreham*, in times past *Scope-ham*, which by little and little fell to bee but a village, at this day called *Old Shoreham*, and gave encrease to another towne of the same name, whereof the greater part also being drowned and made even with the sea is no more to be seene: and the commodiousness of the haven by reason of bankes and bars of sand cast up at the rivers mouth quite gone: whereas, in foregoing times it was wont to carrie ships with full saile as farre as to *Brember*, which is a good way from the sea. This *Brember* was a castle sometime of the *Breoses*: For, King *William* the first gave it unto *William de Breose*, from whom those *Breoses* are descended, who were Lords of *Gower* and *Brecknock*: and from them also, both in this Countie and in *Leicestershire*, are come the Families of the *Shirleys*, Knights. But now in stead of a Castle, there is nothing but an heape of rubble and ruines. A little from this Castle lieth *Stening*, a great mercate, and at certaine set daies much frequented, which in *Alfred's* will, unless I be deceived, is called *Steningham*, in latter times it had a Cell of Black Monkes wherein was enshrined *S. Cudman* an obscure Saint, and visited by pilgrims with oblations.

D That ancient place also, called *PORTVS ADVINI*, as it seemeth is scarce three miles from this mouth of the river: where, when the Saxons first troubled our sea with their piracies, the Band called *Exploratorum* under the Roman Emperours kept their Station; but now it should seeme to be choked, and stopped up with huge heapes of beach gathered together. For, that this was *Ederington* a pretie village, which the said *Alfred* granted unto his younger sonne, both the name remaining in part, and also certaine cottages adjoining now called *Portslade*, that is, *The way to the Haven*, doe after a sort perswade: to say nothing, how easily they might land E heere, the shore being so open and plaine. And for the same cause, our men in the reign of King *Henrie the Eighth*, did heere especially wait for the Frenchmens galleies all the while they hovered on our coasts and upon the sudden set one or two cottages on fire at *Brightbelmsted*, which our ancestours the Saxons termed *Brightweal-mep-tun*, the very next road or harbour thereunto.

Some few miles from hence, there dischargeth it selfe into the sea a certaine river, that hath no name, arising out of *S. Leonards* forrest neere unto *Slaugham*, the habitation of the *Coverts*, who in King *Henrie* the third his daies flourished in this quarter, with the degree of Knight-hood; thence by *Cuckfield* to *Linfeld*, where in former ages was a small Nunnery; and so by *Malling* some-time a Manour appurtenant to the Archbishops of *Canterburie*, to *Lewis*, which peradventure hath his name of pastures called by the English Saxons *Lejpa*. This for frequency of people and greatnesse is reputed one of the chiefe towns of the Countie: Seated it is upon a rising almost on every side: That it hath bene walled there are no apparant tokens. Southward it hath under it, as it were, a great suburb called *South-over*, another Westward, and beyond the river a third Eastward called *Cliffe* because it is under a chalkie cliffe. In the time of the English Saxon government, when King *Ashelstan* made a Law that money should not be coyned but in good townes, he appointed two

The forme of
a Bill of a
kind of Di-
vorcement,
called *Repu-
dium*.

Shoreham.

Ederington.

Slaugham.

Lewes.

* For custome
or rent and
roll.

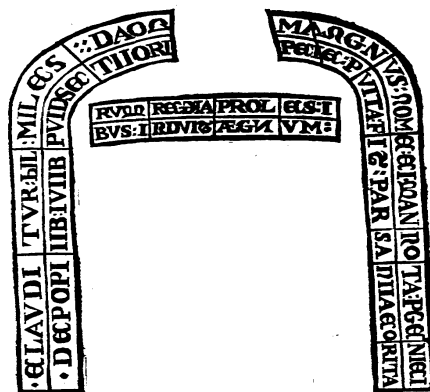
Domesday
booke.

* Or redeem-
eth the of-
fence.

* Cluniaco.

The monu-
ment of
Magnus a
Dane.

two minters, or coyners for this place. In the reigne of King Edward the Confessor it paid fixe pounds and foure shillings * *de Gablo et Thelouco*. The King had there one hundred twenty seven Burgars. Their custome and manner was this, *If the King minded to send his souldiers to sea, without them: of all them, whose lands soever they were collected twenty shillings, and all those had they that in their ships kept armour. Who sellen a horse within the Burgh giveth to the Provost one penny, and the buier, another. For an oxen cow one halfe penny, in what place so ever he buieth within the Rape. He that sheddeth blood maketh amends for seven shillings. Hee that committeth adulterie or a rape, for eight shillings and foure pence, and the woman as much. The King bath the Adulterer, The Arch-bishop, the woman: when the mint or money is made new: every minter giveth twentie shillings. Of all these payments two third parts went to the King, and one third part to the Earle. William de Warren the first Earle of Surrie built here a large Castle on the highest ground for most part with flint and chalke. In the bottom of the towne called Southover he founded to the honour and memory of Saint Pancrace a Priorie, and stored it with Cluniach Monkes, In regard of the holinesse, religion, and charitie which he found in the Monasterie of Clugni in Burgundie (for these be the words taken out of the very originall instrument of the foundation) Whiles going in pilgrimage together with his wife for religion, he turned in, and lodged there. But this is now turned into a dwelling house of the Earle of Dorset. Howbeit there remaine still in the towne fixe Churches; amongst which not farre from the Castle there standeth one little one all desolate, and beset with briars and brambles: in the walles whereof are ingraven in arched work certaine rude verses in an old and over-worne character: which implice thus much, the one Magnus descended from the bloud roiall of the Danes, who embraced a solitarie life, was there buried: But behold the verses themselves, imperfect though they be, and gaping as I may so say, with the very yawning joynts of the stones.*



Which peradventure should be thus read.

*Claudisur hic miles, Danorum regia proles,
Magnus nomen ei, magna nota progeniei,
Deponens Magnum, prudentior indans agnum:
Præpete pro visa, fit paruulus Anachorita.*

And

A noble Knight,
Sir *Magnus* hight,
a name of great of-spring,
Is shut up here,
Though borne he were
in line of Danish King:
He wiser man,
Puts *Agnus* on,
and laies downe *Magnus* quite:
For swift life this,
Become he is
a little Anchorite.

About 346. yeeres since this place became famous for the mortall and bloudie battaile betweene K. Henrie the third, and the Barons: in which, the prosperous beginning of the fight on the kings side, was the overthrow of the kings forces. For, whiles prince Edward the kings son, breaking by force through certain of the Barons troupes, carelessly pursued the enemies over far, as making sure account of the victory: the Barons having reinforced themselves, giving a fresh charge, so discomfited, and put to flight the Kings armie, that they constrained the King to accept unequal conditions of peace, and to deliver his sonne Prince Edward with others into their hands. From *Lewis* the river, as it descendeth, so swelleth, that the bottom cannot containe it, and therefore maketh a large mere, and is fed more full with a brooker falling from *Laughon*, a seat of *Pelham*, a family of especial respect, by *Gline* that is in the British tongue, the vale, the habitation of *Morleyes*, whose antiquitie the name doth testify. And afterward, albeit it gathereth it selfe into a channell, yet often times it overfloweth the low lands about it to no small detriment. Not farre from the said mere, *Furle* sheweth it selfe a principall mansion of the *Gages*, who advanced their estate by the marriage of one of the heires of *Saint Clare*, Princes favour, and Court Offices.

The shore next openeth it selfe at *Cuckmere*, which yet affordeth no commodious haven, though it be fed with a fresh, which insulateth *Michelham*, where *Gilbert de Aquila*, founded a Priory for *black Chanons*. And then at *East-bourn* the shore ariseth into so high a Promontory, called of the beach *Beachy-points*, and *Beau-cliffe* (for the faire shew being interchangeably compounded with rowe, of chalke and flint) that it is esteemed the highestcliffe of all the South coast of England. As hitherto from *Arundell*, and beyond, the countrey along the coast: for a great breadth, mounteth up into high hilles, called the *Downes*, which for rich fertilitie giveth place to few valleys, and plaines: so now it falleth into such a low leuell and marsh, that the people think it hath been over-flowed by the sea. They call it *Pevensey Marsh*, of *Pevensey* the next towne adjoining, which lieth in the plaine somewhat within the land upon a small river, which often times overlaieth the lands adjacent. In the old English Saxon Language, it was walled, *Peopenrea*, in the Norman speech *Pevensell*, now commonly, *Pemsey*: It hath had a meane haven, and a faire large castle, in the ruinous walles whereof, remaine great bricks, such as the Britans used, which is some argument of the antiquitie thereof. It belonged in the Conquerours time to Robert Earle of *Moriton*, halfe brother by the mothers side to the Conquerour, and then had fiftie and six Burgeses. After the attainder of his Sonne William Earle of *Moriton*, it came to King Henrie the First, by Escheat. In the composition betweene Stephen, and King Henrie the second both towne, and castle with whatsoever *Richard de Aquila*, had of the *Honor of Pevensey*, which after his name, was called *Honor de Aquila*, and *Baronia de Aquila*, or of the *Eagle*, was assigned to William Sonne to K. Stephen. But he surrendred it with *Normich* into King Henrie the Seconds hand, in the yeere 1158, when he restored to him all such Lands as Stephen was seased of before hee usurped the crowne of England. After some yeeres King Henrie the third, over-favouring the forrainers granted the *Honor de Aquila* (which had fallen to the crowne by Escheat, for

1263.

The battaile
of Lewes.

2321

Others call it,
The three
Charles.

Downes.

Pevensey.

Florentius wi-
gornienfis, pag.
452.

Composition
betweene
King Ste-
phen, and
Henrie of
Anjoy.
*Honor de A-
quila.*
*Robert de Mon-
te.*

Herst Mon-
ceaux.
Herst what
it is.

Regist. of the
Monasterie of
Roberts-
bridge.
The familie
of the Fi-
nens.
Patent 37.
Fienis 6.
An. 14. Ed. 4.

for that *Gilbert de Aquila* had passed into Normandie, against the Kings good will to *Peter Earle of Savoy* the Queenes uncle. But he fearing the envie of the English against forrainers relinquished it to the King, and so at length it came to the Duchy of Lancaster. Inward from *Pevenssey* is seated *Herst* in a Parke among the woods, which name also it hath of the woody situation: For, the ancient English-men called a wood *Hýpýr*. This was immediately after the Normans entry into England the seat of certain noble gentlemen, who of that place were a good while named *de Herst*, untill William the sonne of *Walleran de Herst*, tooke unto him the name *Monceaux*, of the placehaply where he was borne, an usuall thing in that age: whereupon that name also was adnexed unto this place, which ever since was of the Lord, termed *Herst Monceaux*. From whose Posteritie by heire generall it descended hereditarily to the *Fienes*. These *Fienes*, called likewise *Fenis*, and *Fienles*, derive their pedigree from *Ingelram de Fienes*, who had wedded the heire of *Pharumuse of Boloigne*, of the houle of the Earles of Boloigne in France. About the time of King Edward the Second, Sir *John Fienes* married the heire of *Monceaux*, his sonne William married one of the heires of the Lord *Say*, his sonne likewise the heire of *Batistford*, whose sonne Sir *Roger Fienes* married the daughter of *Holland*, and in the first year of King Henrie the Sixt built of bricke the large, faire, uniforme, & convenient house heere Castle-like within a deepe moate. The said King Henrie the Sixt, Accepted, declared and reputed Sir *Richard Fienis* sonne of the said Sir *Roger*, to be Baron of *Dacre*. And the same tittle, King Edward the fourth chosen Arbitratour and Umpire betwene him & Sir *Humphrey Dacre*, awarded & confirmed to the said *S. Richard Fienis*, and to the heires of his bodie lawfully begotten; for that he had married *Joane* the cousin and next heire of *Thomas Baron Dacre*; and to have precedence before the *Dacre* of *Gilestand* heire male of the family. Since which time the heires lineally descending from him being enriched by one of the heires of the Lord *Fitz-Hugh*, have enjoyed the honor of *Baron Dacre*, untill that very lately *George Fienis Lord Dacre* sonne to the unfortunate *Thomas Lord Dacre* died without issue, whose only sifter and heire *Margaret*, *Sampson Lennard* Esquire a man both vertuous and courteous tooke to wife, and by her hath faire issue. In whose behalfe it was published, declared, and adjudged by the Lords Comissioners for Martiall causes, in the second year of the raigne of King *Iames*, with his privy, and assent Royall, That the said *Margaret* ought to beare, have, and enjoy the name, state, degree, tittle, stile, honor, place, and precedence of the Baronie of *Dacre*; to have and to hold to her, and the issue of her bodie in full and ample manner, as any of her ancestors enjoied the same. And that her children male, and shall have, take, and enjoy the place, and precedence respectively, as the children of her ancestors *Barons Dacre* have formerly had, and enjoyed.

Now to returne to the Sea-coast, about three miles from *Pevenssey* is *Becker-hill* a place much frequented by *Saint Richard* Bishop of *Chichester*, and where he died. Under this is *Bulver-hith* in an open shore, with a rooflesse Church, not so named of bulles hide which cut into thongs by *William the Conquerour*, reached to *Batistford* (as they fable) for it had that name before his comming. But heere he arrived with his whole fleete, landed his armie, and having cast a rampier before his campe, set fire on all his ships, that their onely hope might be in manhood, and their safety in victorie. And so after two daies marched to *Hastings* then to an hill neere *Ne-feld* now called *Standard hill*, because (as they say) he there pitched his Standard, and from thence two miles farther where in a plaine the Kingdome of England was put upon the hazard and chance of a bataille; and the English-Saxon Empire came to a full period and finall end. For there, King *Harold* in the yeere of our Lord 1066. the day before the Ides of October, albeit his forces were much weakened in a former fight with the Danes, and his soldiers wearied besides with a long journey from beyond *Torke*, encountered him in a place named *Epston*. When the Normans had sounded the Battaile, first the skirmish continued for a pretty while with shot of arrowes from both sides; then, setting foote to foote, as if they fought man to man, they maintained fight a longer time: But when the English men had most valiantly received

See Nor-
mans before.

received their first violent on set, the Norman horsemen with full carriere put forward and gave an hot charge. But seeing they also could not breake the battaile, they retired for the nonce, and yet kept their ranks in good order. The Englishmen supposing them to flee, presently disfringed themselves, and in disfray preased hard upon the enemies: but they, all on a sudden bringing backe their companies charged them a fresh on every side with all their joynt forces thicke united together and so enclosing them round about, drove them backe with great slaughter: who not withstanding having gotten the higher ground withstood the Normans a long time, untill *Harold* himselfe was shot through with an arrow and fell downe dead: for then straightwaies they turned their backs and betooke themselves every man to flight. The Duke lofty, and haughty with this victory, and yet not unmindfull of God the giver thereof, erected in memoriall of this bataille an Abbey to the glory of God, and *S. Martin*, which he called *de Bello*, or *Battaile Abbey*, in that very place where *Harold* after many a wound and stab among the thickest of his enemies gave up the ghost, that the same might bee as it were an everlasting monument of the Normans victorie: and therein he offered his sword, and royall robe which he ware, the day of his Coronation. These the Monkes kept untill their suppression, as also a table of the Normans gentry which entred with the *Conquerour*; but so corruptly in later times, that they inserted therein the names of such as were their benefactors, and whosoever the favour of fortune or vertue had advanced to any eminencie in the subsequent ages. About this Abbey there grew afterwards a towne of the same name: or, (that I may use the words of the private History of this Abbey) As the Abbey encreased, there were built about the compasse of the same one hundred and fiftene houses of which the towne of *Battell* was made. Wherein there is a place called by a French word *Sangue lac*, of the blood there shed: which by nature of the ground seemeth after raine to wax red. Whence, *William Newborough*, wrote although untruly, thus: The place, in which there was a very great slaughter of the English men fighting for their countrey, if peradventure it be wet with any small shovre, sweateth forth very fresh blood indeed: as if the very evidence thereof did plainly declare that the voyce of so much Christian blood there shed doth still cry from the earth to the Lord. But to the said Abbey King *William the Conquerour* granted many and great privilegedges. And among other, to use the very words of the Charter. If any thiefe, murderer, or felon for feare of death fly and come to this Church, let him have no harme but be dismissed and sent away free from all punishment. Be it lawfull also for the Abbat of the same Church to deliver from the gallows any thiefe or robber wheresoever, if he chance to come by where such execution is in hand.

Henrie the first likewise, (that I may rehearse the words of his Charter) instituted a mercate to be there kept on the Lords day, free from all toll and tallage. But Sir *Anthony Browne Lord Vicount Mount-acute*, who not long since in that place built a goodly house, obtained of late by authoritie of Parliament, that this mercate should bee held upon another day. And as for the privilegedges of Sanctuary, in those more heinous and grievous crimes, they are here and every way els by Parliamentary authoritie quite abolished. For, they perceived well, that the feare of punishment being once removed, stout boldnesse, and a will to commit wickednesse grew still to greater head: and that hope of impunity was the greatest motive of ill-doing. Neither heere or in that quarter nere adjoining, saw I any thing worth relation but onely *Ashburnham*, that gave the name to a family of as great antiquity as any one in all this tract.

Hastings, which I spake of, called in the English Saxon tongue *Harting-cea-vep*, is situate somewhat higher upon the same shore. Some there bee that ridiculouslly derive this name from out of our tongue, from haste or quicknesse, forsooth; because as *Matthew Paris*, writeth *William Conquerour at Hastings did set up hastily a fortresse of timber*. But it may seeme to have taken this new name of *Hastings* a Danish Pirate, who wheresoever hee landed, with intent to spoile and raise booties, built oftentimes fortresses, as we read in *Asserius Menevensis*, of *Boernstote* castle built by him in *Essex*, as also of others at *Appledor* and *Middleton* in *Kent*. The tradition is that the old towne of *Hastings* is swallowed up of the sea. That which standeth now as I observed

A mercate
kept on the
Sunday.

Ashburnham.

Hastings.

ved is couched betweene a high cliffe sea-ward and as high an hill land-ward, having two streetes extended in length from North to South, and in each of them a parish Church. The haven such as it is being fedde but with a poore small rill, is at the South end of the Towne, and hath had a great Castle upon the hill which over commanded it, now there are onely ruines thereof, and on the said hill *Eight houses* to direct failers in the night time. Here in the reigne of King *Abbas* *stan* was a mint-house. Afterward it was accounted the first of the Cinque Ports,

Cinqueports.

which with the members belonging to it, namely *Seford, Peuensey, Hodey, Bulwerhith, Winchelsey, Rby, &c.* was bound to finde one and twenty ships for warre sea. In what manner and forme (if you desire to know) both this Port and the rest all were bound to serve the King in his warres at sea, for the immunities that they enjoy in most ample manner, have heere in those very same words whereby this was times past recorded in the Kings Exchequer. *Hastings with his members ought to ful*

21. Edw. 1.

*at the Kings summons one and twenty ships: And in every shippe there must be one and twenty tall and able men, well armed and appointed for the Kings service. Tet so, as the summons bee made thereof on the Kings behalfe fortie daies before. And when the said ships and men therein, are come to the place wherunto they were summoned, they shall abide there in the Kings service for fiftene daies at their owne proper costs and charges. And if the King shall have farther neede of their service, after the fiftene daies above said, will have them to stay there any longer, those ships with the men therein being, whiles they remaine there shall be in the Kings service, at the kings costs and charges, so long as it shall please the king, to wit, The Master of every ship shall receive sixe pence by the day, the stable sixe pence a day, and every one of the rest three pence by the day. Thus *Hastings**

3946.

flourished long, inhabited with a warlike people and skilfull failers, well stored with barkes and craies and gained much by fishing, which is plentifull along the shore. But after that the peere made of timber was at length violently carried away by extreme rage of the sea, it hath decayed, and the fishing lesse used, by the reason of the dangerous landing, for they are enforced to worke their vessels to land by a *Copall* or *Craine*. In which respect for the bettering of the towne, *Queene Elizabeth* granted a contribution toward the making of a new harbour, which was begun, but the contribution was quickly converted into private purses, and the publike good neglected. Nevertheless both Court, the Countrey, and Citie of London is served with much fish from thence.

1578.

Ancens. Earles of Ew.

The whole *Rape of Hastings* and the Honour was holden by the Earles of *Ew*, (commonly called *de Augi*) in Normandie, descended from the base sonne of *Richard* the First Duke of Normandie; untill the daies of *Alice* the heire of the house, whom in the reigne of *Henrie* the Third, *Ralph de Issodon* in France tooke to wife, whose posteritie lost a faire patrimonie in England, for that, as our Lawyers spake in those daies, they were *Ad fidem Regis Francie*, that is, under the king of France his allegiance.

*

When King *Henry* the third had seized their lands into his hands, hee granted the *Rape of Hastings* first to *Peter Earle of Savoy*, then to Prince *Edward* his sonne, and after upon his surrender to *John* sonne to the Duke of little Britaine upon certaine exchanges of lands pertaining to the Honour of *Richmond* which *Peter Earle of Savoy* had made over for the use of the Prince. Long time after when the Duke of *Brian* had lost their lands in England for adhering to the French King. King *Henrie* the Fourth gave the *Rape of Hastings* with the Manour of *Crowherst, Burgwalsh, &c.* to *Sir John Pelham* the elder, upon whose loialtie, wisdom, and valour he much relied. Before we depart from *Hastings*, as it shall not bee offensive I hope, to remember that in the first daies of the Normans, there were in this shire great gentlemen furnished *Hastings & de Hastings*, of whom *Mabew de Hastings* held the Manour of *Grenoble* in his service, that he should find at this haven an oare, when the kings would crosse over the sea, so now the honourable house of the *Hastings* that are Earles of *Huntingdon* enjoy this title of *Hastings*. For King *Edward* the Fourth bestowed this title with certaine Royalties (as they terme them) upon *Sir William Hastings* his Chamberlaine. Who by *Comineus* commended, for that having received an yearly pension of *Leone* the

H. 6.

Inquisition 5. Edw. 1.

William Lord Hastings.

eleventh the French King hee could not for any thing bee brought to give unto the French King an acquittance of his owne hand writing. *I will in no case* (saith hee) *that my hand-writing, bee seene amongst the accounts of the French Kings Treasurie.* But this man by diving so deepe into the friendship of Kings overwhelmed and drowned himselfe quite. For whiles hee spake his minde, and reasoned over frankly at a private consultation, with the Usurper King *Richard* the Third, all of a sodaine, and unlooked for, had hee was away, and without pleading for himselfe, presently made shorter by the head upon the next blocke. Neither is this to be passed over in silence that King *Henrie* the Sixth adorned *Sir Thomas Hoo*, a worthy knight, whom hee also chose into the order of the Garter, with the title of *Baron Hoo, and Hastings*: whose daughters and heires were married to *Sir Gefferie Bollen*, (from whence by the mothers side *Queene Elizabeth* was descended) to *Roger Coplie*, to *John Carew*, *John Devenish*.

26. Henry 6. Baron of Hoo and Hastings.

From thence the shore passing under *Farley* hill farre scene both by sea, and land whereon standeth a solitary Church full bleakly, and a beacon is hollowed with an in-winding Bay, and upon it standeth *Winchelsey* which was built in the time of King *Edward* the First, when a more ancient towne of the same name, in the Saxons tongue called *Wincelyr-ea*, was quite swallowed up with the rough and raging Ocean in the year of our Lord 1250. (what time the face of the earth both heere and also in the coast of Kent neere bordering, became much changed). The situation thereof I will set before your eyes in the very words of *Th. Walsingham*. *Situate it is upon a high hill, very steepe on that side, which either looketh toward the sea, or overlooketh the roade where ships lie at anchor. Whence it is that the way leading from that part to the haven goeth not straight forward, least it should by an over sodaine and downe right descent, force those that goe downe to fall headlong, or them that goe up to creepe rather with their hands then to walke: but lying side-waies it windeth with curving turnes in and out, to one side and the other.* At first, it was inclosed with a rampier, after-wards with strong wals: and scarce beganne it to flourish, when it was sacked by the French men and Spaniards, and by reason that the sea shrunke backe from it, began sodainly (as it were) to fade and loose the beauty: And now only beareth the countenance of a faire towne, and hath under it in the levell which the sea relinquished a Castle fortified by *Henrie* the Eighth, and large marshes defended from sea-rages with workes very chargeably: By the decay hereof and the benefit of the sea together. *Rbie* opposite unto it and as highly feared began to flourish, or rather to resplourish, For that in old time it flourished: and that *William of Ipres* Earle of Kent fortified it, *Ipres* Tower now the prison, and the immunities or priviledges that it had in common with the Cinque-ports may sufficiently shew. But by occasion of the Vicinity of *Winchelsey* or the shrinking backe of the sea, it lay for a good while in former ages unknowne: But when *Winchelsey* decayed, and King *Edward* the Third walled it where the clifles defended it not, it beganne to breath againe and revive: and in our fathers daies, the sea to make amends abundantly for the harmes it had done raised with an unusuall tempest, so rushed in, and insinuated it selfe in forme of a bay that it made a very commodious haven, which another tempest also in our daies did not a little helpe. Since which time it greatly resplourished with inhabitants, buildings, fishing and navigation: and at this day there is an usuall passage from hence into Normandie, yet now it beginneth to complaine that the sea abandoneth it (such is the variable, and interchangeable course of that element) and in part imputeth it, that the river *Rother* is not contained in his channell, and so looseth his force to carry away the sands and beach which the sea doth inbeate into the haven: Notwithstanding it hath many fishing vessels and serveth London, and the Court with variety of sea-fish.

Winchelsey.

Camber-Castle.

Rbie.

*

Now whether it have the name of *Rine* a Norman word which signifieth a strond or Binke, I cannot easily say. But seeing that in Records it is very often called in Latine *Ripa*, and they who bring fish from hence be termed *Ripiers*, I incline rather this way, and would incline more, if the Frenchmen used this word for a strond or

shore, as *Plinius* doth *Ripa*. These two townes, (neither may it seeme impertinent to note it) belonged to the Abbey of *Fescampe* in Normandie. But when King Henry the Third perceived that religious men intermingled secretly in matters of State, he gave them in exchange for these two, *Chiltenham* and *Sclouer* two Manors in Gloucester-shire, and other lands; adding for the reason, that the Abbat and Monkes might not lawfully fight with temporall armes against the enemies of the Crowne.

The River
Rother.
Barons Burg-
herfh.

Into this haven the River *Rother*, or *Risber* sheddeth it selfe, which issuing forth at *Risberam* fieldes (for so the Englishmen in ancient times called the towne, which wee doe *Rotherfield*) passeth by *Burgwash*, in old time *Burghesh*, which had Lords so surnamed thereof: among whom was that Sir *Bartholomew Burgwash*, a mightie man in his time, who being approved in most weighty Ambassages, and warres in Aquitaine, for his wisdome, and valour deserved, to be created a Baron of the Realme, to be admitted into the Order of the Garter, at the very first institution even among the Founders thereof, and to bee made Constable of *Devon Castle*, and Warden of the *Cinque-ports*. And his sonne carrying the same fore-name, not degenerating from his father, lived in high honour and estimation; but here left behind him one daughter, and no more issue, married into the house of *Le Despencer*, of which there remaineth still a goodly offspring of Noble personages. *Echingham* next adjoyning, had also a Baron, named *William de Echingham*, in the time of King Edward the Second, whose ancestours were the hereditarie Seneschals of this *Regne*. And their inheritance in the end, by the heires females name to the *Barons of Windsor*, and to the *Tirwhits*. Then the *Rother* dividing his water into three channels, passeth under Roberts bridge, where *Alured de S. Martin*, in King Henrie the seconds daies founded a Monasterie: and so running beside *Bodiam*, a Castle belonging to the ancient Family of the *Lewknors*, built by the *Dalegrigs*, here falleth (as I said) into the Ocean. Now I have passed along the Sea coast of Suffex. And as for the mid-land part of the shire, I have nothing more to relate thereof, unless I should recount the woods, and Forrests, lying out faire in length and breadth, which are a remnant of the vast wood, *Anderida*. Among which, to begin at the West, those of greatest note are these, *The Forrest of Arundell*, *Saint Leonards Forrest*, *Wood Forrest*, and not farre off *Ed Grensted* anciently a parcell of the Barony of *Eagle*, and made a Mercate by King Henry the seventh. *Ashdowne Forrest*, under which standeth *Buckhurst* the habitation of the ancient house of the *Sackvilles*, out of which race Queene Elizabeth in our daies advanced *Thomas Sackville* her allie by the *Bollens*, a wise Gentleman, to be Baron of *Buckhurst*, took him into her Privie Councell, admitted him into the most honorable Order of the Garter, and made him Lord Treasurer of England: whom also of late, King James created Earle of Dorset. *Waterdown Forrest*, where I saw *Eridge*, a lodge of the Lord *Abergervenny*, and by it craggie rocks rising up so thicke, as though sporting nature had there purposed a sea. Here-by in the very confines of Kent, is *Groomebridge* habitation of the *Walters*, whose house there was built by *Charles Duke of Orleans*, father to King *Lewis* the 12. of France, when he being taken prisoner in the battaile at *Agincourt*, by *Richard Waller* of this place, was here a long time detained prisoner.

Baron
Echingham.

Roberts
Bridge, or
Rotherbridge
Bodiam.

Baron Buck-
hurst.

Earles of
Suffex.

See Earles of
Arundell.

* With the
beard.

As touching the Earles; Suffex had five by the line of *Albiny*, who were likewise called Earles of *Arundell*; but had the third pennie of Suffex, as Earles then had. The first of them was *William D' Albiny*, the sonne of *William Butler* King Henrie the first, and Lord of *Buckenham* in Norfolk: who gave for his armes Gules, a Lion rampant, Or: and was called one while Earle of *Arundell*, and another while Earle of *Chichester*, for that in those places he kept his chiefe residence. This man, of *Adeliz* the daughter of *Godfrey Barbatus Duke of Lorraine*, and of *Brabant*, Queen Dowager, or Widow of King Henrie the first, begat *William* the second Earle of Suffex, and of *Arundell*, father to *William* the third Earle: unto whom *Mabile* the daughter, and one of the heires of the last *Raulph Earle of Chester*, bare *William* the fourth Earle, & *Hugh* the fifth, who both died without issue, and also foure daughters married unto Sir *Robert Yatehall*, Sir *Iohn Fitz-Alan*, Sir *Roger de Somery*, and Sir *Robert*

de Mount-bault. After this, the title of *Arundell* budded forth againe, as I said before, in the *Fitz-Alans*: but that of Suffex lay hidden, and lost unto this our age: which hath scene five *Rascliffes*, descended of the most Noble house of the *Fitz-walters*, (that derived their pedigree from the *Clares*) bearing that honour, to wit, Robert created Earle of Suffex by King Henrie the Eight, who wedded Elizabeth daughter of *Henry Stafford Earle of Buckingham*, of whom he begat Henrie the second Earle: unto whom Elizabeth the daughter of *Thomas Howard Duke of Norfolk*, brought forth *Thomas*: who being Lord Chamberlaine to Queene Elizabeth, died without issue, a most worthy and honourable personage, in whose mind were seated joyntly both politike wisdome, and martiall prowesse, as England and Ireland acknowledged. Him succeeded Sir Henrie his brother, and after him Robert his onely sonne, now in his flower.

21. Henry 8.

This Province containeth parishes. 312.

Thus farre of Suffex, which together with Suth-rey, was the habitation of the *Regni*, in the time of the Britaines, and afterwards the kingdom of the *South-Saxons*, called in the Saxon tongue, *Suth-seaxan-ric*, which in the two and thirty yeare after the Saxons comming, was begun by *Ella*, who, as *Beda* writeth, *First among the Kings of the English Nation ruled all their Southern Provinces, which are severed by the River Humber, and the limits adjoyning thereto*. The first Christian King was *Edilwalch*, baptized in the presence of *Wulpher King of Mercia*, his Godfather, and he in signe of adoption gave unto him two Provinces, namely, the *Isle of Wight*, and the Province of the *Meanevari*: But in the 306. yeare after the beginning of this Kingdome, when *Aldinus* the last King was slaine by *Ina King of West-Saxons*, it came wholly under the Dominion of the West-Saxons.

The King-
dome of the
South-Sax-
ons.

D d 3

CANTIV M.



CANTIVM.



Ow am I come to Kent, which Countrey although master WILLIAM LAMBARD, a man right well endued with excellent learning, and as godly vertues, hath so lively depainted out in a full volume, that his painefull felicitie in that kind hath left little, or nothing for others, yet according to the project of this worke which I have taken in hand, I will runne it over also: and least any man should thinke, that as the Comickall Poet saith, I deale by way of close pilfering I willingly acknowledge him, (and deserve he doth no lesse) to have beene my foundation, and fountaine both of all (well-neere) that I shall say.

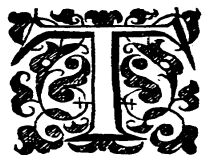
Time as yet hath not bereft this Region of the ancient name, but as it was called CANTIVM by Cesar, Strabo, Diodorus Siculus, Ptolomee, and others, so that Saxons named it, as Ninnius witnesseth, *Cant-guap-lant*, that is, The countrey of the people inhabiting Cantium, and we Kent. This name master Lambard deriveth from Caine, which among the Britaines, soundeth as much as a greene Bough, because in old time it was shadowed with woods. But it may be lawfull for mee to put in my conjecture; whereas Britaine heere runneth out with a mightie nooke, or corner into the East, and I have observed, that such a kind of nooke in Scotland, is called, Cantir; Again, that the Inhabitants of another Angle in that part of the Island, are by Ptolomee termed Cantæ, as also that the Cangani in Wales, were possessed of another corner, (to say nothing of the Cantabri, who likewise dwelt in an angle among the Celtiberians, who as they came from one originall, so likewise they were of the same language with our Britans) I would guesse, that the name was given by reason of the forme and scituation, and so much the rather, both for that our Frenchmen have used Canton for a Corner, and that (as it is probable) from the old Language of the Gauls: for it comes not from the Germane or Latine tongue, which together with that old tongue, be the mothers of this latter French tongue; and also because this Countrey by all the old Geographers is called Angulus. For it looketh full upon France with a huge Angle, compassed with the estuarie of Tamis, and with the Ocean sea, saving that Westward it hath Surrey, and southward Suffex to confine upon it.

KENT.

Carion, corruptly read in Diodorus Siculus.

Hereof cometh Canton in Heraldrie, for a corner; and the Helvetians countreys, were by the French called *Cantons*.

KENT.



The Region which we call *Kent*, extendeth it selfe in length, from West to East fifty miles, and from South to North 26. For situation, it is not uniforme as being more plaine toward the West, and full of shady woods; but higher Eastward, by reason of hills, mounting up with easie ascents. The Inhabitants distinguish it as it lyeth South-east-ward from the *Tamis*, into three plots or portions, they call them steps or degrees; the upper whereof, lying upon *Tamis*, they say is healthfull, but not so wealthy: the middle they account both healthfull, and plentiful: the lower they hold to bee wealthy, but not healthy: as which for a great part thereof is very moist, yet it bringeth forth ranke grasse in great plenty. Howbeit every where almost it is full of meadows, pastures, and cornefields: abounding wonderfully in apple-trees, and cherrie-trees also, which being brought out of *Pontus* into *Italie*, in the 608. yeare after the foundation of *Rome*, and in the 120. yeare after translated from thence into Britaine, prosper heere exceeding well, and take up many plots of land: the trees being planted after a direct manner one against another by square, most pleasant to behold. It hath villages and townes standing exceeding thicke, and well peopled, safe rodes, and free harbours for ships, with some veines of iron and marle: but the aire is somewhat thicke, and somewhere foggie, by reason of vapours rising out of the waters. At word, the revenues of the Inhabitants are greater both by the fertilitie of the soile, and also by the neighbourhood of a great citie, of a great river, and the maine sea. The same commendation of civilitie and courtesie which *Cesar* in old time gave the Inhabitants, is yet of right due unto them: that I may not speake of their warlike prowess, whereas a certaine Monke hath written, *How the Kentishmen so farre excelled, that when our armies are ready to joyne battaile, they of all Englishmen, are worthily placed in the Front*, as being reputed the most valiant and resolute souldiers. Which, *Iohn of Salisbury*, verifieth also in his *Polycraticon*. For good desert (saith he) of that notable victorie, which Kent shewed so puissantly, and patiently against the Danes, it retaineth still unto this daies in all battailes the honour of the first and fore-ward, yea, and of the first conflict with the enemy. In praise of whom *William of Malmesbury* hath likewise written thus, *The country people and towne dwellers of Kent, above all other Englishmen retaineth still the respect of their ancient worthinesse. And as they are more forward, and readier to give honour, and entertainment to others, so they be more slow to take revenge upon others.*

Cesar (to speake briefly by way of Preface, before I come to describe the particular places) when he first attempted the conquest of our Island; arrived at this country; but being by the Kentish Britans, kept from landing, obtained the shore not without a fierce encounter. When he made afterward his second voyage hither, here likewise hee landed his armie: and the Britaines with their horsemen and wagons encountered them courageously, but being soone by the Romans repulsed, they withdrew themselves into the woods. After this they skirmished sharply with the Roman Cavalry in their march, yet so, as the Romans had every way the upper hand. Also, within a while after, they charged the Romans againe, and most resolutely brake through the midst of them, and having slaine *Laberius Durus*, Marshall of the field retired safe: and the morrow after set upon the Foragers, and victualers of the campe, &c. which I have briefly related before out of *Cesar's* owne Commentaries. At which time, *Cynoborix*, *Carvilius*, *Taximagulus*, and *Seconax* were great Commanders of Kent (whom he, because he would be thought to have vanquished Kings, termeth *Kings*) whereas indeed they were but Lords of the countrey, or Noble men of the better mark.

After the Roman Empire was heere established, it was counted under the jurisdiction of the President of *Britannia Prima*. But the Sea coast which they termed

Rumney
Marsh.

P^h. 4. 15. ca. 25.
Cherries were
brought over
into Britaine
about the
yeare of our
Lord 48.
236.

Prowesse of
Kentishmen.

Tulius Cesar.

See Romans
in Britaine.
Page 34.



LITTVS SAXONICVM, that is, *The Saxon shore*, like as the opposite shore unto it, from the River *Rhene* to *Xantaigne* in France, had a Ruler over it from *Dioclesians* time whom *Marcellinus* calleth *Tractus maritimi Comitum*, that is, *The Count or Lieutenant of the Maritime tract*: the booke of *Notices*, stileth him: *The honourable, Earle or Lieutenant of the Saxon shore along Britaine*, whose office was with garrisons set upon the shore in places convenient, to repress the depredations, and robberies of Barbarians, but of Saxons especially, who grievously infected Britaine. And hee was under the dispose of the *Right honourable Generall of the Footemen*, whom they called *Præsentaliu*, who besides the Garrisons lying at the Havens, assigned unto him for the defence thereof at all affaires, *Victores Iuniores Britannicianos Primanos Iuniores*, and *Secundanos Seniores*, (these are the names of certaine bands or Companies) this hee had for his under Officers to it, *Principem ex officio Magistrum præsentaliu a parte peditum, Numerarios duos, Commentariensem, Cornicularium, Adjutorem, Subadjutam, Regerendarium, Exceptores singulares, &c.* Neither doubt I, but that our Ancestors imitated this custome of the Romans, when they placed over this coast a Governour or *Portreve*, whom now they use to call *Warden of the Cinque Ports*, because as the *Comes* or *Earle of the Saxon shore* afore said was Governour of nine Ports, so he is of five.

The Count
or Comes of
the Saxon
coast.

The L. War-
den or Keeper
of the Cinque
ports.

But when the Romans were departed quite out of Britaine, *Portigern*, who bare soveraigne rule in the greatest part of Britaine, placed over *Kent* a *Guorog*, that is to say, a *Vice Roy*, or *Freed man* under him, and unwitting to him, hee forthwith freely granted this region, as *Ninnius* and *William* of *Malmesbury* write, unto *Hengist* the Saxon, for his daughter *Rowens* sake: upon whom hee was exceedingly enamoured. Hence it came, that the first Saxon Kingdome erected in Britaine in the yeare of our Lord 456. was called by them *Cant-papapie*, that is, *The Kingdome of the Kentishmen*, which after three hundred and twenty yeares, when *Baldred* their last King was subdued, fell to bee under the Dominion of the West Saxons, to whom it continued subject untill the Normans Conquest: For then, if we may beleieve *Thomas Spot* the Monke, (for none of the more ancient Writers have recorded it) the Yeomanrie of Kent at *Svanes-comb* (a village this is where (they say) *Suene* the *Dane* (sometime pitched his campe) carrying before them in their hands every one a great greene bough representing a farre of a moving wood, yeilded themselves unto William the Conquerour upon this condition that they might retaine their ancient customes unviolated, and especially that which they call *Garvelkind*, that is, *Give all kinne*, by which they are not so bound by Copyhold, customarie tenures, or Tenant-right, as in other parts of England, but in manner every man is a free-holder, and hath some part of his owne to live upon. For lands of this nature are equally divided among the male children, or if there be no sonnes, among the daughters. By vertue of this also, they are at full age and enter upon their inheritance when they come to be fifteene yeares old: and lawfull it is for them to alienate and make it over to any one, either by gift or by sale, without the Lords consent. By this likewise, the sonne though their parents were condemned for theft, succcede them neverthelesse in such kind of Lands, &c. which I leave to Lawyers. So that, it is truely though not purely written in Latine in an old book thus: *The County of Kent avoucheth, that this County ought by right to be free from such kind of grievance: for it saith, that this County was never conquered, as the residue of England was, but by concluding of a peace subjected themselves to the dominion of the Conquerour, retaining to themselves all their liberties, immunities, and customes, which they had, and used before time.* After this, William the Conquerour, that hee might more firmly assure to himselfe Kent, which is the very key of England, placed a *Constable* over *Dover Castle*, and according to the ancient order of the Romans made him also *Lord Warden of the Cinque Ports*. And these bee they, *Hastings, Dover, Hith, Rumney* and *Sandwich*, unto which, *Winchelsey*, and *Rie* are joyned as principall ports, and other small townes as *Members*. Which because they are bound to serve in the warres by sea, enjoy many great immunities: as who are free from payment of Subsidies, and from Wardship of their children as touching the bodie, neither are they sued in any court, but within their owne townes; and of the inhabitants therein,

therein, such as they call *Barons*, at the Coronation of Kings and Queenes support the Canopies over them, yea and have a table by themselves that day spread and furnished on the Kings right hand, &c. And the Lord Warden himselfe, who is alwaies one of the Nobilitie of most approved trust, hath within his jurisdiction the authoritie of a Chancellour and Admirall in very many cases, and enjoyeth other rights besides. But now returne we to the places.

The Northside of this Country, Tamis the soveraigne of all Rivers in Britaine runneth hard by, as I have said before, which having held on his course past *Sarum*, forthwith being with a winding reach almost retired into himselfe, doth there admit into his channell into the first limit of this shire *Ravensburne* a small water, and of short course, which riseth in *Keston heath* hard under the pitching of an ancient campe, strange for the height of double rampiers, and depth of double ditches of all that I have seene: doubtlesse the worke of many Labouring hands. Of what civitie it was I could not discover for that the greatest part thereof is now severall, and overgrowne with a thicker, but verily great it was, as may bee gathered by the which is apparent. We may probably conjecture that it was a Roman Campe, but I might seeme to rove; if I should thinke it that Campe which *Julius Caesar* pitched, when the Britans gave him the last battaile with their whole forces, and then having bad successe retired themselves, and gave him leave to march to the *Tamis* side. And yet certes *Keston* the name of the place seemeth to retaine a parcell of *Caesars* name for so the Britaines called him, and not *Caesar*, as wee doe. As for the other small intrenchment not farre off by *W. Wickham*, it was cast in fresh memory when old Sir *Christopher Heydon* a man then of great command in these parts, trained the country people. This water having passed by *Bromeley* a Mansion house of the Bishops of *Rocheſter*, when it hath gathered strength, the depth of his ford giveth name to *Depe-ford*: a most famous Ship-docke, where the Kings ships are built, and such as be decayed, repaired: there also is a goodly Store-house and a Colledge (as it were) or incorporation ordained for the use of the navie. The place was sometime called *West-Greenwich*, and at the conquest of England fell to *Cislebert Mammot* for his share, whose Grand-child *Walkelin*, defended *Dover Castle* against King *Stephen*, and left behind him one onely daughter living, who when her brother was dead, by her marriage brought a rich inheritance called the *Honor of Mammot* to the family of the *Saies*.

From hence the *Tamis* goeth to *Green-wich*, that is, the *Greene Creeke*, for the creek of a river in the old English tongue was called *Wic*, a place in times past famous for the Danish Fleet that lay there often at *Rode*, and for the Danes crucified shewed unto *Ealpheg* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, whom in the yeare of our Lord a thousand and twelve, they cruelly executed with most exquisite torments. Whole death together with the cause thereof *Ditmarus Merſepurgius*, who about the same time lived, hath thus in the eighth booke of his *Chronicles* described. I understand (saith he) by the relation of *Sewald*, a pitifull deede, and therefore memorable: namely, That the perfidious crew of * *Northman* souldiours under *Thurkil* as yet their Captaine, who that excellent prelate, Archbishop of the Citie of *Canterburie* named *Ealpheg* with them, and them after their wicked manner imprisoned and bound, yea and put him to endure summe of money, and for the obtaining thereof did set downe a time betwene, that if in the space he could not by some acceptable ransom escape this momentary death, hee might yet in the meane while purge himselfe with many a groane, to be offered as a lively sacrifice unto the Lord. But when all the time & space appointed were come & gone, this greedy gulf of *Pagan* called forth the servant of the Lord, & in threatening wise demands this tribute promised unto them to be speedily and out of hand paid. Then he, as a meeke Lamb, Here am I, quoth he, ready to undergoe even for the love of Christ whatsoever ye presume now to doe against me, that I may deserve to become an example of his servants. And nothing am I troubled at this day. And whereas I seeme unto you a lyer, it is not mine owne will but great neede and power that hath done it. This body of mine, which in this exile I have loved overmuch, I present

Ravensburn.
An old great
Campe.

Depe-ford.

Magnignor.

Green-wich.

The same
that Danes.

as culpable unto you, and I know it is in your power to doe with it, what yee intend: but my sinfull soule that regardeth not you, I humbly commend to the Creator of all things. As hee was thus speaking, the whole rabble of these prophane wretches hemmed him round about and gathered together divers and sundry weapons to kill him. Which when their leader *Thurkill* saw a farre off, he came quickly running and crying, Doe not so in any wise I beseech you: and heere, with my whole heart I deliver unto you all my gold and silver and whatsoever I have heere, or can by any means come by, save my ship onely, that yee would not sinne against the Lords anointed. But this unbridled anger of his mates, harder than yron and flint was nothing mollified with so gentle words and faire language of his, but became pacified by shedding his innocent blood, which presently they altogether confounded and bleanded with Ox-heads, stones as thicke as haile, and bullets hurled at him. And to the memorie of this Saint *Ealpheg* is the Parish Church heere consecrated. But now is the place of very great name, by reason of the Kings house, which *Humfrey Duke of Gloceſter* built and named *Placence*; which also King *Henrie the Seventh* most sumptuously enlarged: who adjoynd thereto a little house of observant Friars, and finished that towre famous in Spanish fables, which the said Duke of *Gloceſter* begun, on an high hill, from whence there is a most faire, and pleasant prospect open to the river winding in and out, and almost redoubling it selfe, the greene meddowes and marshes underlying, the Citie of *London*, and the Countrie round about. Which being now enlarged and beautified by the L. *Henrie Howard Earle of Northampton, Lord Privie Seale, &c.* cannot but acknowledge him a well deserving benefactor. But the greatest ornament by far that graced this *Green-wich*, was our late Queene *Elizabeth*, who heere most happily borne to see the light by the resplendent brightnesse of her royall vertue enlightened all England. But as touching *Green-wich* have heere these verses of *Leland the Antiquarian Poet*:

Ecce ut jam niteat locus petitus
Tanquam ſyderea domus cathedra.
Quæ fastigia picta? quæ fenestra?
Quæ turres vel ad astra se efferentes?
Quæ porro viridaria, ac perennes
Fontes? Flora sinum occupat venusta
Fundens delicias nitentis horti.
Rerum commodus æſtimator ille,
Ripa qui variis modis amœna,
Nomen contulit eleganter aptum.

How glittereth now this place of great request,
Like to the ſeat of heavenly welkin hie?
With gallant tops, with windowes of the beſt.
What towres that reach even to the ſtarry ſkie:
What Orchards greene, what ſprings ay-running by.
Faيرة *Flora* heere that in this creeke doth dwell,
Beſtowes on it the flowers of garden gay;
To judge no doubt of things he knew full well,
Who gave this banke thus pleaſant every way,
So fit a name, as did the thing bewray.

Nothing elſe have I here to note (but that, for I would not have the remembrance of well deſerving benefactors to miſcarry) William Lambard a godly good Gentleman built an Almehouſe here for the ſuſtentation of poore perſons which hee named *The Colledge of Queene Elizabeths poore people*, and as the prying adventures of our religion then obſerved, was the firſt Proteſtant that built an Hoſpitaſſ. At the backe of this, as ye turne out ſcarce three miles off, ſtandeth *Eltham*, a retreating place likewiſe of the Kings, but unholyſomly by reaſon of the moate. *Anthony Becke* Biſhop of *Durham*, and Patriarch of *Ieruſalem* built this in a manner new, and gave unto Queene *Eleanor* wiſe to King *Edward the Firſt*, after hee had craſti-ly

D

E

Eltham.

The Booke.
of Durham.

The Breach.
1527.
Lcines.

*

Scurvy-graffe.
1527.
The herbe
Britannica.

* Friseland.

*

See afterward
in the British
Isles, concern-
ing the Arre-
nat or Armo-
ry of the Bri-
taines.

*

Sevenoke.

Knoll.

Orford.

Dartford.

ly conveyed unto himselfe the inheritance of the *Vesces*, unto whom this place fore belonged. For that Bishop, whom the last Baron of Vescy had made his for trust, of all his inheritance to the use of William *Vesey* his little base sonne, did not so faithfully, as he should with this orphan and ward of his, but spoiled him *Almwick Castle*, this, and other faire lands.

Beneath Greenwich, the Thames having broken downe his bankes, hath by inundation surrounded and overwhelmed many acres of land. For the innings whereof divers have as it were strugled with the waters now many yeares; and yet with great workes, and charges cannot overmaster the violence of the tides, which the Chanons of Liefnes adjoining kept sound and sweete land in their times. This Abbey was founded 1179. by Lord *Richard Lucie* chiefe Iustice of England, and by him dedicated to God and the memorie of *Thomas* of Canterbury, whom hee so admired for his piety, while other condemned him for perversitie against his Prince, as hee became here a devoured Chanon to him. Heere in the marshes groweth plentifully the hearbe *Cochlearia*, called by our Countrey men *Scurvy-grasse*, which some Physicians would have to be the same which *Plinie* calleth *Britannica*, by which name I have already made mention thereof: but heere what *Plinie* saith. In Germany, when *Germanicus Caesar* had removed his campe forward beyond *Rhene*, in the morning traile there was one fountaine and no more, of fresh water, whereof if a man dranke, within two yeares his teeth would fall out of his head and the joynts in his knees become soft and feeble. Those diseases the Physicians termed *Stomacace* and *Sceleterybe*. For in this hereof, there was found an hearbe called *Britannica*, holseome not onely for the fumes and maladies of the mouth but also against the *Squintie* and *stinging of serpents*, &c. They of * *Frisia*, what way our campe lay, shewed it unto our souldiours. And I marvelle should bee the cause of that name, unlesse peradventure they that confine upon the Ocean, dedicated the name thereof to Britaine, as lying so nere unto it. But that most learned *Adrian Junius* in his booke named *Nomenclator*, bringeth another reason of the name whom you may have recourse unto if you please: For, this word *Britannica* hath here diverted me a side from my course.

From thence the Thames being contained within his bankes meeteth with the river *Darent*, which falling downe out of *Suthrey* runneth with a soft streame not far from *Seven-oke* (so called as men say of seven exceeding great Oakes now cut downe) which commendeth Sir *William Sevenok* an Alderman of London, who being foundling and brought up here; and therefore so named, built heere in grateful remembrance an Hospital and a schoole. On the East side of it standeth *Knoll* so called for that it is seated upon a hill, which *Thomas Bouchier* Archbishop of Canterbury purchasing of Sir *William Fienes*, Lord *Say* and *Scale*, adorned with a faire house and now lately *Thomas Earle of Dorset* Lord Treasurer hath fourbished and beautified the old worke with new chargeable additaments. *Darent* then passeth by *Ottanforpe*, now *Otford*, a place famous in former ages for an overthrow and slaughter of the Danes which happened there in the yeare 1016. and lately by reason of the Kings house, which *William Warham* Archbishop of Canterbury built for himselfe and his successours so sumptuously, that for to avoid envie, *Cranmer* who next succeeded him was constrained to exchange it with King *Henrie the Eighth*. Somewhat lower hard by *Darent* standeth *Lullingstone*, where there was sometime a Castle the seat of a family of the same name, but now of Sir *Percival Hart*, descended from one of the coheires of the Lord *Bray*. Then *Darent* giveth name unto *Dartford*, commonly *Dartford* a great mercat towne well frequented, and well walled, where King *Edward the Third* built a Nunnery, which King *Henry the Eighth* converted into a house for himselfe and his successours: Heere the river *Crey*, anciently called *Creacan* interminglith it selfe with *Darent*, when in his short course hath imparted his name to five townes which hee watereth, as *Saint Mary Cray*, *Pauls Cray*, *Votes Cray*, *North Cray*, and *Crey-ford*, in former ages *Creacanford*, which *Hengist* the Saxon the eighth yeare after his arrivall, joynded battaile with the Brittaines, and after he had slaine their capitaines, brought them under with so great

laugh

laughter, that afterwards hee never stood in feare of them, but established his kingdom quietly in Kent.

From the river *Darent* or *Dart* unto the mouth of *Medway*, the Thames seeth nothing above him but little townes pleasantly seated, which to passe over in silence were no prejudice either of their fame or any thing els. Yet amongst them is *Swanscombe* (of which I have heretofore spoken) of honorable memorie among the Kentish men, for obtaining their continuance of their ancient franchises, afterward it was well knowne by the *Monteuses*, men of great Nobility the owners thereof who had there Barony here-about. And by it *Gravef-end* so called (as Master *Lambert* is my author) as the *Gravef-end*; that is, the limit of the *Gerewe* or *Reve*. A towne as well knowne as any other in England, for the usuall passage by water betweene it and London, since the Abbat of *Grace* by the tower of London, to which it appertained, obtained of King *Richard* the second that the inhabitants of it and *Milton* onely, should transport passengers from thence to London. King *Henrie the Eighth* when he fortified the sea coast, raised two Platforms or Block-houses here, and two other opposite on *Essex* side. Beyond *Gravef-end* is *Shorn* held anciently by Sir *Roger Northwood* by service to carry with other the kings tenants a white ensigne fortie daies at his owne charges when the King warred in Scotland. Somewhat more within the land, lieth *Cobham*, the habitation for a long time of the Barons of *Cobham*; of whom *John Cobham* the last of that name, founded a Colledge here and a castle at *Cowling*: who left one onely daughter wife to Sir *John de la Pole* Knight: Shee likewise bare but one daughter, though married in her time to many husbands. But by Sir *Reginald Braibroke* onely had shee issue. As for her husband Sir *John Old Castle*, whiles hee endeavoured to bring in innovation in religion, was both hanged, and burnt. Joane her onely daughter by Sir *Reginald Braybrooke*, was wedded unto *Thomas Broke* of *Somersetshire*, from whom six Lord *Cobhams* have lineally descended, and flourished in honorable reputation untill our time. From *Gravef-end* a little country called *Ho*, lying as a demy Island between the rivers *Thames* and *Medway* stretcheth it selfe into the East, and is for situation but unholsome. At the entry hereof is *Cowling Castle* built by *John Lord Cobham* in a moorish ground, and *Cliffe* a good bigge towne, so called of a cliffe upon which it standeth. But whether it bee that *Clives at Ho*, so famous in the tender age and infancie of our English Church, by reason of a Synode there holden I dare not as others doe, affirme: considering, that in regard of the site it is a place inconvenient for such an assembly; and besides that *Clives at Hoo* seemeth to have beene within the Kingdom of the *Mercians*. As for the river *Medweg*, now called *Medway*, and in the British tongue, (unlesse I misse of the truth,) *Vaga*, whereunto afterward was added *Med*, hath his spring head in the wood *Anderida* which is termed the *Weald*, that is a Wood-land country; and taketh up the South-part of this region farre and wide. At first, whiles it carrieth but a slender streame it receiveth the *Eden* by *Penshurst* the seat anciently (as it seemeth by the name) of Sir *Stephen de Penberst* who also was called *de Penshester* a famous Warden of the Cinque ports; but now the house of the *Sidneys* who derive their race from *William de Sidney* Chamberlaine to King *Henrie the second*: out of which came Sir *Henrie Sidney* that renowned Lord deputy of *Ireland*, who of the daughter of *John Dudley* Duke of *Northumberland*, and Earle of *Warwicke*, begat *Philip* and *Robert*. This *Robert*, James our soveraigne King, made him honorable, first by the title of Baron *Sidney* of *Penshurst* and afterwards, of *Viscount Lisle*. But Sir *Philip*, whom I cannot passe over in silence, beeing the glorious starre of this familie, a lively patterne of vertue, and the lovely joy of all the learned men, fighting valeriously with the enemy before *Zurphen* in *Gelderland* died manfully. This is that *Sidney*, whom, as Gods will was he should be therefore borne into the world, even to shew unto our age a sample of ancient vertues: so his good pleasure was before any man looked for it to call for him againe, and take him out of the world as beeing more worthy of heaven then earth. Thus wee may see, *Perfect vertues* suddenly vanishes out of sight, and the best men continue not long.

E e

then

Swane-scomb
that is King
Swanes
Campe.

Gravef-end.

Inquis. 35. E. 3.

Barons of
Cobham.

Clive at Hoo.

Medway.

Weald.

Penshurst.

Sidney.

Viscount Lisle.

See in Barke-
shire.
Philip Sidney.

Then the river *Medway*, branching it selfe into five streamlets, is joynd with many stone Bridges, and thereof giveth the name of *Tunbridge* to the towne thus situate, as the towne of Bridges. This about King *William Rufus* his time *Richard* sonne of Count *Gilbert*, Grandchild to *Godfrey* Earle of *Ewe*, & Lord of *Briony* obtained requitall for *Briony* in Normandie, when there had bin long debate about *Briony*. This *Richard*, (as *William Gemeticensis* writeth) in recompence for the same castle received England the towne of *Tunbridge* for it. And the report goeth, that the * Lowy of *Briony* measured round about with a line, and with the same line brought into England, he received so much ground measured out at *Tunbridge*. Shortly after, he built here a faire large castle fenced with the river, a deepe ditch, and strong walles; and albeit it is now ruinous and the Keepe attired with ivie, yet it manifestly sheweth what it was. His posteritie, who were Earles of *Glocester*, and surnamed *De Clare*, (for that they were Lordes *Clare* in *Suffolke*) built here a priorie for Chanons of Saint *Augustines* order, founded the parish Church which was appropriated to the Knights of Saint *John of Hierusalem*, and compounded about the tenure of the Mannour, for which there had been long suit, to hold it of the Archbishop of *Canterburie* by Knights fee, and to be their high Stewards at their intronizations. From these *Clares* Earles of *Glocester*, came by an heire generall to Sir *Hugh Audley* Earle of *Glocester*, and by his only daughter to the Earles of *Stafford*, who were afterward Dukes of *Buckingham*, & then them by attainder to the Crowne. It hath in latter ages bene beholde to Sir *Andrew Iude* of London for a faire free-Schoole, and to *John Wilford* for a causey toward London. Three miles directly South from hence in the very limit of *Suffex*, and neere *Frant*, I saw in a white-sandy ground divers vastie, craggie stones of strange formes, whereof two of the greatest stand so close together, and yet severed with a straight line, as you would thinke they had bene sawed asunder, and Nature when she reared these, might seeme sportingly to have thought of a Sea. But to returne to the River.

From *Tunbridge*, *Medway* passeth by *Haudelo*, from whence came that *Isabel delo*, who happily marrying the heire of the Lord *Burnell*, had issue by her a sonne, who was called *Nicholas*, summoned to Parliament among the Barons by the name of *Burnell*. Then *Medway* increased with another water, called *Twist*, which stretcheth about and insulateth a large plot of good ground, runneth on not farre from *Mereworth*, where stands a faire Castle like house, which from the Earles of *Arundell* came unto the *Newils* Lords of *Abergevennie*, and *Le Despencer*: whose heire the first Parliament that he held, restored, gave and granted, &c. the name, stile, title, honours, and dignitie of *Baronesse le Despencer*: & that her heires successively should be Barons & *Despencers* for ever. Now by this time *Medway* having received a rivelet, that looketh it selfe under ground, and riseth againe at *Loose*, serving thirteene fulling-mills, looketh to *Maidstone*, which seeing the Saxons called it *Medwegiton*, & *Medwegiton* beleeve verily it is the same *VAGNIACAE*, which *Antonine* the Emperor mentioneth, and *Ninnius* in his Catalogue of cities, calleth corruptly, *Caer Megwad*, for *Medwag*. Neither verily doth the account of distance disagree, From *Noviomagus* one way, and *Durobrovis* another, whereof I shall treat anon. Under the latter *Empire* as is to be seene in *Pentegerus* his table lately set out by *M. Velferus*, it is named *Medus*. Thus as yeeres by litte and litte turne about, so names likewise by litte and litte become changed. A large faire, and sweet towne this is, and populous: from this faire stone bridge, it hath bene beholding to the Archbishops of *Canterbury*, whom to grace this place at the confluence of the waters, *Boniface* of *Savoy*, built a small Colledge, *John Vfford* raised a palace for himselfe and successors, which *Stephen* increased, and betwene them, which it standeth in plight, *William Courtenay* erected a faire Collegiat Church, in which he so great a Prelate, and so high benedict lieth lowly entombed. One of the two common Gaoles or prisons of the County is here appointed. And it hath bene endowed with fundrie privileges by King *Edward* the sixt, incorporated by the name of Major and Jurates, all which

short time they lost by favouring rebels. But *Queene Elizabeth* amply restored them, and their Major, whereas anciently they had a *Portgreve* for their head Magistrate. This I note, because this [*Greve*] is an ancient Saxon word, and as yet among the Germans signifieth, a Ruler, as *Markegrave*, *Reingrave*, *Landgrave*, &c.

Here, a little beneath *Maidstone* Eastward, a pretty rivelet joyneth with *Medway*, springing first at *Lencham*: which towne by probable conjecture is the very same that *Antonine* the Emperour calleth *DVROLENVM*, written amisse in some copies, *DVROLENVM*. For *Durolenum* in the British language, is as much to say, as *The water*, *Lenum*. And besides the remaines of the name, the distance also from *DVROLENVM*, and *DVROBROVIS* proveth this to be *Durolenum*: to say nothing of the situation therof, neere unto that high rode way of the Romans, which in old time (as *Higden* of *Chester* doth write) led from *Dover* through the midst of *Kent*.

Hard by, at *Booston Malherb* hath dwelt a long time the family of the *Wottons*, out of which in our remembrance flourished both *Nicholas Wotton*, Doct. of the lawes; who being of the Privy counsell to *K. Henry the Eighth*, *K. Edward the sixth*, *Q. Mary*, and *Q. Elizabeth*, sent in Ambassage nine times to forreine Princes, and thrice chosen a Committie about peace between the English, French, and Scottish; lived a goodly time, and ran a long race in this life with great commendation of piety and wisedome: and also *Sir Edward Wotton*, whom for his approved wisedome in waighie affaires, *Q. Elizabeth* made Controller of her house, and *K. James* created Baron *Wotton of Melbury*. Here under is *Kilcomb* anciently a manshp of the family *De sancto Leodegario*, corruptly called *Sensleger* & *Sellenger*, & *Motinden*, where *Sir R. Rockefly* descended from *Knol*, and *Grevecar* built a house, who held lands at *Santon* by serjeantie to be *Paritarius Regis*, when the King goeth into *Gascoine*, donec perus fuerit pari soluturum pretii: and which as they that understand Law Latin (for I do not translate that he should be the Kings fore-foot-man, until he had worn out a paire of shoes, prized 4*d*. Neither hath this river any other memorable thing nere to it, but *Leeds Castle*, built by the noble *Grevequers*, who in ancient charters are named *de Grevequers*, & *De crepto corde*: afterwards it was the unfortunate seat of *Bartholomew L. Baldismar*, who perfidiously fortified it against *K. EDWARD* the second, who had freely given it him, and after that payed the due price of his disloyalty upon the gallows. The whole matter you may read here if you list out of a brieve historie penned by *Thomas de la More*, a gentleman that lived at the same time, and which of late I did publish in print. In the year 1521.

Queene Isabel came to the Castle of *Leeds*, about the feast of Saint *Michael*, minding there to lodge all night, but was not permitted to enter in. The King offended hereat, as taking it to be done in contempt of him, called certaine of the neighbour inhabitants out of *Essex* and *London*, and commanded them to lay siege unto the Castle. Now, there held the Castle at that time *Bartholomew de Baldismar*, who having left therein his wife and sonnes, was gone himselfe with the rest of the Barons to overthrow the *Hughes de Spencer*. Meane while, when they that were inclosed within, despaired of their lives, the Barons with their associates came as farre as *Kingston*, and by the mediation of the Bishops of *Canterbury* and *London*, together with the Earle of *Pembroch*, requested that the King would remove his siege, promising to deliver up the Castle, into the Kings hand after the next Parliament. But the King considering well, that the besieged could not long hold out, nor make resistance, being highly displeased & angered at their contumacy, would not give care to the Barons petitions. And when they had turned their journey another way, he afterward forced the Castle with no small trouble and labour about it: and when he had hanged all the rest that he found therein, he sent the wife and sonnes of *Bartholomew* aforesaid to the Tower of *London*. Thus *Medway* having received this rivelet from *Leeds*, fetching about through good grounds runneth by *Alington*, sometime a castle, now lesse than a castellet, where *Sir T. Wyatt* the elder, a worthy learned knight, reedified a faire house now decayed, whose son *S^r Thomas* enriched by an heire of *Tir T. Haut*, proposing to himselfe great hopes upo fair pretises pitifully overthrew himself & his state. Hence commeth *Medway* to *Ailsford* in the old English Saxon *Eaglesford*, which *H. of Huntingdon*, calleth *Elstre*, *Ninnius* *Episford*, who hath written, that it was named in the British tongue *Saiffenaeg* haibail of the Saxons there vanquished,

vanquished, like as others in the very same sense termed it *Anglesford*. For, *Gaufridus* the Britaine, *Gaufridus* sonne, did here set upon *Hengist* and the English men, whom being disraied, and not able to abide a second charge, he put all to flight so as they had been utterly defeated for ever, but that *Hengist* skillfull and prompt to prevent, and divert danger, withdrew himselfe into the Isle of Tence, until such time as he should see the Britanes were allaid, and fresh supplies came to succour out of Germanie. In this Battaille were slaine the Generalls of both *Caigern* the Britaine, and *Horfa* the Saxon: of whom the one, *Caigern* was hoisted not farre from hence, gave name to the place: and *Caigern* was red with a stately and solemne funerall is thought to have bene: carried neere unto *Ailesford* where under the side of a hill I saw foure huge, rude stones erected, two for the sides, one transversall in the midst betweene them, and the hugest of all piled and laied over them in manner of the British monument which is called *Stone heng* but not so artificially with mortis and tennis. Verily the unskilfull common people terme it at this day, of the same *Caigern*, or *Kis-Cosy boufe*. In *Ailesford* it selfe, for the religious house of the *Canons* founded by *Richard* Lord *Grey of Codnor* in the time of King *Henrie* the Third is now scene a faire habitation of Sir *William Sidney* a learned Knight painfully, and expensfully studious of the common good of his country as his endowed house for the poore, and the bridge heere with the common voice plentifully testifie. Neither is *Boxley* neere adjoining to be passed over in silence where *William de l'epres*, in *Flanders*, Earle of *Kent* founded an Abbey in the year our Lord 1145. and translated thither the Monkes, from *Clarevalle* in *Burgundy*. *Medway* having wound himselfe higher, from the East receiveth a brooke springing neare *Wrotham* or *Wirtham*, so named for plentie of wortes: where the Archbishops had a place until *Simon l'Isle* pulled it downe, leaveth *Malling* which once bee atowne after *Gundulph* Bishop of *Rochester* had there founded an Abbey of *Nunnes*, and watereth *Leibourn* which hath a Castle sometime the seate of a family thereof surnamed, out of which Sir *Foger Leibourn* was a great Agent in the *Baron* warres, and *William* was a Parliamentary *Baron* in the time of King *Edward* the First. Neare neighbour to *Leibourn* is *Brilling*, now the habitation of the Lord *Abergavenny* in times past parcell of the Baronie of the *Mammots*, then of the *Sales*, whose maintenance at length by heires generall came to the families of *Clinton*, *Fienes*, and *Aubrey*. Upon the banke of *Medway* Eastward somewhat higher, after it hath passed by *ling* where *Hamo* Heath Bishop of *Rochester* built an house for his successors, standeth an ancient Citie, which *Antonine* calleth *DVRO BRVS*, *DVRO-BARN*, and in another place more truly *DVRO PROV* and *DVROBROV*: *DVRO-BREVIS*: and in the declining state of the *Romane* Empire, proceeded time contracted his name so, that it came to be named *ROBIS*, and so by addition of *Cear*tep, which cometh of the latin word *Castrum*, betokeneth among our authors a city or Castle, was called *hpouecear*tep, and now with us more short *Robis*, and in *Latia* *Roffa*, of one *Rhufus* as *Bede* gueth: but it seemeth unto mee to name in it somewhat still of that old name *Durobrevis*. Neither is there cause why any man should doubt of the name, seeing that by the account of journeys, or distance betweene places, and *Bede*'s authoritie, it is named expressly in the Charter of the foundation of the Cathedral Church there *DVROBROVIS*: yet thus much I would advertise the Reader, that in the printed bookes of *Bede* it is read *Darnerum*, whereas in the manuscript copies it is termed *DVROBREVIS*: seated it is in a bottome, fortified on the one side with a marsh, the river, the weake walles, and as *William Malmesburie* saith, pent within too streights a roome: whereupon, in time past it was counted a Castle rather then a Citie. For, *Bede* calleth it *Castellum Cantuariensis*, that is, the *Kentishmens* Castle. But now it stretcheth forth with large suburbs on the West, East, and South sides. It hath passed through no few dangers and mischances. In the year of Christ 676. it was overthrowne and laied along by King *Aethelbert* the *Mercian*: and many a time afterward sacked by the Danes. *Aethelbert* King of

Horsted.

Caigern his Sepulchre.

Boxley.

Wrotham.

Malling.

Leibourn.

Baron Leibourn.
Birling.
Baron Say.

Durobrevis.

In an ancient table set forth by Welfer. Roibis.

Ceafter what it is. Rochester.

Kent erected there a sumptuous Church, which also he made more famous with the dignitie of Bishopricke, ordaining *Iustus* to bee the first Bishop of that See. But when it fell to decay for very age, Bishop *Gundulph* a Norman about the year 1080. recedified it, and thrusting out the Priests brought in Monkes in their roomes: and when they were cast out, a Deane, fixe Prebendaries and Scholars were substituted in their places. Neere unto the Church there standeth over the river an old Castle fortified both by art, and situation: Which, as the report goeth *Odo* Bishop of *Bayeux* and Earle of *Kent* built: But it was, no doubt, King *William* the first that built it: For in *Domesday* booke we read thus, *The Bishop of Roucester holdeth in Elesford, for exchange of the land on which the Castle is seated*. Yet, certaine it is, that Bishop *Odo* when his hope depended of a doubtfull change of the State, held this against King *William Rufus*: At which time there passed proclamation through England, that whosoever would not be reputed a *Niding*, should repaire to recover *Rochester* Castle. Whereupon the youth fearing that name, and most reproachfull and opprobrious in that age, swarmed thither in such numbers, that *Odo* was enforced to yeeld the place, lose his dignitie, and abjure the realme. But concerning the recedification of this Castle about this time, listen what the * *Text of Rocester saith*, when King *William* the second would not confirme the gift of *Lanfrank* as touching the Manour of *Hedenham* in the County of *Buckingham*, made unto *Rochester* church, unlesse *Lanfrank* and *Gundulph* Bishop of *Rochester* would give unto the King an hundred pound of deniers: At last by the intercession of Sir *Robert Fitz Hamon* and *Henry* Earle of *Warwick*, the King granted it thus farre forth in lieu for the money which bee demanded for grant of the Manour, that Bishop *Gundulph*, because he was very skilfull and well experienced in architecture and masonrie should build for the King at his owne proper charges a Castle of stone. In the end, when as the Bishops were hardly brought to give their consent unto it before the King, Bishop *Gundulph* built up the Castle full and whole at his owne cost. And a little after, King *Henrie* the first granted unto the Church of *Canterbury* and to the Archbishops, the keeping thereof, and the Constablership to hold ever after, (as *Florentius* of *Worcester* saith) yea and licence withall, to build in the same towne for themselves. Since which time it was belaid with with one or two great sieges, but then especially, when the Barons with their *Al'armes* made all England to shake, and *Simon Montford* Earle of *Leicester* assaulted it most fiercely, though in vaine, and cut downe the wooden bridge, which was after repaired. But in the time of King *Richard* the Second, Sir *Robert Knowles* by warlike prowes raised from low estate to high reputation, and great riches, built a very goodly stone bridge of arch-work with money levied out of French spoiles. At the end of the said bridge, Sir *John Cobham* who much furthered the worke, erected a Chapell (for our elders built no notable bridge without a chapell) upon which besides armes of Saints, are seen the armes of the King and his three uncles then living. And long after Archbishop *Warham* coped a great part of the said bridge with iron bars. Under this, *Medway* swelling with a violent and swift streame strugleth and breaketh through roaring and loud; but forthwith running more still and calme becommeth a road at *Gillingham* and *Chetham* for a most royall and warlike navy of strong and serviceable ships, and the same most ready alwaies at a short warning: which, our late gracious Ladie *Queene Elizabeth*, with exceeding great cost built for the safeguard of her subjects and terror of her enemies; and for the defence thereof raised a castelet at *Vynore* upon the river side.

Now *Medway* growne more full and carying a greater breadth, with his curling waves right goodly and pleasant to behold, runneth a long by the fruitfull fields, until that being divided by meeting with *Iland Shepy*, (which wee supposed to bee *Ptolemeis TOLIATIS*) maketh his issue into the *Estuarie* or *Fritch* of *Thames* at two mouthes. Of which twaine, the Westerne is called *West-Swale*: the Easterne, that seemeth to have severed *Shepey* from the firme land, is named *East-Swale*: but by *Bede*, termed *Gentlad* and *Tenlet*. This Isle, of the sheepe, whereof it feedeth mighty great flocks, being called by our ancestours *Shepey*, that is, *The Isle of Sheep*, passing plentiful in corne, but scarce of woods containeth twentie one miles in compasse. Vpon the

*
Niding.
William of
Malmesbury.Textus Ro-
fensis.
An ancient
Manuscript
booke of that
church.*
The French
called him
Canol.The Kings
Navy.Toliat is an
Isle.Shepey.
Iu. Iu.

the North-shore it had a little Monasterie, (now they call it Minster) built by *Sede- ga* wife of *Ercambert* the King of Kent, in the yeare of 710. Under which, a certain *Brabander* of late beganne to trie by the furnace out of stones found upon the shore both *Brimstone* and *Coperas*. It hath Westward in the Front thereof a very big and strong Castle, which King *Edward* the third built, as himselfe writeth, *Place for site, to the terror of his enemies, and solace of his people*: unto which hee adjoyntly *Burgh*, and in the honour of *Philip* the Queene his wife called it *Queene-borough*; one would say, *The Queens Burgh*. The Constable whereof at this day, is *Sir Edmund Hoby*, who hath polished his excellent wit with learned studies. Eastward, is *Sharlund* seated, which belonged in late times to the *Cheineies*, and now to *Sir Philip Herbert* second sonne to *Henry Earle of Pembroch*, whom King *Tames* in one and the same day created *Baron Herbert of Sharlund*, and *Earle of Marmorie*.

This Isle appertaineth to the Hundred of *Middleton*, so named of *Middleton* the towne, now *Milton*. This was some time a towne of the Kings abode, and of greater name by farre than at this day, although, *Hasting* the Danish pirate for to annoy it, fortified a Castle hard by in the yeare 893. Neere adjoyning heereto *Sittingburn* a towne furnished with Innes sheweth it selfe with his new Major and corporation: the remains also of *Thong Castle*, which as some write, was so called for the *Hengist* built it by a measure of thongs cut out of a beasts hide, when *Fortigen* gave so much land to fortifie upon, as hee could encompassse with a beasts hide cut into thongs. Since the conquest it was the seat of *Guncelline of Baldismere*, of noble parentage, whose sonne *Bartholomew* begat *Guncelline*: and hee by the Inheritance of *Raulph Fitz-Barnard* Lord of *Kings-Downe* was father to that seditious *Sir Bartholomew* Lord *Baldismere* of whom I spake: he againe of *Margaret Clare* begat *Sir Giles* Lord *Baldismere* that died without issue; also *Margerie*, wife to *William Russ* of *Hamlake*; *Maude* the wife of *Iohn Vere* Earle of *Oxford*; *Elizabeth* espoused to *William Bobun* Earle of *Northampton*, and afterward to *Edmund Mortimer*; and *Margerie* whom *Sir Iohn Tiptoft* wedded: from whom descended a goodly offspring and fine race of great nobilitie.

Then saw I *Tenham* not commended for health, but the parent as it were of all the choise fruit gardens, and Orchards of Kent, and the most large and delightheous of them all, planted in the time of King *Henrie* the Eighth by *Rich. Harris* his fruer, to the publike good. For thirty Parishes thereabout, are replenished with Cherry gardens, and Orchards beautifully disposed in direct lines. Amongst these is *Feversham* very commodiously situate. For, the most plentiful part of this country lieth round about it, and it hath a creeke fit for bringing in and carrying forth commodities; whereby at this day it flourisheth amongst all the neighbour townes. It seemed also in former times to have flourished, considering that King *Aethelstane* assembled higher an assembly the Sages of his Kingdome, and made lawes heerein the year of our redemption 903.

King *Stephen* also he that usurped the Kingdome of England, founded an Abbey heere, for the Monkes of *Clugny*; in which, himselfe, *Maude* his wife, and *Emilius* his sonne were entombed. Nigh thereto, like as else where through this Countie, are found pits of great depth, which being narrow in the mouth and very spacious beneath have their certaine distinct roomes or chambers (as it were) with their severall supporting pillars of chalke. Concerning these there are divers opinions. I for my part, cannot tell what to thinke of them unless they were those pits, out of which the Britaines in old time digged forth chalke or white marle to dung their grounds withall, as *Plinie* writeth. For, they sound pits, saith hee, *An hundred fathoms deepe, streight at the mouth, but of great capacitie within*: like unto these very same of which we now speake.

And verily, no where else are they found but in a chalkie and marly soile. Vellese a man would thinke, that our English-Saxons digged such caves and holes to the same use and purpose, as the Germans did, of whom they were descended. For, they

were wont as *Tacitus* writeth, to make holes and caves under the ground, and those to charge aloft with great heapes of dung, as harbours of refuge for Winter, and garners of receipt for corne, because by such like places they mitigate the rigour of cold wether: and if at any time the enemy commeth, hee waileth onely the open ground: but as for those things that lie hidden and buried under the earth, they are either unknowne, or in this respect doe disappoint the enemies, for that they are to be sought for.

From above *Feversham*, the shoare runneth on, plentifull of shel-fish, but especially oysters, (whereof there are many pits, or stewes) as far as *Reculver*, and farther. This *Reculver*, is a place of ancient memorie, named in the old English-Saxon *Reaculf*, but in elder time *REGVLBIUM*. For so it is named, in the Roman Office booke *Notitia Provinciarum*; which reporteth that the capitaine of the primer band of the *Vetassians* lay heere in garrison under the Lieutenant of the Saxon-shoare: (for so was the sea coast a-long this tract called) who had the command then of nine Ports, as the L. Warden now hath of five Ports. And verily the Roman Emperours coines digged up there give testimony to this antiquitie of the place: In it *Aethelbert* King of Kent when he had made a grant of *Canterbury* to *Augustine* the Monk, built himselfe a Palace, and *Bassa* an English-Saxon beatified it with a Monasterie, out of which *Brightwald* the Eighth Archbishop of *Canterbury* was elected. Of this Monastery, or Minster it was named *Raculf-Minster*, what time as *Edred* brother to King *Edward* the Elder gave it to *Christ-church* in *Canterbury*. Howbeit, at this day it is nothing else but an uplandish country towne, and if it bee of any name, it hath it for the salt savory Oysters there dredged, and for that Minster; the steeples whereof shooting up their loftie spires stand the Mariners in good stead, as markes, whereby they avoide certaine sands and shelves in the mouth of the *Thames*. For, as he *verifieth in his *Philippeis*.

*Cernit oloriferum Thamisin sua Doridi amara.
Flumina miscentem*

It now beholds swann-breeding *Thames*, where he doth mix his streame
With brackish sea

Now are we come to the Isle *Tanes*, which the river *Stour*, by *Bede* named *Wantsum*, severeth from the firme land by a small channell running betweene, which river made of two divers rivelets in the wood-land called the *Weald*, so soone as it goeth in one entire streame, visiteth *Ashford* and *Wye*, two prery Mercate townes well knowne: Either of them had sometimes their severall Colledges of Priests: the one built by *Iohn Kemp* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who was there borne: the other to wit of *Ashford*, by *Sir R. Fogge* Knight. *Wye* also had a speciall fountaine, into which God infused a wonderfull gift and vertue at the instant prayer of *Eustace* a Norman Abbat, if we may beleve *Roger of Hoveden*, whom I would advise you to have recourse unto if you take delight in such like miracles. As how the blind by drinking thereof recovered sight, the dumbe their speech, the deafe their hearing, the lame their limbes. And how a woman possessed of the devill, sipping thereof vomited two toades which immediately were first transformed into huge blacke dogs, and againe into asses: and much more no lesse strange than ridiculous, which some in that age as easily believed, as others falsely forged. Thence the *Stour* leaving *Eastwell* the inhabitation of the family of the *Finches*, worshipfull of it selfe, and by descent from *Philip Belknap*, and *Peoplesham*: goeth on to *Chilham*, or, as other call it *Iulham*, where are the ruines of an old Castle, which one *Fulbert* of *Dover* is reported to have built: whose issue male soone failed, and ended in a daughter inheritrice, whom *Richard* the base sonne of King *Iohn* tooke to wife, and had with her this Castle and the lands thereto belonging: Of her hee begat two daughters; namely *Lora* the wife of *William Marmion*, and *Isabell* wife first to *David* of *Strathboly* Earle of *Athole* in Scotland, afterward to *Sir Alexander Biall* who was called

Pits made in Kent.

*
Reculver.
Regulbium.

*
Hadrianus
Junius.

Stoure river.

Ashford.
Wic.

Page 4157.

Chilham.

Fulbert of
Dover.

Queene
Borough.

Tenham.

Chery gar-
dens.

Feversham.

1306.

* Fel-bo-
rough.
As we call In-
ham, Giban.

La'vrius Durus
a Tribunc.

Durovernum.
* Welth.

Canterbury.

Augustine the
Apostle of the
Englithmen.

Pall what it is.

Anno. 7093.

called to Parliament by the name of Lord of *Chilham*: & mother to that John *Fate* of *Atbole*, who being condemned oftentimes for treason was hanged at the last upon a gibbet fifty foot high (as the King commanded because he might be so much the more conspicuous in mens eyes, as he was of higher and nobler birth) and being downe halfe alive, had his head smitten off, and the truncke of his body throwen to the fire, a very cruell kinde of punishment and seldome seene among us. And after his goods were confiscate, King Edward the first bounteously bestowed this castle together with * *Felbergh* Hundred upon Sir *Bartholomew Badilsmer*; who likewise quickly lost the same, for his treason, as I have before related. There is a constant report among the inhabitants, that *Iulius Caesar* in his second voiage against the Britans encamped at this *Chilham*, and that thereof it was called * *Iulham*, that is, *Iulius his Mansion*: and if I be not deceived, they have the truth on their side. For heereabout it was when at his second remove, he in his march staied upon the intelligence that his ships were fore weather-beaten, and thereupon returned and left his army encamped tennue daies while he rigged and repaired the decayes of his Navy. And in his march from hence, was encountered sharply by the Britans, and lost with many other *Laberius Durus* a Marshall of the field. A little beneath this towne there is a pretty hillocke to be seene apperelled in a fresh suit of greene ford, where men say, many yeeres agoe one *Iulhaber* was entered, whom some dreame to have bene a Giant, others, a Witch. But I conceiving an opinion that some antiquity lieth hidden under that name, doe almost perswade my selfe, that the foresaid *Laberius* was heere buried, and so that the said hillocke became named *Iul-laber*.

Five miles from hence the river *Stoure* dividing his Channell, runneth swiftly by *DYROVERNVM* the chiefe Citie of this Countie and giveth it his name. For *Durwhern* in the * *British* tongue signifieth a swift river: *Ptolome* calleth it in kind of *Durovernum*, *DARVERNVM*, *Bede* and others *DOROBORNIA*, the English Saxons *Cant-papa-bypig*, that is, *The Kentishmens citie*: *Ninnius* and the Britans *Cent*, that is, the Citie of *Cent*, wee, *Canterbury*, and the later writers in *Latine* *Canthuari*. A right aient citie this is, and famous, no doubt in the Romans time: not so great (as *William of Malmesbury* said, 400. yeares since) nor verie small: much renowned both for the situation, and exceeding fertility of the soile adjoining, as also for the whole and undecaied enclosing it round about, by reason likewise of the rivers watering, and commodiousnesse of woods there about; besides the vicinity of the sea, yeelding much fish to serve it. Whiles the Saxons *Heptarchie* flourished, it was the head citie of the kingdome of Kent and the kings seat; untill such time as king *Ethelbert* passed grant of it together with the roialty thereof unto *Augustine* the Apostle as they called him, and consecrated *Archbishop of the English Nation*, who established here his habitation for himselfe and his successors. And albeit the Metropolitan dignity, together with the honour of the *Pall* (that is an Episcopall vestiment that was coming over the shoulders, made of a sheepe skin, in memoriall of him that sought the flay sheepe, and having found the same laid it upon his shoulders, wrought and embroydered with crosses, first laied upon Saint Peters coffin or shrine) was ordained by Saint *Gregorie* the Great then Pope, to bee at London, yet for the honour of *Augustine* it was translated hither. For, *Kennelph* King of the Mercians thus writteth unto Pope *Leo*. Because *Augustine* of blessed Memorie, the minister of Gods word unto the English Nation, and who most gloriously governed the Churches of English Saxons, departed this life in the Citie of *Canterburie*, and his bodie was there buried in the Minke of Saint Peter Prince of the Apostles, the which *Laurence* his successors consecrated, it hath pleased all the wise men of our nation, that the Metropolitan honour should bee conferred upon that Citie where his bodie was entombed, who engraffed in these parts the verie Christian faith. But whether the Archbishops See and Metropolitan dignity were here ordeined by authority of the wise men of our nation (that is to say) the States of the Parliament, (to speake according to our time) or by *Augustine* him selfe whiles hee lived, as others would have it: the Bishops of Rome, who next followed established the same so, as they decreed, That to have it severed and taken away from them

was an abominable act punishable with Curse and hell-fire. Since which time, it is incredible, how much it hath flourished, in regard both of the *Archiepiscopal* dignity, and also of that schoole of the better kind of literature which *Theodore* the seventh Archbishop erected there. And albeit it was sore shaken with the Danish wars, and consumed for a great part thereof sundrie times by casualtie of fire, yet rose it up alwaies againe more beautifull and glorious then before.

After the Normans entrie into this land when King *William Rufus*, as it was recorded in the Register of Saint *Augustines* Abbey, had given the Citie of *Canterburie* wholly in fee simple unto the Bishops, which before time they had held at the Kings contrie only, it begun not onely to get heart againe; what through the fame of the religious piety of godly men there; and what through the bounty of the Bishops, and especially of *Samon Sudbury*, who rebuilt the walls new; but grew also as it were upon a sodaine to such a state, that for beauty of private dwelling, houses it equalled all the cities of Britaine, but for the magnificent and sumptuous building of religious places and the number of them, it surpassed even those that were most famous. Among which; two especially sarmounted all; *Christs-church*, and Saint *Augustines*, both of them replenished with Monkes of the Order of Saint *Benet*. And as for *Christs-Church*, it raiseth it selfe aloft neare the heart of the Citie, with so great a majestic and stateliness, that it striketh a sensible impression of religion into their minds that behold it a farre off. This Church built in old time, as *Beda* saith, by the faithfull and believing Romans, the same *Augustine* of whom I spake, got into his hands, consecrated it to *Christ*, and assigned it to be the seat for his successors: wherein 73. Archbishops in a continued traine of succession have now set. Of whom *Lanfranke*, and *William Corboyle* brought the upper part of the Church, and they that succeeded, the nethermore, (whereas that the more ancient worke had bene consumed with fire) to that stateliness which now wee see not without exceeding great charges, which a devout perswasion in former times willingly disbursed. For a number of high, of low, and of meane degree flocked hither in pilgrimage with very great and rich oblations to visit the tombe of *Thomas Becket* the Archbishop: who being slaine in this Church by Courtiers, for that in maintaining of the Ecclesiasticall liberties, hee had stubbornly opposed himselfe against the King, was matriculated a holy Martyr by the Bishop of Rome, and worshipped as a Saint, and his shrine so loaden with great offerings, that the meanest part of it, was of pure gold, so bright, so shining and glittering, as *Erasmus* (who saw it) saith, was every corner with rare and exceeding big precious stones: yea, and the Church all round about did abound with more than princelike riches: and as though *Christs* name to whom it was dedicated, had bene quite forgotten, it came to be called *Saint Thomas Church*. Neither was it for any thing else so famous, as for his memoriall and sepulture, although it may justly vaunt of many famous mens tombs and monuments: especially, that of *Edward* surnamed *The Blaque Prince of Wales*, a most worthy and renowned Knight for warlike prowesse, and the very wonder of his age: also of *Henry the Fourth*, a most puissant King of England. But *Henry* the Eighth scattered this wealth heaped up together in so many ages; and dispersed those Monkes: in lieu of whom were placed in this *Christs-Church*, a *Deane*, an *Archdeacon*; *Prebendaries* twelve, and *Sixte Preachers*, who in places adjoining round about should teach and preach the word of God. The other Church that alwaies mightily strove with this for superioritie, stood by the Cities side Eastward, knowne by the name of Saint *Augustines*: which *Augustine* himselfe, and King *Ethelbert* at his exhortation, founded and dedicated to Saint *Peter* and *Paul*: that it might be the Sepulture place, both for the Kings of Kent, and also for the Archbishops; (For, as yet it was not lawfull to bury within Cities) and endowed it with infinite riches, granting unto the Abbat a Mint-house with priviledge to coine money. And now, at this day, notwithstanding the greatest part thereof is buried under his owne ruines, and the rest were converted to the Kings house; yet it sheweth manifestly to the beholders how great a thing it was. *Augustine* himselfe was enterr'd in the porch of the same, with this Epitaph, as witnesseth *Thomas Spot*.

Inclutus

*Incoltas Anglorum praeulpius, & decus alium,
Hic Augustinus requiescit corpore sanctus.*

The bodie of Saint Augustine doth here interred lie:

A Prelate great, devout also, and Englands honor hic.

But, as *Bede* reporteth, who rather is to be credited, this was the more ancient description of his tombe.

HIC REQUIESCIT DOMINVS AVGVSTINVS DOROVERNENSIS
ARCHIEPISCOPVS PRIMVS, QVI OLIM HVC A BEATO GREGORIO
MAMAE VRBIS PONTIFICE DIRECTVS, ET A DEO OPERATIONE
CVLORVM SVFFVLTVS, ET ETHELBERTVM REGEM AC GENTEM
AE IDOLORVM CVLTV AD FIDEM CHRISTI PERDVXIT, ET COMPTVM
IN PACE DIEBVS OFFICII SVI DEFVNCTVS EST SEPTIMO KALENDAR
NIAS, EODEM REGE REGNANTE.

HERE RESTETH DAN. AVGVSTINE, THE FIRST ARCHBISHOP OF
TERBURY: VWHO BEING IN TIMES PAST DIRECTED HITHER FROM
SED GREGORIE THE BISHOP OF ROME, AND THROUGH THE WORKING
OF MIRACLES SVPPORTED BY GOD, BOTH BROUGHT KING ETHELBERT
AND HIS PEOPLE FROM IDOLATRY TO THE FAITH OF CHRIST, AND
SO AFTER THE DATES OF HIS FVNCTION ACCOMPLISHED IN PACE, AND
THE SEVENTH DAY BEFORE THE KALENDS OF IYNE, IN THE SAME KING
REIGNE.

Together with him in the same porch were buried fixe Archbishops next
ding, and in memoriall of these seven namely, *Austen, Laurence, Mellitus, John
Honorus, Deus-dedit*, and *Theodosius*, were these verses (such as they are) engraven
there in marble:

SEPTEM SVNT ANGLIS PRIMATES ET PROTO PATRES,
SEPTEM RECTORES, SEPTEM CORLOQUE TRIONES;
SEPTEM CISTERNAE VITAE, SEPTEMQUE LUCERNAE;
ET SEPTEM PALMAE REGNI, SEPTEMQUE CORONAE,
SEPTEM SVNT STELLAE, QUAS HABET TENET AREA CELLARVM.

Seven Patriarchs of England, Primates seven:
Seven Rectors, and seven Labourers in heaven.
Seven Cesternes pure of life, seven Lamps of light
Seven Palmes, and of this Realme seven Crowns full bright,
Seven Starres, are heere bestow'd in vault below.

I may not forget another Church neere unto this, built as *Bede* saith, by the
mans and consecrated to *Saint Martin*, wherein, before *Austen* coming, *Arch
wife* to King *Ethelbert*, descended from the bloud Royall of France was wont to
quent divine Christian service. Concerning the *Castle* on the South side of the
tie, the Bulwarks whereof now are decayed, it maketh no shew of any great antiquity,
and there is no memorable thing therof come to my knowledge, but only that it was
built by the Normans: as touching the dignitie of the See of Canterbury, which
times past carried a great State, I will say nothing but this, that, as in former
during the Roman Hierarchie, the Archbishops of Canterbury were Primates of
Britaine, Legates to the Pope, and as *Frabae* the second said, The Patriarches, as
of another world: so when the Popes authoritie was abrogated, a decree passed in the
Synode, Anno, 1534. that laying aside the said title, they should bee stiled Primates
and Metropolitans of all England. Which dignitie the right reverend Father in Christ
D. *John Whitgift* lately held, who devoutly consecrated both his whole life to God
all his painefull labours to the Church, and in the year 1604. slept in the Lord.

late much missed of all good men: After whom succeeded Doctor *Richard Bancroft*,
a man of singular courage and counsaile, in establishing and supporting the state Ec-
clesiasticall. For the Latitude of Canterbury, the Pole Artick is elevated above the
Horizon there fifty one degrees and sixteene minures, and the Longitude is reckoned
to be foure and twenty degrees, and fittie one minutes.

Scour by this time having gathered his waters all into one streame runneth
beside *Hackington*, where *Dame Lora* Countesse of Leicester, a most honou-
rable Lady in those daies, having abandoned all worldly pleasures, sequestred her selfe
from the world devoutly, to serve God wholly. Afore which time *Baldwin* Arch-
bishop of Canterbury began a Church there in the honour of Saint Stephen, and
Thomas of Canterbury. But being inhabited by the Bishop of Rome his authoritie,
for feare the same might prejudice the Monkes of Canterbury, hee gave over the
workes, Howbeit ever since, the name remained and the place is called Saint Ste-
phens: of which Sir *Roger Manwood* Knight, L. cheife Baron of the Exchequer, a
man of exquisite knowledge in our common lawes, (unto whom for his bounteous
liberalitie the poore inhabitants are much beholding) was of late time a right great
ornament: and even so is his sonne at this day Sir *Peter Manwood Knight of the Bath*,
whom I cannot but mention when as he is a favourer of vertue, and learning. From
thence Scour passeth by *Fordich* (called the *little Burrough of Forewich* in King *Wil-
liam the Conquerours* booke) a place of note for excellent good trouts; and so in for-
mer time to *Stoure-mouth*, which it hath now forsaken a mile, and more; yet left and
bequeathed his name to it. But now by *Stoure-mouth* runneth a brooke which issuing
out of Saint *Eadburghs* well at *Liming* (where the daughter to King *Ethelbert* first of
our nation tooke the veile) while it seeketh the sea, seeth *Elham* a mercate towne
of which I have read nothing, but that the Mannour was the inheritance of *Julian
Leibourn* a Ladie of great honour in her time, who was mother of *Laurence Hastings*
first Earle of Penbrooke of that surname, and after wife to *William Clinton* Earle of
Huntingdon. Then it holdeth his course by divers villages, which thereof receive the
addition of *Bourn*, as *Bishops-bourn*, *Hawles-bourn*, *Patricks-bourn*, and *Beakes-bourn*. This
bourne is that river *Stoure* as *Cesar* calleth it (as I have observed travailling lately in
these parts) which *Cesar* came unto, when he had marched by night almost twelve
Italian miles from the sea-coast, and where hee had the first encounter, in his second
expedition into Britaine; with the Britaines, whom he drave into the woods, where
they had a place fortified both by nature, and mens labour, with a number of trees
hewen downe and plashed to fore-clofe the entries, But yet the Romans forced an
entrie, drave them out, and there about encamped. The place of campe as I heare, is
neare *Hardes*, a place of ancient Gentlement of that surname, descended from *Esten*
grave, *Herengod*, and the *Fitz-Bernards*.

Belowe *Stoure-mouth*, *Stoure* dividing his streame taketh two severall waies, and
leaving that name is called *In lade* and *Wautsume*, making the Isle of *Tenet* on the
West and South side: for on all other sides it is washed with the maine Sea. This
Island *Solinus* named *ATHANATON*, and in other copies *THANATON*: the Britaines
Inis Rubin, as witnesseth *Asserius*: happily, for *Rhutupin*, of *Rhutupina* a Citie adjoin-
ing. The English Saxons called it *Tanet*, and *Tanetcland*, and we *Tenet*. All the Isle
standeth upon a whitish mile, full of goodly corne fields, and being a right fertile
soile, carrieth in length eight miles, and foure in breadth: reckoned in old time to con-
taine 600. Families: in stead whereof, it is corruptly read in *Bede* *Milliarum Sex-
centarum*, for, *Familiarum Sexcentarum*. But whereas *Solinus* writeth that there is not a
snake creeping in this Isle, and that the mould or earth carried from hence killeth snakes, it
is now proved to bee untrue. That *Etymologie* therefore derived *tanet* from *tanet*, that
is, from the death of snakes, falleth quite to the ground. Here the English Saxons
landed first: here by the permission of *Guortigern* they first seated themselves: here
was their place of refuge; and here *Guortimor* the Britaine made a great slaughter of
them: when, at *Lapis Tituli*, (for so is that place named in *Ninnius* which we now call
Stonar almost in the same sense, and haven certainly it was) hee put them to flight

Hackington.

Saint Ste-
phens.

Fordich.

The first Eng-
lish Nunne.

Elham.

Inq. 2. E. 3.

Herdes.

* Hides in
English, An
hides as it is
thought con-
sisteth of an
hundred acres,
called in latine
in old time,
Familia, Man-
sa and Ma-
nens. *Lapis
tituli*.

flight and forced them with all the speed they might to take their Pinnaces.

In which place also, he gave commandment, saith he, that himselfe should be buried to repress there by, as he thought, the furious outrages of the English Saxons: in like sort as *Scipio Africanus* did, who commanded that his tombe should be so set, as that it might looke toward Africa: supposing that his verie tombe would be a terror to the *Carthaginians*. Here also at *Vvipped fleet*, (so called of *Vvipped* the Saxon there slaine) *Hengest* discomfited the Britains and put them to flight, after he had fore tired them with sundry conflicts. *S. Austine* our Apostle (as they call him) many years after landed in this Isle, unto whose blessing the credulous Clergie ascribed the plentiful fertility of the country: and the Monke *Gotceline* cried out in this manner: *O the land of Tenet, happy by reason of her fertility, but most happy for receiving and entertaining so many Divine in-commers bringing God with them, or rather so many heavenly citizens.* *Egbert* the third King of the Kentishmen to pacifie dame *Dunm* a devout Lady, whom before time he had exceedingly much wronged, granted her a faire piece of land, wherein she erected a Monastery for 70. veiled virgins: the prioress whereof was *Mildred*, for her holinesse canonized a Saint, and the Kings of Kent bestowed many faire possessions upon it, but *Wibred* especially, who (that I may note the antiquitie and manner of livery of Seisin in that age out of the very forme of his owne Donation) *For the full complement of his confirmation thereof, laid up on the holy altar a turf of that ground which he gave at Humanun.* Heere after ward in dry times arrived the Danes who piteously impoverished this Island by robbings and pillages, and also polluted this Monasterie of *Domneva* with all kind of cruelty, that flourished not againe before the Normans government. Heere also landed *Lois of France*, who called in by the tumultuous Barons of England against King *Edm*, published by their instigation a pretended right to the Crowne of England. For whereas King *John* for his notorious treason against King *Richard* his brother slaine in the Holy-land, was by his Peeres lawfully condemned, and therefore after the death of King *Richard* the right of the Crowne was devolved to the Queene of *France* sister to the said King *Richard*; and that shee and her heires had conveyed their right to the said *Lewis*, and his wife her daughter: Also that King *Edm* forfeited his Kingdome both by the murder of his Nephew *Arthur*, whereof he was found guilty by his Peeres in France, and also by subjecting his Kingdome which were alwaies, free to the Pope, as much as in him lay, contrary to his oath at his Coronation, and that without the consent of the Peeres of the Realme, &c. Which leave to Historians, with the successe of his expedition, least I might seeme to digresse extraordinarily.

Neither must I passe over heere in silence, that which maketh for the single praise of the inhabitants of *Tenet*, those especially which dwell by the roads or harbours of *Margate*, *Ramsgate* and *Brodsteare*. For, they are passing industrious, not as if they were *Amphibii*, that is, both land creatures, and sea creatures, get their living both by sea and land, as one would say with both these elements: they be Fishermen and Plough-men: as well Husband-men as Mariners: and they that hold the plough-taile inearing the ground, the same hold the helme in steering the ship. According to the season of the yeare, they knit nets, they fish for Cods, Herrings, Mackarels, &c. they saile, and carry forth Merchandise. The same againe dung and manure their grounds, Plough, Sow, harrow, reape their Corne and they inne it. Men well ready and well appointed both for sea and land: and thus goe they round and keep a circle in these their labours. Furthermore whereas that otherwhiles there happen shipwrackes heere, (for there lie full against the shore those dangerous flats, called *lowes*, shelves, and sands, so much feared of Sailers, which they use to call, *The Godwin sands*, *The Brakes*, *The four-foots*, *The whiddick*, &c.) these men are wont to bethe themselves lustily in recovering both ships, men, and Merchandize endangered.

At the mouth of *Wantsum* Southward, (which men thinke hath changed his channel) over against the Isle stood a City, which *Ptolomee* calleth *RHVTVPIA*, *Tenetus*, *PORTVS TRVTVLENSIS*, for *Rhutupensis*, if *Bedae* *Renanus* coniectured truly.

Now Elset.

596.
Minster.1217.
Lewis of
France.Chronicles of
W. Thorn.Rhutupia.
Portus Trutun-
ensis.

truly: *Antonine*, *RHVTVPI PORTVS*, *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *RHVTVPIAE STATIO*, that is, the Road of *Rhutupia*, *Orosius*, *THE HAVEN and City of Rhutubus*: the old English-Saxons as *Beda* witnesseth, *Reptacester*, others *Ruptimuth*, *Alfred of Beverly* nameth it *Richberge*: we at this day, *Richborow*: Thus hath time sported in varying of one and the same name. Whence this name should arise, it is not for certaine knowen. But seeing the places neere unto it, as *Sandwich* and *Sandiby* have their denomination of *Sand*: I considering also, that *Rhyd Tufish* in the British-tongue betokeneth a sandy fowrd, I would willingly if I durst, derive it from thence. This City seemed to have beene seated on the descent of an hill, the Castle there stood overlooking from an higher place the Ocean which is now so farre excluded by reason of sandy residence inbeached with the tides, that it comes hardly within a mile of it. Right famous and of great name was this City while the Romans ruled here. From hence was the usual passing out of Britan to France and the Neatherlands at it, the Roman fleets arrived here, it was that *Lupicinus* sent by *Constantinus* the Emperour into Britaine for to repress the rodes and invasions of Scots and Picts both, landed the *Heruli*, and *Bavarians*, and *Masian* regiments. Heere also *Theodosius* the father of *Theodosius the Emperour*, to whom as *Symmachus* witnesseth, the Senate decreed for pacifying Britan armed Statues on horse-backe, arrived with his *Herculij*, *Iovij*, *Victores* & *Fidentes*, for these were names of Roman regiments. After wards when the Saxon Pirates impeached entercourse of merchants and infested our coasts with continuall piracies, the Second Legion *Augusta*, which being remooved by the Emperour *Claudius* out of Germany had remained many yeares in Garrison at *Isea Silurum* in Wales, was translated hither, and had a Provost of their owne heere under the great Lieutenant and Count of the Saxon shore. Which Provostship happily, that *Clemens Maximus* bare, who being heere in Britan by the soldiers saluted Emperour, slew *Gratian*, the lawfull Emperour; and was afterwards himselfe slaine by *Theodosius* at *Aquileia*: For, this *Maximus* it was whom *Ausonius* in the verses of *Aquileia*, called the *Rhutupine robber*.

* *Maximus armigeri quondam sub nomine lixe.*

Felix quae tanti spectatrix lata triumph,

Fudisti Ausonio Rhutupinum Mare latronem.

The same Poet also in his Poem *Parentalia*, preserved the memory of *Flavius Sanctus* another President or Governour of *Rhutupia*, concerning whom thus hee wrote.

Militiam nullo qui turbine sedulus egit,

Præside letatus quo Rhutupinus ager.

His martiall service who discharged with care without all stirre,

And *Rhutupin* rejoyce in him, who was their governour.

Ausonius likewise in a lamentable funerall verse, setteth forth the praise of *Claudius Contentus* his Uncle, who being overtaken with death left behind him unto strangers a mighty stock of money which hee had put out to usury among the Britaines and encreased by interest; and was heere also enterred.

Et patruos Elegia meos reminiscere cantus,

Contentum, tellus quem Rhutupina tegit.

My dolefull Muse now call to minde the songs of Vnkle mine;

Contentus, who enterred lies within mould *Rhutupine*.

This *Rhutupia* flourished also after the coming in of the English Saxons. For, writers record, that it was the Royall Palace of *Ethelbert* King of Kent; and *Beda* gave it the name of a City. But ever since, it beganne to decay: neither is the name of it read in any place afterward, as farre as I know, but in *Alfred of Beverley*, who hath put downe in writing, that *Alcher* with a power of Kentish-men at this towne, then called *Richberge*, foiled and defeated the Danes encombered with the spoiles they had before gotten.

Now hath time razed out all the footings and tractes thereof, and to teach us that Cities as well as men have their fatall periods, it is a verie field

F f

at

* The younger?

* Caer Leon?

Clemens
Maximus.* See how
these verses
are englished
in pag. 83.There bee
that under the
name of Rhutupine would
have all Britans to be understood.

at this daie, wherein when the corne is come uppe a man may see the draught of streetes crossing one another: (For, wherefoever the streetes went, there the corne is thinn) which the common people terme Saint *Augustins* Crosse. And there remaine onely certaine walles of a Castle of rough flint, and long Britan bricke in forme of a quadrant and the same cemented with lime, and most stiffe binding sand, mightily strengthened by tract of time, so that the corne is as hard as the stone. Over the entrie whereof is fixed a head of a personage engraven in stone, some say it was *Queene Berthas* head, but I take it to bee a *Rome worke*, a man would deeme this to have bene the Citadell or keepe of the City, it stands on such a height over-looking the low grounds in *Tenes*, which the Ocean by little and little shrinking away hath now left. Moreover, the plor whereon the Citie stood, being now plowed up, doth oftentimes discover peeces of *Rome* coines as well gold as silver, evident tokens of the antiquity thereof: and a little neath theweth a daughter of hers, which the English Saxons of sand call *Sonþýc*, and wee, *Sandwich*. This beeing one of the *Cinque-ports*, as they terme them, is on the North and West side, fortified with walles and on other parts fenced with a rampier, river and ditch. The haven by reason of sand choaking it, and great shippe of burden belonging to *Pope Paule the Fourth*, which was accidentallie funke in the verie channell thereof, is not deepe enough to beare any vessels.

In ancient times it sundrie times felt the furious forces of the Danes, afterward King *Canutus* the Dane when hee had gained the Crowne of England, bestowed it upon *Christs-Church* in Canterburie with the royaltie of the water on each side, so farre forth as a shippe beeing a floate, a man might cast a Danish hake out of the vessell to the banke. In the Norman raigne it was reckoned one of the *Cinque ports*, and to finde five shippes. In the yeare 1217. *Lewis* of France whom wee spake lately, burned it, King *Edward* the first for a time placed heere a staple, and King *Edward* the Third by exchange reunited it to the Crowne. About which time there flourished heere a familie surnamed *De Sandwich*, which had matched with one of the heires of *Creve-cur*, and *Dauranches*, Lord of *Flugh*, and deserved well of this place. In the time of King *Henrie* the Sixth was burned by the French. In our daies Sir *Roger Mamood* chiefe Baron of the *chequer* native of this place, built, and endowed heere a free-schoole, and the *Netherlanders* have bettered the towne by making, and trading of *Baies*, and other commodities.

Beneath *Rhutupia*, *Ptolomee* placeth the Promontorie *CANTIVM* as the head cape of this Angle, which in some copies is corruptly written *NVCANTIVM* and *A CANTIVM*: *Diodorus* as corruptly calleth it *CARION*, and we at this day call *Foreland of Kent*. Now all these shores on every side, are of this *Rhutupia* by the Poets termed *Rhutupina littora*. Hence it is, that *Iuvenall* satyrically inveighing against *Curtius Montanus* a dainty and delicious glutton, speaking of oysters carried from this shore to Rome, hath these verses.

— nulli major fuit usus edendi
Tempestate meâ, Circeis nata forent, an
Lucrinum ad saxum, Rhutupinove edita fundo
Ostrea, callebat primo deprendere morsu.

None in my time had more use of his tooth,
Whence oysters came, where they were bred, full well
He knew: at Circeie cape, at Lucrine rock, forsooth,
Or Rhutup * coast, at first bit he could tell.

And *Lucan* the Poet.

Aut vaga cum Thetis, Rhutupinaque littora servant.

Or when unconstant waving sea, and British shores doe * rage.

From this fore-land aforesaid, the shore runneth on Southward for certain miles together, indented with a continued range of many hills mounting up.

Sandwich.

1 *

Eusebia. 23.
E. 3. p. 24.Cantium the
Promontory.The Fore-
land.

* British sea.

* Or boyle.

when it is come as farre as *Sandon* (that is to say the Downe of Sand), and to *Deale*, and *Walmer*, three Neighbour Castles, which King *Henrie* the Eighth, within the remembrance of our Fathers built, it setteth low, and in a flat and open plaine lieth full against the sea. At this *Deale*, or *Dole*: as *Ninnius* calleth it (and that truly in mine opinion: For, our Britains at this day doe so terme a plaine lying low and open upon sea or river) the constant report goes that *Julius Caesar* did arrive: and *Ninnius* avoucheth as much, who in barbarous Latine wrote thus, *Caesar ad Dole bellum peragavit*, that is, *At Dole Caesar fought a battaile*. A Table likewise set up in *Dover* Castle confirmeth the same: yea and *Caesar* himselfe verifieth it: who reporteth that he landed upon an open and plaine shore, and that the Britaines welcommed and received him with a hote and dangerous encounter. Whereupon, our Country man Leland in his *Swans song*

Iactat Dela novas celebris arces,

Notus Casareis locus trophaeis.

Deale famed much, vnants of new turrets hie,

A place well knowne by *Casars* victorie.

For hee, (give mee leave I pray you to digresse awhile out of my course) having, (as *Pomponius Sabinus* reporteth out of *Seneca*) wonne all that was to be gotten by sea and land, cast his eie to the Ocean, and as if the *Romane* world would not suffice him, berthought him selfe upon another world: and with a fleet of a thousand saile (for so writeth *Athenius* out of *Cotus*, either to be revenged of the Britains who aided the *Gauls* (as *Strabo* saith; or in hope of British pearles, as *Suetonius* reporteth: or inflamed with an ambitious desire of glory, as others doe record, in the yeare before *Christs* nativirie fiftie foure, and once againe in the yeare ensuing, entred into Britaine: having before hand founded the havens by his espialls, as *Suetonius*, and himselfe doth testifie; and not, as *Roger Bacon* fableth, by setting certaine looking glasses upon the coast of *Gaulle*, and by Art perspective, which by reflection multiplieth hidden formes. What hee exploited here, himselfe hath at large delivered in his *Commentaries*; and I likewise before have summarily abridged out of him, and the writings of *Suetonius* concerning *Scæva*, whose valourous service during the civill warre was notably seen above others at *Dyrrachium*, and whom our Poet *Ioseph* of *Excester* in his *Antiocheis*, and namely in these his verses touching Britaine, reported (I know not how truly) to have bene a Britaine borne.

Hinc et Scæva satus, pars non obscura tumultus

Civulis, MAGNUM solus qui mole soluta

Obfedit, meliorq, stetit pro Casare murus.

Here borne also was *Scæva*, he that bare no little sway

In all these civill broiles; the Fort that stood full in his way

Alone he brake, *Pompey* besieged, was *Casars* strongest stay.

But what were the exploits of *Caesar* in this our country, learne you may of himselfe, and out of that which hath before bene written. For, neither as yet, have I met with that old father a Britaine, whom *Marcus Aper*, as we read in *Quintilian*, saw in this Island; who avowed that he was present at the battaile, in which they assaied to keepe *Caesar* from landing, when he came to warre upon them: neither is it any part of my meaning now to write an *Historie*, but a *Topographie*.

Vpon this shore, lie out with a long traine certaine heapes in manner of bankes or rampiers, which some imagine that the winde swept up together. But I suppose them to have bene a fence and countermure, or rather the Ship-campe, which *Caesar* raised with ten daies and as many nights labour, to haile up thereto his sea-beaten and shaken Navie, and to defend it, both against tempests and also the Britaines, who in vaine did assaile it.

For I understand by relation of the dwellers, thereby, that this rampier is called *Romes worke*, as if it were *A worke of the Romans*. And so much the rather believe I, that *Caesar* arrived heere, because hee writeth, that seven miles

F f 2

Sandon.
Deale.
where Caesar
arrived.

Casars entry
into Britaine.

In his booke
de Arce et Na-
tura.

See page 34, 7
35, &c.

Castra nava-
lia.
Caesars ship-
campe.

miles from hence, (for, so wee reade in the ancient bookes, corrected by *Flavius Constantinus a man of Consul degree*) the sea is kept in and compassed with such freight mountaines that for the higher places a dart may bee flung to the very shore: verily as soone as we are past Deale, a mightie ridge of steepe high Cliffs, *Cliffes* termeth them *moles magnificas*, that is, *Stately cliffs* bringing forth *Samphire* in great plenty, runneth for seven miles or there about, as far as to *Dover*: where it openeth it selfe: and of that nature is the place, that, right as *Cæsar* writeth, betweene two hills it letteth in and encloseth the sea. Within this partition and separation of the Cliffs lieth *Dover*, which Antonine the Emperour mentioneth, the Saxons name it *Dopna*, and we *Dover*. This name was given unto it, as *Darell* out of *Eadmer* writeth, because the place was shut up and hard to come unto. For, when as, (saith he) *in ancient times the sea there barbarous spreaded it selfe upon urgem. cessitie to make it a more commodious haven, they kept it in with more freight banks.* Howbeit, *William Lambard*, with more probabilitie terched the reason of this name from the word *Dufyrba*, which in the British language betokeneth a place steepe and upright.

The towne which is seated betweene high clyffes (whereas some time the haven was, when the sea more insinuated it selfe, as wee collect by the anchors and ship planks that are digged there up; is more famous for the commodiouse of the haven, (such as it is) and for readie passage into France, than for any elegance, or great trade. For it is a place of passage of all other most haunted, and it was provided in old time by a speciall Statute, that no man going forth of the realme in pilgrimage, should else where embarque and take sea: more-over it is reckoned one of the *Cinque-ports*, and in times past it was charged to furnish and set out one and twenty ships unto the warres, in the same manner and forme as *Hastings* did, whereof I have already spoken. Toward the sea (now somewhat excluded by Beach) it was fenced with a wall; whereof some part as yet standeth. It had a faire church consecrated unto *Saint Martin*, founded by *Whitred* King of Kent, an house also of the *Knights-Templars*, which now are quite gone, and nothing to bee seene of them: It yieldeth likewise a seat for the Archbishop of *Canterburie* *Suffragans*, who when the Archbishop is busied in weightier affaires, manageth for him matters that pertaine to Orders onely, and not to the Episcopall jurisdiction. From the top of a rough and cragie cliffe which mounteth up to a wonderfull height, where it looketh downe to the sea: a most stately Castle like unto a prettie Citie fortified right strongly with bul-warkes and many a Tower, overlooketh and threatneth after a sort the sea: *Matthew of Paris* calleth it the *Key* and *Locke*, *The Barre* and *Sparre* of *England*. The common fort of people dreameth, that it was built by *Julius Cæsar*, and verily I suppose by the British Bricks in the Chappell there, that it was built by the Romans, who used such in their great buildings. What time as the Roman Empire declined, they placed here a band or companie of the *Tungricans*, who were accounted among the *Aides-Palatine*: out of whose armoury and munition happily were those big arrowes, which the Castellanes doe now shew for wonders, and were wont to bee discharged then, and many yeares after, before the invention of great Ordnance, out of engines called *Baliste* like huge crosse-bowes bent by force of two or foure men.

From the entrance of the English Saxons into this land, unto the expansion of their Kingdome, no where could I as yet reade so much as one bare word of this Caille or the Towne; save onely in certaine by-notes out of a Table, that was heere hanged upon a wall; which reported that *Cæsar*, having arrived at Deale, and discomfited the Brittaines at *Baramdowne* (which is a plaine adjoyning, fit for horse fight, and meete to embattle an armie in) began the Castle of *Dover*; and that *Arviragus* afterward fortified it against the Romans, and stopped up the haven. Also, that after him King *Arthur* and his knights vanquished I wor not what rebels heere. Howbeit a little before the Normans comming in, it was reported the onely defence and strength of England: and for that cause *William Duke*

Dubris.
Dover.
Darell.

In Suffex.

Suffragan to
the Archbi-
shop of Can-
terburie.

A band of the
Tungricans.

of Normandie, bound *Harold* by an oath to deliver up into his hands this Castle together with the well, what time as he aspired to the Kingdome: and after hee had settled his estate and affaires at London, thought it good before all other things to fortifie this peece, and to assigne faire lands in Kent unto Gentlemen to bee held in Castle-guard, with this condition to be in readinesse with certaine numbers of men for defence of the same: which service notwithstanding at this day is redeemed with a yearly payment of money. For, when Sir *Hubert de Burgh* was Constable of this Castle, (to use the words of an old writer) he weighed with himselfe that it was not safe for the Castle to have every moneth new warders for the Castle-guard, procured by the assent of the King and all that held of that Castle, that every one should send for the ward of one moneth tenne shillings: and that therewith certaine men elected and sworne, as well horse as foote, should be waged, for to gard the Castle. It is written, that *Phillip* surnamed *Aufort*, King of France, when *Lewis* his sonne, went about to gaine the Crowne of England, had wonne certaine Cities and Forts, and could not get this, being manfully defended by the said Sir *Hubert de Burgh*: said thus. *Verily my sonne hath not one fane of land in England, untill he be Master of Dover Castle*: as beeing in very deed the strongest hold of all England and most commodious for the French. Upon the other cliffe which standeth over against it, and beareth up his head, in manner, even with it, are extant the remaines of a very ancient building. One, I know not upon what reason induced, said it was *Cæsar's Altar*. But *John Twinn* of *Canterbury* a learned old man, who in his youth saw a great part thereof standing whole and entire, assured me, that it had beene a Watch-towre to give night light and direction to ships. Like as there stood another opposite unto it at *Bologne* in France, erected there by the Romans, and long after reedified by *Charles the Great* (as *Regino* witnesseth, in whom *Pharum*, for *Pharum*, is falsly read, which at this day the French terme *Tour de Order*, and the English, *The old man of Bullen*. Under this cliffe, *Henry the Eighth*, in our fathers daies with exceeding labour, and 63000. pounds charges, by pitching huge posts fast within the very sea, and the same bound together with yron worke, and heaping thereupon a deale of timber and stones, brought up a mightie *Pile* which we call, *The Peere*, wherein the ships might more safely ride. But the furious violence of the raging Ocean soone overcame the laudable endeavour of that puissant Prince, and so the frame of this worke beaten continually upon with the waves, became disjoynd. For the repaire whereof, *Queene Elizabeth* laid out a great summe of money, and the Authoritie of Parliament imposed upon every English ship that carry forth or bring in merchandise a certaine toll upon *Tonnage* for certaine yeares.

This Sea coast of Britaine is seperated from the Continent of Europe by a frete or freight, where, as some suppose the Seas brake in and made way betweene the lands. *Solinus* calleth it *Fretum Gallicum*, *Tacitus*, and *Ammianus Macellinus*, *Fretum Oceani*, and *Oceanum Fretalem*, *Gratius* the Poet:

Freta Morinum dubio refluencia ponto.

The narrow Seas on Boilen-coast that keepe uncertaine tides.

They of the Netherlands call it *Dehofden*, of the two heads or promontories: we the Narrow-sea, and *The strait of Calais*, as the Frenchmen, *Pas de Callais*. For, this is the place as faith a Poet of our time.

*gemini quâ janna ponti
Faucibus angustis, latèque frementibus undis
Gallorum Anglorumque vetat concurrere terras.*

Where current of two seas

In gullet streight, wherein throughout, their billowes rage and fret
Keepes France and England so a part, as though they never met.

The narrow sea, as *Marcellinus* truly writeth, swelleth at every tide with terrible high floods, and againe at the ebbe, becommeth as flat as a plaine field: if it be not raised with winds, and counter-seas betweene two risings of the moone it floweth twice and ebbeeth as oft. For, as the Moone ascendeth toward the Meridian, and is set againe under the Horizon

F f 3

zon

Castleguard
changed.

The freight
of Calais or
narrow seas.

zon in the iust opposite point, the Ocean heere swelleth mightily, and the huge billowes rush upon the shores with so great a noise that the Poet might well say, *Pinâq, litora fervent*. And Rhurup shore doth boile and billow, and D. Paulinus wherehe speaketh of the County of *Bulloigne*, which he termeth *the utmost shor of the world*, not without cause used these words, *Oceanum barbaris fluctibus fremens*, that is, *The Ocean raging and roaring with barbarous billowes*.

Heere might arise a question becomming a learned man that hath wit and time will, whether, where this narrow sea runneth between France and Britaine now, there was a narrow banke or necke of land that in times past conjoynd these regions, and afterwards being broken either by the generall deluge, or by rushing in of the waves, or else by occasion of some earth-quake, did let in the waters to make a through passage. Verily, as no man makes doubt that the face of the whole earth hath beene altered, partly by the said deluge, and partly by long continuance of time and other causes, as also that Ilands by earthquakes, or the shrinking back of waters were laid and joynd unto firme lands: so, most certainly it appeareth by authors of best credite, that Ilands by reason of earthquakes and the breaking in of waters were severed, disjoynd, and rent from the Continent. Whereupon *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* saith thus:

*Vidi ego quod quondam fuerat solidissima tellus
Esse fretum; vidi factas ex aequore terras.*

My selfe have seene maine ground sometime turned into sea and sand,
And seene I have againe the Sea, became maine settled land.

Strabo gathering of things to come by those that are past, concluded that fish *Isthmi*, neckes, or narrow bankes of land, both have beene, and shall bee wrought and pierced through. You see, saith *Seneca*, whole regions violently removed from their places, and now to lie beyond the Sea, which lay before bounding upon it and hard by. In see, there is separation made both of Countries and nations, when as some part of nature provoked of it selfe: or when the mighty wind beatech strongly upon some sea: the force whereof, as in generall, is wonderfull. For, although it rage but in part, yet it is of the universall power that so it rageth. Thus hath the sea rent Spaine from the Continent of Africa: Thus by Decalions floud so much spoken of by the greatest Poets, was *Sicilie* cut from Italy, And hereupon *Virgil* wrote thus,

*Hec loca vi quondam, & vasta convulsa ruina
(Tantum evi longinqua valet mutare vetustas)
Disiuisse ferunt, cum protinus utraque tellus
Vna foret, venit medio vi pontus & undis,
Hesperium Siculo latus absceidit, arvaq; & urbes
Littore ductas angusto interluit aestu.*

These lands whilom by violence of breach and ruines great,
(Such change makes time, and what is it that long time doth not eate?)
A sunder fell (men say) where as they both in one did grow,
The Seas brake in by force, and through the mids did overthrow
Both townes and grounds. And Italy forthwith from Sicily side,
Did cut, and them with in-let streight doth still part and divide.

Plinie sheweth likewise of Isles, that *Cyprus* was rent from *Syria*, *Eubaa*, from *Italia*, *Besbicus*, from *Bythinia*, being parts before of the maine land: But none of the old writers was ever able to avouch, that Britaine was so severed from the Maine: only those verses of *Virgil* and *Claudian* before cited by me in the very first entrance into this worke, together with the conjecture of *Servius Honoratus* doe insinuate so much. And yet, *Dominicus Marius Niger*, and Master *Iohn Twinn* a right learned man, and whosoever he was that wrested these verses made of *Scicilia*, unto Britaine, are of this opinion:

*—Britannia quondam
Gallorum pars una fuit, sed pontus & aestus
Mutavere situm, rupit confinia Nereus
Victor: & abscessos interluit aequore montes.*

Whether
Britanie
was in time
past joynd
unto France.

Some time was Britannie
A part of France. But swelling tides on hie
Have changed the site; and *Nereus* he, as Conquerour hath torne
The confines quite, and runnes betweene the cliffs a sounder worne.

Considering therefore, that in this matter there is no assured ground upon certaine authorities; the learned, by laying and comparing the like examples in such narrow Seas as this, for searching out of the truth, propose these and such like points duly to be weighed and considered.

First, whether the nature of the soyle in both shores be the same; which verily is found here to be even so: For the shore of either side, where the distance betweene is narrowest, riseth up with loftie cliffes, of the same matter, as it were, and colour, so as they may seeme to have beene riven asunder.

Secondly, How great the breadth is of the sea or streight. Certes, the streight heere is not much broader, than either the streight of *Gibraltar*, or of *Sicily*: to wit, twenty foure miles over: so as at the first sight, one would imagine that these lands were severed by the billowes of the raging counter-seas. For that the land sunke downeward by earth-quakes, I hardly dare thinke, seeing that this our Northern climate of the world is seldome shaken with earth-quakes, and those when they happen, be never great.

Thirdly, How deepe the streight is. As the Streight of *Sicilie* is founded in depth 80. paces, so this of ours exceedeth not 25. fathom, whereas the sea on both sides of it is much deeper.

Fourthly, Of what nature the ground is in the bothoms, stony, sandy, bea chy, or else oasy, and muddy. And whether there be beds or shelves of sand lying scattered in the said narrow sea: I have learned of Sailers that there lieth but * one banke, and the same in the very mid-channell, which at a low water is scarce 3. fathoms deepe, But within halfe a league to the South-ward it is 27. fathom deepe, and to the North-ward 25.

Lastly, Whether any place in either of the two shores taketh name in the ancient language, of a breach, a plucking away, division, separation or such like: as *Rhegium* which standeth upon the *Sicilian Streight*, is named of the Greeke word *Rhymus* that is, to breake, because in that place, by the violent force of waves *Sicilie* was broken off from *Italia*. But thinking, as I doe heereof, I can meet with none, unlesse one would suppose that *Vitruvius* upon the French shore, had the name from *Gwith*, which in the * British tongue betokeneth a division or separation.

They that would have Britaine to have been the very continent of *Gaulle* after that universall deluge, argue from the wolves, whereof there were many among us in old time, like as at this day in Scotland and Ireland.

How, say they, could there be any of them in Ilands considering that all beasts and living creatures perished which were not in the Arke: unlesse a long time after, the earth had beene passable throughout, and no Isles at all. This question busied *Saint Augustine*, but unto it he answereth thus, *Wolves and other beasts may bee thought to have swome over the sea unto Ilands, yet onely to neere adjoyning Ilands (as Stags yearely for their reliefe and food swim out of Italy into Cicily). But some Isles there be so far remote from maine lands, that it is to be thought no beast could swim over. If it should bee said, men caught them and so brought them over with them, it carrieth some credit, that this might well have beene for the delight they had in hunting. Although it cannot bee denied but by the commandment or permission of God even by the worke of Angels they might have beene transported. But if so be they sprung out of the earth according to their first originall, when as God said, Let the earth bring forth a living soule, then it appeareth much more evidently, that all kind of living creatures were in the Arke, not so much for the encrease and reparation of them, as to * figure out sundry Nations for the sacrament of the church, in case the earth brought forth many creatures in those Ilands, whereto they can not passe. Thus Philosphizeth he. Neither is any man able upon this argument to pronounce any thing more sufficiently and exquisitely. For me, it may suffice, that I have propounded*

* Frowen
shoale

* Welch.

*De Civitate
Dei lib. 16. c. 7.*

* As a type of
the Gentiles
calling.

propounded thereof, let the Reader thoroughly waigh and examine it. And hee that is able in this point to see deepest what is most true, verily I will report him a man right skilfull and deeply quick-sighted.

Morini.

On the other side in the *Firme-land*, inhabited the *MORINI*, so called in the ancient Gaules tongue, as it were *Maritimi*, *sive Maris accolæ*, men dwelling upon the Sea-coast, or hard by the sea. Their countrey is now termed *Conto de Guines*, and *Comeli Belonois*, and had in old time two places of very great name, to wit *Gessoriacum*, and *ITIVM*, * whence, as *Cæsar* hath recorded, there was the best and most commodious passing out of *Gaul* or France into Britain, and most Authors thinke it was that towne which now they call *Callais*. But that famous and learned man *Hospitalius*, Chancellour of France, a very skilfull Antiquary, avoucheth, that *Callais* is no ancient towne, but was only a small village, such as the French-men terme *Burgados*, untill that *Philip* Earle of *Bolen*, walled it about, not very many yeares before the English won it. Neither is it red in any place, that men tooke shipping there for Britaine, before those times. I thinke therefore that *Itium* is to bee sought some where else: that is to say, below, at *Vitsan*, neere unto *Blacknesse*, which we call *Whitsan*, the word founding not much unlike to *Itium*. For, that all men crossed over out of this Island thither, and embarked there to saile hither, wee observed out of our owne histories: in so much as certaine lands were held in *Coperland* neere *Dover* by service to hold the Kings head betweene *Dover* and *Whit-sand* when soever hee crossed the Sea there. And *Lewis* the younger French King when he came in devout pilgrimage to visit *Thomas of Canterbury*, besought that saint by way of most humble intercession, that no passenger might miscarry by shipwracke betweene *Vitsan* and *Dover*; as who would say, that at the same time, that was the usual passage to and from neither in truth, is this narrow sea else where more streightned: although it is to bee supposed, that they who saile betweene, in passing over did not respect the neerer way and shorter cut in sailing, but the commodiousest of the havens in the one shoare, and the other. For even so, albeit the sea be narrowest, betweene *Blacknesse* in France, and the *Nesse* in England, yet now the ordinary passing is betweene *Dover* and *Callais*: in former ages, before that *Vitsan* haven was dammed up, the passage was betweene it and *Dover*: and before that time, betweene *Rhutupia* and *Gessoriacum*: From whence *Claudius* the Emperour and the other capitaines, whom I have spoken of, sailed over into Britaine. This *Gessoriacum*, *Pliny* seemeth to call, *Portum Armorum Britannicum*, peradventure for the passage from thence into Britaine *Ptolomeus*, whom it hath crept into the place of *Itium*, nameth it *Gessoriacum Navale*, in which signification also our *Welsh-Britans* commonly terme it *Eowling-long*, that is, *Below* the ship-road.

Gessoriacum.

For that *Gessoriacum* was the very same Sea-coast towne, which *Ammianus* calleth *BONONIA*, the Frenchmen *Bologne*, the Low-country men *Beunen*, and we *Bolen*, I dare bee bold to aver and maintaine against *Hector Boethius*, and *Turnebus*: grounding my assertion both upon the authoritie of *Beatus Rhenanus*, who saw an ancient military Map, wherein was written *Gessoriacum quod nunc Bononia*, that is, *Gessoriacum*, now called *Bolen*: and also upon *Itinerarie* computation, or account of the miles, which answereth just to the distance that *Antonine* the Emperour hath put downe betweene *Ambiani* and *Gessoriacum*. But, that which may serve in stead of all proofes.

The rablement of Pyrates serving under *Carausius*, which the *Panegirick Oration*, pronounced unto *Constantinus* the Emperour, reported to have bene inclosed and shut up within the walles of *Gessoriacum* and there surpris'd: an other Oration unto *Constantinus Maximus* his sonne, relateth to have bene vanquished at *Bononia*: so that *Bononia*, that is, *Bolen*, and *Gessoriacum* must needs be one and the selfe same place: and it may seeme, that the more ancient name was vvorne out much about that time. For it is not to be surmised, that so grave authors unto the great Princes erred in the setting downe and naming of this place, the memory thereof being then so fresh, and that victory so glorious. But, what have I to doe with France? Heerby

Tabula Pentegoniæ, now set forth by M. Weller. Bononia Gallicæ.

Fig. 27. in Basil edition and pag. 251.

Verily, I have the more willingly ripped up the memorie of these matters, for that the prowesse and valour of our Ancestours shewed it selfe often in this coast; as who wonne and wrestled both *Calais* and *Bolen* from the French. And as for *Bolen*, they rendred it backe againe at the humble request of the French King after eight yeares, for a summe of money agreed upon. But *Callais* they held 12. yeares in despight and maugre of the French. Now returne wee to Britaine with full sailes and a favourable tide.

From (*Dover*, leaving the little Abbey of *Bradsole* dedicated to *S. Radegund*, where of *Hugh* the first Abbat was founder) there runneth for five miles in length a continued cheine of chalky cliffs standing on a row, hanging joyntly one to another, as far as to *Folkstone*: which was a flourishing place in times past, as may appeare by the pieces of Roman coine and Britaine bricke daily there found: but under what name, it is uncertaine. Probable it is, that it was one of those towres or holds which in the reigne of *Theodosius the younger*, the Romans placed for to keep off the Saxons, as *Gildas* saith, *At certaine distances along the shore, in the south part of Britaine*.

Famous it was and much frequented by the English Saxons, for religions sake, by reason of a Monasterie that *Eanwilde* daughter to *Eadwald* King of Kent consecrated thereunto Nunnes: But now it is a small towne, and the greatest part thereof the Sea hath, as it were, parted away. Howbeit, it was the Baronie of the Family de *Abrincis*, or *Aurenches*: From whom it came to *Sir Hamon Crevequer*, and by his daughter to *Sir Iohn of Sandwich*, whose grand child *Julian* by his sonne *Iohn*, brought the same as her dowry to *Iohn Segrave*.

From thence, as the shore turneth a front South West-ward *Sandgate Castle*, built by King Henry the Eighth defender the coast, and upon a Castle hill thereby are scene reliques of an ancient Castle. More inward is *Saltwood* a Castle of the Bishops of Canterbury which *William Courtney* Archbishop of Canterbury enlarged. And neere unto it is *Osten-hanger*, where *Sir Edward Poinings* Baneret a father of many faire bastards, and amongst them of *Thomas Lord Poining* Lieutenant of *Bollen*, began to build a stately house but left it unperfected when death had bereft him of his onely lawfull child which he had by his lawfull wife the daughter of *Sir I. Scot* his neighbour at *Scots-Hall*: where the family of *Scots* hath lived in worshipfull estimation a long time, as descended from *Pashely*, and *Sericane* by *Pimpe*. But to returne to the sea-coast: neere to *Sandgate*, *Hith* is situated, one of the *Cinque ports*, whereof it assumed that name, which in the English Saxons tongue signifieth an haven or harbour: although hardly it maintaineth that name now, by reason of sands, and the Sea withdrawing it selfe from it. And yet it is not long since it first made any shew, and that by the decay and fall of *Westhith*, a neighbour-towne Westward, and which was sometime a Port, untill the Sea in our great grandfathers daies retired from it. So are Sea-townes subject to the uncertaine vicissitude of the Sea.

This *Hith*, like as *West-Hith* also, had their beginning from the ruine of *Lime* standing hard by, which in times past was a most famous Port towne, untill the sands that the Sea casteth up, had choked and stopped the haven. Both, *Antonine* and the booke of *Norries* called it *PORTVS LEMANIS*, *Ptolomee* *Νηλυ* which being in Greeke a significative word, the Copiantes, or Copiers out of old bookes, because they would seeme to supply the defect, wrot it *Κανος Νηλυ* and the Latin Interpreters following them translated it *Novus portus*, that is, *New port*, or *New haven*: whereas, the proper name of the place was *Limen* or *Leman*, like as at this time *Lime*. Heere the Capitaine over a company or band of *Turnacenses*, kept his station under the Count or Lieutenant of the *Saxon shore*. And a Port way paved with stone, called *Stonystreet*, reacheth from hence toward Canterbury, which one would easily judge to have bene a worke of the Romans, like as the *Castle* adjoyning hard unto it, now named *Stusfall*, which in the side and descent of a pretty hill, tooke up about tenne acres of ground in compasse: and the reliques of the wall remaine still of British bricke and flint so close laid and couched together with a kind of strong mortar made of lime, sand and pibles, that as yet time hath not given it the check: and now, although it be

L. Poinings by King Henric the Eighth.

Hith.

be not an haven towne, yet it retaineth still no small shew of the ancient dignitie it had: For heere the *Warden of the Cinque Ports* at a place called *Shipway* useth to take his solemne oath, when hee first entreth into his office, and heere, upon certaine set daies, the custome was to decide causes betweene the inhabitants of the said Ports.

Some have thought, that in this place a great river discharged it selfe into the sea, for that one or two writers have made mention of the river *Leman*, and the mouth of *Leman*, at which the Danes Fleet in the yeare of our salvation 892. arrived. But I suppose they are deceived in the description of the place, both because there is no river heere, but a very small one, which streight waies being of no reckoning at all, vanisheth: as also, for that the *Archdeacon of Huntingdon*, a compendious author, and of good approved credit writeth, that the said fleet arrived at the *Haven Lemn*, and saith not a word of the river. Vnlesse a man would thinke, (with whom I dare not accord) that the river *Rother*, which interminglith it selfe with the Ocean under *Rheine*, ran downe this way, and changed his course by little and little, when the champion plaine called *Rumney Marsh*, grew unto the firme land.

For, this *Marsh-country*, (which from *Lime* containeth 14. miles in length, and 8. in breadth, and reckoneth two townes, nineteene parishes, and 4200. acres or thereabout, by reason of ranke greene grasse most convenient for the grasing and feeding of beasts), hath bene by little and little laied unto the land by the benefit of the sea. Whereupon I may well and truly terme it the *Seas gift*, like as *Herodotus* called *Aegypt*, the gift of the river *Nilus*, and a very *learned man termed the pastures of *Holland*, the gifts of the North-wind and the river *Rhene*. For, the sea to make amends yielded that againe in this place (which it swallowed up else where in this coast) either by retyring backe, or by laying oze thereto from time to time: as some places which in the remembrance of our grandfathers, lay close unto the sea shore, are now dis-joynd a mile or two from the sea. How fruitful the soile is, what a number of herds of cattell it feedeth, that are sent thither from the furthest parts of *Wales*, and *England* to be fatted; what art and cunning is used in making of banks to fence it, against the violent risings of the sea, one would hardly believe, that hath not seen it. And that it might be the better ordered, certaine lawes of *Sewers* were made in the time of King Henry the third. And King Edward the fourth ordained, that it should be a *Corporation*, consisting of a *Bailive*, *Jurates*, and the *Communalty*. In the Saxons time the inhabitants thereof were called *Wepyc-pape*, that is, **Marshmen*: and verily the signification of that name accordeth passing well with the nature of the place. Neither can I understand and conceive that ancient writer *Aethelward*, when he reporteth, *That Cinulph King of the Mercians wasted Kent, and the country which is called Merc-warum*. And in another place, *That Herbyth a Captaine was by the Danes beheaded in a place named Merc-warum*, if he meant not this very Marsh-country, *Rumney*, or *Romeney*, and in former time *Romenal*, which some conjecture by the name to have bene the Romans worke, is the principall towne of this Marsh, and one of the Cinque-ports, whereof *Old Romeney* and *Lid* are accounted members, which joyously were charged with the setting forth of five ships of warre, in that manner and forme, as I have before said. It is seated upon an hill of gravell and sand, and had on the West side an haven of good receit and commodious withall, for most of the winds; before the sea with-drew it selfe from it. The inhabitants, as we read in King William the Conquerours booke, were in regard of their sea service, quite and quiet from all customs, beside for *robbery, peace-breach and Forisfell. And in those daies it flourished with the best; For it was divided into twelve wards, it had also five Parish-churches, it had a Priorie, and an Hospitall for sicke persons: But in the reigne of Edward the first, when the sea raging with violence of windes overflowed this tract, and made pitifull waste of people, of cattell and of houses in every place, as having quite drowned *Promhill* a pretty town well frequented: it made the *Rother* also forsake his old channell, which heere before time emptied himselfe into the sea, and stopped his mouth, opening a new and neerer way for him to passe into the sea by *Rhie*: So as by little and

Rumney
Marsh.

* Petrus Nanius.

* Viri palatres.

795.

Rumney.

Domes-day
Booke.

* The penalties for these offences.

1287.

little hee forsoke this towne. Which ever since hath decreased, and lost much of the forme, frequency, and ancient dignitie.

Beneath this, the land tending more East-ward maketh a Promontory, (we call it the *Nesse*, as it were a nose) before which lieth a dangerous flat in the sea, and upon which standeth *Lid* a towne well inhabited: whereunto the inhabitants of *Promhill* after that inundation aforesaid betooke themselves. And in the very utmost point of this Promontory which the people call *Denge-ness*, where there is nothing but beach and pible stones, **Holme-trees* grow plentifully with their sharp prickly leaves all waies greene, in manner of underwood, for a mile and more. Among the said beach neere unto *Ston end* is to be seene an heape of greater stones, which the neighbour inhabitants call *Saint Cryspins*, and *Crispinians tombe*, whom they report to have bene cast upon this shore by ship-wracke and from hence called into the glorious compagnie of Saints. From thence the shore retyring it selfe is directly carried into the West, bringing forth peafon among the beach, which grow up naturally like clusters of grapes a number together, and in tast little differ from our field peafon, and so runneth on as farre as to the *Rother-Mouth*, by which for some space Kent is divided from Suffex.

The course of this river on Suffex side wee have in part briefly spoken of before. On Kent side it hath *Newenden*, which I almost passwade my selfe was that haven so long sought for, and which the booke *Notitia Provinciarum* called *ANDERIDA*, the old Britains *Caer Andred*, and the Saxons *Andredscap-tep*: first, because the Inhabitants by a continued tradition constantly affirme it was a most ancient towne and Haven whereof they shew the plot; then, for that it is situate by the wood *Andredswald*, that tooke the name of it; lastly, because the English-Saxons seeme to have termed it *Brittenden*, that is, *The Britans Vale*, (as they called also *Segontium* an ancient towne of the Britans of which we spake before): whence the whole Hundred adjoyning is named *Selbrittenden*. The Romans for to defend this coast against the Saxon rovers, placed heere the band of the *Abulci* with their Captaine: Afterward being taken by the English Saxons it decayed quite. For, *Hengist* being fully determined to rid all the Britans out of Kent, and thinking it would much availe him to encrease his troups and bands with greater forces of his owne nation, called forth *Aella* out of Germany with a strong power of English Saxons, and while he gave the assault unto this *Anderida* by violence, the Britans out of the wood hard by, where they laie in ambushments, chased him so, that at length after many losses on both sides given and taken, when he had parted his army and both discomfited and put to flight the Britans in the wood, and also at the same time forced the towne, by assaults; his barbarous heart was so enflamed with desire of revenge, that he put the Inhabitants to the sword and razed the towne even to the ground. The place lying thus desolate, was shewed, (as *Henry of Huntingdon* saith,) to those that passed by many ages after. Vntill the Friars *Carmelites* newly come out from *Mount Carmell* in the Holiland, who sought for such solitary places, built them heere a little *Priory* in the time of King Edward the first, at the charges of Sir *Thomas Albuger* Knight: and so streight waies there rose up a village, which in regard of the old towne overthrowen, began to be called *Newenden*, that is, *The New towne in the vale*. I saw nothing there now, but a mean village with a poore Church, & a wodden bridge to no great purpose for a ferry is in most use, since that the river *Rother*, not containing himselfe in his channell hath overlaid, & is like to endanger & surround the levell of rich lands thereby. Whereupon the inhabitants of *Rhie* complaine, that their haven is not scoured by the streame of *Rother* as heerebefore, and the owners heere suffer great losse: which their neighbours in *Oxeney* doe feare, if it were remedied, would fall upon them. This is a river-isse ten miles about, encompassed with the river *Rother* dividing his streames, and now brackish; having his name either of mire, which our ancestours called *Hex*, or of *Oxen*, which it feedeth plentifully with ranke grasse. Opposite to this is *Appledore*, where a confused rabble of Danish and Norman Pirates, which under the conduct of one *Hasting* had fore annoied the French coasts, loden with boories landed,

Lid.

Dnagenesse.
* Hulver or
Holy-trees
glices.

Anderida.
Andredscap-tep.

Oxeney.

Appledore.

landed, and built a Castle: whom notwithstanding King *Aelfred* by his valour caused to accept conditions of peace.

Vp-land hence, and from *Nawenden* I saw (which I should have before remembered) *Cranbroke* and *Tenterden* good clothing towns, *Sissingherst* a fairehouse of the familie of *Bakers* advanced by Sir *Iohn Baker* not long since Chauncellour of the Exchequer, and his marriage with a daughter and heire of *Dingley*, *Bengebury* an habitation of the ancient familie of *Colpepper*, and neere adjoining *Hemsted* a manor of the *Guildfords*, an old familie, but most eminent since *S. Iohn Guildford* was Comptroller of the houle to king *Edward the Fourth*. For his sonne and heire *S. Richard Guildford* was by king *Henry the seventh* made knight of the Garter. Of his sonnes againe Sir *Edward Guildford* was Marshall of *Calais*, Lord Warden of the *Cinque Ports*, and Master of the Ordinance, father to *Iane Durbes* of Northumberland, wife to Sir *I. Dudley Duke of Northumberland*, mother to the late Earles of *Warwick*, and *Leicester*, and Sir *Henrie* was chosen Knight of the Garter by King *Henrie the Eighth*, and had his Armes enobled with a Canton of *Granado* by *Ferdinand* king of Spaine for his worthy service in that Kingdome when it was recovered from the *Moors*, and *Edward* lived in great effectme at home. To be brieft from the said Sir *Iohn* are issued by his males immediatly the *Darells of Cale hill*, *Gages*, *Brownes of Beechworth*, *Walsingham*, *Cromers*, *Isaacs*, and *Iseleies*, families of prime and principall note in these parts. But now I digresse and therefore crave pardon.

In the parishes heere about the commendable trade of cloathing was first begun, and freshly practised, ever since King *Edward the Third* his daies, who by proposing rewards, and granting many immunities, trained *Flemings* into England in the tenth yeere of his reigne to teach our men that skill of Draperie, or weaving and making wollen cloth, which is justly counted at this day one of the Staies that support our common Weale. Thus much of Kent, which (to conclude summarily) had this part last spoken of for Draperie, the Isle of *Tenet* and the East parts for the *Garerie*, the *Weald* for the wood, *Rumney Marsh* for the meddow-plot, the North down toward the Thames for the Conny-garthe, *Tenham* and there about for an Orchard, and Head-Corne for the brood and poultrery of fat, big, and commended capons.

As for the Earles; omitting the English Saxons *Godwin*, and *Leofwin* his brother, and others, who were Earles not by descent and inheritance, but by office: the halfe brother by the mothers side to King *William the Conquerour*, and Bishop of *Baieux*, was the first Earle of Kent, of the Norman bloud: a man, by nature of a bad disposition and busie head, bent alwaies to low sedition and to trouble the State. Whereupon he was committed to prison by a subtil distinction, as Earle of Kent, and not Bishop of *Baieux* in regard of his holie orders; and afterward for a most dangerous rebellion which he had raised, he was by his nephew King *William Rufus* deprived of his places of dignity, lost all his goods in England and abjured the Realme. Afterwards, King *Stephen* who as an Intruder reaped the revenewes and Commodities of the Crowne of England, that hee might bind by benefits martiall men to him, hee advanced *William of Ipres* a Fleming to that honor: who being, as *Fitz-Stephen* calleth him; *Violentus Cantij incubator*, that is, the violent over-pressor of Kent, was forced by King *Henrie the second* to depart, sheading many teares and so became a monke, *Henrie* likewise the sonne of King *Henrie the second*, whom his father had crowned King, rebelling against his father, gave in like respect the title of Kent unto *Philip* Earle of Flanders. But this *Philip* was Earle of Kent in title only and by promise. For, as *Gervase of Canterbury* writeth, *Philip* Earle of Flanders undertooke to the uttermost of his power for to aide the young King, doing him homage and binding himselfe with an oath unto whom the said King promised in reward of his service the revenewes of a thousand pounds, together with all Kent: also the Castle of *Rochester* and the Castle of *Dover*. Not many yeeres after, *Hubert de Burgh*, having done notable good service unto the State, received as it were, by due desert the same honor at the hands of King *Henrie the Third*: who also made him chiefe Iustice of England. This *Hubert* was a man who unfainctly loved his Countrey, & amidst the stormes of crowning

Sissingherst.

Bengebury.

Homsted.

Guildford.

Kentish
capon.Earles of
Kent.

ning Fortune performed all duties to the utmost that his Countrey could require of a right good patriot. Yet at length he fell in disgrace, and was dispoyle of his dignities: whereby this title slept and lay as dead untill the time of King *Edward the Second*. Who bestowed it upon his younger brother *Edmund of Woodstocke*, who being Tutor of his nephew *Edward the Third*, falling into the tempest of false, injurious, and malignant envie was beheaded, for that he never dissembled his naturall brotherly affection toward his brother deposed, and went about when hee was (God wot) murdered before (not knowing so much) to enlarge him out of prison; perswaded thereunto by such as covertly practised his destruction. Hee had two sonnes *Edmund*, and *Iohn*, who were restored by Parliament to bloud and land shortly after. And with all, it was enacted that no Peere of the land, or other that procured the death of the said Earle should bee impeached therefore, than *Mortimer* Earle of March, Sir *Simon Beresford*, *Iohn Matravers*, *Baions*, and *Iohn Devorail*. So these his two sonnes succeeded in order, and when they were both dead without issue, their sister *Joane*, who survived them, (for her lovely beaurie called *The Faire maid of Kent*) brought this honour unto the house of the *Hollands*. For Sir *Thomas Holland* her husband was stiled Earle of Kent, and thence after married by dispensation to the *Black Prince* heire to him King *Richard the Second*. Her sonne Sir *Thomas Holland* succeeded in that honourable title, who died in the twentieth yeere of King *Richard the Second*. Him againe there succeeded his two sonnes *Thomas* and *Edmund*. *Thomas* who also was created Duke of *Surry*, and forthwith for plotting a conspiracie against King *Henry the Fourth* lost his head, leaving no child: *Edmunds* his brother being Lord High Admirall of England, was wounded at the assault of *Saint Brieux* in little Britan, and died thereof in the yeare of Salvation 1408. leaving likewise no issue. Now when this dignitie was expired, in this family of the *Hollands*, their glasse being runne out, and the Patrimony parted among *Edmunds* sisters; King *Edward the Fourth* honoured with the title of the Earldome of Kent, first Sir *William Nevill* Lord *Fauconberg*: and after his death, *Edmund* Lord *Grey of Ruthin*, *Hastings* and *Weisford*, and who had to succeed him *George* his sonne. Hee of *Anne Wideville* his first wife begat *Richard* Earle of Kent, who having wasted his inheritance ended therewith his daies issuelesse, 1523. But the said *George* by his second wife *Katherine*, daughter to *William Herbert* Earle of *Pembrooke*, was father of Sir *Henry Grey of Wrex* knight, whose grand-sonne *Reginald*, by his sonne *Henrie*, Queene *Elizabeth* in the yeare 1571. advanced to the Earldome of Kent. And after his decease without issue, his brother *Henrie* succeeded, a right honourable personage and endued with the ornaments of true nobility.

An. 15. E. 2.

Saint Brieux.

The Walsingham.

This province hath parishes. 398.

G g

DOBVNI.



DOBVNI.

Hitherto we have walked over all those Countries that lie betweene the British Ocean of the one side, and the Severne sea and river Thames on the other. Now according to the order which wee have begun, let us survey the rest throughout: and passing over the said river returne to the head of Thames and the salt water of Severne; and there view the DOBVNI, who in ancient times inhabited those parts which now are termed Oxford-shire and Gloucester-shire. This their name, I verily suppose came of Duffin a British word, because the places where they planted themselves, were in the most part low and lying under the hills, whereupon the name became common to them all: and verily from such a kind of site, Bathicia in Troy, Catabathmos in Africk, and Deep-Dale in Britan tooke their names. I am the more easily induced to believe this because I see, that Dio in the very same signification hath named certaine people, BODVNNI if the letters be not misplaced. For, Bodo or BODVN, (as Plinie saith) in the ancient French tongue, (which I have proved before was the same that is the British language,) betokeneth Deepe. Hence was it, that the City Bodincomagus, as he writeth, became so called, for that it stood where the river * Po was deepest hence had the people Bodiontij that name, who inhabited a deepe vale by the Lake of Lozanne, and Geneva, now called Val de Fontenay, to say nothing of Bodotria the deepest Frith in all Britan. Concerning these Bodunj, I have found in all my reading no matter of great antiquity, save only that A. Plautius sent as Proprator by Claudius into Britan, received part of them upon their submission to his protection, to wit, those that were under Cattuellani, (for they held the region bordering upon them) and as Dio hath recorded, about the forty and foure yeare after Christ was borne, placed a garrison over them.

But when the English Saxons reigned in Britan, and the name of Dobuni was worne out, some of these, as also the people dwelling round about them,

Duffin in the British tongue signifieth low, deepe, or flat.

Bodo what it signifieth in British and French.

* Padus.

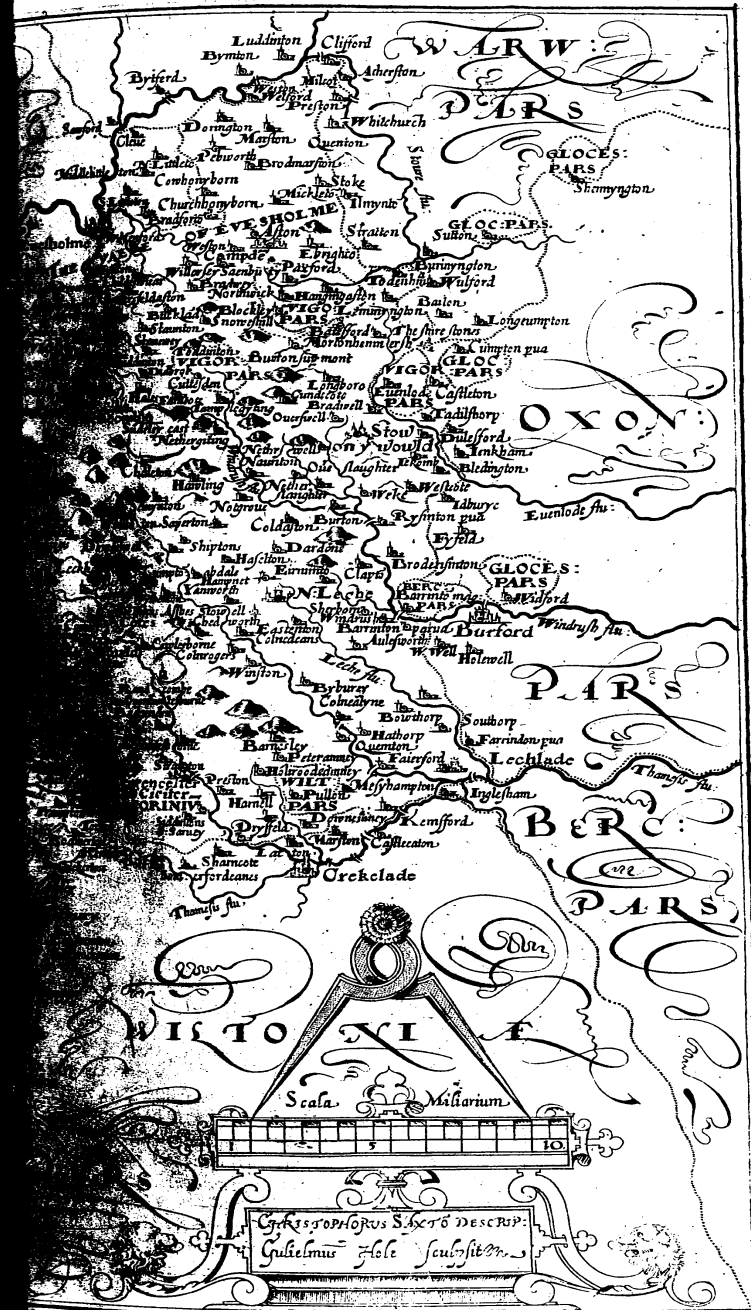
them, were by a new English Saxons name called Wiccij: but whereupon, I dare scarce venture to guesse, without craving leave of the Reader. Yet, if Wic in the Saxons tongue soundeth as much as the * creeke, or reach of a river, and the Viguones, a nation in Germanie are so called, because they dwell neere unto the creekes or baies of the Sea, and of rivers, (for so doth Beatus Rhenanus constantly affirme) It will bee no absurditie, if I derive our Wiccii from thence, who inhabited round about the mouth of Severne, which is very full of such Coves and small creekes and reaches.

(* * *)

Wiccii.

Gg2

GLO-



GLOCESTER-SHIRE.



Locester-shire, in the Saxon tongue Gleaucester-ſchyre, which was the chiefe ſeat of the *Dobuni*; on the Weſt ſide butteth upon Monmouth-shire and Hereford-shire, on the North upon Worceſter-shire, on the Eaſt upon Warwick-shire, Oxford-shire and Barck-shire, on the South upon Wilt-shire and Somerſet-shire both. A pleaſant countrey and a fruitfull, ſtretching out in length, from North-eaſt unto South-weſt. The part that lyeth more Eaſt-ward, riſing up in height with hills and wolds is called Corteswold: the middle part ſettleth downe low to a moſt fertile plaine, and is watered with *Severne* that noble river, which doth infuſe life, as it were, into the ſoile. That part which bendeth more Weſtward on the further ſide of *Severne*, is all over be ſpread with woods. But what meane I to buſie my ſelfe herein? *William of Malmesbury* will eaſe mee of this labour, who fully gives high commendations to this countrey. Have therefore what he writeth in his booke of Biſhop; *The countrey* (ſaith he) *is called of the principall Citie: The vale of Gloceſter. the ground throughout yieldeth plentie of corne, and bringeth forth abundance of fruits: the one through the naturall goodneſſe onely of the ground, the other through diligent manuring and tillage; in ſo much, as it would provoke the lazieſt body that is, to take paines, ſeeing that it answereth backe againe with the encrease of an hundred fold, that which is ſowne. Here may you ſee the high wayes and common lanes clad with apple-trees and pearre-trees, not ſet nor graſſed by the induſtry of mans hand, but growing naturally of their owne accord. The ground of it ſelfe is enclined to beare fruits, and thoſe both in taſte and beautie farre exceeding others: whereof ſome will laſt a whole yeare and not wither and rivell: ſo that they are ſerviceable untill new come againe for ſupply. There is no countrey in all England ſo thicke ſet as this Province with Vine-yards, ſo plentifull in encrease, and ſo pleaſant in taſte. The very wines thereof made, affect not their mouthes that drinke of them with any unpleaſing tartneſſe, as being little inferiour in ſweetneſſe and odour to the French wines. The houſes in it are almoſt innumerable, the Churches paſſing faire, and the townes ſtanding very thicke. But that which addeth unto all theſe good gifts a ſpeciall glory is the river *Severne*, than which there is not any one in this land, for channell broader, for ſtreame ſwifter, for fiſh better ſtored. There is in it a daily rage and fury of the waters, which I know not whether I may call a gulfe or whirle poole of waves, and the ſame raiſing up the ſands from the bothome winding and driving the ſame upon heapes, commeth with a forcible violence, and reacheth no further then to the bridge. Sometimes alſo it overfloweth the bankes, and when it hath roved about a great way, it retireth backe as a conquerour of the land. Unhappy is that veſſell which it taketh full upon the ſide. The Water-men well ware hereof when they ſee that *Higra* comming, (for ſo they call it in Engliſh), turne the veſſell affront upon it, and ſo cutting through the middeſt of it, checke and avoide the violence thereof.*

Vines and wine.

Severn.

Higra.

But that which hee ſaith of the hundred fold increaſe and yeeld of the ground, doth not hold true. Neither for all that, would I thinke with theſe whining and ſlothfull husbandmen, whom *Columella* taketh up for it, that the ſoile is now wearied and become barren with too much fruitfullneſſe and over-free bearing in former ages. Howbeit hereby, if I ſhould ſay nothing of other things; it is to bee ſeene, that wee have no cauſe to wonder, why many places in this countrey and elſe-where in England are called *Vine-yards*, ſeeing it hath afforded wine; and ſurely it may ſeeme to proceed rather of the Inhabitants idleneſſe than any diſtemperature and indiſpoſition of the ayre; that it yeeldeth none

at this day. But why in some places within this Countrey, as wee read in our Statutes, by a private custome which now is become of strong validitie as a law, the goods and lands of condemned persons fall into the Kings hands for a year onely and a day, and after that terme expired (contrary to the custome of all England beside) returne to the next heires, let law-students and State-men looke to that: for no part it is of my purpose to search thereinto. Now I will take a superfluous survey (such as I can) of those three parts whereof I spake orderly one after another.

The part, that lyeth more West beyond Severne, (which the *Silures* in old time possessed) along the river *Vaga* or *Wye*, that parteth England and Wales, was wholly bespiced with thicke tall woods: we call it at this day, *Deane Forrest*: The Latine writes some name it of the Danes *Danica Sylva* the *Danes wood*, others with *Girald*, the *Wood of Danubia*. But I would thinke, if it had not this name of *Deane* a little towne adjoining, that by short cutting the word, it was called *Deane*, for *Arden*. Which terme both Gauls and Britans in ancient times may seeme to have used for a wood, considering that two mighty great woods, the one in that part of *Gaulle* called *Gallia Belgica*, and the other among us in *Warwick-shire*, are by one and the selfe same name termed *Arden*. For, this was a wonderfull thicke Forrest, and in former ages so darke and terrible, by reason of crooked and winding wayes, as also the grisly thick therein, that it made the inhabitants more fierce, and bolder to commit robberies. For in the reigne of *Henry* the first they so infested all Severne side with robbing and spoiling, that there were lawes made by authority of the Parliament, for to restrain them. But since that rich Mines of Iron were heere found out, those thicke woods began to wax thin by little and little. In this Forrest, upon the foresaid river stood *Tudenham* and *Wollaston*, two townes of good antiquity, which *Walter* and *Roger* his brethren of *Gislebert* Lord of *Clare* wrested out of the *Welsh-men* hands, about the year 1160. As also *Lidney* is adjoining to them, where *Sir William Winter*, Vicemirall of England, a renowned Knight for Sea-services (as his brother *Arthur* slaine in *Orkeney-Isles*) built a faire house. But the most ancient towne of all others is *ABONE* or *AVONE*, mentioned by *Antonine* the Emperour in his *Tourney-booke*, which having not lost that name altogether, is at this day called *Aventon*: a small towne indeed, but standing upon Severne, just nine miles, as hee writeth, from *VENTASILVRVM*, or *Caerwent*.

And seeing that *Avon* in the Brittainish tongue importeth *A River*, it shall be a strange thing, if we thinke it so called of the river: for in the very same signification, (that I may omit the rest) we have *Waterton*, *Bourne*, and *Riverton*: as the Latins had *Aquinum* and *Fluentium*. And I suppose the rather, that it tooke name of the river, because people were wont at this place to ferry over the river, whereupon the towne standing over against it, is by *Antonine* called *TRAIECTVS*, that is, a passage or ferry: but without doubt, the number in that place set downe, is corrupted. For he maketh it nine miles betwene *TRAIECTVS* and *ABONE*, whereas the river is scarce three miles broad. It may seeme then to have bene utterly decayed, or turned rather into a village, either when as passengers began to ferry over below, or when *Athelstane* thrust out the *Welsh* Britans from hence. For, hee was the first that drove them, as *William* of *Malmesbury* witnesseth, beyond the river *Wye*. And when as before his time, *Severne* was the bound, betwene the English and *Welshmen*, hee appointed *Wye* to be the limit confining them both: Whence our *Nicholas* writeth thus.

Inde vagos vaga Cambrenses, hinc respicit Anglos.

To Wales on this side, looketh *Wic*,

On that againe, our England he doth eye.

Not farre from *Wye* amongst blind by-wayes beset with thicke plumps of trees, appeareth *Breulis* Castle more than halfe fallen downe, remarkable for the death of *Mahel* youngest sonne of *Miles*, Earle of *Hereford*. For there, his greedy deviles, bloody crueltie, and covetousnesse ready to pray upon other mens estates (for which vices

he is much blamed in Writers) were overtaken with a just revenge from heaven. For, as *Girald* hath written, being entertained guest-wife by *Sir Walter Clifford* in this Castle, when the house was all on a light fire, hee was killed with a stone that from the top of an high Turret fell upon his head and brained him.

Neither have I any thing else to be recounted in this wood-countrey beside *Newnham* a pretty mercate, and *Westbury* thereby a seate of the *Bainhams* of ancient descent: But that *Herbert* who had wedded the sister of the said *Mahel* Earle of *Hereford*, in her right was called *Lord of Deane* fro whom that Noble house of the *Herberts* fetcheth their pedigree, out of which family came the *Lords of Blanlevney*, and of late daies, the *Herberts* Earles of *Huntingdon* and *Pembroch*, with others. From hence also, if wee may believe *David Powell* in his historie of Wales, was descended *Antonie Fitz-Herbert*, whole great learning and industrie in the wisdom of our law, both the judiciall Court of *Flees*, wherein he sate Iustice a long time, and also those exact bookes of our common law by him exquisitely penned and published, doe sufficiently witness. But other have drawne his descent and that more truly, if I have insight therein, from the race of the *Fitz-Herberts* Knights in *Derby shire*.

The river *Severne*, called by the Britains *HAFREN*, after it hath run a long course with a channell somewhat narrow, no sooner entereth into this shire, but entertaineth the river *Avon*, and another brooke coming from the East. Betwixt which, is seated *Tewkesbury*, in the *Saxon* tongue *Theocsbury*, by others *Theoci Curia*, taking the name from one *Theocus* who there did lead an *Eremites* life. It is a great and faire towne, having three bridges to passe over, standing upon three rivers, famous for making of *Wollen cloth*, and the best mustard; which for the quicke heate that it hath, biterh most and piercerh deepest: but most famous in times past by reason of an ancient Monastery which *Dodo* a man of great power in *Mercia* founded in the year 715, where beforetime he kept his royall court, as is testified by this inscription which there remained long after.

HANC AVLAM REGIAM DODO DVX CONSECRARI
FECIT IN ECCLESIAM.

THIS ROIAL PALACE DVKE DODO CAUSED
TO BE CONSECRATED FOR A CHVRCH.

And *Odo* his brother endowed the same, which being by continuance of time, and the fury of enemies ruinated, *Robert Fitz-Haimon* the Norman, Lord of *Corbeile* and *Thorigny* in *Normandie* reedified, translating monks from *Cranborn* in *Dorsetshire* hither upon a devout mind verily and a religious, that he might make some amends to the Church, for the losse that the Church of *Baiuex* in *Normandie* had sustained: which *K. Henry* the first for to free him from his enemies had set on fire and burned, and afterwards repenting that which he had done, built againe. It cannot, (writeth *William* of *Malmesbury*) be easily reported, how highly *Robert Fitz-hamon* exalted this Monastery, wherein the beauty of the buildings ravished the eyes, and the charity of the Monks allured the hearts of such folke as used to come thither, Within this both himselfe and his successors Earles of *Glocester* were buried: who had a Castle of their owne called *Holmes* hard by, which now is almost vanished out of sight. Neither is this towne lesse memorable for that battell, whereby the house of *Lancaster* received a mortal wound: as wherein very many of their side in the yeere, 1471. were slaine, more taken prisoners and divers beheaded, their power so weakened and their hopes abated, especially because young Prince *Edward* the only sonne of *King Henry the sixth*, a very child, was there put to death, and in most shamefull and villanous manner his braines dashed out, as that never after they came unto the field against *King Edward the fourth*. In which respect, *John Leland* wrote of this towne in this wise:

*Ampla foro, & partis spoliis praelara, Theoci
Curia, sabrina quae se commisit Avona*

Falget;

*Fulget; nobilium sacrisque recondit in antris
Mulorum cineres, quondam inclusa corpora bello.*

Where Av'n and Severn meete in one, there stands a goodly towne.
For mercat great and pillage rich there wonne, of much renowne,
Hight *Tewkesburie*: where noble men entombed many are,

Now gone to mould, who sometimes were redoubred Knights in warre.

From thence we come to *Deorhirst*, which *Bede* speaketh of, scituate somewhe low upon the bank of *Severn*, wherby it hath great losses many times, when he overfloweth his bounds. It had in it sometimes a little Monasterie, which being by the *Danes* overthrowne flourished againe at length under *Edward the Confessor*; who, as we read in his Testament, assigned *The religious place at Deorhirst and the government thereof to Saint Denis neere unto Paris*. Yet, a little while after, as *William of Malmesbury* saith, *It was but a vaine and void representation of antiquitie*. Over against it lieth a place halfe encompassed in with *Severne*, called in the Saxon tongue *Olenas*, and *Alney*, now the *Eight*, that is, *The Island*: Famous, by the reason of this occurrence, when both the Englishmen and the *Danes* were much weakened with continuall encounters, to make a small dispatch at once of all quarrels, the Fortune and destinie of both nations was committed to *Edmund King of the English*, and to *Canutus King of the Danes*, who in this *Island* by a single combat tried it out, unto whether of them the right of this Realme should belong. But after they had fought and given over one even hand, a peace was concluded, and the kingdome divided betwene them. But when streight upon it *Edmund* was dispatched out of the way not without suspicion of poison, *Canutus* seized into his owne hands all England.

From *Deorhirst* *Severne* runneth downe by *Haesfield* which King *Henry the Third* gaveto *Rich. Paunceforte*, whose successours built a faire house heere, and whose predecessors were possessed of faire lands in this Countrey before, and in the Conquerours time in *Wiltshire* making many reaches winding in and out, and forthwith dividing himselfe to make a river *Island* most rich and beautifull in greene meddowes, he passeth along by the head Citie of this Shire, which *Antonine* the Emperour called *CLBVVM* and *GLEVVVM*, the *Britans* terme *Caer Glevie*, the English Saxons *Gleaucester*, the Vulgar sort of *Latinists* *Glovernia*, others *Claudiocopia*, of the Emperour *Claudius*, as they imagine: who forsooth, should give it this name, when hee had bestowed heere his daughter *Genissa* in marriage upon *Arviragus* the *Britan*. Touching whom, *Iuvenall* writeth thus,

*Regem aliquem capies, vel de temone Britanno
Excidet Arviragus.*

Some King (sure) thou shalt prisoner take in chafe or battaile heat,
Or else *Arviragus* shall loose his British royall seare.

As though hee had begat any other daughters of his three wives besides *Claudia*, *Antonia* and *Othavia*; or as if *Arviragus* had bene knowne in that age, whose name was never heard of before *Domitians* time and scarce then. But, let them goe, that seeke to build antiquitie upon a frame grounded on lies: Rather yet would I give my voice and accord with *Ninnius*, who writeth, *That it took the name from Glevum, the great grandfathers father of King Vortigern*; but that long before it, *Antonine* had named it *Glevum* (which, both the Distance from *Corinium* and the name also may prove.) But as the Saxon name *Gleaucester* came from *Glevum*, so *Glevum* proportionably from the British, *Caer Glow* which I suppose sprong from the word *Glow*, that in the British tongue signifieth *Faire* and *Goodly*: so that *Caer Glow* may be as much as to say, a faire Citie: In which signification also, the Greekes had their *Callidromos*, *Callistratia*: the English men their *Brighstow*, and *Shirley*, and in this very Countie *Faireford*, *Faire-ley* &c.

This Citie was built by the Romans, and set, as it were upon the necke of the *Silures* to yooke them. And there also was a Colonie plantred to people it, which they called *COLONIA GLEVVVM*. For I have seene a fragment of antique stone in the walles of *Bath* neere unto the North-gate, with this Inscription.

*DEC

*DEC COLONIAE GLEV
VIXIT ANN. LXXXVI.

* Decurio.

It lieth stretched out in length over *Severne*: on that side where it is not watered with the river, it hath in some places a very strong wall for defence. A proper and fine Citie I assure you it is, both for number of Churches and for the buildings. On the South part there was a lofty Castle of square Ashler stone which, now for the most part, is nothing but a ruine. It was built in King *William the first* his time, and sixtene houses there about, as wee read in the booke of *Englands Survey*, were plucked downe for the rearing of this Castle. About which, *Roger* the sonne of *Miles*, *Constable of Gloucester* went to law with King *Henry the second*: and his brother *Walter* lost all the right and interest hee had in this City and Castle, as *Robert de Mont* hath written. *Ceanlin King of the West Saxons*, was the first, that about the yeare of our redemption 570. by force and armes wrested *Gloucester* out of the *Britans* hands. After this, the *Mercians* won it, under whom it flourished in great honour, and *Offricke King of Northumberland* by permission of *Etheldred the Mercian*, founded there a very great and stately Monastery for Nunnes, over whom *Kineburg*, *Eadburg* and *Eve* Queenes of the *Mercians* were *Prioresse*s successively one after another. *Edelfst* also that most noble Ladie of the *Mercians*, adorned this City with a Church, wherein shee her selfe was buried, and not long after, when the *Danes* had spoyled and wasted the whole countrey, those sacred Virgins were throwne out, and *The Danes* (as *Aethelward* that ancient authour writeth) with many a stroake pitched poore cottages into the citie of *Gleu-cester*. At which time, when those more ancient Churches were subverted, *Aldred Archbishop of Yorke*, and *Bishop of Worcester* erected another for Monkes which is now the chiefe Church in the Citie, and hath a Deane and sixe Prebendaries. But the same in these late precedent ages was newly beautified. For, *John Hanley* and *Thomas Farley* two Abbats added unto it the Chappel of the blessed Virgin *Mary*: *N. Morwent* raised from the very foundation the forefront, which is an excellent piece of worke: *G. Horton* an Abbat, adjoynd to it the crosse North-part; *Abbat Trowcester* a most daintie and fine Cloister, and *Abbat Sebrok* an exceeding high faire Reecple. As for the South side, it was also repaired with the peoples offerings at the Sepulcher of the unhappy King *Edward the second*, who lieth heere entered under a monument of *Alabaster*: and not farre from him another Prince as unfortunate as hee, *Robert Curt-hose*, the eldest sonne of King *William the Conquerour Duke of Normandy* within a wooden painted tombe in the midst of the quire, who was bereft of the Kingdome of *England* for that he was borne before his father was King, deprived of his two sonnes the one by strange death in the New-forrest, the other dispoiled of the Earledome of *Flanders* his inheritance, and slaine; he himselfe dispoiled of the *Dukedome of Normandy* by his brother King *Henry the first*, his cies plucked out, and kept close prisoner 26. yeares with all contumelious indignities untill through extreame anguish hee ended his life. Above the quire, in an arch of this church, there is a wall built in forme of a femicircle full of corners, with such an artificiall device, that if a man speake with never so low a voice at the one part thereof, and another lay his eare to the other being a good way distant, he may most easily heare every fillable. In the reigne of *William the Conquerour* and before, it may seeme that the chiefe trade of the Citizens was to make Iron. For as we find in the * *Survey booke of England*, the King demanded in manner no other tribute than certaine *Icres of Iron*, and *Iron barres*, for the use of the Kings Navy, and some few * *quarts of hony*. After the comming in of the *Normans*, it suffered divers calamities: by the hands of *Edvard*, King *Henry the third* his sonne; whiles *England* was all on a smoake and combustion by the *Barons* warre, it was spoiled;

878.

* Robert Curt-hose.

* Domes-day-booke.
* Sextarios.

Paunce-
forte, or
Pauncevolt.
Placita 15.
Edw. 1.

led; and afterward by casualty of fire almost wholly consumed to ashes; but now cherished with continuance of long peace it flourisheth againe as fresh as ever it was, and by laying unto it two *Hundreds*, it is made a *County*, and called the *County of Glocester*. Also within the memory of our fathers, *King Henry the Eighth* augmented the state thereof with an *Episcopall See*, with which dignitie in old time it had bene highly endowed, as *Geffery of Monmouth* avoucheth, and I will not derogate ought from the credit of his assertion, considering that among the *Prelates of Brittain* the *Bishop Cluvienfis* is reckoned, which name derived from *Clevum* or *Glow*, doth rather a fort confirme and strengthen my coniecture, that this is that *Glevum*, whence *Antonine* maketh mention.

Severne, having now left *Glocester* behind it, and gathered his waters unto one streame againe, windeth it selfe by *Elmore* a Mansion house of the *Gists*, ancient by their owne lineall descent, being in elder times owners of *Apsely-Gife* neere *Brighthill*: and from the *Beauchamps* of *Holt*, who acknowledge *Huber de Burgo* Earle of *Kent* (whom I lately mentioned) beneficiall to them; and restifie the same by their *Armories*. Lower upon the same side *Stroud* a pretty river slideth into *Severne* our of *Coteswold* by *Stroud* a Mercat towne sometimes better peopled with *Clothiers*, and not farre from *Minching-Hampton* which anciently had a Nunnery, or belonged to Nunnnes whom our ancestors named *Minchings*.

Now *Severn* waxing broader and deeper by reason of the alternative flowing and ebbing of the sea, riseth and swelleth in manner of a rough and troublous sea indeed, and so with many windings and turnings in, and out, speedeth him unto the Ocean. But nothing offereth it selfe unto his sight, (to count of) as hee passeth along, but *Cam-bridge* a little country towne: where it receiveth *Cam* a small rivelet: Over the bridge whereof, when the *Danes* with rich spoiles passed (as *Aethelward* writeth) * a *battail-ray*, the *West-Saxons* and the *Mercians* received them with an hote battaile in *Winesfield*, where three of their Pettie Kings were slaine, namely, *Heastden*, *Cimril* and *Inguar*.

On the same shore nor much beneath, standeth *Barkley*, in the Saxon-tongue *Bæopkenlau*, of great name for a most strong Castle, a Major, who is the Head Magistrate, and especially for the Lords thereof descended from *Robert-Fitz-Harding* to whom *King Henry* the second gave this place, and *Barkely Hearnes*. Out of this house are branched many Knights and Gentlemen of signall note, and in the reigne of *King Henry* the seventh flourished *William Lord Barkely*, who was honoured by *King Edward* the fourth with the stile of *Viscount Barkely*, by *King Richard* the third with the honour of Earle of *Nottingham* (in regard of his mother daughter of *Thomas Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolke*, and Earle of *Nottingham*) and by *King Henry* the Seventh with the office of Marshall of *England*, and dignity of Marquis *Barkely*. But for that he died issuelesse, these his titles died together with him. If you be willing to know by what a crafty fetch *Goodwin* Earle of *Kent*, a man most deeply pregnant in devising how to do injury, got the possession of this place, you may read these few lines out of *Wid. Map. us*, who flourished 400. yeares ago: and worth the reading, (believe me) they are. *Barkley* neere unto *Severn* is a towne of 500. pounds revenue. In it there was a Nunnery, and the Abbess over these Nunnnes was a Noble woman and a beautifull. Earle *Goodwin* by cunning and subtilt wile, desiring not her selfe, but hers, as he passed that way, left with a Nephew of his, a very proper and beautifull young Gentleman (pretending that hee was sickly) untill he returned backe. Him he had given this lesson, that hee should keepe his bed and in no wise seeme to be recovered untill he had got both her and as many of the Nunnnes as hee could wish child as they came to visite him. * And to the end that the young man might obtaine their favour and his owne full purpose, when they visited him: the Earle gave him pretty rings and fine girdles to bestow for favours upon them, and thereby to deceive them. Hee therefore being willing entred into this course of libidinous pleasure (for that the way downe to hell is easie) was soon taught his lessons, and wisely playeth the fool in that, which seemed wise in his own conceit. With him they were restant all those things that the foolish virgins could wish for, beauty, daintie delicacies, riches, faire speech; and careful

*
Elmore.

Minching.

Cam-bridge.

*
Barkley.
See Britton in
Somerfet-
shire.

Goodwins
fraudulent
fetch.

* De bonis
enulis.

he was now to singe them alone. The Devil therefore thrust out *Pallas*, brought in *Venus*, and made the Church of our Saviour and his Saints, an accursed Temple of all Idols; and the Shrine, a very steeple, and so of pure Lambes, hee made them foule shee-wolves, and of pure virgins, filthy harlots. Now when many of their bellies bare out big and round, this youth long by this time over wearied with conquest of pleasure, getteth him gone, and forthwith bringeth home againe unto his Lord and Master, a victorious Ensigne, worthy to have the reward of iniquitie: and to speake plaine, relateth what was done. No sooner heard he this, but he bieth him to the King: enformeth him how the Lady Abbess of *Barkely* and her Nuns were great with child, and commonly prostitute to every one that would: sendeth speciall messengers of purpose for enquirie heereof, proveth all that he had said. Hee beggeth *Berkley* of the King his Lord after the Nuns were thrust out, and obtained it at his hands: and he left it to his wife *Gueda*: but because she her selfe (so faith *Doomes-day booke*;) would eat nothing that came out of this Manour, for that the Nunnery was destroyed, he purchased for her *Vacester*, that thereof she might live, so long as she made her abode at *Barkley*.

Thus wee see, a good and honest mind abhorreth whatsoever is evill gotten. How *King Edward* the second being deposed from his Kingdome through the crafty plotting and practise of his wife, was made away in the Castle heere, by the wicked subtiltie of *Adam Bishop* of *Hereford*, who wrote unto his keepers these few words without points betweene them: *Edwardum occidere nolite timere bonum est*: C that by reason of their diverse sense and construction, both they might commit the murder, and he also cleanly excuse himselfe, I had rather you should seeke in *Historians*, than looke for at my hands.

K. Edward
the second
murdered.

Beneath this *Barkley*, the little river *Avon* closely entereth into the Sea, at the head whereof scarce eight miles from the waterside, upon the hils neere *Alderley* a small towne, there are found certaine stones resembling *Coccles* or *Periwinkles* and *Oysters*: which, whether they have bene sometimes living creatures, or the gamefom sports of Nature, I leave it to *Philosophers* (that hunt after natures works.) But *Fracastorius* the principall Philosopher in this our age; maketh no doubt, but that they were living creatures engendred in the Sea, and by waters brought to the D mountaines. For, he affirmeth, that mountaines were cast up by the Sea, with the driving at first of sand into heapes and hillocks: also that the sea flowed there where now hilles doe rise aloft: and that as the said Sea retired the hilles also were discovered. But this is out of my race.

Wilkes of
stone or
Shell-fish
stomified.

Shell-fish
stomified.

TRAJECTVS, that is, *The ferry*, whereof *Antonine* the Emperour maketh mention over against *Alone*, where they were wont to passe over *Severne* salt water by boare, was in times past as I guesse by the name, at *Oldbury*, which is by interpretation, *The Old Burgh*: like as we doe ferry, in these daies at *Aust*, a little towne somewhat lower. This in ancient times was called *Aust clive*: for, a great craggy cliffe it is indeed, mounting up a great height. And verily, memorable is the thing which E that *Mapas* whom I spake of writeth to have bene done in this place. *Edward* the elder, saith he, Lay at *Austclive*, and *Leolin* Prince of *Wales* at *Bethesley*: now when *Leolin* would not come downe to parley, nor crosse *Severn*, *Edward* passeth over to *Leolin*; whom when *Leolin* saw and knew who he was, hee cast off his rich robe (for hee had prepared himselfe to sit in judgement) entred the water breast-high, and clasping the boat with an embrace, said, Most wise and sage King, thy humility hath overcome my insolency, and thy wisdom triumphed over my folly: Come, get upon my necke which I have (foole as I am) lifted up against thee, and so shalt thou enter into that land, which thy benigne mildnesse hath made thine owne this day: and after he had taken him upon his shoulders, hee would needs have him sit upon his roabe aforesaid, and so putting his owne hands joyntly into his, did him homage. Upon the same shore also is situate *Thornebury*, where are to be scene the F foundations brought up above ground of a sumptuous and stately house which *Edward* the last Duke of *Buckingham*, was in hand to build, in the yeare of our Lord, (as the engraving doth purport) 1511. when he had taken downe an ancient house which *Hugh Audley* E. of *Glocester* had formerly built seven miles from hence, *Avon* sheading it selfe into *Severn* running crosse before it, maketh a division betwene *Glocestershire*

Here, and Sommerſſhire, and not farre from the banke thereof, *Pucle-Church* reth, being in times paſt a towne or Manour of the Kings called *Pucle-Kerkes*, *Edmund King of England*, whiles he interpoſed himſelfe betweene his *Sewer*, *Leove* a moſt vilanous wretch, for to part and end certaine quarrels betwene him was thruſt through the body, and ſo loſt his life.

Nere bordering upon this place are two towneſ, *Winterburne*, which had for Lords the Bradſtons, amongſt whom *S. Thomas* was ſummoned amongſt the Lords in the time of King *Edward the Third*. From whom the *Vicounts Montacute*, the *Barons of Wenworth*, &c. fetch their deſcent: *Acton*, which gave name to the houſe of the *Actons*, Knights: whoſe heire, being married unto *Nicolas Points* Knight in *K. Edward* the ſecond his daies, left the ſame to their off-ſpring: *Derham* a little towne, in the Saxons tongue *Deopham*, where *Ceaulin* the Saxon ſlew three Princes or Lords of the Britans, *Commeil*, *Condidan* and *Fariemeiel*, with others, whom he himſelfe put to the ſword and diſpoſſeſſed the Britans of that cuntry for ever.

There remaine yet in that place huge rampiers and trenches as fortifications of their campes, and other moſt apparent monuments here and there of ſo great a war. This was the chiefe ſeat of the Barony of * *James de novo Mercatu*, who begat daughters, wedded to *Nicholas de Moelis*, *John de Boteraux*, and *Ralph Ruſſell*: one of whoſe poſterity, enriched by matching with the heire of the ancient family of *Gorges*, aſſumed unto them the name of *Gorges*. But from *Ralph Ruſſell* the heire this *Douglis* ham deſcended to the family of *Venis*. Above theſe is *Sodbury* knowne by the ſurname of *Walſh*, and neighbours thereunto are *Wike-ware* the ancient ſeat of the family *De-la-ware*, *Wotton under Edge*, which yet remembreth the ſlaughter of *Sir Thomas Talbot Vicount Liſle* heere ſlaine in the time of King *Edward the Fourth* in an encounter with the Lord *Barkley*, about poſſeſſions, ſince which time have continued betwene their poſterity untill now, lately they were finally compounded. *Northward* I had fight of *Durſley* reputed the ancienteſt habitation of the *Barkleys*, hereupon ſlaid *Barkley* of *Durſley*, who built here a Caſtle now more than ruins, and were accounted founders of the Abbey of *Kingswood* thereby for *Ciſtercian* Monkes, derived from *Timern* whom *Maud* the Empreſſe greatly enriched. The males of this houſe failed in the time of King *Richard the Second*, and the heire *garrall* was married to *Canſelow*. Within one mile of this, where the river *Cam* lately ſpoken of, ſpringeth, is *Vleigh*, a ſeat alſo of the *Barkleys* deſcended from the Barons *Barkley*, ſlaid of *Vleigh*, and *Stoke Giffard*, who were found coheires to *I. Baron Bouchart*, deſcended from the Baron *Zouch* of *Richards Caſtles*, alias *Mortimer*, and the *Somerſet* Lords of *Ducley*, *Beverſton Caſtle* not farre of Eaſtward appertained alſo to the name of *Barkleys*, but in former times to the *Gournois*, and *Ab-Adam* a Baron in the time of King *Edward the Firſt*.

Hitherto have we curſorily paſſed over the principall places in this Shire ſituate beyond and upon *Severn*, and not far from his banke: Now proceede we forward to the Eaſt part, which I ſaid riſeth up with hilles, to wit, *Cotteswold*, which of wolds, and *Cotes*, that is, hils and *Sheepſolds* tooke that name. For, mountaines and hils without woods, the Engliſhmen in old time termed *Wolds*: whence it is that an *old Gloſſary* interpreteth *Alpes Italie*, The *Wolds of Italie*. In theſe *Wolds* there feed in great numbers, flockes of ſheepe, long necked and ſquare of bulke and bone, by reaſon (as is commonly thought) of the weally and hilly ſituation of their paſturage: which wool being moſt fine and ſoft is had in paſſing great account among all nations. Under the ſide of theſe hils, and among them are to be ſcene, as it were, in a row neighbouring together, theſe places following, of more antiquity than the reſt, beginning at the North-eaſt end of them.

Campden, commonly *Camden*, a mercat towne well peopled and of good reſort, where, as *John Caſtoreus* writeth, all the Kings of Saxon blood aſſembled in the year of Salvation 689. and conſulted in common about making war upon the Britans. In William the Conquerours time this *Weſton* and *Biſſelay* were in the poſſeſſion of *Harold* Earle of *Cheſter*, and from his poſterity came at laſt by *Nicolaus de Albiniaco* an inheritor

rice to the ancient Earles of *Arundel* unto *Roger de Somery*. Neere unto it ſtandeth the ſaid *Weſton*, a place now to bee remembered in regard of a faire houſe, which maketh a goodly ſhew a faire off, built by *Ralph Sheldon* for him and his Poſterity.

Hales in late time a moſt flouriſhing Abbay built by *Richard* Earle of *Cornwall*, and King of *Romanes*, who was there buried with his Wife *Sanchia* daughter to the Earle of *Province*: and deſerving commendation for breeding up of *Alexander* of *Hales* a great Clerke and ſo deeply learned above all others in that ſubtile and deepe Divinity of the Schoole men, as he carried away the ſurname of *Doctor Irrefragabilis*, that is, the *Doctor ungainſaid*, as he that could not be gainſaid.

Sudley, in times paſt *Sudlength*, a very faire Caſtle, the ſeat not long ſince of *Sir Thomas Scimor* Baron *Scimor* of *Sudley*, and *Admirall* of England, attained in the time of King *Edward the Sixth*, and afterward of *Sir John Bruges* whom *Queene Mary* created *Baron Chandos* of *Sudley*, becauſe he derived his pedigree from the ancient family of *Chandos*, out of which there flouriſhed in the raigne of *Edward the third* *Sir John Chandos* a famous Baneret *Vicount of Saint Savours*, *L. of Caumont*, and *Kerison* in France, a martiall man, and for military Proweſſe every way moſt renowned. But in old time certaine Noblemen here dwelt, and of it had their addiſion *de Sudley*, deſcended of anigh ancient Engliſh Race, to wit from *Gorda K. Athelreds* daughter, whoſe ſon *Ralph Medantinus* Earle of *Hereford* begat *Harold L. of Sudley*, whoſe progeny flouriſhed here a long time, untill for default of iſſue male, the daughter and heire matched in marriage with *Sir William Butler* of the family of *Wem*, and brought him a ſonne named *Thomas*, and he begat *Ralph*, Lord *Treaſurer of England*, created by King *Henry the Sixth* *Baron of Sudley*, with a fee of 200. markes yearely, who repaired this caſtle and enlarged it with new buildings. His ſilters and coheires were married unto the houſes of *Norbury* and *Belknap*, and by their poſterity the poſſeſſions in ſhort time were divided into ſundry Families. *Toddington* alſo is next adjoining hereunto, where the *Tracies* Gentlemen of a right worſhipfull and ancient houſe flouriſhed a long time, who long ſince found the Barons of *Sudley* very bounteous unto them. But how in the firſt variance about Religion, *William Tracy* Lord of this place was proceeded againſt and puniſhed after his death by digging up his corps and burning it openly, for ſome few words put downe in his laſt Will and Teſtament, which favoured (as choſe times judged) of hereſie: as alſo how another *William de Tracy* long before, embred his hands in the bloody murder of *Thomas* Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, the Eccleſiaſticall Hiſtoriographers have written at large, and it is no part of my purpoſe to relate ſuch like matters. There is heere likewiſe *Winchelcombe* a great Towne and well inhabited, wherein *Kenulph* the *Mercian* King erected an Abbay, and on the ſame day that hee hallowed and dedicated it, hee freed and ſent home *Edbricht* a King of *Kent*, whom he had kept before his Priſoner. A man would hardly believe how much haunted and frequented this Abbay was long ſince, for the Reliques of King *Kenelme* a child ſeven yeares old, whom his owne ſiſter to get the Inheritance unto her ſelfe, ſecretly made away, and our forefathers regiſtred in the ranke of holy Martyrs. The Territory adjoining hereto in times paſt was reckoned a County by it ſelfe or a Sheriff-dome: For, we read in an old manuſcript, ſometime belonging to the Church of *Worceſter*, in this wiſe, *Edric* ſurnamed *Stronach*, that is, *The gentle*, or *gainer*, who firſt under King *Athelred*, and afterwards for a good while under *Cnut* governed the whole Kingdome of *Englond*, and ruled as Vice Roy, adjoining the Sheriff-dome of *Winchelcombe* which was then an entire thing by it ſelfe, unto the ſhire of *Gloceſter*. Thence I found nothing memorable, but neere the fountaine of *Churn* River, *Cobertey*, a ſeat of a ſtem of *Barkleys* ſo often named even from the Conqueſt, which marched with an heire of *Chandos*, and ſo came hereditarily to the *Bruges* progenitors to the Lords *Chandos*. Then by *Bridlip-hill*, whereby we aſcended unto this high *Cotteswold* out of the vale, lyeth *Brimſfield*, which had for the L. there of the *Giffords* in times paſt, unto whom in right of marriage there came a goodly inheritance from the *Cliffords*, and ſtreight waies by the female heires, the ſame fell to the Lords *de Strange* of *Blackmer*, ſo *Andelies* and divers others. Thus much of the places among the *Wolds*.

H h

But

The Bradſtons.

Deotham, Mananus.

* James of New-merch.

* De-la-ware. Wotton under Edge. Vicount Liſle.

Doursley.

Ing. 6. R. 2. Vleigh.

Eſcaeria. 8. H. 4. Beverſton Caſtle.

Cotteswold. Would what it is in Engliſh

Campden.

Inqui. 2. Edward 1.

Hales.

Alexander of Hales, he flouriſhed.

1230. Doctor ungainſaid. Sudley.

Barons of Chan.

See Banerets before. Barons of Sudley.

20. H. 6.

Eſcaeria 13. Edward 4.

Todington; Tracies.

Winchelcombe.

Sherif-dome.

Cobertey.

Cliffords Barons.

But under the said *Wolds* I have seene that notable Roman high-way by and
knowne name called the *Fosse*, which out of *Warwicke-shire* commeth downe
by *Lemington*, (where it may seeme there was a *Station* of the Romanes by the
peeces of Romane Coine ploughed there often times out of the ground: *some*
which *Edward Palmer* a curious and diligent *Antiquary*, whose Ancestors flourished
heere a long time, hath of his courtesie imparted unto mee) then, by *Stow* onto
Wold, where by reason of that high fite, the Windes blow cold: and *Norfolk*
bearing the name of a Riveret running hard by it: and then to *Circencester*, whith
the River *Corinus*, now *Churn* rising among the *Wolds* neere *Corberley*, very com-
modious for Milles, passeth by into the South, and so giveth it his name. This was
City of as great antiquity as any other, called by *Ptolomee* *CORINIUM*, by *Ca-*
tonine the Emperour, *DUROCORNOVIUM*, that is, *The water Cornovium*, full of
teene miles from *Glevum* or *Glocester*, as hee noteth. The Britans named it *Caer*
and *Caer Ceri*; the English Saxon *Cypen-ceaster*, wee in these dayes *Cirester*, and
Circiter. The ruinate wals doe plainly shew that it was very large: for, by report
they tooke up two miles in compasse: That it was a famous place, the Romanes
Coines, the cherkerworke pavements, and the engraven marble stones that now
then are there digged up, (which, have beene broken and to no small prejudice of
Antiquity) doe evidently testifie: As also the *Port Consular* wayes of the Romanes,
that heere did crosse one another, whereof that which led to *GLEVUM* or *Glo-*
ster, is yet extant with his high rigde evident to bee seene as farre as to *Birdlip*, and
if a man looke well upon it, seemes to have beene paved with stone. The *British*
Chronicles record, that this City was burnt being set on fire by *Sparrowes*, through
a stratageme devised by one *Gurmund*, I wot not what *Tyrant of Africke*, whereas
Giraldus calleth it *Passerum urbem*, that is, the *Sparrowes City*: and out of those *Chro-*
nicles *Necham* writeth thus,

Urbs vires experta, tuas Gurmunde per annos

Septem

This City felt for seven yeares space,
Thy forces *Gurmund*.

Who this *Gurmund* was I know not. The Inhabitants shew a Mount beneath the
City which they report *Gurmund* did cast up, and yet they call it *Griffins Mount*.
Marianus an Historian of good antiquity and credit, reporteth, that *Cenelin* King
the West Saxons dispossessed the Britans of it, what time hee had discomfited
put to flight their forces at *Deorham*, and brought *Glocester* to his subjection. Many
yeares after this, it was subje& to the West Saxons: for, wee read, that *Penda*
Mercian was defeated by *Cinegise* King of the West Saxons, when hee besieged
with a mighty Army. Howbeit, at length both it, and the whole Territory and
country came under subjection of the *Mercians*, and so continued untill the *Eng-*
lish Monarchie. Under which it sustained much sorrow and grievous calamity
by the Danes: and peradventure at the hand of *Gurmen* that Dane, whom the *Histo-*
riographers call both *Gusbrus* and *Gurmundus*. So that it may seeme he was that *Gur-*
mund which they so much speake of. For certes when hee aged, about the year, 825,
a rablement of Danes rosted heere one whole yeare. Now scarce the fourth part
within the wals is inhabited: the remaines beside are pasture grounds and the ruins
of an Abbey, built (as the report goeth) at first by the Saxons, and newly repaired
terwards by King *Henry the First* for *Blanche Chanoines*, wherein, I heard say, that many
of the family of the Barons de ** Sancto Amando* were buried. But the Castle that
had, was by a Warrant from the King, overthrowne in the first yeare of *Henry the*
Third his Raigne. The Townesmen raise the chiefe gaine by the Trade of *Co-*
thing, and they make great reports of the singular bounry of King *Richard*, the first
towards them, who endowed the Abbey with lands: and (as they say) themselves
made them Rulers of the seven Hundreds adjoining, to hold the same jurisdiction
see farre by vertue whereof they should have the hearing and determining of causes
and take unto themselves the fines, perquisites, amercements, and other profits
growing

* Samond.

growing out of the trials of such causes. Moreover King *Henry the Fourth* granted
unto them certaine priviledges in consideration of their good and valiant service
performed against *Thomas Holland Earle of Kent*, late Duke of *Surrey*, *John Holland*
Earle of Huntingdon, late Duke of *Excester*, *John Montacute Earle of Salisbury*, *Thomas*
de Spenser Earle of Gloucester, and others, who being by him dispoiled of their honours,
and maligning his usurpation, conspired to take away his life, and here, by the townes-
men intercepted, were some of them slaine outright, and others beheaded.

The river *Churne* when it hath left *Circester* behinde him, six miles * neere to *Dou-*
nam very an ancient seate of the *Hungerfords*, joyneth with *Isis*. For, *Isis*, common-
ly called *Ouse*, that it might bee by originall of *Glocester-shire*, hath his head there,
and with lively springs floweth out of the South border of this shire nere unto *Tor-*
leton an upland Village, not farre from that famous *Port-way*, called the *Fosse*. This
is that *Isis* which afterwards entertaineth *Tame*, and by a compound word is called
Tamisis, Sovereigne as it were of all the Britain Rivers in Britaine: of which a man
may well and truly say as ancient Writers did of *Euphrates* in the East part of the
World: that it doth both Sow and Water the best part of Britaine. The poeticall
description of whose Source or first head, I have heere put downe out of a Poem
entituled *The Marriage of Tame and Isis*, which whether you admit or omit, it skil-
leth but little.

* Isis, after-
wards Tamisis.

lanigeros quâ lata greges Cotswaldia pascit,
Crescit & in colles faciles, visura Dobunos,
Haud procul à Fossa longo spelunca recessu
Cernitur, abrupti surgente crepidine clivi:
Cujus inauratis resplendent limina topbis,
Atria tegit ebur, testumque Gagates Britanno
Emicat, alserno solidantur pumice postes.
Materiam sed vincit opus, ceduntque labori
Artifici topbus, pumex, ebur, atque Gagates.
Pingitur hinc vitrei moderatrix Cymbia regni
Passibus obliquis volventia sydera lustrans:
Oceano tellus conjuncta marito marito
Illinc calatur, fraternaque flumina Ganges,
*Nilus, * Amazonius, tractusque binominis Istri,*
Vicini & Rheni: sed & his intermicat auro
Vellere Phryxæa dæves, redimitaque spicis
Clara triumphatis erecta BRITANNIA Gallis, &c.
Unde so hic solio residet regnator aquarum
ISIS, fluminea qui majestate verendus
Caraleo gremio resupinat prodigus urnam,
Intensos crines ulvis & arundine cinctus,
Cornua cana liquenti, fluitantia lumina lymphis
Dispergunt lucem, propexa in pectore barba
Tota madet, toto distillant corpore gutta:
Et salientis aquæ prorumpunt undique vena.
Pisciculi liquidis penetralibus undique ludunt,
Plurimus & cygnus niveis argenteus alis
Pervolat circum, &c.

* Fosse way.

Where *Cotswald* spread abroad doth lie and feed faire flocks of sheepe,
And *Dobunes* for to see in downes ariseth nothing steepe,
Within a nouke along not much the *Fosse* and it betweene,
Just at the rising of a banke upright, a Cave is seene,
Whereof the entry glistereth with soft stones richly guilt,
The Haul is feel'd with Ivory, the rouse aloft ybuilt
Of Geat the best that Britaine yeelds: The pillars very strong,
With Pumish laid each other course are raised all along.

Hb 2

The

The stuffe full faire, yet Art doth it surpasse, and to the feate
Of *Artisan*, give place the gold, stones, *Tury*, and *Geat*.
Heere painted is the *Moone* that rules the Sea like *Chryſtall Glaſſe*,
As ſhe through rolling Signes above with traverſe courſe doth paſſe,
And there againe enchaſed are both land and Ocean wide,
Conjoyn'd as man and wife in one, with Rivers great beſide,
Like brethren all, as *Ganges* rich, ſtrange *Nilus*, *Tanaïs*,
Yea and the courſe of *Iſter* large, which * double named is,
Of *Rhene* alſo a neighbour ſtreame. And heere bedight in gold,
Among them glitt'reth Britanny with riches manifold
Of golden ſleece; a Coronet of Wheat-eares the dorch weare,
And for her triumph over France, her head aloft doth reare, &c.

In waving *Throne* heere ſits the King of waters all and ſome
ISIS, who in that Maſteſſe which Rivers doth become,
All rev'rend, from his watchet lap pow'r's forth his ſtreame amaine
With weed and reed his haireſ tucked up that grow both long and plaine,
His hoary hornes diſtilling runne, with water ſtand his eyes,
And ſhoot from them a luſtre farre: his kembed beard likewiſe,
Downe to the breſt wet-through doth reach: his body drops againe,
All over and on every ſide breakes out ſome water veine.

In ſecret watrſh room's within the little fiſhes play,
And many a ſilver Swan beſides, his white wings doth diſplay,
And flutter round about, &c.

* *Iſter*, and
Danubius.

Earles of Glo-
ceſter:

The Hiſtory of
Tewkesbury
Abbey.

Fitz-Haimon.
William of
Malmesbury.

Register of
Keiſham
Abbey, and
Tewkesbury.

Pat. 15. Joan.
R. 4.

As touching the Earles of *Gloceſter*; ſome there be, who have thruſt upon me
William Fitz-Euſtace, for the fiſt Earle: who this was, I have not yet found, all
verily beleeeve hee is yet unborne. But that which I have found, I will now
reale from the Reader. About the coming in of the Normans, we readeth
one *Bithricke* an Engliſh Saxon was Lord of *Gloceſter*, whom *Maud* wife to
am Conquerour, upon a ſecret rankor and hatred conceived againſt him for his
tempt of her beauty (for *Bithricke* had before time reſuſed to marry her) troubled and
moleſted moſt maliciously. And when ſhee had at length caſt him in Priſon, *John*
Fitz-Haimon Lord of *Cerboile* in *Normandy*, was by the King endowed with his
ſeſſions, who in a battaile having received a wound with the puſh of a pike upon the temple of
his head, had his wits cracks therewith, and ſurvived a good while after, as a man beſt
and madde. His daughter *Mabil*, whom others name *Sibill*, *Robert* the baſeſon
King *Henry* the Firſt by the interceſſion of his father, obtained for his wife, but not
before he had made him Earle of *Gloceſter*. This is hee who is called commonly by
Writers *The Conſull of Gloceſter*. A man of an haughty valorous minde and undaun-
ted heart, as any one in that age; and who being never dejected with any adverſity,
wanne great praife for his fidelity and worthy exploits in the behalfe of his ſiſter
Maud the Empreſſe againſt *Stephen* then uſurping the Crowne of England. This
honourable Title left he unto his ſon *William*, who dejected with comfortleſſe griefe
when death had deprived him of his onely ſon and heire, aſſured his eſtate with his
eldeſt daughter to *John* ſon to King *Henry* the Second, with certaine proviſions for
his other daughters. Yet his three daughters brought this Earldome into as many fa-
milies. For *John* when he had obtained the Kingdome repudiated her upon pretence
as well that ſhe was barren, as that they were within prohibited degrees of con-
guinity: and reſerving the Caſtle of *Briflow* to himſelfe, after ſome time, paſſed over
his repudiated wife with the Honor of *Gloceſter*, to *Geffrey Manderil* ſon of *Geffrey Fitz*
Peter, Earle of *Effex* for 20000. markes, who thus over-marrying himſelfe was greatly
impoveriſhed, and wounded in Tournament died ſoone after iſſueleſſe and the being
remarried to *Hubert of Burgh* died immediately. Then *K. John* upon an exchange gra-
nted the Earldome of *Gloceſter* to *Almarie Earle of Euxenx*, ſon to the eldeſt daughter of the
foreſaid *E. William*, who enjoyed it a ſhort time dying alſo without iſſue. So by *Amis*

A the ſecond daughter of the forenamed Earle *William* married to *Richard de Clare*
Earle of *Hertford*, this Earledome deſcended to *Gilbert* her ſonne, who was ſtiled
Earle of *Gloceſter* and *Hertford*, and mightily enriched his houſe by marrying one of
the heires of *William Marshall* Earle of *Pembroch*.

His ſonne and ſucceſſour *Richard* in the beginning of the *Barons warres* againſt king
Henry the Third ended his life, leaving *Gilbert* his ſonne to ſucceed him, who power-
fully and prudently ſwaied much in the ſaid wars, as he inclined to them or the king.
He obnoxious to King *Edward* the Firſt, ſurrendered his lands unto him, and received
them againe by marrying *Joane* the Kings Daughter (ſirnamed of *Acres* in the *Holy*
land becauſe ſhee was there borne) to his ſecond Wife, who bare unto him *Gilbert*
B *Clare* laſt Earle of *Gloceſter* of this ſirname, ſlaine in the flower of his youth in Scot-
land at the battaile of *Sterling* in the 6. yeare of *K. Edward* the ſecond. Howbeit while
this *Gilbert* the third was in minority, *Sir Ralph de Mont-hermer* who by a ſecret con-
tract had eſpouſed his mother the Kings daughter (for which he incurred the kings
high diſpleaſure, and a ſhort imprifonment) but after reconciled was ſummoned to
Parliaments by the name of Earle of *Gloceſter* and *Hertford*. But when *Gilbert* was
out of his minority, he was ſummoned amongſt the *Barons* by the name of *Sir Ralph*
de Mont-hermer, as long as he lived, which I note more willingly for the rareneſſe of
the example. After the death of *Gilbert* the third without children *Sir Hugh Le De*
Spencer (commonly named *Spencer*) the younger, was by writers called Earle of *Gloce*
C *ſter*, becauſe he had married the eldeſt ſiſter of the ſaid *Gilbert* the third. But after that
he was by the Queene and Nobles of the Realme hanged, for hatred they bare to
K. Edward the 2. whoſe minion he was; *Sir Hugh Audley*, who had matched in mar-
riage with the ſecond ſiſter, through the favour of King *Edward* the Third, received
this honour. After his death King *Richard* the Second erected this Earledome into
a Dukedome, and ſo it had three Dukes and one Earle betweene: and unto them all
it proved *Equus Sejanus*, that is, *Fatal* to give them their fall. *Thomas* of *Woodſtocke*
youngſt ſonne to King *Edward* the Third, was the firſt Duke of *Gloceſter* advanced
to that high honour by the ſaid King *Richard* the Second, and ſhortly after by him
ſubverted. For when he buſily plotted great matters, the King tooke order that he
D ſhould be conveyed ſecretly in all haſte to *Calis*, where with a featherbed caſt upon
him he was ſmothered; having before under his owne hand confeſſed (as it ſtands
upon Record in the *Parliament Rols*) that he by vertue of a Parent which hee had wreſt-
ed from the King, tooke upon him the Kings regall authority, that he came armed
into the Kings preſence, reviled him, conſulted with learned about renouncing his
allegiance, and deviſed to depoſe the King: for which being now dead he was by au-
thority of Parliament attainted and condemned of high Treason. When hee was
thus diſpatched, the ſame King conferred the Title of Earle of *Gloceſter* upon *Tho*
mas Le De-Spencer in the right of his Great Grand-mother; who within a while
after ſped no better than his great Grand-father *Sir Hugh*. For by King *Henry* the
fourth he was violently diſplaced, ſhamefully degraded, and at *Briflow* by the peoples
E fury beheaded. After ſome yeares King *Henry* the Fifth created his brother *Humfrey*,
the ſecond Duke of *Gloceſter*, who ſtiled himſelfe the firſt yeare of King *Henry* the
Sixth, as I have ſeene in an Inſtrument of his, *Humfrey by the Grace of God, ſonne, bro*
ther, and Uncle to Kings, Duke of Gloceſter, Earle of Henault, Holland, Zeland, and Pen
broch, Lord of Frieſland, Great Chamberlaine of the Kingdome of England, Protector and
Defender of the ſame Kingdome, and Church of England. A man that had right well de-
ſerved of the common wealth and of learning, but through the fraudulent praſtiſe and
malignant envie of the Queene brought to his end at *Saint Edmunds Bury*. The third
and laſt Duke was *Richard* brother to King *Edward* the Fourth who afterwards hav-
ing moſt wickedly murdered his Nephewes, uſurped the Kingdome, by the name of
King *Richard* the third: and after two yeares loſt both it and his life in a pitched field,
finding by experience that power gotten by wicked meanes is never long laſting.

Concerning this laſt Duke of *Gloceſter*, and his firſt entry to the Crowne, give
me leave for a while to play the part of an Hiſtoriographer, which I will ſpeedily
H h 3 give

Earles of Glo-
ceſter and
Hertford.

Thomas De La
Mare in the life
of Edward 2.

Richard the
third King of
England.

give over againe as not well able to act it. When this Richard Duke of Gloucester being now proclaimed Protector of the Kingdome had under his command his nephewes, Edward the Fifth King of England, and Richard Duke of York, he retriuing after the Kingdome for himselfe, by profuse liberality and bounty to many, by passing great gravities tempered with singular affabilitie, by deepe wisdom, by ministring justice indifferently, and by close devises, wonne wholly to him all mens hearts, but the Lawyers especially to serve his turne. So shortly he effected in the name of all the States of the Realme, there should be exhibited unto him a supplication, wherein they most earnestly besought him for the publike Weale of the Kingdome, to take upon him the Crowne, to uphold his Countrey, and the common-weale now shrinking and downe falling, not to suffer it to runne headlong into utter desolation; by reason that both lawes of nature, and the authority of positive lawes, and the laudable customes and liberties of England, wherein every English man is an inheritor, were subverted and trampled under foote through civill wars, rapines, murders, extortions, oppressions, and all sorts of misery. But especially ever since that King Edward the fourth, his brother bewitched by forcerie and amorous potions fell in fancie with *Dame Elizabeth Greie* widdow, whom he married without the assent of his Nobles, without solemnne publication of Banes, secretly in a private place, and not in the face of the Church, contrary to the law of Gods Church and commendable custome of the Church of England: and which was worse, having before time by a precontract espoused *Dame Eleanor Butler*, daughter to the old Earle of Shrewsburie: whereby most sure and certaine it was, that the foresaid matrimony was unlawfull and therewith the children of them begotten illegitimate, and so unable to inherite or claime the Crowne. Moreover considering that *Gary Duke of Clarence* the second brother of King Edward the Fourth, was by authority of Parliament convicted and attainted of high treason, thereupon his children disinherited and debarred from all right succession; evident it was to every man, that Richard himselfe remained the sole and undoubted heire to the Crowne. Of whom they desired themselves, that being borne in England he would seriously provide for the good of England, neither could they make any doubt of his birth, parentage, and filiation; whose wisdom also, whose justice, princely courage, warlike exploits most valiantly achieved in the defence of the State, and whose roiall birth and blood, as who was descended from the blood roiall of the three most renowned Kingdomes of England, France, and Spaine they knew assuredly. Wherefore having thoroughly weighed these and such like motives, they willingly and withall hearty affection considering the welfare of the land, by that their petition and one generall accord of them all elected him for their King, and with prayers and teares lying prostrate before him, humbly craved and besought his gracious favour to accept and take upon him the Kingdomes of England, France, and Ireland, appertaining to him by right of inheritance, and now presented to him by their free and lawfull election; and so for every pittie and naturall zeale to reach forth unto his Countrey now forlorne his helping hand, that after so great and grievous stormes the sonne of grace might shine upon them to the comfort of all true hearted Englishmen: This supplication being read privately to himselfe, before that he entred upon the Kingdome, was presented also afterwards unto him in the publike assembly of all the States of the Realme, and there allowed, and so by their authoritie enacted and published, with a number of words (as the maner is) heaped up together, that according to the law of God, the law of Nature, the lawes of England and most laudable custome, Richard was and is by lawfull election, Inauguration, and Coronation the undoubted King of England, &c. and that the Kingdomes of England, France, and Ireland appertained rightfully to him and the heires of his body lawfully begotten. And to use the very words as they stand penned in the originall Record. *By the authority of the Parliament it was pronounced, decreed and declared, that all, and singular the contents in the foresaid bill were true and undoubted, and the Lord the King with the assent of the three States of the Kingdome, by the foresaid authoritie pronounceth, decreeth, and declareth the same, for true and undoubted.*

She was married first to R. Butler, L. of Sudley.

undoubted. These things have I laid forth more at large out of the Parliament Rowle, that yee may understand, both what and how great matters, the power of a Prince, the outward shew of vertue, the wily fetches of Lawyers, fawning hope, penfive feare, desire of change, and goodly pretences, are able to effect in that most wise assembly of all the States of a Kingdome, even against all Law and right. But this Richard is not to be accounted worthy to have bin a Sovereigne had he not bin a Sovereigne as Galba was reputed; who when he was a Sovereigne, deceived all mens expectation: but most worthy indeed of Sovereignty, had he not being transported with ambition (which blasteth all good parts) by lewd practises, and mischievous meanes made foule way thereunto. For that by the common consent of all that are wise, he was reckoned in the ranke of bad men, but of good Princes.

Now remembering my selfe to be a *Chorographer* I will returne to my owne part, and leave these matters unto our *Historiographers*, when God shall send them.

In this Countie there are *Parishes*. 280.

OXFORD



OXFORDSHIRE.



OXFORDSHIRE, in the Saxon Tongue Oxenporthchýne, which, as we said, belonged also to the *Dobant*, on the West side joyneth upon *Gloucester-shire*, on the South, which way it runneth out farthest in breadth, is dislevered from *Bark-shire*, by the River *Isis* or *Tamis*: Eastward, it bordereth upon *Buckingham-shire*: and Northward where it endeth pointed, in manner of a Cone, or Pine-apple, hath *North-hampton-shire* of one side, and *Warwick-shire* on the other side, confining with it. It is a fertile Country and plentiful: wherein the Plaines are garnished with Corne-fields and meddowes, the Hilles beset with Woods, stored in every place not onely with Corne and fruites, but also with all kinde of game for Hound, or Hawke; and well watered with fishfull Rivers. For *ISIS*, or *Ouse* which afterwards comes to bee named *Tamis*, maketh a long course and runneth under the South side; *Cherwell* also a pretty River well stored with fish, after it hath for a time parted *North-hampton-shire* and *Oxford-shire* passeth gently with a still streame through the middelt of the Country, and divideth it, as it were, into two parts. And *Tamis* with his waters conforteth and giveth heart to the East part, untill both of them together with many other Riverets and Brookes running into them bee lodged in *Isis*.

This *Isis* when it hath passed a small part of *Wil-shire*, no sooner is entred into *Oxford-shire* but presently being kept in and restrained with *Rodcot* bridge, passeth by *Bablae*, where Sir *R. Vere* that most puissant Earle of *Oxford*, Marquesse of *Dublin*, and Duke of *Ireland*, who as he stood in most high favour and authority with King *Richard* the Second, so he was as much envied of the Nobles, taught us (as one said) that no power is alwaies powerfull. Who being there discomfited in a skirmish by the Nobles and constrained to take the River and swimme over, found the *Catastrophe* of his fortune and subversion of his state: For, immediately he fled his country and died distressed in exile. Of whom the Poet in his *Marriage of Tame and Isis*, made these verses.

Rodcot Bridge,
Bablae.

—Hic Verus notissimus apro,
Dum dare terga negat virtus, & tendere contra
Non sinit invicta retrix prudentia mentis;
Undique dum resonat repetitis ictibus umbo,
Tinnitque strepit circum sua tempora cassis,
Se dedit in fluvium, fluvius latatus & illo
Hospite, suscepit saluum, salvumque remisit.

1387.

Heere *VERE*, well knowne by badge of savage Bore,
While man-hood shames to yeeld, yet strive againe
Stout heart may not, restrain'd by wisdomes lore;
Whiles shield resounds by doubled blowes amaine,
And helmet rings about his eares; is faine
The streame to take: The River glad therefore,
His Guest tooke safe, and set him safe on shore.

Wilde Bore the
badge of the
Veres.

Isis from thence overflowing many times the flat and low grounds, is first encreased with the Brooke *Windrush*, which springing out of *Cotteswold*, hath standing upon the banke side *Burford*, in the Saxon Tongue *Beorþporth*, where *Cusbred* King of West-Saxons at that time by curtesie of the Mercians, when hee could endure no longer the most grievous exactions of *Ethelbald* the Mercian, who began to oppress his people and sucke their blood, came into the field against him, and put him to flight: having won his Banner, wherein, by report of Authours, there was a golden Dragon depainted. Then passeth it by *Minister Lovell*, the habitation in times past of the

Bacons Lovell,
the

* Lovell.

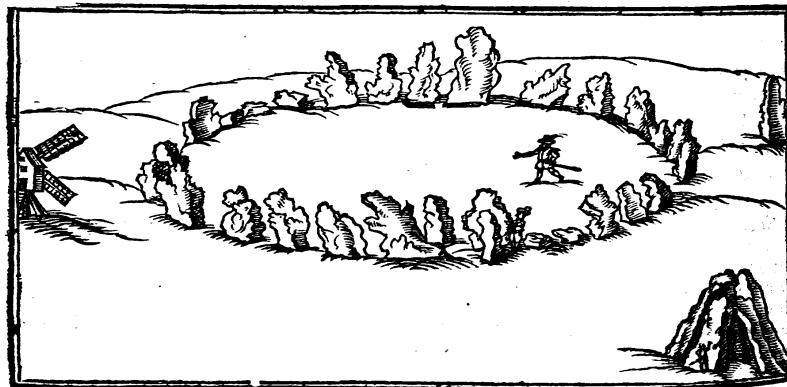
Whitney.

Arfic.

Einsham.

Rolle rich-
stones.

the great Barons *Lovels* of *Tichmerch*, who being descended from * *Lupellus* a Noble man of Normandy flourished for many ages, and augmented their estate by rich marriages with the daughters and heires of *Tichmerch*, with the heires of the Lords *Beland D'eyncourt*, and the Vicounts *Beaumont*. But their line expired in *Francis Vicount Lovell*, Lord Chamberlaine to King *Richard the Third*, (attainted by King *Henry the Seventh*, and slaine in the battaile at *Stoke* in the quarrell of *Lambert* that Comencher Prince) whose sister *Fridiswid* was Grandmother to *Henry the first Lord* (Hence *Windrush* hoding on his course watereth *Whitney* an ancient Towne, and before the Normans daies belonging to the Bishops of *Winchester*: to which adjoyneth *Coger*, the chiefe place of the Barony of *Arfic*, the Lords whereof branched out of the family of the Earles of *Oxford* are utterly extinguished many yeeres agoe. Note unto this, the Forest of *Witchwood* beareth a great breadth and in time past spread farre wider. For King *Richard the Third* disforested the great Territory of *Witchwood* betwene *Woodstocke* and *Brighton*: which *Edward the Fourth* made to be a Forest, as *John Rolfe* of *Warwicke* witnesseth. *Isis* having received *Windrush* passeth downe to *Einsam* in the Saxon tongue *Eignephham*, a Manour in times past of the Kings, seated among most pleasant meadowes, which *Cuthwulfe* the Saxon was the first that tooke from the Britans whom he had hereabout vanquished, and long after *Aethelmar* a Nobleman beautified it with an Abbey: the which, *Aethelred* King of England in the yeere of Salvation 1005. confirmed to the *Benedictine Monkes*, and in his confirmation gave the privilege of the liberty thereof, (I speake out of the very original grant as it was written) with the signe of the sacred Crosse: but now is turned into a private dwelling house and acknowledgeth the Earle of *Derby* Lord thereof. Beneath this, *Evenode* a little river arising likewise out of *Coteswold* speedeth him into *Isis*, which riveret in the very border of the Shire passeth by an ancient Monument standing not far from his banke, to wit, certaine huge stones placed in a round circle (the common people usually call them *Rolle rich stones*, and dreameth that they were sometimes men, by a wonderfull *Metamorphosis* turned into hard stones. The draught of them, as it is, portrayed long since, heere I represent unto your view. For, without forme and shape they bee, unequal, and by long continuance of time much impaired. The highest of them all, which without the circle looketh into the earth, they use to call *The King*, because hee should have bene King of England (forsooth) if hee had once seene *Long Compton*, a little Towne so called lying beneath, and which a man, if he goe some few paces forward, may see: other five standing at the other side, touching as it were, one another, they imagine to have been knights mounted on horse backe; and the rest the Army. But loe the foresaid Portraiture.



The

These would I verily thinke to have bene the Monument of some Victory and haply, erected by *Rollo* the Dane, who afterwards conquered *Normandie*. For, what time as he with his Danes and Normans troubled England with depredations, we read that the Danes joined battaile with the English thereby, at *Hoch Norton*, and afterwards fought a second time at *Scier stane* in *Hwiccia*, which also I would deeme to be that *Mere-stone* standing hard by for a land Marke, and parting foure shires: For, so much doth that Saxon word *Scier-stane* most plainly import. Certainly in an Exchequer booke the Towne adjacent is called *Rollen-drich*, where as it is there specified, *Turstan le Dispenser* held land by *Serjeanty* of the Kings *Dispensary*, that is, to be the Kings Steward. As for that *Hoch-Norton*, which I spake of before, for the rustical behaviour of the Inhabitants in the age afore going it grew to be a proverbe, when folke would say of one rudely demeaning himselfe and unmanerly after an English kinde, that hee was borne at *Hocknorton*. This place, for no one thing was more famous in old time, than for the woefull slaughter of the Englishmen in a foughten field against the Danes, under the Raigne of King *Edward the Elder*. Afterwards, it became the seat of the Barony of the *D'Oilies* an honourable and ancient Family of the Norman race, of whom the first that came into England was *Robert de Oily*, who for his good and valiant service, received of *William Conquerour* this Towne and many faire possessions, whereof hee gave certaine to his sworne brother *Roger Ivery*, which were called the Barony of *Saint Valeric*. But when the said *Robert* departed this life without issue male, his brother *Niele* succeeded him therein: whose sonne *Robert* the second was founder of *Osney Abbey*. But at length the daughter and heire generall of this house *D' Oily*, was married to *Henry Earle of Warwicke*: and he bare unto him *Thomas Earle of Warwicke*, who dyed without issue in the Raigne of *Henry the Third*: and *Margaret*, who deceased likewise without children, abeit shee had two husbands, *John Marefcall*, and *John de Plesetis*, both of them Earles of *Warwicke*. But then, (that I may speake in the very words of the Charter of the Grant) King *Henry the Third* granted *Hoch-norton* and *Cudlington* unto *John de Plesetis*, which were in times past the possessions of *Henry D' Oily*, and which after the decease of *Margaret*, wife sometime to the foresaid *John Earle of Warwicke*, fell into the kings hand as an *Escheat* of *Normanslands*: To have and to hold, untill the lands of England and *Normandie* were common. Howbeit out of this ancient and famous stocke there remaineth at this day a family of *D' Oilies* in this shire. *Evenode* passeth by no memorable thing else, but *La Briuer*, now *Bruer* sometime an Abbey of white Monks, and after he hath runne a good long course taketh to him a Brooke, neere unto which standeth *Woodstocke*, in the English Saxon language *puocroc*, that is, *A woody place*, where King *Etheldred* in times past held an assembly of the States of the Kingdome and enacted Lawes. Heere is one of the Kings houses full of State and magnificence, built by King *Henry the First*, who adjoyned also thereunto a very large Parke compassed round about with a stone wall, which *John Rolfe* writeth to have bene the first Parke in England, although we read once or twice even in *Doomesday Booke*, these words, *Parcus silvestris bestiarum* in other places. In which sense old *Varro* useth the word *Parcus*, which some thinke to be but a new word. But since that, Parkes are growne to such a number that there bee more of them in England, than are to be found in all Christendome beside, so much were our Ancestours ravished with an extraordinary delight of hunting. Our Historians report, that King *Henry the Second* being enamoured upon *Rosamund Clifford*, a Damosell so faire, so comely, and well favoured without comparison, that her beauty did put all other women out of the Princes minde; in so much as now shee was termed *Rosa mundi*, that is, *The Rose of the World*; and for to hide her out of the sight of his jealous Juno the Queene, he built a Labyrinth in this house, with many inexplicable windings, backward and forward: Which notwithstanding is now where to be seene at this day. The Towne it selfe, having nothing in it at all to shew, glorieth yer in this, that *Geoffrey Chaucer*, our English *Homer* was there bred and brought up. Of whom and of our English Poets I may truly avouch that, which that learned Italian said of *Homer* and the Greeke Poets;

Geoffrey
Chaucer

Hic

— *Hic ille est cuius de gurgite sacro
Combibit arcenos vatum omnis turba furoris.*

This is the man whose sacred streame hath served all the crew
Of Poets, thence they dranke their fill, thence they their furies drew.
For, he surpassing all others without question in wit, and leaving our *finishing*
Poet-alters by many degrees behinde him :

— *jam monte positus,
Ridet anhelantem dura ad fastigia turbam.*

When once himselfe the steepe top hill had wonne,
At all the sort of them he laught anone,
To see how they the pitch thereof to gaine
Puffing and blowing doe clamber up in vaine.

Isis having now entertained *Evenode*, divideth his Chanell and severing it selfe
maketh many and those most delectable Islands, neere which stood *Goditha* a little
Nunnery, which *Dame Ida* a rich widow built; and King *John* both repaired and
also endowed with yearly Revenewes, that these holy Virgins might reliefe with
their prayer (for by this time had that persuation possessed all mens mindes) the
soules of King *Henry* the Second his father, and of *Rosamund*: For, there wasthe
ryed with this Epitaph in Rhyme :

*Hac jacet in tombâ Rosa mundi, non Rosamunda,
Non redolet, sed olet, qua redolere solet.*

Rose of the World, not Rose the fresh pure floure
Within this Tombe hath taken up her boure :
She senteth now and nothing sweet doth smell,
Which earst was wont to favour passing well.

We read that *Hugh* the Bishop of *Lincolne* Diocefan of this place comming
ther caused her bones to bee removed out of the Church as unworthy of Chri
buriall for her unchaste life. Nevertheless the holy sisters there translated them
gaine into the Church, and layed them up in a perfumed leather bagge; which
in lead as was found in her Tombe at the dissolution of the house; and they used
a Crosse there whereby the Passengers were put in minde with two rhyming Ver
ses to serve God, and pray for her. But I remember them not.

Neither doth the *Ouse* or *Isis* as yet gather himselfe into one streame, which
meeteth with *Cherwell*, which out of *Northampton-shire*, runneth almost through the
mids of this Country. This River first watereth *Banbury* sometime *Bancubyn*, a
faire large Towne, at which *Kimic* the West Saxon King in old time put to fight
the Britans in a memorable battaile fighting manfully for their lives, state, and
they had: and in this later foregoing age, not farre off *Richard Nevill* Barke of *War
wicke* siding with the house of *Lancaster* gave such an overthrow to those of *Tow
ke* that forthwith also he tooke King *Edward* the Fourth now forlorne and hopelesse.
Now the fame of this Towne is for zeale, cheefe, and cakes, and hath a Castle
shew, which *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincolne*, (for to the See of *Lincolne* it belongeth)
first built, who having a minde to dwell stately rather than quietly, brought
himselfe many adversities by his huge buildings. About this Towne, (that may
observe so much by the way) peeces of the Romane Emperours *Coinc* found, as
also elsewhere in the field neere adjoyning) make somewhat to prove the antiquity
of the place.

Neere to *Banbury* is *Hamwell*, where the Family of *Cope* hath flourished many
years in great and good esteeme. And neere it againe is *Broughton* the habitation
of Sir *Richard Fienes*, or *Fenis*: unto whom and to the heires of his body, the
most mighty Prince King *James*, in the first yeare of his Raigne, *Recognized and con
firmed the name, stile, title, degree, dignity and honour of the Baron Say and Sele*: who
lineally descended from Sir *James Fienes* Baron *Say* and *Sele*, and Lord high Treas
urer of England, who was cruelly beheaded by a rabble of Rebels in the time of
King *Henry* the Sixth.

Cherwell carrying his Streame along from *Banbury* seeth nothing but pleasant fields
passing well husbanded, and as plentifull meadows. Amongst which stand *Heisford*
Warin, so denominated *Warin Fitz-Gerold* Lord thereof, *Heyford Purcell* likewise, so
named of the *Purcells*, or de *Porcellis* ancient Gentlemen the old owners, *Blechindon* an
an ancient Possession of the ancient Family *Le Pover*, and *Islip* in elder time *Ghistilpe* ^{Islip.}
the nall place of that King *Edward* (whom for his religious Piety and continency
our Ancestours, and the Popes vouchsafed the name of *Saint Edward the Confessor*) as
hee himselfe witnesseth in the originall Charter, whereby he granted this place to
the Church of *Westminster*.

Here there runneth a riveret from the East in to *Cherwell*, which passeth by *Bur-* ^{Burcester.}
cester, in the English Saxons tongue *Bupencear-cep*, and *Bepnacear-cep*, a little towne
carrying an ancient name, but wherein I have observed no matter of antiquity,
save that *Gilbert Basset* and *Egelina Courteney* his Wife; built heere a Religious
Houle in honour of *Saint Eadburga*, in the time of King *Henry* the Second, and that
not long since the Barons *Le Strange* of *Knocking* were Lords of the place. But
Westward, there lie some few remaines of a decayed and forlorne ancient station
Alchester, they call it happily, as one would say, *Aldechester*, that is, an old Towne, by
which a Port way from *Wallengford*, as the neighbour Inhabitants thinke, led to
Banbury, and the same they called *Akemanstreet* way: the Tract whereof for cer
taine miles together is yet most plainly to bee scene in the plaine of *Otmore*, which
oftentimes is strangely overspread with winter waters. *Cherwell* thus increased
passeth Southward nere to *Hedindon*, which King *John* gave to Sir *Thomas Basset* for
his Barony.

But where *Cherwell* is confluent with *Isis*, and pleasant *Eights* or *Islets* lye dis
perbed by the sundry disseverings of Waters; there the most Famous University
of *OXFORD*, called in the English-Saxon tongue *Oxenford*, sheweth it selfe aloft
ina Champion plaine. *OXFORD*, I say, our most noble Athens, *The Muses-Seate*, and
one of *Englands* *flayes*; nay *The Sunne*, the *Eye*, and the *Soule* thereof, the very Source
and most cleare Spring of good Literature and Wisedome: From whence *Religi
on*, *Civility* and *Learning* are spred most plenteously into all parts of the Realme.
A faire and goodly City, whether a man respect the seemely beauty of private
houses or the stately magnificence of publike buildings, together with the whol
some sight or pleasant prospect thereof. For, the hills beset with woods doe so envi
ron the plaine, that as on the one side they exclude the pestilent Southwinde, and
the tempestuous West winde on the other, so they let in the cleering Eastern-winde
onely, and the North-east winde with all, which free from all corruption: Whence
it came to passe that of this Situation it was, (as writers recorde in ancient times)
called *Bellostium*. Some are of opinion, that it hath beene named *Caer Fortigern* and
Caer Fember in the British language, and that I wote not; what *Fortigern* and *Mem
price* built it. But what ever it was in the Britans time, the English Saxons called it
Oxenford, and altogether in the same signification that the Grecians terme their
Dysphori, and the Germans their *Ochen-furt* upon *Odera*; to wit, of the fould of *Oxen*:
in which sense it is named of our Britans in Wales at this day *Rhyd-y-jen*: And yet
Leland grounding upon a probable conjecture, deriveth the name from the River
Ouse called in Latine *Isis*, and supposeth that it hath beene named *Ousford* con
sidering that the River *Eights* or *Islands* which *Isis* scattereth hereabout, bee cal
led *Ousney*.

Sage antiquity, as wee read in our Chronicles, consecrated this City even in
the British age unto the Muses: whom from Greeke-lad (which is a small Towne
at this day in Wilt-shire) they translated hither as unto a more fruitfull Plant-plot.
For thus writeth *Alexander Neckam*, *The skill of Civill Law Italy challengeth to it selfe*: ^{Lib. 2. de Neg.}
but for Heavenly Writ or Holy Scripture, the liberall Sciences also do prove, that the City of ^{tur. serm.}
Paris is to bee preferred before all others. Moreover according to the Prophecie of *Merline*,
Wisedome and Learning flourished at *Oxford*, which in due time was to passe over into the
parts of *Ireland*. But when during the English Saxons age next ensuing, there was
nothing

Fridefwide.

nothing but continuall waisting and rasing of Townes and Citties, according to the sway and current of those dayes it sustained in part the common calamity of that time, and for a great while was frequented onely for the reliques of Fridefwide, who for the chastity and integrity of her life was canonized a Saint, upon this occasion especially, for that by a solemne vow shee had wholly devoted her selfe unto the Service of GOD, and Prince *Algar* whiles he came a wooing unto her, was miraculously, as writers say, stricken blinde. This Fridefwide, (as wee read in William of *Malmesbury*) triumphing for her virginity, erected here a Monastery, into which when certaine Danes adjudged to die in King *Etheldreds* time fled for refuge as to a Sanctuary, they were all burned with the buildings, (such was the unfatiable anger of the Englishmen against them.) But soone after, when the King repented this Act, the Sanctuary was cleansed, the Monastery reedified, the old Lands restored, new Possessions added, and at length the place was given by Roger Bishop of *Salisbury* unto a Chanon excellently well learned who there presented unto GOD many such Chanons who should live regularly in their Order. But leaving these matters, let us returne unto the Univeristy. When the tempestuous Danish stormes were meetely well blowne ouer, *Alfred* that most devout and Godly King recalled the long banished Muses unto their owne Sacred Chancells and built three Colledges: one for Grammarians, a second for Philosophers, and a third for Divines. But this you may more plainly understand out of these words in old Annales of the new Abbey of Winchester. In the year of Christs Incarnation * 806. and in the second year of Saint *Grimbald* his coming into England, was the Univeristy of OXFORD begonne. The first Regents in the same and Readers in the Divinity Schoole were Saint *Neoth* an Abbat, and besides a worthy Teacher in Divinity, and holy *Grimbald* a right excellent Professor of the most sweete written Word of Holy Scripture. But in Grammar and Rhetorike, the Regent was *Asserius* a Monk, in the skill of Literature passing well learned. In Logicke, Musicke and Arithmetike, the Reader was John a *Monke* of the Church of * Saint *David*: In Geometry and Arithmetike, the Reader was John a *Monke* also and Companion of Saint *Grimbald*, a Man of very quicke witte, and right learned every way: At which Lectures was present that most glorious and invincible King *Alfred*, whose memoriall in every Mans mouth shall be as long as bonie.

* Meneceus.

But presently after, as wee read in a very good manuscript copy of the sayd *Asserius*, who at the same time professed learning here: There arose a most dangerous and pernicious dissention at Oxford, betwene *Grimbald* and these great Clerkes whom he brought thither with him on the one side, and those old Schoole-men whom hee there found, on the other side: who upon his coming refused altogether to embrace the Rules, Orders and Formes of reading prescribed and begonne by him. For three yeares space the variance and discord betwene them was not great, howbeit there lurked a secret hatred fostered and kindled among them, which brake out afterwards in most grievous and bitter manner, and was most evident. For the appeasing whereof, that most invincible King *Alfred* being by message and complaint from *Grimbald* certified of that discord, went to OXFORD to intermeddle and end this controversie: Where also himselfe in Person tooke exceeding great paines in giving Audience to the quarrels and complaints of both sides. Now the main substance of all the contention stood upon this point. Those old Schoole-men holily avouched, that before *Grimbalds* coming to OXFORD Learning generally flourished there, although the Schollers and Students were fewer then in number than in former times, by reason the most of them through the cruelty and tyranny of *Painims* were expelled. Moreover they proved and declared, and that by the undoubted testimony of old Chronicles, that the Orders and Ordinances of that place were made and established by certaine Godly and learned men, namely *Gildas* of holy memory, *Melkin*, *Ninnius*, *Kentigern* and others, who all of them studied and followed their books there untill they were aged persons, managing and governing all things there in happy peace and concord: also that S. German came to Oxford and dwelt there halfe a yeare, what time as he travelled through Britan, with a purpose to preach against the Pelagian heresies, who wonderous well allowed of their former Orders and Ordinances. This Noble King with incredible and unexampled humility heard both parts most diligently,

A exhibiting them in earnest wise, (enterlacing godly and wholesome admonitions) to keepe mutual society and concord one with another. And so the King departed with this minde, hoping they would all of both sides obey his counsell and embrace his orders. But *Grymbald* taking this unkindly and to the heart, forthwith went his wayes to Winchester Abbey newly founded by *Alfred*: Shortly after hee caused his owne Tombe to be translated to Winchester, wherein he purposed after hee had runne his race in this life, that his bones should be bestowed, in an arched Vault made under the Chancell of Saint Peters Church in Oxford: Which Church verily the same *Grymbald* had built from the very foundation out of the ground, with stone most curiously wrought and polished.

Within some years after this new revived felicity, there ensued divers disturbances from the Danes, and afterward followed one or two calamities. For the Danes in the reign of *Etheldred* by way of robbery and foule worke and havocke there: and straight after, *Herald* surnamed *Light foote* raged against it with such barbarous cruelty, for that some of his followers were slaine there in a fray, that there followed thereupon a most heavy banishment of the Students, and the Univeristy, (a sorrowfull spectacle) lay as it were, halfe dead and past all recovery, untill the dayes of King *William* the Conquerour. Whom some write falsly to have wonne it by assault: but *Oxonis* written amisse in the Copies, for *Exonia*, that is, *Excester* deceived them. And that it was at that time a place of Studies and Students, may be understood out of these words of *Ingulph*, who in that age flourished. *Ingulph* (saith hee) being first placed in Westminster, and afterwards sent to the * Study of Oxford, when as in learning of Aristotle, I had profited above my fellowes of the same time, &c. For those Schooles of Learning which wee call Academies or Univeristies, that Age termed *Studia*, that is, *Studies*, as I will shew anon. But at this very time, it was so empoverished, that whereas within the wall and without, (I speake out of *William* the Conquerour his *Domesday booke*) there were about seaven hundred and fifty houses, besides foure and twenty Mansions upon the Walls, five hundred of them were not able to pay their Subsidy or Imposition. And to use the very words of that booke, *This City paid pro* Theloneo et Gablo, and for other Customs by the yeare to the King twenty pounds and sixe quaris of Honey: and unto Earle Algar tenne pounds.* About this time,

* Studie, Schooles of Univeristies.

D Robert D'ully a noble man of Normandy (of whom I have before spoken) when hee had received at the hands of *William* the Conquerour in reward of his Service in the Warres, large Possessions in this Shire, built a spacious Castle in the West side of the City with deepe Ditches, Rampiers, an high raised Mount, and therein a Parish Church to Saint George, unto which when as the Parishioners could not have access, by reason that King *Stephen* most straightly besieged *Mande* the Emperesse within this Castle, Saint Thomas Chappell in the streete hard by was built. He also, as it is thought, fortified the whole City with new walls, which by little and little time doth force, and as it were embreach with his assault. Robert likewise

* Toll and Tribute.

E founded *Osney* or *Osney*, a most stately Abbey, as the ruines doe yet shew, amidst the divided waters, not farre from the Castle: perswaded thereto by *Edith* his wife, (the daughter of *Forne*) who before time had beene one of King *Henry* the First his sweet hearts and lig-bies.

1074. Register of Osney Abbey.

About those times as we read in the Chronicle of the said *Osney* Abbey, *Robert* *Pulein* beganne to read in Oxford the Holy Scriptures, in England now growne out of request: Who afterwards, when as by his Doctrine the English and Frenchmen both had much profited; was called by Pope *Lucius* the second, and promoted to be Chancellor of the Church of Rome. To the same effect also writeth *John* *Rosse* of *Warwicke*. By the procurement of King *Henry* the First, the Divinity Lecture which had discontinued a long time in Oxford, began againe to flourish, and there hee built a Palace, which King *Edward* the Second at length converted into a Convent of Carmelites. But long before this time, in this Palace was borne into the World that Lion-hearted Knight, *Richard* the First King of England; commonly called *Coeur de Lion*, a Prince of a most baury minde and full of resolution, borne for the weale of Christendome, the honour of England, and the terrour of Infidels.

Richard Cœur de Lion.

Infidels. Upon whose death a Poet in that age of no meane conceite verified thus, for that his remaines were interred in diuerse places ;

*Viscera Carcelorum, Corpus Fons seruat Ebrardi,
Et cor Rhotomagus, Magne Richarde, tumus :
In tria diuiditur unus, qui, plus fuit uno,
Nec superest uno gloria tanta viro.*

*Hic Richarde jaces, sed mors si cederet armis,
Victa timore tui, cederet ipsa tuis.*

Thy Bowels keep's Carceolum, thy corps Font Everard :
And Roan thy valiant Lions heart, O noble great Richard.
Thus one three fold diuided is, for more he was then one.
And for that one, so great he was, such glory is in none.

Here li'st thou Richard, but if death to force of armes could yeeld,
For feare of thee he would to thee have given as lost the field.

Thus after the Citty was refreshed againe with these buildings, many began to flocke hither as it were to a Mart of learning and vertue: and by the industrious means especially of that *Robert Pulein*, a man borne to promote the Common-wealth of learning, who refused no paines, but laboured all that he could to set open againe the Well springs of good Literature which had bene stopped up, through the fault especially of King Henry the First, King Henry the Second, and King Richard the first, of whom I spake ere while. And these endeavours of *Pulein* sped to welde toke so good effect, that in the reigne of King *John*, there were here three thousand Students; who all at once every one changed their Habitation to *Reading* and partly to *Cambridge*, because the Citizens seemed to wrong and abuse overmuch the Students and Professours of Learning: but after this tumult was appeased, they returned within a short time. Then and in the age presently ensuing, as God provided this City for good learning, so he raised up a number of very good Prelates to the good thereof, who for the adorning and maintenance of learning extended their liberality in the highest degree. For, when King Henry the Third holly way of Pilgrimage visited *Saint Frideswide*, (a thing before-time thought to be a heinous Offence in a Prince for the dishonour offered to her by *Alger* a Prince) and so removed that superstitious feare, wherewith some superstitious Priests had for a time frightened Princes from once comming to Oxford: and had assembled here a very great Parliament for the composing of certaine controversies betweene him and the Barons, hee confirmed the priuiledges granted by the former Kings, and conferred also some other himselfe. So that by this time there was so great a flock of learned men, that diuers most skilfull in Divinity as well as in Humanitie, were great numbers spread from thence both into the Church and Common-wealth. *Mathew Paris*, in plaine termes called *The Vniuersity of Oxford*, *The Second Scholasticke the Church*, nay, rather a ground-woke of the Church, next after *Paris*. For with the name of Vniuersity the Bishops of Rome had before time honoured Oxford, which Title at that time by their Decrees they vouchsafed to none but unto that of *Rome*, this of Oxford, unto *Bononia* in Italy and *Salamanca* in Spaine. And in the Council of *Vienne*, it was ordained that there should bee erected Schooles for the Helike, Greeke, Arabicke and Chaldaean tongues, in the *Studies of Paris, Oxford, Bologna* and *Salamanca*, as the most famous of all others, to the end that the knowledge of these tongues might by effectual instruction be thoroughly learned. And that Catholike men having sufficient knowledge in those tongues should be chosen, twaine skilfull in every of these tongues. For those who were to bee Professours in Oxford, The same Council ordained, That the Prelates of England, Scotland, Ireland and Wales, the Monasteries

*Clementinarum
Quinto.*

the Chapters, the Covents, the Colledges exempt, and not exempt, and Persons of Churches should provide competent stipends.

Out of these words may bee observed, both that *Oxford* was the chiefe place of Studies in England, Scotland, Ireland and Wales, and also that those Schooles which we now adayes doe call Academies and Vniuersities, were aptly in old time named Studies: as *S. Hierom* termed the Schooles of *Gaul*, *Studia Florentissima*, that is, most flourishing Studies. And as for the name of Vniuersity, it was taken up about the time of King Henry the Third, for a Publike Schoole, and if I bee not deceived in mine owne observations, it was then in use not for the place but for the very body and society of Students, as we reade in bookes of that age, *Vniuersitas Magistrorum Oxonia*, *Vniuersitas Magistrorum Cantabrigia*, that is, *The Vniuersity of Masters of Oxford*, &c. But happily this may seeme beside my Text.

Now by this time, good and bountifull Patrons began to furnish the Citty with- in, and the Suburbs without with most stately Colledges, Halls and Schooles, and to endow them also with large Reuenues: For the greatest part of the Vniuersity was beforetime in the Suburbs without the North-gate. In the reigne of King Henry the third, *John Balliol* of *Barnards Castle* in the Bishopricke of *Durham* who died in the yeere 1269, the father of *Balliol* King of Scots, founded *Balliol Colledge* and so named it: and straight after *Walter Merton* Bishop of *Rocheſter*, translated the Colledge which hee had built in *Surrey* to *Oxford*, in the yeere 1274, enriched it with Lands and Possessions, naming it *The house of Schollers of Merton*, but now it is called *Merton Colledge*. And these two were the first endowed Colledges for Students in *Christendome*. *William* Archdeacon of *Durham* repaired and enlarged with new building that worke of King *Aelfred*, which now they call, *Vniuersity Colledge*. At which time, the Students, for that they entertained somewhat coarsely *Otto* the Popes Legate, or Horse-leach rather, sent out to sucke the English Clergies blood, were excommunicate and with all indignities shamefully handled. And in those dayes, as *Armarhanus* writeth, there were counted here thirty thousand Students. Under King Edward the Second, *Walter Stapledon* Bishop of *Excester* founded *Excester Colledge* and *Hart Hall*, and the King himselfe in imitation of him built the Colledge commonly called *Oriall*, and *S. Mary Hall*. At which time a convert Jew read an Hebrew Lecture here, unto whom for a Stipend every one of the Clergy of Oxford for every Mark of his Ecclesiasticall living, contributed a penny. Afterward Queene *Philip* wife to King Edward the Third, built *Queenes Colledge*, and *Simon Islip*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Canterbury Colledge*.

The Students then, having the world at will and all things falling out to their hearts desire, became insolent, and being divided into factions, under the names of Northren and Southren men, strucke up the Alarum to intestine and unreasonable tumults among themselves. Whereupon the Northren faction went their wayes to *Stanford* and beganne there to set up Schooles. But some few yeeres after, when Gods favour shined more light somely had scattered away the clouds of contention, they returned from *Stanford* recalled by Proclamation directed to the High-sheriffe of *Lincolneshire* upon penalty to forfeit their bookes and the Kings displeasure. And then it was ordained that no Oxford man should professe at *Stanford*, so any prejudice or hinderance of Oxford. Shortly after *William Wickham* Bishop of *Winchester* founded a magnificent Colledge, which they call *New Colledge*: into which out of another Colledge of his at *Winchester* the best wits are yeerely transplanted. And hee about the same by the tract of the Citty wall built a faire high wall embatled and turreted. Also *Richard Angervill* Bishop of *Durham*, surnamed *Philobiblos*, that is *Love of books*, furnished a Library for the publike use of Students. His Successour *Thomas Ruffeld*, laied the foundation of *Durham Colledge*, for *Durham* Monkes, and *Richard Fleming* Bishop of *Lincolne* founded likewise *Lincolne Colledge*. Also at the same time the Monkes of the order of *Saint Bennet*, by a Chapter held among them, laid their monies together and encreased *Gloucester Hall*: built before by *I. Lord Clifford* of *Gloucester* for Monkes of *Gloucester*, wherein one or two Monkes out of every Convent

Students.
Ad Resicum
Monachum.

Vniuersitas.

Colledges.

The booke of
Maitros.
The first in-
dowed Col-
ledge for Scho-
lers.

1318.
Register of
Hilde Abbey.

of *Benedictine* Monkes were maintained at study, who afterwards should profite good letters in their Abbaies, unto which *Glocester Hall*, *Nicholas Wadham* of *Morfeld* in the County of *Somerfet*, hath assigned a faire portion of lands and money for the propagation of Religion and Learning, which I note incidently by way of congratulation to our Age, that there are yet some who graciously respect the advancement of good Learning. About that time, not to speake of the *Chinon*, *Saint Frideswide*, and *Osney*, or the *Cistercian* Monkes of *Reilew*, there were erected fower faire *Frieries* and other religious houses, where flourished also many profound Learned men. In the age ensuing, when *Henry the Fifth* reigned, *Henry Chicheley* Archbishop of *Canterbury* built two and those very faire Colledges, the one dedicated to the memory of *All Soules*, and the other to *Saint Bernard*. And there passed not many yeeres betweene, when *William Wainfleet* Bishop of *Winchester* founded *Mary Magdalen Colledge*: for building rare and excellent, for sight commodious, and for waikes passing pleasant. And at the very same time was built the *Drumy Schoole*, so fine a peece of elegant worke that this of *Xenocritus* may justly bee ingenuously upon it: *Invisarum facilius aliquem quam imitaturum*: that is, *Sooner will one copy out then set such another by me*. And *Humphrey* that good Duke of *Glocester*, a singular Patron, and a respective lover of learning, encreased the Library over it with hundred twenty nine most select Manuscript bookes, which at his great charges he procured out of *Italy*. But such was the private avarice of some in the giddy time of *Edward the Sixth*, that they for small gaine envied the use thereof to *Posterity*. Yet now againe (God blesse and prosper it) *Sir Thomas Bodley* a right worshipfull knight and a most worthy Nource-son of this Univerfity furnished richly in the same place a new Library with the best books of exquisite choice from all partes, with great charges and studious care, never sufficiently commended. Whereby the Univerfity once againe have a publike Store-house of knowledge and learning, and might deserve the Glory that may flourish freshly in the memory of all *Eternity*. In wheras by an ancient custome of the wisest men, those were wont to be dedicated within such Libraries in gold, silver or brasse, by whose care they were erected, and whose immortall soules in them doe speake to the end that *Time* might not overpower and prevaile against men of worth, and the desires of mortall men might be satisfied who do all long to know what their persons and presence were. The *Earle of Dorset* late Chancellor of this Univerfity (that he might also leave some memoriall himselfe) hath in the very place dedicated unto *Sir Thomas Bodley* so passing well deserving of the Learned Common-wealth, his representation with this inscription:

THOMAS SACKVILLUS DORSETTIAE COMES, SUMMUS ANGLIAE THESAURARIUS, ET HUIUS ACADEMIAE CANCELLARIUS, THOMAE BODLEIO BQUITI AURATO, QUI BIBLIOTHECAM HANC INSTITUIT, HONORIS CAUSSA PIPPO POSUIT.

That is,

THOMAS SACKVILL EARLE OF DORSET, LORD HIGH TREASURER OF ENGLAND, AND CHANCELLOR OF THIS UNIVERSITIE, UNTO SIR THOMAS BODLEY KNIGHT, WHO INSTITUTED THIS LIBRARY OF A PIOUS MIND ERECTED THIS MONUMENT TO DO HIM HONOUR.

Edm. Abbay.
Locus Regalis.

Sir Thomas
Bodley.

In the Raigne of *Henry the Seventh*, for the better advancement of learning, *William Smith* Bishop of *Lincolne* built new out of the ground *Brazen Nose Colledge*, (which that good and godly old man Master *Alexander Newell* Deane of *Saint Pauls* in *London* lately augmented with *Revenewes*) and *Richard Fox* Bishop of *Winchester* erected likewise that which is named *Corpus Christi Colledge*: and *Thomas Wolsey* Cardinall of *Yorke* following their example, beganne another (where the Monastery of *Fridefwide* stood) the most stately and fairest of them all, for Professors and 200. Students, which *Henry the Eighth*, joyning unto it *Canterbury Colledge* assigned to a Deane Prebends and Students, endowed it with livings, and named it *Christis Church*. And the same most puissant Prince, with money disbursed out of his owne Treasury, ordained, both for the Dignity of the City a Bishop, and for the ornament and advancement of the Univerfity, publike Professours. Likewise within our remembrance, for the furtherance of learning with new and fresh benefits, *Sir Thomas Pope* Knight reared a new *Durham Colledge*: and *Sir Thomas White* Knight Citizen and Alderman of *London* raised *Bernard Colledge*, both which lay buried in the rubbish. They reedified them, repaired them with new buildings, enriched them with faire lands and gave them new names: For the one of them they dedicated to *Saint John Baptist*, and that other to the holy and sacred *Trinity*. Queene *Mary* also built the common Schooles. And now of late *Hugh Prife* Doctor of the Lawes, hath begunne a new Colledge (with good speede and happy successe as I wish) to the honor of *Iesus*. With these Colleges which are in number 16. (and eight Halls beside) all faire, and decently built, richly endowed, and furnished with good Libraries, *Oxford* at this day so flourisheth, that it farre surmounteth all other Universities of *Christendome*. And for *Living Libraries*, (for so may I well and truly with *Ennapius* terme great Scholars and learned men) for the discipline and teaching of the best Arts, and for the politique government of this their republike of Literature, it may give place to none. But to what end is all this? *Oxford* needeth no mans commendation: the excellency thereof doth so much exceede, and (if I may use *Pindus* word) *superfluit*, that is, *surmounteth*. Let this suffice to say of *Oxford* as *Pomponius Mela* did of *Athen*, *Clarior est quam ut indicari queat*, that is, *More glorious it is of it selfe, than that it needeth to bee out shewed*. But have heere for an upshot and farewell, the beginning of *Oxford* story out of the Proctors booke. By the joint testimony of most Chronicles, many places in divers Coastes and Climates of the world we read to have flourished at sundry times in the studies of divers Sciences; But the Univerfity of *Oxford* is found to be for foundation more ancient; for plurality of sciences more generall, in profession of the Catholike truth more constant, and in multiplicity of Privileges more excellent, than all other Schooles that are known among the Latines. The Mathematicians of this Univerfity have observed, that this their City is from the *Fortunate Islands* 22. Degrees, and the *Arctike* or *Norrb Pole* elevated 51. Degrees, and 30. Scruples high. And thus much briefly of my deare Nurse-mother *Oxford*.

But when a little beneath *Oxford Isis* and *Cherwell* have confociated their waters together within one Chanell, *Isis* then entere of himselfe and with a swifter current runneth Southward, to finde *Tame* whom so long he had sought for. And gone he is not forward many miles, but behold *Tame* streaming out of *Buckinghamshire*, meeteth with him: who is no sooner entered into this Shire, but he giveth name to *Tame* a Mercate Towne situate very pleasantly among Rivers. For, *Tame* passeth hard by the Northside, and two Riverets shedding themselves into it compasse the same, the one on the East, and the other on the West. *Alexander* that liberall Bishop of *Lincolne*, Lord of the place, when his prodigall humor in sumptuous building of Castles was of every body privily misliked, to wash out that staine (as *Newbrigensis* saith) built a little Abbay nere unto the Towne: and many yeeres after the *Quatromans*, who in the age foregoing were men of great reputation in these parts, founded an Hospitall for the sustentation of poore people. But both of these are now decayed and quite gone: and in stead thereof *Sir John Williams* Knight, whom Queene *Mary* advanced to the Dignity of a Baron, by the Title of Lord *William of Tame* erected a very

Baron Wil-
liams of Tame.

Baron William
of Tame.

a very faire Schoole, and a small Hospitall, But this Title soone determined when he left but daughters married into the Families of *Norris* and *Wenman*.

From hence *Tame* runneth downe neere unto *Ricot*, a goodly house, which in times past belonged to those *Quatremans*: whose stocke failing to bring forth Maies, it was devolved at length after many failes and alienations passed by the *Foulers* and *Herons*, unto the said Lord *Williams*; and so by his daughter fell to Sir Henry, Lord *Norris*, whom Queene *Elizabeth* made Baron *Norris of Ricot*, a man of good make in regard of his noble birth and parentage: for he descended from the *Lowells*, who were neere allied by kinred unto the greatest houses in England: but most renowned for that right valiant and warlike Progeny of his, as the Netherlands, Portugall, little Bretagne, and Ireland can witnesse. At the length, *Tame* by *Haseley*, where sometimes the names of *Barentines* flourished as at *Cholgrave* commeth to Dorchester by *Bede* termed *Civitas Dorcinia*: by *Leland Hydropolis*, a name devised by his owne conceit, yet fit enough, considering that *Dour* in the British tongue signifieth water. That this Towne was in old time inhabited by Romanes, their coined peeces of money oftentimes turned up doe imply: and our Chronicles record, that it was for long time much frequented by reason of a Bishops See, which *Birinus* the Apostle of the West-Saxons appointed to be there. For when hee had baptised *Cinigif*, a pey King of the West-Saxons, unto whom *Oswald* King of Northumberland was God-father, both these Kings, as faith *Bede*, gave this City unto the same Bishop to make therein his Episcopall residency. This *Birinus*, as wee may read also in *Bede*, was wonderfully in those daies admired, for a deepe conceived opinion of his holiness: whereupon an ancient Poet who penned his life in Verse, wrote thus of him,

*Dignior attollit quam sit Tyrinthus heros,
Quam sit Alexander Macedo; Tyrinthus hostis
Victi, Alexander mundum, Birinus utrunque.
Nec tantum vicit mundum, Birinus, & hostem,
Sed sese bello vincens, & victus eodem.*

More worthy for to be extold than Hercules for might,
Or that great king of Macedon, who Alexander hight:
For Hercules subdu'd his foes, and Alexander he
Wonne all the World by force of Armes: But our *Birinus*, see,
Did vanquish both: nor conquer'd he onely the World and Foe;
But in one fight subdu'd himselfe, and was subdu'd also.

After 460. yeares, *Remigius* Bishop of this place least the name of Bishop should loose credit in so small a City (a thing forbidden in the Canons) in the Raigne of *William* the first translated his seat to *Lincolne*. At which time this City of Dorchester (as *Malmesbury* faith who then flourished) was but slender and of small resort, yet the majesty of the Churches was great, whether you respected either the old building or the new diligence and care employed thereupon. Ever since it beganne by little and little to decay: and of late by turning London high way from thence, it hath decreased so, as that of a City it is scarce able now to maintaine the name of a Towne, and all that it is able to doe, is to shew in the fields adjoyning ruines onely and rubbish, as expresse tokens of what bignesse it hath beene. A little beneath this Towne *Tame* and *Isis* meeting in one streame become hand-fast (as it were) and joynd by *Wedlocke*: and as in waters, so in name, they are coupled, as *Ior* and *Dan* in the holy Land, *Dor* and *Dan* in France, whence come *Iordan* and *Dordane*. For ever after this, the River by a compound word is called, *Tamisis*, that is, *Tame*. He seemeth first to have observed this, who wrote the booke entituled *Eulogium Historiarum*. Now as touching this marriage of *Isis* with *Tame* have heere certaine Verses taken out of a Poem bearing that Title, which you may read or leave unread at your pleasure:

*Hic vestit Zephyrus florentes gramine ripas,
FLORAQUE necareis redimit caput ISIDIS herbis,*

Selig

*Seligit ambrosios pulcherrima GRATIA flores,
Contexit geminas CONCORDIA laeta corollas,
Extollitque suas sedas Hymenaeus in altum.
Naiades edificant thalamumque, thorumque profundo,
Stamine gemmato textum, pictisque columnis
Undique fulgentem. Qualem nec Lydia Regi
Extraxit Pelopi, nec tu Cleopatra marito.
Illic manubias cumulant, quas Brutus Achivis,
Quas Brennus Graecis, vigidus Gurmundus Hibernis,
Bunduica Romanis, clavis Arthurus Anglis
Eripuit, quicquid Scotis virtricibus armis
Abstulit Edwardus, virtusque Britannica Gallia.*

*Hauserat interea sperat conjugis ignes
TAMA Catechlaunum delabens montibus, illa
Impatiens nescire thorum, nupturaque gressus
Accelerat, longique dies sibi stare videntur,
Ambitiosa suum donec praeponere nomen
Posit amatori. Quid non mortalia cogit
Ambitio? notamque suo jam nomine villam
Linguit, Norrisitis geminans salvere, valere.
Cernitur & tandem Dorcestria praesepa petiit
Augurium latura thori, nunc TAMA resurgit
Nexa comam spicis, trabea succincta virenti,
Aurora superans digitos, vultumque Diones,
Pestane non labra rose, non lumina gemma,
Lilia non aequant crines, non colla pruina,
Vique fluit, crines madidos in terga repellit,
Reddit & undanti legem formamque capillo,
En subito frontem placidis & fluctibus ISIS
Effert, & totus radios spargentia campis
Aurea stillanti resplendent lumina vultu,
Iungit & optata nunc oscula plurima TAMAE,
Mutuaque explicitis innectunt colla lacertis,
Oscula mille sonant, connexu brachia pallent,
Labra ligant animos: tandem descenditur una
In thalamum, quo juncta FIDE CONCORDIA sancta,
Splendida conceptis sanctis connubia verbis.
Undique multiformi strepitu nunc tibia buxi,
Flucticola Nymphae, Dryades, Satyrique petulci
In numeros circum ludant, ducuntque choreas,
Dum pede concutunt alserio gravamina laeti,
Permulcent volucres silvas modulamine passim,
Certatimque sonat latum reparabilis ECHO.
Omnia nunc ridens campi letantur, AMORES
Frenatis plaudunt acubus per inania vocis:
Personat & cythara quicquid videre priores,
Pronuba victura lauro velata BRITONAE.*

*Hac canit ut toto diducta BRITANNIA mundo,
Cum victor rupes dirivulserit aequore Nereus,
Et cur Neptuni lapidosa grandine natum
Albionem vicit nostras delatus in oras
Hercules illimes libatus Thamisis undas,
Quas huc adveniens aras sacravit Vlysses,
Vique Corinao Brutus comitatus Achate
Occiduos adit tractus, ut Caesar anhelus*

Territa

*Tame and Isis
meet.*

Territa quæsisis offendit serga Britannis, &c.

And after a few other verses :

*Dixerat, unito confargit & unus amore
Latior exultans nunc nomine TAMISIS nno,
Oceanumque patrem querens jactantior undas
Promouet.*

Heere Zephyrus with fresh greene grasse
The Bankes above doth spread,
Faire *Flora* with ay-living herbs
Adourneth *ISIS* head,
Most lovely *GRACE* seleð forth
Sweet floures that never dy
And glad some *CONCORD* plats thereof
Two guirlands skilfully.
With all God *HYMENÆUS* lifts
His torches up on hie.
A Bride-chamber the *NAIADES*
Beneath of rare device
And Bed do rear, ywov'n with warp
Beset with stones of price.
All shining eke with pillars tall,
And wtought full curiously
The like did neither *Lydie* for
King *Pelops* edify,
Nor thou, *Queene Cleopatra*, for
Thine husband *Antony*.
There lay they foorth and make no spare,
Those spoiles that whilom *Brut*
From *Achives* tooke; what riches great
From *Grecians* *Brennus* stout,
And from fierce *Irish*, *Gurmund* wonn,
What either *Bundwic* *Queen*,
From *Romans* gat, or *Arthur* from
Our *English* there are seene.
What ever from the *Scots* by force
Of fight our *Edward* King,
Or valiant *English* from the *French*
By armes away did bring.
Meane while, down *Catechlanian* hils
TAME gliding, kindled had
The fire of love in hope of *ISE*
Her husband wondrous glad.
Impatient now of all delay
She hastneth him to wed,
And thinks the daies be long untill
They meet in marriage bed.
Untill I say, ambitious she,
May now before her love
Her own name set : see whereunto
Ambition minds doth move !
And now by this shee leav's the *town
That knowen is by her name,
All haile, fare well redoubling to
The *Norris's* by the same.
Old *Dorchester* at length shee sees

Flora.

* *Tame.*

Which was to give presage,
And lucky Augury of this
Long wished marriage.
Up riseth *TAME* then, who know's
Her locks with eares of corn
Full well to knit, with kirtle green
Her wast eke to adorn :
The light some raies of morning bright
She now doth far excell,
Dione faire in countenance
Lookes not by halfe so well.
Her lips the *Pestane* *Rose* surpasse,
Her eyes, gemmes of great cost,
Her haire the *Lilies* fresh and white,
Her necke the hoary frost.
And as she runnes, her haire all wet
She doth behind her cast,
Which waving thus she kembeth slick;
And layeth even at last.
Lo, *ISIS* sudainly out of
The *Waves* so mild doth shew,
His lovely face, his eies withall
Glitter with golden hew,
As they from dropping visage send
Their beames the fields throughour,
Whiles one anothers neck with armes
Displayd they clip about,
Full sweetly he doth *TAME* kisse
Whom he hath wish'd so long,
A thousand kisses twixt them twain
Doe now resound among.
With clasping close their armes wax pale,
Their lips their hearts linke fast,
To nuptiall chamber thus they both
Jointly descend at last :
Where *CONCORD* with religious *FAITH*
Together both ymet,
Knit up the knot of wedlock sure
With words in forme yser.
And now the pipes of thyried box
On every side resound;
The water *Nymphes*, the *Dryades*
The wanton *Satyrs* round
About the place disport and dance
The measures cunningly,
Whiles on the grasse they foote it fine,
In rounds as merily.
The *Birds* heerewith in every wood
Melodiously doe sing,
And *ECHO* her redoubled notes
In mirth strives forth to ring.
All things now laugh, the fields rejoice
The *CVPIDs* as they fly,
Amid the aire on bridled birds
Clap hands right pleasantly

BRITONA,

BRITONA, hand-fast-maker thee,
 All clad in Laurell green,
 Play's on the Harp what ever acts
 Our anceftours have feene.
 Shee fings how BRITANNY from all
 The world divided was,
 When *Nereus* with victorious Sea
 Through cloven rocks did paffe:
 And why it was that *Hercules*
 When he arrived heere,
 Upon our coaft, and tafted once
 The mudleffe T AMIS cleere,
 Did Neprun's fonne high *Albion*
 Vanquish in bloody fight
 And with an haile-like ftorme of ftones
 Kild him in field out-right.
 And when *Phyffes* higher came,
 What Altars fared were
 By him? How Brute with *Corinae*
 His truffy friend and fere,
 Went forth into the Western parts
 And how that *Caeſar*, he
 When he had fought and found, turn'd back
 With feare, from Britannie.

And after ſome few verſes interpoſed.

This ſaid, then *Tame* and *Iſis* both
 In love and name both one,
 Hight *Tamiſis*, more joy's therein,
 And haſtning to be gone
 Ariſeth up and leaping out,
 With haſtfull hot deſire,
 Advanceth forth his ſtreame, and ſeekes
 The Ocean main his ſire.

Benſon.

From *Dorcheſter*, *Tamiſis* goeth to *Benſon*, in old time *Benſington*, which *Strabo* calleth *Villam Regiam*, that is, *The Kings towne*, and reporteth, That *Ceanlin* took it from the Britans in the yeere of our Lord, 572. and that the Weſt-Saxons by the poſſeſſion of it 200. yeeres after. For, then *Offa* the King of *Mercians*, thinking it would be for his commoditie and honor both, that they ſhould have nothing on this ſide the river, wonne it, and ſubjected it to him. But at this day it goeth but village onely, and hath a houſe of the Kings hard by, ſometime a faire place, but now running exceedingly to ruine, as being not very whoſome by reaſon of the foggy aire and miſts ariſing from a ſtanding water adjoining. This houſe of certain *Elmes* called *Ewelme*, but commonly *New-Elme*, was built by *William de la poſte* Duke of Suffolke, who having taken to Wife *Alice* the onely daughter of *Thomas Chaucer*, had by her faire lands heereabout as elſewhere: and beſide this houſe, he erected alſo a faire Church, wherein the ſaid *Alice* lieth buried, and a proper Hoſpittall: *John* Earle of Lincolne his Grand child, who by King Richard the Third had been declared heire apparent to the Crowne, overthrow in ſome ſort the happie chance of this Family. For while he plotted and projected ſeditiouſly to rebell againſt King *Henry* the ſeventh, he was attainted and ſlaine in the battell at *Stoke*, and *Edmund* his brother being for like cauſe attainted, the poſſeſſions became Crowne-land. The King *Henry* the Eighth made this houſe an *Hanour*, by laying unto it certain *Manours*, and *Wallingford* among others, which before, had a long time belonged unto the Dukes of *Cornwall*.

Ewelme.

The *Tamiſis* from hence having ferched a great compaſſe about windeth in manner backe againe into himſelfe, enclosing within it the *Hundred of Henley*, mounting high with Hills, and beſet with thicke Woods, which ſome doe thinke the *ANCALITES* that yeelded themſelves unto *Caeſar*'s protection, did inhabit. Here is *Rix-brond* and *Stonor* ancient Poſſeſſions of the Families of *Stonors* who ſince the time of King Edward the Third when Sir *John Stonor* was chiefe Juſtice in the Common-pleas, flouriſhed with great alliance, and faire revenues untill they were transferred by an Heire generall to Sir *Adrian Fortescue* unhappily attainted, whoſe daughter, Heire to her mother was married to the firſt Baron *Wenworth*. Next neighbour hereunto is *Puſhull* which the Family of *D'ohly* held by yeelding yeerely to the King a Table-cloth of three ſhillings price, or three ſhillings for all ſervice. Under this Southward ſtandeth *Greys Roberſfield*, a houſe which in times paſt *Walter Grey* the Archbiſhop of Yorke gave freely unto *William Grey* his Nephew, the Inheritance whereof by the Baron of *D'Eincourt* was devolved upon the *Lovels*. Now it is the dwelling houſe of Sir *William Knolles*, Treasuſer of the Kings Houſe, whom *James* our King for his faithfull ſervice performed unto Queene *Elizabeth*, and to be performed unto himſelfe, advanced to the honourable title of Baron *Knolles* of *Roberſfield*. Nere unto it, *Henley* upon *Tamiſis*, in old time called *Haleganz* ſheweth it ſelfe in the very confines of the ſhires. The Inhabitants whereof be for the moſt part Watermen, who make their chiefeſt gaine by carrying downe in their Barges wood and Corne to London: neither can it make report of any greater antiquity than that in times paſt the *Mollines* were Lords thereof, from whom by the *Hungerfords* who procured unto the towne, of King *Henry* the Sixth the liberty of holding two faires, it came by right of Inheritance unto the honourable houſe of the *Hallings*. And where now the *Tamiſis* hath a wooden Bridge over it, they ſay in times paſt there ſtood one of ſtone arched. But whether this Bridge were here, that *Dio* writeth the Romans paſſed over when they purſued the Britans along this tract, who below had ſworn over the river, hard it is for a man to ſay. From *Henley*, the *Chiltern-hills* hold on with a continued ridgerunning Northward, and divide this Country from *Buckinghamſhire*: at the foote whereof ſtand many ſmall townes: among which theſe two are of greateſt note, *Warrington* a little mercate towne belonging ſometime to *Robert D'Oily*: and *Shirburne* a prerty Caſtle of the *Quatremans* in times paſt, but now the habitation of the Chamberlains deſcended out of the houſe of the Earles of *Tankervill*, who having beene long agoe Chamberlains of *Normandy*, their Poſterity relinquishing that old name of *Tankervills*, became ſurnamed *Chamberlains*, of the Office which their anceſtours bare.

To omit *Edg*, *Algar*, and other Engliſh Saxons, official Earles of Oxford; ſince after the Conqueſt, the title of the Earledome of Oxford hath flouriſhed a long time in the Family of *Vere*, which derive their deſcent from the Earles of *Guines*, and that ſurname from *Vere* a towne in *Zeland*. They received the beginning of their greatneſſe and honour here in England from King *Henry* the Firſt, who advanced *Aubrey de Vere* for his ſingular wiſedome with ſundry favours and benefits, as namely with the Chamberlainſhip of England, and *Portgreveſhip* of the City of London. To his ſon *Aubrey*, *Henry* the Second (before hee was eſtabliſhed King, and when hee uſed onely this title, *Henry Sonne to King Henries daughter, right heire of England and Normandie*) reſtored firſt the Chamberlainſhippe, which hee had loſt in the civil broiles, and then offered unto him which of the Titles he himſelfe would chooſe, of theſe foure Earledomes: *Dorſet*, *Wiltſhire*, *Barkſhire*, and *Oxfordſhire*; that he might divert him from *Stephen* then uſurping the Kingdome, and aſſure him to himſelfe. And in the end both *Maud* the Empreſſe, and *Henry* alſo her ſon being now come to the Crowne by their ſeverall Charters created him Earle of Oxford. Among thoſe that deſcended from him, (not to recount every one in their courſe and order) theſe were they that purchaſed greateſt fame and honour: *Robert de Vere*, who being in very high favour with King *Richard* the ſecond was honoured with theſe new and ſtrange dignities not heard of before, namely, Markeſſe of *Dublin*, and Duke of

Ancaliter.

* Stonor.

Puſhull
Naper.
Fin Mich.
ro.R. 2.
Grey of Roberſfield.

Baron
Knolles,
Henley.

Xiphilinus.

Shirburne.

Earles of
Oxford.

K k

Ireland:

Ireland: of which, as one said, he left nothing at all to himselfe, but to his Tombe titles, and to the world matter of talke. For, shortly after through the spiritfull copy of the Nobles as much against the King as against him, he was dispoiled of his crown and ended his dayes miserably in exile. *John* the First of that name so trusty and true to the House of Lancaster, that both Hee and his Sonne and Heire *Aubrey* lost their heads therefore together in the First yeere of King Edward the Fourth. *John* his second Sonne a right skilfull, and expert Martiall man, neverthelesse was most true and faithfull to the said House of Lancaster, fought in sundry battells against King Edward the Fourth, defended and made good for a while Saint Michaels Mount, and was an especiall assistant unto Henry the Seaventh in attaining to the Kingdom. Another *John* likewise in the reigne of Henry the Eighth, a Man in all parts of his life so sincere, so religious, and so full of goodnesse, that hee gained the surname of the *Good Earle*. Hee was great Grandfather of Henry that is now Earle, and the Eighteenth of this race in Lineall descent, and also Grandfather of Sir *Francis* and Sir *Horatio Vere*, brethren, who by their singular knowledge in Military affaires, and exploits most valiantly, and fortunately achieved in the Low-Countries, have added exceeding much honour and glory to themselves, and to the ancient Nobility of their Family.

This Countie containeth Parish Churches. 280.

CATTIEUCHLANI.



CATTIEUCHLANI.

Vpon the DOBUNI Eastward there confined the people, which Ptolomee calleth according to the diversity of copies, CATTIEUCHLANI, CATTIDUDANI, CATHICLUDANI, and Dio CATTUELLANI. Which of these might bee the truest name, I can not easily say. Yet give me leave I pray you in this place to cast forth my conjecture (although it is an abortive) concerning this point. I have bene of opinion that these were in old time called CASSI, that of this Cassii their Prince was named Cassivellaunus or Cassibelinus: (for so wee finde it diversely written. Also that, of Cassivellaunus name, this very people were by the Grecians termed Cattuellani, Cathuellani and Cattieuchlani. For, among the Nations of Britaine, Cæsar reckoneth the CASSI; who that they were seated in these parts it is most certaine: and of whose name a pretty portion of this Tract is at this day called Caithow. And seeing that Cassivellaunus ruled this Country as it appeareth by Cæsar, and in the said name of his this denomination of CASSI doth most plainly bewray it selfe; it may seeme probable enough that Cassivellaunus, was so named, as one would say, The Prince of the Cassii. And unlesse it were so, why should Dio name this Cassivellaunus, Suellan, for Vellan, and Ninnius the Britan, call him, not Cassibelinus, but Bellinus; as though that Bellinus were the proper name either of the Man, or of his Dignity? Neither let it seeme strange, that Princes in old time tooke names of their owne Nations. The Catti in Germanie had their Cattimar, the Teutons their Teutomar, and Teutobochus, the Daci their Decebalus, and the Goths their Gottiso. And what should let, but that our Cassii might have their Cassibelinus? Considering that Belinus hath bene an usual name in this Island: and some have thought, that Cunobelinus who reigned amongst the Iceni, was so called, as one would say, the Belinus of the Iceni. From this Cassivellaunus therefore, if the Greeke writers have not wrested these names Cattuellani and Cattieuchlani, &c. I confesse, that in this matter mine eye-sight fayleth mee altogether, and I see plainly nothing.

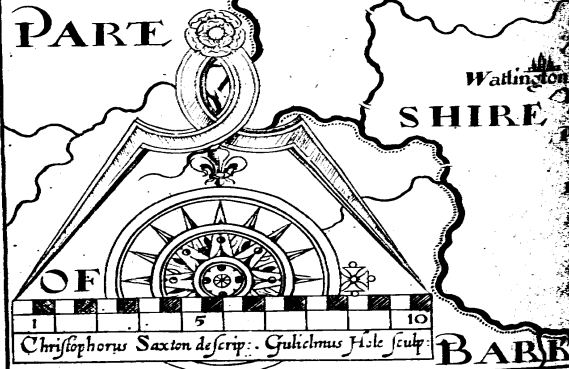
But whence this people should come to bee named CASSI, I know not, unlesse happily it were of their Martiall prowesse. For, Servius Honoratus writeth, that the ancient Gaules who spake the same language that Britans did, called

called hardy and valiant men, Gessios: Whence Ninnius interpreteth Cethilon
 (a British word,) The seede of Warriours. Now that these excelled in
 Warlike prowesse it is manifest: for, before Cæsars comming, they had war-
 red continually with their Neighbours, they had reduced part of the DOIR-
 NI under their subjection; the Britans had chosen their Prince, General
 over all their forces in the Warre against Cæsar, and they had enlarged their
 Empire and name farre abroad every way; For, all those generally were
 knowne by the name of CASSII, or CATTIEUCHLANI who now
 take up three Shires or Counties, to wit, Buckingham-shire, Bedford-shire and
 Hertford-shire. Of whom I am now to speake in order, and that briefly, be-
 cause I have not much to say of any of them.

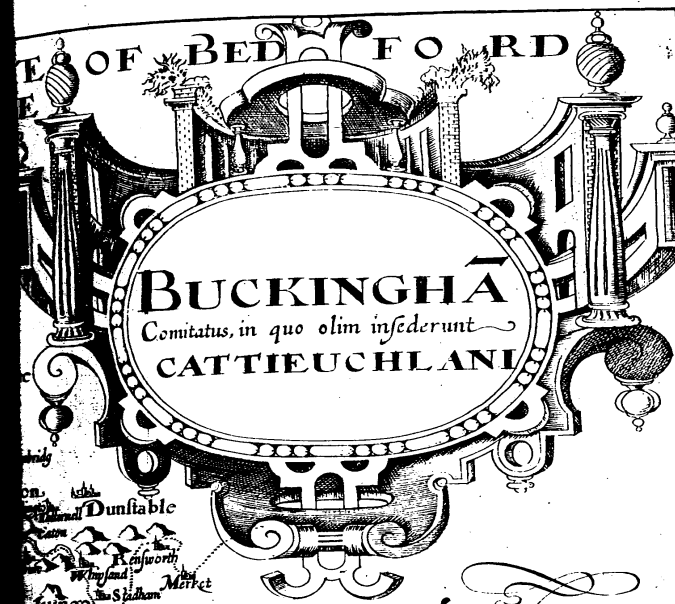
BUCKING

PARE OF NORTH:
AMTON
SHIRE

PARTE
OF
OXFORD
SHIRE



BARK



BUCKINGHAM-SHIRE.



Hereas Buckingham-shire is given to bring forth Beech trees plentifully, which the English-Saxons in elder times called *Bucken*, it may seeme conjecturally that *Buckingham* the chiefe Towne, and so the whole shire tooke the name from Beech trees. For there is a Country in Germany bearing Beech trees, named *Buchonia*: and with us, a towne in Norfolke called *Buckenham*, fruitfull of Beech, as I have beene enformed: This shire carrying but a small bredth, runneth forth in length from the Tamis North-ward. On the South-side it looketh into Barke-shire, severed from it by the river Tamis: on the West, Oxford-shire; from the North it hath Northampton-shire, and from the East first Bedford-shire, then Hertford-shire, and afterward Middle-sex. The Country generally is of a rich plentifull soile, and passing full of Inhabitants, who chiefly employ themselves in graizing of cattell. It is divided into two parts, whereof the one bending into the South and East, and rising into hills, they call *Chilterne*, in the English-Saxon tongue *Clyttern*: the other lying under it North-ward is named the *Vale*.

Chiltern got that name according to the very nature of the soile of Chalky marle, which the ancient English men termed *Cylt* or *Chilt*. For, all of it mounteth aloft with whitish hills, standing upon a mixt earth of Clay and Chalke clad with groves and woods, wherein is much Beech, and it was altogether unpassable in times past by reason of trees, untill that *Leofstane Abbot of Saint Albans* did cut them downe, because they yeilded a place of refuge for theeves. In it, where the *Tamis* glideth at the foote of those hills with a winding course, standeth *Marlow*, a pretty towne of no meane credite taking name of the said Chalke commonly termed *Marle*: which being spred upon Corne ground eaten out of heart with long tillage, doth quicken the same againe, so as that after one yeeres rest it never lieth fallow, but yeeldeth againe unto the Husband-man his seed in plentifull measure.

Chiltern.

Marlow.

Nere unto this, a rill sheaddeth it selfe in the *Tamis*, making way through low places, and where it turneth hath a towne upon it called *High Wickham* or *Wiccombe* rather, which happily thereof tooke the name, considering that the German Saxons terme any winding reach of river and sea, a *Wicke*, and *Combe* a low Valle. And very many places wee meet withall in England named in that respect. This towne for largenesse and faire building is equall to the greatest townes in this shire, and in that it hath a Major for the Head-Magistrate worthily to bee preferred before the rest. About the time of the Normans comming in, *Wigod of Wallensford* was Lord both of the Burgh of *Wicomb*, and also of the *Villa forinsica* (I speake according to the Record of the ancient *Inquisition*) that is, *The out Hamlet or Bery*. After whose death King Henry the first laid it unto the Crowne. But King John at the length, divided the said Out *Bery* betweene *Robert de Vipont* and *Alane Bassett*. North off *Wicomb* mounteth up aloft the highest place of this Region, and thereof it retaineth still the British name *Pen*. For the head or eminent top of a thing is with them called *Pen*: and hence it is that the *Pennine Alpes*, the *Apennine* and many Mountaines among us tooke their names. Nere unto this *Wickham* or *Wicomb* is *Bradenham* seated in a very commodious and wholsome place, which now is become the principall habitation of the Barons of *Windsor*: (concerning whom I have already spoken in Barke-shire) ever since that in the memory of our fathers *William Lord Windsor* seated himselfe here, whose father *S. Andrew* descended from the old stemme of ancient Barons, King Henry the Eighth dignified with the honour of Baron *Windsor*.

Wickham.

See in Barke-shire.

Tamis having entertained the said *Rill* commeth downe with a rolling streame by *Alton*, famous for a Colledge, the nource garden (as it were) or plant plot of good letters, which that most vertuous and godly Prince *K. Henry the Sixt*, as I have already

Colbroke.
Pontes.

said, first founded. And some few miles forward the river Cole entreth into Tames, which running here betwene Buckinghamshire and Middlesex giveth name unto the towne Colbroke: which was that Pontes, whereof Antonine the Emperour maketh mention, as the distance on both sides from Wallingford and London doth witnesse: Neither is there any other place else in the way that leadeth from Wallingford to London to which the name of Pontes, that is, Bridges, might be more fully applied. For this Cole is here parted into foure channels, over which stand as many bridges for the commodity of passengers, whereof that it tooketh this name, the very signification of the word doth plainly shew. Like as Gephyra a towne in Boeotia, and another Pontes in France, where the County of Ponthieu, our Tunbridg, and others are called, of Bridges. This County of Ponthieu (to note so much by the way) descended to the Kings of England in the right of Aleanor the wife of King Edward the First, who by her mothers right was sole and entire Heire of the same. Cole by these verall partitions of his streames compasseth in certaine pleasant llands, into which the Danes fled in the yeere of our Lord 894. when Aelfred pressed hard upon them, and there by the benefit of the place defended themselves, untill the English for want of provisions were forced to breake up Siege and leave them. At this divorce and division of the waters Ewre or Ever a little Towne sheweth it selfe, which when K. Richard the First had given unto Sir Robert Fitz-Roger, Lord of Cluring, his younger sonnes of this place assumed their surname, to wit, Hugh, from whom the Barons of Ewre, and Robert from whom the Family of Ewre in Axolme is sprung and spread. Farther within Land, are these places, which I may not passe over, Burnham better knowne by the Hadenes, Lord Huntercombs, and Scudamores, who were Lords thereof and of Beacons-field successively by inheritance, than by it selfe. See Pogeis, so called of the Lords thereof in old time named de Pogeis, and from them hereditarily devolved upon the Hastings: of whose race Edward Baron Hastings Loughborough founded here an Hospital for poore people, making himselfe and their society, and his nephew by the brother Henry Earle of Huntingdon built a faire house: and Fernham, the very same, if I be not deceived, which was the Fernham Roiall: and which in times past, the Barons Furnivall held by feoffment finding their Sovereigne Lord the King upon the day of his Coronation a glove for his hand, and to support the Kings right arme the same day all the while hee holdeth the Verge or Scepter in his hand. From the Furnivalls it came by the daughter of Thomas Nevill, unto the Talbots Earles of Shrewsbury, who although by exchange they surrendered up this Manour unto King Henry the Eighth, yet they reserved this honourable Office still to them and their Heires for ever.

This Cole carrieth downe with him another riveret also, which somewhat above from the West sheddeth it selfe into it: upon it we saw first Missenden, where stood religious House that acknowledged the D' Ollies their founders and certaine Gentlemen surnamed De Missenden their especiall benefactors upon a vow for escape from ship-wracke. And then in the Vale Amerham, in the Saxon tongue *Amerham*, which vaunted it selfe not for faire buildings, nor multitude of inhabitants, but their late Lord Francis Russell Earle of Bedford, who being the expresse pattern of true Piety and noblenesse lived most dearly beloved of all good men. But the principall seat of the Earles of Bedford is called Cheneis, standing more Eastward, where both John the first Earle out of this Family, and that noble Francis his sonne lye entombed together. Unto which adjoyneth on the one side Latimers, (so named of the Lords thereof, I meane those more ancient Barons Latimer) before called *Ischemsted*, where Sir Edwin Sands Knight, who tooke to wife the only daughter of the Baron Sands, dwelt, while he lived in a very faire house, and another *Chesham Bois*, where, and at *Draiton Beauchamp* the Family of Cheneis have lately flourished.

From hence I passed scarce three miles North-ward, but I came to the ridge of Chisourne-hills, which divideth the whole region a crosse from the South-west to North-east, passing by many villages and small townes, among which that of *gitch*

Burnham.

Stoke
Pogeis.Fernham.
Roiall.The booke of
Fines.

I. Roffe.

Amerham.

Cheneys.

Latimers.

A note is *Hamden*, which gave name to an ancient and well spread Family in these parts. In the very East corner of these hills *Ashridge* a retiring house sometime of the kings standeth upon an ascent, where *Edmund* Earle of Cornwall sonne to *Richard* King of the Romans founded a religious house for a new Order of religious men in those daies, called * *Bon Hommes* by him first brought into England: Who professed the rule of *S. Augustine*, and were according to the manner of the Order of the *Eremitans* clad in skie coloured garments. From this ridge or edge of the Hills, there is a large prospect every way downe into the Vale beneath, which I said was the other part of the Shire. This almost throughout is a plaine Champion, standing likewise upon a clay-soile, stiffe, tough, and fruitfull, with pasture medowes most plentifull of grasse and fodder, feeding innumerable flockes of sheepe, whose soft and passing fine fleeces are in request even as farre as to the Turkish Nations in Asia. But it is all naked and bare of woods, unlesse it bee on the West side, where among others is *Berne wood* whose Forresters surnamed *de Borsfall* were famous in former times. About this Forrest the yeare after *Christs* Nativity 914. the Danes furiously raged: and then happily it was, that the ancient Burgh was destroyed, whose antiquity Romane coined peeces of money there found doe testifie, which afterwards became the royall house of King Edward the *Confessour*: But now it is a Country Village, and in stead of *Buri-Hill*, they call it short, *Brill*. In this Vale although it be exceeding full of Townes and Villages, yet very few of them are memorable, and those either upon the River *Tame* or *Vsa*, that is, *Onse*. Not far from *Tame*, which watereth the South part of the Vale, upon the rising of a pretty hill standeth a faire Mercat Towne well occupied, and compassed about with many most pleasant greene medowes and pastures, commonly called *Ailesbury*, of which, the whole Vale is termed the *Vale of Ailesbury*. The English Saxons called it *Aegleburg*, when *Cuthwulf* the Saxon won it in the yeare of our Lord 571. For the Brittain name, whereby it was knowne before, in continuance of time is utterly lost. Famous it hath bene in times past especially for *Ediths* sake there fostered, who having obtained of her Father *Fremwald* this Towne for her Dowry, forthwith by persuation of the religious people had the world and her husband farewell, and taking her selfe to the *Vale* for opinion of holinesse and devotion in that most pregnant and fruitfull age of Saints, became wonderfully renowned, even as farre as to working of miracles, together with her sister *Eadburg*: of whose name there is a little Towne among the Hills as yet called *Eadburton*. In the time of King *William* the Conquerour it was a Manour of the Kings: and certaine yard-lands were here given by the King, with this condition, that the Possessour or Holder thereof (make ye nice and dainty ones) should finde litter for the Kings bed when the King came thither. In the Raigne of Edward the First, certaine Gentlemen named *de Ailesbury*, who bare for their Armes *Azure, a Crosse Argent*, were by report (but I know not how truly) the Lords thereof, certaine it is, they were in those daies men of the better sort and of great good note, and such as by marriage with the daughter and heire of the *Calbagnes* (who were in times past Lords of *Atteden Calbagnes*) came to a faire and goodly inheritance, which at last by heires generall came to the *Chaworths*, the *Staffords of Grafon*, &c. But now, the greatest name and reputation that it hath is by grazing and feeding of Cattle. Very much beholden also it is unto Justice *Baldwin*, who not onely adorned it with publique edifices, but also made a passing faire causey to it (where the way was very deepe and cumbersome) for three miles or thereabout in length.

Heere round about in every side flockes of sheepe pasture most plenteously in mighty numbers, laden with fleeces, to the great gaine and commodity of their Masters especially at *Quarendon*, a Lordship belonging to Sir *Henry Lee* an honourable Knight of the Order of the Garter, *Eythorp*, which sometime was the *Dishams* and now the *Dormers* Knights, and also *Winchindon* appertaining to the Family of the *Godwins* Knights likewise, &c.

Lower wee meet with nothing memorable upon *Tame*, unlesse *Chardesley* be (as many thinke it is) the place which was called in the Saxon-tongue *Cerdick-lega*, of *Cerdie*

Atheridge.

Good-men.

The Vale.

Brill.

Or is.

Ailesbury.

* De Cadurcis.

Quarendon.

Crendon.

Noreilly.

Vicounts
Bolebec.Birtlesden:
The Register
of the Abbey.

De Bosco.

* Before the
Conquest.

Whaddon.

Barons Grey
of Wilton.

Cerdic the Saxon, who fought a very sharpe and bloody battaile there with the Britans. Neere unto it standeth *Credendon*, now *Crendon*, which was the Capitall house belonging to the Honour of *Giffard*, for so were those lands termed which fell unto *Walter Giffard* at the Conquest of England, whose sonne the second Earle of Buckingham and *Ermingard* his wife, built the Abbey of *Neteley* thereby in the year 1122. But his cozen *Hugh de Bolebec*, from whom by the females the Earles of Oxford descended, held of him no small possessions in these parts. And the ruines of *Bolebec Castle* are seene hard by within the Parish of *Whitcheburc*. Neere unto which is *dean*, the principall Mansion house of the *Dormers* from whence descended the *Dukes* of *Feris* in Spaine, and others of noble note.

Ufe or *Onse*, in times past *Isa*, and the second *Isis*, which with a soft and still streame passeth through the North part of this Province arising in Northampton-shire and presently from his head, when being yet but small he closely entereth into this Shire, runneth beside *Birtlesden*, which *Robert de Maperishall* Lord of the place gave unto *Osbert de Clinton* Chamberlaine to King Henry the First a powerfull Courtier, that he might not be punished as a Fellow for stealing away one of the Kings Hounds. But he restored it unto him againe with a cozin of his in marriage: yet lost he the same in the hot broile of the civill war under King Stephen; and *Ernauld Bois* by way of a benefite and courtesie received it at the hands of *Robert* Earle of Leicester: And in the year of Christ 1127. founded there a little Monastery for the *Cisterians*. Then *Onse* saluteth Buckingham the Shire Towne, which, as *Marian* saith, King Edward the * elder in the year of our Lord 915. fortified with a Rampire and Strong on both banks, against the Invasions and assaults of the Danes. Yet was it of no great name, as it may seeme, in the first age of the Normans, seeing that in the Reign of King Edward the Confessour, (as we read in William Conquerours *Domesday booke*) it discharged it selfe for one Hide and no more, and had but six and twenty Burgeses. But the Towne it is seated upon a low ground, but the River *Onse*, very commodiously Mills encircleth it about save onely on the North side. The Castle standing in the midst raised upon a hill cast up, whereof no Reliques in manner are now to be seene, divideth the Towne as it were in twaine. The greater part of the Towne lieth North, wherein standeth the Towne-house, the other toward the South lieth, wherein is the Church, and that of no great antiquity; but in it was the first *S. Rumald* a child, who being borne in *Kings-Sutton* a Village thereby was carried by our forefathers for a child-Saint, and much famed with many miracles.

From hence *Onse* hasteneth faire and softly into the North, and more than a mile from the River, neere unto the woods, ye have a sight of *Whaddon*, the habitation in times past of the *Giffards*, who were by Inheritance keepers of *Whaddon* Church, the Earle of *Wiltshire*: and from whom it came to the *Pigots*, who passed it away by sale and alienation. There standeth now a house of the warlike Family of the *Barons of Wilton*, who held the *Manour* neere adjoining named *Alton*, by the jealousy of keeping one *Gerfalcon* of their Sovereigne Lord the King. Whereupon the family of the *Greys* hath for their Badge or Cognisance a *Falcon* Seiant upon a *Globe*.

Not farre from hence is *Thornton* an habitation of the *Tirelles*, and *Sutton*, which is a faire and lovely house built by Sir *John Fortescue* a right honourable knight and deeply learned withall, who for his wisdom was Chanceller of the Exchequer, the Duchy of Lancaster, and of the Privie Counsell to Queene *Elizabeth*, who lived in *Tamworth*. On the other side of the River and not farre from the banks standeth a house like, *Stow* a house of the Family of *Temple*, *Leckham* was an habitation of the *Wates*, *Lillinstone* likewise the seat of the ancient Family *De-Hair*, common to *Daurell*, and *Luffeld*, where in times past was founded a Monastery by *Robert* of Leicester: but by reason that the Monkes were all consumed with the plague, the house was utterly left desolate. Somewhat higher on the South side of the River upon the very Bank, standeth *Stony-Stratford*, a Towne of all the best most improved, named so of *Stones*, *The Street way*, and a *Fourd*: For the houses are built of a taine rough stone which is digged forth in great abundance at *Caversham* hard by.

and it standeth upon the publike Street commonly called *Watlingstreet*, which was a *Militarie* high way made by the Romanes, and is evidently to be seene yet beyond the Towne with the banke or causey thereof, and hath a fould but now nothing shallow, and hardly passable. The Towne is of good bignesse, and sheweth two Churches, and in the mids a Crosse, though it be none of the fairest, erected in memoriall of Queene *Isabel* of Spaine, wife to Edward the First with the Armes of England, *Castile* and *Leon*, &c. also of the Earldome of *Ponthieu*, whereof she was heire: And where sometimes there had been a Fould, the River *Onse* hath a stone bridge over it, which keepeth in the River that was wont, when it swelled with winter floods, to breake out and overflow the fields with great violence. But upon the banke of the other side which riseth somewhat higher the Towne sometime stood, as the inhabitants themselves report. And there hard by, is *Pasham*, a place so called of passing over the River, so that it may seeme in times past to have been that passage, which King Edward the Elder kept against the Danes, while he fortified *Torchester*: But this passage or Ferry became quite forlet after that the Bridge was built at *Stony-Stratford*. Now if I should guesse that *LACTORODVM*, which *Antonine* the Emperour mentioneth stood heere; beside the situation upon the *Militarie Highway* of the Romanes, and the distance from other places, the signification also of the olde name *LACTORODVM* fetched out of the British language, maketh for me and favoureth my conjecture. Which name accordeth passing well with this new English name. For, both names in both languages were imposed of Stone, and Fould. From hence *Onse* runneth hard by *Wolverton* anciently *Woluerington* the seat of an ancient familie so surnamed: whose lands are named in Records, *The Baronie of Woluerington*, from whom it came to the house of the *Longvilles* of ancient descent in these parts: and by *Newport Painell* which took that name of Sir *Fulcod Painell* the Lord thereof, and was from him devolved to the *Barons Someries of Dudley*, who heere had their Castle. Then, by *Terringham*, (which gave both name and habitation to a worshipfull house and of great antiquity) it goeth to *Onsley* a meetly good mercate town. This farre and a little further reacheth the County of Buckingham by *Yse* the limit and bound thereof.

The first Earle of Buckingham, so farre as hitherto I could observe, was *Walter* surnamed *Giffard*, sonne to *Osbern de Bolebec*, a man of great name and reputation among the Normans: Who in a Charter of King Henrie the First is cited among the witnesses thereto by the name of Earle of Buckingham. After him followed his sonne bearing the same name, who in the booke of *Abbingdon* Abbay is called Earle *Walter the younger*, and died issuelesse in the yeere 1164. Afterward in the reign of Henry the Second, that famous *Richard Strangbow* Earle of Pembroke called Conquerour of Ireland, who derived his descent from the sister and heir of *Walter Giffard* the second, in certaine publique instruments bare this title. Then for a long time after lay this title as it were out of use and quite lost, untill that in the yeere 1377. King Richard the Second conferred this honor upon his Unkle *Thomas of Woodstock*, of whom I have already spoken among the Dukes of Gloucester. Of this *Thomas* his daughter married unto *Edmund* Earle of Stafford was borne *Humphrey* Earle of Stafford, created Duke of Buckingham, with an invidious precedence before all Dukes of England by King Henry the Sixt, in whose quarrell he spent his life, fighting most valiantly in the battaile at Northampton. After him succeeded his Grandchild *Henry*, by his Sonne *Humphrey*, who made way for King Richard the Third the usurper unto the Kingdome, and streightwaies practised to depose him: for that he would not restore unto him the inheritance of the *Bobuns* by hereditarie right belonging unto him: but hee being intercepted lost his head for it: and found (but all too late) that Tyrants very often hew downe the staires and steps whereby they ascended: His sonne *Edward* being restored againe through speciall favour of King Henry the Seventh, by the wicked slights and practises of Cardinall *Wolsey* fell into disgrace with King Henry the Eighth, and being condemned of high treason, for that among

Lactodum.

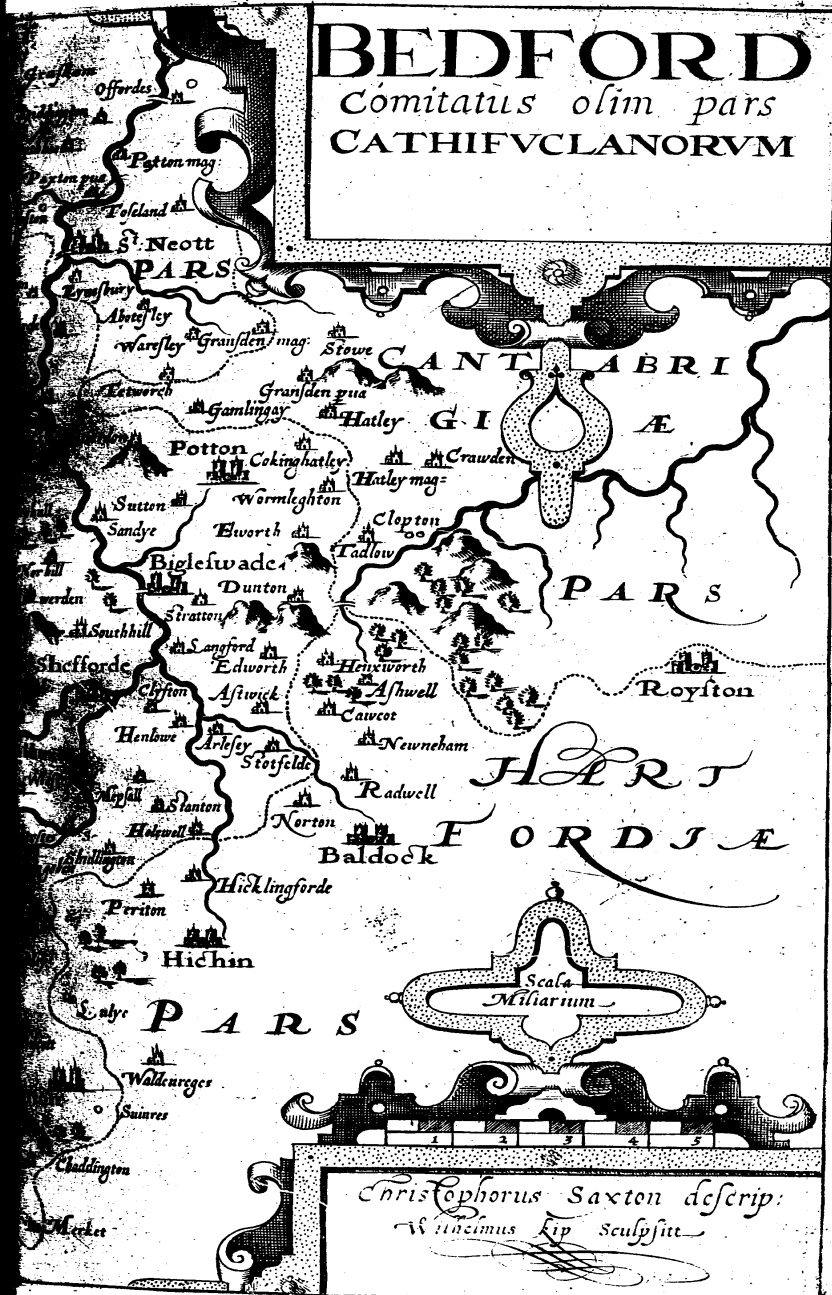
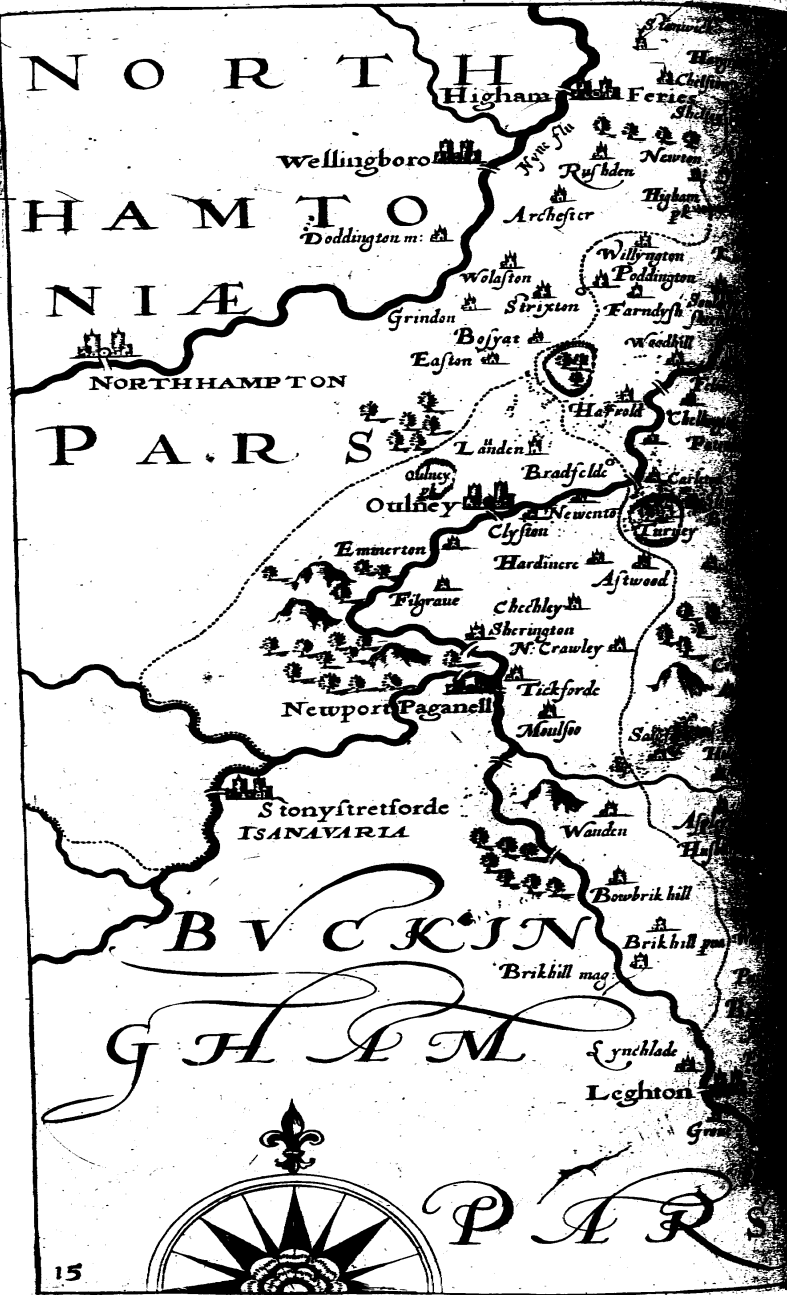
Leach in the
British tongue
signifieth
stones, rid and
ryda fould.
Wolverton.
Newport
Paynell.

Earles of
Buckingham.

among other matters hee had consulted with a Wizard about succession of the Crowne, was beheaded, a noble man exceeding much missed and lamented of good men. Which when the Emperour Charles the fifth heard, he said, as (it is written in his life) *That a Butchers dogge had devoured the fairest Bucke in all England: alluding to the name Buckingham*, and the said Cardinall who was a Butchers sonne. Ever since which time the splendour of this most noble family hath so decayed and faded, that there remaineth to their posterity the bare title onely of Barons of Stafford, whereas they were stiled before, *Dukes of Buckingham, Earles of Stafford, Hereford, Northampton, and Perce; Lords of Brecknock, Kimbalson, and Tunbridge.*

There are reckoned in this small Shire Parishes 185.

BEDFORD



BEDFORDSHIRE.

BEDFORDSHIRE is one of the three Counties, which we said the *Cattieuchlani* inhabited: On the East-side and the South it joyneth to Cambridge-shire and Hertford-shire, on the West to Buckingham-shire, and on the North to Northampton-shire and Huntingdon-shire, and by the river *Ouse* crossing over it is divided into two parts. The North-side thereof is the more fruitfull of the twaine and more woody: the other toward the South, which is the greater, standeth

upon a leaner soile, but not altogether unfertile. For it yeeldeth forth abundantly full, white and bigge Barley. In the mids it is somewhat thicke of woods, but Eastward more drie ground and bare of wood.

Ouse, where it entereth into this shire, first visiteth *Turvey* the Lord *Mordants* house, who are beholden to King Henry the Eighth for their Barony: For he created *John Mordant* a wife and prudent man, who had wedded the daughter and one of the coheires of *H. Vere* of Addington, Baron *Mordant*; then runneth it by Harwood a Village, in old time called *Hareleswood*, where *Sampson*, surnamed *Fortis* founded a Nunnery, and where in the yeere of our redemption 1399. a little before those troubles and civill broiles wherewith England a long time was rent in peeces, this river stood still, and by reason that the waters gave backe on both sides, men might passe on foote within the very chanell for three miles together, not without wondering of all that saw it, who tooke it as a plaine presage of the division ensuing. Afterward it passeth by *Odill* or *Woodhilk*, sometimes *Wahull*, which had his Lords surnamed also *De Wahul*, men of ancient Nobility (whose Barony consisted of thirty knights fees in divers countries) and had here their Castle, which is now hereditarily descended to Sir *R. Chetwood* knight, as the inheritance of the *Chetwoods* came formerly to the *Wahuls*. From hence *Ouse* no lesse full of crooked cranks and windings, than *Meander* it selfe, goeth by *Bletneshe*, commonly called *Blets*, the residence in times past of the *Pateshills*, after of the *Beauchamps*, and now of the Honourable family of *S. John*, which long since by their valour attained unto very large and goodly possessions in *Glamorgan-shire*, and in our daies through the favor of *Q. Elizabeth* of happy memory unto the dignity of Barons; when she created Sir *Oliver* the second Baron of her creation, Lord *S. John* of *Bletneshe* unto whom it came by *Margaret Beauchamp* an inheritrice wedded first to Sir *Oliver S. John*, from whose these Barons derive their pedigree, and secondly to *John* Duke of Somerset, unto whom she bare the Lady *Margaret* Countesse of Richmond, a Lady most vertuous and alwaies to be remembered with praises; from whose loines the late Kings and Queenes of England are descended.

From hence *Ouse* hastneth by *Brumham* a seat of the *Dives* of very ancient parentage in these parts to Bedford, in the Saxon-tongue *Beacanfora*, the principall towne, and whereof the Shire also taketh name; and cutteth it so through the midst, that it might seeme to be two severall townes, but that a stone bridge joyneth them together. A towne to be commended more for the pleasant situation and ancience thereof, then for beauty or largenesse, although a man may tell five Churches in it. That it was *Antonines* *LACTODORUM*, I dare not as others doe, affirme: considering that it standeth not upon the Romans Military road way, which is the most certaine mark to finde out the station and Mansions mentioned by *Antonine*; neither are there heere any peeces of Romane money ever digged up, as far as I can learne. I have read that in the British tongue it was named *Lisfidur* or *Lettidur*; but it may seeme to have been translated so out of the English name. For *Lettur* in the British language signifieth *Common Innes*, and so *Lettidur*, *Innes upon a river*: like *Bedford* in English, *Beds* or *Innes at a fowd*. *Cushwulf* the Saxon, about the yeere of our sal-

Barons Mordant.

See Hypodigma pag. 153.

The water divided.

Wahull.

Bletsho.

Barons S. John de Blets.

Bedford.

* Places to give entertainment by the way unto Travellers, Bayting and lodging places.

vation, 572. beneath this towne so vanquished the Britans in an open pitch field that then presently upon it, finding themselves over-matched, yeelded up many townes into his hands. Neither should it seeme that the Saxons neglected it: In *Offa* the most puissant King of the *Mercians* choose heere (as we read in *Florus*) for himselfe a place of sepulture; whose tombe the river *Ouse* swelling upon it, and carrying a more violent and swifter streame than ordinary in a flood, cleane away. Afterwards also when it was rased downe and lay along by the side of the Danish depredations, * K. Edward the Elder repaired it, and laid upon the South-side of the river a pretty townlet, which in that age, as we find in the *py* of *Hevedon*, was called *Mikegat*. In the time of King Edward the Conqueror, we read in that booke which King William the Conqueror caused to be written when he tooke the survey of England, *It defended it selfe for halfe an Hundred years, expeditions, and shipping. The land belonging to this towne was never bided.* After that suffered far more grievous calamities under the Normans: For when * *Paine de Beauchamp* the third Baron of Bedford had built heere a Castle, there arose not any thing of civill war but it thundred upon it so long as it stood. *Stephen*, when with his oath he intercepted to himselfe the Kingdome of England, first forced the Castle, and with very great slaughter of men won it: afterwards when the Barons taken armes against King *Iohn*, *William de Beauchamp* Lord thereof, and one of the chieftaines of their side, surrendered it unto their hands: But a yeere or two after, *John de Breant* laid siege thereto, and forthwith the Barons yeelded, and the King bestowed it upon him. Yet the unthankfull man raised up a world of warres upon King Henry the third: He pulled downe Churches to strengthen his Castle, and exceedingly damnified the territory adjoining, untill the King besieged it, when after thre score daies he had quelled the stubborn stomackes of these and brought this nest and nourfe of sedition into his owne hands.

It will not be, I hope, distastfull to the reader, if I set downe heere the manner assaunting this Castle out of a writer who then lived, and saw it: to the end we may understand with what devises and engines that age (as wittie well knowne to worke men mischief) used in their sieges of Townes. On the East (saith hee) there was planted one *Petrarie* and two *Mangonells* which daily battered the Towre, and on the West-side two *Mangonells* which battered the old Towre: upon the *Mangonell* on the South part; and another on the North, which made two briddall enuries in the next walles. Besides these there were two frames or engines of Timber, Carpenters, erected higher above the toppe of the Towre and Castle for shooting, and for discoverers. There were moreover there many frames wherein shotters of pikes and stingers were set in await: furthermore there was a frame or engine there, called *Cat*, under which the Pioners and underminers had their ingresse and egress, which they digged under the Walles of Towre and Castle. Now, was this Castle taken by force. In the first was the Barbican wonne: in the second, the out Ballic. At the third the Wall downe were the olde Towre by the meanes of the Miners, where, by the chinke or breach with great daunger they became possessed of the inner Ballic: and fourth, the Miners put fire under the Towre, so that the smoke brake forth, and the towre rent asunder, in so much as the cliffs and breaches appeared wide: and then the Miners yeelded themselves. Of these *Mangonells*, *Petraries*, *Trabucks*, *Bricks*, *Engines*, and of that which our ancestors termed the *Wormes*, by which before that they were devised, they discharged volies of mighty huge stones, with great noise, and so brake through strong walles, much might heere be said, were they not side my purpose. But my author proceedeth thus: *Salvo remained* *Edmund* *until hee restored unto the King the Castle of Plumpton and Stok-curey, which he had taken, and silver both and such money as that he had: and from thence was led to London, while the Sheriffe had commandement to demolish and rase the Towre and out Ballic for the inward Ballic: when the Bulwarks were cast downe, and both French and English laid levell with the ground, it remained unto William Beauchamp for to dwell in: which were granted unto the Chanons of *Newenham* and *Chaldwell*, and of *Saint Pauls* Church.*

* Before the Conquest.

* Paganus.

Cattus.

Bedford. Neither yet for all this is there any thing here more worth the seeing, than the remaines of this Castle on the East side of the towne, hanging over the river.

On both sides of Bedford stood two prety and very faire religious houses, *Helens* now *Eustow* on the South part, consecrated by *Judith* wife to *Waltheof* Earle of Huntingdon unto *Helena* Great *Constantines* Mother, and to sacred Virgins: on the East, *Newenham*, which *Rois* the wife of * *Paine de Beauchamp* translated thither from *Saint Pauls* within Bedford.

* Pagani.

Ouse is not gone farre from hence, but he seeth the tokens of a decayed Castle at *Eaton*, which was another seate of the family *de Beauchamp*, and bids Bedford-shire farewell hard by *Bissemes*, where *Hugh de Beauchamp*, and Roger his brother founded a little Monastery for the Chanons of *Saint Austins* order, as appeareth by the Popes Bull. These stand on the farther side of *Ouse* which yet before from the South is augmented with a namelesse * brooke, at whose confluents is to be seene *Temsford*, well knowne by reason of the Danes standing Campe, and the Castle there, which they then built, when they wintering in Campe, lay fore upon this Country, and threw downe the Britans Fort (as it is thought) The place whereof, now called *Chesterfield* and *Sandie*, sheweth oftentimes peeces of Romane coyne, as expresse tokens of the antiquity thereof: Neither doe some doubt by the very situation, but that this was that *Salenæ*, which *Plolomee* ascribeth to the *Cattieuchlani*, if *Salndy* be the name, as divers have avouched unto me. Heere I overpasse *Potton* a little mercat towne, because I finde nothing of it, but that *John Kinaaston* gave it and the Lands adjoining freely unto *Thomas* Earle of Lancaster. Neither have I reason to make many words of such places as be situate upon this Brooke, to wit, *Chickland*, where *Paine de Beauchamp* built a little Monastery. *Shelford* a mercae, *Wardon* more inward where was a house of *Cisterian* monkes, and was mother to the Abbaies of *Saultery*, *Sibton* and *Tithby*, *Biglesward* much spoken of and frequented for the horse *Fayre* there, and the stone bridge. From whence *Stratton* is not farre, the mansion place in times past of the Barons *Latimer*, afterward of the *Enderbeites*, and from them hereditarily untill our time of the *Pigotts*.

Æron.

* Some call it, Ivell.

Salenæ seemeth to be that which Antoninus called Sullonica.

Potton.

Chickland.

Stratton.

Five miles from the head of this brooke in the very heart and middest well neere of the shire, standeth *Amphill* upon an hill, a parcell of the Barony of *Kainbo* heere tofore and lately a stately house, resembling a castle, and environed with Parks, built by Sir *John Carmale* Baron *Fanhop*, in the reigne of Henry the Sixth with the spoyle wonne from the French; whose goods, as I have read, when Edward the Fourth had confiscated for taking part with the Familie of *Lancaster*, and indited him, or this house rather, as *Fanhop* himselfe saith, of high treason; forthwith it was granted unto *Edmund Grey* Lord of *Rushin*, and afterwards Earle of *Kent*: whose grandchild *Richard* passed both it and *Rushin* over to King Henry the Seventh, and he annexed the same unto the Kings Sacred Patrimony, as the Civilians terme it, or as our Lawyers use to say, unto the Crowne, and shortly after with the Lands appertaining it was made the Honour of *Amphill*. From hence more Northward lieth *Haughton Conquest*, so called of a worshipfull and ancient family, which a long time dwelt therein: Westward is *Woburn*: where now is a free schoole founded by *Francis* Earle of Bedford: and where sometime flourished a notable monastery built by *Henry de Belesie* for *Cisterians*, who himselfe entred into this order: Under which, at *Aspley Gwize*, there is a kinde of earth, men say, that turneth wood into stones: and for prooffe and testimony thereof, I have heard say, there was a wooden ladder to be seene in that monastery, that having lien a good while covered all over in that earth, was digged forth againe all stone. More into the East, *Tuddington* sheweth a faire house, goodly to be seene, which Sir *Henry Cheiney* made by *Queene Elizabeth* Baron *Cheyne* of *Tuddington* built, and shortly after died *Sans-issue*, where also in old time *Paulin Pever* a Courtier, and Sewer to King Henry the Third (as *Matthew Paris* witnesseth) built a strong house with the hall, chapel, chambers, and other houses of stone, and the same covered with lead, with Orchards also and Parkes to it, in such sort, as it caused the beholders to wonder thereat.

Amphill or Amethull.

Haughton Conquest. Woburn.

Earth turning wood into stone.

We were not gone forward farre from hence but we came to *Hockley* in the *Field*, so named of the miry way in Winter time, very troublesome to Travellers: For the old Englishmen our Progenitors called deepe myre *hock*, and *hocks*. So passing along fields smelling sweet in Sommer of the best Beanes, which with their redolent favour doe dull the quicke sent of Hounds and Spaniels not without fuming and chafing of Hunters; we mounted up by a whitish chalkey hill into the *Chilten*, and streightwaies were at *Dunstable*.

Dunstable.

This Towne seated in a chalkey ground, well inhabited, and full of Innes, hath four Streets answering to the foure quarters of the world: in every one of which (withstanding the Soile bee most dry by nature) there is a large Pond of standing water, for the publique use of the Inhabitants. And albeit they bee fed only by raine water, yet they never faile nor become dry. As for spring-veines there are none to bee found, unlesse they sinke Wells or pits foure and twenty Cubits deepe. In the midst of the Towne is a *Crosse* or *Column* rather to be seene with the Armes of England, Castle and Ponthieu engraven thereon, adorned also with Statues and Images, which King *Edward* the First erected as he did some others in memoriall of *Eleonor* his Wife all the way as hee conveyed her Corps out of *Lincolnshire* with funerall pompe to Westminster. That this *Dunstable* was the very same Station which the Emperour *Antonine* in his Itinerary calleth *MAGIONINIUM*, *MAGIOVINIUM* and *MAGINTUM* no man needs to make doubt, or to seek it self

Magiovinium.

where. For, besides that it is situate upon the Romanes high way, there are peeces of the Roman Emperours monies found otherwhiles in the fields adjoyning round about by the Swine-heards, which as yet they terme, *Madding money*: and within a litle of the very descent of the *Chiltern hills* there is a military modell raised round with a Rampire and Ditch, such as *Strabo* writeth the Britans Townes were, containing nine Acres of ground, which the people use to call *Madding-burial* *Madin-bour*: in which very name with a litle change *MAGINTUM* most plainly sheweth it selfe. But when the said *MAGINTUM*, by the injury of warre or time was decayed, King *Henry* the First heere reedified a Towne, built a royall house *Kings-bury*, and planted a Colony to repress the boldnesse of Theeves that here befer the wayes and lay in wait, as the private History of the Priory, that himselfe founded for the ornament of this his Colony, doth evidently beare witness. He heare the very words out of that private History, although they favour of the Barbarisme of that age. Note that the plot of ground where the two high waies Watling and Ikening meet, was first by *Henry* the elder King of England* cleared, to keepe under and bridle the wickednesse of a certaine most notorious Theefe named *Dun*, and his Complices, and of that *Dun* the said place was named *Dunstable*. The King our Lord built there the Burgh of *Dunstable*, and made for himselfe a royall Manour, or house where under that place. The King had in the same Towne both Faire and Mercat. Afterwards, hee founded Church, and by authority of Pope *Eugenius* the Third, placed therein Regular Chanons: and bestowed the said Religious Chanons in the whole Burgh by his Charter, and bestowed upon them very many liberties.

* Sartabatur.
Or clenfed
by stocking up.

As for *Leighton Buzard* on the one side of *Dunstable*, and *Luton* on the other, neither have I reade, nor scene any thing memorable in them, unlesse I should say that at *Luton* I saw a faire Church, but the Quieter then Rooselesse, and overgromed with Weedes; and adjoyning to it an elegant Chappell founded by *1. Lord Wullocke*, and well maintained by the Family of *Rotherham* planted heere by *Thomas Rotherham* Archbishop of *York*, and Chancellour of England in the time of King *Edward* the Fourth.

As touching the Lords, Dukes, and Earles of *Bedford*. First, there were Barons of *Bedford* out of the Family of *Beauchamp*: who by right of inheritance were Almanners to the Kings of England upon their Coronation day. Whose inheritance being by females parted among the *Mowbraies*, *Wakes*, *Fitz-Ottes*, &c. King *Edward* the Third created *Engelram de Concy* Earle of *Suefons* in France, sonne to *Engelram* Lord of *Concy*, and his Wife daughter to the Duke of *Austria*, the first Earle of *Bedford*.

Dukes, Earles
and Barons of
Bedford.
Franciscus
Alouercus

A *Bedford*, giving unto him his daughter in marriage. Afterwards King *Henrie* the Fifth advanced *Bedford* to the title of a Dukedome: and it had three Dukes: the first was *John*, the third sonne of King *Henrie* the Fourth, who most valiantly vanquished the French men in a Sea-fight at the mouth of * *Seyne*, and afterwards (being Regent of France) slaine in a battaile on land, before *Vernoil*, who was buried in *Roan*, and together with him all the Englishmens good fortune in France. At which time he was Regent of France, Duke of *Bedford*, *Alaunson* and *Anjou*, Earle of *Maine*, *Richmond* and *Kendall*, and Constable of England. For so was his stile. Whose Monument when Charles the Eighth King of France came to see, and a Noble man standing by advised him to raise it, *Nay answered he, les him rest in peace now being dead, of whom in war while he lived all France had dread*. The second Duke of *Bedford* was *George Nevill* a very child, sonne to *John Marquesse Mont-acute*, both whom King *Edward* the Fourth so soone as hee had raised them to that type of Honours, threw downe againe, and that by authoritie of the Parliament; the Father, for his perfidious disloyaltie in revolting from him; the Sonne, in dislike of his Father: Howbeit there was a colourable pretense made, that his estate was too weake for to maintaine the port and dignity of a Duke: and because great men of high place if they be not wealthy withall, are alwaies grievous and injurious. The third was *Jasper of Hatfield*, Earle of *Pembroch*, Honoured with that title by his Nephew King *Henrie* the Seventh, for that hee was both his Uncle, and had delivered him out of extreame dangers: who being aged and a Bachelor, departed this life, some ten yeeres after his Creation.

But within the remembrance of our Fathers it fell backe againe to the title of an Earledome: what time as King *Edward* the Sixth created *John Lord Russell* Earle of *Bedford*: after whom succeeded his Sonne *Francis*, a man so religious and of such a noble courteous nature, that I can never speake ought so highly in his commendation, but his vertue will far surpasse the same. He left to succeed him *Edward* his Nephew by his Sonne *Sir Francis Russell*, who was slaine a day or two before his Father departed this life by Scottishmen in a tumult upon a *Truce-day* in the middle marches. 1585.

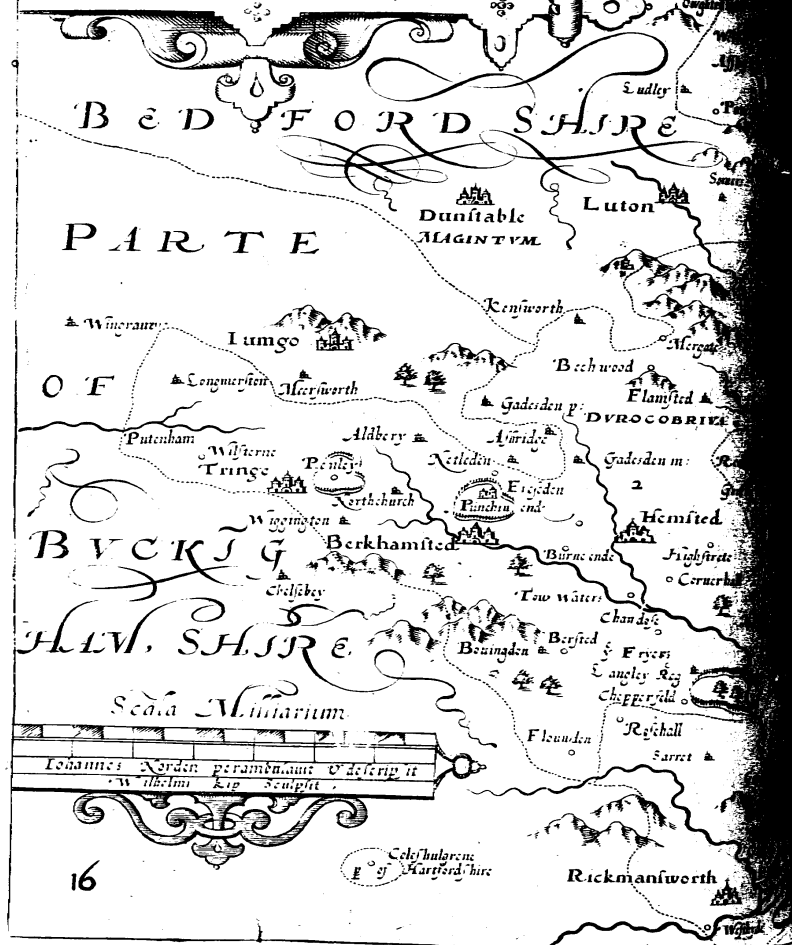
This small Province hath Parishes 116.

L1 2

HERTFORD:

HERTFORDIÆ Comitatus A. cat tifucianis olim. Inhabitus.

The names of the Hundreds of this mappe
1. Cayke Hundred 2. Easingtree Hundred
3. Dacorum Hundred 4. Easingtree Hundred
5. Hitch nase Hundred 6. Bragins Hundred
7. Broad water Hundred 8. Hartfords Hundred



HERTFORD-SHIRE.



HERTFORD-SHIRE, which I said was the third of those that belonged to the *Catticuchlani*, lieth on the East and partly on the South side of Bedford-shire: The West side is enclosed with Bedford-shire and Buckingham-shire: The South with Middlesex, the East with Essex, and the North with Cambridge-shire. A rich country in corne fields, pastures, meadows, woods, groves, and cleere riverets. And for ancient townes it may contend with the neighbours even for the best: For,

there is scarcely another shire in all England that can shew more places of Antiquities in so small a compasse.

In the very limie thereof Northward, where it boundeth upon Cambridge-shire, standeth *Roiston*, a towne well knowne, but of no antiquity: as being risen since the Normans daies. For one Dame *Rqise*, a woman in that age of right great name, *whom some thinke to have been Countesse of Norfolk, erected there about a Crosse in the high way, (which was thought in that age a pious worke to put passengers in minde of Christs passion) whereupon this place was for many yeeres called *Crosse-Crosse*: untill that *Eustach de Marc* adjoined thereto a little Monastery in the honour of *Thomas* of Canterbury: for then, were Innes built, and by little and little it grew to be a towne, which in stead of *Roises Crosse* was called *Roiston*, that is, *Roises* towne: unto which King Richard the First granted a *Faire* at certaine set times and a mercat; Now, it is very famous and passing much frequented for Malt: For, it is almost incredible, how many buyers and sellers of corne, how many Badgers, yea and Corne-mongers or Regraters flocke hither weekly every mercat day, and what a number of horses laden doe then fill the high waies on every side.

Over Roiston Southward is mounted *Tharfield* among the high hills, an ancient habitation of the familie of *Berners*, descended from *Hugh de Berners*, unto whom in recompence of his valiant service in the Normans Conquest, King William the Conquerour granted faire lands in *Eversdon* within the County of Cambridge. And in so great worship and reputation flourished his posterity, that *Sir John Bourchier*, who married the right heire at common law of that familie, being promoted by King Edward the Fourth to the honour of Baron, rooke his addition thereof, and was stiled *Baron Bourchier of Berners*, and usually Lord *Berners*.

Upon this confineth *Nucelles*, belonging in times past to the house of the *Rocheffers* or *Roffes*: but all the repute and glory that it hath arose from the inhabitants thereof afterwards, namely the Barons of Scales descended out of Norfolk, but yet the heires of Roffe. For King Edward the First gave unto *Sir Robert de Scales* in regard of his valourous service in the Scottish warres, certaine lands to the value in those daies of three hundred markes by the yeare, and called him among the Barons to the Parliament. Their Eschocheon *Gules with sixe escallops argent* is seene in many places: They flourished unto King Edward the Fourth his daies, at what time the only daughter and heire of this family was wedded unto *Sir Anthony Wodeville Earle Rivers*, whom being advanced by his owne glorious prowesse and the kings marriage with his sister, the malicious hatred and envie of his enemies most villanouslie overwrought, and brought to utter destruction. For, King Richard the Third beheaded him, innocent man as he was. And, when as she died without issue, the inheritance was parted in King Henry the Seventh's time betwene *John Earle of Oxford*, who by the *Howards*, and *Sir William Tindale* knight, who by the *Bigods* of *Felbridge*, were found next cousens and coheires. The Manour of *Barkway* hereby appertained also to those Lords *Scales*, a well knowne throughfare. Beyond which is *Barley* that imparted surname to the ancient, and well allied family of the *Barleies*, and on this side *Anestie*, which was not long since the inheritance of the house of

Roiston.
Chronicles of
Dunstable.

*Others say she
was the wife
of Richard de
Clare.

Tharfield.
Berners.

Nucelles.
The familie
of Roffes.

Barons de
Scales.

*
Anestie.
Yorke,

Yorke, and in elder times the Castle there was a nest of rebels, wherefore *Nicholas* of Anctly Lord thereof, was expressly commanded by King Henry the Third to demolish so much of it as was raised since the Barons warres against his Father King John. But now time hath wholly raised it all.

Ch. 3. H. 3. m. 11.

Ashwell.

To returne, though disorderly, East-ward is *Ashwell*, as one would say, *The well & fountaine among the Ashes*: a Country towne of good bignesse and full of houses, situate on a low ground in the very North edge of the shire; where there is a source of springs bubbling out of a stony banke overshadowed on every side with tall ashes, from whence there floweth at certaine veines continually running such store of water, that forthwith being gathered within banks it carrieth a streame able to drive a Mill and all of a sudden, as it were, groweth to a good big river. Of these wells and ashes together, as most certaine it is that the English-Saxons imposed this new name *Ashwell*: so I have been sometime of this opinion, that the ancient Britans, who, as *Gildas* witnesseth, *heaped divine honours upon hills, rivers, fountains, and groves*, from the very fame thing and in the same sense called it *Magiorinum*, and that it was the same which *Antonine* named *MAGIONINVM*. But time hath now discovered a more certaine truth, neither am I ashamed to change mine opinion in this point, seeing I take no pleasure at all in mine owne error. And yet to prove the ancientness of this towne, the large quadrant adjoining, enclosed with a trench and rampire maketh much, which by the Romane peeces of coyne digged up there oftentimes, sheweth whose worke it was, and in that * booke, wherein above 500. yeeres since King William the Conquerour tooke the review and account of all the townes in England, it is in plaine words tearmed a *Burgh*.

* Domesday.

Southward we saw *Merkat-Baldock*, situate upon a whitish soile, wherein as *John Hitting* hard by, we read of no antiquity. Then is there seated in a well-husbanded and good ground *Wimandley* an ancient and famous Lordship, held by the most honourable tenure with us, which our Lawyers terme *Grand-Sergeanty*: namely, the Lord thereof should serve unto the Kings of England upon their Coronation, the first cup, and be as it were the Kings Cup-bearer. Which honorable office in regard of this Lordship, certaine Noble Gentlemen called * *Fitz-Tek* held in the beginning of the Normans reigne; from whom by a daughter it came unto the *Argentons*. These fetched their name and pedigree from *David de Argenton* a Norman and a martiall knight, who under King William the Conquerour served in the wars, and they in remembrance heereof gave for their armes *Three Cups Argent* with *Red Gules*. But at last, for want of issue male in King Henry the Sixth his daies, *Elizabeth Argenton* the sole and entier inheritrice, brought it unto her husband *William Allington* knight, with faire lands thereby and this dignity, from whom *Sir John Allington* now the heire of this family is the seventh, a young Gentleman right courteous and of a generous nature, who I hope will give some new lustre by his vertues unto the ancient worship of his house.

Grand-Sergeant.

Fitz-Tek.

Argentons.

Hard by and neere unto the roade high-way, betweene *Stevenhamb* and *Northampton* the seat of the worshipfull house of the *Littons* descended from *Liton* in *Devonshire*, I saw certaine round hills east up and raised by mans hands, such as the *Normans* were wont to reare for Souldiers slaine in the wars, of which the *Captaine* himselfe laied the first turfe. Unless some man would rather say they had a reference to the bounds: For such like little hills in old time were reared to signify the bounds of lands, under which they used to lay ashes, coales, lime, bricke, and the like beaten to powder, &c. as I will shew else-where more at large.

In the County of Northampton.

Beneath this, more Southward, the river *Lea*, by our forefathers named *Fam*, bath his head: who with a milde course passeth down, first, by *Whetbamsted* a town plentifull in wheate, whereof it tooke name; which place, *John of Whetbamsted* then borne and thereof named, a man in King Henry the Sixth his daies much renowned by his due desert of learning, made of more estimation. From thence running by *Brocket Hall*, the residence in late time of the *Brockers* Knights, approacheth neere unto *Bishops Hatfield* situate upon the fall and hanging of a little hill: in the upper part whereof

whereof stood a house of the Kings, now the Earle of *Salisbury*, in times past belonging to the Bishops of *Ely*, whereupon it was named *Bishops Hatfield*, which *John Marston* Bishop of *Ely* reedified. For in this place King *Edgar* gave unto the Church of *Ely* forty hides of land. Afterwards it passeth under *Heriford*, which in some Copies of *Bede* is named *Herudford*, where he treateth of the Synode there holden in the year of our Salvation 670. which name some interpret: *The red Ford*, others, *The Ford of Harts*. This Towne in *William* the Conquerours time, discharged it selfe for ten hides and in it were 26. Burgeses, and at that time *Ralph Limsey* a Noble man buile heere a Cell for Saint *Albans* Monkes. But now it is neither greatly inhabited nor much frequented: and in this respect most of all commended, because it is ancient. For why? it hath given name to the whole County, and is reputed the Shire-towne. A Castle it hath upon the River *Lea*, built, as men thinke, by King *Edward* the elder, and enlarged first by the house of *Clare*, whereunto it belonged. For *Gislebert* of *Clare* about King Henry the Second his dayes, was accounted Earle of this *Heriford*, and *Robert Fitz-walter*, of the same house of *Clare*, what time as *Stephen* seized into his hands all the Castles of England wheresoever, avouched frankly even to *Stephen* his face, as we read in *Mathew of Paris*, that the keeping of this Castle by ancient right appertained to himselfe. Afterwards it was laid unto the Crowne: and King *Edward* the Third granted unto *John of Gaunt* his sonne, then Earle of *Richmond*, who afterward was Duke of *Lancaster*, *this Castle with the Towne and honour of Heriford*: where (as the very words runne in the Graunt) *hee might according to his estate keepe house and decently make his abode*.

Bishops Hatfield.

From hence *Lea* falleth downe forthwith to *Ware*, so named of a barre or dam made to stay water streames, which our Ancestours called a *Weare* or *Ware*. This Towne, even at the very first did much harme unto *Heriford*, and afterwards by reason it became so greatly hanted, darkened, as it were, the light thereof.

For, when the Barons warre against King *John* was waxed hote, this *Ware* presuming much upon their Lord the Baron *Wake*, turned London high way to it, whereas before it was but a little Village, and knowne by a Friery which hee founded: neither was it lawfull to passe that way with any Carts, considering that the Bridge was chained up, the Keyes whereof were in the custody of the Bailiffe of *Heriford*. Neere about which time *Gilbert Mareſcall* Earle of *Pembroch* a principall and most potent Peere of the Realme, proclaimed heere a disport of running on horsebacke with launces, which they call *Tourneaments*, under the name of *Fortunie*, making a scoone of the Kings Authority, whereby such *Tourneaments* were inhibited. To which place when a great number of the Nobility and Gentry were assembled, it fortuned that himselfe as hee ranne at tilt, by occasion that his slinging horse brake bridle and cast him, was trampled under foote and so pittifully dyed. These *Jests* or *Tourneaments* were certaine publique exercises of Armes and more than flourishes, practised among noble Gentlemen, and instituted (if wee beleve *Munster*) in the year of our Lord 934. having also speciall lawes thereto belonging, which you may finde in the said *Munster*: and the same exercises were used a long time in such an outrageous manner, and with such slaughter of Gentlemen in all places, but in England most of all, since that King *Stephen* brought them in, that by divers Decrees of the Church they were forbidden, upon paine that whosoever therein were slaine should want Christian Buriall in Church or Churchyard; and heere with us King *Henry* the Third by advise of his Sages made an Act of Parliament, that their heires who transgressed in this kinde, should be disinherited. Howbeit, contrary to the said law so good and wholesome, this naughty and wicked custom was practised a great while, and grew not quite out of use before the happy dayes of King *Edward* the Third.

Tourneaments.

Betwixt these two Townes, *Heriford* and *Ware*, distant scarce two miles a sunder, *Lea* is encreased by two rilles from the North: *Afferius* termeth them *Mimeram* and *Benefician*. I would guesse that to bee *Benefician* upon which standeth *Benington*, where the notable family of *Benited* had in old time a little Castle: and also *Woodhall*.

Math. Paris Anno 1248.

Woo & hall.

* *hall* an habitation of the *Butlers*, who being branched from Sir *Ralph Butler* Baron of *Wem* in *Shropshire*, and his wife heire to *William Pantuliffe* Lord of *Wem*, were Lords of *Pulre-bach*, and enriched much by an heire of Sir *Richard Gobion*, and another of *Peletot* Lord of this place, in the time of King *Edward the Third*. I take *Mimra* to bee the other brooke whereupon *Pukerich* is seated, which by the grant of King *Edward the First*, at the mediation of *William le Blond* had a Mercate and Faire granted to it. Whereupon also neighboureth *Standon* with a seemely house built by Sir *Ralph Sadleir* Chauncellour of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, Privie Counsellour to three Princes, and the last Knight Baneret of England: a man so advanced for his great services, and staied wisedome.

At the backe of *Pukerich*, *Munden Furnivall* sheweth it selfe, a place to be remembered if it were but for this, that *Geffrey Earle of Britaine* gave it to *Gerard le Furnivall* (of whom also it bare the name) a younger sonne of *Furnivall of Shalfeld*. But now let us returne to the River *Lea* and the Towne of *Ware*, unto which the Danes being come with their light Pinnaces, and Shallops raised a Fort, as the said *Affricus* reporteth, which when King *Alfred* could not winne by force, hee by digging three severall Channells, turned aside the water of *Lea*, that they might not returne with their Vessels; So as ever since it stood the neighbour Inhabitantes in small or no stead; untill being brought of late unto his ancient Chanell, it is become more commodious for the carriages of all commodities, &c. *Lea* is now gone forward farre from *Ware*, when he entertaineth a Riveret named *Stort* from the East, which first runneth downe out of *Essex* by *Bishops Stortford*, a small Towne sometime with a little Castle set upon a mount cast up of purpose, within a pretty Island: which Castle King *William the Conquerour* gave unto the Bishops of *London*: and of those Bishops it came to be so called; but King *John* for hatred to *Bishop William* overthrew it. From thence it maketh his way by *Sabridgeworth* a pould the Honor of Earle *William Mandevile*, and sometime the possession of *Geffrey*, neere *Shingle-hall* honested by the Owners, the *Leventhorpes* of ancient Gentry. So on, not farre from *Hunsdon* forfeited by Sir *William Oldball* to the Crowne in the time of King *Henry the Sixth*, which gave a Title of Baron *Hunsdon* to Sir *Henry Cary*, through the favour of Queene *Elizabeth*, unto whom he was Lord Chamberlaine, as who verily, besides his descent from the royall family of the Dukes of *Somerset* was by his mother *Mary Bolen* cozen german to the said Queene. *Lea* having thus submitted into him this Riveret, hasteneth now with a merry glee to the *Tamie*, under *Hodesdon* a faire through Faire, to which *H. Bourchier* Earle of *Essex* having a faire house at *Base* thereby (while it stood) procured a Mercat: and then as it were regulatory wise saluteth *Theobalds*, commonly called *Tibaulds*, which our Nestor of Britaine, the right honourable Baron *Burghley*, late Lord high Treasurer of England built: an house if we respect the workmanship none more faire and elegant; if the gardens, Orchards, and walkes bedight with Groves, none more pleasant: unto whom especially this River willingly acknowledgeth it selfe beholden for the recovery againe of his ancient Chanell.

But returne we now to places more within the Country, and of greater antiquity. From *Hertford* twelve miles Westward, stood *VEROLAMUM*, a City in times past very much renowned, and as greatly frequented: *Tacitus* calleth it *VERULAMUM*, *Ptoleme*, *VEROLANUM* and *VEROLAMUM*, well knowne this in these dayes, neere unto Saint *Albans* in *Calisto* Hundred, which the *Cassii* of whom *Cesar* maketh mention, in all probability, held and inhabited.

The Saxons named it *Wadlinga-certer*, of the famous High-way *Wallingford*, and also *Weplam-ceay-ter*. Neither hath it as yet lost that ancient name, for commonly they call it *Verulam*, although there remaineth nothing of it to be seen, beside the few remains of ruined walles, the checkered pavements, and peeces of Roman Coine other whiles digged up there. It was situate upon the gentle declivity side of an hill Eastward, fenced about with passing strong wals, a double Rampire and deepe Trenches toward the South: and Eastward watered with a Brooke, which in

Bishops
Stortford,
Castle of
Way-more.

Hodesdon.

Theobalds.

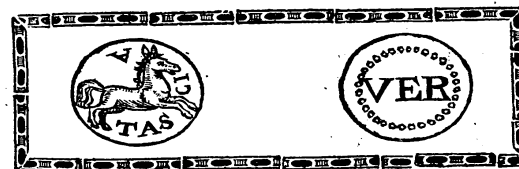
Verulamium.
Saint Albans.

old time made a great Meere, or standing Poole. Whereby it was guessed that this was the very same towne of *Cassibelaunus* fortified with woods and marishes, which *Cesar* wan: For there was not to be seene any other Poole or Meere in this Tract, to my knowledge. In *Nero* his time it was counted a *MUNICIPIMUM*: whence it is that in *Plinius* his Catalogue of Cities, it is named *Caer-Municip*. So that probable it is, that this was the very same *CAER MUNICIPIUM*, which *Hubert Golizius* found in an old Inscription. These *Municipia* were Townes endowed with the right of *Romane* Citizens, and this name came *A Muneribus capiendis*, that is, of publique Offices and charges in the Common-wealth: and they had for their *States* and *De-grees*, *Decurians*, that is, Gentlemen, and *Commons*: for their publique Councell, a *Senate* and *People*: For their Magistrates and Priests, *Duum-viri*, *Trium-viri* to sit in judgement and minister justice, *CENSORS*, *AEDILES*, *Quaestors* and *Flamins*. But whether this *Municipium* or towne enfranchised were with suffrages or without, a man cannot easily affirme. A *Municip* with suffrages they termed that which was capable of honourable Offices: like as that other they called without suffrage, which was not capable. In the Raigne of the same *Nero*, when *Boudicca* or *Boadicia* Queene of the *Scenes* in her deepe love of her Country, and conceived bitter hatred against the *Romans*, raised bloody and mortall Warre upon them, it was rased and destroyed by the Britans, as *Tacitus* recordeth. Hence it is that *Suetonius* wrote thus: *Totius mischiebes so great proceeding from the Prince, there happened (to mend the matter) a grievous losse in Britaine, wherein two principall Townes of great importance, with much slaughter of Romane Citizens and Allies, were put to the sacke and spoiled.* Nevertheless it flourished againe and became exceeding famous and passing well frequented: yea and I have seene old Antiquities of money stamped, as it seemeth heere, with this inscription, *TAS CIA*, and on the reverse *VER*. Which that learned searcher of venerable antiquity *David Powell*, Doctor in Divinity, interpreteth to be *The Tribute of Verulamium*. For *Tase*, as he teacheth me in the British or Welsh tongue sounderth as much as *Tribute*, *Tascia*, *A Tribute Penny*, and *Tascyd* the chiefe Collector of *Tribute*. But loe heere is the very peece of money portraied for you to see, which heerefore also I have exhibited.

Cassibelaunus
towne.

Municipia.

Verulam and
Maldon.



Some would have this money to bee coined before the comming in of the *Romans*: but I beleve them not. For I have alwaies thought them to bee *Tribute* money, which being imposed upon the poll and the lands were yeerely exacted and gathered by the *Romans*, as I have said before. For before that the *Romans* came, I can scarce beleve the Britans coined or stamped any money. Yet I remember what *Cesar* writeth of them: *And they use*, saith he, *brasse money or rings of iron weighed to a certaine poise*. Where the ancient bookes have *Lanceis Ferreis*, for which the *Criticks* put in *Laminis Ferreis*, that is, *plates of iron*. But let my pen returne againe to the matter proposed, for my meaning is not heere to weave the same web still. As for *Verulam*, it was famous for nothing so much as for bringing forth *Alban* a Citizen of singular holinesse and faith in Christ, who when *Dioclesian* went about by exquisite torments to wipe Christian Religion quite out of the memory of men, was the first in Britaine that with invincible constancy and resolution suffered death for Christ his sake. Whereupon hee is called our *Stephen*, and the * *Protomartyr* of Britaine, yea and *Fortunatus Presbyter* the Poet wrote thus of him,

See pag. 97.
Britans coines.

* Alban Mar-
tyr.

Albannus

Albanum egregium secunda Britannia profert.

Fruitfull Britaine bringeth forth

Alban a Martyr of mickle worth.

And Hiericus a Frenchman, who flourished 700. yeeres agoe, of the same Alban
and his executioner miraculously stricken blinde, made these verses,

Milia pœnarum Christi pro nomine passus,

Quem tandem rapuit capitis sententia cæsi,

Sed non letiori cessit res tunc superbo,

Usque caput Sancto, ceciderunt lumina seruo.

Thousands of torments when he had endur'd for Christ his sake

At length he dyed by dome thus given. [his head away to take]

The Tortor proudly did the feat, but cleere he went not quite,

That holy Martyr lost his head, this cruell wretch his sight.

In reproch of this Martyr and for the terrour of Christians as wee finde in an old
* *Agon* of his, the Citizens of *Verulam* engraved his Martyrdome in a Marble stone,
and inserted the same in their walles. But afterwards when the blood of Martyrs
conquered Tyrants cruelty, the Christians built a Church, as *Bede* saith, of *workmanship*
in memoriall of him : and *Verulam* carried with it so great an opinion
of Religion, that therein was holden a *Synode* or *Council* in the yeere of the worlds
Redemption 429. when as the *Pelagian Heresie*, by means of *Agricola* Towne to the
Bishop *Severianus* had budded forth a fresh into this Island, and polluted the English
Churches so, as that to averre and maintaine the truth they sent for German Bishop
of Auxerre, and Lupus Bishop of Troies out of France: who by refuting this heresie
gained unto themselves a reverend account among the Britans: but chieflie German
who hath thoroughout this Island many Churches dedicated to his memory. And now
unto the ruined wals of this rased city, there remaineth yet a Chappell bearing *Saint*
mans name still, although it be put to a prophane use: in which place he openly
the Pulpit preached Gods word, as the ancient records of *S. Albans* church doth shew.

Which German (as *Constantinus* flourishing in that time writeth in his life) com-
manded the Sepulchre of *Saint Albane* to be opened : and therein bestowed, *various*
Reliques of Saints, that whom one heaven had received, should also in one Sepulchre be
gather lodged. Thus much I note by the way, that yee may observe and consider
fashions of that age. Not long after, the English Saxons wonne it : but *Uther* the
Britan, firnamed for his serpentine wisedom, *Pendragon*, by a sore siege and along
recovered it. After whose death, it fell againe into their hands. For, we may easily
gather out of *Gildas* words, that the Saxons in his daies were possessed of this City.
God, saith hee, hath lighted unto us the most cleere Lamps of holy Saints, the Sepulchres
whose bodies, and places of their Martyrdome, at this day (were they not taken away) the
woefull disfigurement which the barbarous enemy hath wrought amongst us, for our many
grievous sinnes) might kindle no small heat of divine charity in the mindes of the beholders.
Saint Albane of *Verulam*, I meane, &c. When *Verulam* by these warres was utterly de-
caied, *Offa* the most mighty King of the Mercians built just over against it about
the yeere of our Lord 795, in a place which they called *Holmeburie*, a very goodly and
large Monastery in memory of *Saint Alban*, or as wee read in the very Charter
thereof, *Unto our Lord Iesus Christ, and S. Alban Martyr, whose Reliques Gods grace hath*
revealed in hope of present prosperity, and future happinesse : and forthwith with the Mo-
nastery there rose a Towne, which of him they call *Saint Albans*. This King *Offa*
and the succeeding Kings of England, assigned unto it very faire and large posses-
sions, and obtained for it at the hands of the Bishops of Rome as ample privileges,
which I will relate out of our *Florilegium*, that yee may see the profuse liberality of
Princes toward the Church. Thus therefore writeth he. *Offa* the most puissant King
gave unto *Saint Alban* the Protomartyr, that Towne of his ancient Demesne which
standeth almost twenty miles from *Verulam* and is named * *Uineflaw*, with as much round
about, as the Kings written Deedes at this day doe witness, that are to be seen in the for-
said Monastery : which Monastery is privileged with so great liberty, that it daunteth quite
from

In the life of
Saint German.

*A Legend of
his passion and
Martyrdome.

Saint German's
Chappell.

* Peradventure
Winchflow.

from paying that Apostolicall custome and rent, which is called *Rom Scot*: whereas neither King
nor Archbishop, Bishop, Abbat, Prior, nor any one in the Kingdome is freed from the payment
thereof. The Abbat also, or monke appointed Archdeacon under him, hath pontificall Jurisdiction
over the Priests and Lay-men of all the possessions belonging to this Church, so as he yeel-
eth subjection, to no Archbishop, Bishop, or Legate, save only to the Pope of Rome. This likewise
is to be knowne, that *Offa* the Magnificent King granted out of his Kingdome a set rent or im-
position called * *Rom Scot* to *Saint Peters Vicar*, the Bishop of Rome, and himselfe obtained of
the said Bishop of Rome that the Church of *Saint Alban* the Protomartyr of the English nation,
might faithfully collect, and being so collected, reserve to their proper use, the same *Rom Scot*
throughout all the Province of Hertford, in which the said Church standeth. Whence it is, that
the Church is selfe hath from the King all royall privileges, so the Abbot of that place for
the time being hath all Pontificall ornaments. Pope *Hadrian* also the fourth who was
borne hard by *Verulam* granted this indulgence unto the Abbats of this Monasterie
(I speake the very words out of the Priviledge) that as *Saint Alban* is distinctly knowne
to be the Protomartyr of the English nation: so the Abbat of this Monastery should at all times
among other Abbats of England in degree of dignitie be reputed first and principall. Neither
left the Abbats ought undone that might serve either for use or ornament : who fil-
led up with earth a mighty large poole under *Verulam*, which I spake of. The name
whereof yet remaineth still heere in a certaine street of the towne named *Fish-poole*-
street. Neere unto which streete, because certaine ankers were in our remembrance
digged up, divers have verily thought (induced thereunto by a corrupt place in *Gil-*
das) that the river *Tamis* sometimes had his course and chanell this way. But of this
Meere or Fish-poole, have heere what an old Historian hath written. *Abbot Alfrike* for
a great peece of money purchased a large and deepe pond, (an evill neighbour and hurtfull to
Saint Albans Church) which was called *Fish-poole*, appertaining to the Kings: And the Kings
officers and fishers molested the Abbat, and burdened the Monkes thereby. Out of which poole
be the said Abbot in the end drained and derived the water, and made it dry ground.

If I were disposed upon the report of the common people to reckon up what great
store of Romane peeces of coine, how many cast images of gold and silver, how ma-
ny vessels, what a sort of modules or Chapiters of pillars, and how many wonderfull
things of antique worke, have been digged up, my words would not carry credit :
The thing is so incredible. Yet take with you some few particulars thereof, upon the
credite of an ancient Historiographer. *Ealred* the Abbot in the reigne of King *Eadgar*, ha-
ving searched for the ancient vaults under ground at *Verulam*, overthrowed all. About the yeere
of Christ 960. and stopped up all the waies with passages under ground, which were strongly
and artificially arched over head : For, they were the lurking holes of whores and thieves. He
levelled with the ground the ditches of the Citie and certaine dens, into which malefactours fled
as unto places of refuge. But the whole tiles, and stones which he found fit for building, he layed
aside. Neere unto the banke they did light upon planks of oke with nailes driven into them,
cemented with stone-pitch: also the tacking and furniture of Ships as anchors halfe eaten with
rust, and ores of irre. A little after he writeth. *Eadmer* his successor went forward with the
worke that *Ealfred* began, and his pioners overthrowed the foundations of a Pallace in the mids
of the old Citie, and in the hollow place of a wall as it were, in a little closet, they hapned upon
bookes covered with oken boards and silken strings at them : whereof one contained the life of
Saint Albane written in the British tongue, the rest the ceremonies of the Heathen. When they
opened the ground deeper, they met with old tables of stone, with tiles also and pillars, likewise
with pitchers and pots of earth made by Potters and Turners worke : vessels moreover of glasse
containing the ashes of the dead, &c. To conclude, out of these remaines of *Verulam*, *Eadmer*
built a new Monasterie to *Saint Albane*. Thus much for the antiquity and dignity of *Ve-*
rumlam : now have also with you for an over-deale in the commendation of *Verulam*
an * *Hexastich* of *Alexander Neckam*, who 400. yeeres since was there borne.

Urbs insignis erat Verolamia, plus operose

Artis natura debuit illa minus.

Pendragon Arthuri patris hæc obfessa laborem

Septemnem sprevit cive superba suo.

* That is, of a
very house a
penny.

* Six verses.

Hic

Hic est martyrii roscu decoratus honore

Albanus, civis, inclita Roma tuus.

The famous towne whilom call'd Verolame;
To Nature ought lesse than to painfull art;
When *Arthurs* Syre *Pendragon* gainst it came,
With force of Armes to worke her peoples smart;
His seven yeeres siege did never daunt their heart.

Heere *Alban* gain'd the Crowne of Martyrdome,
Thy Citizen sometime ô noble Rome.

And in another passage.

Hic locus atatis nostra primordia novis

Annos felices, latissimæque dies.

Hic locus ingenuus, pueriles imbuunt annos

Artibus, et nostra laudis origo fuit.

Hic locus insignis, magnosque creavit alumnos,

Felix eximio Martyre, gente, situ.

Militat hic Christo, nocteque dieque labori

Invigilans sancto religiosa cohibens.

This is the place that knowledge rooke of my Nativity,
My happy yeeres, my daies also of mirth and Jollity.
This place my childhood trained up in all Arts liberall,
And laid the ground-woke of my name and skill Poeticall.
This place great and renowned Clerkes into the world hath sent:
For Martyr blest, for nation, for site, all excellent.
A troupe heere of Religious men serve Christ both night and day,
In holy warfare taking paines, duly to watch and pray.

Saint Albans.

Verolamiam at this day being turned into fields: The towne of Saint *Alban* out of the ruins thereof flourisheth; a faire towne and a large, and the Church that Monastery remaineth yet for bignesse, beauty and antiquity, to be had in relation: which when the Monkes were thrust out of it, was by the Towne deemed with the sum of 400. pounds of our money, that it might not be buried with the ground, and so it became converted into a parish Church: and having a very goodly Font of solid brasse, wherein the Kings children of Scotland were to be Baptized, which Font, Sir *Richard Lea* Knight, Master of the Pioneers, brought as a spoile out of the Scottish warres, and gave unto the said Church, with this and arrogant inscription.

CUM LETHIA OPPIDUM APUD SCOTOS NON INCELEBRE, ET EDINBURGUS PRIMARIA APUD EOS CIVITAS INCENDIO CONFLAGRARENT, RICHARDUS LEUS EQUES AURATUS ME FLAMMIS BREPTUM AD ANGLOS PERDUXIT. HUIUS EGO TANTI BENEFICII MEMOR NON NISI REGUM LIBEROS LAVARE SOLITUS, NUNC MEAM OPERAM ETIAM INFIMIS ANGLORUM LIBENTER CONDIXI. LEUS VICTOR SIC VOLUIT. VALE. ANNO DOMINI. M.D.XLIII. ET ANNO REGNI HENRICI OCTAVI XXXVI.

Wm

When Leeth a Towne of good account among the Scots, and Edinbrough their chiefe Cittie were on fire: Sir *Richard Lea* Knight saved me from burning, and brought me into England. And I being mindefull of this so great a benefit, whereas before I was wont to serve for Baptizing of none, but Kings Children, have now willingly offered my service even to the meanest of the English Nation. *Lea* the victor would have it so. Farewell. In the yeere of our Lord, M. D. XLIII. and of the Reigne of King Henrie the Eighth, XXXVI.

But to the matter. As antiquitie consecrated this place to be an Altar of Religion: so Mars also may seeme to have destined it for the very place of bloudie battail: For, to let other particulars goe by, when England under the two Houses of Lancaster and Yorke berest, as it were, of vitall breath was ready through *Civil Warre* to sink downe and fall in a sound, the chiefe Captaines of both sides joyned battail twice with reciprocal variety of fortune in the very Towne. First, Richard Duke of Yorke gave the Lancastrians heere a sore overthrow, tooke King Henry the Sixth captive, and slew many Honourable personages. Four yeeres after the Lancastrians under the conduct of *Antony* *Mary* wonne heere the field, put the house of Yorke to flight, and restored the King to his former liberty.

About this towne (that *Imray* let passe the mount or fortification which the common sort useth to call *O. Hills* and I take to have been the Campe of *Donna* the famous Lieutenant of Britaine) the Abbates in a pious and devout intent erected a little Nunnery at *Sopwell*, and *Saint John's Spittle* for Lepres, and another named *Saint Mary de pre* for diseased women: neere unto which they had a great Mannour named *Grunbury*: where Sir *Nicholas Bacon* Lord Keeper of the Great Seale of England built an house befitting his place and calling. To this adjoyneth *Redborn*, which is by interpretation *Red water*, and yet the water running thereby (from *Mergate* sometime a religious house, now a seat of the *Ferrers* out of the house of *Groby*) is no more red than is the *Red sea*. This *Redborne* in times past was a place renowned and resorted unto in regard of *Amphibalus* the Martyrs reliques heere found, who instructed Saint Alban in the Christian faith, and for Christs sake suffered death under *Dioclesian*. At this day well knowne, for that it is seated upon that common and Military high-way which we call *Watling Street*, and hath hard by *Wenmer* called also *Wenmer* a brooke that never breaketh out and riseth, but it foretellet dearth and scarcity of corne, or else some extremity of dangerous times, as the vulgar people doe verily beleve. Neere unto this *Redborn* I have some reason to thinke that the Station *Duro-Co-Brive* stood, whereof *Antonine* the Emperor maketh mention, although the distance of places gaine faith in it. For, as *Redborn* in our language, so *Dur-coch* in the British is all one in signification, with *Redwater*. And verily the truest conjectures that we can make of ancient places, are from antique inscriptions from the lying of Journeies every way, from the analogie and similitude of their names, and from rivers and lakes adjoining: although they answer not just to the exact account of miles betweene place and place, considering that the numbers may very soone be corruptly put downe, and the waies for shorter passage are as easily altered.

Certes it cannot otherwise be, but that *Duro-Co-Brive* stood where that *Roman* *Mm* *Rode*.

1455.

* De prato of the Meadow.

Redborn.

Duro-Co-Brive.

Rode-way passeth over this water, to wit under *Flamsted*: for even there, by the high way side, there is a good big spring breaking out of the ground about seven Italian miles from *Verlam*: (for which seven, through the careless negligence of the transcribers, twelve hath crept in.) Which brooke presently, whiles it is yet but small cutteth the high way crosse; and although it carry here no name at all, yet beneath S. Albans town it is called *Cot*, which is neere to the name *Co*. As for that *Briva*, which is an addition to many names of places, it signified, as I suppose, among the old Britans and Gauls, a bridge, or a passage, seeing it is found onely where there are rivers. In this land there was one or two *Durobriva*, that is to say, if I be not deceived Water passages; in *Gauls*, *Briva Isara* now *Pontaise*, where in times past they passed over the river * *Isara*, *Briva Oderi*, where they passed over *Oderum*, and *Samarobria* (for this is the true name) where there was passage over the river *Soma*.

Somewhat above, *Flamsted* sheweth it selfe upon the hill, which in the time of King Edward the Confessor, Leostane the Abbat of Saint Albans gave unto three knights, *Turbot*, *Waldest* and *Turman*, for to defend and secure the country thereby against theeves. But William the Conqueror tooke it from them, and gave it to Roger of *Tadeney* or *Tory*, a noble Norman, whose possession it was, but by a daughter it was transferred at length to the *Beauchamps* Earles of Warwick.

From hence I went downe Southward to *Hempstead*, a little mercate towne called *Heban*, *Hamsted* (when King *Offa* gave it unto the monastery of Saint Albans) lying among the hills by a riveret side, which floweth anon into another, that runneth downe by *Berkhamsted*. Where the Nobles of England, who devised hereby might shake off the new yoke of the Normans, assembled themselves together the persuasion of *Frederike* Abbat of Saint Albans: and unto whom William the Conqueror repaired (as we read in the life of the same *Frederike*) fearfully should loose the Kingdome with shame, which he had gotten with the blood so much blood. And after much debating of matters in the presence of the Archbishop *Laufank*, the King for the preservation of his peace swore upon the reliques of Saint Albans Church, and by laying hand upon the Holy Gospel, that he would approve ancient lawes of the kingdome, which the holy and devout King of England his predecessors, and King Edward especially ordained. But most of the Peeres and Nobles he forthwith evill entreated, turned out of all their possessions, and bestowed this Towne upon *Robert* Earle of *Moriton*, and *Cornwall* his half brother: Who fortified the castle heere with a duple trench and rampier: In which Richard King of the Romanes, and Earle of *Cornwall* full of honors and riches, ended this life for a better. For default of whose issue and offspring King Edward the Third in the end made over this Castle with the Towne unto Edward Blacke sonne, that most warlike Prince, whom he created Earle of *Cornwall*. Now the Castle is nothing else but broken walls and a rude heape of stones: above which *Sir Edward Cary* Knight, and Master of the Kings Jewell-house descended from the family of the *Carys* in *Devonshire*, and the *Beauforts* Dukes of *Somerset* built of late very goodly and most pleasant house. In the very Towne it selfe nothing in which fight save only the schoole, which *John Ince* Deane of *Pauls* in *London*, and of this place founded.

More into the South standeth *Kings Langley*, sometime the Kings house, in which was borne, and thereof tooke name *Edmund* of *Langley* King Edward the Thirds Sonne, and Duke of *Yorke*: where there was a small cell of Friers preachers, in which that silly and miserable Prince King Richard the Second, after he had been wickedly deprived both of Kingdome and life, was first buried, and soon after translated to Westminster; requited there by way of amends with a brazen tombe for the losse of a Kingdome. Just in a maner over against this, there is another *Langley* also, which because it belonged to the Abbats of Saint Albans is called *Abbate Langley*: wherein was borne *Nicholas* surnamed *Break-speare*, afterwards Bishop of *Rome*.

Briva, what it is.

* Ylre.

Flamsted.

Hempsted.

Berkhamsted.

Kings Langley.

Abbate Langley.

Rome, knowne by the name of Pope *Hadrian* the Fourth: who was the first that taught the *Norwegians* to the Christian Faith, and repressed the Citizens of Rome aspiring to their ancient freedome, whose stirrup also as hee alighted from his horse, *Frederik* the First Emperor of the Romanes held, and whose breath was stopped in the end with a flie that flew into his mouth. Somewhat lower I saw *Wasford* and *Richemansworth*, two mercate townies: concerning which I have read nothing of greater antiquity than this; that King *Offa* liberally gave them unto Saint Albans, as also *Caishobery* next unto *Wasford*. In which place *Sir Richard Morison* Knight, a great learned man, and who had been used in Embassages to the mightiest Princes, under King Henry the Eighth and King Edward the Sixth began to build an house, which *Sir Charles* his Sonne finally finished.

More into the East, the Romanes Military high way went directly from London to *Verlam* by *Hamsted-beath*, *Edgeworth* and *Ellestre*: neere unto which at the very same distance where *Antonine* the Emperour in his *Itinerarie* placeth *S v L LONACIA*, to wit, twelve miles from London and nine from *Verlam*, there remaine yet the marks of an ancient Station, and much rubbish or rammell is digged up at an hill which in these dayes they call *Brockley-hill*. But when the Romanes Empire ceased in this Island, as Barbarisme by little and little crept in, whiles all partes smoked with the Saxons warre, this, as every thing else, lay a great while relinquished, untill that a little before the Normans comming in, *Leostane* Abbat of Saint Albans restored it. For hee, as wee finde written in his life, *Causeth the thicke and shady Woods, which lie from the edge of * Chiltern unto London, especially where the Kings high way called Waslingstretre lay to be cut up, the rugged places to be levelled, Bridges to be built, and the uneven waies to be made plaine and safer for passage*. But about three hundred yeeres since, this way was after a sort againe forsaken, by reason that another way through licence of the Bishops of London was laied open through *High-gate* and *Bernet*. This *Bernet*, for the beast mercat there kept, beginneth now to be famous, but it was more renowned for a field there fought, when in the warre betwene the two Families of Lancaster and Yorke, England dared to doe against her owne bowells, whatsoever ambitious treachery and disloyaltie would command. For, upon *Gledesmore* hard by, even on Easter day in the morning there was a bloody battaile most fiercely fought, and that with variable fortune for a great while, by reason that a most thicke mist covered the face of the ground. But in the end the victorie fell happily unto King Edward the Fourth, by occasion that *Richard Nevill* Earle of Warwick was there slaine, whom as the favourable indulgence of Fortune made over-stout and bold, yea and dangerous unto Kings: so his death freed England from all feare of civill Warres. *Bernet* hath for his neighbours *Mimmes* a seat of a Worshipfull Family of the *Coningsbies* descended to them by *Frewick* from the *Knolles*, ancient possessours thereof; and *North-hall*, where *Ambrose Dudley* last Earle of Warwick raised a stately house from the foundations.

This County of *Hertford* had Earles out of the Familie de *Clare*, who notwithstanding were oftener called Earles of *Clare*, from *Clare* in Suffolke their principall seat. The first to my knowledge was *Gilbert*, who under the title of Earle of *Hertford* is put downe as a witness in a Charter of King Stephens. Likewise *Roger de Clare* in the time of King Henry the Second is in the Red-booke of the Exchequer named Earle of *Hertford*.

Likewise his successors, whom you may see in their places. But seeing both by right of inheritance, and also through the Princes favour they attained to the Earldome of Gloucester, they bare both titles joyntly, and were called unto Parliaments by the name of Earles of Gloucester and *Hertford*. And *Richard de Clare* who died in the yeere of our Lord 1262. is in plaine termes by *Florilegus* of Westminster called Earle of Gloucester and of *Hertford*, where he reporteth this Epitaph composed for him in that age, to his great commendation.

M m 2

Hic

Pope Hadrian the Fourth.

Watford.

Caishobery.

Sulloniac, Seize in Prolomee, but misplaced.

* Chiltern.

Bernet.

Mimmes.

North hall.

Earles of Hertford.

See the Earles of Gloucester and in Suffolke.

*Hic puer Hippolyti, Paridis genae, sensus Vlyssæ,
 Ence pietas, Hectoris ira jacet.
 Chast Hippolyte and Paris's son, Ulysses wife and lie,
 Ence kinde, fierce Hector here jointly entombed lie.*

But not long since King Henry the Eighth honoured Sir Edward de Saint John or Seymer with the title of Earle of Hertford, who also was created Duke of Somers by King Edward the Sixth. After whom succeeded in this Earldome his Sonne bearing the same name, a right Honourable personage, and a singular lover of Learning.

This Countie hath Parishes. 120.



TRINO BANTES.

They, whom Cæsar calleth TRINO BANTES, Ptolomee and Tacitus, TRINOANTES, were next neighbours to the Cattieuchlani, inhabiting in those countries, which now having changed their names are commonly termed Middlesex and Essex. Whence that ancient name sprung, I dare not verily so much as guesse, unless it come of the British word Tre-Nant, which is as much as Townes in a vale. For this whole region in a maner lieth low in a valley upon the Tamis. But I doe not greatly please my selfe in this my conjecture. And yet they that inhabited Galloway in Scotland, lying altogether lowe in vallies were of old time in the British tongue called Noantes and Novantes, and in the Vaile of Rhine, in French named Le Vaule, the people in old time called Nantuates, had both their abode and their name thence: so that this conjecture of mine may seeme as probable as that of others, who over curiously have derived Trinobantes, of Troy, as a man would say Troia Nova, that is, New Troy. But I wish them well, and that heerein they may please themselves. These were in Cæsar's time of all these countries well neere the strongest City or State (for, evermore he termeth by the name of Civitas, a whole people living under the same lawe) and their King in those daies, was Immanuentius, who being slaine by Calsibelinus, his sonne Mandubratius saving his life by flight, went into Gaule to Cæsar, and putting himselfe under his protection returned with him into Britaine. At which time these Arinobantes petitioned Cæsar by their Ambassadors, that he would defend Mandubratius from the injuries of Calsibelinus, and resend him to the State, that he might be Governour and beare rule over them: which being done, they gave forty Hostages, and were the first of all the Britanes that yielded themselves under his allegiance. This Mandubratius, that I may note so much by the way, is evermore called by Eutropius, Bede, and the later writers, Androgeus. But whence this diversitie of the name should arise, I am altogether ignorant: unless that be true, which I have learned from a very skilfull man in the British history and language both, that this name Androgeus was given unto him for his lewdnesse and perfidious treason. For, the signification of wickednesse doth most plainly shew it selfe in it: And in the Booke of Triades, among the three Traitors of Britaine, he is counted the most villanous; in that he was the first that made way to bring the forraigne Romanes into Britaine, and betrayed his Country. After Mandubratius,

See among the
 Coines the
 peece stamped
 with T A S C A
 N O V A N E I.

Civitas, that is,
 Citie, what it
 signifieth in
 Cæsar.

Androgeus.

rius, when as now by reason of bothe ciuill warres, Britaine was neglected of the Romanes and left unto his owne Princes and lawes, certaine it is that Cunobelinus ruled as King in these parts, of whose coine I exhibit heere unto you two peeces, although I have already shewed the very same and others beeing



Suetonius.

Festus Capitolinus.

Admimus this mans Sonne banished by his Father fled with a small retinue about him to the Romane Emperour Caius Caligula, and yeelded himselfe. With so puffed up the young Emperours minde, that as if all the Island had absolutely and wholly yeelded into his hands, he sent glorious letters to Rome, admittinge oftentimes the bearers thereof not to deliuer them unto the Consuls, but in the Temple of Mars, and in a frequent assembly of the Senate. When Cunobelinus was dead, Aulus Plautius by commission from Claudius the Emperour came into this Country. One of Cunobelinus his Sonnes named Togodumnus he slew, and another called Catagratius he overthrew in the field, over whom also, as we finde in the Capitollin Record of the Romane Triumphes, he rode Ovar in triumph: and that, with so great honour as Suetonius writeth, that Claudius the Emperour went side by side with him both in his going to the Capitoll and also in his returne from thence. And he himselfe shortly after transporting his forces hither, brought these parts within few Moneths into the forme of a Province. Thenceforth the Trinobantes rested a while in peace, but that under the Empire of Nero they privily entered into a conspiracy with the Icteni to shake off the Romanes yoke. But Suetonius Paulinus, as Tacitus recordeth, quickly quenched this flame of sedition with a great effusion of Britanes blood. When the Romane Empire was at length come to an end in Britane, Vortigern the Britane, gave to the Saxons (who kept him prisoner) for his ransom the Country with others, as Ninnius writeth: and it had his peculiar Kings for a long time together, but such as held by homage sometimes of the Kentish King, sometimes of the Mercians. Among whom Sebert in the yeere 603. was the first that became a Christian: and Suthred the last King, who being vanquished by Egbert in the yeere 804. left the Kingdome unto the West-Saxons: But heereof else where more largely: Now let us survey the very Country.

MIDDLE

MIDDLESEX
OLIM TRINOBANTIBVS habitata

PARTE OF BUCKINGHAMSHIRE

PARTE OF BERKSHIRE



MIDDLESEX.



MIDDLESEX taketh name of the Middle-Saxons, because the Inhabitants thereof were in the middest betwene East-Saxons, West-Saxons, South-Saxons, and those whom that age called *Mercians*. It is severed from *Buckingham-shire* by the River *Cole* which the Britans called *Co*, on the West-side, from *Hertford-shire* on the North-side by a knowne crooked limite, from *Essex* on the East with the River *Lea*, from *Surrey* and *Kent* on the South by the *Tamis*. It being comprised within short Bounds lyeth out in length, where it is longest twenty miles, and in the narrowest place it is scant twelve miles over. For aire passing temperate, and for Soyle fertile, with sumptuous houses and prety Townes on all sides pleasantly beautified: and every where offereth to the view many things memorabile. By the River *Cole*, where it entreth first into this Shire, wee saw *Breakespeare* an ancient house belonging to a Family so surnamed, out of which came Pope *Hadrian* the Fourth, of whom erewhile I spake: then, *Haresfeld*, in old time *Herefelle*, the possession in King *William* the Conquerours daies of *Richard* the * sonne of Counte *Gislebert*. More Southward, *Uxbridge* anciently *Woxbridge* a Towne of later time built, and full of Innes, stretcheth out in length. Beneath which is *Draiton*, reedified by the Barons *Paget*; *Colham*, which from the Barons *Le Strange* came to the Earles of *Darby*: and *Stanwell* ever since the Normans comming in, unto our fathers dayes the habitation of the Family of *Windsore*. And not farre from hence, *Cole* after it hath made certaine scattering medow Islands, at two small mouthes falleth into *Tamis*. Along the side whereof, as a Germane Poet in this our age pretily verified,

*Tot campos, Sylvas, tot regia tella, tot hortos
Artifici dextra excultos, tot uidimus arces,
Ut nunc Ausonio Tamisis cum Tybride certet.*

So many fields and pleasant woods, so many princely Bowres,
And Palaces we saw besides, so many stately Towres,
So many gardens trimly dres'd by curious hand which are,
That now with *Romane Tyberis* the *Tamis* may well compare.

At the very first entrance, *Stanes* in the Saxon tongue & *tana* offereth it selfe to our sight, where *Tamis* hath a wooden Bridge over it. This name it tooke of a meere-stone heere in times past set up to marke out the jurisdiction that the City of London hath in the River. Neere unto this stone is that most famous Medow *Runingmead* commonly called *Renimed*: in which the Baronage of England assembled in great number in the yeere 1215. to exact their Liberties of King *John*. Whereof in the marriage of *Tame* and *Isis* the Poet wrote thus, speaking of the *Tamis* that runneth hard by.

*Subiit hic pratum, quod dixit Renimed Anglus,
Quo sedere duces armis annisque verendi,
Regis Joannis cuperens qui vertere sceptrum,
Edwardi Sancti dum leges juraque vellens
Principe contempto tenebroso è carcere duci:
Hinc sonnere tuba plusquam civilia bella,
Venit ex hinc refugus nostras Lodovicus in oras.*

Hence runnes it hard by Medow Greene, in English *RENIMED*,
Where close in counsell sat the Lords, as well for armour dred
As ancient yeeres right reverend: who sought their foveraigne King
John to depose from regall Throne: Whiles that they ment to bring
(Contemning Prince) *S. Edwards* lawes and liberties againe,

*Breakespeare,
Pope Hadrian
the fourth.
Haresfield.
* Fitz-Gillebert,
Uxbridge.*

Inure,

Inure, which had long time forlet a quite forgotten laine.

Hence more than civill Warres, aloud the trumpets ganne to found.

Hence Lewis of France, who soone retid, set foot on English ground.

From thence it passeth by *Coway-stakes* at *Lalam*, where we said that *Casa* *croce* over the *Tamis*, and the Britans fenced the banke and Fould against him with whereof it had the name. *Tamis* passing downe from thence seeth above it the highest hill of all this Country, under which Southward there lie for a together exceeding rich and fruitfull fields, especially about *Hellon* a small that yeeldeth so fine floure for manchet that a long time it hath served for the mouth. Within a little of it is *Hanworth*, where stands a pretty house of the which King Henry the Eighth tooke exceeding delight in, as being a residence for his solace and voluptuous pleasure. Afterwards it runneth hard by *Court* a royall Palace of the Kings, a worke in truth of admirable magnificence out of the ground by *Thomas Wolsey* Cardinall, in ostentation of his riches for very pride, being otherwise a most prudent man, hee was not able to rule his minde. But it was made an *Honour*, enlarged and finished by King Henry the Eighth so amply, as it containeth within it five severall inner Courts passing envired with very faire buildings wrought right curiously, and goodly to behold. Of which *Leland* writeth thus:

*Est locus insulso rerum splendore superbus,
Altiturque vaga Tamisini fluminis unda,
Nemine ab antiquo jam tempore dictus Avona.
Hic Rex Henricus talis Olearius ades
Exerxit, qualem toto Sol aureus orbe
Non vidit.*

A stately place for rare and glorious shew

There is, which *Tamis* with wandering streame doth dowfie;

Times past, by name of *Avon* men it knew;

Heere Henry the Eighth of that name, built an house

So sumptuous, as that on such an one

(Seeke through the World,) the bright Sunne never shone.

And another in the *Nuptial Poeme* of *Tame* and *itis*.

*Alluit Hamptonam celebrem qua laxior urbis
Mentitur formam spacijs, hanc candidis anlamo
Purpureus pater ille gravis, gravis ille sacerdos
Wolseus, fortuna favos cui jelle repletos
Obiit, ben tandem fortuna dona dolores.*

He runnes by *HAMPTON*, which for spacious seat

Seemes City-like: Of this faire Courtly Hall

First founder was a Priest and Prelate great

Wolsey, that grave and glorious Cardinall:

Fortune on him had pour'd her gifts full fast,

But Fortunes Blisse, Alas, prov'd Balc at last.

And now with a winding reach the River bendeth his course Northwardly *Gisleworth*, for so was that called in old time, which now is *Thistleworth*. Where sometime stood the Palace of *Richard* King of Romans and Earle of *Cornwall*, which the Londoners in a tumultuous broile burnt to the ground.

From hence *Sion* sheweth it selfe, a little Monastery so named of the most holy Mount *Sion*: Which King Henry the Fifth, when he had expelled thence the Moors aliens, built for religious Virgins to the honor of our Saviour, the Virgine *Mary*, and Saint *Briget* of *Sion*: like as he founded another on the Rivers side over against it the Carthusian Monkes, named *Jesu* of *Bethlehem*. In this *Sion*, hee appointed to the Glory of God so many Nunnes, Priests, and lay brethren divided a part within their severall wals, as were in number equal to Christ his Apostles and Disciples upon whom when he had bestowed sufficient living he provided by a law, that concerning themselves

themselves therewith, they should take no more of any man: but what overplus forever remained of their yearly revenue, they should bestow it upon the poore. But after that in our forefathers time those religious Virgines were cast out, and it became a rectory house of the Duke of *Somerset*, who plucked downe the Church, and there began a new house. Under this the small water *Brent* issueth into the *Tamis*, which springing out of a Pond vulgarly called *Brownswell*, for *Brenwell*, that is, in old English *Frog-well*, passeth downe betwene *Henlon*, which Archbishop *Dunelm* gave for the advancement of Monkes, purchased for some few golde *Bizantium*, which were Imperiall peeces of Gold coined at *Bizantium* or *Constantinople*, and gave to the Monks of Saint *Peter* of *Westminster*: and *Hamsted-bills* (from whence you have a most pleasant prospect to the most beautifull City of *London*, and the lovely Country about it.) Over which the ancient Roman military way led to *Vernon* or Saint *Albans* by *Edge-worth*, and not by *High-gate* as now, which new way was opened by the Bishops of *London* about some 300. yeares since. But to returne, *Brent* into whom all the small Rilllets of these parts resort, runneth on by *Brentfreat*, an Hamlet to whom it imparted his name, watereth *Hanger-wood*, *Hanwell*, *Oysterly Park*, where Sir *Thomas Gresham* built a faire large house: and so neere his fall into the *Tamis* giveth name to *Brentford* a faire thoroughfaire, and frequent Mercat.

Neere which in the yeare 1116. King *Edmond* surnamed *Ironside*, so fiercely charged upon the Danes whom hee compelled by force to retire from the Siege of *London*, that as fast as their horses could make way, they fled, not without their great losse. From *Stanes* hitherto, all that lyeth betwene *London* highway (which goeth through *Hounslow*) and the *Tamis* was called the *Forrest* or *Warren* of *Stanes*, untill that King *Henry* the Third, as in his Charter we reade, *Disforrested* and *diswarrened* it. Then by the *Tamis* side is *Fulham*, in the English Saxon tongue *pullonham*, that is, *The place of Fowles*: the greatest credit and honour whereof is the Bishop of *London*'s house standing there conveniently, not farre from the City, albeit not so healthfully. Also *Chelsey*, so named of a shelve of Sand in the River *Tamis* as some suppose, but in Records it is named *Chelche-hish*: a place garnished with faire and stately houses, by King *Henry* the Eighth, by *William Powlet* the first Marquesse of *Winchester*, and by others.

But *LONDON*, the Epitome, or Breviary of all *Britaine*, the seat of the British Empire, and the Kings of *Englands* Chamber, so much overtoppeth all these, as according to the Poet, *inter viburnum Cupressus*, that is, the *Cypresse-tree* amongst the *Viornes*. *Tacitus*, *Ptolome*, and *Antonine* call it *LONDINIUM*, and *LONGIDINIUM*: *Ammianus* *LUNDINIUM* and *AUGUSTA*; *Stephen* in his *Cities* *ATNAONTON*, our Britans *Lundeyn*, the old Saxons *London-cear-dep*, *London-býrig*, *London-pýc*: *Scrangers* *Londra* and *Londres*: the inhabitants *London*: Fabulous writers *Troja nova*, that is, *New Troy*, *Dinas Belin*, that is, *Belins City*, and *Caer Lud* of King *Lud*, whom they write to have reedified it and given it the name. But these few names and original derivations together with *Erasmus* his conjecture, who deriveth it from *Lindum* a City in the Isle *Rhodes* I willingly leave to such as well like it. For mine owne part; seeing that *Casar* and *Strabo* doe write that the ancient Britains called those Woods and groves by the names of Cities and Townes, which they had fenced with trees cast downe and plashed to stoppe up all passage: seeing also I have understood that such woods or groves are in the British tongue named *Llwyn*, I incline a little to the opinion that *London* thence tooke name, as one would say, by way of excellency *The City*, or *A City* *thick of trees*. But if heerein I faile of the truth, let me with good leave give my conjecture (and heere would I have no man to charge me with inconsistency while I disport in conjecture) that whence it had the same, thence also it tooke the name, even from ships, which the Britains in their language call *Llong*: so that *Londinium* may seeme to sound as much as a *ship-Rode*, or *City of ships*. For, the Britains teame a City *Dinas*, whence the Latines have fetcht their *Dinum*. And hence it is, that elsewhere it is called *LONDINIUM*, and in the funerall song or *Dump* of a most ancient British *Bard*, *Llong-porth*, that is, *an harbour or haven of ships*, and by this

Byzantines
Bizantines of
silver valued at
two shillings
anciently.

Fulham.

Chelsey, as one
would say,
Shelsey.

London.

Britans *Llwyn*.

Dinas.

* Poet.

this very terme *Bononia*, or *Belen* in France, which *Ptolomee* calleth *Gessiorum* *Uale*, in the British *Glossarie* is named *Bolung-long*. For, many Cities have their names from Ships, as *Nampatus*, *Nantastmus*, *Nauplia*, *Navalia*, *Angli*, *ven*, than our *London*. For, in regard of both Elements, most blessed and happy, as being situate in a rich and fertile Soile, abounding with plentiful store of all things, and on the gentle ascent and rising of an hill, hard by the *Tamis* side, the most Merchant, as one would say, of all things that the World doth yeeld which flourish at certaine set houres with the Ocean-tides, by his safe and deepe channell, making that it striveth at this day with the Mart-townes of *Christendome* for the second place, and affoordeth a most sure and beautifull Roade for shipping. A man would thinke the shipping there, that it is, as it were, a very Wood of trees disbranching to make glades and let in light: So shaded it is with masts and sailes.

Who was the first founder, is by long time growne out of knowledge, and in very few Cities there are that know their own first founders, considering they owe to their greatnesse by little and little. But as other Cities to this of ours, which is originall upon the *Trojans*, as verily believing that *Brutus* the Nephew in the descent of Great *Æneas* was the builder thereof. But whosoever founded it, the happy and fortunate estate thereof hath given good proofe, that built it was in an hour and marked for life, and long continuance. And that it is for an honourable, *Ammianus Marcellinus* giveth us to understand, who called it *Juliana*, and that was 1200. yeares agoe, an old towne: and *Cornelius Tacitus* in like manner, who in *Nero* his daies 1540. yeares since, reported it to have been a place *congruous for fresh Trade, concourse of Merchants, and great store of victuals and all things*.

This onely at that time was wanting to the glory thereof, that it had the name of *Free City* nor of *Colony*. Neither verily could it have stood with the Roman profit, if a City flourishing with merchandize should have enjoyed the name of *Colony* or *Free City*. And therefore it was, as I suppose, that they ordained it a *Prefecture*: for so they termed townes where Marts were kept and Justice was done: yet so as that they had no Magistrates of their owne, but rulers were sent thither to governe in them, and for to minister Law, which in publique matters, taxes, tributes, tolles, customes, warfare, &c. they should have from the Senate at Rome. Hence it cometh that *Tacitus* the Panegyrist, and *Marcellinus* call it onely *Juliana*. And although it was not in name loftier, yet in welch, riches and prosperity it was shined as much as any other, yea and continued in manner alwaies the same, until the dominion of Romans, English, Saxons, and Normans, seldom or never afflicted it with any great calamities. In the Raigne of *Nero*, when the Britains had conspired to cover and resume their liberty under the leading of *Boadicia*, the Londoners, not with all their weeping and teares hold *Suetonius Paulinus*, but that after he levied a power of the Citizens to aide him, hee would needs dislodge and drive from thence, leaving the City naked to the enemy: who forthwith surprised and slew some few, whom either weaknesse of sex, feeblenesse of age, or weakness of the place had detained there. Neither had it sustained lesse losse and misery at the hands of the French, if it had not suddenly and beyond all expectation by Gods providence beene relieved. For when *C. Allectus* had by a deceitfull wile made *C. Carausius* a *Chive-lander*, who taking vantage of our rough seas, of *Diolepis* in gerous warres in the East, and withall presuming of the French, and most valiant Mariners and servitors at sea, had withheld to himselfe the rewenes of Britain, Holland, and borne for the space of six yeares the title of Emperour. *Augustus*, who coins very often found heere doe shew: when *M. Aurelius Alectandrus* liued in a battaile slain *Allectus* in the third year now of his usurpation of the imperiall people and state, those French, who remained alive after the fight, hasting to London forthwith would have sacked the City, had not the *Tamis*, which never faileth to helpe the Londoners, very fitly brought in the Roman souldiers, who by reason of

Prefecture.

C. Carausius, Panegyric, pronounced before Constantinus Cæsar, and untruly entitled, unto Maximian, Franks put to the sword.

fogge at Sea were severed from the Navie. For, they put the Barbarians to the sword all the City over, and thereby gave the Citizens not onely safety by the slaughter of their enemies, but also pleasure in the beholding of such a sight. And then it was, as our Chronicles record, that *Lucius Gallus* was slaine by a little Brookes side, which ran through the middle almost of the City, and of him was in British called *Nant-Gall*, in English *Walbrooke*: which name remaineth still in a Street, under which there is a sewer within the ground to ride away filth; not farre from *London-stone*, which I take to have beene a *Milliary*, or *Milemarke*, such as was in the Mercate place of Rome: From which was taken the dimension of all journies every way, considering it is in the very midst of the City, as it lyeth in length. Neither am I perswaded that *London* was as yet walled. Howbeit within a little while after, our Histories report, that *Constantine the Great* at the request of his mother *Helena*, did first fence it about with a Wall made of rough stone and British bricke, which tooke up in compasse three miles or thereabout: so as it enclosed the modell of the City, almost foure square but not equall on every side, considering that from West to East it is farre longer, than from South to North. That part of this Wall which stood along the *Tamis* side is by the continuall flowing and washing of the River fallen downe and gone. Yet there appeared certaine remains thereof in King Henry the Seconds time, as *Fitz-Stephen*, who then lived, hath written. The rest now standing is stronger toward the North, as which not many yeares since was reedified by the meanes of *Joceline* Lord Mayor of London, became of a sodaine new, as it were, and fresh againe. But toward East and West, although the Barons in old time during their warrs repaired and renewed it with the Jewes houses then demolished, yet is it all throughout in decay. For Londoners, like to those old Lacedemonians laugh at strong walled Cities, as coorte boules for Women, thinking their owne City sufficiently fenced when it is fortified with men and not with stones. This Wall giveth entrance at seven principall Gates, (for wittingly I omit the smaller) which as they have beene newly repaired, so they have had also new names given unto them.

On the West side there be two: to wit *Lud-gate* of king *Lud*, or *Flud-gate*, as *Le-lund* is of opinion, of a little floud running beneath it (like as the Gate *Fluminaria* in Rome) built againe of late from the very foundation: and *Newgate* the fairest of them all, so called of the newnesse thereof, where as before it was termed *Chamber-lane-gate*, which also is the publique Goall or Prison. On the North side are foure, *Alders-gate* of the antiquity, or as others would have it, of *Aldrich* a Saxon: *Creples-gate*, of a Spire of lame Creples sometime adjoyning thereunto: *Moor-gate* of a moory ground hard by, now turned into a field and pleasant Walkes: which Gate was first built by *Falconer* Lord Mayor in the yeare of our Lord 1414. and *Bishopsgate* of a Bishop, which Gate the Dutch Merchants of the Stillyard were bound by Covenant, both to repaire and also to defend at all times of danger and extremity. On the East side there is *Aldgate* alone, so named of the oldnesse, or *Elbegate*, as others terme it, which at this present is by the Cities charge reedified. It is thought also that there stood by the *Tamis* beside that on the Bridge two Gates more, namely, *Belings-gate*, a Wharfe now, or a key for the receipt of Ships, and *Douregate*, that is, The *Water-gate*, commonly called *Dowgate*.

Where the Wall enderth also toward the River there were two very strong Forts or Bastilions: of which the one Eastward remaineth yet, usually called, *The Towre of London*, in the British tongue, *Bringwin*, or *Tourgwin* of the whitenesse. A most famous and goodly Citadell, encompassed round with thicke and strong Walles, full of lofty, and stately Turrets, fenced with a broad and deepe ditch, furnished also with an Armory or Magazine of warlike Munition, and other buildings besides: so as it resembleth a big towne: and a man may truly suppose, that those two Castles which *King Stephen* recorded to have beene at the East side of this City went both to the making of this one. The other Fort was on the West side of the City, where *Fleete*, a little Riveret (whence *Fleete-streete* tooke name) now of no account, but in times past able to beare Vessels, as I have read in the *Parliament Rolls*, sheddeth it selfe into

London stone. Milliary.

Hellens money oftentimes found under the Walles. The Wall.

1474.

The Gates.

1586.

* Aldrich.

Berkings.

The Towre.

two hundred and threescore foote: and the timber frame upon the same is two hundred and twenty foure foote high, &c.

The Temple of Diana.

Sacrifice of Bulls.

That there stood of old time a Temple of *Diana* in this place some have conjectured, and arguments there are to make this their conjecture good. Certaine old houses adjoining are in the ancient records of the Church called *Dianas Chamber*: and in the Church-yard, while Edward the First reigned, an incredible number of Osse heads were digged up, as wee finde in our Annals, which the common sort at that time made a wondering at, as the Sacrifices of Gentiles: and the learned know, that *Tanrapolia* were celebrated in the honour of *Diana*. I my selfe also when I was a boy, have seene a stagges head sticking upon a speare-top, (a ceremony fitting well with the sacrifices of *Diana*) carried round about within the very Church in solemn pompe and procession, and with a great noise of Horne-blowers. And that *Scagge Hart* which they of the house of *Bawde* in Essex did present for certaine land there held, as I have heard say, the Priests of this Church arrayed in their sacred vestiments, and wearing Garlands of flowers upon their heads, were wont to receive at the steps of the quire.

Now whether this were in use before those *Bawds* were bound to exhibite such Stagges, I wote not: but surely this rite and ceremony may seeme to smell of *heathen*'s worship and the Gentiles errors, more than of Christian Religion. And yet no man neede to doubt, that from them certaine strange, and foraine and heathenish rites crept into Christian religion. Which Ceremonies the first Christians (as mankind is naturally a pliant Sectary to superstition) either admitted, or at the first tolerated, thereby to traine and allure the Heathen, from Paganish little and little to the true Service and Worship of God.

But ever since this Church was built, it hath beene the See of the Bishops of London: and the first Bishop that it had under the English (about fifty yeares that *Theon* of the British Nation was thrust out) was *Melitus* a Roman, consecrated by *Austin* Archbishop of Canturbury. In honour of which *Austin* against the Decree of Pope *Gregorie* the Great, the Ensignes of the Archbishopricke, and the Metropolitan See, were translated from London to *Canterbury*. Within this Cathedral Church, (to say nothing of *Saint Erkenwald*, and the like) there lye buried *Sebba* King of the East Saxons, who gave over his kingdom to serve Christ; *Etheldred* or *Egeldred*, who was an Oppressor rather than a benefactor to his Kingdome, cruell in the beginning, wretched in the middle, and shameful in the end: so outrageous hee was in his connivency to a Parricide committed, so infamous flight and effeminacy, and so miserable in his death.

Henry Lucy Earle of Lincoln; *John* of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster, Sir *Burke* a right noble Knight of the Garter executed by encroched Authority without the kings assent, Sir *John de Beauchamp*, Lord Warden of the Cinque Ports, the Lord Latimer, Sir *John Mason* knight; *William Herbert* Earle of Pembroke, Sir *Thomas Cholas* Bacon Lord Keeper of the Great Seale of England, a man of a deep judgement and exquisite judgement; Sir *Philip Sidney*, and Sir *Francis Walsingham*, famous knights, &c. and Sir *Christopher Hatton* Lord Chancellour of England, whose perpetuall memory Sir *William Hatton* his Nephew by sister, desired from the ancient Family of the *Newports*, whom hee adopted into the family of *Hatton*, dutifully erected a sumptuous monument, well becomming the greatness of his adoptive father.

Beside this Church, there is not to my knowledge any other worke of the English Saxons extant in London to bee seene: for why? they continued not long in perfect peace; considering that in short space the West-Saxons subdued the East-Saxons; and London became subiect to the Mercians. Scarcely were there three yeares that the vill Warres hush, when a new Tempest brake out of the North: I mean the Danes, who piteously tore in peeces all this Country, and shooke this City. For the Danes brought it under their Subjection: but *Alfred* recovered it out of their hands, and after he had repaired it, gave it unto *Aetheldred* Earle of the Mercians.

Who were buried in Pauls Church. About the yeare 680. 1016. William Malmesbury.

who had married his daughter. Yet those wastefull depopulators, did what they could afterwards many a time to winne it by Siege; but *Cannike* especially, who by digging a new Chanell attempted to turne away the *Tamis* from it. Howbeit evermore they lost their labour; the Citizens did so manfully repulse the force of the enemy. Yet were they not a little terrified still by them, untill they lovingly received and saluted as their King, William Duke of *Normandy*; whom God destined to bee borne for the good of England against those Spoilers. Presently then, the windes were laid, the clouds disparcled, and golden dayes indeed shone upon it: Since which it never sustained any great calamity to speake of: but through the speciall favour and indulgence of Princes obtained very large and great Immunities, beganne to bee called *The Kings Chamber*, and so flourished a new with freestrade and traffique of Merchants; that William of *Malmesbury* who lived well neere about that time, termed it, *A noble and wealthy City, replenished with rich Citizens, and frequented with the commerce of Occupiers and Factors, coming out of all lands.* And *Elizabeth* living also in those dayes, hath left in writing; that London at that time counted an hundred and twenty two Parish Churches, and thirteene Covenants of religious Orders: also that when a Muster and shew was made of able men to beare Armes; they brought into the Field under their Colloours forty thousand footmen, and twenty thousand horsemen.

Then was it enlarged with new buildings; and the spacious Suburbs stretched forth from the gates a great length on every side: but Westward especially which are the greatest, and best peopled: In which are twelve Innes, ordained for Students of our Common law: whereof foure being very faire and large belong to the judicall Courts, the rest to the Chauncery: besides two Innes moreover for the Serjeants at Law. Herein such a number of young Gentlemen doe so patiently ply their bookes, and study the Law, that for frequency of Students, it is not inferior either to *Angiers*, *Caen*, or *Orlean* it selfe, as Sir *John Fortescue* in his small Treatise of the Lawes of England doth witnesse. The said foure principall houses, are *The Inner Temple*, the *Middle Temple*, *Graves Inne*, and *Lincolns Inne*. Those two former named, stand in the very place where in times past, during the Reigne of King *Henry* the Second, *Heraclius* Patriarch of *Jerusalem* consecrated a Church for *Knights Templars*, which they had newly built according to the forme of the Temple, neere unto the Sepulchre of our Lord at *Hierusalem*. For, at their first institution about the yeare of our Lord 1113, they dwelt in part of the Temple hard by the Sepulchre, whereof they were so named, and vowed to defend Christian Religion, the Holy Land, and Pilgrimes going to visite the Lords Sepulchre, against all Mahometans, and Infidels; professing to live in chastity and obedience; whereupon all men most willingly and with right loving hearts embraced them: so that, through the bounteous liberality of Princes and devout people, having gotten in all places very faire Possessions, and exceeding great wealth, they flourished in high reputation for Piety and Devotion: yea and in the opinion, both of the holiness of the men, and of the place King *Henry* the Third, and many Noble men desired much to bee buried in their Church among them. Some of whose Images are there to bee seene, with their legges acrosse. For, so they were buried in that Age that had taken upon them the Crosse (as they then termed it) to serve in the Holy Land, or had vowed the same. Among whom was *William Marshall* the elder a most powerfull man in his time, *William* and *Gilbert* his sonnes *Marshalls* of England and Earles of *Penbroch*. Upon *William* the elder his Tombe I some yeares since read in the upper part *Gomes Penbrochi*; and upon side this Verse:

Miles eram Martis, Mars multos vicerat armis.

Of Mars I was a doughty Knight,
Mars vanquished many a man in fight:

N n 2

* Or Chute.

Innes of the Court.

The New Temple.

Old Temple where new stands South Hampton house in Holborne. Templars.

But

*
Guil. Tyrius.

The Statute
as touching
the Templars
Lands.
17. Edward. 2.
* See Hospitallars afterwards.

The Rouler.

* Montis-jovis.

Westminster.

But in proceffe of time, when with insatiable greedinesse they had hoorded great wealth by withdrawing tith's from churches, appropriating spiritual livings to themselves, and other hard meanes; their riches turned to their ruine. For thereby their former piety was after a manner stifled, they fell at jarre with other religious orders, their professed obedience to the Patriarch of Ierusalem was rejected, envy among the common sort was procured, which hope of gain among the better sort so emboldened, that in the yeere of our salvation 1312. this order was condemned of impiety, and by the Popes authority utterly abolished. Howbeit their possessions were by authority of the Parliament assigned to the *Hospitalier Knights of S. Iohn of Ierusalem*, least that such Lands given to pious and good uses, against the Donours will should be alienated to other uses. And yet it is apparent out of ancient writings, that this place, after the expulsion of the *Templars*, was the seat and habitation of Thomas Becket, Lancaſter, and of Sir *Hugh Spenser* King Edward the Second his minion: afterwards of Sir *Aimer de Valence* Earle of Pembroke, and in the end turned into two Colleges or Innes of Lawyers. Of the rest of these Innes, I have found nothing at all by reading: But the generall voyce goeth, that the one was the dwelling house of the Lord *Greies of Wilton*, and the other of the Earles of *Lincolne*.

Nere unto this K. Henry the third erected betwene the New and the Old Town a house of *Convers*, for the maintenance of those that were converted from Iudaism to the Christian Truth: which King Edward the Third appointed afterwards in rolls and records to be kept therein, and thereof at this day it is called *The Roul*.

These Suburbs with houses standing close together, and stately habitations of Nobles and great Men of the Land along the *Tamis* side, reach out as far as Westminster. Among which these are the most memorable here: *Bride-wel*, which King Henry the Eighth built a royall house for the entertainment of Charles the Fifth Emperour: but now it is an House of Correction: *Buckburſ* house, or *White Friars*, belonging sometimes to the Bishops of Salisbury: the *White Friars*, or *White Friars*: The *Temple* whereof I speake: Then without the Bars *Effingham* built by the Lord *Pages*: *Arundel* house before called *Hampton place*, and *Somerſet* house built by Edward *Somer* Duke of Somerset: *The Savoy*, so named of Peter Earle of Savoy, who there dwelt, which Queene *Eleonor* wife to King Henry the Third purchased of the fraternity of *Monti-jovis*, and gave it to her Sonne Edmund Earle of Lancaster. Whose Posterity dwelt in it a long time untill that King Henry the Second dedicated it as an Hospitall for the Poore: *Worceſter* house, late *Bedford* house, the *bury* house, *Durham* house, built by *Antony Becke* Bishop of Durham, and *Palmer* of Jerusalem, and thereby the onely ornament of this part the *Briſtain* Barke, built by the Earle of Salisbury, and so named by King *James*: *York* house in times past, the *house*, and *Northampton* house now begunne by Henry Earle of Northampton. In what meane I to name these places?

Rich. 2. de 1. 2. and 3. 4.

None claime them wholly for their owne:
Fortune disposeth them every one.

By this Suburbs *Westminster*, which sometime was more than a mile distant, conjoynd so close unto the City of London, that it seemeth a member thereof: whereas it is a City of it selfe, having their peculiar Magistrates and Privileges. It was called in times past *Thorney*, of *Thornes*: but now *Westminster*, of the *Westminster* on, and the *Monastery*. Most renowned it is for that Church, the *Hall of Justice*, and the *Kings Palace*.

This Church is famous especially by reason of the Inauguration and Sepulture of the Kings of England. *Sulcard* writeth, that there stood sometimes a Temple of *Apolo* in that place, and that in the dayes of *Antoninus Pius* Emperour of Rome it fell down with an Earth-quake. Out of the remaines whereof, *Sebert* King of the *East-Saxons* erected another to Saint *Peter*, which beeing by the Danes overthrowne, the shoppe *Dunſtane* reedified, and granted it to some few Monkes. But afterwards

A King Edward furnamed the Confessour with the tenth penny of all his revenewes built it new for to be his owne sepulture, and a Monastery for Benedictine Monkes; endowing it with Livings and Lands lying disperſed in diverse parts of England. But listen what an Historian saith who then lived: *The devout King destined unto God that place, both for that it was nere unto the famous and wealthy City of London, and also had a pleasant situation amongst fruitful fields, and greene grounds lying round about it: and withall the principall River running hard by, bringing in from all parts of the world great variety of Wares and Merchandize of all sorts to the City adjoining. But chiefly for the love of the chiefe Apostle, whom he revered with a speciall and singular affection: He made choise to have a place there for his owne Sepulchre: and thereupon commanded, that of the tenths of all his Rents, the worke of a noble edifice should be gone in hand with, such as might beseme the Prince of the Apostles: To the end, that he might procure the propitious favour of the Lord after he should finish the course of this transitory Life, both in regard of his devout Piety, and also of his free oblation of Lands and Ornaments, wherewith hee purposed to endow and enrich the same. According therefore to the Kings commandement, the worke nobly begonne and happily proceeded forward: neither the charges already disbursed or to be disbursed are weighed and regarded, so that it may be presented in the end unto God and Saint Peter worth their acception. The forme of that ancient building read if you please out of an old Manuscript booke: The principall plot or ground-worke of the building supported with most lofty Arches is cast round with a foure square worke and semblable joyns. But the compasse of the whole, with a double Arch of Stone on both sides is enclosed with joyned worke firmly knit and united together every way. Moreover the Crosse of the Church which was to compasse the middle Quire of those that chaunted unto the Lord, and with a two-fold supportance that it had on either side to uphold and beare the lofty toppe of the Tower in the midst, simply riseth at first with a low and strong Arch: then mounteth it higher with many winding Staires artificially ascending with a number of steps: But afterward with a single wall it reacheth up to the roofe of Timber well and surely covered with Lead. But after an hundred and threescore yeeres King Henry the Third subverted this fabricke of King Edwards, and built from the very foundation a new Church of very faire workmanship, supported with sundry rowes of Marble pillars, and the Rowse covered over with sheets of Lead: a peece of worke that cost fifty yeeres labour in building, which Church the Abbots enlarged very much toward the West end: and King Henry the Seventh for the buriall of himselfe, and his children adjoynded thereto in the East end a Chappell of admirable artificiall elegancy (*The wonder of the World*) Leland calleth it: for a man would say that all the curious and exquisite worke that can be devised, is there compacted: wherein is to be seene his owne most stately magnificall Monument all of solide and masse Copper. This Church when the Monkes were driven thence from time to time was altered to and fro with sundry changes. First of all it had a Deane and Prebendaries: soone after one Bishop and no more, namely *T. Thurleby*, who having wasted the Church Patrimony surrendered it to the spoile of Courtiers, and shortly after were the Monks with their Abbot set in possession againe by Queene Mary: and when they also within a while after were by authority of Parliament cast out, the most gracious Prince Queene Elizabeth converted it into a Collegiate Church, or rather into a Seminary and nurse-garden of the Church, appointed twelve Prebendaries there, and as many old Soldiers past service for Almshouses, forty Scholers, who in their due time are preferred to the Universities, and from thence sent forth into the Church, and Common-weale, &c. Over these she placed *D. Bill* Deane, whose successour was *D. Gabriel Goodman*, a right good man indeede and of singular integrity, an especiall Patron of my Studies. Within this Church are entombed (that I may note them also according to their dignity and time wherein they died) *Sebert* the first of that name, and first Christian King of the *East-Saxons*: *Harold* the bastard son of *Cnutus* the Dane, King of England: *S. Edward* King and Confessour, with his wife *Edith*: *Maud*, wife to King Henry the First, the daughter of *Malcolme* King of Scots: King Henry the Third, and his son, King Edward the First with *Eleonor* his wife, daughter to *Ferdinando* the first King*

Princes interred in Westminster Church.

of Castile and of Leon. King Edward the Third, and *Philippa of Henault* his wife: King Richard the Second and his wife *Anne*, sister to *Wenzelous* the Emperor: King Henry the Fifth with *Catharine* his wife, daughter to *Charles* the Sixt king of France: *Anne*, wife to king Richard the Third, daughter to *Richard Nevill* Earle of Warwick: king Henry the Seventh with his wife *Elizabeth*: daughter to king Edward the Fourth, and his mother *Margaret* Countesse of *Richmond*: king Edward the Sixth: *Anne* of *Cleve* the fourth wife of king Henry the Eighth: *Queene Mary*: And whom we are not to speake of without praise, The Love and Joy of England *Queene ELIZABETH* of Sacred memory, our late Sovereigne and most gracious Lady, a Prince matchlesse for her heroicke Vertues, Wisedome and Magnanimity above that Sexe, rare knowledge and skill in the Tongues, is here intombed in a sumptuous and stately Monument, which king *James* of a pious minde erected to her memory. But alas, how litle is that Monument in regard of so Noble and worthy a Lady: Who of her selfe is her owne Monument and that right magnificent.

For, how great SHE was] RELIGION REFORMED, PEACE WELL GROUNDED, MONEY REDUCED TO THE TRUE VALUE, A NAVY PASSING WELL FURNISHED IN READINES, HONOUR AT SEA STORED, REBELLION EXTINGVISHED, ENGLAND FOR THE SPACE OF XLIII. YEARES MOST WISELY GOVERNED, ENRICHED AND FORTIFIED; SCOTLAND FREED FROM THE FRENCH, FRANCE RELIEVED, NETHERLANDS SUPPORTED, SPAIN AWED, IRELAND QUIETED, AND THE WHOLE GLOBE OF THE EARTH TWICE SAYLED ROUND ABOUT, may with praise and admiration testifie one day unto all Posterity and succeeding ages.

Of Dukes and Earles degree, there ly here buried: *Edmund* Earle of Lancaster son of K. Henry the third, and his wife *Aveline de ferribus* Countesse of *Albany*, *William* and *Audomar* of *Valence* of the family of *Lusignian*, Earles of *Pembroke*, *Alphonfus Iohn*, and other children of King Edward the First, *Iohn* of *Elisam* Earle of Cornwall, son to K. Edward the second, *Thomas* of *Woodstocke* Duke of Gloucester the yongest son of K. Edward the third, with other of his children, *Aleanor* daughter and heire of *Humfrey Bohun* Earle of Hereford and of Essex wife to *Thomas* of *Woodstocke*, the yong daughter of Edward the fourth, and K. Henry the seventh, *Henry* a child two months old son of K. Henry the eight, *Sophia* the daughter of K. James, who died, as it were, in the very first day-dawning of her age, *Philippa* *Mohun* Dutchesse of *Yorke*, *Lewis* Vicount *Roberts* of *Henault* in right of his wife, *Lord Bouchier*, *Anne* the yong daughter and heire of *Iohn Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolke* promised in marriage unto *Richard* Duke of *Yorke* yonger son to K. Edward the fourth, *Sir Giles Dunsen* Lord Chamberlaine to king Henry the Seventh, and his wife of the house of the *Arundels* in Cornwall, *I. Vicount Wells*, *Francis Brandon* Dutches of *Suffolke*, *Mary* daughter, *Margaret Douglass* Countesse of *Lennox*, grandmother to *James* King of Britaine, with *Charles* her son, *Winifrid Bruges* Marchionesse of *Winchester*, *Ann Stanhop* Dutches of *Somerfet* and *Iane* her daughter, *Anne Cecill* Countesse of *Oxford* daughter to the L. *Burghley* Lord high Treasurer of England, with *Mildred Burghley* her mother, *Elizabeth Berkeley* Countesse of *Ormond*, *Francis Sidney* Countesse of *Suffex*, *James Busler*, Vicount *Thurles* son and heire to the Earle of *Ormond*.

Besides these, *Humfrey* Lord *Bouchier* of *Cromwall*, *Sir Humfrey Bouchier* son and heire to the Lord *Bouchier* of *Berners* both slaine at *Berners field*, *Sir Nicholas Carew*, Baron *Carew* Baronesse *Powisse*, *T. Lord Wentworth*, *Thomas* Lord *Wharton*, the Lord *Russell*, *Sir T. Bromley* Lord Chancellor of England, *Douglas Howard* daughter and heire generall of H. Vicount *Howard* of *Binden* wife to *Sir Arthur Gorges*, *Elizabeth* daughter and heire of *Edward* Earle of *Rutland* wife to *William Cecill*. *Sir John Puckering* Lord Keeper of the great Seale of England, *Francis Howard* Countesse of *Hertford*, *Henrie* and *George Cary*, the father and sonne Barons of *Hunsford* both Lords Chamberlaines to *Queene Elizabeth* the heart of *Anne Sophia* the daughter of *Christopher Harley*, Count *Beaumont* Embassadour from the king of France.

Queene Elizabeth.

Dukes, Earles, and other Nobles entombed in Westminster.

France in England, bestowed within a small guilt Urne over a Pyramid. *Sir Charles Blount* Earle of *Devonshire*, Lord Lieutenant Generall of *Ireland*. And (whom in no wife wee must forget) the Prince of English Poets *Geoffry Chaucer*: as also he that for pregnant wit and an excellent gift in Poetry of all English Poets came neere unto *Edmund Spenser*. Beside many others of the Clergy, and Gentlemen of quality.

There was also another College or Free-chapell hard by consisting of a Deane, and twelve Chanons, dedicated to *Saint Stephen*: which King Edward the Third in his princely Magnificence repaired with curious workmanship and endowed with faire possessions, so as he may seeme to have built it new what time as he had with his victories overrun and subdued all France, recalling to minde (as we read the Charter of the foundation) and pondering in a due weight of devout consideration the exceeding benefits of Christ, whereby of his owne sweet mercy and pity he preventeth us in all occasions, delivering us, although without all desert, from sundry perils, and defending us gloriously with his powerfull right hand against the violent assaults of our adversaries with victorious successes: and in other tribulations and perplexities wherein wee have exceeding much benee encombrd, by comforting us and by applying, and in-powering remedies upon us beyond all hope and expectation. There was adjoyning hereto a Palace, the ancient habitation of the Kings of England from the time of King Edward the Confessor: which in the Raigne of king Henry the Eighth, was burnt by casual fire to the ground. A very large, stately, and sumptuous Palace this was, and in that age for building incomparable, with a wawmure, and bulwarks for defence: The remaines whereof, are the Chamber, wherein the King, the Nobles, with the Counsellors and Officers of State, doe assemble at the high Court of Parliament, and the next unto it, wherein anciently they were wont to beginne the Parliaments, knowne by the name of *Saint Edwards painted chamber*, because the tradition holdeth that the said king Edward therein dyed.

But how finfull an Act, how bloody, how foule, how hainous, horrible, hideous, and odious both to God and man, certaine brute and savage beasts in mens shape enterprised of late, by the device of that Arch Traitor *Robert Catesby*, with undermining, and placing a mighty deale of gunpowder under these Edifices against their Prince, their Country and all the States of the Kingdome, and that under an abominable pretence of Religion, my very heart quaketh to remember and mentions nay, amazed it is and affonied but to thinke onely into what inevitable darknesse, confusion and wofull miseries, they had suddenly in the twinkling of an eye plunged this most flourishing Realme and Common wealth: But that which an ancient Poet in a smaller matter wrote, we may in this with grieve of minde utter:

*Excitat illa dies avo, ne postera credant
Secula, nos cervice taceamus, & obruta multa
Nolle tegi propria patiamur crimina gentis.*

That cursed day forgotten be: no future age beleeve
That this was true: let us also at least wise now that live
Conceale the same, and suffer such Designes of our owne Nation
Hidden to be and buried quite in darknesse of oblivion.

Adjoyning unto this is the *Whitehall*, wherein at this day the Court of Requests is kept. Beneath this is that Hall, which of all others is the greatest, and the very *Prætorium* or Hall of Justice for all England. In this are the Judiciall Courts, namely: *The Kings Bench*, the *Common Pleas*, and *The Chancery*: And in places neere thereabout, *The Star-Chamber*, the *Exchequer*, *Court of Ward*, and *Courts of the Dutchy of Lancaster*, &c. In which at certaine set times (wee call them *Termes*) yearely causes are heard and tryed: whereas before king Henry the Third his dayes, the Court of common Law and principall Justice was unsetled and alwaies followed the kings Court. But he in the *Magna Charta* made a law in these words: *Let not the Common Pleas follow our Court, but bee holden in some certaine place*. Which notwithstanding some expound thus: *That the Common Pleas from thenceforth bee handled in a Court of the owne by its selfe*

Fitz Stephens.
The highest house.

The Treason
of Robert
Catesby.

Westminster
hall.

William
Lambert.

selfe a part, and not in the Kings Bench, as before. This Judgement Hall which we now have, king Richard the Second built out of the ground, as appeareth by his Armes engraven in the stone-woke, and many arched beames (when he had plucked downe the former old Hall that king William Rufus in the same place had built before) and made it his owne habitation. For kings in those daies sat in Judgement place in their owne persons: And they are indeed the ΔΙΚΑΣΤΗΡΑΙ, that is, Judges, whose mounth (as that Royall Writer saith) shall not erre in Judgement. But the foresaid Palace, after it was burnt downe in the yeare of our Lord 1512. lay desolate, and king Henry the Eighth translated shortly after the kings Seat from thence to an house not farre off, which belonged but a while before to Cardinall Wolsey, and is called White Hall. This house is a Princely thing: enclosed of the one side with a Park that reacheth also to another house of the kings named S. James (where anciently was a Spittle for Maiden Lepres) built by king Henry the Eighth, on the other side with the Tamis. A certaine Poet termed the foresaid House according to the English name thereof *Leucaum* in Latine, as appeareth in these Verfes:

— Regale subintrant
*Leucaum Reges (dederant memorabile quondam
 Atria, quæ nivo candebant marmore, nomen)
 Quod Tamisifis prima est cui gloria pascere cygnos
 Ledæos, rauco pronus subierat ætina.*

To Royall Palace Kings enter in, sometime *LEUCUM* high.

(This famous name those Courts it gave that shone with marble white)
 Hard under it with low-sound streame *Tamis* downe apace doth glide,
 A River feeding Swannes, wherein he takes especiall pride.

The Mues.

Hard by, neere unto the *Mues* so called, for that it serued to keepe Hawkes, at now is become a most faire Stable for the kings horses, there remaineth a monumēt in memoriall of that most pious and kinde Queene *Aleonor*, erected by king *Edward* the First her most dearly beloved husband: and certes the memory of her loving kindnesse shall remaine worthy to be consecrated to æternity. For she, the daughter of *Ferdinand* the Third, king of *Castile*, being given in marriage to the first king of England, accompanied him into the *Holy Land*: where, when she was secretly forelaid, and by a certaine *Moore* wounded with an envenomed sword, all the remedies that Physicians could devise was not so much eased as afflicted: she made to a cure strange I must needs say and never heard of before, howbeit full of love and affection. For, her Husbands wounds infected with the poison, and which by reason of malignity thereof could not bee closed and healed, shee day by day licked with her tongue, and sucked out the venomous humour which to her was a most sweet liquor. By the vigour strength whereof, or to say more truly, by vertue of a wifes lovely fidelity shee drew out all the substance of the poison, that the wounds being closed, and cicatrized, bee became perfectly healed, and shee caught no harme at all. What then can bee heard more rare, what more admirable than this womans faithfull love? That a wifes tongue thus annointed, all may say, with faith and love to her Husband, should from her well beloved draw those poisons, which by an approved Physician could not bee drawne: and that which many and the most exquisite medicines effected not, the love onely and piety of a Wife performed. Thus much Westminster joyntly with London (although as I have said, it is a City by itself, and hath a severall jurisdiction from it) because with continued buildings it is joyneth thereto, that it may seeme to be one and the same City.

Holborne.

Moreover, at the West end of the City, other Suburbs runne a great way in length, with goodly rowes of houses orderly ranged, as namely *Holborne* or rather more truly *Oldborne*: wherein stood anciently the first house of the *Temple* (now in the place now called *Southampton house*). But now there stand certaine houses, or Colleges of Students in the Common Law: and a City-habitation of the shops of *Ely*, well becoming Bishops to dwell in: for which they are beholden to *John de Hotham* Bishop of *Ely* under king *Edward* the Third.

At the North side likewise there be Suburbs annexed to the City, wherein *Jerusalem*

Briget a man very wealthy and devout built an house for the *Knights Hospitallers of Saint Iohn of Ierusalem*, which grew in time so great, that it resembled a Palace: and had in it a very faire Church and a Towre-steeple raised to a great height with so fine workmanship, that while it stood, it was a singular beauty and ornament to the City. These *Knights Hospitallers* at their first institution, about the yeare 1124. and long after, were so lowly all the while they continued poore, that their Governour was stiled *Servant to the poore Servitors of the hospitall of Ierusalem*, like as the Master of the *Templars*, who shortly after arose, was termed *The humble Minister of the poore Knights of the Temple*. This religious Order was instituted shortly after *Geffery of Bollem* had recovered *Hierusalem*. The Brethren whereof ware a white Crosse upon their upper blacke Garment, and by solemne Profession were bound to serve Pilgrimes, and poore people in the Hospitall of *Saint Iohn* at *Hierusalem*, and to secure the passages thither, they charitably buried the dead, they were continuall in prayer, mortified themselves with watchings and fastings, they were courteous and kinde to the poore whom they called their *Maistres*, and fed with white bread, while themselves lived with browne; and carried themselves with great austeritey. Whereby they purchased to themselves the love and liking of all sorts; and through the bounty of good Princes and private persons admiring their piety, and prowesse, they rose from this low degree to so high an estate, and great riches, that after a sort they wallowed in wealth. For they had about the yeare of our Lord 1240. within Christendome nine-reene thousand Lordships or Manours: like as the *Templars* nine thousand (the *Revenues* and rents whereof in England fell afterwards also to these *Hospitallers*). And this Estate of theirs growne to so great an height made way for them to as great honours, so as their *Prior* in England was reputed the * Prime Baron of the Land and able with fulnesse and abundance of all things to maintaine an honourable Port, untill that King Henry the Eighth advised by them, which respected their private profit, gat their lands and livings into his owne hands, like as hee did of the *Monaisteries* also. Albeit it was then declared that such religious places being of most pious intent consecrated to the Glory of God, might have beene according to the Canons of the Church, bestowed in exhibition and Almes for Gods Ministers, redreede of the poore, redemption of Captives, and repairing of Churches. Neere unto it, where now is to be scene a sightly circuit of faire houses, was the *Charter-house*, founded by Sir *Walter Mauny* of Henauke, who with singular commendation served under King *Edward* the Third in the French warres: and in that place heretofore was a most famous Cemetary, or buriall place in which in a plague time at London, were buried in the yeare 1349. more than 50000. persons: a thing recorded to posterity by an inscription which continued there a long time engraven in Brasse.

Saint Johns
 Hospitallers
 after called
 Knights of the
 Rhodes and
 now of Malt.

Templars;

* Lords of S;
 Johns.

Charter-house.

Barbacan.
 Galatun
 Martium.

On this North-West side likewise London hath other great Suburbs, and there stood in old time a * Watchtowre or military Forefense, whence the place was of an Arabicke word called *Barbacan*, and by the gift of King *Edward* the Third became the dwelling house of the *Vissords*, from whom by the *Willoughbbies* it came to Sir *Pengrine Bersey*, Lord *Willoughbbey* of *Eresby*, a man noble and generous, and one of *Mars* his broode.

Neither lesse Suburbs runne out on the North-East and East. In the fields of which Suburbs, while I was first writing these matters, there were gotten out of the ground many urnes, funerall vessels, little Images, and earthen pots, wherein were small peeces of money coined by *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Vespasian*, &c. Glasse vials also and sundry small earthen vessels, wherein some liquid substance remained which I would thinke to bee either of that sacred oblation of Wine and Milke, which the ancient *Romanes* used when they burnt the dead, or else those odoriferous liquours that *Saint* mentioneth.

— Pharijque liquores
Arfuram lavere comam.

And liquid baulmes from *Egypt*-land that came,
 Did wash his haire that ready was for flame.

This

This place the Romanes appointed to burne and bury dead bodies, who according to the law of the xij. Tables carried Coarles out of their Cities, and entered them by the high waies sides, to put Passengers in minde that they are, as those were, subject to mortality: Thus much of that part of the City which lieth to the Land.

Now for that side where the River runneth, toward the South banke thereof, the Citizens made a Bridge also over the Water reaching to that large *Burrough of Southwarke*, whereof I have already spoken: First, of wood in that place where before time they used for passage a ferry boat in stead of a Bridge. Afterwards, under the Raigne of King John they built a new Bridge with admirable workmanship of stone hewen out of the Quarry, upon 19. Arches, beside the draw-bridge, and furnished it on both sides with passing faire houses joyning one to another in manner of a Street, that for bignesse and beauty, it may worthily carry away the praise from all the Bridges in Europe.

In this *Burgh of Southwarke*, to speake onely of things memorable, there sometime a famous Abbay of Monkes, of Saint *Benedict* Order, called *Burrough*, consecrated in times past unto our Saviour, by *Aldwin Childe* Citizen of London: also a stately house built by *Charles Brandon* Duke of Suffolke, which having seen his turne but a small time, was shortly after pulled downe.

These are extant, Saint *Thomas Hospitall*, reedified or founded rather by the Citizens of London, for the sustenance of feeble and impotent persons: The Priory of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, called Saint *Mary Over Rhe* because it standeth beyond the River of *Tamis* in regard of London, erected by *William Pont del Arche* a Nunn for blacke Chanons. The Bishops house of *Winchester* built by *William Gifford* shop, for his Successours, about the yeare of our Lord 1107. From which along the *Tamis* banke there runneth Westward a continued ranche of dwelling houses, within our fathers remembrance was the *Bordello* or *Lupanarie*, for soche Latin terme those little roomes or secret chambers of harlots wherein they filthily polluted their bodies to sale, because they after the manner of ravening the-wolves hold of filly wretched men and plucke them into their holes. But these were prohibited by King Henry the Eighth, at which time England was growne to such lasciviousnesse and riot, which in other Nations are continued for gaine, under specious shew of helping mans infirmity: Neither, of these Strumpets and houses, doe I thinke that this place in our tongue tooke the name *Stewes*, but that *Ponds* or *Stewes*, which are heere to feed Pikes and Tenches far, and to scowm from the strong and muddy fennish taste. Heere have I scene Pikes panches opened with a knife to shew their fatnesse: and presently the wide gashes and wounds come together againe by the touch of Tenches, and with their glutinous slime perfectly healed up. Among these buildings there is a place in manner of a Theatre baiting of Beares and Bulls with Dogges: and certaine kenels appointed severally for *Band-Dogges* or *Mailives*, which are of that strength, and so sure of bit, that none of them are able to take and hold downe a Beare, and foure a Lion: so that the Poet in old time reported truly of our Dogges, in these words:

Tanrorum fracturi colla Britanni.

The British Dogges are able well,
To breake the neckes of Bulls so fell.

Like as he that said, they were more fierce than the Dogges of *Arcadian* kinde, which are thought to be engendred of Lions.

What time as the Bridge was thus made betweene London and this *Burrough* the City was not onely enlarged; but also an excellent forme of Common wealth was therein ordained, and the Citizens reduced into certaine distinct Corporations and Companies. The whole City divided into six and twenty Wards, and the Council of the City consisted of as many ancient men, named of their age in our tongue *Aldermen*, as one would say, *Senatours*, who each one have the overseeing and rule of his severall Ward: and whereas in ancient time they had for their Head-Magistrate, * *Portreeve*, that is, a Governour of the City, King Richard the First ordained two

London
Bridge.

See of South-
warke, in Su-
threy.

Saint Saviour.

Suffolkehouse.

S. Thomas
Hospitall.

Stewes.

Band-dogges
or Mailives.

Societies or
Companies
of Citizens.
Tribus
Wards.
* Or *Portreeve*.

lives: in stead of whom soone after King John granted them liberty, to chuse by their voices yearly out of the twelve principall Companies a *Major* for their chiefe Magistrat: also two *Sheriffes*, whereof the one is called the Kings, the other the Cities *Sheriffe*. This forme of Common wealth being thus established it is incredible to tell how much London grew, and groweth still in publike and also private buildings, whiles all the Cities of England besides decreafe. For, to say nothing of that beautiful peece of worke, the *Senate house* named *Guild Hall*, built by Sir *Thomas Knowles* *Major*: *Leaden Hall*, a large and goodly building, erected by *Simon Eire*, to bee a common Garner in time of dearth to pull downe the price of Corne; the Merchants meeting place standing upon Pillars, which the common people call the *Burse*, and *Queene Elizabeth* with a solemne ceremony named *The Royall Exchange*, for the use of Merchants, and an ornament to the City, set up by Sir *Thomas Gresham* Citizen and knight; a magnificent worke verily, whether you respect the modull of the building, the resort of Merchants from all Nations thither, or the store of wares there. Which Sir *Thomas Gresham*, being withall an exceeding great lover of learning, consecrated a most spacious house his owne habitation to the furtherance of learning, and instituted there Professours of *Divinity*, *Law*, *Physicke*, *Astronomy*, *Geometry*, and *Musicke*, with liberall salaries and stipends; to the end that London might be a place not onely furnished with all sorts of Traffique, but also with the liberall Arts and Sciences. To passe over the House of the *Society of the Hanse*, commonly called the *Stylard*, as the *Easterlings* yard, and the waters conveyed by pipes under the ground, into all parts of the City, and very goodly conduits or cisternes castellated to receive the same: also the new conveyance of water devised by the skillfull travell of *Pier Maurice* a German, who by meanes of a forcer or wheele, with pipes placed at a certaine levell, brought water of late out of the *Tamis* into a great part of the City: To omit all these, I say, it is so adorned every where with Churches, that RELIGION and GODLINESS seem to have made choise of their residence herein. For the Churches therein amount to the number of one hundred twenty and one, more verily than *Rome* it selfe (as great and holy as it is) can shew. Besides *Hospitals* for diseased persons, it maintaineth also fixe hundred Orphane children or thereabouts, in *Christ Church Hospitall*, and poore people upon contribution of Almes about 1300. Be: A long time it would aske to discourse particularly of the good lawes and orders, of the laudable government, of the port and dignity of the *Major* and *Aldermen*, of their forward service and loyalty to their Prince, of the Citizens courtesie, the faire building and costly furniture, the breed of excellent and choise wits, their gardens in the Suburbs full of dainty arbours, and banquetting roomes, stored also with strange herbes from forraigne countries, of the multitude, strength and furniture of their ships, the incredible store of all sorts of Merchandise (two hundred thousand broad-clothes, beside other *Wanerp* alone hath received from hence every yeare) and of the superabundance of all things which belong to the furniture or necessity of mans life. For, right truly wrote that *Hadrianus Junius* in his *Philippeis*:

*Tectis opibisque repletum
Londinur; & si fas, numero so cibus superbam;
Larga ubi secundo rerum unda capta cornu.*

Thicke built with houses London is, with riches stuffed full;
Proud, (if we may so say) of men that therein live and dwell,
Wherein most plenteous wise abound all things that tongue can tell.

And *Jul. Scaliger* in his Poem of *Cities*.

Vrbs animis, numerisque potens, & robore gentis.

For peoples, courage, numbers, power, it is a City strong;
And another Poet hath powred out these Verses also, concerning London, if you deigne to read them,

LONDINUM

Prator or
Major.

1411.
1405.

The Burse.
1567.
Royall Ex-
change.

Greshams
College.

Gulesciadin.

LONDINUM gemino procurrit litore longè
 Æmula materna tollens sua lumina Troia
 Clementer surgente jugo dum tendis in ortum :
 Urbs per amena situ, caloque soloque beata.
 Urbs pietate potens, numeroſe cive ſuperba,
 Urbsque Britannorum quæ digna BRITANNIA dici.
 Hæc nova doctriſis Lutetia, mercibus Ormus,
 Aliera Roma viris, Chryſea ſecunda metallis.

Along both bankes out ſtretched farre the Citie LONDON lies
 Reſembling much her mother Troie, aloft ſhe liſts her cics,
 Whiles on agentle riſing hill ſhe beareth toward Eaſt :
 A City pleaſant for her ſite, in aire, and ſoile much bleſt.
 Religious, and populous : and hence ſhe looks on hie,
 And well deserves for to be cal'd the Britans Britannie.
 For learning new Lutetia, Ormus for Traffique mich,
 A ſecond Rome for valiant men, Chryſe for metals rich.

In this manner likewise verified Henry of Huntingdon in praise of London, King Stephen reigned, about foure hundered yeares ſince :

*Ibis & in noſtros dives Londonia verſus,
 Quæ nos immemores non finis eſſe iuſ.
 Quando tuas arces, tua memia mente retræſo,
 Quæ vidi, videor cuncta videre mihi.
 Fama loquax & nata loqui, moritura ſilendo,
 Laudibus erubuit fingere falſa iuſ.*

Thou alſo ſhalt of Verſes ours Rich London have thy part,
 For why? we cannot thee forget, ſo great is thy deſart.
 When I thinke of thy ſtately Towres, thy faire and ſpacious Wall
 Which I have ſcene, me thinkes therewith I ſee no * leſſe thanall.
 This praizing fame, that's borne to prate, and talk'd ſhe not would dye,
 In all the praife that goes of thee hath baſſ'd to tell one lye.

Another Poet in like manner pleaſantly played upon London in this ſort:

*Hæc Urbs illa potens, cui tres tria dona miniſtrant
 Bacchus, Apollo, Ceres, pocula, carmin, ador.
 Hæc Urbs illa potens, quam luno, Minerva, Diana
 Mercibus, arce, ſeris, ditat, adornat, aliis.*

This is that City ſtrong to which three gifts are given by three,
 By Bacchus, Ceres, and Phœbus, Wine, Whear, and Poetree.
 This place ſterne Palus, luno Queene, Diana Hunters-teer
 Adorn's, enricheth, and doth feed, with towres, with wares, with deer.

But in a more grave note and ſerious ſtile, a friend of mine and a praiſe worthy ſon, Maſter Iohn Iſton, Profeſſor of Divinity in the Kings Univerſity of S. Andrews.

*URBS AUGUSTA, cui calumque, ſolumque, ſalumque
 Cuique ſavens cunctis cuncta elementa bonis.
 Mitius haud uſquam calum eſt, uberrima Tellus
 Fundit inexhausti germina læta ſoli.
 Et pater Oceanus Tamisio gurgite miſſus,
 Convulſis immenſus totius orbis opes.*

*Regali cultu; ſedes clarifſima Regum
 Gentis præſidium, cor, anima, atque oculus.
 Gens antiqua, potens virtute & robore belli,
 Artium & omnigenium nobilitata opibus.
 Singula contemplare animo, aſſentiſque tuere,
 Aut Orbem aut Orbis dixeris eſſe caput.*

This City well AUGUSTA call'd, to which (a truth to ſay)
 Aire, Land, Sea, and all Elements, ſhew favour every way.
 The weather no where milder is, the ground moſt rich to ſee,
 Doth yeeld all fruits of fertile ſoile, that never ſpent will bee.
 And Ocean, that with Tamis ſtreame his flowing tyde doth blend
 Conveys to it commodities, all that the world can ſend.
 The noble ſeat of Kings it is for port and roialty,
 Of all the Realme the fence, the heart, the life, and lightſome ey.
 The people ancient, valorous, expert in chivalry,
 Enriched with all ſorts and meanes of Art and myſterie.
 Take heedfull view of every thing, and then ſay thus in brieſe,
 This either is a world it ſelfe, or of the world the chiefe.

But of theſe and ſuch like particulars Iohn Stowe Citizen of London, and a famous Chronicler hath diſcourſed more at large, and more exactly in that his Survey of London, which he lately published.

Now will I take my leave of my deere native Country, and bid London a diew, after I have given this onely note, that the Pole is here elevated ſittie one degrees, and foure and thirty ſcruples, and the Meridian diſtant from the fartheſt Weſt-poynt three and twenty degrees and five and twenty ſcruples. That the * Fidicula ſymbolizing in nature with Venus and Mercurie, is the Tropick ſtarre which glanceth upon the Horizon, but never ſetteth; and the Dragons head is reputed by Aſtronomers to be the Vertical ſtarre over head.

* From London, the Tamis watering Redcliffe, ſo called of the Red-cliffe, a prety fine Towne and dwelling place of Sailers, as he fetcheth almoſt a round compaſſe with a great winding reach, taketh into him the River Lea at the eaſt bound of this Countie, when it hath collected his divided ſtreame and cheriſhed fruitfull Mariſh-meadowes. Upon which there ſtanderh nothing in this ſide worth the ſpeaking of. For, neither Edmuntſon hath ought to ſhew, but the name derived of Nobility; nor Waltham, unleſſe it be the Croſſe erected there for the funerall pompe of Queene Eleonor Wiſe to King Edward the Firſt, whereof alſo it tooke name. Onely Enſeld a houſe of the Kings is here to be ſcene, built by Sir Thomas Lovel knight (of the order of the Garter and one of King Henry the Seventh his Privy Counſell) and Durance neighbour thereunto a houſe of the Wrotheſ of ancient name in this Countie. To Enſeld-houſe, Enſeld-chace is hard adjoining, a place much renowned for hunting: the poſſeſſion in times paſt of the Magnavils Earles of Eſſex, afterwards of the Bohuns who ſucceeded them: and now it belongeth to the Duchie of Lancaſter, ſince the time that Henry the Fourth King of England eſpouſed one of the daughters and coheires of Humfrey Bohun Earle of Hereford and Eſſex of that ſurname. And there are yet to be ſcene, in the middeſt well nere of this Chace, the ruubiſh and ruines of an old houſe, which the vulgar ſort ſaith was the dwelling place of the Magnavils Earles of Eſſex. As for the title of Middleſex, the Kings of England have vouchſafed it to none, neither Duke, Marquis, Earle, or Baron.

In this County, without the City of London, are reckoned
 Pariſhes much about 73.

Within the City, Liberties, and Suburbes. 121.



E S S E X.



E HE other part of the *Trinobantes*, toward the East called in the English Saxon tongue *Eapto-beaxa*, and *Eapto-sex-ripe*, in the Norman language *Exsessa*, of the situation toward the East, and the Saxons which inhabited it, and commonly *Essex*, is a Country large in compasse, fruitfull, full of Woods, plentifull of Saffron, and very wealthy: encircled, as it were, on the one side with the maine Sea, on the other with fishfull Rivers, which also doe afford their peculiar commodities in great abundance. On the North side, the River *Stour* divideth it from *Suffolke*, on the East the Ocean windeth it selfe into it: On the South part, the *Tamis* being now growne great secludeth it from *Kent* like as in the West part the little River *Ley* from *Wiltshire*, and *Stort* or *Stour* the lesse which runneth into it, from *Hertfordshire*. In describing of this Country, according to my methode begunne, first I will speake of the memorable places by *Ley* and the *Tamis*, afterwards of those that bee further within, and upon the Sea-coast.

C By *Ley*, in the English Saxon Tongue *Lýgean*, there stretcheth out a great way in length and breadth a Forest serving for game, stored very full with Deere, that for their bignesse, and fatnesse withall, have the name above all other. In times past called it was by way of excellency *Foresta de Essex*, now *Walsham Forest*, of the towne *Walsham*, in the Saxons speech *Wealo-ham*, that is, *A wilde or woody habitation*. This standeth upon *Ley*, where, by dividing h is Chanell hee maketh divers Eights or Islands, and is not of any great Antiquity to make boast of. For, when the Kingdome of the Saxons beganne to decay, one *Towie*, a man of great wealth and authority, as wee reade in the private History of the place, *The Kings Staller*, that is, *Standard bearer, for the abundance of wilde beasts there, first founded it, and planted three-score and sixe indwellers therein*. After his death *Arhelstane* his sonne quickly made a hand of all his goods and great estate: and King Edward the *Confessor* gave this Towne to *Harold* Earle *Goodwins* sonne: and freightwayes an Abbay was erected there, the worke and Tombe both of the said *Harold*. For, he being crept up by the error of men and his owne ambition to regall Dignity built this Abbay in honour of an *Holy Crosse* found farre Westward, and brought hither, as they write, by miracle. Heerein made he his prayers and vowes for victory when hee marched against Normans, and being soone after slaine by them, was by his mother, who had with most suppliant suite craved and obtained at the Conquerours hands his Corps, here entombed. But now it hath a Baron, namely *Sir Edward Denny*, called lately unto that honour by King *James* his Writ. Over this Towne upon the rising of an Hill standeth *Copthall*, and yeeldeth a great way off, a faire sight to feed mens eyes. This was the habitation in times past of *Fitz-Ancher*, and lately of *Sir Thomas Henage* Knight, who made it a very goodly and beautifull house. Neere unto this River also was seated, no doubt, *Durolitum*, a Towne of antique memory, which the Emperour *Antonine* maketh mention of, but in what place precisely, I am not able to shew. For, the ancient places of this County, (I tell you once for all before hand) lye hidden so enwrapped in obscurity, that I, who elsewhere could see somewhat, heerein, am heere more than dim-lighted. But if I may give my guesse, I would thinke that to have beene *Durolitum*, which retaining still some marke of the old name, is called at this day *Leyton*: that is, *The Towne upon Ley*, like as *Durolitum* in the British Tongue signifieth, *The water Ley*. A small Village it is in these daies, inhabited in scattering wise, five miles from London, for which five, through the carelesse negligence of transcribers is crept into *Antonine xv*.

Walsham
Forest.Walsham
Abbay.

Baron Denny.

Copthall.

Durolitum.

That there was a common passage heere in times past over the River, a place nigh unto it called *Oldfourd* seemeth to proove, in which when Queene *Maud* wife to King Henry the First hardly escaped danger of drowning, shee gave order that a litle beneath, at *Stretford*, there should bee a Bridge made over the water. There, the River brancheth into three severall streames, and most pleasantly watereth on every side the greene meadowes: wherein I saw the remains of a litle Monastorie which *William Montfichet*, a Lord of great name of the Normans race built, in the yeere of our Lord 1140. and forthwith *Ley* gathering it selfe againe into one chanell mildely dischargeth it selfe in the *Tamis*, whereupon the place is called *Leymouth*.

The *Tamis* which is mightily by this time encreased, doth violently carry away with him the streames of many waters, hath a sight (to speake onely of what is worth remembrance) of *Berking*, which *Bede* nameth *Berecing*, a Nunnery founded by *Kenwald* Bishop of London, where *Roding* a little River entrencheth into the *Tamis*. This running hard by many Villages imparteth his name unto them, as *Heigh Roding*, *Eithorp Roding*, *Leaden Roding*, &c. of the which, *Leefwin* a Nobleman gave once two in times past, to the Church of *Ely*, for to expiate and make satisfaction for the wicked act hee had committed in murdering his owne mother: then, by *Angre*, where upon a very high Hill are the tokens of a Castle built by *Richard Lay* Lord Chiefe Justice of England in the Raigne of Henry the Second: of which Family, a daughter and one of the heires, King *Iohn* gave in marriage to *Richard Rivers*, who dwelt hard by at *Stranford Rivers*.

So it passeth by *Lambourn Manour*, which is held by service of the Wardliffe, viz. to carry a load of strawe in a Cart with sixe horses, two ropes, two men in barrowe wach the said Wardliffe when it is brought to the Towne of *Aisbridge*, &c. and then by *Wansted Parke*, where the late Earle of *Leicester* built much for his pleasure. In the mouth of this *Roding*, this *Tamis* hasteneth through a ground lying very flat low, and in most places otherwhiles overflowne, (whereby are occasioned fumes and unwholsome vapours exceeding hurtfull to the health of the neighbours inhabitants) to *Tilbury*: neere unto which there bee certaine holes in the rising of a chalky Hill, sunke into the ground tenne fathome deepe, the mouth whereof are narrow, made of stone cunningly wrought, but within they are large and spacious, in this forme, which hee that went downe into them described unto mee after this manner.



Of which I have nothing else to say, but what I have delivered already. As for *Tilbury*, (*Bede* nameth it *Tilaburgh*) it consisteth of some few cottages by the *Tamis* side, yet was it in ancient time the seate of Bishop *Chad*, when about the yeare of our Salvation 630. hee ingrafted the East-Saxons by Baptisme into the Church of Christ. Afterwards, this River passing by places lying flat and unwholsome, with a winding returne of his Water, severeth the Island *CONVENNON*, which also is called *COUNOS*, (whereof *Ptolomee* maketh mention) from the firme land. This hath not yet wholly foregone the old name, but is called *Canvey*. It lyeth against the Coast of Essex, from *Leegh* to *Hole Haven*, five miles in length: some part whereof appertaineth to the Collegiat Church of *Westminster*. But so low, that oftentimes it is quite overflowne, all save hillocks cast up, upon which the Sheepe have a place of safe refuge. For, it keepeth about foure hundred Sheepe, whose flesh is of a most sweet and delicate taste, which I have seene young lads taking womens function, with stooles fastened to their buttockes to milke, yea and to make Cheeses of Ewes milke in those dairy sheddies of theirs, that they call there *Wiches*.

There adjoyne to this Island along in order, first *Beamsfleet*, fortified with deepe and wide *Trenches* (as saith *Florilegus*) and with a Castle, by *Hasting* the Dane, which King *Elfred* wonne from them: Then *Hadleigh*, sometime the Castle of *Hubert de Burgo*, afterwards of *Thomas of Woodstocke* Duke of *Glocester*, now defaced with ruines: and in the last place *Leegh*, a proper fine little Towne and very full of stout and adventures Sailers: with *Pritlewel* fast by where *Sveno de Essex* built long since a Cell for Monkes. And here the land shooteth forward to make a Promontory, which they call *Black-saile Point*, and *Shobery Nesse* of *Shobery* a Village situate upon it; which sometime, was a City an Haven named *Sceobirig*. For, in old Annales of the English-Saxons wee read thus, *The Danes being driven from Beamsfleet, goe to a City (called in East-SEX, called in the English Tongue Sceobirig, and there built themselves a sure and strong Fort.* Heere by reason that the banks on both sides shrinke backe, the *Tamis* at a huge and wide mouth rowleth into the sea. This doth *Ptolomee* terme *Estuarium TAMESÆ*, and corruptly in some other Copies *TAMESÆ*, and we commonly, the *Tamis Mouth*.

More inward is *Rochford* placed, that hath given name to this *Hundred*: Now, it belongeth to the Barons *Rich*, but in old time it had Lords of ancient Nobility firnamed thereof: whose inheritance came at length to *Builer* Earle of *Ormond* and *Wiltshire*, and from them to Sir *Thomas Bullen*, whom King Henry the Eighth created Vicount *Rochford*, and afterward Earle of *Wiltshire*, out of whose Progeny sprung that most gracious Queene *ELIZABETH*, and the Barons of *Hunsdon*.

Heere I have heard much speech of a *Lawlesse Court* (as they called it) holden in a strange manner about *Michaelmasse*, in the first peepe of the day upon the first cocke crowing, in a silent sort; yet with shrowde fines eftsoones redoubled, if not answered, which servile attendance, they say was imposed upon certaine Tenants thereabout for conspiring there at such unseasonable time, to raise a commotion. But I leave this knowing neither the originall, nor the certaine forme thereof. Onely I heard certaine obscure barbarous rhymes of it. *Curia de Domino Rege tenetur sine lege. Ave ornum solis, luceat, nisi polus, &c.* not worth remembring.

Leaving the *Tamis* Banke, and going farther within the countrey, yea from West to East, these places of name above the rest standing thus in order shew themselves.

Havering an ancient retiring place of the Kings, so called of a Ring, which in that place a *Pilgrime* delivered as sent from S. J. *Baptist* (for so they write) unto K. *Edward* the Confessor: *Horn Church*, named in times past *Cornutum Monasterium*, that is, the horned Minister, for there shoot out at the East end of the Church certaine points of leade fashioned like hornes: *Rumford*, the glory whereof dependeth of a swine mercat; and *Giddy-hall*, an house adjoyning to it, which belonged to that Sir *Thomas Cooke* Major of London, whose great riches hoorded up together wrought him his greatest danger.

In Kent pag. 334. Tilbury.

Convennon the Isle.

Canvey.

Beamsfleet.

S. Shobery.

Anno 894.

Rochford.

Lord Rochford.

Lawlesse Court.

Havering.

Rumford. See the Annals.

For,

Berking.
Roding the river.
The Booke of Ely.

Chipping Angre.

Liber Inq. de Riparia.

Marthes.

Holes cut out.

Brent-wood.

Cæsaromagus
called in the
Itinerary table
Baromagus.South-Okin-
don.
Bruin.Thorndon.
Baron Petre.

Ashdowne.

For, being judicially arraigned, (innocent man as he was) of high treason, and through the incorrupt equity of Judge *Markham* acquit in a most dangerous time, yet was he put to a very grievous fine, and stript in manner of all that he was worth: *Brentwood* called by the Normans *Bou arse*, in the same sense, and by that name King *Stephen* granted a Mercat and a Faire there, to the Abbat of *S. Osib*; and many years after *Isabell Countesse of Bedford* daughter to King *Edward the Third* build a Chappell to the memory of *S. Thomas of Canterbury*, for the ease of the Inhabitants: *Engelstone* a Towne of note for nothing else but the Mercat and Innes for Travellers.

Heere am I at a stand, and am halfe in a doubt whether I should now slip as an abortive fruite that conjecture, which my minde hath travailed with. Considering there hath beene in this Tract the City *CÆSAROMAGUS*, and the same doubtfull in the Romanes time of especiall note, and importance; for, the very name, if there were nothing else, may evince so much, signifying as it doth *Cæsars City*, as *Drusus* the City of *Drusus*, which also should seeme to have beene built in the honour of *Cæsar Augustus*. For, *Suetonius* writeth thus, *Kings, that were in unity and league, founded every one in his owne Kingdome Cities named Cæsarea in honour of Augustus*. What if I should say that *CÆSAROMAGUS* did stand neere unto *Brentwood*, would not a learned Reader laugh at me, as one Soothsayer doth when he speaketh another? Certes, no ground I have nor reason to strengthen this my conjecture from the distance thereof, seeing the numbers of the miles in *Antonine* be most corruptly put downe, which nevertheless agree well enough with the distance from *COLONIA* and *CANONIUM*. Neither can I helpe my selfe with any prooffe by the situation of it upon the Roman high-way, which in this enclosed country is no where to be seene. Neither verily there remaineth heere so much as a shadow or any twinkling shew of the name *CÆSAROMAGUS*, unlesse it be (and that is but very slender) in the name of an *Hundred*, which of old time was called *Cæsarford*, and now *Cheasford Hundred*. Surely, as in some ancient Cities the names are a little altered, and in others cleane changed: so there be againe, wherein one syllable or two are most bee remaining: thus *CÆSARAUGUSTA* in *Spaine* is now altered to be *ragosa*; *CÆSAROMAGUS* in *France*, hath lost the name cleane and is called *Reims*, and *CÆSAREA* in *Normandy*, now *Cherbourg*, hath but one syllable left of it. But what meane I thus to trifle, and to dwell in this point? If in this quarter hereby, there be not *CÆSAROMAGUS*, let others seeke after it for me: If I please my wit, I assure you, to finde it out, although I have diligently laid forth to meet with it with net, and toile both of cares and cics.

Beneath *Brentwood* I saw *South-Okinon*: where dwelt the *Bruins* a Family famous as any one in this Tract: out of the two heires female whereof, being many times married to sundry husbands, *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolke*, the *Tro Berners*, *Harlestones*, *Heveninghams* and others descended. And of that house there males yet remaining in *South-hampton-shire*. Also, *Thorndon*, where Sir *John* Knight raised a goodly faire house, who now was by our Sovereigne King *James* created Baron *Petre of Whittle*. That *Thorndon* was in times past the dwelling place of a worshipfull Family of *Fitzlewis*: the last of which name if we may beleieve common report, by occasion that the house happened to be set on fire in the time of his wedding feast, was pitiously himselfe therein burnt to death, *Burghsted* and now short *Bursted*, that is, the place of a *Burgh*, which name our forefathers used to give unto many places that were of greater antiquity. This I once supposed to have been *CÆSAROMAGUS*: and what ever it was in old time, it is at this day but a good country Towne neere unto *Bylricay*, a Mercat towne of very good resort. Likewise *Ashdowne*, sometimes *Affandun*, that is, as *Marian* interpreteth it, the *Mouth of Aff*, where long since a bloody battaile was fought, in which King *Edmund* himselfe had at the beginning a good hand of the Danes and put them to rout, but straight waies the fortune of the field turning about, he was so defeated that he lost a great number of the English Nobility. In memoriall of which battaile we read that King *Canutus* the Dane built a Church afterward in that place, what time as

upon

upon remorse and repentance for the blood that he had shed, hee erected Chappels in what part soever he had fought any field, and shed Christian blood.

Not farre from thefe, is *Ralegh*, a prety proper towne: and it seemeth to be *Ragancia* in *Domesday booke*, wherein is mention made of a Castle that *Suenus* heere built, in which also we read thus: *There is one Parke and sixe Arpennes of Vineyard, and it yeeldeth twenty Modij of wine if it take well*. Which I note the rather, both for the French word *Arpen* and also for the wine made in this Isle. This *Suenus* was a man of great name and of noble birth, the sonne of *Robert*, sonne of *Wimarc*, but father to *Robert of Essex*: whose son was that Sir *Robert de Essex*, who in right of inheritance was the Kings Standard bearer, and who for that in a light skirmish against the Welsh, hee had not onely cast off his courage, but also cast away his Standard, being chalenged for treason, vanquished in duell, or combat, and thereof thrust into a *Cloystre*, forfeited a goodly patrimony, and livelod, which was confiscate to King *Henry the Second*, and helped to fill his Coffers. As for the Barony, it lay dead from that time a great while in the Kings hands, untill Sir *Hubert de Burgh* obtained it of King *John*.

Above this the shores retiring backe by little and little admit two creekes of the Ocean entering within them: the one, the neighbour inhabitants call *Crouch*, the other *Blackwater* (which in old time was named *Pant*.) In the said *Crouch*, by reason of the waters division, there lie scattered foure Islands carrying a pleasant greene hew, but by occasion of inundations, growne to be morish and fenny, among which these two bee of greatest name, *Wallos* and *Foulenesse*: that is, *The Promontory of Fowles*, which hath a Church also in it: and when the sea is at the lowest ebbe, a man may ride over to it. Betweene these Creekes lieth *Dengy Hundred*, in ancient times *Dannung*, passing plentifull in grasse, and rich in Cattaille, but Sheepe especially where all their doing is in making of Cheefe: and there shall ye have men take the womens office in hand and milke Ewes: whence those huge thicke Cheefes are made that are vented and sold not onely into all parts of England, but into forraigne nations also, for the rustical people, labourers, and handicraftes men to fill their bellies, and feed upon. The chiefe Towne heereof at this day is *Dengy*, so called as the Inhabitants are perwaded, of the Danes, who gave name unto the whole *Hundred*: Neere unto which is *Tiltingham*, given by *Ethelbert* the first Christian King of the English-Saxons, unto the Church of *Saint Paul* in *London*: and higher up to the North shore, flourished sometimes a City of ancient Record, which our forefathers called *Ishancester*. For, *Ralph Niger* writeth thus out of *S. Bede*. *Bishop Chad* baptized the East-Saxons nere to *Maldon* in the City of *Ishancester*, that stood upon the banke of the River *Pant*, which runneth hard by *Maldon*, in *Dengy Province*; but now is that City drowned in the River *Pant*. To point out the place precisely I am not able, but I nothing doubt that the River called *Freshwell* at this day, was heerebefore named *Pant*: seeing that one of the Springs thereof is called *Pantswell*, and the Monkes of *Coggeshall*, so termed it. Doubtlesse, this *Ishancester* was situate upon the utmost Promontory of this *Dengy Hundred*, where in these daies standeth *Saint Peters upon the wall*. For, along this shore much a doe have the inhabitants to defend their grounds with forced banks or walls against the violence of the Ocean, ready to intrude upon them. And I my selfe am partly of this minde, that this *Ishancester* was that *OTHONA* where a Band of the *Fortenses* with their Captaine, in the declination of the Roman Empire, kept their station or Guard under the Comes or Lieutenant of the *Saxon-shore*, against the depredations of the Saxon Rovers: For the altering of *OTHONA* to *ITHANA*, is no hard straining: and the situation thereof upon a Creeke into which many Rivers are discharged, was for this purpose very fit and commodious, and yet heere remaineth a huge ruine of a thicke Wall, whereby many Romanes Coines have beene found.

It seemeth not amisse to set downe, how King *Edward* the Confessour graunted by a brieft Charter the keeping of this *Hundred* to *Ranulph Peperking*, which I will willingly heere annex, to the end that wee, who sit every pricke and accent of the law, may see the upright simpliciry and plaine dealing of that age. And thus goeth the

Arpen.
Wine.
Radulphus de
Dicens.
The family of
the Essex.Dengy hund-
red.

Essex cheefe.

The Normans
call him Peve-
rell.

the tenour of it, as it was taken forth of the Kings Records in the Exchequer, by often exemplifying and copying it out, some words are mollified and made more familiar.

In the Records
Saint Hilary
terme E. 2. 17.
in the keeping
of the Treasur-
er and Cham-
berlaine of the
Exchequer.

Iche Edward Koning
Have given of my Forrest the keeping.
Of the Hundred of Chelmer and Dancing,
To Randolph Peperking and to his kindling :
With heorte and hinde, doe and bocke,
Hare and Foxe, Cat and Brocke,
Wild Fowell with his stocke,
Partrich, Fesant hen, and Fesant cocke :
With green and wilde stob and stocke.
To kepen and to yemen by all her might,
Both by day and eke by night
And Hounds for to hold
Good and swift and bolde :
Four Greahounds and six racches,
For Hare and Foxe, and wild Cattes.
And therefore ich made him my booke :
Witnesse the Bishop Wolston
And booke ylered many on,
And Swein of Essex our Brother
And taken him many other,
And our Steward Howelin
That by fought me for him.

This was, the plaine dealing, trueth, and simplicitie of that age, which make all their assurances whatsoever, in a few lines, and with a few gilt Circles. For, before the coming in of the Normans, as wee read in *Ingulpbus*, writing obligatory were made firm with golden crosses and other small signes or markes: but the men began the making of such Bills and Obligations, with a Print or Seale in wax, to which every ones speciall Signet under the expresse entituling of three or foure Witnesse, before many houses and land thereto passed by grant and bargain without script, Chartres, or book, onely with the Landlords sword or helmes, with his borne or cup. Tea and many Tunnals were demised with a spurte, or horse-cury-combe, with a bowe, and some with an arrow.

In the Creeke of Blackwater, which as I said, closeth the North side of this hundred, and is stored with those dainty Oysters, which wee call *Wassell Oysters*, be run two Rivers that water a great part of the Shire, *Chelmer* and *Frohmell*. The *Chelmer* flowing out of the inner part of the country which is woody, runneth the first by *Thaxted* a little Mercate Towne seated very pleasantly upon an high hill; also by *Tihey*, where *Maurice Fitz-Gilbert* founded in times past a small Abbey, unto *Estantes ad Turrim*, now *Esston*, which noble Gentleman surnamed *De Turrim* inhabited, as descended from *Godfrey of Louaine* brother to Henry the Sixth, the name Duke of *Brabant*, who being sent hither to keepe the Honor of Eye, his person flourished among the Peeres of this Realme to the time of King Edward the Third, when the heire generall was married into the house of *Bourchier*.

Thence it glideth downe to *Dunmow*, of old time called *Dunmaw*, and in the Tax booke of England *Dunmaw*, a Towne pleasantly situate upon an hill with a very gentle fall. Where, one *Juga* founded a Priory in the yeare 1111. But *William de Ward*, of whom *Juga* held (thus we finde it written in the private history of this Church) the Village of little *Dunmow*, by felony lost his Barony, and King Henry the First gave the same to *Robert*, sonne to *Gislebert* Earle of *Clare*, and to his heires, who had the honour of *Bainards Castle* in London: which *Robert* at that time was King Henrys brother. These be the very words of the Author: neither doe I thinke it lawfull for me to alter

Scales or fig-
ures first taken
up among Eng-
lishmen.

or reforme them otherwise than they are, although there be in them some *anachronisms* that is, a putting or mistaking of one time for another, a thing that we meet with otherwhiles in the best Historiographers. For, there had not beene, as then any Earle of *Clare* in the family of *Clare*.

Now let us for a while digresse and goe aside a little on either hand from the River. Not farre from hence is *Plaist* seated, so called in French of *Pleasant*, in times past, named *Espre*, the habitation both in the last yeeres of the English Saxons, and also afterwards, of the great Constables of England, as witnesseth *Ely booke*. At this towne the first *William Mandevidill* Earle of *Essex* beganne a Castle, and two Princes of great authority, *Thomas of Woodstocke* Duke of *Glecester* and Earle of *Essex* who founded heere a College, and *John Holland* Earle of *Huntingdon* brother to King *Richard* the Second by the mothers side, deprived of lost honorable title of Duke of *Excester*, when they could not keepe a meane betweene froward stubbernesse and servile obsequiousnesse, found thence their subversion. For *Thomas*, upon his rash and headstrong contumacy was on a sudden violently carryed from hence to *Calice* and there smothered: and *John*, for a sedicious conspiracy was beheaded in this place by King Henry the Fourth, that hee might seeme to have beene justly punished by way of satisfaction for the said *Thomas of Woodstocke*, of whose death hee was thought to bee the principall practiser, and procurer. From thence passeth *Chelmer* downe not farre from *Lez*, a little Abbay of old time founded by the *Gernons*, which at this day is the chiefe seat of the Barons *Rich*, who acknowledge themselves for this dignity beholden to *Richard Rich* a most wise and judicious person; Lord Chancellor of England under King Edward the Sixth, who in the first yeere of his raigne created him Baron *Rich*. A little beneath, standeth *Hatfield Peverell*, so denominated of *Randolph Peverell* the owner thereof, who had to wife a Lady of incomparable beaurty, in those daies, the daughter of *Ingelricke* a man of great nobility among the English Saxons: This Lady founded heere a College, which now is in manner quite plucked downe, and in a window of the Church, whereof there remaineth still a small part, lyeth entombed. She bare unto her husband *William Peverell Castellane of Dover*, Sir *Peter Peverell* Lord of *Brus* in the County of *Cambridge*: and unto King *William* the Conqueror whose Paramore shee was, *William Peverell* Lord of *Nottingham*. But now returne we to *Chelmer*, which by this time speedeth it selfe to *Chelmerford* commonly *Chenisford* (where, by the distance of the place from *CAMALODUNUM*, it may seeme that old *CANONIUM* sometimes stood). This is a good bigge Towne situate in the heart of the Shire betweene two Rivers, who as it were, agreed heere to joyne both their streames together: to wit *Chelmer* from the East, and another from the South, the name whereof if it be *Can*, as some would have it, we have no reason to doubt, that this was *CANONIUM*.

Famous it was within the remembrance of our fathers in regard of a small religious house built by *Malcome* King of Scots, now of note onely for the *Assises* (for so they call those Courts of Iustice wherein twice a yeere the causes and controversies of the whole County are debated before the Judges.) It beganne to flourish, when *Maurice* Bishop of London, unto whom it belonged, built the Bridges heere in the Raigne of Henry the First, and turned London way thither, which lay before through *Writtle*, a Towne right well knowne for the largenesse of the Parish: which, King Henry the Third granted unto *Robert Brus* Lord of *Anandale* in Scotland: (whose wife was one of the heires of *John* surnamed *Scot*, the last Earle of *Chester*) for that hee would not have the Earldome of *Chester* to bee divided among the distaves: and King Edward the Third, when as the posterity of the *Bruses* forsooke their allegiance, bestowed it upon *Humphrey Bobun* Earle of *Hereford* and of *Essex*. But now of late, when King *James* at his entrance to the Kingdome bestowed Barones bountifullly upon select persons, hee created Sir *John Petre* a right respective Knight, Baron *Petre* of *Writtle*. Whose father Sir *William Petre* a man of approved wisdom and exquisite learning, memorable not so much for those most honourable places and offices of State which hee bare, (as who was of the Privie Counsell to King

Barons Rich.

The Booke of
Saint Marins
in London.

canonium.

King Henry the Eighth, King Edward the Sixth, Queene Mary, and Queene Elizabeth, and sent oftentimes in Embassage to forreigne Princes) as for that being bred and brought up in good learning, he well deserved of learning in the University of Oxford, and was both pitifull and bounteous to his poore neighbours about him and at *Egerstone*, where he lyeth buried.

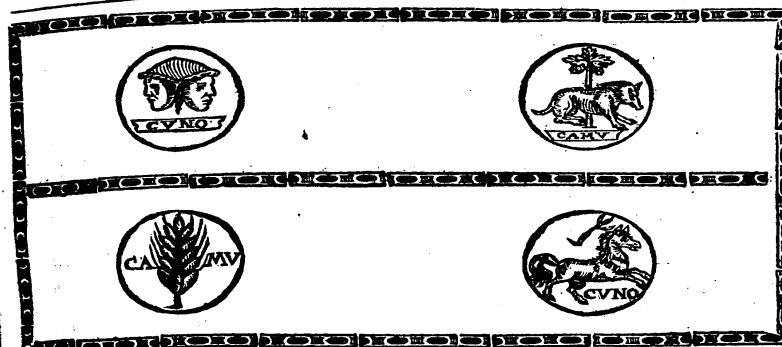
Froshwell the River, more truly called *Pant*, and neere to his mouth, *Blackwell* issuing out of a small spring about *Radwinter* that belonged to the Barons of *Colchester*, after it hath gone a long course and scene nothing but *Bocking* a far Parsonage, commeth to *Cogeshall*, a Mercate Towne, well knowne in times past for a Priory, *Cluniacke* Monkes built by King Stephen, and the habitation of ancient Kings thence surnamed *De Cogeshall*, from whose heire generall marryed into the old family of *Tirell*, there branched farre a faire propagation of the *Tirells* in this land and elsewhere. Then goeth on this water by *Easterford*, some call it *East-Surford*, and leaving some mile of *Whitbam* a faire through-faire and built by King Edward the elder, in the yeere 914. which also afterward was of the Honour of *Earle of Balden*; meeteth at length with *Chelmer*. Which now passing on which one channell not farre from *Danbury* mounted upon an high Hill, the habitation a time of the family of the *Darcies*, runneth hard by *Woodham-walters*, the ancient seate of the Lords *Fitz-Walters*: who being nobly descended were of an ancient race, derived from *Robert* the younger sonne of *Richard* sonne to *Earle Godbert*: but in the age more lately foregoing, translated by a daughter into the hands of the *Ratcliffes*, who being advanced to the Earldome of *Sussex* dwell now here from hence in *New Hall*, a stately and sumptuous house. This *New Hall* appeared sometime to the *Buslers* Earles of *Ormond*, and then hereditarily to Sir *Thomas* *len* Earle of *Wiltshire*, of whom King Henry the Eighth getting it by way of change, enlarged it to his exceeding great charges, and called it by a new name, *lien*, which for all that was never currant among the people. After this, *Chelmer* with other waters running with him, being divided by a River-Island, called that name, and now being called of some *Blacke-water* and of others *Pant*, *Blackwell* that ancient Colony of the Romanes CAMALODUNUM, which many hundred yeeres since adorned this shore. *Ptolemee* tearmeth it CAMUDOLANUM, *Antonine* CAMULODUNUM and CAMOLUDUNUM: But, *Pliny*, *Dio*, and an old marble stone, induce us to beleeeve that CAMALODUNUM is the right name. In the seeking out of this City, good God, how dim-sighted have some been: whereas it bewraied it selfe by the very name and situation; and shewed it selfe cleerely to them that are halfe blinde: A number have searched for it in the West part of this Isle, as that good man, who thought himselfe to carry, as one will say, the Sunne of Antiquity in his owne hand: others in the furthest part of England: others wholly addicted in opinion to *Leland* affirmed it to bee *Calden*: when as (the name scarce any whit maimed) it is called at this day, in stead of CAMALODUNUM, *Maldon*, in the Saxon Tongue *Walesune*, and *Walesune* the greater part of the word remaining yet entire and in use. Neither hath the expense remaine of the name onely perswaded me to this, but also the distance seldome in *Pliny* from *Mona*, and the very situation in the ancient Itinerary Table doe afford a most evident prooffe thereof. That this name was imposed upon CAMALODUNUM, of the God CAMULUS, I hardly dare imagine. Howbeit the *Lords* was worshipped under this name *Camulus*, both an old stone at Rome in the *Colostians*, and Altars discovered with this Inscription CAMULO DEO SANCTO ET FORTISSIMO, that is, TO CAMULUS THE HOLY AND MOST MIGHTY GOD, doe joyntly proove. And in an antique Coine of *Obobellinus*, whose royall Palace this was, (as I have already said) I have seene the portrait stamped of an head having an helmet on it, also with a speare, which may seeme to be that of *Mars*, with these letters, CAMV. But seeing this peece of money is now ready at hand to shew, I exhibite here unto you other expresse portraits of *Obobellinus* his peeces, which may be thought to have reference to this *Camalodunum*.

Cogeshall:
Tirell.
Easterford.
Whitham.

Camalodunum.

Maldon.

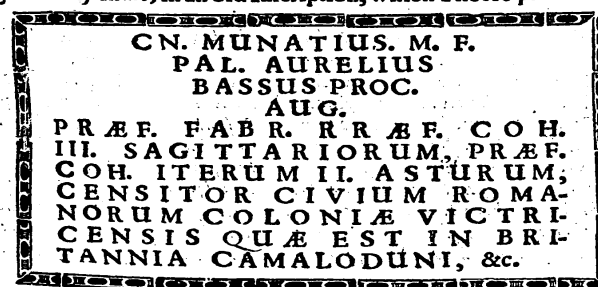
Camulus a God.



This *Camobelin* governed this East part of the Isle in the time of *Tiberius* the Emperour, and seemeth to have had three sonnes, *Admimus*, *Togodannus*, and *Cassius*. *Admimus* by his father banished, was entertained by *Caius Caligula* the Emperour what time as he made his ridiculous expedition into *Batavia*, that from thence he might blow, and breath out the terrour of his owne person over into Britaine. As for *Togodannus*, *Aulus Plautius* in a set battaile defeited and slew him, and over *Cassius*, whom, as I said, he discomfited and put to flight, hee rode ovan in petty triumph. This is that *Plautius*, who at the perswasion of *C. Verisus*, the Britaine a banished man (for there never want quarels one or other of Warre) was the first after *Iulius Caesar* that attempted Britaine under *Claudius*: whom *Claudius* himselfe, having shipped over the Legions, followed in person with the whole power of the Empire, and with Elephants (the bones of which beasts being found, have deceived very many) hee passed over the *Tamis* and put to flight the Britans, who upon the bank received and encountered him as he came toward them; and wonne with ease this *Camalodunum* the Kings seat. For which exploit after hee had named his sonne *BRITANNICUS*, and beene himselfe oftentimes saluted *Imperator*, within fixe months after he set first forth in his voyage, returned to Rome. But heereof have I have written before more at large, neither list I to iterate the same in this place.

Claudius in
Britannia.

When *Camalodunum* was thus brought under the Romanes subjection, *Claudius* planted a Colony there with a strong Band of old tried Souldiers, and in memoriall beereof ordained peeces of money to be stamped with this Inscription: COL. CAMALODUN. Out of which it is gathered, that this happened in the xii. yeere of his Empire, and in the yeere 52. after the Birth of Christ. And in regard of those old experienced souldiers of the fourteenth Legion called *Gemina Martia Victrix*, whom *Tacitus* tearmeth the *Subduers of Britaine*, brought thither and placed in it, it was named *COLONIA VICTRICENSIS*, and the Inhabitants *Cives Romanes*, that is, *Citizens of Rome*, in an old Inscription, which I heere present to you.



A

Servius.

A Colony (if it may be materiall to know so much) is *A Company of men* that have brought into one certaine place, built with houses to their hands, which they have and hold by a certaine right. For the most part, old souldiers that had served long, were brought to such a place, both that themselves might be provided for, and maintained, and also be ready in all extremity to helpe against Rebels, and enforce withall the Provincials in their duties by law required. These Colonies also were of great estimation, as being pety resemblances and images, as it were, of the City of Rome. Moreover they had their peculiar Magistrates both superior and inferior, of which because others have written sufficiently, I neede not to stand either upon them, or such like points. In this first Colony that the Romanes planted in Britaine, there was a Temple built unto * *Divus Claudius*, *Tacitus* tearmeth it, *The Altar of small dominion*, Whereof *Seneca* maketh mention in his Play, after this manner. *A good matter it is, faith hee, and not sufficient, that Claudius hath a Temple in Britaine which the Barbarous Nation adores, and prayeth unto, as to a God.* There were Priests also elected in honour of him, by name *Sodales Augustales*, which under a shew of Religion lavishly consumed the Britans goods. But after ten yeeres, fortune turned her wheel, and downe went this Colony. For, when those old souldiers brought into the territories which they had won, exercised extreame cruelty upon these filly people, by burning broiles of Warre which before were quenched brake out into flames, with greater flashes. The Britans under the leading of *Boudnica*, who also is called *Boadicea*, by maine force sacked and set on fire this Colony, lying unfortified and open all fence, and within two daies wonne the said Temple whereinto the souldiers had thronged themselves. The Ninth Legion comming to aide, they put to flight, and in one word slew of Roman Citizens and associates together threescore and three thousand. This slaughter was foretold by many Prodigies. The Image of *Minerva* in this City was turned backward and fallen downe: In their Senate house strange noises were heard: The Theater resounded with howlings and yellings: *Hausum* seene under the water of *Tamis*, and the Arme of the sea beneath it overthrew the bankes as red as blood to see to, which now (for what cause I know not) we call *Blacke water*, like as *Pisilome* termed it *DUMANUM*, under which name he ched a signification of *Blacknesse*: for, *Tdu*, in the British tongue soundeth much like *Blacks*. Yet, out of the very embers, the Romans raised it againe: For, *Antonine* the Emperour made mention of it many yeeres after. Howbeit in the English Saxon government it is scarce mentioned: Onely *Marianus* hath writtten, that *Edward* the sonne of *Alfred* repaired *Maldun* when it was fore shaken by the furious rage of the Dines, and then fortified it with a Castle. *William* the Norman, Conquerour of England, as we reade in his * *Commentary*, had in this Towne 180 houses in the time of occupation of *Burgesses*, and 18. Mansions wasted. But at this day, for the want of the Inhabitantes, and the bignesse, it is worthily counted one of the principal Townes in all *Essex*, and in Records named, *The Burgh of Maldon*.

It is a Haven commodious enough, and for the bignesse very well inhabited, being but one especiall street descending much about a mile in length. Upon the top of an hill answerable to the termination of *Dunum* which signified an *high*, and the situation, wherein I saw nothing memorable, unless I should mention two filly Churches, a desolate place of *White Friars*, and a small pile of Bricke built not long since by *R. Darcy*, which name hath bene respective heereabout.

Hence passing downe over the blackish water divided into two streames, by *Higbbridge*, I sought for an ancient place which *Antonine* the Emperour placed five miles from *Camalodunum*, in the way toward *Suffolke*, and called it *Ad ANSAM*.

This I have thought to have bene some Bound belonging to the Colony of *Camalodunum*, which resembled the fushion of *Ansa*, that is, *The handle or ear of a pail*. For, I had read in *Siculus Flaccus*, *The Territories* lying to *Calanias* were limited with drivers and sundry markes: In the limits there were set up for bound markes heere and there, and there another: in one place little Images, in another long earthen Vessels: here you should have little sword-blades, three square stones or Lozenges pointed, and elsewhere

The bounds of Colonies.

A writing to *Vitalis* and *Arcadius*; they were mere stones like flagons and small wine pipes: why might not therefore a stone fashioned like the handle of a pot bee set for a bound? Seeing that *Antonius* according to his wonted manner called it *Ad Ansam*, and not *Ansa*? But how religiously and with what ceremoniall complements, these bound-markes were in old time set, I will by way of digression set downe heere out of the same *Siculus Flaccus*. When they were to place their bound markes, the very stones themselves they did set upon the firme ground, hard by those places wherein they ment to pitch them, in pits or holes digged for the purpose, they annointed them and with wailes and goads bedecked them. This done, in those pits wherein they were to put them, after sacrifice made, and an unsported beast killed, upon burning firebrands covered over in the grave, they dipped in bloud, and thereupon they threw *Frankincense* and corne, *Hony* combs also and wine with other things, as the manner is to sacrifice unto gods of bounds and limits, they threw after the rest into the said pit. Thus when all these Vlands were consumed with fire, they pitched the said bound markes upon the hot ashes thereof, and so with carefull diligence fastened them strongly, and rammed them round about with fragments of stones, that they might stand the surer. But in what place soever this *Ad Ansam* was, I betake my selfe againe to my former opinion for the signification of the word: namely, that *Ad Ansam* was either a bound marke, or onely, a resting place or some Inne by the high way side under such a signe: and that I collect by the distance to have bene neere unto *Cogeshall*. Neither were they any things else but bound markes or Innes, that in the Romane age were named after the same forme of speech, *Ad Columnam*, *Ad Fines*, *Ad vires*, *Tabernas*, *Ad Rotam*, *Ad septem Frates*, *Ad Aquilam minorem*, *Ad Herculem*, &c. that is, *At the Pillar*, *At the Bounds*, *At the three Taverns*, *At the Wheele*, *At the seven Brethren*, *At the lesse Eagle*, *At Hercules*, &c.

Cogeshall.

And therefore to search more curiously into these matters, were nothing else but to hunt after the windes. Yet I will heere impart what I incidently happened upon in a private note, while I was inquisitive heereabout for *Ad Ansam*. In a place called *Westfield* three quarters of a mile distant from *Cogeshall* and belonging to the Abbey there, was found by touching of a plough a great brasen Pot. The Ploughmen supposing it to have bene hid treasure, sent for the Abbot of *Cogeshall* to see the taking up of it, and hee going thither met with *Sir Clement Harleston*; and desired him also to accompany him thither. The mouth of the Pot was closed with a white substance like paste or clay, as hard as burned bricke, when that by force was removed, there was found within it another Pot but that was of earth; that being opened there was found in it a lesser Pot of earth of the quantity of a Galkon covered with a matter like Velvet, and fastened at the mouth with a silke-lace. In it they found some whole bones and many peeces of small bones wrapped up in fine silke of fresh colour, which the Abbot tooke for the Reliques of some Saints, and layed up in his Vestuary. But this by way of digression, leaving it to your consideration.

From *Malden* the Shores drawne backe interraine the Sea in a most large and pleasant Bay, which yeeldeth exceeding great store of those Oysters of the best kinde, which we call *Wasseles*. And (that our Coasts should not be defrauded of their due fame and glory) I take these to bee those very Shores, which, as *Pliny* saith, served the Romanes Kitchens: seeing that *Mutianus* giveth unto British Oysters the third place after those of *Cizicum*; in these very words of his: *The Oysters of Cizicum be greater than those that come from Lucrinum, and sweeter than they of Britaine*.

But neither at that time, nor afterwards, when *Sergius Orata* brought those *Lucrine Oysters* into such name and great request, did the British Shores, as hee saith, serve Rome with Oysters. So that hee may seeme to have given the chiefe price unto British Oysters. Neither thinke I were those Oysters other than these which *Aulus* called *Adra*, that is, *Wonderfull*, in this Verse to *Paulinus*.

Lib. 9. cap. 54.

Mira Caledonius nonnunquam desegit astus.

The British Tides sometimes lay bare,
Those Oysters huge, that wonderous are.

P p

But

But, of these Oysters and of their pits or stewes in this Coast I will give thee leave to write, who being deinty toothed are judicious Clerkes in Kitchentry.

Into this Creeke, beside other Rivers, *Coln* sheddeth himselfe, which groweth to an head out of divers Springs in the North part of this Countrey, passeth by the Towne of *Hedningham* or *Hengham*, commonly called *Heningham*, where was a goodly faire proper Caste in times past, and the ancient habitation of the Earles of *Oxford* who procured a Mercat thereunto. Over against which, upon the other side of the River standeth *Sibble Heningham*, the place, as I have heard say, wherein was borne Sir *Iohn Hawkwood* (the Italians corruptly call him *Ancutbus*) whom they highly admired for his warlike prowesse, that the State of *Florence* in regard of his notable demerites adorned him with the statue of a man of Armes and an honorable Tombe, in testimony of his surpassing valour and singular faithfull service to their state. The Italians reſound his worthy Acts with full mouth, and *Paulus Iovius* in his *Elogia* commendeth him. But for my part it may suffice to adde unto them this **Tetrasticon* of *Inlius Feroldus*.

Hawkwood *Anglorum decus, & decus addite genti
Italica, Italico presidiumque solo.*

*Ut tumuli quondam Florentia, sic simulacri,
Virtutem Iovius donat honore suam.*

The glory prime of Englishmen, then of Italians bold,
O Hawkwood and to Italy a sure defensive hold:
Thy vertue *Florence* honoured sometime with costly grave,
And *Iovius* adorn's the fame now with a statue brave.

This renowned Knight thus celebrated abroad, was forgotten at home, for that some of his kinde souldierly followers founded a Chantery at *Castle Hengham* for him and for two of his military Companions, *Iohn Oliver* and *Thomas Kene* Equires.

From hence the River *Coln*, holding on his course by *Hawsted*, which was of the Family of the *Bauchiers*, whence came *Robert Bauchier* Lord Chamberlain of England in the time of King *Edward* the Third, and from him sprang a noble Progeny of Earles and Barons of that name. Thence by *Earles Coln* (so called of the Sepulture there of the Earles of *Oxford*) where *Aubrey de Vere* in the time of King *Henry* the First founded a little Monastery and became himselfe a religious Monke, it comes to *Colonia*, whereof *Antonine* the Emperour maketh mention, and which he noteth to bee a different place from the Colony *Casualodunum*. Whether this tooke name of a Colony hither brought, or of the river *Coln*, which selfe had neede to tell us: I would rather derive it from the river, seeing, that many little Townes situate upon it, are named *Coln*. A *Earles Colne*, *Walden Colne Engaine*, *Whites Colne*, bearing the names all of their Lords. The Britons led this *Caer Coln*, the Saxons *Colceaster*, and wee *Colchester*. A proper Burrough it is, well traded and pleasantly seated, as being situate upon the bank of an hill, stretching out from West to East, walled about, beautified with 15. Churches besides that large and stately one, without the walles, which *Enda Senn* in the time of King *Henry* the First consecrated unto *Saint Iohn*, now ruined, and converted into a private dwelling house. In the midst of the Towne, there is a Castle now ready to time ready to fall: which as our Historians write, *Edmund* the sonne of *Alfred* raised from the ground, what time as he repaired *Colchester* defaced with walle long after *Maud* the Emperesse gave it to *Alberic Vere* to assure him to her Party.

The infinite deale of ancient Coine daily gotten out of the ground there doth most plainly shew that this flourished in the Roman time in happy estate. Yet have light of no peeces more ancient than of *Gallienus*. For the most were such as had upon them the Inſcriptions of the *Tetrici*, and the *Victorini*, of *Posthumus*, *C. Causus*, *Constantine*, and the Emperours that followed him. The Inhabitants affirme, that

Flavia Julia Helena the mother of *Constantine the Great* was borne and bred there, being the daughter of King *Coch*, and in memory of the Crosse which shee found, they give for their Armes a Crosse enrailed betweene foure Crownes: whence it is, that our *Neckham* as touching her, and this place came out with these Verses, although *Apelle* was not greatly his friend therein,

Effulsiſt sydus visæ, Colceſtria lumen

Septem Climatis lux radiosa dedit.

Sydus erat Constantinus, decus imperiale

Servij huic flexo poplite Roma potens.

From out of thee, O *Colchester*, there shone a Starre of life,
The raies whereof to Climats seven gave great and glorious light,
This Starre was *Constantine the Great*, that noble Emperour,
Whom *Rome* in all obedience lay prostrate to adore.

Verily shee was a woman of life most holy, and of invincible resolution and constancy in propagation of Christian Religion: Whereupon in ancient Inſcriptions she is every where named *PIISSIMA*, and *VENERABILIS AUGUSTA*, that is, Most Devout, and VENERABLE EMPRESSE. Beneath this, where the River *Coln* runneth into the Sea, standeth to be seene *Saint Osbert*, a little Towne, whose ancient name, which was *Chic*, is growne out of use by reason of *Osib* the Virgin of royall Parentage, who being wholly devoted to the Service of God, and stabbed there to death by the Danish Pirates, was of our Ancestours honoured for a Saint: and in her memoriall *Richard* Bishop of *London* about the yeare 120. built a religious house, of Regular Chanons. But now it is the chiefe seate of the right honourable Lords *Darcy*, called *De Chic*, whom King *Edward* the Sixth advanced to the honour of Barons when hee created Sir *Thomas Darcy* his Counsellour, Vice chamberlaine, and Captaine of the Guard, Lord *Darcy of Chic*.

From hence the Shore shooting out, buncheth forth as farre as to the Promontory *Nesse*, which in the English-Saxon tongue is called *Eadulphes merr*. What hath beene found in this place, have heere out of the words and credit of *Ralph* the Monke of *Coggeshall*, who wrote 350. yeares agoe. In King *Richard*'s time, on the Sea shore, as a Village called *Eadulphesse*, were found two teeth of a certaine Giant, of such a bignesse, that two hundred such teeth as man have now a daies might bee cut out of them. These saw I as *Coggeshall* (quoth hee) and not without wondering. And such another Giantlike thing (I wot not what) as this, was in the beginning of *Queene Elizabeth*'s Raige digged up by *R. Candish* a Gentleman, neere unto this place. Neither doe I deny, but there have beene men, that for their huge bodies, and firme strength were wonderful to behold: whom God, as *S. Austin* saith, would have to live upon the earth, thereby to teach us, that neither beauty of body, nor staleness of stature, are to be counted simply good things, seeing they bee common as well to Infidels as to the godly. Yet may we very well thinke, that which *Suetonius* hath written, namely, that the huge limmes of monstrous Sea-creatures else where, and in this Kingdome also, were commonly said and taken to have beene Giants bones.

From this Promontory, the shore bendeth backe by little and little to the mouth of *Stowe*, a place memorable for the battaile at Sea there fought betweene the English and Danes in the yeare 884. where now lyeth *Harewich* a most safe Road, whence it hath the name: For, *hæp* in the English-Saxon tongue, betokeneth a Station, or a creeke where an Army encamped. The Towne is not great, but well peopled, fortified by Art and Nature, and made more sensible by *Queene Elizabeth*. The salt water so creeke about it, that it almost insulateeth it, but thereby maketh the Springs so brackish, that there is a defect of fresh water, which they fetch some good way off.

This is the *Stowe*, that running betweene *Essex* and *Suffolke* serveth as a bound to them both, and on this side watereth nothing else but rich and fruitful fields:

But not farre from the head thereof standeth *Bumhead*, which the Family of *Barony* held by *Barony*, from whom the *Wentworths* of *Gosfield* are descended.

And what way this Country looketh toward Cambridge-shire *Barlow* *Barlow* it selfe, well knowne now, by reason of foure little hills or *Barries* cast up by mans hand: such as in old time were wont to be raised (so some would have it) as *Tombes* for Soldiers slaine, whose Reliques were not easie to be found. But when a fifth and sixth of them were not long since digged downe, three troughes of stone were found, and in them broken bones of men, as I was informed. The country people say that they were reared after a field there fought against the Danes. For, *Danes* which with bloud-red berries, commeth up heere plenteously, they still call by another name than *Dane-bloud*, of the number of Danes that were there slaine, yearly beleiving that it blometh from their bloud.

A little below standeth upon a hill *Walden* of *Saffron*, called *Saffron Walden*, among the fields looking merrily with most lovely *Saffron*. A very good Merchetowne incorporated by King *Edward* the Sixth with a Treasurer, two Chamberlaines and the Commonalty. Famous in times past it was for a Castle of the *Magnavilles* (which now is almost vanished out of sight) and an *Abbey* adjoyning, founded in the very commodious in the year 1136: wherein the *Magnavilles* founders thereof were buried. *Geffrey de Magnavilla* was the first that gave light and life (as it were) to this place. For *Maude* the Empreſſe in these words (out of her very Patent they) gave unto him *Newport* (a good bigge Towne, this is hard by). For *John* a *beaumas* wont to pay that day whereon (as her words are) my father King *Henry* was slaine dead: and to remove the *Mercat* from *Newport* into his Castle of *Walden*, with all the *flomes* that before time in better manner appertained to that *Mercat*, to wit in *Toll*, *pay* and other *customes*, and that the *waies* of *Newport* were unto the water banks *be* straight according to the old custome into *Walden*, upon the ground forfeited unto us: at that the *Mercat* of *Walden* be kept upon *Sunday* and *Thursday*: and that a *Fair* be kept at *Walden* to begin on *Whitsunday* even, and to last all the *Whitsun* weeke. (And from that time, by occasion of this *Mercat*, for a great while it was called *Cheping Walden*, as it is in the Booke of *Walden* *Abbey*, but the said *Geffrey* appointed *Walden* to be the principall place and seat of his honour and Earldome for him and his Successors. *Whith* where hee built the *Abbey* had plenty of waters, which rising there continually detoured never faille. Late it were the *Sunne* riseth and shineth there, and with the *foonest* beards *for* carry away his light, for that the *hilles* on both sides stand against it.

That place now they call *Audley End*, of Sir *Thomas Audley* Lord *Chancellor* of England, who changed the *Abbey* into his owne dwelling house. This *Time*, created by King *Henry* the Eighth *Baron Audley* of *Walden*, left one sole daughter at heire *Margaret*, second wife to *Thomas Howard* Duke of *Norfolk*, of whom descended Lord *Thomas*, Lord *William*, Lady *Elizabeth*, and Lady *Margaret*. The said *Thomas* employed in sundry Sea-services with commendation *Queene Elizabeth* *Queen* by Writ unto the *High Court* of *Parliaments*, among other Barons of the *Realm*, by the name of Lord *Howard* of *Walden*. And King *James* of late girded him with the sword of the Earldome of *Suffolke*, and made him his Chamberlaine: *Whith* place hath begunne a magnificent Building. Neere to another house of *Whith* *Sturford*, there was a Towne of farre greater antiquity, hard by *Walden*, in the border of the Shire, which now of the old *Burgh*, the rustick people call *Burrow Bank*, where remaine the footings onely of a Towne lying in *Walden*, and the manifest tract of the very walles. Yet will I not say, that it was *Walden* *FAUSTINI*, which *Antonine* the Emperour placeth in this Tract: and *Antonine* *Ingrata* hand leti spacia destinet campi, *Sed rure vero, barbarique latantur*.

It takes not up large ground that yeelds no gaine,

But Country like, is homely rude and plaine:

Yet dare not I once dreame that this is that *Villa Faustini*, which in these and other Verses is by that pleasant and conceited Poet *Martiall*, depicted

in his *Epigrams*. The fieldes heere on every side (as I said) smell sweetly, and smile pleasantly with *Saffron*, a commodity brought into England in the time of King *Edward* the Third. This in the moneth of July every third yeere, when the heads thereof have been plucked up and after twenty daies spitted or set againe under mould, about the end of September they put forth a whitish blew flower, out of the middle whereof there hang three redde fillets of *Saffron* (we call them *Chives*) which are gathered very early in the morning before the Sunne rising, and being plucked out of the flower, are dried at a soft fire. And so great increase commeth heereof that out of every acre of ground there are made fourescore or an hundred pounds weight of *Saffron*, while it is moist: which being dried yeelds some twenty pound in weight. And that, which a man would marvell more at, the ground which three yeeres together hath borne *Saffron*, will beare abundance of *Barley* eightene yeeres together without any dunging or manuring, and then againe beare *Saffron* as before if the inhabitants there have not misinformed me, or I misconceived them.

More into the South is *Clavering* seated, which King *Henry* the Second gave unto Sir *Robert Fitz-Roger* (from whom the family of *Evers* are issued.) The posterity of this Sir *Roger*, after they had a long time taken their name of their fathers forename, or Christen-name according to that ancient custome, as *John Fitz-Roger*, *Robert Fitz-John*, &c. afterwards, by the commandement of King *Edward* the First, they assumed from hence the name of *Clavering*. But of these I am to speake in *Northumberland*. *Stansted Montfitchet* heere also putteth up the head: which I will not passe over in silence, considering it hath been the Baronic or habitation in times past of the family *De Monte Fixo*, commonly *Montfitchet*, who bare for their Armes three *Chevrons* Or, in a shield *Gules*, and were reputed men of very great nobility. But five of them flourished in right line: and at the last three sisters were seized of the inheritance, *Margaret* wife of *Hugh De Boleber*, *Aveline* wedded to *William De Foribus* Earle of *Amurle*, and *Philip* wife to *Hugh Playz*. The posterity male of this *Hugh* flourished within the remembrance of our great Grandfathers, and determined in a daughter married to Sir *John Howard* Knight, from whose daughter by Sir *George Vere*, descended the Barons *Laimir*, and the *Wingfeldes*.

And a little below, is *Hastingsbury* to be seene, the residence of the Barons *Mortley*: of whom I shall speake more in *Norfolk*. And close to this, standeth an ancient Fort or Military tenſe thereof named *Walbery*: and more East-ward *Barrington Hall*, where dwelleth that right ancient Family of the *Barringtons*, which in the Raigne of King *Stephen* the Barons of *Montfitchet* enriched with faire possessions, and more ennobled their house in our fathers remembrance by matching with one of the daughters and coheires of Sir *Henry Pole*, Lord *Montacute*, sonne of *Margaret* Countesse of *Salisbury*, descended of the *Bloud Royall*.

Neither is *Hatfield Regis*, commonly called of a broad spread Oke, *Hatfield Brad-oke* to be omitted, where *Robert Vere* Earle of *Oxford* built a Priory, and there lieth entombed crosse-legged with a French inscription, wherein he is noted to be first of that name *Robert*, and third Earle of *Oxford*.

After the coming of the Normans, *Maude* the Empreſſe, Lady of the *English* (for so shee stiled herselfe) created *Geffrey De Magnavilla*, usually called *Mandeville*, son to *William* by *Margaret* daughter and heire of *Endo* the Steward or *Shewar*, the first Earle of *Essex*, that shee might so by her benefits oblige unto her a man both mighty and martiall. Who in those troublesome times under King *Stephen* depoyled of his estate made an end of his owne turbulent life with the sword. And heeverily for his wicked deeds (as I finde in an old Writer) justly incurred the worlds censure and sentence of excommunication: in which while hee stood, hee was deadly wounded in the head at a little Towne called *Burwell*. When he lay at the point of death ready to give his last gaspe there came by chance certaine Knights *Templars*, who laid upon him the habit of their religious Profession signed with a red Crosse, and afterwards when hee was full dead, taking him up with them, enclosed him within a Coffin of Lead, and hunge him upon a tree in the Orchard

Orchard of Old Temple at London. For in a reverent awe of the Church they durst not bury him, because he dyed excommunicated. After him succeeded *Geffrey Fitz-Pierre*, who was restored by Henry the Second to his fathers honours and Estate for himself and his heires; but he having no children left them to his brother *William*, who by his wife was also Earle of *Albemarle*, and dyed likewise in his greatest glory and lesse. Some yeares after *K. John* promoted *Geffrey Fitz-Pierre*, Justicer of England, wife and grave Personage unto this honour in consideration of a great masse of money and Title by his wife *Beatrice* the eldest daughter of *William de Say*, who was the sisters sonne of that great *Geffrey de Magnavill*, the first Earle of *Essex*. *The Fitz-Pierre*, a man (as an old Authour writeth) *Passing well monied had formerly with the Bishop of Ely the Kings chiefe Justicer, for a great peece of money presently paid by intreaty beside; and then claimed, and demanded the Earledome in his wifes right, giving the daughter of William Say eldest brother to Geffrey Say. Who gave him full satisfaction thereof, (against Geffrey Say) and required the money that hee promised: which within short time hee received of him every penny well and truly paid, for so hee brought into the Kings coffers. Thus being admitted, and confirmed by the Kings Letters Patent, hee boldly possessed taking Homage of all that held of him in Knights service. And so was given the sword of the Earledome of Essex by King John at the solemnity of his Coronation. This Geffrey Fitz-Pierre was advanced to the high estate of Justicer of England, King Richard the First, when hee removed Hubert Archbishop of Canterbury from that Office by the Popes peremptory command: for that Bishops ought not to intermeddle in secular affaires. This Place the said Geffrey Fitz-Pierre executed with great commendation preserving by his wisdom the Realme from that confusion which it after fell into by King Johns unadvised carriage. His two Sonnes *Geffrey* and *William*, assumed unto them the surname of *Magnavill* or *Mandevill*, and enjoyed this honour successively. As for *Geffrey*, hee by his wife was Earle of *Gloucester* also, and being a young man lost his life at a Turnement. *William* tooke part with *Lewis France* against King John, and departed out of this World without issue. Their being thus dead childlesse, their sisters sonne *Humphrey de Bohun* Earle of *Hertford* and high Constable of England, succeeded in their roome.*

Of this mans Posterity male, there succeeded many yeares together one after another, Earles of *Hertford* and of *Essex*: of whom I will speake among the Earles of *Hertford*, seeing that they wrote themselves Earles of *Hertford* and of *Essex*. *Eleonor* the eldest daughter of the last of these *Bohuns*, being given in marriage together with the Title of *Essex* unto *Thomas of Woodstocke* Duke of *Gloucester*, bare me to him a daughter named *Anne*, who had for her first Husband *Edmund* Earle of *Stafford*, from whom came the Dukes of *Buckingham*: and for her second *Sir William Bourchier*, unto whom King Henry the Fifth gave the Earledome of *Essex* in *Normandie*. This *William* of her body begat *Henry Bourchier*, whom King Edward the fourth invested in the Dignity of the Earledome of *Essex*, in regard hee had married his Aunt, and was descended from *Thomas of Woodstocke*. Hee had to succede him another Henry, his Grand-childe, who being cast out of the saddle by a flying horse, lost his life, leaving behinde him one onely daughter *Anne*, who being then little respected, King Henry the Eighth presently and all at once made *Thomas Cromwell*, (whom hee had used as his Instrument to suppress and abolish the Popes authority) Earle of *Essex*, Lord Great Chamberlaine of England and Knight of the Order of Saint George: whom before for his reaching politique head, hee had made Baron *Cromwell* of *Okeham*, *The Kings Vicer general in Spiritual matters, and Lord of the Privie Seal*: and all these honours were heaped upon him within the compasse of five yeares.

But in the fifth moneth after hee was Earle, hee lost his head and so had the interlude of his life a bloody *Catastrophe*, as most of these have, who are busied in matters of the greatest affaires. And then the same King thought *Sir William Parr*, upon whom hee had bestowed in marriage *Anne* the onely daughter and heire of the foresaid *Henry Bourchier*, worthy also to be entituled Earle of *Essex*.

Register of
Walden Monastery.

See the Earles
of Hertford.

Eliz. sister to
Rich. Duke of
York.

But at the last, after *Parr* was dead without issue, *Walter D'Essex* Vicount *Hertford*, whose great Grandmother was *Cecilie Bourchier* Sister to *Henry Bourchier* whom I named right now, through the gracious favour of *Queene Elizabeth*, received this dignitie of the Earledome of *Essex*, and left it to his Sonne *Robert*. Who being adorned with singular gifts of nature, and supported besides with the speciall favour of his most gracious Prince, grew so fast unto such honour, that all England conceived good hope hee would have fully equalled, yea and farre surpassed the greatest vertues and praises of all his Progenitours. But (alas) whiles he was carried away with popularity, and made hast to out goe his hopes, hee cast himselfe headlong into destruction: as many more have done, who despising that which might come by patience with security, have made choise to hasten thereto before time with their finall overthrow.

But our most gracious Sovereigne King *James* of his Royall benignitie hath restored his Sonne *Robert* to his blood; and honours by Parliament authority.

There be counted in this County Parish Churches 415.

ICENI.



ICENI.



He Region next unto the Trinobantes which afterwards was called East-England, and containeth Suffolke, Norfolk, and Cambridge-shire with Huntingdon-shire, was inhabited in times past by the ICENI, called elsewhere amisse TIGENI: and in Ptolomee more corruptly SIMENI: whom also I have thought becomen have been in Cæsar by a confused name, termed CENIMAGNI: and in thinke induced I was, partly by that most neere affinity betwene these names ICENI, and CENIMAGNI, and in part by the consent of Cæsar and Tacitus together. For Cæsar writeth that the Cenimagni yielded themselves unto the Romans: which Tacitus recordeth that the Icenii likewise did, in these words: They willingly joyned in amity with us. But (the which maketh most to the clearing of this poynt) in a Manuscript old booke in CENIMAGNI, we finde written with the word divided in twaine, CENI AGNI. For which if I might not be thought somewhat too bold a Critick, I would reade instead thereof ICENI, REGNI. Neither verily can you finde the Cenimagni elsewhere in all Britain, if they be a diverse people from the Icenii and Regni. But of this name ICENI, there remaine in this tract very many footings, if I may so tearme them, as Ikensthworth, Ikensthorpe, Ikbortow, Iken, Ikening, Ichlingham, Eike, &c. Yea and that high street-way, which went from hence, the Historians of the former age every where name Ichenild-Street, as one would say, the Icenies street.

Ichenild-Street.

What should be the reason of this name (so love me Truth) I dare not say, unless one would fetch it from the Wedge-like-forme of the country, and say lieth Wedgewise upon the Sea. For the Britans in their language call a Wedge Iken, and for the same cause a place in Wales, by the Lake or Meere Lhannigid, is of that forme named Lhan-yken, as Welsh-Britans enformed me: and in the very same sense a little country in Spaine (as Strabo writeth) is called SPHEN, that is, The wedge, and yet the same seemeth not to resemble a wedge so neere, as this of ours doth.

Spben.

A mighty nation this was, as saith Tacitus, and after they had taken themselves to the protection of the Romans, never shaken nor troubled until Claudius his time. For then, when as Ostorius the Romane Lieutenant raised fortifications upon the rivers and disarmed the Britans, they assembled their forces and made head against him: but after that the Romanes had broke through the rampier, where with they had fenced themselves, they were com-

A shed not without great slaughter. In which fight verily, they performed many worthy acts, and M. Ostorius the Lieutenants sonne wonne the honour of saving a Citizens life. When this warre was thus hushed, scarce 12. yeeres had gone over their heads, when a new tempest of warre arose upon these occasions. Prasutagus King of these Icenii, to secure (though it were with the hurt of his own private estate) his kinred from calamity, ordained by his last will and testament Nero the Emperor to be his heire, supposing that by this obsequious service of his (let Tacit. speak for me a while) his Kingdom and house both should be safe from all injury; which fell out cleane contrary: so that his Kingdome was wasted by the Centurions, and his house by slaves, as if they had been subdued by force. And now first of all, his wife Boodicia, who also is called Boudicca was whipped, and her daughters deflowered. All the principall men of the Icenii, as though they had received the whole Country in free gift were stript of their goods, and turned out of their ancient inheritances: those also of the Kings stocke and blood accounted no better than bondslaves. By occasions of which grievous injuries and for fear of greater indignities (for so much they had been reduced into the forme of a province) in all hast they tooke armes, having withall solicited the Trinobantes to rebellion, and others also who had not as yet been inured to bondage: These by privie conspiracies agreed to resume their libertie, being incensed with most bitter and deadly hatred against the old souldiers planted at Maldon above said. Thus began a most dangerous warre to kindle, which was set more on a light fire by the greedy covetousnesse of Seneca, who about that time exacted with extremitie 400000. Sesterces, an hundred times told, (which amount to three hundred thousand pounds of our money) so increased by his biting usurious contracts.

Seneca his usury in Britanny.

In this warre, that I may be brieve, that Boodicia, whom Gildas seemeth to call the crafty Lionesse, wife to Prasutagus, slew outright of Romanes and their associates fourescore thousand, raised Caimalodunum their Colonie, and the free to the Verulamium. The ninth Legion she discomfited, and put to flight Catus Decianus the Procuratour: but at length she being put to the worst by Suetonius Paulinus in a pitched field, with an invincible courage and resolution died (as Tacitus writeth) by drinking a cup of poison; or as Dio saith, by sicknesse. In the heat of this war, Xiphilinus recordeth out of Dio, that the Britans especially worshipped the Goddesse VICTORIE under the name of ANDARTES, which the Greeke booke in another place calleth Andraestes: also that in her sacred grove, they sacrificed prisoners alive in most barbarous and savage manner. And yet the Britans in these daies acknowledge no such name of Victorie, neither know I what the meaning of it should be, unless, as the Latins have called Victorie Victoriam, a vincendo, that is, of winning: the Sabins acunam, ab Vevacuando, that is, of emptying and making rid-dance: and the Grecians NIKHN, that is, of not yeelding or giving backe: so the Britans named it Anaraith, of overthrowing; For, so they terme a mischievous and deadly overthrow. But thus much slightly by the way. From those times ever since no mention is there in authors of the Icenii, neither

Andares or Andraestes. The Goddesse Victory.

In Kent.

* Earle or
Lieutenant.
* Seven king-
domes.

East-Angle.

Ulf kins.

Ralph Presi-
dent of East-
Angle.

can any thing by reading be found, but that the Romans, when their Empire went apace to decay, did set a new officer over the sea coasts along these and other countries to restraine the piracies and robberies of the Saxons, whom, as I have said heeretofore, they called * Comes of the Saxons shore along Britaine.

But when the English Saxons now had established their * Heptarchie in this Iland, this province became part of the Kingdome of East Angles, which of the site thereof Eastward they named in their language, East-angle-þyre, that is, The Kingdome of East English: and it had for the first King thereof, Vffa, whence his successors were a long time called Vff Kines, who seem to have been Vassals sometimes to the Kings of Mercia, and sometimes to the Kings of Kent. Whose offspring being come to an end in S. Edmund; the Danes overran this country most piteously for the space of 50. yeares or thereabout, afflicting it with all the calamities that accompany the wars: untill that King Edward the elder having subdued them united it at length to his owne Kingdome of the West-Saxons. But afterwards, it had peculiar Presidents and Governors: which honorable place at the first comming in of the Normans, and a while after one Ralph born in the lesser Brittain held; a man of a perfidious disposition and disloyall, who at a celebration of a marriage in most sumptuous manner, wickedly with many more conspired the death of William the Conqueror: but in vaine it was to him for secrecy and trust, among so many privie to the conspiracy. For, it was discovered, and he deprived of his dignity was attainted, and the rest beheld. In these things are to be handled more at large by the Historians: and now let us goe in hand with that which belongeth properly, to our purpose, that is, the place themselves. What kind of country this was, behold how Abbo Floriacensis, who lived in the yeare of Christ 970. hath pictured out in these words: This part which is called East Angle or East England is renowned, as for other causes, so in this regard, that it is watered almost on every side: being on the South and East environed with the Ocean, and on the North-east with huge Fennes foked in moisture, which rising by reason of the level ground from the midst in manner of all Britaine, for the space of a hundred miles and more doth descend with the greatest rivers into the sea. But of that side which lieth Westward the Province it selfe is continuat to the rest of the Iland, and therefore passeth throughout: but, least it should be overrun with the often irruptions and invasions of enemies, it is fenced along with a banke like unto a wall, and a Trench: Inward by the soile is fruitfull enough, and the country of a pleasing fresh hue, with pleasant Orchards, Gardens, and groves, most delightful for hunting, notable for pastures, and not meanly stored with sheepe and other cattell. I say nothing of the fishfull rivers, considering that of the one side the sea licketh it with his Tongue: and of the other side there are by reason of the broad Fennes and wide Marishes an infinite number of pooles two or three miles over. Which Fennes doe afford to a multitude of Monkes their desired private retyrings of a recluse and solitary life: wherein as long as they are enclosed, they need not the solitarinesse of any desert Wildernesse. Thus saith Abbo.

Suffolk.



SOUTH-FOLKE or SUFFOLKE.

SUFFOLKE, which wee must speake of first, in the Saxon Tongue *Suth-fole*, that is, *South-folke*, or people in respect of *Northfolke*, hath on the West side Cambridge-shire, on the South the River *Stoure*, which divideth it from *Essex*: on the East side the German Sea, and on the North two little Rivers, *Ouse the least*, and *Waveney*, which flowing out as it were of the same Fountaine, runne divers wayes, and sever it apart from *Norfolke*. A large country it is, and full of havens, of a far and fertile Soile, (unlesse it be Eastward) being compounded (as it is) of clay and marle: by meanes whereof, there are in every place most rich and goodly corne fields, with pastures as battable, for grazing and feeding of cattell. And great store of cheefes are there made, which to the great commodity of the Inhabitants are vented into all parts of England: Nay into Germany, France, and Spaine also, as *Pantheon* the Physician writeth, who stucke not to compare these of ours for color, and tast both with those of *Placentia*: but he was no dainty toothed scholar out of *Aptines* schoole. Neither bee there wanting woods heere, which have beene more plentifull, and parkes, for many there are lying to Noble mens and Gentlemens houses replenished with game.

Cheefes!

This County was divided politically into three parts: whereof one is called the *Geldable*, because out of it there is gathered a Tribute: a second, *Saint Edmunds liberty*, for that it belonged to his Abbay: the third *Saint Audries liberty*, because it appertained to *Ely Abbay*, unto which our Kings in times past granted certaine territories with *Sach* and *Such*, as saith *Ely Booke*, without any exception either of Ecclesiastical or secular jurisdiction. But let us survey it *Chorographically*, and beginning at the East side take a view of the better and more remarkeable places.

Where it lyeth West and toward Cambridge-shire, in the very limite standeth *Ixning*, more famous in times past than now. For *Audre* the Virgin K. *Annas* daughter and canonized for a Saint, was heere borne, *Ralph* also Earle of this East England heere entred into conspiracy against *William* the Conquerour, and *Hervy* the first Bishop of *Ely* made a caufey or high way from hence to *Ely*.

Newmarket Heath.

But now, for that *Newmercate* is so neer, whither men resort with their wares and commodities more frequently, it hath begunne to decay. That this *Newmercate* is a Towne of late dayes built, the very name it selfe doth import: and it is situate in such sort, that the South part thereof belongeth to Cambridge-shire, the North side to Suffolke: and both of them have their severall small Churches: whereof this acknowledgeth *Ixning*, the former *Ditton* or *Dichton*, for their mother. Heereof I have found by reading nothing, but that under King *Henry* the Third, Sir *Robert L. Isle* gave one part of it in franke marriage with his daughter *Cassandra* unto Sir *Richard de Argenon*, from whom the *Alingtons* are descended.

Newmercate, Newmarket Heath.

Heere lyeth out a great way round about, a large Plaine, named of this Towne, *Newmarket Heath*, consisting of a sandy and barren ground yet greene withall, wherein is to be seene that wonderfull Ditch, which, as if it had bene cast by the devill, the common fort call *Devils Dike*, whereas in very truth, most certainly it is knowne to be one of them, wherewith the Inhabitants, (as *Abbo* writeth) fenced themselves against the inrodes of their enemies, as shall bee shewed more at large when we are come to Cambridge-shire. Yet in the meane time, I am heere to advertise the Reader, that the least of all these ditches sheweth it selfe two miles from hence betwene *Snail-well* and *Moulton*.

More within the Country is that renowned Towne of *Saint Edmund*, which in the Saxons age, men called *Bebeapic-gucop*: and in the time of the Britans, as it should seeme, was that *VILLA FAUSTINI*, whereof *Antonine* maketh mention: for of that opinion

S. Edmunds Bury.

Guord or
worth.Bery the
Britan.Ostanes bur-
ens.

Everiden.

* Now but two.

tion was *Talbot* a man right skillfull in antiquities, and very much conuer-
sant in the part of England. The distance also, as well from the *Island*, as from *Calan*,
Antonine agreeth well enough: And as *Villa* in the Latine Tongue significeth
Gentlemans house standing upon his land, so *Gueord*, in old English betokeneth
same. For, that *Abbo* afore said, interpreteth *Bederic* *gueord*, by these wordes
Cortis, that is, *Villa*, that is to say, *Bederic* *Court*, *Farme*, or *Mansion house*.
That, the Englishmen may seeme to have brought the significance of the
word into their owne Language: For as *Faustinus* in Latin implieth a cer-
tifying of prosperity: so doth *Bederic* in the German tongue, as written that
ned *Hadrianus Iunius*, where he interpreteth the name of *Betorix* (who in
the sonne of *Melo* the *Sicambrian*.) Full of happinesse and savour. But if these
vers persons, I willingly confesse that I am ignorant, who that *Faustinus* was,
this *Bedericus* was. Sure I am that it was not that *VILLA* *Faustini*, which
Martiall in his Epigrammes depainteth: and if I said it was the habitation of
Beric, who being driven out of Britaine, as *Dio* writeth, perswaded the *Emperour*
Claudius to warre upon the Britans, I should not beleve my selfe. But what
was, if it be not that *Faustini Villa*, yet seemeth it to have beene of famous memory,
considering that when Christian Religion began to spring up in this Tract,
gebers here founded a Church; and *Abbo* called it *Villam regiam*, that is, *Angels*
But after that the people had translated hither the body of *Edmund* that most
stian King, whom the Danes with exquisite torments had put to death, and
honour of him a very great Church wrought with a wonderfull frame of timber,
beganne to bee called *Edmundi Burgus*, commonly *Saint Edmundsbury*, and
shortly, *Bury*: and flourished marvellous much. But especially since that *King*
Canutus for to expiate the sacrilegious impiety of his father *Suenus* against this
being affrighted with a vision of *Saint Edmund*, built it againe of a new
riched it, offered his owne Crowne unto the holy Martyr, brought into it
with their Abbot, and gave unto it many faire and large Manours, and
things the Towne it selfe full and whole: over which the Monkes themselves
their Seneschall had rule and jurisdiction. Whereupon, *Ioscelin de Brakelond* a
of this house, writeth thus: *The men as well without the Burgh as within were, and*
within Banna Leuca enjoy the same libertie.

Afterwards, *Herveie* the Abbot comming of the Norman blood, compa-
round about with a wall, whereof there remaine still some few Reliques, and the
Newport walled the Abbay. The Bishop of Rome endowed it with very great
nities and among other things granted, *That the said place should bee subject*
in any matter, and in matters lawfull depend upon the pleasure and direction of the
bishop. Which is yet observed at this day. And now by this time the Monkes
ding in wealth erected a new Church of a sumptuous and stately building, which
it every day more than other with new workes; and whiles they laid the founda-
of a new Chappell in the Reigne of *Edward* the First, *There were found* (as
Monke of this place writeth) *The walles of a certaine old Church built round, from*
the Altar stood (as it were) in the mids, and we verily thinke, saith he, it was that
first built to Saint Edmunds service. But what manner of Towne this was, and
the Abbay also was while it stood, heare *Leland* speake: who saw it standing
(saith hee) *but not scene either a City more finely seated, (so delicately seated*
the easie ascent or hanging of an hill, and a little River runneth downe on the East
of:) or a goodlier Abbay, whesher a man indifferently consider, either the
with Revenewes, or the largenesse, or the incomparable magnificence thereof. *Amith*
the Abbay would say verily it were a Citie: so many Gates there are in it, and some
of:) *so many Townes, and a most stately Church: Upon which ascend * three other*
gloriously in one and the same Churchyard, all of passing fine and curious Workes.
If you demand how great the wealth of this Abbay was, a man could hardly tell
namely how many gifts and oblations were hung upon the Tombe alone of *Saint*
Edmund: and besides, there came in, out of lands and Revenewes, a thousand five

dered and three score pounds of old rent by the yeare. If I should relate the boiles
severally that from time to time arose betweene the Townesmen and the Monkes:
(who by their * *Steward* governed the Townesmen) and with how great rage they
fell together by the eares, purposedly to kill one another, my relation would seeme
incredible. But as great a peece of worke as this was, so long in building and still
encreasing, and as much riches as they gathered together for so many yeares with
encreasing, and the monuments of *Alan Rufus* Earle of *Britaine* and *Richmond*,
Sir Thomas of *Brotherton* sonne to *King Edward* the first Earle of *Norfolke*, and *Mar-*
shall of England, *Thomas* of *Beaufor*, Duke of *Excester*, *W.* Earle of *Stafford*, *Marie*
Queen of *France* Daughter to *King Henry* the Seaventh, and many other
B worthy personages there Entombed; were by *King Henry* the Eighth utterly
overthrowne. What time as at one clappe hee suppressed all Monasteries; per-
suaded thereto by such as under a goodly pretense of reforming religion preferred
their private respects and their owne enriching before the honour of Prince and
Country, yea and before the Glory of God himselfe. And yet there remaineth
still lying along the carcasle, as one would say, of that auncient monument, altoge-
ther deformed; but (for ruines I assure you) they make a faire and goodly shew,
which who soever beholdeth, hee may both wonder thereat, and withall take pitty
thereof. England also, that I may note this also by the way if ever else it had losse
by the death of any Man, sustained here one of the greatest. For, that father in
C deede of his Country *Humfrey* Duke of *Glocester* a due observer of Iustice, and who
had furnished his noble witte with the better and deeper kinde of studies, after hee
had under *King Henry* the Sixth governed the Kingdome five and twenty yeares
with great commendation, so that neither good men had cause to complaine of, nor
evil to finde fault with, was here in *Saint Savours* Hospitall brought to his end by
the spitefull envy of *Margaret* of *Lorraine*. Who seeing her husband *King Henry* the
Sixth, to bee a man of a silly simple minde and faint hearted, to the end shee might
draw into her owne hands the managing of the State, devised and plotted this wic-
D ked deed: but to her owne losse, and this Realme, in the highest degree. For *Nor-*
mandy and *Aquitaine* were thereby shortly after lost, and Warres more then civill en-
kindled in England.

Nere unto this *Saint Edmunds Bury*, is *Rushbroke* to be scene, the habitation of the
worshipfull Family of the *Termyns*, Knights: and not farre from thence *Ikesworth*,
where there stood an auncient Priory founded by *Gilbert Blund*, a man of great no-
bility and Lord of *Ikesworth*, whose issue male by the right line, ended in *William*,
that in *King Henry* the Third his dayes was slaine in the battell at *Lewis*, and left
two sisters his Heires, *Agnes* wife to *William de Creketos*, and *Roise* wedded to *Robert*
de Valens. Afterward, both here, at *Haulsted* neere by *Rougham*, and else-where, the
E Family of *Drury*, (which significeth in old English, *A Pretious Jewell*) hath beene of
great respect and good note, especially since they married with the heires of *Fresil*,
and *Saxham*.

More Northward is *Saint Genoves* *Fernham*, in this regard memorable, for that
Richard Lucy Lord chiefe Justice of England tooke Prisoner there in a pight fieelde
Robert Earle of *Leicester*, making foule worke and havocke here; and withall put to
the sword above ten thousand Flemings, whom hee had levied and sent forth to the
depopulation of his Country. Here hard by, I had the sight of two very faire houses
the one built by the *Kissons* Knights, at *Hengrave*, the possition in times past of
F *Edmund* de *Hengrave*, a most renowned Lawyer under *King Edward* the First: the
other at *Culforth*, erected by *Sir Nicholas Bacon*, Knight, sonne unto that *Sir Nicholas*
Bacon, Lord Keeper of the great Seale of England: who for his singular wisdom
and most sound judgement, was right worthily esteemed one of the two Supporters
of this Kingdome in his time. And not farre off standeth *Lidgate* a small Village, yet
in this respect not to be passed over in silence, because it brought into the World
the *Lidgate* the Monke, whose witte may seeme to have beene framed and shapen
by the very Muses themselves: so brightly re-shine in his English verses, all the plea-

* Or Seneschal.

Humfrey Duke
of Glocester.Ikesworth.
Blund.*
Drury.

1173.

Hengrave.
Culforth.
Sir Nicholas
Bacon.Lidgate.
John Lidgate.

fant graces and elegancies of speech, according to that age. Thus much for the memorable places on the West side of Suffolke.

Stoke Clare.

On the South side wee saw the river *Stour*, which immediately from the spring head spreadeth a great *Mere*, called *Stourmer*: but soone after drawing in into within the banks runneth first by *Clare* a noble Village: which had a Castle, but now decayed, and gave name to the right noble Family of the *Clares*, descended from Earle *Gislebert* the *Norman*: and the title of Dukedome unto *Leonel* King Edward the Thirds sonne, who after hee had married a wife out of that house, was created by his father, *Duke of Clarence*. For he of this place with a fuller sound, than the *Clare*, was stiled *Duke of Clarence*, (like as before him the sonnes of Earle *Gislebert* and their successors, were hence surnamed *De Clare*) and called Earles of *Clare*. Which at * *Langavill* in *Italy*, after he had by a second marriage, matched with a Daughter of *Gaiacius* Vicount of *Millain*: and in the Collegiat Church here lieth interred also *Joan Acres* daughter to King Edward the first, married to *Gislebert de Clare* Duke of *Gloucester*. Here peradventure the Readers may looke, that I should set downe the Earles of *Clare* so denominated of this place, and the Dukes of *Clarence*, considering they have beene alwayes in this Realme of right honorable reputation: and so will I doe in few words, for their satisfaction in this behalfe. Richard the first Gislebert Earle of * *Angy* in *Normandy* served in the warres under King *William* when hee entred England, and by him was endowed with the Townes of *Andover* and *Tunbridge*. This Gislebert begat foure sonnes, namely *Gislebert*, *Roger*, *John*, and *Robert*; from whom the *Fitz-walters* are descended. Gislebert by the command of the Earle of *Claremont* had issue *Richard*, who succeeded him: Gislebert of whom came that Noble *Richard* Earle of *Pembroke* and Conquerour of *Ireland*, and *Walter*. Richard the first begotten sonne was slaine by the Welshmen and left him two sonnes *Gilbert* and *Roger*. Gilbert in King Stephens dayes was taken at *Hereford*: howbeit both he and his Successours are more often and commonly called Earles of *Clare*, of this their principall seat and habitation, yea and so many times they wrote themselves. After him dying without issue, succeeded his brother *Roger*, whose sonne *Richard* tooke to wife *Amice* the daughter and one of the heirs to *William* Earle of *Gloucester*, in right of whom his posterity were Earles of *Clare*. And those you may see in their due place. But when at length their issue failed, *Leonel* Third sonne of King Edward the Third, (who had married *Elizabeth* the Daughter and sole Heire of *William de Burgh* Earle of *Ulster*, begotten of the Bodie of *Elizabeth* *Clare*) was by his Father honoured with this new Title, *Duke of Clarence*.

Earles of
Clare.
* *Ad Albam*
Pompian.

* *Andover*, or
Erve.

Guliel. Gemiti-
ensis.
Lib. 7. 4. 37.

Rob. Montensis

Dukes of Cla-
rence.

1421.

Sudbury.

But when as hee had but one onely Daughter named *Philippa*, wife to *Edward Mortimer* Earle of *March*, King Henry the Fourth created *Thomas* his own younger sonne *Duke of Clarence*, who being withall Earle of *Albemarle*, High Sheriff of England and Governour of *Normandy*, and having no lawfull issue was slain at *Anjou* by the violent assault of Scots and French. A long time after, King Edward the Fourth bestowed this honour upon his owne brother *George*, whom afterwards enmity and bitter hatred, hee had received againe into favour, and yet the last made an end of him in prison, causing him, as the report currently goeth, to be drowned in a Butte of *Malmesey*. A thing naturally engrafted in men, that when they have feared, and with whom they have contended in matter of life, that they hate for ever, though they be their naturall brethren.

From *Clare*, by *Long-Melford*, a very faire Almes-house lately built by that good man Sir *William Cordal* Knight, and Maister of the *Rolls*, *Stour* passeth on, and cometh to *Sudbury*, that is to say, the *South-Burgh*, and runneth in manner round about it, which men suppose to have beene in old time the chiefe towne of this Shire, and to have taken this name in regard of *Norwich*, that is, *The Northern Towne*. Neake would it take it well at this day to be counted much inferiour to the Townes adjoining: for, it is populous and wealthy, by reason of Clothing there, and hath by the chiefe Magistrate, a *Mayor*, who every yeare is chosen out of seven Aldermen, No

farre from hence distant, is *Edwardston*, a Towne of no great name at this day, but yet in times past it had Lords therein dwelling, of passing great Honour, of the surname of * *Mont-chenise*: out of which Family Sir *Guarin Montchenise* married the daughter and one of the heires of that mighty *William Marcell*, Earle of *Pembroke*, and of her begat a daughter named *Joan*, who unto the stile of her Husband *William de Valentia* of the family of *Lusignie* in France, brought and adjoynd the title of Earle of *Pembroke*. But the said Sir *Guarin Mont-chenise*, as he was a right honourable person, so he was a man exceeding wealthy, in so much as in those dayes they accounted him the most potent Baron, and the rich *Craffus* of England. For his last will and testament amounted unto two hundred thousand Markes, no small wealth as the standard was then. From a younger brother or cader of this house of *Montchenise*, issued by an heire generall the Family of the *Waldgraves*, who have long flourished in Knightly degree at *Smalebridge* neerer to *Stour*, as another Family of great account in elder ages at *Buers*, which was thereof surnamed.

A few miles from hence *Stour* is enlarged with *Breton* a small Brooke, at one of whose heads is scene *Bretenham* a very slender little towne, where scarce remaineth any shew of all of any great building: and yet both the neere resemblance and the signification of the name partly induced me to thinke it to be that *COMBRETONIUM* whereof *Antonine* the Emperour made mention in this tract. For like as *Bretenham* in English signifieth an *Habitation*, or *Mansion place* by *Breton*, so *Combretonium* in Britton or Welsh betokeneth a *Valley*, or a place lying somewhat low by *Breton*. But this in *Pentegrius* his Table is falsely named *COMVETRONUM* and *ADCOVEIN*. Somewhat Eastward from hence is *Nettlested* scene, of whence was Sir *Thomas Wentworth*, whom King Henry the Eighth adorned with the title of Baron *Wentworth*, and neere thereto is *Offington*, that is to say, *The towne of Off* a King of the *Mercians*, where upon a clay Hill lie the ruines of an ancient Castle, which they say *Off* built, after he had wickedly murdered *Aethelheri* King of the *East-Angles*, and usurped his Kingdome.

But to returne to the River *Breton*. Upon another brooke that joyneth therewith standeth *Lancham* a pretty Mercat, and neere it the Manour of *Burns-Elleis*, whereunto King Henry the Third granted a Mercat at the request of Sir *Henry Shelton* Lord thereof, whose posterity a long time heere flourished. *Hadley*, in the Saxons language healeze, is watered with the same Brooke: a towne of good note in these dayes for making of Clothes: and in old time much mentioned by our Historians, because *Guthrum* or *Gormo* the Dane was heere buried. For, when *Alfred* brought him to this passe, that he became Christian and was baptized, hee assigned unto him these countries of the *East-Angles*, that he might (to use the words of mine Author) cherish them by right of inheritance under the Allegiance of a King, which he had overrunne by robbing and ransacking.

From hence *Breton* speedeth it selfe by *Higham*, whence the family of *Higham* is so named, to *Stour* which joyntly in one streame runne not farre from *Bentley*, where the *Talmachs* of a celebrate ancient house flourished for a long time, and after a few miles neere unto *Arwerton* the house long since of the family of the *Bacons*, who held this Manour, and *Brome*, by conducting all the footemen of *Suffolke* and *Norfolke* from *S. Edmunds* dike in the warres of *Wales*. Now it belongeth to the *Parkers* hereditarily, who by the Fathers side derive their descent from the Barons *Marley*, and by the Mothers from the *Calshrops*, a Family sometime of great account in these partes. Beneath this *Stour* falleth into the Ocean: and at the very mouth thereof, the river *Orwell* or *Gipping* dichargeth it selfe together with it.

This River springeth up in the very navell or centre, as one would say, of this shire, out of two fountaines, the one neere to *Wulpet*, the other by *Gipping* a small Village, *Wulpet* is a Mercat towne, and foundeth as much as, *The Wolves* yet, if wee may beleve *Nabrigensis* who hath told as prey and formally a tale of this place as is that fable called the *TRUE NARRATION* of *Lucian*: namely, how two little Boyes (forsooth) of a greene colour, and of Satyrs kinde, after they had made

Edwardston.

* Barones.
Monte chensie.

Minor Hist.
Math. Paris.

Waldgrave.

Buers.

Cumbretonium.
Brettenham.

Barons Went-
worth.

*
Lancham.

Hadley.

Guthrum or
Gormo the
Dane.

Bentley.

Arwerton.

Wulpet.

Veranarratio.

Norton.

Hagoneth.

Fatter.

A pretty con-
ceded tenure.

Ipswich.

Domesday
booke.

Waleton.

a long journey by passages under the ground, from out of another world from the *Amipodes* and Saint *Martins* Land, came up here: of whom if you would know more, repaire to the Author himselfe, where you shall finde such matter as will make you laugh your fill; if you have a laughing spleene. I wrote not whether I were best to relate here, into what a vaine hope of finding gold at *Norton* hard by, a certaine credulous desire of having, enticed and allured king Henry the Eighth, but the digging and undermining there sufficiently shew it, although I say nothing. But between *Gipping* and *Wulper* upon an high hill remain the tokens of *Hawkelet* an antique Castle, taking up much about two Acres of ground. Some affirme this to have beene called *Hagoneth Castle*, which belonged to *Ralph le Bros*, and that in the yeere 1177, it was by *Robert Earle of Leicester* won and overthrowne in the intestine warre betweene king Henry the Second, and his unkindely disloyall sonne.

Upon the same River are scene two little Mercat Townies, *Stow* and *Mendlesham*, and not farre from the banke, *Hemingston*: in which *Baldwin Le Pettour* (make his name well) held certaine lands, by Serjeanty, (the words I have out of an old booke) for which on Christmasse day, every yeere before our soveraigne Lord the King of England he should performe one *Salsus*, one *Suffetus*, and one *Bumbulus*; of a we read elsewhere, his tenure was, *per salum, suffum, & pestum*, that is, if I understand these tearmes aright, *That hee should daunce, paffe up his cheekes making thereof a sound, and besides let a cracke downeward*. Such was the plaine and jolly manner those times. And observed it is, that unto this Foë, the Manour of *Langeton* be-
longed.

Neere unto the mouth of this river we saw *Ipswich*, in times past *Gippwich*, a fine towne resembling a Citry, situate in a ground somewhat low: which is the case (as it were) of this shire, as having an Haven commodious enough; fenced in round with a trench and rampire, of good trade and stored with wares, well peopled and full of Inhabitantes, adorned with foureteen Churches, and with goodly and stately edifices. I say nothing of foure religious houses now overgrown, at that sumptuous and magnificent Colledge which Cardinall *Wolsey* a Buregh of this place, here began to build; whose vast minde reached alwayes at things too high. The body politike, or corporation of this towne consisteth, as I have mented, of twelve *Burgesses* (Partmen they terme them) out of whom are chosen yearly for the head Magistrates two *Bailives*; and as many Justices out of foure and twenty others. As touching the Antiquity thereof so farre as ever I could observe, the name of it was not heard of before the Danish invasion, whereof it smarted: For the yeere of salvation 991, the Danes sacked and spoiled it, and all the Sea coast with so great cruelty, that *Sirithus* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Nobles of England thought it the safest and best course they could take, to redeeme and buy their peace of them for the summe of ten thousand pounds. Nevertheless, within nine years, they made spoyle of this towne againe, and presently thereupon the *Englishmen* valiantly encountered them in the field, but through the cowardly running away of one man alone, named *Turkill*, as writeth *Henry of Huntingdon* (for in matter of some things of small weight otherwise, are of right great moment, and sway very much) our men were put to flight, and let the victory slip out of their hands. In the time of S. Edward, as we finde in the *Survey booke of England*, out of this towne *Queen Ethelred* had two parts, and *Earle Guert* a third part: and *Burgesses* there were eight hundred, paying custome to the King. But after the Normans had possessed themselves of England, they erected a pile, or Castle here, which *Hugh Bigod* defended for a good while against Stephen the usurping King of England, but surrendered it in the end. This fort is now quite gone, so as there remaine not so much as the ruines thereof. Some say it was in the parish of *Westfield* hard by, where is to be scene the rubbish of a Castle, and where old *Gippwich*, as men say, stood in times past. I thinke verely it was demolished, when K. Henry the second laied *Waleton Castle* neer unto it even with the ground. For it was a place of refuge for *Rebels*, and here landed those three thousand Flemings whom the nobles of England had called in against him, what time as he was
advisedly

A advisedly hee had made Prince Henry his sonne King, and of equall power with himselfe: and the young man knowing no meane, would bee in the highest place or none, set upon a furious desire of the Kingdome, most unnaturally waged warre against his owne father: Albeit these Castles are now cleane decayed and gone, yet this Shore is defended sufficiently with an huge banke, they call it *Langerston*, that for two miles or thereabout in length lyeth forth into the maine Sea, as hee saith, not without great danger and terrour of such as faile that way: howbeit the same serveth very well for Fishermen to dry their fishes, and after a sort is a defence unto that spacious and wide Haven of *Orwell*. And thus much for the South part of this Shire.

B From hence the curving Shore (for all this East part lyeth full against the Sea) shooting forth Northward straight-way openeth it selfe to the * *Deben*, a Riveret having his spring-head neere unto *Mendlesham*; unto which Towne, the Lord of the place *U. Fitz Otho*, Master of the Mint, purchased the liberty of Mercat and Faire: by whose Heires there fell no small Possessions unto the *Boutetorts* Lords of *Wily* in *Worcestershire*, and from them againe in the Raigne of Richard the Second, unto *Frook*, *Barkley* of *Stoke*, *Barnel*, and others.

C This River *Deben* first floweth hard unto the little Mercat Towne *Debenham*, and giveth it the name, which others would have to be called more truly *Depenham*, for that the waies every where about it, by reason of a clay ground and the same over moist, are very deepe and cumberous. From thence it runneth by *Vfford* the seat in times past of *Robert de Vfford* Earle of *Suffolke*, and by a Towne over against it on the other side of the River named *Rendelisham*, that is, as *Beda* interpreteth it, *Rendilic* *Attonson* place; where *Redwald* King of the East Saxons kept usually his Court, who was the first of all his Nation that was baptised, and received Christianity; but afterwards, seduced by his Wife, he had in the selfe same Church, as saith *Beda*, one Altar for Christs Religion, and another for sacrifices unto *Devils*. In this place also *Swidelm* a King of the *East-Angles* was likewise afterwards baptised by Bishop * *Ceddæ*.

D From hence the River *Deben* passeth downe to *Woodbridge*, a little Towne beautified with faire houses; where at certaine set times are holden Assemblies for *Saint Andrews Liberty*: and after it hath gone some few miles, it is received into the Ocean at *Bawdsey* Haven.

E By this time now the Shore creepeth by little and little Eastward to the mouth of the River * *Ore*; which runneth neere to *Eramlingham Castle*, belonging sometime to the *Bigods* by the bounty of King Henry the First: and forthwith on the West side thereof spreadeth (as it were) into a lake. A very faire and beautifull Castle this is, fortified with a banke, ditch, and walles of great thicknesse, wherein are thirteene towres, and inwardly furnished with buildings right commodious and necessary. From hence it was that in the yeare of our Redemption 1173, what time as King Henry the Second his rebellious sonne tooke armes against his father, *Robert Earle of Leicester*, with his mercenary Flemings infested this Country farre and neere: from this Castle also in the yeare 1553, *Queene Mary* entred upon her Kingdome, for all the ambitious fretting and fuming of *John Dudley* Duke of *Northumberland* against King Henry the Eighth his Daughters.

F Then cometh the River to *Parrham* a little Towne, the Lord whereof *William Willoughby* King Edward the Sixth honoured with the Estate of a Baron: and afterwards running by *Glemham*; which gave name to an ancient Family descended from the *Barons* and *Brantons*; at *Oxford*, that tooke the name of it, disburdeneth himselfe into the Sea. A bigge Towne this was and of great resort, fenced also with a Castle of a reddish stone, and appertained in times past to the *Palatines*, and afterwards to the *Willoughbys*; but complaineth at this day of the seas unkindnesse which shrinketh backe from it by little and little, and beginneth to envie the commodity of an Haven unto the Towne. Neither have I any thing else to say of *Oxford*, unlesse it please you to runne over these few words of *Ralph Cogeshall* an old Writer.

* Others call it
Thredling.

Boutetort.

Rendelisham.

* Ceddæ.

* Some name it
Wiaichell.
Framlingham.Parrham.
Barons Wil-
loughbey of
Parrham,
Oxford.

In King Henry the Seconds daies, saith bee, when Bartholmew Glawile kept the Castle of Oreford, it happened that the Fishermen caught a wilde man within their net, when all parts and members of his body resembled a man, had haire on his head, a huge head with a Piloe devant, about the breast exceeding hairy and rough: who notwithstanding slipped away secretly to the Sea and was never scene after: So that it may bee very true, which is so rife with the common people, That there is nothing bred in any part of Nature, but the same also is in the Sea: and that it is not altogether a fained Fable, that Plinie hath reported of a Trison taken on the Shore of Portugall, and of the Sea-man caught in the Streights of Gibraltar.

Not much higher, lyeth *Aldborough* for Situation right safe and very pleasant within *Slaughden vale*, where from the East the Sea, and from the West the River beareth. This name *Aldburgh*, is by interpretation the *Old Burgh*, or as others would have it, *The Burgh upon the River Ald*. Now it is an harbour very commodious for Sailers and Fishermen, and thereby well frequented, and acknowledged the Ocean Sea to be favourable unto it, how spitefull soever and malicious it is to other Townes in this Coast. Neere unto it, what time as in the yeare 1555. by reason of unseasonable weather the Corne throughout all England was choked and blighted in the care, there grew Pease miraculously among the rocks, without any earthly about them about the end of September, and brought downe the price of Corne. Yet the wiser sort of men doe say that Pulse being cast upon the Shore by Shipwracke is wont otherwhiles to come up againe there, so that the thing may bee thought miraculous: But, that the like usually every yeare grow of the same accord among the stones on the Shore of Kent, I have shewed already.

From hence coasting along the Shore, at ten miles end, wee met with *Dunwich*, in the English Saxon tongue *Dunmoe*, whereof *Beda* maketh mention; when the *Burgundians* that reduced the *East Angles* againe into the faith, when they were backsliding from Christ, in the yeare of Grace 639. placed an Episcopall see, whose Successors for many yeares together were Bishops over all *East Angles*. But Bisse the Fourth Bishop after *Felix*, when hee became very aged and decayed withall, being not able to discharge so great a Jurisdiction, divided it into two Sees: the one continued still in this *Dunwich*, the other hee placed in *Wormsley*, a little Towne. In the Reigne of William the Conquerour, *Dunwich* had in it hundred and sixe and thirty Burgeses: an hundred poore people: it was valued at fifty pounds, and threescore thousand Herings, of gift. For, so wee read in *Domesday Booke*. In the foregoing Age, it was well peopled and frequented with Inhabitants: famous also for a Mint therein: and in the Reigne of Henry the Second, as *William of Newborough* writeth, *It was a Towne of good note, and full of red with sundry kindes of Riches*. At which time, when England was all on fire with new stirres and broiles, it was so fortified, that it made *Robert* Duke of *Leicester* affraid, who with his Army over-ran all the parts there about the pleasure. But now by a certaine peculiar spite and envie of Nature, that reacheth the greedy Sea to have what it will and encroache still without all stay the greatest part thereof is violently carried away with the waves, and by reason the Bishops many yeares agoe translated their Seat to another Place, it hath become (it were) desolate. A little above it, the River *Blith* voideth it selfe into the Sea, on whose banke Southward wee saw *Blithborow* a small Towne, which is another thing is memorable, but because *Anna* a Christian King was there buried, whom *Penda* the *Mercian* slew in a pitched Field. It was beautified by King Henry the First with a Colledge of Chanons, who granted the same to the Chanons of *Saint Osith*. And it was made a Mercate by the means of the Lord of *Clavering*, unto whom King Edward the Second gave this Liberty together with the Faite. And verily a goodly Inheritance hee had in this Towne, who derived his Descent from the Daughter and Heire of *William* * *Clavering* who held the Barony of *Horsford* in the Countie of *Norfolke*, and erected the Abbey at *Sibton*.

Tritons and
Monsters of
the Sea.

Aldburgh.

Pease growing
out of the
Rocks.

Dunwich.

Allecum or
Halecum.

Blithborow.

* De Casinet.

Heere the Promontory *Easton-Nesse* shooteth our, and reacheth farre into the East, which is deemed to bee the farthest East point in all Britaine; *Ptolomee* calleth it *Extensio*, or *EXTENSIO*. And that you may not doubte, that this is the very same which wee call *Easton*, bee it knowne unto you, that *Eysteney* in the British tongue is the same that in Greeke *Extensio*, and in Latine *Extensio*, that is, A stretching forth: although this name may seeme with as good probability to have beene imposed in our English Language, of the Situation Eastward. Upon the point of this Promontory standeth *Easton* a Village of Fishermen well neere eaten up by Sea, and on South side of this Promontory, *Southwold* lieth in the Plaine, full against the open shore of the sea: a Towne well enough frequented through the benefit of an Haven that the River *Blith* emptying it selfe there into the Sea maketh; and at every high water it is so invironed with the waves, that it seemeth to bee an Island, and a man would wonder that it is not overflowne. In so much as when I saw the manner thereof, I called that saying of *Cicero* into my remembrance: *What should I speake of the Sea Tides about Spaine and Britaine, and of their Flowing and Ebbing at certaine times? Surely, they cannot bee without the hand of God, who hath restrained and gaged the waves within their bounds*. More within the land *Wingfield* sheweth it selfe, where the walles of a Castle halfe downe are to bee scene: which hath given name to a family in this Tract that is spred into a number of branches, and is besides for knighthood and ancient Gentility renowned, and thereof it was the principall seat: *Allo Dunnington*, which standeth much upon the Lord thereof *Sir John Philips*, father to that *Sir William* who married the daughter and Heire of Baron *Bardolph*, whose daughter and Heire likewise *John* Vicount *Beaumont* tooke to Wife: But now the Habitation it is of the ancient Family of the *Rousses*. Nor farre from hence standeth *Huntingfield*, which had a Baron of that name in King Edward the Third his time, and neere unto it *Heveningham*, the residence of the Family of *Heveningham*, knights: who are knowne to bee of very great antiquity: and not farre off standeth *Halesworth*, in times past *Healsworth*, an ancient Towne of the *Argentians*, and now of the *Alingtons*: unto which *Sir Richard Argenton* obtained at the hand of King Henry the Third the liberty of a Mercate.

I gave you to understand before, that two small Rivers, *Ouse* the least, and *Waveney* on the North side, divided this Countie from *Norfolke*; which Riverets rising out of a Marsh ground by *Lophamford*, from two springs but a little a sunder one from another, take their courses divers wayes with creekes full of shallow foulds. Along by *Ouse* which runneth Westward, there is nothing in this Quarter to bee scene worth the report. By *Waveney* side that tendeth Eastward, first is *Hoxon* in times past *Hegildon* ennobled by reason of King *Edmunds Martyrdome*. For there the most cruell and bloody Danes (that I may use the words of *Abbo*) having bound the most Christian King to a tree, for that hee would not renounce Christianity, shot him in with sharpe arrowes all his body over, augmenting the paines of his torment with continuall piercing him with arrow after arrow, and thus inflitied wound upon wound, so long as one arrow could stand by another: And as a Poet of middle time verified of him.

*Iam loca vulneribus desunt, nec dum furiosis
Tela, sed hyberna grandine plura volant.*

Though now no place was left for wound, yet arrowes did not faile,
These furious Wretches; still they lie thicker than winter haile.

In which place afterwards stood a very faire house of the Bishops of *Norwich*; untill they exchanged it not long since for the Abbey of *Saint Benet*. Hard by, at *Brome*, dwelt a long time the family of *Cornwallis*, of knights degree: of whom *Sir John Cornwall* was Steward of Edward the Sixth his Household while hee was Prince; and his sonne *Sir Thomas*, for his wisdom and faithfullnesse became one of the privie counsellors to Queene *Mary*, and Controller of her royall Houfe. Beneath it lieth *Eay*, that is, *The Island*, so called, because it is watered on every side with brookes, where are to bee scene the rubbish, ruines, and decayed walles of an old Castle that

Easton-Nesse.

Extensio.
A Promontory.

Lib. 3. de Natura
Deorum.

Wingfield.

Philips.

Huntingfield.
Heveningham.

Halesworth.

Hoxon.
King Edmunds
Martyrdome.

Cornwallis.

Eay.

Liber inquisi-
onum.
* By intrusion
reaping the
commodities
thereof.

that belonged to *Robert Malet* a Norman Baron. But after that he under King *Henry* the First was deprived of his Dignity, because he sided with *Robert Duke of Normandy* against the King, the said King bestowed this Honour upon *Stephen Earle of Bullen*, who, being afterwards the * *Vasfructuary* King of England left it unto his son *William Earle of Warren*. But after hee had surrendered his State to King *Henry* the Second, and lost his life in the expedition of *Tholose*, the King held it in his owne hands untill that King *Richard* the First confer'd it upon *Henry* the Fifth of that name Duke of *Brabant* and of *Lorain*, together with King *Stephens* Nece by his daughter, who had beene a professed Nunne. Long time after, when it was now devolved againe upon the Kings of England, King *Edward* the third gave it, as I have read, to Sir *Robert Vfford Earle of Suffolke*.

Bedingfield.

Neither must I passe over in silence *Bedingfield* neere adjoyning, which gave the name to a worshipfull and ancient Family, that received very much reputation and credit from the Heire of the Family of *Tudenham*. From thence by *Flixton*, in stead of *Felixton*, so named of *Felix* the first Bishop of these parts, like as many other places in this Shire, the River *Waveney* runneth downe to *Bungy*, and spreadeth it self in manner round about it; where *Hugh Bigod* fortified a Castle both by artificiall workmanship, and also by naturall situation, when as the feditious Barons tossed all England to and fro with stormes of rebellion. Concerning which Castle, is pregnable, he was wont to vaunt in these termes :

Were I in my Castle of *Bungy*
Upon the River of *Waveney*,
I would ne care for the King of *Cockney*.

Yet notwithstanding afterwards he obtained at the hands of King *Henry* the Second (by giving him a great summe of money and pledges withall of his loyalty) it might not be overthrowne and rased. Not farre thence from the banks, you may see *Mettingham*; where, upon a plaine, Sir *John* surnamed *De Norwich* Lord of the place built a foure square Castle and a Colledge within it, whose daughter, at the end the Heire of the same Family, *Robert de Vfford* aforesaid, Earle of *Suffolke* tooke to Wife with a goodly Inheritance.

Now *Waveney* drawing neerer unto the Sea whiles hee striveth in vaine to make himselfe a twofold issue into the Ocean, the one together with the River *Tare*, and the other by the meere *Lutbing*, maketh a pretty big *Denny Isle* or *Biland*, which have name *Lovingland*, others more truly *Lutbingland*, of *Lutbing* the lake spreading in length and bredth; which beginning at the Ocean Shore is discharged into the River *Tare*. At the entrance whereof standeth upon the Sea, *Leistoffe*, a narrow and low Towne: and at the issue of it *Gorleston*, where I saw the towre steeple of a small pressed Friery, which standeth the Sailers in good stead for a marke. Within the land, hard by *Tare* is situate *Somerley* townne, the habitation in ancient time of *Monks*, from whom it is come lineally to the worshipfull ancient family of the *Monks*, Knights of high esteeme in these parts: farther up into the land where *Tare* and *Waveney* meet in one streame, there flourished *Cnobersburg*, that is, as *Bede* interpreteth, *Cnobers City*, we call it at this day *Burgh-Castle*. Which, as *Bede* saith, was a most pleasant Castle, by reason of woods and Sea together, wherein a Monastery was built by *Fursey* a holy Scot: by whose persuasion *Sigebert* King of the *East-Angles* became a Monke and resigned up his Kingdome: who afterwards being drawne against his will out of this Monastery to encourage his people in battaile against the *Merchians*, together with his company lost his life. In that place now there are only ruines with forme, as it were, foure square, built of flint stone and British Bricke, but all overgrown with briars and bushes: among which otherwhiles are Romane peeces of colonnades ten forth: So that it may seeme to have been one of those fortifications that the Romans placed upon the River *Tare* to repress the piracies of the Saxons: or rather that it was the ancient *GARIANONUM* it selfe, where the *Stableian Horsemen* had their

Station

A Station, and kept Ward, at the declination of the Romane Empire in Britaine.

Suffolke hath had Earles and Dukes out of sundry families, There bee of the later writers who report, that the *Glauvils* in times past were honoured with this title: But seeing they ground upon no certain authority, whereas men may easily mistake, and I have found nothing of them in the publike records of the Kingdome, they must pardon me if I beleve them not, untill they produce more certainty. Yet in the meane while I confesse, that the family of the *Glauvils* in this tract was of right good note and high reputation. Neither have I hitherto learned by witnesses of credite, that any one was entituled Earle of this Province severally before the daies of King *Edward* the Third, who created Sir *Robert Vfford* Earle of *Suffolke* a man much renowned both in peace and warre, the sonne of Sir *Robert Vfford* Steward of the Kings house under King *Edward* the Second, by *Cecily de Valontis* Lady of *Orford*. After him succeeded his sonne *William*, who having foure sonnes that were taken away by untimely death during his life, died himselfe suddenly in the Parliament house as he was about to report the minde of the Commonalty. And then Sir *Robert Wiloughby*, *Roger Lord Scales*, and *Henrie Ferrars* of *Grobby* the next of his blood and his Heires divided the Inheritance betweene them. Afterward King *Richard* the Second promoted *Michael De-la-Pole* to this Title, and made him *L. Chancellor* of England. Who, as *Thomas Walsingham* writeth, employed himselfe more in trafficke and

Dukes and
Earles of
Suffolke.

Inquisit. 5.
Rich. 2.

Leland in his
Commentary
upon his Cyg-
nea Cantio.

Walsingham
pag. 358.
Regist. Monall
de Melfe.
See Hullin
Yorkshire.

C Merchandise, (as having beene a Merchant and a Merchants sonne) then in marshall matters. For he was the sonne of *William De-la-pole*, that first Maior of *Kyngston* upon *Hull*, and for his wealthy Estate, adorned by King *Edward* the Third with the dignity of a *Baronet*. But when as in the prosperous confluence of so many advancements the mans nature was not capable of so great fortunes, he was enforced by his adversaries envy to depart out of his Country, and so died a banished man. His sonne *Michael* being restored, died at the siege of *Harflew*, and againe within one moneth his son *Michael* was slaine in the battell of *Agincourt* leaving daughters onely. Then *William* his brother succeeded, whom King *Henry* the first so favoured that hee made him also Earle of *Penbrooke*, and then Marquesse of *Suffolke*, to him and the heires males of his body. And that both hee and the heires of his body should carry the golden rod having a Dove in the top thereof, on the Coronation day of the King of England: and the like rod of *George Tuory* at the Coronation of the Queens of England: And afterwards hee advanced the same *William* for his great service and deserts to the honour and title of Duke of *Suffolke*. Certes hee was an excellent man in those dayes, famous and of great worth. For whereas his father and three brethren had in the French wars lost their lives for their Country, he, as we finde in the Parliament Rols of the 28. of King *Henry* the Sixth, in the same war served full 34. yeeres: For seventeen yeeres together he never returned home from warfare, being once taken prisoner when he was as yet no better than a private Knight, hee paid downe for his ranome twenty thousand pounds of our English mony: hee was of the Kings privy Counsell 15. yeeres; and a Knight of the Order of the Garter 30. Hereupon, as he stood in especiall grace and favour with his Prince, so he incurred therefore the greater envy of the common people, and some emulators: being grievously charged with treason and misprisions. And therefore called before the King and Lords of the Parliament, after he had answered the Articles objected, referred himselfe to the Kings order. Whereupon the Chancellor by the Kings commandement pronounced, that whereas the Duke did not put himselfe upon his Peeres, the King touching the Articles of treason, would be doubtfull, and as for the Articles of misprision, not as a Judge by advice of the Lords, but as one to whose order the Duke had submitted himselfe, did banish him the realme and all other his dominions for five yeeres. But when he was embarked for France, he was by his adversaries intercepted upon the sea and beheaded. He left a son nam'd *John De-la-Pole*, who wedded *K. Edward* the fourth his sister, and of her begate *John Earle of Lincolne* by *K. Richard* the Third proclaimed heire apparant of the Crowne: whose ambitious minde puffed up and giddy therewith could

could not containe it selfe, but soone after brake out against King Henry the Seventh, to his owne destruction (for in the battell at Stoke he was quickly slaine) to his fathers death also, (who for very griefe of heart ended his dayes) and to the utter ruine of the whole family, which together with them was in a sort extinguished and brought to nothing. For, his brother Edmund being Earle of *Suffolke* fled into Flanders: began there to conspire and stir up rebellion against King Henry the Seventh, who, albeit he feared him, would seeme to favour him, and as a Prince contented with repentance than punishment, freely pardoned him for sundry offences, that he might winne him. But after he was thus fled, his estate was forfeited, and the King never thought himselfe secure from his practises, untill he had so farre prevailed with Philip Duke of Burgundy, that he was delivered into his hands (against the Law of hospitality toward strangers, as some then gave out) upon sollemne promise in the word of a Prince that his life should be spared. Nevertheless he was kept close prisoner, and after executed by King Henry the Eighth (who thought himselfe not tied to his fathers promise) what time as hee first minded to make warre upon France, for feare least in his absence some troubles might bee raised at home in his behalfe, yet his yonger brother *S. Richard de la Pole* a banished man in France, usurped the title of Duke of *Suffolke*: who being the last male (to my knowledge) of this house, was slaine in the battell of *Pavie* (wherein Francis the first, king of France was taken prisoner in the yeer of our Lord 1524.) fighting manfully among the thickest of his enemies. For whom, in consideration of his singular valour, and high parentage the Duke of *Burbon* himselfe, although hee was his enemy, made a sumptuous funerall, and honored the same with his presence in mourning blacke. In the meane time, king Henry the Eighth adorned Sir *Charles Brandon*, unto whom he had given in marriage his owne sister *Marie* widdow, and Dowager to *Lewis* the twelfth king of France, with the title of Duke of *Suffolke*, and granted to him all the Honour, and Manours which Edmund Earle of *Suffolke* had forfeited. After whom succeeded Henry his sonne a childe, and after him his brother *Charles*: who both died of the English swet upon one day in the yeere 1551. Then king Edward the Sixth honored with that title *Henry Grey Marquesse Dorset*, who had married *Francis* their sister but he enjoying the same but a small time lost his head in Queene Maryes dayes for plotting to make his daughter queen, and was the last Duke of *Suffolke*. From that time lay this title of *Suffolke* void, untill that very lately king James advanced to the honour *Thomas Lord Howard of Walden*, the second sonne of *Thomas Howard Duke of Norfolk*, whom for his approved fidelity and vertue he also made his Lord Chamberlaine, in his first entrie into the kingdome.

The Parishes in this County amount to the number of 575.

NORTH

The names of the hundreds of this mappe

- 1 Smithdon
- 2 Gallows
- 3 Grenewale
- 4 Aith St
- 5 N. Orpingham
- 6 Tunsted
- 7 Happinge
- 8 W. Fligg
- 9 E. Fligg
- 10 T. Fligg
- 11 Brotherton
- 12 Haynesford
- 13 S. Orpingham
- 14 T. Fligg
- 15 Bliffle
- 16 F. Fligg
- 17 Clackhouse
- 18 S. Grenewale
- 19 E. Grenewale
- 20 T. Grenewale
- 21 H. Grenewale
- 22 H. Grenewale
- 23 Clackhouse
- 24 S. Grenewale
- 25 E. Grenewale
- 26 T. Grenewale
- 27 H. Grenewale
- 28 H. Grenewale
- 29 Clackhouse
- 30 S. Grenewale
- 31 E. Grenewale
- 32 T. Grenewale
- 33 H. Grenewale
- 34 H. Grenewale
- 35 Clackhouse
- 36 S. Grenewale
- 37 E. Grenewale
- 38 T. Grenewale
- 39 H. Grenewale
- 40 H. Grenewale
- 41 Clackhouse
- 42 S. Grenewale
- 43 E. Grenewale
- 44 T. Grenewale
- 45 H. Grenewale
- 46 H. Grenewale
- 47 Clackhouse
- 48 S. Grenewale
- 49 E. Grenewale
- 50 T. Grenewale
- 51 H. Grenewale
- 52 H. Grenewale
- 53 Clackhouse
- 54 S. Grenewale
- 55 E. Grenewale
- 56 T. Grenewale
- 57 H. Grenewale
- 58 H. Grenewale
- 59 Clackhouse
- 60 S. Grenewale
- 61 E. Grenewale
- 62 T. Grenewale
- 63 H. Grenewale
- 64 H. Grenewale
- 65 Clackhouse
- 66 S. Grenewale
- 67 E. Grenewale
- 68 T. Grenewale
- 69 H. Grenewale
- 70 H. Grenewale
- 71 Clackhouse
- 72 S. Grenewale
- 73 E. Grenewale
- 74 T. Grenewale
- 75 H. Grenewale
- 76 H. Grenewale
- 77 Clackhouse
- 78 S. Grenewale
- 79 E. Grenewale
- 80 T. Grenewale
- 81 H. Grenewale
- 82 H. Grenewale
- 83 Clackhouse
- 84 S. Grenewale
- 85 E. Grenewale
- 86 T. Grenewale
- 87 H. Grenewale
- 88 H. Grenewale
- 89 Clackhouse
- 90 S. Grenewale
- 91 E. Grenewale
- 92 T. Grenewale
- 93 H. Grenewale
- 94 H. Grenewale
- 95 Clackhouse
- 96 S. Grenewale
- 97 E. Grenewale
- 98 T. Grenewale
- 99 H. Grenewale
- 100 H. Grenewale

NORFOLCIAE comitatus quem oli

ICENI Insederunt Continens in Se opida
Mercatoria xvi. Pagos et villas dcxxv. vna.
Cum singulis hundredis et flumibus in eodem.
Auctore Chris topore Saxton.



NORTH-FOLKE.

NORTH-FOLKE, commonly *Norfolke*, which is by interpretation, people of the North, lieth Norward of *Suffolke*; from which it is divided by those two little Rivers which I spake of, *Ouse the least*, and *Waveney*, running divers wayes: on the East and North side the German Ocean which is plentifull of Fish beareth upon the shores with a mighty noise: On the West, the greater *Ouse*, a River disporting himselfe with his manifold branches and divisions: secludeth it from Cambridge-Shire. It is a Region large and spacious, and in manner all throughout a plaine champion, unlesse it bee where there rise gently some pretty Hills; passing rich, exceeding full of Sheepe, and stored with Conyes: replenished likewise with a great number of populous Villages: for, besides twenty seven Mercat townes, it is able to shew Villages and Country Townes 625: Watered with divers Rivers and Brookes, and not altogether destitute of Woods. The soyle, according to the variety of places, is of a divers nature: Some where, fat, ranke, and full of moisture, as in *Mersland* and *Flegg*; otherwhere, but Westward especially, leane, light, and sandy: elsewhere, standing upon clay and chalke. But the goodnesse of the ground a man may collect by this (whence *Parras* willeth us to gather it) that the Inhabitants are of a passing good complexion: to say nothing of their exceeding wily wits, and the same right quicke in the insight of our common lawes: in so much as it is counted, as well now, as in times past, the onely Country for best breed of Lawyers: so that even out of the meanest sort of the common people, there may be found not a few, who if there were nothing else to beare action, or able to fetch matter enough of wrangling controversies, even out of the very prickles, titles, and accents of the Law. But least, whiles I desire brevity, I become long by these digressions which may distaste; I will turne my penne from the people to the places; and beginning at the South side, runne over briefly those which are more memorable, and of greater antiquity.

Upon the least *Ouse*, where *Thet* a small brooke breaking out of *Suffolke*, meeteth and runneth with him, in a low ground, was seated that ancient City *SITOMAGUS* which *Antonine* the Emperour maketh mention of, corruptly in the Fragments of an old Choragraphicall table called *SIMOMAGUS* and *SINOMAGUS* now *Thetford*, in the Saxon language *Deortford* in which remaineth part of the former name with the addition of the English word *Ford*. For, like as *Sitomagus* in the Brittain tongue implieth a Citie by the river *Sit*, which now is *Thet* for *Magus* as *Plinie* sheweth, signified a City) so *Thetford* in English betokeneth the *Ford of Thet*; neither are these two names *Sit* and *Thet* much unlike in sound. There are in it at this day but few Inhabitants, although it be of a good bignesse; but in times past it was very populous; and beside other tokens of antiquity it hath still to bee seene a great Mount raised to a good height by mens hands; fenced with a double rampier, and as the report goeth, fortified in ancient time with walles: which was a Romane worke as some thinke, or rather of the English Saxon Kings, as others would have it, under whom it flourished a long time. But after it was sacked, first by *Suenus* the Dane, who in a rage set it on fire in the yeere 1004; and sixe yeers after being spoyled againe by the furious Danes, it lost all the beauty and dignity that it had. For the recovery whereof, Bishop *Arfast* removed his Episcopall See from *Elmham* hither, and Bishop William his successor did all he could to adorne and set it out: so that, under King Edward the Confessor, there were counted in it 947. Burgeses, and in William the Conquerours time 720. Mansions: whereof 224. stood void, and the chiefe Magistrate was termed a *Consul*, which name may intimate that it was a Roman towne. But when

Sitomagus:
Thetford.
Magus.

Bishop

Bishop *Herbert* (surnamed *Leſenge*, for that he was composed of *Leaſing* and *Flaſer*) the third Prelate that by evil means and Simony climbed up to this Dignity, had removed his seat from hence to *Norwich*, it fell againe to decay, and as it were languished. Neither could it sufficiently bee comforted for the absence of the Bishop, by the Abbay of *Cluniac* Monkes, which by his means was built. This Abbay *Hugh Bigod Steward to King Henry*, by his graunt and by the advice of *Hethelot of Norwich*, have ordained Monkes of the Order of *Cluny*, in the Church of *S. Cuthbert* was the Episcopall seat of *Thetford*, which I gave unto them, and afterwards found more meete for their use, without the Towne. Howbeit even then, the greatest part of the City that stood on the hithermore Banke by little and little fell to the other part although it was much decayed, yet one or two Ages agoe there were with seaven Churches, besides three small religious Houses, whereof the one by report erected in the memoriall of the Englishmen and Danes slain here, is hard by as our Historians doe record, *Edmund* that most holy King a little before his death fought Seaven houres and more with the Danes not without an horrible slaughter, and afterwards gave over the battaile on even hand; such was the untimely fortune of the Field, that it drave both sides past their senses.

By *Waveney* the other River of those twaine, that bound this Shire and runneth Eastward, not farre from the Spring head thereof, are scene *Buckenham* and *Waveney* hall. This which may seeme to have the name left unto it of the *Iceni*, is the seat of that most honourable Family of the *Howards*, whose glory is so great, that the glory of *Buchanan* cannot empaire it. As for the other, so named, as I take it of *Buckenham* which the Saxons called *Bucken*; it is a faire and strong Castle, built by *William I. King of England* the Norman, (unto whom the Conqueror had given the place) and his heires that were successively Earles of *Arundell*, it descended to the *Tuscan*, and then them by *Caly* and the *Cliftons* unto the family of the *Kneveys*. These are of an old house and renowned ever since *Sir John Knevet* was Lord Chancellor of England under King *Edward the Third*, and also honourably allied by great marriages: he over and beside these of *Buckenham*, from hence sprang those right worshipfull *Sir Thomas Knevet*, Lord *Knevet*, *Sir Henry Knevet of Wiltshire*, and *Sir Thomas Knevet of Ashwell Thorpe* and others. This *Ashwell Thorpe* is a little Towne standing, which from the *Thorp*es in times past of Knights degree, by the *Thomas de L. L. Bourchiers of Berners*, is devolved at length hereditarily unto that *Sir Thomas Knevet* before named. As for that *Buckenham* afore said, it is holden by this condition, that the Lords thereof should at the Coronation of the Kings of England be the Kings *Bushers* that day. Like as, (a thing that may be scene the more in *Waveney* a little neighbour village, *Raulph de Carleton* and some one other, held this service, namely, To present an hundred Herring-Pies or *Rasies*, when *Herring* come in, unto their Sovereigne Lord the King, where soever he be in England.

But this river neare to his spring runneth by and by under *Disce*, now *Disce* town well knowne; which King *Henry the First* gave frankly to *Sir Richard Fitz-Robert*, and hee straightwayes passed it over to *Walter Fitz-Robert* with his Daughters, whose Posterity *Robert Fitz-Walter* obtained for this place the liberty of *Waverley* Mercat, at the hands of King *Edward the First*. From thence, although *Waverley* on each side beset with Townes, yet there is not one amongst them that may be of any Antiquity: unless it bee *Harleston* a good Mercat, and *Shelton* that standeth farther of, both which have given surnames to the ancient Families of the *Harleston* and *Harleston*: but before it commeth to the Sea, it cleaveth it selfe with the *Tare*, which the Britans called *Guerne*, the Englishmen *Gerne*, and *tere*, of *Alderney*, no doubt, so termed in British wherewith it is overshadowed. It ariseth out of the mids of this Countie, not farre from *Gernsion* a little Towne that tooke name thereof, and hath hard by it *Hengham*, which had Lords, descended from *John de Gernsion* (Nephew by the brother to *William Marescall Earle of Pembroke*) upon whom *King John* bestowed it with the Lands of *Hugh de Gornay*, a Traitour, and also with the daughter

The Family of the Kneveys.

Barons Bourchiers of Berners.

Hengham. Lord of Rhia.

daughter and coheire of *Hubert de Rhia*. From this *Marescall* it passed in revolution of time, unto the Lord *Morleis*, and from them by *Lovell* unto the *Parkers*, now Lords *Morley*. A little from hence is *Sculton*, otherwise called *Burdos* or *Burdels*, which was held by this Tenure, That the Lord thereof on the Coronation day of the Kings of England, should be chiefe *Lardiner*. Joint-neighbour to *Sculton* is *Wood-Rising* the faire seat of the Family of the greatest reputation and increase from *Sir Richard Southwell* Privie Councillour to King *Edward the Sixth*; and his Brother *Sir Robert* Master of the Rowles.

More Eastward is to be scene *Wimundham*, now short, *Windham*, famous for the *Albany* Earles of *Arundell*, there entered: whose Ancestor and Progenitor *William de Albini*, Butler to King *Henry the First* founded the Priory, and gave it to the Abbay of *Saint Albans* for a Cell, which afterward was advanced to an Abbay. Upon the Steeple whereof, which is of a great height, *William Ke* one of the Captaines of the Norfolk Rebels, in the yeare of our Lord 1549. was hanged on high. Neither would it be passed over in silence, that five miles from hence standeth *Antilborough*, the seat of the *Mortimers*; an ancient Family, who being different from those of *Wigmore*, bare for their Armes, A Shield, Or, Seme de floures de Lys Sables, and founded here a Collegiat Church, where there is little now to be scene. The Inheritance of these *Mortimers* hath by marriage long since accrued to the *Malcliff*, now Earles of *Suffex*, to the Family of *Fitz-Ralph*, and to *Sir Ralph Bigge*. But returne we now to the River.

The said *Tare* hol deth not his course farre into the East, before he taketh *Wentsum* a River (others call it *Wentfar*) from the South, into his streame: upon which, neere unto the head thereof, there is a foure square Kampier at *Talesborough*, containing foure and twenty Acres. It may seeme to have beene a Campe place of the Romans, if it be not that which in an old Chorographickall Table or Map published by *Marcus Welserus*, is called *AD TAUM*. Somewhat higher, upon the same River, stood *VENTA ICENORUM*, the most flourishing City, (for a little one) in times past of all this people, but now having lost the old name, it is called *Caster*. And no marvelle that of the three *VENTA*, Cities of Britain, this onely lost the name, seeing it hath quite lost it selfe. For, beside the ruines of the *Walles*, which containe within a square plot or quadrant, about thirty acres, and tokens appearing upon the ground where sometimes houses stood, and some few peeces of Romane money which are now and then there digged up, there is nothing at all remaining. But out of this ancient *VENTA*, in the succeeding ages, *Norwich* had her beginning, about three miles from hence, neere unto the confluents of *Tare* and another namelesse River (some call it *Bariden*) where they meet in one: which River with a long course running in and out by *Fakenham*, which King *Henry the first* gave to *Hugh Capell*, and King *John* afterward to the Earle of *Arundell*, and making many crooked reaches, speedeth it selfe this way by *Antilbridge* to *Tare*, and leaveth *Horsford* North from it: where a Castle of *William Cheney*, who in the Raigne of *Henry the Second*, was one of the great Lords and chiefe Peeres of England, lieth overgrown with bushes and brambles. This *NORWICH* is a famous City, called in the English-Saxon tongue *Norwic*, that is, a *Northerly Creeke*; if *Wic* among the Saxons signifieth the creeke or Cove of a River, as *Rhemanus* sheweth unto us, for, in this very place the River runneth downe amaine with a crooked and winding compass: or, a *Northerne Station*, if *Wic*, as *Hadrianus Imius* would have it, betokeneth a sure and secure station or place of abode; where dwelling houses stand joyntly and close together: or a *Northerly Castle*, if *Wic* found as much as *Castle*, as our Archbishop *Alfrick* the Saxon hath interpreted it. But if I should with some others be of opinion that *Norwich* by a little turning is derived from *Venta*, what should I doe but turne awry from the very truth? For by no better right may it challenge unto it selfe the name of *Venta*, than either *Basil* in Germany, the name of *AUGUSTA*, or *Baldach* of *BABYLON*. For, like as *Baldach* had the beginning of *Babylons* fall; and *Basil* sprang from the ruine of *Augusta*: even so our *Norwich* appeared and shewed it selfe, though it were late, out of that ancient

* Sculton. Wood rising.

Windham.

Antilborough. Mortimers.

Venta Icenorum. Caster.

Horsford.

* De Castero.

Norwich. Wic in the Saxons tongue what it signifieth.

* In the English Saxon Grammar,

Augusta Rauracorum.

R r

VENTA

VENTA, which, the British name thereof *Caer Gwentum* in Authours, doth prove: wherein, like as in the River *Wensum* or *Wensar* the name of *Venia* doth most plainly discover it selfe. For, this name *Norwich* wee cannot reade of any where in our Chronicles before the Danish warres.

So farre is it off, that either *Cesar* or *Gusteline* the Britain built it, as they write who are more hafty to beleieve all than to weigh matters with sound judgement. But now, verily, by reason of the wealth, the number of Inhabitants, and resort of people, the faire buildings, and faire Churches, and those so many, (for it containeth about thirty Parishes) the painefull industry of the Citizens, their loyalty towards their Prince, and their courtesie unto strangers, it is worthily to be reckoned with the most celebrate Cities of Britaine. It is right pleasantly situated on the side of an Hill two and fifty Degrees and forty Scrupuls from the Equator, and foure and twenty Degrees and five and fifty Scrupuls in Longitude. The forme, somewhat long: lying out in length from South to North a mile and an half: but carrying in breadth, about halfe so much, drawing it selfe in by little and little at the South end in manner, as it were, of a cone or sharpe point. Compassed it is about with strong walles (in which are orderly placed many Turrets, and twelve gates) lesse it bee on the East-side; where the River (after it hath with many windings and out watered the North part of the City, having foure Bridges for men to passe and fro over it) is a Fencethereunto, with his deepe Chanell there, and high firme bankes. In the very infancy, as I may so say, of this City, when *Ethelred* the weakesse and unadvised Prince reigned, *Saeno* or *Swan* the Dane who ranged at his pleasure through England with a great rable of spoiling Ravenours, first put the sacke, and afterwards set it on fire. Yet it revived againe, and as wee reade in the *Domesday booke* wherein *William the Conquerour* tooke the review of all England, there were by account in King *Edward the Confessours* time, no fewer than one thousand three hundred and twenty Burgeses in it. At which time (that I may take out of the same Booke) it paid unto the King twenty pounds and to the Earle of Northampton and beside all this twenty shillings, and foure Prebendaries, and sixe Sectors of Tithes, the Beare and five Droggs for salubritie the Beare: but now it payeth seventy pounds yearly unto the King, and an hundred shillings for a * *Gerfume* to the Queene, and an hundred shillings also twenty pounds Blanc to the Earle, and twenty shillings for a *Gerfume* by the Earle. While the said King *William* reigned, that flaming fire of farall sedition, which first in the East of England had kindled against the King, settled it selfe here, for when hee had saved himselfe by flight, his wife together with the French Britons gathered in this place a most grievous Siege even to extreme famine: yet at length when she was to this hard pinch that she fled the land, and this City was recovered, that scarce 560. Burgeses were left in it, as we reade in that *Domesday booke*. Of this yeelding up of the City *Lausfrank* Archbishop of Canterbury maketh mention in his Epistle to King *William*, in these words. *Your Kingdome is purged of the filthie and filthy Britons, The Cattle of Norwich is rendred up into your hands. And the Britons who were therein and had lands in England, having life and limme granted unto them, in sworne within forty dayes to depart out of your Realme, and not enter any more into your leave and licence.* From that time beganne it againe to recover it selfe by little and little out of this diluge of calamities, and Bishop *Herbert*, whose good name was cracked for his foule Simony, translated the Episcopall See from *Eborac* thither, and built up a very faire Cathedral Church on the East side and lower part of the City, in a certaine place then called *Con-holme*, neere unto the Castle. The first stone whereof in the Raigne of King *William Rufus*, and in the yeare after Christ's Nativity 1096. himselfe laid, with this inscription.

DOMINUS HERBERTUS POSUIT PRIMUM
LAPIDEM IN NOMINE PATRIS, FILII, ET
SPIRITUS SANCTI AMEN.

That is.

LORD

LORD [BISHOP] HERBERT LAID THE
FIRST STONE IN THE NAME OF THE
FATHER, THE SONNE, AND HOLY
GHOST, AMEN.

Afterwards, he procured of Pope *Paschal* that it should be established, and confirmed for the Mother Church of *Norfolke* and *Suffolke*: he endowed it bountifully with as much lands, as might sufficiently maintaine threescore Monkes, who had there faire and spacious Cloysters. But after that they were thrust out by King *Henry the Eight*, there were substituted for them a Deane, sixe Prebendaries and others. The Church being thus built and an Episcopall See there placed, the Towne now (as saith *William of Malmesbury*) became of great name for frequent trade of Merchants and resort of people. And in the 17. yeare of King *Stephen*, as we reade in old *Annals*, *Norwich* was founded anew, became a well peopled City, and was made a Corporation. And most certaine it is out of the kings Records, that king *Stephen* granted it unto his sonne *William* for his Appennage, as they terme it, or inheritance. Out of whose hands King *Henry the Second* shortly after wrested it by composition and kept it for himselfe: And albeit his Sonne *Henry*, called the younger King, when he aspired ambitiously to the kingdome, had made a large promise thereof unto *Hugh Bigod* Earle of *Norfolke* whom hee had drawne to side with him. At which time *Bigod* taking part with the young King, who could not containe his hope of the Kingdome within the bounds of duty and equity, most grievously afflicted and oppressed this City: and then as it is thought reedified that Castle standing within the very City upon an high hill neere unto the Cathedrall Church, which being compassed with a ditch of a wonderfull depth seemed in those daies impregnable. Which notwithstanding, *Levin the French-man*, with whom the seditious Barons of England combined against King *John*, won it easily by Siege. Now, that *Bigod* reedified this Castle I verily beleieve, because I have seen *Lions Saltans* engraven there in a Stone after the same forme that the *Bigods* used in times past in their Seales: of whom also there was one that in his Seale used a Crosse. These things fell out in the first age (we may say) of *Norwich*.

But in the age next ensuing, it increased mightily and flourished, by reason that the Citizens grew to be passing wealthy, who exhibited a supplication in the Parliament house unto King *Edward the First*, that they might be permitted to wall their City about, which they afterwards performed to the exceeding great strengthening and honor thereof. They obtained moreover of King *Richard the Second*, that the Worcester made there might be transported: and in the yeare 1403. king *Henry the fourth* granted that they might choose every yeare a Major in stead of their Bailiffes, which before were the principall Magistrates. They built likewise a passing faire Townehouse in the very midst of the City neere unto the Mercat-place, which on certaine set dayes is furnished exceeding well with all things necessary for mans life. And verily much beholden it is unto the * *Netherlanders*, that being weary of Duke *de Albe* his cruelty, and hating the bloody Inquisition, repaired hither in great numbers and first brought in the making and trade of saies, baies, and other stufes now much in use. But why should I stand long upon these things, when as *Alexander Nevill* a Gentleman well borne and very learned hath notably described all these matters, together with the story of their Bishops, the orderly succession of their Magistrates, and the furious outrage of that most villanous Rebell *Ket* against this City? This only will I adde, that in the yeare 1583. the Citizens conveyed water out of the River through pipes by an artificiall Instrument or water-forcer up into the highest places of the City. Heere I may justly commence an action both against *Polydore Virgil* an Italian, and also against *Angelus Capellus* a Frenchman, and put them to their answer before the Tribunal of venerable Antiquity, why they have avouched that the ancient Ordovices, whose be feared, as it were in another world, inhabited this *Norwich*. I would have the same merry action also against our Country man *D. Caius*, but that I know for certaine that the good old man, right learned though he were, was blinded in this point with the naturall love of this his own native Country. Neither have I

* Or Dutchmen of the Low countries

R r 2

more

more to say of *Norwich* unlesse it may please you to runne over these Verses of Master *Iohn Iowison* a Scottish-Britan written of the same.

*Urbs speciosa situ, nitidis pulcherrima sedibus,
Grata peregrinis, delitiosa suis.
Bellorum sedes, trepida turbante tumultu,
Tristitia Neustriaco sub duce damna tulit.
Vitiis disidijs, postquam caput ardua caelo
Extulit, immensis crevit optima epibus.
Cultus vincit opes, & cultum gratia rerum,
Quam bene? si luxur non comitetur opes.
Omnia sic addo sola hac sibi sufficit, ut si
Fors regno desit, hac caput esse queat.*

A City seated daintily, most faire built the is knowne,
Pleasing and kinde to Strangers all, delightfull to her owne,
The fear of warre whiles civill sturs and tumults yet remain'd,
In William the Normans dayes, she grievous losse sustain'd,
These broiles and jarres once past, when as her head aloft againe
She bare, in richnesse infinite and wealth she grew amaine.
Her Port exceeds that wealth, and things all superfine, this Port
How happy were it, if excesse with such wealth did not fort,
So all sufficient in her selfe, and so complete is shee,
That if neede were, of all the Realme the Mistrisse shee might bee.

From *Norwich*, the River *Tare* having entertained other beackes and brookes as guests, yet all under his owne name, passeth on still with many winding crookes every full of the fishes called *Ruffes*, which name because in English it foundeth like *Rough*, *D. Caius* named it aptly in Latine *Aspredo*, that is, *Rough*. For, it is all the body over, rough and hath very sharpe and prickly finnes: it delighteth in sandy places; for shape and bignesse like unto a Perch; in colour browne and dusky above, but palish yellow beneath: marked by the chawes with a double courle of half-circles the eye for the upper halfe of it of a darke browne, for the nether somewhat lowish like deliayed gold; the ball and sight thereof blacke. This speciall maketh it selfe it hath, that there is a line goeth along the backe, and fastened to the body (as were) with an overthwart thred, all to bespotted over the taile and fins with black speckes: which finnes when the fish is angry stand up and bristle stiffe and strong: but when the anger is allayed they fall flat againe. The meat of this *Ruffe* is delicious that of the Perch, much commended for holsonnesse; and for eating tender and fine.

When *Tare* is gone past *Claxton*, where there stands a Castlet built round, which Sir *Thomas Gawdy* knight Justice of the Common Pleas of late repaired, it receiveth brooke which passeth by nothing memorable but *Halles-hall*, and that only memorable for his ancient Owner Sir *James Hobart* Attorney Generall and of the Privie Councill to King Henry the Seventh (by him dubbed Knight at such time as he created Henry his sonne Prince of *Wales*) who by building from the ground the faire Church at *Landon* being his Parish Church, Saint Olaves bridge over *Waveney* that divideth *Northfolke* and *Suffolke*, the cawsey thereby, and other works of piety, deserved well of the Church, his Country, and the Common-weale, and planted three houses of his owne Issue, out of the second whereof Sir *Henry Hobart* his great Grandchild now likewise Attorney Generall to King *James* is lineally descended. Now *Tare* approaching neerer to the Sea, runneth downe Southward, that so it may shed it selfe more gently into the salt sea waves, and thereby maketh a little languet of land like a tongue thrust out, which it selfe of one side watereth, and the Sea on the other beatech upon. On this languet I saw standing in a most open plaine shore, *Tarmouth*, in the English *Saxon* Gap-mud, and liep-mud, that is, *Taref-mouth*, a very convenient Haven, and as fine a Towne, beautifully built and passing well fenced both by the naturall strength of the place and also by the skilfull industry of mans Art. For although it be environed almost round with Water, on the West side with the River which hath a Draw Bridge over it, and from other Partes with the Ocean, unlesse it be North-

A Ruffe.
De Rufforum
animalium,
Historia.

Halles-hall.
Hobart.

Gariensis
Ostium.
Yarmouth.

Northward where there is firme land: yet is it in most tightly manner enclosed with a good strong wall, which together with the River make a square forme of four sides, but somewhat long: upon which wall, beside *Towres*, there is cast a mount toward the East, from whence the great Peecces of Ordnance use to thunder and flash all about into the Sea under it, which is scarce 60. paces off. It hath indeed but one Church, yet the same is very large, having a passing high spire steeple to adorne it, built by *Herbert* Bishop of *Norwich* hard by the North gate: under which are to be scene the foundations brought above ground of a goodly peece of worke to enlarge the same. That this was that old Towne *GARIANONUM*, where, in times past, the *Sablefoot* *Horsemen* kept their standing watch and ward against the barbarous enemies, I dare not affirme; neither doe I thinke that *Garianum* was where *Caster* is now (in times past the faire seat of Sir *Iohn Fastolfe*, a most martiall knight, and now appertaining to the *Passions*) albeit it is much celebrated among the Inhabitants for the antiquity thereof, and the same goeth that the River *Tare* had another mouth or passage into the Sea under it.

But as I am perswaded that *GARIANONUM* stood at *Burgh-castle* in *Suffolke*, which is on the other banke about two miles off, so I am easily induced to thinke, that both *Tarmouth* arose out of the ruines thereof, and also that the said *Caster* was one of the Roman Forts, placed also upon the mouth of *Tare*, that now is stopped up. For, like as the * North Westerne Winde doth play the Tyrant upon *Holland* over against it, and by drift of Shelves and Sand-heapes hath choked the midst of the *Rhene-mothes*: even so the * North-East Winde afflicth and annoieth this Coast, and driveth the sand on heapes, so as it may seeme to have dammed up this mouth also.

Neither will it be prejudiciall to the Truth, if I should name our *Tarmouth*, *GARIANONUM*, being so neere adjoining as it is, unto the old *Garianum*: considering that *Gariensis* the River, whence it tooke the name, having now changed his chanel, entereth into the maine Sea a little beneath this Towne, which it hath also given name unto: For, I must needs confesse, that this our *Tarmouth* is of later memory. For, when that ancient *Garianum* aforesaid was decayed, and there was no Garrison to defend the Shore, *Cerdick* a warlike Saxon landed here (whereupon the Inhabitants at this day call the place *Cerdick-sand*, and the *Wicars* of *Hittories*, *Cerdick-shore*) and after he had made fore war upon the *Isle*, tooke Sea and sailed from hence into the West parts, where he erected the Kingdome of the West Saxons. And not long after, the Saxons in stead of *Garianum*, founded a new Towne in that moist and waterish ground, neer the West side of the River and named it *Tarmouth*. But finding the Situation thereof not to be healthfull, they betooke themselves to the other side of the River called then of the same *Cerdicke*, *Cerdick-sand*, and built this new Towne, in which there flourished in King Edward the *Confessor* his daies 70. Burgeses, as wee finde recorded in the * *Notitia* of England. After this, about the yeare of our Redemption 1340. the Townesmen strengthened it with a wall, and in short space it grew so rich and puissant, that oftentimes in seafights they set upon their neighbors of *Leisoffe*, yea and the * *Portmen*, for so termed they the Inhabitants of the Cinque Ports, not without much blood shed on both sides. For they were most spitefully bent against them, haply for being excluded out of the number of the Cinque Ports, and deprived of these privileges which old *Garianum* or *Tarmouth*, and their Ancestours, enjoyed under the * Comes of the *Saxon Shore* in elder times. But this their stoutnesse was repressed at length and taken downe by the Kings Authority: or as some thinke, their lusty courage became abated by that most grievous and lamentable plague, which in one yeare, within this one little Towne brought 7000. to their graves. The which is witnessed by an ancient Latine *Chronographical Table* hanging up in the Church, wherein are set downe also their warres with the *Portmen* and *Leisoffians* aforesaid.

Since that time, their hearts have not beene so haughty, nor their wealth so great, to make them bold: howbeit painfully they follow the trade of Merchandise, and

R f 3

Garianum.

* *Caurus.*

* *Aquila.*

Cerdicus the
Saxon.
Cerdick sand.

William
Worcester.
* *Domesday*
booke.

* *Portuenses.*

* *Lieutenant.*

Herrings.
and

*Halecum.

Portuenies.

The river
Thyna.Blickling.
Ailetham.Worsted.
Worsted Stuffe.Saint Benets in
the Holme.Ludham.
Clipsby.A most fat and
barble ground.

Bronholme.

*
Paston.
Gimmingham.

and taking of * Herrings (which the learned thinke to bee *Chalcides* and *Lencænides*) a kinde of fish more plentifull heere than in any other Coast of the world. For, it may seeme incredible how great a Faire, and with what resort of people, is holden heere at the Feast of *Saint Michael*, and what store of Herrings and other fish is then bought and sold. At which time, they of the *Cinque Ports* above said by an old order and custome, appoint their *Bailiffs*, *Commissioners*, and fend them hither, who, that I may speake out of their owne *Patent* or *Commission*, together with the *Magistrates* of this Towne, during the time of the free *Fair*, hold a Court, for matters concerning the Faire, doe execute the Kings Justice, and keepe the *King's peace*. As for the Haven below the Towne, it is very commodious both for the inhabitants, and for *Norwich-men* also: but for feare that it should be barred and stopped up, they wrestle as it were, to their great cost and charges, with the maine Sea: which to make them amends and to restore what it hath eaten and swallowed up elsewhere in this Shore, hath by heaping of earth and sand together, cast up here of late a pretty Island.

At this mouth also, another River, which some call *Tbyrn* sheddeth it selfe together with *Tare* into the sea: This River springing up neere unto *Holt* a towne so called of an *Holt* or tuft of trees, and for the Mercat well knowne, running about five miles distant from *Tare*, holdeth on a joynt course a great way and keepeth pace within, by *Blickling*, now the seat of the ancient Family of *Clere* who in former times dwelt at *Ormesby*, and by *Ailetham* a Mercat Towne of good repute, where the *Barke* of *Arhole* in *Scorland* had lands not farre from *Worsted*, whereas I reade, the *Stulle Worsted*, in so great request amongst our Ancestours, was first made; and hence so named, as *Dornicks*, *Camerie*, *Calecut*, &c. had in like manner their denomination from the places where they were first invented, and made. Then passeth *Tbyrn* the decayed great Abbay called *Saint Benet in the Holme*: which *Kent the Duke* built, and the Monkes afterward so strengthened with most strong wals and bulwarks, that it seemed rather a Castle than a Cloister. In so much, that *William the Conquerour* could not winne it by assault, untill a Monke betrayed it into his hand upon this condition, that himselfe might bee made Abbot thereof. Which was done accordingly: but forthwith, this new Abbot for being a Traitor, (as the *English* make report) was hanged up by the Kings commandement, and so justly punished for this treason. But the ground in this Island or Holme is so fenny and rotten, that a man cut up the strings and rootes of trees, and shrubs there growing, it floateth lost on the water, and is ready to follow one whither he will have it. And sometimes be who thinke, by the *Perwinkles* and *Cocles* that other while are digged up here, that the Sea had broken in thither. From thence runneth this River downe by *Ludham*, an house of the Bishops of *Norwich*, and by *Clipsby*, which gave name to a Family of ancient note in his Tract, and straightway uniteth his owne streame with the *Tare*. From the mouth of *Tare* the shore goeth directly (as it were) North to *Winterton* a point or cape very well knowne to Sailers, which tooke that name, I suppose, of the cold and winterly Situation. For, it lieth full upon the Ocean, the father of winds and cold, who with exceeding violence rusheth against the bankes and piles that are opposed against him. Howbeit, the Country adjoyning round about, in many mens opinion hath the fatteft Soile and softest mould of any country in all England, as which asketh least labour, and yeeldeth most fruit. For, with a silly jade, (as *Plinie* writeth of *Bizacium* in *Africke*) and a poore old woman at one side of the yoke drawing the plough, it is easily broken up and eared. From *Winterton* immediately the shore turning Westward, the sea retireth, without any bearing out in manner at all along a flat and low coast, as farre as to *Eccles*, which is almost overflowed and drowned with the Ocean. From thence it carrieth an higher shore, by *Bronholme* sometime a Priory founded and enriched by *G. Glanvill*, and seated upon the sharpe top of an hill, the Crosse whereof our ancestours had in holy reverence, I know not for what miracles. Next it is *Paston* a small townlet which yet hath given surname to a Family grown great, both in Estate and alliance, since they matched with an Heiress of *Bury*

A and *Maulbye*. Not far hence is *Gimmingham*, which with other Manors, John Earle of *Warren* and *Surrie* gave in times past to *Thomas Earle of Lancaster*, and by *Cramer* where the neighbour Inhabitants with great expense went about to make an Haven, but to small purpose, the Ocean so furiously played the Tyrant and made resistance. Thence the Shore runneth forth to *Wauburne-hope*, a Creeke fortified in our time, so called of *Wauburne* a little Towne, unto which by the intercession of *Olivier de Burdeaux*, King Edward the Second granted the Liberty of keeping a Mercat: Next unto it is *Clay*, and over against it with a little River running betwene, *Blackney*, our Country man *Bale* calleth it *Nigeria*, a famous Houle of *Carmelite Friars* in this late age afore going, built by Sir Robert de *Ros*, Sir Robert Bacon, and John Bret: out of which came John Baconthorp, so named of the place of his nativity, (which now is the habitation of the *Heids*, an ancient Race of Knights degree) A man in that age of such variety and depth withall of excellent learning, that hee was had in exceeding great admiration among the Italians, and commonly called *The Resolute Doctor*. Whence it is, that *Paulus Panfa* thus writeth of him. *If thy minde stand to enter into the secret power of the Almighty and most mercifull God, no man hath written of his Essence more exactly. If any man desireth to know the causes of things, or the effects of Nature, if hee wish to know the sundry motions of Heaven, and the contrary qualities of the Elements, this man offereth himselfe as a store-house to furnish him: The Armour of Christian Religion, of better proofe and defence than those of Vulcans making against the Jewes, this resolute Doctor alone hath delivered, &c.* When you are past *Wauburne*, the Coast lieth more low and flat, as farre as to *Saint Edmunds Point*, cut through and distinguished with many a riller, and hardly defended from the injury of the Sea by heapes of sand which they use to call *Meales*, opposed against it.

More within the Country is *Walsingham* scarce foure miles from hence: whereupon it is that of the vicinity unto the Sea *Erasmus* calleth it *Parabalasia*. Very famous now is this Village by reason of the best Saffron growing there: but of late time as much renowned through all England for a Pilgrimage to our *Ladie the Virgin Mary*: whom hee who had not in that former Age visited and presented with offerings, was reputed irreligious. But this shall *Erasmus* an eye-witnesse describe in his owne very words. *Non faveo fuisse eam, (saicte mee) about foure miles, there standeth a Towne living almost of nothing else but upon the resort of Pilgrimes. There is a Colledge of Chanons, yet such, as unto whom the Latins have given the addition of Regulares, a middle kinde betwixt Monkes and those Chanons whom they terme Secular: This Colledge hath scarce any other Revenewes than from the liberality of the said Virgin. For certaine of the greater Presents and Oblations are layed up and preserved. But if there be any money offered or ought else, of small value, that goeth unto the maintenance of the Covent, and their Head or President, whom they call Prior. The Church is faire and neat, yet in it the Virgin dwelleth not: that honour forsooth, shee hath done unto her Sonne: shee hath her Church by her selfe, but so, as that shee may bee on the right hand of her Sonne. Neither doth shee dwell heere for all this, for why, the Building is not yet finished, and the place hath a through light and ayre on all sides, with open doores and wide open windows, the Ocean Sea withall, the father and foster of windes is hard by. In that Church, which I said was unfinished, there is a small Chappell, but all of wood, whereinto on either side at a narrow and little Doore are such admitted as come with their Devotions and Offerings. Small light there is in it, and none other in manner but by tapers or wax-candles, yeelding a most dainty and pleasant smell. Nay if you looke into it, you would say it were the Habitation of heavenly Saints indeed, so bright shining it is all over with precious Stones, with Gold and Silver. But within the memory of our fathers, when King Henry the Eighth had set his minde and eye both, upon the Riches and Possessions of Churches, all this vanished quite away. Touching *Walsingham*, I have nothing else to say more, but that the Family of the *Walsinghams*, Knights (as they will have it that curiously search after Genealogies) fetched first their name and Originall from hence: Out of which house flourished that Sir *Francis Walsingham*, Secretary unto *Queene Elizabeth*, a man*

Wauburne.

Blackney.
1321.
John Bacon,
thorp.The Resolute
Doctor.Meales or
Miles.
Walsingham.

Regulares.

Houghton.
The Neirfords.
Petronilla
Vaulx.

Brannodunum.

Brancastor.

Runstanton.

Le Strange.

Sharnborn.
For ix a Bi-
shop.

The Washes.
Metaris Aestua-
rium.

For ix a Bi-
shop.

as of deepe insight, so also of as rare and painfull industry in the weightiest affaires of the Realme. But hard by it at *Houghton*, flourished sometime the noble Family of the *Neirfords*, who by matching in marriage with * *Parnel de Vallibus* (who had about *Holi, Cley*, and elsewhere a goodly Inheritance) was greatly enriched. But now let us looke backe againe to the Shore.

Neere unto *Walsingham* Westward, upon the Sea side, was that ancient Towne *BRANNODUNUM*, where when the Saxons first molested Britaine with their Invasions, *The Dalmatian Horsemen* lay in *Garrison* under the *Lieutenant of the Saxon Shore*. But now it is a country Village, reteining nought but the remaines of that name, and shewing a Trench and Rampire (the neighbour Inhabitants call it the *Castle*) that containeth within it a plot of ground much about eight Acres, and is named *Brancaster*, where peeces of Romane money are many times gotten out of the earth. Very commodiously was there a Garrison planted in this place: for at *S. Edmunds Chappell* neere adjoining, and *Hunstanton*, built by that holy King *Saint Edmund*, the coast draweth backe into the South, and so admitteth a larger creeke for the Sea to enter into, lying open for Pirats, into which many Rivers also doe void themselves. As for *Hunstanton*, it is to be remembered in this regard, if there were nothing else, for that it hath beene the Habitation of the Family of *Le Strange*, Knights by degree, ever since that in the Raigne of Edward the Second, *Iohn Baron Le Strange* of *Knackin*, gave the same unto *Hamon* his younger Brother.

The catching of Hawkes, and the plentifull fishing, the *Leas* and *Amber* also found oftentimes in this Shore I wittingly omit, seeing that there is great store of these things else where along this Tract. Yet *Sharnborn* in this Coast is not to be omitted both for that *Felix* the Burgundian who brought these East Englishmen to the Christian Faith and state of perpetuall Felicity, built in this place the second Church of Christians in this Country (for the first, he founded at *Babingley* where he landed) also because it is verily thought and that by the faithfull testimony of old dedes and evidences, that an old Englishman Lord of this place before the coming of the Normans, by vertue of sentence given judicially in open Court by *William Conquerour* himselfe, recovered this Lordship against *Warren*, unto whom the Conquerour had given it. Which argument they enforce hard, who would prove that the said *William* entred upon the Possession of England by Covenant and agreement, and not by right of warre and Conquest.

The foresaid Creeke or Bay, our Country men call the *Washes*, *Ptoleme* termed it *AESTUARIUM METARIS*, haply for *Malibraith*, by which name the Britains called the like Frithes and Armes of the Sea in other places: neither doth it signify among them any other thing than an Arme of the Sea uncertainly changing the channell such as this is: Upon this, where the River *Onse* striveth forcibly against the Ocean, standeth *Linne*, peradventure so named of the waters broad spreading, for that doth *Lbyn* import in the * British tongue. A large Towne this is, encompassed with a deepe trench and wals for the most part thereof, divided by two small Rivers that have fiftene bridges of thereabout over them: and although it be of no great antiquity and not long since called *Linnum Episcopi*, that is, *Bishops Linne*, because it pertained to the Bishops of Norwich, untill King Henry the Eighth his daies, for it had beginning out of the ruines of an elder Towne which stood over against it in *Marshland*, and is at this day called *Old Linne* and *Linnum Regia*, that is, *Kings Linne*, yet by reason of the safe Haven which yeeldeth most easie access, for the number of Merchants there dwelling, and thither resorting, for the faire and the goodly houses, the wealth also of the townesmen, it is doubtlesse the principall town of this Shire except *Norwich* only. It hath likewise most large franchises and immunities, which the Inhabitants bought with their owne blood of King John, whiles they took part with him and defended his quarrell, who ordained there a *Mayor*, and delivered unto them his owne sword to be carried before him, yea and gave unto them a silver cup all gilt, which they still doe keep. These their liberties being afterwards lost, they redeemed not without blood also, of King Henry the Third, when siding with him

A and serving under his Banner, they fought an unfortunate battaile against the outlawed Lords in the Isle of *Ely*, as the booke of *Ely* and *Mathew Paris* doe both joyntly witness.

Over against *Linne*, on the farther side of the River lieth *Marshland*, a little moist marsh country, as the name implieth, divided and parted every where with ditches, trenches and furrowes to draine and draw the waters away: a soile standing upon a very rich and fertile mould, and breeding abundance of cattell: in so much as that in a place commonly called *Tilney marsh* there feed much about 30000. sheepe: but so subject to the bearing, and overflowing of the roaring maine Sea, which very often breaketh, reareth, and troubleth it so grievously, that hardly it can be holden off with chargeable wals and workes. The places of greater note in this *Marshland*, are these: *Walpole*, which the Lord of the place gave in times past unto the Church of *Ely* together with his sonne, whom he had made a Monke there: *Wigton*, the possession of *I. Howard* in the Raigne of Edward the First, whose Posterity spread, and became a most honorable and noble Family, whereof I have already spoken: *Tilney*, whence in old time the stocke of the *Tilneys*, Knights, tooke name; and *Saint Maries* the seat of the ancient race of the *Carvils*.

Tilney.
S. Maries.

Now have we passed along all the Sea-coast. As for the inner part of the Country, there are also very many Townes toward the West side, but because they bee of later memory, I will briefly runne them over. Neere to *Linne* upon an high hill standeth *Rising-castle*, almost matchable to the Castle of *Norwich*: the seat intimes past of the *Albines*; afterwards of *Robert de Montbault*, by one of the sisters and coheires of *Hugh Albine* Earle of *Arundell*; and at last the mansion place of the *Monbrays*: who, as I have learned, came out of the same house that the *Albines* did. But now, after long languishing, as it were, by reason of old age, the said Castle hath given up the ghost. Below it is *Castle-acre*, where was sometimes the habitation of the Earles of *Warren*, in a Castle now halfe downe, on a little Rivers side: which carrying no name, ariseth not farre from *Godwicke* a lucky good name, where there stands a small house, but greatly graced by the Lord thereof, *Sir Edward Coke* Knight, a man of rare endowments of nature, and as in the Common lawes much practised, so of deepe insight therein, which all England hath to the knowledge of, whiles hee discharged the function of Attorney Generall many yeares most learnedly, and now acknowledged whiles being Lord Chiefe Justice of the Common Pleas, he administrerth justice as uprightly and judiciously. Neither is he lesse to be remembered, for that he loveth learning, and hath well deserved of the present and succeeding ages by his learned labours.

Reports.

This River or brooke with a small streame and shallow water runneth Westward to *Linne*, by *Neirford*, that gave name to the Family of the *Neirfords* famous in times past, and by *Neirborough*: where neere unto the house of the *Spilmans*, knights, upon a very high hill is to be seene a warlike Fort of passing great strength and of ancient worke, so situated, as it hath a very faire prospect into the Country about it. After, upon the said Brooke is seated *Pentney*, a pretty Abbay, the ordinary buriall place in ancient time of the Noblemen and Gentlemen in this Tract.

Neirford.

Neere unto it lieth *Wormegay*, commonly *Wrongay*, which *Reginald de Warren* brother of *William de Warren* the second Earle of *Surry* had with his wife, of whom as I have read, the said Earle had the donation or *Maritagium* (as they use to speake in the law phrase) and by his sonnes daughter streightwayes it was transferred to the *Bardolphs*, who being Barons of great nobility, flourished a long time in honorable state, and bare for their Armes *Three Cinque-foiles* or in a Shield *Azur*, The greatest part of whose Inheritance together with the Title came to *Sir William Phillips*, and by his daughter passed away to the *Vicount Beaumont*. More Eastward are seated, *Swaffham* a Mercat Towne of good note, sometime the Possession of the Earle of *Richmond*: *Ashle Manor*, by Tenure whereof the *Hastings* and *Greies* Lords of *Rutbin* had the charge of table clothes and linnen used at the solemne Coronation of the Kings of England: *North Elmham*, the Bishops See for a good time, when as this Province

Wormegay.

Bardolphs
Barons.

was divided into two Dioceses: *Dereham*, wherein *Witthurga* King *Anna's* daughter was buried: whom because shee was piously affected, farre from all riotous excesses, and wanton lightnesse, our Ancestours accounted for a Saint. Next unto which is *Gresphenhall*, and adjoining thereto *Elfing*, the possessions in ancient time of the *Folliots*, men of great worth and Dignity, which in right of dowry came by a daughter of *Richard Folliot* to *Sir Hugh de Hastings*, descended out of the Family of *Abergewenny*: and at length by the daughters and heires of *Hastings* the last, *Gresphenhall* aforesaid fell unto *Sir Hamon le Strange* of *Hunstanton*, and *Elfing* unto *William Browne* the brother of *Sir Antonie Browne* the first *Vicount Mountacute*. In this quarter also is *Ick-borrough*, which *Talbot* supposeth to have beene that *ICIANI*, whereof *Antonine* speaketh. Neither have I cause to write any more of these places. And now I thinke it is good time to set downe the Earles and Dukes of *Norfolke*, that I may proceed to *Cambridgeshire*.

William the Conquerour made one *Raulph* Governour of *East-England*, that is to say, of *Norfolke*, *Suffolke*, and *Cambridgeshire*, who forthwith gaping as I said, after an alteration and change in the State, was dispossessed of that place. After certaine years, in the Raigne of *Stephen*, *Hugh Bigod* was Earle of *Norfolke*: For, when peace was concluded betwene *Stephen* and *Henry Duke of Anjou*, who became afterwards King *Henry* the second, by expresse words it was provided, that *William King Stephens* sonne should have the whole Earldome of *Norfolke*, excepting amongst other things, The third peny of that Countie, whereof *Hugh Bigod* was Earle. Whom notwithstanding King *Henry* the Second created Earle againe, of the third peny of *Norfolke* and *Norwich*. Who dying about the 27. yeare of *Henry* the Second, Roger his sonne succeeded, who, for what cause I know not, obtained at the hands of King *Richard* the first a new Charter of his creation: Him succeeded his sonne *Hugh*, who tooke to his wife *Mawde* the eldest daughter and one of the heires of *William de Pembroch*. By whom he had issue one sonne named *Roger*, Earle of *Norfolke* and *Marescall* of *England*, who at Tournament having his bones put on of joint, died without issue: and another, called *Hugh Bigod* Lord chiefe Justice of *England* slaine in the battaile of *Lewis*: whose sonne *Roger* succeeded his Uncle in the Earldome of *Norfolke* and dignity of *Marescall*, but having incurred through his insolent contumacy the high displeasure of King *Edward* the First, was compelled to passe away his honors and well neere his whole inheritance into the Kings hands to the use of *Thomas of Brotherton* the Kings son, whom he had begotten of his second wife *Margaret* sister to *Philip the Faire*, King of *France*. For thus reporteth the History, out of the Library of *Saint Austens* in *Canterbury*. In the yeare 1301. *Roger Bigod* Earle of *Norfolke* ordained King *Edward* to be his heire: and hee delivered into his hands the rod of the Marshalls Office with this condition, that if his wife brought him any children, he should without all contradiction receive againe all from the King and hold it peaceably as before: and the King gave unto him a 1000. pounds in money, and a thousand pound land during his life, together with the Marshallship, and the Earldome. But when he was departed this life without issue, King *Edward* the Second, honoured the said *Thomas of Brotherton* his brother, according to the conveiance aforesaid, with the Titles of *Marshall* and Earle of *Norfolke*. Whose daughter *Margaret* called *Marshall* and Countesse of *Norfolke* wife to *John Lord Segrave*, king *Richard* the Second created in her absence Dutchesse of *Norfolke* for terme of life: and the same day created *Thomas Mowbray* the daughters sonne of the said *Margaret*, then Earle of *Nottingham*, the first Duke of *Norfolke*, To him and his heires males; unto whom he had likewise granted before the State and stile of Earle Marshall of *England*.

This is hee, that before the king was challenged and accused by *Henry of Lancaster* Duke of *Hereford*, for uttering inconsiderately certaine reprochfull, and derogatory words against the king. And when they were to fight a combat, at the very barre and entry of the Lists, by the voice of an Herauld it was proclaimed in the kings name, That both of them should be banished, *Lancaster* for ten yeares, and *Mowbray* for ever: who afterwards ended his life at *Venice*, leaving two sonnes behind him in *England*.

Gresphenhall,
Elfing,
Folliots.

Ickborrough,
Iciani.

Earles and
Dukes of
Norfolke.

Composition
betwixt King
Stephen and
Henry Duke of
Anjou.

Parliament
21. Richard. 2.

England. Of which, *Thomas Earle Marshall* and of *Nottingham*, for no other Title used hee, was beheaded for seditious plotting against *Henry* of *Lancaster*, who now had possessed himselfe of the Crowne by the name of King *Henry* the Fourth. But his brother and heire *John*, who through the favour of King *Henry* the Fifth was raised up, and for certaine yeares after called onely Earle Marshall and of *Nottingham*, at last in the very beginning of *Henry* the Sixth his Raigne, By authority of Parliament and by vertue of the Patent granted by King *Richard* the Second, was declared, Duke of *Norfolke*, as being the sonne of *Thomas Duke of Norfolk* his father, and heire to *Thomas* his brother. After him succeeded *John* his sonne, who died in the first yeare of *Edward* the Fourth: and after him likewise *John* his sonne, who whiles his father lived was created by King *Henry* the Sixth Earle of *Surry* and of *Warren*. Whose onely daughter *Anne*, *Richard Duke of Yorke*, the young sonne of King *Edward* the Fourth tooke to wife, and together with her received of his father the Titles of Duke of *Norfolke*, Earle Marshall, Earle of *Warren* and *Nottingham*. But after that he and his wife both were made away in their tender yeares, *Richard* the Third, King of *England* conferred this Title of the Duke of *Norfolke*, and the dignity of Earle Marshall upon *John Lord Howard*, who was found next cozen in blood and one of the heires to the said *Anne* Dutchesse of *Yorke* and *Norfolke*; as whose mother was one of the daughters of that first *Thomas Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolke*, and who in the time of King *Edward* the Fourth was summoned a Baron to the Parliament. This *John* lost his life at *Bosworth field*, fighting valiantly in the quarrell of King *Richard*, against King *Henry* the Seventh. His sonne *Thomas*, who being by King *Richard* the Third created Earle of *Surry*, and by King *Henry* the Seventh made Lord Treasurer, was by King *Henry* the Eighth restored to the Title of Duke of *Norfolke*, and his sonne the same day created Earle of *Surry*: after that by his conduct, *James* the fourth, King of the Scots was slaine, and the Scottish power vanquished at *Branxton*. In memoriall of which Victory the said King granted to him and his heires males for ever, that they should beare in the midst of the Bend in the *Howard's Armes*, the whole halfe of the upper part of a *Lion Genes*, pierced through the mouth with an arrow, in the due colours of the Armes of the King of Scots. I translate it verbatim out of the Patent. After him succeeded his sonne *Thomas* as well in his honours, as in the Office of Lord Treasurer of *England*, and lived to the time of *Queene Mary*, tossed to and fro betwene the reciprocall ebbs and flowes of fortune, whose grand sonne *Thomas* (by his sonne *Henry*, the first of the English Nobility that did illustrate his high birth with the beauty of learning) being attainted for purposing a marriage with *Mary* the Queene of Scots, lost his life in the yeare of our Lord 1572. and was the last Duke of *Norfolke*. Since which time his offspring lay for a good while halfe dead: but now watered and revived with the vital dew of King *James*, re flourisheth very freshly.

Rot. Parl. 3.
Hen. 6.

Floddon field.

See in the Ad-
ges of Hadria-
nus Junius, A-
chilleum Vo-
tum.

In this Province there be Parish Churches about 660.

CAMBRIDGE.



CAMBRIDGE-SHIRE.



CAMBRIDGE-SHIRE, called in the English-Saxon *Grent-pig-reyn* lyeth more inward, and stretched out in length Northward. On the East it butteth upon Northfolke and Suffolke, on the South upon the *East-Saxons* or Essex, and Hertfordshire, on the West upon Bedford and Huntingdon shires, and Northward upon Lincoln-shire: being divided into two parts by the river *Ouse* which crosseth it over-thwart from West to East.

The lower and South-part is better manured, and therefore more plentifull, being some-what a plaine, yet not altogether leuell, for the most part or all of it rather (save onely where it bringeth forth saffron) is laid out into corne fields, and yeeldeth plentifully the best barley; of which steeped in water and lying wet therein untill it sprout againe, then after the said sprout is full come, dried and parched over a Kill, they make a store of mault: By venting and sending out whereof into the neighbor-countries, the Inhabitants raise very great gaine. The farther and Northerne part, because it is Fennish ground, by reason of the many floods that the rivers cause, and so dispersed into Islands, is called *The Isle of Ely*, a tract passing greene, fresh and gay by reason of most plenteous pastures: howbeit after a sort hollow, by occasion of the water that in some places secretly entrench in; yea and otherwhile when it overfloweth, surroundeth most part of it.

Along the West side of the lower part runneth one of the two highwayes made by the Romans, (*Ely* booke calleth it *Ermingstreet*) which passeth forth right to *Huntingdon* through *Roisson*, that standeth in the very edge and entry of the Shire, a towne well knowne, yet but of late built, whereof I have already spoken: also by *Caxton*, in times past the seate of the Barony of Stephen de *Eschalers*, and from whose Posterity in the reigne of King Henry the Third it descended to the *Frevills*, and from them by the *Burgeins* to the *Iermans*. Neither is *Gamlingshay* far distant from hence, where dwelt the *Avenells*, whose Inheritance came by marriage to the ancient Family of Saint *George*, (out of which there flourished many Knights since the time of King Henry the First) at *Hatley*, which of them is called *Hatley Saint George*. Above *Caxton* before mentioned is *Eliesley*, where was in elder Ages a Religious house of Holy Virgines, among whom was celebrated the incertaine memory of Saint *Pandionia* the daughter of a Scottish King, as the tradition is. But long since they were translated to *Hinchinbroke*. And againe above *Eliesley*, was the Priory of *Swasey* founded for blacke Monkes by *Alan la Zouch* brother to the Vicount of *Rohan* in the *Lesser Britaine*, and was the common Sepulture a long time for the Family of *Zouch*.

More Westward a little river runneth through the middle of this part, which if suing downe out of *Ashwel*, hastneth from South to North with many turnings, to joyn it selfe with the *Ouse*, running by *Shengay* (where be the goodliest meadows of this Shire) a *Commandery* in old time of the Knights *Templars*, which *Shengay*, Sibyl the daughter of Roger *Mont-gomery* Earle of *Shrewsbury*, and wife of *I. de Raines* gave unto them in the yeere 1130. nor farre from *Burne Castle*, in ancient times the Barony of *First* Sheriffe of this Shire, and of the *Peverels*, from whom by one of the daughters, this and other Possessions came unto Sir *Gilbert Peck*: the last of whose house, after he had otherwise advanced his children by his second wife, ordained King Edward the First, to be his Heire. For, in those dayes the Noble men of England brought into use againe the custome of the Romanes under their Emperours, which was to nominate them their heires, if they were in any disfavours with their Sovereignes.

But in the Barons warre in King Henric the Third his dayes, this Castle was burnt

* Byne Mauld;

Roisson.
See in Hert-
fordshire,
Caxton.

Hatley Saint
George.

*

Shengay.
A Commat-
dery.

Burne,
Barones de
Burne.

Barnwell
Historie.
The King
heire to private
persons.

burnt downe, being set on fire by *Ribald L' Isle*: At which time *Walter de Cottem* a respecive person, was hanged for Rebellion.

By what name writers termed this River, it is a question: some call it *Granta*, others *Camus*. And unto these I rather incline: both for that the course thereof is somewhat crooked; for, so much doth *Cam* in the British tongue signifie, whence a certaine crooked river in Cornwall is named *Camel*; and also because the great towne *CAMBORITUM*, which *Antonine* the Emperour mentioneth in his journey of Britaine, stood upon this river as I am well neere induced to beleve by the distance, by the name, and also by the peeces of Romane mony found hereunto the bridge in great store. For, *CAMBORITUM*, signifieth *A Fould or a Fould with crooked windings*. For *Ribb* in our British or Welsh tongue betokeneth *A Fould*, which I note to this end, that the Frenchmen may more easily perceive and see what is the meaning of *Augustoritum*, *Darioritum*, *Ribomagus*, and other like in France. Howbeit the Saxons chuse rather to call our *Camborritum*; *Gyn-cear-cep* and *Gpon-cep*, which name it keepeth still: but whence it was derived, I cannot yet see. If I should fetch it from *Gron* a Saxon word that signifieth *Fenny place*, I might perhaps goe wide: And yet *Asserius* termed once or twice certaine fenish and marshy grounds in Somersetshire, by a mungrell name the Saxon and halfe Latine, *Gronnas paludosisimas*: and very well knowne it is, that City in West Frisland, which is situate in such a ground is named *Gravinsker*. But let other hunt after the derivation of this name. About the yeere of Christ 700, it was a little desolate City, as saith *Bede*, whiles hee reporteth that neere unto the walles, there was found a little trough or coffin, very cunningly and finely wrought of Marble, and covered most fitly with a lidde of the like stone. But now a full Village it is: one part whereof Henry *Lacie* Earle of Lincoln gave unto his sonne Henry, with this condition, that his sonnes and their posterity (which they while since be cleane worne out) should have no other Christian name but Henry: the other part, Henry the Sixth King of England comming out of the *Isle of Lancaster*, into whose hands the Patrimony of Earle *Lacie* fell, granted unto the Kings Colledge in Cambridge: which was either a part or else a plant of the ancient *Camborritum*, so neere it commeth unto it both in situation and name. Neither can I easily beleve, that *Grant* was turned into *Cam*; for this might seeme a diminution some what too hardly streined, wherein all the letters but one are quite swallowed up. I would rather thinke that the common people retained the terme of the ancient name of *Camborritum* or of the river *Cam*, although writers used more often the Saxon name *Grantbridge*. This City which being the other University of England, the other eye, the other strong-stay, as it were, thereof, and a most famous Mart and store-house of good Literature and Godlines, standeth upon the river, which after it hath in sporting wise besprinkled the West side thereof with many *Islets*, turning into the East, divideth it into two parts, and hath a Bridge there, whence arose this latter name *Cambridge*. Beyond the bridge is seene a biggish ancient Castle, which seemeth now to have lived out his full time, nigh *Maudslowe Colledge*. On this side the Bridge, where standeth the greatest part by farre of the City, you have a pleasant sight every where to the eye, what of fair streets orderly paved, what of a number of Churches, and of sixteene Colledges, sacred mansions of the *Muses*, wherein a number of great learned men are maintained, and wherein the knowledge of the best Arts, and the skill in tongues so flourish, that they might rightly counted the fountaines of Literature, Religion, and all Knowledge whatsoever, who right sweetly bedew and sprinkle with most wholesome waters the paths of the Church and *Common-wealth* through England. Neither is there wanting any thing here, that a man may require in a most flourishing University, were it not that the ayre is somewhat unhealthfull arising as it doth out of a fenny ground hard by. And yet peradventure they that first founded an University in that place, allowed *Platoes* judgement. For, he being of a very excellent and strong constitution of body chose out the *Academia*, an unwholsome place of *Attica*, for to study in, that so the

Camborritum.

Rich what it
signifieth in
British and
French.

Grantcester.

Cambridge.

A superfluous rankness of body which might overlay the minde, might be kept under by the disfigurement of the place. Nevertheless, for all this, our forefathers, men of singular wisdom dedicated this place, and not without divine direction unto learned Studies, and beautified it with notable workes and buildings.

And least we should seeme in the worst kinde unthankfull to those singular Patrons of learning, or rather that I may use the words of *Eumenius*, toward the Parents of our Children: let us summarily rehearse both themselves, and the Colledges also which they founded and consecrated to good Literature, to their honourable memory, and that out of the *Cambridge Story*. The report goeth, that *Cantaber* a Spaniard, 375. yeeres before the Nativity of Christ, first began and founded this University: Also that *Sebert* King of the East-Angles restored it againe in the yeere after Christs birth, 630. Afterwards being other whiles overthrowne and destroyed with the Danish stormes, it lay a long time forlorne and of no account, untill all began to revive under the Normans government.

And not long after, Innes, Hostels and Halles were built for Scholers, howbeit endowed with no possessions. But *Hugh Balsham* Bishop of *Ely*, in the yeere 1284. built the first Colledge called *Peter-house*, and endowed it with Lands: whose example these ensuing did imitate and follow: *Richard Badew* with the good helpe and furtherance of Lady Elizabeth *Clare* Countesse of *Ulster*, in the yeere 1340. founded *Clare Hall*: Lady Mary *S. Paul* Countesse of *Pembroke* in the yeere 1347. founded *Clare Hall*: The Guild or Society of *Corpus Christi Breshren*, *Corpus Christi Colledge*, which is called also *S. Bennet Colledge*: *William Baseman* Bishop of *Norwich*, about the yeere 1353. *Trinity Hall*: *Edmund Gouevil* in the yeere 1348. and *John Cains* Doctor of Physicke in our time, *Gouevil* and *Cains Colledge*: Henry the Sixth King of England erected *Kings Colledge* in the yeere 1441. whereunto he joynd a Chappell, which may rightly be counted one of the fairest buildings of the whole world. His wife *Margaret of Anjou*, in the yeere 1443. built *Zusenes Colledge*: *Robert Woodlarke* Professor of Divinity in the yeere 1459. *S. Katharines Hall*: *John Alcocke* Bishop of *Ely* in the yeere 1497. was the founder of *Iesus Colledge*: Lady *Margaret* Countesse of *Richmond* mother to King Henry the Seaventh, about the yeere 1506. erected *Christi Colledge*, and *S. Johns*, enlarged now in goodly manner with new buildings: Sir *Thomas Audley* Lord Chancellour of England, in the yeere 1542. built *Maudslowe Colledge*, which Sir *Christopher Wray* Lord chiefe Justice of England hath lately bewitched with new buildings and endowed with great possessions: And that most pious King, Henry the Eight, in the yeere of our salvation 1546. made *Trinity Colledge* of three others, to wit, of *S. Michaels Hostel* or *Colledge*, which *Hervey Stanton* in the reigne of Edward the Second built, of *Kings Hall* founded by King Edward the Third, and of *Fishwicks Hostel*. Which Colledge, that the Students might inhabit more pleasantly, is now repaired, nay rather new built, with that magnificence, by the carefull direction of *Thomas Nevill* Doctor of Divinity, Master of the said Colledge, and Deane of *Canterbury*, that it is become a Colledge for stately greatnesse, for uniforme building and beauty of the roomes, scarce inferiour to any other in Christendome: and he himselfe may bee accounted in the judgement even of the greatest Philosophers *Truly* * μεγαλοπρεπης, for bestowing so great cost in publicke and not in his owne private uses. Also wherein I congratulate our Age, and our selves in the behalfe of good learning, that honourable and prudent man Sir *Walter Mildmay* knight, one of the Privy Counsell to Queene Elizabeth, who founded a new Colledge in the honour of *Emanuel*: and Lady Francis *Sidaine* Countesse of *Suffex*, in her last will gave a Legacy of 5000. pounds to the building of a Colledge that should be called *Sidney-Suffex*, which is now fully finished.

F I let passe here little Monasteries and Religious houses because they were of small note, unless it were *Barnwell Abbey*, which Sir *Paine Peurell* a worthy and valiant warrior, Standard-bearer to Robert Duke of Normandy in the holy War against Infidels, translated, in the reigne of Henry the first, from *S. Giles Church*, where *Picot* the Sheriffe had ordained secular Priests, unto this place, and brought into it thirty Monkes,

Colledges.

John Cains.

* Decently
magnificent.

Barnwell.

Historia Barn-
wellensis.

Historia Barn-
wellensis.
* Paganus.

Monkes, for that himselfe at that time was thirty yeeres of Age. The reason of the name Barnwell, you may read if it please you, out of the private History of that place, in these words: * Sir Payne Peverell obtained of King Henry the First, a certaine plot of ground without the Burgh of Cambridge: Out of the very midst of that place there sprang certaine Fountaines very pure and lively, which in English they called Barnwell in those daies, as one would say the wells of Barnes, that is, Children; For that Boyes and Touthes meeting once a yeare there on the Even of Saint Iohn Baptists Nativity, after the English manner exercised themselves in wrestling and other sports and pastimes besitting their age, yea and manerly applauded one another with songs and minstrelsie. Whence it came, that for the number of Boyes and Girls running thither and there playing, grew to be a custome, that on the said daie a multitude of buyers and sellers repaired thither.

Neither was Cambridge, (albeit it was consecrated to the Muses) altogether free from the furies of Mars. For, when the Danes robbed and spoyleed up and downe, many times they wintered here: and in the yeere of Redemption 1010, when the Dane, by most cruell and terrible tyranny, bare downe all before him, they spared not the honour of the place, nor the Muses, (which we read that Sylla did at Athens) but pittifully burnt and defaced it all. Nevertheless at the first coming in of the Normans, it was sufficiently peopled. For, thus we read in the Donchey booke of King William the Conquerour. *The Burrough of Gretnbridge is dividid in tenne Wards, and hath 387. Mansion houses. But eghtene houses were destroyed in building of the Castle, what time, as the said King William the First determined to awe the English every where, (whom lately hee had conquered) with Castles, as were with bridles of servitude. Afterwards in the Barons warre, it sustained great losse by the out-lawed Barons out of the Isle of Ely: therefore Henry the Third represseth their outrages caused a deepe ditch to be cast on the East side, which is called Kings ditch.*

Here happily there is a secret expectation of some, that I should give mine opinion as touching the antiquity of this University. But I will bee no dealer in this case: For, I meane not to make comparison betweene these two most famous Universities of ours, to whom I know none equall. Howbeit I feare me, they have builded Castles in the Ayre, and thrust upon us devices of their owne brames; who extolling the antiquity thereof farre above any probability of truth, have written that this Camaber of Spaine streight after Rome was built, and many yeeres before the Nativity of Christ erected this University. True and certaine it is, that whatsoever it was first ordained, it was a seat of learning about the time of King Henry the First. For, thus wee read in an old Additament of Peter Blesensis. unto Hugh Abbot. *Ioffred sent over to his Monour of Cotenham neere Cambridge, Gislebert the sonne of Monke, and professor of Divinity, with three other Monkes: who following him into the land, being througly furnished with Philosophicall Theoremes, and other primative sciences, repaired daily to Cambridge: and having hired a certaine publike Barne, made confession of their sciences, and in short space of time drew together a great number of scholars. But in the second yeere after their coming, the number of their Scholars grew so great, and from out of the whole Country as the Towne, that the biggest house and barnhouse in the Church whatsoever sufficed not to receive them all. Whereupon sorting themselves in severall places, and taking the University of Orleans for their paterne, every one beganning; Monke Odo a singular Grammarian and Satyricall Poet read Grammar and those of the younger sort assigned unto him; according to the Doctrine of Priscian; Remigius upon him. At one of the clocke, Terricus a most witty and subtle Scholar taught the elder sort of young men, Aristotles Logicke, after the Introduction of Porphyry and the Comments of Averroes. At three of the clocke Monke William read a little Tullies Rhetorike and Quintilians Flores: But the great Master Gislebert, upon Sunday, and Holy-dayes, preached GODS Word unto the People. And from that little Fountaine, which grew to bee a great River, wee see how the City of GOD might come enriched, and all England made fruitfull, by meanes of very many Masters and Teachers proceeding out of Cambridge, in manner of the Holy Paradise, &c.*

Ioffred made
Abbot of
Crowland,
Anno 1109.

Stadium Au-
relianense.

But at what time it became an University by authority, Robert de Remington shall tell you. Under the Reigne (saith hee) of Edward the First, Gransbridge of a Schoole was made an University (such as Oxenford is) by the Court of Rome. But what meane I thus unadvisedly to step into these lists? Wherein long since two most learned old men have encountered one with another: Unto whom verely, as to right learned men I am willing to yeeld up my weapons, and vaile bonnet with all reverence. The Meridian line cutting the Zenith just over Cambridge, is distant from the furthest West poynt twenty three degrees, and twenty five scruples. And the Arch of the same Meridian lying betweene the Aequator and Verticall poynt, is fiftie two degrees and 11. scruples.

Cam from Cambridge continuing his course by Waterbeach an ancient feat of Nuns, which Lady Mary S. Paul translated from thence to Denny somewhat higher but nothing healthfuller, when in a low ground he hath spread a Mere, associateth himselfe with the River Ouse.

But to returne hard under Cambridge Eastward neere unto Sture a little brooke is kept every yeere in the moneth of September, the greatest Faire of all England, whether you respect the multitude of buyers and sellers resorting thither, or the store of commodities there to be vented. Hard by whereas the way was most comberous and troublesome to passengers to and fro, that right good and praise-worthy man G. Hervey Doctor of the Civill Law and M. of Trinity Hall in Cambridge, made

not long since with great charges but of a Godly and laudable intent a very faire raised Causey, for three miles or thereabout in length toward Nethercat.

Neere unto Cambridge on the South-East side, there appeare aloft certaine high Hills, the Students call them Gogmagog-Hills: Henry of Huntingdon tearmed them *Amanifina montana de Balsam*, that is, *The most pleasant Mountaines of Balsam*, by reason of a little Village standing beneath them, wherein as hee writeth, the Danes left no kinde of most savage cruelty unattempted. On the top of these hills I saw a Fort intrenched, and the same very large, strengthened with a threefold Rampire: an hold surely in those dayes inexpugnable, as some skilfull men in feats of Warre bee of opinion, were it not that water is so farre off. Gervase of Tilbury seemeth to call it *Fandelbura*. Beneath Cambridge (saith hee) there was a place called *Fandelbura*, for that the Vandals wasting the parts of Brittain, with cruell slaughter of Christians, there encamped themselves: where upon the very top of the hill they pitched their Tents; there is a Plaint inclosed round with a Trench and Rampire, which hath entrance into it but in one place as it were at a Gate.

Touching the Marciall spectre, or sprite that walked here, which he addeth to the rest, because it is but a meere toyish and fantastickall devise of the doting vulgar fort: I willing over-passe it. For it is not my purpose to tell pleasant tales, and tickle cares. In the Vale under these hills is Salston to be seene, which from the Burges of Burgh-Green, by Walter De-la-pole and Ingaltorp, came unto Sir Iohn Nevill Marquesse

Mont-acute, and by his daughter and one of his heires to the Huddlestons, who have lived here in worship and reputation. More Eastward, first we meete with Hildersham, belonging sometimes to the Busslers and now by marriage to the Parises: Further hard by the Woods, is Hortheath situate, the Possession whereof is knowne by a long descent to have pertained unto the ancient Families of the Argentons and Alingtons, of whom elsewhere I have written, and is now the habitation of the Alingtons. Adjoyning hereunto is Castle Camps, the ancient seat also of the Peres Earles of Oxford, which Hugh Pere held (as the old booke of Inquisition Records) *That he might be the Kings Chamberlaine*: whereas notwithstanding most true it is, that Henry the First King of England granted unto Aubrey de Vere that Office in these words: *The principall Chamberlaine of all England in Fee and Inheritance, with all the Dignities, Liberties, and Honours thereto belonging, as freely and honourably, as Robert Malet held the same, &c.* The Kings notwithstanding ordained sometimes one, and sometimes another at their pleasure to execute this Office.

Stourbridge
Faire.

Gogmagog
Hills.

A Military
Fort.

Wandlebury.

Salston.

Hortheath.

See in Hert-
fordshire,
Castle Camps

Magistra Came-
varia Anglia.
Lord Great
Chamberlaine.

*
Inq. 6. E. 2.

Ditches.

The Barles of Oxford also, that I may note it incidently, by the heire of R. *Saunder* held the Manours of *Fingrey* and *Walselmelston* by Serjeanty of Chamberlainship to the Queenes at the Coronation of the Kings.

Not far from hence are scene here and there those great and long Ditches which certainly the *East Angles* did cast, to restrain the *Mercians*, who with sudden ir-
rodes were wont most outrageously to make havocke of all before them. The first
of these beginneth at *Hinkeston*, runneth Eastward by *Hilderham* toward *Horsbuck*,
about five miles in length. The second neere unto this, called *Brentditch* goeth from
Melborne by *Fulmer*.

Where *D. Hervies* cawsey which I mentioned, endeth, there appeareth also a third
forefence or ditch cast up in old time: which beginning at the East banke of the river
Cam, reacheth directly by *Fenn-Diston*, or more truly *Ditch-ton* (so called of the very
Ditch) betweene great *Wilberham* and *Fulburn*, as farre as to *Balsam*. At this day
this is called commonly *Seauen mile Dyke*, because it is seven miles from *Newmarket*:
in times past, *Fleam-Dyke* in old English, that is, *Flight-Dyke*, of some memorable
flight there, as it seemeth. At the laud *Wilberham* sometimes called *Wilburgham*,
dwelt in times past the Barons *Lisle* of **Rong-mount*, men of ancient nobility, of whom
John, for his Martiall prowesse was by King *Edward the Third* ranged among the
first founders of the order of the Garter: and of that Family there yet remaineth
heire Male, a reverend old Man and full of Children, named *Edmund Lisle*, who is
still Lord of this place.

More East from hence five miles within the Country, is to bee scene the fourth
forefence or ditch, the greatest of all the rest, with a rampier thereto, which the com-
mon people wondring greatly at, as a worke made by Devils and not by men, then
call *Devils-Dyke*: others, *Reck-Dyke*, of *Reck* a little mercate towne, where it be-
neth. This is doubtlesse that, whereof *Abbo Floriacensis* when he describeth the sight
of East England, writeth thus: *From that part whereas the Sun inclineth Westward, the*
Province it selfe adjoyneth to the rest of the Island, and is therefore passable: but for many
ing overrun with many invasions and invades of enemies, it is fortified in the front with a
or rampier like unto an huge wall, and with a Trench or Ditch below in the ground. This
for many miles together cutteth overthwart that Plaine which is called *Wensham*
beath, where it lay open to incursions, beginning at *Reck*: above which the Country
is fenny, and therefore impassable: and it endeth nere to *Cowledge*, where the passage
by reason of woods was more cumbersome. And it was the limit as well of the
Kingdome, as of the Bishopricke of the *East Angles*. Who was the author of fozze
a peece of worke, it is uncertaine. Some later writers say it was King *Canutus* the
Dane: whereas notwithstanding the said *Abbo* made mention of it, who died be-
fore that *Canutus* obtained the Kingdome of England: and the Saxon Chronicle,
where it relateth the rebellion of *Asbelwold* against King *Edward the Elder*, call-
it simply *Dyke*; and sheweth, *That King Edward laid waste whatsoever lieth betwixt the*
Dyke and the river Ouse, as farre as to the North Fennes: also that *Asbelwold* the said
and *Eobric the Dane*, were at that time slaine there in battell. But they who wrote since
Canutus times, termed it, *Saint Edmunds limit*, and *Saint Edmunds Dyke*; and verily
thinke, that King *Canutus* cast it up, who being most devoted to *Saint Edmund* the
Martyr granted unto the religious Monkes of *Saint Edmunds Bury* (for to make satis-
faction for the wicked cruelty of *Swan* his father wrought upon them) very great
immunities, even as farre as to this Dyke: whence it is, that *William of Malmsbury* in
his booke *Of Bishops* writeth thus, *The Customs and Toll gatherers, which in other places*
make foule worke and outrage, without respect or difference of right and wrong, therein handle
manner on this side Saint Edmunds Dyke, surcease their quarrels and brayles. And certaine
it is that these two fore-fences last named were called *Saint Edmunds Dykes*. For *Ma-*
thew Florilegus hath recorded that the said battell against *Asbelwold*, was fought
betweene the two Dykes of *Saint Edmund*.

Nere unto *Reck*, standeth *Burwel*, a Castle in later times of the Lord *Tiptot*, which
in those most troublesome times of King *Stephen* *Geffrey Mandevill* Earle of *Essex*,
who

Abbo died
anno. 1003.
Canutus began
his reigne.
Anno. 1018.
Anno. 905.

Burwel.

A who by violent invasion of other mens possessions lost much honour, valiantly assaul-
ted until that being shot through the head with an arrow, he delivered those coun-
tries from the feare they had stood in a long time.

Scarce two miles off, stands *Lanbeath*, where for these many yeeres the *Cottons*,
right worshipfull Gentlemen of Knights degree have dwelt: From which *Wicken* is
not farre distant, which came to the Family of the *Peytons* by a daughter and coheire
of the *Gernons* about *Edward the Thirds* time, as afterward *Isleham* descended to
them by a coheire of *Bernard* in *Henry the Sixth's* time, which Knightly Family of
Peytons flowed out of the same Male-stocke, whence the *Vffords* Earles of *Suffolke*
descended, as appeareth by their Coate-armour, albeit they assumed the surname of
Peyton according to the use of that age, from their Manour of *Peyton-hall* in *Boxford*
in the County of *Suffolke*.

Upon the same Dyke also, is seated *Kirtling*, called likewise *Callidge*, famous in
these dayes by reason of the principall house of the Barons *North*, since *Queene Ma-*
ry honoured Sir *Edward North*, with that title for his wisedome: but in times past it
was famous for a Synode held there, what time as the Clergy men were at hot strife
among themselves about the celebration of the feast of *Easter*.

The higher and Northerly part of this Shire is wholly divided into river Isles: and
being distinguished by many Ditches, Channels and Draines, with a pleasant greene
hew all Summer time contenteth the eyes of the beholders: but in Winter wholly
in manner over-covered with water, farther every way than a man is able to ken, re-
sembleth in some sort a very Sea.

They that inhabited this fennish Country and all the rest beside, (which from the
edge and borders of *Suffolke*, as farre as to *Wainset* in *Lincolne-shire* containeth
three score and eight miles, and millions of acres lying in these foure Shires, *Cam-*
bridge, *Huntingdon*, *North-hampton* and *Lincolne*) were in the Saxons time called
Girvi, that is, as some interpret it, *Fen-men* or *Fen-dwellers*. A kind of people according
to the nature of the place where they dwell rude, uncivill, and envious to all others
whom they call *Vpland-men*: who stalking on high upon stilts, apply their mindes,
to grafting, fishing and fowling. The whole Region it selfe, which in winter season
and sometimes most part of the yeere is overflowed by the spreading waters of the
rivers *Ouse*, *Grant*, *Nen*, *Welland*, *Glene*, and *Wrisham*, having not loades and sewers large
enough to voide away: But againe when their Streames are retired within their
owne Channells, it is so plenteous and ranke of a certaine fatte grosse and full hey,
(which they call *Lid*) that when they have mowen downe as much with the better
as will serve their turnes, they set fire on the rest and burne it in November, that it
may come up againe in great abundance. At which time a man may see this Fen-
nish and moyst Tract on a light flaming fire all over every way, and wonder thereat.
Great plenty it hath besides of Turfe and Sedge for the maintenance of fire: of reed
also for to thatch their Houses, yea and of Alders, beside other watery Shrubbess.
E But chiefly it bringeth forth exceeding store of willowes both naturally, and also for
that being planted by mans hand they have serv'd in good steed, and often cut downe
with their manifold increase, and infinit number of heires (to use *Plinies* word) against
the violent force of the waters rushing against the bankes. Whereof also as well here,
as in other places there be baskers made, which seeing the Britains call *Baskades*, I for
my part, that I may note so much by the way, do not understand the Poet *Marshall* in
that *Distichon*, unless hee meaneth these, among the *Presents* and *Gifts* sent to and fro.

Barbara de pictis veni Baskauda Britannia,
Sed me jam mavult dicere Roma suam.

By barbarous name, a Baskaud I from painted Britans came,
But now Rome faine would call me hers, although I be the same.

Besides at this the herb, *Scordii*, which also is called *Water Germader*, groweth plenti-
fully

Lanbeath.

Wicken.

Isleham.

Peyton.

Kirtling.
Barons
North.

977.

The Fennes
and Isle of Ely.

Girvi.

Scordium.

fully here hard by the ditches sides : but as for these Fenny Ilands, *Felix* a writer of good antiquity hath depainted them forth in these words. *There is a Fen of exceeding great largeness which beginning at the banks of the river Grent, arising somewhere in sedge plots in other places with blacke waters yielding a dusky vapour with woods also among the Isles, and having many winding turnes of the banke, reacheth out in a very long trail from South to North-East as farre as to the Sea. And the very same Fenne William a Monke of Crowland in the life of Gislebert hath thus described in verse.*

*Est apud Angligenas à Grent a flumine, longo
Orbe per australes stagnosos, & fluviales,
Circumsus palus, Orientalisque propinqua
Littoribus Pelagi, sese distendit ab Austro
In longum versus Aquilonem, gurgite tetra,
Morbosus pisces vegetans, & arundine densa
Ventorum strepitus, quasi quaedam verba susurrans.*

A spacious Fenne in England lies from Grent that rivers side,
Among the winding cranks of Lakes and Rivers far and wide,
Y' spread, and nere unto the banks of Easterne Sea doth stretch,
It selfe, and so from Southerne side a long North Eastward reach.
In muddy gulfe unwhollome fish it breeds : as reeds doe shake
There growing thicke, of winds as words a whispering noise they make.

Joyned hereunto if you please thus much out of Henry of Huntingdon : *This Fenny country (saith he) is passing rich and plemous, yea and beautifull to behold, watered many Rivers running downe to it, garnished with a number of Meres both great and small, trimly adorned likewise with many Woods and Ilands. And for a finall conclusion of this matter, take with you also these few words of William of Malmesbury speaking of this time. So great store there is here of Fishes that strangers comming hither make a wonder at, and the Inhabitants laugh thereat, to see them wonder. Neither is Water-Fowle lesse plenty, so that for one halfe penny and under, five men as the least may not onely eat to staks hunger and content nature, but also feed their fill of Fish and Fowle.*

As touching the drying up of this Fenny country, what discourse and saying oftentimes there hath beene either by way of found and wholsome counsell, or of goodly pretence and shew of a common good, even in the High Court of Parliament, I list not to relate. But it is to be feared least (that which often hath happened to the Pontine Marishes of Italy) it would come againe to the former state. So the many thinke it the wisest and best course according to the sage admonition in the case of *Apollo* his Oracle, *Not so intermeddle at all with that which God hath binde.* Upon the naturall strength of this place and plenty of all things there, *sedition* rebels have often presumed; and not onely the English when they banded themselves against *William Conquerour*, but the Barons also whensoever they were. Our land, from hence troubled and molested their Kings. But evermore they had ill success, albeit otherwhiles they built fortresses both at *Eryth* and also at *Athered*, at this day *Andre*, where the easiest entrance is into this Isle. And even yet near unto *Andre*, is to be seene a Military rampire of a meane height, but of a very large compass, which they call *Belfars-hill*, of one *Belisar*, I wot not who.

Part of this Fenny country that lyeth more South and is the greatest by farre, which also is counted of this shire, was named in the English Saxon tongue *Gig*, now *The Isle of Ely*, of the chiefe Iland, which name *Bede* hath derived from *Ede*, and thereupon sometime teamed it *Insulam anguillarum*, that is, *The Isle of Eels*. *Polydore* Virgil fetcheth the originall thereof from the Greek word *ω*, that signifieth *Marsh*, others from *Helig* a Brittain word betokening *Willowes* or *Sallows*, wherewith it doth most of all abound. Part of this Region, we read that one *Tombert* a Prince of the Southern *Girvin* gave as a dowry to his wife *Audry*, who after she had left her second husband

Pausanias in Corinth.

Audre.

Ely.
Saint Etheldreda common'y, S. Audrye.

A husband *Egfrid*, King of the *Nordan humberland*, being fully resolved to serve Christ, built a Monastery for *Kunnes Potaries* in the principall Iland of these, properly called *Ely*, which was then reckoned at 600 *Hides* or *Families*; and of this Monastery, he also her selfe the first Abbeffe. Yet was not this the first Church in the fenny country. For the booke of *Ely* recordeth, that *S. Austen* of Canterbury founded a Church at *Cradi-don*, which *Penda* the Mercian afterwards rased : and *William* of *Malmesbury* reporteth, that *Felix* Bishop of the East English had his first See at *Sobam*, which yet is within the Diocesse of *Norwich*. *Sobam*, saith he, is a village situate nere unto a *Fen*, which was in times past dangerous for those that would passe into *Ely* by water : now by reason of a way or causeway made through the Fenny ground overgrowne with Reeds, men may goe over thither by land. There be remaining still the tokens of a Church destroyed by the Danes, which with the ruines thereof overwhelmed the inhabitants, who were burnt together with it. At which time also that Monastery of *S. Audry* was overthrowne by the furious Danes; but *Ethelwold* Bishop of *Winchester* reedified it: For he, by a composition betwene the King and him, bought the whole Iland a new, and having cast out the Priests thence, stored it with Monks, unto whom King *Edgar*, as we read in his letters patents, granted within the *Fens*, jurisdiction over the secular causes of two Hundreds, and without the *Fens*, of two Hundreds and an halfe in *Wichlaw*, within the province of the *East-Angles*, which are called at this day, *The liberties of S. Audry*. Afterwards Kings and great Noble men enriched it with large revenewes : and Earle *Brithnot* especially, Being now ready to joyne battaile with the Danes in the year 999, gave unto the Church of *Ely*, *Somersham*, *Spaldwic*, *Trumpinton*, *Ratindum*, *Heisbury*, *Fulburn*, *Tinerston*, *Triplestow*, and *Impetum*, (for that the Monkes had in magnificent manner entertained him) in case he should loofe his life in that battaile. But his fortune was to die at *Maldun*, after hee had fought with the Danes 14. dayes together. And so rich was the Monastery, that the Abbot thereof, as witnesseth *Malmesbury*, laid up every yeere in his owne purse a thousand and foure hundred pounds. And *Richard* the last Abbot sonne, to Earle *Gislebert*, being over-ripled, as it were with wealth, disdainig to bee under the Bishop of *Lincolne*, dealt with the King, what by golden words, as the Monkes write, and what by great suite and politike meanes, that a Bishops See might be erected here : which, hee prevented by death obtained not. Yet soone after, King *Henry* the first having gotten allowance from the Pope, made *Herveie*, who had beene Bishop of *Bangor* and by the Welshmen cast out of his owne seat, the first Bishop of *Ely* : unto whom and to his successors he laied for his Diocesse *Cambridge-shire*, which had belonged before unto the Bishop of *Lincolne*, and confirmed certaine Royalties in these Ilands. To the Bishops of *Lincolne*, from whose jurisdiction he had taken away this Iland and *Cambridge-shire*, he granted for to make amends, *The Manor of Spaldwic* : or as the booke of *Ely* hath, *The Manor of Spaldwic was given unto the Church of Lincolne for ever, in exchange for the Bishops superintendency over the County of Cambridge*. *Herveie* being now made Bishop, sought by all meanes possible to augment the dignity of his Church.

E He obtained that it might bee every where *Toll-free* (these are the very words of the booke of *Ely*) : *He set it free from the yoke of service of watch and ward, that it owed to the Castle of Norwich* : hee made a way from *Exmington* to *Ely*, through the Fennes, fixe miles in length ; he beganne the faire Palace at *Ely* for his Successours, and purchased to it faire Lands and not a few Lordships. And his Successours by abridging the number of Monkes (for, from three-score and tenne they brought them downe to forty) flowed with riches and wealth in great abundance even unto our time ; and their festivall and solemne Holydayes they celebrated with so sumptuous provision and stately pompe, that they wonne the prayse and prize from all the Abbates in England : whereupon a Poet also in that age wrote these verses not unproperly.

*Prævisis aliis, Elyensis festa videre,
Est, quasi prævisa nocte, videre diem.*

See, after others, *Ely* feasts, and surely thou wilt say,
That having seene the night before, thou seest now the day.

The

Saint Audries
Libertie.

Ely booke.

The Church likewise, which now began for age and long continuance to decay, they built up by litle and litle, and brought it to that ample statelineffe which now it hath: For, large it is, high and faire, but somewhat defaced, by reason of Noblemen and Bishops tombes (not without most shamefull indignity) are broken downe. And now in stead of that great Covent of Monks, there are established a Deane, Prebendaries, a Grammar schoole, wherein 24. children are maintained and taught. Four speciall things there are about this Church, that the Common people talke much of: *The Lanterne.* The Lanterne on the very toppe thereof, just over the Quire, supported with eight pillars, and raised upon them right artificially, by *John Horbun* the Bishop. Under the Church towards the North, standeth Saint Maries Chappell a singular fine peece of worke, built by *Simon Montacute*, Bishop. On the South side, there is an huge heape of earth cast up round of a great heighth, which they call the *Mouns*, having had a wind mill upon it. And lastly, a Vine bearing fruit in great plenty, which now is withered and gone. These 4. a Monk of this place in times past knit up within this *Hyem*.

*Hec sunt Elie,
Lanterna, Capella Mariae,
Atque molendinum,
Nec non dams vinca vinum.*

These things you may at *Ely* see,
The Lanterne, Chapell of Saint Marie,
A Winde-mill mounted up on hie,
A Vine-yard yeelding Wine, yeerely.

As for *Ely* it selfe, it is a small Cittie, nor greatly to bee counted of, either for beauty, or frequency and resort, as having an unwholsome Aire by reason of the Fens round about, although it be seated somewhat higher. Neere to it is *Dunham* where the Bishop hath his retyring House with a Parke: neere to *Dunham* is *Downham* the ancientest seat of the Family surnamed for their habitation heere, *Downham* *De Insula*, and first planted here by *Nigelus* the second Bishop of *Ely* their *Alles* in the time of King Henry the First, as is set downe in a Lieger Booke of *Ely*. *Chauvies* or *Chesterich* is not farre hence Westward, were *Alwena* a devout woman founded a Nunnery upon a coppid ground encompassed with Fens, while her husband founded *Ramsay*. But higher Northward amidst the Fennes, there stood another Abbay of very great name, called *Thorney*, of thornes and bushes that grow thick about it, but in times past *Ankerige* of *Ankers* or *Eremites* living there solitarily, where as we finde in *Peterborough* booke *Sexculph* a devout and religious man built a Monastery with litle Cels for *Eremits*: Which being afterwards by the Duke throwne downe, *Acthelwold* Bishop of Winchester (that he might promote the monastical profession) reedified, stored it with Monkes, and compassed it round about with trees. The place, as writeth *William of Malmesbury*, Representeth a very *Paradis*, for that in pleasure and delight it resembleth Heaven it selfe: in the very Marishes being Trees, that for their strenght saluesse, and the same without knots, strive to touch the Skie: Plaine is there as even as the Sea, which with greene grasse allureth the eye, so smooth and flat that if any walke along the fields they shall finde nothing to stumble at. There is not the least parcell of ground that lies waste and void there. Here shall you finde the earth bringing forth for Apple trees, there shall you have a field set with Vines, which either creepe upon the ground, or mount on high upon poles to support them. A mutual strife there is betwixt the nature of husbandry, that what the one forgetteth, the other might supply and produce. What will be said of the faire and beautiful buildings, which it is a wonder to see how the ground amid those Fens and Marishes, so firme and sound, doth beare with sure and steadfast foundations? A wonderful solitary place is there afforded to Monkes for quiet life, that so much the more constantly settle their mindes upon Heavenly things for that they see none very feldome, and so are they scene in their state more mortified and lower brought. A wonder it is to have a Woman

Thorney.

A scene there: if come men thither; there is rejoycing as at so many Angels. In a word, I may truly say, that this Island is an *Hottell* of Chastity, an harbour of Honesty, and a Schoole or Colledge of Divine Philosophie.

Touching *Wisbich*, the Bishop of *Elies* Castle, about 13. miles off, situate among the fennes and rivers, and made of late a prison to keepe the Papiests in hold, I have nothing else to say, but that this towne together with *Walepole*, was in old time given by the owner thereof unto the monastery of *Ely*, what time as he consecrated *Alwin* his little son there to live a monkes life: that King William the First built a Castle there, when the outlawed Lords made rodes out of this fenny country: and that in the yeere of our salvation 1236. when the Ocean being disquieted with violent windes, for two dayes continually together had beaten upon the shore, made an exceeding wide breach and overwhelmed both land and people. But the Castle of bricke that now is scene there, *John Morton* Bishop of *Ely* built within the remembrance of our great grandfathers: who also drew as streight as a line in this fenny country a dike, which they call the *Newleame* for better conveyance and carriage by water, that by this meanes the towne being well frequented might gaine the more and grow to wealth. Which fell out quite contrary: For it standeth now in no great speed, and the neighbour inhabitants complain that the course of *Nen* into the Sea by *Clowcrosse*, is by this meanes altogether hindred and stopped.

The first Earle of Cambridge that I can finde, was William the brother of *Ranulph* Earle of Chester, as wee read in a patent or instrument of Alexander Bishop of Lincoln, bearing date in the yeere 1139. Afterwards, those of the royall blood in Scotland that were Earles of Huntingdon, wee may thinke to have bene Earles of Cambridge also: For that it appeareth certainly out of the Records of the realme, that *David* Earle of Huntingdon, received the third penny of the County or Earledome of Cambridge. Long time after, King Edward the Third advanced Sir *John of Henault* brother to William the third Earle of Holland and of Henault to this honour, for the love of *Queene Philip* his wife, who was cosin to the said Iohn. For whose sake also when Iohn was revolted from him and tooke part with the French, hee honoured with the same title William Marquess of *Tuliers*, the said *Queene Philips* sisters son. After the death of these two Forainers, King Edward the Third translated this dignity to his fifth sonne *Edmund* of *Langley*, which after he had held foure yeeres (my warrant I have out of an old manuscript, being in the hands of that skilfull Antiquary *Francis Thinn*) the Earle of *Henault* cosin to *Queene Philip*, came into Parliament house, put in a claime for his right, and returned backe well consented. The said *Edmund* of *Langley* afterwards Duke of *Torke* had two sonnes, *Edward* Duke of *Torke*, who for a certaine time held the Earldome of Cambridge, and was slaine in the battell of *Agincourt*: and *Richard* by the grace and favour of King Henry the Fifth, and consent of his brother *Edward*, was created Earle of Cambridge. But when he (ungratefull and ambitious man that hee was) contrived the destruction of that good and noble Prince, and so lost his head; the title of Cambridge died the same day that he did, or loked at least wise among other titles of his sonne *Richard*, who was afterwards Duke of *Torke* and restored to his blood and estate, as being cosin and heire to his Uncle *Edward* Duke of *Torke*.

Wisbich.

Walepole.

Newleame.

Clowcrosse.
Earle of Cambridge.

This Shire containeth Parishes 163.

HUNTING.



Comitatus qui
pars fuit
ICE NORVM

Christophorus Saxton descripsit
Wilhelmus Lip Sculpsit

HUNTINGDONSHIRE.



Ext unto Cambridge-shire, lyeth HUNTINGDONSHIRE, in the Saxon tongue *huntedunercyne*; so situate, that Southward it confineth upon Bedford-shire; Westward upon *Northamptonshire*: like as Northwards, where by the River * *Avon* it is parted; and Eastward upon Cambridge-shire, a Country good for corne and tillage: and toward the East, where it is fen-ny, very rich and plentifull for the feeding of Cattaile: else-where right pleasant, by reason of rising hills and shady groves:

* Or Aufon.
1. Nen.

For, the Inhabitants report, that in ancient times, it was throughout befer with woods: and certaine it is, that it was a *Forest*, untill that King Henry the Second, in the beginning of his raig disforested it, (as we find in an old perambulation) all save *Way-bridge Sappell* and *Hershei*, which were *Woods of the Lords demaine, and remaine still forests*.

The South part thereof; the River *Ouse* (that I have so often spoken of) runneth by, and bedecketh with flowers. On which River among other of lesse note, there stand some Townes of good note. First, after it hath left Bedford-shire, and is entred into this Country, it visiteth Saint *Neots*, commonly called *Saint Needs*, so named of one *Neotus*, a man both learned and holy, who travailed all his life time in propa-

Saint Needs.

gating of Christian Religion, whose body was translated from *Neotstok in Cornwall* hither, and in honour of him, *Alfrick* converted the Palace of Earle *Elfride* unto a Monastery. The which Dame *Roissa* Wife to Richard Lord of *Clare*, shortly after the coming in of the Normas enriched with many faire Possessions; But before it was named *Simulphsbury* of one *Simulph* likewise an holy and devout man, which name continueth still also in one part of it. A little beneath this, at *Alneweston* a very small Village, there are two little Springs, the one fresh, the other somewhat brackish: of which the neighbours give out, that this is good against scabs and leprosie, the other against the dimnesse of the eye-sight. From thence not farre, *Ouse* passeth to *Bugden* a proper faire house of the Bishops of *Lincolne*, and so by *Hinchinbrok*, a religious house sometimes of *Nuns* whom King William the Conquerour translated hither from *Elthelley* in Cambridge-shire, and now the dwelling house of the *Cromwells*, knights; cometh to *Huntingdon*, in the English-Saxon tongue, as *Marianus* reporteth *Hun-*

Ainsbury.

Holfome and
medicabte
wels.

tantum, in the publique seale *Huntersdune*, that is, *the hill or downe of hunters*, as Henry *Archdeacon* of this place, who flourished 400. yeares since, interpreteth it: whence it used in their seale, *an hunter*; and *Leland* our Countriman alluding thereunto, hath coined a new Latine word for it, namely *Penantodunum*. This is the chiefe Towne of all this Shire, (to which it hath given also the name) farre excellling all the Townes about it, the same *Archdeacon* saith, *as well for lightfome and pleasant situation, as for the beauty and faire shew that it hath it selfe: as well also for the vicinity of the Fennes as for great store of Deere and Fish*. In King Edward the Confessors time, (that I may note so much out of *Domesday booke*) There were in this Borrough foure Ferlings, that is, Quarters or Wards: In two of them were 116. Burgessees, paying custome and gelt, and under them 100. *Bordarij*; in the other two 111. Burgessees for all customes and the Kings gelt. It is seated upon the North-banke of *Ouse*, somewhat high, stretching out in length Northward, adorned with foure Churches: and it had a little Abbay founded by *Maude* the Empreffe and Eustace *Lowetost*: the ruines whereof Eastward I have seene hard under the Towne. By the River neere unto the Bridge which is faire buile of stone, the Mount and Plot of a Castle, is to bee seene, which in the

Huntingdon.

yeare of our Redemption 917. King Edward the Elder built anew: and *David* the Scotlshman, unto whom, as an ancient Historiographer writeth King Stephen had given the Burrough of *Huntingdon* for an augmentation of his estate, enlarged with many new buildings and Bulwarkes: but in the end King Henry the Second both because it was a place of refuge for seditious Rebels, and for that the Scots and the

T t

Saint

Saint *Lizes* had oftentimes raised quarrels and contention about it, to cut off all occasions of strife, laid it even with the ground; when as hee, provoked with their unreasonable variance swore an oath, that neither they of Saint *Lizes* nor the Scotchmen should quarrell any more for it. From these *Castle hills*, where there is a goodly prospect a great way off, a man may behold below a meadow which they call *Per-sholme*, environed round about with the River *Ouse*, the same very exceeding large, and of all others that the Sunne ever shone upon, most fresh and beautifull: when in the Spring time this may be truly said:

Per pingit vario gemmantia prata colore:
The pleasant Spring faire flowers doe yeeld,
Of divers colours, in this field.

With such a delectable variety of gaye colours it pleaseth and contenteth the eye. On the higher banke over against *Huntingdon*, standeth the mother as it were thereof, from whence it had his Originall, called in *Domesday booke* *Godmundcester*, and at this day *Good-man-cheister*, for *Gormoncheister*: A very great country Towne, and of as good name for tillage, situate in an open ground, of a light mould, and bending to the Sun. Neither is there a Towne againe in all England that hath more stout and lusty handmen, or more ploughs agoing: For, they make their boast that they have in former time received the Kings of England as they passed in their progresse this way, with nine score ploughs, brought forth in a rustickall kind of pompe for a gallant they. Verily, of our Nation, there be none that apply their mindes so seriously as they doe to husbandry (which *Columella* termeth the neere cozin of *Wisdom*) whether you respect their skill therein, or their ability to beare the expences, and their willing mind withall to take the paines. Henry of *Huntingdon* before named, calleth it a *Village*, in his daies, not unlovely: and truly writeth, that in times past it had been a noble City. You say nothing of Roman peeces of coine oftentimes there ploughed up, nor of the distance in the old Itinerary, the very signification of the name may probably prove, that this was the very same City, which *Anonine* the Emperor termed *Dux ou PONTE*, amisse, in stead of *Durosponte*. For *Durosponte* (pardon me I pray you) changing one letter) soundeth in the British tongue, A bridge over the water *Ose*. And that this River is named indifferently and without distinction, *Use*, *Use*, *Ose*, and *Ouse* all men confesse. But when this name was under the Danes quite abolished, it began to be called *Gormoncheister*, of *Gormon* the Dane, unto whom after agreement of peace King *Alfred* granted these Provinces. Hereto, this old Verse giveth testimony.

Gormanis a castri nomine, nomen habet.
Gormoncheister, at this howre,
Takes the name of *Gormons Towre*.

This is that *Gormon* of whom *John Picus* an old Author, writeth in this wise: King *Alfred* conquered and subdued the Danes, so that they gave what hostages hee would for ransom, either to be packing out of the Land, or else to become Christians. Which thing almost effected. For, their King *Guthrum*, whom they call *Gormond*, with thirty of his Nobles well neere all his people was baptized, and adopted by *Alfred* as his Sonne, and by him and *Archelstan*. Whereupon he remained heere, and the Provinces of the East-Engle and of the Northumbrians were given to him: that continuing in his allegiance, under the Kings protection, he might cherish and also maintain them as his inheritance, which he had formerly overrun with spoile and robbery. Neither would this be omitted, that some also of those ancient Writers have termed this place *Gumicester*, and *Gumicestrum*, avoucheth withall, that *Machutus* a Bishop had heere his Episcopall See. And by the name of *Gumicester* King Henry the Third granted it to his sonne *Edmund* Earle of *Lancaster*.

Ouse making haste speedily from hence, when he was about to enter into *Cambridgeshire*, passeth through most delightfome meadows hard by a proper and faire town, which sometime in the English-Saxon tongue was called *Slepe*, and now *S. Ives*.

Godman-
chester.

Durosponte.

Saint Ives.

was a Persian Bishop, who, as they write, about the yeare of Christ 600. travailed through England, preached diligently the Word of God, and to this Towne, wherein he left this life, left also his name. From whence notwithstanding shortly after the religious persons translated his body to *Ramsay Abbey*.

Turning aside from hence scarce three miles, wee saw *Somerham* a faire dwelling house, of late dayes belonging to the Bishops of *Ely*, which Earle *Brithnot* in the year 991. gave to *Ely Church*, and *James Stanley*, the lavish, and expencefull Bishop, enlarged with new buildings. A little above that most wealthy *Abbey Ramsay* was situate amidst the Fennes, where the Rivers become standing waters, when they have once found a soft kinde of Soile.

The description of this place have here if it please you, out of the private History of this *Abbey*. *Ramsay*, that is, *The Rams Isle*, on the West side (for on other sides runneth grounds through which one cannot passe, stretch out farre and wide) is severed from the firme ground almost two bow-shots off by certaine uneven and quaggy miry plots. Which place being wont in times past to receive gently within the bosome and brinks thereof, Vessels arriving there with wilde gales of winde in a shallow River onely: now through great labour and cost after the soule and dirty quagmires aforesaid were stopped up with heapes of wood, gravel and stones together, men may passe into on foote on the same side upon a dry causeway: and it lieth out in length almost two miles, but spreadeth not all out so much in breadth: which notwithstanding is beset round about with beautifull rowes of Alder-trees, and reed plots, that with

fresh greene canes and streights bulrushes among, make a faire and pleasaunt show: and before it was inhabited, garnished and bedecked all over with many sorts of trees, but of wilde and shes especially, in great abundance. But now after longer tract of time, part of these groves and wood, being cut downe, it is become a rable ground of a very fat and plentifull meadow: for fruit rich pleasant for corne, planted with gardens, wealthy in pastures, and in the Spring time, the meadows arrayed with pleasaunt flowers smile upon the beholders: and the whole Island somewhat embroidered, as it were, with variety of gay colours. Besides that, it is compassed all about with *Meres* full of Eeles, and pooles replenished with fish of many sorts, and with fowle bred and nourished. Of which *Meres*, one is called after the name of the Island *Ramsay Mere*, farre exceeding all the other waters adjoining, in beauty and fertility: but that side where the Isle is counted bigger and the wood thicker flowing daintily by the sandy banke thereof, yieldeth a very delectable sight to behold: in the very gulfs whereof by casting as well of great wide matted nets, as of other sorts, by laying also of hookes baited, and other instruments devised by fishers craft, are caught oftentimes and drawne certaine Pikes of an huge and wonderful bignesse, which the Inhabitants call *Hakeds*: and albeit the fowlers doe continually haunt the place and catch great store of young water-fowle, yet there is abundance alwaies that remaineth untaken.

Furthermore that History sheweth at large, how *Alwin* a man of the bloud royall, and for the speciall great authority and favour that hee had with the King, surnamed *Half-Koning*, that is, *Half King*, being admonished and moved thereunto by a Fishers dreame built it; how *Oswald* the Bishop furthered and enlarged it; how Kings and others endowed it with so faire revenewes, that for the maintenance of three score Monkes it might dispend by the yeare seven thousand pounds of our English money. But seeing it is now pulled downe and destroyed, some may thinke I have already spoken overmuch thereof. Yet hereto I will annex out of the same Authour the Epitaph of *Alwins* Tombe, for that it exhibiteth unto us an unusuall and strange title of a Dignity.

HIC REQUIESCIT AILWINUS INCLITUS REGIS EADGARI COGNATUS, TOTIUS ANGLIÆ ALDERMANNUS, ET HUIUS SACRI COENOBII MIRACULOSUS FUNDATOR.

HERE RESTETH AILWIN COZIN TO
THE NOBLE KING EADGAR, ALDER-
MAN OF ALL ENGLAND, AND OF
THIS HOLY ABBAY THE MIRACULOUS
FOUNDER.

From hence to *Peterborough*, which is about ten miles off, King *Cnutus*, being travelling that way and finding it very comberfome by reason of swelling Brookes and sloughs, with great cost and labour made a paved Causey, which our Historians call *Kings-delfe*, not farre from that great Lake *Wistlesmere*. And as this Abbaye adorne the East side of the Shire, so, the middle thereof was beautified by *Salin*, which the second *Simon de Sancto Lixio* Earle of *Huntingdon* built. From whence farre, is *Cunnington*, holden anciently of the *Honour of Huntingdon*: where, within a foure square Trench, are to be seene expresse remaines of an ancient Castle, which as also *Saltrie*, was by the gift of *Cnutus*, the feat of *Turkill* that Dane, who lived here among the East English, and sent for *Sueno* King of *Denmark* to make him of *England*. After whose departure, *Waldeuf* the sonne of *Sward* Earle of *Northumberland* enjoyed it, who married *Judith* Niece to *William* the Conqueror by his sister on the mothers side: by whose eldest daughter it came to the royall family of *Scotland*. For she, by a second marriage, matched with *David* Earle of *Huntingdon* (who afterwards obtained the Kingdome of *Scotland*) being the younger sonne of *Malcolm Canmor*, King of *Scots*, and of *Margaret* his wife descended of the royal line of the English-Saxons: For, shee was Niece to King *Edmund Ironside* by his sonne *Edward* surnamed, *The Banished*. *David* had a sonne named *Henry*, and *Henry* had another named *David* Earle of *Huntingdon*, by one of whose daughters, *Libel*, *Cunnington* and other lands by right of marriage descended to *Sir Robert* *Brus* from whose eldest sonne *Robert* surnamed the Noble, *James* King of *Great Brittain* lineally deriveth his Descent: and from *Bernard* his younger sonne, unto whom *Cunnington* with *Exton* fell, *Sir Robert Cotton* Knight is lineally descended; whose and beside other vertues, being a singular lover and searcher of Antiquities, having gathered with great charges from all places the Monuments of venerable Antiquity, hath here begonne a famous Cabinet, whence of his singular courtisie, hee hath oftentimes given me great light in these darksome obscurities.

But these Quarters, considering the ground lying so low, and for many moones in the yeare furrounded and drowned, in some places also floating (as it were) under up with the waters, are not free from the offensive noisomnesse of *Meres* and the unwholesome aire of the *Fennes*. Here for fixe miles in length and three in breadth that cleare deepe and fishfull Mere named *Wistlesmere* spreadeth it selfe, which other *Meres* in this Tract, doth sometimes in Calmes and faire weather sodainly at tempestuously, as it were, into violent water-quakes to the danger of the poor fishermen, by reason, as some thinke, of evaporations breaking violently out of the bowels of the earth. As for the unhealthinesse of the place, wherunto onely Remedyes, and not the natives there are subiect, who live long and healthfully, there is made, as they account it, by the commodity of fishing, the plentiful feeding, and the abundance of turfe gotten for fewell. For, King *Cnut* gave commandment by *Turkill* the Dane, of whom ere while I spake, *That in every Village* *Huntingdon* the *Fennes*, there should bee set out a severall *Marsh*: who so divided the ground, that the Village by it selfe should have in proper use and occupation so much of the very maine *Marsh*, as the firme ground of every such Village touched the *Marsh* lying just against it. And ordained that no Village might either digge or mow in the *Marsh* of another without leave, but that the pasture therein should lye all in common, that is, *Home under borne*, for the preservation of peace and concord among them. But thus much of this matter.

Kingdelfe.
Sawtry, commonly.
Cunnington.
Saltria.
Turkill the Dane.

Edward Ironside.
Bruse or Brus.

Moffes.

Wistlesmere Lake.

When the sonnes and servants of the said King *Cnut*, sent for from *Peterborough* to *Ramsey*, were in passing over that Lake, *There fell upon them, as they were cheerefull under saile and lifting up their voices with joyfull showings, most untoward and unhappy winds, wherewith a turbulent and tempestuous storme arose, that entlosed them on every side, so that laying aside all hope, they were in utter despaire of their life, security, or any helpe at all. But such was the mercifull clemency of Almighty God, that it forsooke them not wholly, nor suffered the most terrible Gulfes of the waters to swallow them up all quite, but by his providance some of them he delivered mercifullly out of those furious and raging waves: but others againe according to his just and secret judgements he permitted amidst those billowes to passe out of this fraile and mortall life. And when the fame of so fearefull a danger was noised abroad and came to the Kings eares, there fell a mighty trembling and quaking upon him: but being comforted and relieved by the counsaile of his Nobles and freinds, for to prevent in time to come all future mishaps by occasion of that outrageous monster, hee ordained that his souldiers and servants with their swords and spears should set out and make a certaine Ditch in the *Marshes* lying thereby, betwene *Ramsey* and *Whittlesey*, and afterwards that workemen and labourers should skoure and cleanse them: wherupon, as I have learned of ancient predecessours of good credit, the said Ditch by some of the neighbour inhabitants took the name *Swerdesdelfe*, upon that marking out by swords: and some would have it to be termed *Cnut's delfe* according to the name of the same King. Yet commonly at this day they call it *Steds diche*: and it is counted the limit and bound between this County and *Cambridge* shire.*

In the East side of this Shire, *Kinnibantum Castle*, now called *Kimbolton*, the habitation in times past of the *Standevilles*, afterwards of the *Bobuns* and *Staffords*, and at this day of the *Wingfields*, doth make a faire shew. Under which was *Stonesley* a prery Abbay founded by the *Bigrames*. A little from hence is *Awkenbury*, which King *John* gave to *David* Earle of *Huntingdon*: and *John* surnamed the *Scot*, his sonne, unto *Sir Stephen Segrave*: of whom I am the more willing to make mention, for that he was one of those Courtiers who hath taught us, *That there is no power at all in riches*. Hardly and with much adoe hee climbed to an eminent and high estate, with great thought and care hee kept it, and as sodainly hee was dejected from it: For, in his youth, of a Clerke he became a Knight, and albeit hee was but of meane fortune, yet through his industry toward his later dayes so enriched and advanced, that being ranged with the great Peeres of the Realme, hee was reputed chiefe Justice of *England*, and managed at his pleasure after a sort all the affaires of State. But in the end hee lost the Kings favour quite, and to his dying day lay close in a Cloyster: and who before time from a Clerkship betooke himselfe through arrogancy to secular service, returning againe to the office of a Clerke, resumed the shaven crowne which hee had forsaken without the counsell and advice of the Bishop. Not farre from hence is *Leighton*, where *Sir Gervase Clifton* knight, lately made *Baron Clifton*, beganne to build a goodly house, and close to it lyeth *Spaldwicke*, which King *Henry* the First gave unto the Church of *Lincolne* for amends of a losse, when hee erected the Bishopricke of *Ely*, taken out of the Diocese of *Lincolne*, as I have before shewed.

But where the River *Nen* entreth into this Shire, it runneth fast by *Elton* the seat of the ancient Family of the *Sapcons*, where is a private Chappell of singular workmanship and most artificiall glasse windowes, erected by Lady *Elizabeth Dinham* the widow of *Baron Fitz-warin*, married into the said Family. But a little higher, there stood a little City more ancient than all these, neere unto *Walmsford*: which *Henry* of *Huntingdon* calleth *Caer Dorm* and *Dormecaster* upon the River *Nen*, and reporteth to have beene utterly rased before his time. This was doubtlesse that *Durobrivæ*, that is, *The River* passage, that *Antonine* the Emperour speaketh of, and now in the very same sence is called *Dornford* neere unto *Cheriton*, which beside peeces of ancient Coine daily found in it, sheweth apparant tokens of a City overthrowne. For, to it there leadeth directly from *Huntingdon* a Roman Port way: and a little above *Stilton*, which in times past was called *Stichilton*, it is seene with an high banke, and in an ancient Saxon Charter termed *Ermingtonstreat*. This Street now runneth here through the midst of a foure square Fort, the North side whereof was fenced

Tt 3

with

The little History of Ely.
The foundation of Saltria.

Swerdesdelfe differing from Kings Delfe.

Kimbolton.

Stephen Segrave.
Mat. Paris.

Leighton.

Elton.

Walmsford.

Durobrivæ.

Stilton.
Ermingtonstreet.

Caster in
Northampton-
shire.

Bottle Bridge.

* Nigellus.

Earles of Hun-
tingdon.

See the Earles
of Northamp-
ton.

In the last
booke cap. 16.
John Fordin in
Scotocronica l.
8. c. 3. 5. & 39.

Mat. Paris.
1243.

*
See Dukes of
Excester.
Pat. 16. H. 6.

with Wals, all the other sides with a Rampire of earth onely. Neere unto which were digged up not long since Coffins or Sepulchres of stone in the ground of *Wals*, of an ancient house in this Shire. Some verily thinke that this City *Wals* stood upon both bankes of the River; and there bee of opinion that the little Village *Caster* standing upon the other banke was parcell thereof. Surely to this opinion of *Caster* maketh much the testimony of an ancient story, which sheweth that there was place by *Nen* called *Dormund-caster*, in which when *Kinneburga* had built a Monastery, it began to be called first *Kinneburga-caster*, and afterwards from *Caster*. This *Kinneburga* the most Christian daughter of the Pagan King *Penda*, and when *Alfred* King of the *Northumbrians* (changed her Princely State into the service of Christ) I may use the words of an ancient Writer and governed this Monastery of her own Prioreffe or mother of the Nunnies there. Which afterwards, about the year of Salvation 1010. by the furious Danes was made levell with the ground. But when the River is ready to leave this County, it passeth hard by an ancient house called *Bottle-bridge* (so is it now termed short for *Botolph-bridge*) which the *Draisons* and *Lords* brought from *R. Gimels* by hereditary succession into the Family of the *Shirlins*. And to this house adjoyneth *Overton*, now corruptly called *Orton*, which being by felony forfait and confiscate, *Neele Lovetoff* redeemed againe of King John; and the said *Neeles* sister and coheire being wedded unto *Hubert* alias *Robert de Brounford*, brought him children, who assumed unto them the firname of *Lovetoff*.

This County of *Huntingdon* when the English-Saxons Empire began now to decline, had *Seward* an Earle by Office, and not inheritance: For as yet there were no Earles in England by inheritance, but the Rulers of Provinces, after the calling of that age were termed *Earles*, with addition of the Earldome of this or that Province whereof they had the rule for the time: as this *Seward* while he governed this County was called Earle of *Huntingdon*; whereas afterwards being Ruler of *Northumberland*, they named him Earle of *Northumberland*. He had a sonne named *Waldeof*, who under the Title of Earle had likewise the government of this Province, standing in favour as he did with *William* the Conquerour whose Niece *Judith* by his sister of the mothers side, hee had married, but by him beheaded for entering into a conspiracy against him. The eldest daughter of this *Waldeof* (as *William Gemmison* reporteth) *Simon de Senlys* or *S. Liz* took to wife, together with the Earldome of *Huntingdon*, and of her begat a sonne named *Simon*. But after that the said *Simon* was dead, David brother to *Maud* the Holy, *Queene of England* (who afterwards became King of Scots) married his wife by whom hee had a sonne named *Henry*. But in proceffe of time, as fortune and Princes favour varied, one while the Scots, another while the *Lixes* enjoyed this dignity: First *Henry* the sonne of *David* afore said: then *Simon*, *Liz* sonne of *Simon* the first: after him *Malcolm* King of Scots, sonne to Earle *Henry*: and after his death *Simon* sent *Liz* the third who dying without issue, *William* King of Scots and brother to *Malcolm* succeeded: for, so wrote he that theolod, *Raphe de Diceto* in the year 1185. When *Simon* (saith hee) the sonne of Earle *Simon* departed without children, the King restored the Earldome of *Huntingdon* with the Penances unto *William* King of the Scots. Then his brother *David*, and *David* his sonne *John* firnamed *Scot*, Earle of *Chester*, who dying without issue, and *Alexander* the third that had married the daughter of our King *Henry* the Third, having for a time borne this Title, the Scots by occasion of incident warres, lost that honour, and with it a very faire inheritance in England. A good while after King *Edward* the Third created Sir *William Clinton* Earle of *Huntingdon* who dyed issuelesse: And in his roome there was placed by King *Richard* the Second, *Guscard* of *Engelien*, a *Gascoine*, who was his Governour in his minority: and after his death succeeded *Iohn Holland*, *Iohn* his sonne (who was stiled *Duke of Excester*, Earle of *Huntingdon* and *Ivory*, Lord of *Sparre*, Admirall of *England* and *Ireland*, Lieutenant of *Aquitain*, and Constable of the *Towre of London*) and his sonne likewise *Henry*, successively, who were Dukes also of *Excester*. This is that very same *Henry* Duke of *Excester* whom *Philip Comines*, as himselfe witnesseth, saw begging bare foote in the Low Countries,

Countries, while he stood firme and fast unto the house of *Lancaster*, albeit he had married King *Edward* the Fourth his owne sister. Then *Thomas Grey*, who became afterward *Marquesse Dorset*, a little while enjoyed that honour. Also it is evident out of the Records, that *William Herbert* Earle of *Pembroke* brought in againe the Charter of creation, whereby his father was made Earle of *Pembroke*, into the Chancery for to be cancelled: and that King *Edward* the Fourth in the seveneenth of his Raigne created him Earle of *Huntingdon*, at such time as he granted the Tide of *Pembroke* to the Prince his sonne. Afterward King *Henry* the Eighth conferred that honour upon *George Lord Hastings*: after whom succeeded his sonne *Francis*, and after him likewise his sonne *Henry*, a right honourable Personage, commended both for true Nobility and Piety. But when hee died without issue, his brother Sir *George Hastings* succeeded: and after him his Grandchilde *Henry* by his sonne, who at this day enjoyeth the said honour.

In this little Shire are numbered Parishes. 78.

COR I

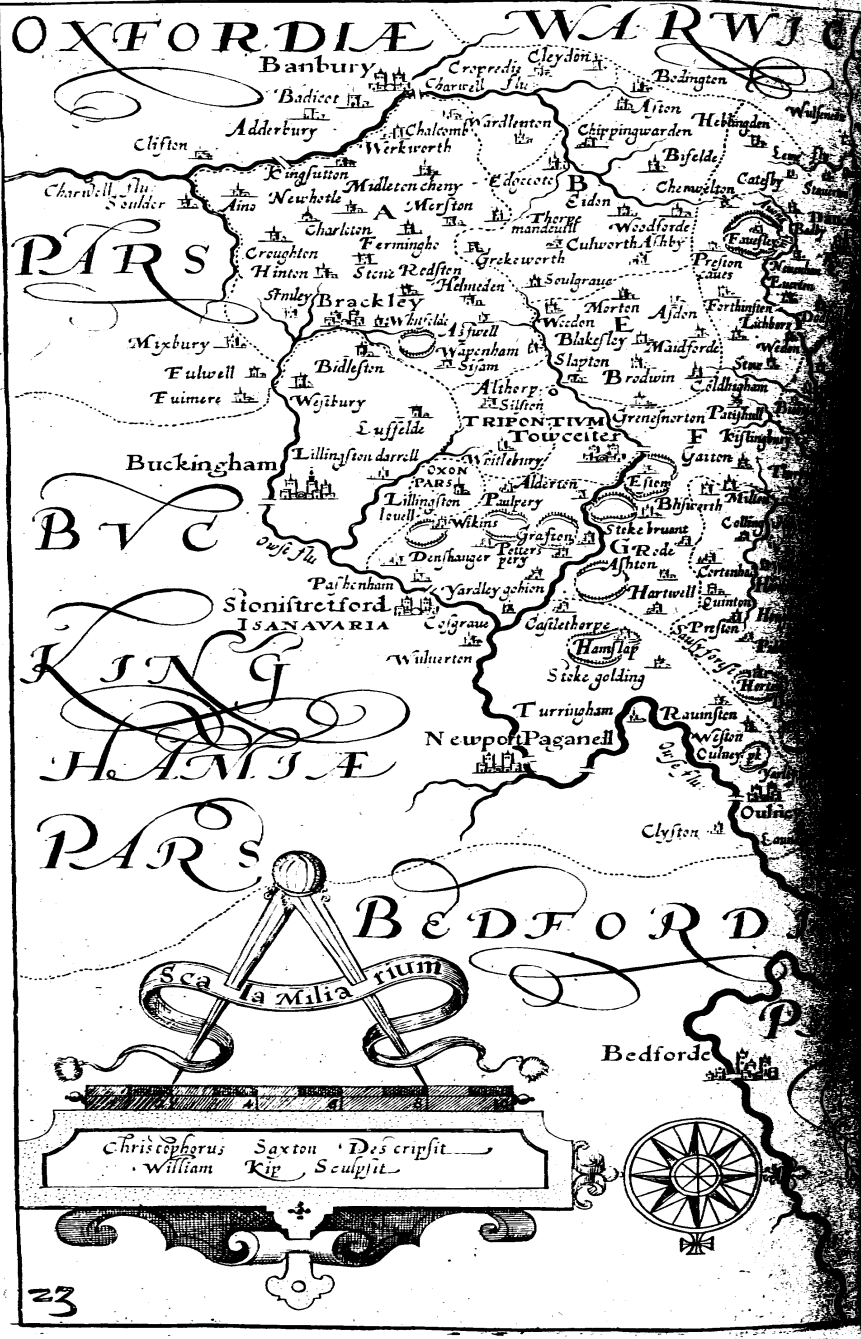


CORITANI.

NOW must wee passe onto the CORITANI, who beyond the ICENI dwelling further within the Land, and spreading themselves every farre through the Mediterranean part of the Island, inhabited as farre as to the German Ocean, to wit in these Countries which now are commonly called NORTHAMPTON-SHIRE, LEICESTER-SHIRE, RUTLAND-SHIRE, LINCOLN-SHIRE, NOTTINGHAM-SHIRE, and DERBY-SHIRE. With the Etymology of this their name I will not once meddle, for feare least putting downe uncertainties for certaine and undoubted trueths, I may seeme to slip into an errour. For, although this People were spread farre and wide, which GUR-TATI signifieth in the British tongue, yet if I would boldly avouch, that these were thence called CORITANI, should I not play hazard at all adventure? Let them, for mee, guesse more safely, who can more happily. As for mee, I will in the meane time according to my purpose survey as diligently as I may these shires which I have now named, each one by it selfe orderly in their severall places.

★

NORTH



NORTHAMPTON-SHIRE.



His County of NORTHAMPTON, in the English-Saxon tongue Nopp-arendon-ripe, and *Norhtanton-shire*, commonly called *Northampton-shire*, situate in the very middle and heart, as it were, of England, from the South-West side, where it is broadest, drawing it selfe narrower by little and little, reacheth out in length to the North-East. On the East lie Bedford and Huntingdon-shires: on the South Buckingham and Oxford-shires: Westward Warwickshire: and Northward Rutland-

shire, and Lincoln-shire, separated from it by *Avon* the lesse, and *Welland*, two Rivers. The East side thereof, from *Ouse* to *Dowbridge*, one of the *Roman high waies* which they call *Washing-streat* runneth through: The middle and East part the *River Nen*, which by Writers is named also *Ausona*, with his gentle streame parteth in twaine: A champion countrey it is, exceeding populous, and passing well furnished with Noblemens and Gentlemens houses, replenished also with Townes and Churches, in so much as in some places there are twenty, and in others thirty Steeples with Spires or square Towres within view at once. The Soile very fertile both for tillage and for pasture, yet nothing so well stored with Woods, unlesse it bee in the further and hither sides. But in every place, as elsewhere also in England, it is over-spread and as it were beset with Sheepe: which according as that *Hythodanus* merrily said, *Were wont to bee so gentle and fed with so little, but now in our daies, as the report goes, be come to bee so ravenous and wilde, that they devour man, they waste and depopulate fields, houses, and Towneships.*

Utopia of Sir
Thomas More.

On the South border, where the River *Ouse* so often mentioned first springeth in a place rising with an easie ascent, and out of which there walme Springs in great plenty, standeth *Brakley*, as one would say a place full of *Brake* or *Ferne*, in old time a famous Mercat Towne and staple as it were for wool: which how large and wealthy it was, it maketh now demonstration to travaillers, only by the ruines thereof, and by a *Majer*, whom it hath for the chiefe Magistrate. The *Zouches* Lords of the place, founded a College there: from whom it came successively as a possession in marriage right unto the *Hollands* and the *Lovels*. But when *Lord Lovell* in King Henry the Seventh his time was attainted, the *Stantlees* became Lords of it by the Kings gift. But the College there, at this day ruinous, belongeth to the Students of *Maudlen College in Oxford*, who use it for a retyring place. Neither came this place to the least name and reputation that it had, by occasion of the memory of Saint *Rumbald* a young Infant, who as wee finde written in his life, being a Kings sonne, so soone as ever he was borne, after he had spoken I know not what holy words, and professed himselfe to be a Christian, was forthwith baptised, and so presently dyed, and being canonized by the people amongst the Saints, had his commemoration kept both here and at Buckingham.

From hence Northward, when we had gone six miles forward, and all the way well wooded, first we saw *Albuck*, where Sir *T. Billing* sometime Lord chiefe Justice in the Kings Bench with great state dwelt: from whom it descended hereditarily to the *Skytes* by the ancient Family of the *Lovels*: then *Weden* and *Wapibam*, which the Family of the *Pinkneys* held by Barony, untill that *H. de Pinkney* ordained King *Edward* the first his heire, Whom being a right good and excellent Prince many evill men made their heire: whereas (according to *Tacitus*) a good father maketh no Prince, but a bad one his heire. Then came we straight waies to *TRIPONTIUM*, which *Antonine* the Emperour mentioneth, though not in due place: For, I am of opinion, that this was the very same, which now we call *Torchester*: and to prove it, there be some arguments of moment as yet remaining. If *Trimontium* in *Thracia* had that name of three hills, *Tritarrita* in *Tuscan* of three Towtes, and *Tripolis* like-

Barony of the
Pinkneys.

wife

wife of three Cities conjoynd in one; I have no reason to doubt, that this TRIPONTIUM of ours, might be so called of three Bridges. And heere at this Taper the Roman Portway which in many places most evidently sheweth it selfe betweene it and Stony Strassford, is cut through by three speciall Channells or streames that the little River there divideth it selfe into; which in times past, like as at this day had of necessity there severall Bridges over them. Now, if you ask a Brittain, how he saith in his [Three Bridges] you shall heare him by and by answer [Taeu pome]: and there shall you see certaine honest men, from whom I have received heere peeces of Romanes Coins, that constantly avouch, the true name of this place to be Terecester, and think it was called of Tereces. Howbeit Mariannus nameth it Tenecester, if the Booke be true, in whom we read, that this towne was so fortified in the yeer of our Redemption, that the Danes by no meanes could winne it by assault: and that King Edward the first afterwards compassed it about with a stone Wall: yet was with all our seeking could see no tokens of any such Wall. Only there is a Mount remaining called in mens hands, they call it Beribill, now turned into private mens Gardens, and planted on every side with Chery trees. And very time it selfe hath so conquered and beautified the towne, that beholden it is to the situation, to the name, and old Coins, and whiles heere found, for that esteeme which it hath of antiquity. For, no more thing there is in it but one onely Church that it hath, and the same is a faire building, wherein D. Sponde sometime the Parson thereof, by report, a nefactor to Church and towne both, lieth entombed within a tombe of his curious workmanship. But hard by, at Easton-Nesson, there is to be seen, a beautiful dwelling house belonging to the Knightly Family of the *Ferrars*.

The River that watereth Terecester, as it goeth from hence toward *Ouse*, on this side *Grafton*, which now is reputed an *Honor of the Kings*, but in times past was the seat of the Family of *Widdewill*: out of which came *Richard*, a man highly renowned for his vertue and valour: who for that he tooke to wife *Jaquet* the widow of *John* of *Bedford*, and daughter to *Peter of Luxemburg*, Earle of *Saint Paul*, wonne the Kings licence, was by King Henry the Sixth fined at a thousand pounds of our money. Yet afterwards he advanced the same *Richard* to the honorable Title of *John Widdewill de Rivers*. With whose daughter *Dame Elizabeth*, King Edward the Fourth secretly contracted marriage: and verily hee was the first of all our Kings, who by Conquest that married his subject, but thereby, he drew upon himselfe and his kinsfolke a world of troubles, as yee may see, in our Histories. The said *Richard*, the devil Lord of *Rivers*, *Grafton*, and *de la Mole*, by King Edward the Fourth, in Law, was erected (these be the very words out of the Charter of his creation) be Earle Rivers, by cincture of the sword, To have unto him and his heires, within the 20. pounds, by the hands of the Sheriffe of Northampton. And loone after he was exceeding great honour ordained High Constable of England. (I speake of the kings Parent it selfe) To occupy, manage, and execute that Office, either by himselfe, or by sufficient Deputies for terme of life, receiving yearly two hundred pounds of the Exchequer, with full power and authority to take examinations, and to proceed of and concerning the crime of high Treason, or the occasion thereof: also to hear, and in due time to determine the causes and businesses aforesaid, with all things arising from them, incident to them, or conjoynd therewith, even summarily, in any place whatsoever below, without noise or formall order of Judgement, only saving the Truth of the fact, and with the Kings hand and power, if it shall be thought necessary, without all appeals. Moreover about that time he was made Lord of Northampton, England. But he having enjoyed these honours a small while, was loone after quarrell of the king his sonne in Law, aforesaid, taken in the battaile at *St Albans*, beheaded. And albeit, in his sonnes this offspring, as it were half dead, yet what time as *Anthony* Earle Rivers was by *Richard* the third made Duke of York, head, *Richard* also and his other brethren dead without issue: yet from their bones there did spread forth most faire and fruitfull branches. For, out of them came the royall Race and line of England, the Marquesses of *Dorset*, the Earles of

Parliament
27. H. 6.

7. Edw. 4.
Constable of
England.

Earles of *Arundel*, Earles of *Worcester*, Earles of *Derby*, the last Duke of *Buckingham*, and Barons of *Stafford*.

Just behinde *Grafton* lieth *Sacy Forrest* stored with Deere and fit for game. More Eastward, the Country all over is besprinkled with Villages and little Townes, among which, these are of greatest name, *Blisworth*, the habitation of the *Wakes* descended from that honorable race of the Barons of *Wake* and *Essexville*: *Pateshull*, which gave name to the most worshipfull family in times past of the *Pateshulls*: *Greenes*, *Norton*, so named of the *Greenes* men in the fore-going age right famous for their wealth: But it was called in foretime (if I be not deceived) *Norton Dany*, which those *Greenes* held by knights service, as also a moiety of *Asheby Mares* in this County, by service, To lift up their right hand toward the King upon Christmas-day every yeare, wherefore the King shall bee in England. Also *Wardon*, an Hundred, which had Lords descended from Sir *Guy of Reinbucourt* a Norman, whose inheritance came by the *Fellians* to *Gulscar Leddes*, whose Daughter *Christian* bare unto her husband *Henry de Brabant* many children: yet *Gulscar* the eldest of them tooke to him the surname of *Leddes* from his mother. But shortly after, those faire lands and possessions were by the females parted betweene *William* and *John*, both *Lastimers* of *Corby*. From *John*, the *Gripins* in this Shire, and from *William* those *Lastimers*, Barons of good antiquity, in *Turkshire*, deduced their Descent.

Sacy Forest.
Forst de
Sacy.

Fines 18.
Rich. 2.

Higher into the Country Northward is the head of the River *Aufona* (for *Aven* in the British tongue is a general name of all Rivers) which the people dwelling thereby call *Nes*: and from the West side of the Shire, holdeth on his course with many reaches of his bankes, after a sort through the middle part of this Shire; and all the way along it doth comfortable service. A notable River, I assure you, and if I have any sight into these matters, fortified in times past with garisons by the Romans. For, when as that part of Britain on this side the River, was now in *Claudius* the Emperors time brought subject to the Roman government, so as the Inhabitants thereof were called *Socij Romanorum*, that is, the Romans consorts or associates, and the Britans dwelling beyond the river oftentimes invaded this their country, and with great violence made incursions, and spoiled much: when as also that the Associates themselves who could better endure the Romans commands, than brooke their vices, other whiles conspired with those on the further side of the River: *P. Ostorius* (as saith *Tacitus*) *cinctus castris Antonam* (*Aufonas* I would reade if I might be so bold) & *Sabrinam* cohibere parat, that is, if I understand the place a right, Hee by placing Forts and Garisons, hard by the Rivers *Antona*, or *Aufona* rather, and *Severn*, determined to restraine and keepe in those Britans on the further side; and these that were Provincials and associates, from conjoyning their forces together, and helping one another against the Romans. Now what River this *ANTONA* should be no man is able to tell. *Lepidus* the very *Phobus* of our age hath either driven away this mist, or else verily a cloud hath dimmed mine eye-sight. He pointeth with his finger to *Northampton*, and I am of opinion that this word *Antona* is closely crept into *Tacitus*, in stead of *Aufona*, on which *Northampton* standeth. For the very navill, heart and middle of England is counted to be nere unto it, where out of one hill spring three great Rivers running divers wayes: *Cherwell* into the South; *Leame*, Westward, which as it maketh speed to *Severn*, is straight wayes received by a second *Antona*; and this *Aufona* or *Nen* Eastward. Of which, these two *Aufons* so crosse England overthwart, that whosoever comes out of the North parts of the Island must of necessity passe over one of these twaine. When *Ostorius* therefore had fortified *Severne*, and these two *Aufons*, he had no cause to feare any danger out of Wales, or the North parts, to befall unto his people, either Romans or associates, who at that time had reduced the nereft and next part of the Island onely into the forme of a Province: as else where *Tacitus* himselfe witnesseth. Some of these Forts of *Ostorius* his making, may those great fortifications and military Fences seeme to bee, which are heere seene at *Gildesborough* and *Dunmire*, betweene the Springheads of the two *Aufons* which run divers wayes, and where onely there is passage into the hither part of Britaine without any rivers

to

to hinder it. That fort at *Gildsbrough*, is great and large, but this at *Dantery* is greater and larger: For, being foure square, upon an high hill from whence all the country beneath may be seene farre every way about, and having on the East side a hill, which they call *Spelwell*, it enclōfeth within a banke cast up by mans hand, more than one hundred acres of ground or thereabout. Within which the country people doer whiles finde coined peeces of money of the Roman Emperors, as proofes of the antiquity thereof. Much deceived are they therefore, who will needs have it to be worke of the Danes, and that of them, the towne under it, was named *Dantery*, which being a through-fare well knowne at this day by reason of the Innes there, had a religious house of the *Austen Friars*, that Sir H. de *Fawesley* founded, as I have heard.

At the head of *Anson* or *Nen*, standeth *Catesby* that gave name to an ancient family, but now of foule tainted memory, for a most horrible and damnable plot, never in any age exampled, which that *Robert Catesby* of *Ashby S. Legu*, the shame and indelible staine of his house and name, detestably breathing forth rage cruelty in barbarous wife, and compassing impiously the destruction of Prince and Country, devised lately under a specious pretext of Religion.

Of whom, let all times be silent, least by making mention of him, the foule stain and blot of our age appeare unto Posterity, at the naming whereof we cannot do but with horror grieve and groane againe, seeing the very dumbe and liveless figures seeme to be moved and troubled at so hellish Villany imagined by him, and his complices. Hard by it, is *Fawesley*, where have dwelt a long time the *Knights* of the County of *Stafford*: and more Eastward hard by *Nen*, as yet very small, there is *Wedon* in the street, sometimes the royall seat of *Wolper K.* of the *Mercians*, and cometh into a Monastery by his daughter *Werburg* a most holy Virgine: of whose might in driving away. Geese from hence, some credulous writers have made many tales. Verily I should wrong the *Truth*, if I should not thinke, (albeit I have thought otherwise) that this *Wedon* is the very station that *Antonine* the Emperour named *BANNAVENNA*, *BENNAVENNA*, *BENNAVENTA*, and once corruptly *ISANNAVENTA*, withstanding there now remaine no expresse tokens of that name, considering how Time changeth all, both names and things. For the distance from thence to *London* and *Batting Townes* which were in ancient times, answereth just: and in the name of *BANNAVENNA*, the name of the River *Anson*, the head whereof is found unto it in some sort doth plainly discover it selfe. Likewise, the *high Post-way* to *London* maneth *streets* goeth directly from hence Northward with a bridge or causeway, and worne out; but most of all over against a Village named *Creek*, where it is necessary that there should be a bridge; but in other places the bridge sheweth selfe also as farre as to *Dowbridge*, neere *Lilborne* most apparantly.

Somewhat more Northward wee saw *Aliborp*, the habitation of the *Spenser* family, allied to very many and those most honorable and worshipfull families, out of which house Sir *Roberts Spenser* the fifth Knight in a successive continued Descent, and five lover of vertue and learning, was by our most gracious Sovereigne King advanced to the honour of Baron *Spenser of Wormelcighston*. Hard by *Aliborp* is *demby house*, a faire patterne of stately and magnificence building maketh a glorious shew, which Sir *Christopher Hatton* one of Queene *Elizabeths* Privie Counsell, Lord Chancellor of England, and knight of the Order of the Garter, built upon his lands and inheritance of his great grandmother, heire unto the Family of the *de Bevis*, for the greatest and last monument, (as himselfe afterwards was wont to say) in his youth: A man, to say nothing of him but that which in truth is due, for his religion and godlinesse right devout, of approved faithfulness to the State, of incomparable ty: for almesdeeds of all others most bountifull, and one (which is not the least of his praise) that was most willing and ready to support and maintaine *Justice*. Who, as he lived a godly life, so as godly he slept in Christ: yet his commendation made knowne by the light some testimony of letters, shall shine forth more gloriously than by that gorgeous Monument right well becomming so great a Personage.

BANNAVENNA, which untill now is called, *ISANNAVENTA* and *ISANNAVENTA*.

Aliborp, or *Oldborp*. Baron *Spenser*. Sir *Christopher Hatton*. He died anno 1591.

Sir *William Hatton*, his adopted sonne, consecrated to his memory, in the Church of *Saint Paul* in London.

Beneath these places *Nen* passeth on forward with a still and small streame, and alone taketh in a small Brooke from the North, and is thereby augmented: where, at the very meeting and confluence of both, a City called after the River *Northampton*, and short, *Northampton*, is so seated, that on the West side it is watered with the Brooke, and on the South side with the foresaid *Nen*. Which City I was of late easily induced to guesse, to have beene that ancient *BENNAVENTA*; but if my conjecture missed the truth, the confession of my errour may save it. As for the name, it may seeme to have beene imposed of the situation thereof upon the North bank of the River *Anson*. The City it selfe which seemeth to have beene built all of stone, is, I assure you, for houses very faire, for circuit of good largeness, and walled about: and from the Wall yee have a goodly prospect every way to a wide and spacious plaine Country.

On the West side, it hath an old Castle, and the very antiquity thereof giveth a grace unto it, built by *Simon de Sancto Lizio*, commonly called *Senlyze*, the first of that name Earle of *Northampton*: who also joynd unto it a beautifull Church called *Saint Andrews*, for a place of his owne buriall: and, as men say, reedified the Towne: *Simon* also the younger, his sonne, founded without the Towne a Monastery commonly called * *De la prey*, for Nunnes. During the Saxons *Heptarchie*, it seemed to have lien forlorne and of none account, neither have Writers made any where mention of it, in all those depredations of the Danes, unless it were when *Swein* the Dane in a furious and outrageous moode made most cruelly havocke throughout all England: for then, as *Henry of Huntingdon* recordeth, it was set on fire and burnt to the ground. In the Raigne of *Saint Edward* the Confessour, there were in it, as we finde in the Survey Booke of England, LX. *Burgesses in the Kings Domaine*, being as many *Mansions*: Of these, in King *William* the Conquerours time, *Fourteen* were waste and void, and forty seven remained. Over and above these, there were in the *Barrough* forty *Burgesses in the Domaine of King William*. After the Norman time, it valiantly withstood the Siege layed unto it by the Barons, when they distressed and troubled the whole Realme with injurious wrongs and slaughters, being maliciously bent against King *John* for private causes, which notwithstanding they so cloked with pretenses of Religion and the common good, that they tearmed themselves, *The Army of God and the holy Church*; at which time, they say, that *Trench* and *Rampire* was made, which they call *Hunshil*: but it stood not out with like success against *Henry* the third their lawfull King, as it did against these rebels: for when those Barons being nuzzelled up in sedition, and rebellion, from hence displayed their banners and founded the battaile against him, he made a breach through the Wall, and soone wonne it by assault. After this, diverse times, like as before the kings held their Parliaments here, because it standeth very nere in the midst of England, and in the yeere after Christ was borne 1460. here was a wofull and bloody field fought, wherein (such was the civill division of England in it selfe) *Richard Nevill* Earle of *Warwick*, after many a noble man slaine, led away captive that most unhappy king *Henry* the Sixth in a piteous spectacle, who was now the second time taken prisoner by his subjects. To conclude, the Longitude of *Northampton* our Mathematicians have described by 22. degrees and 29. scruples, and the Latitude by 52. degrees and 13. scruples. From hence *Nen* maketh haste away by *Castle Ashby*, where *Henry L. Compton* began to build a faire sightly house: close unto which lieth *Tardley Hastings*, so named of the *Hastings*, sometimes Earles of *Pembroch*, unto whom it belonged. And to turne aside, I may not omit *Horton*, when as king *Henry* the Eighth created Sir *W. Par* Lord thereof, uncle and Chamberlaine to Queene *Catharin Par*, Baron *Par of Horton*, which honor shortly vanished with him when he left only daughters, who were married into the families of *Tresham*, and *Lane*. But to returne: *Nen* goeth forward to *Mercat Wellesborough*, in old time *Wedlingborough*, and *Wodlingborough*, made a mercat by *K. John* at the suit of the Monks of *Crowland*, where there runneth into it a River yet comming

Northampton.

1075. Register of Saint Andrews.

* De Pratis.

Gods host for Army.

* Yardley. Lord Parr of Horton.

Kettering.
The booke of
Inquisit. in the
Exchequer.

Baron Vaulx.

Higham Fer-
rers.
Mathew
Parker.

Oundale.

Barnwell.

Fotheringhay.

Cecily Duch-
esse of York.

comming downe by *Rushion* and *Newton*, belonging to the *Treshams*, by *Geddington* also where the King had a Castle, and where there remaineth yet a Crosse erected in the honour of Queene *Eleanor* wife to King *Edward* the First: by *Boughton* the seat of the *Montacutes* Knights: by *Kettering* a Mercat Towne well frequented, neere unto which standeth *Rouwell* much talked of for the horse faire there kept: by *Burton* likewise the Barony (if I mistake not the name) of *Alane de Damm*: For, king *Henry* the First gave unto him a Barony of that name in this Shire, for that in single fight he had slaine the French Kings Champion at *Gisors*: and by *Harroden*, the Lord whereof named Sir *Nicolas Vaulx* Captaine of *Guines* in *Picardy*, king *Henry* the Eighth created Baron *Vaulx* of *Harroden*.

From hence goeth the *Aufon* or *Nea* to *Higham*, a Towne in times past of the *Peverels*, and after by them of the *Ferrers*, from whom it is named *Higham Ferrers*: who had here also their Castle: the ruines and rubbish whereof are yet seene unto the Church. But, the excellent ornament of this place was *Henry Chicheley* Archbishop of Canterbury, who built *All-soules* College in *Oxford*, and another here, wherein he placed Secular Clerkes, and Prebendaries, and withall an Hospital for the poore. Then runneth it by *Addington* the possession in old time of the *Fres*, and by *Thorpston* commonly called *Thrapston*, belonging likewise to them: and ver against it *Draxton*, the house in the foregoing age of Sir *H. Greene*: but afterwards by his daughter, of *John* and *Edward Staffords*, Earles of *Wiltshire*; but now the habitation of the Lord *Mordaunt* unto whom it descended hereditarily from the *Greenes* noble Gentlemen and of right great name in this Country in their time.

Then runneth it, in manner round about a proper little Towne which is given name unto, *Oundale* they now call it corruptly in stead of *Avondale*: where there is nothing worth fight, but a faire Church, and a free Schoole for the instruction of children, and an Almshouse for poore people, founded by Sir *William Lustin* sometime *Major of London*. Neere adjoyning to this, stands *Barnwell*, a little Caste, which now of late Sir *Edward Montacute* of the ancient family of the *Montacutes*, as may be collected by his *Armes*, hath repaired and beautified with new buildings. In times past it was the possession of *Berengary le Moigne*, that is, *Monke*, and now some thinke, of *Berengary of Touraine*, the great Clerke, whose opinion of the Sacrament of the Lords Supper, was condemned in a Synode of an hundred and threene Bishops assembled by the Bishop of *Rome*.

After this, it passeth on by *Fotheringhay* Castle, environed on every side with most pleasant meadows, which in the Raigne of *Henry* the Third, when the strong hold encouraged the Lords and Nobles to revolt, *William* Earle of *Aumari* surprised upon the *Sodaine*, and laied all the Country about waste, as *Mathew* of *Paris* recordeth. At which time it belonged unto the Earles of *Huntingdon* who were of the royal Race of *Scotland*. A good while after, King *Edward* the Third assigned it as a reward, for an inheritance or appennage as the French tearme it, unto his sonne *Edmund* of *Langley*, Duke of *Torke*, who reedified the Castle, and made the highest fortification or Keepe thereof in forme of an horse-fetter, which both of it selfe, and with a Falcon in it, was his Devise, or Emprese; as implying that hee was locked up from all great hope, as a younger brother. His sonne *Edward* Duke of *Torke* in the second yeere of *Henry* the Fifth his Raigne, and in the yeere of Christ 1415. (as appeareth by an inscription there in rude and barbarous Verses) founded a passing faire Collegiat Church, wherein himselfe, when he was slaine in the battaile at *Agincourt*, as also *Richard* Duke of *Torke*, his brothers sonne, who lost his life at *Wakefield*, and his wife *Cecily* *Nevil*, had stately and sumptuous Tombes, which were profanely subverted together with the upper part of the Church, in King *Edward* the Sixth his time. Yet in memoriall of them, Queene *Elizabeth* comming thither commanded two Monuments to be erected in the nether part of the Church, that now standeth which notwithstanding, (such was their pinching and sparing that had the charge of this worke) are thought scarce befitting so great Princes descending from Kings, and from whom Kings of England are descended.

A The forme of the Keepe before said built like a fetter-locke occasioneth mee to digresse a little, and I hope with your pardon, when the gravest Authours in as small matters have done the like: *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *Torke* who built that Keepe, and garnished the glasse-windowes there with Fetter-lockes, when hee saw his sons being young scholars gazing upon the painted windowes, asked them what was Latin for a Fetter-locke? They studying and looking silently one upon another, not able to answer: If you cannot tell me, faith he, I will tell you, *hic, hac, hic Tacetis*, that is, *hic, hac, hic*, he silent and quiet: and therewithall added, *God knoweth what may happen hereafter*. This King *Edward* the Fourth his great Grand-child reported publickely, when he having attained the Crowne created *Richard* his younger sonne Duke of *Torke*, and then commanding that hee should use for his Badge the Fetter-locke open to verifie the presage of his great Grand-father. But this by the way.

The said *Cecily* mother to King *Edward* the Fourth saw plainly within the compass of a few yeeres what disports unruly and powerfull Fortune (pardon the word, for I acknowledge that God ruleth all) maketh herselfe out of the miseries of the mighty: For she saw *Richard* Duke of *Torke* her husband, even then when he thought himselfe sure of the Kingdome, and her sonne the Earle of *Rutland*, slaine together in a bloody fought field, and some few yeeres after her eldest sonne *Edward* the Fourth enjoying the regall Crowne, deprived of the same, recovering it againe, and taken away by untimely death, when hee had before made away her second sonne and his owne brother *George* Duke of *Clarence*. After that, she saw her other sonne *Richard* Duke of *Gloicester* aspiring to the Crowne and making way to it by that lamentable murdering of his Nephewes, and slandering of her his owne Mother, (for he charged her openly with the greatest dishonor incident to a Lady) and afterward she saw him when he was possessed of the Kingdome, within a while slaine in battaile. And these her miseries were so linked together, that the longer she lived the greater sorrow she felt, and every day was more dolefull than other. As for that disaistre which even here befell unto another most mighty Prince *Mary* Queene of *Scots*, I had leiser it should be enwrapped up in silence, than once spoken of: Let it be forgotten quite, if it be possible: if not, yet be it hidden, as it may in silence. Under the best Princes some D there are who being once armed with authority, know how by secret flights to set a goodly shew and faire pretense of conscience and Religion, thereby to cke their owne private designs: And there be againe, that sincerely and from the heart tender true Religion, their Princes security, yea and (which is the highest rule and law of all) the publique safety. Neither can it bee denied, but that even the best Princes themselves are otherwhiles violently carried away, as good Pilotes with tempests, against their wills whither they would not. But what they doe as Princes and Kings, let us leave to God who onely hath power over Kings.

Now being now come unto the skirts of *Huntingdon-shire*, running under a faire stone Bridge at *Walmesford*, passeth by *Dunobriæ*, a right ancient City, which being called in the English Saxon Tongue *Dormancester*, as I said before, tooke up a great space of ground on both banks of the River in both Counties. For, the little Village *Caster* which stands a mile off from the River, may seeme to have bene a part of it, by the pavements there found, wrought checker wise with small square quarels; although on the Church wall we reade this inscription bearing date of a later time.

XV. KL. MAII DEDICATIO HUI-
JUS ECCLESIAE MCXXIII.
THE FIFTEENTH DAY BEFORE THE KALENDS
OF MAY, IN THE YEERE ONE THOUSAND ONE
HUNDRED TWENTY FOURE, [WAS] THE DE-
DICATION OF THIS CHURCH.

And doubtlesse, of greater name and note it was: for in the corne fields ad-
joyning, which in steade of *Dormanton*, they call *Narmanton Fields*, so many
pieces of Romane Coine are turned out of the ground, that a man would verily
thinke

Lollham-
Bridges.

Upton.

Peterborough.

thinke they had bene sowed there: and two Rode-wayes, whereof the *Croft* are yet evident to bee seene, went from hence, the one called *Forty-foot-way*, because it was forty foot broad, unto *Stanford*: the other named *Long-ditch* and *High-street* by *Lollham-bridges*, (bridges I assure you of great antiquity, whereof eleven arches are in sight, now chinking and chawning for age) through *West* into *Lincoln-shire*. At the very division and parting of these two Port-wayes, the deth *Upton* highly situate, whereupon it tooke also that name: where *Sir John Wingfield Knight*, descended from that ancient Family of the *Wingfields*, which brought forth so many worshipfull and worthy Knights, hath a faire house and most lovely walkes.

From *Durobrivæ* the River *Auson* or *Nen* passeth on to *Peterborough* in the very angle or nouke of this Shire, where Writers report there hath been a gulf or whirlpole in the River, of exceeding great depth, called *Medeswell*, and some hard by it named thereupon *Medeswellhamsted* and *Medeshamsted*, which some, as wee read in *Robert de Swapham*, was built in an excellent fine place, having of him side fennes, and passing good waters, and of the other many goodly woods, meadows, and pastures: faire and beautifull to the eye every way, and not accessible by land for many miles. The River *Nen* runneth by at the South side of the Burrough, in the middle of which River, there is a place as it were a gulfe so deepe and cold withall, that even in summer no swimmer is able to drawe or dive unto the bottom. Yet is it never for all the year over in Winter: for there is a spring there; whence the water wellet out. The place called in old time *Medeswell*, until that *Wolpher King* of the *Mercians* built there a monastery in honour of *Saint Peter*. And seeing the place was all a marsh ground, he laid the foundation, as that *Robert* writeth, with mighty huge stones, such as might an Oxen would hardly draw one of them, which I saw with mine owne eyes, saith he, when the Monastery was destroyed. Afterward, of this Monastery dedicated to *Saint Peter*, it began to bee called *PETRIBURGUS*, or *PETROPOLIS*, that is, *burgh* or *Burgh*, and the said Monastery was very famous and renowned. The occasion, and the building whereof, I have thought it worth my labour briefly to lay downe, out of the said *Robert de Swapham*, a Writer of good antiquity, that the sonne of *Peada*, who was the first Christian King of the *Mercians*, in the year of grace 546. for the propagation of Christian Religion, laid the foundation of a Monastery at *Medeshamsted* in the *Girvians* or *Fen-country*, which hee could not build for that by the wicked practise of his mother, he was made away.

After *Peada* succeeded his brother *Wolpher*, who being most averse from Christianity, murdered *Wolphald* and *Rufin* his owne sonnes with cruel and inhumanity, because they had devoted themselves unto Christ, and embraced his Religion. But himselfe some few yeeres after, embracing Christian Religion for to expiate and wash away the staine of that his impiety with some goodly worke, set in hand to build up this Monastery which his brother *Etheldred*, which through the helpe of his brother *Etheldred*, of *Kent*, and *Kinefrith* his sisters, being fully finished in the yeere of our Lord 635. he consecrated unto *Saint Peter*, endowed it with ample Revenues, and called *Sexmuff*, a right godly and devout man (who principally advised him to this) the first Abbat thereof.

This Monastery flourished afterward, and had the name and opinion of the world of great holiness, for the space of two hundred and fourteene yeeres or thereabout, until those most heave and wofull times came, of the Danes, who made spoile and waste of all: For, then were the Monkes massacred, and the Monastery quite overthrowen lay buried, as one would say, many yeeres together in the owne rubbish and ruines. At the last, about the yeere of our Lord 960. *Archbold* Bishop of *Winchester*, who wholly gave himselfe to the furtherance of a publicall profession began to reedifie it, having the helping hand especially of *King Edgar*, and *Adulph* the Kings Chancellour, who upon a pricke of conscience and repentance, for that hee and his wife together lying in bed asleepe had overheard

A smothered the little infant their onely sonne, laid upon the reedifying of this monastery all the wealth he had: and when it was thus rebuilt, he became Abbat thereof.

From which time, it was of high estimation and name, partly for the great riches it had and in part for the large priviledges which it enjoyed: although in the reigne of *William the Conquerour*, *Herward* an Englishman being proclaimed traitor and outlawed, made a rode out of the *Isle of Ely* and rifled it of all the riches that it had gathered together against whom *Toreld* the Abbot, erected the fort *Mont-Toreld*: Yet was it esteemed exceeding wealthy even unto our fathers daies, when, King *Henry the Eighth* thrust out the Monkes in all places, alleging that they declining from the ordinances, which those holy and ancient Monkes held, wasted in riot and excess the goods of the Church, which was the Patrimony and inheritance of the poore; and in their places erected here a Bishopricke assigning thereunto this county and *Rutland-shire* for his Diocese: and placed withall a Deane and certaine Prebendaries. So that of a Monastery it became a Cathedral Church, which if you well consider the building, is for the very antiquity thereof, goodly to behold. The forefront carrieth a majesty with it, and the Cloisters are very large, in the glasse windows whereof is represented the history of *Wolpher* the founder, with the succession of the Abbots. *Saint Maries Chappell* is a goodly large building, full of curious worke, and the quire faire: where as two as infortunate Queenes as any other, *Katherine of Aragon* repudiated by King *Henry the Eighth*, and *Mary Queen of Scotland* being antierred, sought rest and repose there, from all their misteries.

*B*eneath *Brayburgh*, the river *Auson* or *Nen*, which by this time is gone from his spring-head (much about forty five miles, and carrieth along with him all rills, brookes, and land floods occasioned by rains, that he hath taken into his channells, is divided sundry waies. And finding no way to cary his streame, by spreading his waters all abroad in winter time, yea and other whiles most part of the yeere, overfloweth the plaine country, so as it seemeth to be nothing but a vast sea lying even and level, with some few Islands that beare up their heads and appeare above the water. The cause of such inundation the people inhabiting thereby, allege to be this, for that of the three channells or drains, by which so great store of water was belidged into the sea, the first that went directly into the sea by *Thorney* Abbot, and then a part by *Clam*, *Chaffe* and *Crowland*: the second also by the trench cut by *Marion* Bishop of *Ely*, called the *Nen* drain, and then by *Wisbech*, have long since beene forlorn and neglected: and so the third which goeth downe by *Horsey*, *Wilsen*, *Ramsey*, *methen* and *Sulhens* - *Load*, is not able to receive so much water: whereby it breaketh forth with more violence upon the flats adjoining: And the country complaineth for trespass done unto them, as well by those that have inore ignored the said drains, as by those that have turned the same aside to their private use: and as the *Beast* said some time, so doo they, *This Nature herselfe hath well provided for man's use: but as she hath given all rivers their courses, and issues, and as well their issues, so shee hath given all rivers their heads and springs.* But thus much of this matter may seeme to some over-much.

*E*nough in this place is the County least in breadth, for betweene *Nen* and the River *Wolfer* the distance on the North side, is but scarce five miles. Upon *Wolfer* there is an old castle called *Wolfer*, neere unto the spring-head, is *Wolfer* built by *Robert*, *May*, *Abbot*, *De Braybrooke*, a most inward minion of King *John*: whose sonne *Henry* having married *Christian* *Ledes* an inheritor of a great estate, hee did some adopted himselfe into the surname of the *Ledes*: from one of whose posterity his sonne, as I said before, came unto the *Ledes*, and by the name of the *Ledes* whole inheritance now it is. Neere unto it among the woods is a fine house of a Monastery, called in times past *De Druis*, and afterward *Wolfer*, which *William* *Beauchamp* founded in the reigne of *Henry the Second* for *Wolfer* Monks. From thence might *Rochingham* bee seen, were it not for the woods: a Castle sometime of the Barles of *Lincoln*, built by King *William the Conquerour*, and since it was a wall, as we finde in his *Domesday Booke*, fortified with Rampier

Mont-Toreld.

The Fennes.

Braybrooke;
Lords of
Braybrooke;

Pipwell,

Rochingham.

and Bulwarkes, and a duple range of Battlements, situate upon the side of an hill within a woody Forest, which thereupon is named *Rockingham Forest*.

After this it runneth beside *Haringworth* the seat in old time of the *Canibons* now of the Lord *Zouch*: who descended from *Eudo* a younger sonne of *Alan de Zouch*, of *Abby De la Zouch*, have growne up to a right honourable Family of Barons; whose honour and state was much augmented by marriage with one of the heires of * *Canlow*, as also with an other of Baron *Saint Maur*, who likewise gave his Pedegree from the heire of the Lord *Zouch de Abby*, and the *Lovels* Lord *Castel-Cary* in *Somerfetshire*.

Here also I saw *Deane*, belonging in ancient times to the *Deanes*, afterwards to the *Tindals*, which place is worth the remembrance, if it were but for this, that it is now a proper and faire dwelling house of the *Brudenells*: out of which Family *Sir Edmund Brudenell*, late deceased, was a passing great lover and admirer of venerable Antiquity. The Family likewise of *Engain*, which was both ancient and honourable had their seat hereby at *Blatberwic* (where now the *Staffords* of *Knights* grece inhabite, who descended from *Ralph* the first Earle of *Stafford*) and the *gaines* changed their Castle named *Hamel* before time, into a Monastery and *Finitherved*. Their issue male failed about two hundred yeares since: but of the heires the eldest was wedded unto *Sir John Goldingston*, the second to *Sir Thomas Pabenham*, and the third to *Sir William Bernak*, all right worthy Knights.

Here also is to be seene *Apthorpe*, the seat of a most worthy knight, *Sir John Mildmay*, whose father *Sir Walter Mildmay*, late one of *Queene Elizabeths* Counsell, for his vertue, wisdom, piety, and bounty to learning and learning, by founding *Emanuel College* in *Cambridge*, hath worthily deserved to be esteemed among the best men in this our age.

Hard by standeth *Thornhaugh* sometimes belonging to the Family *Deane* *Medardo*, contracted into *Semars*, and now to the right honorable *Sir William* sonne to *Francis* Earle of *Bedford* descended from *Simars*, whom King *Henry* for his vertues and faithfull service in *Ireland* whilke hee was Lord Deputy, advanced to the Dignity of Baron *Russell* of *Thornhaugh*.

Neither is the Towne *Wellodon* to be passed over in silence, considering it went in old time for a Barony, which by *Manda* the Daughter and *Geffrey de Ridell* (who together with King *Henry* the first his sonne was descended from *Richard Basset* sonne of *Ralph Basset*, Lord Justice of England, whose race it continued unto King *Henry* the fourth his dayes: For the females it accrued to the *Knevets* and *Mesburys*).

Wellodon being past *Haringworth* goeth to visit *Collingston*, where *Lady* the Countesse of *Richmond*, King *Henry* the Seaventh his mother built a faire and stately house: Under which, the neighbour inhabitants use to have plenty of slate stones for their buildings. From whence *Wintering* runneth out farre into the East, wherein the people there dwelling report *Danes* long since were discomfited in a memorable battaile and put to flight by this time is *Wellodon* come to *Burgley* wheicof the most prudent and able Councellour *Sir William Cecil*, Lord high Treasurer of England, and a large care and supporter of the same, received the Title of Baron *Burgley*, great good defects, at the hands of *Queene Elizabeth*. Which Time hee lived with the lustre of his vertues, and beautified this place with magnificent buildings, adjoining thereto a large Parke encompassed about with wall of a great circuit. Beneath it, there are ancient Quarries of stone, out of which the Abbayes of *Peterburgh* and of *Ramsley* were built. (to witte the very words out of the History of *Ramsley*) *The stony Quarries* wasten and beke to worke: yet ever still there remaineth work beke, wherein they being refurnished betwene whiles with rest, may be employed and thus wee read in the Charter of King *Edward* the Confessor, *consideration of four thousand Eeles in Lent; the Monkes of Ramsley shall have*

Haringworth.
See *Abby De la Zouch*, in Leicester-shire.
Barons Zouch.
* De Cantelupo.
Deane.

Barons de Engain.

Or Hymell.

Apthorpe.

Thornhaugh.

Wellodon.
Basset of Wellodon.

Slate stones.

Burgley.

Quarries
to build
coldest.

Quarries

Quarries

A Territory of *Saint Peter* so much square as *stiler stone*, as they need, at *Berneck*, and of rough building (stone for walls, as *Burch*. Under *Berneck* that high-way made by the Romans, which the neighbour Inhabitants, of the breadth that it carrieth, call *The forty foot-way*, from *Caster* to *Stanford* cutteth and divideth this Shire, and is to be seene with an high Causey, especially by the little Wood of *Berneck*, where it hath a Beacon set upon the very ridge, and so runneth forth along by *Burgley Park wall* toward *Stanford*.

Some five miles hence, *Welland* running downe by *Maxey Castle*, belonging sometime to the noble house of *Wake*, and by *Peag-Kirk*, (where, in the Primitive Church of the English Nation, *Pega* an holy woman who gave name to that place, and sister of *Saint Gualak*, with other Nuns and devout virgins by their life and example gave good documents of piety and chastity; commeth to the Fennes so often mentioned. And for as much as the banke on the South side thereof is in many places neglected, the River lieth fore upon the lands thereabout with great detriment: and thus being put out of his owne Chanell that before time went by *Spalding*, he entreth closely into *Peag* or *Anson*, and over-chargeth it exceedingly.

Now the lesse *Avon*, which is the other of the limits, as I said, of this shire Northward, but serveth for a limit onely about five or six miles in length, breaking out of the ground at *Avon-well* by *Naseby*, neere by the Springs-head of *Welland*, runneth Westward by *Suleby* sometimes an Abbey of Black-Monkes, and by *Stanford* upon *Avon*, the habitation of the *Corbes* Family, out of which there is spread a notable spring with many branches in all that Tract adjoining: also by *Elborne*, the seat in times past of the *Carvilles*. Which, that it hath beene in old time a Mansion place or Station of the Romans, I am induced to thinke; by the site thereof hard by one of their Port-waies, by the ancient Trenches there, and a little piked hill cast up: into which when of late dayes some digged in hope of old hid treasure, in stead of gold they found coles: And when this river being as yet but small is once gone under *Dun-burgh*, it leaveth *Northampton-shire* and entreth *Warwick-shire*. By those coles digged forth from under the said hill, what if I should conjecture that this hill was raised up for a limit or bound-marke, seeing *Silius Flaccus* writeth, that either ashes, or coles, or pot-herds, or broken glasses, or bones halfe burnt, or lime, or plaster, were wont to be put under land-markes and limits: and *S. Augustine* writeth thus of coles: *Is it not a wonderfull thing* (saith hee) *whereas considering Coles be so bricke, that with the least blow they brake, with the least crushing they are crushed; yet no time, bee it never so long conquere them: in so much as they that pitch Land-markes and limits, were wont to conch them underneath, to convince any litigious fellow whatsoever, that should come never so long time after, and couch that a limit was not there pitched.* And so much the rather incline I to this my conjecture, because they that have written of limits, doe write that certain halts or piles of earth which they termed *Botontines*, were set in limits: so that I suppose most of these mounds and round hills which we every where see and call *Burrows*, were for this purpose raised, and that ashes, coles, pot-herds, &c. may be found under them, if they were digged downe a good depth into the earth.

The first Earle that this County had to my knowledge, was *Waldeuf* (sonne of that *warlike Shere*) who being also Earle of *Huntingdon*, for his disloyall treachery unto *William* the Conquerour, lost his head: leaving two daughters onely behinde him by his the Conquerours Niece by a sister of his mothers side. *Simon de Saint Lin*, being scornfully rejected by *Indith* the mother for that hee was lame-legged, married the eldest Daughter, and hee built *Saint Andrewes Church* and the Castle at *Northampton*. After him succeeded his sonne, *Simon* the second, who a long time was in fight about his mothers possessions with *David* King of Scots his mothers second husband: and having sided with King *Stephen*, in the yeere of our Lord 1152. departed this life with this testimoniall that went of him: *A Youth full fraugh with all unlesly wickednesse, and as full of all unseemely lewdnesse.* His sonne *Simon* the third, having gone to law with the Scots for his right to the Earldome of *Huntingdon*, waisted all his estate, and through the gracious goodnesse of King *Henry* the Second, married

Forty foot-way.

Maxey.
Peag-Kirk.
Ingulfa.

Stanford.
The Caves.

Bounds or
Meere marks
in old time.

Lib. de Chel.
Dei 21. cap. 4.

Botontines.
Hence perit:
ventury come
our Battines.

Barons of
Northampton.

The life of
Waldeuf.

married the Daughter and Heire of *Gilbert de Gaumi* Earle of *Lincolne*: and in the end having recovered the Earledome of *Huntingdon*, and disfeized the Scots, dyed childlesse in the yeare 1185. Whereas some have lately set downe Sir *Richard G. G. G.* to have beene Earle of *Northampton* afterward, I finde no warrant thereof either in Record, or History: Onely I finde, that Sir *Hugh Gobion* was a Ringleader in that rebellious rable which held *Northampton* against King Henry the Third, and that the inheritance of his house came shortly after by marriage to *Butler of Woodstock*, and *Turpin*, &c. But this is most certaine that King *Edward* the Third created *William de Bohun* a man of approved valour, Earle of *Northampton*: and when his elder brother *Humfrey de Bohun*, Earle of *Hereford* and of *Essex*, High Constable also of England, was not sufficient in that warlike age, to beare that charge of the Constable, made him also High Constable of England. After him his sonne *Humfrey* succeeding in the Earledome of *Northampton*, as also in the Earledomes of *Hereford* and of *Essex*, for that his Uncle dyed with issue, begat two Daughters; the one becomen in marriage upon *Thomas of Woodstock*, the youngest sonne of King *Edward* the Third, the other upon *Henry of Lancaster*, Duke of *Hereford*, who afterwards attained the Crowne by the name of King *Henry* the Fourth. The Daughter of the said *Thomas of Woodstock* brought by her marriage this Title of *Northampton* with others, in the Family of the *Staffords*. But when they afterwards had lost their honours and dignities, King *Edward* the Sixth honoured Sir *William Parr* Earle of *Essex*, and accomplished Courtier, with the Title of *Marquesse of Northampton*: who within our remembrance ended this life issuelesse. And while I was writing and penning this Worke, our most sacred Sovereigne King *James* in the yeare of our Salvation 1603. upon one and the same day advanced Lord *Henry Howard* brother to the late Duke of *Norfolke*, a man of rare and excellent wit, and sweet fluent eloquence, singularly adorned also with the best sciences, prudent in counsell, and provident in all, to the state of *Baron Howard of Arundell*, and the right honourable name, style, and Dignity of Earle of *Northampton*.

There belong unto this Shire Parishes 326.

LEICESTER

LECESTRIAE

COMITATVS SIVE

Leicestershyre PARS

OLIM CORITANORVM



NOMINA HUNDREDORVM IN COMITATV LECESTRIAE

- A West Goscote Hundred
- B sparkenhoe Hundred
- C guthlakeston Hundred
- D gartery Hundred
- E Est Goscote Hundred
- F Framland Hundred

NOTINGHAMIAE

PARS



Scala Milliarium
Christophorus Saxton descripsit
et William Fyfe Sculp.

LEICESTER-SHIRE.



DN the North side of *Northampton-shire* boundeth *LEICESTER-SHIRE*, called in that Booke wherein *William* the Conquerour set downe his Survey of England, *Ledecester-shires*: a champion Country likewise throughout, bearing corne in great plenty, but for the most part without Woods. It hath bordering upon it on the East side, both *Rutland-shire* and *Lincoln-shire*; on the North *Nottingham* and *Derby-shires*; and *Warwick-shire* on the West. (For, the high Rode way made by the Romanes called *Wasling-streets*, directly running along the West skirt, separateth it from *Warwick-shire*;) and on the South side, as I noted even now, lyeth *Northampton-shire*. Through the middle part thereof passeth the River *Soar* taking his way toward the *Trent*: but over the East part a little River called *Wreke* gently wandereth, which at length findeth his way into the foresaid *Soar*.

On the South side, where it is divided on the one hand with the River *Avon* the lesse and on the other with the River *Welland*, we meet with nothing worth relation, unlesse it be, on *Wellands* banke, (whiles he is yet but small and newly come from his head) with *Haverburgh* commonly called *Harborrow*, a Towne most celebrate heere about for a Faire of Cattaille there kept: and as for *Cayleton*, as one would say, the husband-mens Towne, (that is not farre from it) wherein (I wote not whether it be worth the relating) all in manner that are borne, whether it bee by a peculiar property of the Soile, or the water, or else by some other secret operation of nature, have an ill favoured, untunable, and harsh manner of speech, fetching their words with very much adoee deepe from out of the throat, with a certaine kinde of wharling.

That Romanie streete way afore said, (the causey whereof being in some other places quite worn and eaten away, heere most evidently sheweth it selfe) passeth on directly as it were by a streight line Northward, through the West side of this Province. The very tract of which street I my selfe diligently traced and followed even from the *Tamis* to *Wales*, purposely to seeke out Townes of ancient memory: (laugh you will perhaps, at this my painfull and expencesfull diligence, as vainly curious: neither could I repose my trust upon a more faithfull guide for the finding out of those said townes which *Antonine* the Emperour specifieth in his *Itinerary*. This *Streets* way, being past *Dowbridge*, where it leaveth *Northampton-shire* behinde it, is interrupted, first with the River *Swift*, that is indeed but slow, although the name import swiftnesse, which it maketh good onely in the Winter moneths. The Bridge over it now called *Bransford* and *Bensford Bridge*, which heere conjoynd in times past this way, having been of long time broken downe, hath beene the cause that so famous a way for a great while was the lesse frequented: but now, at the common charge of the country, it is repaired. Upon this way lyeth of the one side, Westward, *Ceister-Over*,

Watlingstreet.

(but it is in *Warwick-shire*) a place worth the naming, were it but in regard of the Lord thereof *Sir Foulke Grevill*, a right worshipfull and worthy knight: although the very name it selfe may witnesse the antiquity, for, our ancestours added this word *Ceister* to no other places but only cities. On the other side of the way Eastward, hard by water *Swift* which springeth neere *Knaptoft* the seat of the *Turpins* a knightly houle descended from an heire of the *Gobions*, lieth *Misterton* belonging to the ancient family of the *Poulteneys*, who tooke that name of *Poultney* a place now decayed within the said Lordship. Neere to it is *Lutterworth* a Mercate Towne the possession in times past of the *Verdons*, which onely sheweth a faire Church which hath beene encreased by the *Feldings* of knights degree and ancient gentry in this Shire. That famous *John Wickliffe* was sometime Parson of this Church, a man of a singular, polite, and well wrought wit, most conversant also in the holy Scripture: who for that he had sharpened the neb of his pen against the Popes authority, the Church of *Rome*, and

Ceister-Over.

Ceister.

Lutterworth.

John Wickliffe died 1387.

and religious men, was not onely in his life time most grievously troubled, but also one and forty yeeres after his death, his dead Corps was cruelly handled, being by warrant from the Councell of Siena turned out of his grave and openly burned. Neither is it to be forgotten that neere to this Towne is a spring so cold that within a short time it turneth strawes and stickes into stones.

A spring turning
strawes
and stickes into
stones.

Cley Cester.
Cleybrooke.

From that Bensford bridge, the foresaid old High way goeth on to High-crosse, called, for that thereabout stood sometime a Crosse, instead of which, is now a very high post with props and supporters thereto. The neighbours there dwelling reported unto me, that the two principall High-waies of England did here, or one another overthwart, and that there stood a most flourishing City there, called Cleycester, which had a Senare of Aldermen in it, and that Cleybrooke, almost off, was part of it: also, that on both sides of the way, there lay under the furrow the corne fields great foundations and ground workes of foure square stone: altho the peeces of Roman money were very often turned up with the Plough: although above the ground, as the Poet saith, *Briam ipsa periere ruinae*, that is, *Even the very ruins are perished and gone*. These presumptions together with the distance of this place from BANNAVENTA or WEDON, which agreeth just, and withall the said Bridge leading hitherward, called Bensford, are inducements unto me to thinke verily, that the station BENNONES, or VENONES, was heere, which *Antonine* the Emperour placeth next beyond BANNAVENTA, especially seeing that *Antonine* sheweth how the way divided it selfe heere into two parts, which also goeth commonly currant. For, Northward, where the way lieth to *Lincolne*, the way leadeth directly to RATAE and to VERNOMETUM, of which I will speake anon: and toward the Northwest, *Wallingstreet* goeth as streight into *Wala* by *MARVESSEDUM*, whereof I shall write in his due place in *Warwickshire*.

Bennones.

Higher, yet neere the same street side standeth *Hinkley*, which had for Lord, *Hugh Granmaismill*, a Norman, high Steward or Seneschall of England, during the Raignes of king *William Rufus*, and *Henry the First*. The said *Hugh* had two daughters, *Parnell*, given in marriage to *Robert Blanch-mains* (so called of his fine white hands) Earle of *Leicester*, together with the High-Stewardship of England; and *Alice*, wedded to *Roger Bigot*. Verily, at the East end of the Church, there to be seene Trenches and Rampires, yea and a Mount cast up to an eminent height, which the inhabitants say was *Hughes Castle*. Three miles hence standeth *Desford*, an ancient Mercat Towne, which liberty together with the Faire *S. Richard* *Harcourt* obtained for it at the hands of king *Edward the First*. Under this town in our great grandfathers daies the kingdome of England lay hazarded upon the chance of one battail. For, *Henry Earle of Richmond*, with a small power encountered there in pitched field king *Richard the Third*, who had by most wicked means usurped the kingdome, and whiles he resolved to die the more valiantly, fighting for the liberty of his country, with his followers and friends, the more happy successe he had, and so on came and slew the Usurper: and then being with joyfull acclamations proclaimed King in the very mids of slaughtered bodies round about, he freed England by his happy labour from the rule of a Tyrant, and by his wisdom refreshed and seded it being sore disquieted with long civil dissensions. Whereupon *Bernard Andrews of Thelme* a Poet living in those daies, in an Ode dedicated unto King *Henry the Seventh*, touching the Rose his Devise, writ these Verses, such as they are:

*Ecce nunc omnes passere venti
Murmuris, prater Zephyrum septemtem:
Hic Rosas nutrit, nixidolique flores
Veris amant.*

Behold now all the windes are laid,
But Zephyrus that blowes full warme:
The Rose, and faire spring-floures in mead
He keepeth fresh, and doth no harme.

Other

Other memorable things there are none by this Street, unlesse it bee *Ashby de la Zouch*, that lyeth a good way off: a most pleasant Lordship now of the Earles of *Huntingdon*, but belonging in times past to the noble Family *De la Zouch*, who descended from *Alan Vicount of Roban*, in *Little Britaine*, and *Constantia* his wife daughter to *Conan le Grosse Earle of Britaine* and *Maude* his wife the naturall daughter of *Henry the First*. Of this house *Alane De la Zouch* married one of the heires of *Roger Seigny Earle of Winchester*, and in her right came to a faire inheritance in this Country. But when hee had judicially sued *John Earle of Warren*, who chose rather to trye the Tide by the sword point than by point of Law, he was slaine by him even in *Westminster Hall*, in the yeere of our Lord 1269. and some yeeres after, the daughters and heires of his grand sonne transferred this inheritance by their marriages into the Families of the Saint *Mauris*, of *Castle Cary*, and the *Hollands*. Yet their father first bestowed this *Ashby* upon Sir *Richard Mortimer* of *Richards Castle* his cousin, whose younger issue thereupon tooke the surname of *Zouch*, and were Lords of *Ashby*. But from *Eudo* a younger sonne of *Alane* who was slaine in *Westminster Hall*, the Lords *Zouch* of *Harringworth* branched out, and have bene for many Descents, Barons of the Realme. Afterward in processe of time *Ashby* came to the *Hastings*, who built a faire large and stately house there, and Sir *William Hastings* procured unto the Towne the liberty of a Faire in the time of King *Henry the Sixth*. Here I may not passe over the next neighbour *Cole-Oversen*, now a seat of the *Beaumonts* descended from Sir *Thomas Beaumont* Lord of *Bachewill* in *Normandy*, brother to the first Vicount. This place hath a *Cole* prefixed for the forename which Sir *Thomas*, as some write, was bee, who was slaine manfully fighting at such time as the French recovered *Paris* from the English in the time of King *Henry the Sixth*. This place of the *pit-coles* (being of the nature of hardned *Bitumen*, which are digged up to the profit of the Lord, in so great a number that they serve sufficiently for fewell to the neighbour Dwellers round about farre and neere.

Barons Zouch;
De Ashby.

The family of
the Hollands.

Pit-cole or
stone coles.

I said before that the River *Soar* did cut this Shire in the middle, which springing not farre from this Street, and increased with many small rills and Brookes of running water, going a long Northward with a gentle streame, passeth under the West and North side of the cheife Towne or City of this County, which in Writers is called *Lege-Cestria*, *Leogora*, *Legecester*, and *Leicester*. This Towne maketh an evident faire shew both of great antiquity and good building. In the yeere 680. when *Saxwalph* at the commandement of King *Ethelred* divided the kingdome of the *Mercians* into Bishopricks, hee placed in this an Episcopall See, and was himselfe the first Bishop that sat there: but a few yeeres after, when the See was translated to another place, this Dignity had an end, and therewith the stately part of the Towne by little and little was empaiored, untill that *Edelfleda* a most vertuous and noble Lady in the yeere after our Saviours Nativity 914. repaired and strongly walled it new about; in so much as *Matthew of Paris* in his lesser Story wrote thus, *Legecester is a right wealthy City and newly well fenced with an indissoluble Wall, which if it had a strong foundation were inferior to no City whatsoever*. About the Normans entring into this Land, it was well peopled and frequented, yea and had very many Burgeses in it; out of whom they were bound by an ancient custome (as we read in *William the Conquerours booke*) To send twelve with the King so often as he went in person to the warres: But if hee made a voyage by sea against his enemies, they sent foure horses to carry armour as farre as to London. This City paid yearly to the King 30. pounds by tale, and twenty in ora, that is, * by weight, also 25. measures called *Sextaries* of hony. But in the time of King *Henry the Second* Raigne, it was sore overpressed with a world of great and grievous calamities, and the walls throwne downe, what time as *Robert* surnamed *Bossu*, (that is, *Crouch backe*) Earle of *Leicester* conspired and rebelled against the King. Which *Matthew of Paris* sheweth in these words: For the obstinate stubbornesse of Earle *Robert* spurning against the King, the noble City of *Leicester* was besieged and overthrowne by King *Henry*, and the Wall which seemed indissoluble, was utterly cast downe all round about. For, that I may adde thus much out of the lesser History above said, when the Wall of the City

Leicester;

* Or in oile.

1487.
Richard the
Third slaine.

City wanting a good foundation was undermined, and the props that sustained it at length burnt, the peeces and fragments of the Wall fell downe, which even to this day (such is the indissoluble tenacity and stiffness of the mortar) remaine fast, and retain the bignesse of round rockes. Miserable also was the imposition of a fine upon the Citizens at that time, and their banishment as lamentable, who having obtained by paying summes of money licence to depart, tooke Sanctuary for extreame feare in Saint Albans and Saint Edmundsbury. The Castle likewise was dismantled of all Fortifications, which verily was a large and strong peece. Beneath which, there is a very faire Hospitall or house for receit of poore people, and a Collegiat Church wherein Henry Earle of Lancaster, and Henry of Lancaster his sonne, who was the first Duke of Lancaster, lie buried. For, the said Duke when he was now stepped farre in yeeres, of a pious minde built this Hospitall for the maintenance of poore folke, and to that end dedicated it. Concerning which, Henry Knighton of Leicester who lived in that age, writeth thus in his story. Henry the first Duke of Lancaster builds a Collegiat Church and Hospitall without the South Gate of Leicester; wherein hee ordained a Deane with 12. Canon Prebendaries, as many Vicars, and other Officers, an hundred poore and feeble people, and poore able women to give attendance upon the said feeble folke; and this Hospitall becometh with sufficient revenewes. As for this Hospitall it continueth in some good state, as another Bede-house in the Towne built by W. Wigetson. But the Collegiat Church which was a magnificent worke, and the greatest ornament of Leicester was demolished when religious houses were granted to the King.

At the other side of the City among most goodly and pleasant meadowes which the River Soar watereth, there was an Abbey, called of that place, *De Pre*: of which, the said Knighton hath written thus, Robert de Bessu Earle of Leicester (when he began Gerondon Abbey for Cisterians) founded the Monastery of S. Mary De Pre, a Leicester, endowed it richly with Lands, Possessions and Revenewes, and himselfe with the consent of * Amice his Wife became a * Chanon Regular in the same, and, for the space of fiftene yeeres, in habite of a Chanon served God there, and so slept in the Lord; That thus forsooth, he might make amends by repentance in a Chanons weed of that offence, which beforetime hee had committed by rebelling with a traiterous minde against his Liege Prince. What name Leicester had in the Romans time, it is not knowne; In the Catalogue of *Ninivius*, I thinke it to be that, which is called *Caer Lavin*: But, that *Leir* a King, of whom there goe many tales, built it, they that will, may beleve it for mee. But the situation thereof upon the *Foss-way*, and the distance both from BENNONES and VEROMETUM, agreeth so just with the description of *Antonine*, that I cannot but thinke it to be that *RATÆ* which *Ptolomee* nameth *RAGA*, although there is neither tippe nor toe remaining in it of the name *RATÆ*: unlesse peradventure it be in that old long Ditch and Rampire which they call *Rat dikes*, scarce halfe a mile without the South Gate.

Heere am I at a stand, and looke about me what way to follow for the seeking out of ancient Townes. *Ranulph* a Monke of *Chester* recordeth, that the ancient street way went through the waits from hence to Lincoln, but hee telleth us not, through what Waits. The common voice goeth that it went on still full North through *Nottinghamshire*: *Antonine* the Emperour (if I have any insight at all) seemeth to insinuate, that it passed North-Eastward through this County into *Lincolnshire*. And verily, this way there are places of antique memory that by some of their remaines and tokens shew themselves: but the other way, I could not my selfe ever yet meete with any; what others have done I know not, and would willingly learne.

North-West from Leicester, and not farre off is *Grooby* a large Lordship and Manor which from *Hugh Grantmismill* whom King *William* the Conquerour had enriched with great possessions and revenewes, came by the Earles of Leicester, and the *Quincies*, unto the house of the *Ferrers*: out of which the Lord *Ferrers* of *Grooby* flourished a long time in the honorable state of Barons: and in the end, *Isabel* the only daughter remaining of the right line, brought it by her marriage into the name of the *Greys*, from whence it fell againe at the last by Attainder into the Kings hands. But

* Amice.
* Or Priest.

Or Road dikes.

Ferrers and
Greies de
Grooby.

whiles I was revising of this Worke, our Sovereigne Lord King *James* restored Sir *Henry Grey* a worthy Knight to the ancient honour of his noble Progenitors, creating him Baron *Grey of Grooby* in the first yeare of his Raigne.

Now let us returne to the River *Soar*, which being past Leicester, first giveth name to *Monisfrell*, or rather *Mont-Soar-hill*, a name compounded of Norman and English both: which now is famous onely for a Mercate there kept: but in old time most renowned for the Castle, seated upon a steepe and craggy Hill, hanging over the River, which before time belonged to the Earles of Leicester, but afterwards to *Saer de Quincy* Earle of Winchester in the Barons warre; at this day nothing but a rude heape of rubbish: For, in the yeere 1217. the Inhabitants of the Towne, when after a long Siege they had wonne it, rased it downe to the very ground, as being the Devils nest, and a Den of thieves, robbers, and rebels. Somewhat higher on the other side of the River standeth *Barrow*: where is digged lime, commended above all other for the strong binding thereof. After, some few miles from thence, *Soar* while hee seeketh *Trent*, leaveth Leicester-shire, a little above *Cotes* now the habitation of the Family of *Skipwith* originally descended out of *Tork-shire*, and enriched many yeeres since with faire Possessions in *Lincolnshire*, by an heire of *Ormesby*. On the opposite banke of *Soar* standeth *Lough-borough* a Mercate Towne, which adorned one onely man with the name of Baron, to witte, Sir *Edward Hastings*; and that in the Raigne of *Queene Mary*. But when shee, of whom he was most dearly loved, departed this life, hee taking a loathing to the World was not willing to live any longer to the World; but wholly desirous to apply himselfe to Gods Service, retired into that Hospitall which hee had erected at *Stoke Poges* in *Buckinghamshire*; where with poore people hee lived to God, and among them finished the course of his life devoutly in Christ. That this *Lough-borough* is that Towne of the Kings named in the Saxon Tongue *Lieganbunge*, which as *Marianus* saith *Cuthwulph* tooke from the Britans in the yeere of Christ 572. the neere affinity of the name may yeeld some proofe. But now among all the Townes of this Shire it rightfully chalengeeth the second place next unto Leicester, whether a man either regard the bignesse or building thereof, or the pleasant Woods about it. For, within very little of it, the Forest of *Charnwood* or *Charley* stretcheth it selfe out a great way, wherein is scene

Beaumont Parke, which the Lords of *Beaumont* (as I have heard) fenced round about with a stone Wall. These *Beaumonts* descended from a younger sonne of *John Countie of Brete in France*, who for his high honour, and true valour was preferred to marry the heire of the Kingdome of *Jerusalem*, and with great pompe crowned King of *Jerusalem* in the yeere of our Lord 1248. Hence it is that wee see the Armes of *Jerusalem* so often quartered with those of *Beaumont* in sundry places of England. Sir *Henry Beaumont* was the first that planted himselfe in England about the yeere 1308. who advanced to the marriage of an heire of *Alexander Comine* Earle of *Dagban* in Scotland (whose mother was one of the heires of *Roger Quincy* Earle of *Winchester*) entred upon a very goodly and faire inheritance, and so a great Family was propagated from him. Hee in the Raigne of *Edward the Third*, for certaine yeeres was summoned to the Parliament, by the name of *Earle of Baghan*, and *John Lord Beaumont* in the Raigne of *Henry the Sixth* was for a time Constable of England, and the first to my knowledge, that in England received at the Kings hands the state and Title of a *Vicount*. But when *William* the last *Vicount* was dead without issue, his sifter was wedded to the Lord *Lovel*, and the whole inheritance afterwards, which was rich and great, by attainder of *Lovel* fell into the hands of King *Henry the Seventh*.

In this North part we meete with nothing at all worth the naming, unlesse it be a little religious house, which *Roisie Verdon* founded for Nunnes and called it *Grace-Dieu*, now belonging to a younger house of the *Beaumonts*: and where the *Trent* runneth, hard by, is *Dunnington*, an ancient Castle built by the first Earles of Leicester: which afterwards came to *John Lacy* Earle of *Lincoln*, who procured unto it from King *Edward* the first the priviledge of keeping a Mercate and Faire. But when as in that

Mont-Soar-hill.

Historia Minor.

* Skipwith.

Lough-borough.

Charnwood Forest.

* De Bello monte, Beaumont.

The first Vicount of Honour in England.

Dunnington.

great proscription of the Barons under King Edward the Second the hereditaments of *Thomas Earle of Lancaster*, and *Alice Lucy* his Wife were seized into the Kings hands, and alienated in divers sorts, the King enforced her to release this Manor unto *Hugh Le Despenser* the younger.

The East part of this Shire which is hilly and feedeth great numbers of Sheep, was adorned with two places of especiall note; *VERNOMETUM* or *VEROMETUM*, whereof *Antonine* the Emperour hath made mention, and *Burton Lazars*, both in the ages fore-going of very great name and reputation. *VERNOMETUM*, which now hath lost the name, seemeth to have stood (for I dare not affirm it) in that place, which at this day men call *Burrowhill* and *Erd-burrow*: For, because *VEROMETUM* and *RATÆ*, according to *Antonine* his reckoning are twentie Italian miles; and so many well neere therebe, from *Leicester* to this place.

The name *Burrow* also that it hath at this day came from *Burgh*, which in the Saxon Tongue signifieth, a place fortified, and under it a Towne called *Burrough* belonging to an old Family of Gentlemen so surnamed. But, (that which maketh not for prooffe) in that very place there riseth up an hill with a steepe and upright ascent on every side, but South Eastward: in the top whereof appeare the expresse tokens of a Towne destroyed, a duple Trench, and the very Tract where the Walls were, which enclosed about eightene Acres of ground within. At this day it is arable ground, and is nothing so famous, as in this, that the youth dwelling round about were wont yeerely to exercise themselves in wrestling and other games in this place. And out of the very name a man may conjecture, that there stood there some great Temple of the Heathen Gods. For, *VERNOMETUM* in the ancient *Gaul* language, which was the fame that the old Britans tongue, soundeth as much as *Agus Temple*; as *Venantius Fortunatus* in the first booke of his Songs plainly sheweth, writing of *Vernometum* a Towne of *Gaul* in these Verses.

*Nomine Vernometum voluit vocitare vetustas,
Quod quasi sanum ingens Gallica lingua sonat.*

In elder time this place they term'd by name of *VERNOMET*,
Which sounds in language of the *Gauls*, as much as *Temple Great*.

Burton Lazars.

As for *Burton*, surnamed *Lazars*, of *Lazars* (for so they used to terme folke infected with the *Elephantiasie* or *Leprosie*) was a rich Spittle-house, or Hospitall, under the Master whereof, were in some sort all other small Spittles or Lazer-houses in England, like as himselfe also was under the Master of the *Lazars* in Hierusalem. Jews founded in the first age of the *Normans*, by a common contribution over all England, and the *Monbraies* especially did set to their helping hands. At which time the Leprosie which the learned terme *Elephantiasis*, (because the skins of Lepres are like that of Elephants) in grievous manner by way of contagion ranne over all England. For, it is verily thought that this disease did then first creepe out of *Egypt* into this Island: which erst-once had spread it selfe into *Europe*: first of all in *Pompeii* *Chigius* his dayes: afterwards, under *Heraclius*, and at other times as we may see in the Histories, whether by celestially influence, or other hidden causes I leave to the learned. But so farre as I could hitherto reade, it did never set foote in England before that time. Besides these places before named of great name and marke, we cannot not overpasse neither *Melton Monbray* neere unto this *Burton*, a Mercate Towne bearing name of the *Monbraies* sometime Lords thereof, wherein is nothing more worth the seeing, than a faire Church; nor *Skeffington*, standing farther off, which as it hath given name to a worshipfull Family, so againe it hath received worship and credit from the same.

The River that watereth this part of the Shire, is by the Inhabitants about it called the *Wreken*, along which upon resemblance of the name I have sought *VERNOMETUM*, but in vaine. This *Wreken* gathereth a strong streame by many lively Brooks resorting unto it, whereof one passeth by *Wimondham* an ancient habitation

Wimondham.

of a younger branch of the house of the Lords *Barkleis*, well encreased by an heire of *Dela-Laund*, and so on by *Melton Monbray* before mentioned, by *Kirkby Bellers*, (where there was a Priory) having that addition of the *Bellers*, a respective, rich, and noble Family in their time, by *Brokesby* a seat now of the *Villiers* of an old Norman race, and descended from an heire of *Bellers*: which *Brokesby* imparted formerly the surname to the *Brokesbys* of especiall antiquity in these parts. Then the *Wreken* speedily by *Ratcliffe* high mounted upon a cliffe and within few miles conjoyneth it selfe to *Soar*, neere unto *Mont-Soar-hill*, before mentioned.

Brookesby.

Whatsoever of this Shire lieth beyond the *Wreken* Northward, is not so frequently inhabited, and part of it is called the *Wold*, as being hilly without wood; wherein *Dally* a seat of the old Family of the *Neels*, of whom I shall speake elsewhere; and *Waldum* on the *Wold*, a meane Mercat, are most notable. Through this part as I have bene informed passeth the *Fosse-way*, made by the Romans from *Leming Bridge*, by *Sogave*, which gave surname to the honourable Family often mentioned, and the *Lake on the Wold* toward the *Vale of Bever*, but the Tract thereof as yet I know not.

This Shire hath bene more famous from time to time by reason of the Earles thereof have bene very renowned. And seeing it had under the Saxons government Earles by inheritance, I will first reckon them up in order, as *Thomas Talbot* a skilfull Antiquary hath delivered me a note of them out of the Kings Records. In the time of *Æthelbald* King of the *Mercians*, and in the yeere of our Redemption 716. *Leofric* was Earle of *Leicester*, whom there succeeded in direct line *Algar* the first, *Algar* the second, *Leofric* the second, *Leofric* the third buried in *Coventry*, *Alger* the third, who had issue two sonnes, *Ædwin* Earle of *March*, *Morkar* Earle of *Northumberland*, and a daughter named *Lucy*, first married to *Woon Talboys* of *Anjou*, afterwards to *Roger of Romara*, who begat of her *William of Romara* Earle of *Lincolne*. Now when as the issue male of this Saxon Family failed, and the name of the Saxons was troden (as it were) under foot, *Robert Beaumont* a Norman Lord of *Pont Audomar* and Earle of *Mellent*, (after that *Simon* an officary Earle of *Leicester* was dead) obtained his Earldome in the yeere of our Lord 1102. at the bountifull hand of King Henry the First: which Robert, *A man for skill and knowledge excellent, full spoken, subtil, wise, and witty, and by nature wily, who while hee lived in high and glorious estate, an other Earle carried away his wife from him: whereupon in his old age being much troubled in minde, he fell into deepe melancholy.* After him succeeded from father to sonne three *Roberts*, the first surnamed *Bossu* because hee was crook-backed, who after he had rebelled against King Henry the First, weary of his loose irregular life, became a Chanon Regular; the second surnamed *Blanch-matnes* of his lily-white hands, who sided with the young King against King Henry the Second, and dyed in the expedition of King *Richard* the First to the Holy Land; the third surnamed *Fitz-Parnell*, because his mother was *Parnels* daughter and one of the heires to *Hugh Grant-mais* the last, in whose right hee was Seneschall or Steward of England, and died issuelesse in the time of King John.

The words of Henry Huntingdon in his Epistle De Conscriptumundi.

A few yeeres after, *Simon Montfort* descended from a base sonne of *Robert* King of France, who had married the sister of *Robert Fitz-Parnell*, enjoyed this honour. But after that hee and his were expelled in the yeere 1200. as wholly devoted to the French, *Ranulph* Earle of *Chester* attained unto this Dignity, not in right of inheritance, but by his Princes favour. Howbeit, afterwards *Simon Montfort* sonne of the foresaid *Simon* obtained this honour, when *Almarik* his eldest brother surrendered up his right before King Henry the Third. This *Simon*, stood in so gracious favour with King Henry the Third, that hee called him home againe out of France when he was banished, heaped upon him great wealth, admitted him unto the Earldome of *Leicester*, granted to him the Stewardship of England, and to honour him the more gave him his owne sister in marriage. But hee, thus over-heaped with honourable benefits, when he had no meanes to requite them (such is the perverse wilfulness of men) beganne hatefully to maligne him, yea and did most wickedly molest the good King having so well deserved, making himselfe Ringleader to the rebellious

Petronilla.

Matthew Paris.

See Evesham in Worcester-shire.

rebellious Barons, and with them raising horrible tempests of civill warre, in which himselfe also at length was overthrowne and slaine.

As for his Honours and Possessions, King Henry the Third gave and granted them to *Edmund* his owne younger sonne Earle of *Lancaster*. So afterward this honour lay as it were obscured among the Titles of the house of *Lancaster*: and *Mauve* the daughter of Henry Duke of *Lancaster* being married to Henry Duke of *Bavaria*, Earle of *Hennault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. added unto his other Titles, this of Earle of *Leicester* also: For, in the Charter dated the five and thirty yeere of King *Edward* the Third, hee is in plaine termes stiled *William Earle of Henbault and of Leicester*: yea and, as we finde in the *Inquisition* made Anno 36. of the said King *Edward* the Third, hee by the name of *Dutchesse of Bavaria*, held the Castle, *Mansour*, and Honour of *Leicester*. After whose decesse without issue, that honour reverted to *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster* who had wedded *Blanch* the other sister of *Mauve*. From which time it became united to the House of *Lancaster*, untill in our remembrance it reflowerished in *L. Robert Dudley*, who was by *Queene Elizabeth* girt with the sword of the Earldome of *Leicester*, and extraordinarily favoured: whereupon the States Generall of the united Provinces in their great troubles chose him triumphantly for their absolute Governour, and soone after as contemptuously rejected him, reserving all Sovereignty to themselves. But after a short time he passed on of this transitory life in the yeere 1588. leaving the same onely of his greatness behinde him.

In the great
Register of the
Dutchie.

Within this Shire are 200. Parish Churches.

RUTLAND



RUTLAND-SHIRE.



UTLAND, in the old English Saxon tongue Roteland, is environed within Leicester-shire, unlesse it be on the South-side, where it lieth upon the river *Welland*, and on the East-side, where it butteth upon Lincoln-shire. A Country nothing inferiour to Leicester-shire either in fruitfull qualitie of soile, or pleasantnesse, but in quantitie onely, as being the least County of all England. For, lying in forme almost round like a circle, it is in compasse so farre about, as a light horseman will ride in one day. Whence it is, that the Inhabitants tell a tale of I wote not what king, who should give to one *Rut* so much land as he could ride about in one day: and that he, forsooth, rode about this shire within the time appointed, and so had it given him, and named it by his owne name *Rutland*. But let such fables bee packing: I would not have the trueth prejudiced with an extravagant tale.

And where as the earth in this shire is every where red, and so red that even the sheepes fleeces are thereby coloured red: whereas also the English-Saxons called *Rut* in their tongue *Roet* and *Rud*; may we not suppose that this Countrey was named *Rutland*, as one would say a *Redland*? For, as saith the Poet.

Convenient rebus nomina sapè suis.
The names, as often times we see,
With things themselves full well agree:

Now, that places in all Nations have had their names of rednesse, *Rutlan* Castle in Wales, built on ashore of red earth, *Redbay*, *Redbill*, *Redland*, *The Red Promontory*, *The Red-Sea* also betwixt *Egypt* and *Arabia*, *Erythra* in *Ionia*, and a number besides may proove most evidently: So that there is no cause why we should give credit to fables in this behalfe. As for this little County, it may seeme to have beene ordained a Shire or County but of late daies. For, in King Edward the Confessors time, it was counted a part of Northampton-shire, and our Historiographers who wrote three hundred yeeres agoe and upward, reckoned it not in the number of Shires.

Wash or *Gwash*, a little river, which runneth from the West Eastward through the middle of it, divideth it in twaine. In the hithermore or South part riseth *Uppingham* upon an high ascent, whence that name was imposed, not memorable for any thing else, but because it is counted a well frequented Mercat towne, and hath for to shew a proper Schoole, which together with another at *Okeham* *A. Ianson* a Minister of Gods word, in a good and laudable intent, for the training up of children in good literature lately erected, with the money he had gotten together by way of collection. Under this standeth *Drystoke*, which in no wise is to be passed over with silence, considering it hath been the habitation from old time of a right ancient race of the *Digbys*: which (I grieve to utter it, but all men know it) hath now caught a deepe steine by Sir *Everard Digby* drawne into that cursed crew, who most horribly conspired with one divelish flash of hellish Gunpowder to blow up both Prince, and Country. More Eastward upon the river *Welland*, I saw nothing remarkable, unlesse it be *Berobdon*, now *Barodon*, which *Thomas Beauchamp* Earle of *Warwicke* held, with *South Leffingham*, now *South Luffingham*, and other Hamelets, by service to be the Kings Chamberlaine in the Exchequer.

On the further part beyond the river, among the hills, there spreadeth below a very pleasant and fruitfull vale, named at this day *The vale of Catmose*, happily of

Cost mæs, which signifieth in the Brittish tongue *a field full of woods*. In the middlest whercof *Okeham* sheweth it selfe, which by the like reason may seeme to have taken the name from *Okes*: where, hard by the Church which is large and faire, remaine the crackt and decaying walls of an old Castle: which, *Walkelin de Ferras* built in the first times of the Norman Kings. And that it hath been the dwelling place of the *Ferrars*, besides the credit of writers, and generall report, the great horse shoes, which in times past that family gave in their armes, fastned upon the gae and in the hall, may sufficiently proove. Afterwards it belonged to the Lords of *Tatleshall*: But when King Richard the second had promoted Edward, the Duke of Yorkes sonne, to the Earledome of Rutland, he gave unto him this Castle also. But within our Fathers remembrance it befell unto *Thomas Cromwell*, and was reputed the seat of his Baronie: whom King Henry the Eighth advanced to the highest pitch of dignity: and streightwaies when by his plotting and attempting of many matters he had cast himselfe into the tempestuous stormes of envy and duplicature, bereft him on a sudden both of life and dignity.

Over against it Eastward, there standeth *Burley* most daintily seated, and overlooking the vale: A stately and sumptuous house now of the *Haringtons*, who by marrying the daughter and heire of *Colepeper*, became Lords of so faire an inheritance; that ever since they have flourished in these parts, like as before time the *Colepepers* had done, unto whom by *N. Green* the wealthy and goodly Livelod of the *Bruses* in part had descended. As for those *Bruses*, being men of the chiefe Nobility in England, they were engrafted into the Roiall stocke and family of Scotland: out of whom by Robert the eldest brother, the race Roiall of Scotland are sprung: like as by Bernard the younger brother, the *Cottons of Connington* in Huntingdon-shire (of whom I have written already) and these *Haringtons*. In which regard and gracious respect King James advanced Sir *John Harington* branched from that stem that the ancient Lords *Harington*, to the title of Baron *Harington of Exm*, a towne adjacent, where he hath also an other faire house.

Moreover, on the East side, by the river *Gussh*, stands *Brigcasterton*, whercof I will say more afterward, and *Riball*: where, when superstition had so bewitched our ancestours, that the multitude of their pety Saints, had well neere taken quire away the true God, one *Tibba* a pety Saint or Goddesse, reputed to bee the tutelur patronesse of Hauking, was of Foulers and Faulkoners worshipped as a second *Diana*: *Essendon* also is neere adjoyning; the Lord whercof Sir *Robert Cecil*, a good sonne of a right good father (the strength and stay of our Common-wealth in his time) was by King James created *Baron Cecil of Essendon* in the first yeere of his reigne.

This little County King Edward the Confessor, by his last Will and Testament bequeathed unto his wife *Eadith*, yet with this condition, that after her death should come to S. Peter of Westminster. For, these be the very words of the said Testament. *I will, that after the death of Queene Eadith my wife, ROTELAND with all the appertinances thereto, be given to my Monastery of the most blessed Saint Peter, and be yeelded up without delay for ever unto the Abbot and to the Monkes there serving God*: yet King William the Conquerour cancelled and made voide this Testament, who, serving a great part of it to himselfe, divided the rest betweene Countesse *Judith*, whose daughter was married to David King of Scots, *Robert Mallet*, *Oger*, *Gislebert*, *Gaunt*, Earle *Hugh*, *Aubrey* the Clerk, and others: And unto Westminster, first he left the Tithes, afterwards the Church onely of *Okeham* and parcels thereunto appertaining.

This County hath not had many Earles. The first Earle of Rutland, was Edward, the first begotten Sonne of *Edmund of Langley* Duke of Yorke, created by King Richard the Second upon a singular favour that he cast unto him during his Fathers life, and afterwards by the same King advanced to the honour of Duke of *Aumarle*. This young man, wickedly projected with others a practise to make away King Henry the Fourth, and streight waies with like levity discovered the same: But after his Fathers death, being Duke of Yorke lost his life fighting

Barons Cromwell.
See Earles of Essex.

Burly.

Baron Harington.

The Faulkoners Saint.
Baron Cecil of Essendon.

Earles of Rutland.

courageously amid the thickest troupes of his enemies in the battaile of Agincourt. Long time after, there succeeded in this Honour Edward the little young Sonne of Richard Duke of Yorke, and he together with his Father, during those deadly broiles of civill warre, was slaine in the battaile fought at Wakefield.

Many yeeres after, King Henry the Eighth, raised up Sir *Thomas Mannours*, to be Earle of Rutland, who in right of his Grand-mother *Aleonor* was possessed of a goodly and faire inheritance of the Barons *Roos*, lying in the countries round about, and elsewhere. In his roome succeeded his Sonne Henry, and after him likewise Edward his Sonne, unto whom if I should say nothing else, that commendation of the Poet was most aptly and truly applicable.

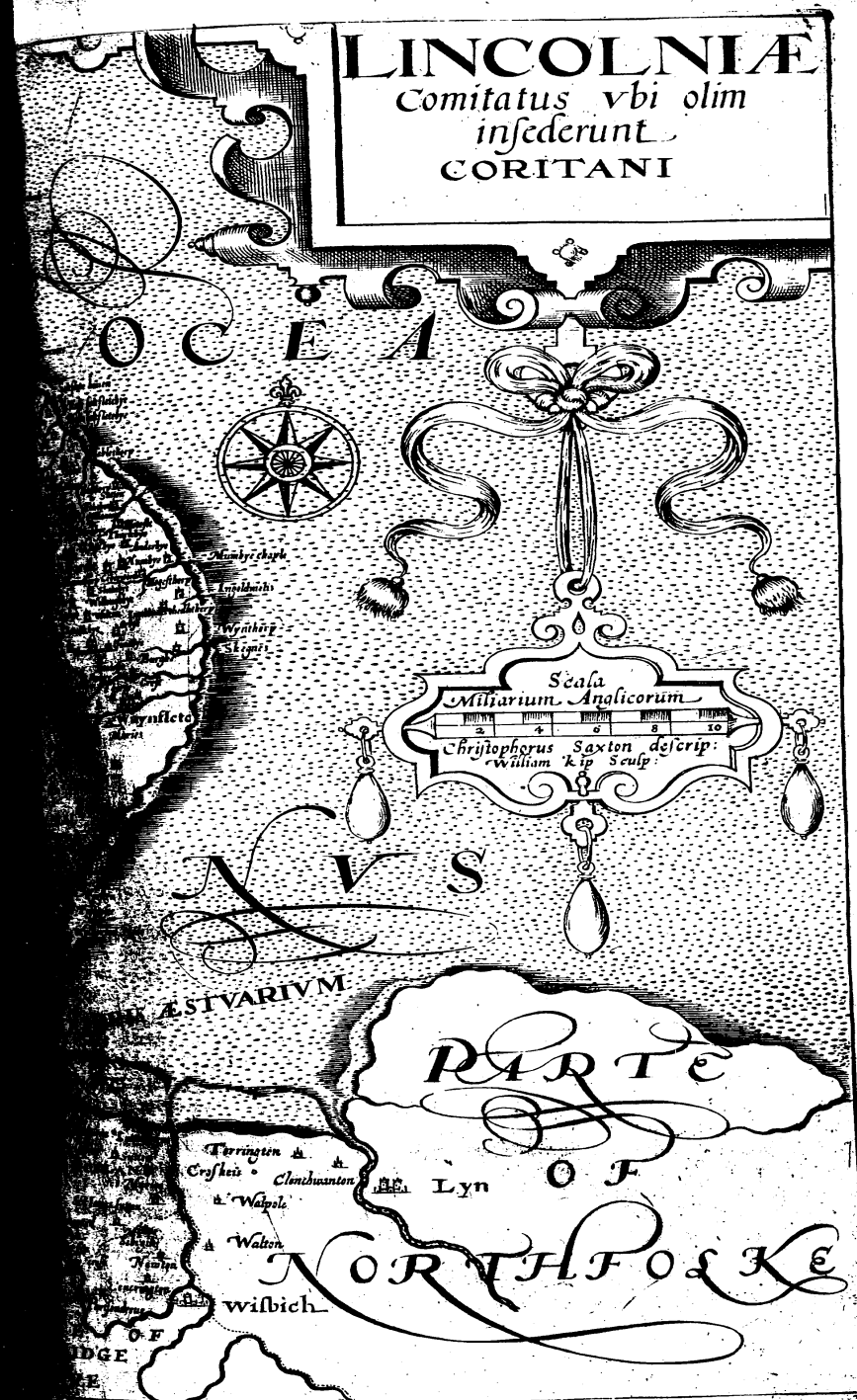
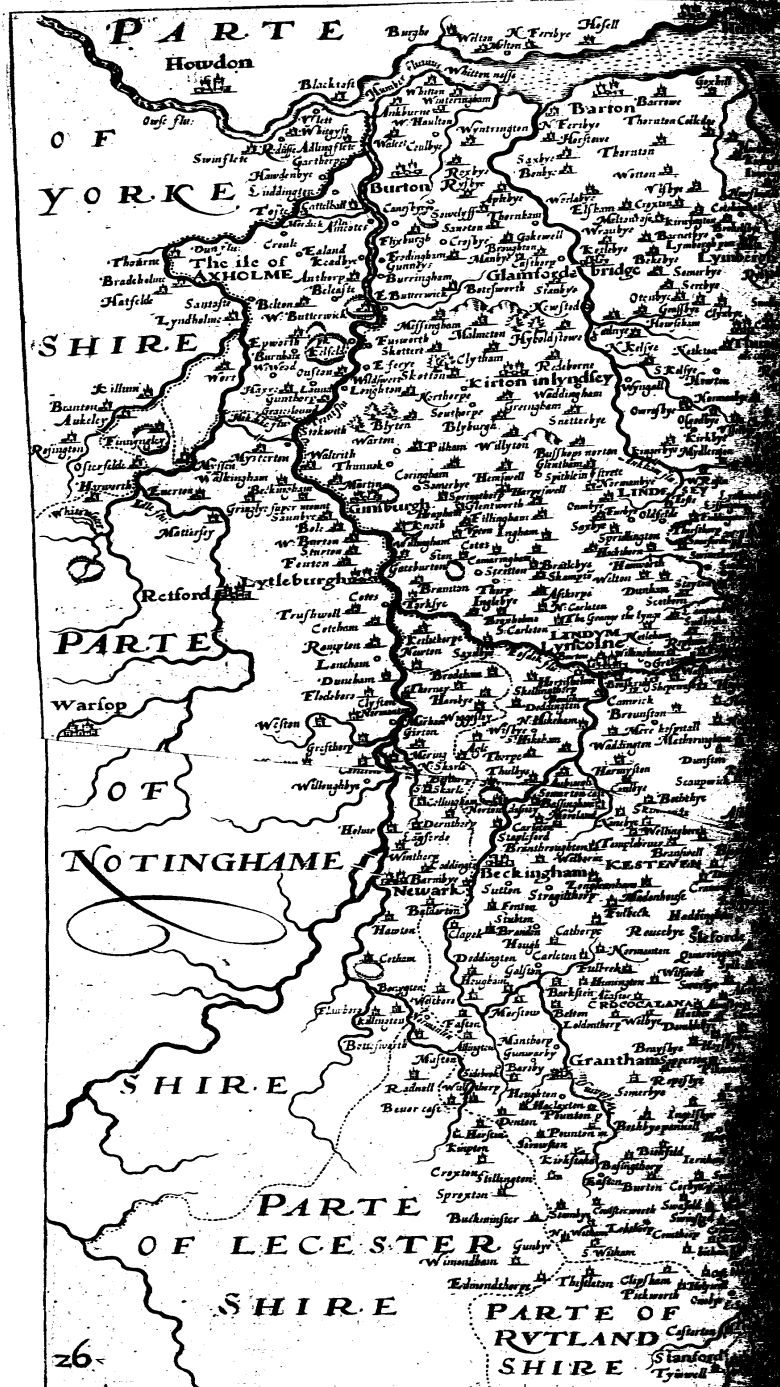
*Nomen virtutibus aequat,
Nec finit ingenium nobilitate premi.*

His name so great with vertues good, he matcheth equally;
Nor suffreth wit smuthring to lie under Nobility.

But he, by over hasty and untimely death, being received into Heaven, left this dignity unto John his Brother: who also departing this life within a while, hath for his successor, Roger his Sonne, answerable in all points to his ancient and right noble parentage.

This small Shire hath Parish Churches 48.

LINCOLN-



LINCOLNE-SHIRE.



Vpon *Rutland* on the East side, confineth the County of LINCOLNE, called by the English-Saxons *Lincolncyne*, and by the Normans *Nicol-shire* after their comming into the Land, with some transposition of letters, but usually LINCOLNE-SHIRE. A very large Country, as reaching almost threescore miles in length, and carrying in some places above thirty miles in bredth: passing kinde for yeeld of Corne, and feeding of Cattaille, well furnished and set out with a great number of Townes, and watered with many Rivers. Upon the Eastside, where it bendeth outward with a brow fetching a great compasse, the German Ocean beareth on the shore: Northward it reacheth to *Humber* an arme of the sea: on the West side it runneth upon *Nottingham-shire*: and on the South it is severed from *Norshampton-shire* by the River *Welland*. This whole Shire is divided into three parts, whereof one is called *Holland*: a second *Kesteven*, and the third *Lindsey*. *Holland*, which *Ingulph* termeth *Holland* lyeth to the sea, and like unto that *Holland* in *Germanie*, it is so thoroughly wet in most places with waters, that a mans foote is ready to sinke into it, and as one standeth upon it, the ground will shake and quake under his feet: and thence it may seeme to have taken the name: unlesse a man would with *Ingulph* say that *Holland* is the right name, and the same imposed upon it, of Hay which our Progenitours broadly called *Hoy*.

This part throughout beareth upon that ebbing and flowing arme of the Sea, which *Ptoleme* calleth *METARIS*, in stead of *Maltrish*, and wee at this day, *The Washes*. A very large arme this is and passing well knowne, at every tide and high sea covered all over with water, but when the sea ebbereth, and the tide is past, a man may passe over it as on dry land, but yet not without danger. Which, King *John* learned with his losse. For, whilest he journied this way, when he warred upon the rebellious Barons, the waters suddenly brake in upon him, so that at *Fosse-dyke*, and *Wellstream* he lost all his carriage and princely furniture, as *Matthew of Westminster* writeth.

Metaris estuarium.
The Washes.

This Country which the Ocean hath laied to the land, as the Inhabitants beleieve, by sands heaped and cast together, they it terme *Silt*, is assailed on the one side with the said Ocean sea, and in the other with a mighty confluence of waters from out of the higher countries, in such sort that all the Winter quarter the people of the country are faine to keepe watch and ward continually, and hardly with all the bankes and dammes that they make against the waters, are able to defend themselves from the great violence and outrage thereof. The ground bringeth forth but small store of corne, but plenty of grasse, and is replenished abundantly with fish and water-fowle. The Soile throughout is so soft, that they use their Horses unshod: neither shall you meet so much as with a little stone there, that hath not beene brought thither from other places: neverthelesse, there bee most beautifull Churches standing there built of foure square stone.

Certaine it is, that the sea aforetime had entred farther up into the Country, and that appeareth by those bankes formerly raised against the waterwaves then in-rushing, which are now two miles off from the shore, as also by the hills neere *Sutton*, which they call *Salt-Hills*. But, of fresh water there is exceeding great want in all places: neither have they any at all but raine water and that in pits, which if they be of any great depth, presently become brackish, if shallow, they dry up as soone. Neither are there Quickfands wanting, which have a wonderfull force to draw to them and to hold fast, as both Shepheards and their poore Sheepe also finde other whiles not without danger.

Salt-hills.

Quickfands.

This *Holland* or *Hailand* (whether you will) is divided into two parts. The *Lower* and the *Higher*: The *Lower* hath in it foule and slabby quavemires, yea and most troublesome

troublesome Fennes, which the very Inhabitants themselves for all their stils cannot stalle through. And considering that it lieth very low and flat, fenced it is of the one side against the Ocean, on the other from those waters which overwhelm the upper part of the Isle of *Ely*, with mighty piles and huge bankes opposed against the same. Of which, *Southbanke* is of greatest name, which least it should have a breach made through it with that infinite masse of water that falleth from the South part, when the Rivers swell, and all is overflowne by inundation, the people watch with great care and much feare, as against a dangerous enemy. And yet for the draining away of this water, the neighbour Inhabitants at the common charges of the country beganne to make a new chanell at *Clowes* in the yeere 1599. Neere unto this banke afore said, we saw *Crowland*, which also is called *Croyland*, a Towne of good note among the *Fenne-people*, the name whereof soundeth, as *Ingulph* the Abbat of this place interpreteth it, as much as *A raw and muddy Land*: A place, as they write, much haunted in times past with I wot not what sprites and fearefull apparitions, before that *Guthlake* a right holy and devout man led there an *Eremitic* life. In whose memoriall *Esibelald* King of the *Mercians* founded to the honour of God at his great charges, in the yeere of our Salvation 716. an Abbey very famous both for opinion of the religious life of the Monkes, and also for their wealth. Concerning which, take heere, if you please, these Verses of *Felix* a Monke of good antiquity, out of the life of *Guthlake*.

*Nunc exercet ibi se munificentia Regis,
Et magnum templum magno molimine condit.
At cum tam mollis, tam lubrica, tam male constans
Fundamenta palus non ferret saxea, palos
Præcipitis infigi quercino robore casos,
Leucarumque novem spacio rate fertur arena;
Inque solum mutatur humus, suffulsiq; sali
Cella basi, multo stat consummata labore.*

His bounty now the King doth there bestow,
An Abbey faire with much expense to reare.
But seeing that the waterish Fenne below,
Those ground-workes laid with stone unceath could beare,
(So quaving soft and moist the Bases were)
He caused piles made of good heart of oke,
Pitch't downe to be with maine commanders stroke:
Then nine leagues off, men sand in Barges brought,
Which once fast ramm'd by painfull workmans hand,
Of rotten earth good solid ground was wrought;
On which foraye such workes might firmly stand;
And thus by this devise of new plantation,
The Church stands firme and hath a sure foundation.

The Devils of
Crowland.

If I should exemplifie unto you out of that Monke, the Devils of *Crowland*, with their blabber lips, fire-spitting mouths, rough and skaly visages, beetle heads, terrible teeth, sharpe chins, hoarse throats, blacke skinned, crump-shoulders, fat and gorg-bellies, burning loines, crooked and hawm'd legges, long tailed buttocks, and ugly mishapes, which heretofore walked and wandered up and downe in these places, and very much troubled holy *Guthlake* and the Monkes, you would laugh full merrily: and I might bee thought a simple fily-one full worthily. Howbeit, in regard of the admirable situation of this place, so farre different from all others in England, and considering the Abbey was so famous, I am well content to dwell a while in the description of these particulars. Amid most deepe Fennes and standing waters in a muddy and miry ground this *Crowland* lyeth so shut up and divided round

about from all entrance, that there is no access to it, unlesse it bee on the North and East side, and that by narrow Cawties. Seated it is for all the world, if I may resemble great and small things together, like unto *Venice*. Three streets it hath and those severed one from another by water courses betweene, planted thicke with willowes, and raised upon piles or postes pitched and driven downe deepe into the standing waters, having over them a triangle Bridge of admirable workmanship, under which for to receive the fall of the waters meeting in one confluence, the Inhabitants report there was a pit funke of a mighty depth. Now, whereas beyond the Bridge in *solum mutatur humus* (as that Monke said) that is, *The world is changed, and is become firme and solid ground*, there stood in times past that famous Abbey, and the same verily taking up but a small plot of ground: about which, all (save where the Towne standeth) is so rotten and moorish, that a man may thrust a pole downe right thirty foote deepe: and round about it every way is nothing but a plot of reeds; and next unto the Church a place planted with Alders. Howbeit, the Towne is well enough peopled with Inhabitants, who have their Cattails a great way from the Towne, and when they are to milke them, they goe in little punts or boats that will carry but two a peece, (which they call *Skerries*): yet the most gainfull trade they have is by taking fish, and catching of water-foule, and that is so great, that in the moneth of August, they will spread a net and at once draw three thousand Mallards and wilde Duckes and such like together: and these pooles or watery plots of theirs, they use to terme their Corne fields: for, they see no Corne growing in five miles any way. In regard of this their taking of fish and fowle they paid yeerely in times past to the Abbat, as now they doe to the King, three hundred pounds of our money.

The private History of this Abbey I list not to relate (seeing it is commonly extant and to be scene) out of *Ingulph* now printed and published: yet my minde serves me well, briefly to record, that which *Peter of Blois* Vice-chancellor to King Henry the Second reported at large, as touching the new building of this Abbey in the yeere of our Redemption 1112. to the end, that by this one president wee may learne, by what meanes and helpes, so mighty, so huge, and so faire religious houses were raised and built up in those times. *Ioffrid* the Abbat obtained of the Archbishops and Bishops in England, *An Indulgence for the third part of penance enjoyed for sinnes committed, unto every one that helped forward so holy a worke*. With this Indulgence he sent out Monkes every way and all about to gather money: wherewith when hee was now sufficiently furnished, to the end that hee might have an happy beginning of this worke from some happy names of lucky presage, hee solemnly appointed the day of Saint *Perpetua*, and of Saint *Felicity*, on which he would lay the first foundation. At which day there came flocking in great numbers, the Nobles, the Prelates, and Commons of all the Country thereabout. After the celebration of Divine Service, and Anthems sung in parts, Abbat *Ioffrid* himselfe layed the first Corner stone Eastward; then the Noble men and great persons every one in their degree couched their stones, and upon the said stones some laid money, others their sealed Deeds of lands, Advowsons of Churches, of Tenths of their Sheepe, and of the Tithes of their Churches, of certaine measures of wheat, and of a certaine number of Workemen, as Masons and Quarriers, whom they would pay. The common sort again and townships for their parts, offered with chearefull devotion, some money, others one daies labour every moneth untill the worke were finished, some the building of whole Pillars, others of the bases to the said Pillars, and others again to make certaine parts of the wals, striving a vie who should doe most. This done, the Abbat after hee had in a solemne speech commended their devout bounty to so holy a worke, granted unto every one of them the fraternity of his Abbey, and the participation besides of all spirituall benefits in that Church: as praiers, blessings, &c. and so when he had entertained them with a very sumptuous feast, hee gave them his blessing and dismissed them chearefully every man to his owne home. But I will dwell no longer in this matter. But hereby you may see how by small contributions great

workes

workes arose. From *Crowland* there goeth a *Cawsey* planted on both sides with *Willows*, betwene the River *Welland* and the deepe *Marishes*, Northward: upon which, two miles from *Crowland*, I saw the fragment of a *Piramus* with this Inscription.

AIO HANC
PETRAO
GUTHLACUS
H ABET SI-
BI METAO.

I SAY, THAT
SAINT GUTH-
LAKE,
THIS STONE HIS
BOUND DOTH
MAKE.

Spalding.

Higher yet upon the same River is seated *Spalding*, enclosed round about with *Rivers* and *draines*, a fairer Towne I assure you than a man would looke to finde in this Tra& among such flabbes and water-plashes: where *Ivo Talbois*, whom *Inglulph* elsewhere calleth Earle of *Anjou*, gave an ancient Cell to the Monkes of *Anjou* in *France*. From hence as farre as to *Deeping*, which is ten miles off, *Egelricke* Abbot of *Crowland*, afterwards Bishop of *Durham*, made for the ease of travellers, as *Inglulphus*, through the midst of a vast Forest, and of most deepe Fennes, a *scandall* of wood and sand, after his owne name called *Elrich-road*; which notwithstanding this day is not to be seene.

Boston.

In higher *Hoiland* that bendeth more into the North, first we have in sight *Kilton*, so named of the Church, which is passing faire; and then, where the River *Welland* hemnd in strongly with banks on both sides runneth in a maine and full streame toward the sea, flourisheth *Boston*, more truly named *Betolphs-towne*. For, it is said that name from one *Betolph* a most holy and devout Saxon, who at *Kilton* had a Monastery. A famous Towne this is, standing on both sides of the River *Welland*, which hath over it a wooden bridge of a great height; and well frequented by the meanes of a commodious haven unto it: the Mercat place is faire and large, and the Church maketh a goodly shew, as well for the beautifull building as the greatness thereof: the towre-steeple of it, which riseth up to a mighty height, doth, as one would say, salute passengers and travellers a great way off, and giveth direction also to the sailers. A lamentable overthrow it sustained in the Raigne of *Edward the first*. For, when bad and Ruffian-like behaviour rusted at that time over all England, certaine military lusty fellows having proclaimed heere a *Justs* or running at *Tilt*, at a Faire time, when there was much resort of people thither, came appaerled in the habit of Monkes and Chanons, set fire on the Towne in most places thereof, brake in upon Merchants with sodaine violence, tooke away many things by force, burnt great deale more; in so much as our Historians write, that (as the ancient *Writ* record of *Corinth* when it was destroyed) molten gold and silver ran downe in a streame together. The Ring-leader *Robert Chamberlan*, after hee had confessed the act, and what a shamefull deed had been committed, was hanged: yet could he not be wrung by any meanes to disclose his complices in this foule fault. But happier times raised *Boston* againe out of the ashes, and a staple for wooll here setled, did very much enrich it, and drew thither merchants of the *Hanse Society*, who had here their *Guild*. At this day it is for building faire, and by good trade rich. For, the Inhabitants give themselves both to merchandise and also to grasing. Nere unto this was the *Barony of Crocun* or *de Credonia*, out of which family, *Alan de Crocun* founded the Priory of *Freslon*, and at length *Parnel* heire of the family being twice married transferred no small inheritance, first to the *Longchamps*, which came to the *Pedwardins*, and secondly to *John*.

Robbers in
Monkes habits.

Stilyard.

The Register of
Freslon,
Barons of
Burton Crocun.
De vallibus.

Yorks, from whom the Barons *Roos* are descended. Beyond it scarce six miles, reacheth *Holland*: all which *Ivo Talbois* of *Anjou* received at the bountifull hands of king *William* the Conqueror, but *Herward* an English man, of good hope and full of dourty courage, being sonner to *Leofricke* Lord of *Brane* or *Burne* not brooking his insolvency, when he saw his owne and his Country mens safety now endangered; after he had received the cincture with a military Belt by *Brann* Abbat of *Peterborough*, whose stomacke rose also against the *Normans*, raised warre against him, oftentimes put him to flight, and at length carried him away captive, and suffered him not to bee ransomed but with such conditions that he might be received into the Kings favour, wherein he dyed his liege man. For so deserved his valour, which is always commended even in a very enemy. His Daughter being wedded to *Hugh Enemeve* Lord of *Deeping* enjoyed his lands, which afterwards, as I understand, was devolved upon the Family of *Wake*, which being mightily enriched with the Possessions of the *Esneville*s, was of right great honour in these parts, untill the Raigne of *Edward the Second*: for then, by an heire Generall, their inheritance came by right of marriage unto *Edmund* of *Woodstocke* youngest sonne to King *Edward* the First, and Earle of *Kent*. But of a younger sonne, the ancient Family of the *Wakes* of *Blisworth* in *Northampton-shire* yet remaining is descended.

Herwardus
Anglus.Ingulph of
Crowland.Barons de
Wake.

The second part of this Country commonly called *Kesteven*, and by *Ethelward* an ancient Authour, *Ceostesnewood*, adjoining to *Hoiland* on the West side; is for aire farre more wholesome, and for Soile no lesse fruitfull. Greater this is and larger than the other, yea and garnished every where with more faire Townes. At the entry thereinto upon the river *Welland* standeth *Stanford*, in the Saxon tongue *Stean-poppo*, built of rough stone, whence it hath the name. A Towne well peopled and of great resort, endowed also with sundry immunities, and walled about; it gave Gold or Tribute, as wee read in *Domesday Booke*, for twelve hundreds and an halfe, in the army, shipping, and *Danegeld*, and in it were sixe Wards. What time as King *Edward* the elder fortified the South bankes of Rivers against the Danes breaking by force into the Land out of the North parts, *Marianus* recordeth, that hee built a very strong Castle just over against this Towne also on the South banke (which now is called *Stanford Baron*) yet there appeareth not any one token thereof at this day: for, that Castle which in time of the civill Warre *Stephen* strengthened against *Henry* of *Anjou*, was within the Towne, as both the generall report holdeth, and the very plot also whereon it stood as yet remaining, sheweth. But soone after, the said *Henry*, being now King of England, gave the whole Towne of *Stanford*, which was in his Demaine, excepting the fees or Feifs of the Barons and Knights of the same Towne, unto *Richard de Humez* or *Homets*, who was Constable to the King, his Sovereigne Lord, for his homage and service. And the same afterwards, held *William* Earle of *Warren* by the will and pleasure of King *John*.

Kesteven.

Stanford.

See Burghley
in the County
of Northamp-
ton.

Under the Raigne of *Edward* the Third, an University, and publique profession of good learning beganne heere, which the Inhabitants count no small credit unto them. For, when there was such hore debate and contention betweene the Northern and Southren Students at *Oxford*, a great number of Scholers withdrew themselves thither: but after a small while they returned upon the Kings Proclamation, to *Oxford*, and as they sodainly beganne, so they ended as soone this new University: And thenceforward provided it was by oth, That no Student in *Oxford* should publiquely professe or reade at *Stanford* to the prejudice of *Oxford*. Neverthelesse it flourished with fresh trading and merchandise, untill the civill warre, betwene the two houses of *Lancaster* and *York*, grew so hore, that the Northren Souldiers breaking into the Towne destroyed all with fire and sword. Neither could it ever since that time fully recover the ancient Dignity. And yet now it is in good estate: and the civill government thereof consisteth of an Alderman and foure and twenty Burgeses his brethren. Beautified it is with seven Parish Churches or thereabout, and sheweth an old Hospitall and that a very faire house founded by *William* Browne a Burgesse there, besides another new one on this side the Bridge lately built by that *Nestor* of

An Academy or
University be-
gun at Stan-
ford.

Y y

Britaine,

Britaine, Sir William Cecil Baron Burghley, what time as hee raised that stately and sumptuous house at Burghley, whereof I have spoken already in *Norhampton-shire*, who lieth entered here in a goodly and gorgeous Tombe within the Parish Church of Saint George, a man (to say nothing else of him) who by course of nature, and for his owne glory lived long enough, but in regard of his Country died oversoone.

Although some tokens remaining of antiquity, and the *High-street*, made by the Romans, which so soone as you are without the Towne leadeth you the direct way into the North, may sufficiently shew, that sometimes there was a Ferry or Waterfare heere. Yet that this Towne should be that GAUSENNÆ, which *Antonine* the Emperour placeth not farre from hence, the said tokens of Antiquity doe not afford sufficient proofe. But seeing that a mile from hence there is a little Village called *Bridge-casterion* (which very name carryeth with it the marke of Antiquity) where the River *Gwash* or *Wash* crosseth the said *High-street*, the affinity of this name *Gwash* with *Gausenna*, and the distance also making not against it, hath made mee to thinke that *Gausenna* was it which now is called *Bridge-casterion*, untill time bring truth to light. If I should thinke, that *Stanford* grew out of the ruines of this Towne, and that this part of the Shire was named *Kesteven* of GAUSENNÆ, like as another part, *Lindsey*, of the City *Lindum*, let this I pray you, bee but mine opinion, and judge yee thereof accordingly. It is supposed that this *Gausenna* was overthrowne, when (as *Henry Archdeacon of Huntingdon* writeth) the Picts and Scots had spoiled all the Country, as farre as to *Stanford*: where *Hengiſt* and his English-Saxons with their unwearied force and singular prowesse hindered the passage of those furious Nations, so that after many of them were slaine, and more taken prisoners, the rest betooke themselves to flight. But let us proceed to the rest.

On the East side of *Kesteven* which bendeth toward *Holland*, as wee goe Northward, these places stand in order: First, *Deping*, that is to say, (as *Isidore* interpreteth it), *Deepe Meadow*: Where, *Richard de Rulos*, Chamberlaine to *William Conquerour*, excluding the River Welland with raising up an high bank (for it is often overflowed) and building upon the said Bank many Tenements, made great Village. This *Deping*, or *Deepe Meadow*, was very fitly so called, for, the plainelying under it, and which taketh up in compass many miles, is of all this fenney Country the deepest, and the very receptacle of most waters. And that which a man would mervaile at, it lyeth farre under the Chanell of the River *Glou*, which being held in with forced bankes, passeth by from out of the West. Then have you *Burne*, well knowne by occasion that King *Edmund* was crowned and the *Wakes* had a Castle there, who obtained unto this Towne, from King *Edward* the First, the liberty of a Mercate.

More Eastward is *Irtham*, a seat of the Barony in times past of Sir *Andrew Luttrell*. Beyond it is *Sempringham*, famous in these daies by reason of that passing faire house, which *Edward Lord Clinton*, afterwards Earle of *Lincolne* built; but renowned in old time for the religious Order of the *Gilbertines*, instituted by *Gilbert* Lord of the place for he, a wonderfull man, & in custodia mulierum gratia singularis, that is, of singular grace in taking charge of women, in the yeere after Christs Nativity 1148, contrary to *Jovinians* Constitutions, which forbade Double Monasteries, that is to say, of men and women together; howbeit, well backed with the authority of *Engenius* the third, Bishop of *Rome*, ordained a Sect consisting of men and women; which so grew and encreased, that himselfe laied the foundations of thirteene religious houses of this Order, and whiles hee lived had in them 700. *Gilbertine Brethren*, and eleven hundred Sisters; but no honeste than they should be, if wee may beleeve *Chaucer*, a famous Poet in those daies, who wrote thus of them:

*Harum sunt quadam steriles, quadam parientes,
Virginibusque tamen nomine cuncta regunt.
Qua pastoralis baculi dotatur honore,
Illa quidem melius, fertilisique parit.*

* Commonly
called High-
Dike.

Gausennæ.

Bridge-Casterion.

Deping.

Deping fen.

Burne.

Luttrell.
Sempringham.

Gilbertine
Brethren and
Sisters.

*Vix etiam quavis sterilis reperitur in illis,
Donec eis atas talia posse negat.*

Some barren are of these, some fruitfull be;
Yet they by name of Virgins cover all:
More fertile sure and better beareth she,
Who blest is once with crosier pastorall:
Now, scarce of them is found one barren Doe,
Till age debarre, whether they will or no.

Then see you *Folkingham*, which also is now a Lordship of the *Clintons*, the Barony in times past of the *Gaunts*, who were descended from *Gilbert de Gaunt*, nephew to *Richard* Earle of *Flanders*, unto whom by the liberality of King *William* the Conquerour there fell great revenewes. For, thus we read in an old manuscript: *Memorandum, that with William Conquerour there came in one Gilbert de Gaunt, unto whom the said William gave the Manour of Folkingham, with all the Appertenances and the Honour thereunto belonging: and they expelled a certaine woman named Dunmoch. Of the said Gilbert came one Walter de Gaunt his sonne and heire, and of the said Walter came Gilbert de Gaunt his sonne and heire, also Robert de Gaunt a younger sonne. And from the said Gilbert the sonne and heire, came Alice his daughter and heire, who was espoused to Earle Simon, and shee gave many Tenements to religious men, and dyed without heire of her owne body. Then descended the inheritance to Robert de Gaunt of the said her uncle: and of the foresaid Robert came Gilbert his sonne and heire, and of the foresaid, came another Gilbert his sonne and heire, and of the foresaid, came another Gilbert his sonne and heire, who gave the Manour of Folkingham with the Appertenances to Edward the sonne of Henry King of England. This Gilbert as wee finde in the *Plees*, out of which this Pedegree is proved, claimed service against Wil. de Scremby. And at length it came by gift of the Prince to Sir *Henry Beaumont*: For, most certaine it is, that he held it in the Raigne of *Edward* the Second.*

Necesse unto this, is *Screkingham*, remarkable for the death of *Alfrick* the second, Earle of *Leicester*, whom *Hubba* a Dane slew. Of which place, it seemeth that *Inghelph* spake, writing thus: *In Kesteven were slaine three great Lords or petty Kings of the Danes, whom they buried in a Village which was called before, Laundon, but now for the Sepulture of three Kings, Tre-King-ham.* And more into the East, is *Hatber*, in this regard onely to be mentioned, that the *Busseis* or *Busseis* heere dwell, who deduce their Race from *Roger de Busby* in the Conquerours time. Then *Sleford*, a Castle of the Bishops of *Lincolne*, built by *Alexander* the Bishop: where Sir *John Hussy* the first and last Baron of that name created by King *Henry* the Eighth, built himselfe an house: who having unwittingly and unadvisedly in the yeere 1537. engaged himselfe with the common people in a tumultuous commotion, what time as the first dissention brake out in England about Religion, lost his head. Not many miles from hence standeth *Kime*, which gave name to a noble family called *De Kime*: but the possession of the place came at length to the *Umfranvills*: of whom three were called to the Parliament by the name of the Earles of *Anguse* in Scotland. But the first of them, the learned in our common lawes would not acknowledge to be Earle, (for that *Anguse* was not within the limits of the Realme of England) untill hee produced openly in Court the Kings Writ, by vertue whereof he had been summoned by the King to the Parliament, under the Title of *Earle of Anguse*. From the *Umfranvills* this came unto the family of *Talbois*, of whom *Gilbert* was created by King *Henry* the Eighth Baron *Talbois*, whose two sonnes dying without issue, the inheritance was by the females transferred to the *Dimocks*, *Inglebeates*, and others. More Westward wee saw *Temple Bruer*, that is, as I interpret it, *Temple in the Heath*. For it seemeth to have bene a Commandery of the *Templers*: considering that the decayed broken Walles of the Church there are seene in forme of the *New Temple* at *London*. Hard to it lyeth *Blanchenay*, the Barony in times past of the *D'incourts*, who flourished successively a long time one after another from the Normans comming in unto King *Henry* the Sixth

Lords of Fol-
kingham.

Pl. 27. H. 3.
Reg. 13. Line 2.

Inq. 4. 8. 2.
Screkingham.

Bussey,
Sleford.
Baron Bussey.

Kime.

Earles of
Anguse.

Temple Bruer.

Barons
D'incourts.

Inquis. 2. I. H. 6.

Patent. 1. 6.
Edw. 2.Belvoir or
Beaver Castle.

Tony.

Stones
Atroches.The vale of
Beaver.

Margidunum.

Marga. I.
Marle Dunum.River Wi-
tham.

Sixth his time: For then, their male line determined in one *William*, who had two sisters for his heires, the one married to Sir *William Lovell*, the other to Sir *Ralph Cromwell*. The more willingly have I made mention of this Family, to give satisfaction in some measure unto the longing desire of *Edmond* Baron *D'incourt*, who long since being careful and earnest about the preservation of the memory of his name, as having no male Issue, put up an humble Petition to King *Edward* the Second, *Whereas hee foresaw that his surname and Armes after his death would be quite forgotten, and yet heartily desired that after his decease they might be still remembered, that hee might be permitted to enfeoffe whomsoever is pleased him, both in his Manors and Armes also.* Which request hee obtained, and it was graunted under the Kings Letters Patents: yet for all that is this surname now quite gone (to my knowledge) and had it not bene continued by the light of learning, might have bene cleane forgotten for ever.

In the West part of *Kesteven* and the very confines of this Shire and *Leicestershire*, standeth *Belvoir*, or *Beauvoir* Castle, so called of the faire prospect (whose name soever it had in old time) mounted upon the top of a good steepe hill, built by *Robert De Todeneie* a Norman Nobleman, who also beganne the little Monastery adjoining, from whom by the *Albanies* out of little Britaine, and the *Barons Roos*, it came by inheritance to the *Manners* Earles of *Rutland*: of whom the first, that is to say, *Thomas*, as I have bene enformed, raised it up againe with newbuildings from the ground, when as it had for many yeeres lien buried as it were in his owne ruines. For, in despite of *Thomas* Lord *Roos*, who tooke part with King *Henry* the Sixth, it was much defaced by *William* Lord *Hastings*, unto whom (after that the said Baron *Roos* was attainted) King *Edward* the Fourth had graunted it with very faire Lands. But *Edmond* Baron *Roos* sonne of the said *Thomas*, by the gracious favour of King *Henry* the seventh recovered this ancient Inheritance againe. About this Castle are found the *Stones* called *Athrites*, which resemble little *Starrs* joyned one with another, wherein are to be seene at every corner five Beames or Rayes, and in every Ray in the middest is small hollowell. This Stone among the *Germanes* got his name of *Vidoria*, for that, as *Garg Apicula* writeth in his Sixth Booke of *Mineralls*, they are of opinion, that whosoever carryeth it about him shall winne his suite and get victory of his enemies. But whether this Stone of ours, as that in *Germany*, being put in vinegar, will stirre out of his place, and turne it selfe some-what round, I could never yet make tryall. Under this Castle lyeth a Vale and presenteth a most pleasant prospect thereunto, whereupon it is commonly called, the Vale of *Belvoir*, which is very large and passing pleasantly beautified with Corne fields, and no lesse rich in pastures, lying stretched out in three Shires, of *Leicester*, *Nottingham* and *Lincolne*.

If not in this very place, yet hard by it, in all probability, stood that *MARGIDUNUM*, which *Antonine* the Emperour placeth next after *VERNOMETUM*, as both the name and the distance also from *VERNOMETUM* and the Towne *PONT* or *Paunton*, betweene which *Antonine* placeth it, may most plainly shew. It should seeme that ancient name *Margidunum* was borrowed from *Marga* and the situation of it: For, *Marga* among the Britans is a kinde of earth named *Marle* wherewith they nourished and kept their grounds in heart: and *DUNUM*, which signifieth an Hill, agreeth onely to places higher mounted than others. And yet in this Etymology of the name I am in a doubt, seeing that *Marle* in this place is very geason or skant (happily because no man seeketh for it) unless the Britans by the name of *Marga* teamed *Plaster-stone*, which is digged uppe hard by, as I have learned: the use whereof in white pargetting and in making of Images, was of especial request among the Romans, as *Plinie* witnesseth in his *Naturall History*.

Witham a River plentifull in Pikes but carrying a small streame, watereth this part of the Shire and on the North-side encloseth it. It hath his beginning by a little

like towne of the same name, not farre from the ruines of *Bitham* Castle, which, as we find in an old Pedigree King *William* the first gave to Stephen Earle of *Albemarle* and *Holderneffe*, that he might from thence have wherewith to feed his sonne, as yet a little infant, with fine wheat bread (considering that in *Holderneffe* they did eate in those daies oten bread onely, although they use now such kind of bread little or nothing at all.) But in the reigne of King *Henry* the Third, when *William de Foribus* Earle of *Aumarle* rebelliously kept this Castle, and thence foraged and wasted the country about it, it was laid well neere even with the ground. Afterward, this was the capitall seat, as it were, of the Barony of the *Colvils*, who along time flourished in very great honour: but the right line had an end under King *Edward* the Third: and then the *Gernons* and those notable *Bassets of Sapeot*, in right of their wives entred upon the inheritance.

This river *Witham* presently beneath his head hath a towne seated hard by it named *Paunton*, which standeth much upon the antiquity thereof, where are digged up oftentimes pavements of the Romanes wrought with checker worke: and heere had the river a bridge over it in old time: For, that this is the towne *AD PONTEN*, which *Antonine* the Emperour placed seven miles distant from *MARGIDUNUM*, the name *Paunton*, together with the distance not onely from *Margidunum* but also from *Crocalana* doth easily convince: for in *Antonine*, that towne was called *CROCO-CALANA*, which at this day is named *Ancafter*, and is no more but a long streete, through which the *High-way* passeth: whereof the one part not long since belonged to the *Pesiers*, the other to the *Cromwells*. At the entry into it on the South part, we saw a rampier with a ditch, and certaine it is, that aforetime it had been a Castle: like as on the other side Westward, is to be seene a certaine summer standing campe of the Romanes. And it may seeme that it tooke a British name from the situation thereof. For it lieth under an hill: and *Cruc-maur* in British signifieth a *Great hill*, like as *Cruc-accident*, a mount in the West, as we read in *Giraldus Cambrensis*, and *Ninnius*: But what should be the meaning of that *Calana*, let others looke. The memory of antiquity in this towne is continued and maintained by the *Romane Coines*, by the vaults under ground oftentimes discovered, by the site upon the *High-street*, and by those fourteene miles that are betweene it and *Lincolne* through a greene plaine, which we call *Ancafter-Heath*, for, just so many doth *Antonine* reckon betweene *Crocalana* and *Lindum*. But now returne we to the river.

After *Paunton*, wee come to *Grantham*, a towne of good resort, adorned and set out with a Schoole built by *Richard Fox* Bishop of *Winchester*, and with a faire Church, having a spire-steeple of a mighty heighth, whereof there goe many fabulous tales.

Beneath it, neere unto *Herlaxton* a little village, a brasen vessell in our fathers time was turned up with a plough, wherein a golden Helmet of a most antique fashion was found, set with precious stones: which was given as a present to *Catherine* of *Spain*, wife and Dowager to King *Henry* the Eighth. From hence *Witham* passeth with a long course North-ward not farre from *Somerton* Castle: which *Antonine* Berr, Bishop of *Durham* built, and gave to King *Edward* the First: but a little after it was bestowed upon Sir *Henry de Beaumont*, who about that time came into England and began the family of the Lords *Beaumont*: which in the foregoing age in some sort failed, when as the sister and heire of the last Vicount was married to John Lord *Level de Tishmergh*. But of this house I have spoken before in *Leicestershire*. From thence, the river bending by little and little to the South-East, and passing through a Fenny Country, dischargeth it selfe into the *German Sea* beneath *Boston*, after it hath closed in *Kesteven* on the North.

On the other side of *Witham*, lieth the third part of this shire, named *Lindsey*, which of the chiefe Citie of the Shire Bede called *Lindisi*: and being greater than *Holland* and *Kesteven*, butteth with a huge bowing front upon the Ocean, beating upon the East and North sides thereof. On the West part it hath the river *Trent*, and is severed from *Kesteven*, on the South by that *Witham* aforesaid, and the *Fosse Dike* anciently

Bitham.

Matthew
Paris.

Colvill.

Paunton.

Ad Pontes.

Crocalana.

Ancafter.

Grantham.

A golden Hel-
met.

Somerton.

Durham
booke.Lords of Beau-
mont.

Lindsey.

Fosse dike.
Hoveden.

Torksey.

Domesday
booke.

Lindum:
Lincolne-
Collis an hill.

ly cast and scoured by King Henry the First for seven miles in length from *Witbam* into *Trent*, that it might serve the Citizens of *Lincolne* for carriage of necessaries by water.

Where this *Dike* entreth into *Trent*, standeth *Torksey*, in the Saxon language *Tupceig*, a little towne, and in these daies of small account, but in ancient times very famous. For, before the Normans comming in, as we finde in that booke written in King William the first set downe his survey of England, there were numbered in it two hundred Burgeses, who enjoyed many priviledges, on this condition, that they should transport the Kings Embassadors whensoever they came this way in their owne Barges along the *Trent*, and conduct them as farre as *YORKE*. But where this *Dike* joyneth to *Witbam*, there is the principall City of this Shire placed: which *Proleme* and *Antonine* the Emperour called *LINDUM*, the Britans *LIND-COIT*, of the woods (for which we finde it elsewhere written amisse *Lind-cot*) *Bede*, *LINDE-COLLINUM*, and *LINDE-COLLINA CIVITAS*, whether it were of the situation upon an hill, or because it hath been a *Colonia*, I am not able to avouch. The Saxons termed it *Lindoo-collyne*, and *Lind-cyllan-cear-cep*, the Normans most corruptly *Nicol*, we *Lincolne*, and the Latine writers *Lincolnia*: whereupon *Alexander Necham* in his booke intituled, *Divine wisdom*, writeth thus,

*Lindisæ column Lincolnia, sive columna,
Munificæ felix gente, repleta bonis.*

Lincolne the stay or pillar sure of *Lindsey* thou maist bee,
Blest for thy people bounteous, and goods that are in thee.

Others will have it to take that name of the river *Witbam*, which they say was called by a more ancient name *Lindis*, but they have no authority to warrant them. Neither am I of their judgement: For, *Necham* is against it, who foure hundred yeres agoe called the said river, *Witbam* in this verse.

*Trenta tibi pisces mittit Lincolnia, sed te,
Nec dedigneris, Witbama parvus adit.*

The *Trent* unto thee sendeth fish, O *Lincoln*, well we see;
Yet little *Witbam*, I come it not, a riveret comes to thee.

I for my part would rather derive it from the British word *Lbin*, which with the Britans signifieth a *Lake*. For, I have been enformed of the Citizens, that *Witbam* below the Citie, by *Swanpole* was broader than now it is, and yet is it at this day of a good breadth: and to say nothing of *Lindaw* in Germanic, by the *Lake Acrem*, and of *Linternum* in *Italic* standing by a *Lake*; I see that in our Britaine, *Talbin*, *Glan-lbin*, and *Lbin-lisbquo*, are townes by lakes sides. This Citie it selfe being large, well inhabited and frequented, standeth upon the side of an hill, where *Witbam* bendeth his course Eastward, and being divided with three small chanelles, watereth the lower part of the Citie. That the ancient *LINDUM* of the Britans stood on the very top of the hill, which had a very hard ascent up to it, and reached out beyond the gate called *Newport*, the expresse tokens of a rampier and deepe ditches which are yet very evident, doe plainly shew.

In this City, *Vortimer* that warlike Britan, who many a time discomfited the Saxons and put them to flight, ended his daies, and was heere contrary to his owne commandement, buried. For, he was in a full and assured hope perswaded, that if he were entered in the sea shore, his very ghost was able to protect the Britans from the Saxons, as writeth *Ninius*, the disciple of *Elvodugus*. But the English Saxons after they had raised this old *Lindum*, first possessed themselves of the South side of the hill, at the foot whereof they built, as it seemeth, the gate yet standing compiled of vast stones, and with the ruines of that more ancient Towne fortified it. Afterwards they went downe lower to the river side, built in a place that was called *Wickansford*, and walled

it about on that side which is not fenced by the River: At which time, as saith *Bede*, *Paulinus* preached the Word of God unto the Province of *Lindsey*, and first of all converted unto the Lord, the Governour or Provost of *Lincolne* City, whose name was *Blecca*, with his family. In which very City, hee built also a Church of goodly stone worke, the rooffe whereof being either fallen for want of repaire, or cast downe by the violent hand of enemies, the wales are scene standing to this day. After this the Danes wonne it by assault once or twice: First, those troupes of spoiling mates, out of whose hands King *Edmund Iron-side* wrested it by force: then *Canutus* from whom *Etheldred* regained it, when upon his returne out of *Normandy*, he valiantly forced *Canutus* to abandon the towne, and beyond all hope recovered England which before was lost. In the Raigne of *Edward* the Confessour, there were in it, as *Domesday booke* recordeth, a thousand and seventy Mansions, with lodgings to give entertainment; and twelve Lage men having Sac; and Soc. But in the Normans time, as saith William of *Malmesbury*, it was one of the best peopled Cities of England, and a place of traffique and merchandises, for all comers by sea and land: and as the same *Domesday booke* saith, there were at that time counted and taxed in this City 900. Burgeses: and many Mansions were laied waste, 166. for the Castle, and other 74. without the precinct of the Castle, not through the oppression of the Sheriffe and his Ministers, but by reason of mishap, poverty, and casualty by fire. The said King William the Conqueror for the strengthening of it and terrour of the Citizens, raised a passing large and strong Castle upon the brow of the hill: and almost at the very same time, *Remigius* Bishop of *Dorchester* for to give credit and ornament thereto translated hither his Episcopall seat from *Dorchester*, which was in the most remote corner of his Diocesse and a small Towne. And when by this time that Church which *Paulinus* had built was quite gone to decay, the same *Remigius* having purchased certaine houses with grounds lying unto them, in the very highest place of the City, neere unto the Castle (as *Henry* of *Huntingdon* saith) mounting up aloft with high and stately towers, built in a strong place a strong Church, in a faire plot a faire Church, and dedicated it to the Virgin of Virgins; notwithstanding the Archbishop of *Yorke* was enraged thereat, who chalenged to himselfe the propriety of the soile: and in it ordained 44. Prebendaries. Which Church afterwards being sorely defaced with fire, as he saith, *Alexander* that most bountifull Bishop of *Lincolne* repaired, with skilfull artificiall workmanship. Of whom *William* of *Malmesbury* reporteth, because for his little low stature hee was a dwarfse among men, his minde laboured to rise aloft and shew it selfe to the world, with outward workes. And as concerning his bounty a Poet of that time among other things wrote thus:

*Qui dare festinans gratis, ne danda rogentur,
Quod nondum dederat, nondum se credit habere.*

Who hastening frankly for to give, for feare that folke should crave:
He never thought that he had that which yet he never gave.

Besides these two Bishops already mentioned *Robert Bloet* who sat there before *Alexander*, R. de *Beaumeis*, *Hugh* a *Burgundian* and their Successours, by little and little brought this Church, which could not bee one Bishops worke, to the stately magnificence that now it carryeth. Certes, as it is built, it is all throughout not onely most sumptuous, but also passing beautifull, and that with rare and singular workmanship: but especially that fore-front at the West end, which in a fort ravisheth and allureth the eyes of all that come toward it. In this Church, although there bee divers Monuments of Bishops and others, yet these onely seeme memorable: That of *Copper* wherein the bowels of that right noble and vertuous Queene *Eleanor* wife to King *Edward* the First are bestowed, who died at *Hardby* in this Shire: as also these following, wherein lye interred Sir *Nicolas Cantlow*, one or two of the Family of *Burghersh*: Lady *Catherine Swinford* the third wife of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *LANCASTER* and mother of the house of *Somerst*, with whom lyeth buried *Joan* her daughter, second wife to *Ralph Nevill* the first Earle of *Westmerland*, who enriched her husband with many happy children.

The

Sidnacester.

The Bishops Diocesse of *Lincolne* not content with those streit limits, where with the Bishops of *Sidnacester*, who had Episcopall jurisdiction over this shire contented themselves in the Primitive Church of the English Nation, contained under it so many countries, as that the greatnesse thereof was burdenous unto it: And although King Henry the Second tooke out of it the Province of *Ely*, and King Henry the Eighth the Bishopricks of *Peterbourgh*, and of *Oxford*, yet still at this day it is counted the greatest Diocesse by farre of all England, both for jurisdiction and number of shires: and the Bishop hath in his Diocesse one thousand two hundred forty seven Parish Churches.

R. Hoveden.

Many and great Bishops since *Remigius* his time have governed this See, whom to reckon up is no part of my purpose. For, I will not insitt either upon *Robert Blac*, from whom King William *Rufus* wrung 50000. pounds, for securing his title in the very City of *Lincolne* it selfe, which was found defective: nor upon that prodigall and profuse *Alexander*, who in exceeding stately buildings was so excessively delighted: ne yet upon *Hugh* the *Burgundian* Canonized a Saint, whose corps King John, with his Nobles and friends about him, so performe (as mine author faith) a dutifull service to God and that holy Saint, late Bishop, carried upon their shoulders to his buriall. Howbeit, the memory of two Prelates I must needs renew afresh: the one is *Robert Grossthead*, a man so well scene both in literature and in the learned tongues, in that age, as it is incredible: and to use the words of one then living, *A terrible reprover of the Pope, an adviser of his Prince and Sovereigne, a lover of verity, a corrector of Prelates, a director of Priests, an instructor of the Clergy, a maintainer of Schollers, a Preacher to the people, a diligent searcher into the Scriptures, a smelter of the Romanists, &c.* The other is mine owne Præceptor, whom in all duty I must ever love and honour, that right reverend Father *Thomas Cooper*, who hath notably well deserved both of all the learned and also of the Church, in whose Schoole I both confesse and rejoice that I received education. The City it selfe also flourished a long time: being ordained by King Edward the Third for the *Staple*, as they teame it, that is, the Mart, of *Wool*, *Leather*, *Lead*, &c. Which although it hath not been over-laid with any grievous calamities, as being once onely set on fire, once also besieged in vaine by King Stephen, who was there vanquished and taken prisoner, forced also and won by King Henry the Third, when the rebellious Barons, who had procured *Lewis of France* to challenge the Crowne of England, defended it against him, without any great damage; yet incredible it is how much it hath been empaired by little and little, conquered as it were with very age and time: so that of fifty Churches which it had standing in our Great-grandfathers daies, there are now remaining scarce eightene. It is remooved, that I may note this also, from the *Aequator*, 53. degrees and 12. scruples: and from the West point, 22. degrees and 52. scruples.

Highdike.

As that *Street-way* called *Highdike* goeth on directly from *Stanford* to *Lincolne*, so from hence Northward it runneth with an high and streight causey, (though hence and there it be interrupted) forward for ten miles space to a little Village called the *Spittle in the Street*, and beyond: By the which as I passed, I observed moreover, about three miles from *Lincolne*, another High-port-way also, called *Ould-street*, to turne out of this High dike Westward, carrying a bancke likewise evident to be scene, which, as I take it, went to *AGELOCUM*, the next baing towne, or place of lodging, from *LINDUM*, in the time of the Romanes. But I will leave this, and proceed in the course that I have begun.

Barons of Trusbur.

Bardney. Oswalds banner.

Witham being now past *Lincolne*, runneth downe not far from *Wragby*, a member of the Barony called *Trusbur*, the title whereof is come by the Barons *Ran* unto the Mannours now Earles of *Rutland*. Then approacheth it to the ruines of a famous Abbay in times past called *Beapena*, commonly *Bardney*; where *Bede* writeth, that King *Oswald* was Entombed, with a Banner of gold and purple hanged over his Tomb. The writers in the foregoing age, thought it not sufficient to celebrate the memory of this most Christian worthy King *Oswald*, unlesse unto his glorious exploits they stitched also ridiculous miracles. But that his hand remained heere uncorrupted

uncorrupted many hundred yeeres after, our Ancestours have beleeved, and a Poet of good antiquity hath written in this wise,

*Nullo verme perit, nulla putredine tabet
Dextra viri, nullo constringi frigore, nullo
Dissolvi fervore potest; sed semper eodem
Immutata statu persistit, morsua vivit.*

The mans right hand by no worme perisht is,
No rottennesse doth cause it putrifie;
Nobinding cold can make it starke, ywis,
Nor melting heat, dissolve and mollifie;
But alwayes in one state persist it will
Such as it was: though dead, it liveth still.

This Abbay, as writeth *Peter of Blois*, being sometime burnt downe to the ground by the Danes furious outrage, and for many revolutions of yeeres altogether forlorne, that noble and devout Earle of *Lincolne* *Gilbert de Gaunt* reedified, and in most thankfull affectionate minde assigned unto it with many other possessions, the rites of all his Mannours wherever throughout England. Then, is *Witham* encreased with *Ban* a little River, which out of the midst of *Lindsey* runneth downe, first by *Horne Castle*, which belonged in times past to * *Adeliza* of *Condie*, and was laid even with the ground in the Raigne of Stephen, afterwards became a capitall seat of the Barony of *Gerard de Rodes*, and pertaineth now, as I have heard, to the Bishop of *Carlisle*: From thence, by *Scrivel*, by a Manour of the *Dimockes* who hold it hereditarily devolved upon them from the *Marmions*, by Sir *J. Ludlow*, and that by service, (to use now the Lawyers words) of Grand Serjeanty, viz. That whensoever any King of England is to be crowned, then the Lord of this Manour, for the time being, or some one in his name (if himselfe bee unable) shall come well armed for the warre, mounted upon a good horse of service, in presence of the Sovereigne Lord the King upon his Coronation day, and cause Proclamation to be made; that if any man will avouch that the said Sovereigne Lord the King, hath not right to his Kingdome and Crowne, he will be prest and ready to defend the right of the King of his Kingdome, of his Crowne and dignity, with his body, against him, and all others whatsoever. Somewhat lower, The *Ban* at *Tatteshall* a little Towne standing in a Marsh Country, but very commodiously, well knowne by reason of the Castle, built for the most part of bricke, and the Barons thereof, runneth into *Witham*. They write that *Eudo* and *Piñs* two Noblemen of *Normandy*, loving one another entirely as sworne brethren, by the liberall gift of King *William* the Conquerour received many Lordships and faire lands in this tract, which they parted so, as that *Tatteshall* fell to *Eudo*, which he held by Barony, from whose posterity it came by *Dryby* and the *Bernwicks* unto Sir *Ralph Cromwell*, whose sonne bearing the same name, and being under King *Henry* the Sixth Lord Treasurer of England, departed out of this world without issue: but unto *Piñs* fell *Eresby*, which is not farre off: From whose progeny, the inheritance descended by the *Becks* unto the *Willoughbbies*: unto whom there came also an encrease both of honour, and also of faire Livelods by their wives, not onely from the *Uffords* Earles of *Suffolke*; but also from the Lords of *Welles*, who brought with them very faire possessions and lands of the family de *Engain* Lords of ancient Nobility, and from the first comming in of the *Normans* of great power in these parts. Among these *Willoughbbies* one excelled all the rest in the Raigne of Henry the Fifth, named Sir *Robert Willoughby*, who for his martiall prowess was created Earle of *Yandresme* in France, and from these by the mothers side descended *Pergerine Berry*, Baron *Willoughby* of *Eresby*, a man for his generous minde and military valour renowned both in France, and the Low-countries. *Witham* now approaching neere unto the Sea, enter-taineth out of the North another small namelesse River; at the spring head whereof standeth *Bollingbroke Castle*, situate upon a low ground, and built of a soft and crumbling stone by *William de Romara* Earle of *Lincolne*, taken from *Alice Lucy* by King

In the Appen-
dix of Ingulph.Hokne Castle;
* Alice.Dimockes
Ing. 23. 6. 31The Kings
ChampionsFines Michai
Anno 1. H. 6.

Tatteshall;

Cromwell;

Eresby;
Lords Wil-
loughbey.Lords Welles;
Lords de
Engain.

King Edward the Second, because she married against his will; and ennobled in the
it was the Birth-place of King Henry the Fourth, who thereof was named *Bollingbroke*.
Bollingbroke. At which time it beganne to be reckoned among those *Honorable Ma-*
nours, which are termed *Honours*. And *Wisham*, after it hath received this River,
having passed through *Boston*, as I have said, dischargeth it selfe at length into the
German Sea.

From the mouth of *Wisham* the shore shutteth forth with a mighty swelling here
into the German Sea, as farre as to *Humber* a great Arme of the Sea, being every
where flashed and indented with many small Washes and places which the salt wa-
ter breaketh into: and hath but few Townes upon it, because there be few *Havens*
there: and the shelves or barres of sand lie every where anentst the land. Yet of these
few Townes which take up this Coast, some be memorable: and *Wainfleet* especially,
if it were but for this cause onely, that it bred *William Wainfleet* Bishop of *Winchester*,
a worthy Prelat, founder of *Maudslowe College in Oxford*, a man that singularly well
deserved of learning. Then *Alford*, which for the Mercate is beholden to *Lincoln*
Welles, who obtained for it this privilege from King Henry the Sixth. This Family
of *Welles*, was very ancient and honourable: and the last of that name had to wife a
daughter of King Edward the Fourth, and being by King Henry the Seventh crea-
ted Vicount *Welles*, died having no issue. But the inheritance, by the Females came
to the *Willoughbys*, *Dimoches*, *De la Launds*, *Hoes*, and others. More inward are *Drby*
and *Ormesby* neighbour Townes, which gave surnames to two great families in their
times; from the *Drbys* descended the elder Lords *Cromwell*, now determined, and
from *Ormesbys* the house of *Skipwith*, still continuing. After this, ye have *Louth* a little
Mercate Towne well frequented, which had the name of *Lud* a small River, that runneth
under *Cokerington* the capital place in times past of the Barony of *Scotney*. And
then *Grimby*, which our *Sabins* or conceited persons dreaming what they list, and
following their owne fantasies, will have to be so called of one *Grime* a Merchant, who
for that hee had brought up a little foundling of the Danes royall blood named
Haveloke, when it had beene cast forth to perish, or to take his lucke or fortune, is
much talked of, together with *Haveloke* that lucky foster-child of his: who having
been first a skullen in the Kings kitchen, and afterwards promoted to the marriage
of the Kings daughter for his heroicall valour in feates of Armes, and I wot not
what, worthy exploits. A narration right well becomming and meetest for them that
take pleasure to passe out the long nights with telling of old wives tales. But the
honour and ornament of this place was the right reverend Doctour *Whitgift* late
Archbishop of *Canterbury*, a peerelesse Prelate for piety and learning in our daies.

Scarce six miles from hence, more within the country there sheweth it selfe an an-
cient Castle, which at this day is called *Castor*, in the old English Saxons Tongue
Þuangcæster, and *Thong-cæster*, in British *Caer Egarry*: in both languages it is apply-
named so of the thing, to wit, of an hide cut into peeces, like as *Byrsa*, that *Castell* or
Chadell of the *Carthaginians* so well knowne. For, our *Annales* record, that *Henric* the
Saxon, after he had vanquished the *Picts* and *Scots*, and received very large possessions
in other places, obtained also in this tract of *Forstigern*, so much ground as hee could
compass round about with an Oxe hide cut out into very small laners, that we call
Þhangs, wherein he founded and built this Castle. Whence it is that one, who hath
written in verse a Breviary of the British History, turned *Virgils* verses in this manner.

*Accepique solum, facti de nomine * Þbangum,
Taurino quantum poterat circundare terga.*

And ground he tooke, which *Thong* he call'd when he did first begin,
As much as he, a Bull hide cut could well enclose within.

From *Grimby*, the Shore draweth in with a great reach to make way for to admit
Humber, by *Thornton* a religious house in times past instituted for the Worship of
God, by *William the Grosse* Earle of *Aumarle*: also by *Barton*, where there is every
notable

notable Ferry or passage over into *York-shire*. Hard by, *Ankam* a little muddy River,
and therefore full of *Eeles*, emptieth it selfe into *Humber*: neere unto the spring-head
whereof is *Market-Rasyn*, so called of a Mercate there well resorted unto. Somewhat
higher stands *Angorby*, now corruptly called *Osgodby* belonging in times past to the
family of *Semarc*, from whom it descended hereditarily to the *Airmans*: also *Kelsay*, a
Lordship in old time of the *Hanfards*, men of great name in this shire, from whom in
right of the wives it came to the family of the *Asceghs*, Knights. But after this, *An-*
kam hath a bridge over it, at *Glanford*, a small Mercate Towne, which the common
people, of the said bridge, so commonly call *Brigg*, that the true name is almost quite
forgotten. Next unto it, within a Parke I saw *Keisley* the seat of the worshipfull an-
cient family of the *Tirwhits*, Knights, descended from *Grovil Oxenbridge*, and *Eching-*
ham. But in times past it was the habitation, as a man may gather by the name, of one
Keek which was in the time of the Saxons and Danes an usuall name). For *Bye* in the
English-Saxon language signifieth *A dwelling place*, and *Byan*, *To dwell*: whence it
is that so many places both elsewhere in England, and heere especially in this Shire
doe end in *Bie*.

All this *Traff* over at certaine seasons, good God, what store of fowles (to say no-
thing of fishes) is heere to be found! I meane not those vulgar birds which in other
places are highly esteemed and beare a great price, as *Teales*, *Quailes*, *Woodcocks*,
Pheasants, *Partridges*, &c. but such as we have no Latine names for, the very delicate
dainties, indeed, of service, meates for the Demigods, and greatly sought for by
these that love the tooth so well, I meane, *Puists*, *Godwits*, *Knotts*, that is to say *Cann-*
tw or *Knotts birds*, (for, out of *Denmarke* they are thought to fly thither), *Dotterels*,
so named of their dotish foolishnesse, which being a kinde of birds as it were of an
apish kinde, ready to imitate what they see done, are caught by candle light accord-
ing to fowlers gesture: if he put forth an arme, they also stretch out a wing: sets
he forward his legge, or holdeth up his head, they likewise doe theirs: in brieft,
what ever the fowler doth, the same also doth this foolish bird untill it bee hidden
within the net. But these things I leave to their observation, who either take plea-
sure earnestly to hunt after Natures workes, or being borne to pamper the belly de-
light to lend their estates downe the throat.

More Westward, the River *Trent* also after he hath ended his long course, is recei-
ved into the *Humber*, after it hath with his sandy banke bounded this shire from *Fesse-*
dike hither: having runne downe first not farre from *Stow*, where *Godive* the wife of
Earle *Leofricke* built a Monastery; which for the low site that it hath under the hills,
Henry of Huntingdon saith to have beene founded Under the Promontory of *Lincolne*:
Then, neere unto *Knath*, now the habitation of Baron *Willoughby of Parham*, in times
past of the family of the Barons *Darcy*, who had very much encrease both in honor
and also of possessions by the daughter and heire of the *Meinills*. This Family of the
Darcys proceeded from another more ancient, to wit, from one whose name was
Norman de Adrey or *Darcy de Nocton*, who flourished in high reputation under King
Henry the Third, and whose successours endowed with lands the little Nunnery
at *Abvingham* in this County. But this dignity is as it were extinct, for that the last
Norman in the right line which is more ancient, left behinde him onely two sisters:
of which the one was married to *Roger Pedwardine*, the other to *Peter of Limburgh*.

Then runneth the *Trent* downe to *Gainesborough*, a towne ennobled by reason of the
Danes ships that lay there at rode, and also for the death of *Suene Tiugs-Kege*, a Danish
Tyrant, who after he had robbed and spoiled the country, as *Matthew of Westminster*
writeth, being heere stabbed to death by an unknowne man, suffered due punishment
at length for his wickednesse and villany. Many a yeere after this, it became the
possession of Sir *William de Valence* Earle of *Pembroch*, who obtained for it of king *Ed-*
ward the first the liberty to keepe a Faire: From which Earle by the Scottish Earles
of *Arbol*, and the *Piercies*, descended the Barons of *Bourough* who heere dwelt: con-
cerning whom I have written already in *Surry*. In this part of the Shire stood long
since the City *Sidnacester*, which afforded a See to the Bishops of this *Traff*, who
were

Barton upon
Humber.

Kerleby.
Tirwhitt.

Bye what it is.

Delicate
fowles.

Knotts.
Dotterells.

Stow.

Knath.

Darcy de No-
cton and Knath.

Fines 29. E. 3.

Gainesborough.

Barons
Bourough.
Sidnacester.

Bollingbroke.

Wainfleet.

Alford.
Baron Welles.

*

Grimby.

Castor.
Thong-cæster.
Byrsa.

* In Virgil,
Byrsam.

Thornton
College.

were called the Bishops of *Lindisfar*: But this City is now so farre out of all knowledge, that together with the name the very ruines also seeme to have perished, for by all my curious enquiry, I could learne nothing of it.

Neither must I overpasse, that in this Quarter, at *Melwood* there flourished the family of *Saint Paul*, corruptly called *Sampoll*, Knights; which I alwaies thought have bene of that ancient *Castilion* race of the Earles of *Saint Paul* in *France*. By the Coat-Armour of *Luxemburgh*, which they beare, implieth that they are come out of *France* since that the said *Castilion* stocke of *Saint Paul*, was by marriage planted into that of *Luxemburgh*, which happened two hundred yeeres since thereabout.

Above this place the Rivers of *Trent*, *Idell* and *Dane* doe so disport themselves with the division of their streames, and Marishes caused by them and other Springs, that they enclose within them the River-Island of *Axelholme*, in the Saxon Tongue *Caxalholme*, which is a parcell of *Lincolne-shire*. It carryeth in length from South to North ten miles, and in breadth not past halfe so much. The flat and lower part of it toward the Rivers is marish ground, and bringeth forth an odoriferous kinde of flax which they tearme *Gall*. It yeeldeth also Pests in the Mores, and dead rootes of fir-wood which in burning give a ranke sweet favour. There also have bene found great and long firre-trees while they digged for Per, both within the Isle, and also without, at *Laughton* upon *Trent* banke, the old habitation of the family of *Dalison*, now contractly called *Dalison*. The middle parts of this Isle, where it riseth gently with some ascent is fruitfull and fertile, and yeeldeth flax in great abundance: also the *Alabastr* stone, and yet the same being not very solide but brittle, is more meet for pargetting and plaister-worke, than for other uses. The chiefe Towne called in old time *Axel*, is now named *Axey*, whence, by putting to the Saxon word *Holme*, which they used for a River-Island, the name no doubt was compounded. But scarce deservert it to bee called a Towne, it is so scatteringly inhabited: and yet it is able to shew the plot of ground where a Castle stood, that was raised in the Barons warre, and which belonged to the *Mowbrates*, who at that time possessed a great part of the Isle.

In the yeere 1173, as writeth an old Chronographer, *Roger de Hoveden* making his Allegiance to the Elder * King, repaired the Castle at *Kinard Ferry* in the Isle of *Axelholme*, which had bene of old time destroyed. Against whom a number of *Lincolne-shire* men making head, when they had passed over the water in barges, laid siege to the Castle, forced the Constable thereof and all the souldiers to yeeld, and overthrew the said Castle. Somewhat higher is *Botterwic*, the Lord whereof Sir *Edmund Sheffield*, King *Edward* the Sixth created the first Baron *Sheffield* of *Botterwic*: who for his country spent his life against the Rebels in *Norfolke*, having begotten of *Anne Vere* the Earle of *Oxford* daughter, a sonne named *John*, the second Baron, and father to *Edmund* now Lord *Sheffield*, a right honourable Knight of the Garter, President of the Councell established in the North. But more into the North I saw *Burton Stather* standing upon the other side of *Trent*, whereof I have hitherto read nothing memorable.

This Shire glorieth in the Earles which have borne Title thereof. After *Esge* who flourished in the yeere 710. and *Mercar* both Saxons, and who were Earles by office, onely *William de Romara* a Norman, was the first Earle after the Conquest, in whose roome being dead (for neither his sonne, whereas he died before his father, nor his grand-child enjoyed this title) King *Stephen* placed *Gilbert de Gaunt*. After whose decease *Simon de Saint Lyz*, the younger, the sonne of Earle *Simon*, (you reade the very words of *Robert Montemais*, who lived about that time) Wanting lands, by the gracious gift of King *Henry the Second* tooke his onely daughter to wife, with her husband's gift. After this *Lewis* of *France*, who was by the seditious Barons brought into England girt a second *Gilbert* out of the Family *de Gaunt*, with the sword of the Earldome of *Lincolne*: but when the said *Lewis* was soone after expelled the land, no man acknowledged him for Earle, and himselfe of his owne accord relinquished that title. Then *Raulph* the sixth Earle of *Chester* obtained this honour of King *Henry* the Third, who

a little

alive before his death gave unto *Hawise* or *Avis* his sister (the wife of *Robert De Quincy*) by Charter, the Earldome of *Lincolne*, so farre forth as appertained unto him, that she might bee Countesse thereof: For in this tenour runne the very words of the Charter: She likewise bestowed it upon *John de Lacy* Constable of *Chester*, and the heires whom hee should beget of the body of *Margaret* her daughter. This *John* had issue *Edmund*, who dying before his mother left this honour for *Henry* his sonne to enjoy, who was the last Earle of that line: For when his sonnes were taken away by untimely death, and he had but one little daughter onely remaining alive named *Alice*, hee affianced her, being but nine yeeres old, to *Thomas* the sonne of *Edmund* Earle of *Lancaster*, with this condition, That if he should fortune to dye without heires of her body, or if they happened to dye without heires of their bodies, his Castles, Lordships, &c. should in Remainder come to the heires of *Edmund* Earle of *Lancaster* for ever. But the said *Alice* had no childe at all by her husband *Thomas*: But when *Thomas* her husband was beheaded, shee that by her light behaviour had not a little steined her good name, tooke Sir *Enbul le Strange*, with whom she had lived before time too familiarly for her husband, without the assent and privy of her Sovereigne, who being here- a highly offended, seized her possessions into his owne hands. Yet both Sir *Enbul* *Strange*, and Sir *Hugh Frene* her third husband, are in some Records named Earles of *Lincolne*. After *Alice*, now very aged, was departed this life without issue, *Henry* Earle of *Lancaster* Nephew to *Edmund* aforesaid by his second sonne, entred upon her large and faire patrimony by vertue of that conveyance which I spake of before) and from that time it accrued to the House of *Lancaster*. Howbeit the Kings of England at their pleasure have bestowed the name and honour of Earles of *Lincolne*, as, King *Edward* the Fourth gave it to Sir *John De la Pole*: and King *Henry* the Eighth, to *Henry Brandon*, both the Sonnes of the Dukes of *Suffolke*, who both ended this life without Issue: the first slaine in the battaile at *Stoke*, and the other taken away by the swearing sicknesse. Afterward *Queene Elizabeth* promoted *Edward* Baron *Clinton* Lord high Admirall of England, to the said honour, which his sonne *Henry* enjoyeth at this day.

Lib. Monasterij de Stanlow.

a. Edw. 2.

Effect. 1. E. 3; N. 134.

See Dukes of Suffolke.

Anno 14. Elizabeth.

There are in this Shire Parishes much about 630.

Z 2

NOTTING.

Saint Paul.

Axelholme.

Gals, a shrub.

*

Alabastrites.

* Henry, the Second, in regard of his sonne whom he had made King with him.

Earles of Lincolne.

2. H. 2.

PART E OF YORK E SHIRE

PARTE

O F

DARBY

SHIRE



NOTINGAMLE Comitatus olim pars CORITANORVM



NOTTINGHAM-SHIRE.



Pon the West side of *Lincolne-shire* confineth the County of NOTTINGHAM, in the English Saxon tongue *Nottingaham-rcype*, and in English *Nottingham-shire*, being farre lesse in quantiry; limited Northward with *York-shire*, Westward with *Darby-shire*, and in some parts with *York-shire*, and on the South side with *Leicester-shire*. The South and East part thereof are made more fruitfull by the noble and famous River *Trent*, with other Riverets resorting unto it. The West part is taken up with the Forest of *Shirewood*, which stretcheth out a great way. This part because it is sandy, the Inhabitants tearme *The Sand*, the other, for that it is clayish, they call the *Clay*: and so have divided their Country into these two parts.

The River *Trent*, in the old English Saxon tongue *Treontra* (which some Antiquaries of small note and account have called *Triginta* in *Latine*, for the affinity of the French word *Trent* that signifieth that number *Triginta*, that is, *thirty*) having gone a long journey, so soone as hee is entred into this Shire, and hath (*recepto Suro flumine ex agro Leicestrensi*, taking in the River *Soure* from the field of *Leicester*) runne by *Seamford*, where I have learned there be many tokens remaining of old antiquity, and peeces of Roman money oftentimes found; and then by *Clifton*, which hath given both habitation and surname also to the ancient family of the *Cliftons*, much enriched by one of the heires of *Cressy*, taketh in from the West the little River *Lin*, which rising neere unto *Newsted*, that is, *New place*, where sometime King Henry the Second founded a small Abbay, and which is now the dwelling house of the ancient Family of the *Burons*, descended from *Ralph de Buron*, who at the first comming in of the Normans flourished in great state, both in this Countrey and also in *Lancashire*; runneth hard by *Wallaton* rich in veines of cole, where Sir *Francis Willoughby* a Knight nobly descended from the *Greis* Marquesse *Dorset*, in our daies built out of the ground with great charges (upon a vaine ostentation of his wealth) a stately house with artificiall workmanship, standing bleakely, but offering a very goodly prospect to the beholders farre and neere.

Then runneth it by *Linton* or *Lenton*, much frequented and famous in old time for the Abbay there of the *Holy Trinity*, founded by *William Peverell*, the base sonne of King *William* the Conquerour; but now all the fame is onely for a Faire there kept. Where, on the other banke at the very meeting well neere of *Lin* and *Trent*, the principall Towne that hath given name unto the Shire is seated upon the side of an hill now called *Nottingham*, (by softening the old name a little) for *Nottingaham*; for, so the English Saxons named it of certaine caves and passages under the ground, which in old time they hewed and wrought hollow under those huge and steepe clifffes, which are on the South side hanging over the little River *Lin*, for places of receir and refuge, yea and for habitations. And thereupon *Asterius* interpreteth this Saxon word *Nottingaham* in *Latine* *Speluncarum domum*, that is, *A house of Denes* or *Caves*, and in the British *Tui ogo hauc*, which signifieth the very selfe same. The Towne for the naturall site thereof is right pleasant: as where, on the one hand lye faire and large Medowes by the Rivers side, on the other, rise hills with a gentle and easie ascent: and is plentifully provided of all things beside, necessary for mans life. On the one side *Shirewood* yeeldeth store of wood to maintaine fire, although many use for that purpose stinking pit cole digged forth of the ground: on the other, *Trent* serveth it abundantly with fish. And hence hath beene taken up this od barbarous Verse,

*Limpida sylva facum, * Triginta dat mihi piscem.*
Shire-wood yeelds me fuell for fire,
As Trent yeelds fish, what I require.

Z z 2

The river
Trent.

Lin a riveret.

Byron.
Wallaton.

Lenton.

Nottingham.

*Trent.

At

At a word, for largeness, for building, for three faire Churches, a passing spacious and beautifull Mercat place, and a most strong Castle, it maketh a goodly shew. The said Castle is mounted upon an huge and steepe worke on the West side of the City, in which place it is thought that Castle stood in times past upon whose strength the Danes presuming held out against the Siege of *Ethered* and *Alfrid* so long, until they frustrate of their purpose brake up their Siege, trussed up baggage and baggage and dislodged. For when the Danes had taken this Castle, *Burthred* King of the *Mercians* (as mine Authour *Asterius* writeth) and the *Mercians*, addresse their messengers to *Ethered* King of the West Saxons, and to *Alfred* his brother, humbly beseeching them to come and aide them, that so they might give battaile to the fore-named Army, which request they also easily obtained. For, those two brethren slackning no whit their promise, having levied from all parts a mighty Army, assembled their forces, entered Mercia, and fighting with one accord jointly to encounter the enemy come as farre as to *Snottenga-ham*, and when the *Painims* keeping themselves within the defense of the Castle refused to give battaile, and the *Christians* with all their force could not batter the Wall, after peace concluded betwene the *Paganes* and *Mercians*, those two brethren with their bands returned home. But after this, King *Edward* the elder, built the Village *Bridgeford* just over against it, and compassed the Towne about with a wall, which now is fallen downe, and yet the remains thereof I have seene on the South side. And within very few yeeres after, in King *Edward* the Confessours time, as wee read in *Domesday booke*, there were numbered in it one hundred and seventy three Burgeses, and from them *Minsters*, there were paid forty shillings to the King. Also the water of *Trent*, the *Folke* ditte, and the way toward *Yorke* were warded and kept, that if any man hindered the passing of vessels, he was to make amends with the payment of foure pounds.

As for the Castle which now wee see, it may bee well of great name in regard both of the Founder, and the worthinesse also of the worke: for *William of Normandy* built it to bridle the English; and so strong it was, as *William of Normandy* writeth, as well by naturall situation as hand labour, that it is held impregnable (if it have sufficient men to defend it) unless it bee by famine. Afterward also King *Edward* the Fourth bestowed great cost in the repairing of it, and beautified it with faire buildings: whereto King *Richard* also the Third set to his helping hand. Neither for all the changes and alterations of times, hath it undergone the common condition or destiny incident to such great Castles, being never forced and wonne by assault. Once was it in vaine besieged by *Henry of Anjou*, at which time the fouldier lying in Garison set fire upon the buildings joyning unto it. Once also it was suddenly surprisid by Earle *Robert de Ferraris* in the Barons warre, who spoiled the inhabitants of all their goods. The Castellanes report many stories of *David* King of the Scots prisoner in it, and of *Roger Mortimer* Earle of *March*, taken heere in hollow secret passage under the ground, who because he prized his faith and loyalty to his country lighter than Scottish gold, and with a vaste minde designed other mischiefs, was afterwards hanged. Certes, in the first base Court of the Castle we went downe by many steps or staires with candle light into a Vault under the ground and certaine close roomes wrought out of the very rocke, in the walles whereof are engraven the stories of Christs Passion and other things, by the hand (as they say) of *David* the Second, king of Scots, who was there imprisoned. But in the upper part of the Castle which riseth up aloft upon a rocke, we came also by many staires into another Cave likewise under the ground, which they call *Mortimers Hole*, for that in it the foresaid *Roger Mortimer* lay hidden, when as being guilty to himselfe of wickednesse he stood in feare of his life.

As for the position of *Nottingham*, it seeth the North Pole elevated fifty three Degrees, and hath the Meridian two and twenty Degrees and foureteen minutes distant from the utmost point of the West, whence Geographers beginne to measure the Longitude.

From hence the *Trent* runneth with a milde streame and passeth forward by *Holme*, called of the Lords thereof *Holme* * *Pierpoint*, whose Family is both ancient and noble,

1175.
Rog. Hoveden.
Pag. 307.

Mortimers
hole.

Pierpoint.
* De. extra
ponie.

noble, and out of which *Roberts Pierpoint* was summoned by King *Edward* the Third unto the high Court of Parliament, among the Barons of the Kingdome; unto *Shefford* where *Ralph Hanfelin* founded a Priory, and the Lords *Bardolph* had a mansion, but now the seat of the worshipfull stocke of the *Stanhopes*, knights; whose share in this Tract hath growne great and their name renowned since they matched with an heire of *Mallorell*. From whence he runneth downe with a rolling streame to *Stoke*, a little Village, but well knowne for no small overthrow and slaughter that there happened: when Sir *John de la pole* Earle of *Lincolne*, who being by King *Richard* the Third declared heire apparent to the Crowne, seeing by the comming of King *Henry* the Seventh himselfe debarred of the hope of the Kingdome, heere in behalfe of a counterfeit Prince rebelliously opposed himselfe against a lawfull king, and so resolutely with his friends and followers lost his life. Not farre from hence is *Thurgarton* where Sir *Ralph D'Einconrte* founded a Priory, and somewhat higher *Smithwell* sheweth it selfe aloft, with a Collegiat Church of Prebendaries consecrated to the blessed *Virgin Mary*, a place not very faire in outward shew, I must needs say, but strong, ancient, and of great fame. Which, as they write, *Paulinus* the First Archbishop of *Torke* founded, after he had baptised the Inhabitants of this Shire in the River *Trent*, and so regenerated them to Christ. Since which time, the Archbishops of *Torke* have had here a very faire and stately Palace and three Parkes stored with Deere adjoining thereto. That this is the City which *Bede* calleth *Tio-vul-Finga-cestre*, I doe the more stedfastly beleve, because, those things which he hath reported of *Paulinus* baptizing in the *Trent* neere unto *Tio-vul-Finga-cestre*, the private History of this Church constantly avoucheth to have beene done in this very place. From thence out of the East, *Snite* a little Brooke runneth into *Trent*, which being but small and shallow watereth *Langer*, a place of name in regard of the *Tibetons* or *Tiptofts* Lords thereof, who afterwards became Earles of *Worcester*: also *Wiverton*, which from *Heriz* a worshipfull man long since in these parts, came by the *Bress* and *Caliothes* unto the *Chaworthes*, who fetch their name out of the * *Cadwrci* in France, and derive their pedigree from the Lord of *Walcherwill*.

Now doth *Trent* divide it selfe, neere *Averham* or *Aram* an ancient habitation of the *Suttons* Gentlemen of respective worth, and runneth hard under a good great Towne called *Newark*, as one would say, *The new worke*, of the new Castle, which Castle so fresh and of so beautifull building, as *Henry* of *Huntingdon* termeth it, *Alexander* that bountifull minded Bishop of *Lincolne* built: which Prelate, that I may use the words of an ancient Historian, carrying a most brave and gallant minde, builded both this Castle and another also with most profuse and lavish expense. And because such manner of sumptuous buildings little became the gravity and dignity of a Bishop, he to take away the envie and hard conceit of the world for such building, and to expiate, as it were, the offence thus grew thereby, founded as many Monasteries and filled them with religious Brethren. Nevertheless, this vaine prodigality and lavish spending that was in a military Bishop, was pursued afterwards with condigne punishment. For, King *Stephen*, who laboured nothing more than to establish his tottering estate in his Kingdome by seizing into his hands all the strongest holds thereof, brought this Prelate, what with hard imprisoning, and, in a fort, with famishing him, to that passe, that will'd hee nill'd hee, at length hee yeelded up unto him both this Castle, and that other at *Shefford* in *Lincolne* shire. Neither is there any other memorable matter heere to be related, but that King *John* finished in this place the most wearisome course of his troublesome life; and King *Edward* the Sixth incorporated it of one Alderman, and twelve Assitants. From hence the River gathering himselfe againe into one Chanell, runneth directly Northward, beset on both sides with Villages; neither affoordeth it any matter worth remembrance before it come to *Littleborough*, a little Towne in deed and truly answering to the name, where, as there is at this day a Ferry much used, so there was in times past that Station, whereof *Antonine* the Emperour once or twice made mention, and which according to sundry Copies is called *AGELOCUM* or *SEGELOCUM*.

Barony of
Sheleford.

Battaile of
Stoke.

Smithwell.

Tio-vul-Finga-
cester.

Tiptofts.

Chaworths.
* Cahors in
Quericy.

1216.

Littlebor-
rough.

Agelocum or
Segelecum.

This Towne have I heretofore sought for in vaine, about the Country adjoining; but now I am verily perswaded and assured that I have found it out, both for the standeth upon the old Port *High-way*, and also because the field lying to it sheweth expresse tokens of Walles; and besides affoordeth unto Ploughmen every day many peeces of the Roman Emperours Coine: which because Swine many times rooting into the ground turne up with their snouts, the country people call *Swine-penies*. Who also according to their simple capacity are of opinion, that their forefathers in times past fenced and mounded that field with a stone Wall against the water of *Trent* that useth in Winter time to overflow and make great floods.

In the West part of this Shire, which they rearme *The Sand*, and where *Erne* a little Riveret hieth apace into *Trent*, *Strelley*, in old time *Strellegh* sheweth itself, a place that gave both surname and habitation to the Family of the *Strellis*, commonly called *Sturleyes*, Knights; one of the most ancient Houses in all this Country. More inward, the Forest *Shirewood* (which some expound by these Latine names *Limpida Sylva*, that is, *A Shire* or *Cleere wood*; others *Praelara Sylva*, in the same fence and signification) in ancient times over-shadowed all the Country over with greene leaved branches, and the boughs and armes of trees twisted one within another, so implicated the Woods together, that a man could scarcely goe alone in the beaten pathes: But now the trees grow not so thicke, yet hath it an infinite number of fallow Deere, yea and Stagges with their stately branching heads feeding within it. Some Townes also: among which *Mansfield* carryeth away the name, as maintaining a great Mercat passing well served, and as well frequented. The name of which Towne, they that delineate the Pedegree of the *Graves* of the great family of *Mansfield* in *Germany*, use as an argument to proove the same, and set downe that the first Earle of *Mansfield* was one of King *Arthurs* Knights of the Round Table, borne and bred at this *Mansfield*. Indeed our Kings used in old time to retire themselves herher for the love of hunting: and that you may reade the very word of an ancient *Inquisition*, VV. Fauconberge, *tenebat Manerium de Cokeney in hoc Comitatu in Sergientia, per Servitium ferrandi Palsfredum Regis quando Rex veniret ad Mansfield*, that is, VV. Fauconberge held the Manour of Cokeney in this County in Sergiency, by service to shooe the Kings Palfrey when the King came to Mansfield. And the hereditary Resters or Keepers of this Forest of *Shirewood* were men in their times of high estimation, viz. Sir *Gerarde de Normanville* in the time of the Conquest, the *Cones* and *Birkins*, by whose heire it came to the *Everingham*s. Of which Family Sir *Alan Everingham* was summoned to Parliaments in the Raignes of King *Edward* the Second, and King *Edward* the Third: At which time they were seated at *Lexinton*, anciently called *Lexinton*, where also flourished a great Family so surnamed, whose heires were married into the Houses of *Sutton* of *Averham* and *Markham*.

Out of this Wood there spring many Riverets that runne into the *Trent*: but the is thought to bee the chiefe: upon which neere unto *Idleton* in the yeere 616. the felicity and prosperous successe which for a long time had accompanied *Eilbert* the most puissant King of *Northumberland*, was overtaken and forsooke him quite. For, whereas before time he had alwaies fought his battailes most fortunately, heere (fortune turning her wheele) he was by *Redwald* King of the *East Angles* vanquished and slaine, who in his roome made *Edwin* then banished from the Kingdome, doe unto him from his Ancesters, Sovereigne Ruler over the *Northumbers*. This little River *Idle* runneth downe not farre from *Markham*, a Village verily but small to speake of, yet gave it name to the Family of the *Markhams*, which for worth and antiquity hath bene very notable, being descended from one of the heires of *Croft*, and formerly from an heire of *Lexinton*, as I lately shewed. The greatest ornament of this Family was Sir *John Markham*, who sitting Lord chiefe Justice of England, guided the helme of Justice with so even an hand and so great equity (a thing that I would have you to reade in the English Histories) that his honour and glory shall never perishe. Six miles from it Westward, is *Workensop*, a Towne well knowne for the Liquorice that there groweth and prospereth passing well: famous also for the

Shirewood.

Mansfield.

*

L. Everingham.

Lexinton.

Idle the river.

Markham.

Workensop.
Liquorice.

Earle of *Shrewsburies* House which within our remembrance *George Talbot* Earle of *Shrewsbury* built with that magnificence, as becometh so great an Earle, and yet such as was not to be envied. This *Workensop* from the *Lovetosis* first Lords thereof, under the Normans Raigne, descended by the *Furnivalles* and *Nevil*, unto the *L. Talbots* with a very goodly inheritance. Of which *Lovetosis*, *G. Lovetost* in the time of King *Henry* the First, founded here an Abbay, the ruines whereof I have seen toward the East side of the Towne, amidst most pleasant and plentifull pastures: and the West part of the Church standeth still passing faire to be seene with two towre steeples. A little higher upon the same River I saw *Blithe* a famous Mercate Towne, which *Bulley* or *Bassy*, a Noble man of the Normans blood, fortified with a Castle: but now the very rubbish thereof is hardly to bee seene, time so consumeth all things. But the Abbay there, was founded by *Roger Busby* and *Foulke De Lisseurs*: and this is the farthest Towne almost in *Nottingham-shire*, Northward, unlesse it bee *Scroby* a little Towne of the Archbishops of *Torke*, situate in the very confines and frontiers of *Tork-shire*.

William surnamed the *Conquerour* appointed over this Shire *William Peverell* his base sonne, not with the Title of Earle, but of Lord of *Nottingham*: who had a sonne that dyed before his father, and hee likewise had a sonne of the same name, whom king *Henry* the Second disinherited, for that he went about to poison *Ranulph* Earle of *Chesster*. Much about this time *Robert de Ferrarj*s, who rifled and ransacked *Nottingham*, in a *Donation* which he made unto the Church of *Tuttesbury*, stiled himself thus, *Robertus Comes junior de Nottingham*, that is, *Robert the younger Earle of Nottingham*. But afterwards King *Richard* the First gave and confirmed unto his brother *John* the Earledome and Castle of *Nottingham* with all the Honour of *Peverell*. Many yeeres after, King *Richard* the Second honoured *John Lord Mowbray* with this Title of Earle of *Nottingham*, who dying a young man without issue, his brother *Thomas* succeeded after him: He being by king *Richard* the Second created Earle *Mare-shall* and Duke of *Norfolke*, and soone after banished, begat *Thomas* Earle *Mare-shall*, whom king *Henry* the Fourth beheaded; and *John Mowbray*, who, as also his sonne and Nephew, were likewise Dukes of *Norfolke* and Earles of *Nottingham*. But when as their male issue failed, and that *Richard* the young sonne of King *Edward* the Fourth, being Duke of *Torke* had borne this Title with others by his Wife the heire of the *Mowbraies*, but a small while, King *Richard* the Third honoured *William* Vicount *Barkley* descended from the *Mowbraies* with this Title of Earle of *Nottingham*: and whereas hee dyed without issue, king *Henry* the Eighth bestowed the same honour upon his illegitimate sonne *H. Fitz Roy*, when hee created him Duke of *Richmond*; but hee departed this life in the flower of his age, leaving no childe. Afterward this Title lay extinct, untill in the yeere of our Lord 1597. Queene *Elizabeth* by solempne investiture adorned therewith *Charles* Lord *Howard of Effingham*, and High Admirall of England, descended from the *Mowbraies*, in regard of his service (as appeareth in the Charter of his Creation) right valiantly and faithfully performed against the Spanish *Armado* in the yeere 1588. as also at the winning of *Cala* in *Spain*, where he was Lord Generall of the forces by sea, like as the Earle of *Effex*, of those by land.

S. Mary of
Radford.

Blithe.

Lords and
Earles of Not-
tingham.
Lib. M. Lincol.
Matth. Paris.
p. 126.
See Earles of
Darby.
Matth. Paris.
p. 204.
Hoveden. pag.
373. b.Inq. 6. Ric. 2.
See Dukes of
Norfolke.

There are in this County Parish Churches 168.

DARBY.



DARBYSHIRE.



DARBYSHIRE, called in old English-Saxon Deopbyr-scire, lieth close to Nottingham-shire Westward, confining with Leicester-shire upon the Southside, like as with Stafford-shire on the West, and York-shire in the North, resembling, as it were, the forme of a Triangle, but not with equall sides. For, whereas about the point of it lying Southward it is scarce fixe miles broad, it so enlargeth and spreadeth it selfe on both sides, that where it looketh into the North it carrieth much about thirty miles in breadth. The River *Derwent*, that runneth along the middest of it, divideth it after a sort in two parts, which River breaking out of the North limit thereof and taking his course Southward, sometimes with his blacke waters stained with the Soile and earth that it passeth by, rumbleth downe apace into the *Trent*: For, *Trent* overthwarteth the said narrow point, that I spake of, lying Southward. The East side and the South parts are well manured, not unfruitfull, and besides, well stored with Parkes; The West part beyond *Derwent* which they call the *Peake* being all of it hilly, or a stony and craggy ground, is more barraine: howbeit rich in lead, iron, and coles, which it yeeldeth plentifully, and also feedeth Sheepe very com-
modiously.

In the South corner the first place worth the naming that offereth it selfe to sight, is *Greisely Castle*, more than broken downe, which together with a little Monastery was founded in times past in honour of *Saint George*, by the *Greiselyes* Lords thereof, who fetching their descent from *William* the sonne of *Sir Niele of Greisely*, about the very Conquest of England by the Normans, have flourished unto these dayes in great worship, the which they have not a little augmented long since by marrying with the daughter and heire of the ancient family of *Gasteneys*. Upon the River *Dove*, which untill it entreteth into *Trent* divideth this Country from *Stafford-shire*, we meet with nothing in this Shire but small country Villages, and *Ashburne* a Mercate towne, where the house of the *Cokains* flourished a long time; and *Norbury*, where the right ancient family of the *Fitz-Herberts* have long inhabited: out of which, *Sir Anthony Fitz-Herbert* hath deserved passing well of the knowledge and profession of our Commons law: Not farre from which is *Shirley* an ancient Lordship of the well renowned Family of the *Shirleys*, who derive their pedigree from one *Fulcher*: unto whom, beside the antiquity of their house, much honor and faire lands have accrued by marriage with the heires of the *Breoses*, the *Bassetts of Braillesford*, the *Stantons*, *Lovells*, &c. And heere stand round about many places which have given name and Habitation to worshipfull Families: as *Longford*, *Bradburne*, *Kniveton*, from whence came those *Knivetons* of *Mercaston* and *Bradley*: of which house *Saint Lo Kniveton* is one, to whose judicious and studious diligence I am deeply endebted: also *Kedelston*, where the *Cursons* dwelt, as also at *Crookhall*. But whether *Sir Robert Curson* knighted by King Henry the Seventh, made a Baron of the Empire by *Maximilian* the Emperour in the yeere 1500. for his singular valour, and thereupon by King Henry the Eighth made a Baron of England with a liberall pension assigned, was descended from these *Cursons*, I dare not affirme. Heereby is *Radbourn*, where *Sir John Chandos* knight, Lord of the place, laid a goodly foundation of a great and stately house: from whom by a daughter it came by hereditary succession unto the *Poles*, who dwell heere at this day. But these particularities I leave for him who hath undertaken the full description of this Shire.

But upon *Trent*, so soon as ever he hath taken to him the river *Dove*, is *Rebandunum* to bee scene, for so doe our History-writers call it, the Saxons named it *hpebandun*, and we at this day *Repton*, which from a great and faire Towne is become a poore small Village. For, in old time very famous it was, by reason both of the buriall of

Greisely Castle.
The family of
the Greiselys.

The family of
the Shirleys.

Baron Curson.

Repton.

Æthelbald

Aethelbald that good King of the *Mercians*, who through the treachery of his owne people lost his life, and of the other Kings of *Mercia*: as also for the unfortunate calamity of *Burthred* the last King of the *Mercians*, who when hee had enjoyed his kingdome partly by way of entreaty and partly by meanes of bribery, full twenty yeeres, was heere deprived of his kingdome by the Danes, or rather freed and exempted from the glittering misery of princely State, and so became an example to teach men in how ticklish and slippery a place they stand which are underproped onely with money. Then not farre from *Trent* is *Melborn* a Castle of the Kings now decaying, wherein *John Duke of Burbon* taken prisoner in the battaile of *Agincourt* was detained nineteene yeeres under the custody of Sir *Nicholas Montgomery* the younger. Scarce five miles hence Northward, the River *Derwent* hath his walke, who in the utmost limit, as I said before, of this Shire Northward deriving his head out of the *Peak hills*, being one while streitned betwene crags, and sometimes another while watering and cherishing the fresh greene meadowes, by mossie and morish grounds holdeth on his course for thirty miles or thereabout directly, as were, into the South. Howbeit in so long a course hee passeth by nothing worth looking on, except *Chastefworth*, a very large, faire and stately house, which Sir *William Cavendish*, or *Cavendish* descended out of that ancient house of *German* in *Suffolk*, beganne, and which his Wife *Elizabeth*, and after Countesse of *Shrewsbury*, hath of late with great charges fully finished.

Chastefworth.
Cavendish.

But where *Derwent* turneth somewhat Eastward, when it is once past *Little Chester*, that is, *Little City*, where old peeces of Roman money are often times gotten out of the ground, *Darby* sheweth it selfe, in the English-Saxon Tongue named *Norþþworching*, and by the Danes (as *Aethelward* that ancient Writer willeth) *Deoraby*, the chiefe Towne of all this Shire: which name, being taken from the River *Derwent* and contracted from *Derwentby*, it hath bestowed upon the whole County. A proper Towne it is, none of the least, not without good trade and reforme to it. On the East side of it, the River *Derwent* making a very faire shew, runneth downe carrying a full and lofty streame under a beautifull stone Bridge, upon which our devout forefathers erected a faire Chappell, which now is neglected and goeth to decay: Through the South part thereof runneth a prety cleere River which they call *Mertenbrooke*. Five Churches there be in it: Of which the greatest named *All Hallomes*, dedicated to the memory of *All-Saints*, hath a Towre Scepter that for height and singular fine Workmanship excelleth. In which Church, the Countesse of *Shrewsbury*, of whom erewhile I spake, trusting her selfe better than her heires, providently erected a Sepulture for her selfe, and as religiously founded an Hospitall hard by, for the maintenance of twelve poore folke, eight men and four women.

Memorable in old time was this place, because it had beene a lurking hole and *Rendezvous* for the Danes, untill *Ethelfleda* that victorious Lady of the *Mercians*, by a suddaine forceable surprize, made a slaughter of the Danes and became Mistress of it. In the time of King *Edward the Confessor*, as wee finde in *Domesday booke*, that 143. Burgeses, whose number notwithstanding decreased so, that in *William the Conquerours* Raigne there remained onely an hundred: And these paid unto the King at the feast of *Saint Martin* 12. * *Trabes of Corne*. But now all the name and credit that hath, ariseth of the *Assises* there kept for the whole shire, and by the best nappy ale that is brewed there: a drinke so called, of the Danish word *Oela* somewhat wrested, and not of *Alica*, as *Ruellius* deriveth it: the Britans termed it by an old word *Kwya*, in steade whereof *Curmi* is read amisse in *Disclorides*; where hee saith, that the *Welsh* (perchance he would have said *Hiberni*, that is, *The Irishmen*) in lieu of wine use *Curmi*, a kinde of drinke made of *Barly*. For, this is that *Barly-wine* of ours, which *Julius the Emperour*, that *Apostata*, calleth merrily in an *Epigramme*, *πυρρυν, ὁ βελωνικον*. This is the ancient and peculiar drinke of the Englishmen and Britans, yea and the same very whollome, howsoever *Henry of Aurenches* the Norman, Arch-poet to King *Henry the Third*, did in his pleasant wit merrily jest upon it in these Verses.

* Thraves of
corne, as it
should seeme.

Ale.
Cervisia in
latine, Curmi
in
Disclorides:
Ale in English,
of Oel, a Danish
word.

*Nescio quod Stygia monstrum conforme paludi,
Cervisiam plerique vocant: nil spissius illa
Dum bibitur, nil clarius est dum mingitur, unde
Constat, quod multas facies in ventre relinquit.*

Of this strange drinke, so like to Strygian lake,
(Most tearme it Ale) I wote not what to make:
Folke drinke it thicke, and pisse it passing thin,
Much dregges therefore must needs remaine within.

Howbeit, *Turnebus* that most learned Frenchman makerh no doubte, but that men using to drinke heereof, if they could avoid surfetting, would live longer than those that drinke wine: and that from hence it is, that many of us drinking Ale live an hundred yeeres. And yet *Asclepiades* in *Plutarch* ascribeth this long life to the coldnesse of the aire, which keepeth in and preserveth the naturall heat in bodies, when he made report, that the Britans lived untill they were an hundred and twenty yeeres old.

But the wealth of this Towne consisteth much in buying of corne and selling it againe to the mountaines: for all the Inhabitants be as it were a kinde of hucksters, or badgers. Not farre from hence doth *Derwent* carry his streame, where by *Elwaston* Sir *Ralph Montjoye* had lands, in the time of *Edward the First*: from whence came Sir *Walter Blunt*, whom King *Edward* the Fourth advanced to the honour of Baron *Montjoye* with a pension: whose posterity have equalled the nobility of their birth with the ornaments of learning: and principally among them, *Charles*, late Earle of *Devonshire*, Baron *Montjoye*, Lord *Lieutenant General* of *Ireland*, and *Knights of the Order of the Garter*. Beneath this *Elwaston*, *Derwent* disburdeneth himselfe into the channell of *Trent*, which within a while admitteth into it the River *Erewash*, that in this part serveth as a limit to divide this country from *Nottinghamshire*. Neere unto this River standeth *Risley*, a possession of the *Wiloughbeies*: of which family was that Sir *Hugh Wiloughby*, as I have heard say, who whiles hee endeavoured to discover the *Frozen* *Stamere* unto *Wardbous* in *Scandia*, was frozen to death together with his company, in the same ship. Hard by it also is *Sandiacre*, or as others will have it, *Saint Diacre*, the seat of the Family of the *Greies of Sandiacre*: whose inheritance Sir *Edward Hillary* in right of his wife was first possessed of; and whose sonne became adopted into the name of the *Greies*: and a few yeeres after, the one of his daughters and heires wedded to Sir *John Leake*, and the other to *John Welsh*.

Turnebus de
Vino.

Barons
Montjoye.

Greies of
Sandiacre.

Codenor
Castle.

Barons Grey
of Codenor.

Alfreton.

The Barons
of Alfreton
coat of Armes,
Staveley.

Freshwell
commonly.

On the East side of this Shire there follow in order Northward these places, *Codenor* in old time *Contenoure Castle*, which belonged to the Barons *Grey*, called thereupon Lords *Grey of Codenor*; whose inheritance in the foregoing age came to the *Zouches* by the marriage that Sir *John de la Zouch* the second sonne of *William Lord de la Zouch* of *Haringworth*, contracted with *Elizabeth* the heire of *Henry Grey* the last Lord of *Codenor*. Then, *Winfeld*, a very great and goodly Manour, where *Ralph Lord Cromwell* in the Raigne of *Henry the Sixth* built a sumptuous and stately house, for whose daies. After it, you see *Alfreton*, which men thinke to have beene built by King *Alfred*, and of him to have taken that name: which Towne had also Lords, entitled therupon, de *Alfreton*: of whom the second named *Robert*, the sonne of *Ralph*, built in the most remote angle and nouke of this shire the little Abbay *De Bel-lacapine*, commonly called *Beau-chiese*; but a few yeeres after for default of heires wailes the Family of *Chaworth* and the *Lathams* in *Lancashire* possessed their inheritance, by two daughters. These bare for their Armes, *Two Cheverons*, as they tearme them, or, in a Shield *Azur*: which very same Coat the *Musards*, that is, *The doubters and delaters* who were called *Barons of Staveley* in this County, changing the colours onely gave, who during the Raigne of King *Edward the First* had an end in Sir *Nicholas Maford*: and his eldest sister was married to *Ancher Freschevill*, whose posterity flourisheth heere still at this day. Higher yet in the very East frontier of this County, upon a rough and a craggy Soile standeth *Hardwic*, which gave name to a Family in which

which possessed the same: out of which descended Lady *Elizabeth Countess of Shrewsbury*, who beganne to builde there two goodly houses joyning in manner one to the other, which by reason of their lofty situation heve themselves, a faire of to be seene, and yeeld a very goodly prospect. This now giveth the Title of *Baronet* to *Sir William Cavendish* her second sonne, whom *King James* of late hath honoured with the honour of *Baron Cavendish of Hardwicke*.

More inward in the Country, is seated *Chester-field* in *Scardale*, that is, in a *Dale* compassed in with craggies and rocks: For, such rocks the Englishmen were wont to rearme *Scarres*. Both the new name it selfe, and the ruines of the old *Wallerdales* proove, that this *Chester-field* was of good antiquity: but the ancient name thereof by continuance of time worne out and quite lost. King *John* made it a free *Mortuorie* when he gave it to *William Brierley* his especiall favourite. In Writers it is famous only by occasion of the warre betwixt King Henry the Third and his Barons, wherein *Roberts Ferrars* the last Earle of *Darby* of that name, being taken prisoner and deprived of his honour by authority of the Parliament, lived afterwards as a private man and his posterity flourished with the Title onely of Barons. Hard to this *Chester-field* Westward lyeth *Walton*, which from the *Bretons* came hereditarily by *Leoline* to the *Foliambes* men of great name in this Tract: and Eastward *Sutton*, where the *Leaks* held a long time a worshipfull port, in Knights degree.

A little from hence is *Bolover* an ancient Castle, situate somewhat with the height: which belonged to the *Hastings* Lords of *Abergavenny*, in right of marriage with King Henry the Third: who being altogether unwilling that the Earldome of *Chester*, unto whom this Castle had appertained, should bee divided and beleeved among distaves, assigned here and there other possessions unto the fitters of *the* last Earle.

The West part beyond *Derwent*, which throughout riseth high and peaking with hills and mountaines, whence in old time it was called in the old English tongue *Peac-land*, and is at this day, haply for that cause, named the *Peake* (for, that work among us signifieth to appeare aloft) is severed from *Stafford-shire* by the *Dove* a most swift and cleere River, of which I shall speake hereafter. This part although in some place it hath craggy, rough and bare scarres, and cragges; yet by reason that under the upper crust of the earth there is limestone which supplyeth a bating fruitful flugh, or humour, there be in it greene grassie hills and vales, which bring forth oates, and feed safely both droves of greater beasts, and also many flocks of sheep. For, there is no more danger now from Wolves which in times past were hard and noisome to this Country; and for the chafing away and taking of which here there were that held lands here at *Werneshill*, who thereupon were named *Werneshill*, as appeareth plainly in the Records of the Kingdome: But so plentiful is of lead, that the *Alchymists*, who condemne the Planets as convict of foulesse unto the metall mines, have upon a ridiculous error written, that *Saturnus* when they make the Lord and Dominatour of lead, is liberally affected to England, in granting lead; but displeased with France, to which he hath denied the same. And verily, I thinke that *Pliny* spake of this Country when hee said this, *In Britannia* is very crasse of the ground, without any deepe mining, is gotten so great store of lead, that it is a law expressly made of purpose, forbidding men to make more than to a certain quantity. For in these mountaines, fertile lead stones are daily digged up in great abundance, which upon the hill tops lying open to the West winde, neere unto *Udend* and *Werkef-Worsh* (which hereupon tooke name of the lead-works) with the Westerne winde begins to blow (which winde of all others they have been experience found to hold longest) they melt with mighty great fires of wood into lead, in troughs or trenches wch they digge of purpose for it to runne into, and runneth it up into *Sowes*. Neither onely lead, but *Stibium* also called in the Apothecaries shops *Antimonium*, is heere found by it selfe in veins: which mineral the women of *Greece* used in old time to colour their eye-browes with, whereupon the Poet, *Hom* in Greeke tearmeth it *phrygionem*. Millstones likewise are heere hewed out, as also

Baron Caven-
dish.

Walton,
Sutton.

The Peaks.

Wolves

Inq. 2. Ed. 2.
Lead.
Brodzus.

Antimony.

MILTONS.

grinde-stones and whetstones, to give an edge unto iron tooles : and sometimes in these mines or quarries is found a certaine white *Fluor* (for such stones comming out of *Mines*, that be like unto precious stones, learned minerall men call *Fluores*) which for all the world resembleth *Chrystall*.

Befides *Workes-worth*, lately mentioned, we meet with never another place worth the remembrance, unleffe it be *Haddon* by the River *Wie*, the seat for many yeeres together of the *Vernons*, who as they were very ancient so they became no lesse renowned in these parts, in so much as Sir *George Vern* knight, who lived in our time, for his magnificent port that hee carried, the open house that hee kept, and his commendable hospitality, gat the name among the multitude of a *Pety King in the Peaks*. By his Daughters and heires a goodly and great Inheritance was transferred unto Sir *John Mannoors* sonne of *Thomas Earle of Rutland*, and to Sir *Thomas Stanley* sonne of *Edward Earle of Darby*. There adjoyneth unto this, *Bakewell* upon the same River, which among these hills maketh it selfe way into *Derwent*. This was by the Saxons called *Baodecanwell*: And *Marianus* writeth, that King *Edward the Elder* erected there a Burrough. Now whether it borrowed this name or no of the hote waters, which the ancient Englishmen, as also the Germans in their language termed *Bade* and *Baden*, whence came *Baden* in Germany and *Buda* in Hungary, I know not. Certes, at the spring-head of *Wie* not farre from hence, there rise and walme up nine fountaines of hote waters, the place at this day is called *Buxton well*: which being found by experience holmesome for the stomach, sinewes, and the whole body, *George Earle of Shrewesbury* lately beautified with buildings, and so they are beguine againe to be resorted unto, by concourse of the greatest Gentlemen and of the Nobility. At which time that most unfortunate Lady, *Mary Queene of Scots* had farewell unto *Buxton* with this *Distichon*, by a little change of *Casars Verses* concerning *Feltria*, in this wife:

*Buxtona qua calida celebrare nomine lymphæ,
Fortè mihi posthac non adeunda, vale.*

Buxton, that of great name shalt be, for hote and holosome baine;
Farewell, for I perhaps shall not thee ever see againe.

But that these hote waters were knowne in old time; *The Port-way or High paved Street* named *Bath-gate*, reaching for seven miles together from hence unto *Burgh* a little *Village* doth manifestly shew. Neere unto this *Burgh* there standeth upon the top of an hillan old *Castle* sometimes belonging to the *Peuerels*, called *The Castle in the Peake*, and in *Latin De Alto Pecco*, which *King Edward the Third* together with a *Manour* and an *Honour*, gave unto his sonne *John Duke of Lancaster*, what time as hee surrendered the *Ea*ldome of *Richmond* unto the *Kings* hands. Under which, there is a *Cave* or hole within the ground, called, saving your reverence, *The Devils Calse*, that gapeth with a wide mouth, and hath in it many turnings and reryng rooms: where in, forsooth, *Gervase of Tilbury*, whether for wane of knowing much, or upon a delight hee had in fabling, hath written, that a *Shepherd* saw a very wide and large *Country* with *Riverets* and *Brookes* running heere and there through it, and huge *Pooles* of dead and standing waters. Notwithstanding, by reason of thefe and such like fables, this *Hole* is reckoned for one of the wonders of *England*: neither are there wanting the like tales of another *Cave*, but especially of that which is called *Elden Hole*, wherein there is nothing to bee wondred at, but that it is of an huge widnesse, exceeding steepe, and of a marvelous depth. But whosoever have written that there should bee certaine tunnels and breathing holes, out of which windes doe issue, they are much deceived: Neither doe these Verses of *Alexander Neckam*, which hee wrote as touching the *Mervayles of England*, agree to any of these two holes.

*Est specus Aëolis ventis obnoxia semper,
Impetus è gemino maximus ore venit.*

A 33

Cogitare

Grindstones.
Whetstones.
Fluores.
Chrysell.

Vernon?

Buxton?

**Devils Arise
in Peake,**

At Elden hole:

*Cogitur injectum velamen adire supernas
Partes, descensum impedit aura potens.*

A Cave, to strong Æolian windes alwaies enthal'd there is;
From two-fold tunnell maine great blasts arise and never misse;
A cloth or garment cast therein, by force aloft is sent,
A mighty breath, or powfull puffe doth hinder all descent.

But all the memorable matters in this high and rough stony little Country, or
hath comprised in these foure Verses.

*Mira alto Pecco tria sunt, barathrum, specus, antrum;
Commoda tot, plumbum, gramen, ovile pecus.
Tot speciosa simul sunt, Castrum, Balnea, Chatsworth;
Plura sed occurrunt, quæ speciosa minus.*

There are in *High Peake* Wonders three,
A deepe Hole, Cave and Den:
Commodities as many bee,
Lead, Graffe, and Sheepe in pen.
And Beauties three there are withall
A Castle, Bath, *Chatsworth*:
With places more yet meet you shall
That are of meaner worth.

To these Wonders may be added a wonderfull Well in the *Peake* Fort, so farre
from *Buxtons* which ordinarily ebberth and floweth foure times in the space of one
houre or thereabout, keeping his just Tides: and I know not whether *Tideswell* &
Mercate Towne heereby hath his name thereof.

The *Peverels* who I have said before were Lords of *Nottingham* are also reported
to have bene Lords of *Darby*. Afterward King *Richard* the First, gave and confir-
med unto his brother *John* the Counties and Castles of *Nottingham*, *Lancaster*,
Darby, &c. with the honours thereto belonging, with the honour also of *Peverell*. After him
these were Earles of *Derby* out of the family of *Ferrars* (so far as I am able to gather
out of the Registers of *Tisbury*, *Merivall*, and *Barton Monasteries*) *William Ferrar*,
sonne to the Daughter and heire of *Peverell*, whom King *John* with his owne hand,
(as we finde in an ancient Charter) invested Earle of *Darby*: *William* his sonne who
bruised with a fall out of his Coach died in the yeere 1254. And this *William*
sonne, *Robert*, who in the Civill Warre lost this Title and a great estate by for-
feiture, in such sort as that none of his posterity, although they lived in great power and
reputation, were ever restored to that honor againe: But most of this *Robert* posses-
sions *K. Henry* the Third passed over unto *Edmund* his owne younger son: and King
Edward the Third (I write out of the very originall Record) by authority and advice
of the Parliament, ordained *Henry* of *Lancaster*, the sonne of *Henry* Earle of *La-*
ncaster, Earle of *Darby*, to him and his heires, and withall assigned unto him a thou-
sand markes yeerely during the life of his father *Henry* Earle of *Lancaster*. From
that time this Title was united to the line of *Lancaster*, untill King *Henry* the Se-
venth, bestowed the same upon *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, who before had wedded *Ma-*
rgaret the Kings mother, to him and the heires males of his body. He had for his suc-
cessour his Grandsonne *Thomas* begotten by *George* his sonne of *Ioan* the heire of the
Lord *Strange* of *Knocking*: this *Thomas* had by the sister of *George* Earle of *Hunting-*
don, *Edward*, the third Earle of this Family, highly commended for hospitality and
affability, who by the Lady *Dorothy* Daughter to the first *Thomas Howard* Duke of
Norfolke, begat *Henry* the fourth Earle, efts-once honourably employed, who left
by Lady *Margaret* Daughter of *Henry* Earle of *Cumberland*, *Ferdinand*, and *William*
successively

*
A strange
Well.
Th. Fitz-
bert. p. 223.
Lords and
Earles of
Darby.
Simon Du-
nelm.
Hovenden.
Matthew Paris.
204.

Chart. antiq. T. 3.
Joban.

successively Earles of *Darby*. *Ferdinand* dyed in strange manner, in the flower of
his youth, leaving by *Margaret* his Wife Daughter of Sir *John Spenser* of *Althorp*
three Daughters, *Anne* married to *Grey* *Bruges*, Lord *Chandos*, *Francis* Wife to
Sir *John Egerton*, and *Elizabeth* Wife to *Henry* Earle of *Huntingdon*. *William* the sixth
Earle now enjoyeth that Honour having issue by *Elizabeth* Daughter to *Edward* late
Earle of *Oxford*.

And thus much of the Counties of *Nottingham* and
Darby: of which they inhabited a part who in *Bedes*
time were called *Mercii Aquilonares*, that is, *The Northern*
Mercians, for that they dwelt beyond the *Trent* North-
ward: and they held, as hee saith, *The land of seven thou-*
sand Families.

Northren
Mercians.

This Country holdeth in it Parishes 106.

Aaa 2

CORNA



CORNAVII.

Having now travailed in order through the Countries of the ancient CORITANI, I am to survey the Regions confining, which in ancient time the people called CORNABII or CORNAVII, inhabited: The derivation or etymologie of whose name let others sift out. As for my selfe, I could draw the force and signification of that word to this and that diversly; but seeing none of them doth aptly answer to the nature of the place, or disposition of the people, I chuse rather to reject them, than heere to propound them. According therefore to my purpose, I will severally runne over those Provinces which after Ptolomees description on the CORNAVII seeme to have possessed, that is to say, Warwick-shire, Worcester-shire, Stafford-shire, Shrop-shire and Cheshire. In which, there remaineth no footing at this day, of the name Cornavij, although this name continued even untill the declining State of the Romane Empire.

For, certaine Companies and Regiments of the CORNAVII served in pay under the later Emperours, as wee may see in the Booke of Notitia Provinciarum.

WARWICK

WARWICI

Comitatus a cor:
naviis olim inha:
bitatus

HVNDREDORVM

NOMINA	
A	Hemlingforde
B	Knightlowe
C	Barlichway
D	Kyncton
E	Libertas ciuitatis Couentriae

VIGORNIAE

PARS



Chris Cophorus Saxton descripsit
William Rip Sculpsit

STAFFORD

PARS

GLOUCESTER

PARS

SECESTRIA

PARS

NORTH

HAMPTONIAE

PARS

OXONIAE

PARS



WARWICK-SHIRE.

THe County of WARWICK, which the old English Saxons as well as wee called WARWICK-SHIRE, being bounded on the East side with *Northampton-shire*, *Leicester-shire*, and the *Wasling-street Way*, which I spake of: on the South with *Oxford-shire* and *Gloucestershire*, on the West, for the greatest part with *Worcestershire*, and on the North side with *Stafford-shire*, is divided into two parts, the *Feldon* and *Woodland*, that is, into a plaine Champion, and a woody Country: which parts, the River *Avon* running crookedly from North-

East to South-West, doth after a sort sever one from the other.

The *Feldon*, lyeth on this side *Avon* Southward, a plaine Champion Countrey, and being rich in Corne and greene grasse, yeeldeth a right goodly and pleasant prospect to them that looke downe upon it from an Hill which they call *Edge-hill*. Where this hill enderth nere unto *Wormington*, we saw a round Fort or military tence cast up of a good bignesse, which, as others of that kinde, wee may well thinke to have beene made for the present, and not long to continue, by occasion of some enemies that in times past were ready to invade those parts. Of the redy Soile heere, come the names of *Rodway* and *Rodley*: yea and a great part of the very *Vale* is thereupon termed *The Vale of Red-horse*, of the shape of an Horse cut out in a red hill by the Country people hard by *Pillerton*.

In this part the places worth naming are *Shipston* and *Kinton*, the one in times past a Mercate of *Sheepe*, the other of *Kine*, whereupon they gat those names: also *Compton in the Hole*, so called for that it lyeth hidden in a Valley under the Hilles; yet hath it delights and pleasures about it, and from thence a noble Family hath taken the name: out of which the most excellent Prince *Queene Elizabeth* advanced *Sir Henry Compton* to the honour of a Baron in the yeere of our Redemption 1572. Likewise *Wormelighton*, so highly commended, and notorious for good Sheepe-pasture, but now much more notable since that King *James* created that right worshipfull *Sir Robert Spenser*, of whom I have already spoken, Baron *Spenser of Wormelighton*. Moreover, *Shugbury*, where the stones called *Astroites*, resembling little Starres, are found, which the Lords of the place firnamed thereupon *Shugbury*, have long shewed in their Coat Armour: *Southam* a Mercate Towne well knowne: as also *Leamington* (so called of *Leame* a small Brooke that wandereth through this part of the Shire) where there boyleth out a spring of salt water: and *Urbindon*, now *Long Isbindingon*, and *Harbury*. Neither verily are these two places memorable for any other cause, but for that *Fremund* sonne to King *Offa* was betwixt them villanously in times past slaine by those that fore-layed him, a man of great renowne and singular Piety to God ward, unto whom nothing else procured envie and evill will, but because in an unhappy time hee bad by happy Conduct quelled the audacious Courage of his enemies. Which Death of his notwithstanding turned to his greater Glorie. For, being buried at his Fathers Palace, now called *Off-Church*, hee liveth yet unto Posterity, as who being raunged in the Catalogue of our Saints hath among the multitude received Divine Honours: and whose life is by an ancient Writer set out in a good Poeme, out of which let it bee no offence to put downe these few Verses following touching the Murderer, who upon an ambitious desire of a Kingdome, slew him.

Feldon

The Vale of Redhorse

Shipston in Worcestershire, Kinton, Compton

Shugbury, Stones Astroites Sigtean, See in Lincolnshire, Leamington

Off-Church

*Non sperans vivo Fremundo, regis honore,
Optato se posse frui, molitur in ejus*

Aaa 3

Imme-

*Immeritam tacito mortem, gladioque profanus
Irruit exerto servus, Dominique jacens
Tale nihil veritum sevo caput amputat iclu.
Talis apud* Wydford Fremundum palma coronat,
Dum simul & Jones occidit, & occidit infans.*

*In some Copies, Redford.

Past hope, whiles Fremund liv'd, to speed of wished regalty,
All secret and unworthy means he plots to make him dyc.
With naked sword, prophane slave he, assaileth cowardly
His Lord unware, and as he lay beheads him cruelly.
At Wydford thus Prince Fremund did this glorious crowne attaine;
While's slaying guilty folke, at once, himselfe is guiltlesse flaine.

Fosse-way:

Thus much of the *Feldon*, or Champion part, which, that ancient *Fosse-way* (a thing that would not bee overpassed) cutteth overthwart: the ridge whereof is scene in pastures lying now out of the way, neere unto *Chesterston* the habitation of that ancient Family of the *Peitoes*, out of which was that *William Peito*, a Franciscane Frier, whom *Paul* the Fourth, Pope of Rome, of stomach to worke Cardinal *Pole* displeasure (would you thinke these heavenly Wights were so wrathfull) created, though in vaine, Cardinal and Regent of England having recalled Cardinal *Pole* to Rome before, to bee accused and charged as suspected corrupt in Religion: But *Queene Mary*, albeir shee were most affectionately devoted to the Church of Rome, interposed or rather opposed her selfe so, that *Peito* was forbidden to enter into England, and the power Legantine left entire and whole to Cardinal *Pole*. Heere I wote not whether it would bee materiall to relate, how in the Raigne of *Edward* the Fourth certaine Writers in Bookes of purpose penned made complaint of *Covetousnesse*, how that she having assembled heere about flocks of Sheepe as a puissant power of armed forces, besieged many Villages well peopled, drave out the Husbandmen, wonne the said Villages, destroyed, rased, and depopulated them in such miserable fort heereabout, that one of the said Writers a learned man in those daies cryed out with the Poet in these termes.

Roffe and T.B. against the destroyers of Villages.

Quid facerent hostes capta crudelius urbe?
What could more cruelly be done,
By enemies, to Cities wonne?

But nere unto the River *Avon*, where carrying as yet but a small streame he dolefully entereth into this County, first offereth it selfe *Rugby* having a Mercat in it standing chiefly of a number of Butchers. Then *Newenham Regis*, that is, *Kings Newenham* standing upon the other side of the River, where three fountaines walme out of the ground streined, as it should seeme, through a veine of Alum; the water whereof carrying both colour and taste of milke, is reported to cure the stone: Centes, it procureth urine abundantly, greene wounds it quickly closeth up and healeth, being drunke with salt it looseth, and with sugar, bindeth the belly.

Newenham Regis, Holfome Welles.

Bagginton:

After it, *Bagginton*, which had a Cattle to it, and belonged sometime to the *Bagottes*, as noble a Family then, as most other. Within a little whereof standeth *Stoncleay*, where King Henry the Second founded an Abbey; and just over against it stood in old time a Castle upon *Avon* called *Stoncleay-holme*, built in *Helmsholme*, which was destroyed when the flaming broiles of Danish Warres under king *Cnut* caught hold of all England.

Stoncleay, Register of Stoncleay Abbey.

Warwick.

Then runneth *Avon* unto the principall Towne of the whole Shire, which wee call *Warwicke*, the Saxons Wapping-wyc, *Ninnius* and the Britans *Caer Guarib*, and *Caer Leon*. All which names, considering they seeme to have sprung from *Guarib* a British word which signifieth a *Garison*, or from Legions, that were set in certaine places

places for Guard and defence thereof, have in some sort perswaded mee (although in these Etymologies I love rather to bee a *Scepticke* than a *Criticke*) that this is the very Towne of Britaine, which the Romans called *PRÆSIDIUM*, where, as wee finde in the *Notitia*, or *Abstract of Provinces*, the Captaine of the *Dalmatian* Horsemen abode under the command of *Dux Britannia*. This Cohort or Band was enrolled out of *Dalmatia*; and (to note thus much by the way) such was the provident wisdom and forecast of the Romans, that in all their Provinces they placed forraigne Souldiers in *Garison*, who by reason of their diversify as well of manners as of language from the naturall Inhabitants, could not joyne with them in any conspiracy: for (as hee writeth) *Nations not inured to the bridle of bondage, easily otherwise start backe from the yoke imposed upon them*. Heereupon it was that there served in Britaine, out of *Africke* the *Moors*; out of *Spaine* the *Asiures* and *Vettones*; out of *Germany* the *Batavi*, *Nervi*, *Tangri*, and *Turnacenses*; out of *Gaul* the *lingones*, *Morini*; and from other remoter places, *Dalmatians*, *Thracians*, *Alani*, &c. as I will shew in their proper places: But now to the matter. Neither let any man thinke that the Britans got that word *Guarib* from the Frenchmen, seeing the originall is an Hebrew word (if wee may beleieve *Lazius*) and in that Originall most Nations doe accord.

Præsidium.

Florus lib. 4. c. ult.

Forreine Souldiers in Provinces.

But that this was *PRÆSIDIUM*, that is, *The Garison Towne*, both the Authority of our Chronicles teacheth, which report that the Romane Legions had their abode heere; and the site also it selfe in the very navell and mids almost of the whole Province doth imply. For equally distant it is of the one side from the East Coast of *Norfolke*, and on the other side from the West of *Wales*, which kinde of situation *PRÆSIDIUM* a Towne of *Corfica*, had, standing just in the midst of the Island.

And no marvelle is it that the Romans kept heere *Garison* and a standing Company of Souldiers, seeing it standeth over the River *Avon* upon a steepe and high Rocke, and all the passages into it are wrought out of the very stone. That it was fortified with a Wall and Ditches it is apparent; and toward the South West it sheweth a Cattle passing strong, as well by Nature as handy-work, the feat in times past of the Earles of *Warwicke*. The Towne it selfe is adorned with faire houses, and is much bound to *Esbelfed*, Lady of the *Mercians*, who repaired it (when as it was greatly decayed) in the yeere 911. In very good state also it was upon the Normans entring into this land, and had many Burgeses, as they tearme them: and twelve of them, as wee finde written in King *William* the Conquerours *Domesday Booke*, were bound to accompany the King of England into his Warres. He that upon warning given went not, paid an hundred Shillings to the King: but if the King made a voyage by sea against his enemies, they sent either foure Botswans, or foure pound of Deniers. In this Burgh the King hath in his Demeines one hundred and shireene Burgeses, and the Kings Barons have an hundred and twelve. Roger the second, of the Normans blood, Earle of *Warwicke*, built after wards in the very heart of the Towne a most beautifull Church to the blessed Virgin *Mary*: Which the *Beauchamps* that succeeded adorned with their Tombs: but especially *Richard Beauchamp*, Earle of *Warwicke*, and Governour of *Normandy*, who dyed at *Roan* in the yeere 1439. and after a sumptuous funerall solemnized, in this Church lyeth entombed in a magnificent Tombe with this Inscription.

Pray

Pray devoutly for the soule whom God assoile of one of the most worshipfull Knights in his daies of Manhood and cunning, Richard Beauchampe late Earle of Warwicke, Lord Derspenfer, of Bergavenny, and of many other great Lordships, whose body resteth heere under this Tombe, in a full faire Vault of stone, set in the bare Roche. The which visited with long sicknesse in the Castle of Roban, therein deceased full Christianly the last day of April, in the yeere of our Lord God 1439. Hee being at that time Lieutenant Generall of France, and of the Dutchie of Normandie, by sufficient authority of our Sovereigne Lord King Henry the sixth. The which body by great deliberation and worshipfull conduct by sea and land, was brought to Warwicke the fourth of October, the yeere above said, and was laid with full solempne exequies in a faire Chest made of stone in the West Doore of this Chappell, according to his last Will and Testament, therein to rest till this Chappell by him devised in his life were made: the which Chappell founded on the Roche, and all the members thereof his Executors did fully make and apparell, by the authority of his said last Will and Testament. And thereafter by the said authority they did translate worshipfully the said body into the Vault aforesaid. Honoured be God therefore.

Blacklow hill,
which others
call Gavens-
den.

Neere unto Warwicke Northward is Blacklow hill to be seene, on which *Piers de Gaveston*, whom King Edward the Second had raised from a base and low estate to be Earle of Cornwall, was by the Nobles of the Kingdome beheaded: who presuming of the Kings favor and fortunes indulgence, tooke unto him so great and licentious liberty, that when he had once corrupted the Kings heart, hee despised all the best men, and proudly seized upon the estates of many, and as hee was a crafty and old beaten Fox sowed discords and variance betweene the Prince and the Peeres of the Realme.

Guy-cliffe.

Under this hill, hard by the River Avon standeth *Guy-cliffe*, others call it *Gib-cliffe*, the dwelling house at this day of Sir *Thomas Beau-fae* descended from the ancient Normans line, and the very seat it selfe of pleasantnesse. There have yee a shady little Wood, cleere and cristall Springs, mossie bottomes and caves, medowes always fresh and greene, the River rumbling heere and there among the stones with his streame making a milde noife and gentle whispering, and besides all this, solitarie and still quietnesse, things most gratefull to the Muses. Heere, as the report goes, that valiant knight and noble Worthy so much celebrated, Sir *Guy of Warwicke*, after hee had borne the brunt of sundry troubles, and achieved many painfull exploits, built a Chappell, led an Eremitic life, and in the end was buried. Howbeit, wiser men doe thinke, that the place tooke that name of later time by farre, from *Guy Beauchamp* Earle of Warwicke, and certaine it is, that *Richard Beauchamp* Earle of Warwicke built *Saint Margarets Chappell* heere, and erected a mightie and giantlike statue of stone, resembling the said *Guy*.

Charles-cot.

Avon now runneth downe from Warwicke with a fuller streame by *Charles-cot*, the habitation of the renowned ancient family of the *Lucies* knights, which place long agoe

agoe descended hereditarily to them from the *Charlecotts*: who upon a pious and devout minde founded a religious House at *Thellusford*, for entertainment of poore folke and Pilgrims: For, that little River was called *Thelley*, which by *Compton Murdackes*, the possession sometime of the *Murdackes*, and now of the *Vernakes*, Knights, and by this, *Thellusford* goeth into *Avon*, which within a while runneth hard by *Stratford*, a proper little mercate towne, beholden for all the beauty that it hath to two men there bred and brought up, namely, *John of Stratford* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who built the Church; and Sir *Hugh Clopton* Major of London, who over *Avon* made a stone Bridge supported with foureteene Arches, not without exceeding great expences. This *Hugh* was a younger brother, out of that ancient family which from *Clopton* a Manour adjoining borrowed this surname, since the time that *Walter de Cokesfeld* called *Knight Mareshall* settled and planted both himselfe and his successours at *Clopton*. The inheritance of these *Cloptons* is in our time descended to two sisters coheires: the one of which is married to Sir *George Carew* knight, Vicechamberlaine to our most gracious Lady Queen *Anne*: whom King *James* hath entituled *Baron Carew of Clopton*, and whom I am the more willing to name with honour in this respect, if there were none other, for that hee is a most affectionate lover of venerable antiquity. Neither seeth *Avon* any other memorable thing upon his bankes, but *Bisford* a Mercate Towne, and some Country Villages being now ready to enter into *Warwickshire*.

Stratford upon
Avon.

Baron Carew
of Clopton.

Now let us enter into the *Woodland*, which beyond the River *Avon* spreadeth it selfe Northward much larger in compasse than the *Felden*: and is for the most part thicke set with Woods, and yet not without pastures, corne fields, and sundry mines of Iron: This part, as it is at this day called *Woodland*, so also it was in old time knowne by a more ancient name *Arden*, but in the selfesame sense and signification, as I thinke. For it seemeth that *Arden* among the ancient Britans and Gaules signified a Wood; considering that we see a very great Wood in France named *ARDEN*, a Towne in *Flanders* hard by another Wood, called *Ardenburg*, and that famous Wood or Forest in England by a clipped word likewise cleped *DEN*: to say nothing of that *DIANA*, which in the ancient inscriptions of Gaule is surnamed *ARDVENA* and *ARDONNA*, that is, if I doe not mis-conceive, *Of the Wood*; and was the same *Diana* which in the inscriptions of Italy went under the name of *NEMORENSIS*. Of this Forest, *Turkil of Arden*, who flourished heere in all honour under King *Henry the First*, tooke his name: and his offspring which was of great worship and reputation, spread very much over all England for many yeeres successively ensuing. In the West side of this Country, the River *Arrow* maketh halfe to joine himselfe in society with *Avon*, by *Stedley Castle*; belonging sometime to *John the sonne of Corbusio*. But whether this River *Arrow* tooke name of swiftnesse, as *Tigris* in *Mesopotamia* (for *Arrow* with us, like as *Tigris* among the Persians, betokeneth a shaft) or contrariwise, of the still streame and slow course, which *Ar* in the old French and British Tongue implied, let other men looke who have better observed the nature of this River.

Woodland;

Arden:

Diana Ard-
vena.

Stedley.

Upon this River standeth *Coughston*, the principall mansion house of the *Throckmorton* family of Knights degree, which being spread into a number of faire branches, and fruitfull of fine wits, flourished in this tract especially, ever since they matched in marriage with the daughter and heire of *Spencey*. Not farre from hence is *Ousley*, which also was in ancient time well knowne by the Lords thereof, the *Butlers*, Barons of *Wemy*, from whom it was devolved hereditarily to the *Ferrars* of *Ousley*. Whose inheritance, within a short time, was divided betweene *John Lord of Greystoke* and Sir *Ralph Nevill*. Beneath it, upon *Arrow*, standeth *Beauchamps-Court* so named of *Baron Beauchamp of Penwiche*, from whom by the onely daughter of *Edward Willoughby*, sonne to *Robert Willoughby* Baron *Broke*, it came to Sir *Foulque Grevill* a right worshipfull person both for his Knights degree, and for kinde courttesie: whose only sonne, carrying likewise the same name, hath consecrated himselfe so to true Vertue and Nobility, that in nobility of minde he farre surmounteth his parentage and unto whom for his exceeding great deserts toward me, although my heart is not able either

Coughston:
Throckmorton

Ousley.

Beauchamps
Court.
Grevilla.

ther to expresse or render condigne thankfulness, yet in speech will I ever remember, and in silence acknowledge my selfe most deeply indebted.

Henley.

Under this Towne there runneth into *Arrow*, the River *Alne*, which holding only course through the woods, passeth under *Henley* a pretty mercate towne: a Castle was once whereunto belonged the Family of the *Mont-forts*, being Noblemen of great name, which for the pleasant situation among the Woods they called by a French name *Bell-desert*, but this together with the ruines is now buried quite and scantly scene at all. These were defended not from the *Almarian* Family of the *Mont-forts* of France, but from *Turstan de Baistenberg* a Norman: whose inheritance passed at length by the daughters unto the Barons of *Sudley*, and to the *Frevills*. In the place where *Arrow* and this *Alne* doe meete together, we saw *Alncester*, by *Medina Paris* called (and that more rightly) *Alencester*, which the inhabitants affirme to have beene a most famous and ancient Towne, and thereupon they will have the name to be *Oldcester*. This, (as we reade in an old Inquisition) was a *Frank-burgh* of *King Henry the First*, and the same King gave that Burgh to *Robert Corbet* for his vice, and when the said *Robert* died, it came by descent to *Sir William of Botreaux*, with

Alncester.

A booke in the Exchequer.

Sir Peter Fitz-Herbert: and when *William of Botreaux* died, the moiety of that Burgh by descent into the hand of *Sir Reginald of Botreaux* as to the heire, who now holdeth it: and when *Peter Fitz-Herbert* died, that moiety descended into the hand of *Herbert*, the son of *Peter*: which *Herbert* gave it to *Sir Robert de Chaundoy*: But now it is deemed a very great Towne become a small Mercate of wares and trade. Howbeit exceeding much frequented for the Corne Faire there holden. This hath for a neere neighbour *Arrow* according to the name of the River, whose Lord *Thomas Burdett* for his dependence upon *George Duke of Clarence*, words unadvisedly uttered, and hardly construed through the iniquity of the time, lost his life. But by his grand daughter married to *Edward Conway* brother to *Sir Hugh Conway of Wales* a gracious Prince *King Henry the Seventh*, the knightly Family of the *Conways* have ever flourished and laudably followed the profession of Armes.

Arrow. Burdett.

Wroxhall. Badefley. Balshall. Register of the Templars, and Order of Saint John of Jerusalem.

But East from the river, and higher among the Woods, which now begin to grow thin, stand these townes under named *Wroxhall*, where *Hugh de Hattin* founded a Priory; *Badefley* belonging in times past to the *Clintons*, now to the *Kings*: *Al Balshall*, sometimes a Commandery of the Templars, which *Roger de Mowbray* gave unto them; whose liberality to the order of Templars was so great, that by a common consent in their Chapter they made a decree, that himselfe might remaine and pay any of the brotherhood whomsoever, in case hee had trespassed against the statutes and ordinances of that Order, and did withall before him acknowledge the same: yea and the Knights of the Order of *Saint Iohn of Ierusalem*, unto whom the Templars possessions in England were assigned over (for our Ancestours in those daies held it a deadly sinne to prophane things consecrated to God) granted a shew of thankfulness unto *Iohn Mowbray of Arbolme*, the successour of the foresaid *Roger*, that himselfe and his successours in every of their Covents and assemblies should receive and entertained alwaies in the second place next unto the King.

See the Statute of Templars.

Kenelworth commonly Killingworth.

More North-east, where wilde Brookes meeting together make a broad pool among the Parkes, and so soone as they are kept in with banks runne in a Channell seated *Kenelworth*, in times past commonly called *Kenelworde*, but corruptly *Kenelworth*: and of it taketh name a most ample, beautifull and strong Castle, encompassed all about with Parkes, which neither *Kenelph*, nor *Kenelm*, ne yet *Kenelph* but a some doe dreame, but *Geffrey Clinton* Chamberlaine unto *King Henry the First*, and his sonne with him (as may be shewed by good evidences) when he had founded there before a Church for *Canons Regular*. But *Henry* his Nephew in the fourth degree, having no issue, sold it unto *King Henry the Third*, who gave it in frankmorteage to *Simon Montfort* Earle of *Leicester* together with his sister *Almar*. And soone after when enmity was kindled betwene the King and Earle *Simon*: and the flaine in the bloody warres which he had raised upon faire pretexts against his Soveraigne, it endured six moneths siege, and in the end was surrendered up to the King.

aid, who annexed this Castle as an inheritance to *Edmund* his sonne Earle of *Lancaster*. At which time, there went out and was proclaimed from hence an Edict, which our Lawyers use to call *Dictum de Kenelworth*, whereby it was enacted, That whosoever had tooke Armes against the King should pay every one of them five yeeres rent of their lands, &c. A severe, yet a good and wholesome course, without effusion of blood against rebellious subjects, who compassing the destruction of the State, built all their hopes upon nothing else but diffentions. But this Castle through the bountifull munificence of *Queene Elizabeth*, was given and granted to *Robert Dudley* Earle of *Leicester*, who, to repaire and adorne it, spared for no coste: in so much as if a man consider either the gallant building, or the large Parkes, it would scorne (as it were) to be ranged in a third place amongst the Castles in England.

Next after this, to keepe on the journey that my selfe made, I saw *Solyhill*: but in it, setting aside the Church, there is nothing worth fight: Then, *Bremicham*, full of inhabitants, and resounding with hammers and anvils, for the most of them are Smiths. The lower part thereof standeth very waterish: the upper riseth with faire buildings: for the credite and praise whereof, I may not reckon this in the last place, that the Noble and martiall Family of the *Bremichams* Earles of *Louth*, &c. in *Ireland* fetched their originall and name from hence. Then, in the utmost skirt of this land fetched their originall and name from hence. Then, in the utmost skirt of this Shire North-westward, *Sutton Colfield* standing in a woody and on a churlish hard Soile, glorieth of *John Poy* Bishop of *Excester* there borne and bred: who in the Raigne of *King Henry the Eighth*, when this little Towne had lien a great while as dead, raised it up againe with buildings, priviledges, and a Grammar Schoole. As I went downe from hence Southward I came to *Coleshull*, a Towne sometime of the *Clintons*, and to *Maxstoke Castle* neighbouring to it, which acknowledged by a continuall line of hereditary succession for his Lords, the *Limsfies*, who were also Lords of *Wolverley*, the *Odingells* that came out of *Flanders*, and the *Clintons*, men of greatest worth and worship in their times.

Bremicham.

* Or Birminghams.

Lower yet, in the mids of this Woodland standeth *Coventrey* so called, as we take it, of a Crovet of Monkes, considering that we terme in our tongue such a brotherhood, a *Covent* and *Covent*: and it is oftentimes in our Histories and Pontificall Decrees named *Coventria*: as for example in this one passage: ** Vel non est compos sui Episcopus Coventriae, vel nimis videtur a se scientiam repulisse*. Yet there be, that would have this name to be taken from that little Brooke that runneth within the City at this day called *Shirburn*, and in an ancient Charter of the Priory, is written *Cuenisford*. Well, whence so ever it was so called, in the foregoing age, growing wealthy by clothing and making of Caps, it was the onely Mart and City of trade in all these parts, frequented also and peopled more than ordinarily a midland place: as being a City very commodiously seated, large, sweet, and neat, fortified with strong Wallles, and set out with right goodly houses: among which there rise up on high two Churches of rare workmanship, standing one hard by the other, and matched, as it were, as concurrents, the one consecrated to the *Holy Trinity*, the other to *Saint Michael*. Yet hath it nothing within it, that one would say is of great antiquity. And the most ancient monument of all, as it may seeme, was the Monastery or Priory, the ruines whereof I saw neere unto those Churches: which Priory *King Canutus* founded first for religious Nunnes, who when they were within a while after throwne out, in the yeere 1043 *Leislie* Earle of the *Mercians* enlarged, and in manner built anew, with so great a shew and bravery of gold and silver (these be the very words of *William Malmesbury*) that the walls seemed too narrow for to receive the treasure of the Church, and the coste bestowed there was wonderfull to as many as beheld it: for, out of one beame were scraped 50. Markes of silver. And he endowed it with so great livings, that *Robert de Limsie*, Bishop of *Lichfield* and *Chester* translated his See hither, as it were to the golden land of *Lydia*: to the end (for so writeth the said *Malmesbury*) that out of the very treasure of the Church he might by stealth convey, wherewith to fill the Kings hand, wherewith to avoid the Popes business, and wherewith to satisfie the greedinesse of the Romanists. But this See, few yeeres after was removed againe to *Lichfield*: yet so, as that one and the selfe same Bishop, car-

Homerus 3. cap. 14. Decret. * The Bishop of Coventry is either beside himselfe, or seemeth to have rejected knowledge and learning, too too much.

* Of middle England.

Lords of
Coventry.
1050.
Florilegus.

carried the name both of *Lichfield* and of *Coventry*: The first Lord of this City, so farre as I can learne, was this *Leofricke*, who being very much offended and angry with the Citizens, oppressed them with most heave tributes, which he would remit upon no other condition, at the earnest suite of his wife *Gediva*, unless she would herselfe ride on horse-backe naked through the greatest and most inhabited street of the City: which she did in deed, and was so covered with her faire long haire, that (if we may beleeve the common sort) shee was seene of no body, and thus shee did set free her Citizens of *Coventry* from many payments for ever. From *Leofricke*, it came into the hands of the Earles of *Chester*, by *Lucie* his sonne *Algars* daughter: for, shee had beene married to *Ranulph* the first of that name, and the third Earle of *Chester* out of this line: who granted unto *Coventry* the same liberties that *Lincolne* had, and gave a great part of the City unto the Monkes: the rest and *Chilmore*, which is the Lords Manour hard by the City, hee reserved to himselfe and to his heires. After whose death, when for want of issue male, the inheritance was divided betweene the sisters, *Coventry* came at length mediately by the Earles of *Arundell* unto *Roger Mortimer*, whose grand sonne *Robert*, passed over all his right, for defaults of issue male of his body begotten, unto *Queene Isabel* mother to *King Edward the Third*: To have and to hold during the whole life of the *Queene* herselfe, and after her decease to remaine unto *John of Eltham* the said Kings brother, and to the heires of his body begotten, and for defaults, the mainder to *Edward King of England*, &c. For thus is it to be seene in the Fine, in the second yeere of *King Edward the Third*. Now, the said *John of Eltham* was afterwards created Earle of *Cornwall*, and this place became annexed to the Earldome of *Cornwall*. From which time it hath flourished in great state: Kings have bestowed many immunities upon it, and *King Edward the Third* especially, who permitted them to chuse a Major and two Bailiffes, and to build and embattle a Wall about the City. *Henry the Sixth*, who laying unto it certaine small Townes adjoining, granted that it should be an entire County corporate by it selfe, (the very words of the Charters in that sort) in deed and name, and distinct from the County of *Warwicke*. At which time in lieu of Bailiffes he ordained two Sheriffs, and the Citizens beganne to fortifie the City with a most strong Wall: wherein are beautifull Gates: and at one of them called *Gosford Gate*, there hangeth to bee seene a mighty great Shield borne with a Bore, which any man would thinke that either *Guy of Warwicke* or the *Duke of the Forrest* (*Arden*) slew in hunting, when he had turned up with his snout the ground or pond, which at this day is called *Swanwell*, but *Swinwell* in times past, as the authority of ancient Charters doe prove.

As touching the Longitude of this City, it is 25. Degrees, and 52. Scruples: and for the Latitude it is 52. Degrees, and 25. Scruples. Thus much of *Coventry*: yet have you not all this of me, but (willingly to acknowledge by whom I have profited) of *Henry Ferrars* of *Baddesley*, a man both for parentage, and for knowledge of antiquity very commendable, and my especial friend: who both in this place, and so elsewhere hath at all times courteously shewed me the right way when I was lost, and from his candle, as it were, hath lightened mine.

Neere unto *Coventry* North-west ward are placed *Ausley Castle* the habitation in times past of the *Haistings*, who were Lords of *Abergavenny*: and *Brand*, the dwelling place in old time of the *Verdons*: Eastward standeth *Caloughdon*, commonly called the ancient seat of the Lords *Segrave*, from whom it descended to the *Barons Berkeley*, by one of the daughters of *Thomas Mowbray Duke of Norfolk*. These *Segraves* since the time that *Stephen* was Lord chiefe Justice of England, flourished in the honorable estate of Barons, became possessed of the *Chaucombes* Inheritance, while Armes also they bare, viz. A Lion rampant, Argent crowned, Or, in a Shield Sable, &c. *John* the last of them married *Margaret* Dutchesse of *Northfolke*, Daughter of *Thomas Brotherton*; and begat *Elizabeth* a daughter, who brought into the Family of the *Mowbraies* the Dignity of *Marshall of England*, and Title of Duke of *Norfolke*. *Brand* also is not farre from hence, where stood an ancient Castle of the *Mowbraies*, to which many possessions and faire lands thereabout belonged: But the very rubbish of

Ausley.
Brand.

Caledon.
Barons
Segrave.

Segraves Coat
of Armes.

Brinklo Castle.

A this Castle time hath quite consumed; as *Combe Abbey* is scant now apparent which the *Camvills* and *Mowbraies* endowed with possessions, and out of the ruins and reliques whereof, a faire house of the Lord *Haringtons* in this very place is now raised. As you goe East-ward, you meet anon with *Ceaster-Over*, whereof I spake incidently before, belonging to the *Grevills*: neere unto which the *High-way* *Waiting-street*, dividing this shire Northward from *Leicester-shire*, runneth on forward by *High-crosse*, whereof also I have already written, neere unto *Nun-Eaton*, which in ancient time was named *Eaton*. But when *Amice* wife to *Robert Basse* Earle of *Leicester*, as *Henry Knighton* writeth, had founded a Monastery of *Nunnes*, wherein her selfe also became professed, it began of those Nunnes to be called *Nun-Eaton*. And famous it was in the former ages by reason of those religious Virgines holinesse, who devoting themselves continually to prayers, gave example of good life.

Combe Ab-
bay.

A little from this there flourished sometimes *Astley-Castle*, the principall seate of the Familie of *Astley* out of which flourished Barons in the time of *King Edward* the First, Second, and Third: the heire whereof in the end was the second wedded Wife of *Reginald* Lord *Grey of Ruthin*; from whom came the *Gries* Marquesses of *Dorset*: some of whom were entered in a most fine and faire Collegiat Church which *Thomas Lord Astley* founded with a Deane and Secular Chanons.

Astley, or
Rutley.
Baron Astley.

C Somewhat higher, hard by *Waiting street* (for so with the common people wee call the *High-way* made by the Romanes) where as the riuer *Anker* hath a stone bridge over it, stood *MANDVESSEDUM* a very ancient towne, mentioned by *Antonine* the Emperour, which being not altogether deprived of that name, is now called *Mancester*, and in *Nimius* his Catalogue *Caer Mancegued*. Which name, considering there is a stone-quarry hard by, I may ghesse was imposed upon it, of the stones digged forth and hewed out of it. For, out of the *Glossaries* of the British tongue, we finde, that *Main* in the British language signified a Stone, and *Fossad* in the Provinciall tongue to digge out: which being joyned together, may seeme very exprefly to import that ancient name *MANDVESSEDUM*. But what, how great, or how faire (soever it hath been in old time, a very small village it is at this day, containing in it scarce foureteene dwelling houses, and those but little ones, and hath no monument of antiquitie to shew, beside an ancient mount which they call *Old-burie*). For on the one side, *Atherstone* a mercate towne of good resort, where there stood a Church of *Augustine* Friars, now turned into a Chappell (which neverthelesse acknowledgeth *Mancester Church* for her mother) and *Nun-Eaton* on the other side, by their vicinity have left it bare and empty. Close unto *Atherstone* standeth *Mery-Vale*, where *Robert Ferrars* erected a Monastery to God and the blessed *Virgin Mary*, wherein himselfe enwrapped in an Oxe-hide for a shrouding sheet was interred.

Mandevess-
dum.
Mancester.

Merivall.

Beyond these, Northeastward is *Pollesworth*, where *Modwena* an Irish Virgin, of whom there went so great a fame for her holy life, built a religious house for Nuns, which *R. Marmion* a Noble man repaired, who had his Castle hard by at *Shipper-shall*. Neere unto this place also there flourished in the Saxons daies, a towne that now is almost quite gone, called then *SECANDUNUM*, and at this day *Seckinton*; where *Ethelbald* King of the *Mercians* in civill warre about the yeere of our Lord 749. was stabbed to death by *Beared*: and soone after *Offa* slew *Beared*, so that as by bloody meanes he invaded the Kingdome of *Mercia*, he likewise lost the same suddenly.

Pollesworth.

Seckinton.

It remaineth now that we reckon up the Earles of *Warwick*: for, to passe over *Guere*, *Marind*, *Guy* of *Warwick*, of whose actes all England resoundeth, and others of that stamp, whom pregnant wits have at one birth bred and brought forth into the world: *Henry* the sonne of *Roger de Beau-mont*, and brother to *Robert* Earle of *Mellent*, was the first Earle descended of Normans blood: who had married *Margaret*

Earles of
Warwick.

B b b

garce

garet the daughter of *Ernulphe de Hesdin* Earle of *Perch*, a most mighty and puissant man.

Out of this Family, there bare this Honourable title, *Roger* the sonne of *Henry*, *William* the sonne of *Roger*, who died in the thirtieth yeere of King *Henry* the Second, *Walleran* his brother, *Henry* the sonne of *Walleran*, *Thomas* his sonne, who deceased without issue in the fixe and twentieth yeere of King *Henry* the Third, leaving behinde him *Margery* his sister, who being Countesse of *Warwicke*, and *Baraine*, departed this life: yet her two husbands, first, *John Marechal*, then *John de Plessey* or *Plessey*, in their wives right and through their Princes favour mounted up to the Honourable dignitie of Earles of *Warwicke*.

Now when these were departed without any issue by that *Margery*, *Walleran* Uncle unto the said *Margery* succeeded them: After whom, dying also childlesse, his sister *Alice* enjoyed the inheritance: Afterwards her sonne *William*, called *Malduit* and *Manduit* of *Hanslap*, who left this world and had no children. Then *Isabel* the said *William Malduits* sister being bestowed in marriage upon *William de Beauchamp* Lord of *Elmestry*, brought the Earledome of *Warwicke* into the Familie of the *Beauchamps*; who, if I deceive not my selfe, for that they came of a daughter of *Ursus de Abbot*, gave the Beare for their cognifance, and left it to their posteritie. Out of this house there flourished fixe Earles and one Duke; *William* the sonne of *Isabel*, *John*, *Guy*, *Thomas*, *Thomas* the younger, *Richard* and *Henry*, unto whom King *Henry* the Sixth graunted this preheminance and prerogative without any precedent, to be the first and chiefe Earle of England, and to carry this stile, *Baron Praecomes totius Angliae, & Comes Warwici*, that is, *Henry chiefe Earle of all England, and Earle of Warwicke*: he nominated him also *King of the Isle of Wighe*, and afterwards created him Duke of *Warwicke*, and by these expresse words of his Patene, graunted, *That he should take his place in Parliaments and elsewhere next unto the Duke of Norfolk and before the Duke of Buckingham*. One onely daughter he had named *Anne*, whom in the Inquisitions wee finde entituled Countesse of *Warwicke*, and there died a child. After her succeeded *Richard Nevill* who had married *Anne* sister to the said Duke of *Warwicke*, a man of an undaunted courage, but wavering and untruttie, the very tennisse-ball, in some sort, of fortune; who although he were no King, was above Kings, as who deposed King *Henry* the Sixth (a most bountifull Prince to him) from his regall dignitie, placed *Edward* the Fourth in the royall throne, and afterwards put him downe too, restored *Henry* the Sixth againe to the Kingdome, enwrapped England within the most wofull and lamentable flames of civil warre, which himselfe at the length hardly quenched with his owne blood. After his death *Anne* his Wife by Act of Parliament was excluded and debarred from all her lands for ever, and his two daughters, heires to him, and heires apparant to their mother, being married to *George* Duke of *Clarence*, and *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*, were enabled to enjoy all the said lands, in such wise as if the said *Anne* their mother were naturally dead. Whereupon the name, stile and title of Earle of *Warwicke* and *Sarisbury* was graunted to *George* Duke of *Clarence*, who soone after was unnaturally dispatched by a sweet death in a Butte of *Malvesey* by his suspicious brother King *Edward* the Fourth: His young sonne *Edward* was stiled Earle of *Warwicke*, and being but a very child was beheaded by King *Henry* the Seventh to secure himselfe and his posteritie.

The death of this *Edward* our Ancestors accounted to be the full period, and final end of the long lasting warre betweene the two royall houses of *Lancaster* and *York*. Wherein, as they reckoned, from the twenty eight yeere of *Henry* the Sixth unto this, being the fifteenth of *Henry* the Seventh, there were thirteene fields fought, three Kings of England, one Prince of Wales, twelve Dukes, one Marques, eightene Earles, with one Vicont, and twenty three Barons, besides Knights and Gentlemen, lost their lives. From the death of this young Earle of *Warwicke* this title lay asleepe, which King *Henry* the Eighth feared as a fire-brand of

Placita E. 3.
Rotulo 234.

Rot. Parl. 23.
H. 6.

24. H. 6.

Ann. 12. Ed. 4.
Dead by Par-
liament.

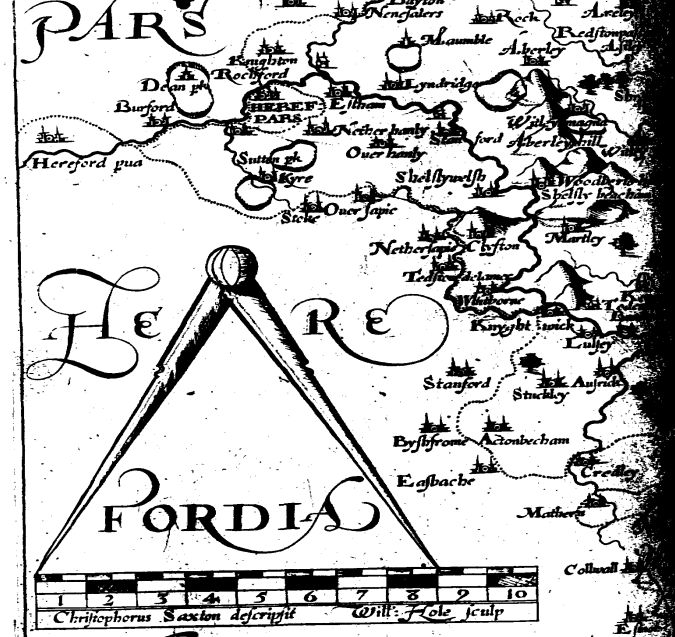
Period of the
civill warre be-
twene Lanca-
ster and York.

of the State, by reason of the combustion which that *Richard Nevill*, that whip-king (as some tearmed him) had raised, untill that King *Edward* the Sixth conferred it upon *John Dudley*, that derived his pedigree from the *Beauchamps*, who, like unto that *Richard* abovesaid, going about in *Queene Maries* daies to turne and translate Scepters at his pleasure, for his Traiterous deepe ambition lost his head. But his sonnes, first *John*, when his father was now Duke of *Northumberland*, by a courteous custome usually received held this title for a while: and afterwards *Ambrose* a most worthy personage, both for warlike prowesse and sweetnesse of nature through the fauour of *Queene Elizabeth* received in our remembrance, the Honour of Earle of *Warwick* to him and his heires males, and for defect of them, to *Robert* his brother, and the heires males of his body lawfully begotten. This Honour *Ambrose* bare with great commendation, and died without children in the yeere one thousand five hundred eighty nine, shortly after his brother *Robert* Earle of *Leicester*.

In this County there be Parish Churches 158.

Bbb 2

WORCES.



STAT
PAR

PIE

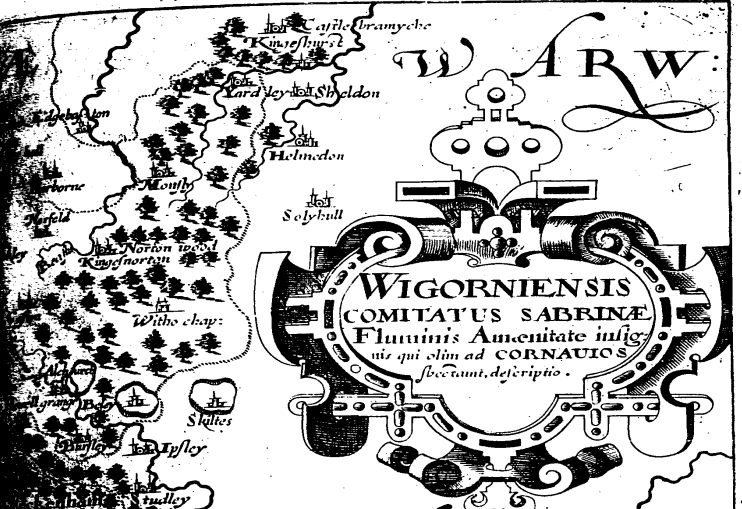
PARS

HE
RE

FORDIA

PARS

Lydburye



PARS



GLO
CES
IE
PARS

Worcester PARSA

PARS

WORCESTER-SHIRE.



The second region of the ancient *Cornavii*, having now changed the name, is called in Latine *Wigorniensis Comitatus*, in the English Saxon tongue *Wine-cea-ſter-ſcype*, and now commonly of the principall Towne in it *WORCESTER-SHIRE*: the inhabitants whereof, together with those who joyning unto them round about in *Bedes* daies, before that England was divided into Shires, were termed *Wicci*.

Wicci.

Which name, if it were not given them of the river having so many windings, which they dwell by (for such turnings and curving reaches of a river, the English Saxons, as I have already said, called *Wic*) may seeme to have been derived of those *Salt-pits*, that the old English-men in their language named *Wiches*. For there be here very notable *Salt-pits*, and many salt springs often times have been found, which notwithstanding are stopped up, because it was provided (as we read) that for the saving of woods salt should not be boyled but in certaine places. Neither let it seeme strange, that places have their names given them from *Salt-pits*, considering that wee may meet with many such here and there in every Country, and our Ancestors the Germans, as *Tacitus* writeth, had a religious persuasion and believe, that such places approach neereſt to Heaven, and that mens prayers were no where ſooner heard of the gods.

Salt-pits.

This County, on which *Warwick-shire* confineth on the East, *Gloceſter-shire* on the South, bounded West-ward with *Hereford-shire* and *Shrop-shire*, North-east with *Stafford-shire*, to say all in one word, hath ſo temperate an ayre and ſoile ſo favourable, that for healthfulneſſe and plenty, it is not inferiour to their neighbour Countries, and in one part for deinty Cheeſe ſurpaſſeth them: yeelding ſuch ſore of Peares, as none other the like; and albeit they are not ſo pleaſing to theſe deinty and delicate mouthes, yet out of their winiſh juice, they make a baſtard kinde of wine called *Pyrry*, which they drinke very much, although it be (as other drinks of that kinde) both cold and full of winde. Neither is it if you reſpect waters, leſſe pleaſant and commodious: for, in every place there be paſſing ſweet rivers, which afford in great abundance the moſt delicate kinde of Fiſhes. And to let thoſe runne by that are of leſſe account, *Severne* that noble and renowned river carrieth his ſtreame along, through the middeſt of the ſhire, from North to South: and *Avon*, that cometh downe out of *Warwick-shire* to meet with *Severne*, watereth the South part thereof.

Kings Norton.

Pyrry.

Severn, fiſt of all at his very entry, paſſeth betweene *Kiddermiſter* and *Beawdley*. This *Beawdley* worthily ſo called for the beautifull ſite thereof, ſtanderh moſt pleaſantly upon the hanging of an hill, and hovereth over the river on the Weſt ſide: of late daies well knowne for the admirable tallneſſe of trees growing in the Forreſt of *Wyre* adjoyning, which now in a manner be all gone. Whence our Poet and Antiquary *Leland* wrote thus.

Kiddermiſter.
Beawdley.

*Delicium rerum Bellus Locus, undique floret
Fronde coronatus Viriana tempora Sylva.*

Beawdley a fine and deinty thing, is goodly to be ſeene.

All dight about with guirland freſh of *Wyre* that Forreſt greene.

But now is this little Towne in ſpeech and requeſt onely for the pleaſantneſſe and beaurie of it ſelfe; and withall for the Kings houſe *Tiken-hall*: which King Henry the Seventh built to be a reryring place for Prince *Arthur*, at which time he granted ſome liberties to *Beawdley*. But farther from the river banke, Eaſtward is *Kiddermiſter* over againſt it, called alſo *Kidelmiſter*, a faire Towne and hath a great Mercate of all commodities, well frequented, parted in twaine by the little River *Stowre* that runneth through it: and the greateſt ornaments now belonging thereto

thereto are first, a passing beautifull Church, wherein some of the worshipfull family of the *Corkes* lie buried, and the goodly gallant house of the *Blounts* of knights of greece, descended from those of *Kinles*: but in old time this place was of most note for the Lords thereof, the *Bisshops*, men in their time right honorable: whose rich possessions being at length dismembred and divided among sisters, came partly to the *Barons of Abergervenny* and in part to a *Lazarhouse of women in Wiltshire*, which one of the said sisters, being her selfe infected with the *Leprosie* built for them that had the same disease, and enriched it with her owne patrimony and child's part. Afterwards it came to have a Baron, for King Richard the Second created Sir *Iohn Beauchamp* *Sheriff* of his household, Baron *Beauchamp of Kidderminster*, by letters Patents; and he counted the first Baron so created. But he soone after by the Barons (who together with the Commons rose, and contemning the Kings authority, called as they were most deere unto the King to give an account for their misgovernment of the Common-wealth) was with other right worthy persons, in malice to the King, condemned and beheaded.

Severne turning his course somewhat awry from thence, saluteth *Hertlebury* a Cattle of the Bishops of *Worcester* not far distant, and goeth amaine to *Holt Castle*, located of a very thick wood there, belonging sometime to the *Abbots*; after, to the *Beauchamps*, who springing from *William Beauchamp* surnamed the *Blind Baron*, grew up afterwards to be a most honorable family; the inheritance whereof descended at length to *Gysse* and *Pemysion*: from hence runneth *Severne* downe, feeding such number of fresh-water Lampries, as that Nature may seeme in this place to have made a very pond or Stew for them: such as the *Romanes* devised in ancient times when they grew lavish in riotous excessse. These fishes we call *Lampries* of the Latin word *Lampetra*, as one would say of licking the rocks, are like to *Eeles*, slippery and blackish, howbeit beneath on their bellies, somewhat blew: on either side of their bodies they receive and let in water at seven holes, for that they want gills altogether. Most commendable they are in the spring time, as being then very sweet: for in Summer, the inner nerve or string, which stands them instead of a backbone, waxeth hard. The *Italians* make them more delicate in roast, by a speciall and peculiar seasoning: For they take a *Lamprie* and in *Malvesy* kill it, the mouth they close up with a nutmeg, fill all the holes with as many cloves: and when it is rolled up round, putting thereto fillbard-nut kernels stamped, crumbs of bread, oile, malvesy, and spices, they boyle it with great care and certaine turnings over a soft and temperate fire of coles in a frying pan. But what have I to doe with such cookery and *Apicius*?

Beneath *Holt*, *Severne* openeth his East banke to let in the river *Salwarpe* coming a pace toward him. This hath his first veins out of *Lickey* hill most eminent in the North part of this Shire, neare unto which at *Frankley* the family of the *Littletons* was planted by *Iohn Littleton*, alias *Westcote* the famous Lawyer, Justice in the Kings Bench in the time of King Edward the fourth, to whose Treatise of Tenures the students of our Common Law are no lesse beholden, than the *Civilians* to *Iustinus Institor*. But to returne: This *Salwarpe* which we speake of runneth downe by *Bransgrove*, a mercate towne not of the meanest reckoning and not far from *Grafton* the seat of a younger family of the *Talbots*, since King Henry the Seventh gave it to Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, a younger sonne of *John*, the second Earle of *Sherburne*: whom also for his martiall valour and singular wisdom he admitted into the society of the Order of the Garter, and made Governor of *Calis*. Then runneth *Salwarpe* downe to *Dunwich* (*Dunwich* some terme it, of the Salt pits and the wetish ground on which it standeth, like as *Hyetia* in *Bœtia* tooke name of the dirty situation) where three fountaines yeelding plenty of water to make Salt of, divided a sunder by a little brooke of fresh water passing betweene, by a peculiar gift of nature spring out: out of which most pure white Salt is boyled for fixe moneths every yeere, to wit, from Midsummer to Midwinter, in many set furnaces round about. Wherewith what a mighty deale of wood is consumed, *Fekenham Forest* (where trees grew sometime thicker) and the woods round about, if men hold their peace, will by their thinnesse, make manifest more

Baron Beauchamp of Kidderminster.

Hertlebury.
Holt, in old English woods.

Lampries.

Littleton.

Grafton.

Dunwich.

Salt Springs.

Fekenham Forest.

more and more. But if I should write that the learned Canonist *Richard de la Wiche* Bishop of *Chichester*, here borne, obtained with his fervent prayers these Salt Springs out of the bowels of the earth, I feare me, least some might thinke me both over injurious to the providence of God, and also too credulous of old wives traditions. Yet were our ancestors in their pious devotion so hasty of beleefe, that they did not onely give credit hereto, yea and recorde it in their writings; but in consideration hereof, yeelded unto that Prelate in some sort divine honour, when Pope *Urban* the Fourth had for his sanctity, and sincere integrity of life canonized him a Saint. But before that ever this *Richard* was borne, *Gervase* of *Tilbury* wrote thus of these Salt Springs, though not altogether truly. In the Bishopricke of *Worcester* there is a country towne not farre from the City named *Wich*, in which at the foote of a certaine little hill, there runneth a most fresh water: in the banke whereof are scented a few pits or wells of a reasonable depth, and their water is most salt. When this water is boyled in Cauldrons, it becommeth thicke and turneth into passing white Salt, and all the Province fetcheth and carrieth it, for that betweene Christmas and the feast of *S. Iohn Baptist* *Nativity*, good the water floweth most salt: The rest of the yeere it runneth somewhat fresh, and nothing good to make Salt: and that which I take to be more wonderfull, when this salt water is run sufficiently for the use of the Country, scarcely overfloweth it to any waste: also when the time is once come of the saltnesse, the same is nothing at all allaid for all the vicinity of the fresh river water, neither is it found in any place neere unto the Sea. Moreover in the very Kings booke which we call *Domesday*, we read thus. In *Wich* the King and Earle have eight salt pits, which in the whole weeke wherein they boyled and wrought, yeelded on the Friday five new Bullions.

Salwarpe having now entertained a small brooke descending from *Chedesley*, where anciently the family of *Foliot* flourished, as afterward at *Longdon*, maketh hast to *Severne* which hath not passed foure miles farther, before he runs hard by *Worcester*, the principall City of this Shire, where he seemeth to passe with a slower streame, as it were, admiring, and wondering thereat all the while he passeth by: and worthy it is I assure you of admiration whether you respect either the antiquity, or the beauty thereof. Certes, for antiquity the Emperour *Antonine* hath made mention of it under the name of *BRANONIUM*, and *Ptolomee* (in whom through the negligence of the transcribers it is misplaced) under the name of *BRANOGENIUM*, after which name the Britans call it yet *Cave Wrangon*. In the Catalogue of *Nimrod*, it is named *Caer Guoragon*, and *Caer Guorcom*, the old English-Saxons afterward called it *Wegape-cear-cep*, and *Wipe-cear-cep*; I dare not say of *Wine* that woody Forest which in old time stretched farre. Since the Conquest, the Latine writers named it *Wigornia* and *Wigornia*. Which name *Ioseph the Monke of Excester* a right elegant Poet in those daies was one of the first that used (if my memory faile me not:) I meane him that is published under the name of *Cornelius Nepos*, in these his elegant verses unto *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

In numerum jam crescit honor, se tertia poscit
Insula, jam meminit Wigornia, Cantia dissit,
Romanus meditatur apex, & naufraga Petri
Ductorem in mediis expectat cymba procellis.

A mitre third now waits for thee, for still thine honour growes;
Thee *Wigorne* still remembereth, now *Canterbury* knowes:
The See of *Rome* doth thinke of thee, and *Peters* ship in feare
Of wracke, amid the boistrous stormes expects thee for to steare.

Probable it is, that the *Romanes* built it, what time as they planted cities at certaine spaces and distances along the East banke of *Severne*, to keepe in the Britans beyond *Severne*, like as they did in Germany on the South banke of *Rhene* to repress the incursions of the Germans. It standeth, in a place rising somewhat with a gentle ascent, by the rivers side that hath a faire bridge with a tower over it: proudly bearing it selfe in old time, as I finde it written in an ancient Manuscript roule, of the *Romanes* wall: and even now also it is well and strongly walled. But the fame and reputation that it now hath

*
Richard de la Wiche.

Worcester.

Branoegenium.

hath, ariseth from the Inhabitants, who are many in number, courteous and wealthy by the trade of clothing; from their faire and neat houses; from the number of Churches, but most of all from the Bishops See, which *Sexwulph* Bishop of the *Anglians* erected there in the yeere of Christ 680. having built a Cathedral Church on the South side of the City, which hath been often repaired, and which the Bishops and Monkes by little and little have drawne out in length Westward, almost to the very brinke of *Severn*. Truly it is a passing faire and stately building adorned with Monuments and Tombes of King *Iohn*, *Arihur* Prince of *Wales*, and divers of the *Beauchamps*; and in these daies, it is no lesse notable by the Deane and Chapter, whom they call *Prebendaries* placed therein, than it was in times past for the Monkes, or the Cloister Priests: For, presently upon the first foundation, likewise in other religious houses of England, married Priests were placed heere, who carrying a long time a great opinion of holinesse governed the Churches, untill that *Danistane* Archbishop of *Canterbury* had decreed in a Synode, *That from thence forward the religious men in England should live a single life*. For then *Oswald* Bishop of this City who promoted the Monastical life as busily as any whosoever, remooed the Priests, and brought in Monkes. Which King *Eadgar* testifieth in these words, *The Monasteries of old Monkes, as of Virgins have bene destroyed, and quite neglected throughout England, which I have now determined to repaire to the glory of God, for my soules health, and to multiply the number of Gods servants and hand-maides. And now already I have set up four and forty Monasteries with Monkes and Nunnas in them; and if Christ spare me life I am determined in offering my devout munificence to God, for to proceed to fifty, even the just number of a jubilee. Whereupon at this present, that Monastery which the reverend Bishop Oswald in the Episcopall See of Wipe-ceastre amply enlarged to the honour of Mary the holy Mother of God, and by casting out those Clerkes, &c. hath with my assent and favour appointed there Monkes the religious servants of God; I my selfe doe by my royal authority confirme, and by the counsell and consent of my Peeres and Nobles, corroborate and subject to those religious men living a sole and single life, &c.* Long time after when the state of the Church and Clergy here, partly by the Danes incursion, and in part by civil dissensions, was so greatly weakened and brought upon the very knees, that in lieu of that multitude of religious persons whom *Oswald* had heere placed, scarce twelve remained: *Wolstan* Bishop of this Church about the yeer of the worlds redemption 1090 put to his helping hand, raised it up againe, and brought them to the number of 50. ye and built a new Church for them. *Wolstan* I say, a man not so learned (the times then were such) but of that simple sincerity without all hypocrisie, so severe also and austere of life, that as he was terrible to the wicked, so he was venerable to the good, and after his death the Church registred him in the number of Saines. But King *Henry* the Eighth suppressed and expelled the Monkes after they had in all plenty and fulnesse lived more than 500. yeeres, and in their roomes he substituted a *Dean* and *Prebendaries*, and withall erected a Grammar-schoole for the training up of youth. Hard by this Church the bare name and plot of a Castle remaineth, which (as we reade in *William* of *Malmesburies* booke of Bishops) *Ursus* appointed *Sheriff* of *Worcestershire* by *William* the Conquerour, built under the very nose and in the mouth well nere of the Monkes, in so much as he cut away from them a part of their Church-yard. But this Castle through the iniquity of time and casualty of fire was consumed many yeeres ago. The City it selfe also hath been burnt more than once: as being set on fire in the yeere of Christ 1041. by *Hardy-Cnut*, who exceedingly incensed against the Citizens, because they had slain his *Huscarles* (for so they termed those domestical Gatherers of the Danes tribute) did not only set fire on the City, but slew the Citizens every others sonne, unlesse it were those that saved them selves in *Beuepleg* an Island compassed in with the River. Howbeit, as we finde written in King *William* the Conquerours booke, in King *Edward* the Confessours time, *It had many Burgeses, and for fifteen Hides discharged it selfe: when the Mint went, every Minter gave twenty shillings at London for to receive coining stamps of money.* In the yeere 1113. a skarfire that came no man knew how, burnt the Castle, caught also with the flames to the roofes of the Church.

Married
Priests.
Register of
Worcester
Church.
Ann. 964.

S. Wolstan.

Marianus
Huscarles.

Church. Likewise in the Raigne of *Stephen*, in the time of *Civill* Warres it was twice on fire: but most dangerously when King *Stephen*, who had to his owne damage given this City unto *Waller* and Earle of *Mellent*, seized it into his owne hands: Anno 1155. Stephen R. howbeit he was not able at that time to winne the Castle. Nevertheless it raised it selfe up againe out of the ashes in a goodlier forme alwaies than it had before: and flourishd in a right good state of civill government, governed by two Bailiffes chosen out of 24. Citizens, two Aldermen, and two Chamberlains, with a Common Council consisting of 48. Citizens. As touching the Geographical position of this City, it is distant in Longitude from the West Meridian 21. Degrees and 52. Minutes: and the North Pole is elevated 52. Degrees and 12. Minutes.

From Worcester the River *Severn* running on still Southward, passeth beside *Pe-* From Worcester the River *Severn* running on still Southward, passeth beside *Pe-* wick, the seat in times past of Sir *Iohn Beauchamp*, whom King *Henry* the Sixth raised up to the state of a Baron: and within a small time, the female heires brought the inheritance to the *Willoughbies* of *Broke*, the *Reads*, and the *Lygons*: then runneth it through most rich and redolent meadows by *Hanley Castle*, belonging sometimes to the Earles of *Glocester*, and by *Upton* a Mercate Towne of great name: where peeces of *Romane* money are oftentimes found. Not farre from hence upon the banke on the right hand, the *Severn* beholdeth *Malvern Hills*, hills in deed or rather great and high mountaines, which for the space of seven miles or thereabout, doe as it were by degrees rise higher and higher, dividing this Shire from the County of *Hertford*. On the brow of which Hills, *Gilbert Clare* Earle of *Glocester* did cast a Ditch in times past, to make a partition betweene his possessions and the lands of the Church of *Worcester*; a peece of worke which is at this day seene not without wonder. Over against those hills, and in like distance almost from the other banke, *Bredon Hills* being farre lesse, yet in emulation, as it were, to match them, mount aloft: among which *Emeline Castle* belonging sometimes to *Ursus* or *Ursus D'Abiot* maketh a goodly shew: by whose daughter and heire *Emeline*, it came hereditarily to the *Beauchamps*. At the foot of these hills lieth *Bredon* a Village, concerning the Monastery whereof *Offa* King of the *Mercians* saith thus: *I Offa King of the Mercians will give land containing from times five Acres of Tributaries unto the Monastery that is named Bredon in the Province of the Wiccij, and to the Church of blessed Saint Peter Prince of the Apostles there and in that place standing, which Church Eanwulph my grandfather erected to the praise and glory of the ever living God.*

Under these *Bredon hills* Southward you see two villages named *Washborne* (whence came the surname to a very ancient and worshipfull Family in this Tract) standing in a parcell of this Province dismembred as it were from the rest of the body: of which kinde there be other parcels here and there scattering all about. But what should be the cause, I am not able to resolve, unlesse haply those that in old time were governors, adjoined to their government their owne lands that lay neere unto the Region which they then governed. Now *Avon*, from above runneth downe and speeds himselfe to *Severn*, who in this shire watereth *Evesham*, so called, as the Monkes write, of one *Eoves*, *Swinheard* to *Egwin* Bishop of *Worcester*, whereas before time, the name of it was *Eath-borne* and *Heath-field*. A very proper Towne situate upon a hill arising from the River: in the Suburb, as it were, whereof, was sometime *Bengeworth Castle* at the Bridge head; which Castle *William de Audevill* the Abbot recovered by law against *William Beauchamp*, utterly rased it, and caused the place to be hallowed for a Church-yard. A Towne this is, well knowne by reason of the Abbey, which that noble *Egwin*, with the helpe of King *Kenred* the sonne of *Wolpher* King of the *Mercians* founded about the yeere of our Lord 700. knowne likewise for the vale under it named thereof, *The Vale of Evesham*, which for plentiful fertility hath well deserved to be called the Garnary of all these countries; so good and plentiful is the ground in yielding the best corne abundantly. But most knowne in elder time by occasion of the great overthrow of the Barons and our *Catiline*, *Simon Montfort*, Earle of *Leicester*. For, this man being of a lewd disposition and profound perfidiousnesse, hath taught us that which another truly said, *That good turnes are so long acceptable, as they*

Anno 1155.
Stephen R.

Barons de
Pewick.

Hanley:
Upton.

Malvern hills.

Bredon hills.

Emeline
Castle.

Bredon.
The booke of
Worcester.

Washborne.

Parcell of
shires severed
from the rest of
the body.

Eovesham.

The booke of
Evesham Mo-
nastery.
About the
yeere 1157.

The Vale of
Evesham.

Simon Mont-
fort.

they may be requitable. For, when King Henry the Third had with full hand heaped upon him all the benefits he could, yea and given him his owne sister in marriage, what other fruit reaped he of his so great bounty, but most bitter and deadly hate? For, he raised a most dangerous Warre, hee spoiled shamefully a great part of England, under pretence of restoring the common wealth and maintaining liberty: yet ther left he any thing undone, to bring the King under, to change the State, and of a Monarchy to bring in an Oligarchy. But in the end, after that fortune had for a while favourably smiled upon him, he was slaine at this place with many others of his complices by the prowess of Prince Edward: and forthwith, the sinke of lawlesse rebels, being as it were pumped and emptied out of the common weale, joyfull pain which hee had banished, shone againe most comfortably on every side. Upon the same River hard by, standeth *Charleston*, the possession sometime of the ancient family of *Hanfacres*, Knights, but now of the *Dingleies*, or *Dingleies*, who being descended from that ancient stocke of the *Dingleies* in *Lancashire*, came unto this by hereditary succession. More beneath, in the primitive Church of our English Nation, there was another place wherein religious men lived to God, then called *Ficotandryc*, now, *Flatbury*: and neere unto it *Persbor*, in the English Saxons language *Pepponum*, taking the name from *Peares*: which, as we read in that worthy Historiographer *William of Malmesbury*, *Egelward Duke of Dorset*, a man bearing no niggardly mind, but extending liberall, founded and finished in King *Eadgars* time. But what detriment hath it sustained? one part of it, the ambition of the rich seized upon, another part obliuion hath buried; but the greatest portion King *Edward the Confessor*, and King *William the First* bestowed on the Church of *Westminster*.

Then receiveth *Avon* a Riveret from the North, upon which standeth *Baldry* a feat of the *Winters*, out of which were *Robert Winter* and his brother *Thomas*, who when as they were of the hellish damned crew in the Gunpowder Treason, for their memory lie damned. From thence *Avon* running gently downe by *Sireham* to the habitation of the *Russels*, Knights by degree, of ancient descent, in the end our late King his owne streame into *Severn*.

Neere to these places, on this South side, is *Oswaldslaw Hundred*, so called of *Oswald Bishop of Worcester*, who obtained it for himselfe of King *Eadgar*. The immunitie whereof, when *William Conquerour* made a Survey and taxation of all England, was registred in the *Domesday booke*, after this manner: *The Church of Saint Mary of Worcester hath the Hundred called Oswaldslaw wherein lye 300. Hides, out of which the Bishop of the same Church by ancient order and custome hath all the revenues of tithes and all customes or duties there, appertaining to the Lords vicuall, and the Kings forie and his owne: so that no Sheriffe may hold there any action or suit, neither in any pleas in any other cause whatsoever. This witnesseth the whole County.*

A place there is about this Shire, but precisely where it should be, is not certainly knowne, called *Augustynes-ace*, that is, *Augustines Oke*, at which *Augustine* the Apostle of the Englishmen and the Bishops of Britaine met, and after they had disputed and debated the matter hotely for a good while, rouching the celebration of *Easter*, preaching Gods Word also to the English Nation, and of administering Baptisme according to the rites of the Roman Church, in the end when they could not agree, they departed on both sides with discontented mindes, upon their dissenting opinions.

This Province since the Normans comming in, had for the first Sheriffe, *Orso de Abbot*, unto whom and his heires, King *William the Conquerour* granted that office together with faire and large possessions. After him succeeded his sonne *Roger*, who (as *William of Malmesbury* the Historiographer reporteth) enjoying his fathers possessions, through the high displeasure and indignation of King *Henry the first* was seized thereof, because in a furious fit of anger hee had commanded one of the Kings Officers to be killed. But this Sheriffedome was by *Emeline* this *Rogers* sister, translated hereditarily into the Family of the *Beauchamps*. For, he was married to *Walter Beauchamp*, whom king *Stephen*, after he had put downe *Miles of Gloucester*, ordained Constable of England. Within some few yeeres king *Stephen* created *Walleran* Earle of *Meane* twin-brother

twin-brother to *Robert Bassu* Earle of *Leicester*, the first Earle of *Worcester*, having given unto him the Citie of *Worcester*: who afterwards, became a Monke and died at *Pratella* in *Normandie*, in the yeere 1166. As for his sonne *Robert*, who had wedded the daughter of *Reginald Earle of Cornwall*, and advanced the Standard of rebellion against King *Henry the Second*, and *Peter* his sonne, who in the yeere 1203, revolted to the French, neither of them used the title of *Worcester*, but onely of *Meane*, so farre as ever I could yet read. For King *Henry the Second* who succeeded *Stephen*, would not easily suffer that any under him should enjoy the honors received from *Stephen* an usurper, and his enemy. For (as I finde in the *Annales of Worcester Abbey*) he put downe those imaginary and counterfeit Earles, among whom King *Stephen* had inconsiderately distributed, and given away all the revenewes pertaining to the *Exchequer*. Neither to my knowledge, was there any one that bare the title of the Earldome of *Worcester*, untill the daies of King *Richard the Second*. For he bestowed it upon Sir *Thomas Percy*, who, when he conspired against King *Henry the Fourth*, was taken at the battaile of *Shrewsbury*, and there beheaded. Then Sir *Richard Beauchamp* descended from the *Abbots*, received afterward this honor at the hands of King *Henry the Fifth*. Who shortly after in the French war lost his life at the siege of *Meaux* in *Brye*, leaving one onely daughter married to Sir *Edward Nevill*, from whom descended the late Lords of *Abergevenny*. Afterward King *Henry the Sixth* created *John Tiptoft*, Earle of *Worcester*: But when he presently taking part with King *Edward the Fourth*, had applied himselfe in a preposterous obsequiousness to the humor of the said King, and being made Constable of England plained the part, as it were, of the butcher in the cruell execution of diverse men of qualitie, himselfe, when as King *Henry the Sixth* was now repossessed of the crowne, came to the blocke. Howbeit, his sonne *Edward* recovered that honor when King *Edward* recovered his Kingdome: But after that this *Edward* died without issue, and the inheritance became divided among the sisters of the said *John Tiptoft* Earle of *Worcester*, of whom one was married to the Lord *Roos*, another to Sir *Edmund Ingoldesthorpe*, and the third to the Lord *Dudley*; Sir *Charles Somerset*, base sonne to *Henry Duke of Somerset*, Lord *Herbert*, and Lord *Chamberlaine* to King *Henry the Eighth*, was by him created Earle of *Worcester*. After whom succeeded in lineall descent, *Henry*, *William*, and *Edward* who now flourisheth, and among other laudable parts of vertue and Nobility, highly favoureth the studies of good literature.

*
Orig. 1. H. 7.
R. 36.

There are in this Shire Parishes. 152.

STAFFORD.

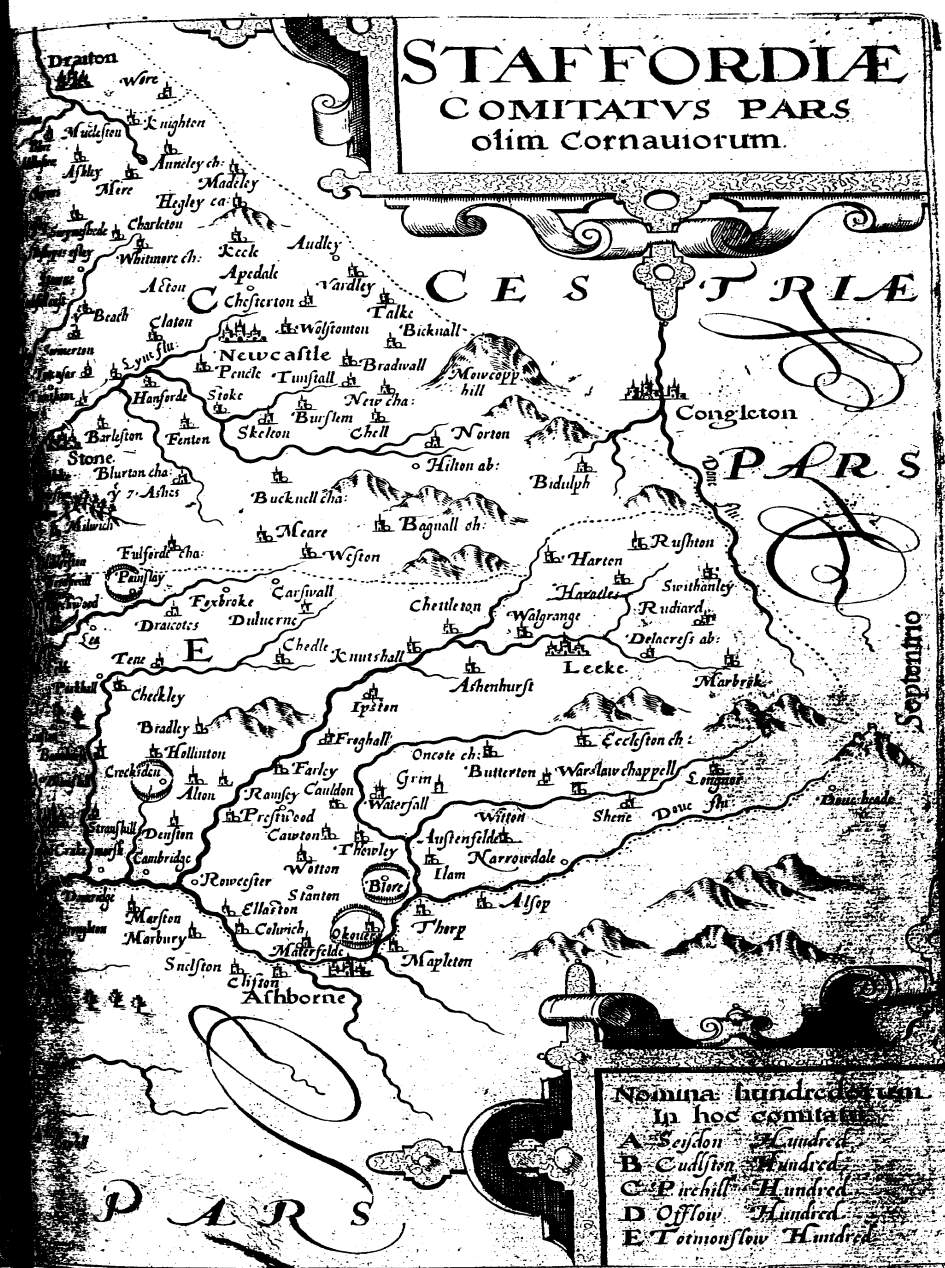
Charleston.

Flatbury.
Persbor.

Oswaldslaw
Hundred.

Augustines
oke.
Anno Christi
603.

Earles of Wor-
cester.
Or, D' Abbot.



STAFFORD-SHIRE.



THE third Region of the old CORNAVII, now called STAFFORD-SHIRE, in the English Saxons Language *Stafford-ſcepe*, the Inhabitants whereof because they dwelt in the middest of England, are in Bede termed *Angli Mediterranei*, that is, *Midland Englishmen*, having on the East *Warwick-shire*, and *Darby-shire*, on the South side *Worcester-shire*, and Westward *Shropp-shire* bordering upon it, reacheth from South to North in forme of a *Lozenge*,

Midland Engliſhmen.

broader in the middest and growing narrower at the ends. The North part is full of Hilles and ſo leſſe fruitfull: the middle being watered with the River *Trent* is more plentifull, clad with Woods, and embroidered gallantly with Corne fields and medowes: as is the South part likewise, which hath Coles also digged out of the earth and mines of Iron. But whether more for their commodity or hinderance, I leave to the Inhabitants who doe, or ſhall beſt understand it.

Iron.

In the South part in the very confines with *Worcester-shire* upon the River *Stour* ſtandeth *Stourton Caſtle*, ſometimes belonging to the Earles of *Warwicke*, the name of place of *Cardinall Pole*; and then *Dudley Caſtle* towreth up upon an hill built and named ſo of one *Dudo*, or *Dodo* an Engliſh Saxon, about the yeere of our Salvation 700. In King *William* the Conquerours daies, as we finde in his *Domeſday Booke*, *William Fitz-Auſculph* poſſeſſed it: afterwards it fell to Noble men ſurnamed *Somes*; and by an heire generall of them to Sir *Richard Sutton* knight deſcended from the *Suttons* of *Nottingham-shire*: whoſe Poſterity commonly called from that time Lords of *Dudley*, but ſummoned to Parliament firſt by King Henry the Sixth, grew to a right honourable Family.

Dudley caſtle.

Under this lyeth *Penſweth Chace*, in former times better ſtored with game; wherein are many Cole-pits, in which, as they reported to mee, there continueth a ſure begunne by a candle long ſince through the negligence of a grover or digger. The ſmoke of this fire, and ſometime the flame is ſcene, but the favour offener ſmell: and other the like places were ſhewed unto mee not farre off. North-Weſt ward upon the Confines of *Shropp-shire*, I ſaw *Pateſhull* a ſeat of the *Aſſileies* deſcended from honourable Progenitours; and *Wroteſley* an habitation of a Race of Gentlemen ſo ſurnamed, out of which Sir *Hugh Wroteſley*, for his approved valour, was choſen by King *Edward* the Third Knight of the Garter, at the firſt institution, and ſo accounted one of the founders of the ſaid honourable Order. Next after this, the memorable places that wee meet with in this Tract, more inwardly, are theſe, *Chellington*, a faire houſe and Manour of the ancient Family of the *Giffards*: which in the Raigne of Henry the Second *Peter Corbuechin* gave to *Peter Giffard*, upon whom alſo *Richard Strongbow*, that Conquerour of Ireland, beſtowed in free gift *Tachmelin* and other Poſſeſſions in Ireland. *Theoten hall*, which is by interpretation, *The habitation of Heathens, or Pagans*, at this day *Tetnall* embued with Daniſh blood in the yeere 911. by King *Edward* the Elder in a bloody Battaille. *Wulfenes Hampton*, ſo called of *Wulfſuna* a moſt godly and devout woman, who enriched the Towne (called before ſimply *Hampton*) with a religious Houſe: and for *Wulfſuna's Hampton* it is corruptly called *Wulver Hampton*: The greateſt name and note whereof, ariſeth by the Church there, annexed to the Warden or Deane and Prebendaries of *Windſor*. *Weadsbury*, in theſe dayes *Weddsborow* fortified in old time, by *Eſtbeſſed Lady* of the *Mercians*: and *Walſhall* a Mercate Towne, none of the meanest. Neere unto which the River *Tame* carryeth his ſtreame, which riſing not farre off, for certaine miles wandereth through the Eaſt part of this Shire ſeeking after *Trent*, neere unto *Draſton Baſſet*, the ſeat of the *Baſſets*, who ſpringing out

Chellington; Giffards.

Tetnall.

Wolverhampton.

Weddsborow.

Tame River.

Draſton Baſſet.

Ccc

out

Bassetts.

out from *Turstan* Lord of this place in the Raigne of Henry the First, branched forth into a great and notable Family. For, from hence as from a stocke flourished the Bassetts of *Welden*, of *Wiccomb*, of *Sapcot*, of *Cbeddle*, and others. But of this of *Draison*, *Ranulph* was the last, who being a right renowned Baron had married the sister of *John* *Montfort* Duke of *Britaine*, and in the Raigne of *Richard* the Second died without issue.

Tamworth.

Then *Tame* passing through the Bridge at *Falkeley* (over which an ancient high way of the Romanes went) runneth hard under *Tamworth*, in the Saxon Tongue *Tamaweopd*, *Marianus* calleth it *Tamawordia*, a Towne so placed in the Confines of the two Shires, that the one part which belonged sometime to the *Marmians*, is counted of *Warwick-shire*, the other which pertained to the *Hastings*, of *Stafford-shire*. As for the name, it is taken from *Tame* the River running beside it, and of the English Saxon word *Weopoth*, which signifieth a *Barton*, *Court*, or *Ferme-houfe*, and also, an *Holme* or *River Island*, or any place environed with water: seeing that *Keyserweri* and *Bomelswert* in *Germanie*, betoken as much as *Cesars Isle* and *Bomels Isle*. Whiles the *Mercians* Kingdome stood in state, this was a place of their Kings residence, and as we finde in the *Liege Booke of Worcester*, a Towne of very great resort and passing well frequented. Afterward, when in the Danes Warre it was much decayed, *Edith* the Lady of *Mercia* repaired and brought it againe to the former state: also *Edith* King *Eadgars* Sister, who refusing Marriage, for the opinion that went of her holiness was registred in the roll of Saints, founded heere a little house for Nuns and veiled Virgins, which after some yeeres, was translated to *Follethorpe* by the *Marmians* of *Normandie*, Lords heereof; at what time they erected heere a Collegiate Church, wherein are seene some of their Sepulchres, and builded a faire Castle, which from them by the *Frevills* came to the house of those *Ferrars*, that descended from a younger brother of the Barons *Ferrars* of *Graby*. Those *Marmians* as wee finde written, were by inheritance the Kings Champions of England. For, whensoever any new king of England is crowned, the heire of this Family was bound to ride armed in compleat harness upon a barbd horse into the Kings hall, and in a set forme of words challenge to combat with whosoever durst oppose himselfe against the kings right and Title. And verily it appeareth upon Records, that *Alexander Frevill*, under king *Edward* the Third, by the same service, held this Castle. Howbeit at the Coronation of king *Richard* the Second, when *Baldwin Frevill* exhibited his petition for the same, it was adjudged from this Family to Sir *John Dimock* his competitor, descended also from *Marmion*, as producing better Records and evidences.

The Kings Champion.

See in Lincoln-shire.

Inquisita. E. 3.

Watling street.

Etocetum.

Wall.

At *Falkeley Bridge* aforesaid (that I may retire a little) that *Romane Highway Watling street*, of which I have already spoken and must often speake, enteth into this Shire, and cutting it through (as it were by a freight line) goeth Westward into *Shrop-shire*. Which Streete I have I assure you thoroughly viewed and perused, to finde out that *ETOCETUM* which *Antonine* the Emperour seteth downe for the next station from *MANVESSEDUM* or *Mancceter* in *Warwick-shire*: and surely by good happe I have now found it, and freely confesse that heretofore I was farre wide and quite out of the way. For, just at the same distance that *Antonine* setteth betwene *MANVESSEDUM*, and *ETOCETUM*, I lighted upon the carkasse of an old litle Towne upon the said *High way*, and scarce a mile Southward from *Lichfield*, a Bishops See right well knowne. The name of the place at this day is in our common language, *Wall*, of the Reliques of an old wall there remaining and taking up much about two acres of ground, which they call *Castleness*, as one would say, *The Castle Field*. Over against which on the other side of the street the Inhabitants relate by a tradition from their forefathers, that there stood an ancient Towne, destroyed long before the Conquest. And they shew the very place, where by the maine foundation they ghesse the Temple there stood, and with all they produce peeces of money, coined by the Roman Emperours and found there, as most certaine testimonies in this behalfe. But (that which maketh most for the prooffe heereof) from hence leadeth the *Romane Way* called *Watling street*, with a faire

a faire, apparent, and continued causey, in manner, throughout, untill it bee broken off with the River *Penck*, and hath upon it a Stone-bridge at *PENNO CRUCIUM*, so named of the River, just at the same distance that *Antonine* setteth downe. Which hath not yet laied away so much as the name, for in steed of *PENNO CRUCIUM* it is now called *Penck-ridge*. But at this day it is little better than a Village, famous for an Horse-Faire which the Lord of the place *Hugh Blunt*, obtained of King *Edward* the Second. From hence, that way hath nothing memorable upon it in this Shire, but a little way off is *Brewood* a Mercate Towne, where the Bishops of this Diocesse had an habitation before the Conquest: and then neere unto *Weston* is a cleere Poole spread very broad, by which that notable way holdeth on a direct course to *Oken-Tate* in *Shrop-shire*.

Penck-ridge.

Now are wee to visite the middle part of this Shire which *Trent* watereth: in the description whereof, I purpose to follow the course and windings of the River, from the very spring and head thereof, as my best guide. *Trent* that by his due right length to himselfe the third place among all the Rivers of England, runneth out of two Fountaines being neere neighbours together in the North part of this shire among the moores. Certaine unskilfull, and idle headed, have dreamed that it was so named of *Trent* a French word that signifieth *Thirty*, and thereupon also have feigned, that thirty Rivers runne into it, and as many kindes of fishes live therein, the names whereof the people dwelling thereby were wont to sing in an English rhyme:

The River Trent.

neither make they doubt to ascribe that unto this *Trent*, which the *Hungarians* avouch of their River *Tibiscus*, namely, that two parts of it are water, and the third fish.

From his spring heads *Trent* trickleth downe first Southward fetching many a compass, not farre from *New Castle under Lime*, so called of another more ancient Castle that flourished in times past hard by at *Cheesterton under Lime*: where I saw tattered and corne the walls of a Castle, which by the gift of King *John*, belonged first unto *Ranulph* Earle of *Chester*, and afterwards by the bounteous favour of King *Henry* the Third, unto the House of *Lancaster*. Thence by *Trent-ham*, sometime *Triang-ham*, a little Monastery of that holy virgin Saint *Werbung* of the blood royal, hee hasteneth to *Stone* a Mercate Towne, which having the beginning in the Saxons time, tooke that name of the *Stones*, that our Ancestours after a solemn sort had cast on a heape to notifie the place where *Wolpher* that heathenish King of the *Mercians*, most cruelly slew his two sonnes *Wulfald* and *Rufin*, because they had taken upon them the profession of Christianity.

New Castle under Lyme.

Trentham.

Stone.

In which place when Posterity in memoriall of them had consecrated a little Church, straight wayes there arose and grew up a Towne, which of those stones, had the name *Stone* given unto it, as the *History* of *Peterborough* hath recorded. Beyond *Stone* runneth *Trent* mildly by *Sandon*, the seat in times past of the *Staffords*, most worthy Knights, but lately by inheritance from them, of *Sampson Erdeswicke*, a very great lover, and diligent searcher of venerable Antiquity, and in this regard no lesse worthy of remembrance than for that he is directly in the male line descended from Sir *Hugh Vernon* Baron of *Shipbroc*, the name being changed, by the use of that age according to sundry habitations, first into *Holgrave*, and afterwards into *Erdeswicke*.

Erdeswicke.

Names altered according to divers habitations.

Heere *Trent* turneth his course aside Eastward, and on the South hath *Cankwood*, commonly called *Cankwood*, spread farre and wide, and at length entertaineth the River *Sow*, which breaketh out in a hard Country neere *Healy Castle*, built by the Barons of *Aldalegh*, or *Audley*, unto whom *Hervey* Lord *Stafford* gave that place; like as *Theobald Verdon*, gave *Aldalegh* to selfe.

Cankwood.

LL. Audley.

This hath bene a Family of high respect and great honour, and of the same stem out of which the *Stanleies* Earles of *Darby* derive their Descent. Strange it is to reade, what lands King *Henry* the Third confirmed unto *Henry Audeley*, which were bestowed upon him by the bounty of the Peeres, yea and private Gentlemen, not only in England but also in Ireland, where *Hugh Lacy* Earle of *Ulster* gave him lands with

build in the yeere of Christ 1148. this most beautifull Church in the honour of the blessed virgin Mary at *Saint Ceda*, or *Chad*: and repaired the Castle which now is utterly vanished. As for the towne, it was made first an Incorporation in our Fathers remembrance by King Edward the Sixth, by the name of Bailiffs and Burgeses. It feeth the Pole Artick elevated two and fifty degrees and two and forty minutes: and from the farthest point of the West counteth one and twenty degrees and twenty minutes. This Poole of *Lichfield* being by and by kept and restrained within banks, and spreading broader the second time, but gathering againe into a channell is quickly swallowed into *Trent*, who continueth his course Eastward, untill he meeteth with the river of *Tame* from the South: with whom *Trent* being now coupled, turneth aside his streame Northward through places that yeeld great store of Alabafter, that he might the sooner entertaine *Dow*, and so almost insulateth or encompasseth *Burton*, a Towne in times past of name, by reason of workers in Alabafter, a Castle of the *Ferrars* built in the Conqueror time; an ancient Abbey founded by *Ulfrick Spot* Earle of *Mercia*, and the retyring place of *Modwen* that holy English woman, who there dedicated her selfe first to the service of God. Concerning which Abbey, the Leger-booke of *Abingdon* recordeth thus. *A certaine servingant of King Etheldred named Ulfrick Spot, built the Abbey of Burton, and gave unto it the inheritance that came by his Father, esteemed worth seven hundred pounds, and that his donation might stand good and sure, he gave unto King Etheldred three hundred Markus of gold for his confirmation, and to every Bishop five Markus, and beside to Alfrick Archbishop of Canterbury, the Towne Dumbleton. Whereby wee may understand, that there was a golden world then, and that gold swaied much yea in Church matters, and among Church-men. In this abbey, the said *Modwen*, whose holinesse was much celebrated in this tract, lay buried, and upon her Tombe were engraven for an Epitaph these verses.*

Ortum Modwen a dat Hibernia, Scotia finem.

Anglia dat tumultum, dat Deus astra poli.

Prima dedit vitam, sed mortem terra secunda,

Et terram terra tertia terra dedit:

Auffert Lansfortin quam terra Conallia profert,

Felix Burtonium virginis ossa tenet.

In Ireland *Modwen* who began, in Scotland rooke her end,
England on her a Tombe bestow'd, to Heaven God did her send:
The first of these lands gave her life, the second wrought her death,
And earth to earth in decent sort, the third land did bequeath.
Lansfortin taketh that away, which once *Tir-Connell* gave,
And *Burton* blest, whose hap it is this virgines bones to have.

Neere unto *Burton*, betwixt these three rivers, *Dove*, *Trent* and *Blith* the which watereth and nameth *Blithfield* a faire house of the ancient and worthy Family of the *Bagots*; *Needwood* a very large wood and full of parkes spreadeth it selfe. Whence the Nobility and Gentlemen dwelling thereabout, take their jolly pleasure and sport themselves in hunting. Thus much of the places in the middle part of this shire.

The North part riseth up and swelleth somewhat mountainous, with moores and hilles, but of no great bignesse, which beginning here, runs like as *Apennine* doth in *Italie* through the midst of England with a continued ridge, rising more and more with divers tops and cliffs one after another even as far as to Scotland, although sometimes they change their name. For heere they are called *Mooreland*, and after a while the *Peak*, *Blackstone* edge, then *Craugh*, anon they goe further *Stannmore*, and at length being parted diversly, as it were into hornes, *Cheviot*. This *Mooreland*, so called for that it riseth higher into hils and mountaines, and is withall lesse fruitfull (which kind of places we call in our language *Moors*) is a small country verily, so hard, so comfortlesse, bare and cold, that it keepeth snow lying upon it a long while in so much as that of the country village named *Wotton* lying here under *Woverhill* the neighbor inhabitants have this rime rise in their mouth, as if God, forsooth, had never visited that place.

Alabafter.
Burton upon
Trent.

Who also it nam-
ed *Modwen*.

1904.

* Tir Conell.

The River
Blith.
Needwood
Forest.

Mooreland.

Wotton under Wover,
Where God came never.

Yet in so hard a soile it breedeth and feedeth beasts of large bulke, and faire spread. The people heere dwelling observe, that when the winde stirreth West, it is alwaies raine: but the East and Southwinde, which in other places brew and broach raine, bring faire weather, unlesse the winde turne from West into the South: and this they ascribe unto the vicinity of the Irish Sea. Out of these *Moors* most rivers in this shire doe spring, but the chiefe are, *Dove*, *Hanse*, *Churnes*, *Teyn*, *Blith*, and *Trent* himselfe, who receiveth every one of them, and conveierth them all to the Sea. *Dow*, whose banks are reared out of solid hard lime stone, which they burne and use for compact to manure and enrich their fields with all, doth swiftly runne along the most part of the East side of this Country, and separateth it from *Darby-shire*, holding on his course in a Cleyish channell without any beds or shelves of mud, through a soile consisting of the said Lime stone: from whence it sucketh out such fertilite, that in the very midst of Winter, the Medowes on both the banks sides carry a most pleasant and fresh greene hew: but if it chance to swell above the banks and overflow the Medowes in Aprill, it battelleth them like another *Nilus*, and maketh them so fruitfull that the inhabitants use commonly to chant this joyfull note.

In Aprill *Doves* flood,

Is worth a Kings good.

This river in twelve houres space useth so to rise, that it harrieth and carrieth away with it sheepe and other cattraile, to the great terror of the people dwelling thereby: but within the same time againe it falleth and returnes within his owne banks: whereas *Trent* being once up and over his banks floweth upon the fields foure or five daies together: but now come we to the rivers that run into it. The first is *Hans*, which being swallowed up under the ground, breaketh up againe three miles off. Then admitteth he the fellowshipp of the river *Churnes*, who passeth by *De-la-Croix* *Abby*, built by *Ranulph* the third of that name Earle of *Cheshire*: by *Leike* also a well knowne Mercat towne, and by *Aulton* a Castle in times past belonging to the *Barons Verdon* (who founded heere the Abbey of *Croxden*) from whom by the *Furnivalls* it descended to the *Talbots* Earles of *Shrewsbury*. A little below runneth *Teyn* a small brooke into *Dove*, which having his head not far from *Cheddale* the ancient seat of the *Bassets*, who derive their pedigree from the *Bassets* of *Draiton*, creepeth on in such a winding and crooked channell, that within one mile I was faine to passe over it foure times. Neere unto it in *Checkley Church-yard*, there stand three stones upright erected in maner of a *Pyramides*, two of them have little images engraven upon them: but that in the midst is highest. The inhabitants report by tradition, that a battaile was fought there betwene two hosts, of which the one was armed, the other unarmed; and that in it were three Bishops slaine, in memoriall of whom these stones were set up. But what Historicall truth indeed lieth heerein enfolded, I know not as yet. As for *Blith*, it hath in this *Mooreland* *Carewell* a Castlet situate upon it which *Sir William Carewell* built with great ponds having their heads made of square stones, and *Draiton*, which gave surname to a family of great antiquity in this County.

But *Dove* after it hath received *Tine* having a faire bridge made over it of most hard stone, and defended with piles runneth under *Utchester*, in the Saxons tongue *Vvokker-tesp*, and *Uttens*, situate upon the side of an hill with a gentle ascent a towne more rich in gay flowing medowes, and in cattraile, than faire built; which before I saw it (the name was so favourable to my conjecture) I thought, in vain, to have been the ancient *Eboraceton*. But now, time hath taught me more certainty. After this, when *Dove* is now come neerer unto *Trent*, it visiteth *Tutbury Castle*, in times past a large and stately thing, which also is called *Stutesbury*, and from an Alabafter hill top on which it stands, threatneth, as it were, the whole country underneath. It was built together with a little Monastery by *Henry de Ferrars* a Noble man of *Normandy*, unto whom King William the First had given great lands and renewed in this shire: all which *Robert de Ferrars* Earle of *Darby* lost after he had revolted

The River
Dove.

Hans.
Churnes.
De-la-croix.

Aulton.

Teyn.

Checkley.

Utchester.

Tutbury.

volted a second time from King Henry the Third. For, this Robert, when, after many troubles which he had raised in the Barons war, hee was received into the Kings favour, and had bound himselfe with a corporall oth in expresse and formall words *that he would continue ever after layall to his liege Lord*, yet was the man of such a stirring and restless spirit, that to break and knap in peeces quite that fortune which he could not bend, he put on armes against his Sovereigne, and being at length taken prisoner (that I may use the very words of the Record, *according to the forme of his obligation*) made this great forfeiture both of his fortunes and dignities. There is in some place of this shire a lake, if *Alexander Nesham* deceive us not, into which no wilde beast will in any wise enter: but since the place is uncertaine and the thing it selfe more uncertaine, I will onely put downe underneath these his verses, before which he prefixed this Title.

De Lago in Staffordia.

*Rugitu Lacus est eventus praeo futuri,
Cujus aquis fera se credere nulla solet.
Insistit odora canum virtus, mors insidet acerba,
Non tamen intrabit exagitata lacum.*

Of a Lake in Stafford-shire.

A Lake there is that roreth loud, whereby things are fore-showne,
The water whereof once to take wild beasts were never knowne.
Let hounds, let death pursue apace them for to overtake,
For all this chafe and hot pursuite, none enter will the Lake.

Gervase of Tilbury.

Of another Poole or Lake also in this Country thus writeth *Gervase of Tilbury* in his *Olla Imperialis* unto the fourth. *In the Bishopricks of Coventry and County of Stafford, at the foot of an hill, which the inborne people of the Country have named Mahull, there is a water spread abroad in manner of a Meere, in the territory of a Village which they name Magdalea. In this Meere or Marsh there is a most cleere water (and an infinite number of woods beside joining one unto another) which hath such an effectfull vertue in refreshing of bodies that so often as Hunters have chased Stagges and other Deere untill their Horses be tired, if in the greatest heat of the scorching Sonne they taste of this water, and offer it unto their Horses to drink, they recover their strength of running againe which they had lost, and become so fresh, as one would thinke they had not run at all. But whereabout this is I cannot yet learne by all my diligent Inquiry.*

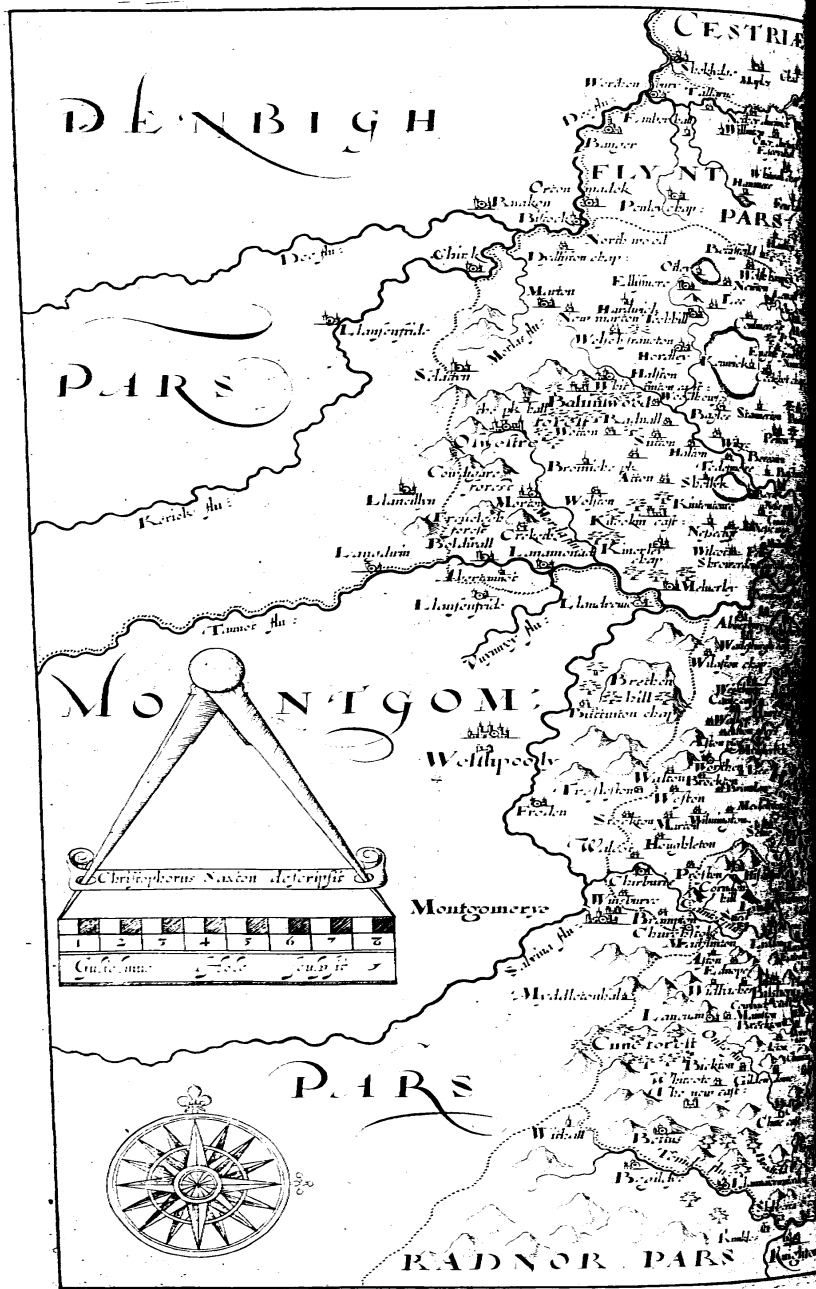
Earles and Barons of Stafford.

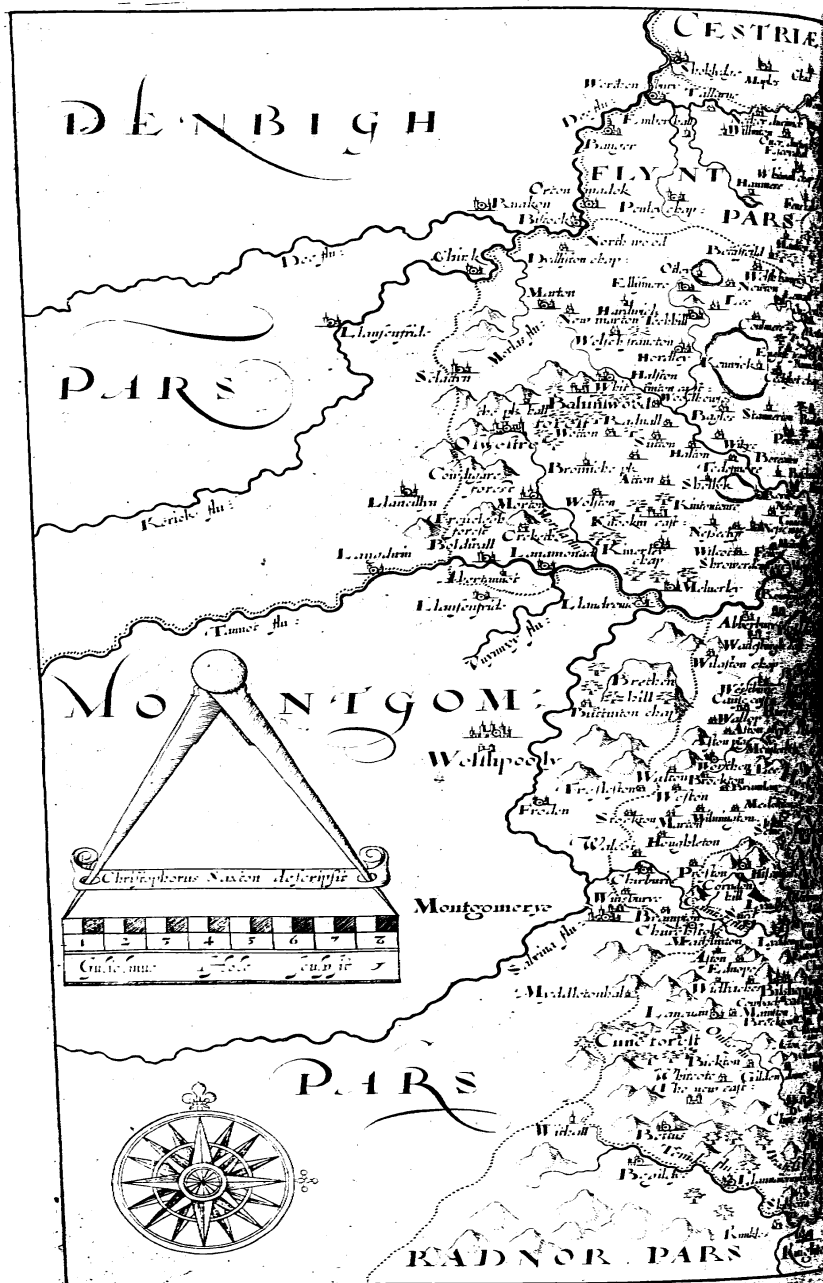
As for the title of *Stafford*, it remaineth ever since *Robert de Stafford*, whom King *William of Normandy* enriched with great possessions, even untill our time in his line and progeny. A family as noble and ancient as any other: but upon which forme hath otherwhiles by turnes both frowned and fawned. For, first they were Barons of *Stafford*, then five of them Earles of *Stafford*, *Ralph* created by King *Edward the Third*, Earle of *Stafford*, who married the heire of *Sir Hugh Audley* Earle of *Gloucester*, *Hugh* his sonne who died in Pilgrimage at *Rhodes* and his three sonnes successively, *Thomas* and *William*, both issuelesse, and *Edmund* who married the daughter and heire of *Thomas of Woodstock* Duke of *Buckingham*. Afterward three of them were Dukes of *Buckingham* and Earles of *Stafford*, &c. as is before shewed. By the attainder of the last of them, those so great inheritances which their most honorable marriages brought unto them, floted away as it were, and scattered heere and there. In lieu whereof hath ensued a more secure quietnesse, which can never cohabite with Greatnesse.

See Dukes of Buckingham.

There are accounted in this Shire Parishes. 130.

SHROP.





SHROPP-SHIRE.



THe fourth Country of those, which, as I said, the CORNAVII in times past inhabited, the English Saxons called Scipyp-ryne and Shpobbe-ryne, wee SHROPP-SHIRE, and the Latinists *Comitatus Salopiensis*, is farre greater than the rest in quantity, and not inferiour to them either for plenty or pleasure. On the East side it hath *Stafford-shire*, on the West *Montgomery shire*, and *Denbigh-shire*, on the South side *Worcester, Hereford, and Radnor-shires*, and on the North *Cheshire*. It is replenished with Townes and Castles standing thicke on every side, by reason that it was a Frontier Country, or (that I may use the tearme of *Siculus Flaccus*) *Ager arcifinius*, in regard of repelling and repressing the Welshmen in the Marches bordering heerupon: whereupon our Ancestours by an ancient word, named the Confines of this Shire toward Wales the *Marches*, for that they were bounds and limits betweene the Welsh and English, and divers Noblemen in this Tract were called *Barons of the Marche*, and *Lords Marchers*, who had every one in their Territory a certaine peculiar jurisdiction, and in their owne Courts ministered law unto the Inhabitantes, with sundry priviledges and immunities, and this among other, that Writs out of the Kings Courts, should in certaine cases have no place nor runne among them. Neverthelesse, if any controversie arose about a Lordship it selfe, or the limits of Lordships, they were to resort unto the Kings Courts of justice. These also were in times past named in Latin Records *Marchiones de Marchia Wallia*, as *Marquesses of the Marches of Wales*, or *Lords Marchers*, as appeareth evidently by the *Red Booke* in the Kings Exchequer, where wee reade, how at the Coronation of Queene *Eleonor*, Wife to King Henry the Third, *Marchiones de Marchia Wallia, &c.* that is, *The Marquesses of the Marches of Wales, (or Lord Marchers)* *John Fitz-Alane, Raulph Mortimer, John of Monmouth, and Walter Clifford*, in the name of the *Marches*, said it was the right of the *Marches* to finde silver speares and to bring them for to support the foure square purple silke cloth at the Coronation of Kings and Queenes of England. But the happy tranquillity of peace betweene Wales and England, and the Kings authority hath by little and little abrogated all those royalties, prerogatives, and priviledges, which the *Lords Marchers* enjoyed, and insolently exercised over the poore Inhabitantes in the *Marches*.

The Marchers.
L. Marchers.
Marchiones in
old Histories.

Neither yet doe I thinke (I thought good to say so much afore-hand) that all this Country belonged anciently to the CORNAVII, but that part onely which is on this side *Severn*: as for that on the farther side of *Severn*, it pertained to the *OROVICES*, who inhabited heere a great Country in this Tract: a parcell whereof as also some little Territories on this side *Severn*, which belonged unto the *Lords Marchers*, were not long since laid to this Shire by authority of the Parliament. For, into these two parts the whole Shire may be finely divided, seeing that the River *Severn* cutteth it through in the mids from the West to the South-East.

The Canopy.

27. Hen. 8.

In that part beyond *Severn*, the River *Temd*, in British *Tifidiae*, for some space maketh the South limite, into which at length the River *Colun*, in British *Colunwy*, and called contractly *Clun*, issueth it selfe: This River *Clun* breaking forth farther within the Country, not farre from a prey Towne well frequented, named *Bishops Castle*, (because it belonged to the Bishops of *Hereford* whose Diocese and jurisdiction is large in this Shire) giveth name to *Clun Castle*: which, the *Fitz-Alans* descended from one *Alan* the sonne of *Flaold* a Norman (who were afterwards Earles of *Arundell*) built, when they were *Lords Marchers* against the Welshmen, and annoyed them with contrivall inrodes into their Country. But where it meeteth with *Temd*, among divers doubtfull Fowlds, there mounteth up an Hill of a very ancient memory, which they call *Caer Caradoc*, because about the yeere of our Salvation

Clun River.

Bishops Castle.

* Coluno castrum.
Clun Castle.

Cat. Caradoc.
King Caratacus.
Tacitus.

variation 53. *Caratacus* a most noble and renowned British King, raised in the front of it a mighty Wall or Rampire of stone, and with his people resolutely made it good against *Ostorius* Lieutenant for the Romans and the Legionary Roman Soldiers. Untill the Romans having forcibly broken through that fence of stones so rudely laid, (the remains whereof are to be scene at this day) forced the unarmed Britons, to quit the place, and flie up to the mountaines. *Caratacus* himselfe notwithstanding escaped by flight, but his wife, daughter, and brethren were taken prisoners: And he afterwards, (as adversity in no place findeth safety) being delivered into the hands of *Ostorius* by *Queen Cartimandua* (unto whose protection he had committed himselfe) was carried away to Rome, after he had vexed and wearied the Romans in a long and troublefome warre. Where hee obtained pardon for himselfe and his, of *Claudius* the Emperour, not by way of any base suppliant intreaty, but by a generous and honourable liberty of speech. For the winning of this hill and taking of this King captive, it was decreed, that *Ostorius* should have Triumphant Ornaments: neither did the Senate judge the taking of *Caratacus* lesse honorable, than when *Publius Scipio* shewed *Sipbax*, and *L. Paulus* presented *Perfes*, two vanquished Kings in triumphant manner at Rome. And although the compiler of our History hath made mention neither of this Warre, nor of this worthy Briton, yet the memory thereof is not quite gone with the common people. For, they confidently give out by tradition, that a King was discomfited and put to flight upon this hill: and in the British Booke entituled *Triades*, among three of the most renowned Britons for warlike exploits, *Caradoc* * *Vrichfrus* is named first; so that, as I thinke, wee should make no doubt, but that he was this very *Caratacus*. Then *Endlow*, in British formerly named *Dinan*, and in later ages *Lys-twyfoc*, i. *The Princes Palace*, standeth upon an hill at the meeting of the same *Temd* with the River *Corve*, a Towne more faire than ancient. *Roger Montgomery* first laid unto it a Castle no lesse beautifull, than strong, which hangeth over *Corve*, and then raised a Wall about the Towne that taketh about a mile in compasse. But when his sonne *Robert* was attainted, King Henry the First kept it in his owne hands: and afterwards, when it was besieged, it valiantly endured the assaults of King *Stephen*: and during that streight siege, Henry sonne of the King of Scots, being plucked from his saddle with an iron hooked engine, had like to have bene haled violently within the Towne walls, had not *Stephen* person rescued him, and with singular valour delivered him from so great a danger. After this, King Henry the Second gave this Castle together with the Vale underneath along *Corve*, which commonly is called *Corvesdale*, to Sir *Foulque of Dinan*. Afterwards it belonged to the *Lacies* of Ireland, and by a daughter fell to Sir *Giffrey de Teneville a Poitevin*, or, as some will have it, of the house of *Lorain*: from whose heires it descended againe by a daughter to the *Mortimers*, and from thence hereditarily to the Crowne. Then the Inhabitants in proceffe of time, built in the very bofome of the Towne, and on the highest ground a very faire Church, and the onely Church they have. And so it beganne to be of great account and to excell other neighbour Townes adjoining. And although by King *Stephen*, *Simon Montfort*, and King Henry the Sixth it suffered much damage in the civill Warres, yet it always flourished againe: and now especially, ever since that King Henry the Eighth ordained the Councell of the *Marches*, not unlike to those Parliaments in France: the Lord President whereof doth for the most part keepe Courts and Terme here: which a man could hardly have scene at any time without Suites, whether it were for the great state and authoriry that it carryed, or because the Welshmen are so forward and hote to goe to Law. This Councell consisteth of the Lord President, so many Counsellors as it shall please the Prince to appoint, a Secretary, an Attorney, a Solicitor, and the foure Justices of the Counties in Wales.

Somewhat lower, upon the River *Temd*, is scene *Burford*, which from *Thurricke Saie* and his Posterity, came unto *Robert Mortimer*, and from his posterity likewise unto Sir *Geffrey Cornwall*, who derived his Descent from *Richard Emek Cornwall* and King of the *Alemans*: and his Race even unto these daies hath flourished

See the 43. and 44. page.

* With the strong arme. Ludlow.

Iron hooked engine.

Jeneville.

The Councell in the Marches.

Burford.

Cornwall.

A rished under the name of Barons of *Burford* (but not in the dignity of Parliamentary Barons) whereas it is holden (as we read in the Inquisition) of the King for so finde five men for the Army of Wales, and by service of a Barony. As for those (that I may note thus much by the way) who held an entire and whole Barony, they were commonly in times past reputed Barons; and as some learned in our common lawes are of opinion, Barons and Barony, like as Earle and Earldome, Duke and Dukedome, King and Kingdome, were *Conjugata*, that is, *Originally yoke-fellows*. When *Temd* now is leaving *Shroppshire* behinde it, not farre from the bankes thereof, there raise themselves up Northward certaine hills of easie ascent, *Cleebill* they call them, much commended for yeelding the best Barly in great plenty, neither are they without iron mines: at the descent whereof, in a Village called *Cleybury*, *Hugh Mortimer* built a Castle, which King Henry the Second forthwith so raised (because it was a house of sedition) that scarce there remaine any tokens thereof at this day: also hard by standeth *Kinlet* where the *Blunts* flourished. Their name in this Tract is very great, so firnamed at first of their yellow haire; the Family noble and ancient, and the branches thereof farre spread. Then saw we on the right hand banke of *Severn*, *Brug Morfe* (commonly, but corruptly called *Bridg-North*), so called of *Burg* or *Burrough*, and *Morfe*, a Forest adjoining, whereas before time it was named simply *Burgh*. A Towne, fortified with wals, a ditch, a stately Castle, and the *Severn*, which betweene the Rockes runneth downe with a great fall: seated also upon a Rocke, out of which the waies leading into the upper part of the Towne were wrought out, *Abelsfleda* Lady of the *Mercians* first built it, and *Robert de Belesme* Earle of *Shrewsbury* walled it: who, trusting to the naturall strength of the place rebelled against King Henry the First, like as afterward *Roger Mortimer* against King Henry the Second: but both of them with ill successe, for they were both forced to yeeld, and submit themselves, absolutely to the Kings command. At the Siege of this Castle, (as we read in our Annales) King Henry the Second being levelled at with an arrow, had bene shot therewith quite through the body, had not Sir *Hubert Syncler* a noble and trusty Servitor to the King interposed himselfe, and to save the King received both the arrow and his death wound withall.

D Before time also Sir *Ralph de Pitchford* bare himselfe so valiantly heere, that King Henry the First gave unto him the little *Burgh* hard by, *To hold by service, for so finde drynd for the great chamber of the Castle of Burgh against the coming of his Sovereigne Lord the King*. *Willeley* or *Willey* is not farre from hence, the habitation in old time of Sir *Warner de Willeley*, from whose Posterity by the *Harleis* and *Peshall*, it came to the notable Family of *Lacon*; advanced by marriage long since with the heire of *Passelew*, and of late by the Possession of Sir *I. Blunt* of *Kinlet*.

There be in like manner other Townes and Castles heere and there in this Tract, as *Newcastle*, *Hopton Castle*, *Shipton*, and upon the River *Corve*, *Corvesham*, which *Walter Clifford* had by the gift of King Henry the Second, also *Brancroft* and *Holgot*, commonly *Hawgate*: which belonged sometime to the *Manduits*, then, to *Robert Blunt* Bishop of *Bath*, and afterwards to the *Lovells*. More higher, are *Wenlocke*, now knowne for the lime, but in King *Richard* the Second's time for a mine of Copper there: But much more knowne in the Saxons dayes for a most ancient Nunnery, where *Milburga* that most holy virgin lived in great devotion, and was entombd: the which Nunnery Earle *Roger de Montgomery* repaired and replenished with Monkes. In later times Sir *Iohn Winell*, called also *Wenlocke* because he heere inhabited, for his faithfull service to King Henry the Sixth, was by him advanced to the state and honor of Baron *Wenlocke*, and elected knight of the Garter; in whose cause he manfully lost his life in the Battaille of *Tewkesbury*, leaving no issue: but from his cozin and heire generall the *Lovells* of this County are lineally descended. A little more West is *Alton Burnell*, a Castle of the *Burnells*, and after of the *Lovells*, made famous by the Court of Parliament there held in the time of King *Edward* the First. This Family of the *Burnells* was in old time of great name and antiquity, very much enriched also by that Bishop aforementioned. But it failed and had an end in the Raigne of

Inquil. 40. Ed. 3.

Baron and Earl
Conju-
gata.

Cleebill.

Blunt in the
Norman lan-
guage signifie
eth yellow
haire of the
head.
Bridg-North.

* De Seneca
Clara.

Lib. Inquil.

Willeley or
Willeley.

Lib. Inquil.

Wenlocke.

William
Malmesbury.

Or Wivell.

Lord Wen-
locke.

Clau. 17.
Edw. 4.

Alton Burnell.

of Edward the Second, when *Mande* the heire was married unto *John Lovell* first, and secondly to *John Handlow*, whose sonne *Nicholas* assumed to himselfe the name of *Burnell*: from whom the *Ratcliffes* Earles of *Suffex* and others draw their pedigree. Scarce a mile from hence standeth *Langley*, seated very flat and low in a *Parke* full of Woods, the dwelling place of the *Leas*, which may well challenge to be ranged among the Families that are of the better worth and greater Antiquity in this *Isle*. Next unto these is *Condover*, a Manour sometime of the *Lovells*, but of late, the possession of *Thomas Owen*, Justice of the Common Pleas and a very great lover of learning. But he hath now taken his quiet sleepe in Christ, and left his sonne Sir *Roger Owen*, for his manifold learning, a right worthy sonne of so good a father. This is holden of the King, as we read in the Records, *In chiefe, to finde two footmen one day in the army of Wales, in time of warre*. Which I note heere once for all, to this end, that I may give to understand, that Gentlemen and Noblemen heereabout held their inheritances of the Kings of England by this tenure, to be ready in service, with Souldiers for defence of the Marches, whensoever there should be any warre betweene England and Wales. Neere unto this, there is a little Village named *Pichford*, that imparted the name in times past to the ancient Family of *Pichford*: now the Possession of *A. Oteley*, which our Ancestours (for that they knew not pitch from *Bitumen*) so called of a fountaine of *Bitumen* there in a private mans yard; upon which there riseth and swimmeth a kinde of liquid *Bitumen* daily, skumme it off never so diligently, even as it doth in the Lake *Asphaltites* in *Jewry*, in a standing water about *Samosata*, and a spring by *Agrigentum* in *Sicilie*. But whether this bee good against the falling sickness, and have a powerfull property to draw, to close up wounds, &c. as that in *Jewry*, none that I know as yet have made experiment. More Westward, you may see *Pouderbach Castle*, now decayed and ruinous, called in times past *Pulrebach* the son of Sir *Raulph Baile* a younger sonne of *Raulph Baile* Lord *Wem*, from whom the *Doulers* of *Woodball* in *Hertford-shire* are lineally descended. Beneath this, *Hockliff* *Forest*, spreadeth a great way among the mountaines: where, at *Stipperston*, hill there be great heapes of stones, and little rockes as it were, that rise thicke together: the Britans call them *Carneddau tewion*. But whereas as these seeme naturall I dare not with others so much as conjecture, that these were any of those stones which *Giraldus Cambrensis* seemeth to note in these words: *Harald in person being himselfe the last footman in marching with footmen, and light Armour, and victuals answerable for service in Wales, valiantly went round about and passed through all Wales, so as that he left few or none alive. And for a perpetuall memory of this Victory, you may finde very many stones in Wales erected after the antique manner upon hillocks, in those places wherein had bene Conquerour, having these words engraven.*

HIC FUIT VICTOR HARALDUS.

Heere was Harald Conquerour.

More Northward, *Caurse Castle* standeth, which was the Barony of Sir *Peter Corbet*; from whom it came to the Barons of *Stafford*: and *Routon Castle* neere unto it, the most ancient of all the rest, toward the West borders of the Shire, not farre from *Severn*, which Castle sometimes belonged to the *Corbets*, and now to the ancient Family of the *Liffers*. Before time it was the possession of *John le Strange* of *Knocking*, in despite of whom *Llewellyn* Prince of Wales laid it even with the ground, as we read in the life of Sir *Foulque Fitz-Warin*. It flourished also in the Romans time under the same name, rearm'd by *Antonine* the Emperour, *RUTUNUM*. Neither can we mistake herein, seeing both the name and that distance from *URICONIUM* a towne full well knowne, which he putteth downe, doe most exactly agree. Neere unto this are *Abberbury Castle* and *Walesbury*, which is come from the *Corbets* to the noble family

A family of the *Leightons* Knights. As for the name, it seemeth to have taken it from that *High Port-way* called *Waiting street*, which went this way into the farthest part of *Wales* (as *Ranulph* of *Chester* writeth) by two little Townes, of that street called *Strattons*: betweene which in a valley, are yet to be seene the rubbish of an old Castle called *Brocards Castle*, and the same set amidst greene meadows, that before time were fish-pooles. But these Castles with others which I am scarce able to number and reckon up, for the most part of them are now ruinate not by the fury of warre, but now at length conquered even with secure peace, and proesse of time.

Now crossing over *Severne* unto that part of the shire on this side the River, which I said did properly belong to the ancient *CORN AVII*. This againe is divided after a sort into two parts by the river *Terne* running from the North Southward: so called, for that it issueth out of a very large Poole in *Stafford-shire*, such as they of the North parts call *Tearnes*. In the hither part of these twaine, which lyeth East, neere to the place where *Terne* dischargeth his waters into *Severn* stood the ancient *URICONIUM* (for so *Antonine* the Emperour termeth it) which *Ptolomee* calleth *VIROCONIUM*, *Alanius*, *Caer Uraach*, the old English Saxons *Wpeken-Cear-cep*, wee *Wrecke* and *Wroxcetter*. This was the chiefe City of the *CORN AVII*, built as it seemeth by the Romans, what time as they fortified this banke of *Severn* in this place where the river is full of foulds, as it is not elsewhere lower toward the mouth thereof. But this being sore shaken in the Saxons warre, fell to utter decay in the Danish broiles: and now it is a very small country Towne of poore Husbandmen, and presenteth often times to those that aire the ground, Roman Coines, to testifie in some sort the antiquity thereof. Besides them I saw nothing of antiquity but in one place some few parcels of broken walles (which the common people call *The old worke of Wroxcetter*) This Wall was built of rough stone distinguished outwardly with seven rowes of British bricke in equal distance, and brought up with arched worke inwardly.

I conjecture, by the uneven ground, by the Rampires and the rubbish of the wall heere and there on either side, that the Castle stood in that very place where these mines remaine. But where the plot of the City lay (and that was of a great compass) the Soile is more blackish than elsewhere, and plentifully yeeldeth the best barley in all this quarter. Beneath this City that *Port-way* of those Romans, knowne by the name of *Waiting street*, went, as I have heard say, directly (albeit the ridge thereof now appeareth not) either through a fould, or over a Bridge (the foundations whereof were of late, a little higher, discovered, when they did set a Weare in the River) unto the *Strattons*, that is to say, Townes upon the *Strete*, whereof I spake even now. The ancient name of this decayed *URICONIUM*, sheweth it selfe very apparently in an hill loftily mounting neere thereunto, called *Wreken hill* (some Writers terme it *Gilberts hill*) from the top whereof, which lyeth in a plaine pleasant klevel, there is a very delightful prospect into the Country beneath on every side.

This Hill runneth out in length a good space, as it were attired, on the sides, with faire spread trees. But under it, where *Severn* rolleth downe with his streame, at *Bildwas*, commonly *Bildas*, there flourished a faire Abbay, the Sepulture in times past of the noble Family of the *Burnells*, Patrons thereof. Higher into the Country there is a Mansion or Baiting Towne named *Waiting street* of the situation upon the foresaid *Rode way* or *streets*. And hard by it are seene the Reliques of *Castle Dalaley*, which after that *Richard* Earle of *Arundell* was attainted, King *Richard* the Second by authority of the Parliament annexed to the *Principality* of *Chester*, which hee had then erected.

And not farre from the foote of the foresaid *Wreken*, in an hollow Valley, by that high street before mentioned, *Oken-yate*, a little Village well knowne for the plentifulle dese there of pit-cole, lieth so beneath, and just at the same distance as *Antonine* placeth *VSOCONA* both from *URICONIUM* and also from *PENNOCRUCIUM*: that no man need to doubt, but that this *Oken-yate* was that *USOCONA*. Neither doth the name it selfe gainesay it: for, this word *Ys*, which in the British tongue significth *Lowe*, may seeme added for to note the low situation thereof. On the other

Ddd side,

Langley.

Condover.

Pichford.

A fountaine of Pitch, or Bitumen.

Pouderbach.

Stipperston, Or Welshmen.

Caurse, Routon.

Rutunium.

Brocards Castle.

Uriconium.

Wroxcetter.

Strattons.

Wreken-hill.

Bildas.

Dalaley.

Usocona, Oken-yate.

Charleton.

Tong.

side, beneath this Hill, appeareth *Charleton Castle*, in ancient times belonging to the *Charletons*, Lords of *Powis*: and more Eastward next of all unto *Staffordshire*, *Tong Castle*, called in old time *Tong*, which the *Vernons* not long since repaired, as also the College within the Towne, which the *Pembridges*, as I have read, first founded. Neither have the Inhabitants any thing heere more worth shewing, than a Bell for the bignesse thereof very famous in all those parts adjoining. Hard to this, lieth *Albrighton*, which in the Raigne of King *Edward the First*, was the seat of *Sir Ralph de Fitzford*, but now of the *Talbots*, branched from the Family of the Earles of *Shrewsbury*. But above *Tong* was *Lillehal Abbey* in a woodland Country, founded by the family of *Beurmeis*, whose heire was married into the house of *De La Zouch*. But seeing there is little left but ruines, I will leave it and proceed forward.

Draiton.

1459.

Inq. 2. 10. E. 2.

Beyond the river *Terne*, on the brinke thereof standeth *Draiton*, where in the civil warres between the houses of *Lancaster* and *Torke*, a field was fought that cost many a Gentleman of *Cheeshire* his life. For they, although the battaile was given up almost on even hand, when they could not agree among themselves but rooke part with both sides, were slaine by heapes and numbers on either side. Beneath this *Draiton*, and nere enough to *Terne*, lieth *Hodnet*, wherein dwelt sometimes Gentlemen of the same name, from whom hereditarily it is come by the *Ludlows* unto the *Vernons*. It was held in times past, of the Honour of *Mont-Gomery*, by service, to bee *Seneſchall* or *Steward* of the same Honour. After this, *Terne*, having passed hard by certaine little rurall Townes, taketh in unto him the River *Radon*, and when hee hath gone a few miles further, nere unto *Uriconium*, of which I spake even now, falleth into the *Severn*. Upon this *Radon*, whiles hee is but new come from his spring head, standeth *Wem*, where are to be seene the tokens of a Castle long since begun there to be built.

Wem.

This was the Barony, after the first entry of the Normans, of *William Pantulph*, from whose Posterity it came at length to the *Builers*, and from them by the *Forers* of *Ousley*, and the Barons of *Grey-Hock*, unto the Barons *D'acre* of *Gillesland*. Within a little of this, upon an high hill well wooded, or upon acliffe rather which sometime was called *Radcliffe*, stood a Castle mounted aloft, called of the reddish stone *Red-Castle*, and in the Normans language *Castle Roux*, the seat in old time of the *Andeles*, through the liberall bounty of Lady *Mande Le Strange*. But now there maineth no more but desolate walles, which yet make a faire shew. Scarce a mile from hence lyeth all along the dead carcasſe, as it were, of a small City now well nere consumed. But the peeces of Romane money, and those bricke which the Romans used in building there found, doe testifie the antiquity, and founders thereof. The neighbour Inhabitants use to call it *Bery*, as one would say *Burgh*, and they report that it was a most famous place in King *Arthurs* daies, as the common sort ascribe whatsoever is ancient and strange to King *Arthurs* glory.

Morton Corbet.

Then, upon the same River *Morton Corbet*, anciently an house of the Family of *Turris*, afterward a Castle of the *Corbets*, sheweth it selfe, where within our remembrance, *Robert Corbet*, carryed away with the affectionate delight of Architecture, began to build in a barraine place a most gorgeous and stately house, after the Italians modell: But death prevented him, so that he left the new worke unfinished and the old Castle defaced. These *Corbets* are of ancient Nobility in this Shire, and held Lordships by service, of *Roger Montgomery* Earle of this County, about the coming in of the Normans, for *Roger* the son of *Corbet* held *Haclebec*, *Hundeſtit*, *Alton*, *Emleg*, &c. *Robert*, the sonne of *Corbet*, held land in *Uleſtanton*, *Reſlingſhop*, *Branton*, and *Udeſcot*. And in later ages this family farre and fairly propagated received encrease both of renews and great alliance by the marriage of an heire of *Hopton*. More Southward standeth *Arcoſ* the habitation of the *Newports* knights of great worth, descended from the Barons *Grey* of *Codnor*, and the Lords of *Atothway*, and nere unto it is *Hagmond Abbey*, which the Lords *Fitz-Alanes* if they did not found, yet they most especially endowed.

Corbet, a forname.

Not much lower upon *Severn* standeth most pleasantly the famous City (for so it was called in *Domesday booke*) of this Shire (risen by the ruine of *Old Uriconium*) which

which wee at this day call *Shrewsbury* and *Shrowsbury*, having mollified the name, whereas our Ancestours called it *Scrobber-byrig*, for that it was anciently a very thicket of shrobs upon an hill. In which sense both the Greekes tearmed their *Bessa*, and our Welsh Britans named this also *Pengwerne*, that is, *The high plot planted with Alders*, and a Palace so named continued heere a long time. But whence it is that it is called now in the British tongue *Tmwithig*, and by the Normans *Shropesbery*, *Sloppesbery*, and *Salop*, and in the Latin tongue *Salopia*, I am altogether ignorant, unless it should bee the ancient name *Scobbes-beng* diversely distorted and dis-jointed. Yet some skilfull in the British tongue, thinke verily it is called *Tmwithig*, as one would say, *Placencia* or *Plaisance*, of a British word *Mewitban*, and that their Poets the *Bards* so named it, because of all others, it best pleased the Princes of Wales in times past. It is seated upon an Hill of a reddish earth, and *Severn*, having two very faire Bridges upon it, gathering himselfe in manner round in forme of a circle, to compasseth it, that were it not for a small banke of firme land, it might goe for an Island. And thence it is that *Leland* the *Antiquarian* Poet wrote thus:

*Edita Penguerni laud ſaſſigia ſplendent,
Urbs ſua lunato veluti mediannis in orbe,
Colle iunct modico, duplici quaque ponte ſuperbit,
Accipiens patriâ ſibi linguâ nomen ab alniis.*

The buildings high of *Shrewsbury* doe shine both farre and nere,
A Towne within a River ſet, an Island as it were,
Mounted upon a prety hill, and Bridges hath it twaine,
The name it tooke of Alder trees in British tongue they ſayne.

Neither is it strengthened onely by nature, but fortified also by art: for *Roger of Montgomery*, unto whom by the Conquerors gift it was allotted, pulling downe 50. houses or thereabout, built a strong stately Castle on the North side upon a rising rocke, and *Robert* his son when hee revolted from King *Henry the First*, walled it about, on that side where it was not sensed with the River, which notwithstanding never, that I know of, suffered assault or hostility but once in the Barons Warre against King *John*. At the first entring of the Normans it was a City well inhabited and of good trade. For, as we read in *Domesday booke*, in King *Edward the Confessors* time it paid Gilt according to an hundred Hides: In the Conquerours time, it paid yearly seven pounds and sixteene shillings de Gable: They were reckoned to bee two hundred and fifty two Citizens: whereof twelve were bound to watch about the Kings of England when they lay at this City, and as many to accompany them when they went forth on hunting. Which I would verily thinke to have beene ordained, because not many yeeres before *Edrice Streona* Duke of the *Mercians*, a man notoriously disteined with wickedness, lay in wait heere for Prince *Aſhelm*, and slew him as he rode on hunting. At which time (as that Booke sheweth) the custome was in this City, That a woman taking, howsoever it were, a husband, if she were a widow, gave unto the King twenty shillings; if a maid, tenne, in what manner soever she tooke a man. But to returne unto our matter, the said Earle *Roger* not onely fortified it, but also adorned it with other buildings both publique and private, yea and founded a very goodly Abbey to the honour of Saint Peter and Saint Paul, unto which he granted many Possessions, and therewith, Saint *Gregorius* Church, And namely in that tenour, (I exemplifie the words out of the private History of the said Abbey) That when the Chanons who held Prebends therein should any of them die, the said Prebends should come unto the Demaine and Possession of the Monkes. Whereupon arose no small controversie: For, the sonnes of the said Chanons sued the Monkes at Law, that they might succeed in their fathers Prebends. For, at that time, the Chanons and Priests in England were married, and it grew to be a custome, that Ecclesiasticall livings should descend by inheritance to the next of the blood. But this controversie was decided under King *Henry the First*, and

D d d 2

concluded

Prebends passing hereditarily.

concluded it was, that the heire should not succeed in Ecclesiasticall Livings; yea and about that time lawes were enacted touching the single life of Priests. Some after in proceſſe of time, other Churches alſo were heere erected. For, to ſay nothing of the houſes or Frieries of *Dominicans, Franciscans, and Auguſtine Friars*, which the *Charletons, Jemvils, and Staffords* founded, there were two Collegiat Churches erected, *Saint Chadds* with a Deane and ten Prebendaries, and *Saint Maries* with a Deane likewiſe and nine Prebendaries. And even at this day, a faire and goodly City it is, well frequented and traded, full of good merchandiſe, and by reaſon of the Citizens painfull diligence, with cloth making and traffique with Welſhmen, rich and wealthy. For, hither, almoſt all the commodities of Wales, doe conflow as it were to a common Mart of both Nations. Whereupon it is inhabited both with Welſh and Engliſh ſpeaking both languages: who among other things deſerve ſpeciall commendation for this, in that they have ſet up a Schoole for the training up of children, wherein were more Schollers in number, when I firſt ſaw it, than in any one Schoole throughout all England againe: unto which *Thomas Aſton* the firſt head Schoolmaſter a right good man procured by his meanes a very honeſt Salarie and Stipend for the Teachers. It ſhall not now I hope bee impertinent to note, that when diſſerve of the Nobility conſpired againſt King Henry the Fourth with a purpoſe to advance *Edmund Mortimer* Earle of *March* to the Crowne, as the undoubted full and right heire, whoſe father King *Richard* the Second had alſo declared heire apparent: and Sir *Henry Percy* called *Hotſpurre* then addreſſed himſelfe to give the aſſault to *Shrewsbury*: upon a ſuddaine all their deſignes were daſhed, as it were, from above. For the King with ſpeedy marches was upon his backe before hee imagined. To whom yet the young *Hotſpurre* with courageous reſolution gave battle, and after a long and doubtfull fight, wherein the Scotiſhmen, which followed him, ſhewed much manly valour, (when the Earle of *Worceſter* his Uncle, and the Earle of *Dunbar* were taken) hee deſpairing of Victory ran undaunted upon his owne death amidſt the thickeſt of his enemies. Of this battle the place is called *Battle-field*. Where the King after Victory erected a Chappell and one or two Priests, to pray for their ſoules, who were there ſlaine. As for the poſition of this *Shrewsbury*, it is from the Iſlands *Azores* twenty Degrees, and ſeven and thirty minutes diſtant in Longitude, and from the *Aequinoctiall* Line two and fifty Degrees and three and fifty minutes in Latitude.

From out of this city I wot not whether it may be thought worth my labour, or pertinent to my purpoſe to relate ſo much) brake forth the laſt time, namely in the yeere of our Salvation 1551. that diſmall diſeaſe, *The Engliſh Sweat*, which preſently diſperſed over the whole Realme, made great mortality of people eſpecially thoſe of middle age: for, as many as were taken ſuddenly with this Sweat, within one foure and twenty houres either dyed or recovered. But a preſent remedy was found, namely that ſuch as in the day time fell into it, ſhould preſently in their clothes as they were gone to bed, if by night and in bed, ſhould there reſt, lye ſtill and not ſtirre from thence for foure and twenty houres: provided alwayes, that they ſhould not ſleepe the while but by all meanes bee kept waking. Whereof this diſeaſe firſt aroſe, the learned of Phyſicians know not for certaine. Some ſtrangers aſcribe it to the ground in England, ſtanding ſo much upon plaſtre (and yet it is but in few places of that nature.) In certaine moſt Conſtitutions of weather (ſay they) it happeneth that vapours ariſe out of that kinde of Soile, which although they bee moſt ſubtile, yet they are corrupt, which cauſe likewiſe a ſubtile contagion, and the ſame is proportionate either unto the ſpirits or to the thinn froth that floateth upon the bloud. But whatſoever the cauſe is, no doubt there is an Analogie betwene it and the ſubtile parts of bloud: by reaſon whereof within one day the Patient either mends or ends. As for the cauſe let others ſearch: for mine owne part, I have obſerved that this malady hath runne through England thrice in the age aforegoing; and yet I doubt not, but long before alſo, it did the like (although it were not recorded in writing:) firſt, in the yeere of our Lord 1485. in which King Henry the Seventh began his Raigne, a little after a great

*
Bataille of
Shrewsbury.
1463.

Battlefield.

The Britiſh
ſweat, or ſwea-
ting ſickeſſe.

Hieronymus
Fracaſtorius.

A conjunction of the ſuperior Planets in *Scorpio*. A ſecond time yet more mildly, although the plague accompanied it, in the thirtie three yeere after, anno 1518. upon a great oppoſition of the ſame Planets in *Scorpio* and *Taurus*, at which time it plagued the Netherlands and high Almaine alſo. Laſt of all, three and thirtie yeeres after that, in that yeere 1551. when another conjunction of thoſe Planets in *Scorpio* tooke their effects. But perhaps I have inſiſted too long herein; for, theſe may ſeeme vaine toies to ſuch as attribute nothing at all to celeſtiall influence, and learned experience.

Neere unto this Citie, *Severne* fetcheth many a compaſſe, turning and winding in and out, but ſpecially at *Roffall*, where hee maketh ſuch a curving reach that hee commeth well neere round and meeteth with himſelfe. Heere about is that moſt ancient kinde of boat in very great uſe which in the old time they called in Latine *Rates* commonly, to wit, *Flotes*, certaine peeces of timber joyned together with rough planks and rafters running overthwart, which ſerve to convey burdens downe the River with the ſtream: the uſe and name whereof our countymen have brought from *Rhene* in *Germanie*, and tearme them as the Germans doe *Flotes*. By the River ſide, ſtand *Shrawerden*, a Caſtle ſometime of the Earles of *Arundell*, but afterwards, belonging to Sir *Thomas Bromley*, late Lord Chancellor of England; *Knocking Caſtle*, built by the Lords *Le Strange*, from whom it deſcended hereditarily unto the *Stanleys* Earles of *Darbie*; and neere unto it *Neſſe*, over which there mounteth up a right a craggie cliffe, with a cave much talked of: which together with *Cheswarden*, King Henry the Second gave unto *John Le Strange*; from whom by divers branches are ſprung the moſt Honorable families of the *Stranges* de *Knocking*, *Avindalegh*, *Elleſmere*, *Blackmere*, *Lutheham* and *Hunſtanſton* in *Norſolke*. Now from thoſe of *Knocking*, when as the laſt died without any iſſue male, the inheritance deſcended by *Joan* a ſole daughter, and the wife of *George Stanley*, unto the houſe of *Darby*. Farther from the River, even upon the Weſt frontier of the ſhire, lieth *Oſweſtre*, or *Oſwaldſtre*, in Britiſh *Croix Oſwalds*, a little Towne enclosed with a ditch and a wall, fortified alſo with a pretie Caſtle: and in it there is great trafficke, eſpecially of Welſh Cottons of a ſlight and thin webbe, which you may call in Latine *Levidenſis*, whereof there is bought and ſold heere every weeke great ſtore. It hath the name of *Oſwald* King of the *Northumbers* (whereas before time it was called *Maſerfeld*) whom *Penda* the Pagan Prince of the *Mercians* both ſlew heere in a bloody battle, and after he had ſlaine him, with monſtrous cruelty tare in peeces. Whence a Chriſtian Poet of good antiquity verified thus of him.

*Cujus & abſciſſum caput, abſciſſoque lacertos,
Et tribus affixos palis pendere cruentus
Penda jubet: per quod reliquis exempla relinquat
Terroris manifeſta ſui, regemque beatum
Eſſe probet miſerum: ſed cauſam fallit utramque.
Ullor enim fratris minime timet Oſwius illum;
Imò timere facit: nec Rex miſer, imò beatus
Eſt, qui ſonte boni fruſtur ſemel & ſine fine.*

Whoſe head and limbs diſmembred thus, that bloody *Penda* takes,
And cauſeth to be hanged up, faſt fixed on three ſtokes:
His meaning was hereby to ſtrike a terror to the reſt,
And make him ſeeme a wretched wight, who was a King much bleſt.
But this his purpoſe fail's in both. *Oſwy*, his brother deare,
In his revenge was not afraid, but rather makes him feare:
Nor miſerable is this Prince, but happy we may ſay,
Who now enjoy's the ſpring of good, and ſhall enioy for aye.

This Towne ſeemeth to have had the firſt originall from devotion and religion:
D d d 3 for,

Flotes.

Shrawerden.
Knocking.

Neſſe.

Barons Le
Strange.

20. Ed. 4.

Oſweſtre.

Welſh Cot-
tons.

642.

Oſwald ſlaine.

See in North-
hamberland.Eclipses in
Aries.

Whittington.

The life of
Fulke, written
in French.Barons Fitz-
warin.Latimer what
it signifieth.White-
Church.
Album Mona-
sterium.

for, the Christians of that age, counted it a most holy place; and *Bede* hath recorded that here where *Oswald* was slain, strange miracles have been wrought. But *Malin* brother of *Mereduc* (as *Caradoc* of *Lancarvan* writeth) built it, and the Norman *Fitz-Allans*, who were Lords afterwards thereof, and Earles of *Arundell*, walled it about. The Eclipses of the sunne in *Aries* have been most dangerous unto it: for, in the yeeres of our Lord 1542. and 1567. when the Eclipses of the sunne in *Aries* wrought their effects, it suffered very grievous losse by fire. And namely after this last Eclipse, the fire spread it selfe so far, that there were burnt within the Towne and suburbs about two hundred houses. A little beneath this Northwestward there is an hill entrenched round about with a threefold ditch (they call it *Hen-Dinas*, that is, *The old palace*) The neighbour dwellers say confidently, it hath been a Citie: but other there be that thinke it was the *Camp of Penda*, or *Oswald*. Scarce three miles from hence standeth *Whittington*, a Castle not long agoe of the *Fitz-Guarins*, who deduced their pedigree from *Sir Guarin de Metz*, a *Lorraine*: but he tooke to wife the daughter and heire of *William Peverell*, who is reported to have built *Whittington*, and begat *Fulke* the Father of that most renowned *Sir Fulke Fitz-Warin*, of whose dolefull deedes and variable adventures in the warres our Ancestours spake great wonders, and Poems were composed. In the reigne of Henry the Third, I finde that *hunc* was granted unto *Foulk Fitz-Warin* to strengthen the Castle of *Whittington*, in *compens manner*, as appeareth out of the Close rolles in the fifth of King Henry the Third. The dignity of these Barons *Fitz-Warins*, had an end in an heire Female, and in the age aforegoing passed by *Hansford* unto the *Bourchiers* now Earles of *Bath*. Beneath this *Whittington*, one *Wrenoc* sonne of *Mewric* held lands, who for his service ought to be *Latimer*, that is, *Truchman* or *Interpreter*, betwene the English and the Welshmen. This note I out of an old Inquisition, that men may understand what the said name *Latimer* importeth: which no man almost knew heretofore, and yet it hath been a surname very currant and rife in this kingdome. At the North-west border of this shire, there offer themselves to be scene, first *Shenton* the seat of the respective familie of the *Needhams*, *Blackmere* an ancient Manour of the Lords *Le Strange*, and then *Whitchurch*, or *Album Monasterium*, where I saw some Monuments of the *Talbots*, but principally of that renowned English *Achilles* *Sir John Talbot* the first Earle of *Shrewsbury* out of this house: whose Epitaph, that the reader may see the forme of the Incriptions, according to that age, I will here put downe, although it is little befeeming so worthy and heroicall a Knight.

ORATE PRO ANIMA PRÆNOBILIS DOMINI, DOMINI JOANNIS TALBOTT QVONDAM COMITIS SALOPIÆ, DOMINI TALBOTT, DOMINI FURNIVALL, DOMINI VERDON, DOMINI STRANGE DE BLACK-MERE, ET MARESCALLI FRANCIE, QUI OBIIT IN BELLO APUD BURDEWVS. VII. IULII, M. CCCC. LIII.

That is:

Pray for the Soule of the right Noble Lord, *Sir John Talbot*, sometimes Earle of *Shrewsbury*, Lord *Talbot*, Lord *Furnivall*, Lord *Verdon*, Lord *Strange de Black-Mere*, and *Marescall* of France: Who died in the battaile at *Burdews*. VII. IULII, M. CCCC. LIII.

Unto this Familie of the *Talbots* there accrued by marriage-right the inheritance of the Barons *Le Strange* of *Blackmere*, who were furnamed *Le Strange* commonly, and *Extranei* in Latine records, for that they were strangers brought hether by King Hen-

ric the Second, and in short time their house was far propagated. These of *Blackmere* were much enriched by an heire of *W. de Albo-monasterio*, or this *Whit-Churh*, and also by one of the heires of *John Lord Giffard* of *Brimsfield*, of ancient Nobility in *Glocester-shire*, by the onely daughter of *Walter Lord Clifford*.

More Westward lieth *Ellesmer* a little territorie, but rich and fruitfull, which, as the *Chronologie* of *Chester* testifieth, King John gave with the Castle, to *Llewellyn* Prince of North-Wales in marriage, with *Joane* his base daughter. Afterwards in the time of King Henry the Third it came to the Familie of the *Stranges*. But now it hath his Baron *Sir Thomas Egerton*, a man whom for his singular wisdom and sincere equity Queene *Elizabeth* chose to be Lord Keeper of the great Seale, and King James making him Lord Chancellour advanced to the highest Honour of the long roabe, and withall adorned with the Honorable title of Baron of *Ellesmer*.

Now let us briefly adde somewhat of the Earles of *Shrewsbury*: *Roger de Belesme*, otherwise, *Montgomery*, was created the first Earle of *Shrewsbury* by King William the Conquerour, unto whom he allotted also the greatest part of this Shire. After him succeeded first, his eldest sonne *Hugh*, slain in Wales without issue. Then *Robert* another of his sonnes, a man outrageously cruell toward his owne sonnes and hostages, whose eyes with his owne hands he plucked out and gelded. But afterwards being convict of high Treason, he was kept in perpetuall prison by King Henry the first, and so suffered condigne punishment for his notorious wickednesse. Then was his Earldome made over unto Queene *Adeliza* for her dowry. Many ages after, King Henry the Sixth in the 20. yeere of his reigne, promoted to this honour John Lord *Talbot*, whom both Nature bred, and his disposition inured unto warlike prowesse. And in the 24. yeere of his reigne he bestowed moreover upon the same John, whom in the Parent he calleth Earle of *Shrewsbury*, and of *Welsford*, the title of Earle of *Waterford*, the Barony of *Dongarvan*, and the Seneschalshie or Stewardship of *Ireland*. But when he was slain at *Castillon* upon *Dordon* neere *Burdeaux* together with his younger sonne *Sir John Talbot Vicount L'isle*, after he had foure and twenty yeeres together marched with victorious armes over a great part of France; his sonne John by the daughter and one of the heires of *Sir Thomas Nevill Lord Furnivall*, succeeded: who siding with the house of Lancaster was slain fighting valorously in the forefront of the battaile of *Northampton*. From him by a daughter of the Earle of *Ormond* came John the third Earle of *Shrewsbury*, and *Sir Gilbert Talbot* Captaine of *Callis*, from whom the *Talbots* of *Grafton* descended. This third John had by his wife *Katherine* daughter to *H. Duke of Buckingham*, *George* the fourth Earle, who served King Henry the Seventh valiantly and constantly at the battaile of *Stoke*. And he by *Anne* his wife, daughter of *William Lord Hastings*, had *Francis* the fifth Earle who begat of *Mary* daughter to *Thomas Lord Dacre* of *Gillesland* *George* the sixth Earle, aman of approved fidelity in weighty affaires of State, whose sonne *Gilbert* by his wife *Gertrud* daughter to *Thomas Earle of Rutland*, the seventh Earle maintaineth at this day his place left unto him by his ancestours, with right great honour and commendation for his vertues.

Ellesmer;
1205.Baron of Elles-
mer.Earles of
Shrewsbury.H. Huntingdon
in his booke of
the miseries of
life.

See in Ireland.

In this region there are Parishes much about 170.

CHES.

CHESHIRE.



THE fifth and last of those Countries, which in old time the CORNAVII held, is the County of CHESTER; in the Saxons Tongue Ceoru-ryce, commonly CHESHIRE, and *The County Palatine of Chester*, (for that the Earles thereof had Royalties and princely Priviledges belonging to them; and all the Inhabitants owed Allegiance and fealty to them, as they did to the King.) As for this tearme *Palatine*, that I may rehearse againe, that which I

County Palatine.

have said before of this name, was in times past common to all those, who bare any Office in the Kings Court or Palace: and in that age *Comes Palatinus*, was a Title of Dignity conferred upon him who before was *Palatinus*, with authority to heare and determine Causes in his owne Territory: and as well his Nobles, whom they called *Barons*, as his *Vassals* were bound to repaire to the Palace of the said Count, both to give him adviſe and also to give their attendance, and furnish his Court with their presence.

Petr. Pithemus in the description of Campaine.

This Country (as *William of Malmesbury* saith) *Is scarce of Corne, but especially of Wheat, yet plentifull in Cattails and fish.* Howbeit *Ranulph the Monke of Chester*, affirmeth the contrary: *Whasoeuer Malmesbury dreamd* (saith hee) *upon the relation of others, it aboundeth with all kinde of victuals, plenteous in Corne, flesh, fish, and salmons especially, of the very best: it maintaineth trade with many commodities, and maketh good returns.* For why, in the *Confines* thereof it hath salt pits, mines, and metals. And this moreover will I adde: the grasse and fodder there, is of that goodnesse and vertue, that cheefes bee made heere in great number of a most pleasing and delicate taste, such as all England againe affordeth not the like; no, though the best dayriwomen otherwise and skilfullest in cheefe making be had from hence. And whiles I am writing this, I cannot chuse but mervaille by the way at that which *Strabo* writeth, *That in his time some Britans could not skill of making Cheefe*: and that *Plinie* afterwards wondered: *That barbarous Nations, who lived of milke, either knew not or despised, for so many ages, the commodity of Cheefe, who otherwise had the seas of crudding into a pleasant tartnesse, and so fat butyr.* Whereby it may be gathered, that the devise of making Cheefe came into Britaine from the Romans. But howsoever this Region in fertility of soile commeth behinde many Countries in England, yet hath it alwaies bred and reared more Gentry than the rest: For, you have not in all England againe any one Province beside, that in old time either brought more valorous Gentlemen into the field, or had more Families in it of Knights degree. On the Southside it is hemmed in with *Shropp shire*, on the Eastside with *Stafford shire* and *Darby shire*, on the North

Joh. Tillius.

The most commendable Cheefes.

with *Lancashire*, and on the West, with *Denbigh* and *Flint-shires*: Toward the North-West it runneth farre into the sea with a long cantele* or Promontory, which being enclosed within two Creekes receiveth the Ocean on both sides entering into the land: into which two Creekes also all the Rivers of this Shire doe discharge themselves. Into that Creeke which is more Westerne passeth the River *Dee* that divideth the country from *Denbigh-shire*: into that on the Eastside, both *Weaver*, which runneth through the mids of the Shire, and *Mersy* also, that parteth it from *Lancashire*, issue themselves. Neither see I any better way of describing this County, than if I follow the very tracts of these Rivers. For, all the places of greatest note, are situate by the sides of them. But before I enter into any particular description, I will first propose out of *Lucian* the Monke, thus much in commendation of *Cheshire*: for he is a rare Author and lived a little after the Conquest. *If any man be desirous* (saith hee) *either fully, or as neere as may bee, to treat of the Inhabitants, according to the disposition of their manners, in respect of others that live in sundry places of the Realme. They are found to be partly different from the rest of English, partly better, and partly equall unto them.*

* *Witrall*.

Lucian the Monke, of the praise of *Cheshire*.

But

But they seeme especially (the best point to be considered in general trial of manners) in feasting freindly, at meat cheerefull, in giving entertainment liberall, soone angry, but not much, and as soone pacified, lavish in words, impatient of servitude, mercifull to the afflicted, compassionate toward the poore, kinde to their kinsred, spare of their labour, void of dissimulation and doublenesse of heart, nothing greedy in eating, farre from dangerous practices, yet by a certaine licentious liberty, bold in borrowing many times other mens goods. They abound in Woods and pastures, they are rich in flesh and Cattail, confining on one side upon the Welsh Britans, and by a long intercourse and transfusion of their manners, in the most part like unto them. This also is to be considered, in what sort the Countrey of Chester enclosed upon one side with the limite of the Wood Lime, by a certaine distinct privilege from all other Englishmen is free, and by the Indulgences of Kings and Excellencies of Earles hath bene wont in Assemblies of the people to attend upon the Earles sword rather than the Kings Crowne: and within their precinct to heare, and determine the greatest matters with more liberty. Chester it selfe is a place of recett for the Irish, a neighbour to the Welsh, and plentifully served with Corne by the English: Finely seated, with Gates anciently built, approved in hard and dangerous difficulties. In regard of the River and prospect of the eye together, worthy according to the name to be called a City: garded with watch of holy and religious men, and, through the mercy of our Saviour, alwaies fenced and fortified with the mercifull assistance of the Almighty.

The River * *Dee*, called in Latin *Deva*, in British *Dyffyr-dwy*, that is, the water of *Dwy*, breeding very great plenty of Salmon, ariseth out of two fountaines in Wales; and thereof men thinke it tooke the name: for *Dwy* in their tongue significth *Two*. Yet others, observing also the signification of the word, interpret it *Black-water*, others againe, *Gods water*, or *Divine water*. But although *Aufonius* noteth that a Spring hallowed to the *Gods* was named *Divovna* in the ancient Gaules tongue (which was all one with the British) and in old time all Rivers were reputed, *Dei nomine*, that is, *Descending from Heaven*, yea and our Britans yeilded divine honour unto Rivers, as *Gildas* writeth, yet I see not why they should attribute Divinity to this River *Dwy* above all others. The *Theffalians*, as we reade, gave to the River *Panens* divine honour, for the pleasantnesse thereof; the *Scythians* to *Danubius* for the largenesse; the *Germans* to *Rhene* because it was counted a judge in the question of true and unfilded wedlocke: But wherefore they should impose a divine name upon this River I see no reason. I said before, unlesse peradventure, because now and then it changed the Chanell, and thereby forshewed a sure token of Victory to the Inhabitants upon it, when they were in hostility one with another, according as it inclined more to this side or to that, after it had left the Chanell: for, thus hath *Giraldus Cambrensis* recorded, who in some sort beleeveth it: Or else, because they observed that contrary to the wonted manner of other Rivers, upon the fall of much raine it arose but little, and sooden as the South winde beatech long upon it, it swelleth and extraordinarily overfloweth the grounds adjoining. Peradventure also the *Christian Britans* thought the water of this River to be holy: For, it is written, that when they stood ready to joyne battaile with the English Saxons and had kissed the earth, they dranke also very devoutly of this River, in memoriall of *Christs* most sacred and pretious blood. But, *Dee* which seemeth to rush rather than to run out of Wales, no sooner is entered into *Cheshire* but he passeth more mildly with a slower streame by *BONIUM*, in some written copies of *Antonine*, *BONIUM*, a City that had been of great name in that age, and afterward a famous Monastery. Of the Chore or quire whereof, it was called by the Britans *Bon-chor* and *Bancher*, of the ancient English *Bancopna-byrige*, and *Bancher*, and among many good and godly men, it fostered and brought up (as some write) that most wicked Arch-heretick *Pelagius*, who injuriously derogating from the grace of God, troubled a long time the West Church with his pestiferous Doctrine. *Prosser Aquitanus* in this Verse of his, termeth him the British Adder, or Land-snake.

Pelissiro vomuit coluber serpens Britannus.

A British Snake, with venomous tongue,
Hath vomited his poison strong.

Neither

Neither have I made mention of him for any other reason, but because it is behoveable to each one to know vices and venims. In this Monastery, as saith *Bede*, There was such a number of Monkes that being divided into seven portions, which had every of them a severall head and Ruler over them, yet every one of these had no fewer than three hundred men who were wont to live all of their handy labour. Of whom *Edilfred* King of the Nordan-humbers slew 12. hundred, because they had implored in their prayers *Christs* assistance for the Christian Britans against the English-Saxons, then infidels. The profession of this Monasticall life (that I may digresse a little) began, when Pagan Tyrans enraged against Christians pursued them with bloody persecutions. For then good devout men, that they might serve God in more safety and security, withdrew themselves into the vast Wilderneses of *Egypt*, and not (as the Painims are wont with open mouth to give it out) for to enwrap themselves willingly in more miseries because they would not be in misery.

Where they scattered themselves among Mountaines and Deserts, living in caves and little cells heere and there in holy meditations. At first solitary and alone, whereupon in Greeke they were called *Monachi*, that is, *Monkes*: but after they thought it better (as the sociable nature of mankind required) to meete together at certaine times to serve God, and at length they beganne to cohabite and live together for mutuall comfort, rather than like wilde beasts to walke up and downe in the Deserts. Their profession was to pray, and by the labour of their owne hands, to get living for themselves, and maintenance for the poore, and withall they vowed poverty, obedience and chastity. *Athanasius* first brought this kinde of Monkes consisting of Laymen into the West Church. Whereunto after, that *Saint Austen* in *Africke*, *Saint Martin* in *France*, and *Congell* in *Britaine* and *Ireland* had adjoynd the function of Regular Clergy: It is incredible, how farre and wide they spred, how many and how great *Canobies* were built for them, so called of their communion of life; as also Monasteries, for that they kept still a certaine shew of solitary living: and in those daies none were more sacred and holy than they, and accordingly they were reputed; considering how by their praiers to God, by their example, Doctrine, labour, and industry, they did exceeding much good not onely to themselves, but also to all mankind. But as the world grew worse and worse, so those their holy manners, as one said, *rebus cessere secundis*, that is, *Gave backward in time of prosperity*. Now let mee returne unto my matter, craving your pardon for this short digression.

After these dayes, this Monastery fell utterly to ruine; for, in the time of *William* of *Malmesbury* who lived presently after the Normans comming in, *There remained here*, as hee saith, *so many tokens of Antiquity, so many walles of Churches halfe downe, so many windings and turnings of Gates, such heapes of rubbish and rammell, as hardly a man should have found assember*. But now is left to be seene scarcely the face and outward shew of a dead City or Monastery, and the names only remaine of two Gates *Port Hogham* and *Port Cleis*, which stand a mile asunder, betweene which are found very old peeces of the Romans money. But, that I may tell you of one thing, this *BONIUM* or *Bancher* is not reckoned within this County but in *Flinthshire* a peece whereof severed (as it were) from the rest lyeth heere betweene *Cheshire* and *Sherbro-shire*. *Dee*, where he entrench first into this shire seeth above him not farre from his banke, *Malpas*, upon an high hill: which had in it a Castle; and for the bad, narrow, and combrous way was termed in Latin *Malaplatea*, that is, *distress*, and thence also tooke this later name *Malpas* from the Normans, whereas in times past the Englishmen, almost in the very same sense, called it *Depenhach*. The Barony hereof *Hugh* Earle of *Cheshire* gave to *Robert Fitz-Hugh*: In the Raigne of Henry the Second, *William Patricke* the sonne of *William Patricke* held the same: of whose line *Robert Patricke* standing outlawed, lost it. After some few yeeres *David* of *Malpas* by a Writ of *Recognisance*, gat the one halfe of that Towne which was *Gilbert Clerkes*: But a great part of this Barony went afterwards hereditarily to those *Suttons* that are Barons of *Dudley*: and a part also thereof came to *Urian Samner*. And from *Philip* a younger sonne of *David* of *Malpas*, is descended that worshipfull family of the *Egertons*, who

Monkery.

Rutilius
Claudius

That Bancher
of which Saint
Bernard (spea-
keth in the life
of Malachie
was in Ireland,

Bonism or Bancher
is of Flint-
shire.

Out of the Roll
of Domelday
of Chel-thure,
Barons of
Mal-pas.
Per breve re-
cognisancie.

Deva.
* The River
Dee.

Divovna.

Bonium.

Bancher.

who tooke this name from the place of their habitation: like as from other places, diverse Gentlemen of this Race received their surnames *Coigrave, Overton, Cadogan, and Golborn*. As touching the name of this place, give mee leave before I depart hence, in this serious worke, to inferre a pretty jest out of *Giraldus Cambrensis*. It happened, saith hee, in our daies, that a certaine Jew travelling towards Shrewsbury, with the Archdeacon of this place, whose surname was *Peché*, that is, Sinne, and a Deane named *Devill*; when he heard by chance the Archdeacon telling, That his Archdeaconry began at a place called *Il-street*, and reached as farre as to *Mal-pas* toward Chester: Hee considering and understanding withall as well the Archdeacons surname as the Deanes, came out with this pleasant and merry conceits, Would it not bee a wonder (quoth hee) and my fortune very good, if ever I get safe againe out of this country, where Sinne is the Archdeacon, and the Devill the Deane; where the entry into the Archdeaconry is *Il-street*, and the going forth of it, *Mal-pas*.

Itinerar. lib. 2.
cap. 13.

Shoclach.

Grosvenour.

Deunana.
Deva.

Chester.

From hence *Dee* runneth downe amaine by *Shoclach*, where sometime was a Castle, by *Aldford*, belonging in times past to the *Arderns*; by *Poulesford*, where in the Reigne of Henry the Third, Sir *Raulph* of *Ormesby* had his Castle, and by *Eaton* the seat of the famous Family of *Grosvenour*, that is, *The great Hunter*, whose posterity now corruptly goe under the name of *Gravenor*.

Somewhat higher, upon the same River neere unto *Dee-mouth*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *SETEIA* for *Deia*, standeth the noble City which the said *Ptolomee* named *DEUNANA*, *Antonine* the Emperour *DEVA*, of the River, the Britons *Caer-Legion*, *Caer-Leon Vaur*, *Caer-Leon ar Duffr Dwy*, and by way of excellency *Caer*, like as our Ancestours, the English Saxons *Legea-cer-cep*, of the *Legions Camp*, and wee more short, *West-Chester*, of the West situation, and simply *Chester*, according to the Verse.

Cestria de castris nomen quasi Castris sumptis.
Chester of *Castris* tooke the name,
As if that *Castris* were the same.

For these British names, without all doubt were derived from the *Twentieth Legion* named *VICTRIX*: This Legion in the yeere that *Galba* the Emperour was the second time Confull, together with *Titus Vinius*, was transported over into Britain which being out of awe and therefore dreaded of the Lieutenants, as well those which had beene Consuls as Pretours, had *Julius Agricola* appointed Lieutenant over it by *Vespasian* the Emperour; was at length placed and seated in this City which I suppose was not built many yeeres before, and set as one would say at the back of the *ORDOVICES*, to restrain them: although there are some, who avouch it to be of greater antiquity, as they say than the Moone: as founded forsooth by *Leon Vaur* the Giant, I know not how many hundred yeeres before. But the very name it selfe might give the checke unto these triviall Antiquaries, and withhold them from so grosse an error. For, they cannot deny, but that *Leon Vaur* in British signifieth *A great Legion*. Now, whether it stands more with reason and equity, that a City should take name of a *Great Legion*, than of *Leon a Giant*, let the learned judge; knowing, that in the part of *Spaine* called *Tarracensis*, there is a Realme now called *Legio* of the seventh Legion *Germanica*, considering also, that the twentieth Legion, which they reamed *Britannica*, *Valens VICTRIX*, and some falsely *Valeria VICTRIX*, abode in this City, as *Ptolomee*, *Antonine*, and the ancient Coine of *Septimius Geta* doe prove by which, it appeareth for certaine, that this City also was a Colony. For, in the verse or back-side thereof standeth this Inscription *COL. DIUANA LEG. XX. VICTRIX*. But to testifie the Romanes magnificence, there are remaining in this day very few tokens, beside pavements of foure square checker worke: howbeit in the former ages it presented many: which, *Ranulph* a Monke of this City will tell you out of his *Polychronicon* in these his owne words. *There be waies beunder the ground vaulted marvelously with stone worke, chambers having arched roofes*

Chester, a
Colony of the
Romans.

head, huge stones engraven with the names of ancient men: heere also are sometimes digged up peeces of money coined by *Julius Caesar* and other famous persons, and stamped with their inscriptions. Likewise *Roger* of *Chester* in his *Policraticon*, When I behold (saith he) the ground worke of buildings in the streets laid with monstrous big stones, it seemeth that it hath beene founded by the painfull labour of Romans or Giants, rather than by the sweat of Britons. This City built in forme of a quadrant, foure square, is enclosed with a wall that taketh up more than two miles in compasse, and hath eleven parishes. But that of *S. Johns* without the Northgate was the fairest, being a stately and solemne building, as appeareth by the remaines, wherein were anciently Prebendaries, and, as some write, the Bishops See. Neere unto the River standeth the Castle upon a rocky hill, built by the Earles:

where the Courts *Palatine*, and the *Assises*, as they call them, are kept twice a yeere. The houses are very faire built and along the chiefe streets are galleries or walking places, they call them *Rowes* having shops on both sides, through which a man may walke dry from one end unto the other. But it hath not continued evermore in one tenor of prosperity. First it was rased by *Egfrid* King of *Northumberland*, then by the Danes, yet reedified againe by *Edelsed* Lady of the *Mercians*: and soone after it saw King *Eadgar* in magnificent maner triumphing over the British Princes. For, sitting himselfe in a Barge at the fore-decke, *Kennadie* King of the *Scots*, *Malcolme* King of *Cumberland*, *Alacon* King of *Mann* and of the Islands, with all the Princes of *Wales* brought to doe homage, and like watermen working at the Oar, rowed him along the River *Dee*, in a triumphant shew, to his great glory and joy of the beholders.

The Rowes;

Marianus
Scorus.

About the
yeere.
960.

Certaine yeeres after, and namely about the yeere of our Redemption 1094, when as in a devout and religious emulation, as one saith, Princes strove avie, That *Cathedrall Churches* and *Ministers* should be erected in a more decent and seemely forme, and when as *Christendome* renosed as it were her selfe, and casting away her old habiliments, did put on every where the bright and whiterobe of Churches; *Hugh* the first of the Norman bloud, that was Earle of *Chester*, repaired the Church which Earle *Leofrick* had formerly founded in honour of the *Virgin Saint Werburga*, and by the advice of *Anselm*, whom he had procured to come out of Normandy granted the same unto Monkes. And now, it is notorious for the Tombe of Henry the Fourth, Emperour of *Almaine*, who as they say gave over his Empire and lived heere an *Eremit* life; and for the Bishops See, therein established. Which See immediately after the Normans Conquest, *Peter* Bishop of *Lichfield*, translated from *Lichfield* thither; but when it was brought to *Coventry*, and from thence into the ancient seat againe, *West-Chester* lay a long time bereft of this Episcopall Dignity, untill in our fathers dayes King Henry the Eighth, having thrust out the Monkes, ordeined Prebendaries, and restored a Bishop againe, under whom for his Diocesse he appointed this County, *Lancashire, Richmond, &c.* and appointed the same to be within the Province of the Archbishop of *York*. But returne wee now to matters of greater antiquity. When as now the said Cathedrall Church was built, the Earles that were of the Normans line, fortified the City both with Walles and Castle. For as the Bishop held of the King that which belongeth to his Bishopricke (these are the words of *Domesday booke* made by King William the Conquerour) so the Earles with their men held of the King wholly, all thereto, of the City. It paid Geld or Tribute for fifty hides: and foure hundred and thirty and one houses were thus Geldable: and seven Mint-masters. When the King himselfe in person came thither every Carrucate yielded unto him two hundred Hestars, and one tun full of Ale, and one Rulca of butyr. And in the same place, for the reedification of the City wall and the bridge, the Provost gave warning by an edict, that out of every hide in the County one man should come: and looke whose man came not, his Lord or Master was fined in forty shillings to the King and the Earle. If I should particulare the scufflings and skirmishes heereabout betwene the Welsh and the English in the beginning of the Normans time, their inrodes and outrodes, the often scarfires of the Suburbs of *Hanbrid* beyond the Bridge, whereupon the Welshmen call it *Treboeth*, that is, *The burnes towne*, as also the Wall made there of Welshmens skuls that went a great length, I should seeme to forget my selfe and thrust my stile into the Historians Harvest.

Churches repaired.
Rodolphus
Glaber.

Ecc

But

But ever since the said time, hath *Chester* notably flourished, and King Henry the Seventh made it a County by it selfe incorporate. Neither wanteth any thing there that may be required in a most flourishing City, but that the Ocean being offended and angry (as it were) at certaine Mills in the very chanell of the River *Dee*, hath by little withdrawne himselfe back, and affoordeth not unto the City the commodity of an Haven, as heretofore. The Longitude of this place is twenty Degrees and three and twenty Scruples: the Latitude three and fifty Degrees and eleven Scruples. If you desire to know more touching this City, have here these reports out of *Lucian* that Monke above said, who lived almost five hundred yeeres agoe. First, it is to bee considered, that *Chester* is built as a City, the site whereof inviteth and allureth the eye, which being situate in the West parts of Britaine, was in time past a place of receipt to the Legions comming a farre off to repose themselves, and served sufficiently to keepe the Keies, as I may say, of Ireland, for the Romans, to preserve the limits of their Empire. For, being opposite to the North-East part of Ireland, it openeth way for passage of ships and Mariners with spread saile passing not often but continually to and fro, as also for the commodities of sundry sorts of Merchandise. And whiles it casteth eye forward into the East, it looketh toward not onely the See of Rome and the Empire thereof, but the whole world also: so that it standeth forth as a keening place to the view of eyes: that there may bee knowne valiant exploits, and the long traine and consequences of things; as also whatsoever throughout the world hath beene done by all persons, in all places, and as all times: and what ever hath beene ill done may also bee avoided and taken heed of. Which City having foure Gates from the foure cardinall Windes on the East side, hath a prospect toward India, on the West toward Ireland, North-Eastward the greater Norway, and Southward that streight and narrow Angle, which drive severity, by reason of civil and home-discords, hath left unto the Britains. Which long since by their bitter variance have caused the name of Britaine to bee changed into the name of England. Over and beside, *Chester* hath by Gods gift a River to enrich and adorne it, the same faire and fishfull, hard by the City Wall: and on the South side a roade and harbour for ships comming from Gascoine, Spaine, and Germany, which with the helpe and direction of Christ, by the labour and wisdom of Merchants, repaire and refresh the heart of the City with many good things: that wee being comforted every way by our Gods Grace, may also drinke Wine often, more frankly and plentifully: because those Countreies enjoy the fruits of the Vineyards abundantly. Moreover the open Sea ceaseth not to visite it every day with a Tide, which according as the broad shelves and barres of sands are opened or hidden by Tides and Ebbes incessantly, is wont more or lesse, either to send or exchange some thing or other, and by his reciprocal Flow and returnes, either to bring in or to carry out somewhat.

From the City, North-Westward, there shooteth out a languet of land, or Promontory of the maine land into the Sea, enclosed on the one side with *Dunham*, on the other side with the River *Mersey*: wee call it *Wirall*: the Welch Britains, for that it is an Angle, tearme it *Kilgury*. In old time it was all forest and not inhabited, as the Dwellers report, but King Edward the Third disforested it: Yet now, beset it is with Townes on every side: howbeit more beholding to the Sea than to the Soile: for, the land beareth small plenty of Corne, the water yeeldeth great store of fish. At the entry into it on the South side standeth *Shotwich* Castle of the Kings, upon the salt water: Upon the North standeth *Hooten*, a Manour, which in King *Richard* the Second his time, came to the *Stanleys*, who fetch their Pedegree from *Alane Silvestre* upon whom *Ranulph* the first of that name, Earle of *Chester*, conferred the *Bailly-wick* of the Forest of *Wirall*, by delivering unto him an horne. Close unto this is *Poole*, from whence the Lords of the place that have a long time flourished, tooke their name: and hard by it *Stanlaw*, as the Monkes of that place interpret it, *A Story hill*: where *John Lacy* Connestable of *Chester* founded a little Monastery, which afterward by reason of inundations was transferr'd to *Whaley* in *Lancashire*.

In the utmost brinke of this Promontory, lieth a small, hungry, barren, and sandy

Isle, called *Il-bre*, which had sometime a little Cell of Monkes in it. More within the Country and Eastward from *Wirall*, you meet with a famous Forest, named the Forest of *Delamere*, the Foresters whereof by hereditary succession, are the *Dawns* of *Ukinton*, descended of a worshipfull stocke, from *Ranulph de Kingleigh*, unto whom *Ranulph* the first, Earle of *Chester* gave that Forestership, to bee held by right of inheritance. In this Forest *Adelsled*, the famous *Mercian* Lady, built a little City called *Eader-bunz*, that is, by interpretation, *Happy Towne*, which now having quite lost it selfe hath likewise lost that name, and is but an heape of rubbish and rammell, which they call, *The Chamber in the Forest*. And about a mile or two from hence, are to be seene the ruines of *Finborow*, another Towne built by the same Lady *Adelsled*.

Through the upper part of this Forest the River *Wever* runneth, which ariseth out of a Poole in the South side of the Shire at *Ridly*, the dwelling house of the worshipfull Family of the *Egertons*: who flowered out of the Barons of *Malpas*, as I have said. Neere hereunto is *Bunbury* contractly so called for *Boniface Bury*, for Saint *Boniface* was the Patron Saint there, where the *Egertons* built a College for Priests. Over against which is *Beeiton* which gave surname to an ancient family, and where upon a steep rising hill, *Beeiton Castle* towereth aloft with a turretted wall of a great circuit. This Castle the last *Ranulph* Earle of *Chester* built, whereof *Leland* our Countryman being rapt both with a Poeticall and Propheicall fury, writeth thus.

*Affrio rediens victor Ranulphus ab orbe,
Hoc posuit Castrum terrorem gentibus olim
Vicinis, patriaeque sua memorabile vallum.
Nunc licet indignas pariat frusta ruinas,
Tempus erit quando rursus caput exeret altum,
Vatibus antiquis si fas mihi credere vati.*

When *Ranulph* from *Affyria* return'd with victory;
As well the neighbour Nations to curbe and terrifie,
As for to fence his owne Country, this famous Fort he rais'd,
Whilom a stately thing, but now the pride thereof is raz'd.
And yet though at this present time, it be in meane estate
With crackes and breaches much defac'd, and foully ruinate;
The day will come when it againe the head aloft shall heave,
If ancient Prophets I my selfe a Prophet, may beleave.

But to returne to the River, *Wever* first holdeth his course Southward, not farre from *Woodhay*, where dwelt a long time that family of the *Wilburhams* knights in great reputation; also by *Bulkeley* and *Cholmondeley* which imparted their names to worshipfull houses of knights degree; not farre off on the one hand from *Baddeley* the habitation in times past of the ancient Family *de Praerij*: of the other, from *Cumbermer*, in which *William Malbedeng* founded a little religious house. Where this River commeth to the South limit of this Shire, it passeth through low places, wherein, as also elsewhere, the people finde oftentimes and get out of the ground, trees that have been buried, as it is thought, there, ever since *Noahs* flood. But afterwards, watering fruitfull fields, he taketh to him out of the East a riveret by which standeth *Wilburbury*, so called of *Wibba*, King of the *Mercians*. Hard to it lie, *Hasberton*, the seat in old time of the *Orbeis*, then of the *Corbets*, but now of the *Smithes*; *Dodinton*, the possession of the *Delvestes*; *Hasberton*, of the *Griphins*; *Shavinton* of the *Wodenoths* (who by that name may seeme to have descended from the English Saxons) beside the places of other famous Families wherewith this County every where aboundeth. From thence runneth *Wever* downe by *Nantwich*, not farre from *Middlewich*, and so to *Northwich*. These are very famous *Salt-wiches*, five or sixe miles distant asunder, where brine or salt water is drawne out of *Pittes*, which they

Eee 2

powre

powre not upon wood while it burneth; as the ancient *Gauls* and *Germans* were wont to doe, but boyle over the Fire, to make Salt thereof. Neither doubt I, that these were knowne unto the Romanes, and that from hence was usually paid the *Custom* for salt called *Salarium*. For, there went a notable high way from *Middlewich* to *Northwich*, raised with gravell to such an height, that a man may easily acknowledge that it was a worke of the Romanes, seeing that all this Country over, gravell is so scarce: and from thence at this day it is carried to private mens uses.

Matthew Paris writeth, that King Henry the Third stopped up these *Salt-pits*, when in hostile manner he wasted this Shire: because the *Welshmen*, so tumultuous in those dayes, should not have any victuals or provision from thence. But when the faire beames of peace beganne once to shine out, they were opened againe. *Nantwich*, which the River *Wever* first visiteth, is reputed the greatest and fairest built Towne of all this Shire after *Chester*, the Britans call it *Hellabwa*, that is, *The white Wich*, or *Salt pitte*, because the whitest salt is there boiled: and such as writ in Latine named it *Vicus Malbannus*, haply of one *William* named *Malbeng* and *Malbanc*, unto whom, at the Normans Conquest of England, it was allotted. It hath one onely Salt pitte, they call it the *Brine pitte*, about some foure-teenne foote from the River, out of which they convey salt water by troughes of wood into houses adjoyning, wherein there stand little barrels pitched fast in the ground, which they fill with that water, and at the ringing of a bell, they beginne to make fire under the leades; whereof they have fixe in every house, and therein seeth the said water: then certaine women, they call them *Walleres*, with little wooden rakes fetch up the salt from the bothom, and put it in baskets, they call them *Salt barrowes*, out of which the liquor runneth, and the pure salt remaineth. The Church (and but one they have) is passing faire, and belonged, as I have heard, unto the Abbey of *Cumbermer*: from hence, *Wever* holding on his course crooked enough, is augmented with a brooke coming out of the East, which runneth downe from *Crew*, a place inhabited in old time by a notable family of that name. And farther yet from the West side of the River, *Calveley* sheweth it selfe, which gave both habitation and name to the worthy Family of the *Calveleys*, out of which in the Raigne of *Richard* the Second, Sir *Hugh Calveley* Knight, was for his Chivalry in France so renowned, that there occurred no hardy exploit but his prowesse would goe through it. From thence *Wever* hieth apace by *Mainsbush*, the house of the *Mainsbushs*, and by *Vale Royall*, an Abbey founded by King *Edward* the First in a most pleasant valley, where now dwelleth the ancient Familie of the *Holcrofts*, unto *Northwich*, in British called *Hellabwa*, that is, *The blacke salt pitte*: where also very neere the brinke of the river *Dan*, there is a most plentifull and deepe Brine-pit, with staires made about it, by which they that draw water out of it in leather buckets, ascend halfe naked into the troughes, and powre it thereinto, by which it is carried into the wich houses, about which there stand on every side many stakes and piles of wood. Heere *Wever* receiveth into his Chanell the River *Dan*, whose trade and streame I will now follow.

This *Dan* or more truly *Daven*, flowing out of those hilles which on the East side sever *Staffordshire* from *Cheshire*, runneth along to CONDOTE a townie mentioned by *Antonine* the Emperour, now called corruptly *Congleton*, the middle whereof the little brooke *Howty*, on the East side *Daningschew*, and Northward *Dan* it selfe, watereth. And albeit this Towne for the greatnesse and frequency thereof, hath deserved to have a Major and six Aldermen, yet hath it but a Chappell and no more: and the same made of timber, unlesse it bee the quire and a little Towre-steeple, which acknowledged *Astbury* about two miles off, her mother-Church: which verily is a very faire Church, the West Porch whereof is equall in height to the very Church as high as it is, and hath a spire steeple adjoyning thereto. In the Church-yard lie two portraictures of Knights upon Sepulchres, in whose Shields are two barres. But for that they be without their colours, hardly can any man say, whether of the *Breretons*, *Manwarings*,

Manwarings or *Venables*, which are the most noble Families in those parts, and indeed such Barres doe they beare in their Coates of Armes, but in divers colours.

Then commeth *Daven* to *Davenport*, commonly *Dampert*, which hath adopted into her owne name a notable family: and *Holmeschappell*, a Towne well knowne to waiting men: where within the remembrance of our Grandfathers, *1. Needham* built a Bridge: Neere unto which, at *Rudbeath* there was sometime a place of refuge and Sanctuary as well for the Inhabitants of this Shire as strangers, who had trespassed against the lawes that there they might abide in security for a yeere and a day. I then mineth it under *Kinderton* the old seat of the ancient race of the *Venables*, who ever since the first coming in of the Normans have been of name and reputation here, and commonly are called *Barons of Kinderton*. Beneath this, Southward, the little river *Croco* runneth also into *Dan*, which flowing out of the Poole called *Bagmere* passeth by *Brereton*: which, as it hath given name to the worshipfull, ancient and numerous family of the *Breretons* knights; so Sir *William Brereton* knight, hath of late added very much credit and honour to the place, by a magnificent and sumptuous house that hee hath there built. A wonder it is that I shall tell you, and yet no other than I have heard verified upon the credit of many credible persons, and commonly believed: That before any heire of this house of the *Breretons* dyeth, there bee scene in a Poole adjoyning, bodies of trees swimming for certaine daies together. Like unto that which *Leonardus Varius* reporteth from the testimony of Cardinal *Granwell*, namely, that neere unto the Abbey of Saint *Maurice* in *Burgundy*, there is a fish-pond, in which are fishes put according to the number of the Monkes of that place: And if any one of them happen to bee sicke, there is a fish scene also to float, and swimme above the water halfe dead: and if the Monke shall dye, the said fish a few daies before dieth.

As touching these matters, if they bee true, I wote not what to say: for, I am no Wisard to interpret such strange wonders: But these and such like things are done either by the holy tutelary Angels of men, or else by the devils who by Gods permission mightily shew their power in this inferior world. For, both the sorts of them being intelligent natures, upon a deliberate purpose and to some certaine end, and not for nought, worke strange things. The Angels seeke after and aime at the safety and health of man-kinde: the devils contrariwise plot to mischief, vex, or else to delude them. But all this may seeme impertinent to our purpose.

Crooke the Riveret aforesaid, being past *Brereton*, within a while after visiteth *Middlewich*, neere unto his confluence with *Dan*, where there bee two Welles of salt water parted one from the other by a small Brooke; *Sheasbes* they call them: the one stands not open, but at certaine set times, because folke willingly steale the Water thereof, as beeing of greater vertue and efficacy. From hence runneth *Dan* to *Boistoke*, in times past *Boestoc*, the ancient seat of the Familie of the *Boistokes* Knights, which by the marriage with *Anne* onely Daughter of *Raulph*, sonne and heire to Sir *Adam Boistoke* knight, passed together with a very great live-lode unto Sir *John Savage*. Out of this ancient house of the *Boistokes*, as out of a stocke, sprung a goodly number of the same name, in *Cheshire*, *Shropshire*, *Barkshire* and elsewhere.

When as *Dan* now, beneath *Northwich* that I spake of, hath united his streame with *Wever*, then *Wever* runneth forthright, and taketh in from the East, *Pever*, that floweth hard by *Pever* and giveth it the name: where, that ancient notable Familie of *Meinilwarin*, commonly *Manwaring* is seated; out of which *Raulph* married the daughter of *Hugh Kevelioc* Earle of *Chester*, as appeareth by an old Charter in the custody of *Ranulph* the heire now of the same house.

From thence speedeth *Wever* by *Winington* which gave both habitation and name to the renowned familie of the *Winingtons*; and not farre from *Merbury*, which being so called of a *Mere* under it, conferred likewise the name upon that respective ancient Familie of the *Merburies*. Hence the River holdeth on his course neere unto *Dutton*, the Inheritance of that great and worthy Familie of *Duttons*, who derive

Chronicle of
Waller.
Towcher.

Rock-Savage.

Maclesfield.

Thelwall.

Runkhorne.
Elsted or Ethel-
sted.

derive their descent from one *Hudard*, allied to the Earles of *Chester*: and who by an old order and custome have great authority over all the pipers, fiddlers, and minstrels of this Province, ever since that one of the *Duttons* a young Gentleman full of spirit and active withall, having hastily gathered a tumultuary power of those kinde of people, valiantly delivered *Ranulph* the last Earle of *Chester* from danger, when hee was beset with Welsh enemies. Neither must I passe over in silence *Neiber Whitley* in this tract, out of which came the *Tuschetts* or *Towchetts*, who are now Barons *Audley*. By this time *Wever* aforesaid flowing betweene *Prodesham* a Castle of ancient note and *Clifton*, now *Rock-Savage*, an house of the *Savages* new built, who here by marriage attained to rich and faire revenewes; entrench at length into *Mossey mouth*. And this is so called of the River *Mersey*, which running as a bounder betwene *Cheshire* and *Lancashire*, is there at length discharged into the Sea, after it hath among other small townes of meaner note watered *Stockport*, which had sometime a Baron, of the Earles of *Chester*, and *Warburgton* so named of *S. Werburgh*, the habitation of a family thereof surnamed, but branched from the *Duttons*: Herby it entertaineth the River *Bollin* out of that spacious Forest of *Maclesfield*. Upon this *Bollin* standeth *Maclesfield* one of the fairest Townes of this County, which gave name unto that *Forest*: where *T. Savage*, first Bishop of *London*, and afterwards *Arch. bishop* of *Torke*, built a College, wherein some of that Race of the *Savages* lye entombed: also *Dunham*, which from Sir *Hamon* of *Mossey*, by the *Fittones* and *Venables* descended hereditarily unto the Family of *Booth*. From thence *Mersey* cometh to *Thelwall* before it bee farre past *Knotsford*, that is, *Cannatus his Ford*; which is divided into the upper and the nether: also to *Lee*; from whence there is a Family bearing the same surname, that is not onely of gentle blood and of especial note, but also farre and fairely propagated into a number of branches. As for *Thelwall*, now it is an obscure Village, but in times past a large Towne, built by King *Edward* the elder, and so called, as *Florilegus* witnesseth, of bodies of trees the boughes being cut off, firmly fastened in the ground wherewith hee walled it round. For the Saxons in their tongue called the *Trunkes* and *bodies of Trees*, *Del*, and a *Wall*, as we doe now.

At the very mouth of the River standeth *Runkborne*, founded in the same age by *D* Lady *Edelfleda* commonly called *Elsted*, and brought now by the mutability of time to a few cottages. This Lady *Edelfleda* (to tell you at once, of whom I have oft made mention) sister to *K. Edward* the elder, and wife to *Ethelred* a pery King of the *Mercians*, after her husbands death, governed the *Mercians* in most dangerous and troublesome times, for eight yeeres, with high commendation: touching whom these laudatory Verses in praise of her, wee reade in the History of *Henry* of *Huntingdon*.

*O Elsteda potens, ô terror virgo virorum,
Vixitrix nature, nomine digna viri.
Te, quo splendidior fieres, natura puellam;
Te probitas fecit nomen habere viri.
Te mutare decet, sed solam, nomina sexus,
Tu regina potens, Rexque trophaea parans,
Jam nec Casarei tantum meruere triumphi,
Casare splendidior virgo virago, vale.*

O mighty *Elsted*, virgin pure, that men do't terrifie,
And nature passe, right worthy thou, in name a man to be.
To grace thee more, dame Nature once thee shap'd a maiden brave,
But vertue thee hath caused now the name of man to have.
It thee becomes, but thee alone, the name of Sex to change:
Of great Queenes and triumphant Kings thou standest in the range.
From *Casars* triumphes for desert thou bear't away the bell,
No *Cesar* ever was thy match: Thus, *Manly-maide*, fare well.

Beneath

A Beneath *Runkborne*, somewhat within the Country, *Haulton*, the Towne and Castle both shew themselves, which *Hugh Lupus* Earle of *Chester* gave unto *Niel* a *Norman*, to be by tenure and service Constable of *Chester*: by whose posterity, through the variable change of times, it is come unto the House of *Lancaster*. Neither would this be overpassed in silence, that *William* the said *Nieles* sonne, founded the Abbay adjoining, at *Norton*, which now appertaineth to the *Broks* of ancient descent. Whether I should place in this Shire, or elsewhere the *CANGI*, an ancient Nation of Britans, that have beene so much and so long fought for, I have as long and as much doubted: For continuance of time hath now so obscured them, that hitherto by no footings they could be traced and found out. And albeit *Justus Lipsius* that Flower of exquisite learning taketh mee for a Judge heerein, I frankly confesse, I know not what judgement to give, and rather would I commend this office of judging to any other man, than assume it to my selfe. Yet nevertheless, if *CEANGI* and *CANGI* were the same, as why not? it may bee probable enough, that they were seated in this tract. For, whiles I perused these my labours, I understood by some of good credit, that there were heere upon the very shore gotten out of the ground twenty fowes of lead long in forme, but foure square: On the upper part whereof in an hollow surface is to be read this inscription.

IMP. DOMIT. AUG. GER. DE
CEANG.

But on the other.

IMP. VESP. VII. T. IMP. V.
COSS.

In the yeere
of Christ 78.

Which Monument seemeth to have beene erected for a Victory over the *Cangi*. Heere to maketh also the very site upon the Irish sea: For, thus writeth *Tacitus* in the 12. booke of his *Annales*. Whiles *Nero* was Emperour, There was an Army led by *Ostorius* against the *Cangi*: the fields were wasted, booties raised every where, for that the enemies durst not come into the field: but if they attempted closely and by stealth to cut off the Army as it marched, they paid for their deceitfull cunning. Now were they no sooner come neere unto the Sea-Coast toward Ireland, but certaine tumults and insurrections among the Brigantes, brought the Generall backe. But by the inscription aforesaid, it should seeme that they were not subdued before *Domitians* time: and then by computation of the times, when as that most warlike *Julius Agricola* was Propretour in Britaine. *Proton* likewise placed the Promontory *KATTANON*, that is, of the *Cangi* on this shore. Neither dare I seeke elsewhere than in this tract that Station *CONGANII*, where, in the declining estate of the Roman Empire, a Company or Band called *Vigiles*, that is, *Watchmen*, with their Capitaine under the *Dux Britannia*, kept watch and ward. Notwithstanding I leave to every man for mee his owne judgement heerein, as in all things else of this nature.

F Touching the Earles, that I may passe over the English Saxons, Earles only by office and not by inheritance: king *William* the first created *Hugh* surnamed *Lupus*, son to the Vicount of *Avanches* in Normandy the first hereditary Earle of *Chester* and Count Palatine, and gave unto him and his heires all this County to be holden as freely by his sword, as the King himselfe held England by his Crowne (For these are the words of the Donation:)

Earles of
Chester.

Anno 51.

Barons to the
Earl of
Chester.

nation) who forthwith appointed under him these Barons, viz. *Niele* Baron of *Baulton*, whose posterity afterwards tooke the name of *Lacies*, for that the *Lacies* inheritance had fallen unto them, and were Earles of *Lincolne*: *Robert* Baron of *Mont-haut*, *Seneschall* of the County of *Chester*, the last of whose line, having no issue, ordained by his last Will *Isabel* Queene of England, and *John* of *Elsham* Earle of *Cornwall*, his heires: *William* *Malbedem* Baron of *Malbanc*, whose nephewes daughters, by marriage brought the inheritance to the *Vernons* and *Bassets*: *Richard* *Vernon* Baron of *Shipbroke*, whose inheritance for default of heires males in the end came by the sisters unto the *Wilburhams*, *Staffords*, and *Littleburies*: *Robert* *Fitz-Hugh* Baron of *Atulpa*, who, as it seemeth, dyed, as I said before, without issue: *Hamon* de *Mafcy*, whose possessions descended to the *Fittons* of *Bollin*: *Gilbert* *Venables* Baron of *Kinderton*, whose posterity in the right line have continued and flourished unto these our dayes: A Baron of *Stokeports*, to whom at length the *Warrens* of *Peinton*, budded out of the honorable family of the Earles of *Warren* and *Surry*, in right of marriage succeeded. And these were all the Barons of the Earles of *Chester* that ever I could hitherto finde: Who, as it is written in an old Booke, *Had their free Courts of all Pleees and Suits or Complaints, except those Pleees which belong unto the Earles sword*. And their Office was, To assist the Earle in Councell, to yeeld him dutifull attendance, and oftentimes to repaire unto his Court for to doe him honor, and, as we finde in old parchment Records, *Bound they were in time of warre in Wales, to finde for every Knights fee, one horse with caparison and furniture, or else two without, within the Divisions of Ches-shire: Also, that their Knights and Freeholders should have Corfless and *Haubergeons, and defend their *Foes by their owne bodies*.

* Haubergella.
* Lands and
possessions.

After *Hugh* the first Earle before said, succeeded *Richard* his sonne, who in his tenth yeeres perished by shipwracke, together with *William* the onely sonne of King *Henry* the First, and other Noblemen betwene *Normandy* and *England* in the yeere 1120. After *Richard*, succeeded *Ranulph* de *Mesghines*, the third Earle, sonne to the sister of Earle *Hugh*: and left behinde him his sonne *Ranulph*, named de *Gerninjs*, the fourth Earle of *Chester*, a Warlike man, and who at the Siege of *Lincolne* tooke King *Stephen* Prisoner. *Hugh* surnamed *Kevelioc*, his sonne was the fifth Earle, who died in the yeere 1181. and left his sonne *Ranulph* named de *Blundevill* the sixth Earle, who after he had built the Castles of *Chariley* and *Beefton*, and the Abbay also de *la Cresse*, died without children, and left foure sisters to be his heires, *Maude* the wife of *David* Earle of *Huntingdon*, *Mabile* espoused to *William* D' *Albeney* Earle of *Arundell*, *Agnes* married to *William* *Ferrars* Earle of *Darby*, and *Avia* wedded to *Robert* de *Quincy*. After *Ranulph* the sixth Earle, there succeeded in the Earledome *John* surnamed the *Scot*, the sonne of Earle *David* by the said *Maude* the eldest daughter. Who being deceased likewise without any issue, King *Henry* the Third casting his eye upon so faire and large an inheritance, laid it unto the *Domaine* of the *Crowne*, and assigned other revenewes elsewhere to the heires: not willing, as the King himselfe was wont to say, that so great an estate should bee divided among distaves. And the Kings themselves, in person, after that this Earledome came unto their hands, for to maintain the honor of the *Palatine*ship, continued here the ancient rights and *Palatine* priviledges, and Courts, like as the Kings of *France* did in the County of *Champan*. Afterward, this honour of *Chester* was deferred upon the Kings eldest sonnes, and first unto *Edward*, King *Henry* the Third his sonne, who being taken prisoner by the Barons and kept in ward delivered it up for his ranfome unto *Simon* *Montford* Earle of *Leicester*: But when *Simon* was soone after slaine, it returned quickly againe unto the blood Royall, and King *Edward* the Second summoned his eldest sonne, being but a child, unto the Parliament by the Titles of Earle of *Chester* and *Flint*. Afterwards, King *Richard* the Second by authority of the Parliament, made it of an Earldome a Principality, and to the same Principality annexed the Castle of *Leon* with the territories of *Bromfield* and *Tale*, *Chircke* Castle with *Chircke* land, *Oswalds-street* Castle, the whole hundred and eleven townes belonging to that Castle, with the Castles of *Isabell* and *Delaley*, and other goodly lands, which, by reason that *Richard* Earle of *Arundell* had then

then proscrip and outlawed, had beene confiscate to the Kings Exchequer: and King *Richard* himselfe was stiled *Prince of Chester*: but within few yeeres after, that Title vanished away, after that King *Henry* the Fourth had once repealed the Lawes of the said Parliament, and it became againe a County or Earledome *Palatine*: and at this day retaineth the jurisdiction *Palatine*: and for the administration thereof, it hath a Chamberlaine who hath all jurisdiction of a Chancellour within the said County *Palatine*, a Justice for matters in Common Pleees, and Pleees of the *Crowne*, to bee heard and determined in the said County, two Barons of the Exchequer, Sergeants at Law, a Sheriffe, an Attourney, an Eschetour, &c. And the Inhabitants of the said County for the enjoying of their liberties were to pay at the change of every Owner of the said Earledome a summe of money (about 3000. markes) by the name of a *Mise*, as the County of *Flint* being a parcell thereof about 2000. markes, if I have not bin mis-informed.

This County containeth about 68. Parishes.

Now

The King-
dome of the
Mercians.

NOW have I superficially surveyed the Regions of the CORNAVII, which together with the CORITANI, DOBUNI, and CATVELLANI, made that Kingdome in the Saxons Heptarchie, which they called *Wype-napic*, and *Wearp-lond*, the Latine Writers *Mercia* of *Wearp*, an old English word, that signified a *Limite*; for, all the other Kingdomes bordered and confined upon it. This was the largest Kingdome by farre of all the rest, begunne by *Crida* the Saxon, about the yeere of our Lord 586. augmented by *Penda*, who extended the Marches thereof every way, and within a while after instructed in Christian Religion. But having come to the full period, within the revolution of 250. yeeres, fell at last, into the Dominion of the West-Saxons, after that the Danes had spoiled, weakned, and wasted it many yeeres in all manner of barbarous hostility.

SILURES.



SILURES.



IThinke it now my best way, before I treat of the other parts of England, to digresse a while and turne a little aside toward Wales, called in Latin *Cambria*, or *Wallia*, where the ancient Britans have yet their seat and abode: neither shall I in so doing, as I thinke, digresse, but directly follow the order of nature. For, it lieth adjacent to the CORNAVII, and seemeth, as it were, of right and equity to demand, that it may be spoken of in due course and place: especially seeing the Britans or Welsh, the inhabitants thereof, enjoy the same lawes and rights that we doe, and have long since beene engrafted and incorporate with us into our Common-wealth.

WALES therefore, which name comprised in times past before the Conquest, the whole Countrey beyond Severn, but afterward reached not so farre, was when the Romanes ruled in Britaine, inhabited by three sorts of people, the SILURES, DIMETAE, and ORDOVICES. For, these held not onely the twelve Shires, as they call them, of Wales, but those two also beyond Severn, Hereford-shire, and Monmouth-shire, which have beene now long reckoned among the Counties of England. And to beginne first with those that we first come unto and which lye next unto us: the SILURES, according to Ptolomees description, inhabited those Regions which in Welsh are called by one name *Deheubarth*, that is, the Southpart, and at this day by new names, Hereford-shire, Radnor-shire, Brecknock-shire, Monmouth-shire, and Glamorgan-shire, wherein are as yet some remaines also of the name SILURES. As for the derivation of that name, I have nothing that sorteth with the nature of the Nation. But touching the originall of the people, Tacitus ghesseeth by their coloured faces, their countenances, their curled haire, and their situation over against Spaine, that they had their originall from the Spaniards: But Florianus del campo a Spaniard flatly affirmeth it, who troubleth and toileth himselfe exceedingly to finde the Silures in Spaine, and thrusts upon us, I know not what, of Soloria and Siloria in Biscaie. But to speake of the nature of these Silures: they were a Nation very great (for as wee may gather out of Plinie and Tacitus, they seeme to have possessed all South-Wales) fierce, valiant, given to warre, impatient of servitude, forward to adventure with a resolution (the Romanes call it *Pervicacia*) and who would not be brought in either with faire meanes or foule; in all and every of which qualities their

their Posterity have in no point as yet degenerated from their Ancestors. When the Romanes upon an ambitious desire of rule did set upon them, they trusting to the strength and prowesse of King Caratacus, provoked also and exasperated with a word that Claudius the Emperour let fall, who had said, These were so to bee destroyed, and their name to bee extinguished as the Sugambri had beene rooted out aforetime, annoied the Romanes with so dangerous a Warre, by intercepting their Bands of auxiliary forces, by putting to flight that Legion over which Marius Valens was Captaine, and by wasting the lands of their Associates; that P. Ostorius Proprætor of Britaine being tired with travaile and with the sense of these griefes and troubles gave up his ghost. Veranius also Governour under Nero, assailed them in vaine: For, whereas we reade in Tacitus; illum modicis excursibus sylvas populatum esse, that is, That he made spoile and forraied the woods with small outrodes; reade in lieu of Sylvas, that is, woods, Siluras, that is, The Silures, as our friend that most learned Liptius doth, and you shall reade aright. Yet was not this Warre husht and finished before the time of Nerva. For then, Iulius Frontinus subdued them by force, and kept them under with Bands of Legionary Souldiers. But whereas a Countreman of ours hath wrested this Verse of Iuvenal against Crispine, to these SILURES.

magnâ qui voce solebat

Vendere municipes, fratrâ de merce Siluros.

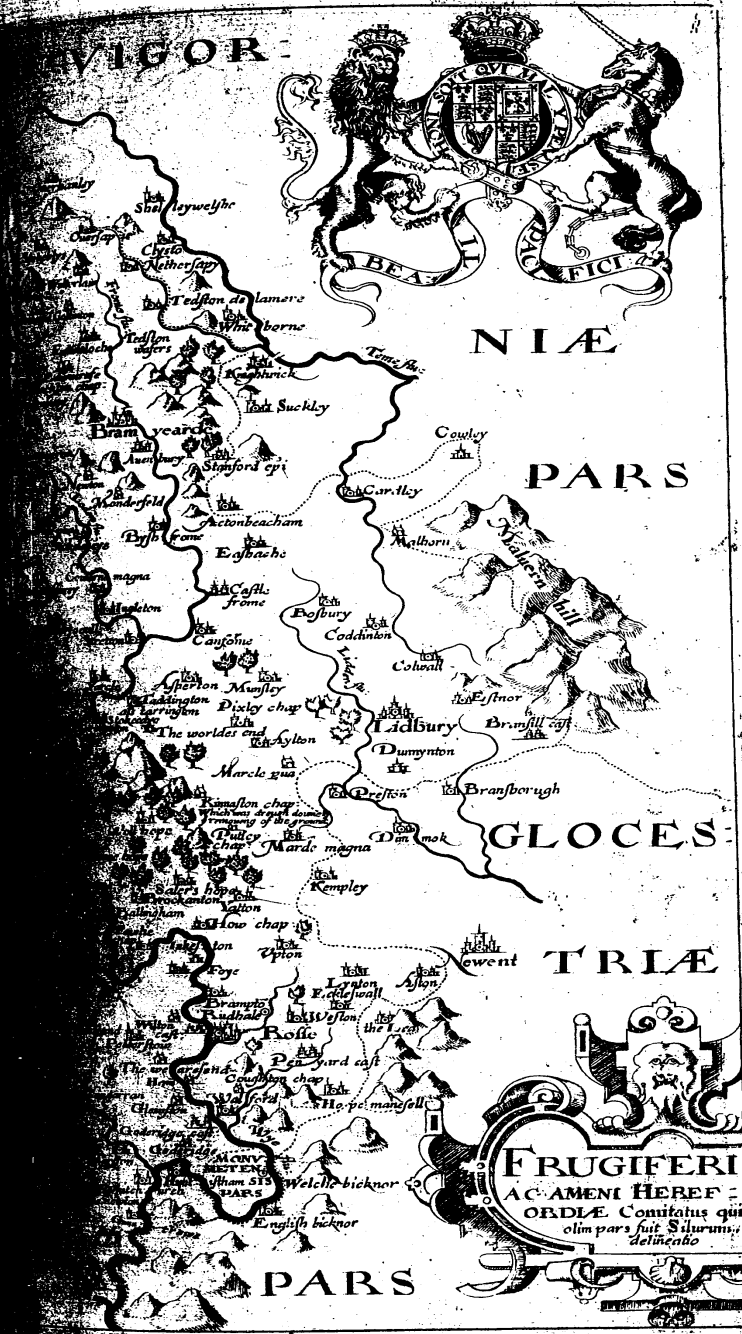
Who with lowd voice, was wont, and knew full well,
Of broken ware, his country fish, the Sturgions for to sell.

As though our Silures being taken prisoners were set to sale at Rome: upon my credite he hath not attained to the right and proper sense of the Poet: For by that word Siluros he that will reade the place and weigh it well, shall easily perceiue he spake of fishes, and not of men.

Silures mistaken
for Siluros.

HEREFORD.

419. b. 2



HEREFORD-SHIRE.



THE County which we call HEREFORD-SHIRE, and the Britans name *Ereimuc*, lying in compasse round, as it were a Circle, is bounded on the East side with *Worcester*, and *Gloucester-shires*, on the South with *Monmouth-shire*, on the West side with *Radnor* and *Brecknor-shires*, and on the North with *Shropshire*. This County besides that it is right pleasant, is for yeelding of Corne, and feeding of Cattaille, in all places most fruitfull, and therewith passing well furnished with all things necessary for mans life: In so much, as it would seeme to come behinde any one Country throughout all England for fertility of Soile, and therefore say that for three W.W.W. wheat, wooll, and water it yeeldeth to no Shire of England. And verily, it hath also diverse notable rivers, namely *Wye*, *Lug* and *Munow*, which after they have watered the most flowing meddowes and fruitfull corne fields, at length meet together and in one chanell passe on to the *Severn* sea.

Munow springing out of *Hatterell hilles*, which resembling a chaire doe rise aloft, and fense this shire on the South-West, as it descendeth downe, first strugleth to passe through by the foote of the said hilles to *Blestium*, a towne which *Antonine* the Emperour so placeth that for situation and distance it can bee no other than that, which standing by the side of this River is in British called *Castle Huan*, that is, *The Old Castle*, and in English, *The Old Towne*: A poore small Village now, but this new name is a good prooffe for the antiquity thereof: for, in both tongues it soundeth as much as an *Old Castle* or towne. Next unto this *Old Towne*, *Altarynnis* lieth in manner of a River-Island, insulared within waters: the seat in old time of that ancient family of the *Sissils* or *Cecils*, knights, whence my right honourable Patron, accomplished with all the ornaments of vertue, wisdom, and Nobility, Sir *William Cecil*, Baron of *Burghley*, and Lord high Treasurer of England derived his descent.

From hence, *Munow* turning Eastward, for a good space separateth this Country from *Monmouth-shire* and at *Castle Map-harald*, or *Harold Ewias*, is encreased with the River *Dor*. This *Ewias Castle* (that I may speake out of *K. William* the first his Booke) was repaired by *Alured of Marleberg*. Afterwards it pertained to one *Harold* a Gentleman, who in a Shield argent bare a Fesse Geules betweene three Estoiles Sable for his Armes: of whom it beganne to bee called *Harold Ewias*: but *Sihyll* his niece in the second degree and one of the heires, by her marriage transferred it to the Lords of *Tregoz*, frō whom it came at length to the Lords of *Grandison* descended out of *Burgundie*. But of them elsewhere. Now the said *Dor*, which running downe frō the North by *Snod-hill*, a Castle, and the Barony sometime of *Robert Chandos* (where is a quarry of excellent marble) cutteth through the midst of the *Vale*, which of the River the Britans call *Diffin Dore*: but the Englishmen that they might seeme to expresse the force of that word termed it the *Gilden Vale*, which name it may by good right and justly have, for the golden, wealthy and pleasant fertility thereof. For, the hills that compasse it in, on both sides are clad with woods, under the woods lie corne fields on either hand, and under those fields most gay and gallant meddowes: then runneth in the midst between them a most cleere and crystall River, on which *Robert* Lord of *Ewias* placed a faire Monastery, wherein most of the Nobility and Gentry of these parts were intēred.

Part of this shire, which from this *Vale* declineth and bendeth Eastward, is now called *Irchenfeld*, in *Domesday Booke* *Archensfeld*, which, as our Historians write, was layd waste with fire and sword by the Danes in the yeere 715, at what time *Canalac* also a Britan Bishop was carried away prisoner. In this part stood *Kilpeck* a Castle of great name, and the seat it was of the noble Family of the *Kilpecks*, who were as some say the Champions to the Kings of England in the first age of the Normans: And I my selfe also will easily assent unto them. In the Raigne of *Edward* the First, there dwelt

The River
Munow.*Blestium*.

Old towne.

Altarynnis.The seat of
the *Cecils*.*Harold Ewias*.
The Family of
Ewias.
Their coat of
Armes.*Tregoz* and
Grandison.
Pag. 286.
Snod hill.*Marble*.*Gilden Vale*.*Irchenfeld*.*Kilpeck*.

dwelt here Sir Robert Wallerond, whose nephew *Alane Plugenet* lived in the honorable state of a Baron. In this *Archenfeld* likewise, as wee read in *Domesday booke*, certaine revenewes by an old custome were assigned to one or two Priests, on this condition that they should goe in Embassages for the Kings of England into Wales, and to use the words out of the same booke, *The men of Archenfeld, whensoever the Army marcheth forward against the enemy by a custome make the Avantgard, and in the returne homeward, the Rereward.*

The river Wy.
Clifford
Castle.

The Clifford.
Inquisit. E. 1.

The Profound
Dochour.

Hereford.

Kenchester.

As *Munow* runneth along the lower part of this shire, so *Wy* with a bending course cutteth over the middest; upon which River in the very West limit *Clifford Castle* standeth; which, *William Fitz Osborn* Earle of *Hereford* built upon his own *Wast* (as it is in King *William* the Conquerours booke) but *Raulph de Tudeney* held it. Afterward it seemeth to have come unto *Walter* the sonne of *Richard Fitz Punt* a Norman; for he was surnamed *De Clifford*, and from him the right honorable family of the Earles of *Cumberland* doe truly deduce their descent. But in the daies of King *Edward* the First, *John Giffard* who married the heire of *Walter L. Clifford* had it in his hands. Then *Wy* with a crooked and winding streame rolleth downe by *Whitney*, which hath given name to a worshipfull Family, and by *Bradwardin Castle*, which gave both original and name to that famous *Thomas Bradwardin* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who for his variety of knowledge, and profound learning, was in that age teamed *The Profound Doctour*: and so at length cometh to *Hereford* the head City of this Countrey.

How farre that little Region *Archenfeld* reached I know not, but the affinity betweene these names, *Ercinuc, Archenfeld*, the towne *ARICONIUM*, of which *Antonine* in the description of this Tract maketh mention, and *Hereford* or *Hareford*, which now is the chiefe City of the Shire, have by little and little induced mee to this opinion, that I thinke every one of these was derived from *ARICONIUM*. Yet doe I not thinke that *Ariconium* and *Hereford* were both one and the same: but like as *Basil* in Germany chalenged unto it the name of *Augusta Rauracorum*, and *Baldach* in *Assyria* the name of *Babylon*, for that as the one had original from the ruines of *Babylon*, so the other from the ruines of *Augusta*: even so this *Hariford* of ours (for so the common people call it) derived both name and beginning, in mine opinion, from his neighbour old *ARICONIUM*, which hath at this day no shape or shew at all of a Towne: as having bene by report, shaken to peeces with an earthquake. Onely it retaineth still a shadow of the name, being called *Kenchester*, and sheweth to the beholders some ruines of walles, which they tearme *Kenchester walles*; about which are often digged up foure square paving stones of Checker worke, Brittain bricke, peeces of Romane money and other such like remaines of Antiquity. But *Hereford*, her daughter, which more exprefly resembleth the name thereof, standeth Eastward scarce three Italian miles from it, seated among most pleasant meadows and as plentifull corne fields, compassed almost round about with Rivers, on the North side and on the West with one that hath no name, on the South side with *Wy*, that hath hastneth hither out of Wales. It is thought to have shewed her head first what time as the Saxons Hepharchie was in the flower and prime, built as some write by King *Edward* the Elder: neither is there, as farre as I have read, any memory thereof more ancient. For the Britans, before the name of *Hereford* was knowne, called the place *Trefawith*, of Beech trees: and *Hereford* of an Old way; and the Saxons themselves *Fepn-leg of ferns*. The greatest increase, if I be not deceived, that it had, came by Religion and by the Martyrdome of *Ethelbert* King of the East England. Who when he wooed himselfe the daughter of *Offa* K. of the *Mercians*, was villanously laid and murdered by the procurement of *Quendred*, *Offa*'s wife, respecting more the countries of the East England, than the honest and honorable match of her daughter: which *Ethelbert* being registred in the Catalogue of *Martyrs*, had a Church here built and dedicated unto him by *Milfrid* a pety K. of the country, wherein when a Bishop's See was established, it grew to great wealth, first, through the devout liberality of the *Mercians*, and then of the West Saxons kings: for they at length were possessed

793.
S. Ethelbert
Martyr.

of this City, as may be gathered out of *William* of *Malmesbury*, where he writeth, That *Asbelitan* the West Saxon brought the Lords of Wales in this City to so hard passage, that by way of Tribute they were to pay every yeere (besides Hounds and Hanks) twenty pounds of gold, and three hundred pound of silver by weights. This Citie as farre as I can read, had never any misfortune, unlesse it were in the yeere of our Lord 1055. wherein *Gruffith* Prince of South Wales, and *Algar* an English man, rebelling against King *Edward* the Confessor, after they had put to flight Earle *Ralph*, sacked the Citie, destroyed the Cathedrall Church, and led away captive *Leofgar* the Bishop. But *Harold* straightwaies after that hee had daunted their audacious courage, fenced it, as *Floriacensis* saith, with a broad and high Rampier. Hence it is, that *Malmesbury* writeth thus in his treatise of Bishops, *Hereford* is no great Citie, and yet by the beight of those steepe and upright bankes cast up, it sheweth that it hath bene some great thing: and, as wee read in the *Domesday booke* of King *William* the Conquerour: there were in all but an hundred and three men within the Walles and without.

The Normans afterwards neere the East end of the Church along the side of *Wy*, built a mighty great and strong Castle: the worke as some report, of Earle *Niles*, which now yeeldeth to Time, and runneth to ruine. After this, they walled the Citie about. Bishop *Reinelm*, in the reigne of Henry the First founded that beautifull Cathedrall Church, which now we see there, whose successours enlarged it by adjoyning thereto a proper Colledge for Priests, and faire houses for the Prebendaries. For, besides the Bishop who hath 302. Churches in his Diocese, there are in this Church, a Deane, two Archdeacons, a Chaunter, a Chauncellour, a Treasurer and eight and twenty Prebendaries. In the Church, I saw in manner no Monuments, but the Bishops Tombes. And I have heard that *Thomas Cantlow* the Bishop, a man of Noble birth, had here a very stately and sumptuous Sepulcher, who for his holinesse being canonized a Saint, went within a little of surmounting that princely Martyr King *Ethelbert*, such was the opinion of singular pietie and devotion. Geographers measure the position or site of this Citie by the Longitude of twenty degrees and foure and twenty scruples: and by the Latitude of two and fifty degrees and sixe scruples.

Wy is not gone full three miles from hence, but he intercepteth by the way the river *Lug*, who running downe a maine out of *Radnor hills*, with a still course passeth through the mids of this country, from the North-west to the South-east. At the first entrance, it seeth a farre off, *Brampton Brian Castle*, which, a famous family named hereof *de Brampton*, wherein the forname was usually *Brian*, held by continuall succession unto the time of King *Edward* the First: but now, by the female heires it is come to *R. Harleie*: neere at hand it beholdeth *Wigmore*, in the English Saxons tongue *Wynzinga-mene*, repaired in elder times by King *Edward* the elder, afterward, fortified by *William* Earle of *Hereford* with a Castle, in the wast of a ground (for so reade we in *Domesday booke*) which was called *Mareitum*, in the tenure of *Radulph de Marimer*, from whom those *Marimers* that were afterwards Earles of *March* lineally descended, of whom, you may reade more in *Radnor shire*. Three miles off, there is another neighbour Castle, called *Richards Castle*, the possession first of the *Sages*, then of the *Marimers*, and afterwards of the *Talbots* by hereditarie succession. At length by the heires of Sir *John Talbot*, the inheritance was divided betweene Sir *Gharin* Archdeacon and Sir *Matthew Gurnay*. Beneath this Castle, Nature, who no where disporteth her selfe more in shewing wonders, then in waters, hath brought forth a pretty well, which is alwaies full of little fish bones, or as some thinke, of small frog-bones, although they be from time to time drawne quite out of it; whence it is commonly called *Bone well*. And not farre off, is placed *Croft Castle*, the possession of that very ancient family of the *Croft* Knights, who have there now a long time flourished in great and good esteeme.

Thence passeth *Wy* to *Lemster*, which also was called *Leon Minster*, and *Lions Monastery*, of a Lyon that appeared to a religious man in a vision (as some have dreamed.)

Fff 2

But

Brampton
Brian.

Wigmore;

Barons More
timor.

Richards
Castle.
Lords of Ri
chards Castle.

Bone well.

Lemster.

But whereas the Britans call it *Lban Lieni*: which signifieth a Church of *Nunnes*, and that it is certainly knowne, that *Merewale* a King of the *Mercians*, built here a Church for *Nunnes* (that afterwards became a *Cell* belonging to the *Monastery of Reading*) to seeke any other originall of the name, than from those *Nunnes*: what were it else but to hunt after the windes? Yet there want not some, who derive it from *Line*, whereof the best kinde groweth here. The greatest name and fame that it hath at this day is of the wooll in the territories round about it, (*Lemster Ore* they call it) which setting aside that of *Apulia* and *Tarentum* all Europe counteth to be the very best. So renowned also it is for *Wheat*, and bread of the finest flour, that *Lemster bread* and *Webley Ale* (a towne belonging to the noble Familie *D'Eareux*) are growne unto a common proverbe. By reason of these commodities the mercates at *Lemster* were so frequented, that they of *Hereford* and *Worcester* complaining that the confluence of people thither impaired their mercates, procured that by Royall authoritie the mercat day was changed. Now have I nothing more concerning *Lemster*, but that *William Breos* Lord of *Brecknock*, when hee revolted from King John, did set it on fire and defaced it. As for that *Webley* aforesaid, it is situate more within the Country, and was the Baronie of the *Perdons*: the first of which house named *Bertram de Verdon* came into England with the Normans, whose posteritie by marriage with an inheretrix of *Laccies of Trim* in Ireland, were for a good while hereditary Constables of Ireland: and at last the possessions were by the daughters devolved to the *Furnivalls*, *Burghersh*, *Ferrars* of *Grobby*, *Crop-hulls*, and from the *Crop-hulls* by the *Ferrars* of *Charly*, unto *D'Encreux* Earles of *Essex*. Neere neighbours unto *Webley*, more Westward are these places, *Huntingdon Castle*, the possession in times past of the *Bobuns* Earles of *Hereford* and of *Essex* (*Kimmerly*), belonging to the ancient Familie *De la-bere*, and *Erdley*: where the ancient Familie of the *Baskervills*, have long inhabited, which bred in old time so many worthy Knights, who deduce their pedigree from a Neice of Dame *Gunora* that most famous Lady in Normandy, and long agoe flourished in this County and *Shropshire* adjoining, and held, (that I may note so much by the way) the *Hamlet of Lanton* in chiefe, as of the Honour of *Montgomery*, by the service of giving to the King a barbed Arrow, whensoever he cometh into those parts to hunt in *Cornedon Chase*.

Lugg hasteneth now to *Wy*, first by *Hampton*, where that worthy Knight *Sir Anland Lemhal*, who (being Maister of the *Wardrobe* unto King Henry the Fourth, had married one of the heires of *Thomas Earle of Arundell*) built a passing faire house, which the *Coningsberes* (men of good worship and great name in this tract) have now a good long time inhabited: then, by *Marden* and *Somerton*, or *Sutton*: of which twaine, *Sutton* sheweth some small remaines of King *Offas* Palace, so infamous for the murdering of *Ethelbert*: and *Marden* is counted famous for the Tombe of the said *Ethelbert*, who had lien heere a long time without any glorious memoriall, before that he was translated to *Hereford*.

Neere unto the place where *Lugg* and *Wy* meete together, Eastward, a hill which they call *Marcley hill*, in the yeere of our redemption, 1571. (as though it had weakened upon the suddaine out of a deepe sleepe) roused it selfe up, and for the space of three daies together mooving and shewing it selfe (as mighty and huge an heape as it was) with roring noise in a fearefull sort, and overturning all things that stood in the way, advanced it selfe forward to the wonderous astonishment of the beholders: by that kinde of Earthquake which as I deeme, naturall Philosophers call *Brismathus*. And not farre from this hill, toward the East also, under *Malvern hills* (which in this place bound the East part of this shire) standeth *Ledbury* upon the River *Laden*, a Towne well knowne, which *Edwin* the Saxon, a man of great power, gave unto the Church of *Hereford*, being assuredly perswaded that by Saint *Ethelberts* intercession he was delivered from the Palfey. Touching the Military fort on the near hill, need not to speake, seeing that in this tract which was in the Marches, and the ordinary fighting ground place, first betweene the Romanes and Britans, afterwards betweene the Britans and the English, such holds and entrenchments are to be seene

Lemster Ore
the best wooll,
Lemster bread
and Webley
Ale.

Webley:
Barons Ver-
dons,

Baskerville.
See Gemition,
lib. ult.

Fin. Hilarii 20.
Ed.3.

Marden,
Sutton.

Marcley hill.

A Mountaine
mooving.

A in many places. But *Wy* now carrying a full streame, after it hath entertained *Lugg* runneth downe with more bendings and bowings, first by *Holm Lacy*, the seate of the ancient and noble Familie of *Scudamore* unto which accrewed much more worship by marriage with an heire out of the race of *Emias* in this shire, and *Huntercombe*, &c. else where. From hence passeth *Wy* downe betweene *Rosse*, made a free Burrough by King Henry the Third, now well knowne by reason of Iron Smiths and *Wilton* over against it, a most ancient Castle of the *Grews*, whence so many worthy Barons of that name have drawne their originall. This was built as men say by *Hugh de Long-champ*, but upon publique and certaine credit of Records it appeareth, that King John gave *Wilton* with the Castle to *H. de Longchamp*; and that by marriage it fell to *William Fitz-Hugh*, and likewise not long after to *Reinold Grey* in the daies of King Edward the first. Now, when *Wy* hath a little beneath saluted *Goderich Castle*, which King John gave unto *William Earle Mareschall*, and was afterward for a time the principall seate of the *Talbots*, hee speedeth himselfe to *Monmouth-shire*, and bids *Hereford-shire* farewell.

When the state of the English-Saxons was now more than declining to the downe-fall, *Ralph sonne to Walter Medantinus* by *Goda* King Edward the Confessor's sister, governed this Countie, as an Official Earle: but he infamous for base cowardise, was by *William the Conquerour* remooved, and *William Fitz-Osbern* of *Crepin* a martiall Norman who had subdued the Isle of *Wight*, and was neere allied to the Dukes of Normandy, was substituted in his place: When he was slaine in assistance of the Earle of Flanders, his sonne *Roger* surnamed *De Breteville* succeeded, and soone after for conspiracie against the Conquerour was condemned to perpetuall prison, and therein died leaving no lawfull issue. Then King Stephen granted to *Robert Le Bosse* Earle of *Leicester* who had married *Emme* or *Itta* (as some call her) heire of *Breteville* (to use the words of the Graunt) the Burrough of *Hereford*, with the Castle, and the whole County of *Hereford*, but all in vaine. For *Maude* the Emperesse who contended with King Stephen for the Crowne, advanced *Miles* the sonne of *Walter Constable* of *Glocester* unto this Honour, and also granted to him *Constabulariam Curie sue*, i. The Constablership of her Court, whereupon his posteritie were Constables of England, as the Marhallship was granted at the first, by the name of *Magistratus Marescallia Curie nostre*. Howbeit, *Stephen* afterwards stript him out of these Honours which he had received from her.

This *Miles* had five sonnes, *Roger*, *Walter*, *Henry*, *William*, and *Mahel*, men of especiall note, who were cut off every one issuelesse by untimely death, after they had all but *William*, succeeded one another in their Fathers inheritance. Unto *Roger* King Henry the Second among other things gave, *The Mote of Hereford* with the whole Castle, and the third peny issuing out of the revenewes of Places of the whole County of *Hereford*, whereof he made him Earle. But after *Roger* was deceased, the same King, if wee may believe *Robert Abbot De Monte*, kept the Earledome of *Hereford* to himselfe.

The eldest sister of these named *Margaret*, was married to *Humfrey Bohun* the third of that name, and his heires were high Constables of England, namely, *Humfrey Bohun* the Fourth; *Henry* his sonne, unto whom King John granted twenty pounds yearly to be received out of the third penny of the County of *Hereford*, whereof he made him Earle. This *Henry* married the sister and heire of *William Mandevill* Earle of *Essex*, and died in the fourth yeere of *Henry* the Third his reigne: *Humfrey* the Fifth his sonne, who was also Earle of *Essex*: whose sonne *Humfrey* the Sixth of that forename died before his Father, having first begotten *Humfrey* the Seventh by a daughter and one of the heires of *William Breos* Lord of *Brecknock*: His sonne *Humfrey* the Eighth was slaine at *Burtonbrigg*, leaving by *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter unto King Edward the First and the Earle of *Holland*s widow, among other children, namely, *Iohn Bohun*, *Humfrey* the Ninth, both Earles of *Hereford* and *Essex*, and dying without issue: and *William* Earle of *Northampton*, unto whom *Elizabeth* a daughter

Scudamore or
Elscudamor.

Wiltoni
Barons Grey
de Wilton,

Goderich
Castle.

*
Earles of Here-
ford.

Constables of
England.

1156.

a. Par. Chart.
an. 1. Reg.
Joan.
Matth. Paris
Joan.
The booke of
Walden.
The booke of
Lanthyony Mo-
nastery.

Henry the
Fourth King
of England.

daughter and one of the heires of *Giles Lord Badlesmer*, bare *Humfrey Bobus* the Tenth and last of the *Bobus* who was Earle of *Hereford, Essex, and Northampton, Constable besides of England*: who left two Daughters, *Æleanor* the Wife of *Thomas of Woodstock Duke of Gloucester*, and *Mary*, wedded to *Henry of Lancaster* Earle of *Darby*, who was created Duke of *Hereford*, and afterwards Crowned King of England. But after this, *Edward Stafford* last Duke of *Buckingham* was filied Earle of *Hereford*, for that hee descended from *Thomas of Woodstock* his Daughter, who was after remarried to *Sir William Burchier* called Earle of *Eu*. And in our memorie, King *Edward the Sixth* Honoured *Walter D'Enreux*, the Lord *Ferrars* of *Charley* descended by the *Bourghiers* from the *Bobus*, with the title of Vicount *Hereford*, whole Grand-sonne *Walter Vicount Hereford*, Queene *Elizabeth* created afterwards Earle of *Essex*.

There are contained in this County Parishes 176.

RADNOR;

RADNOR

Comitatus quem
SILVRES
olim Incoluerunt



RADNORSHIRE.



Pon Hereford-shire, on the North-West, joyneth Radnor-shire, in the British tongue, *Sire Maisveith*; in forme three square, and the farther West it goeth, the narrower still it groweth. On the South-side, the River *Wy* separateth it from Brecknock-shire, and on the North part, lieth *Montgomery-shire*. The East and South parts thereof bee more fruitfull than the rest, which lying uneven and rough with Mountaines, is hardly bettered by painfull Husbandry: yet it is stored well enough with Woods, watered with running Rivers, and in some places with standing Meres. The East-side hath to beautifie it, besides other Castles of the Lords *Marchers*, now all buried well neere, in their owne ruines, *Castle Paine*; built and so named of *Paine* a Norman; and *Castle Colwen*, which, if I be not deceived, was sometime called the *Castle of Maud in Colewent*. For a very famous Castle that was, and Robert *de Todeney* a great Noble man, in the reigne of Edward the Second was Lord of it. It is verily thought, that it belonged aforetime to the *Brecons*, Lords of *Brecknock*, and to have taken the name from *Mande* of Saint *Valerie*, a very shrewd, stout, and malapert stomackfull woman, wife to William *Breos*, who discovered a rebellious minde against King John. Which Castle being cast downe by the Welsh, King Henry the Third, in the yeere 1231. reedified strongly with stone, and called it in despite of *Lhewellin* Prince of Wales *Maugre Lhewellin*. But of especiall name is *Radnor* the principall Towne of the whole Shire, in British *Maisveith*, faire built, as the maner of that Country is, with thatched houses. In times past it was firmly fenced with a Wall and Castle; but after that *Owen Glendower* dwy that notable Rebell had burnt it, it began by little and little to decrease, and grow to decay, tasting of the same fortune that the mother thereof did before, I meane Old *Radnor*, called in British *Maisveith hean*, and for the high situation *Pencraig*; which in the reigne of King John, *Rhese Ap Gruffin* had set on fire. If I should say, that this *Maisveith* or *Radnor* was that ancient Citie *MAGI*, which *Antonine* the Emperour seemeth to call *MAGNOS*, where, as we finde in the booke of *Notices*, the Commander of the *Pacensian* Regiment lay in garkison, under the Lieutenant, or Lord Generall of Britaine, in the reigne of *Theodosius the younger*; in mine owne opinion surely, and perhaps in other mens conceit also, I should not vary from the truth. For we read in Writers of the middle age, of inhabitants of this coast called *MAGESETÆ*; also of Earles *Masegetenses* and *Magefetesenses*: and the distance, if it be counted both from *Gobannium* or *Abergevenny*, and also from *Branganium* or Worcester, differeth scarce an haire bredth from *Antonines* computation. Scarce three miles Eastward from hence, you see *Prestaine*, in British *Lhan Andre*, that is, Saint Andrews Church; which of a very little village within the memorie of our Grandfathers, is by the meanes of *Richard Martin* Bishop of Saint *David*, growne now to be so great a mercate Towne and faire withall, that at this day it dammereth and dimmeth the light in some sort of *Radnor*. From whence also scarce foure miles off, stands *Knighton*, a Towne able to match with *Prestaine*, called in British, as I have heard say *Trebachlo*, in steed of *Trefsclandh*, of a famous dorch lying under it, which Offa King of the *Mercians* with admirable worke and labour, caused to be cast from Dee-Mouth unto Wy-Mouth, by this Towne, for the space of fourescore and ten miles, to separate the Britans from his Englishmen: whereupon, in British it is called *Claudh Offa*, that is, *Offas ditch*. Concerning which, John of *Salisbury* in his *Policraticon* writeth thus. *Harald* ordained a law, that what Welshmen forever should be found with a weapon, on this side the limit which he had set them, that is to say, *Offas Dike*, he should have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

When yee are past this place, all the ground that lieth toward the West and South

Castle Colwen,
or Mauds Castle
in Colwent,

Math. Paris,
Radnor,

Owen Glendower,

Magesetæ,

Prestaine,

Knighton,

Offa Dike,

South limits, being for the most part barren, leane, and hungry, is of the inhabitants called *Melienish*, for that the Mountaines be of a yellowish colour. Yet remaine there many footings as it were of Castles to be seene heere and there, but especially *Kevenles* and *Timbed* which standing upon a sharpe poynted hill, *Llewellyn* Prince of Wales overthrew in the yeere 1260.

This *Melienish* reacheth as farre as to the River *Wy*, which cutteth overthwart the West corner of this shire, and being hindered in his streame with stones lying in his way, upon a suddaine for want of ground to glide on, hath a mighty and violent downefall: whereupon the place is tearmed, *Raibader Gowy*, that is, *The fall or Fludgates of Wy*: And I cannot tell, whether thereupon that British word *Raibader*, the English men forged this name first for the whole shire, and afterwards for the chiefe Towne. By this *Fludgate* or fall of the water there was a Castle which *Rhefe Prince of Southmales* (as we reade) repaired under King Richard the First. Hard by, there is in some sort a vast and wide wilderness, hideous after a sort to behold, by reason of the turning and crooked by-waies and craggie Mountaines, into which as the safest place of refuge, *Vortigern* that pestilent wretch and bane of his native Country, odious both to God and man, and (whose memory the Britains may with damned) withdrew himselfe, when after he had called the Saxons into this Iland, and in horrible incest married his owne daughter. And heere he fell at length too too late into serious consideration of the greatnesse of his vile and wicked acts. But by revenging fire from Heaven, the flying dart of God above, he was burnt with his Citie *Caer Guartigern*, which he had heere built for his refuge. And not farre from hence, as if the place had beene fatall, not onely this *Vortigern* the last Monarch of British blood, but also *Llewellyn* the last Prince of Wales of the British race being forelaid, was slaine by *Adam Franchion* in the yeere of our Redemption 1282. Of the said *Vortigern*, *Ninnius* nameth a little Country heere *Guortiger-maur*; neither is that name as yet altogether lost: but of the Citie, there remaineth no memory at all, but out of writers. Some are of opinion, that *Guthremion Castle* arose out of the ruins and rubbish thereof, which in the yeere 1201. the Welsh for malice they bare to *Roger Lord Mortimer* and in spite of him laid even with the ground. Moreover, this part of the Country was in old time called *Guarthemion*, as *Ninnius* testifieth, who wrote, that the said wicked *Vortigern*, when he was plainly and sharply reprooved by that godly Saint *German*, did not onely not turne from his lewd and licentious life to the worship and service of God, but also let flie slanderous speeches against that most holy man: *Wherefore, Vortimer the sonne of Vortigern, as Ninnius saith, for the slander which his Father had raised of Saint German, decreed, that he should have the land as his owne for ever, wherein he had suffered so reprochfull an abuse: whereupon, and to the end that Saint German might be had in memory, it was called Guarthemion, which signifieth in English, A slander justly retorted.*

The *Mortimers*, descended from the Niece of *Genora* Wife of Richard the First, Duke of Normandie, were the first Normans that having discomfited the English Saxon *Edricke Sylvaicus*, that is, *The wild*, wonne a great part of this little Country to themselves: And after they had a long time beene eminent above all others in these parts, at length King Edward the Third, about the yeere of Salvation 1328. Created *Roger Mortimer* Lord of *Wigmore*, Earle of this Welsh limit, or, according to the common speech, Earle of *March*, who soone after was sentenced to death, because he had insulted upon the Common-wealth, favoured the Scots to the prejudice of England, conversed over familiarly with the Kings mother, and contrived the destruction and death of King Edward the Second, the Kings Father. He by his Wife *Joan Jenevell*, (who brought him rich revenewes, as well in Ireland as in England) had Edmund his Sonne, who felt the smart of his Fathers wickednesse, and lost both patrimonie and title of Earle. Howbeit, his Sonne Roger was fully restored, recovered the title of Earle of *March* and was chosen a fellow of the order of the Garter, at the first institution thereof. This Roger begat of *Philip Montacute*, Edmund Earle of *March*: and he tooke to Wife Philip the only daughter of *Leonell* Duke of *Clarence* the third sonne of King Edward the Third, whereby came unto him the Earldome of *Ulster* in Ireland

and the Lordship of *Clare*. After he had ended his life in Ireland where he governed with great commendation, his sonne Roger succeeded, being both Earle of *March* and *Ulster*, whom King Richard the Second declared heire apparent, and his successor to the Crowne, as being in right of his Mother the next and undoubted heire. But he dying before king Richard, left issue, Edmund and Anne. Edmund, in regard of his Royall blood and right to the Crowne stood greatly suspected to Henrie the Fourth, who had usurped the kingdome; and by him was first exposed unto dangers, in so much as he was taken by *Owen Glendour* a Rebelle, and afterward whereas the *Percies* purposed to advance his right, he was conveyed into Ireland, kept almost twenty yeeres prisoner in the Castle of *Trim* suffering all miseries incident to Prisoners of the blood while they lie open to every suspicion; and there through extreame griefe ended his daies, leaving his sister Anne his heire.

She was married to Richard Earle of Cambridge, in whose right, his heires and posterity were Earles of *March*, and made claime to the kingdome, which in the end also they obtained, as wee will shew in another place. In which respect King Edward the Fourth created his eldest Sonne being Prince of Wales, Duke of *Cornwall, &c.* Earle of *March* also, for a further augmentation of his Honour. As for the title of *Rad-nor*, no man ever bare it to my knowledge.

See in Yorkshire, toward the end.

In this are Parishes 52.

BRECKNOCK;

BRECHNOCK-SHIRE.

Beneath *Radnor-shire* Southward lyeth *BRECHNOCK-SHIRE*, in the British *Brechineau* so named, as the Welshmen relate, of a Prince named *Brechanius*, whom they report to have had a great, and an holy Offspring, to wit, twenty foure Daughters all Saints. Farre greater this is than *Radnor-shire*, but thicker set with high Hilles; yet are the valleys fruitfull every where. On the East side it is bounded with *Hereford-shire*. On the South with *Monmouth*, and *Glamorgan-shires*: and on the West with *Caermarden-shire*. But seeing there is nothing memorable or materiall to the description of this small Province, which is not set downe by the curious diligence of *Giraldus Cambrensis* who was an *Arch-deacon* heereof above foure hundred yeres since. I thinke I may doe well for my selfe to hold my peace a while, and to admit him with his stile into the fellowship of this labour.

Brecknocke, saith hee, in his Booke called *Itinerarium Cambria*, is a Country having sufficient store of Corne; and if there bee any defect thereof, it is plentifully supplied out of the fruitfulness of *England* bordering so neere upon it; a Country likewise well stored with pastures and Woods, with wilde Deere and herds of Cattle, having abundance beside of fresh water fish, wherewith *Piske* on the one side and *Wy* on the other serveth it: For, both these Rivers are full of Salmones and Trouts, but *Wy* of the twaine is the better, affording the best kinde of them which they call *Vmbras*. Enclosed it is on every side with high hilles, unlesse it be on the North part. In the West it hath the mountaines of *Camerbochan*: On the South side likewise the Southern mountaines, the chiefe wherof is called *Cadier Arthur*, that is, *Arthurs chaire*, of the two toppes of the same (for it is soe, that is, shaped with two capes) resembling the forme of a Chaire. And for that the Chaire standeth very high and upon a steepe downefall, by a common tearme it was assigned to *Arthur*, the greatest and mightiest King of the Britans. In the very pitch and top of this hill, there walmeth forth a spring of water: And this fontaine in manner of a Well is deepe, but foure square, having no brooke or Riveres issuing from it, yet are there Trouts found therein. And therefore having these barres on the South side, the aire is the colder, defendeth the Country from the excessive heat of the Sunne, and by a certaine naturall wholsomnesse of the aire, maketh it most temperate. But on the East side the mountaines of *Talgar* and *Ewias* doe as it were fence it.

On the North side, as he said, it is more open and plaine, namely where the River *Wy* severeth it from *Radnor-shire*, by which stand two Townes well knowne for their antiquity, *Buelth* and *Hay*. *Buelth* is pleasantly situate with Woods about it, fortified also with a Castle, but of a later building, by the *Breose* and *Morimers*, when as *Rhese ap Gruffin* had rased the ancient Castle. Now, the Mercate much resorted unto maketh it more famous thereabout, but in times past it seemeth to have bene for the owne worth of great name, because *Ptolomee* observed the position thereof according to the Longitude and Latitude: who called it *BULEUM SILURUM*. Of this towne the country lying round about it, being rough and full of hills, is named *Buelth*: wherein, when as the Saxons were now spoiling and harrying the whole Island, and *Fortigern* had withdrawne himselfe into these parts, *Pascentius* his sonne ruled all as Lord, by the permission of *Aurelius Ambrose*, as *Ninnius* writeth, who in his Chapter of *Mervails*, reporteth I wot not what wondrous thing heere, of a heape of stones, wherein, forsooth, was plainly to be seene the footing of King *Arthurs* hound. And as for *Hay*, which in British is called *Trekethle*, that is, *The Towne in a grove of Hay*. *Haskell trees*, in the very utmost skirt of this Shire next unto *Hereford-shire*, it standeth hard by the river *Wye*: well knowne, as it seemeth to the Romans, whose coines is often digged up there, and it sheweth also by the ruines, that in old time it was walled. But being

being now as it were decayed it complaineth of that most lewde Rebell *Owen Glendower* for his furious outrages, who in wasting and spoiling all those Countries, most villanously did depopulate it and set it on fire.

As this River *Wy* washeth the Northside of this Shire, so doth *Uske* a notable River likewise runne through the midst thereof, which *Uske* springing out of the *Blacke-Mountaine*, passeth along with a shallow streame, beside *Brecknock* the Shire Towne, standing in the very heart in manner of the Country, which the Britans call *Aber-Hodney*, because the two Rivers *Hodney* and *Uske* doe meet in that place. That this Towne was inhabited in the Romans time, appeareth by the Coines of Roman Emperours now and then digged up heere. *Bernard Newmarch*, who conquered this little Shire, built heere a goodly great Castle, which the *Breuses* and *Bobuns* repaired: and in our fathers remembrance King Henry the Eighth in the Friery of the *Dominicans* appointed a Collegiat Church of foureteene Prebendaries, which hee translated hither from *Aberguilly* in *Caer-Marden-shire*.

Two miles hence Eastward, there spreads it selfe abroad a large Poole, which the Britans call *Linsavethan* and *Linsavathen*, that is, *A Lake of standing water*, *Giraldus* termeth it *Clamosum*, that is, *Clamorous*, or *Crying loud*, because it maketh a strange noise like thunder, as often as the Yce thereon doth thaw. In English we name it *Brecknock-Meere*. Two miles it is in length and as much in bredth: breeding in times past many Otters, now full of Peaches, Tenches, and Eeles, which the Fishers rowing in small pliant botes doe take.

Leveney a little River, after it is runne into this Poole keepeth his owne hew and color still by himselfe, as disdaining to be mingled therewith, (which the very color sheweth) is thought to carry out his owne water entertained a while there by the way, and no more than hee brought in with him. It hath bene a currant speech of long continuance among the neighbours thereabout, that where now the *Marston* there was in times past a City, which being swallowed up in an earthquake, resigned up the place unto the waters. And beside other reasons, they allege this for one, that all the high waies of this Shire come directly hither on every side. Which if it be true, what other City should a man thinke stood by the River *Leveney*, than *Loventium*, which *Ptolomee* placeth in this tract: and in no place hitherto could I finde it (albeit I searched diligently for it) either by the name, or situation, or ruines remaining. *Marianus Scotus* (which I had almost forgotten) seemeth to call this Lake *Bricenau Meere*, who recordeth that *Edelfled* the *Mercian* Lady, in the yeece 913, entred into the lahd of the Britans to win by assault a Castle at *Bricenau Meere*; and that she tooke there the King of the Britans wife prisoner. Whether this Castle were *Brecknock* it selfe or *Castle Dinas*, which standeth over it upon a rocky hill, and which the higher it riseth the slenderer and smaller it becometh, it is not certainly knowne. But that *Blean Lavency Castle* hard by, was the chiefe place of the Barony, that *Petre Fitz Herbert* the sonne of *Herbert* Lord of *Dean-forest* by *Lacy* the daughter of *Miles* Earle of *Hereford* held, appeareth evidently upon Record.

In the Raigne of King *William Rufus*, *Bernard Newmarch* the Norman, a man both hardy and politique withall, having levied a great Army of Englishmen and Normans together, was the first that entred into this territory by force and armes, won it and wrested it out of the Welshmens hands by bloudy encounters, raised fortresses heere for his fellow souldiers (among which the chiefe were the *Aubreys*, *Gantors*, *Haverds*, *Waldbroffes* and *Prichards*) allotted lands and lordships, and that hee might set sure footing, and establish his seat among the Welsh, who repined maliciously at him, he tooke to wife *Nessa* the daughter of *Gruffin*: who being a woman of a shamelesse and revengefull spirit, both bereft her selfe of her owne good name, and also defeated her sonne of his inheritance. For, when *Mabel* the said *Bernards* onely sonne, did shake up in som hard and sharpe termes a young Gentleman, with whom she used more familiarly than was befitting: shee, as the Poet saith, *iram atque amoris crimine sumens*, growing angry and stomachfull upon this impuration, tooke her corporall oath before King Henry the Second, and protested that her sonne *Mabel* was

begotten

begotten in adultery, and not by *Bernard* her Husband: whereupon *Mabel* being disinherited, *Sibyl* his sister entred upon that faire Inheritance, and with the same enriched her Husband *Miles*, Earle of *Hereford*. But after that five sonnes of *Miles* died without issue, this *Brecknock-shire* in the partition of the inheritance fell to *Bertha* his daughter: who by *Philip de Breos* had a sonne *William de Breos* Lord of *Brecknock*, upon whom the seditious spirit and shrewd tongue of his wife drew a world of calamities. For when shee had with her intemperate and unbridled language contumeliously abused King *John*, the King thereupon (because her Husband *William* was very deeply indebted unto him) fell to bee quicke and rigorous in demanding the debt: But he, not able to make payment, after he had shifted it off many times, and by breaking day, still made default, in the end mortgaged unto the King three of his Castles; namely *Hay*, *Brecknock* and *Radnor*, and put them into his hands. But soone after, levying certaine forces, such as he could muster up in haste, upon a sudden, surprised them, slew the Garison Souldiers and wrested the said peeces perforce from them, burnt the Towne of *Lemster*, and thus killing, slaying and driving away booties, he made foule worke and havock every way, with all such outrages as Rebels doe commonly commit. But when the King pursued him, hee conveyed himselfe and all that he had into Ireland, plotted and combined with the Kings enemies there: yet under a colour, as if hee would make submission, hee came unto the King upon protection and assurance given of safety when he was upon his returne into Ireland. And notwithstanding many goodly promises of the contrary, he raised new stirres and troubles eftsoones in Wales: But forced in the end to leave his native Country, he died a banished man in France. As for his wife being taken prisoner, and furnished in prison (the extremest misery that can befall unto man or woman) she paid most dearly for her wicked and malapert tongue. His sonne *Giles*, Bishop of *Hereford*, by the favour and consent of King *John*, having recovered his fathers inheritance neglecting his nephew the right heire, left it unto his brother *Reginald*, whose sonne *William*, *Lhelin* Prince of Wales having taken him in bed with his wife, hanged. But by the daughters of that *William*, the *Mortimers*, *Cantelows*, and *Bobuns* Earles of *Hereford* entred upon a great and goodly inheritance. And this *Brecknock* fell in partition unto the *Bobuns*, and in the end by them unto the *Staffords*: and when *Edward Stafford* Duke of *Buckingham* was attainted, many very goodly rewenes fell unto the King in this Shire, and elsewhere.

Called also
Braus and
Breus.

Red Booke in
the Exchequer.

It reckoneth Parishes 61.

Ggg

MONMOUTH

MONMOUTH-SHIRE.

Beneath Brechnock and Hereford-shire Southward, lyeth the County of *Monmouth*, commonly called in English *MONMOUTH-SHIRE*, in times past *Went-set* and *Wentis-land*, in British *Gwent*, of an ancient City so called. It is inclosed on the North side with the River *Munow* that separateth it from *Hereford-shire*: on the East side with *Wye* running betweene it and *Glocester-shire*: on the West with the River *Remney*, which severeth it from *Glamorgan-shire*, and on the South with the *Severn* sea, whereinto the said Rivers together with *Uske*, that cutteth through the middest of the Country, are discharged. As for commodities necessary to mans life, it hath not onely sufficient for it selfe, but also affoordeth them in plentifull manner to the neighbours adjoyning. The East part is full of grasse and woods: the West is somewhat hilly and stony, yet not unthankfull to the Husbandman. The people, as saith *Giraldus* writing of his owne age, most inured to martiall conflicts, is in feates of strength and valour right commendable, and for skill of archery and shooting farre surpassing any Country in *Wales*.

In the utmost angle called *Ewias* toward the North-West, not farre from the River *Munow*, among *Hatterell hills* which because they rise up in heighth like a chaire, they call *Munith Cader*, there stood *Lanthony* a little ancient Abbay, which *Walter Lacy* founded, unto whom *William Earle of Hereford* gave faire lands heere, and from whom are descended those renowned *Lacies*, worthily reputed among the most noble Conquerours of *Ireland*. The situation of which Abbay *Giraldus Cambrensis*, who knew it better than I, shall pensile it out unto you for mee. In the most deepe Valley of *Ewias*, saith hee, which is about an arrow-shoote over, standeth a Church of *Saint Iohn Baptist*, enclosed on every side in a round compasse, with hilles mounting up into the aire, covered with lead, and built sightly, as the nature of the place would permit, with an arched rooffe of stone, in a place where had stood aforetime a poore Chappell of *Saint David* the Archbishop, adorned onely with wilde mosse, and wreathes of claspine ivie. A fit place for true Religion, and of all the Monasteries in the Island of Britaine most convenient for Canonick Discipline, being founded first by two Eremites in the honour of an Eremite, farre removed from all stirres and noise of people, in a certaine desert and solitary nouke, seated upon the River *Hodney* running along the botome of the Vale, whereof and of *Hodney* together, it is called *Lanhodeny*: For, *Lhan* signifieth, a Church or Ecclesiasticall place. But if we will speake more exquisitely, it may be said, that the proper name of that place is in Welsh *Nanthodeny*: For even to this day, they that dwell thereabout call it *Lhan Devi Nanthodeny*. That is, *Dauids Church* upon the River *Hodney*. Now, the raine, which mountaines breed, falleth heere very often, the windes blow strong, and all Winter time almost it is continually cloudy and misty weather. And yet notwithstanding (such is the healthfull temperature of the aire, which the grosser it is, the gentler and milder it is) very seldome there are any diseases heere. The Cloisterers sitting heere in their Cloistures, when to refresh and breathe themselves they chance to looke up, they see on every side of them, over the high roofes and ridges of their houses, the tops of the hills touching as it were the skie, and the very wilde Deere for the most part, whereof there is heere great store, feeding aloft (as one would say) in the farthest Horizon or kenning of their sight. And it is betweene one and three of the clocke, or thereabouts in a faire cleere day, ere they can see heere the body of the Sonne, so much adoe he hath to get above the hill tops by that time. And a little after. The same that went of this place drew *Roger Bishop of Salisbury* hither, being then the chiefe Governour of the Realme under the King, who when hee had a good while considered with admiration, the nature of the place, the desert solitarinesse, the Eremeticall state and condition of the religious men there serving God without complaining, together with their conversation in every respect without murmuring and grudging, returned home to the King, and making re-

Ewias Lacy.

Lanthony.
Barons Lacy.

Saint Iohn Baptist.

Hodney

port unto him of such things there as were worth relation, when he had spent the most part of the day in commendation of the foresaid place; at length knit up all the praises thereof in this one word: What should I say more, quoth hee, All the treasure both of King and Kingdom, will not suffice to build this Cloisture: when as therefore he had held a good while as well the King as the whole Court in suspense, wondering as they did at this speech, as length hee answered the dark riddle of his words, by meaning the Cloistures of those hills, wherewith it is enclosed on every side. But heereof enough, if not too much.

Grossmont.
Skinfrith.

Historia Minor
Marth, Paris.

Monmouth.

By the River *Munow* are to be scene *Grossmont* and *Skinfrith* Castles belonging in times past by the grant of King *John* to the *Breoses*, afterwards to *Hubers de Burgh*, Earle of *Kent*, who, that he might calme the Court-tempests of displeasure and for the renewing of peace and recovering former favour, resigned both these and with all *Blanc castle* and *Hanfield* into the hands of King *Henry the Third*.

In the other corner North-Eastward, *Munow* and *Wye* at their confluence doe compasse almost round about the chiefe Towne of the Shire, and give it the name. For in the British tongue it is called *Mongwy*, and in ours *Monmouth*. On the North-side, where it is not defended with the Rivers, it was fortified with a wall and ditch. In the midst of the Towne hard by the Mercate place standeth a Castle, which, as it is thought, *John* Baron of *Monmouth* built, from whom it came to the house of *Lancaster*, after that King *Henry the Third* had taken from him all his inheritance, for that he had sided with the Barons and stood rebelliously against him, or rather, as wee read in the Kings Prerogative, because his heires had given their faith and allegiance to the Earle of Britaine in France. And ever since that time, the Towne hath flourished and bene of name in regard of their priviledges and immunities granted unto them by the Family of *Lancaster*. But for no one thing it is so much renowned, as for this, that it was the birth place of King *Henry the Fifth* that Triumpher over France, and the second ornament of English Nation. That *Henry I* say, who by force of armes and military prowesse maugre the French, conquered France and brought *Charles the Sixth* King of France to that extremity, that after a fort hee surrendered up his Crowne unto him. In regard of whose successe and fortunate exploits in Warre, *John Seward* a Poet in those dayes not of the lowest ranke, in a joily lofty verse thus speaketh to the English:

*Ite per extremum Tanais, pigrisque Triones,
Ite per arenam Lybiam, superate calores
Solis, & arcuos Nilii deprendite fontes,
Herculeum finem, Bacchi transcurrite metas;
Angli juris eris quicquid completitur orbis.
Anglia rubra dabunt pretiosas aquora conchas,
Indus ebur, ramos Panchaia, veller a Seres:
Dum viget Henricus, dum noster vivit Achilles,
Est etenim laudes longe transgressus avitas.*

Passé on to *Tanais* farre remote, to frozen Northren Coast:
Through *Libye* dry, beyond the line where Sunnes hear parcheth most.
On forth and finde where all the springs of *Nilus* hidden lie,
Those pillars fixt by *Hercules*, and bounds that mount on hie
Surpasse; the Limit-markes also which father *Bacchus* pight;
For why? what all the earth contains is under Englands right.
To English shall the *Red Sea* yeeld the pretious pearely wilke,
Indy yvory, sweet-frank-incense *Panchaa*, *Seres* silke,
Whiles *Henry* lives, that Champion *Achilles*-like of ours,
For he the praises farre surmounts of his Progenitours.

Geffrey Ap
Arthur, or of
Monmouth.

Monmouth glorieth also that *Geffrey Ap Arthur* or *Arthurius* Bishop of *Asaph* the compiler of the British History was borne and bred there: a man to say truth well skilled in

A in antiquities, but, as it seemeth, not of antique credite, so many toies and tales hee every where enterlaced out of his owne braine as he was charged while hee lived, in so much as now hee is ranged among those Writers, whom the Roman Church hath censured to be forbidden.

From hence *Wye* with many windings and turnings runneth downe Southward, yeelding very great plenty of delicate Salmones from September to April. And is at this day the bound betweene *Gloster-shire* and *Monmouth-shire*, in times past betweene the Welsh and Englishmen, according to this Verse of *Merchins* making.

Inde vagos vaga Cambrenses, hinc respicit Anglos.

By Wales on this side runneth *Wye*.

And of the other England he doth eye.

B Who when he is come almost unto his mouth, runneth by *Chepstow*, that is, if one interpret it after the Saxons tongue, a Mercat: The Britans call it *Castle-went*. A famous Towne this is and of good resort, situate upon the side of an Hill, rising from the very River, fortified round about with a Wall of a large circuit, which includes within it both fields and orchards. It hath a very spacious Castle situate over the River: and just against it stood a Priory: the better part whereof being pulled downe, the rest is converted into a Parish Church. As for the Bridge that standeth over *Wye*, it is of timber and very high built, because the River at every tide riseth to a great heighth.

Chepstow.

C The Lords hereof were the Earles of *Pembroke* out of the Family of *Clare*, who of *Strighull Castle* their seat a little way off were commonly called Earles of *Strighull* and of *Pembroke*. The last of whom named *Richard*, a man of an invincible courage, and having wonderfull strong armes and long wichall, surnamed *Strong-lion*, because hee shot in a bow of exceeding great bent, and did nothing but with strong arme, was the first that by his valour made way for the English into Ireland. By a daughter of his it came to the *Bigars*, &c. but now it belongeth to the Earles of *Worcester*. This Towne is not very ancient to speake of. For, many there be that constantly affirme, and not without good reason, that not many ages agoe it had his beginning from *VENTA* a very ancient City, that in the daies of *Antonine* the Emperor flourished about foure miles hence Westward and was named *VENTA SILURUM*, (as one would say) the principall City of the *Silures*. Which name neither hostile fury nor length of time hath as yet discontinued: for it is called even at this day *Caer went*, that is, *The City Went*. But, as for the City it selfe, either time or

Earles of
Strighull or
Pembroke.

D hostility hath so carried it away, that now were it not onely for the ruinate wallles, the checker worke, pavements and peeces of Roman money, it would not appeare there was such a City. It tooke up in compasse above a mile: on the South side a great part of the Wall standeth, and there remaine little better than the rubbish of three Bulwarks. And yet of how great account it was in ancient times, wee may gather, if it were but by this, that before the name of *Monmouth* once heard of, all this whole Country was of it, called *Gwent*, *Went-set* and *Wents-land*. Moreover, as wee read in the life of *Tathaius* a British Saint; it was an Academy, that is to say, a place dedicated to the study of good letters, which the said *Tathaius* whom King *Caradock* the sonne of *Imirius* procured to come thither out of the desert wilderness, governed with great commendation, and there founded a Church.

Caer-went.

Five miles from hence Westward, is seated *Strighull Castle*, at the foote of the mountaines, we call it at this day *Strigle*, the Normans named it *Estrighill*: which as wee read in King *William* the First his *Domesday booke*, *William Fitz Osborn* Earle of *Hereford* built: and afterwards it became the seat of the Earles of *Pembroke* out of the house of *Clare*. Whereupon they were usually called Earles of *Strighull*, as I even now intimated.

The Booke of
Landaffe
Church.

F Beneath these places upon the *Severn* sea, nere unto *Wy-moath*, standeth *Portskeweth*, which *Marianus* nameth *Poteskith*, who hath recorded, that *Harald* in the yeere 1065. erected a Fort there against the Welshmen, which they straightwaies under the conduct of *Caradock*, overthrew. And adjoining to it is *Sudbrok*, the Church whereof called

Portskeweth.

*
Sudbrok.

Trinity Chappell standeth so neere the sea, that the vicinity of so tyrannous a neighbour, hath spoiled it of halfe the Church-yard, as it hath done also of an old Fortification, lying thereby, which was compassed with a triple Ditch and three Rampiers as high as an ordinary house, cast in forme of a bowe, the string whereof is the sea-cliffe. That this was a Romane worke the Britaine bricke, and Romane coines there found, are most certaine arguments, among which, the Reverend Farther in God *Francis Bishop of Landaffe* (by whose information I write this) imparted unto me of his kinnesse one of the greatest peeces that ever I saw coined of Corinthian copper by the City of *Elais* in the lesser *Asia* to the honour of the Emperour *Severus* with this Greeke Inscription, *ΑΤΤ. ΚΑΛΑ. ΚΕΝΤΙ. ΚΕΡΗΦΟ. C. ΝΕΡ. ΤΑΤΙΣ, ΤΗ ΕΜΠΕΡΟΥΡ. C. ΑΣΑΡ. ΛΥΚΙΟΥΣ ΣΕΠΤΙΜΙΟΥΣ ΣΕΒΕΡΟΥΣ ΠΕΡΤΙΝΑΧ.* And in the Reverse, an Horseman with a Trophæe erected before him, but the letters not legible, save under him *ΑΑΤΙΟΝ*, that is, *Of the Elaians*, which kinde of great peeces the Italians call *Medagliam*, and were extraordinary coines, not for common use, but coined by the Emperours either to bee distributed by the way of Largesse in triumphes, or to bee sent for tokens to men well deserving, or else by free Cities to the glory and memory of good Princes. What name this place anciently had, is hard to be found, but it seemeth to have bene the Port and landing place for *Venta Silurum*, when as it is but two miles from it.

Then *Throgoy*, a little River neere unto *Caldecot* entereth into the *Severn Sea*, where we saw the wall of a Castle that belonged to the High Constables of England: and was holden by the service of Constableship of England. Hard by, are seene *Wendy* and *Penhow*, the seates in times past of the noble Family of Saint *Maur*, now corruptly named *Seimor*. For, *G. Marefball* Earle of *Pembrock* about the yeere of our Lord 1240. was bound for the winning of *Wendy* out of the Welsh mens hands, to aide *William Seimor*. From him descended *Roger de Saint Maur* Knight, who married one of the heires of *L. Beauchamp of Hach*, a very noble Baron, who derived his Pedegree from *Sibyl* Heire, unto *William Marefball*, that most puissant Earle of *Pembrock*, from *William Ferrars* Earle of *Darby*, from *Hugh de Vivon*, and *William Maller*, men in times past most highly renowned.

The Nobility of all these and of others besides, as may be evidently shewed, hath met together in that right honourable personage *Edward Saint Maur* or *Seimor*, now Earle of *Hartford*, a singular favourer of vertue and good learning, worthy in that behalfe to be honoured and commended to posterity.

Beneath this, lyeth spred for many miles together a Merf, they call it the *Moore*, which, when I lately revised this worke, suffered a lamentable losse: For when the *Severn Sea* at a spring Tide in the change of the Moone what being driven backe for three dayes together with a South-West Winde, and what with a very strong pirry from the sea troubling it, swelled and raged so high, that with furling billowes it came rolling and in-rushing amaine upon this Tract lying so low, as also upon the like flats in *Somerset-shire* over against it, that it overflowed all, subverted houses and drowned a number of beasts, and some people withall. Where this Merf Coast bearing out by little and little runneth forth into the sea, in the very point thereof standeth *Goldchiffe* aloft, that is, as *Giraldus* saith, *A Golden Chiffe*, so called, because the stones there, of a golden colour, by reverberation of the Sunne shining full upon them, glitter with a wonderfull brightness: neither can I bee easily persuaded (saith hee) that Nature hath given this brightness in vaine unto the stones, and that there should bee a flower beere without fruite, were there any man that would search into the Veines there, and using the direction of *Art* enter in the inmost and secretest bowels of the Earth.

Neere to this place there remaine the Reliques of a Priory, that acknowledge those of *Chandos* for their founders and Patron. Passing thence by the Merf Country, we came to the mouth of the River *Isca*, which the Britans name *Usk* and *Wijk*, and some Writers terme it *Osea*. This River as it runneth through the middest, as I said before, of this Countrey, floweth hard by three Townes of especiall antiquity.

The

The first, in the limire of the Shire North-West, *Antonine* the Emperour calleth *Gobanium*, at the very meeting of *Uske* and *Geveny*, whereof it had the name: And even at this day, keeping the ancient name, as it were, safe and sound is rearmed *Aber-Gevenny*, and short *Aber-geenny*, which signifieth the confluents of *Gevenny* or *Gobanny*. Fortified it is with Wals and a Castle, which as saith *Giraldus* of all the Castles in Wales hath bene most defamed and stained with the foule note of treason. First, by *William*, Earle *Miles* his sonne, afterwards by *William Breos*: for both of them after they had trained thither, under a pretense of friendship, certain of the Nobles and chiefe Gentlemen of Wales, with promise of safe conduct, villanously slew them. But they escaped not the just judgement and vengeance of God. For, *William Breos*, after he had bene stripped of all his goods, and lost his wife and some of his children, who were famished to death, died in banishment: the other *William*, being brained with a stone, whiles *Breulais Castle* was on fire, suffered in the end due punishment for his wicked deserts. The first Lord to my knowledge of *Aber Gevenny* was one Sir *Hameline Balun* who made *Brien of Wallingford* or *Brient de L'isle* called also the *Fitz-Count* his heire. He having built heere a Lazarhouse for his two sonnes that were Lepres, ordained *Walter* the sonne of *Miles* Earle of *Hereford*, heire of the greatest part of his inheritance. After him succeeded his brother *Henry*, slaine by the Welshmen, who seized upon his lands, which the Kings Lieutenants and Captaines could not defend without great perill and danger. By a filter of this *Henry* it descended to the *Breoses*, and from them in right of marriage, by the *Cantelanes* to the *Hastings*, which *Hastings* being Earles of *Pembrock* enjoyed it for divers descents, *John Hastings* having then no childe borne devised both it, and the Earledome of *Pembrock* as much as in him lay to his cosin Sir *William Beauchamp*, conditionally that he should beare his Armes. And when the last *Hastings* ended his life issuelesse, *Reginald Lord Grey of Ruthin* being found his Heire, passed over the Barony of *Aber-gevenny* to the said *William Beauchamp* who was summoned afterward to Parliament by the name of *W. Beauchamp de Abergevenny*. Hee entailed the said Barony, reserving an estate to himselfe and his wife, and to the lawfull issue male of their bodies; and for default of such issue, to his brother *Thomas Beauchamp* Earle of *Warwick* and his heires males. This *William Beauchamp* Lord of *Abergevenny*, had a sonne named *Richard*, who for his martiall valour was created Earle of *Worcester*, and slaine in the French warres, leaving one onely daughter, whom Sir *Edward Nevill*, tooke to wife. Since which time the *Nevills* have enjoyed the honorable title of the Barons of *Abergevenny* (howbeit the Castle was by vertue of the entaile aforesaid detained from them a long time.) The fourth Baron of this house dying in our remembrance, left one onely daughter *Mary*, married to Sir *Thomas Fane* Knight, betwixt whom being the heire generall, and *Edward Nevill* the next heire male (unto whom by a will and the same ratified by authority of the Parliament, the Castle of *Abergevenny* and the greatest part of the lands was fallen) there was great competition, for the title of *Abergevenny* argued in the High Court of Parliament in the second yeere of King *James*, and their severall claimes debated seven severall daies by the learned Counsell of both parts, before the Lords of the Parliament. Yet when as the question of precise right in law was not sufficiently cleered, but both of them in regard of the nobility and honor of their family were thought of every one right worthy of honorable title; and whereas it appeared evidently by most certaine proofes, that the title as well of the Barony of *Abergevenny*, as of *Le Despenser* appertained hereditarily to this Family. The Lords humbly and earnestly besought the King, that both parties might be ennobled by way of restitution, who graciously assented thereunto. Hence upon the Lord Chancellour proposed unto the Lords, first whether the heire male should have the title of *Abergevenny* or the heire female: and the most voices carried it, that the title of the Barony of *Abergevenny* should bee restored unto the heire male. And when he propounded secondly, whether the title of the Barony *Le Despenser* should bee restored unto the female, they all with one accord gave their full consent. Which being declared unto the King, he confirmed their determination with

Abergevenny.

Lords of Aber-gevenny.

Clause 49.
Edw. 3.

with his gracious approbation and royall assent. Then was *Edward Nevill* by the Kings Writ called unto the Parliament by the name of Baron *Abergavenny*, and in his Parliament Robes betwene two Barons, as the manner is, brought into the house, and placed in his seat above the Baron *Audley*. And at the very same time, were the letters Patents read, whereby the King restored, created, preferred, &c. *Mary Fane*, to the state, degree, title, style, name, honour, and dignity of *Baroness Le-Despenser*. To have and to hold the foresaid state and unto the above named *Mary* and her heires, and her heires, successively should be *Barons Le-Despenser*, &c. And upon a new question mooved, unto whether the Barony of *Abergavenny*, or the Barony *Le-Despenser*, the priority of place was due. The Lords referred this point to the Commissioners for the Office of the Earle *Mareschall* of England, who after mature deliberation and weighing of the matter, gave definitive sentence for the Barony *Le-Despenser*, set downe under their hands and signed with their scales, which was read before the Lords of the Parliament, and by order from them entered into the Journall Booke, out of which I have summarily thus much exemplified: *John Hastings* (for I have no reason to passe it over in silence) held this Castle by homage, Wardship, and marriage when it hapned (as wee read in the Inquisition) and if there should chance any warre betwene the King of England and the Prince of Wales, hee was to keepe the Country of Overwent at his owne charges in the best manner he can, for his owne commodity, the Kings behoofe, and the Realme of Englands defence.

The second little City which *Antonine* named *BURRIUM*, and setteth downe twelve miles from *Gobannium*, standeth where the River *Birkin* and *Uske* meete in one streame. The Britans at this day, by transposing of the letters, call it *Brumby* for *Burenbegy*, and *Caer Uske*: *Giraldus* termeth it *Castrum Osce*, that is, The Castle of *Uske*, and we Englishmen, *Uske*. At this day it can shew nothing but the ruines of a large and strong Castle, situate most pleasantly betwene the River *Uske*, and *Oily*, a Riveret, which beneath it runneth from the East by *Ragland*, a faire house of the Earle of *Worcesters*, built Castle-like.

The third City which *Antonine* nameth *ISCA*, and *LEGIO SECUNDA*, is on the other side of *Uske* twelve Italian miles just distant from *BURRIUM*, as hee hath put it downe. The Britans call it *Caer Leon*, and *Caer LEON* at *Uske*, that is, The City of the Legion upon *Uske*, of the second Legion *Augusta*, which also is called *Britannica Secunda*. This Legion being ordained by the Emperour *Augustus*, and translated by *Claudius* out of Germany into Britaine, under the conduct of *Vespasian*, being ready at his command, when he aspired to be Emperour, and which procured the Legions in Britaine to take his part, was heere at last placed in Garrison by *Julius Frontinus* (as it seemeth) against the *Silures*. How great this *ISCA* was in those dayes listen unto our *Girald* out of his Booke called *Itinerarium Cambriae*, who thus describeth it out of the ruines. It was an ancient and Authentick City excellently well built in old time by the Romanes with bricke Walles. Heere may a man see many foundations of the antique nobility and dignity it had, mighty and huge Palaces with golden pinnacles in times past, resembling the proud statelynesse of the Romanes, for that it had beene found first by *Romane* Princes, and beautified with goodly buildings. There may you behold a giant-like Towre, notable and brave baines, the remaines of Temples, and Theatres, all compassed in with faire walles, which are partly yet standing. There may one finde in every place, as well within the circuit of the Wall, as without, houses under ground, water pipes and Vaults within the earth, and (that which you will count among all the rest worth observation) you may see every where hote houses made wondrous artificially, breathing forth heate very closely as certaine narrow Tunnels in the sides. Heere he entered two noble Protomartyrs of greater Britaine, and next after *Alban* and *Amphibalus* the very principall here crowned with Martyrdom, namely *Julius* and *Aaron*: and both of them had in this City a goodly Church dedicated unto them. For, in ancient times there had beene three passing faire Churches in this City: One of *Julius* the Martyr, beautified with a chaire of *Nannes* devoted to the service of God: A second founded in the name of blessed *Aaron* his companion, and ennobled with an excellent Order of Chanoines. *Amphibalus* also, the Teacher of

Baroness
Le-Despenser.

6.Ed.2.

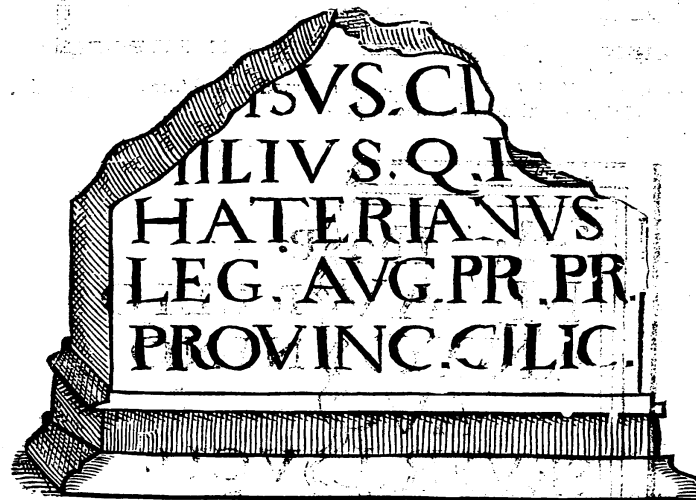
Burrium.

Uske.

Isca Legionis.
Caer Leon
at Uske.

Saint Alban and a faithfull informer of him unto faith was borne heere. The site of the City is excellent, upon the River *Oske*, able to beare a pretty Vessell as an high water from the sea, and the City is fairly furnished with woods and meadows: heere it was that the *Romane* Embassadors repaired unto the famous Court of that great King *Arthur*. Where *Dabry* also resigned the Archiepiscopall honour unto *David* of *Menevia*, when the Metropolitane See was translated from hence to *Menevia*.

Thus much out of *Giraldus*. But for the avouching and confirming of the Antiquity of this place, I thinke it not impertinent to adjoyne heere those antique Inscriptions lately digged forth of the ground, which the right reverend Father in God *Francis Gwyn* Bishop of *Llandaffe*, a passing great lover of venerable Antiquity and of all good Literature, hath of his courtesie imparted unto me. In the yeere 1602. in a meadow adjoyning, there was found by ditchers a certaine image of a personage short and stout trussed bearing a quiver (but head, hands and feet were broken off) upon a pavement of square tile in checker worke: also a fragment of an Altar with this Inscription engraven in great capitall letters three inches long, erected by *Haterianus* the Lieutenant Generall of *Augustus* and Propretour of the Province *Cilicia*.



The next yeere following, hard by, was this Table also gotten out of the ground, which prooveth that the foresaid Image was the personage of *Diana*: and that her Temple was repaired by *Titus Flavius Postumius Varus*, an oldouldier haply of a Band of the second Legion.

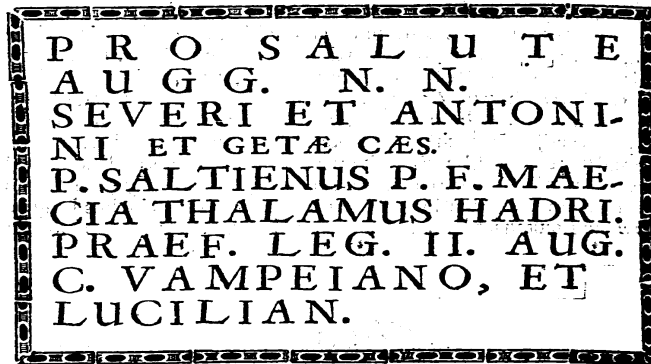


These Inscriptions are to be seen at *Mabers* in the Bishop of *Llandaffe* house.

Peteranus
Coburn.

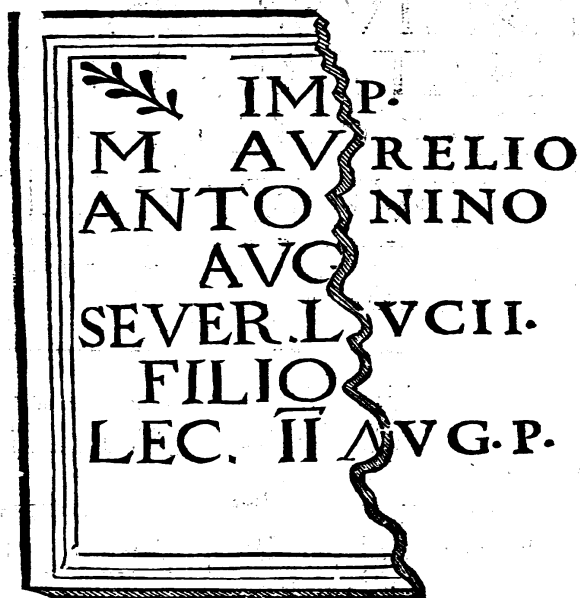
Also,

Also, a votive Altar, out of which GETA the name of *Caesar* may seemethen to have beene rased, what time as he was made away by his brother *Antonine Bassianus*, and proclaimed an Enemy, yet so, as by the tra& of the letters it is in some fort apparent.

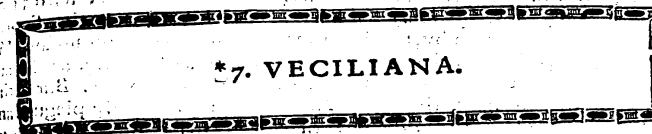


In printed Copies, *Claudius Pompeianus* and *Collianus Avitus* Coss. Anno Christi 210.

This most beautifull Altar also though maimed and dismembred, was there found, which I thinke is thus to be made up.



Also these fragments.



* Centurio

VIII.
7. VALER.
MAXSIMI.

Moreover a little before the comming in of the English Saxons, there was a Schoole here of 200. Philosophers, who being skilfull in *Astronomy* and all other Arts, diligently observed the course and motion of the Starres, as wrote *Alexander Elfebienfis*, a rare Author and hard to be found, out of whom *Thomas James* of Oxford (a learned man and a true lover of Bookes, who wholly addicted to learning, and now laboriously searching the Libraries of England, to the publique good purposeth that (God blesse his labour, which will be to the great benefit of all Students) hath copied out very many notes for me. In the Raigne of Henry the Second (what time *Giraldus* wrote) seemeth that this City was of good strength. For *Trithem* of *Caer Leon* a courageous and hardy Britan, defended it a great while against the English, untill he was vanquished by the King, and so disseized of the possession thereof. But now, that it may serve for an ensample, that as well Cities have fatall periods of their flourishing state, as men of their lives; it is decayed, and become a very small Towne, which in times past was of that greatnesse and reaching out so farre in length on both sides of the River, that Saint *Julians*, an house of the late Sir *William Herbert* Knight, was, by report, sometime within the very City, where Saint *Julius* the Martyrs Church stood, which now is much about a mile out of the Towne. Also, out of the ruines thereof a little beneath, at the mouth of *Uske*, grew up *Newport*, which *Giraldus* nameth in Latine *Novus Burgus*, a Towne of later time built, and not unknowne, by reason of the Castle and commodiousnesse of the Harbour: in which place there was in times past some one of these Roman High wayes or Streets, whereof *Necham* hath made mention in these Verses,

Thomas James,

Newport.

Intrat, & auget aquas Sabrini fluminis Osca,
Præcepit, testis erit Julia Strata mihi.

Uske into *Severn* headlong runnes and makes his streame to swell,
Witnesse with me is *Julia Streets*, that knoweth it full well.

This *Julia Strata*, was no doubt some *Port-high way*, and (if we may be allowed to make a conjecture) what great absurdity were it to say, that it was cast up and made by *Julius Frontinus* the vanquisher of the *Silures*? There creepeth, saith *Giraldus*, in the bounds of this New-burgh or *Newport* a little River named *Nant Pencarn*, which cannot bee waded and passed over but at certaine Foulds, not so much for any depth that the water is of, as for the hollownesse of the Chanell, and the easie mudde in the bottome: and it had of old a Fould named *Rydpencarn*, that is, The Fould under the top of a *Rocke*. Which when Henry the Second King of England chanced at a venture to passe over, even then

then when it was almost growne out of remembrance, the Welshmen, who were over credulous in beleeving of Prophecies, as if now all had bene sure on the Kings side, and themselves hopelesse of all helpe, were quite out of heart and hope of good successe, because *Merlin Silvester*, the British *Apollo*, had prophesied, that then the Welshmens power should bee brought under, when a stout Prince with a freckled face (and such a one was King Henry the Second) should passe over that Foord.

Dun-feruan.

Under the Saxons Heptarchy, this Region was subject to the mountaine Welshmen whom the English called *Dun-feruan* who notwithstanding, as the ancient lawes doe shew, were under the command of the West Saxons. But at the first comming in of the Normans, the Lords *Merchers* most grievously plagued and annoyed them, but especially *Hamelin Balun*, of whom I spake, *Hugh Lacy*, *Water* and *Gilbert*, both surnamed of the house of *Clare*, *Miles of Gloucester*, *Robert Chando*, *Pain Fitz-John*, *Richard Fitz Pons*, and *Brian of Wallingford*: unto whom after that the Kings had once given whatsoever they could get and hold in this tract by subduing the Welsh, some of these before named by little and little reduced under their subjection the upper part of this Shire which they called *Over-went*: others the lower part which they termed *Neisr-went*.

And this Shire is not accounted among the Shires of Wales.

This Shire containeth Parish Churches 127.

GLAMORGAN.



CARMA
DE

GLAMORGAN
Comitatus, qui
olim pars
Silurum

Clanclythe

LEUCARD

Superior



of the City of New York

Mumbai

Backenston

.....

100



Phon



100-443887-100

1	2	3
---	---	---

9 - 6 u.



BLACK NOSE DARS

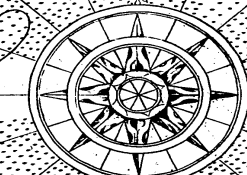
MON

METHEN

S I S

PARS

This is a detailed historical map of the Brecon and Gwent area. The map shows the River Sever flowing from the north and the River Gwent flowing from the south. Numerous towns and villages are labeled, including Brecon, Gwent, and various smaller settlements. The map is oriented with North at the top. The map is labeled with numerous place names in English and Welsh, including Brecon, Gwent, and various smaller settlements. It also shows the River Sever and the River Gwent. The map is oriented with North at the top.



GLAMORGAN-SHIRE.



THE last Country of the *Silures* was that, I thinke, which wee at this day call GLAMORGAN-SHIRE, the Britans *Morganuc*, *Glaib-Morgan*, and *Glad Vorganuc*, that is, *The Region of Morganuc*: so named, as most suppose, of one *Morgan* a Prince, as others thinke of *Morgan* an *Abbey*. But if I derived it from *Mor*, which in the British tongue signifieth *The Sea*; I know not verily whether I should dally with the truth or no? Howbeit, I have observed that a Towne in

Whence came the name of Glamorgan.

little Britaine standing upon the Sea-coast, now called *Morlais*, was of *Ptolomee* and the ancient *Gaules* tearmed *Vorganium* or *Morganium* (for M. and V. consonant are often changed one for another in this tongue) and whence I pray you but from the sea? And this our *Morganuc* also lieth upon the sea: for, stretching out directly more in length, than it spreadeth in breadth, on the South side it is accoasted with the *Severn* sea. But where it looketh toward the Land, it hath on the East side *Monmouth-shire*, on the North *Brechnock-shire*, and on the West *Caermarden-shire* bordering upon it.

The North part by reason of the Mountaines is rough and unpleasant, which as they bend downe Southward by little and little become more milde and of better soile; and at the foote of them there stretcheth forth a Plaine open to the South-Sunne, in that position of situation which *Cato* judged to bee the best, and for the which, *Plinie* so highly commendeth *Italie*. For, this part of the Country is most pleasant and fruitfull, beautified also on every side with a number of Townes.

Jestine a great Lord in the Raigne of *William Rufus*, after he had rebelled against *Rhese* his Prince, and not able to make his part good with him, very rashly, and inconsiderately (which hee afterward repented too late) sent *Enion* a Nobleman to whom he had affianced his daughter; to procure *Robert Fitz Haimon* sonne to *Haimon Dentatus* Lord of *Corboil* in Normandy, to come out of England and aide him a-

The subduing of Glamorgan-shire. Robert Fitz-Haimon.

gainst *Rhese*: who forthwith having mustered certaine forces, and taking for to associate him in his journey twelve Knights, first gave *Rhese* Battaile and slew him, and afterwards being allured with the fertility of the Country, whereof before hand he made full account to be Lord, turning his power upon *Jestine* himselfe, because hee had not kept touch with *Enion* nor performed his promise, easily thrust him out of his ancient Inheritance, and shared the Country among his Companions. The hard and barraine hill Country he granted to the said *Enion*, the more fertile parts he divided betweene him and those twelve Knights whom he tearmed *Peres*, on this condition, that they should hold them in Fee, and vassallage of him as their chiefe Lord, to maintaine one another in common with their aides and auxiliary forces; to defend every one his owne Ward in his Castle of *Caerdiffe*, and to bee present and assist him in his Courts in the administration of Justice. It shall not be amisse to put downe their names out of a little Pamphlet, which Sir *Edward Stradling* or Sir *Edward Mounsel* both Knights men of ancient descent and most skilfull in Antiquity, I wot not whether (for it goeth abroad under both their names) wrote concerning this matter. And these be their names.

12. Knights.

Caerdiffe.

William of London, or *de Londres*.

Richard Granvill.

Pain Turbervill.

Oliver Saint John.

Robert de Saint Quintin.

Roger Bekereol.

William Easterling, for that he was borne in *Germanie*, whose heires

are now called *Stradlings*.

Gilbert Humfravill.

Hhh

Richard

Richard Sward.
John Fleming.
Peter Soore.
Reinald Sully.

The River *Remmie* falling from the Mountaines, is the limite on the East side, whereby this Country is divided from *Monmouth-shire*; and *Remmie* in the British tongue signifieth to *Divide*.

Caer Philli.

Not farre from it where the River holdeth on his course through places hardly passable, among the hilles, in a Marish ground are to bee seene the tottering walles of *Caer-philli Castle*, which hath bene of so huge a bignesse, and such a wonderfull peece of worke beside, that all men well nere say, it was a garison fort of the *Romans*. Neither will I deny it, although I cannot as yet perceive by what name they called it: and yet it may seeme to have bene re-edified anew, considering it hath a Chappell built after the Christians manner (as I was enformed by *John Sanford* a man singular well learned, and of exact judgement) who diligently tooke view of it. In later ages it was the possession of the *Clares* Earles of *Glocester* descended from *Fitz-Haimon* afore said; neither doe any of our Chronicles make mention thereof before king *Edward* the Seconds time. For then, after that the *Spencers* by underhand practises had set the King, Queene, and Barons at debate, the Barons besieged a long time *Hugh Spenser* the younger whom they called *Hugolin* herein, and could not prevaile. By this river also (but the place is not certainly knowne) *Fanilius* a very good sonne, as *Ninnius* writeth, of *Vortigern* so bad a father, built a great Place, where, with other holy men hee prayed daily unto God, that himselfe, whom his father, committing most abominable incest had begotten of his owne daughter might not be punished grievously for his fathers faults, also that his father might at length repent heartily, and his native Country be eased from the bloody warres of the Saxons. A little beneath, hath *Ptolomee* placed the mouth of *RATOSTABIVS* or *RATOSTABIVS*, using a maimed word in stead of *Traith Taff*, that is, *The sandy Trieth of the River Taff*. For, there the said River *Taff*, sliding downe from the Hilles, runneth toward the Sea, by *Landaff*, that is, *The Church by Taff*, a small City and of small reputation, situate somewhat low, yet a Bishops See, having within the Diocesse 154. Parishes, and adorned with a Cathedrall Church consecrated to *Saint Telcan* Bishop of the fame: which Church *German* and *Lupus*, French Bishops, then erected, when as they had suppressed the Heresie of *Pelagius* that was dangerously spread all *Britaine* over, and preferred *Dubricius* a most holy man to bee the first Bishop there, unto whom *Meuricke* a British Lord freely gave all the land that lyeth betwene the Rivers *Taff* and *Elei*. From hence goeth *Taff*, to *Caer diff*, called of the Britans *Caer did* a proper fine Towne (as Townes goe in this Country) and a very commodious Haven: which the foresaid, *Fitz Haimon*, fortified with a Wall and Castle, that it might bee both a seat for warre and a Court of Justice: wherein, beside a Band of choise soldiers those twelve Knights were bound to keepe Castle-guard. Howbeit a few yeeres after, *Tuor Bach* a British Mountainer, a little man of person but of great and resolute courage, marching with a Band of men by night, without any time suddenly surpris'd, tooke Prisoner *William* Earle of *Glocester*, *Fitz Haimon* daughters sonne, together with his wife and young sonne, and detained them in hold with him, untill he had made him full satisfaction for all wrongs and losses. But how, *Robert Curthose*, *William* the Conquerours eldest sonne, a man over venturous and foole hardy in warlike exploits, quite put by his hope of the Crowne of England by his younger brethren and bereft of both his eyes, lived untill he was an old man in this Castle, you may see if you please in our Historians, and understand withall, that royall Parentage is never assured either of ends, or safe security.

Scarce three miles from the mouth of *Taff*, in the very bending in of the shore, there lye as close as it were two small, but pleasant Islands, separated one from another and from the maine Land with narrow in-lets of the Sea. The hithermore is called *Sully*, of the Towne right over against it, which tooke the name, as it is thought,

The mouth of
Ratostabius
Traith Taff,

Landaff.

History of
Landaff.

Caerdiff.

Robert Cur-
those Duke of
Normandy.

Sully, haply so
called of the
Silures.

of *Robert Sully* (for it fell to his part in the division) if you would not rather have him to take his name of it. The farther more is named *Barry*, of *Barnab* an holy man buried there, who as he gave name to the place, so the place gave the surname afterwards to the Lords thereof. For that noble Family of Vicounts *Barries* in Ireland had their original from hence. In a *Rocke*, or *cliffe* beereof by the sea side, saith *Giraldus*, there appeareth a very little chincke into which if you lay your ear you shall heare a noise as it were of *Smithes* at worke, one while the blowing of bellows, another while the striking of sledge and hammer, sometime the sound of the *Grindstone* and iron tooles rubbing against it, the hissing sparkes also of *Beele-gads* within boles, as they are beaten, yea and the passing noise of fire burning in the furnace. Now, I should easily bee perswaded that such a sound may come of the sea water closely getting into the *Rocke*, were it not the same continued as well when the sea ebbs as a low water when the shore is bare, as it doth as an high water when it is full sea. Not unlike to this was the place which *Clemens Alexandrinus* maketh mention of in the seventh Booke of his *Stromata* in these words. They that have written Histories doe say, that in the Isle of *Britaine*, there is a certaine hole or Cave under the bottom of an hill, and on the toppe thereof a gaping chaune or chinck: And when sever the winde is gathered into that hole, and tossed to and fro in the wombe or concavity thereof, there is heard above a sound of *Cymbals*. For, the winde driven backe gives the stronger sound.

A wonderfull
Cave or hole.

Beyond these Islands, the Shire runneth directly Westward, and giveth entrance and passage to one River, upon which more within the Land, standeth *Cowbridge* (the Britans, of the *Stone-bridge* call it *Pont-van*) a Mercate Towne, and the second of those three which *Fitz Haimon* the Conquerour kept for himselfe. Now, whereas *Antonine* the Emperour in this very Coast, at the same distance from *Isca*, placed *BOVIUM*, which also is corruptly read *BOMIUM*, my conjecture liketh me so well, that I have bene of opinion, this Towne was the said *BOVIUM*: but seeing that three miles from hence there standeth *Boverton*, which fitly accordeth in sound with *Bovium*, to love mee trueth, I dare not seeke for *BOVIUM* elsewhere. And that it is no strange and new thing that places should bee fitted with names from Kine and Oxen, I report me to *Bosphorus* in *Thracia*, *Bovina* in *Sannium*, and *Bauli* in *Italie*, as it were, *Boalia*, if we may beleewe *Symmachus*. But let this one argument serve for all: fiftene miles from *BOVIUM*, hath *Antonia* placed, even with a Latine name the Towne *NIDUM*, which although our Antiquaries have bene this great while a hunting after in vaine: yet, at the very same distance there sheweth it selfe *Neath*, a Towne very well knowne, retaining still the old name, in manner whole and sound: and heere at *Lamwih*, that is, *The Church of Illus*, that joyneth close thereto, are seene the foundations of many houses, for it had divers Streets in old time. A little from hence in the very bout well nere of the shore standeth *Saint Donats Castle*, a faire Habitation of the ancient and notable Family of the *Stradlings*: nere unto which, were very lately digged up, antique peeces of *Romane* money, but those especially of the thirty *Tyants*, yea and some of *Emilianus* and *Marius*, which are seldome found. The River *Ogmore* somewhat higher, maketh himselfe way into the Sea, falling downe from the mountaines by *Coite*, which belonged sometimes to the *Turbevills*, afterwards to the *Gamages*, and now to Sir *Robert Sidney* Vicount *Lisle*, in right of his wife: also by *Ogmore Castle*, which came from the Family of *London* to the Dutchy of *Lancaster*. Some few miles from hence there is a Well at *Newton* (as Sir *John Stradling* a very learned Knight hath signified unto me) a little Towne, on the banks of the River *Ogmore* Westward, an hundred paces well nere from *Severn* side, in a sandy plaines. The water thereof is none of the cleereit, yet pure enough and good for use: It never springeth and walmeth up to the brinke, but by certaine staires folke goe downe into the Well. At any flowing of the Sea (in Summer time) you shall hardly get up a dish full of water: Whereas if you come anon when it ebbs, you may well lade up water with a good bigge bucket or pail. The like instability remaineth also in Winter time, saving that it is nothing so evident, by

Cowbridge.

Bovium.

Neath.

Saint Donats
Stradling.

Antique peeces
of coine.

Ogmore river.

A fontaine
ebbing and
flowing.

Sandfords well.

Hhh 2

reason

reason of the Veines of water comming in from above by showres, and otherwise. At any of the Inhabitants thereabout men of good credite constantly avouched thus much unto me. But I, distrustful Fame, that oftentimes doth but prate, went my selfe of late once or twice to the said Well. For even then had I great desire to write thus much unto you. When I was first come unto the place, and had stayed the third part of an houre viewing and considering every thing (while Severn surged and rose high, and no body came thither to draw) the water was fallen about three inches. I goe my waies. And not long after when I was returned againe, I finde it to be risen a foote higher. The compasse of this Well beneath within the walles is almost five foote. Concerning which my Muse also endizeth this Distich.

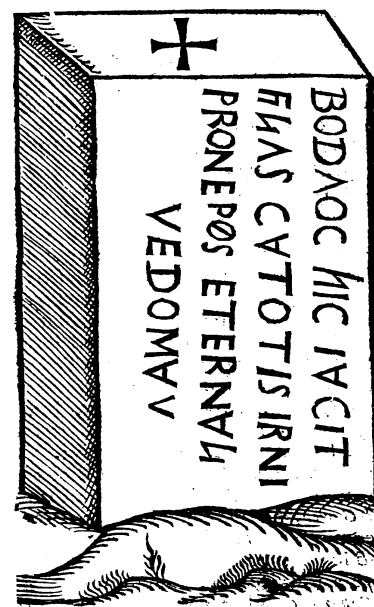
*Te Nova-Villa fremens, odio murmure Nympha
Inclamat Sabrina: Soloque inimica propinquo,
Evomit infestas ructu violenter arenas.
Damna pari sentis vicina sorte: sed illa
Fenticulum causata tamen. Quem virgo, legendo
Littus, ad amplexus vocitat: laet ille vocatus
Antro, & lactatur contra. Namque altius utriusque est
Continuo motu refluxu, tamen ordine dispar.
Nympha fluit propius: Fons defluit. Illa recedit.
Ite redit. Sic livor incit & pugna perennia.*

With troublous noise and roaring loud, the Severn Nymph doth cry,
New-towne, on thee; and bearing spite unto the ground thereby,
Casts up and sends with violence maine drifts of hurtfull sand:
The neighbour parts feele equall losse, by this her heaveie hand:
But on thy little Well she laies the weight, which she would woo
And faine embrace, as Virgin she along the shore doth goe.
Call'd though he be, he lurkes in den, and striveth hard againe;
For, ebbe and flow continually by tides they keepe, both twaine
Yet diversly: for as the Nymph doth rise, the Spring doth fall,
Goe she backe, he comes on, in spite and fight continuall.

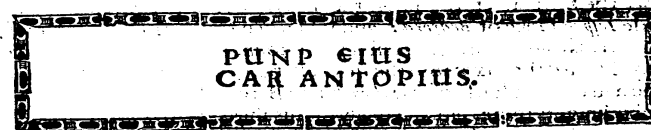
A fountaine
at Calcs or
Cadiz.

The like Fountaine Polybius reporteth to bee at Cadiz, and this reason hee giveth thereof, namely that the winde or aire, when it is deprived of his wonted issues, reneweth within forth, and so by shutting and stopping up the passages and veins of the Spring, keepeth in the waters, and contrariwise when the surface thereof is voided and empty of water the veins of the source or Spring are unstopped and set free, and so the water then boileth up in great abundance. From hence coasting along the shore, you come within the sight of Kinefeage, the Castle in old time of Fitz-Haimon himselfe; also of Margan, hard by the sea side, sometime an Abbay founded by William Earle of Gloucester, but now the Habitation of the worshipfull Family of the Maunsells, Knights. Neere unto this Margan, in the very toppe of an Hill called Mynydd Margan, there is erected of exceeding hard grit, a Monument or grave-stone, foure foote long, and one foote broad with an Incription, which whosoever shall happen to reade, the ignorant common people dwelling thereabout, give it out upon a credulous error, that hee shall bee sure to dye within a little while after. Let the Reader therefore looke to himselfe, if any dare reade it; for, let him assure himselfe that hee shall for certaine dye after it.

Those



Those latter words I reade thus *Eternali in domo*, that is, *In an eternall house*: For Sepulchres in that age, were rearm'd *ETERNALES DOMUS*, that is, *Eternall habitations*. Moreover, betwene Margan and Kingseage by the high way side, there lyeth a stone foure foote long with this Incription.



Which the Welsh Britans by adding and changing letters, thus reade and make this interpretation, as the right reverend Bishop of Landaff did write to mee, who gave order that the draught of this Incription should be taken likewise for my sake. *PIM BIS AN CAR ANTOPIUS*; that is, *The five fingers of friends or neighbours killed us*. It is verily thought to bee the Sepulchre of Prince Margan, from whom the Country tooke name, who was slaine, as they would have it, eight hundred yeeres before Christs Nativity. But Antiquaries know full well, that these Characters and formes of letters be of a farre later date.

After you are past Margan, the shore shooteth forth into the North-East, by *Aber-avon*, a small Mercate Towne upon the River *Avons mouth* (whereof it tooke the name) to the River *Nid* or *Neash* infamous for a quick-sand, upon which stands an ancient Towne of the same name, which *Antonine* the Emperour in his *Itinerary* called *NIDUM*. Which, when *Fitz-Haimon* made himselfe Lord of this Country, fell in the partition to *Richard Granvill* share, who having founded an Abbay under the very Townes side, and consecrated his owne portion to God and to the Monkes,

H h h 3

returned

Nidus flu. i. the
river Neash.

Nidum the
towne Neash.

Loghor:
Gower.

Th. Walsingham.

Booke of North
Monastery.
Joh. R. 5.

Swineley.

Leucarum
Loghor.

Lords of Glamorgan-shire.

returned againe to his owne ancient and faire inheritance, which he had in England. Beyond this River *Neath*, whatsoever lieth betwene it and the River *Loghor*, which boundeth this shire in the West, wee call *Gower*: the Britans and *Ninnius*, *Gabin*: wherein, as he saith, the sonnes of *Keian* the Scot planted themselves, and tooke up a large roome, untill that by *Cunedda* a British Lord they were driven out. In the Reigne of Henry the First, *Henry* Earle of *Warwicke* wonne it from the Welsh, but by a conveyance and composition, passed betwene *William* Earle of *Warwicke* and King Henry the Second, it came to the Crowne. Afterward King *John* gave it unto *William Breos* who had taken *Arthur* Earle of Britaine prisoner, to bee held by service of one Knight for all service: and his heires successively held it not without troubles unto King Edward the Second's daies: for then, *William Breos*, when he had alienated and sold this inheritance to many, and in the end by mocking and disappointing all others, set *Hugh Spenser* in possession thereof, to curry favour with the King. And this was one cause, among other things, that the Nobles hated the *Spensers* so deadly, and rashly shooke off their Allegiance to the King. Howbeit this *Gower* came to the *Mowbraies* by an heire of *Breos*. This is now divided into the East part and the West. In the East part *Swineley*, is of great account, a Towne so called by the Englishmen, of *Sea-Swine*, but the Britans *Aber-Taw* of the River *Taw* running by it; which, the foresaid Henry, Earle of *Warwicke* fortified. But there is a Towne farre more ancient than this by the River *Loghor*, which *Antonine* the Emperour called *LEUCARUM*, and wee, by the whole name, *Loghor*. Where, a little after the death of King Henry the First, *Howel Ap Merediz* invading the Englishmen on a sudden, with a power of the mountaineers slew divers men of quality and good account. Beneath this, lyeth *West-Gower*, and by reason of two armes of the Sea winding in, on either side one, it becommeth a *Biland*, more memorable for the fruitfulness, than the Townes in it, and in times past of great name, in regard of *Kined* canonized a Saint, who lived heere a solitary life: of whom if you desire to know more, reade our Countryman *Capgrave*, who hath set out his miracle with great commendation.

Since this Country was first conquered by the English. The Lords thereof were those that lineally descended from *Fitz-Hamon*, as Earle of *Glocester*, *Clares*, *Spensers*, *Beauchamps*; and one or two *Nevils*: and by a daughter of *Nevill*, who came likewise of the *Spensers* blood, Richard the Third King of England: But when he was slaine, King Henry the Seventh entred upon the inheritance of this Country, and gave it to his unkle *Jasper* Duke of *Bedford*: and when hee dyed without issue, the king resumed it unto his owne hands, and left it to his sonne King Henry the Eighth: whose sonne King Edward the Sixth sold the greatest part thereof to Sir *William Herbert*, whom hee had created Earle of *Pembroke* and Baron of *Cardiff*. But of the race of those twelve knights there remaine onely in this shire the *Stradlings*, a notable house and of long continuance, the *Turbervills*, and some of the *Flemings*: the greatest man of which house dwelleth at *Flemingston*, now corruptly called *Flemston*, as one would say, *Flemingstone* which tooke the name of them. And in England, there are remaining yet the Lord *Sains John* of *Blesse*, the *Granvills* in *Devonshire*, and the *Stwards*, as I am enformed, in *Somersetshire*. The issue male of all the rest is long since extinct and worne out, and their lands by daughters passed over to divers houses with sundry alterations.



DIMETAE.

PLinie was of opinion that the *SILURES* inhabited also the other part beside of this Country, which bearing out farther Westward, is called in English by some, *West-Wales*, and containeth *Caermarden-shire*, *Pembroke-shire*, and *Cardigan-shire*: But *Ptolomee*, who knew Britaine farre better, placed heere another people, whom he called *DIMETAE*, and *DEMETAE*. *Gildas* likewise and *Ninnius* both, have used the name of *DEMETIA* for this Tract. Whereupon, the Britans that inhabite it, changing *M.* into *F.* according to the propriety of their tongue commonly call it at this day *Difed*.

If it would not be thought strained curiosity, I would derive this denomination of the *Demetæ*, from *Deheu Meath*, that is, A plaine champion toward the South: like as the Britans themselves have named all this South-Wales, *Deheubarth*, that is, The South part: yea and those verily who inhabited another champion Country in Britaine were called in old time, *Meatæ*. Neither, I assure you, is the site of this Region disagreeing from this signification: For, when you are come hither once, by reason that the high hills gently settle downward, and grow still lower and lower, it spreadeth by little and little into a plaine and even champion Country.

CAERMARDI
Comitatus in quo
DIMETÆ
olim habitarunt



CAERMARDEN-SHIRE.

CAERMARDEN-SHIRE, is plenteous enough in Corne, stored abundantly with Cattail and in some places yeeldeth pit cole for fewell. On the East side it is limited with Glamorgan, and Brechnock-shires, on the West with Pembrock-shire, on the North with Cardigan-shire severed from it by the River Tŷwie running betweene, and on the South with the Ocean, which with so great a Bay or Creeke getteth within the Land, that this Countrey seemeth as it were for very feare to have shrunk backe, and withdrawne it selfe more inwardly.

Upon this Bay, Kidwelly first offereth it selfe to our sight, the Territory whereof, *Kidwelly* the Scot his sonnes held for a time, untill they were driven out by *Cunedda* the Britan. But now it is counted part of the inheritance of the Dutchy of Lancaster by the heires of *Maurice* of London or *De Londres*: who making an outroad hither out of Glamorgan-shire, after a dangerous war made him selfe Lord heereof, and fortified old Kidwelly with a wall and Castle to it, which now for very age is growne to decay and standeth, as it were, forlet and forlorne. For, the Inhabitants having passed over the little River *Vendraeth Veban*, built a new Kidwelly, entised thither by the commodity of the haven, which notwithstanding at this day being choked with shelves and barres, is at this present of no great use. Whiles *Maurice* of London invaded these parts, *Guenliana* the wife of Prince *Gruffin*, a stout and resolute woman in the highest degree, to recover the losses and declining state of her husband, came with displayed banner into the field and fiercely assailed him, but the successe not answerable to her courage, shee with her sonne *Morgan*, and other men of especiall note (as *Giraldus* recordeth) was slaine in battaile. By *Hawis* or *Avis* the daughter and heire of Sir *Thomas* of London: this passing faire and large patrimony, together with the Title of Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly* came unto *Patrick* *Chaworth*, and by his sonne *Patrick* daughter, unto *Henry* Earle of Lancaster. Now the heires of the said *Maurice* of London (as we learne out of an old Inquisition) for this inheritance, were bound to this service: that if their Sovereigne Lord the King, or his chiefe Justice came into the parts about Kidwelly with an Army, they should conduct the foresaid Army with their banners and their people through the middest of *Nethland* as farre as to *Loghar*. A few miles beneath Kidwelly, the River *Tovie*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *Tobius* falleth into the Sea, after he hath passed through this Region from North-East to South, first by *Lanandiffry*, so called, as men thinke, of Rivers meeting together: which *Hael* the sonne of *Rhesi* overthrew for malice that hee bare unto the English: then by *Dinevor*, a princely Castle, standing aloft upon the top of an hill, and belonging unto the Princes of South Wales whiles they flourished: and last of all, by *Caer Marden*, which the Britans themselves call *Caer-Firabbin*, *Ptolomee*, *MARIDUNUM*, *Antonine*, *MURIDUNUM*, who endeth his Journeies there, and through negligence of the transcribers is in this place not well used. For they have confounded the Journeies from *Galena* to *Isca*, and from *Maridunum* to *Viriconium*. This is the chiefe City of the country, for meadows and woods pleasant, and in regard of antiquity to be respected; Compassest about very properly, as *Giraldus* saith, with bricke walles, which are partly yet standing upon the famous river *Tovie*, able to beare small ships, although there be now a barre of sand cast up against the very mouth thereof. In this City was borne the * *Tages* of the Britans, I meane *Merlin*: For like as *Tages* being the sonne of an evill Angell taught his Countymen the *Tuscans* the art of Sooth saying, so this *Merlin* the sonne of an *Incubus* Spirit, devised for our Britans prophesies, nay rather meere phantasticall dreames. Whereby, in this Island he hath been accounted among the credulous and unskillfull people a most renowned *Prophet*. Straight after the Normans entring into

Caer Marden-shire.

Kidwelly.

Guenliana, a woman of manly courage.

Lords of Ogmore and Kidwelly.

River Tovie.

Dinevor.

Maridunum, Caer marden.

Merlin, * Divinour or Prophet.

into Wales, this City was reduced (but I wot not by whose conduct) under their subjection, and for a long time sore afflicted with many calamities and distresses, being oftentimes assaulted, once or twice set on fire, first by *Gruffin ap Rife*, then by his the said *Gruffin's* brother: at which time, *Henry Turbervill* an Englishman succoured the Castle, and hewed downe the Bridge. But afterwards by the means of *Gilbert de Clare*, who fortified both the walles thereof, and the Castles adjoining, it was freed from these miseries: and being once eased of all grievances, and in security, endured afterwards more easily from time to time the tempests of warre and all faults: And the Princes of Wales of the English blood, I meane the first begotten sonnes of the Kings of England, ordained heere their *Chancery* and *Exchequer*, for all South Wales.

Neere unto this City on the East side lyeth *Cantred-Bichan*, that is, *The little Hundred* (for the Britans terme a portion of land that containeth 100. Villages a *Centred*) in which, beside the ruines of *Careg Castle* situate upon a Rocke, rising on every side steepe and upright, there are many under-mines or caves of very great wideness within the ground, now covered all over with green-ford and turfe, wherein it is thought the multitude unable to beare armes hid themselves, during the heat of warre: there is also heere a Fountaine, that as *Giraldus* writeth, *Twice in fure and twenty houres ebbing and twice flowing resembleth the unstable motions of the maine Sea*.

But on the North-East side, there stretcheth it selfe a great way out, *Cantredmaur*, that is, *The great hundred*, a most safe refuge for the Britans in times past, as being thicke set with woods, comberfome to travaile in, by reason the waies are intricate by the windings in and out of the hills, Southward stand *Talcharn* and *Lhan-Stephen Castles* upon rockes of the Sea, which are most notable witnesse of martiall valour and prowesse as well in the English as in the Welsh. Beneath *Talcharn*, *Taff* sheddeth it selfe into the Sea, by the side whereof was in times past that famous *Troy Towne* of *Taff*, that is, *The white house upon the River Taff*, because it was built of white flint for a summer house: where, in the yeere of our Redemption 914. * *Hael*, surnamed *Dbu*, that is, *Good*, Prince of Wales, in a frequent Assembly of his States (for there met there beside others, of the Clergie one hundred and forty) abrogated the ancient ordinances, and established new lawes for his Subjects, as the Proceeto the very lawes themselves doe witnesse: In which place afterward, a little Abbay named *White Land*, was built. Not farre from whence is *Kilmayn Lboyd*; where, of late daies certaine country people hapned upon an earthen Vessell, in which was bound a mighty deale of Romane Coine, of embased silver: from the time of *Constantine* the third, which fell just with the yeere of Christ 243. Among these, were certaine peeces of *Helvius Pertinax*, of *Marcus Opellius*, of *Antoninus Diadumenianus*, of *Julius Verus Maximus* the sonne of *Maximinus*, of *Calius Balbinus*, of *Clodius Pupianus*, of *Aquila Severa* the wife of *Elagabalus* and of *Sall. Barbia Orbianna*, which among Antiquaries are of greatest price and estimation, as being most rare of all others. Now it remaineth that I should relate, how upon the river *Tivy*, that separateth this County from *Cardigan-shire*, there standeth *New-Castle* (for so they call it at this day) which *Sir Rhise ap Thomas* that warlike Knight who assisted Henry the Seventh when he gat the Crowne, and was by him right worthily admitted unto the Society of the Knights of the Garter, renewed: whereas before time it was named *Elm-lin*. Which name, if the Englishmen gave unto it of *Elme-trees*, their conjecture is not to bee rejected, who will have it to bee that *LOVENTIUM* of the *Druidae*, whereof *Ptolomee* maketh mention: For, the Britans call *Elmes* *Lhoiffan*. But seeing I can finde by no record in Histories, which if the Normans first wreched this County out of the hands of the Princes of Wales, I am to proceed now orderly to the description of *Pembroch-shire*.

PENBROK

Comitatus olim
Pars
DEMETARVM

H I B E R
N I C V M

S I V E

V E R G I V I V M

M A R E S A B R A

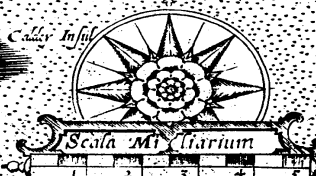
M A R

C A R D I G A N P A R S

C A R M A R

T H E N

P A R S



Georgius Owen D. Remeis
descripsit
Wilhelmus Kip sculpit

PENBROKE-SHIRE.



THE Sea now retyring Southward, and with a mighty compasse and sundry Bayes incurving the shores, presseth on every side upon the County of PENBROKE, commonly called PENBROKES-HIRE, which in the old Bookes is named * *The lawfull Countie of Pembroke*, and of some, *West-Wales*; unlesse it be in the East side, where *Caermarden-shire*, and on the North, where a part of *Cardigan-shire* boundeth upon it. A Country plentifull in Corne, stored with Cat-

* *Legalis Comitatus.*

taile, and full of marle, and such kinde of fatty earth to make the ground fertile, and not destitute of pit cole. *This Land*, as saith *Giraldus*, is apt to beare *Wheat*, plentifully stored with *sea-fish* and *saleable wine*, and (that which is farre above the rest, by reason that the land confineth so nere upon it) of a *very temperate and wholesome aire*.

First and formost upon the shore descending Southward, *Tenby* a proper fine Towne well governed by a Major, and strongly walled toward the Land, looketh downe into the sea from a dry cliffe, very famous because it is a commodious road for ships, and for abundance also of fish there taken; whereupon in the British tongue it is called *Tenby-y-Pisoid*, and hath for Magistrates a Major and a Bailiffe. From thence the shore giving backe Westward, sheweth the Reliques of *Manober Castle*, which *Giraldus* calleth, *The Mansion of Pyrrhus*, in whose time as himselfe writeth, *It was notably fortified with Towres and Bulwarkes, having on the West side a large Haven, and on the North-West and North under the very walles, an excellent fish-pool, goodly to behold, as well for the beauty thereof, as the depth of the water.*

Tenby.

Manober Castle.

From hence runneth the shore along not many miles continuat, but at length the land shrinketh backe on both sides giving place unto the sea, which encroching upon it a great way, maketh the Haven which the Englishmen call *Milford Haven*; than which there is not another in all Europe more noble or safer, such variety it hath of nouked Bayes, and so many coves and creekes, for harbour of ships, where with the bankes are on every side indented, and that I may use the Poets words:

Milford Haven.

*Hic exarmatum terris cingentibus aquor,
Clauditur, & placidam discit servare quietem.*

The Sea disarmed heere of windes, within high banke and hill;
Enclosed is, and learns thereby to be both calme and still.

For to make use of the Mariners words and their distinct termes, there are reckoned within it 16. Creekes, 5. Baies, and 13. Rodes; knowne every one by their severall names. Neither is this Haven famous for the secure safeness thereof more, than for the arrivall therein of King Henry the Seuenth a Prince of most happy memory, who from hence gave forth unto England then hopelesse the first signall to hope well, and raise it selfe up, when as now it had long languished in civill miseries and domesticall calamities within it selfe. Upon the innermore and East Creeke of this Haven, in the most pleasant Country of all Wales, standeth *Penbroke the Shire-towne*, one direct street upon a long narrow point all rocke, and a forked arme of *Milford Haven* ebbing and flowing close to the Towne walles on both sides. It hath a Castle bur now ruinate, and two Parish Churches within the wals, and is incorporate of a Major, Bailiffes and Burgessees. But heare *Giraldus* who thus describeth it, *A tongue of the sea shooting forth of Milford Haven, in the forked end, encloseth the principall town of the whole Country and chiefe place of Dimetia seated upon the ridge of a certayne craggy and long shaped Rocke: And therefore, the Britains called it Penbro, which signifies as much as a head of the Sea, and wee in our tongue Penbroke.* Arnulph of Montgomery wiber to Robert Earle of Shrewsbury, first in the time of King Henry the First fortified this

Penbroke.

this place with a Castle, a very weake and slender thing, God wote, of stakes and turfs, which afterwards he returning into England delivered unto Girald of Windsor, his Constable and Capitaine, to be kept with a Garrison of few Souldiers: and immediately, the Welshmen of all South Wales laid siege unto the said Castle. But such resistance made Girald and his company, more upon a resolute courage than with any forcible strength, that they missed of their purpose and dislodged. Afterwards, the said Girald fortified both Towne and Castle; from whence hee invaded the Country, round about it, here and nere: and at length, that as well his owne estate, as theirs that were his followers and dependants, might the better grow to greatnesse in these parts he took to wife Nesta sister to Gruffin the Prince, of whom he begat a goodly faire Progeny, by the which (as saith that Giraldus who descended from him) The Englishmen have kept still the Sea Coasts of South Wales, and wonne also the walles of Ireland. For, all those noble families of Giralds or Giraldines in Ireland, whom they call Fitz Girald, fetch their descent from the said Girald. In regard of the tenure of this Castle and Towne, of the Castle and Towne likewise of Trimigh, of the Grange of Kingswood, of the Commot of Croystarath, and of the Manors of Castle Martin and Tregrove, Remold Grey at the Coronation of King Henry the Fourth made suite to carry the sword: but in vaine: For, answer was made, that those Castles and Possessions were in the Kings hands, as Pembroke Towne still is.

Upon another Creeke also of this haven, Carew Castle sheweth it selfe, which gave both name and originall to the notable Family de Carew, who avouch themselves to have beene called aforetime, de Montgomery; and have beene perswaded, that they are descended from that Arnulph de Montgomery, of whom I spake erewhile.

Into this Haven there discharge themselves with their out-lets joyned almost in one, two rivers, which the Britans tearme Gledawb, that is, if you interpret it, Swords: whereupon themselves use to tearme it Aber du gledawb, that is, The out-let of two swords. Hard by the more Easterly of them standeth Slebach, a Commandery in times past of Saint Johns Knights of Jerusalem, which with other lands, Wize and Walter his sonne, gave in old time unto that holy Order of Knighthood, that they might serve as Gods Knights to recover the Holy Land. That part of this Country which lyeth beyond the Haven, and hath onely these two Rivers to water it, the Britans doe call Ros, making the name answerable to the thing, for that it lyeth for the most part all low on a flat, and greene plaine.

This Tract was inhabited by Flemings out of the Low Countries, who by the permission of King Henry the First were planted heere, when the Ocean by making breaches in the bankes had overwhelmed a great part of the said Low Countries. These are distinctly knowne still from the Welsh, both by their speech and manners, and so nere joyned they are in society of the same language with Englishmen, who comenigheft of any Nation to the low Dutch Tongue, that this their little Country is tearmed by the Britans Little England beyond Wales. A Nation, as saith Giraldus, strong and stout, and continually enured in warres with the Welsh: a Nation most accustomed to seek gaine by cloathing; by traffique also and merchandise by sea and land, undertaking any paines and perills whatsoever. A Nation of very great power, and in time and place requirith, ready by turnes to take plough in hand and till the ground, and also to goe into the field and fight it out: And that I may adde thus much moreover: A Nation most loyally devoted to the Kings of England, and as faithfull to Englishmen: and which in the time of Giraldus, was wonderfull skilfull in Sooth-saying by the Inspection of Beasts inwards: whose worke also is heere scene (as they are a people passing industrious) namely, The Flemish High way reaching out a great length. The Welshmen have many a time banded all their Forces in one, and to recover this country belonging sometimes unto their ancestors, have violently set upon these Flemings and overrunne their lands, spoiling and wasting where ever they went: yet they most courageously have alwayes from time to time defended their estates, their name, and life. Whereupon concerning them, and King William Rufus, the Historian Malmsbury writeth thus. Many a time and often King William Rufus had but

small successe against the Welsh men: which any man may well merwaile at, considering that should otherwise, he spread most fortunately in all adventures of Warre. But I take it, that as the mercenness of the ground, and sharpnesse of the ayre maintained their Rebellion, so the same impeached his valour: But King Henry who now Reigneth, a man of an excellent wit, found meanes to frustrate all their devices, by placing Flemings in their Country, who might be alwayes ready to repress and keepe them in. And in the fifth booke, King Henry with many a warlike expedition went about to force the Welsh men, who ever and anon rose up in Rebellion, for to yeeld and submit themselves: and resting in the end upon this good and holisome policy, for to take downe and abate their swelling pride, he brought over thither all the Flemings that dwelt in England. For a number of them who in those daies in regard of his Mothers kinred by her Fathers side flocked thither, were closely shrowded in England, in so much as they for their multitude seemed burdensome unto the Realme. Wherefore, he sent them altogether with their substance, goods, Wives, and Children unto Ros a Country in Wales, as it were in a common avoidance, thereby both to purge and cleanse his owne Kingdome, and also to quail and repress the rash boldnesse of his enemies there. By the more westward of these two Rivers, is Harford West, called by the English men in times past Haverford, and by the Britans Hulpford, a faire Towne and of great resort, situate upon an hill side, having scarce one even streete, but is steepe one way or other, which being a Countrey by it selfe, hath for Magistrates, a Major, a Sheriffe, and two Bailiffs. The report goeth, that the Earles of Clare fortified it with Rampier and Wall on the North side, and we read that Richard Earle of Clare made R. Fitz-Tancred, Castellan of this Castle.

Beyond Ros, there shooteth out with a mighty front farre into the West Ocean, a great Promontory, which Ptolomee called OCTOPITARUM, the Britans Pebidiauc, and Centred Dewi; we Saint Davids land. A stony, barren, and unfruitfull ground, as Giraldus saith, Neither clad with Woods, nor garwished heere and there with Rivers, nor adorned with Meadows, lying alwayes open to windes onely and stormes. Yet a retyring place for most holy men, and a nurserie of them. For, Calphurnius a Britaine Priest, as some (I know not how truly) have written, heere in the vale of Ros begat of his Wife Concha Sister to Saint Martin of Tours, Patricke the Apostle of Ireland and Dewi a most religious Bishop translated the Archiepiscopall See from Iſca Legionum into the most remote and farthest angle heereof, even to Menew, or Menevia: which afterwards the Britans, of his name called Twy Dewi, that is, Dewi his house, the Saxons Dewi-byr-wep, the English men at this day Saint Davids; and was for a long time an Archiepiscopall See. But by occasion of a pestilence that contagiously raged in this Country, whereby the Pall was translated into little Britaine in France, to Dole, this Archiepiscopall dignity had an end. Yet in the foregoing ages the Welsh men commensed an action heere about against the Archbishop of Canterbury, Metropolitan of England and Wales, but they were cast in the Law. What this Saint Dewi was, and what maner of thing in times past, a man can hardly tell, considering it hath bene so often by Pirates rased: but now it is a very small and poore Cite, and hath nothing at all to make shew of but a faire Church dedicated to Saint Andrew, and David: which, having been many times overthrowne, Petre the Bishop, in the reign of King John, and his successors, erected in that forme which now it sheweth, in the vale (as they tearme it of Ros) under the Towne: and hard by it standeth the Bishops Pallace, and faire houses of the Chaunter (who is next unto the Bishop, for there is no Deane heere) of the Chauncellor, Treasurer, and foure Archdeacons who be of the number of the XXII. Canons, all enclosed round within a strong and seemely wall, whereupon they call it the Close.

This Promontorie thrusteth it selfe so farre Westward, that in a cleere Sunshine they may see from thence see Ireland, and from hence is the shortest cut to Ireland: and by Plinies measure, which he tooke false, was from the Silures (for, he thought that the Silures reached thus farre) thirty miles. But that this land ran out farther, and that the forme of the Promontory hath been changed, it may be gathered out of these words of Giraldus. What time (saith he) as King Henry the Second made his abode

Harford west;

Filius Tancredi.

Ostropitarum;

Saint Davids Land.

Saint Patrick;

Saint Davids;

Bodies of trees
in the Sea.

in Ireland, by reason of an extraordinary violence of stormes, the sandy shores of this coast were laide bare as farre as to the very hard ground, and the face of the earth which had been covered many ages before was discovered. Also the trunks of trees standing in the very Sea, that had aforesime been lopped on every side, yea and the strokes of axes, as if they had been graven yesterday were seene apparantly. Yea and the earth shewed most blacke, and the wood without of the said trunks like in all the points to Hebeny: so as it seemed now no shore but a lopped grove: as well empaired through the wonderfull changes of things; either haply from the time of Noahs flood, or long after, but, doubtlesse, long agoe, as worne by little and little, and so swallowed up with the rage of the Sea getting alwaies more ground and washing the earth away. Neither were these two lands severed here with any great Sea betweene, as may appeare by a word that King William Rufus cast out: who when he kenned Ireland from the rocks and cliffs of this Promontory, said (as we read in Giraldus) that he could easily make a bridge with English Sips; on which he might passe over the Sea on foote into Ireland.

Falcons.

A noble kinde of Falcons have their Airies here and breed in the Rocks, which King Henry the Second, as the same Giraldus writeth, was wont to preferre before all others. For, of that kinde are those, if the inhabitants thereby doe not deceive me, which the skilfull Faulconers call *Peregrines*: for, they have (that I may use no other words than the verses of *Augustus Tivannus Esmerius* that most excellent Poet of our age in that golden booke entituled *HIERACOSOPHI OY*.

*Depressus capitis vertex, oblongaque toto
Corpore pennarum series, pallentia crura,
Et graciles digiti ac sparsi, nareque rotunda.*

Head flat and low, the plume in rewes along
The body laid: legges pale and wan are found.
With slender claws and talons there among
And those wide spread: the bill is hooked round.

Keimes Barony,
Fishgard.

New-port.

Saint Dogmael
the Welsh call
him Saint
Tegwel.
Lords of
Keimes,
Martins.

Kilgarrahan.

But from this Promontory, as the land draweth backward, the Sea with great violence and assault of waters inrusheth upon a little Region called *Keimes*, which is reputed a *Barony*. In it standeth, First, *Fishgard*, so called in English of the taking of fish, in British *Abergwain*, that is, the mouth of the River *Gwain*, situate upon a steepe Cliffe, where there is a very commodious harbour and roade for Ships: then *Newport* at the foote of an high Mountaine by the River *Neuvers side*, in British *Tref-drach*, i. the Towne upon the sands, and in Latine Records, *Nervus Burgus*; which *Martin of Tours* built, his posterity made an incorporation, adorned with privileges, and set over it for government a *Portgreve* and *Bailive*: created also for themselves a Castle over the Towne, which was their principall feate. Who founded likewise *Saint Dogmaels Abbey* according to the order of *Tours*, by the River *Tivy* low in a vale environed with hills, unto which the Borough adjoining (as many other Townes unto Monasteries) is beholden for the original thereof. This Barony, *Martin of Tours* first wrested out of the Welsh mens hands by force and armes, from whose heires successively called *Martins*, it came by marriage to the Barons of *Andley*, who held it a long time, untill that in the reigne of Henry the eighth, *William Owen* that derived his pedigree from a daughter of Sir Nicholas *Martin* Knight, after long suit in law for his right, in the end obtained it, and left it to his sonne *George*: who being a singular lover of venerable antiquity hath informed me, that in this Barony were and above three Borroughs, *Newport*, *Fishgard*, and *Saint Dogmaels*, there are twenty Knights fees, and twenty fixe Parishes.

More inward, upon the River *Tivy* aforesaid is *Kilgarrahan*, which sheweth reliques of a Castle built by *Girald*: but being at this day reduced unto one onely street, it is famous; for nothing else but the most plentiful fishing of Salmon. For there, have you that notable *Salmon Leap*, where the River from on high falleth down right, and the *Salmons* from out of the Ocean coveting to come up further into the River,

when

when they meete with this obstacle in the way, bend backe their taile to the mouth, other whiles also to make a greater leap up, hold fast their taile in the mouth, and as they unloose themselves from such a circle, they give a jerk, as if a twig bended into a reede were suddenly let goe, and so with the admiration of the beholders mount and whip themselves aloft from beneath, as *Anfonius* hath most elegantly written.

Salmons leap.

*Nec te paniceo rutilantem viscere Salma,
Transferim, late cuius vaga verbera cauda
Gurgite de medio summas referuntur in undas.*

Nor can I thee let passe, all red within,
(Salmon) that art, whose jerkes and friskes full oft,
From mids of streame and chanell deepe therein
With broad taile flirt, to floating waves aloft.

There have beene divers Earles of *Pembroke* out of sundry houses. As for *Arthur* of *Montgomery*, who first wonne it, and was afterwards outlawed, and his Castell *Girald*, whom King Henry the First made afterward President over the whole Country, I dare scarcely affirme that they were Earles. The first that was titled Earle of *Pembroke* was *Gilbert*, surnamed *Strongbow* sonne of *Gislebert de Clare*, in the time of King Stephen. And hee left it unto his sonne *Richard Strongbow*, the renowned Conquerour of Ireland, who as *Giraldus* saith, was descended ex clara *Clarentium familia*, that is, out of the noble Family of *Clare* or *Clarence*. His onely daughter *Isabell* brought the same honour to her Husband *William* named *Mareschall* (for that his Ancestours had beene by inheritance *Mareschalls of the Kings Palace*) a man, most glorious both in warre and peace, and Protector of the Kingdome in the minority of King Henry the Third. Concerning whom this pithie Epitaph is count in *Rodburns Annales*.

Earles of Pen-
broke.

*Sum quem Saturnum sibi sensit Hibernia, Solem
Anglia, Mercurium Normannia, Gallia Martem.*

Whom Ireland once a *Saturne* found, England, a *Sonne* to be;
Whom Normandy a *Mercurie*, and France *Mars*, I am he.

After him his five sonnes were successively one after another Earles of *Pembroke*, viz. *William* called *The younger*; *Richard*, who after hee had rebelled against King Henry the Third went into Ireland, where hee was slaine in battaile; *Gilbert*, who in a Tournament at *Ware* was unhorsed and so killed; *Walter*, and *Anselme*, who enjoyed the honour but a few dayes, who every one dying in a short space without issue, King Henry the Third invested in the honour of this Earledome, *William de Valence*, of the house of *Lusignan* in *Poitou* his brother by the mother side, who had to wife *Joan* the daughter of *Gwarin de Mont-chensy*: by the daughter of the foresaid *William Mareschall*. After *William of Valence*, succeeded his sonne *Aimar*, who under King Edward the First was Regent of Scotland: whose eldest sister *Elizabeth*, and one of his heires wedded unto *John Lord Hastings*, brought this Dignity unto a new Family: For, *Laurence Hastings* his grandsonne, Lord of *Welshford* and *Moyvenmy* was made Earle of *Pembroke* by vertue of King Edward the Third his briefe. The Copie whereof I thinke good to set downe heere, that wee may see what was the right by heires generall in these honorary Titles. Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. salutem. The King, to all unto whom, &c. Greeting. Know ye, that the good usage of circumspection and vertue, which wee have conceived by the towards youth and happy beginnings of our most welbeloved cozin Laurence Hastings, induce us worshipfully to maintenance him, with our especiall grace and favour, in those things which concerne the due reservation and maintenance of his honour. Whereas therefore, the inheritance of *Aimar* of

See Pag. 407.

Valence sometime Earle of Penbroke (as hee was stiled) deceased long since without heire begotten of his body, hath bene devolved unto his sisters, proportionably to be divided among them and their heires: because we know for certaine, that the foresaid Laurence who succeeded the said Aimar in part of the inheritance, is descended from the elder sister of Aimar aforesaid, and so by the avouching of the learned with whom wee consulted about this matter, the prerogative both of name and honour is due unto him. We deeme it just and due, that the same Laurence claiming his Title from the elder sister, assume and have the name of Earle of Penbroke, which the said Aimar had while he lived. Which verily we, as much as he is in us, confirme, raise, and also approve unto him: willing and granting, that the said Laurence, have and hold the prerogative and honour of Earle Palatine in those lands which he holdeth of the said Aimars inheritance, so fully and after the same manner, as the same Aimar had and held them, at the time of his death. In witnesse the King, at Mont-Martin, the thirteenth day of October, and in the thirteenth of our Reigne.

After Laurence succeeded his sonne John, who being taken prisoner by the Spaniards in a battaile at sea, and in the end ransomed, died in France in the yeere 1375. After him followed his sonne John, who in a running at Tilt at Woodstocke was slaine by Sir John Saint John casually in the yeere 1391. And it was observed that for five generations together in this Family (I know not by what destiny) the father never saw his sonne. Now, for default of his issue, there fell very many possessions and faire revenewes into the Kings hands, as our Lawyers use to speake: and the Castle of Penbroke was granted unto Francis Al-Court, a Courtier in especiall great favour, who thereupon was commonly called Lord of Penbroke. Not long after, Humphrey sonne to King Henry the Fourth before he was Duke of Gloucester, received this title of his brother King Henry the Fifth, and before his death King Henry the Sixth granted the same in reversion (a thing not before heard of) to William de la Pole Earle of Suffolke, after whose downefall, the said King, when hee had enabled Edmund of Hadham, and Jasper of Hatfield, the sonnes of Queene Katharine his mother to be his lawfull halfe brethren; created Jasper, Earle of Penbroke, and Edmund, Earle of Richmond with preheminence to take place above all Earles. For Kings have absolute authority in dispensing honours. But King Edward the Fourth depriving Jasper of all his honours by attaindour and forfeiture, gave the Title of Penbroke to Sir William Herbert for his good service against Jasper in Wales, but hee shortly after lost his life at the battaile of Banbury. Then succeeded his sonne, bearing the same name, whom King Edward the Fourth when hee had recovered the Kingdome, invested in the Earldome of Huntingdon, and bestowed the Title of Penbroke, being surrendered, upon his eldest sonne and heire Edward Prince of Wales.

A long time after King Henry the Eighth invested Anne Bollen (to whom he was affianced) Marchionesse of Penbroke with a mantle and Coronet in regard both of her Nobility, and also her vertues (for so runne the words of the Patent). At length king Edward the Sixth adorned Sir William Herbert Lord of Caerdiff with the Title of Earle of Penbroke: after whom succeeded his sonne Henry who was Lord President of Wales under Queene Elizabeth. And now his sonne William richly accomplished with all laudable endowments of body and minde enjoyeth the same Title. This Family of the Herberts in these parts of Wales is honourable, and of great antiquity. As lineally propagated from Henry Fitz Herbert Chamberlaine to King Henry the First, who married the said kings Paramor, the mother of Reginald Earle of Cornwall, as I was first enformed by Robert Glover a man passing skilfull in the study of Genealogies, by whose untimely death that knowledge hath sustained a great losse.

Some write
that John Duke
of Bedford was
first for a short
time Earle of
Penbroke.

*

There are in this Shire Parishes 145.

CARDIGAN.

CARDIGAN
comitatus pars
olim
DIMETARVM



ETH

Machenlle th

MONTGO:
PARS

Plinillimon hill

Sabrina flu:

Combeysioyth

RADNOR
PARS

BRECKNOC
PARS

CARMAR

DEN
PARS

scala

Christophorus
Saxton Descripsit
Wilhelmus luy Sculpfit

CARDIGAN-SHIRE.



From *Saint Davids Promontory* the shore being driven backe a slope Eastward, letteth in the Sea within a vast and crooked Bay, upon which lyeth the third Region of the *Dimeta*, in English called *CARDIGAN-SHIRE*, in British *Sire Aber-Tivi*, by old Latine Writers *Ceretica* (if any man thinke) of King *Caratacus*, this may seeme a conjecture proceeding out of his owne braine, and not grounded upon any certaine authority; and yet wee reade that the worthy *Caratacus*, so

Cardigan-shire

King Caratacus

worthily renowned, was the Sovereigne Ruler in these parts. A plaine and champion Country it is Westward, where it lyeth to the Sea, as also on the South side, where the River *Tivie* separateth it from *Caermarden-shire*: But in the East and North sides, which bound upon *Brechnock* and *Montgomery-shires*: there is a continued range, or ridge of hils that shooe along, yeelding goodly pasture ground, under which there bespread sundry large Pooles. That in ancient times this Shire, as the rest also of Wales, was not planted and garnished with Cities but with little cottages, it may bee gathered by that speech of their Prince *Caratacus*, who being taken Prisoner, when he had throughly viewed the glorious magnificence of *Rome*, What meane you (saith he) when ye have these and such like stately buildings of your owne, to covet our small cottages? Howbeit the places heere of most Antiquity let us breifly view over.

Zonaras

The River *Tivie*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *Tuerobius*, but corruptly, in stead of *Dwr-Tivius*, that is, *The River Tivie*, issueth out of the Poole *Llin-Tivy*, beneath the hils: whereof I spake before: first cumbred, as it were, with stones in the way, and rambling with a great noise without any channell, and so passeth through a very stony tract (neere unto which at *Rosse*, the Mountainers keepe the greatest Faire for cattails in all those parts) untill it come to *Strat-flour*, a Monastery long since of the *Cluniack* Monkes, compassed about with hilles. From thence, being received within a channell, it runneth downe by *Tregaron*, and *Llan-Dewi-brevi*, built and so named in memorie all of *David* Bishop of *Menevia*, where he in a frequent *Synode* refuted the Pelagian Heresie springing up againe in Britaine, both by the holy Scriptures and also by a miracle, while the earth whereon he stood as he preached, arose up under his feete, by report, to an hillocke. Thus farre and somewhat farther also *Tivie* holdeth on his course Southward to *Llan-Beder* a little Mercate Towne. From hence *Tivie* turning his streame Westward carryeth a broader channell, and neere unto *Kilgarran* fallerth downe right headlong (as it were) from aloft, and maketh that *Salmons Leape*, whereof I spake ere while. For, exceeding great store of *Salmons* it yeeldeth, and was in times past the onely British River, as *Giraldus Cambrensis* was of opinion, that had *Bevers* in it. This *Beaver* is a creature living both on land and water, footed before like a Dog and behinde like a Goose, with an ash-coloured skin somewhat blackish, having a long taile, broad and gristly, which in his floring he useth in lieu of a sterne. Concerning the subtile wiliness of which creatures, the said *Giraldus* hath observed many things, but at this day none of them are heere to be seene.

Tuerobius the river

Rosse: Strat-flour

Kilgarran: The Salmons leape

Castores: Bevers

Cardigan

Fitz-Stephens

Scarce two miles from hence standeth upon a steepe banke *Cardigan*, which the Britans name *Aber-Tivy*, that is, *Tivy-mouth*, the Shire-towne, strongly fortified by *Gilbert* the sonne of *Richard De Clare*, which afterwards being by treason yeelded up, *Rhys Ap Gruffin* raised; when hee had taken prisoner *Robert Fitz-Stephen*, whom some call *Stephanides*: who (after hee had stood a long time at the devotion of the Welshmen, his heavie friends for his life, being at length delivered on this condition, that hee should resigne up into their hands all his possessions in Wales) was the first of the Norman race that with a small power of men, fortunately set foote in Ireland, and by his valour made way for the English to follow, and second him for subduing Ireland under the Crowne of England.

The River
Stuccia.
Y-flwith.

From *Tiwie* mouth, the shore gently giveth backe, and openeth for it selfe the passage of many Riverets; among which in the upper part of the Shire, *STUCCIA*, whereof *Ptolomee* maketh mention, is most memorab, when as the name of it continueth after a sort, whole at this day, being called in common speech, *Tiwie*: at the head whereof are veines of Lead, and at the mouth the Towne *Aber-y-flwith*, the most populous and plenteous place of the whole Shire, which that noble *Gilbert de Clare* also fenced with walles, and *Walter Bec* an Englishman defended a great while against the Welsh right manfully. Hard hereunto lyeth *Lhan Badern vaur*, that is, *The Church of Patern the great*, who being borne in little Britaine, as wee reade in his life, both governed the Church by feeding, and fed it by governing. Unto whose memory the posterity consecrated heere as well a Church, as also an Episcopall See. But the Bishopricke, as *Roger Hoveden* writeth, quite decayed many yecres since when the people had wickedly flaine their Pastour.

The river
Ridol.

At the same mouth also the River *Ridol* dischargeth it selfe into the Irish Sea. This River, descending out of *Plinlimon*, an exceeding steepe and high hill, that encloseth the North part of the Shire, and powreth out of his lap those most noble Rivers *Severn* and *Wy*, whereof I have already often spoken. And not much above *T-flwith* mouth, the River *Devi* that serveth in stead of a limite betweene this and *Merioneth-shire*, is lodged also within the Sea.

Lords of Car-
digan-shire.

Scarce had the Normans setled their Kingdome in Britaine, when they assailed this Coast with a Fleet by Sea, and that verily with good successe. For, by little, and little, in the Raigne of King *William Rufus*, they wrested the maritime Coasts out of the Welshmens hands: but the greatest part thereof they granted unto *Cadogan* *Ap Blethin*, a right wife and prudent Britain: who was highly esteemed, and of great power throughout all Wales, and evermore shewed much favour and friendship to the English. But when his sonne *Oën*, a furious and heady young man, who could at no hand away with peace, infested the Englishmen and Flemings newly come thither with continuall invasions, the unhappy father was fined with the losse of his lands, and punished for the offenses of his sonne, who was himselfe also constrained to relinquish his native Country and to flie into Ireland. Then this *Cardigan-shire* was given by King *Henry the First* unto *Gilbert de Clare*, who placed Garions and fortified Castles there. But *Cadogan* with his sonne *Oën*, received into favour againe by the English, recovered also his owne lands and inheritance. But *Oën* returning to his old bias and rebelling afresh, was slaine by *Girald* the Castellan of *Pembroke*, whose wife *Nessa* he had carryed away and ravished. And his father being had away into England, long expected for a change of better fortune, and at length in his old age being restored to his owne home and friends, was upon the sodaine by *Madoc* his Nephew stabbed through the body. After this, *Roger de Clare* through the liberality of King *Henry the Second* had *Cardigan-shire* bestowed upon him: but when *Richard of Clare*, his Nephew, if I be not deceived, whiles he came hither by land was slaine by the Welsh, *Rhys* Prince of *South-Wales*, having made a great massacre of English and driven them out, at length with his victorious Army became Lord thereof: neverthelesse it fell againe by little and little into the hands of the English without any bloudshed.

There are in this Shire Parishes 64.

ORDEVICES.



ORDEVICES.



These Countries of the Silures and Dimetæ, which wee have hitherto travailed over, the Posterity, when Wales was subject to three Princes, called in their tongue Deheu-barth, that is, The part lying on the right hand: and Englishmen, South-Wales, as hath beene said before. The other two Principalities, which they tearme

Guineth and *Powis*, wee North-Wales and Powisland, were inhabited in ancient times by the ORDOVICES, who also bee named ORDEVICES, ORDOVICAE, and in some places although most corruptly, Ordolucæ. A puissant and courageous Nation, by reason they keepe wholly in a mountainous Country, and take heart even of the Soule; and which continued the longest free from the yoke both of Romanes and also of English domination: neither was it subdued by the Romanes, before the daies of the Emperour Domitian: (For, then *Iulius Agricola* conquered almost the whole Nation) nor brought under the English before the dayes of King *Edward the First*. For a long time they lived in a lawlesse kinde of liberty, as bearing themselves bold both upon their owne valour, and the strength of the Country, hard to be wonne: and which may seeme after a sort naturally accommodated for ambushments, and to prolong warres.

To lay out and limite the bounds of the ORDEVICES in a generality, is not so hard a matter; but to set downe the true etymologie and reason of their name, I thinke it very difficult. Yet have I conceived this coniecture, that seeing they were seated over the two Rivers *Devi*, that arising from two springs neere together, take their course divers waies; and considering that *Oar-Devi* in their British tongue signifieth Vpon, or, above *Devi*, they were thence named Ordevices: like as the *Aruerni* had that name, because they dwelt upon the river *Garunana*, the *Armorici* their name, for that they inhabited upon the Sea-side, and the *Horesci* theirs, because their inhabitation was upon the river *Eske*: Neither is the very name of Ordevices quite vanished without any remaine thereof, in this Tract: For, a great part of it which lyeth to the Sea-side, is yet by the inhabitants usually called *Ardudwy*, whereof it may seeme the Romanes have made these tearmes *Ordovic* and *Ordevices* carrying a softer and gentler sound. But, the whole Countrey (excepting

Veneti.
Guineth.
* Vannus.

Genounia.

(excepting one small Shire) is called of the Latine Writers by one name of a later stamp, Guinethia, and Venedotia, and of the Britans Guineth, and the same, from the * Veneti of Armorica as some thinke, who, as Caesar writeth, Were wont very oft to saile unto Britaine. But if I might be allowed to change one onely letter, I would suppose, that this name was knowne to the Greekes, and to Pausanias, who in his Arcadica recordeth, that Antoninus Pius the Emperour grievously punished the Brigantes, for that they had made inrodes into GENOUNIA a Province of the Romans in Britaine. Certes, if it might be lawfull to reade Genouthia, for Genounia, so neere in sound cometh that word to Guinethia, and this Guinethia bordereth so neer to the Brigantes, that unlesse Pausanias ment this region, let Sibylla her selfe declare where it was, and what it should be. But these Countries belonged to the old ORDOVICES which are now called in English by new names, Montgomery-shire, Merioneth-shire, Caernarvon-shire, Denbigh-shire, and Flint-shire.

MONTGOMERY.

MONTGOMERY-SHIRE.

MONTGOMERY-SHIRE, in British *Sire Tre-Faldwin*, so called of the principall Towne therein, bounded on the South-side with *Cardigan* and *Radnor-shires*, on the East with *Shropp-shire*, on the North with *Denbigh-shire*, and on the West with *Merioneth*: although it hath many an high Hill in it, yet by reason of plentifull Valleies, it is a good Country as well for Corne as Pasture: and in old time a fruitefull breeder of the best kinde of Horses, which, as *Giraldus* saith, by nature's workmanship portraying, as it were, in a picture their noble shapes, were very commendable as well for the * *Majesty of their making and bigge limmes, as for their incomparable swiftnesse*. In the utmost corner of this Shire Westward, where it endeth pointwise in manner of a Cone or Pine apple, standeth *Macbleneth*, haply that which the Romanes called *MAGLONA*: where under the Generall of Britaine in the time of the Emperour *Theodosius* the younger lay in Garison the Captaine of the Regiment of the *Solenfes*, for to repress and keepe under the Mountainers: and two miles from hence neere unto *Penall*, there is a place to bee seene, named *Keven-Cae*, that is, *The backe or ridge of a Citie*, where peeces of Romane Coine are other whiles digged up, and a circular forme of Walles of no small circuit, are apparently seene by the remaines.

* *Membræ sua majestate*

Five miles hence, the *Hill Plinlimon* whereof I spake, raifeth it selfe up to a wonderfull height, and on that part where it boundeth one side of this shire, it powreth forth *SABRINA*, the greatest River in Britaine next to *Thamis*, which the Britains tearme *Haffren*, and Englishmen *Severn*. Whence the name was derived I could never reade. For, that seemeth to smell of a fable, which *Geffrey* hath devised of the *Virgin Sabrina* therein drowned, and which a late Poet following his steps hath delivered thus in Verse.

The head of
Severn.
Severn

— *In flumen præcipitatur Abren,
Nomen Abren fluvio de virgine, nomen eidem
Nemine corrupto, dein de Sabrina datur.*

Into the streame was *Abren* headlong cast;
The River then taking that Virgins name;
Hight *Abren*, and thereof *Sabrin* at last,
Which tearme in speech corrupt implies the same.

This River immediately from his spring head maketh such a number of windings in and out in his course, that a man would thinke many times hee returnes againe to his fountaine: yet for all that hee runneth forward, or rather slowly wandereth through this shire, *Shropp-shire*, *Worcester-shire*, and last of all *Gloucester-shire*, infusing a certaine vitall moisture into the soile every where as he passeth, untill at length hee mildly dischargeth himselfe into the *Severn Sea*. But in this shire it being overshadowed with Woods, after much strugling hee getteth out Northward by *Lanidlos*, *Trenwith*, or *Newtowne*, and *Caer-fuse*, which, as they say, is both ancient, and enjoyeth also ancient priviledges; and not farre from his East banke, leaveth behinde him the Castle, and Towne of *Montgomery* upon the rising of a Rocke, having a pleasant Plaine under it. The Englishmen named the Castle *Montgomery*, and the Latines *Mons Gomericus*, of *Roger de Montgomery* Earle of *Shrewesbury*, who winning much land heereabout from the Welch, built it, as wee finde in *Domesday booke*. But when his sonne *Robert* was attainted for Rebellion, King Henry the First gave this Castle, and the honour of *Montgomery* to *Baldwin Bollaers* in marriage with

Newtowne.

with Sybill of Falais his Niece. According to whose name the Welshmen call the Towne standing a little from the Castle, *Tre-Faldwin*, that is, *Baldwins Towne*. From this *Baldwin* descended *Vital Engain* who claimed this Honour as right Heire in the time of king Henry the Third. About which time, the said king Henry the Third raised it up againe out of the very ashes: For, the Welsh had slain the Garison Souldiers and overthrowne it; and so it lay desolate for many yeeres, and *Florilegus* fableth, *That bee, of the situation of the place then first named is Montgomery*. Certaine it is, that the said king then granted by his Patent, *That the Burrough of Montgomery should be a free Burrough, with other Liberties*. Now the *Herberts* are here seated, branched out from a brother of Sir *William Herbert* the first Earle of *Pembroke* of that name.

Anno xj.

Corndon hill.

Welch Poole.

Red Castle.

Hard by this, *Corndon Hill* mounteth up to a very great height, in the top whereof are placed certaine stones in a round circle like a Coronet, whence it taketh that name, in memoriall as it should seeme of some victory. A little higher, *Severn* glideth downe by *Trellin*, that is, *The Towne by a Poole*, whereupon it is called *Welsh Poole* in English. It hath a Castle joyning unto it on the South side, called *Castle Coch* of a kinde of reddish stone wherewith it is built, which within the compass of one wall, containeth two Castles: the one belonged to the Lord of *Powis*, the other to the Baron *Dudley*, *Cadagane* the sonne of *Blethin*, that renowned Britan, of whom I spake, while he was busie about the building of this Castle, was, as we finde in the Epitome of *Lancarbanensis*, slaine by his nephew *Maddock*. Right over against this Castle on the other side of the River, standeth *Buttington*, well knowne by reason of the *Danes* wintering there; out of which, *Adbered* Earle of the *Mercians* expelled them in the yeere of Christ 894. as *Marianus* writeth. *Severn* being past these places, turneth by little and little Eastward, that he may the sooner entertaine the small River *Tanet*, which being once received into his society, hee goeth on forward to *Shropp-shire*.

That *MEDIOLANUM* a Towne of the *Ordovices*, which both *Antonine* the Emperour, and *Ptolomee* speake of, stood in this Shire, I am in a manner perswaded, upon probability. The footings whereof, I have sought after with all diligence, but little or nothing have I found of it; For time consumeth the very carcasses even of Cities. Yet if we may ground any conjecture upon the situation, seeing the Townes which *Antonine* placeth on either side, be so well knowne, to wit, *BONIUM*, now *Bangor* by *Dee* on the one side, and *RUTUNIUM*, now *Rownton Castle* on the other side (for he setteth it twelve Italian miles distant from this, and from the other twenty) The lines of *Position*, if I may so rearme them, or of the distance rather, doe cut one another crosse betwene *Matrafall* and *Lan-vechlin*, which are scarce three miles asunder, and shew as it were demonstratively the site of our *Mediolanum*. For, this cannot chuse but bee an infallible way to finde out the situation of a third place, by two others that are knowne, when as there are neither hills interposed, nor any troublous turnings of the wayes. As for this *Matrafall*, which standeth five miles Westward from *Severn*, although it bee now but a bare name, was sometime the regall seat of the Princes of *Powis* (which may bee an argument of the antiquity thereof) and the same much spoken of by Writers, who record, that after the Princes had once forsaken it, *Robert * Vipont* an Englishman built a Castle. But *Lan-vechlin*, that is, *Veiblin Church*, being a little Mercate Towne, although it be somewhat farther off from the crosse-meeting of the said lines, yet commeth it farre neerer in resemblance of name to *Mediolanum*. For, of *Meiblin*, by the propriety of the British tongue, is made *Veiblin*, like as of *Caer-Merden*, is come *Caer Verden*, and of *Ar-man*, *Arvon*. Neither doth *Meiblin*, more jarre and disagree in sound from *Mediolanum*, than either *Millano* in *Italie*, *Le Millian* in *Xantaigne*, or *Meiblen* in the *Lowcountries*, which Cities no man doubteth were all in times past knowne by the name of *Mediolanum*. Which of these conjectures commeth neerer to the truth, judge you: for me it is enough to give my guesse. If I should say, that either Duke *Medus*, or Prince *Olanus* built this *Mediolanum* of ours, and those Cities of the same name in *Gaulle*, or that whiles they were

* De veteri
Ponic.
Lan-vechlin.

were a building *Sus mediatim Lanata*, that is, *That a Sow halfe fleeced with wooll*, was digged up, might I not be thought (thinke you) to catch at Clouds, and fish for Nittes? Yet notwithstanding the Italians write as much of their *Mediolanum*. But seeing that most true it is, that these Cities were built by nations of the same language (and that the *Gaulles* and *Britans* spake all one language I have prooved already) it is probable enough, that for one, and the same cause they had also one and the same denomination. Howbeit, this our *Mediolanum*, in nothing so farre as I know, agreeth with that of *Italie*, unlesse it be, that both of them are seated upon a plaine betwene two riverets: and a learned Italian derived the name of their *Mediolanum* hence, because it is a Citie standing in the midst betwene *Lanas*, that is, *little rivers*, according to his owne interpretation. But this may seeme overmuch of *MEDIOLANUM*, which I have sought heere, and about *Alcester* not farre off.

This Countie hath adorned no Earle with the name, title, and Honour thereof untill of late, our Sovereigne King James created *Philip Herbert*, second Sonne of Henry Earle of *Penbrooke* by *Mary Sidney*, for the singular love and affectionate favour toward him, and for the great hope that he conceived of his vertues, both Baron *Herbert of Shurland*, and also Earle of *Montgomery*, upon one and the same day at *Greenwich*, in the yeere 1605. But, the Princes of *Powis*, descended from the third Sonne of *Rotherike* the great, held this shire with others in a perpetuall line of succession (although *Roger* and *Hugh* of *Montgomery*, had encroched upon some part thereof) untill the daies of King Edward the Second. For then *Oen ap Gruffin*, ap *Gwynnwyn*, the last Lord of *Powis* of the British bloud (for the name of Prince had long before been worne out of use) left one onely daughter named *Hawise*, whom Sir *John Charlton* an English man, the Kings * *Valet* married, and in right of his wife, was by King Edward the Second made Lord of *Powis*; who (as I have seene in very many places) gave for his Armes, a *Lion Geules Rampant, in a shield*, Or, which he received from his wifes Progenitours. Of his posterity there were foure males that bare this Honorable title, untill that in Edward, the succession of males had an end: for he, the said Edward, begat of *Eleanor* the daughter and one of the heires of *Thomas Holland* Earle of *Kent*, *lane*, Wife to Sir *John Grey* Knight, and Joice married unto *John Lord Tipst*, from whom the Barons of *Dudley* and others derive their descent. The said Sir *John Grey*, for his martiall prowesse, and by the bountifull fauour of King Henry the Fifth, received the Earledome of *Tanquerwill* in *Normandie*, so have unto him and his heires males, by delivering one *Bassinet* at the Castle of *Reas* every yeere on *Saint Georges day*. This *John* had a sonne named *Henrie*, Lord of *Powis*, in whose race the title of *Powis* with the Honour thereof continued untill Edward *Grey* died well neere in our time, leaving no issue lawfully begotten.

Earle of Mont
gomery,Princes of
Powis,

Lords of Po:
wile.
* Servitor or
Gentleman of
the Privy
Chamber,

Dupli. Norm.
& Henr. 5.Earle of Tan:
querwill,

This Shire hath Parishes 47.

MERIONETH:

MERIONETH-SHIRE.



From the backside of *Montgomery-shire*, MERIONETH-SHIRE, in British *Sir-Vetioneth*, in Latine *Merwinia*, and as *Giraldus* calleth it, *Terra filiorum Canani*, that is, *Canan's Land*, reacheth to that crooked Bay, I spake of, and to the maine Sea, which on the West side beatech so fore upon it, that it is verily thought to have carryed away by violence some part thereof. Southward, for certaine miles together it is severed from *Cardigan-shire* by the river *Dorv*;

to the North it boundeth upon *Caer-marvon*, and *Dentigh-shires*. As for the in-land part, it is so rifeth with mountaines standing one by another in plumps, that as *Giraldus* saith, it is the roughest and most unpleasant Country to see to, in all *Wales*. For, it hath in it mountaines of a wonderfull height, yet narrow and passing sharpe at the top in manner of a needle, and those verily not scattering, here and there one, but standing very thicke together, and so even in height that Shepheards talking together, or rattling one at another on the tops of them if haply they appoint the field to encounter and meet together, they can hardly see it from morning till night. But let the Reader heerein relie upon *Giraldus* credit. Great flocks of Sheepe graze all over these mountaines, neither are they in danger of Wolves, who were thought then to have bene ridde quite out of all England and Wales, when King *Eadgar* imposed upon *Ludwall* Prince of these Countries to present three hundred Wolves yeerely unto him by way of Tribute. For, when, as *William* of *Malmesbury* writeth, he had for three yeeres performed this, at the fourth yeere, he gave over, upon his protestation, that hee could finde no more. Yet long time after this, there remained some still, as appeareth for certaine, by irreprovable testimonies of Record.

The inhabitants, who for the most part wholly betake themselves to breeding and feeding of cattail, and live upon white meates, as butter, cheese, &c. (how ever *Strabo* mocked our Britans in times past, as unskillfull in making of cheese) are for stature, cleere complexion, goodly feature, and lineaments of body, inferiour to no Nation in Britain: but they have an ill name among their neighbours, for being too forward in the wanton love of women, and that proceeding from their idleness. They have but few townes: Eastward where *Dorv* runneth, standeth *Mouthwy* a Commot very well knowne, which fell for a childes part of inheritance to *William*, alias, *Wilcock* of *Mouthwy*, a younger sonne of *Gruffith Ap Gwynnwyn* Lord of *Powis*: and by his sons daughter it came unto Sir *Hugh Burgh*, and by his sonnes daughters likewise unto the Families of *Newport*, *Leighton*, *Lingein*, and *Milton*, of especiall respect in these parts. Where the River *Avon* runneth downe more Westward, there is *Dolegeth* a little mercat towne, so called of the Vale wherein it is built. Hard by the sea in the little territory named *Arduwy*, the Castle *Arlech*, in times past, named *Caer Colan* standeth advanced upon a very steepe rocke, and looketh downe into the sea from aloft, which being built, as the Inhabitants report, by King *Edward* the First, tooke name of the situation. For, *Arlech* in the British tongue signifieth as much, as upon a *Stony rock*. Whiles England was disjointed, and lay torne with civill broiles, *David Ap Ien* a noble Gentleman of Wales, who tooke part with the house of *Lancaster*, defended it stoutly against King *Edward* the Fourth: untill that Sir *William Herbert* Earle of *Pembroke* making his way with much adoe through the midst of these mountaines of Wales, no lesse passable than the *Alpes*, assaulted this Castle in such furious thundering manner, that it was yeelded up into his hands. Incredible it is almost what a cumberfome journey hee had of it, and with what difficulty, hee gat through, whiles he was constrained in some places to climbe up the hills creeping; in others, to come downe tumbling, both he and his company together. Whereupon, the dwellers thereabout call that way at this day *Le Herbert*.

Mountaines exceeding high.

Wolves in England destroyed.

See Derby-shire and Yorke shire;

Mouthwy;

Dolegeth;

Herberts waye

K k k

A little

A little higher, in the very confines of the Shires, two notable armes of the Sea enbosome themselves within the Land, *Traith Maur*, and *Traith Bachan*, that is, *The greater Wash*, and *the lesse*.

Faithneog.

And not farre from hence, neere unto a little Village called *Faithneog*, there is a street or *Port-way* paved with stone, that passeth through these cumbersome and in manner, unpassable Mountaines. Which considering that the Britans name it *Sarn Helen*, that is, *Helens Street*, it is not to be thought, but that *Helena* mother to *Constantine the Great*, who did many such like famous workes throughout the Romane Empire, laied the same with stone. Neither standeth farre from it *Caer-Gai*, that is, *The Castle of Caius*, built by one *Caius* a Roman, touching whom the common people dwelling thereby report great wonders.

The Sources of Dee.

In the East side of the Shire, the River *Dee* springeth out of two Fountains, whence some thinke it tooke the name, for, they call it *Dwy*, which word imported also among them the number of two (although others would needs have it foreshadowed of some Divinity, other of the blacke colour) and forthwith passeth entire and whole through *Llhwnglad*, in English *Pimble Meare*, and *Penllin Meare*; a Lake spreading farre in length and breadth: and so runneth out of it with as great a streame as it entered in. For, neither shall a man see in *Dee* the fishes called *Gaintad*, which are peculiar to the *Meare*, nor yet *Salmons* in the *Meare*, which nevertheless are commonly taken in the River. But see if you please the description of this Lake or Meare, in verse by the Antiquarian Poet.

Pimblemeare.

Gaintad fishes.

*Hispida quæ tellus ætervinda respicit Eurum,
Est locus antiquo Penllinum nomine dictus,
Hic lacus istius in valle Tegetus alta
Lætè expandit aquas, et vastum conficit orbem,
Excipiens gremio latices, qui fonte perenni
Vicinis recidunt de montibus, atque sonoris
Illecebris captas demulcens suaviter aures:
Illud habet ceris lacus admirabile dictu,
Quantumvis magna pluvia non æstuat: atqui
Ære turbato, si ventus murmura tollat,
Excrefcit subito rapidis violentior undis,
Et tumida superat contemptus flumine ripas.*

On th' East side of *Merioneth*, a Country rough that is,
A place there lies by ancient name cleped *Penllin*, ywis,
Whereas, within a Valley deepe, there spreadeth farre a Lake
With waters cleere without all mud, which compasse huge doth take.
Receiving fundry pirls to it and many a running rill,
That spring and fall continually from every neighbour hill.
And with shrill noise and pleasant sounds allured eares doe fill.
And verily a wonder 'tis, of this Lake strange to tell,
Although the raine powre downe amaine, the waters never swell.
But if the aire much troubled be, and windes aloft doe blow,
It swelles at once, no streame so much, and bankes doth overflow.

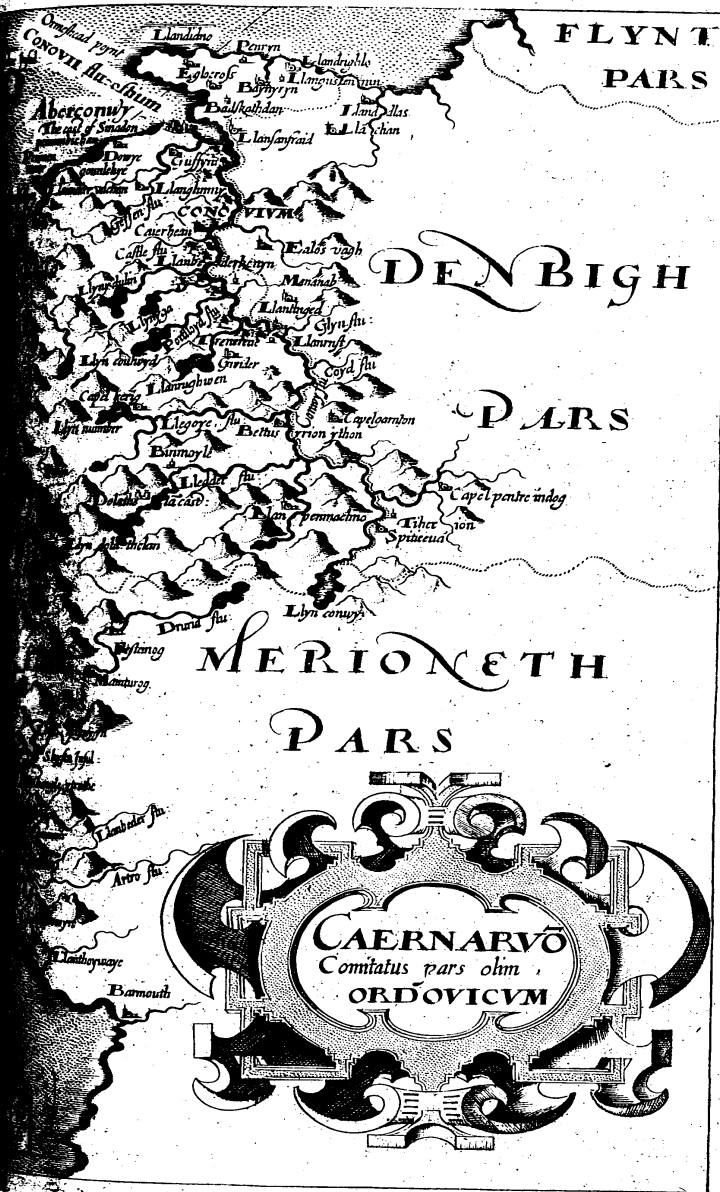
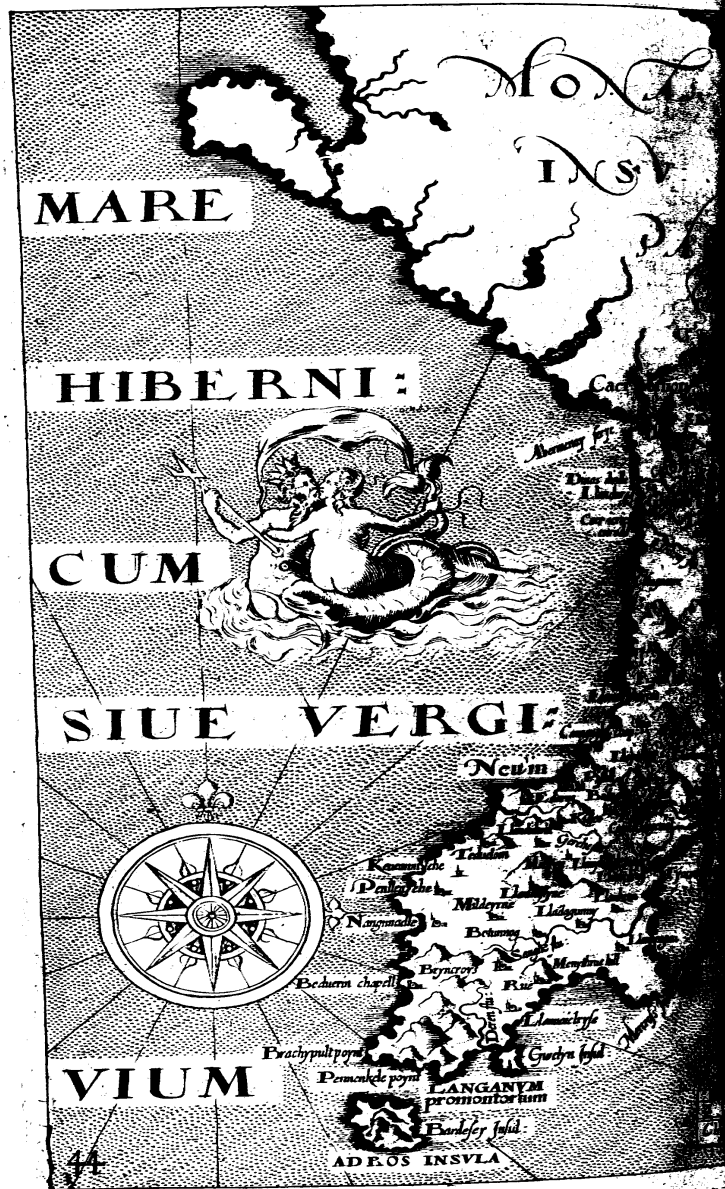
Bala.

On the browe, or edge beereof standeth *Bala* a little Towne, endowed with many immunities, but peopled with few inhabitants, and as rudely and unhandsome-ly built, nevertheless it is the chiefe Mercate Towne for these Mountainers.

Hugh Earle of Chester was the first of the Normans that tooke this Country, and held it with planting Garisons, what time as he kept *Gruffin* *Ap Coman*, that is, the sonne of *Coman* prisoner: But *Gruffin* afterwards recovered it with the rest of his Principality, and left it unto his heires, untill it came unto the small Periode, and so ended in *Llewellyn*.

It reckoneth Churches 37.

CAERNARVON:



CAERNARVON-SHIRE.



Above Merioneth-shire, lieth that Country which the Britans call *Sire Caer-ar-von*, and English-men CAERNARVON-SHIRE, of the principall Towne therein; and before that Wales was laied out into Shires, they teamed it, by the name of *Snowden-Forest*, and the Latine Historians *Snaudonia*, of that *Forest*, and *Ar-vonia*, out of the British name because it hath *Mona*, that is, *Anglesey* just over against it. The North side and the West butteth upon the Irish Sea: the South-side is enclosed with *Merioneth-shire*, and the East with *Denbigh-shire*, from which it is severed by the River *Conwy*. On that part which looketh toward the Sea, especially where it shooteth forth a great way South-west with a Promontorie and stretcheth out the shores with crooked turning full against OCTOPITARUM, or Saint *David's Land*, it is of a very fruitfull soile and garnished all a long with prety Townes.

Conwy River,

As for the more in-land part of the Shire, Nature hath loftily areared it up farre and neere with Mountaines standing thicke one by another, as if she would here have compacted the joynts of this Island within the bowels of the earth: and made this part thereof a most sure place of refuge for the Britans in time of adversitie. For there are so many roughes and Rocks, so many vales full of Woods, with Pooles heere and there crossing over them, lying in the way betweene, that no Armie, may not so much as thole that are lightly appoynted, can finde passage. A man may truly, if he please, terme these Mountaines, the British *Alpes*: for besides that they are the greatest of the whole Island, they are no lesse steepe also with cragged and rent Rockes on every side than the *Alpes* of Italie, yea and all of them compass one Mountaine round about, which over-topping the rest so towreth up with his head aloft in the aire, as he may seeme not to threaten the Skie, but to thrust his head up into Heaven. And yet harbour they the Snow, for, all the yeere long, they be hory with Snow, or rather with an hardened crust of many Snowes felct together.

The Alpes of Britany.

Whence it is, that all these hilles are in British by one name termed *Craig Eriry*, in English *Snow-don*, which in both languages, sound as much as *Snowie Mountaines*: like as *Niphates* in *Armenia*, and *Imaus* in *Scythia*, tooke their names, as *Plinie* witnesseth of *Snow*. Nevertheless, so ranke are they with grasse, that it is a very common speech among the Welsh, *That the Mountaines Eriry will yeeld sufficient pasture for all the Cattails in Wales, if they were put upon them together*. Concerning the two *Meares* on the toppes of these, in the one of which floteth a wandring Island, and in the other is found great store of Fishes, but having all of them but one eye a peece, I will say nothing lest I might seeme to foster fables: although some confident upon the authoritie of *Giraldus*, have beleevved it for a veritie. Yet certaine it is, that there be in the very toppes of these Mountaines Pooles in deed and standing Waters: whereupon *Gervase* of *Tilbury* in his Booke entituled *Otia Imperialia*, writeth thus.

Snow-don hilles.

In the Land of Wales within the bounds of great Britain, there be high Hilles that have laied their foundations upon most hard Rockes, and in the toppes thereof the earth is cruisted over with such a coate of waterish moisture, that wheresoever a man doe but lightly set his foot, he shall perceive the ground to stirre the length of a stones cast from him: whereupon when the enemies came, the Welsh with their agility and nimblenesse lightly leaping over the boggy ground, either avoide the enemies assaults, or to their losse resolutely expect their forces. These Mountainers John *Salisbury* in his *Polyraticon*, by a new forged Latine name termed *Nivicolinus*, that is, *Snow-down inhabitants*, of whom in King Henry the Second his daies he wrote thus.

Nivicolini.

The Snow-downe Britains make inrodes, and being now come out of their Caves and lurking holes of the Woods, enlarge their borders, possesse the plaines of the Noble men: and whilst themselves looke on, they assault, they winne, and overthrow them, or else keepe the same to their owne behoofe; because our youth, which is so daintily brought up, and loves to be house-bred and to live lazily, in the shade, being borne only to devoure the fruits of the earth and to fill the belly, sleepes untill it be broad day light, &c.

But come wee downe now from the Mountaines into the Champion Plaines, which because we finde no where else but by the Sea side, it may suffice to coast only along the shore. The Promontory which I said before shooteth out toward the South-west, is in *Ptolomee* called according to the diversitie of copies, CANGANUM, JANGANUM, and LANGANUM. Which is the truest name I know not, but LANGANUM it may seeme, considering that the inhabitants name it at this day *Lbein*, which runneth forth with a narrow and even by-land, having larger and more open fields than the rest of the Country, and the same yeelding Barley most plenteously. Two little Townes it sheweth and no more, that are memorable. Farther within upon the Creeke, is *Pulhely*, that is, *that Salt Meare or Poole*: more outward, by the Irish Sea (that beateth upon the other side of the Bi-land) is *Nevin*, a Village having a Market kept in it: wherein the Nobility of England, in the yeere of our Lord 1284. in a Triumph over the Welsh did celebrate the memory of Arthur the great, as *Florilegus* writeth, with *lusties, Tournaments and festivall pompe*. If any other Townes flourished here, then were they destroyed, when Hugh Earle of Chester, Robert of Rudland, and Guarin of Salop, entering into this Country first of all the Normans, so wasted this Promontory, that for the space of seven whole yeeres, it lay dispeopled and desolate.

From *Nevin*, the shore pointed and ended with one or two elbowes lying out into the sea tendeth Northward, and then turning afront North-east, by a narrow sea or Frith (they call it *Menai*) it serveth the *Isle Anglesey* from the firme land. Upon this straight or narrow sea stood SEGONTIUM, a City which *Antonine* the Emperour maketh mention of: some reliques of the walles I saw neere unto a little Church built in honour of Saint *Pulblitius*. It took the name of a River running by the side of it, which yet at this day is called *Seions*, and issueth out of the Poole *Lin-Peru*. In which, there is a kinde of fish peculiar to that water, and seeme no where else, called by the dwellers there *Tor-coch*; of the belly that is somewhat red. Now, seeing that in an ancient copie of *Ptolomee*, SETANTIUM PORTUS is here placed, which according to other copies is set farther off, if I should reade in stead of it, SEGONTIUM PORTUS, that is, the Haven of the Segontians, and say it stood upon the mouth of this River, I should perhaps aime at the truth: if not, yet should I obaine pardon for my conjecture of a courteous Reader.

This Citie *Nennius* called *Caer Custenith*; and hee that wrote the life of *Griffin* the Sonne of *Conan*, recordeth, that *Hugh Earle of Chester* built a Castle in *Hean Caer Custenith*, that is, as the Latine Interpreter translateth it, in the ancient Citie of *Constantine the Emperour*. And *Matthew of Westminster* writeth (but let him make it good if he can) that the bodie of *Constantinus*, Father to *Constantine the Great* was here found in the yeere of our Lord 1283. and honourably bestowed in the Church of the new Citie by the commandement of King Edward the First. Who out of the ruines of this Towne, at the same time raised the Citie *Caer-narvon* somewhat higher, upon the Rivers mouth, so, as that on the West and North-sides it is watered therewith. Which, as it was called *Caer-narvon* because it standeth right over against the Island *Mona* (for so much doth the word import) so, it hath communicated that name unto the whole Country; for, heereupon the English men call it *Caer-narvon-shire*. This is encompassed with a very small circuit of walles about it and in manner round, but the same exceeding strong, and to set it the better out, sheweth a passing faire Castle which taketh up the whole West side of it. The private buildings (for the manner of that Countrey) are slightly enough, and the inhabitants for their courtesie much commended, who thinke it a point of their glorie, that

King

King Edward the First, founded their Citie; that his Sonne King Edward the Second was heere borne and surnamed of *Caer-narvon*, who also was of the English line the first Prince of Wales; and also the Princes of Wales had heere their Chancery, their Exchequer, and their Justice for North-Wales. About seven miles hence by the same narrow Sea standeth *Bangor* or *Bancher* low seated, enclosed on the South side with a Mountaine of great heighth, on the North with a little hill: so called *A choro pabro*, that is, of a faire quire, or as some would have it, quasi *Locus Chori*, that is, as if it were the place of a quire. Which being a Bishops See, hath within the Diocese thereof 96. Parishes. The Church, was consecrated unto *Daniel* sometime Bishop thereof: but that which now standeth is of no especiall faire building: for, *Owen Glendowry* that most notorious Rebell, who had purposed utterly to destroy all the Cities of Wales, set it on fire, for that they stood for the King of England, and defaced the ancient Church, which albeit *Henry Deney* Bishop of the same repaired about the time of King Henry the Seventh, yet it scarcely recovered the former dignity. Now the Towne is small, but in times past so large, that for the greatnesse thereof it was called *Bancher Vaur*, that is, *Great Bancher*, and *Hugh Earle of Chester* fortified it with a Castle, whereof I could finde no footings at all, though I sought them with all diligent inquiry: But that Castle was situate upon the very entry of the said narrow Sea. Over the *Menay*, or streight hereby, King Edward the First, that he might transport his Army into *Mona*, or *Anglesey* (whereof I must treat anon in due order) went about with great labour to make a bridge, but all in vaine. Albeit *Suetonius Paulinus* conveyed over his Romane Souldiers long before into *Mona*, his Horsemen at a Ford, and the Footemen in little flat botomed boates, as we reade in *Tacitus*. From hence the shore raising it selfe with a bending ascent, runneth on by *Pennan-maur*, that is, *The great stony head*, a very exceeding high and steepe Rocke, which hanging over the Sea when it is flood, affourdeth a very narrow path way for passengers, having on the one side huge stones over their heads, as if they were ready to fall upon them, on the other side the raging Ocean lying of a wonderfull steepe depth under it. But after a man hath passed over this, together with *Pen-maen bychan*, that is, *the lesser stony head*, he shall come to an open broad plain, that reacheth as farre as to the River *Conwey*, which limiteth this Shire on the East side. This River in *Ptolomee* after a corrupt manner of writing Greeke, is called *T O I S O V I U S*, for *C O N O V I U S*. It issueth out of a Poole of the same name in the South border of the Shire, and being pent in, and, as it were, strangled runneth apace within a very narrow channell, as farre almost as to the mouth thereof, breeding certaine Shell-fishes, which being conceived of an Heavenly dew, bring forth Pearles; and there, giveth he name unto the Towne *C O N O V I U M* which *Antonine* mentioneth. And although it now lie all along, and that name there be utterly extinct, yet by a new name it doth covertly implice the antiquity. For a very small and poore village standing among the rubbish thereof is called *Caer bean*, that is, *the ancient City*. Out of the spoile and ruines whereof, King Edward the First built a new Towne at the very mouth of the River, which thereupon they call *Aber-Conwey*, that is, *the mouth of Conwey*; which place *Hugh of Chester* had before-time fortified. But this *New Conovium*, or *Aber-Conwey*, being strongly situated and fenced both with walls, and also with a very proper Castle by the Rivers side, deserveth the name rather of a prety Citie than of a Towne, but that it is not replenished with Inhabitants.

Opposite unto this Towne, and yet on this side of the River which is passed by ferry, and not by bridge, reacheth out a huge Promontory with a bending elbow: as if nature purposed to make there a road and harbour for Ships, which is also counted part of this Shire, and is named *Gogarth*: wherein stood *Diganwy*, an ancient City just over the River *Conwey*, where it issueth into the Sea: which was burnt many yeeres agoe with lightning. And I am of opinion, that it was the City *D I C T U M*, where, under the later Emperours the Captaine over the band of the *Nervians* *Disfenfes* kept their guard. And for that, afterwards it was called *Diganwy*, who seeth not that the said *Conwey* came of *Conwey*, and from thence the English name *Ganoc*?

Kkk 3

For,

Bancher as one would say Penchor, that is, a principal Quire as others think.

The life of Griffin.

Pen-maen-maur.

Conwey River.

Pearles: Conwey Towne.

Gogarth;

Dictum;

Diganwy: Ganoc.

Canganum.

Lbein.

Pulhely.
Nevin.

The life of
Griffin.

Menai.

Segontium.

Lhan Beblin.

Tor-coch
fishes.

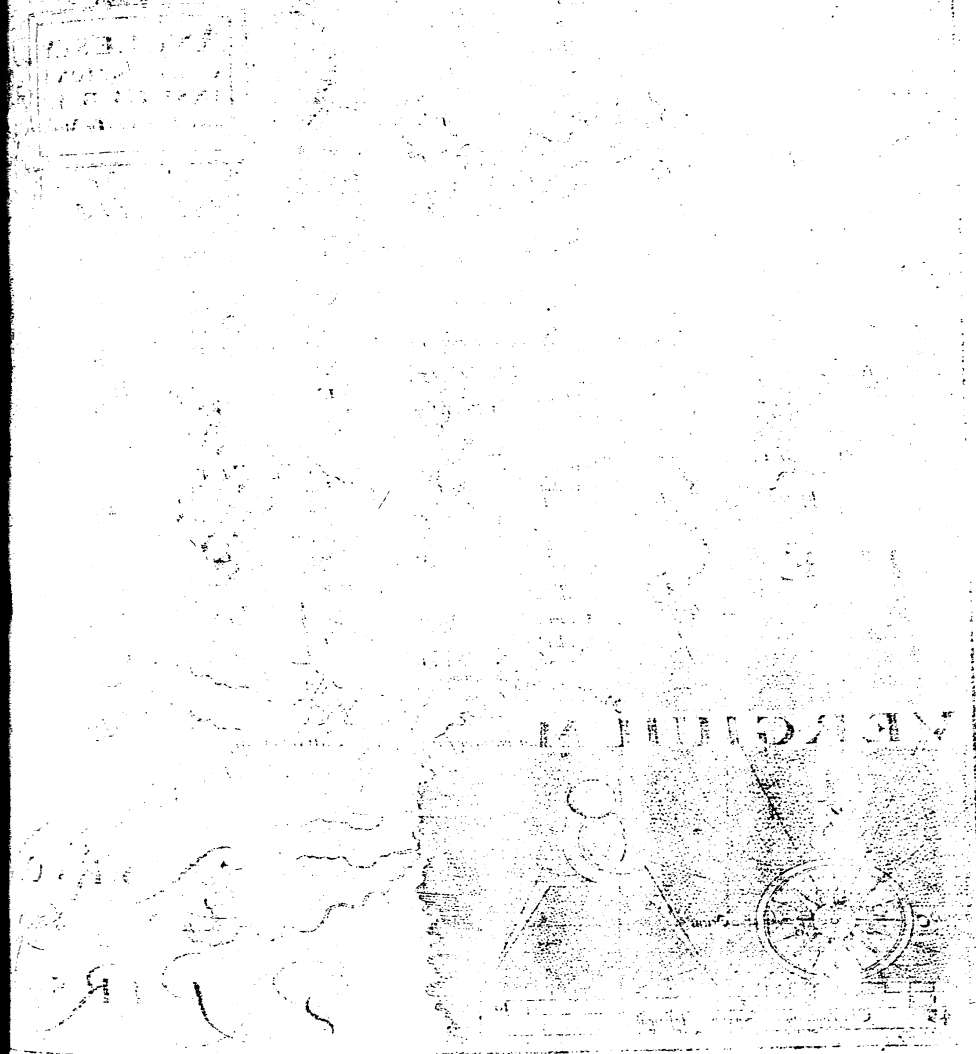
Caer-narvon.

For, so was that Castle called, which afterwards King Henry the Third built in that place to bridle the Welsh.

Straight after the Normans comming into this Island, *Gruffin ap Conan*, governed this Country, who being not able to repress the English troupes who swarmed into Wales, yeelded otherwhiles unto the tempest: and at length when with his integrity and uprightnesse he had regained the favour of King Henry the First, hee sily also recovered his owne lands of the English, and left them to his heires successively, untill the time of *Llewelyn ap Gruffin*, who when he had provoked his owne Brethren with wrongs, and the English men with inrodes, was brought to this passe, that hee held this hilly Country together with the *Ile Anglesey* of King Edward the First as Tenant in Fee, and paid for it yeerely a thousand Markes. Which conditions afterward when hee would not stand unto, and following rather his owne and his Brothers stubborne wilfulnesse, than any good hope to prevaile, would needes put all once againe to the hazard of warre, he was slaine, and so both ended his owne life and withall the British government in Wales.

Is bath in its Parish Churches 68.

THE



THE ISLE MONA,
or of
ANGLESEY.



This is that most notable Isle MONA, the ancient seat of the *Druides*, attempted first by *Paulinus Suetonius*, and brought under the Romane Empire by *Iulius Agricola*. This *Suetonius Paulinus* under the reign of *Nero*, as *Tacitus* writeth, made all preparation to invade the Isle *Mona* inhabited by a strong and stout *Tasian*, and then the republic of *Fugitives*. He built Flat-bottom vessels, because the Sea is shallow, the landing-place uncertaine. Thus their footmen passed over, and after them the Horsemen following by the shallow sword, or swimming where the waters were deepe with their Horses. Against them stood the Enemies armies on the shore thicke set in aray, well appoynted with Men and weapons, and Women also running in, to and fro among them, like furies of Hell, in mourning attire, their heare about their eares, and with firebrands in their hands. Round about them also were the *Druida*, who lifting up their hands to Heaven, and pouring out deadly curses, with the malignesse of the sights, so daunted the Souldiers, as they stood stock-still, and not able to stirre their joynts presented their bodies unto wounds. At length, what with the exhortation of the Captain, and what with encouraging and animating one another not to feare a flocke of *Wanlike Women*, and fanaticall persons, they displaid and advanced forward their Engines: Downe they got with all in their way, and thrust them within their owne fires. Which done, Garisons were placed in their Townes, and the Groves consecrated to their cruel Superstitious downe: For they accounted it lawfull to Sacrifice with the blood of Captives, and by section of Mens fibres and bowels to know the will of their gods. But as *Paulinus* was busied in these exploits, newes came unto him of a sudden revolt through the whole Province, which

stayed his enterprise. Afterwards, as the same *Tacitus* writeth, *Iulius Agricola*, pursued with himselfe to subdue the Island *Mona*, from the possession wherof, as I said before *Paulinus* was revoked by a generall rebellion of all Britaine: But (as in a purpose not prepared before) vessels being wanting, the policie and resolutenesse of the Capitaine devised a passage over, causing the most choise of the *Auxiliaries*, to whom all the shallowes were knowne, and who after the use of their Country were able in Swimming to governe themselves with their Armour and Horses, laying aside their carriage, to put over at once and suddenly to invade them. Which thing so amazed the Enemies who supposed they would passe over by Shipping and therefore attended for a Fleet, and the tide, that they beleevved verily nothing could be hard or invincible to men that came so resolute to Warre. Whereupon they humbly intreated for Peace and yielded the Island. Thus by this service *Agricola* became famous indeed, and of great reputation.

Many ages after, it was Conquered by the English men, and tooke their name, as being called in old time in the Saxons language *Engler-æa*, now commonly *Anglesey*, as one would say, *The Englishmens Island*. But seeing that *Humfrey Leland* in a very learned Epistle to that learned *Ortelius*, hath restored this Island to the due name and dignitie, there is no reason that any man heere should require my diligence. Yet thus much will I adde unto the rest. When the Empire of the Romanes in Britaine now was in declining and going downward, some out of Ireland, entred in by stealth into this Isle also and nestled there. For, besides certaine Mounts of earth entrenched about, which they call *The Irish mens cotages*, there is a place also, named *Ta Heriky Gwidil* of the Irish men, who as we finde it recorded in the booke of *Triades*, under the leading of *Sirigus*, put the Britans to flight in that place.

Neither was it grievously infested onely by the English men, but also by the *Norwegians*. Likewise in the yeere of our redemption 1000. King *Aethelred* fleeing having skoured the Seas round about the said Isle, wasted it in all hostile manner. After this, the two Norman Hughes, the one Earle of Chester, and the other Earle of *Shrewsburie* greatly afflicted it, and built Castle *Aber-Llienioc* for to restraine and keepe under the Inhabitants. But *Magnus* the Norwegian arriving heere at the very same time, shot the said Hugh Earle of *Shrewsbury* through with an Arrow, and after he had ransacked the Island, departed. The English men moreover afterward from time to time invaded it, untill that King Edward the First brought it wholly under his subjection. There were in ancient time reckoned in it 363. Villages, and even at this day it is well peopled. The principall Towne therein at this time is *Beau-marish*, which King Edward the First built in the East-side of the Isle upon a marish ground, and for the situation thereof gave it this goodly faire name, whereas before time it was called *Bonover*, who also fortified it with a Castle, which notwithstanding may seeme never to have been finished: the Governour wherof is the right Worshipfull Sir *Richard Bulkley* Knight, whose courtesie toward me when I came to visite these places, I cannot chuse but evermore acknowledge with most hearty thankfulness.

Hard unto *Beau-Marish*, lieth *Lhan-vays*, a famous religious house in times past of the *Friers Minors*, unto whom the Kings of England shewed themselves very bountifull *Patrons*; as well in regard of the Friers holinesse, who there converted, as also because there (that I may speake out of the publike records of the Kingdome) were buried a daughter of King Iohn, a sonne of the King of the Danes, the bodies also of the Lord *Clifford*, and of other Lords, Knights, and Squires, who in the time of the noble and renowned Kings of England, were slaine in the Warres against the Welsh.

The next Towne in name to *Beau-Marish*, is *Newburg* called in British *Ressar* standing ten miles off Westward, which having been a long time greatly annoyed with heaps of sand driven in by the Sea, complaineth that it hath lost much of the former state that it had. *Aber-fran* is not farre from hence, which is now but an obscure and mean Towne, yet in times past it excelled all the rest farre in worth and dignity, as having been

been the Royall seat of the Kings of *Guinesh*, or North-Wales. And in the utmost Promontorie Westward, which wee call *Holy-head*, there standeth a little poore Towne, in British *Caer-Guby* so named of *Kibie* a right holy man, and a disciple of *Saint Hilarie* of *Poitiers*, who therein devoted himselfe to the service of God, and from whence there is an usuall passage over into Ireland. All the rest of this Island is well bespiced with Villages, which because they have in them nothing materially memorable, I will crosse over into the Continent, and view *Denbigh-shire*.

Holy head.
Saint Kibie.
As touching
the Islands ad-
joyning to An-
glesey. See a-
mong the Bri-
tish Isles.

In this County there are reckoned Parishes 74.

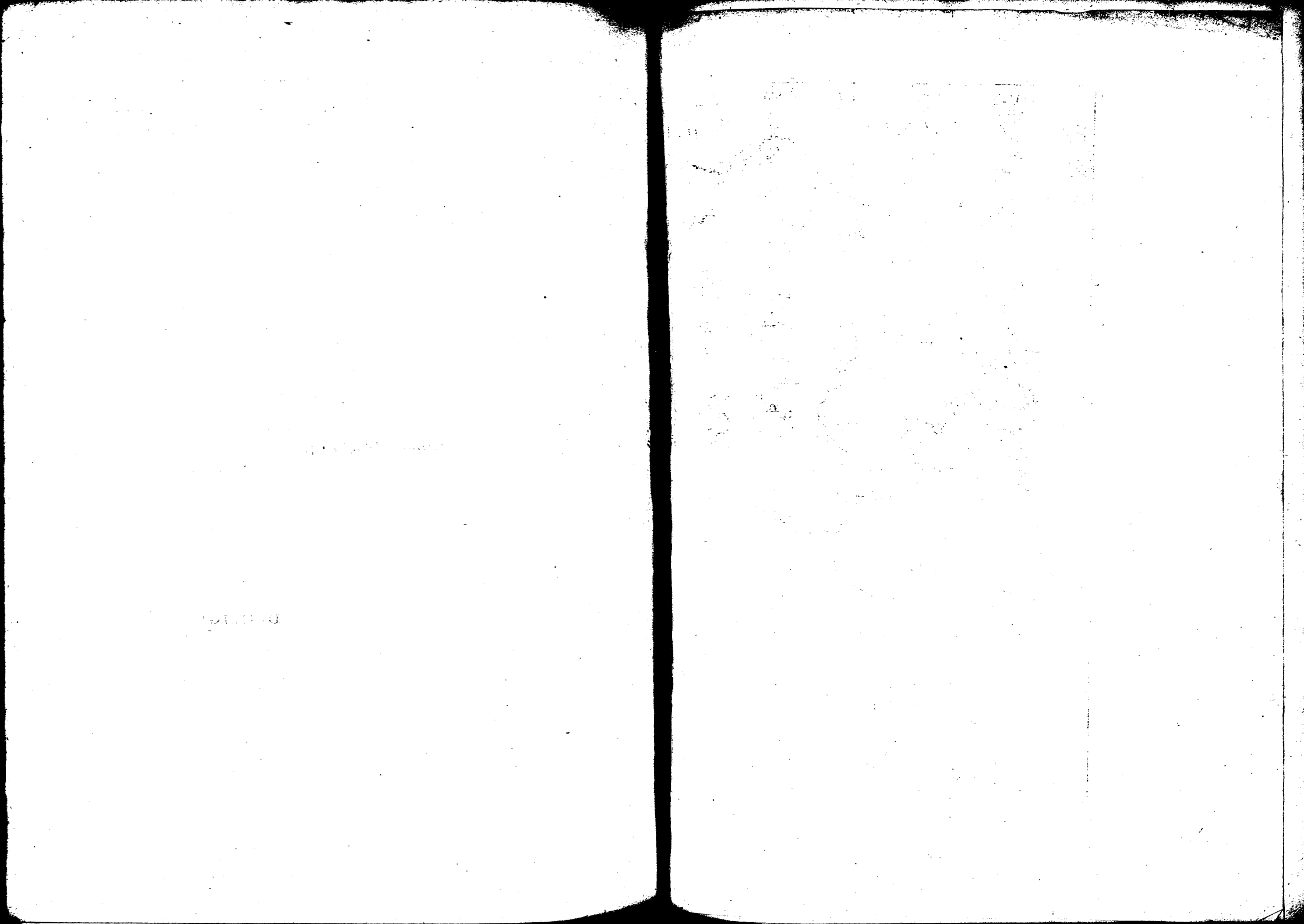
DENBIGH.

Lhan-vays.

2. Pars Pat.
anno 2. H. 5.

Newburg.

Aber-fran.





DENBIGH-SHIRE.

IN this side of the River *Conwy*, DENBIGH-SHIRE, in *Welsh Sire Denbigh*, retyeth more within the Country from the Sea, and shooteth Eastward in one place as farre as to the River *Dee*. On the North North-West, first the Sea for a small space, and then *Flint-shire*, on the West *Merioneth* and *Montgomery-shires*, on the East *Cheshire*, and *Shropps-shire* encompassse it. The West part is barraine, the middle where it lyeth flat in a Valley, most fruitfull. The East side when it is once past the Valley, hath not Nature so favourable unto it, but next unto *Dee*, it sheweth her farre more kinde.

The West part, but that it is somewhat more plentifull and pleasant toward the sea side, is but heere and there inhabited, and mounteth up more with bare and hungry hills: but yet the painfull diligence and witty industry of the husbandmen hath begonne a good while since to overcome this leanness of the soile, where the hills be any thing flattish, as in other parts of Wales likewise. For, after they have with a broad kinde of spade pared away the upper coat, as it were, or sord of the earth, into certaine turfs, they pile them up artificially on heapes, put fire to them and burne them to ashes, which being throwne upon the ground so pared, and stayed, causeth the hungry barrennesse thereof so to fructifie, that the fields bring forth a kinde of Rhie or Amel corne in such abundance as it is incredible. Neither is this a new devise thus to burne the ground, but very ancient, as we may see in *Virgil* and *Horace*. Among these Hills there is a place commonly called *Cerigy Drudion*, that is, *The stones of the Druides*, and certaine little columnes or pillars are scene at *Tonellau*, with inscriptions in them of strange Characters, which some imagine to have beene erected by the *Druides*: and not farre from *Cloainog*, this inscription is read in a stone.

AMILLIN
TOVISATOC.

By the Vale side where these mountaines beginne now to wax thinner, upon the hanging of a rocke standeth *Denbigh*, called of our Britans by a more ancient name, *Clad Frynyn Ross*, that is, *A rough hill in Ross*, for so they call that part of the Shire: which King *Edward* the First gave with other faire lands and possessions to *David* the brother of *Llewellyn*. But when he soone after being found guilty of hightreason was beheaded, *Henry Lacy* Earle of *Lincolne* obtained it by the grant of the said King *Edward*: and he fortified it with a wall about, not large in circuit, but strong, and on the South side with a proper Castle, strengthened with high Towres. In the well whereof, after that his onely sonne fortun'd to be drowned, the most sorrowfull father conceived such griefe, that he gave over the worke and left it unfinished. And after his death, the Towne with the rest of the possessions descended unto the house of *Lancaster* by his daughter *Alice*, who survived: From whom notwithstanding it came first through the liberality of King *Edward* the Second (when the said house was dejected) unto *Hugh Spenser* Earle of *Winchester*; then, to *Roger Mortimer* by covenant and composition with King *Edward* the Third: and the said *Mortimer's* Armes are to be scene upon the chiefe gate. But after that he was executed, it with the Cantreds of *Ross*, and *Riewinoc*, &c. were granted to *William Montague* after Earle of *Salisbury*, for suppressing of *Mortimer*, and shortly after it was restored unto the *Mortimers*, and by them at length descended to the Family of *York*. At which time, they of the House of *Lancaster* for the malice they bare unto *Edward* the Fourth, who was of the family of *York*, did much hurt unto it. And then, either because

because the inhabitants like not the steepe situation thereof (for the carriage up and downe was very incommodious) or by reason that it wanted water, they removed downe from thence by little and little, so as that this ancient Towne hath now few or none dwelling in it: But a new one farre bigger than it sprung up at the very foote of the hill: which is so well peopled and inhabited, that by reason, that the Church is not able to receive the multitude, they beganne to build a new one in the place where the old Towne stood, partly at the charges of their Lord Robert Earle of Leicester, and partly with the money which they have gathered of many well disposed throughout England: For, the said Robert, in the yeere 1564. was created by Queene Elizabeth Baron of Denbigh, to him and the heires of his body lawfully begotten. Neither is there any one Barony in all England that hath more Gentlemen holding thereof in fee, and by service.

Diffryn Cluid.

Now are we come into the very heart of the shire, where Nature having removed the hills out of the way on both sides, to shew what she could doe in a rough country, hath spread beneath them a most beautifull pleasant vale reaching 17. miles in length from South to North, and five miles or thereabout in breadth, which lyeth open only toward the sea and the cleering North winde: otherwise environed it is on every side with high hilles, and those from the East side, as it were embatted. For such is the wonderfull workmanship of nature, that the tops of these mountaines resemble in fashion the battlement of walles. Among which the highest is *Moitlenly*, on the top whereof I saw a warlike fence with trench and rampire; also a little fountaine of cleere water. This vale for wholsomenesse, fruitfulnessse and pleasantnesse excelleth. The colour and complexion of the Inhabitants is healthy, their heads are found and of a firme constitution, their eye-sight continuing, and never dimmed, and their age long lasting and very cheerefull. The Vale it selfe, with his greene meadowes, yellow Corne-fields, Villages, and faire houses standing thicke, and many beautifull Churches, giveth wonderfull great contentment to such as behold it from above. The river *Cluid*, encreased with beekes and brookes resorting unto it from the hills on each side, doth from the very spring-head part it in twaine running through the middle of it, whence in ancient time it was named *Strat Cluid*; For *Marianus* maketh mention of a King of the *Strat-Clud of the Welsh*; and at this day it is commonly called *Diffryn Cluid*, that is, *The Vale of Cluid*: wherein, as some have recorded, certaine Britans which came out of Scotland, after they had driven forth the English, erected a petty Kingdome. On the East banke of *Cluid*, in the South part of the vale, standeth *Ruthin*, in Latin writers *Ruthunia*, in British *Ruthun*, the greatest mercat town in all the Vale, full of Inhabitants, and well replenished with buildings; famous also not long since by reason of a large and very faire Castle able to receive and entertaine a great household. Which with the Towne, *Reginald Grey* to whom King *Edward* the First granted it, and *Roger Grey* built, having obtained licence of the King, the Bishop of *Saint Asaph*, and the Parson of the Church of *Llan Rhith*, in whose Parish the place is sited. Unto him in recompense for his part of the good service performed against the Welsh, King *Edward* the First had given in manner the whole Vale: and it was the seat of his heires, men of great honour; and at length stiled with the Title of Earle of *Kent*, untill that *Richard Grey* Earle of *Kent* and Lord of *Ruthin* having no issue nor care of his brother *Henry*, passed away for a summe of money this his ancient inheritance unto King *Henry* the Seventh: But of late daies the bounteous magnificence of Queene *Elizabeth* bestowed it upon *Ambrose Dudley* Earle of *Warwicke*, together with rich revenewes in the Vale.

When you ascend out of the vale Eastward, you come to *Tale*, a little hilly country, and in comparison of the Regions beneath and round about it passing high, so that no river from elsewhere commeth into it, and it sendeth forth some from it. By reason of this high situation it is bleake, as exposed to the windes on all sides. Whether it took that name of the river *Alen*, which rising first in it, undermineth the ground and once or twice hideth himselfe, I know not. The Mountaines are full of Neat, sheepe, and Goats; the vallies in some places plenteous enough of Corne, especially Eastward

East, on this side of *Alen*. But the more Westerly part is not so fruitfull, and in some places is a very heath, and altogether barraine. Neither hath it any thing memorable, save onely a little Abbay, now wholly decayed, but standing most richly and pleasantly in a Vale, which among the woody hilles cutteth it selfe overthwart in manner of a crosse, whereupon it was called in Latine *Vallis Crucis*, that is, *The Vale of the Crosse*, and in British *Lbane-Gwest*.

Vallis Crucis.
Vale of the
Crosse.

From hence more Eastward, the Territory called in Welsh *Mallor Gymraig*, that is, *Welsh Mallor*, in English *Bromfield*, reacheth as farre as to the river *Dee*. A small Territory, but very rich and pleasant, plentifull withall of Lead, especially neere unto *Moinglath*, a little Towne which tooke the name of Mines. Heere is *Wrexham* to be seene, in the Saxons tongue *Writocler-ham*, much spoken of for a passing faire towre Seeeple that the Church hath, and the muscicall Organs that bee therein. And neere unto it is *Leonis Castrum*, happily so called of the twenty Legion denominated *Vidrix*, which a little higher on the other banke of *Dee* lay garrisoned: now it goeth commonly under the name of *Holt*: and is thought to have beene re-edified of late by Sir *William Stanley*, and long since by *John Earle of Warren*, who being a Guardian of trust unto *Madock* a Welsh Lord, conveyed falsly from his Ward, this Lordship together with *Tale* unto himselfe. But from the Earles of *Warren*, it came unto the *Fix-Alans* Earles of *Arundell*, and from them to Sir *William Beauchamp Baron of Abergvenney*, and afterward to Sir *William Stanley* Chamberlaine to King *Henry* the Seventh, who contesting with his Sovereigne about his good services (when hee was honourably recompensed) lost his head, forgetting that Sovereignes must not bee beholding to Subjects, howsoever Subjects fancy their owne good services.

Lead.
Wrexham.

Holt.

Beneath *Bromfield*, Southward lyeth *Chirke*, in Welsh *Gwain*, being also very hilly, but well knowne in elder ages for two Castles, *Chirke* which gave it the name, built by *Roger Mortimer*, and *Castle Dinas Bran*, situate in the hanging of a mighty high hill pointed in the top: where of more there remaineth nothing but the very ruines. The common sort affirme, that *Brennius* the Generall of the *Galles* both built and so named it: others interpret the name to this sense, *The Castle of the Kings Palace*. For, *Bren* in British signifieth a King: whence perhaps that most puissant King of *Gaulles* and Britans both, was by way of excellency called *Brennus*. But others againe draw this name from the high situation upon an hill, which the Britans tearme *Bren*, and in mine opinion this their conjecture carryeth with it more probability. In the time of King *Henry* the Third, it was the mansion place of *Gruffith Ap Madoc*, who when he tooke part with the English against the Welsh, was wont heere to make his abode: but after his death, *Roger Mortimer* who had the charge and tuition of his sonne *Llewellyn*, like as *John Earle of Warren*, of whom I spake seized *Bromfield*, so hee seized also this *Chirke*, into his possession.

Chirke:
Castle Dinas
Bran.Bren.
Brennus.

When the State of the Welsh by reason of their owne civill dissensions, and the invasions of English, now ready to ruine, could not well subsist, the Earles of *Cheshire* and of *Warren*, the *Mortimers*, *Lacy*, and the *Greies*, that I spake of, first of all the Normans brought this little Country of *Denbigh* by little and little into their owne hands and left possession thereof to their heires. Neither was it made a Shire before King *Henry* the Eighth his daies: at which time *Radnor*, *Breconack*, and *Montgomery*, by authority of the Parliament were ordained to be Shires.

In this Shire there be Parishes 57.

FLINTSHIRE.

RIGHT over against *Denbigh-shire* North-East-ward lyeth FLINTSHIRE, a small Territory, more in length than in breadth: hemmed in on the North side with the Irish Sea, or rather with an Arme of the same: on the East with *Che-shire*, on other parts with *Denbigh-shire*. It is no mountaine Country to speake of, yet rising somewhat with the bearing up of Hilles, and gently falleth and sloopeth it selfe downe with fruitfull fields, which towards *Dee* an Arme of the Sea, especially every first Yeere that they bee new broken uppe and sowne, beare in some places Barley, in others Wheat, but generally throughout Rye with twenty fold encrease and better, and afterwards foure or five Crops together of Ores.

In the Confines of this Shire and *Denbigh-shire* where the hilles grow more flat and plaine with a softer fall, and an easier descent downe into the Vale, in the very gullet and entry thereof, the Romanes placed a little City named VARIS, which Antonine the Emperour placeth nineteene miles from CONOVIVM. This without any maine of the name is called at this day *Bod-Vari*, that is, *Mansion Vari*, and the next little hill hard by which the inhabitants thereabout commonly call *Moyly Gae*, that is, *The Mountaine of the City*, sheweth the footings of a City indeed, that hath beene destroyed. But what the name should signifie it appeareth not. I for my part have beene of opinion elsewhere, that *Varia* in the old British language signified a Passage, and accordingly have interpreted these words *Durnovaria* and *Isannovaria*, *The passage of a water*, and *the passage of Isanna*. And for this opinion of mine maketh well the situation of VARIS in that place where onely there lyeth open an easie passage betwixt the hilles. And not three miles from hence standeth *Cae-wisk*, the name whereof although it maketh some shew of Antiquity, yet found I nothing ancient there, nor worth the observation.

Beneath this VARIS, or *Bodvari*, in the vale glideth *Cluid*, and streightwayes *Elwy* a little Riveret conjoyneth it selfe with it, where there is a Bishops See. This place the Britans call, according to the River *Llan-Elwy*, the Englishmen of *Asaph* the Patron thereof *Saint Asaph*. And the Historiographers, *Asaphensis*. Neither is the Towne for any beauty it hath, nor the Church for building or bravery memorable: yet something would be said of it, in regard of Antiquity.

For, about the yeere of our Redemption 560. *Kentigern* Bishop of *Glasco*, being fled hither out of *Scotland* placed heere a Bishops See, and erected a Monastery, having gathered together sixe hundred threescore and three in a religious brotherhood. Whereof three hundred being unlearned did give themselves to husbandry, and as many moe to worke and labour within the Monastery, the rest to Divine Service. Whom hee divided so by Covents, that some of them should continually give attendance in the Church to the service of God. But when he returned into *Scotland*, he ordain'd *Asaph* a most godly and upright man Governor over this Monastery, of whom it tooke the name which now it hath. The Bishop of this See hath under his Jurisdiction about 128. Parishes, the Ecclesiasticall Benefices whereof, were wont to bee bestowed, when the See was voided by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, without interruption untill the time of King *Henry* the Eighth, and that by his Archiepiscopall right, which now is counted a Regality. For so wereade in the History of *Canterbury*.

Above this, *Rustlan*, taking the name of the ruddy and red banke of *Cluid*, on which it stands, maketh a good shew with a Castle, but now almost consumed by

very age. *Llewellyn Ap Sifil Prince of Wales*, first built it; and *Robert* surnamed *de Ruibland*, Nephew of *Hugh Earle of Chester*, was the first that by force wonne it from the Welsh, as being Captaine Lieutenant to the said *Hugh*, who fortified it with new workes, and bulwarkes: Afterward (as *Rob. Abbas de Monte hant witten*) King *Henry the Second*, when hee had repaired this Castle gave it unto *Hugh Beauchamp*.

Beneath this, *Cluid* streightwayes emptieth it selfe into the Sea; And albeit the Valley at the very mouth seemeth to carry a lower leuell and to lye under the Sea, yet the water never overfloweth into the Vale; but as it were, by a naturall obstacle, staith within the very brinckes of the shore, not without the exceeding great admiration of Gods Providence. From hence the shore tending by little and little Eastward, shooteth forward first by *Disari Castle*, so called because it was situate on the rising of a cliffe, or as some would have it, as it were *Desert*: then by *Basing worke*, which also King *Henry the Second* granted unto *Hugh Beauchamp*.

Beneath this wee saw the little Towne *Haly-well*, as one would say, *holy well*, where there is that fountaine frequented by Pilgrimes for the memoriall of the Christian Virgin *Winefride*, ravished there perforce and beheaded by a Tyranne, as also for the mosse there growing of a most sweet and pleasant smell. Out of which Well there gusheth forth a Brooke among stones, which represent bloody spottes upon them; and it carryeth so violent a streame that presently it is able to drive a mill. Over the very Well there standeth a Chappell built of stone right curiously wrought, whereunto adjoyneth a little Church, in a window whereof is portrayed and set out the History of the said *Winefride*, how her head was cut off, and set on againe by *Saint Benno*. Neere unto this place in the time of *Giraldus*, who yet knew not this Well, There was, as him selfe writeth, a rich *Veine* and gainefull Mine of silver, where men in seeking after silver pierced and prised into the very bowels of the Earth.

This part of the Country, because it smileth so pleasantly upon the beholders with a beautifull shew, and was long since subje& unto Englishmen, the Welsh named *Teg-Engle*, that is, *Faire England*. But whereas one hath teamed it *Tegonia*, and thought that the *Igeni* there planted themselves, take heede I advise you, that you be not overhasty to beleieve him. Certes, the name of the *Igeni* wrong put downe here deceived the good man. Then upon the shore, you may see *Flint Castle*, which King *Henry the Second* beganne, and King *Edward the First* finished: and it gave the name unto this Shire: where King *Richard the Second* circumvented by them who should have bene most trusty, was cunningly induced to renounce the Crowne as unable for certaine defects to rule; and was delivered into the hands of *Henry of Lancaster Duke of Hereford*, who soone after claimed the Kingdome and Crowne being then voide by his cession, as his inheritance descended from King *Henry the Third*, and to this his devised claime the Parliament assented, and hee was established in the Kingdome. After *Flint* by the East border of the Shire, neere to *Cheshire*, standeth *Hawarden* commonly called *Harden-Castle*, not farre from the shore: out of which when *David Llewellyn* brother had led away prisoner *Roger Clifford*, Justice of Wales, hee raised thereby a most bloody Warre against himselfe and his people, wherein the Princedome of the Welsh Nation was utterly overthrowne. But this Castle anciently holden by the Seneschallship of the Earles of *Chester*, was the seat of the Barons of *Mount-hault*, who grew up to a most honourable family, and gave for their Armes in A Shield Azure a Lion rampant Argent: and bequeered their dignity and estate by marriage with *Cecily* one of the coheires of *Hugh D'Arundell* Earle of *Arundell*. But in the end, for default of male issue *Robert* the last Baron of this race, made it over as I have said already, to *Isabell* Queene of England wife to King *Edward the Second*. Howbeit the possession of the Castle was transferred afterward to the *Stanleys*, now Earles of *Darby*.

Through the South part of this Shire lying beneath these places above named, wandereth *Alen* a little River: neere unto which in an hill hard by *Kilken*, a small village,

Basing worke.

Haly-well.

Saint Winefrid.

Flint.

Harden.

Barons of
Mount-hault
Or de monte
Alto.

village, there is a Well. The water whereof at certaine set times riseth and falleth, after the manner of the Sea-tides. Upon this *Alen*, standeth *Hopt Castle*, in Welsh *Cae-Garle*, in which King *Edward the First* retired himselfe when the Welshmen had upon the sudden set upon his souldiers being out of array: and where good milstones are wrought out of the rocke: also, *Mold*, in Welsh *Gaid Cruc* a Castle, belonging in ancient time to the Barons of *Mont-hault*: both which places shew many tokens of Antiquity.

Neere unto *Hope*, a certaine Gardiner, when I was first writing this worke, digging somewhat deepe into the ground, happened upon a very ancient peece of worke, concerning which there grew many divers opinions of sundry men: But hee that will with any diligence reade *M. Vitruvius Pollio*, shall very well perceive, it was nothing else but a Stoupe or hote house begunne by the Romanes, who as their riotous excesse grew together with their wealth, used Bathes exceeding much. In length it was five elns, in breadth foure, and about halfe an eln deepe, enclosed with Walles of hard stone, the paving layed with bricke pargetted with lime mortar: the arched roofoe over it supported with small pillars made of bricke, which roofoe was of tiles pargetted over likewise very smoothe, having holes heere and there through it, wherein were placed certaine earthen pipes of Potters worke, by which the heate was conveyed, and so as hee saith, *Voluebant hypocausta vaporem*, that is, the Staples did send away a wauming base vapour. And who would not thinke this was one of these kindes of worke which *Giraldus* wondered at especially in *Iscia*? writing thus as he did of the Romanes workes. *That* (saith hee) *which a man would judge among other things notable, there may you see on every side Stomphs made with marvellous great skill, breasting out heate closely as certaine holes in the sides, and narrow tunnels. Whose worke this was the tiles there did declare being imprinted with these words* LEGIO XX. that is, *The twentieth Legion*, which, as I have shewed already before, abode at *Chester* scarce fixe miles a fide from hence.

Neere unto this River *Alen*, in a certaine streight set about with woods standeth *Coles-hill*, *Giraldus* tearmeth it *Carbonarium collem*, that is, *Coles Hill*, where when King *Henry the Second* had made preparation with as great care as ever any did, to give Battaille unto the Welsh, the English by reason of their disordered multitude drawing out their Battalions in their ranks, and not ranged close in good array, lost the Field and were defeated: yea and the very Kings standerd was forsaken by *Henry of Essex*, who in right of inheritance was Standerd-bearer to the Kings of England. For which cause he being afterwards charged with treason, and by his challenger overcome in combat, had his goods confiscate and seized into the Kings hands, and he displeased with himselfe for his cowardise, put on a coule, and became a Monke.

Another little parcell there is of this Shire on this side the River *Dee*, dismembered as it were from this, which the English call *English Mairor*. Of this I treated in the County of *Chester*, whiles I spake of *Bangor*: and there is no reason to iterate the same heere which hath bene already spoken of before. Neither doth it afford any thing in it worth the reporting, unlesse it be *Han-mere*, by ae Meres side, whereof a right ancient and worshipfull Family there dwelling, tooke their surname.

The Earles of *Chester* as they skirmished by occasions, and advantage of opportunity with the Welsh, were the first Normans that brought this Country under their subjection, whereupon wee reade in ancient Records. *The County of Flint appertained to the Dignity of the sword of Chester*: and the eldest sonnes of the K.K. of England were in old time stiled by the Title of Earles of *Chester* and of *Flint*. But notwithstanding King *Edward the First*, supposing it would bee very commodious both for the maintenance of his owne power and also to keepe under the Welsh, held in his owne hands both this and all the sea Coast of Wales. As for the

Hope Castle.

Millstones:
Mold.Bathes or hote
water.

Coles.hul.

English Mairor.

Han-mere.

Earles of
Chester.

The prudent
politic of Ed-
ward the First.

in-land Countries, he gave them to his Nobles as he thought good: following herein the policie of the Emperour *Augustus*, who undertooke himselfe to governe the Provinces that were strongest and lay outmost, but permitted *Proconsuls* by lot to rule the rest. Which he did in shew to defend the Empire, but in very deed to have all the armes and martiall men under his owne command.

In this Countie of Flint there be Parishes in all. 28.

PRINCES

PRINCES OF WALES.



S concerning the Princes of Wales of British blood in ancient times, you may reade in the Historie of Wales published in print: For my part I thinke it requisite and pertinent to my intended purpose to set downe summarily those of latter daies, descended from the Roiall line of England.

King Edward the First, unto whom his Father King Henry the Third had graunted the Principalitie of Wales, when hee had obtained the Crowne, and *Llewellyn Ap. Gryffith* the last Prince of the British race was slaine, and thereby the sinewes as it were of the Principalitie were cut: in the twelfth yeere of his Reigne, united the same unto the Kingdome of England: And the whole Province sware fealty and allegiance unto Edward of *Caernarvon* his Sonne whom he made Prince of Wales. But

See page 114.

King Edward the Second conferred not upon his Sonne Edward, the title of Prince of Wales, but onely the name of *Earle of Chester* and of *Flint*, so farre as I ever could learne out of the Records, and by that title summoned him to Parliament being then nine yeeres old. King Edward the Third first Created his eldest Sonne Edward surnamed the *Blacke Prince* the Mirour of Chivalry (being then Duke of Cornwall and Earle of Chester) Prince of Wales by solemne investure, with a cap of estate, and Coronet set on his head, a gold ring put upon his finger, and a silver vierge delivered into his hand, with the assent of the Parliament: who in the very floure of his martiall glory was taken away by untimely death too too soone, to the universall grieffe of all England. Afterwards King Edward the Third invested with the said honour Richard of *Burdeux* the said Princes Sonne, as heire apparent to the Crowne, who was deposed from his Kingdome by King Henry the Fourth, and having no issue was cruelly dispatched by violent death. The said King Henry the Fourth at the formall request of the Lords and Commons bestowed this Principalitie with the title of Chester and Flint, with solemne investure, and a kisse in full Parliament upon his eldest Sonne, who gloriously bare the name of King Henry the Fifth. His Sonne King Henry the Sixth who at his Fathers death was an Infant in the cradle, conferred likewise this honour which he never had himselfe, upon his young Sonne Edward, whose unhappie fortune it was to have his braines dashed out cruelly by the faction of Yorke, being taken prisoner at *Tewkesbury* field. Not long after King Edward the Fourth having obtained the Crowne created Edward his young Sonne Prince of Wales, who was afterwards in the lineall succession of Kings, Edward the Fifth of that name. And within a while after his Unkle King Richard the Third

See page 164.

Afterward a
golden vierge
was used.

who

who made him away, ordained in his roome, Edward his owne Sonne, whom King Edward the Fourth had before made Earle of Salisbure, but he died quickly after. Then King Henrie the Seventh created his eldest sonne *Arthur*, Prince of Wales, and when he was dead, his other Sonne well knowne in the world by the name of King Henrie the Eighth. Every one of these had the Principality of Wales given to them by the foresaid solemne investure, and delivery of a Patent, *bold to themselves and their Heires, Kings of England.* For Kings would not bereave themselves of so excellent an occasion to doe well by the best Sonnes, but thought it very good policie by so great a benefit to oblige them when they pleased. Queene Mary, Queene Elizabeth, and King Edward, the Children of King Henrie the Eighth, although they never had investure, nor Patent, yet were commonly named in their order Princes of Wales. For, at that time, Wales was by authority of Parliament so annexed and united to the Kingdome of England, that both of them were governed vnder the same Law: or, that you may reade it abridged out of the Act of Parliament. The Kings Countrey or dominion of Wales shall stand and continue for ever incorporated, united, and annexed, to and with the Realme of England and all and singular person and persons borne and to be borne in the said Principality, Country, or Dominion of Wales, shall have, enioy, and inherit all and singular freedoms, liberties, rights, priviledges, and Lawes, within this Realme, and other the Kings Dominions, as other the Kings Subjects naturally borne within the same, have, enioy, and inherit: and the Lawes, Ordinances, and Statutes of the Realme of England for ever, and none other shall he had, used, practised, and executed in the said Country, or Dominion of Wales, and every part thereof, in like manner, forme, and order, as they be and shall be in this Realme, and in such like manner and forme, as hereafter shall be further established and ordained. This Act, and the calme command of King Henrie the Seventh preparing way for it, effected that in a short time, which the violent power of other Kings armes, and especially of Henrie the Fourth with extreame rigour also of Lawes, could not draw on in many yeeres. For ever sithence the British Nation hath continued as faithfully and dutifully in their Loyall Allegiance to the Crowne of England, as any other part of the Realme whatsoever. Now am I to returne out of Wales into England, and must goe unto the *Brigantes*.

BRIGANTES.



BRIGANTES.

BRITAINE, which hitherto hath, as it were, launched out with huge Promontories, looking on the one side toward Germanie, on the other side toward Ireland, now as if it were afraid of the Sea violently intruding upon it withdraweth it selfe farther in, and by making larger separations of lands retireth backe, gathered into a farre narrower breadth: For, it is not past one hundred miles broad from coast to coast, which on both sides passe on in a maner with straight and direct shores Northward, as farre as to Scotland. All this part well neere of the Island, while the Romane Empire stood upright and flourished in Britaine, was inhabited by the BRIGANTES. For, Plinie writeth, that they dwelt from the East Sea to the West. A nation this was right valiant, populous withall, and of especiall note among ancient Authors, who all doe name them, BRIGANTES, unlesse it be Stephanus onely, in his booke Of Cities; who called them BRIGAE: in which place, that which he wrote of them is defective at this day in the bookes, by reason that the sentence is imperfect. If I should thinke that these were called Brigantes, of Briga, which in the ancient Spanish tongue signified A Citie, I should not satisfie my selfe; seeing it appeareth for certaine out of Strabo, that it is a meere Spanish word. If I were of opinion with Goropius that out of the Low Dutch tongue, they were termed Brigantes, as one would say Freehands, should I not obtrude upon you his dreames for daunties? Howsoever the case standeth, our Britanes, or Welsh-men, if they see any of a bad disposition, and audaciously playing lawlesse and lewde parts, use to say of them by way of a common merry quippe, Wharret Brigans, that is, They play the Brigants. And the French-men at this day, alluding as it seemeth to the ancient language of the Gaules, usually terme such lewde fellows Brigans like as Pirats Ships, Brigantins. But whether the force of the word was such in old time in the Gaules or Britanes language, or whether our Brigantes were such like men, I dare not determine. Yet, if my memory faile me not, Strabo calleth the Brigantes (a people about Alpes) Grassatores, that is, Robbers, and Julius a Belgian a young man of desperate boldnesse, who counted power, authority, honestie, and vertue to be nothing but naked names, is in Tacitus surnamed Briganticus. With which kinde of vice, our old Brigantes may seeme to have been tainted, when they so robbed and spoiled the neighbour inhabitants, that the Emperour Antoninus Pius for this cause tooke away a great part of their Country from them,

Brigantes
whereof they
tooke name.

See Pasquier in
Les Recherches
de France, lib. 6.
cap. 40.

Neither afterward in the time of Antoninus Pius, was their courage, as it may seeme, very much abated, when he tooke away part of their territories from them, because they had made rodes, as I have said before, into Genunia, or Guinethia, a Province confederate with the Romanes.

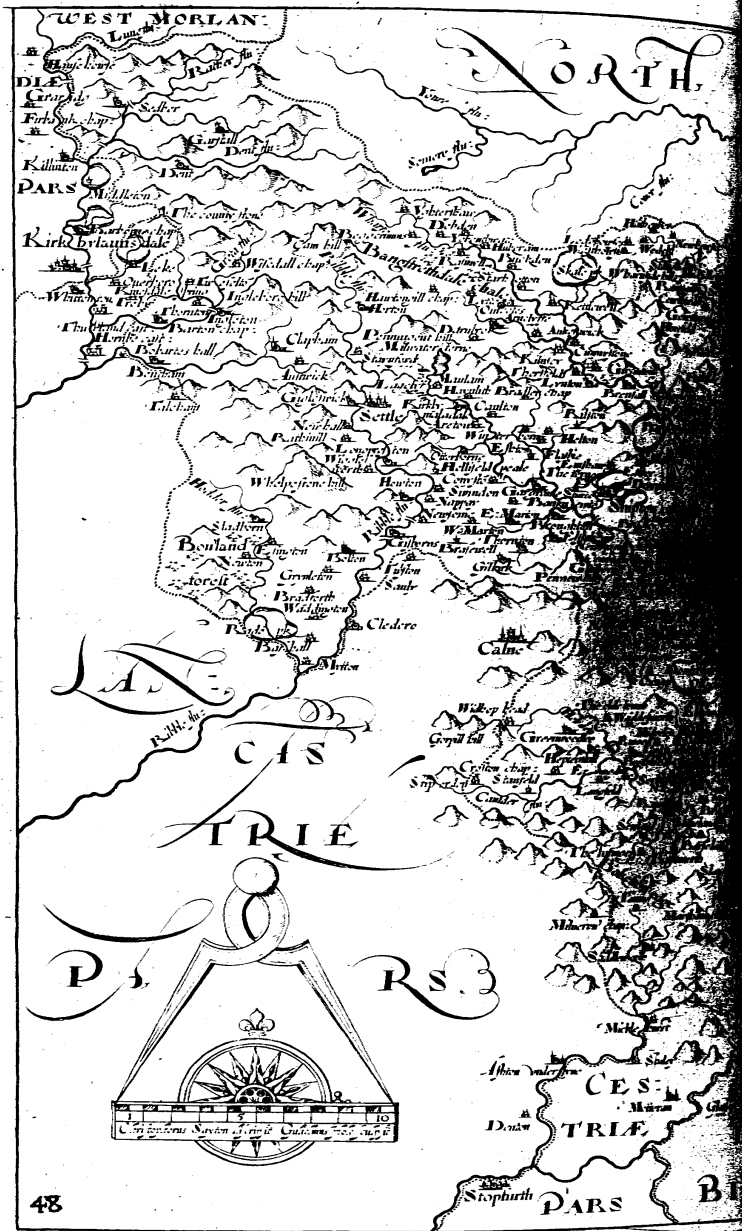
If I durst by our Critickes good leave (who in these daies presuming so much of their great wits are supercritical) me thinks, I could heere cleare Tacitus of a fault or two, which sitteth close to him, as concerning the Brigantes. The one is in the twelfth Booke of his Annales, where I would reade, (for Vennutius out of the State of the Iugantes) out of the State of the Brigantes: which Tacitus himselfe seemeth to insinuate in the third Booke of his Histories. The other, in the life of Agricola. The Brigantes, saith he, under the leading of a Woman, burnt the Colonie, &c. Where truth would have you reade, The Trinobantes. For he speaketh of Queene Boadicia, who had nothing to doe with the Brigantes. But the Trinobantes, she stirred inderstate rebellion, and burnt the Colonie* Camalodunum.

But, this Country of theirs so exceeding large, which the further it goeth the narrower it waxeth, riseth on high in the mids with continued ridges and edges of hills, (as Italie is raised up with Apenninus) which make a partition betweene those Countiees into which it is now divided. For, beneath those hills toward the East and the German Sea, lieth Torke-shire, and the Bishopricke of Duresme; and on the West side, Lancashire, Westmorland, and Cumberland, all which Countiees in the first infancy of the English-Saxons Empire, were contained within the Kingdome of the Deiri. For, they call these Countiees, the Kingdome of the Nordanhumbers, and divided them in two parts; Deira, called in that age Deipland, which is neerer unto us and on this side Tine; and Bernicia, which lying beyond Tine, reached as farre as Edenborough Frith in Scotland: which parts although they had their severall Kings for a long time, yet at length grew all to bee one Kingdome. And, that I may note this one thing by the way, whereas in the life of Charles the Great it is read thus, Eardulph King of the Nordanhumbers, that is, De-Ireland, being driven out of his Country unto Charles the Great, &c. Wee must reade ioynty, Dierland, and understand the place of this Country, and not of Ireland, as some have misconceived.

A place in Tacitus corrected.

* Malden.

TORKE.



YORKESHIRE.



THE County of YORKE, in the Saxon Tongue Euerpior
reýne, Epproc-reýne, and Ebopa-reýne, commonly YORKE-
SHIRE, the greatest Shire by farre, of all England, is
thought to bee in a temperate measure fruitfull. If in one
place there bee stony and sandy barraine ground, in another
place there are for it Corne-fields as rich and fruitfull: if
it bee voide and destitute of Woods heere, you shall finde
it shadowed there with most thicke Forests: so provi-
dently useth Nature such a temperature, that the whole Countrey may seeme
by reason also of that variety more gracefull and delectable. Where it bendeth
Westward, it is bounded with the Hilles, I spake of, from Lancashire and West-
moreland.

On the North side it hath the Bishopricke of Durham, which the River Tees with
a continued course separateth from it. On the East side the Germaine Sea lieth fore
upon it: and the South side is enclosed first with Cheshire and Darby-shire, then with
Nottingham-shire, and after, with Lincoln-shire, where that famous arme of the Sea
Humber floweth betweene, into which all the Rivers well neere that water this shire
empty themselves, as it were, into their common receptacle.

This whole Shire is divided into three parts: which according to three Quar-
ters of the world are called *The West-Riding*, *The East-Riding*, and *The North-Riding*.
West-Riding, for a good while is compassed in with the River * *Ouse*, with the bound
of Lancashire, and with the South limits of the shire, and beareth toward the West
and South. *East-Riding*, looketh to the Sunne-rising and the Ocean, which to-
gether with the River *Derwent* encloseth it. *North-Riding* reacheth Northward,
hemmed in, as it were, with the River *Tees* with *Derwent* and a long race of the
River *Ouse*. In that West part, out of the Westerne Mountaines or Hilles in the
Confines, issue many Rivers which *Ouse* alone entertaineth every one, and carryeth
them all with him unto *Humber*. Neither can I see any fitter way to describe this
part, than to follow the streames of *Done*, *Calder*, *Aire*, *Wharfe*, *Nidd* and *Ouse*, which
springing out of these Hilles, are the Rivers of most account, and runne by places
likewise of greatest importance.

The River *Dannus*, commonly called *Don*, and *Dune*, so termed, as it should seeme
for that it is carried in a chanell somewhat flat, shallow and low by the ground (for
so much signifieth *Dan* in the British language) after it hath saluted *Wortley*, which
gave surname to a worshipfull Family, as also *Wentworth* hard by, whence beside o-
ther Gentlemen as well in this Country, as elsewhere, the Barons of *Wentworth* have
derived both their originall and name; runneth first by *Sheafeld* a Towne of great
name (like as other small Townes adjoyning) for the Smithes therein (considering
there bee many iron Mines thereabout) fortified also with a strong and ancient
Castle, which in right line descended from the *Lovetofts*, the Lords *Furnivall*, and
Thomas Lord *Nevill* of *Furnivall*, unto the *Talbots*, Earles of *Shrewsbury*. From
thence *Don* clad with alders, and other trees goeth to *Rotheram*, which glorieth in
Thomas *Rotheram* sometime Archbishop of *Yorke*, a wise man, bearing the name
of the Towne, being borne therein, and a singular benefactor thereunto, who found-
ed and endowed there a College with three Schooles in it to teach children writ-
ting, Grammar, and Musicke, which the greedy iniquity of these our times hath
already swallowed.

Then looketh it up to *Connisbrough* or *Conines-borough* an ancient Castle, in the
British tongue *Caer Conan*, seated upon a Rocke, into which, what time as *Aurelius*
Ambrosius had so discomfited and scattered the English Saxons at *Maisbelly*, that
they

Humber

* First called
Ure and Your.
West Riding.

The river Don.

Wortley.
Wentworth;

Sheafeld;

Furnivall.

Rotheram;

Connis-bor-
row.
Florilegus.

487.

M m m

they tooke them to their heeles, and fled every man the next way hee could finde, *Hengeſt* their Captaine retired himſelfe for ſafety and few daies after brought his men forth to battaile before the Captaine againſt the Britans that purſued him, where hee fought a bloody field to him and his: For, a great number of men were there cut in peeces: and the Britans having intercepted him, chopt off his head, if we may beleieve the Britiſh Hiſtory rather than the Engliſh-Saxon Chronicles, which report that he being outworne with travell and labour, died in peace. But this *Cotby-borough* in latter ages was the poſſeſſion of the Earles of *Warren*. Afterwards, hee runneth under *Sprotburg* the ancient ſeat of that ancient family of the *Fitz-Williams* Knights, who are moſt honourably allied and of kin to the nobleſt houſes of England, and from whom deſcended Sir *William Fitz-Williams* Earle of *Southeampton*, in our fathers remembrance, and Sir *William Fitz-Williams* late Lord Deputy of Ireland. But in proceſſe of time this is fallen to the *Copleys*, like as *Elmeſly* with other poſſeſſions of theirs in this Tract, are come by right of inheritance to the *Sovills*.

From hence *Done* running with a divided ſtreame hard to an old towne, giveth it his owne name, which we at this day call *Dan-caſtre*, the Scots *Don-Caſtle*, the Saxons *Dona-caſtrep*, *Ninins*, *Caer Daun*, but *Antonine* the Emperour *DANUM*, like as the booke of *Notices*: which hath recorded that the Captaine of the *Criſpinian* Horſemen, lay there in Garifon under the Generall of Britaine. This about the yeere of our Lord 759. was ſo burnt with fire from heaven, and lay ſo buried under the owne ruines, that it could ſcarce breath againe. A large plot it ſheweth yet, where a Citadell ſtood, which men thinke was then conſumed with fire: in which place I ſaw the Church of *S. Georges*, a faire Church, and the onely Church they have in the Towne.

Beneath this Towne Southward ſcarce five miles off is *Tickhill*, which I am not willing to omit, an old towne, fenced with as old a Caſtle, large enough, but having onely a ſingle Wall about it, and with an high Mount whereon ſtandeth a round Keepe. It carryed in old time ſuch a Dignity with it, that the Manours and Lords belonging thereto were called *The Honour of Tickhill*. In the Raigne of Henry the Firſt *Roger Buſſy* held the poſſeſſion thereof: Afterwards the Earles of *Ewe* in Normandy were long ſince Lords of it by the gift of King *Stephen*. Then King *Richard* the Firſt gave it unto *John* his brother. In the Barons Warre *Robert de Pypm* deſcended it for himſelfe, which that hee ſhould deliver unto the Earle of *Ewe*, King Henry the Third put into his hands, the Caſtle of *Carleol*, and the County. But when the King of France would not reſtore unto the Engliſh againe their poſſeſſions in France, the King of England retained it unto himſelfe, when as *John* Earle of *Ewe* in the right of *Alice* his great Grandmother claimed of King *Edward* the Firſt reſtitution thereof. At length *Richard* the Second King of England liberally gaveth unto *John of Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*.

But now by this time *Done* that often riſeth heere and overfloweth the fields, gathering his divided waters into one ſtreame againe, when he hath for a while runne in one Chanell through *Haſfeld Chace* (where there is great game and hunting of red Deere) being divided eſt-ſoone, ſpeedeth himſelfe on the one hand to *Idel* a River in *Nottinghamſhire*, on the other to *Aire*, that hee and they together may fall into *Humber*. In which very place there are environed with theſe rivers *Dicbe-march* and *Marſhland*, little Merſh Countries or River-Iſlands rather, taking up in circuit much about fifteene miles, moſt plentifull of greene graſſe, paſſing good for feeding of Cattail, and on every ſide garniſhed, as it were, with pretty Townes. Yet ſome of the Inhabitants are of opinion, that the land there, is hollow and hanging, yea and that; as the waters riſe, the ſame alſo is heaved up: a thing that *Pomponius Mela* hath written concerning *Antrum* an Iſle in France.

But among thoſe Beakes and Brookes that convey their ſtreames hither, I muſt not overpaſſe *Went*, which floweth out of a ſtanding Poole neere unto *Noſthill*, where ſometime ſtood an Abbey conſecrated to *Oſwald*, both a King and a Saint, which a Confeſſour to King Henry the Firſt reedified. But ſince the diſſolution it hath

The Family of
Fitz-Williams.

Dan-caſtre.

Tickhill.

Plac. ann. 3.
Joan. Reg. Pl.
81. 4. Et 3.

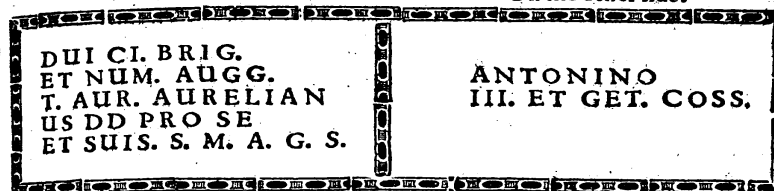
Marſhland.

Noſthill.
Saint Oſwald.

A hath beene the dwelling houſe of the *Gargraves*, Knights of eſpeciall good reſpect. *Caldre* ſpringing in the very Confines of *Lancaſhire*, runneth along certaine Townes of no account; among which, at *Gretland* in the top of an Hill (whereunto there is no aſcent but of one ſide) was digged up this Votive Altar, erected, as it ſhould ſeeme, to the tutelard God of the whole State of the *Brigantes*: which Altar was to bee ſeene at *Bradley*, in the houſe of the right worſhipfull Sir *John Savill* Knight, Baron of the Exchequer, but now among Sir *Robert Cottons* Antiquities.

The River
Caldre.

On the other ſide.

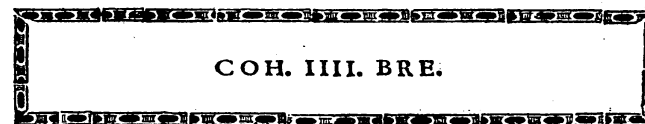
Anno Chriſti
209.

That is, To the God of the whole Communnalty and ſtate of the *Brigantes*, and to the ſacred Maieſty of the *Auguſti*, Titus Aurelius Aurelianus hath dedicated for himſelfe and his. (The letters that bee laſt of all paſſe my ſkill altogether) When *Antonine* the third time, and *Geta* were Conſuls.

Now whether that *Dui*, be God, whom the Britans now call *Dim*, or a peculiar locall God, or Genius of the *Brigantes*, I leave for to be diſcuſſed by them, that are better learned. Like as the ſoules are divided and diſtributed among them that are borne (ſaith *Symmachus*) even ſo are *Fatall Genij*, among Nations. And the divine minde alotteth ſundry keepers and Guardians to particular Countries. For, thus they were in old time perſwaded in their Divinity, and thus they beleaved. And, to ſay nothing of forraine Nations, whoſe Hiſtory is very full of ſuch peculiar and locall Gods; the Britans had in that part which now is called *Essex*, *Andates*: in *Cumberland*, *Bel-lo-tu-cadruſ*: in *Northumberland*, *Viterinus*, and *Mogontus*, as ſhall appeare more evidently out of thoſe Inſcriptions, which I will ſet downe in due place. *Servius Honoratus* likewiſe hath well and truly obſerved, that theſe Locall or Topick Gods doe never paſſe unto other Countries. But to returne unto the River *Caldre*: which when by the comming in of other waters hee is growne bigge and carryeth a fuller ſtreame, hath a faire Bridge over it at *Eland*: neere unto which, at *Grimſcarre*, were brickeſ found with this Inſcription.

DVI.
The Geniſ of
Places.

Lib. Ep. 40.



For, the Romanes flouriſhing in military prowefſe, in great wiſedome and pollicie exerciſed both their Legions and Cohorts in time of peace, to withſtand Idleneſſe, by caſting of ditches, making of High-waies, baking of brickeſ, building of Bridges, &c.

Vopuſcius
Probus.

Caldre afterward among the very Hilles leaveth on the left hand *Halifax* a moſt famous Towne, lying from Weſt to Eaſt upon the ſteepe deſcent of an Hill. And not many ages ſince, tooke it this name; whereas before time it was called *Horion*, as ſome of the Inhabitants doe report, who tell this pretty ſtory alſo, touching the alteration of the name.

Halifax.
Some would
have it to be
called afore-
time, the Chap-
pell in the
Grove.

A certaine Clerke, as they call him, was farre in love with a maiden who when
M m m 2 he

hee might not have his purpose of her, for all the faire meanes and enticements hee could use, his love being turned unto rage (vilanous Wretch that hee was) cut off the Maides head; which being hung afterwards upon an Eugh tree, the common people counted as an hallowed Relique, untill it was rotten, yea and they came devoutly to visit it, and every one gathered and carried away with him a branch or sprig of the said tree. But after the tree was bare and nothing left but the very stocke (such was the credulity of that time) it maintained the opinion of reverence and Religion still. For, the people were perswaded, that the little veines that are stretched out and spread betwene the barke and body of the Eugh tree in manner of haire or fine threads, were the very haire indeede of the Virgins head. Hereupon they that dwelt thereabout repaired on Pilgrimage hither, and such resort there was unto it, that *Horton* being but a little Village before, grew up to a great Towne, and was called by a new name *Halig-Fax*, or *Hali-fax*, that is, *Holy haire*. For, the Englishmen dwelling beyond *Trent*, called the haire of the head *Fax*. Whence also there is a Family in this Country, of Gentlemen, named *Faire-fax*, of the faire bush of their haire. They therefore, which by resemblance of the name gather this to bee *Ptolomees Olicana*, bee farre deceived. Now this place is become famous as well among the multitude by reason of a Law there, whereby they behead straightwaies whosoever are taken stealing: as also amongst the learned: for they report that *Joannes de Sacro Bosco* the Author of the *Sphere*, was here borne: yet more famous it is, for the greatnesse of the Parish, which reckoneth in it eleven Chappels, whereof two, be Parish-Chappels, and to the number of twelve thousand people therein. So that the Inhabitants are wont to give out, that this Parish of theirs maintaineth more men and women, than other living creatures of what kinde soever. Whereas you shall see elsewhere in England, in the most fruitfull and fertile places, many thousands of Sheepe, and very few men, as if folke had given place to flocks of Sheepe, and herds of Neat, or else were devoured of them. Moreover, the industry of the Inhabitants heere is admirable, who in a barren Soile, wherein there is no commodious, nay scarce any dwelling and living at all, have so come up and flourished by Clothing (a trade which they tooke to not above threecore and tenne yeeres agoe at the farthest) that they greatly enrich their owne estates, and winne the praise from all their neighbours: yea, and have proved the saying to be true, *That barrenne places give a good edge to industrie*: and that hence it is, that *Norinberg* in *Germanie*, *Venice* and *Genna* in *Italie*, and *Limoges* in *France*, situate all in barrenne places are become right flourishing Cities. Sixe miles from hence and not farre from the right side of the River *Calder*, neere unto *Almond-bury* a little Towne, standing upon an high and steepe Hill which hath no easie passage on even ground unto it but of one side, are seene the manifest tokens of a Rampire, some ruines of walles and of a Castle, which was guarded about with a triple strength of Forts and Bulwarkes. Some will have this also to have beene *OLICANA*: But the trueth saith otherwise, and namely that it is *CAMBODUNUM*, which *Ptolomee* calleth amisse *CAMULODUNUM*, and *Beda* by a word divided *CAMPO-DUNUM*.

This is proved by the distance thereof, on the one side from *MANCUNUM*, on the other from *CALCARIA*, according to which *Antonine* placeth it. Moreover, it seemeth to have flourished in very great honour, when the English Saxons first beganne to rule. For, the Kings Towne it was, and had in it a Cathedral Church built by *Paulinus* the Apostle of these parts, and the same dedicated to *Saint Alban*: whence in stead of *Alban-bury*, it is now called *Almon-bury*. But when *Ceadwall* the Britan and *Penda* the Mercian made sharpe warre upon *Edwin* the Prince of these Countries, it was set on fire by the enemy, as *Beda* writeth, which the very adust and burnt colour as yet remaining upon the stones doth testifie. Yet afterwards there was a Castle built in the same place, which King *Stephen*, as I have read, confirmed unto *Henry Lacy*.

Hard

Fax, what it is.

Halifax law.

Almond-bury.

Cambodunum.

A Hard unto it lyeth *Whitley*, the habitation of an ancient and notable Family of *Whitley*. *Beaumont*, which notwithstanding is different from that House of the Barons and Vicounts *Beaumont*, yet it was of great name in this Tract before their coming into England.

Calder now leaving these places behinde him, and having passed by *Kirkley* an house in times past of religious Nunnes; and the Tombe of *Robin Hood* that right good and honest Robber (in which regard he is so much spoken of) goeth to *Dewsbury* good and honest Robber (in which regard he is so much spoken of) goeth to *Dewsbury* borough seated under an high Hill. Whether it had the name of *DVI* that tutelar God of the place, of whom I wrote a little before, I am not able to say: Surely the name is not unlike, for it soundeth as much as *Duis Burgh*, and flourished at the very first infancy, as it were, of the Church springing up amongst the Englishmen in this Province: for, I have heard, that there stood a Crosse heere with this Inscription.



that is;



And that this *Paulinus* was the first Archbishop of *Yorke*, about the yeere of our Redemption 626, all Chronicles doe accord. From hence *Calder* running by *Thornhill* (which from Knights of that surname is descended to the *Savills*) passeth hard by *Wakefield* a Towne famous for clothing, for greatnesse, for faire building, a well frequented Mercate, and a Bridge: upon which King Edward the Fourth erected a beautifull Chappell, in memoriall of those that lost their lives there in battaile. The Possession sometime this was of the Earles of *Warren* and of *Surry*, as also *Sandall* Castle adjoyning, which *John Earle of Warren* (who was alwaies fleshly lustfull) built, when he had used the wife of *Thomas Earle of Lancaster* more familiarly than honesty would require, to the end he might deteine and keepe her in it securely, from her Husband. By this Townes side, when the civill warre was hote heere, in England and setled in the very bowels thereof, *Richard Duke of Yorke*, father to King Edward the Fourth (who chose rather to hazard his fortune: than to stay the good time thereof) was slaine in the field by those that tooke part with the House of *Lancaster*. The Tract lying heere round about for a great way together, is called *The Seignory or Lordship of Wakefield*, and hath alwaies for the Seneschall or Steward one of the better sort of Gentlemen dwelling thereby. Which Office the *Savills* have oftentimes borne, who are heere a very great and numerous Family, and at this day Sir *John Savill* Knight beareth it, who hath a very sightly faire house not farre off at *Howley*, which maketh a goodly shew. *Calder* is gone scarce five miles farther, when he betaketh both his water and his name also to the River *Aire*. Where, at their very meeting together standeth betwene them *Medley*, in times past *Mede-ley*, so called for the situation, as it were, in the midst betwene two Rivers. The seat it was in the age aforegoing, of Sir *Robert Waterton* Master of the Horse to King Henry the Fourth, but now of Sir *John Savill* a right worshipfull Knight, and a most worthy Baron of the Kings Exchequer, whom I acknowledge full gladly in his

M m m 3

his

Wakefield.

1460.

The Savills, Howley.

Medley.

The River *Are*. his love and courtesie to have favoured me, and out of his learning to have furthered this worke. This river *Are* springing out of the bothom of the hill *Penmigen*, which among the Westerne hills mounteth aloft above the rest, doth forthwith so sport himselfe with winding in and out, as doubtfull whether hee should returne backe to his spring-head, or runne on still to the sea, that my selfe in going directly forward on my way was faine to passe over it seven times in an houres riding. It is so calme, and milde, and carryeth so gentle and slow a streame, that it seemeth not to runne at all but to stand still, whence I suppose it tooke the name. For, as I have said before, *Ara* in the British tongue betokeneth *Milde*, *Still*, and *Slow*, whereupon that slow River in France *Araris* hath his name. The Country lying about the head of this River, is called in our tongue *Craven*, perchance of the British word *Crage*, that is, a *Stone*. For, the whole Tract there, is rough all over and unpleasant to see to, with craggy stones, hanging rocks, and rugged waies: in the middelt whereof, as it were in a lurking hole, not farre from *Are*, standeth *Skipton*: and lyeth hidden and enclosed among steepe Hilles, in like manner as *Latium* in Italie, which *Varro* supposeth to have bene so called, because it lyeth close under *Apennine* and the *Alpes*. The Towne (for the manner of their building among these Hilles) is faire enough, and hath a very proper and a strong Castle, which *Robert de Rumeley* built, by whose posterity it came by inheritance to the Earles of *Armarle*. And when their inheritance for default of heires fell by escheat into the Kings hands, *Robert de Clifford*, whose heires are now Earles of Cumberland, by way of exchange obtained of King Edward the Second both this Castle, and also faire lands round about it every way, delivering into the Kings hands in lieu of the same, the possessions that he had in the *Marches of Wales*.

When *Are* is once past *Craven*, hee spreadeth broader and passeth by more pleasant fields lying on each side of it, and *Kigbeley* among them, which gave name to the worshipfull Family of *Kigbeley*, so surnamed thereof. Of which Family, *Henry Kigbeley* obtained of king Edward the First for this Manour of his the liberty of a *Mercate* and *Faire*, and free warren. So that no man might enter into those Landis to hunt and chase in them, or to take any thing thus pertained to the Warren, without the licence and good will of *Henry* himselfe and his Successours. Which was counted in that age for a speciall favour, and I note it once for all, that we may see, what *Free Warren* was. But the male issue of this Family in the right line ended in *Henry Kigbeley of Insip*. Howbeit, the daughters and heires were wedded to *William Cavendish*, now Baron *Cavendish of Hardwick*, and to *Thomas Worsley of Booths*. From hence *Are* passeth beside *Kirkstall*, an Abbey in times past of no small reckoning, founded by *Henry Lacy*, in the yecere 1147. and at length visiteth *Leedes*, in the Saxon tongue *Layoe*, which became a house of the Kings, when *CAMBODUNUM* was by the enemy burnt to the ground: now a rich Towne by reason of clothing, where *Osway* king of Northumberland put to flight *Penda the Mercian*: And, as *Bede* saith, this was to the great profit of both Nations: for he both delivered his owne people from the hostile spoiling of the Mercians, and also converted the Mercians themselves to the grace of Christian Faith. The very place wherein they joyned battaile, the writers call *Winwidfield*, which name I suppose was given it of the Victory: like as a place in *Westphalia*, where *Quintillus Varus* with his legions was slaine, is in the Dutch tongue called *Winfield*, that is, the field of victory, as that most learned man and my very good friend *Abraham Ortelius* hath observed. The little Region or Territory about it, was in times past by an old name called *Elmet*: which *Eadwin* king of Northumberland, the sonne of *Ella*, after hee had expelled *Cereticus* a British king, conquered in the yecere of Christ 620. Herein is digged limestone every where, which is burnt at *Brumerton*, and *Knottingley*, and at certaine set times, as it were, at *Faires*, a mighty quantitie thereof is conveyed to *Wakefield*, *Sandall*, and *Stambridge*: and so is sold unto this Westerne Country which is hilly and somewhat cold, for to manure and enrich their Corne fields. But let us leave these things to Husbandmen: as for my selfe I profess my ignorance therein, and will goe forward as I beganne.

At

At length *Are* entertaineth *Calder* aforesaid with his water as his Guest, where neere unto the meeting of both Rivers, standeth *Castleford* a little Village, *Marianus* nameth it *Casterford*: who reporteth, that the Citizens of *Torke* slew many of king *Eibelfred's* Army there, whom in their pursuite they set upon and charged heere and there at advantages; what time as hee invaded and overranne this Country for breaking the allegiance they had sworn unto him. But in *Antonine*, this place is called by a more ancient name *LEGEOLIUM* and *LAGETIUM*: Wherein beside expresse and notable tokens of Antiquity, a mighty number of Roman peeces of money (the common people there tearme them, *Sarasins head*) were found at *Beasfield* (a place so called now of *Beanes*) hard by the Church: The distance also from *DAN* and *YORKE*, betweene which he placed it, doth most cleerely confirm as much: to say nothing of the situation thereof hard by the Romanes High Street, and last of all for that *Roger Hoveden* in plaine tearmes calleth it *A City*.

From hence *Are* being now bigger, after it hath received *Calder* unto it, leaveth on the left hand *Brotherton* a little Towne; in which Queene *Margaret*, turning thither out of the way as the road on hunting, was delivered of childe, and brought forth unto her Husband king Edward the First, *Thomas de Brotherton*, so named of the place, who was afterward Earle of *Norfolke*, and Marehall of England. And not farre beneath, *Are* after it hath received into it *Dan*, looseth himselfe in *Onfe*. On the right hand, where a yellower kinde of marke is found, which being cast and spred upon the fields maketh them beare Corne for many yeeres together, he passeth by *Pontfract*, commonly called *Pontefract*, situate not farre from the river banke, which Towne gat life, as it were, by the death of old *Legeolium*. In the Saxons time it was called *Kirkby*, but the Normans of a broken Bridge named it in French *Pontfract*. Upon this occasion, it is commonly thought, that the wooden Bridge over *Are* hard by, was broken, when a mighty multitude of people accompanied *William* Archbishop of *Torke* (King *Stephens* sisters sonne) newly returned from Rome. Whereby a great number fell into the River, and yet by reason that the Archbishop shed many a teare at this accident, and called upon God for helpe: there was not one of them that perished. Seated it is in a very pleasant place, that bringeth forth *Liquirice* and skirworts in great plenty, adorned also with faire buildings, and hath to shew a stately Castle as a man shall see, situate upon a rocke no lesse goodly to the eye, than safe for the defence, well fortified with ditches and bulwarkes. *Hildebert Lacy* a Norman, unto whom king *William* the First, after that *Alricke* the Saxon was thrust out, had given this Towne with the land about it, first built this Castle. But *Henry Lacy* his nephew, came into the field at the battaile of *Trenchbrey* (I speake out of the Pleas) against King *Henry the First*: wherefore hee was dispossessed of the Barony of *Pontfract*, and the King gave the Honour to *Wido de Lavall*, who held it untill King *Stephens* dayes: at which time, the said *Henry* made an entry into the Barony, and by mediation of the King compounded with *Wido*, for an hundred and fifty pounds. This *Henry* had a sonne named *Robert*; who having no issue, left *Albreda Lizours* his sister by the mothers side, and not by the father, to bee his heire, because hee had none other so neere in blood unto him: whereby shee, after *Roberts* death, kept both inheritances in her hand, namely of her brother *Lacies*, and her father *Lizours*. And these be the very words of the booke of the Monastery of *Stanlow*. This *Albreda*, was married to *Richard Fitz Eustach*, Constable of *Chester*, whose Heires assumed unto them the name of *Lacies*, and flourished under the title of Earles of *Lincolne*. By a daughter of the last of these *Lacies*, this goodly inheritance by a deede of conveyance was devolved in the end to the Earles of *Lancaster*, who enlarged the Castle very much, and Queene *Elizabeth* likewise bestowed great cost in repairing it, and beganne to build a faire Chappell. This place hath bene infamous for the murder and bloudshed of Princes: For, *Thomas Earle of Lancaster*, the first of *Lancastrian* House that in right of his wife possessed it, stained and embrewed the same with his owne blood. For, King Edward the Second to free himselfe from rebellion and contempt shewed upon him a good example of wholsome severity, and beheaded him heere. Whom notwithstanding

Castleford.

Legeolium;

T. de Castile; ford.

Saint William of Yorke.

Lacy the Norman.

Placit. i. H. 3.

The booke of Stanlow Monastery.

See Earles of Lincolne.

Thomas Earle of Lancaster.

standing the common people enrolled in the Beadroll of Saints. Heere also was that *Richard* the Second King of England; whom King Henry the Fourth deposed from his Kingdome with hunger, cold, and strange kindes of torments, most wickedly made away. And heere King *Richard* the Third caused *Antonie Earle Rivers*, King *Edward* the Fifth his Uncle by the mothers side, and Sir *Richard Grey* knight, halfe brother to the same King by the mothers side, both innocent persons, to loose their heads. For the Usurper feared, least those courageous and resolute men would stop his passage, aspiring as he did by wicked meanes to the Crowne; As for the Abbay, which the *Lacies* heere founded for religious persons, and the Hospitall which Sir *Robert Knolles* erected for poore people, I let passe wittingly, seeing there is scarce any rubbish now remaining of those good workes.

From *LEGOLIUM* or *Castelford* abovesaid, leaving behinde us *Shirburne*, a little Towne but well inhabited, which tooke name of the cleere bourne or River, and which King *Asbelstane* graunted unto the Archbishops of *Torke*, by the high ridge or Port way raised up of a great heighth, we came to *Aberford*, a little Village situate upon the said way, famous onely for making of pinnes, which by womens judgement are especially commended as the best. Under this the little River *Coc* (in booke, named *Cokarus*) runneth, and in the descent downe thereunto, the foundations of an old Castle, which they call *Castle Cary*, are to be seene. Scarce two miles from hence, at the spring head of *Coc*, standeth *Barwic in Elmet*, the royall house or seat, by report, in times past of the kings of *Northumberland*, which was environed about with walles, as the very ruines and ruble thereof seeme to testifie. On the other side is placed *Hesselwood* the principall seat of that worthy and right ancient family of the *Yarvours*, who by their Office (for the kings *Yarvours* in times past they were) tooke to them this name: and in the latter daies of King *Edward* the First Sir *William Yarus* was called among other Barons of the Realme unto the high Court of Parliament, as appeareth in the very Writs, as they call them, of Summons. Under this place lieth that most famous delfe or quarry of stone, called *Peters post*, for that with the stones hewed out of it, by the liberall grant of the *Yarvours*, that stately and sumptuous Church of *Sant Peters* at *Torke* was reedified.

From *Aberford* the said River *Coc* speedeth immediately to the River *Wharf*, as it were, sad, sorrowfull, and with heave cheere, in detestation of all civill warres, since time that he ranne all died with English blood. For, upon his banke nere unto *Tonion* a little country Village, was (as I may truly say) that our English *Pharsalia*. In no place ever saw our England such puissant forces, so much Gentry and Nobility together: an hundred thousand fighting men, and no fewer, of the one side and the other: Never were there leaders and Captaines on both parts more fierce, hardy, and resolute, never more cheerefull and forward to fight; who upon *Palme Sunday*, in the yeere 1461. in battaile array with banner displayed, entred the field and encountered. And when they had continued a doubtfull and variable fight a great part of the day, at length the Lancastrians not able to abide any longer the violence of their enemies (the chiefe cause of whose overthrow was the disordered unwealdiness of their owne Army) turned backe and fled amaine: And those that tooke part with *Torke*, being eager upon execution, followed them in chase so hotely, that they had the killing of a number of Noblemen and Gentlemen, and thirty thousand Englishmen were that day left dead in the field. But I leave this to the Historians. Somewhat lower, nere unto *Shirburne*, at *Huddleston* a little Village, is a famous stone quarry, out of which the stones when they are newly hewen be very soft, but after they bee seasoned with winde and weather, they become of themselves exceeding solid and hard. But (to returne) *Coc* making no long course sheaderth himselfe into *Wharf*.

This *Wharf* or *Wharf*, in the English Saxons language *Guerp*, commeth downe out of *Craven*, and for a great while runneth in a parallell distance even with *Are*. If a man should thinke the name to bee wrested from the word *Guer*, which in British signifieth *Swift and violent*, verily, the nature of that River concurrerth with his opinion;

Aberford.

Cary Castle.

Barwic in Elmet.

Hesselwood. Yarus or Yarus.

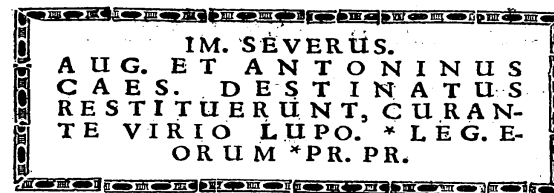
Peters-post.

The battaile at Tonion.

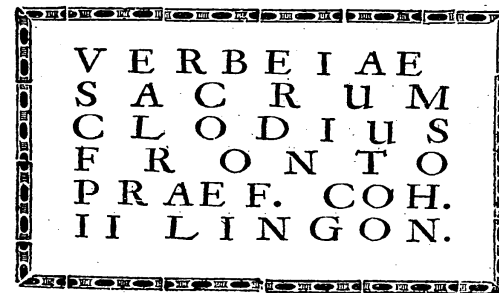
A quarry of stone.

The River Wharf.

nion; For, he runneth with a swift and speedy streame, making a great noise as hee goeth, as if he were froward, stubborne and angry, and is made more fell and teasty with a number of stones lying in his chanell, which he rolleth and tumblerth before him in such sort that it is a wonder to see the manner of it, but especially when hee swellth high in Winter. And verily it is a troublesome River and dangerous even in Summer time also, which I my selfe had experience of, not without some perill of mine owne, when I first travailed over this Country. For, it hath such slippery stones in it, that an horse can have no sure footing on them, or else the violence of the water carryeth them away from under his feete. In all his long course which from the spring head unto *Osse* is almost fifty miles, he passeth onely by little Townes of no especiall account: running downe by *Kilnesley Cragge*, the highest and steepest rocke that ever I saw in a midland Country by *Burnsall*, where Sir *William Craven* Knight and Alderman of London there borne, is now building of a Stone bridge: who also hard by, of a pious minde and beneficiall to his Country hath of late founded a Grammar Schoole, also by *Barden-Towre*, a little turret belonging to the Earle of *Cumberland*, where there is round about good store of game and hunting of fat Deere: by *Bolton*, where sometime stood a little Abbay: by *Bethmesley*, the seat of the notable Family of *Claphams*, out of which came *John Clapham* a worthy Warriour, in the civill broiles betweene *Lancaster* and *Torke*. From thence cometh he to *Ilkeley*, which considering the site in respect of *Torke* out of *Ptolomee*, and the affinity of the name together, I would judge to be *OLICANA*. Surely that is an old Towne (beside the Columbes engraven with Roman worke lying in the Churchyard and elsewhere) and was in *Severus* time reedified by the meanes of *Virius Lupus*, Lieutenant Generall and Proprætor then of Britaine, this inscription lately digged up hard by the Church doth plainly shew.



That the second Cohort of the *Lingones* abode heere, an Altar beareth witnesse, which I saw there, upholding now the staires of an house, and having this Inscription set upon it by the Captaine of the second Cohort of the *Lingones*, to *VERBEIA*, haply the Nymph or Goddesse of *Wharf*, the River running thereby, which River they called *VERBEIA* as I suppose, out of so neere affinity of the names.



* Of him *Ulpian* maketh mention lib. 2. de *Pulcris* & *pupillis* sub *jurisdictione*.

* Legato, Praetore.

For,

Epist. 41.

For, Rivers, as Gildas writeth, in that age, had by the blinde and ignorant people of A Britaine, divine honours heaped upon them. And Seneca sheweth, that in times past, Altars were erected unto them: We worship, saith he, The heads of great Rivers, and the sudden breaking forth of an huge River out of an hidden and secret place hath Altars consecrated unto it. Again, All waters, as Servius Honoratus saith, had their severall Nymphs, to take the rule and protection of them. Moreover in a Wall of the Church is fastened this broken and unperfected Inscription.

RUM CAES.
AUG.
ANTONINI
ET VERI
JOVI DILECTI
CAECILIUS
PRAEF. COH.

But in the very Church it selfe, whiles I sought diligently for monuments of Roman Antiquity, I found nothing but the Image in stone all armed, of Sir Adam Middleton: who seemeth to have flourished under King Edward the First, and whose posterity remaineth yet in the Country heereby, at *Stubbam*.

More beneath standeth *Osley* a Towne of the Archbishops of *Torke*: but it hath nothing memorable, unlesse it bee one high and hard craggy cliffe, called *Chevin* under which it is situate. For, the ridge of an hill, the Britans terme *Chevin*: whence I may conjecture that that continued ridge of mountaines in France, where in old time they spake the same language that Britans did, was called *Gevenna* and *Gebenna*. After this, *Wherf* runneth hard by, with his bankes on both sides reared up, and consisting of that *Limestone* which maketh grounds fat and fertile: where I saw *Harewood Castle* of good strength, which by the alteration of times, hath often changed his Lords.

Long since it belonged to the *Curcies*, but by *Alice* an inheritrice it came to *Warin Fitz-Gerold*, who had taken her to wife; whose daughter *Margerie* and one of his heires, being endowed with a very great estate of living, was first married unto *Baldwin de* Riparius*, the Earles sonne of *Devon-shire*, who dyed before his father: afterwards to *Folque de Brent*, by the beneficiall favour of King *John*, for his approved service in pilling, polling, and spoiling most cruelly. But when at length *Isabelle de* Riparius* Countesse of *Devon-shire* departed this life without issue: This Castle fell unto *Robert de L'isle* the sonne of *Warin*, as unto her cozin in blood and one of her heires: in the end by those of *Aldbrough*, it descended to the *Riubers*, as I am informed by *Francis Thinn*, who very diligently and judiciously hath a long time hunted after Pedigree antiquities. Neither is *Gawthorpe* adjoyning hereby to be concealed in silence, when as the ancient Family of *Gascoignes* descended out of *Gas-*

Ctley.

Chevin.
Chevin, what
it significh.

Gevenna.

Harewood.

Placit. r.
Joan. Rot. 10.
in D. Monstr.
le Droit. 35.
E. 1.
* Rivers or
Rediers.

A coigne in France as it seemeth, hath made it famous both with their vertue and Antiquity.

From hence runneth *Wherf* hard by *Wetherby*, a Mercate Towne of good note, which hath no antiquity at all to shew, but a place only, beneath it (they call it usually now, *Saint Helens Fould*) where the high Roman street crossed over the river. From thence he passeth downe by *Tadcaster*, a very little towne, yet I cannot but thinke as well by the distance from other places, as by the nature of the soile, and by the name, that it was *CALCARIA*. For, it is about nine Italian miles from *Torke*, according as *Antonine* hath set *CALCARIA*. Also the *limestone* which is the very soader and binder of all morter, and hardly elsewhere in this tract to be found, heere is digged up in great plenty and vented as farre as to *Torke* and the whole Country bordering round about, for use in building. Considering then that the said Lime, was by the Britans and Saxons in old time, and is by the Northren Englishmen called after the Roman name *Calc* (For, that imperious City *Rome*, imposed not their yoke onely, but their language also upon the subdued Nations) seeing also that in the *Code of Theodosius*, those bee termed *Calcarientes* who are the burners of *limestone*: it may not seeme absurd, if the Erymology of the name be fetched from *Calc*, that is, *Chalke* or *Lime*: even as *Chalcus*, of *brasse*, that is, *brasse*, *Ammon* of *Ammon*, that is, *Sand*, *Pseleon*, of *Elmes*, and *Calcaria* a City of *Cliveland*, haply of *Calc*, that is, *Lime*, tooke their names: especially seeing that *Bede* calleth it also *Calca-cister*. Where he reporteth, that *Heina* the first woman in this Country that put on the Vaile and religious habite of a Nunne, retired her selfe apart to this City, and therein made her abode. Moreover, an Hill neere to the Towne is called *Kelc-bar*, in which there lieth couched somewhat of the ancient name. Neither are there other arguments wanting, to prove the antiquity thereof: For, to say nothing how it is situate upon a port high way, there be peeces of the Roman Emperours money oftentimes digged up, and the tokens of the Trenches and Bankes that compassed it about, the plot also where an old Castle stood, yet remaining, out of the reliques whereof, not many yeeres agoe was a Bridge built, which when *Wherf* is once passed under, he becometh more still, and so gently intermingleth his water with *Ouse*. And verily a thing it is in my judgement to be wondered at, That *Wherf* being encreased with so many waters, in Summer time runneth so shallow under this Bridge, that one coming hither about *Midsummer*, when he saw it, pretily and merrily versified thus;

*Nid Tadcaster habet Musis, vel carmine dignum,
Præter magnificè structum sine flumine pontem.*

Nought hath *Tadcaster* worth my Muse, and that my verse deserv's,
Unlesse a faire Bridge stately built, the which no river serv's,

Lindarium
T. E. det.

But had he come in Winter time, he should have seene the Bridge (so great as it was) scarce able to receive so much water. But naturall Philosophers know full well, that both *Vvelles* and rivers according to the seasons, and the heat or cold, without or within do decrease or encrease accordingly. Whereupon in his returne he finding here dirt for dust, and full currant water under the Bridge, recanted with these verses.

*Quæ Tadcaster erat sine flumine, pulvere plena;
Nunc habet immensum fluvium, et pro pulvere latum.*

Somewhat higher *Nid* a muddy river runneth downe, well beset with woods on either side, out of the bottome of *Craven* hils, first by *Niderdale*, a vale unto which it giveth name: and from thence carrieth his streame by *Ripley* a Mercate Towne, where the *Inglebeys* a Family of great antiquity, flourished in good reputation. Afterwards, with his deepe chanell hee feneth *Gnaresburg* commonly called *Knarsborough Castle*, situate upon a most ragged and rough Rocke, whence also it hath the name: which, *Serle de Burgh*, Unkle by the fathers side to *Enstace Vescy* built, as the tradition

The river Nid.

Ripley.

Knarsborough
Castle.

Dropping well;
A Well turning
wood into
stone.

tradition holdeth: Afterward it became the seate of the *Esotiviles*, and now is counted part of the lands, belonging to the Dutchy of *Launcester*. Under it there is a well, in which the waters spring not up out of the veins of the earth, but distill and trickle downe dropping from the rockes hanging over it, whence they call it *Dropping well*: into which what wood soever is put, will in short space be covered over with a stony barke and turne into stone, as it hath bene often observed. In the Territory thereby Liquirice groweth in great abundance, and a yellower and softer kinde of marles there found, passing good to make the ground fertile. The Keeper or chiefe Ranger of the Forest adjoyning, was in times past one *Gamell*: whose posterity, of their habitation at *Screven* assumed the name of *Screven*: and from them descended the *Slingsbey*, who received this Forestership of king *Edward the First*, and to this day live here in great and good regard. *Ned* having passed by these places not farre from *Allerton*, the seat of a very ancient and famous family of the *Malliveries*, who in old Deeds and Records are called *Mali Leporarij*, goeth on a little way, and then meeting *Onse*, augmenteth the streame of *Onse* by his confluence.

As for *Ure*, he also springing out of these Westerne hilles, but on the other side of the Country, in *North-Riding*, when by this name he hath watered the North part of the Shire, a little before he commeth to *Rippon*, serveth for the limite dividing the North and West *Ridings* one from another. This *Rippon*, in the Saxon tongue *Hyppun*, being placed betwene *Ure* and *Skell* a rill, is beholdden to religious Houses for all the dignity it had, and especially so a Monastery built in the primitive Church of the English-Saxons by *Wilfride* Archbishop of *Torke*, and that with such arched and embowed *Vaults*, with such floorings and stories of stone worke, with such turnings and windings in and out of Galleries (so saith *William of Malmesbury*) that it was wonderful. Which, the Danes afterward, being so violent and outrageous that they spared neither God nor man, raced, together with the Towne. Yet flourished it againe, repaired by means of *Odo* Archbishop of *Canterbury*: who being a very great master of ceremoniall mysteries, translated from hence to *Canterbury* the Reliques of *Wilfride*. But since the Normans arrivall, it prospered most, when the Castles as one faith, of Monkes beganne to bee built in greater number: For then both the Towne grew famous partly under the chiefe Magistrate, whom they call by an old Saxon word, *Wakeman* as one would say, *Waschman*, and partly by their industry in clothing which at this day is much diminished: and the Monastery likewise under the tuition and protection of the Archbishops of *Torke* beganne marvellously to flourish. Besides, a very faire Church was there also built, at the charitable charges of the Noblemen and Gentry dwelling thereabout, and of their owne Treasurer: which with three high Spire-steeple doth welcome those that come to the towne, and did as it were emulate in workmanship, the wealthy Abbay of *Fountaines*, built within the sight of it by *Thurstin* Archbishop of *Torke*. On the one side of this Church wee saw a little College of singing men, which *Henry Bath* Archbishop of *Torke* erected: on the other side a very great mount of earth called *Hilston*, cast up, as they report, by the Danes. Within the Church, *Saint Wilfrides Needle*, was in our Grandfathers remembrance, very famous: A narrow hole this was, in the Crowdes or close vaulted roome under the ground, whereby womens honesty was tried: For, such as were chaste did easily passe through, but as many as had plaid false, were miraculously, I know not how, held fast and could not creepe through. The Abbay *Fountaines* aforesaid, most pleasantly seated in a right plentifull Country, and having Lead mines neere it, had the originall from twelve precise Monkes of *Torke*, who fervently, zealous, to serve God in a more strict kinde of life, forsooke their cloisters and addicted themselves to the ordinances of *Saint Bernard*. For whom, after they had reaped many Harvests of troubles, *Thurstin* Archbishop of *Torke* built this Abbay, which was acknowledged an immediate daughter of *Clarevalle*, and in a few yeeres became a mother to many others, as *Kirkstall*, *Salley*, *Meaux*, &c. I have made more willingly mention of these, because *Saint Bernard* in his Epistles so highly approved their life, and discipline.

Not

Wakeman.

Saint Wilfrides
Needle.

Not farre beneath, there standeth by *Ure* a little Towne called *Burrow bridge*, of the bridge that is made over the River: which now is built very high and faire of stone worke, but in King *Edward* the Second his time, it seemeth to have bene of wood. For, wee reade, that when the Nobles of England disquieted the King and troubled the State, *Humfrey Bohun* Earle of *Hereford* in his going over it, was at a chinke thereof thrust through the body about his groine, by a souldier lying close under the Bridge. Neere unto this Bridge Westward, we saw in three divers little fields, foure huge stones, of Pyramidall forme, but very rudely wrought, set as it were in a streight and direct line. The two Pyramids in the midst whereof the one was lately pulled downe by some that hoped, though in vaine, to finde treasure, did almost touch one another: the uttermore stand not farre off, yet almost in equall distance from these on both sides. Of these I have nothing else to say, but that I am of opinion with some, that they were Monuments of victory erected by the Romans, hard by the High Street that went this way. For I willingly overpasse the fables of the common people, who call them the *Devils Bolts* which they shot at ancient Cities and therewith overthrew them. Yet will not I passe over this, that very many and those learned men thinke they are not made of naturall stone indeed, but compounded of pure sand, lime, vitriol (whereof also they say there be certaine small graines within) and some unctuous matter. Of such a kinde there were in Rome cisternes, so firmly compact of very strong lime and sand, as *Plinie* writeth, that they seemed to be naturall stones.

Pyramides.

Devils bolts.

A little Eastward from this Bridge, *IS-URIUM BRIGANTUM* an ancient City, so called of the River *Ure* running by it, flourished in ancient times, but was rased to the very ground many ages past. Nevertheless the Village risen up neere the place, giveth testimony of the Antiquity thereof, for it is called *Ealdburgh* and *Aldborow*. But, in that very plot of ground where the said City stood, are now arable grounds and pastures, so that scarce any footing thereof doth appeare. Surely, the very credite of Writers should have had much adoe to make us believe, that this had bene *IS-URIUM*, but that *UR* is the Rivers name, the *Romane* Coinc daily digged up, and the distance according to *Antonines* account betwixt this and *York*, warranted it. For, by that *Ure* (which the Saxons afterward named *Onse* because it hath entertained *Ousburne* a little River) is gone sixteene Italian miles from hence, bee runneth through the City *EBORACUM* or *EBURACUM*, which *Prologue* in the second booke of his *Great Construction* calleth *BRIGANTUM* (if the said booke bee not corrupted) because it was the chiefe City of the *Brigantes*. *Antonine* calleth it *Caer Eborac*, the Britans *Caer Eborac*, the Saxons *Guon-pic* and *Eopon-pic*, and we at this day, *Torke*.

Is-Urium.

Aldborow.
i. Old Borow.

Eboracum;
York.

The British History reporteth, that it tooke name of King *Eborac* the Founder: yet give mee leave to deeme conjecturally, without the prejudice to others that the name *EBURACUM* is derived from nothing else but from the River *Ure*, so that it soundeth as much as by *Ure*, or along the side of *Ure*: for, even so the *EBUROVICES* in France, were seated by the River *Eure*, neere unto *Eureux* in Normandy: Semblably the *EBURONES* in the Netherlands, neere unto the river *Oure* in the Diocese of *Louvain*: and *EBLANA* in Ireland standeth hard by the river *Liffey*. This is the second City of England, the fairest in all this Country, and a singular safeguard and ornament both, to all the North parts. A pleasant place, large, and stately, well fortified, beautifully adorned as well with private as pulque buildings, rich, populous, and to the greater dignity thereto it hath an Archiepiscopall See. *Ure*, which now is called *Onse*, flowing with a gentle streame from the North part Southward cutteth it as I said in twaine, and divideth it, as it were, into two Cities, which are conjoynd with a stone Bridge, having the mightiest Arch one of them, that ever I saw.

The West part, nothing so populous, is compassed in with a very faire Wall and the River together, foure squarewise, and giveth entrance to those that come thither at one onely Gate, named *Mikel Barre*, as one would say, *The great Gate*. From which

N n n

which a long street and a broad, reacheth to the very Bridge, and the same street beset with proper houses having gardens and orchards planted on the backside on either hand, and behinde them fields even hard to the Walles, for exercise and sports. In the South angle whereof which they and the River make between them, I saw a Mount, raised, as it seemeth, for some Castle to be built upon it, called *The old Bole*, which, *William Melton* Archbishop, as wee read in the Archbishops lives, *strongly enclosed, first, with thicke planks, eighteen foote long; afterward with stone wall: yet there is nothing of all that, now to be seene.*

The East side wherein the houses stand very thicke and the streetes be narrower, in forme resembleth as it were a lencill, and is fortified also with very strong walles and on the South-East, defended with the deepe channell of *Fosse* a muddy River, which entering into the heart of the City by a blinde way, hath a Bridge over it, with houses standing upon it so close ranged one by another, that any man would judge it, to be not a Bridge, but a continued streete; and so a little lower runneth into *Onse*: where at their confluence, and meeting together, right over against the Mount that I spake of, King *William* the Conquerour in a very convenient place raised a most strong Castle to awe the Citizens. Upon which time hath now a great while without impeachment wrought his will; ever since the Englishmen fell to neglect strong Holds, as receptacles for those whose hearts would not serve to fight in open field.

On this side also toward the North-East, standeth the Cathedral Church dedicated to Saint *Peter*, an excellent faire Fabrique and a stately; neere unto which, without the Walles of the City, but yet enclosed within walles and by the River, flourished a renowned Abbay called *Saint Maries*, which *Alan* the Third Earle of Little Britaine in Armoric and of Richmund, built and endowed with rich livings: but now it is converted into the Princes house, and is commonly called *The Manour*.

Whence I should fetch the originall of *Yorke* but from the Romanes I cannot tell, seeing the Britans before the Romanes comming had no other Townes, than woods fenced with trenches and rampire, as *Cæsar* and *Strabo* unreprouvable Authors doe testifie. To say nothing therefore of King *Ebrank*, whom some men both serious and credulous, as it should seeme, have imagined out of the name of *Eboracum* (for so is *Yorke* in Latine termed) to have beene the Founder thereof: most certaine it is, that the *Sixth Legion Victrix*, which *Hadrian* there Emperour brought out of Germany over into Britaine was placed heere in Garison. And that it was a Colony of the Romanes, it appeareth both by the authority of *Ptolomee*, and *Antonine*, and also by an ancient Inscription, which I saw in a certaine Aldermans house there in these words.

M. VEREC. DIOGENES IIII VIR
COL. EBOR. IDEMQ. MORT CIVES
BITURIX. HÆC SIBI VIVUS FECIT.

As also by a peece of money coined by the Emperour *Severus*, in the reverse whereof we read.

COL. EBORACUM. LEG. VI. VICTRIX.

But

But how it is, that *Victor* in his History of the *Cæsars*, hath called *Torke* *Municipi-*um or free towne of Britaine, being, as it was a Colony, I require farther time to deliberate thereupon, unless it were, that the inhabitants of *Torke*, like as sometime the *Præcites* did choose rather from a Colony to be brought unto the state of a free-Borough. For, Colonies having, as *Agellius* writeth, lawes, customes and rights at the will of the people of Rome and not at their owne pleasure, seemed more obnoxious, and their condition not so free: whereas free Cities, such as in Latin are named *Municipia*, used rights, Lawes and orders of their owne, and the Citizens or Burgeses thereof were partakers with the people of Rome in their honourable Offices only, and bound of necessity to nothing else. No meruaile therefore, if Colonies were changed into Free Burroughs. But to what end stand I upon this point? This difference of the name is not in the story of the Emperours so exactly observed, but that one and the selfe same place is called both a Colony, and a *Municipium*, or Free City. Howbeit out of that peece of money I dare not constantly affirme, that *Severus* first conducted and planted this Colony, seeing that *Ptolomee* and *Antonine* himselfe writeth it was the seat of the sixth Legion in the *Antonines* time. But we read that *Severus* had his Palace in this City, and heere at the houre of death gave up his last breath with these words: *I entered upon a state every where troublesome, and I leave it payable even to the Britans.* His body was carried forth here to the funeral fire by the soldiers, after the military fashion, and committed to the flames, honoured with jousts and Turnements of his souldiers and his owne sonnes, in a place beneath this City Westward neere to *Ackham*, where it is to be seene a great Mount of earth raised up, which as *Ranph Niger* hath recorded, was in his time, of *Severus*, called *Sivern*. His ashes being bestowed in a little golden pot, or vessell of the Porphyrite stone, were carried to Rome, and shined there in the Monument of the *Antonines*. At which time there was in this City the Temple of *Goddess Bellona*. For, *Spartianus* speaking of *Severus* and this very City, saith thus, *When Severus returned and came into the City, purposing to offer sacrifice, he was led first of all to the Temple of Bellona, by the order of a mystical Augur or Soothsaying Priest.* At which time the Tribunal or Justice Hall of this City was in this respect most happy, because therein sat to minister justice that Oracle of the law, *Æmilius Paulus Papinianus*, as *Forcatus* witnesseth. And from this place it was, for certaine, that *Severus* and *Antoninus* Emperours being consulted in a case or question of Right, gave forth their Imperiall constitution *Dei Vindicatione*. An hundred yeeres or thereabout after the death of *Severus*, *Fl. Valerius Constantinus* surnamed *Chlorus*, an Emperour surpassing in all vertue and Christian piety, who came hether *When the Gods*, as the Panegyrist saith, *called him* *to the inmost entry and doore of the earth*, ended his life also in this City and was deified, as we may see by ancient Coines. And albeit *Florilegus* recorderh, that his Tombe was found in Wales, as I have said; yet men of credite have enformed me, that in our fathers remembrance, when Abbaies were suppressed and pulled downe, in a certaine Vault or crowdes or a little Chappell under the ground wherein *Constantinus* was supposed to have beene buried, there was found a Lampe burning: for, *Lacinus* writeth, that in ancient time they preserved light in Sepulchres, by resolving gold artificially into a liquid and fatty substance, which should continue burning a long time and for many ages together.

This Emperour begat of his former wife *Helena* CONSTANTINE THE GREAT, THE DELIVERER OF ROME CITY, as ancient inscriptions give testimony, THE FOUNDER OF PEACE, AND THE REPAIRER OF THE COMMON WEALTH: Who was present in *Torke* at his fathers last gaspe, and forthwith proclaimed Emperour, The souldiers, as the Panegyricall Oratour saith, regarding rather the good of the State, than private affections, cast the purple robe upon him, whiles hee wept and put spurs to his horse, to avoid the importunity of the Army attempting and requiring so instantly to make him Emperour: But the happinesse of the State overcame his modestie. Whence it is that the Author of the Panegyricall oration crieth out in these words, O fortunate Britaine and now blessed above all lands, which first sawest *Constantine Emperour*.

Nnn 2

Hence

That Victor
whom Andrew
Scotforth
of late.

Severus

The Temple
of Bellona.

L.I.C.
Constantine

Constantine
the Great.

Vincensii Speculum
Bistori-
ale.

Scotland in
times past,
subject to the
Archbishop
of Yorke.

See in Scot-
land.
A Library.
Elycus Ale-
winus or Al-
binus flouri-
shed anno. 730.

Hence it may be gathered, in what, and how great estimation Yorke was in those daies, seeing the Romane Emperours Court was there held. For, our owne Country Writers record, that this City was by *Constantinus* adorned and graced with an Episcopall See: But yet, that *Taurinus* the Martyr Bishop of *Eureux* sat heere and governed, I will not say as others doe. For, *Vincensius* out of whom they sucked this error, would by his owne words convince me of untruth. But when the Romane were departed and had left Britaine for a prey to barbarous Nations, this City fore afflicted with many calamities, suffered her part also of miseries, and was little or nothing better about the end of the Scottish or Saxons Warres, than a poore small shadow of a great name. For, when *Paulinus* preached Christian Religion to the English Saxons in this Country, it lay so desolate, that there remained not so much as a Chappell in it, for King *Edwin* to be baptized in. Who in the yeere after Christs Birth 627. built a little Oratory of wood: and when as afterward he went in hand with building a greater Church of stone, scarce had he laid the foundation thereof, when he was prevented by death and left it to be finished by his Successour *Oswald*. Ever since that time, the Ecclesiasticall Dignity in this Church encreased, and by a Pall sent unto it from *Honorius* the Pope, became a Metropolitan City; which beside twelve Bishopricks in England, exercised the power of a Primate over all the Bishopps of Scotland. But many yeeres since, Scotland withdrew it selfe from this her Metropolitan: and the Metropolitan City it selfe hath so devoured other Bishopricks adjoining, being but little to say truth and of small account, that it hath now but foure within the owne Diocese, namely, the Bishopricks of *Durham*, of *Chesster*, of *Carlisle*, and of *Man*, or *Soderensis* in the Isle of *Man*. And the Archbishop *Egbert*, who flourished about the yeere of our Salvation 740. erected at Yorke, *A most famous Library, the Cabinet as I may so terme it* (these be the words of *William* of *Malmesbury*) and *Closet of all liberall Arts*. Touching which Library, *Alwin* of Yorke Schoolemaster to *Charles* the Great, first Founder of the University of *Paris*, and the onely Honour of this City, in an Epistle to the said *Charles* wrote thus. *Give mee the bookes of deeper and more exquisite scholasticall learning, such as I had in mine owne Country by the good and most devout industry of the Archbishop Egbert. And if it please your wisdom, I will send backe some of your owne servants, who may exemplifie out of them all those things that be necessary, and bring the flowers of Britaine into France, that there may not be a Garden of learning enclosed onely within Yorke walls, but that streames of Paradise may be also at Townes.*

Then also it was that Princes bestowed many and great livings and lands upon the Church of Yorke, especially *Ulphus* the sonne of *Toral* (I note so much out of an old booke, that there may plainly appeare a custome of our ancestour in endowing Churches with livings). *This Ulphus* aforesaid ruled in the West part of *Deira*, and by reason of the debate that was like to arise betwene his sonnes the elder and the younger, about their Lordships and Signories after his death, forthwith hee made them all alike. For, without delay hee went to Yorke, tooke the borne with him out of which hee was wont to drinke, filled it with wine, and before the Altar of God and blessed Saint Peter Prince of the Apostles, kneeling upon his knees hee dranke, and thereby enfeoffed them in all his lands and revenues. Which borne was there kept as a monument (as I have heard) untill our fathers daies.

I might seeme to speake in derogation of the Clergy, if I should report what secret heart-burnings, or rather open enmities flashed out betwene the Archbishops of Yorke and of Canterbury upon worldly ambition; whiles with great wast of their wealth, but more losse of their credite and reputation, they bickered most eagerly about the Primacy. For, the Church of Yorke, as he writeth, (inferiour though it were unto that of Canterbury in riches) yet being equall in dignity, albeit of later time founded: and advanced on high with the same power that Canterbury hath, confirmed also with the like authority of Apostolicall Priviledges, took it ill to be subject unto that of Canterbury by vertue of a Decree of *Alexander* of Rome, who ordained, That the Church of Yorke ought to be subject unto Canterbury, and in all things to obey the constitutions of the Arch-

Archbishop thereof, as Primate of all Britaine, in such matters as appertaine to Christian Religion. Concerning the Archbishops of Yorke, it is no part verily of my purpose to write any thing heere, although there bee very many of them who deserve for their vertue and piety to be renowned. Let it suffice to note in a word, that from *Paulinus* the first Archbishop, consecrated in the yeere of our Redemption 625. there have sitten in that See threecore and five Archbishops, unto the yeere 1606. in which *D. Tobie Matthew* a most reverend Prelate, for the ornaments of vertue and piety, for learned eloquence, and continuall exercise of teaching, was translated hither from the Bishopricke of *Durham*.

The sixty sixth
Archbishop.

This City for a time flourished very notably under the English Saxons dominion, untill the Danes like a mighty storme thundring from out of the North-East, defaced it againe with merveilous great ruines, and by killing and slaying disteined it with blood, which, that *Alcuine* aforesaid in his Epistle to *Egelred* King of Northumberland may seeme to have prefiged before. *What signifieth* (saith he) *that raining of blood which in Lent we saw at Yorke the head City of the whole Kingdome, in Saint Peters Church, to fall downe violently in threatening wise from the top of the roose, in the North part of the house, and that in a faire day. May it not bee thought, that blood is coming upon the Land from the North parts?* Verily soone after it was embred with blood, and did pine away with most miserable calamities, when the Danes spoiled, wasted, and murdered all where ever they came. And verily in the yeere 867. the walls were so battered and shaken by reason of continuall Warres, that *Osbriht* and *Ella* Kings of Northumberland, whiles they pursued the Danes easily brake into the City: who being both of them slaine in a most bloody battaile in the very middest of the City, left the victory unto the Danes. Whereupon *Williams* of *Malmesbury* writeth in this manner, *Yorke, alwaies exposed first to the rage of the Northern Nations, sustained the barbarous assaults of the Danes, and groaned being pittieously shaken with manifold ruines*. But as the very same Authour witnesseth, King *Atelstone* wonne it perforce out of the Danes hands, and overthrew the Castle quite, which they had heere fortified. Neither for all this, was it altogether free from warres in the times next ensuing whiles that age ranne fatall for the destruction of Cities.

But the Normans as they ended these miseries, so they made almost a final hand of Yorke also. For, when the sonnes of *Sveno* the Dane had landed in these parts with a Danish Fleet of 240. Saile, the Normans lying in *Garison*, who kept two Forts within the City, fearing least the houses in the Suburbs might stand the enemy in stead to fill up the Ditches withall, set them on fire: but by reason the wind rose highly, the fire was so carried and spread throughout that City, that now it was set a burning, when the Danes breaking in upon them made pittifull slaughter in every place, having put the Normans to the sword, and keeping alive *William Mallet* and *Gilbert Gant* two principall persons, that they might be rithed with the souldiers. For, every tenth man of the Normans they chose out by lot, to be executed. Whereupon King *William* the Conquerour was so incensed with desire of revenge, that he shewed his cruelty upon the Citizens by putting them all to death, as if they had taken part with the Danes: and upon the City it selfe by setting it on fire afresh; and as *William* of *Malmesbury* saith, *Hee so depopulated and defaced the Villages adjoining, and the fennes of that fertile Region were so cut by the spoiles there committed and batties raised, and the ground for the space of threescore miles lay so untilled, that if a stranger had then seen the Cities that in times were of high account, the Townes which with their lofty toppes threatned the skie, and the fields that were rich in pastures, hee could not but sigh and lament, yea and if an ancient inhabitant had beheld the same, hee could not have knownne them*. How great Yorke had beene aforesaid time, *Domesday booke* shall tell you in these words. *In King Edward the Confessours time, there were in Yorke City sixe Divisions or Shires, besides that of the Archbishops. One was laid waste, for the Castles or Forts. In the five Divisions were 1428. dwelling Mansions to give entertainment: And, in the Archbishops shire or Division 200. dwelling Mansions likewise*. After these woeful overthrowes our countryman *Necham* thus verified of it.

Alfred of Be-
verley, in the
Library of the
Lord Burghley
Treasurer of
England.

Decimation, i.
Execution of e-
very tenth man.

*Vixit quam felix Eboracensis condidit urbem,
Petro se debet pontificalis apex.
Civibus hac toties viduata, novisque repleta,
Diruta prospexit mania sepe sua.
Quid manus hostilis queat, est experta frequenter,
Sed quid? nunc pacis otia longa fervent.*

The City that Great Ebrank built, I come now for to view,
Whereof the See pontificall, is to Saint Peter due.
This, many times laid, desolate, and peopled new hath beene,
Her wals cast downe and ruinate full often hath it seene.
What mischief hostile hands could worke, nor once nor twice it found,
What then? since now, long time of peace, doth keepe it safe and found.

For, in his time, when after these troublesome stormes a most pleasant calme of peace presently ensued, it rose of it selfe againe and flourishd afresh, although the Scots and Rebels both, did oftentimes make full account to destroy it. But under the Raigne of King Stephen, it caught exceeding great harme by casualty of fire, wherein were consumed the Cathedrall Church, the Abbay of Saint Mary and other religious houses: yea and that noble and most furnished Library (as it is thought) which *Aluin* hath recorded to have been founded by Archbishop *Egledred* his Preceptour. As for the Abbay of Saint Mary it quickly recovered the former dignity by new buildings: but the Cathedrall Church lay longer ere it held up head againe, and not before King *Edward* the First his time: For then, *John Roman* Treasurer of the Church laid the foundation of a new worke, which his sonne *John William Melton*, and *John T. Boreby*, all of them Archbishops, brought by little and little to that perfection and beauty which now it sheweth, yet not without the helping hand of the Nobility and Gentry thereabout, especially of the *Percies* and the *Vavasours*, which the armes of their houses standing in the very Church, and their images at the West gate of the Church doe shew, *Percies* pourtraied with a peece of timber, and *Vavasours* with a stone in their hands, for that the one supplied the stone, the other the timber for this new building. This Church as he reporteth who wrote the life of *Aeneas Sylvius*, who was Pope *Pius* the second, and that upon the Popes owne relation, For workmanship and greatnesse, is memorable over all the world, and the Chappell most lightsome, the glasse-windows whereof are fast bound betwene pillars that bee most slender in the mids. This Chappell is that most dainty and beautifull Chapter-houle, in which this verse stands painted in golden letters.

Ut Rosa flos florum, sic est Domus ista Domorum.
The floure of floures, a Rose men call:
So is this house of houses all.

About the same time also, the Citizens fensed the City round about with new walles and many towres and bulwarkes set orderly in divers places, yea and ordained very good and holisome lawes for the government thereof. King *Richard* the Second granted it to bee a County incorporate by it selfe, and King *Richard* the Third beganne to repaire the Castle. And that nothing might be wanting, King *Henry* the Eighth within the memory of our fathers, appointed heere a Councell not unlike to the Parliaments in France, for to decide and determine the causes and controversies of these North parts according to equity and conscience, which consisteth of a Lord President, certaine Counsellors at the Princes pleasure, a Secretary and under Officers. As touching the Longitude of Yorke our Mathematicians have described it to be two and twenty Degrees and twenty five Scruples: the Latitude 54. degrees and 10. scruples. Hitherto have we treated of the West part of this shire and of Yorke City, which is reckoned neither in the one part, nor the other, but enjoyeth

Commentar.
of Pope Pius.
Lib. prim.

The Councell
established in
the North.

A enjoyeth peculiar liberties, and hath jurisdiction over the Territory adjoining on the West side. Which they call the Liberty of *Ansty*, others the *Ancient* of the Antiquity, but other have derived it very probably from the Dutch word *Anstossen*, which betokeneth limits. And now for a conclusion have heere what Master *John Jonston* of *Aberden* hath but a while since written in verse, of Yorke.

*Præsidet extremis Arctoa finibus ora
Urbs vetus, in veteri facta subinde nova.
Romanis Aquilis quondam Ducibusque superba.
Quam post barbarica diripuerunt manus.
Pictus atrox, Scotus, Danus, Normannus, & Anglus
Fulmina in hanc Martis detonuere sui.
Post diras rerum clades, totque aspera fata,
Blandius aspirans aura serena subit.
LONDINUM caput est, & regni urbs prima Britannii:
EBORACUM à primâ jure secunda venit.*

In parts remote of Northren tract, there stands as soveraine,
A City old, but yet of old effloones made new againe.
Whilom of Romane Legions and Captaines proud it was:
But since by forces barbarous sacked and spoil'd, alas!
The Picts so fierce, the Scots and Danes, Normans and Englishmen,
Gainst it their bolts of dreadfull war have thundred now and then.
Yet after sundry bitter blasts, and many a cursed clap,
A milder gale of peacefull daies, hath brought it better hap.
Of British Kingdome LONDON is chiefe seat and principall;
And unto it there goes by right Yorke City next of all.

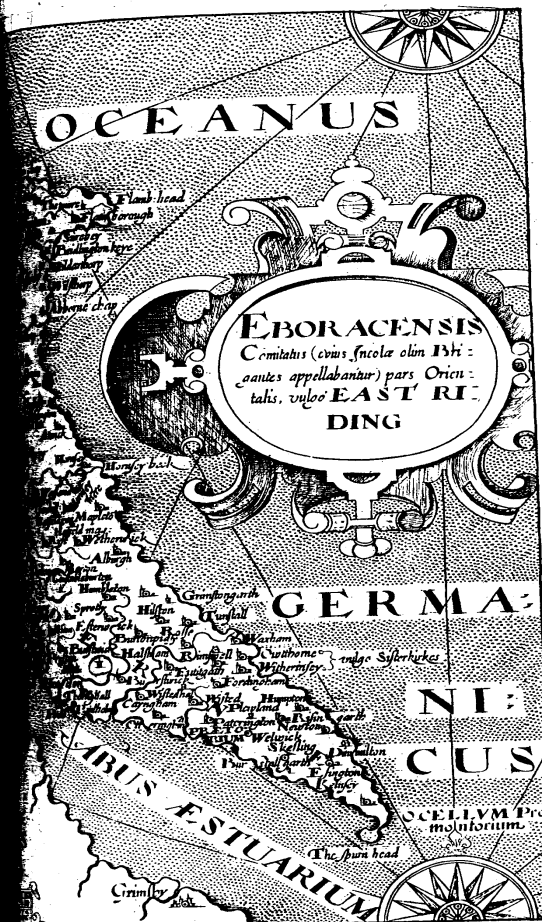
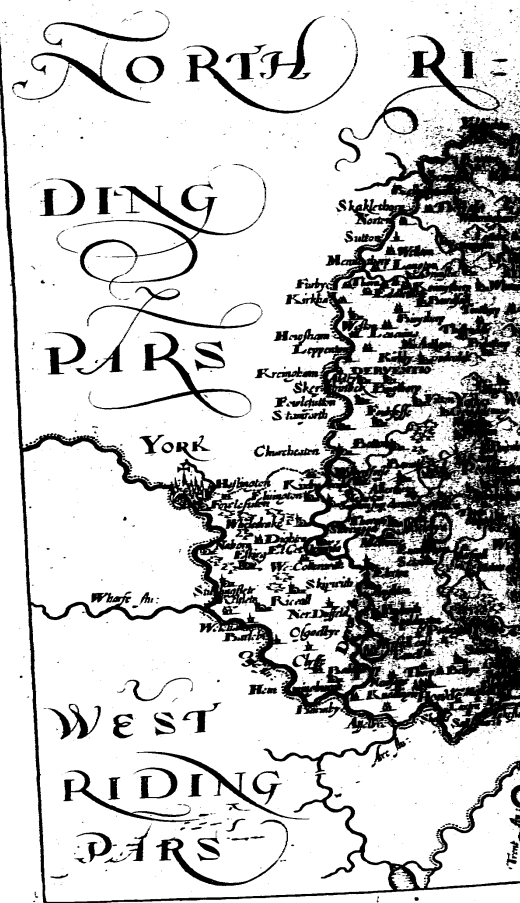
Onse now leaving Yorke, being otherwhiles disquieted and troubled with that whirling encounter of contrary waters, and forceable eddies which some call *Higra*, runneth downe through *Bishops Thorpe*, called Saint *Andrewes Thorpe*, before that *Water Grey* Archbishop of Yorke purchased it with ready money, and to prevent the Kings Officers who are wont rigorously to seize upon Bishops Temporalties when the See is vacant, gave it to the Deane and Chapter of Yorke, with this condition, that they should alwayes yeeld it to his Successours. Of whom, *Richard Le Screpe* Archbishop of Yorke, a man of a fiery spirit, and ready to entertaine rebellion, was condemned in this very place, of high Treason by King *Henry* the Fourth, against whom he had raised an insurrection. Afterward *Cawood* a Castle of the Archbishops standeth upon the same River, which King *Asbelstan*, as I have read, gave unto the Church: Just against which on the other side of the River lyeth *Ricall*, where *Harald Haardread* arrived with a great Fleet of Danes. Then *Onse* passeth hard by *Selby* a little Towne, well peopled and of good resort; where King *Henry* the First was borne, and where his father King *William* the First built a faire Abbay in memory of Saint *German*, who happily confuted that venomous Pelagian Heresie, which oftentimes (as the Serpent *Hydra*) grew to an head againe in Britaine. The Abbats of this Church, as also of Saint *Maries* in Yorke, were the onely Abbats in the North parts that had place in the Parliament house. And so *Onse* at length speedeth away to *Humber*, leaving first *Escricke* a feat of the *Lascelles* sometimes to be remembered for that King *James* advanced Sir *Thomas Knivet* the owner thereof Lord *Knivet* to the honour of Baron *Knivet* of *Escricke*, in the yeere 1607. And afterward passing by *Drax*, a little Village famous long since for a Monastery founded there by Sir *William Paimell*, and whereas *William* of *Newburgh* writeth, *Philip* of *Tollevilla* had a Castle most strongly fensed, with Rivers, Woods, and Marshes about it, which he, confident upon the courage of his followers, and his provision of victuals and armour, defended against King *Stephen*; untill it was wonne by assault.

Bishops
Thorpe.

Cawood.

L. Knivet.

EAST



EAST-RIDING.



EAST-RIDING the second part of this Region, wherein *Pro-*
lomee placed the *PARISI*, lyeth Eastward from *Yorke*. On
the North side and the West, it is bounded with the River
* *Darwent*, that runneth downe with a winding course: on
the South with the Salt water of *Humber*, and on the East
with the German Ocean. Upon the Sea side and along *Dar-*
went the Soile is meetly good and fertile: But in the mids
it is nothing else but an heape of Hilles rising up on high,
which they call *Torkes wold*. *Darwent* springing not farre from the shore, first taketh
his way Westward: then, hee windeth into the South by *Aiton* and *Malton*,
whereof, because they belong to the North part of the Shire, I will speake in due
place. No sooner is hee entred into this Quarter, but downe hee runneth not farre
from the ruines of the old Castle *Montferrant*. The Lords whereof were in times
past the *Fossards*, men of noble parentage and wealthy withall: But when *William*
Fossard Ward to the King, being committed unto *William le Grosse* Earle of *Aumarle*
as to his Guardian, and now come to his yeeres, abused his sifter, the Earle in wreck-
full displeasure for this fact of his, laid this Castle even with the ground, and forced
the young Gentleman to forsake his Country. Howbeit, after the Earles death, he
recovered his inheritance againe, and left one onely daughter behinde him: who
being marryed unto *R. de Torneham*, bare a daughter marryed to *Peter de * Mauley*: * *de Maloist*
whose heires and successours being bettered in their estate by this inheritance of the
Fossards, became great and honourable Barons. Not farre from hence is situate up-
on the River side, *Kirkham*, as one would say of Church-place: For, a Priory of
Cianons was there founded by *Walter Espec* a man of high place and calling, by
whose daughter a great estate accrewed to the family of the Lord *Roffes*. Then, but
somewhat lower, *Darwent* had a City of his owne name, which *Antonine* the Em-
perour calleth *DERVENTIO*, and placeth it seven miles from *YORKE*. The
booke of *Notices* maketh mention of a Captaine over the Company *Derventienfis*
under the Generall of Britaine, that resided in it; and in the Saxons Empire it seemeth
to have beene that Towne, where the King used to lye, which *Bede* saith, was
situate nere unto the River *Dorovensio*. In which, as hee also writeth, *Eumer*, that
murderous Villaine thrust at *Edwin* King of *Noribumberland* with a sword and had
runne him through, but that one of his men stepped betweene, and saved the Kings
life with the losse of his owne. Yet could I never have said precisely which was the ve-
ry place, had not that most judicious *Robert Marshall* given me a light thereof. For, he
gave me to understand, that just at the very same distance from *Yorke* which I spake
of, there stands hard upon the River *Darwent*, a little Towne named *Auldby*, that is,
if you interpret the Saxon word, *The old Habitation*: where, are extant yet in sight
some tokens of Antiquity, and upon a very high Hill neere unto the River, the
rubbish of an ancient Fortification, so that it cannot chuse, but to have beene the
said City *Derventio*. From hence glideth the River hard under *Stanford-Bridge*,
which also of the battaile there fought is called *Battlebridge*. For, at that Bridge, *Battlebridge*
Harald King of England, after a great execution done upon the Danes slew in a
pight field *Harald Hardread* King of Norway, who with a Fleet of 200. saile grie-
vously annoyed the Isle of Britaine, and was now landed at *Richall*, spoiling and
wasting all in his way. The King of England who having the honour of the field,
found among the spoiles such a masse of Gold, as that twelve lusty young men,
had much adoe to carry it on their backs, as *Adam Bremensis* recordeth. This
field was foughten scarce nine dayes before the arrivall of *William Conquerour*,
what time the dissolute and roiorous life of the Englishmen, seemed to forerell
their

East-riding.

Montferrant
Historie of
Meaux.

* de Maloist.

their imminent overthrow and destruction. But of this I have spoken before.

Derwent, which when it is encreased with raine, and as it were provoked to anger doth oftentimes contemne his bankes and surround the medowes lying about it, passing from hence by *Wreslil* a proper and a strong Castle, which Sir *Thomas Percy* Earle of *Worcester* built, runneth amaine under *Babthorpe*, which yeeldeth both name and habitation to a worshipfull Family of Knights degree: and so at length dischargeth himselfe into *Ouse*. Out of this stocke it was (for let us not thinke much to tell of those who performed faithfull service to their Prince and Country) that both father and sonne fighting together under the banner of King Henry the Sixth lost their lives in the Battaille of Saint *Albans*, and were there buried together with this Epitaph:

*Cum patre Radulpho Babthorpe jacet ecce Radulphus
Filius, hoc duro marmore pressus humo,
Henrici Sexti dapifer, pater Armiger ejus,
Mors satis id docuit, fidus uterque fuit. &c.*

Behold where two *Raulph Babthorps*, both the sonne and father lye,
Under a stone of marble hard, interr'd in this mould dry:
To Henry the Sixth the father Squire, the Sonne he Sewer was,
Both true to Prince, and for his sake they both their life did passe.

Howden.

And now *Ouse* by this time carrying a fuller streame, runneth neere *Banks* a Mercate Towne, famous not so much for any beauty in it, or great resort thereto, as because it hath given name to a little Territory adjoining, called of it *Howdenshire*, and had therein not long since a pretty Collegiat Church of five Prebendaries: unto which joyneth the Bishops house of *Durham* who have great lands thereabout. One of which, namely *Walter Skirlaw*, who flourished about the yeere of our Lord 1390. as we reade in the booke of *Durham*, built a very great and large steeple to this Church, that if there happened by chance any inundation, it might serve the inhabitants for a place of refuge to save themselves in. And not farre from hence stands *Metham*, which gave both surname and habitation also to the ancient house of the *Methams*.

Metham.

Abus.
Humbert.

Now the River *Ouse* being very broad, swift and roving besides, our powreth his streame into the Frith or salt water *Abus*: For so calleth *Ptolomee* that arme of the Sea, which the English Saxons and we tearme *Humber*, whereof also the Country beyond it, by a generall name was called *Northumberland*. Both these names may seeme to have beene drawne with some little change, from the British word *Aber*, which among them signifieth the mouth of a River: and I would thinke it was imposed upon this River by way of excellency: because *Ure* or *Ouse* having entertained and lodged many Rivers, carryeth them all with him along into this, yea and other Rivers of right great name are emptied into it. And verily it is one of the broadest armes of the sea and best stored with fish in all Britaine. It riseth high as the Ocean, at every tide floweth, and when the same ebbeth and returneth backe, it carryeth his owne streame and the currant of the Sea together most forcibly and with a mighty noise, not without great danger of such as saile therein, whence *Necham* writeth thus of it.

*Fluctibus aequoreis nautis suspectior Humber,
Dedignans Urbes visere vana colit.*

More fear'd of shipmen *Humber* streame, than waves of sea so deepe;
Disdaining cities great to see, neere country townes doth keepe.

And following the British History, as if it had beene so called of a King of the Hunnes, he addeth this morcover.

Hunnorum

*Hunnorum princeps ostendens terga Locrino
Submersus, nomen consulit Humbris aqua.*

A Prince of Hunnes, whiles that he shew'd his backe to Locrine brave,
Was drowned heere, and so the name, to *Humber* water gave.

Touching whom, another Poet also:

*Dum fugis, obstat ei flumen, submergitur illic;
Deque suo tribuit nomine nomen aqua.*

Whiles he turn'd backe, and tooke his flight, the River stopt the same,
There drown'd was he, and then of him the water tooke the name.

Neither were there indeed any Cities seene to stand by this Arme of the Sea in *Yghams* daies: but before and after, there flourished one or two Cities in these places. Under the Roman Empire, not farre from the banke, by *Foulnesse* a River of small account, where *Wigbion* a little Towne of Husbandry well inhabited is now seene, stood, as we may well thinke, in old time *DELGOVITIA*: and that I may not take hold of the distance from *DERVENTIO* for a proofe, both the resemblance, and the signification also of the name, doe concurre. For, *Delgo* in the British tongue signifieth *The Statues or Images of the Heathen Gods*, and in a small Village adjoining to this little Towne, there was a Temple of Idols even in the Saxons time, of exceeding great name, and request: which, of those Heathen gods was then termed *Godmundingham* and now is called in the same sense * *Gadmanham*. Neither doubt I, but that even when the Britans flourished, it was some famous Oracle much frequented when superstition spread, and swaying among all Nations had wholly possessed the weake mindes of ignorant people. But which *Paulinus* preached Christ, unto Northumberland men, *Eoy-fi*, who had beene a Pontife or Bishop of the heathen rites and ceremonies, after he had once embraced Christian Religion, first of all profaned this Temple the very habitation of impiety, by launching a speare against it, yea he destroyed it, and as *Bede* writeth, *Sti it on fire*, with all the enclosures and belonging unto it. From hence, something more Eastward, the River *Hull* beareth his course to *Humber*, which River hath his spring head neere unto *Driffield*, a Village well knowne, by reason of the Tombe of *Alfred* that most learned King of Northumberland; and the mounts that be raised heere and there about it. The said River hasteneth thitherward, not farre from *Lickenfield*, an house of the *Percies* Earles of Northumberland: neere unto which, standeth the dwelling place of a very famous and ancient Progeny of the *Hosiams* at *Schorburg*, together with the rubbish of an old Castle of *Peter Mauley* at *Garthum*. And now approacheth the River *Hull* neerer unto *Beverley*, in the English Saxon tongue called *Beuere-lega*, which seemeth to name, the Monastery in *Deirwand*, that is, *In the word of the Deir*, a great Towne, very populous and full of trade. A man would guesse it by the name and situation to be *PETUARIA PARISIORUM*, although it affordeth nothing of greater antiquity, than that *John* surnamed *de Beverley*, Archbishop of *Yorke*, a man as *Bede* witnesseth, both godly and learned, after he had given over his Bishopricke, as weary of this world, came hither, and ended his life in contemplation, about the yeere of our Redemption 721. The Kings held the memoriall of this *John* so sacred and reverend, especially King *Athelstan* who honoured him as his tutelur Saint, after he had put the Danes to flight, that they endowed this place with many and those very great privileges, and *Athelstane* granted them liberties in these generall words, *All's free make I thee, as heart may thinke, or eye may see*. Yea and there was granted unto it the privileges of a Sanctuary, so that bankrupts and men suspected of any capitall crime worthy of death, might bee free and safe there from danger of the Law. In which there was erected a Chaire of stone with this Inscription.

Bede:
* Gods Church
or habitation.

Driffield.

Beverley.

Bemasia.

The life of
John of Bever-
ley.

Pars. H. 4.

HÆC

HÆC SEDES LAPIDEA *Freedstoll*
 DICITUR. I. PACIS CATHEDRA, AD
 QUAM REUS FUGIENDO PERVE-
 NIENS OMNIMODAM HABET
 SECURITATEM.

That is,

This feat of Stone is called *Freedstoll*, that is, *The*
chairs of Peace, unto which what Offender soever
 flieth and commeth, hath all manner of security.

Heereby, the Towne grew great, and daily there flocked thither a number to dwell
 as inmates; and the Townsmen for conveyance of commodities by sea made a chan-
 nell for a water course out of the River *Hull* sufficient to carry boats and barges for
 the chiefe Magistracy there, it had twelve Wardens; afterwards Governours and
 Wardens. And now, by the gracious grant of *Queene Elizabeth*, a Major and Go-
 vernours. More Eastward, there flourished *Meaux* Abbey, so called of one *Samuel*
 borne at *Meaux* in France, who obtained it at *William* the Conquerours hands for
 a place to dwell in: and heere was founded an Abbey for the Monkes of the *Cla-*
unke order by *William Le Grosse* Earle of *Aulbarne*, to bee released of his vow that
 hee had made to visite Jerusalem. A little lower runneth out in a great length *Cot-*
tingham, a country Towne of husbandry, where by licence granted from King *John*,
Robert Estotevill the Lord thereof built a Castle now utterly fallen to ruine. Which
Robert, was descended from *Robert Grandbesse*, or *Grandebeese* a Baron of *Norman-*
dy, and a man of great name and reputation: whose inheritance fell by marriage to
 the Lord *de Wake*, and by a daughter of *John de Wake* it came to *Edmund* Earle of
Kent, who had a daughter named *Joane* wife unto that most warlike Knight *Ed-*
ward Prince of *Wales*, who so often victoriously vanquished the French in divers
 places. The River *Hull* aforesaid, after it hath passed fixe miles from hence shed-
 deth himselfe into *Humber*, and neere unto his mouth hath a Towne of his owne
 name called *Kingston upon Hull*, but commonly *Hull*. This Towne fetcheth be-
 ginning from no great antiquity: For, King *Edward* the First, who in regard of his
 Princely vertues deserveth to bee ranged among the principall and best Kings
 that ever were, having well viewed and considered the opportunity of the place
 which before time was called *Wike*, had it by right of exchange from the Abbot of
Meaux, and in lieu of the * *Beasts stals* and *sheepe pastures*, as I conceive it, which there
 he found, built a Towne that he named *Kingston*, as one would say *The Kings Towne*,
 and there, as wee read in the Records of the Kingdome, hee made an haven and *free*
Burgh, the Inhabitants thereof also, *free Burgeses*, and he granted divers liberties unto them.
 And by little and little it rose to that dignity, that for stately and sumptuous buil-
 dings, for strong block-houses, for well furnished ships, for store of Merchants and
 abundance of all things it is become now the most famous towne of merchandize in
 these parts. All which the inhabitants ascribe partly to *Michael de la Pole*, who ob-
 tained their priviledges for them, after that King *Richard* the Second had promised
 him to the honour of Earle of *Suffolke*, and partly their gainfull trade by *Island* fish
 dried and hardened which they terme *Stockfish*: whereby they gathered a maine
 masse of riches. Hence it came to passe, that within a little while, they fenced their
 City with a bricke wall, strengthened it with many Towers and Bulwarks, where it
 is not defended with the river: and brought such a deale of cobblestones for ballis to
 their ships, that therewith they have paved all the quarters and streets of the towne
 most

Hull river.

The Register
 of Meaux
 Abbey.

Cottingham.
 Estotevill.

Wake.

Kingston upon
 Hull.

Placit. Anno.
 44. Edw. 3.
 Ebor. 24.
 * Pro Vacariu
 & Berariu.

A most beautifully. For the chiefe Magistrate it had (as I have beene enformed) first a
 Warden or *Custos*: then *Bailives*, afterward a *Major* and *Bailives*: and in the end they
 obtained of *K. Henry* the Sixth that they might have a *Major* and a *Sheriffe*, and that
 the very towne should be a County, as our lawyers use to say *incorporata by itselfe*. Nei-
 ther will I thinke it much to note, although in Barbarous termes, out of the booke
 of *Meaux* Abbey, as touching the Major of this City. *William De la Pole* knight,
 was sometime a merchant at *Ravens-red*, skilfull in merchandise and inferior to no English
 merchant whatsoever. He making his abode afterwards at *Kingston upon Hull*, was the first
 Major that ever the said towne had: he began also and founded the monastery of *Saint Mi-*
chel hard by the said *Kingston*, which now is an house of the *Carthusian* or *Charter-house*
 monkes. And he had for his eldest sonne Sir *Michael De la Pole* Earle of *Suffolke*, who
 caused the said Monastery to bee inhabited by *Carthusian* Monkes. And verily *William*
De la Pole aforesaid, lent many thousand pounds of gold unto King *Edward*, whiles hee made
 his abode at *Antwerp* in *Brabant*, wherefore the King in recompence of the said gold, made
 him Lord chiefe Baron of his Exchequer, conferred upon him the whole Seignorie or Lordship
 of *Heldernes*, together with other lands belonging unto the Crown, and that by the King, *Char-*
ter, it was ordained that he should be reputed a *Baronet*. Yet if any man make doubt here-
 of, the Records I hope may satisfie him fully, in which *William De la Pole* is in plaine
 termes called *Dilectus Valerius*, or *Mercator noster*, that is, Our wellbeloved *Valerius* and
 our Merchant: now, *Valerius* to tell you once for all, was in those daies an honorable ti-
 tle as well in France as in England: but afterward applied unto servants and gromes:
 whereupon when the Gentry rejected it, by changing the name they began to bee
 called *Gentlemen of the Bedchamber*.

De la Pole.

Cl. s. E. R. 3.
 M. 28.
 Valerius or
 Valerius,
 L. Titius.

Ocellum.
 Holdernesse.

Headon.

From *Hull*, a Promontorie runneth on forward and shooteth out a farre into the
 sea, which *Protonoe* calleth *OCELLUM*, wee *Holdernesse*, and a certaine monke,
Canon *Deirum*, as it were, the hollow Country of the *Deltrians*, in the same significati-
 onist *Celogyria* is so termed, as one would say *Hollow Syria*. In this Promontory,
 the first towne wee meet with in the winding shore is *Headon*, in times past (if wee
 thinke beleeve fame that useth to amplify the truth, and which for my part I will
 not discredit) risen to exceeding great account by the industry of merchants and
 sailing men: from which (so uncertaine is the condition as well of places as of
 people) it is so much fallen by the vicinity of *Hull*, and the choking up of the haven
 which hath impoverished it, that it can shew scarce any whit of the ancient state
 it had. Although King *Town* granted unto *Baldwin* Earle of *Aulbarne* and of *Hol-*
derness, and to his wife *Flavis*, free Burghage here, so that the Burgers might hold in
 full burgage, with these customes that *Torke* and *Nichol*, that is, *Lincolne*. Yet now
 it is almost by little and little to revive againe, in hope to recover the former
 glory.

Here standeth hard by the Promontorie, an ancient town, which *Antonine* the
 Emperour called *PRAETORIUM*, but we in our age *Parrington*: like as the Italians
 have changed the name of a town sometime called *Pratorium*, into *Petrovina*.
 The I doe not mistake herein, both the distance from *DELGOVITIA*, and the very
 name yet remaining doth prove: which also in some sort implieth, that this is the
 straitme that in *Protonoe*s copies is written *PETVARIA* corruptly for *Pratorium*.
 In whether this name were given it, either from *Pratorium*, that is the hall of Justice,
 as from some large and stately house such as the Romans termed *Pratoria*, it doth
 not appeare for certaine. The inhabitants glorie much yet as touching their Anti-
 quity and the commodiousnesse of the haven in ancient times: and they may
 small glorie for the pleasantnesse thereof. For, it hath a most delectable pro-
 spect: on the one side lieth the maine sea brimming upon it, on the other *Humber*
 famous arme of the sea; and over against it the fresh and greene skirres of *Lin-*
colne. The high way of the Romans from the *Picts* wall which *Antonine*
 the Emperour followed, here endeth. For, *Ulpian* hath written, that such high waies
 commonly end at the sea, at rivers, or at Cities.

Pratorium,
 Parrington.

Some what lower standeth *Wimbor*, the habitation of the *Billicards* knights of an-
 cient

Winsted,
Barons de
Rosse.

Ravenstun and
Ravenburg.
Kelsy.

Sisters Kirkes.
Constable.

Sinus salutaris.
Sueby.

Gabrantovici.

Flamborough-head.

Flamborough.

Constable de
Flamborough.

cient descent: and higher into the Country, *Rosse*: from whence the honorable family of the Barons *Rosse* tooke their name, like as they were seated there in times past: and hard by the sea-side, *Grimstons-garth*: where the *Grimstons* for a long time have lived in good reputation: and a little from hence standeth *Rife*, the mansion house in old time of certaine noble men bearing the name of *Falconberg*. And then, in the very necke of the promontorie, where it draweth in most narrow into a sharpe point, and is called *Spurn-head*, is *KELNSEY* a little village: which plainly sheweth that this is the very *OCELLVM* mentioned by *Ptolomee*: for, as from *OCELLVM* *Kelnsy* is derived: so *Ocellum* doubtlesse, was made of *T-kil*, which as I have said before signifieth in the British tongue a Promontory or narrow necke of land.

From *Spurn-head*, the shore withdraweth it selfe backe by little and little, and gently bending inward shooteth Northward by *Overborne* and *Withensy* two little Churches, called of the sisters that built them *Sisters kirks*: and not farre from *Constable-Burton*, so called of the Lords thereof, who being by marriages linked to right honorable houses, flourish at this day in great worship: and out of which familie Robert (as wee read in the booke of the Abbey of *Meaux*: was one of the Earle of Aulbemarls knights, who being aged and full of daies took upon him the Crosse and went with King Richard in his voiage toward the holy land. Then, by *Stuffy*, which *Dru* the first Lord of *Holderness* fortified with a Castle. When the shore beginneth to spread againe and beare out into the sea, it maketh roome for a bay or creeke, that *Ptolomee* calleth *EYAIMENON GABRANTOVICORUM*, which the Latin Interpreters have translated, some *PORTUOSVM SINVM*, that is, the harbours Creeke: others, *SALVTAREM*, that is, the safe Creeke. But neither of them both better expresseth the nature of the Greeke word, than the very name of a little village in the nouke thereof, which wee call *Sueby*. For, that which is safe and sure from danger, the Britans and French men both, terme *Scur*, as wee Englishmen (*sure*) who peradventure did borrow this word from the Britans. There is no cause therefore, why we should doubt, but that this creeke was that very *EYAIMENON* of the *GABRANTOVICI*, who dwelt thereabouts. Hard by, standeth *Bridlington* a towne very well knowne by reason of Iohn of *Bridlington* a poetically monkish prophet whose ridiculous prophesies in Rhime I have read albeit they were not worth the reading. And not farre from hence, for a great length toward *Driffeld*, was there a ditch cast up and brought on by the Earles of *Holderness*, to confine and bound their lands, which they called *Earles Dyke*. But whence this little nation here inhabiting were named *GABRANTOVICI*, I dare not search, unless happily it were of goates which the Britans tearme *Gassian*, and whereof there is not greater store in al Britain than hereabouts. Neither ought this derivation of the name to seeme absurd, seeing that *Aegira* in Achaia borroweth the name of goates, *Nebrodes* in Sicily of fallow Deere, and *Bacotia* in Greece, of Kine and Oxen. That little Promontory which with his bent made this creeke, is commonly called *Flamborough head*, and in the Saxon tongue *Fleam-burg* by Authors, who write that *Ida* the Saxon, who first subdued these Countries, arrived here. Some think it took the name from a watchtowre which did by night put forth a flame or burning light: for so direct failers into the haven. For, the Britans retain yet out of the provincially language this word, *Flam*: and Mariners paint this creeke in their sea-cards with a blazing flame on the head. Yet others are of opinion, that this name arrived in this Island with the English out of *Anglen* in Denmarke, the ancient seat of the English nation: for, there is a towne called *Flemsburg*, and that the Englishmen from hence called it so: like as the Gaules, as *Livie* witnesseth, tearmed *Mediolanum*, that is, *Milan*, in Italie, after the name of *Mediolanum* in Gaule, which they had left behinde them. For, there is a little village in this Promontory named *Flamborough*, where an other notable house of the *Constables* had anciently their seat, which some doe derive from the *Lacies* Constables of Chester. Being in these parts I could learne nothing for all the enquire that I made, as touching the bournes commonly called

Vippe

Vippeys waters.

Vippeys, which (as *Walter* of *Heminburgh* hath recorded) flow every other yeere out of blinde springs and runne with a forcible and violent streame toward the sea nere unto this Promontory. Yet take here with you, that which *William Newbrigenis* who was borne nere that place writeth of them. *Those famous waters which commonly are called Vippeys, rise out of the earth from many sources not continually, but every second yeere, and being growne unto a great bourn runne downe by the lower grounds into the sea. Which when they are dry, it is a good signe: for, their breaking out and flowing is said to bee an infallible token portending some dearth to ensue.*

From thence the shore is drawne in, whereby there runneth forth into the sea a certaine shelve or flang, like unto an out-thrust tongue, such as Englishmen in old time termed a *File*, whereupon the little village there *Filey* tooke name: and more within the land you see *Flixton*, where, in King *Athelstan*s time was built an *Hospital*, for the defence (thus word for word it is recorded) of way-faring people passing that way from *Wolves*, least they should be devoured. Whereby it appeareth for certaine, that in those daies *Wolves* made foule worke in this Tract, which now are no where to be seene in England, no not in the very marches toward Scotland; and yet within Scotland there be numbers of them in most places.

This little territory or Seigniori of *Holderness*, King *William* the First gave to *Drugh Buerer* a Fleming, upon whom also he had bestowed his Niece in marriage; whom when hee had made away by poison and thereupon fled to save himselfe, hee had to succeed him *Stephen* the sonne of *Odo*, Lord of *Aulbemarle* in Normandy who was descended from the Earles of Champagne: whom King *William* the First because hee was his Nephew by the halfe sister of the mothers side, as they write, made Earle of *Aulbemarle*: whose posterity in England retained the Title, although *Aulbemarle* be a place in Normandy. His successeur was *William* surnamed *Le Grosse*: whose onely daughter *Avia* was married to three husbands one after another, namely to *William Magnavill* Earle of *Essex*, to *Baldwine De Beson*, and *William Fortis*, or *de Fortibus*, by this last husband onely shee had issue *William*, who also had a sonne named *William*. His onely daughter *Avellin*, being the wedded wife of *Edmund Crouchbacke*, Earle of *Lancaster*, dyed without children. And so, as wee read in the booke of *Meaux* Abbey, for default of heires, the Earldome of *Aulbemarle* and honour of *Holderness*, were seized into the Kings hands. Howbeit in the ages ensuing King *Richard* the Second created *Thomas of Woodstocke* his Unkle, and afterwards *Edward Plantagenet* Earle of *Rutland*, the Duke of *Torkes* sonne, Duke of *Aulbemarle*, in his fathers life time: likewise King *Henry* the Fourth made his owne sonne *Thomas*, Duke of *Clarence* and Earle of *Aulbemarle*: which Title King *Henry* the Sixth afterward added unto the stile of *Richard Beauchamp* Earle of *Warwicke*, for the greater augmentation of his honour.

Earles of Aulmarle and Holderness.

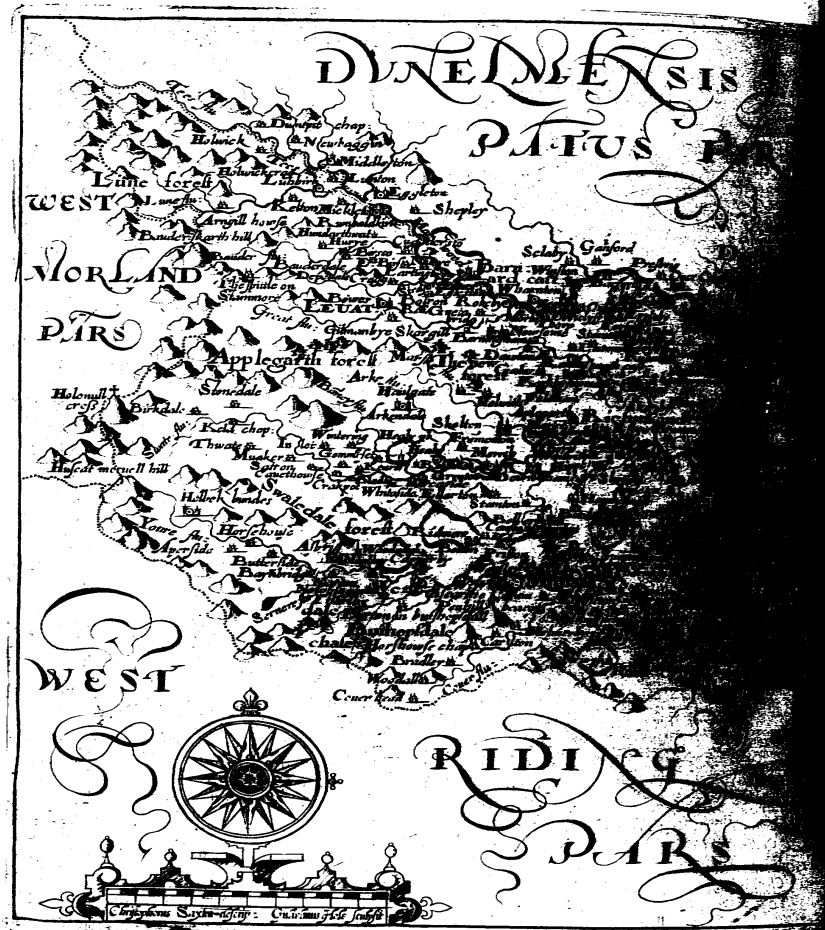
Fitz. Odo. An ancient Genealogy or pedigree.

Craffus.

Gibbosus.

0002

NORTH-



NORTH-RIDING.

Scarce two miles above *Flamborough-head*, beginneth the NORTH-RIDING or the North part of this Country, which affronting the other parts, and beginning at the Sea, is stretched out Westward, and carrieth a very long Tract with it (though not so broad) for threescore miles together, even as farre as to *Westmorland*: limited on the one side with *Derwent*, and for a while with the River *Ure*, on the other side with *Tees* running all along it, which on the North Coast separateth it from the Bishopricke of *Durham*. And very fitly may this part bee divided into, *Blackamore*, *Cliveland*, *Northallerton-shire*, and *Richmond-shire*.

That which lyeth East, and benderth toward the Sea is called *Blackamore*, that is, *The blacke moorish land*: For it is mountainous and craggy. The Sea coast thereof, hath *Scarborough Castle*, for the greatest ornament a very goodly and famous thing, in old time called *Sceap-burgh*, that is, *A Burgh upon the Scar, or Steepe Rocks*. The description whereof have heere out of *William of Newburgh* his History. *A Rocke of a wonderfull height and bignes, which by reason of steepe craggess and cliffes, almost every side is inaccessible, beareth into the Sea; wherewith it is all compassed about, save onely a certaine streight in manner of a gullet, which yeeldeth accessse, and openeth into the West: having in the toppe a very faire, Greene, and large Plaine containing about threescore acres of ground or rather more; a little Well also of fresh water springing out of a stony Rocke. In the foresaid gullet or passage, which a man shall have much ado to ascend up unto, standeth a stately and Princelike Towre: and beneath the said passage beginneth the City or Towre, spreading two sides South and North, but having the fore part Westward: and verily it is fenced afront with a wall of the owne: but on the East fortified with the rocke of the Castle: and both the sides thereof are watered with the Sea. This place William le Grosse, Earle of Aulbemarle and Holdernesse viewing well, and seeing it to bee a convenient plot for to build a Castle upon, helping Nature forward with a very costly worke closed the whole plaine of the Rocke with a Wall, and built a Towre in the very streight of the passage: which being in processe of time fallen downe, King Henry the Second caused to bee built in the same place a great and goodly Castle; after hee had now brought under the Nobles of England, who during the loose government of King Stephen had consumed the lands of the Crowne: but especially amongst others, that William abovesaid of Aulbemarle, who had in this Tract ruled and reigned like a King, and possessed himselfe of this place as his owne.*

Touching the most project boldnesse of *Thomas Stafford*, who to the end hee might overthrow himselfe with great attempts, with a few Frenchmen surpris'd this Castle of a sudden in Queene *Maries* Raigne and held it for two daies together, I neede not to speake: ne yet of *Sherleis*, a Gentleman of France, who having accompanied him, was judicially endited and convict of high treason, albeit he was a forainer, because hee had done against the duty of his Allegaunce, the peace then betwene the Kingdome of England and of France being in force. These are matters better knowne than that the World can take notice of them by any writings of mine. Yet may this seeme a thing worth my labour and expedient, to note, how the Hollanders and Zelanders use to take marvellous plenty of herrings (call them in Latin *Halteres*, *Leucomenides*, or *Chalcides*, which of them you please) upon this coast, and make a very gainfull trade thereof, having anciently first obtained licence by an ancient custome, out of this Castle. For the Englishmen granted licence to fish, referring the honour to themselves, but resigning for lazinesse, as it were, the profit unto strangers. For, it is almost incredible, what infinite summes of money the Hollanders raise unto themselves by this their fishing in our shore.

The gainfull fishing for Herrings.

See Diet 144.

These Herrings (pardon me I pray you if briefly by way of digression I doe make mention of Gods goodnesse towards us) which in our great grandfathers dayes kept as it were their station onely about Norway: now in our time not without the divine Providence, swimme yeerely round about this Isle of Britaine by skulles in wonderfull great numbers. About Midsummer they shoole out of the deepe and vast Northren-sea to the coasts of Scotland, at which time because they are then at the farrest, they bee streightwaies sold: Thence come they to the English East coast, and from the middest of August unto November, is the best and most plentiful taking of them betweene *Scarborough*, and *Tamis* mouth.

Afterwards by force of some great storme, they are carried into the British sea, and there untill Christmas offer themselves to the fishers nettes; from hence dividing themselves and swimming along both sides of Ireland, after they have coasted round about Britaine, they take their course into the Northren Ocean, as their home, and there settle themselves as it were and rest untill June: where after they have cast their spawn and brought forth a yong fry, they returne againe in mighty great skulles and so march about these Isles. Whiles I am writing hereof, that comes into my minde which sometimes I read in Saint *Ambrose*. *Fishes* (saith hee) *by infinite numbers, meeting, as one would say, by common consent out of many places from sundry creekes of the Sea, with a joint flote, as it were, make toward the blaises of the Northwinde, and by a certaine direction and instinct of Nature haile into that Sea of the Northren parts.* A man that saw the manner of them would say a certaine tide were comming downe from the current, they rush so forward and cut the waves, as they passe, with a violent power, through *Propontis* into *Pontus Euxinus*. But to my matter againe.

From thence, the shore indented and interlaced with rockes, bendeth in, as farre as to the River *Teise*, and by a compasse that the said shore fetcheth, there is made a Bay about a mile broad, which of that Outlaw *Robert Hood*, so much talked of, wee call *Robin Hoods Bay*. For hee (as *John Major* the Scottishman writeth) flourished in the Raigne of *Richard* the First; and the said Authour setteth him out with this commendation, that *Hee was indeed an Arch-Robber but the gentlest of these that ever was*. Then *DUNUS SINUS*, a creeke mentioned by *Ptoleme* streightwaies by giving backe of the shore on both sides sheweth it selfe; neere unto which standeth *Dunlesley* a little village, and hard by it, *Whitby*, in the English Saxon tongue *Stapeaner-heale*; which *Beda* expoundeth to bee, *The Bay of a Watch-Tower*. Neither will I call that interpretation into question, although in our language it doth resemble *Sinum Salutis*, that is, *The Bay of health*; so, that I would say this very same was *Salutaris Sinus*, that is, *The Bay of safety*, but that the situation in the Geographer did perswade me otherwise. Heere are found certaine stones fashioned like Serpents folded and wrapped round as in a wreath even the very pastimes of Nature disporting her selfe: who, as one saith, when shee is wearied as it were with serious workes, forgeth and shapeth some things by way of game and recreation. A man would thinke verily they had bene sometime Serpents, which, a coat or crust of stone had now covered all over. But people too credulous ascribe this to the Praiers of Saint *Hilda*, as if shee had thus transformed and changed them: who in our Primitive Church withstood to her power the shoring and shaving of Priests, and the celebration of Easter according to the order of Rome, when a Synode was held touching these matters in the yeere of our Lord 664. in the Abbey which shee had built in this place, and whereof herselfe was first Governesse. Unto whose holinesse also they ascribe, that those wilde Geese, which in Winter time flye by flockes unto Pooles and Rivers that are not frozen over, in the South parts; whiles they flye over certaine fields heere adjoyning, suddenly fall downe to the ground, to the exceeding great admiration of all men: a thing that I would not have related, had I not heard it from very many persons of right good credit. But such as are not given to superstitious credulity, attribute this unto a secret propriety of this ground, and to an hidden dissent between this soile and those geese, such

Hexameron.
lib. 5. cap. 10.

The River
Teise.

Robbin Hoods
Bay.

Dunum.

Dunlesley.
Whitby.

Stony Serpents
of Hildas.

Geese falling
downe.

such as is betweene wolves and Squilla rootes. For provident Nature hath infused such like secret mutuall combinations, and contrarieties, which the learned tearme *Sympathies* and *Antipathies*, as all men acknowledge, for their preservation. Afterwards *Edelfleda* King *Oswins* daughter enriched this Abbay with most large revenues, where also shee solemnized her fathers funerall obsequies. But at length the Danes robbing and spoiling where ever they came, utterly overthrew it: and although *Serie Percie* reedified it, being immediately upon the comming in of the Normans head-ruler of the same, yet now it scarce affordeth any footing at all of the ancient dignity. Hard by, upon a steepe hill, howbeit betweene two others higher than it, toward the Sea, stood by report, the Castle of *Wada* a Saxon Duke, who in that confused Anarchy of the Northumbers, and massacre of Princes and Nobles, having combined with those that murdered King *Eisbered*, gave battaile unto King *Ardulph* at *Whalley* in *Lancashire*: but with so disastrous successe, that after his owne power was discomfited and put to flight, himselfe was faine to flie: and afterwards by a languishing sicknesse ended his life; and heere within the hill betweene two entire and solid stones about seven foote high lieth entombed: which stones because they stand eleven foote asunder, the people doubt not to affirme, that hee was a mighty Giant. Neere unto this place, long time after, *Peter de Maloulay* built a Castle, which being full as it were of grace and beauty he named in French *Mouli-Grace*, as wee read in the History of *Mauley*, but because it became a most grievous yoke unto the neighbour Inhabitants, the people masters alwaies of our usuall speech, by change of one letter termed it *Mouli-grave*, by which name although the reason thereof be not so well knowne, the world takes knowledge of it. This *Peter de Mololacu*, commonly called *Mauley* (that I may in this point satisfie the curious) borne in *Poitou* in France, married the onely daughter of *Robert de Turnham*, in the Raigne of King *Richard* the First: in whose right he entred upon a very great inheritance heere: after whom succeeded in order seven *Peters* called *Lords Mauley*: who give for their Armes *A Bend Sables in an Eschocheon Or*. But when the seventh dyed issuelesse, this the Manours of *Dancaster*, *Bainton*, *Bridefalle*, &c. were parted by the sisters, betweene the families of the *Salvains* and *Bigots*. Neere unto this place, as elsewhere in this shore, is found blacke Amber or *Geate*: Some take it to be *Gagates*, which in old time they held to be one of the rare gems and precious stones. It groweth among the cliffes and rockes, where they chinke and gape asunder. Before it be polished, it is of a reddish and rusty colour: but after it be once polished, it becommeth, as saith *Solinus*, as a Gemme of a bright radiant blacke colour. Touching which, *Rhemnius Palamon* out of *Dionysius* after thus verifieth:

*Præfulget nigro splendore Gagates.
Hic lapis ardescens austro perfusus aquarum,
At oleo perdens flammam, mirabile visu
Astritus rapit hic teneras seu succina frondes.*

The *Geat* is blacke and shineth passing bright,
Which Stone in water dipt and drencht, takes fire and burneth light:
In oile, a wonder for to see, the flame is quickly done,
And like to Amber rub it hard, small stickes it catcheth soone.

And *Marbodanus* in his little booke of precious stones,

*Nascitur in Lycia lapis, & prope gemma Gagates,
Sed genus extremum sacunda Britannia mittit,
Lucidus & niger est, levius & levisimus idem:
Vicina paleas irabit astritus calefactus,
Ardes aqua lotus, restinguitur unctus oliva.*

Duke Wade
from whom the
families of the
Wades derive,

* Mauley;

Mouli grave
Castle.

Barons of
Mauley.

Geat
Gagates;

* Others are of
opinion that
our pit cole or
stone cole was
the old *Gaga-
tes*.

Geat

Geat is a Stone, and Gemme well nere, that men in *Lycia* finde,
But fruitfull Britan yeelds the best simply of all that kinde.
Of colour blacke, yet bright it is, most smoothe and light withall;
Well rubbed and enchauf'd thereby, thin strawes and sescues small
That are neere hand it drawes thereto: it burnes in water drenchr,
Annoint the same with fatty oile, the flame streighwaies is quenchr.

Heare also what *Solinus* saich; *In Britaine there is great store of Gagates, or Geat, and an excellent stone it is: If you demand the colour, it is a bright radiant blacke: if the quality, it is in manner nothing weighty: If the nature, it burneth in water, and is quenched with oile: if the vertue, being made hote with rubbing, it holdeth such things as are applied thereto.* From *Whitby* the shore gives backe Westward: by which lyeth *Cleveland*, taking that name as it seemeth of steepe bankes, which in our language wee call *Cliffes*; for, there runne all along the side thereof cliffie hilles; at the foote of which, the country spreadeth into a Plaine full of fertile fields.

Upon the shore, *Sken* grave a little Village is much benefited by taking great store of fish: where also, by report, was caught a Sea-man about 70. yeeres since, that for certaine daies together fed of raw fishes: but espying his opportunity escaped away unto his proper element againe. Whensoever the windes are laied, and that upon still weather the sea is most calme, and the water lieth as one would say leuell and plaine without any noise: there is heard heere many times on a sudden a great way off, as it were, an horrible and a fearefull groning: at which time the fishermen dare not launch out farre into the deepe, as beleeving according to their shallow reach, that the Ocean is a fell and cruell beast, and being then very hungry desireth greedily in that sort to devour mens bodies. Beneath *Sken-grave*, is situate *Kilton Castle* within a Parke, which belonged sometime to the habitation of the *Thwengs*, whose patrimony descended to the Barons of *Lumley*, *Hilton*, and *Daubeneie*: And there joyneith almost close unto it *Skelson Castle*, appertaining to the ancient family of the Barons *Brus*, who derive their descent from *Robert Brus* the Norman. The said *Robert* had two sonnes, *Adam* Lord of *Skelson*, and *Robert* of *Anan-dale* in Scotland: from whom is descended the royall stem of Scotland. But *Peter Brus* the fifth Lord of *Skelson* died without issue, and left his sisters to inherite: namely *Agnes*, wife to *Walter Falconberg*: *Lucie*, wedded to *Marmaduke Thweng*, of whom is come the Baron *Lumley*: *Margaret*, married to *Robert Ros*; and *Laderina* to *John Belle-eau*, men in that age of honourable reputation. The heires successively of *Walter Falconberg* flourished a long time; but in the end by a female, the possessions came to Sir *William Nevill*, who was a redoubted Knight for martiall prowesse, and by King *Edward* the Fourth advanced to the title of Earle of *Kent*. And his daughters were bestowed in marriage upon Sir *John Cogniers*, *N. Bedbowing*, and *R. Strangwaies*.

Neere unto *Hunt-cliffe*, and not farre from the shore there appeare aloft at a vale water certaine Rockes, about which the fishes that wee call *Seales*, short (as some thinke) for *Sea-veales*, meete together in droves to sleepe and sunne themselves: and upon that rocke which is next unto the shore, there lieth one, as it were to keepe the Centinell: and as any man approacheth neere, he either by throwing downe a big stone, or by tumbling himselfe into the water with a great noise, giveth a signall to the rest to looke unto themselves and get into the water. Most afraid they bee of men: against whom when they chafe them, they being destitute of water sling backward with their hinder feete a cloud, as it were, of sand and gravell stones, yea and often times drive them away: For women they care not so much: and therefore whosoever would take them, use to bee clad in womens apparell. In the same coast are found stones, some of yellowish, others of a reddish colour, and some againe with a rough cast crust over them of a certaine salt matter, which by their smell and taste make shew of Coperose, Nitre, and Brimstone: and also great store of Marquesites in colour resembling brasle.

Hard by, at *Huntly Nabb*, the shore that lay for a great way in length open, riseth

now

Cleveland.

Brius of Skel-ton.

Barons Falcon-berg.

now up with craggy rockes, at the rootes wherof there lie scattering here and there stones of divers bignesse, so artificially by nature shaped round in maner of a Globe, that one would take them to be big bullets made by the turners hand for shot to bee discharged out of great ordinance. In which, if you breake them, are found stony serpents enwrapped round like a wreath, but most of them are headles. Then see you from thence *Wilton Castle*, sometime the *Bulmers*: and above it at *Dobham* the river *Tees* voideth into the Sea after it hath lodged sundry rivers, and at the last one that is namelesse, beside *Tare* a mercate towne well knowne, which river watereth *Stokesley*, a little mercate towne, likewise that hath a long time appertained to the Noble family of *Enre*. Beneath which places, *Wharston Castle* belonging in times past to the Barons *Menill*, and *Harlsby* to the family of *Hosham* and afterward to *Stragwaies*, now wrestle with old age, and hardly hold up their heads.

The mouth of *Tees* aforesaid, suspected in times past of sailers, is now found to be a sure road and harbour: and to give direction for safe access and entrance unto it, there are erected on both sides thereof within our remembrance high turrets with light. Foure miles from this *Tees* mouth, standeth *Gisburgh* on high; now a small towne, but whiles it stood in flourishing estate, it was right glorious for a very fine and rich Abbay, built by *Robert de Brus*, Lord of the place, about the yeere of our Salvation 1119, and for the common buriall place of all the gentry and nobility in this tract; which also brought forth *Walter de Heminsford* no unlearned Historiographer. This verily is a passing good place, and may well for pleasantnesse, delightome variety, and rare gifts of Nature, contend with *Puteoli* in Italy, which in regard of healthy situation it also farre excelleth. The aire is mollified and made more mild by the mountaines seated betweene it, and what way the sea yeeldeth a cold and wintry disposition: the soile fruitfull and plenteous in grasse affordeth delectable flowers a great part of the yeere, and richly aboundeth with vaines of metall and *Alum*-earth of sundry colours, but especially of ocher and murray, likewise of iron, out of which they have now begonne to try very good *Alum*, and *Coperose*. Which with learned skill and cunning not many yeeres since, Sir *Thomas Chaloner* Knight (a learned searcher into natures workes, and unto whose charge, our most high and mightie King hath committed his son Prince Henry, the lovely joy and delight of Britaine) first discovered, by observing, that the leaves of trees were of a more weak greene colour here than in other places, that the oakes had their rootes spreading broad but very ebb within the ground, the which had much strength but small store of sappe, that the earth standing upon clay, and being of divers colours, whitish, yellowish, and blew, was never frozen, and in a cleere night, glittered in the pathes like unto glasse. Not farre off, *Onusbery* or *Rosebery Topping* mounteth up a mighty beight, and maketh a goodly shew a farre off, serving unto sailers for a marke of direction, and to the neighbour inhabitants for a prognostication: For, so often as the head thereof hath his cloudy cap on, lightly there followeth rain: whereupon they have a Proverbiall Rhime, when *Rosebery Topping* weares a cap: Let *Cleveland* them be woe a clap. Neere unto the top of it, out of an huge rocke there floweth a spring of water medicinable for diseased eyes: and from hence there is a most goodly and pleasant prospect downe into the vallies below lying a great way about, to the hills full of grasse, greene meddowes, delightfull pastures, fruitfull corne fields, riverets stored with fish, the river *Tees* mouth full of rodes and harbours, the ground plaine and open without danger of inundation, and into the sea with ships therein under saile. Beneath it, standeth *Kildale*, a Castle of the *Fercies* Earles of Northumberland: and more Eastward *Danby*, which from *Brus* also by the *Thwengs* came unto the Baron *Lamier*, from whose heire descended the *Willoughbbies*, Barons of *Brooke*. But this *Danby* with other possessions was sold to the *Nevills*, of which family Sir *George Nevill* was by King Henry the sixth called among the Barons to the Parliaments, under the name of Lord *Lamier*, in whose progenie and posterity this dignity hath continued unto our daies. There remaineth nothing else heere for me to note, but that the Barons *Menill* held certaine lands in this shire of the Archbishops of *Canterbury*,

Yare, Stokesley.

Gisburgh;

Onusbery hill or Rosebery Topping.

The History of Canterbury.

Prærogative
Reg. 17. Ed. 1.

terbury, and for the same, the *Coigniers*, *Strangwaies* and *Darcies*, descended from them, are bound to performe certaine service to the said Archbishops. And whereas the King of England by his Prærogative shall have the Wardship (these bee the very words of the Prærogative) of all their lands who hold of him in chiefe by Knights service, of which themselves as tenants shall be seized in their Demesne as of Fee, the day wherein they die, of whomsoever they held by the like service, so that themselves notwithstanding hold of the King any tenement of the ancient demesne of the Crowne, unto the full and lawful age of the heire: Yet are excepted these Fees and others of the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Bishop of Durrham, betwene Tine and Tees, &c. so that they may have the Wardship of such lands, although elsewhere they held of the King.

Farther within the country among the mountaines of *Blaca amore*, there offereth it selfe (besides wandering beakes and violent swift brookes, which challenge the vallies every where, as their owne to passe through) no memorable thing, unless it be *Pickering*; a good bigge towne belonging to the Dutchy of Lancaster, situate upon an hill and fortified with an old Castle, unto which a number of small villages lying there round about doe appertaine: whereupon the country adjoining is commonly called *Pickering Lib*, *The Liberte of Pickering*, and *Forest of Pickering*, the which King Henry the Third gave unto his younger sonne Edmund, Earle of Lancaster. Wherein, neere unto the river *Derwent* standeth *Atton*, that gavenam unto the right noble family of the *Attons* Knights, descended from the Lords *Vesey*: the inheritance of which family, was by the daughters parted betwene Edward Saint *John*, the *Evers*, and the *Coigniers*. Now from Edward Saint *John* a great portion thereof came by a daughter to Henrie *Bromflet*. Which Henrie verily was summoned to the High court of Parliament by these expresse termes, elsewhere not to be found in Summons. *Our Will is, that both yee and your heires males, of your body lawfully issuing, be Barons of Vesey*. Afterwards, that title passed away by a daughter to the *Cliffords*. On the other side, foure miles from *Pickering*, neere unto *Daw*, a swift running river, lieth *Kirkby-Marside* hard unto the hilles, whereof it had that name, a Market towne not of the meanest reckoning, and the possession sometime of the *Esstowilles*.

Behind these, Westward, *Rhidal* lieth low, a goodly, pleasant and plentiful vale adorned with three and twenty Parish-churches, through the mids whereof runneth the river *Rhie*: A place (as saith William of *Newbarrough*) *wast, desolate*, and full of *horrou*, before that Walter *Espec* had granted it to the Monkes of the *Cluniac* order, and founded there an Abbey. In this vale is *Elmesly* seated, which, if I deceive not my selfe, *Bede* called *Vimetum*; where, that Robert called *de Rosse*, surnamed *Farsan* built a Castle; nere unto which the river *Recall* hideth it selfe under the ground. More beneath, hard by the river side standeth *Riton*, an ancient possession of the ancient familie of the *Percibaires*, commonly named *Percies*. From thence *Rhie* carrieth with him the streames of many a brooke into *Derwent*, which watereth in this vale *Malton* a Market towne well knowne and frequented, for corne, horses, fish, and implements of husbandry: where are to be seene the foundations of an old Castle, belonging, as I have heard say, in old time to the *Vesies*, Barons in these parts of great estate and honor. Their pedigree as appeareth evidently by the Kings records, is derived from William *Tyson*, who being Lord of *Malton* and of *Alnewicke* in Northumberland, was slain in the bataille at *Hastings* against the Normans. Whole onely daughter was given in marriage to *Ivo de Vesey* a Norman, and hee left behind him his onely daughter likewise named *Beatrice*, with who *Eustach* the son of *Fitz John* * with one eie contracted marriage, who in the raigne of Stephen founded the religious houses at *Malton*, and *Watton*. For, his second wife daughter to William, Countable of *Chester*, was Ladie of *Watton*. William the sonne of *Eustach* by *Beatrice*, being ripped out of his mothers wombe, assumed unto him the name of *Vesey*, and the Armes, a *Cross floury Argent*, in a *Shield Gules*. This William begat of *Beatrice* daughter to Robert *Esstowill* of *Knaresburg*, two sonnes, *Eustach de Vesey*, who tooke to wife Margaret daughter to William King of the Scots, and Sir *Warin de Vesey* Lord

27. Hen. 6.
Bromflet
Lord Vesey.

Ætæria 8.
Edw. 2. n. 63.
Barons Vesey

* Monowill.

Lord of *Knapton*. As for *Eustach*, father hee was of William, who begat John, that died without issue, and William, so renowned for his exploits in Ireland; and these changed the Armes of their house, into a shield Or with a crosse Sables. But William, after that his legitimate sonne John, died in the warre of Wales, granted unto King Edward certaine lands in Ireland, that his illegitimate sonne William surnamed of *Kildare*, might inherit his fathers estate. And hee ordained Anthony *Bee* Bishop of Durrham his feoffee in trust to the use of his sonne: but he was scarce trusty as touching *Alnewick*, *Eltham* in Kent, and other lands; which he is reported to have conveyed indirectly to his owne use. This illegitimate sonne young *Vesey* was slain in the Bataille of *Sterling* in Scotland. And at length the title fell backe unto the line of the *Attons*, considering that Margaret the only daughter of Sir *Gwarin Vesey* was wedded unto *Gilbert de Atton*. But, heereof enough if not too much, and of it I have spoken before. Neere unto this vale there flourished two famous Abbacies, *Newbarrough* (unto which we are indebted for William of *Newbarrough*, a learned and diligent writer of the English Historie) now, the habitation of the worshipfull family of *Bellasisse*, descended out of the Bishopricke of Durrham: and *Bellisland* commonly *Biland*, both founded and endowed by Robert *Monbray*. This family at the *Monbraies* was for power, nobility, and wealth comparable to any other, and possessed very faire lands with the Castles of *Slingsby*, *Threske*, and others in this tract. The originall of this race if you desire to understand, I will compendiously let it downe. When Roger de *Monbray* Earle of Northumberland, and R. * de *Grundeberse* for their disloialtie were diseized of all their possessions, King Henry the First bestowed a great part thereof upon Nigell, or Nicle de *Albenie* of the same family that the *Albenies* Earles of Arundell were descended; a man of very high birth in Normandie, who had bin Bowbearer to King William *Rufus*: and so enriched him thereby, that he held in England 140. Knights fees, and in Normandie 120. He commanded also that Roger his sonne should assume the name of *Monbray*: from whom flowed out the *Monbraies* Earles of Nottingham, and Dukes of Norfolk. To these *Monbraies* also belonged in times past *Gilling Castle* standing hard by: but now unto that ancient and worshipfull family, which of their faire bush of haire got their name *Fairfax*. For *Fax* in the old English tongue signifieth haire, or the haire of the head: whereupon our progenitours called a Comet or blasing starre, *A Faxed Harre*, like as a place, whereof I have spoken before, *Haly-fax*, of holy haire.

Then beneath these, Southward, lieth *Calaterrum Nemus*, commonly called, *The Empt of Galtrés*, shaded in some places with trees; in other some a wet flat, full of moist and moorish quavemires: very notorious in these daies by reason of a solemne horse running, wherein the horse that outrunneth the rest hath for his prize a little golden bell. It is almost incredible what a multitude of people conflow hither from all parts to these games, and what great wagers are laid on the horses heads for their swift running. In this Forest standeth *Creac*, which Egfrid King of Northumberland in the year 684. gave with three miles round about unto Saint *Cuthbert*: by whom it came to the Church of Durrham. Scarce foure miles hence is situate most pleasantly among little woods and groves *Sherry-Hatton*, a very proper Castle built by Sir *Bertrand Bulmer*, and reedified by *Raulph Nevil*, the first Earle of Westmorland. Neere unto which standeth *Hinderskell* a little Castle, built by the Barons of *Greyflocke*, which others call *Hunderd-skell*, of a number of fountaines that spring up and rise there.

Behind the hilles Westward, where the country spreadeth it selfe out againe into a more fresh and plaine champion, lieth *Aborton-shire*, commonly called *Northalston-shire*, a little cuntry watered with the river *Wike*, and taking the name of *Northalston* a towne, sometime called *Calpeproun*, which is nothing else but a long broad street; howbeit, having in it on S. Bartholomewes day the greatest Faire of Kine and Oxen, and of most resort, that ever I saw in all my life. King William *Rufus* gave this with the territory adjoining unto the Church of Durrham, to the Bishops of which See it is very much beholden. For, William *Comin* who by force held the

The Vesties
coate of Armes,
March, Paris,
M. S.

Monbraie.

In other places
he is named De
Fronte-bovis.

The Register
of Fountaines
Abbey.

Fair-fax.
Fax.

A solemne
Horse-running.

North-Al-
ston shire.

Bishopricke

Cap. 126.

Bataile of
Standard.

Bishopricke of Durrham, built the Castle there, and granted it unto his nephew, which now is in manner quite decayed and gone. The Bishops likewise his successors granted unto it certain liberties and immunities. For, in the Booke of Durrham we read that *Hugh Pudsey Bishop of Durrham fortified the towne, having obtained licence of the King, that among those unlawfull castles, which by Commandement were then destroyed in many places of England, this onely should have the privilege to stand still: which notwithstanding, the King commanded afterward to be layd even with the ground.* Hard by this, was that field foughten, which they commonly call the *Bataile of the Standard*: in which, David King of Scots, who with his unexampled cruelty had made this country almost a wilderness, was after so great a slaughter of his people put to flight; that then and never before our countrymen thought they were fully revenged. For, that indeed came to passe in this battaile, which Raulfe the Bishop said, when before the battaile in an oration he encouraged the English to fight: *A confused multitude restrained, is an impediment to its selfe, in prosperous successe to hurt others; and in adverse fortune, so escape is selfe.* This was called *The battaile of the Standard*, because the English keeping themselves close together about the standard received the first onset and shock of the Scottish, endured it, and at length put them to flight. And this *Standard* as I have seene it pictured in ancient bookes, was a mighty huge chariot supported with wheeles, wherein was set a pole of a great height in manner of a mast, and upon the very top thereof stood a crosse to bee seene, and under the crosse hung a banner. This when it was advanced was a token, that every one should prepare himselfe to fight, and it was reputed as an holy and sacred altar that each man was to defend with all power possible, resembling the same for all the world that *Carrociom* of the Italians, which might never be brought abroad but in the greatest extremities and danger of the whole state.

Within this little shire also, *Threske*, commonly called *Thruke* is worth to be mentioned: which had sometime a most strong Castle out of which *Roger Mowbray* displayed his banner of rebellion, and called in the king of Scots to the overthrow of his owne native Country: what time as King Henry the Second had rashly and inconsiderately digged, as it were, his owne grave, by investing his sonne King, in equall authority with himselfe. But this rebellion was in the end quenched with blood, and this Castle quite dismantled: so that beside a ditch and rampire, I could see nothing there of a Castle. Another firebrand also of rebellion flamed out here in the Raigne of Henry the Seventh. For when the unruly Commons tooke it most grievously that a light subside granted by the States of the Kingdome in Parliament, was exacted of them, and had driven away the Collectors thereof, forthwith (as it is commonly seene that Rashnesse speeding once well can never keepe a meane nor make an end) they violently set upon *Henry Percie*, Earle of Northumberland, who was Lieutenant of these parts, and slew him in this place: and having *John Egremont* to be their leader, tooke armes against their Country and their Prince: but a few daies after they felt the smart of their lawlesse insolency grievously and justly as they had deserved. Heere hard by are *Sourby* and *Brakenbake*, belonging to a very ancient and right worshipfull family of the *Lafelles*: also more Southward *Stray*, sometime of the *Darvells* (from whence a great family branched) and afterwards the *Darvies* who for a long time flourished heere maintaining the degree and dignity of Knights right worthily.

The first and onely Earle of Yorke (after *William Mallet*, and one or two *Ethenevils* of the Norman blood, who they say were Sheriffes by inheritance) was *Otho* son to *Henry Leo* Duke of *Bevar* and Saxony, by *Maud* the daughter of Henry the Second, King of England, who was afterwards proclaimed Emperour and stiled by the name of *Otho* the fourth. From whose brother *William*, another sonne of *Maud*, are descended the Dukes of Brunswicke and Luneburgh in Germanie, who for a token of this their kinned with the Kings of England give the same Armes that the first Kings of England of Norman blood bare, to wit two Leopards or Lions Or, in a shield Gules. Long after, King Richard the Second created Edmund of *Langley*, fifth sonne

Earle of
Northumber-
land slaine by
Rebells.Earles and
Dukes of
Yorke.

sonne of King Edward the Third, Duke of Yorke: who by a second daughter of Peter King of Castile and of Leon had two sonnes. Edward the eldest, in his fathers life time, was first Earle of Cambridge, afterwards Duke of Aumarle, and in the end Duke of Yorke; who manfully fighting in the battaile at Agincourt in France lost his life, leaving no children: and Richard his second sonne Earle of Cambridge, who having married Anne sister of Edmund Mortimer, whose grandmother likewise was the onely daughter of Leonell Duke of Clarence, and practising to advance Edmund his wives brother to the royall dignity, was streightwaies intercepted and beheaded, as if hee had bene corrupted by the French to destroy King Henry the Fifth.

Earle of
March.

Sixteene yeeres after, his sonne Richard, was restored in blood through the exceeding, but unadvised favour of King Henry the Sixth: as being sonne to Richard Earle of Cambridge brother to Edward Duke of Yorke, and cozin also to Edmund Earle of March. And now being Duke of Yorke, Earle of March and of Ulster, Lord of Wigmor, Clare, Trim, and Conaght, hee bare himselfe so lofty, that shortly hee made claime openly in Parliament, against King Henry the Sixth, as in his owne right, for the Crowne: which he had closely affected by indirect courses before in making complaints of the misgovernment of the State, spreading seditious rumours, scattering Libels abroad, plotting secret Conspiracies, and stirring up tumults, yea and open Warres: laying downe his Title thus, as being the sonne of Anne Mortimer, who came of Philip the daughter and sole heire of Leonel Duke of Clarence, third sonne of King Edward the Third, and therefore to be preferred by very good right, in succession of the Kingdome, before the children of John of Gaunt the fourth sonne of the said Edward the Third. And when answere was made unto him, that the Nobles of the Realme and the Duke himselfe had sworne Allegiance unto the King, that the Kingdome by authority of Parliament had bene conferred and entailed upon Henry the Fourth and his heires; that the Duke claiming his Title, from the Duke of Clarence never tooke upon him the Armes of the Duke of Clarence, that Henry the Fourth held the Crowne in right from King Henry the Third; hee easily avoyded all these allegations: namely, that the said oath unto the King taken by mans law was in no wise to bee performed, when as it tended to the suppression of the truth and right, which stand by the Law of God: That, there was no need of Parliamentary authority to entaile the Crowne and Kingdome unto the Lancastrians, neither would they themselves seeke for it so, if they had stood upon any right thereunto. As for the Armes of the Duke of Clarence which were his by right hee forbore of purpose to give them untill then, like as hee did, to claime his right to the Imperiall Crowne: And as for the right or Title derived from King Henry the Third, it was a meere ridiculous devise and manifest untruth to cloake the violent usurpation of Henry the Fourth, and therefore condemned of all men. Albeit these plects in the behalfe of the Duke of Yorke stood directly with law: yet, for remedy of imminent dangers the matter was ordered thus by the wisdom of the Parliament: That Henry the Sixth should enjoy the right of the Kingdome for terme of life onely and that Richard Duke of Yorke should be proclaimed heire apparent of the Kingdome, he and his heires to succeed after him: provided alwaies, that neither of them should plot or practise ought to the destruction of the other. Howbeit the Duke immediately was transported so headlong with ambition, that hee went about to preoccupate and forestall his owne hopes, and so hee raised that deadly Warre betweene the Houses of Yorke and Lancaster, distinguished by the white and red Rose, wherein himselfe soone after lost his life at Wakefield, King Henry the Sixth was four times taken Prisoner, and in the end deposed both of his Kingdome and life. Edward Earle of March sonne to the said Richard, obtained the Crowne, and being deposed from the same, recovered it againe (thus inconstant fortune disposed herselfe, lifting up and throwing downe Princes at her pleasure) many Princes of the royall blood, and a number of the Nobility lost their lives: those

Parliament. 10.
Hen. 6.Out of the
Rols of the
Parliament. 39.
of Hen. the 6.Warre between
the House of
Lancaster and
Yorke, or the
red Rose and
the white.

See pag. 570.

1604.

hereditary and rich Provinces in France belonging to the Kings of England were lost, the wealth of the Realme wholly wasted, and the poore people thereof overwhelmed with all manner of misery. Edward now being established in his royall Throne, and in the ranke of Kings carrying the name of Edward the Fourth, gave unto Richard his second sonne the Title of Duke of Yorke, who together with king Edward the Fifth his brother was by their Unkle Richard the Third murdered. Then king Henry the Seventh granted the same Title unto his younger sonne, who afterwards was crowned king of England by the name of Henry the Eighth. And even now of late King James invested Charles his second sonne (whom before, hee had created in Scotland Duke of Albany, Marquesse of Ormond, Earle of Ross and Baron of Ardmarch) a childe not full foure yeeres of age, Duke of Yorke, by *clinture of a sword, imposition of a Cap and Coronet of gold upon his head, and by delivering unto him a verge of gold*: after he had according to the order with due complements made the day before, both him and eleven more of Noble Parentage, Knights of the Bath.

Reckoned there are in this County Parishes 459. under which be very many Chappels, for number of Inhabitants equall unto great Parishes.

RICH.

RICHMOND-SHIRE.



HE rest of this Country which lyeth toward the North-West and carryeth a great compasse, is called *Richmond-shire*, or *Richmount-shire*, taking the name from a Castle, which Alan Earle of little Britaine had built: unto whom William the Conquerour gave this Shire (which before time belonged to Eadwin an Englishman) by these short letters Patents as it is set downe in the booke of *Richmond Fees*. I William firmameil Bastard, King of England, doe give and grant unto thee my Nephew Alane Earle of Britaine, and to thine heires for ever, all and every the Manour houses and lands which late belonged to Earle Eadwin in Yorke-shire, with the Knights fees and other liberties and customes, as freely and in as honourable wise, as the said Eadwin held the same: Given at our Leaguer before the City of Yorke.

He was his sonne in law.

This Shire most of it lieth very high, with ragged rockes and swelling mountaines, whose sloping sides in some places beare good grasse, the bottomes and valleys are not altogether unfruitfull. The hilles themselves within, are stored with lead, pit-coale, and Coper. For, in a Charter of king Edward the Fourth, there is mention made of a Mine or Delfe of Copper, neere unto the very towne of Richmond. But covetousnesse, which driveth men even as farre as to hell hath not yer pierced into these hilles, affrighted perchance with the difficulty of carriage: whereas there have bene found in the tops of these mountaines, as also in other places stones like unto sea winkles or cockles and other sea fish, if they be not the wonders of nature, I will with Orosius a Christian Historiographer deeme them to be undoubted tokens of the generall deluge that surrounded the face of the whole earth in Noahs time. When the Sea (saith he) in Noahs daies overflowed all the earth, and brought a generall flood, so that the whole Globe thereof, being therewith surrounded and covered, there was one face, as of the Firmament, so also of the Sea. The soundest Writers most evidently teach, That all mankind perished, a few persons excepted, who by vertue of their faith were reserved alive for offspring and propagation. Howbeit even they also have witnessed that some there had bene, who although they were ignorant of the times past, and knew not the Author himselfe of times, yet gathered conjecturally as much by giving a guesse by those rough stones, which we are wont to finde on hilles remote from the Sea, resembling Cockles and Oysters, yea and sometimes eaten in hollow, with the waters.

Copper, lead, and stone-cole, or pit-cole.

Some cockles and winkles.

Where this Country bordereth upon Lancashire, amongst the mountaines it is in most places so waste, solitary, unpleasant, and unsightly, so mute and still also, that the borderers dwelling thereby have called certaine Riverets creeping this way, *Hell-beckes*. But especially that, about the head of the River Ure, which having a Bridge over it of one entire stone fallen downe such a depth, that it striketh in a certaine horror to as many as looke downe. And in this Tract there be safe harbors for Goates and Deere, as well red as fallow, which for their huge bignesse with their ragged and branching hornes are most sightly.

Hell-beckes.

The River Ure, which wee have often spoken of before, hath his fall heere out of the Westernne Mountaines, and first of all cutting through the middelt of the Vale called *Wensedale*, whiles it is yet but small as being neere unto his Spring-head, where great flockes of Sheepe doe pasture, and which in some places beareth Lead stones plentifully, is encreased by a little River comming out of the South called *Baint*, which with a great noise streameth out of the Poole *Semer*. At the very place where these Rivers meete, and where there stand a few small Cottages which of the first Bridge made over Ure, they call *Bainbrig*, there lay in old time a Garison of the Romanes: whereof the very Reliques are at this day remaining. For, on the toppe of an hill, which of a Fort, or *Burge* they now call *Burge*, appeare the groundworkes of an ancient Hold, containing about five acres

Wensedale.

of ground in compasse; and beneath it Eastward, many tokens of some old habitation and dwelling places. Where, amongst many other signes of Roman Antiquity, I have seene of late this fragment of an antique Inscription in a very faire letter, with *Winged Victory* supporting the same.

IMP CAES. L. SEPTIMIO
PIO PERTINACI AUGU.
IMP CAESARI. M. AURELIO
APIO FELICI AUGUSTO.

The name of
Geta raised out.

BRACCHIO CAEMEN-
TICIUM VINERVIO-
RUM SUBCURALA SE-
NECINON AMPLISSI-
MIO PERIL. VISPIUS
---PR AELEGIO.---

Bracchium.

By this we may guesse, that the said hold at *Burgh*, was in times past named *BRACCHUM*, which before time had been made of turf, but now built with stone and the same layed with good mortar. Also, that the sixth Cohort of the *Nervians* lay there in Garrison who may seeme to have had also their place of Summertime in that high hill hard by, fenced with a banke and trench about it, which now they tearme *Esbelbury*. And not long since, there was digged up the Statue of *Aurelius Commodus* the Emperour: who, as *Lampridius* writeth, was firnamed by his flaring clawbackes, *BRITANNICUS*, even when the Britans would have elected an Emperour against him. And then it may seeme, was this Statue of his set up, when he prizing himselfe more than a man, proceeded to that folly, that he gave commandment he should be called, *The Romane Hercules*, *Jupiters sonne*. For, hee was portrayed in the habite of *Hercules*, and his right hand armed with a club: under which there lay, as I have heard, such a mangled Inscription as this, broken here and there with void places betweene: the draught whereof was badly taken out, and before I came hither was utterly spoiled.

The statue of
Emperour
Commodus.

---CAESARI. AUGUSTO
MARCI AURELII FILIO
SEN. IONIS AMPLISSIMI
VENTS PIUS.

The

This was to be seene in *Nappa*, an house built with turrets, and the chiefe seat of the *Medcalfs*, thought to be at this day the greatest family for multitude of the same name, in all England: for, I have heard that Sir Christopher *Medcalf* knight, and the top of this kindred being of late high-Sheriffe of the shire, accompanied with three hundred men of the same house all on horsback and in a livery, met and received the Justices of *Assizes*, and so brought them to Yorke. From hence runneth *Ure* downe a maine, full of *Cressfishes*, ever since Sir Christopher *Medcalf* in our remembrance brought that kinde of fish hither out of the South part of England: and betwene two rockes, whereof the place is named *Att-scarr*, it runneth head long downe, not far from *Bolton*, a stately Castle, the ancient seat of the Barons *Scropes*, and which *Richard Lord le Scrope*, and Chancellour of England under king *Richard* the Second built with exceeding great coste: and now bending his course Eastward, cometh to *Middleham*, the honour, whereof (as wee reade in the Genealogie or Pedegree of the *Nevils*) *Alan* Earle of Richmond bestowed upon his younger brother *Rinebald*, with all the lands, which before their coming belonged to *Gilpatrick* the Dane. His nephew by his sonne *Raulph*, named *Robert Fitz-Raulph*, had all *Wensdale* also by gift of *Conan* Earle of Britaine and of Richmond: and at *Middleham* raised a most strong Castle. His sonne *Rannlph* erected a little Abbey for Chanons at *Coverham* (called now short, *Corham*) in *Coverdale*: whose sonne *Raulph* had a daughter named *Mary*, who being wedded to *Robert Lord Nevill* with this marriage, translated this very faire and large inheritance as her portion into the family of *Nevils*. Which *Robert Nevill* having had many children by his wife, was taken in adultery unknowne; and by the husband of the adulteresse: being for revenge bereft of his genitours, shortly after dyed with extremity of paine.

Then *Ure* after it hath passed a few miles forward watereth *Iorval* or *Iorvalle* Abbey of Cisterians founded first at *Fors*, and after translated hither by *Stephen* Earle of Britaine and Richmond, but now wholly ruined; and after that, *Masham*, which was the possession of the *Scropes* of *Masham*; who as they sprung from the stocke of the *Scropes* of *Bolton*, so they were by marriages ingrafted againe into the same. On the other side of this River but more inward standeth *Snath*, the principall house of the Barons *Latimer*, who derived their noble descent from *George Nevill*, younger sonne of *Raulph Nevill* the first Earle of Westmorland, and he received this Title of honour from king Henry the Sixth, when as the ancient house of the *Latimers* expired in a female, and so by a continued succession they have flourished unto these our daies: when for default of male issue of the last Baron *Latimer*, that goodly and rich inheritance was divided among his daughters, married into the families of the *Perches*, *Cecils*, *D'auvers* and *Cornwallis*. Neither are there any other places in this part of the shire worth the naming that *Ure* runneth by, unlesse it bee *Tanfeld*, the habitation in times past of the *Gernegans* knights: from whom it descended to the *Marmions*: the last of whom left for his heire *Amice* second wife to *John Lord Grey of Rotherfeld*: by whom he had two sonnes; *John* that assumed the surname of *Marmion* and died issuelesse: and *Robert* who left behinde him one onely daughter and sole heire *Elizabeth*, wife to Sir Henry *Fitz-Hugh*, a noble Baron.

After this, *Ure* entertaineth the River *Swale*, so called (as *Th. Spot* writeth) of his swiftnesse, unlading it selfe, into it with a maine and violent streame: which *Swale* runneth downe Eastward out of the West Mountaines also, scarce five miles above the head of *Ure*: a River reputed very sacred amongst the ancient English, for that in it, when the English Saxons first embraced Christianity, there were in one day baptized with festivall joy by *Paulinus* the Archbishop of Yorke, above tenne thousand men, besides women and little children. This *Swale* passeth downe along an open Vale of good largeness, which of it is called *Swal-dale*, having good plenty of grasse, but as great want of wood: first, by *Marrick*, where there stood an Abbey, built by the *Askes* men in old time of great name: also by *Mash*, a place full of lead ore.

Then runneth it through *Richmond*, the chiefe towne of the Country, having but a small

The great fa-
mily of the
Medcalfs.

Cressfishes.

Bolton Castle.
Barons le
Scrope.

Middleham.

Lords of
Middleham.

Genealogia
antiqua.
Coverham.

Masham.

Snath.
Barons Lat-
imer.

Tanfeld.

Marmions;
Inq. 6. H. 6.

Swale a sacred
River.

See pag. 136.

Marrick.

Richmond.

Gilling.

Ravenstith.
Barons Fitz-
Hugh.Catarractio-
nium.
Catarrick;Catarrick
bridge.

a small circuit of walles, but yet by reason of the Suburbs lying out in length at three Gates well peopled and frequented. Which, *Alan* the first Earle thereof built, reposing small trust in *Gilling* (a place or Manour house of his hard by) to withstand the violence of the Danes and English, whom the Normans had despoiled of their inheritance, and hee adorned it with this name, as one would say, *The rich Mount*: he fenced it with a wall and a most strong Castle, which being set upon a rocke, from an high looketh downe to *Swale*, that with a mighty rumbling noise rusheth rather than runneth among the stones. For, the said house or Manour place of *Gilling* was more holy in regard of devout religion, than sure and strong for any fortification it had, ever since that therein (*Beda* calleth it *Geibling*) *Oswy* King of Northumberland being entertained guest-wife, was by his hoste forelaid and murdered: for the expiation whereof, the said Monastery was built, highly accounted of among our ancessours. More Northward, *Ravenstith* Castle sheweth it selfe compassed with a good large wall, but now fallen, which was the seat of the Barons named *Fitz-Hugh*, extracted from the ancient line of the English Nation: who were Lords of the place before the Normans Conquest, and lived in great name unto King Henry the Seventh his daies, enriched with faire possessions by marriage with the heires of the noble houses of *Furneaux*, and *Marmion*: which came at last by the females unto the *Flemes* Lords *Dacres* in the South, and to the *Parrs*. Three miles beneath *Richmond*, *Swale* runneth by that ancient City which *Ptolomee* and *Antonine* call *CATARRACTONIUM* and *CATARRACTON*, but *Bede* *Catarractan*, and in another place, the Village neere unto *Catarracta*: whereupon I suppose it had the name of *Catarracta*, that is, a *Flood-fall*, or *water-fall*, considering hard by there is such a fall, but neerer unto *Richmond*, where, *Swale* rusheth rather than runneth as I have said with foaming waters, meeting heere and there with rockes, whereby his streame is interrupted and broken. And wherefore should he call it the Towne neere unto *Catarracta*, if there were not there a water-fall? That it was in those daies a most famous City may be gathered out of *Ptolomee*: because he tooke there an observation of the heavens position: for, in the second booke and 6. chapter of his *Great Cosmographie*, he describeth and setteth downe the 24. Parallele, through *Catarractonium* in Britaine, and maketh it to be distant from the *Aequator* 57. degrees: yet in his *Geographicall Tables* he defineth the longest day to be 18. *Aequinoctiall* houres: so that by his owne calculation and account, it is distant from the *Aequator* 58. degrees. But at this day, as said that Poet.

Magnum nil nisi Nomen habet.

Nothing hath the fame
But onely a great name.

For it is but a small Village, called *Catarrick* and *Catarrick-bridge*; howbeit well knowne both by the situation thereof neere unto the High street way which the Romans made, that here passeth over the river, and also by the heapes of rubbish here and there dispersed, which carry some shew of Antiquity, especially about *Ketterickswart* and *Burghale*, somewhat farther off from the Bridge, and more Eastward hard by the river, where we beheld a mighty Mount and foure Bulwarkes raised as it were with exceeding great labour up to a great height. What sorrow it sustained in times past at the Picts and Saxons hands, when with fire and sword they made foule havocke of all the Cities in Britaine, I cannot certainly tell: but it seemeth to have flourished after the Saxon Empire was established: (Although *Bede* in every place calleth it *Vicum*, that is, a Village) untill that in the yeere 769. it was set on fire and burnt by *Eanred* or *Beawred* the Tyrant, who pitifully mangled the Kingdome of Northumberland. But both he freight after miserably perished by fire; and *Catarractonium* also beganne to revive againe out of the very ashes: For, in the 77. yeere after King *Etheldred* solemnized heere his marriage with the daughter of *Offa* King of the *Mercians*. Notwithstanding, it continued not long in good and flourishing estate: for, in that confusion immediately ensuing of the Danes who laied all waste, it was quite destroyed.

Swale

Swale driveth on with a long course, not without some lets heere and there in his streame, not farre from *Hornby Castle*, belonging to the Family of *Saint Quintin*, which afterwards came to the *Cogniers*: and seeth nothing besides fresh pastures, country houses, and Villages, unlesse it be *Bedal*, standing by another River running into him: which *Bedal* glorieth much of a Baron it had named Sir *Brian Fitz-Alan*, who flourished in the daies of King *Edward* the First, in regard of his worth, and his ancient Nobility, as descended from the Earles of Britaine, and *Richmond*: But for default of heires males the inheritance came by the daughters, to *Stapletons*, and the *Gries* of *Rotherfeld*. By this time *Swale* having left *Richmond-shire* behinde, cometh neerer unto *Ure* or *Ouse*, where hee visiteth *Topcliffe* the chiefe seat of the *Percies*; *Mariamus* calleth it *Taben-clipe*; who writeth, that in the yeere of our Redemption 949. the States of Northumberland bound themselves there by an oath of Allegiance unto King *Eldred* the West-Saxon. And at the very confluence of these Rivers standeth *Mitton*, a small Village, but remarkable by no small slaughter. For, the Scottish in the yeere 1319. when the pestilence had consumed in manner all the manhood of England, having made an intode thus farre robbing and ransacking all where they came, loone discomfited and put to flight no small power of Priests and country people, which the Archbishop of Yorke had led forth, with banner displayed into the field. But to returne backe againe to our matter. From *CATARRACTONIUM*, the high street or Port way divided it selfe in twaine: where it taketh Northward, it leadeth by *Caldwell* and *Aldburgh*, which betokeneth *An old Burrough*. By what name it was knowne in ancient times I cannot easily guesse. By the great ruines it should seeme to have beene some notable place: and neere at hand there is seene a ditch by *Stannig* a little Village, that runneth eight miles in length betweene the River *Tees* and *Swale*. Where the said High way goeth Northwestward about twelve miles off you meet with *Bowes*, which also is written *Bowgh*; now, a little Village: where in the ages aforegoing the Earles of *Richmond* had a prety Castelet, a certaine custome called *Thorough-toll*, and there *Fursas*, i. power to hang. But that in old time it was called in *Antoninus Itinerary*, *LAVATRÆ* and *LEVATRÆ*, both the account of distance, and the site thereof by the High street, which heere is evidently apparent by the ridge thereof, doe easily prove. But, that which maketh much to confirme the antiquity of it, is an ancient large Stone in the Church, somerimes used by them for an altar stone, with this inscription upon it, to the honour of *Hadrian* the Emperour.

IMP. CÆSARI DIVI TRAIANI PARTHICI. Max. filio
DIVI NERVÆ NEPOTI TRAIANO. Hadria
NO AUG. PONT. MAXIM.
COŞ. I. — P. P. COH. IIII. F. —
IO. SEV.

This fragment also was there digged up.

NOL. CÆ.
FRONTINUS.
COH. I. THRAC.

Whiles

Whiles under *Severus* the Emperour, *Virius Lupus* ruled as Lieutenant General and Proprator of Britaine, the first Cohort of the *Thracians* lay heere in Garlson: for whose sake, he reedified the Bath or hote house: as appeareth by this inscription, which from hence hath beene translated to *Cunnington*, unto the house of that right worshipfull and learned Sir *Robert Cotton*, Knight.

Fortè D^{ne} For-
tuna.

DAE. I. FORTUNÆ
VIRIUS LUPUS
LEG. AUG. PR. PR.
BALINEUM VI
IGNIS EXUST-
UM. COH. I. THR-
ACUM REST-
ITUIT. CURANTE
VAL. FRON-
TONE PRÆ-
EQ. ALAE VETTO.

Bathes.

BALINEUM OR
BATHUM.

Seneca,

Heere must I cause them to forgoe their errour, who by this Inscription falsely copied forth, whiles they read untruly *BALINGIUM*, for *BALINEUM*, are of opinion, that the name of the place was *BALINGIUM*. But if a man looke neerer to the words, hee shall finde it most evidently engraven in the stone *BALINEUM*: which word they used in old time, as the learned know, for *BALNEUM*, that is, A BATH, or Hote-house: who also are not ignorant that souldiers, as well as others, used ordinarily to bathe, both for health, and cleanliness: as who every day, before they did eate, in that age were wont to bathe: as also, that such like bathing houses both publique and private were made every where with so great cost and superfluous excesse. *That he thought himselfe poore and a very begger, who had not the walls of his bathing house resplendent with great and costly embossed Glasses.* In which Bathes men and women both, washed one with another: albeit this had oftentimes beene prohibited as well by the Imperiall lawes, as the Synodall decrees.

In the declining estate of the Roman Empire the Company or Band of the *Exploratores*, with their Captaine kept their station heere, under the dispose of the General of Britaine: as appeareth for certaine out of the NOTICE of Provinces, where it is named *LAVATRES*. But whereas such Bathes as these, were called also in Latine *Lavacra*, some Criticke, no doubt, will pronounce, that this place was named *LAVATRÆ* in stead of *LAVACRA*: yet would I rather have it take the name of a little river running neere by, which, as I heare say, is called *Laver*. As for the later name *Bowes*, considering the old Towne was heere burnt downe to the ground (as the inhabitants with one voice doe report) I would thinke, it grew upon that occasion. For, that which is burnt with fire the Britans still at this day, doe terme *Bæth*; and by the same word, the Suburbs of *Chester* beyond the River *Dee*, which the Englishmen call *Hanbridge*, the Britans or Welshmen name *Treboeth*, that is, *The burnt Towne*, because in a tumult of the Welshmen it was consumed with fire.

Heere beginneth to rise that high hilly and solitary Country exposed to winde and raine, which because it is stony, is called in our native language *Stane more*. All heere round about is nothing but a wilde Desert, unless it be a homely Hostelry, or Inne, in the very midst thereof, called *The Spittle on Stane more*, for to entertaine waifaring persons, and neere to it is a fragment of a Crosse, which wee call *Rerecrosse*, the Scots *Reircrosse*, as one would say, *The Kings Crosse*. Which Crosse, *Helior Boetius* the Scottish Writer recordeth to have beene erected as a meere stone confining England and Scotland; what time as King *William* the Conquerour granted

Stane More.

Spittle on
Stane More.
Rerecrosse.

granted Cumberland unto the Scots on this condition, that they should hold it of him as his Tenants, and not attempt any thing prejudiciall or hurtfull to the Crowne of England. And a little lower, upon the Romanes high street, there stood a little Fort of the Romans built foure square, which at this day they call *Maiden Castle*. From whence, as the borderers reported, the said High way went with many windings in and out, as farre as to *Caer Vorrán* in Northumberland.

There have beene divers Earles of *Richmond* according as the Princes favour inclined, and those out of divers families: whom I will notwithstanding set downe as exactly and truly as I can, in their right order. The first Earle was out of the house of little Britaine in France, whose descent is confusedly intricate amongst their owne Writers, for that there were two principall Earles at once, one of *Hault Britaine*, and another of *Basse Britaine* for many yeeres, and every one of their children had their part in Gavell kinde, and were stiled Earles of *Britaine* without distinction. But of these the first Earle of *Richmond*, according to our Writers and Records, was *Alane* surnamed *Feregaunt*, that is, *The Red*, sonne of *Heel* Earle of *Britaine*, descended from *Hawise* great Aunt to *William* Conquerour, who gave this Country unto him by name of the lands of Earle *Badwin* in *Yorke-shire*, and withall bestowed his daughter upon him by whom he had no issue. He built *Richmond Castle*, as is before specified, to defend himselfe from disinherited and outlawed Englishmen in those parts: and dying left Britaine to his sonne *Conan Le Groffe* by a second wife. But *Alane* the Blacke sonne of *Endo* sonne of *Geffrey* Earle of Britaine and *Hawise* aforesaid, succeeded in Richmond, and he having no childe, left it to *Stephen* his brother. This *Stephen* begat *Alan* surnamed *Le Savage* his sonne and successeur, who assisted king *Stephen* against *Maude* the Empreffe in the battaile at *Lincolne*, and married *Bertha* one of the heires of *Conan Le Groffe* Earle of *Hault Britaine* by whom hee had *Conan Le Petit* Earle of both Britaines by hereditary right, as well as of Richmond. Hee by the assistance of King *Henrie* the Second of England disposed *Endo* Vicount of *Perth* his Father in Lawe who usurped the Title of Britaine in right of the said *Bertha* his Wife: and ended his life leaving onely one daughter *Constance* by *Margaret* sifter to *Malcolme* king of the Scots. *Geffrey* third Sonne to King *Henry* the Second of England was advanced by his Father to the marriage of the said *Constance*, whereby hee was Earle of Britaine and Richmond, and begat of her *Arthur* who succeeded him, and as the French wriote was made away by King *Iohn* his Uncle. True it is indeede, that for this cause, the French called King *Iohn* into question, as Duke of Normandy: And notwithstanding he was absent, and not heard once to plead, neither confessing ought, nor convicted, yet by a definitive sentence they condemned him, and awarded from him, Normandy and his hereditary possessions in France: Albeit himselfe had promised, under safe conduct to appeare in personall at *Paris*; there, to make answer as touching the death of *Arthur*: who as a Liege subject had bound himselfe by oath to be true and loyall unto him, and yet started backe from his allegiance, raised a rebellion, and was taken prisoner in battaile. At which time this question was debated, whether the Peeres of France might give judgement of a King annoited, and therefore superior: considering that a greater dignity drowne the lesser; and now one and the same person was both King of England and Duke of Normandy. But whither doe I digresse? After *Arthur*, these succeeded orderly in the Earldome of Richmond. *Guy* Vicount of *Thouers*, unto whom the foresaid *Constance* was secondly married. *Ranulph* the third, Earle of *Chester*, the third husband of the said *Constance*. *Peter* of *Drenx*, descended from the bloud royall of France, who wedded *Alice* the onely daughter of *Constance* by her husband abovenamed *Guy*. Then upon dislike of the house of Britaine, *Peter* of *Savoy*, Uncle by the mothers side unto *Eleonor* the wife of king *Henry* the Third, was made Earle of Richmond, who for feare of the Nobles and Commonis of England that murmured against strangers preferred to honours in England, voluntarily surrendered up this Honour which was restored to *Iohn* Earle of Britaine, sonne to *Peter* of *Drenx*. After whom succeeded *Iohn* his sonne, the first Duke of Britaine, who

Earles of
Richmond.

Gull. Gemis. L. 7
c. 34.

Booke of Rich-
mond Fees.
Register of
Swaley.

Overus de S.
Marino is a-
bout this time
named Earle of
Richmond.

Normandy a-
warded away
from the K. K.
of England.

Robert de Arthur was not Earle of Richmond as Prefard writeth, but of Beaumont. The booke of Temares or Fees of Richmond.

who wedded *Beatrice* daughter to Henry the Third King of England. Whose sonne *Arthur* was Duke of Britaine, and as some write, Earle of *Richmond*. Certes, *John* of Britaine his younger brother, immediately after the fathers death, bare this honourable Title. And he added unto the ancient Armes of *Dreux* with the Canton of Britaine, the Lions of England in *Bordeur*. Hee was Guardian of Scotland under King *Edward* the Second, and there taken and detained prisoner for three yeeres space, and dyed at length without issue, in the Raigne of *Edward* the Third. And *John* Duke of Britaine, his nephew, the sonne of *Arthur* succeeded in this Earldome. After his decease without children, when there was hote contention about the Dutchy of Britaine, betweene *John* Earle of *Montfort* of the halfe bloud, and *Joane* his brothers daughter and heire of the whole bloud marryed to *Charles* of *Blois*: King *Edward* the Third affecting the said *John* Earle of *Montfort*, and to strengthen his owne party in France, favoured the Title of the said *John* Earle of *Montfort* for that he was a man and neerer in degree, and therefore seemed to have better right and to bee preferred before his Niece (to whom the Parliament of France had adjudged it) and which is more for that he sware fealty to him as King of France, for the Dutchy of Britaine. In these respects he granted the Earldome of *Richmond* unto the said *John* untill he might recover his owne possessions in France, which being soone after recovered by aide of the English, the said King bestowed it upon *John* of *Gaunt* his sonne. And he afterward surrendred it againe into the King his fathers hands for other possessions. Who forthwith created *John* Earle of *Montfort* Duke of Britaine surnamed *The valiant Earle of Richmond* unto whom hee had given his daughter to wife, that thereby hee might more surely oblige unto him a warlike person, and then ill affected to the French. But in the fourth yeere of *Richard* the Second he by authority of the Parliament forfeited his Earldome because he adhered unto the French King against England: howbeit hee kept still the bare Title, and left it unto his posterity: But the possession was granted to Dame *Isabel* of Britaine his sister, and the widdow of *Ralph* Lord *Basset of Draiton*. After her decease first *Ralph Nevill* Earle of *Westmorland*, had the Castle and Earldome of *Richmond* for the tearme of his owne life, by the gift of King Henry the Fourth. And after him *John* Duke of *Bedford*. Then king Henry the Sixth conferred the Title of Earle of *Richmond* upon *Edmund* of *Hudham* his halfe brother by the mothers side, with this speciall and peculiar prerogative, To take his place in Parliament next unto Dukes. After him succeeded Henry his sonne who was King of England by the name of Henry the Seventh. But during his exile *George* Duke of *Clarence*, and *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester* received the Signiory of *Richmond*, but not the Title from their brother king *Edward* the Fourth. Last of all Henry the base sonne of king Henry the Eighth was by his father invested Duke of *Richmond*, who departed this life without issue 1535. As for Sir *Thomas Grey* who was made Baron of *Richmond* by king Henry the Sixth, was not Lord of this *Richmond*, but of a place in *Bedfordshire* called *Rugemond*, and *Richmonds Greis*.

Duke of Richmond.

There are contained in this Shire Parishes 104. beside Chappels.

BISHOP PRICKE

DVNELMENSIS

Episcopatus qui comitatus est Palatinus
clim pars
BRIGANTVM



Christophorus Saxton descripsit
Wilhelmus Kij. sculpit

BISHOPRICK OF DURHAM.



Durham or Duresme, bordering on the North side upon Yorke-shire is shaped in fashion of a triangle, the utmost angle whereof is made up, toward the West, where the Northren limit and the Spring-head of *Tees* doe meete. One of the sides which lieth Southward is bounded in with the continued course of the river *Tees* running downe along by it: the other that looketh Northward, is limited first, with a short line, from the utmost point to the river *Derwent*, then, with *Derwent* it selfe, untill it hath taken unto it *Chopwell* a little river, and afterward with the river *Tine*. The Sea coast fashioneth out the Base of the Triangle which lieth Eastward, and the German Ocean with a mighty roaring, and forcible violence beatech thereupon.

On that part where it gathereth narrow to the Westerne angle, the fields are naked and barren, the woods very thin, the hills bare without grasse, but not without mynes of iron. As for the Vallies, they are reasonably grassie, and that high hill which I termed the *Apennine* of England, cutteth in twain this angle. But on the East part or Base of the Triangle, as also on both sides, the ground being well manured, is very fruitful, and the increase yeeldeth good recompence for the husbandmans toile: it is also well garnished with meddowes, pastures, and corn-fields, beset everywhere with townes and yeelding plenty of Sea coale, which in many places we use for fewell. Some will have this coale to be an earthy black *Bitumen*, others, to be *Gagates*, and some againe the *Lapis Thracius*, all which, that great Philosopher in Minerals, *George Agricola*, hath proved to be one and the same thing. Surely this of ours, is nothing else but *Bitumen*, or a clammy kind of cley hardned with heat under the earth, and so thoroughly concocted: For, it yeeldeth the smell of *Bitumen*, and if water bee sprinkled upon it, it burneth more vehemently and the clearer: but, whether it may bee quenched with oile, I have not yet tried. And if the Stone called *Obsidianus* be in our country, I would take that to bee it, which is found in other places of England, and commonly called *Canole cole*: For it is hard, bright, light, and somewhat easie to be cloven piece meale into flakes, and being once kindled it burneth very quickly. But let us leave these matters to those that search more deeply into Natures closets.

*Obsidianus lapis
Canole cole.*

All this country with other territories also thereto adjoining the Monasticall writers rearme the Land, or Patrimoine of *Saint Cuthbert*. For, so they called whatsoever belonged to the Church of *Durham*, whereof *S. Cuthbert* was the Patron: who in the primitive state of the English Church, being Bishop of *Lindefarn*, led all his life in such holinesse and so sincerely, that he was enrolled among the English Saints. Our kings also, and Peeres of the Realme, because they verily perswaded themselves that he was their Tutelar Saint and Protector against the Scots, went not onely in Pilgrimage with devotion to visite his body (which, they beleevved to have continued still found and uncorrupt) but also gave very large possessions to this Church, and endowed the same with many immunities. King *Edgfride* bestowed upon *Cuthbert* himselfe whiles he lived, great revenues in the very City of Yorke, and *Craike* also whereof I spake, and the City *Luguballia*, as wee reade in the History of *Durham*. King *Aelfred* and *Guthrum* the Dane, whom hee made Lieutenant of Northumberland, gave afterwards all the Lands betwene the Rivers *Were* and *Tine*, unto *Cuthbert*, and to those who ministered in his Church, to have and to hold for ever, as their rightfull Possession. (These bee the very words in effect of an ancient Booke) whence they might have sufficient maintenance to live upon, and not be pinched with poverty: over and besides, they ordeined his Church to bee a safe Sanctuary for all fugitives: that whosoever for any cause fled unto his Corps, should have peaceable being for 37. daies, and the same liberty never for any occasion to bee infringed or denied. Edward and Athelstan, kings;

*Saint Cuthberts
Patrimony.*

Kings; *Knute* also or *CANUTE* the Dane, who came on his bare feet to *Cuthbert's* Tombe, not onely confirmed but enlarged also these liberties. In like manner King *William the Conquerour*, since whose time it hath alwayes bene deemed a *County Palatine*: yea and some of the Bishops, as *Counts Palatine* have engraven in their scales a Knight or man at armes in compleat harnesse sitting upon an horse all trapped, with one hand brandishing a sword, and in the other holding out the Armes of the Bishopricke.

The Bishops also have had their royalties and princely rights, so that the goods of outlawed and attainted persons out of the Kings protection, fell into their hands and not into the Kings: yea and the Commons of that Province standing upon their privileges have refused to serve in warre under the King in Scotland. For, they pleaded (the Story of *Duresme* shall speake for mee) *That they were Halimurke folkes, and held their lands to defend the Corps of Saint Cuthbert; neither ought they to goe out of the precincts of the Bishopricke, namely beyond Tine and Teese, for King or Bishop.* But King *Edward the First*, was the first that abridged them of these liberties. For, when as he interposed himselfe as Arbitratour betweene the Bishop *Antony Be,* and the Priour who contended most egerly about certaine lands, and they would not stand to his award, *Hee seised*, as saith mine Authour, *the liberty of the Bishopricke into his owne hand, and there were many corners searched, many flaws found, and the Liberty in many points much impaired.* Howbeit, the Church afterward recovered her rights, and held them inviolate unto the daies of King *Edward the Sixth*, unto whom, upon the dissolution of the Bishopricke, the States in Parliament granted all the revenues and liberties thereof. But forthwith *Queene Mary* by the same authority repealed this Act, and restored all things safe and found unto the Church againe, which it enjoyeth at this day. For, the Bishop, *James Pilkinton* of late time entred his action against *Queene Elizabeth*, about the possessions and goods of *Charles Nevill* Earle of *Westmorland* and of others that stood attainted for treason in this precinct, because they had most wickedly levied warre against their native Country: and he the said Bishop had followed the suit to a triall, if the authority of Parliament had not interposed and adjudged the same for that time, unto the *Queene*, because to her exceeding great charges she had delivered both Bishop and Bishopricke from the outrage of the Rebels. But leaving these matters, let us proceed forward to the description of places.

The tiuer that boundeth the South part of this country, is called by Latin writers *Teis*, and *Teesa*, commonly *Tees*: by *Polydore Virgill* the Italian (whose minde ranne of *Atheis* in his owne country Italy) without any reason, *Atheis*. In *Prolume* is lecmeth to be called, *TOTAZIX* and *TUESIS*: and yet I thinke that in him it is removed out of his proper place through the negligence of transcribers. For, considering that he hath placed *TUESIS* and *TINA* in the more remote part of Britaine, where the Scots now inhabite; and seeing that this Region is enclosed within *Tees* and *Tine*; If I durst, as a Criticke, correct that ancient Geographer, I would recall them home againe hither into their owne places, though they have been long displaced, and that with the Scots good leave I hope, who have no Rivers upon which they can truly father these names. *TEES* springeth out of that stony country called *Stainmore*, and carrying with him away in his chanell along, many brookes and becks on each side, and running through rocks (out of which at *Egleston*, where there is a marble Quarry, and where *Conan* Earle of Britaine, and *Richmond* founded a small Abbey) first beatech upon *Bernard Castle*, built and so named by *Bernard Balliol* the great grandfathers father of *John Balliol* King of the Scots. But this *John Balliol*, whom King *Edward the First* had declared King of Scotland, lost the same with other his possessions, because he had broken his alleageance which he swore unto *Edward*. At which time the King being highly displeased with *Antony* Bishop of *Durham*, tooke this Castle (as witnesseth the booke of *Duresme*) with the apperinenes thereto from him, and conferred the same upon the Earle of *Warwicke*: as *Herkes* also and *Hermes*, which hee gave unto *Robert Clifford*: *Kewerston* also, which hee bestowed upon *Geffrey* of *Herpole*, which

The River
Teise, or Teis.

the Bishop had by the forfeiture of *John Balliol*, *Robert Bruce*, and *Christopher Seton*. But a few yeeres after, *Lewis Beaumont* the Bishop, a man royally descended, but altogether unlettered, brought his action for this Castle and the rest of those possessions, and obtained his suite, by verue of judgement given in this tenour, *The Bishop of Durham ought to have the forfeiture of Warres within the Liberties of his Bishopricke, as the King hath it without.* Hard by it is *Strettham* scene, where dwelt for a long time the worshipfull family of the *Bowes*, Knights: who from time to time in the greatest troubles have performed passing good service to Prince and Country: and derive their pedigree from *W. de Bowes*, unto whom, as I have read, *Alanus Niger* Earle of Britaine and *Richmond* granted, *that hee might give for his Armes, The * Scutcheon of * Britaine with three bent Bowes therein.*

Sir: rtham;
Bowes.

Not full five miles from hence, standeth somewhat farther from *Tees* banke *Staindrop*, which also is called *Stainthorpe*, that is, *Stony Village*, a little Mercate Towne, where there was a Collegiat Church, founded by the *Nevills*, and was their Buriall-place. Neere unto it is *Raby*, which *Cnut* or *Canute* the Danish King gave freely unto the Church of *Durham* together with the land lying round about it, and *Stainthorpe*, to be held for ever. Since which time, as mine Authour informeth mee, *The Family of the Nevills*, or *De nova villa*, held *Raby* of the Church, paying yearly for it foure pounds and a *Stagge*. These *Nevills* deduce their Descent from *Walsbeuf* Earle of *Northumberland*, out of whose posterity, when *Robert* the sonne of *Mal-bred*, Lord of *Raby* had married the daughter of *Geffrey Nevill* the Norman (whose Grandfire *Gilbert Nevill* is reported to have bene Admittall to King *William* the Conquerour) their succeeding Progeny tooke unto them the name of *Nevilles*, and grew up into a most numerous honourable, and mighty house: who erected heere a great and spacious Castle, which was the first and principall seate. These two places *Stainthorpe* and *Raby* are severed one from another onely by a little rill which after some few miles runneth into *Tees*, neere unto *Selaby*, where now is the habitation of the *Brakenburies*, a Family of right good note both in regard of their owne Antiquity, as also for their marriages contracted with the heires of *Demton* and of *Wickliff*.

Raby Castle;

The family of
the Nevils.
See in West
morland.

Selaby;

Tees passing on from thence by *Sockburne*, the dwelling house of the ancient and noble Family of the *Coigniers*, out of which were the Barons *Coigniers* of *Hornby* (whose inheritance much bettered by marching in marriage with the heires of the Lord *Darcy* of *Metnill*, and of *William Nevill* Earle of *Kent*, and Lord of *Fauconberg* is descended from them in the memory of our fathers, to the *Atherstons* and the *Darcies*) holdeth his course neere unto *Derlington*, a Mercate Towne of good resort, which *Seir*, an English Saxon the sonne of *Ulf*, having obtained leave of King *Ethelred* gave unto the Church of *Durham*: and *Hugh Pudsey* adorned it with a faire Church and other edifices.

Barons Coig-
niers.

Derlington;

In this Towne field are three pittes of a wonderfull depth, the common people tearmethem *Hell-Kettles*, because the water in them by the *Antiperistasis* or reverboration of the cold aire striking thereupon, waxeth hote. The wiser sort and men of better judgement doe thinke, they came by the sinking downe of the ground swallowed up in some earth-quake, and that by a good probable reason. For, thus wereade in the Chronicles of *Tinmouth*. *In the yeere of our Lord 1179. on Christmas day, at Oxenhall in the Territory of Derlington, within the Bishopricke of Durham, the ground heaved it selfe up aloft like unto an high Towre, and so continued all that day as it were unmoveable, untill the evening: and then, fell with so horrible a noise, that it made all the neighbour dwellers afraide: and the earth swallowed it up and made in the same place a deepe pit, which is there to bee scene for a testimony, unto this day.* That these Pittes have passages under the ground Bishop *Cuthbert* Townsall first observed, by finding that Goole in the River *Tees*, which he for the better triall and experience of these Pitts, had marked and let downe into them.

Hell Kettles;
Deepe pits.

Earth-quake.

Beyond *Derlington*, *Tees* hath no Townes of any great account standing upon it,

Certaine Gen-
tlemen called
Sur,

Teis, upon
Teis, sometime
flourished here.

but gliding along the skirtes of greene fields, and by country Villages, winding in and out as he passeth, at length dischargeth himselfe at a large mouth into the Ocean, whence the bafe or bothom of the Triangle aforesaid towards the Sea beginneth.

Gretham.

From hence the shore coasteth Northward, holding on entire still, save that it is interrupted with one or two little Brookes and no more, neere unto *Gretham*, where *Robert* Bishop of *Durham* having the Manour given freely unto him by *Sir Peter de Montfort*, founded a goodly Hospitall. Next unto it is *Claxton*, which gave name unto a Family of good and ancient note, in this Tract: whereof, I have bene the more willing to make mention, because of the same house was *T. Claxton*, an affectionate lover of venerable Antiquity. From thence, the shore shooteth forth into the Sea with one onely Promontory scarce seven miles above *Tees* mouth, on which standeth very commodiously *Hartlepoole*, a good Towne of trade, and a safe harbour for shipping. *Bede* seemeth to call it *Heorou*, which *Henry of Huntingdon*, interpreteth *The Haris or Stagges Island*, where hee writeth, that *Hein* a religious woman founded a Monastery in times past. If *Heorten* bee not rather the name of that little Territory, which the Booke of *Duresme* seemeth to imple and in another place calleth *Heortnesse*, because it lyeth out somewhat farre into the Sea. From this for fiftene miles together the shore being in no place broken off, but heere and there embrodered as it were and garnished with Townes, smileth pleasantly upon those that saile that way, untill it openeth it selfe to make roome for the River *Vesdra*; for, so *Ptolomee* calleth that, which *Bede* nameth *Wirus*, the Saxons peop; and we *Were*. This river first groweth into one out of three riverets *Burden-bop*, *Wel-bop*, and *Kel-bop*, in the utmost part of this Country Westward: which when they are joynd in one chanell is called by one name *Were*, and speedeth into the East, by vast moores and heathes, by great Parkes of the Bishops, and by *Witton* a little Castle or pile belonging to the Lords *Evers*, who are Noblemen in this Country of great antiquity, as descended from the Lords of *Clavering* and *Warkworth*, as also from the *Vesfyes* and the *Attons*, by Daughters: renowned for their martiall prowesse, which Scotland may well witnesse. For, King *Edward* the First, gave unto them for their valiant service *Kestnes* a little Towne in Scotland, and King *Henry* the Eighth within our fathers remembrance honoured them in that respect with the Title of Barons.

A Promontory
in our language
is called Nefle.

The river Ves-
dra, or Were.

Witton.
Barons Evers,
or D'Eure.

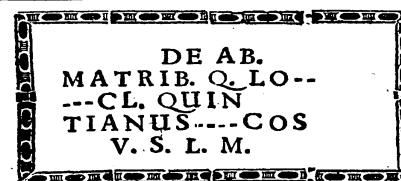
Then *Were* after a few miles taketh into him from the South *Gaunlesse* a Riveret, where, at the very meeting of them both together, there standeth upon an high hill *Ankland* so called of *Okes* (like as *Saron* in Greece) which sheweth an house of the Bishops stately built with Turrets by *Antony Bec*, and withall a beautifull Bridge, made by *Walter Skirlaw* a Bishop of *Durham* about the yeere 1400. who also enlarged this house and built the Bridge over *Tees* at *Tare*. From hence *Wartuneth* his course Northward, that he might water this shire the longer, and then forthwith looketh up to the remaines of an ancient City not now a dying, but dead many yeeres agoe, standing on the brow of an hill: which *Antonine* the Emperour called *VINOVIUM*, *Ptolomee*, *BINOVIUM*, in whom it is so thrust out of his owne place, and set as it were in another Climate, that it would for ever have lien hid, had not *Antonine* pointed at it with his finger. Wee call it at this day *Bincheffer*, and it bath in it a very few houses: yet it is very well knowne to them that dwell thereabout, both by reason of the heapes of rubbish, and the reliques of walles yet to be seene, as also for peeces of Romane Coine often digged up there, which they call *Bincheffer Penies*, yea and for the Inscriptions of the Romanes, amongst which I happened of late when I was there upon an Altar with this Inscription.

Auk-land.

Vinovium.

Bincheffer.

DE



As concerning
the Mother
Goddesses.
See in Lanca-
shire.

Anna Christi.
236.
Votum solvit, li-
ben. merita i.
Paid his vow
willingly and
duly.

Another stone also was heere lately gotten out of the ground, but defaced with
voide places, where the letters were worne out: which notwithstanding, if one
beheld it wishly, seemeth to shew this Inscription.



Neither have I read any thing else of it, but that an old booke maketh mention, how the Earles of Northumberland, long since plucked away this with other Villages from the Church, what time as that accursed and unsatiable hunger after Gold swallowed up also the sacred patrimony of the Church.

On the other banke of *Were*, among the mounting Hilles appeareth *Bransfeib* Castle, which the *Bulmers* built, and the daughter of *Sir Bertram Bulmer* coupled in marriage unto *Geffrey Nevill*, adjoynd with other great Possessions unto the Family of the *Nevills*. Within a while after *Were* runneth downe much troubled and hindered in his Course with many great Stones apparent above the water, which unlesse the River doe rise and swell with great store of raine, are never over covered: and upon which (a thing that happeneth not elsewhere) if yee powre water, and temper it a little with them, it sucketh in a saltish quality. Nay, that which more is, at *Butterby* a little Village, when the River in Summer time is very ebbe and shallow, there issueth out of those stones a certaine salt reddish water, which by the heat of the Sunne waxeth so white, and withall groweth to a thicke substance, that the people dwelling thereby gather from hence salt sufficient, ly for their use.

Bransfeib
Castle.

Salt stones.

And now the River, as though it purposed to make an Island, compasseth almost onevery side the chiefe City of this Province standing on an hill, whence the Saxons gave it the name *Dunholm*. For, as you may gather out of *Bede*, they called an hill *Dun*, and a river Island *Holme*. Heereof, the Latine Writers have made *DUNELMUM*, the Normans *Duresme*, but the common people most corruptly name it *Durham*. It is seated on high, and passing strongly withall, yet taketh it up no great circuit of ground: shaped in forme, as one would say, of an egge, environed on every side save on the North with the River, and fortified with a wall. Toward the South side almost, whereas the River fetcheth it selfe about, standeth the Cathedral Church aloft, making a solemne and a sightly shew with an high Towre in the midst and two Spires at the West end.

Dunelmus.
Durham, or
Duresme.

In the midst there is a Castle placed, as it were betweene two stone bridges over the river, the one Eastward, the other Westward. From the Castle Northward is seene a spacious Mercate-place and Saint *Nicholas* Church: from whence there
runneth

runneth out a great length North-East a Suburbe compassed on two sides the River: like as others on both sides beyond the River, which leade unto the Bridges, and euery of them have their severall Churches. The originall of this City is of no great Antiquity. For, when the distressed Monkes of Lindisfarn driven hither, and thither by the Danes Warres, wandered up and downe without any certaine place of abode with the corps of Saint Cuthbert, at length heere they settled themselves by divine direction, about the yeere of our Salvation 995. But heere the whole matter out of mine Authour of Durham. *All the people accompanying the corps of that most holy Father Cuthbert came into Dunholme, a place verily strong of it selfe by nature, but not easily to bee inhabited, as being wholly beset on every side with a most thicke Wood: onely in the midst was a little Plaine, which was wont to bee tilled and sowed with Corne: where Bishop Aldwin built afterwards a faire Church of stone. The foresaid Prelate therefore, through the helpe of all the people and the assistance of Uthred Earle of Northumberland, stocked up all the Wood and in short time made the whole place habitable. To conclude, the people generally from the River Coqued as farre as to Tees, came right willingly, as well to this worke, as after that to build a Church: and untill it was finished ceased not to follow that businesse devoutly. Wherefore after the Wood was quite grubd up, and every one had their mansion places assigned out by lot, The said Bishop in a fervent love to Christ and Saint Cuthbert, upon an honest and godly intent beganne (no small peece of worke) to build a Church, and endeavoured by all meanes to finish the same. Thus saie mine Authour.*

Not many yeeres after, those Englishmen who could not endure the insolent command of the Normans, presuming upon the naturall strength of the place, chose it for their chiefe Hold and feat of resistance, yea and from thence troubled the Conquerour not a little. For, William Gemeticensis writeth thus. *They went into a part of the Country which for waters and woods was inaccessible, raising a Castle with a most strong trench and rampier, which they called Dunholme: out of which making many roads sundry waies, for a certaine space they kept themselves close there, waiting for the coming of Swene King of the Danes. But when that fell not out according to their expectation, they provided for themselves by flight: and King William comming to Durham, granted many priviledges for establishing the liberty of the Church, and built the Castle whereof I spake, on the highest part of the hill, which afterwards became the Bishops house: and the keyes thereof when the Bishopricke was voide, were wont by an ancient custome to be hanged upon Saint Cuthberts shrine.*

When this Castle was once built, William of Malmesbury who lived about that time, describeth this City in these words. *Durham is a pretty hill rising by little and little from one plaine of the Valley with a gentle ascent, untill it come to bee a mount: and although by reason of the rough and steepe situation of the Rockes, there is no way for the enemy to enter it; yet they of these daies have erected a Castle upon the hill. At the very foot and bottom of the Castle, runneth a River, wherein is great store of fish, but of Salmon especially. At the same time well neere (as that ancient Booke reporteth) William de Careleph the Bishop, who gathered againe the disperfed Monkes hither (for, the Danes in every place had overthrowne their Cloistures) pulled downe that Church which Aldwin had formerly built, and beganne the foundation of another of a fairer worke, which his successour Ralph finished. And after that, Nicholas Ferubam Bishop, and Thomas Mescomb Prior, adjoyned a new Fabrique or frame unto it, in the yeere of Christ 1242. And a good while after, W. Skirlaw the Bishop, built at the West end of the Church a faire peece of worke which they call Gallilee, whereinto hee translated the marble Tombe of Venerable Bede. In which place Hugh Pudsey, beganne in times past an house, wherein (I use the words of an ancient Booke) women might lawfully enter, that whereas they had not corporall acceffe unto the more secret holy places, yet they might have some comfort by the beholding of the holy mysteries.*

But, that Ralph the Bishop aforesaid, as our Historian writeth, reduced the place betwene the Church and the Castle, which had beene taken up with many dwelling houses,

Gallilee.

For no woman might enter in to Durham Church.

into a plaine and open ground; for feare least either any annoyance by filth, or dangers by fire, might come neere unto the Church. And all be it the City was strong enough by the naturall site, yet hee made it more strong, and stately with a Wall, reaching in length from the Chancell of the Church, unto the Keepe and Towre of the Castle: Which wall now by little and little giveth place unto time, and never that I could heare, suffered any assault of enemy.

For, when David Brus, King of Scots, had forraied the Country with fire and sword, as farre as to Beasparke or Beereparke, which is a Parke neere unto the City, whiles King Edward the Third besieged Calais, Henry Percy and William Zouch Archbishop of Yorke, with their Companies of men mustered up in haste, encountered the Scots, and so courageously charged them, that having taken the King prisoner they slew the most of the first and second battaile, and put the third to a fearefull flight: neither staid they at most steepe and cumberfome places, untill they recovered their owne Holds. This is that famous Battaille, which our people call The Battaille at Nevils Crosse. For, the chieftest of the Scottish Nobility being slaine, and the King taken prisoner at this field, they were enforced to yeeld much ground within their Confinnes, yea and to render many Castles. But this may suffice as touching Durham: which I will take my leave of, if you thinke good, with a Discription of Neebam, and an Hexastichen of John Jonston.

Beere-parke.
1346.

Battaille of
Nevils Crosse.

*Arte, siquæ loci munita Dunelmia salve,
Qua flores sancta religionis apex.*

*VEDRA ruens rapidis modo cursibus, agmine leni,
Séquæ minor celebres suspicit urbe viros,
Quos dedit ipsa olim, quorum & tegit ossa sepulta;
Magnus ubi sacro marmore BEDA cubat.
Se jactant alia vel religione, vel armis;
Hæc armis cluit, hæc religione potens.*

Durham by art and site of place well fenced now farewell,
Where for devout Religion the Mitre doth excell.

The River Were that ranne most swift ere while, with streame now sofe
And chanell lesse, to famous men in towne lookes up aloft;
Whom once it bred: and of whose bones in grave it is posselt:
Where under sacred marble stone, Great Bede now doth rest.
Of Armes or of Religion, may other boast, I grant:
For Armes and for Religion both, this City makes her vaunt.

Concerning the Monkes that were cast out at the suppression of the Abbaies, the twelve Prebendaries and two Arch-Deacons placed in this Church, and the Priours name changed into the Dignity of a Deane, I neede not to say any thing: for, they are yet in fresh memory. And unwilling I am to remember how this Bishopricke was dissolved by a private Statute, and all the possessions thereof given to Edward the Sixth, when private greedinesse edged by Church-men did grinde the Church, and withdrew much from God, wherewith Christian Piety had formerly honoured God. But Queene Mary repealed that Statute and restored the said Bishopricke with all the Possessions, and Franchises thereof, that God might enjoy his owne. The Longitude of this City is 22. Degrees. The Latitude 54. Degrees and 57. minutes.

Beneath Durham, that I may not overpasse it, standeth Eastward a very faire Hospitall, which Hugh Pudsey that most wealthy Bishop, and Earle of Northumberland, so long as it was, Being very indulgently compassionate to Lepres (as Neubrigenensis writeth) built with coffe (I must needs say profuse enough) but in some sort not

Shirburne
Hospital.

so beneit: as who layed no small deall of other mens right (so great was his power) upon this devotion, whiles hee thought much to disburse sufficient of his owne. Howbeit hee assigned unto it revenewes to maintaine threecore and five Lepres, besides Masse Priests.

Finchdale.

From Durham Were carrieth his streame Northward with a more direct course, by *Finchdale*, where, in the Reigne of King Henry the Second Goodrick a man of the ancient Christian simplicity, and austerity wholly devoted to the service of God, led a solitary life and ended his daies: being buried in the same place, wherein, as that *William of Newbarrow* saith, hee was wont either to lye prostrate whiles he prayed, or to lay him downe when he was sicke. Who with this his devout simplicity, drew men into so great an admiration of him, that R. brother unto that rich Bishop *Hugh Pudsey* built a Chappell in memoriall of him.

Lumley.
Barons Lum-
ley.

From thence Were passeth by *Lumley Castle* standing within a Parke, the ancient seat of the *Lumleys*, who descended from *Liulph*, a man in this tract of right great Nobility in the time of King *Edward* the Confessour, who married *Aldgitha* the daughter of *Aldred* Earle of Northumberland. Of these *Lumleys*, *Marmaduke* assumed unto him his mothers Coate of Armes (in whose right hee was seized of a goodly inheritance of the *Thwengs*) namely, *Argent of Fesse Gules betweene three Poppinjaes Vert*, whereas the *Lumleys* before time had borne for their Armes, *Six Poppinjaes Argent, in Gules*. For she was the eldest daughter of Sir *Marmaduke Thweng* Lord of *Kilton*, and one of the heires of *Thomas Thweng* her brother. But *Ralph* sonne to the said *Marmaduke* was the first Baron *Lumley*, created by King *Richard* the Second: which honour *John* the ninth from him enjoyed in our daies a man most honourable for all the ornaments of true Nobility.

Chester upon
the street
Condercum.

Just over against this place, not farre from the other banke of the River standeth *Chester upon the Street*, as one would say, the *Castle or little City by the Port way side*: the Saxons called it *Conceyter*: whereupon, I would deeme it to be *CONDERCUM*, in which as the booke of *Notices* recordeth, the first wing of the *Assares*, in the Romanes time kept station and lay in Garison, within the *Line* or precinct (as that booke saith) of the *WALL*. For it is but a few miles distant from that famous *WALL*, whereof I am to speake heereafter. The Bishops of *Lindisfarne* lived obscurely heere with the corps of Saint *Cuthbert*, whiles the raging stormes of the Danes were up, for the space of an hundred and thirteene yeeres. In memory whereof, when *Egelricke* Bishop of *Durham* layed the foundation of a new Church in that place, he found such a mighty masse of money buried within the ground, as is thought by the Romans, that wallowing now in wealth, he gave over his Bishopricke: and being returned to *Peterborough* whereof hee had bene Abbot before, made causes through the Fennes and raised other Workes, not without exceeding great charges.

And a long time after *Anthony Bec*, Bishop of *Durham* and Patriarch of *Jerusalem* erected heere a Collegiat Church, a Deane, and seven Prebends. In which Church, the Lord *Lumley* above said placed and ranged in goodly order the Monuments of his Ancestours in a continued line of succession even from *Liulph* unto these our daies; which he had either gotten together out of Monasteries that were subverted, or caused to bee made a new. And further within, almost in the midst of the Triangle, there is another little Village also knowne of late by reason of the College of a Deane and Prebendaries founded by that *Antony Bec* at *Lanchester*, which I once thought to have bene *LONGOVICUM* a station of the Romanes.

Hilton Castle.

But let us returne unto *Were*, which now at length turneth his course Eastward, and running beside *Hilton* a Castle of the *Hiltons*, a Family of ancient Gentry; venterh his waters with a vast mouth into the sea at *Wiran-muth*, as *Bede* termeth it, now named *Monkes Were-mouth*, because it belonged to the *Monkes*. Touching which mouth or out-let, thus writeth *William* of *Malmesbury*. *This Were where hee entereth into the Sea, entertaineth Shippes brought in with a faire Gale of Wind, within the gentle and quiet bosome of his Out-let. Both the Bankes whereof, Benedict*

A Bishop beautified with Churches and built Abbaies there, one in the name of Saint Peter and the other of Saint Paul. The painfull industry of this man hee will wonder at, who shall reade his life; for that hee brought hither great store of bookes, and was the first man that ever procured *Masons* and *Glasiers* for windowes to come into England.

Glasiers first in
England.

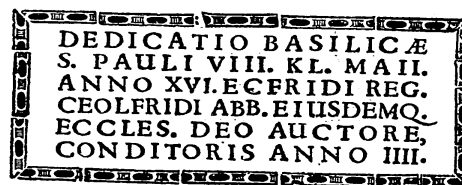
Five miles higher, the River *Tine* doth also unlade it selfe, which together with *Derwent* for a good way lineth out (as it were) the North side of this Country. Upon *Derwent* which hath his spring head neere unto the top of the Triangle, there standeth nothing of note, unlesse it bee a little Village which now they call *Ebbe-ster*, of *Ebba* a virgin of the bloud royall of the Northumbers, of whom there went so great a name and opinion for her sanctimony and devotion about the yeere 630. that being canonized among the Saints, she hath many Churches in this Island dedicated unto her, which the common sort usually call *Saint Tabbs* for *Saint Ebbes*.

Ebchester.
Saint Ebba.

Saint Tabbs.

But by *Tine* there is situate a memorable Towne called *Gateshead* in the English Saxon tongue *Gaetphepes*, and by Latin Historians, *Capra Caput*, which is the same, as one would say, *Goates head*: and is as it were the *Suburbs* of *Newcastle*, standing on the hether side of *Tine*, whereunto also it was annexed by King *Edward* the Sixth, when the Bishopricke was dissolved. But *Queene Mary* soone after restored it againe unto the Church. The common people thinke it is farre more ancient than *Newcastle* it selfe. And if I also should say, that this and *Newcastle* together (for one Towne it may seeme in old time to have bene, divided onely by the River) was that *Frontier Station*, which under the later Emperours they called *GABRO-SENTUM*, and was kept by the second Band of the *Thracians*, and that it retained still the ancient name in sense and signification, whereas, *Newcastle* hath gotten once or twice a new name, I hope my opinion would be nothing dissonant from the truth: For, *Gaffr* in the British tongue signifieth a *Goat*, and *Han* in ordinary speech is used for *Pen*, which betokeneth an *Head*: and in the very same signification our old Historiographers tearme it in Latine *Capra Caput*, like as *Brandisium*, in the *Massians Language* tooke that name, from a *Stagges head*. I would thinke that this name was given unto this place, by occasion of some Inne that had a *Goats head* for the signe: even as *Gallus Gallinaceus*, that is, *The Honscocke*, *Tres Sorores*, that is, *Three sisters*, and *Pirum*, that is, *The Pearre*, *Places*, *Africke*, *Spaine*, and *Italie*, whereof *Antonine* maketh mention: which, of such signes (as some learned men suppose) tooke their names. And our Historians all with one accord, name this Towne *Capra Caput*; when they record, that *Walcher* Bishop of *Durham*, whom King *William* the First had made Governour over Northumberland with the authority of an Earle, was slaine in this place by the furious multitude, for misgoverning the Country.

Beneath this Towne, almost at the very mouth of *Tine*, is to be seene *Girwy*, now *Tarrow*, the native soile of venerable *Bede*, where also in ancient times flourished a little Monastery: The Founder whereof and the time of the foundation, this inscription sheweth, which is yet extant in the Church wall.

Girwy.
Tarrow.
Bede.

These greater Churches when the Saving light of Christ shone upon the world (let it not seeme impertinent to note so much by occasion of the word *Basilica*) were termed *BASILICAE*, for that the *Basilica* of the Gentiles which were large and spacious Halls, wherein Magistrates sat in judgement and ministred Justice, were converted into Christian Churches. Whence *Ausonius* wrote thus, *Basilica olim negotijs*

is plena, &c. The Basilica [or Hall of Justice] in times past full of businesse, is now ^A full of Prayers and vows: or else because they were built in forme somewhat long, in manner of those Basilicae.

Saint Bede.

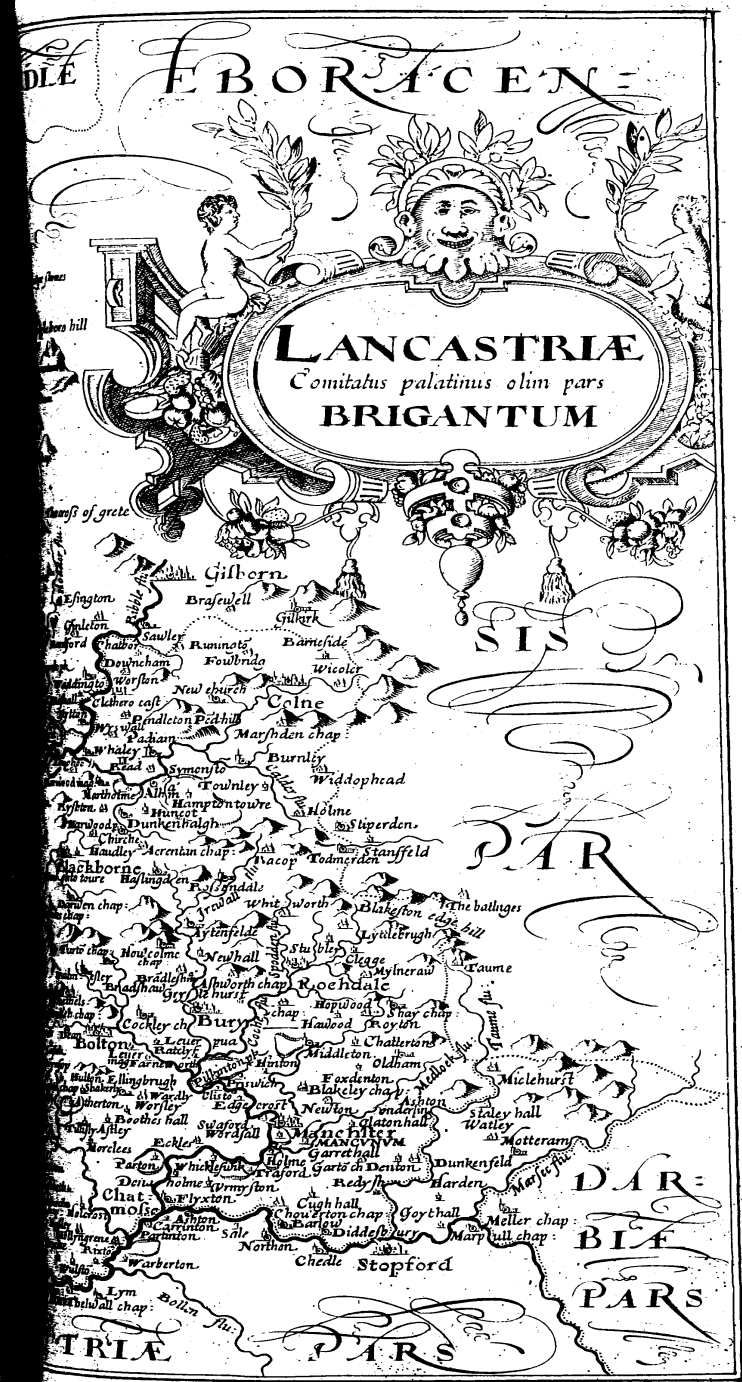
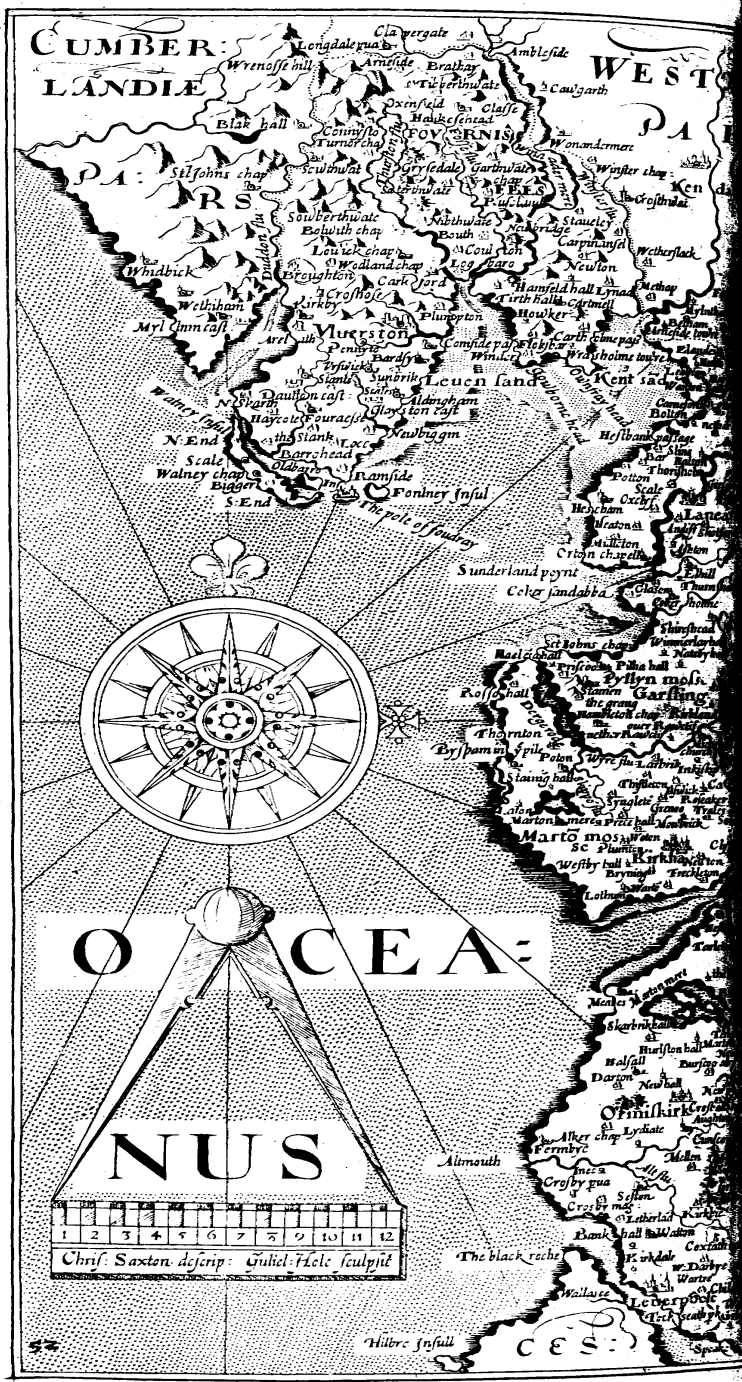
Heere our Bede, the singular glory and ornament of England, who for his Piety and learning got the surname of VENERABILIS, bestowed all diligence, as himselfe saith, in meditation of the Scriptures, and amid the most boisterous billows and surging waves of Barbarisme wrote many most learned Volumes. *When hee was once dead, there was buried with him, as William of Malmesbury saith, all the knowledge, well neere of Arts and Monuments, untill our time.* For, when there succeeded ever one more lazie than another, the heat of good studies was abated, and cooled through the whole Land. And the Danes for their part, plagued this holy place in such wise, that shortly after the Conquest, when some in these Countries went in hand to reestablish the Monkes againe, and Walcher the Bishop assigned this place for them; *Onely walles, as saith mine Authour, were standing without any roose, and it scarcely retained any signe of the ancient dignity: howbeit for all that, they framing a roose over head of rough beech wood such as they could get, and thatching it with straw, beganne to celebrate Divine Service therein.*

Bishops of Durham.

I neede not to make a Catalogue of the Bishops of Durham who are reputed Count-Palatines. Let it suffice to intimate thus much, that since the first time, a See was heere erected, in the yere of our Redemption 995. there have sitten in it 35. Bishops unto our daies. Of which these were most eminent: *Hugh Pudsey* nobly descended, and allyed to King Stephen: who for a thousand and thirteene pounds presently disbursed, purchased of King Richard the First, the Countrey of Northumberland for his life; and *Sashbrege*, to his successours for ever, and built that goodly Hospitall whereof I spake: betweene whom and the Archbishop there arose a most bitter controversie, *Whiles* (as he writeth of them) *hic praeesse, ille non subesse, & neuter prodesse contenderet*, that is, *One would bee superiour, the other would not bee inferiour, and neither of them would doe any good.* *Antony Bec*, Patriarch of Jerusalem, who spent infinite summes of money, upon vast buildings, and glorious furniture. *Thomas Wolsey* Cardinall, who in his high prosperity wanted nothing but moderation (but his History is sufficiently knowne.) And *Cuthbert Tunstall*, who dyed in our time, for singular knowledge in the best Sciences, sincere holinesse of life, and great wisdom approved in domesticall, and forraigne employments, was (without offence bee it spoken) equivalent to them all, and a singular Ornament to his native Countrie. ^D

See the Earles of Northumberland.

In this Province and in Northumberland beside very many Chappels, are counted Parish Churches 118.



LANCASHIRE.



Must now turne the course of my journey another way, unto the rest of the **BRIGANTES**, who were planted on the farther side of the Hilles toward the Irish Sea: and first unto **LANCA-SHIRE**, which I goe unto (God speede mee well) after a sort somewhat against my will: For I feare me that I shall not satisfie my selfe, and much lesse the Reader. For very few things fell out to my desire, when I trauailed over the greatest part thereof, the old names in every place have beene so worne out by the continuall assault of Time. But least I might bee thought to neglect the hearty good *Lanca-shire* men, I will proceed, in hope that Gods assistance, which hitherto hath beene favourable unto me, will not now faile me.

Under those mounraines, which (as I have often said heeretofore) shoote along through the middle of England, and interpose themselves as umpires and Bounders betweene diuers shires, *Lanca-shire* lyeth toward the West, in the English Saxon tongue *Loncar-cep-pepe*, commonly termed *Lonka-shire*, *Lanca-shire*, and *The County Palatine of Lancaster*, because it is notably knowne by the title of a *County Palatine*. It is so enclosed betweene *Torke-shire* on the East side, and the Irish sea on the West, that on the South side where it boundeth upon *Cheshire* it is broader, and by little and little the more Northward it goeth, where it confineth upon *Westmberland*, the narrower it groweth. And there, by an Arme of the sea insinuating it selfe, is interrupted, and hath a good part of it which butteth upon *Cumberland*, beyond the said Arme.

Where the ground is plaine and champion, it yeeldeth good store of Barly and Wheat: that which lieth at the botom of the hilles, is better for Otes: The soile e-very where is meetely good and tolerable, unlesse it be in certaine moist places and unwholsome called *Mosses*, which notwithstanding make amends for these their discommodities, with more plentifull commodities. For, if their upper coate be pared away, they yeeld certaine unctuous or fattish * *Turffes* for fewell, and some times under-ground trees, or which have lien a long time buried there. Underneath also in diuers places they affoord abundance of marle, which seruerh in stead of mucke to enrich their grounds. Whereby, the soile that in mans opinion was held most unapt to beare Corne, beginneth now to be so kinde and arable, that it may be justly thought, mens idlencesse in times past was greater, than any naturall barrainesse of the soile. But a man may judge of the goodnesse of the soile, partly by the constitution and complexion of the Inhabitants, who are to see to, passing faire and beautiful, and in part, if you please, by the Cattalle. For, in their Kine and Oxen which have goodly heads and faire spread hornes, and are in body well proportionate with all, you shall finde in manner no one point wanting, that *Mago* the Carthaginian doth require, as *Calamella* specifeth out of him.

On the South part, it is separated from *Cheshire* with the River *Mersey* which springing forth of the midland hilles, having passed a little from his head, becometh a bound to distinguish the Shires, and with a slow current runneth Westward, calling as it were, other rivers (to use the words of the Poet) into his skie coloured and *scarre lappe*, and forthwith gladly biddeth welcome unto *Irwel* from the North, which river bringeth along with him all the rivers of this Easterne part. Among these, *Roch* is of greatest name, which hath standing upon it in the Vale, *Rochdale* a Mercate Towne well frequented, like as *Irwel* it selfe hath situate upon it *Bury* a Mercate Towne nothing inferiour to the other: and hard by, whiles I carefully sought for **C O C K L E Y**, mentioned by *Antonine* the Emperour, I saw *Cockley*, a Chapell built of timber, beset round about with trees: Also *Turton* Chapell among very steepe downfalls, and overgrowne unpleasant places: *Turton* Towre, and *Emweissell* a proper

Mosses,

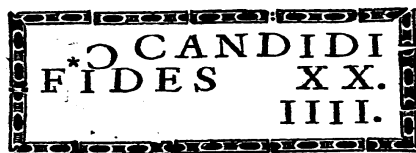
* cessiter,

Lanca-shire
beuses,

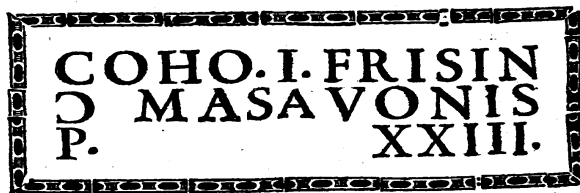
Roch-dale,

Cockley,

per faire house : which had in times past Gentlemen of that name, as *Turtus* is the seate at this day of the right ancient family of *Orell*. But, where *Irke* and *Irwell* meet together, on the left hand banke raised of a reddish kinde of stone, scarce three miles from *Mersey*, flourished that Towne of right great antiquity which we now call *Manchester*, and *Antonine* the Emperour called *MANCUNIVM*, and *MANUCIVM*, according to the variety of the Copies. This retaining the first part of his ancient name, farre excelleth the Townes lying round about it, for the beautifull shew it carrieth, for resort unto it, and for clothing : in regard also of the Mercate-place, the faire Church, and College, founded by *Thomas* Lord *De-la-ware*, a Priest (the last heire male of his Family) and summoned to the Parliament among the Lords Temporall by the name of *Magister Thomas de-la-ware*. For he descended from the *Greccies*, who were the ancient Lords of this Towne, and by *Isidore* filter of the said *Sir Thomas*, it came to *Wells* now Lords *De-la-ware*. But, in the foregoing age, this Towne was of farre greater account, both for certaine wollen clothes there wrought and in great request commonly called *Manchester Cottons*, and also for the liberty of a Sanctuary, which under King Henry the Eighth, was by Parliamentary authority, translated to *Chester*. In a Parke of the Earle of *Derbies* neere adjoining, called *Alparke*, where the Brooke *Medlocke* entrench into *Irwell*, I saw the plot and ground-work of an ancient Fortresse built foure square, commonly called *Mancastle* : which I will not in any wise say, was that ancient *MANCUNIVM*, it is contained in so narrow a peece of ground, but rather the Fort of *MANCUNIVM*, and station of the Romanes where they kept watch and ward : at which I saw this ancient Inscription in a long stone to the memory of *Candidus* a Centurion.



As for this other, *John Dee* that most famous Mathematician, and Warden of *Manchester* College, who had a fight of the same heere, copied it out for me.



Both which may seeme erected in honour of those Centurions, for their loyalty and honesty so many yeeres approved.

In the yeere of our Salvation 920. King *Edward* the Elder, as *Marianus* writeth, sent an Army of *Mercians* into Northumberland, To reedifie the City of *Manchester*, and to place a Garison there (for it belonged formerly unto the Kings of Northumberland) and seemeth to have bene quite destroyed in the Danish warre : against whom, because the inhabitants had borne themselves as valiant men, they will have their towne to be called *Manchester*, that is, as they expound it, *The City of Men*, and in this conceit which implieth their owne commendation, they wonderfully please and

and flatter themselves. But full little know the good honest men, that *MANCUNIVM* was the name of it in the Britans time, so that the Etymologie thereof, out of our English tongue, can by no meanes seeme probable. I for my part therefore would derive it rather from *Main* a British word which signifieth a Stone : For, upon a stony hill it is seated, and beneath the very Towne, at *Colyhurst*, there are very good and famous quarries of stone.

But, to returne againe. *Mersey* now by this time carrying a fuller streame by reason of *Irwell* consociating with him, holdeth on in his journey toward the Ocean, by *Trafford*, from whence the *Traffords* a Family of great good note tooke their name as they had their habitation : also by *Chatmoss*, a low mossie ground, lying a great way in length and bredth : a good part whereof, the *Brookes* swelling high within our fathers remembrance carried quite away with them not without much danger : Whereby, the Rivers were corrupted, and a number of fresh fish perished. In which place now lyeth a Vale somewhat low, watered with a little Brooke, and trees have bene discovered lying along. So that it may be thought, when the ground lay neglected, and the chanel were not skoured in those open and flat Vallies for riverets and *Brookes* to passe away, but the water-lades stopped up either through negligence, or depopulation : that then all the grounds that lay lower than others, became such boggy plots, as we call *Mosses*, or else standing Meeres. Which if it bee true, wee neede not mervaille that so many trees in the like places every where throughout England (but in this shire especially) lie overwhelmed, and as it were, buried. For, when their rootes were loosened through over much moisture, the trees could not chuse but fall, and in such soft ground sinke and bee quite swallowed up. They that dwell thereabouts, assay and try with poles and spits, where they lie hidden, and when they light upon them marke the place, digge them out, and use them for fire wood : For they burne cleere and give light, as well as torch wood, which haply is by reason of a bituminous and clammy fat earth wherein they lye : whence the common sort take them for *Firres* : which notwithstanding *Cesar* denieth to have growne in Britaine. I know it is an opinion currant with the most, that these trees overturned with the force of waters, have lien ever since *Noahs* Flood, when the World was drowned, and so much the rather, because they are elsewhere digged out of very high places : and yet they deny not, but those high grounds are very marish and waterish.

Such mighty trees also are found oftentimes in Holland, a Country of Germany : which the learned men there, suppose were either undermined by waves working into the shore, or by windes driven forward and brought unto those lower and moist places, where they seeled and sunke downe. But let the curious company of Philosophers search into these matters to whom I commend them, and to their further inquirie, whether there are not Subterranean trees growing under earth, as well as plants and other Creatures. After *Chatmoss*, *Holcroft* sheweth it selfe, which, as it afforded the seat, so it gave the name also, to that right ancient family of the *Holcrofts* : whose estate in old time was much amended by marriage with one of the heires of *Culchith* a place seated hard by, which *Gilbert de Culchith* held, Of the Fee of *Almaricke Butler*, as hee himselfe did of the Earle of *Ferrars*, in King Henry the Third his time. Whose eldest daughter and heire, when *Richard Fitz-Hugh* of *Hindley* had married, he assumed to himselfe the name of *Culchith* : like as his brother *Thomas*, who wedded the second daughter, was of the possession, called *Holcroft* : another also by the same reason was named *de Peasfalong*, and a fourth *de Rifeley*. Which I note, that the Reader may understand, how our Ancestours, as they were in other things constant and grave, so in leaving and taking up names out of their possessions, they were as vaine and variable as might bee. But even in other parts of England also, this was in old time a thing in usuall practise.

Heere lie there round about every way little Townes, which (as throughout this whole County, and Cheshire, and other Northren parts) as they imparted their names to worshipfull houses, so they to have their Lords even unto these daies, men of

Trafford.

Mosses whence they come.

Fire trees in Cæsars time grew not in Britaine.

Holcroft.

of the very same name with them. As for example, *Aston of Aston: Atherton of Atherton, Tillesley of Tillesley, Standish of Standish, Bold of Bold, Hesket of Hesket, Worthington of Worthington, Torbec of Torbec, &c.* And an endless pece of worke it were to name them one by one, neither is it any part of my purpose to reckon up all families of name and worship, but to take a view and survey of the more ancient places. And as vertue and wealth laied the foundations of these and such like Families in these North Countries, and elsewhere (that I may speake it once for all) and provident moderation with simplicity standing contented with their owne estate, both preserved and encreased them: So, in the South part of England, riotous expence and superfluity, usurious contracts, voluptuous and vicious life, together with indirec^t courtes and crafty dealings, have in short space utterly overthrowne most flourishing houses, in so much as men complaining, that the offspring of the ancient Gentry hath now a long time faded. But Families as plants have their times of encreasing and decreasing, I and overpassing this, will follow on with the course of *Mersey*, which now by this time runneth downe by *Warrington*, a Towne knowne by reason of the Lords thereof surnamed * *Builers*, who obtained of King Edward the First the liberty of a Mercate for it: From which, Northward, *Winwick* is not farre distant: a place among other fat Benefices of England of greatest name: in the upmost part of the Church whereof, are read these rude Verses engraven in an old Character, concerning King *Oswald*.

*Hic locus Oswalde quondam placuit tibi valde.
Northanbrorum fuerat Rex, nuncq; Polorum
Regna tenes, loco passus Marcelde vocato.*

This place sometime thee pleased well, *Oswald*,
King thou hadst bene once of Northumberland,
Thou sufferedst in a place *Marcelde* call'd,
Thy Kingdome now is heaven, that aye doth stand.

From *Warrington*, the River *Mersey* spreading abroad, and straightwaies drawing in himselfe againe, with a wide and open outlet, very commodious for merchandise entrench into the Irish Sea, where *Litherpool*, called in the elder ages *Lipopol*, commonly *Lirpool* is seated, so named, as it is thought, of the water spreading it selfe in manner of a Poole: whence there is a convenient passage over into Ireland and much frequented, and in that respect more notorious, than for any Antiquity. For, there is no mention extant thereof any where in ancient Writers, but that *Roger of Poitiers*, who was Lord, as they spake in those dayes, of the Honour of *Lancaster*, built a Castle heere. Whereof the worthy family of the *Molineux* Knights have had the custody now a long time, whose chiefe seat is hard by at *Seslon*, which, the said *Roger of Poitiers* gave unto *Vivian de Molineux*, shortly after the first entry of the Normans. For, all that Territory betweene the two Rivers *Ribell* and *Mersey*, the same *Roger* held: as appeareth evidently by the authentical Record of *Domesday booke*. Neere unto *Seslon*, Als a little River seeketh a way into the Sea, and when hee hath found it, giveth name to a small Village *Attmouth* standing by, and hath *Ferneby* neere unto it: wherein the moist and mossie soile turffes are digged up, which serve the inhabitants for fwell and candle light. Under the said turres, there is a certaine dead and blackish water, upon which there swimmeth, I wot not what unctuous matter, and in it swimme little fishes that are caught by the diggers of turfe: So that wee may say, there bee fishes digged heere out of the earth, no lesse than about *Heraclea*, and *Tios* in *Pontus*. And no mervaille, seeing that in such watery places fishes otherwhiles seeking for moisture get under the ground, and men goe a fishing with spades. But, that in *Paphlagonia* many and those good fishes are gotten by digging in places nothing watery, there is some secreet and peculiar reason thereof in Nature: and pleasantly wrote *Seneca*, *Why should not fishes enter and passe into the land, if we passe over the Sea?*

Fishes digged
out of the
ground.

From

From hence the open shore shooteth out with a great bent; and more within land from the sea standeth *Ormeskirke* a mercate towne, well knowne by reason of the sepulture there of the *Stanleys*, Earles of Derby, whose chiefe feat *Laibam* is hard by: a stately house, which they have enlarged continually, ever since King Henry the Fourth his dayes, what time Sir John Stanley knight, father to John Lord deputy of Ireland, descended of the same stemme whence the Barons de *Audley*, married the daughter and heire of Sir Thomas *Laibam*, a right noble knight, who brought him for her dowrie this faire inheritance, with many other possessions. And from that time have the *Stanleys* planted their seat heere: of whom Thomas, the sonne of Thomas Lord Stanley, was by King Henry the seventh created Earle of Derby; and had issue by Eleonor *Nevill* daughter to the Earle of Salisbury, George Lord *Strange*, for he had wedded Joan the onely daughter and heire of John Baron *Le Strange* of *Knockin*, who dying in his fathers life time, begat a sonne named Thomas, the second Earle of Derby; unto whom Anne, the daughter of Edward Lord *Hastings*, bare Edward the third Earle of Derby, who begat of Dorothea, daughter of Thomas *Howard* Duke of Norfolk, Henry the fourth Earle: who married Margaret, daughter of Henry *Clifford* Earle of Cumberland, mother unto Ferdinand the fifth Earle lately deceased, and to William now the sixth Earle, who succeeded his brother: but I forget my selfe now, when as I have formerly remembred as much.

Duglesse a riveret, creepeth and stealeth along quietly by this place; neere unto which our noble Arthur, as *Ninnius* writeth, put the Saxons to flight in a memorable battaile. At the head hereof standeth the towne *Wiggin*, called in ancient times *Wibiggin*: of which name I have nothing else to say, but that in Lancashire they call buildings and houses *Biggins*: neither of the towne, but that it is faire, and a Corporation also with a Maior and Burgeffes: and the parson of the Church, as I have learned, is Lord of the towne. Hard by it *Holland* sheweth it selfe, out of a younger brother, whereof that most noble and renowned race of the *Hollands* Earles of Kent, and Dukes also of Surry and Excester, fetched both their originall and their surname. But the daughter and heire of the eldest brother, who flourished here in knights degree, being in the end married into the house of the *Lovels*, brought unto them an addition of possessions, with her Armes, viz. in a shield Azure * *flores Argent* a Lion rampant guardant Arg. Neere unto the mouth of *Duglesse* is *Merton*, a very great & large poole, which empieth it selfe into this, river, and then freight waies meeteth with the river *Ribell*, neare his outlet; for this is the next river after *Mersey* that runneth into the sea, and hath not yet lost quite his former ancient name; for *Ptolomee* calleth the salt water or arms of the sea here, *BELLISAMAY*, and we *Ribell*, perhaps by addition of the Saxon word *Rhe* unto it, that signifieth a River. This river comming with a quicke and hasty streame out of the hills in Yorke-shire, taketh his course first Southward, by three exceeding high mountaines, *Ingleborow hill* at the spring head, which I wondered at to see how it ascendeth as it were by degrees with a huge and mighty ridge Westward, and at the farthest end mounteth up into the aire, as if another hill were set upon the head of it: *Penigint*, haply so called of his whitish & snowy top, for so *Penguin* signifieth in the british tongue: and he riseth aloft with an huge bulke, howbeit not altogether so high as the other. But when *Ribell* commeth into Lancashire (for those two stand in Yorke-shire) *Pendle-hill* advanceth it selfe up to the skie with a lofty head, and in the very top thereof bringeth forth a peculiar plant, which, as though it came out of the cloudes, they tearme *Clowdes-berry*. But this mountaine is most notorious for the harme that it did not long since to the country lying beneath it by reason of a mighty deale of water gushing out of it: as also for an infallible prognostication of raine, so often as the top thereof is covered with a mist. Of these hills I have made mention the more willingly, both because they are the highest in our *Apennines*: whence cometh this vulgar Rhime:

Ingleborow, Pendle and Penigint,

Are the highest hills betweene Scotland and Trent.

R R

Ormeskirke.

Stanleys Earles
of Derby.

Duglesse a riveret.

Wiggin.

Biggin, what it is.

The family of
the Hollands.

The Hollands
coat of Armes.
* With flowres
de Lыз.

Bellifama.

Penigint.

Pendle hill.

Clowdesberry.

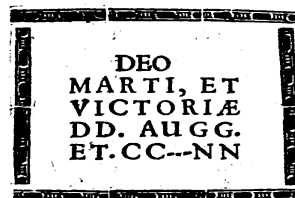
Pennine
Alpes.
Pen in British
what it is.
Clithero.
Whaley.

As also that the reader may understand, as I said before, why the highest *Alpes* A were called of the old Gaules *Pennine*, and why the very top of the hills, named *Penninum*, and *Apennini*, were of them so tearmed. For *Pen* in the British tongue signifieth the tops of hills. By an out corner or parcel of *Pendle hill*, standeth *Clithero* castle, built by the *Lacies* neere unto *Ribell*, and a neighbour unto it *Whaley*, in the Saxon tongue *Walaleg*, famous for the monastery that the said *Lacies* founded, which was translated from *Stanlaw* in Cheshire hither, in the yeere 1296. where in the yeere 798. duke *Wade* unfortunately gave battaile to Arduolph King of Northumberland, at *Billangho*, which is more short called *Langho*. This *Ribell* no sooner turneth into the West, but imparteth his name to a small towne, which in our age is called *Riblechester* B: where are digged up from time to time so many monuments of Roman antiquity, statues, peeces of coyn, Pillars, Piedestals & Chapters of pillars, heathen altars, Marble-stones and inscriptions, that the inhabitants may seeme not without cause to have this hobling rhyme so rife in their mouthes.

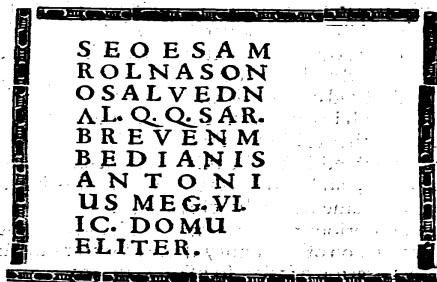
It is written upon a wall in Rome,

Ribchester was as rich as any towne in Christendome.

And the port high wayes came directly hither, raised up with eminent causeis: one from Yorke, another out of the North, through *Bowland-Forrest*, a spacious peece of ground, which as yet is most evidently to be seene for many miles together. But the country folke have so disfigured the inscriptions, that although I did see many, yet C could I scarce read one or two of them. At *Salisbury hall*, an house of that ancient family of the *Talbots*, standing neere by, I saw the base or foot of a pillar with this inscription.



In a wall neere unto it, there is another great stone infixed, shewing in the fore-part *Cupid* and another little image; out of the backe-side or reverse whereof this was exemplified for me: but the inscription carrieth no sense with it, which because it troubled me a long time, I will set down here underneath, to see what the opinion of other men is of it.



For mine owne part, I can make nothing else thereof, but that most of these words were the British names of places adjoining. In the yeere 1603. when I went a second time to see this place, I hapned upon the greatest and fairest Altar that ever I saw, dedicated to the *Mother Goddesses* by a Captain of the *Asturians*, with this inscription.

DE-

DEIS MATRIBVS
M.INGENVI-
VS ASIATICVS
*DECALAST.
SS. LL. M.

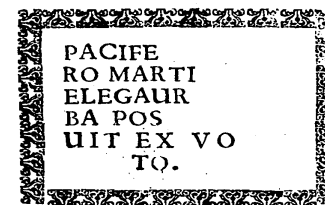
In the house of
Thomas
Rhodes.

* Haply, *Decurio* *dux Asturum*, *succentum* *solvit* (*s-votum*) *libens*, *lubens*, *merito*.

Concerning these *DEABUS*, or *DEIS MATRIBUS*, that is, *Mothers Goddesses*, what they were I cannot finde out with all my searching: for in the volumes of Inscriptions gathered through the world, save in another Altar besides found among us, they are not mentioned, as farre as I remember. Onely I read that *Enguim*, a little towne in Sicily, was ennobled for the pretence of the *MOTHER GODDESSES*, wherein were shewed certaine speares and brazen helmets, which *Metio* and *Ulysses* consecrated to those Goddesses.

Dee Matres.
Mother Goddesses.
See in the Bishopricke of Durham.
Plutarch in M. Marcellus.

Another little Altar I saw there, cast out among rubbish stone, with this inscription:



So small a one this was, that it may seeme to have beene some poore mans little altar to carry with him to and fro, serving only to burne and offer incense or salt, and meale upon it: whereas that other was farre bigger, and made for to sacrifice and offer greater beasts upon it. In these altars the posterity no doubt imitated *Noah*, even after they had fallen away and revolted from the true worship of God. Neither erected they altars to their Gods onely, but also unto their Emperours by way of servile flattery, with this impious title, *NUMINI MAIESTATIQUE EORUM*, that is, *unto their GOD-HEAD and Majesty*. Unto these they kneeled in humble maner; these they clasped about and embraced as they prayed, before these they tooke their oaths: and in one word, in these and in their sacrifices consisted the maine substance of all their religion, so farre forth, that whosoever had no altar of their owne, they were thought verily to have no religion, nor to acknowledge any God at all.

Altars of the
Gentiles.
Genes. 8.

Moreover, very lately, and but the other day, a stone was digged up here, wherein was engraven the naked portraict or image of a man on horse-backe, without saddle, without bridle, with both hands seeming to launce his speare, and ready to ride over a naked man lying downe along at his foot, who holdeth before I wot not what foure square peece. Betweene the horse and him that

Rrr 2

lieth

Haply C. Al.
for Centurio
Alz Sarmata-
rum.

lieth along are these letters D.M. and under him so lying, are read these words C.A.L. A SARMATA. All the letters beside, which were many, are so worn out and gone, that they could not be read, neither list I to guess any farther what they were. That ALA SARMATARUM, that is, a wing of Sarmatian horsemen abode in this place, it may seeme, as well by that former inscription, as by this, that many yeeres before was found hard by.

Out of Willi-
am Lambards
notes.

HIS. TERRIS. TEGITUR.
AEL. MATRONA QU-----
VIX. AN. XXVIII. M. II. D. VIII.
ET. M. JULIUS MAXIMUS. FIL.
VIX. AN. VI. M. III. D. XX. ET CAM
PANIA. DUBBA. MATER
VIX. AN. L. JULIUS. MAXIMUS
-----ALÆ. SAR. CONJUX
CONJUGI. INCOMPARABILI
ET. FILIO. PATRI. PIENTIS
SIMO. ET SOCERÆ. TENA
CISSIMÆ MEMORIÆ. P.

Ribodunum.
Coccium.

But hence have wee no light at all toward the finding out of the ancient name of this place which now is in question, unlesse it hath now and then changed the name, which otherwhiles usually happeneth. For in this place *Ptolomy* hath set *RIBODUNUM*: if for *RIBODUNUM*, the name is not altogether unlike to *Ribbechefer*: and just at this distance from *Mancunium*, that is, Manchester, that is to say 18. miles off, doth Antonine place *COCCIM*, which also in some copies we read *GOCIMUM*.

But when the flourishing fortune of this City, having runne the full and fatall period, was faded, either by warre, or earthquake, as the common sort doe think, somewhat lower where *Ribell* suffereth the violence of the flowing tides of the Sea, and is called of the Geographer *BELLISAMA ÆSTUARIUM*, that is, the salt-water *BELLISAMA*, neare unto *Penworth*, where in the *Conquerors* reigne there was a little castle (as appeareth by the Records of the said King) out of the fall of *Ribbechefer* arose in stead of it her daughter *Preston*, a great, and (for these Countries) a faire town, & well inhabited, so called of religious men; for in our speech the name foundeth as much as *Priests towne*. Beneath this *Ribell*, *Derwen* a rill commeth in with his water: and the first mercate towne that hee watereth is *Blacke-borne*, so called of the *Blacke-water*, which towne belonging in times past to the *Lacies*, gave name unto *Blackburne-shire*, a little territory adjoining; from thence it runneth by *Houghton-towre*, which communicated the name unto a notable family that long time dwelt in it: and by *Walton*, which William, Lord of Lancaster, King Stephens sonne, gave unto *Walter de Walton*: and afterward it was the possession of the ancient race of the *Langtons*, who descended from the said *Waltons*. But now let us returne.

Penworth, o-
therwise called
Penverdant.
Preston.

Houghton.

Walton.

Ander-nesse.

The said *Preston* whereof I spake, is by the common people called *Preston in Ander-nesse*, for *Acmunder-nesse*, for so the English Saxons termed this part of the shire, which lying between the two rivers, *Ribel* and *Cocar*, stretcheth out with a promontory in manner of a nose, which afterwards they also called *Acmunder-nesse*. Wherein were no more but 16. villages inhabited in King William the Conquerors time; the rest lay wast, as we read in *Doomes-day booke*, and Roger of *Poisiers* held the same.

But afterwards it belonged to *Theobald Walter*: from whom the *Boitellers* of Ireland derive their beginning: for thus wee read in a Charter of K. Richard the first, *Know yee, that wee have given, and by this present Charter confirmed unto Theobald Walter,*

*A. Walter, for his homage and service, Agmunder-nesse full and whole, with all the appertene-
ments, &c.* This part yeeldeth plenty of oates, but not so apt to beare barley: Howbeit it is full of fresh pastures, especially to the sea side, where it is partly Champion ground, and thereupon it seemeth that a good part of it is called *The File*, for the Field (and yet in the Kings Rolls it goeth under the Latine name *L I M A*, that is, a File, namely, that Smithes tooke or instrument wherewith Iron, or any other thing is smoothed.) But because elsewhere it is marsh ground, they hold it not very wholsome. *Wie*, a little river speedily cutting over this part, commeth rolling downe out of *Wierdale*, a very solitary place, and runneth by *Grenbaugh Castle*, which *Thomas Stanley*, the first Earle of Derby out of this family, built: what time as hee stood in feare of certaine out-lawed Gentlemen of this shire, whose possessions King Henry the seventh had freely given unto him. For many an assault they gave him, and other whiles in hostile manner made inrodes into his lands, untill the moderate carriage of the good and worthy man, and proceffe of time pacified these quarrels.

The file.

Grenhaugh ca-
stle.

A new manner
of making salt.

Quick-sands.

The river Lune
or Lone.
Salmons.

Over-burrow.

Bremetona-
cum.

Kernellare
what it is.
Hornby castle,
Barons Monte-
Eagle.

Here along the sea shore, you may see in many places heaps of sand, whereupon they powre water, untill it gather a saltish humour, which afterwards with turfes they boile untill it be white salt. There be also here uncertaine sands not to be trusted, but ready to catch and swallow (they call them *Quick-sands*) so dangerous for travellers, whiles at a low water, when tide is past, they seeke to goe the nearest way, that they had need to take very good heed lest in going a foot (I use *Sidonius* his words) they suffer not shipwracke, and be cast away on the land. But especially about the mouth of *Cocar*, where, as it were, in a field of *Syrts* or *Quick-sands*, *Cokar sand Abbey*, an Abbey not long since of the *Cluniack Monkes*, built by *Ranulph de Melchines*, but open to the violence of windes, stood betweene the mouths of *Cocar* and *Lune* or *Lone*, and hath a bleake prospect into the wide Irish sea. This river *Lune*, commonly called *Lune*, springing out of the mountaines of *Westmorland*, running Southward in a channell now broad, now narrow; with many a reach in and out hindring his streame, enricheth the dwellers thereby in Summer time with great store of *Salmons*: which because they delight in cleere water, and especially in shallow places that are sandy, come up thicke together into this, and other rivers of this coast. As soone as *Lune* is entred into *Lancashire*, *Lace*, a little brooke from out of the East joyneth his streame with it. In which place now standeth *Over-Burrow*, a very small village of husbandmen; which, as the inhabitants informed mee, had bene sometimes a great City, and took up all those large fields betweene *Lace* and *Lone*, and after it had suffered all miseries that follow famine, was driven to composition through extremity. This tradition they received from their ancestors, delivered as it were from hand to hand unto them. And in very truth by divers and sundry monuments exceeding ancient, by engraven stones, pavements of square checker worke, peeces of *Romane coine*, and by this new name *Burrow*, which with us signifieth a *Burgh*; that place should seeme to be of great antiquity. But if it recover the ancient name, it may thanke other and not mee, although I have sought as narrowly, and diligently for it, as for *Antes pathes*: neither is any man to thinke, that the severall names of every towne in Britaine are precisely noted and set downe in *Ptolomee*, *Antonine*, *The Notice of Provinces*, and other approved and principall Authours. But if a man may goe by ghesse, I would willingly thinke that it was *BREMETONACUM* (which *Jerome Surina*, a Spaniard, in his notes upon *Antonine*, deemeth truly to be a different place from *BREMETURACUM*) and that by the distance from *COCCIM*, or *Ribbechefer*.

From this *Burrow* the river *Lune* runneth beside *Thurthland*, *Funfall*, a fortress built by Sir *Thomas Tansfall* in the time of King Henry the fourth, when the King had given him Licence to fortifie and kernell his mansion house; that is, to embattle it: also by *Hornby* a faire castle, which glorifieth much of the first founder, *M. de Mont-Begon*, and of the Lords thereof, *The Harringtons* and *Stanleys*, Barons *Stables* of *Mont-Eagle*, descended from *Thomas Stanley*, the first Earle of Derby of this house.

and advanced to that title by King Henry the eighth, of whom the third and the last A named William, left behind him his onely daughter and heire, Elizabeth, wife to Edward Parker *Baron Morley*, mother to Sir William Parker, whom in that regard King James commanded to be summoned to Parliament by the title of Lord *Morley*, and whom wee and all our posterity may acknowledge to have bene borne for the good of all Britain. For, by a short letter, obscurely penned, and secretly sent unto him, and by him dutifully discovered, in a happy houre was detected, at the very last houre, in a manner, when the whole State was at the point to perish by the most horrible and detestable treason, that ever any barbarous impiety could contrive: what time certaine godlesse and irreligious monsters of men, masking under the mantle of religion, having bestowed a great quantity of gun-powder under the Parliament house, stood ready with match in hand to give fire thereto, for to blow up both Prince and Countrey with one blast in a moment.

The Gunpowder treason.

Lancaster.

Lone having passed on some few miles from hence, commeth within the sight of *Lancaster*, standing on his South banke, the chiefe towne of this region: which the inhabitants more truly call *Lancaster*, as the Scots also, who name it *Lancastell*, of the River *Lone*. Both the name still remaining, and the river running under it, doe argue in some sort that it is *Longovicium*, where, under the Lieutnant Generall of Britaine, as wee finde in the *Notice of Provinces*, a company of the *Longovicarii*, who of the place borrowed that name, kept their station. Although the towne C at this day is not very well peopled, nor much frequented, and all the inhabitants thereof are given to husbandry (for the territory all round about is well manured, lying open, fresh and faire, and not void of woods:) yet for proove of Roman antiquity, they finde otherwhiles peeces of the Emperours coine, especially where the Friery stood: for there, they say, was the plot upon which the ancient City was planted, which the Scots, after they had with a sudden out-road wasted all in their way, in the yeere of our Redemption 1322. set on fire and burnt. Since which time they have begunne to build nearer unto a greene hill by the river side, on which standeth the castle, great I cannot say, nor of any antiquity, but faire and strong. And hard by it standeth upon the height of the hill, the onely Church they have, where the Monkes aliens had in times past, a cell founded by Roger of *Poitiers*. A little beneath which, by a faire bridge over *Lone*, in the descent and side of the hill where it is steepest, hangeth a peece of a most ancient wall of Roman work, seeming ready to reele; *Wery wall* they call it, after a later British name, as it should seeme, of this towne. For they called it *Caer Werid*, as one would say, *The Greene City*, happely of that fresh greene hill. But I leave this to others. John Lord of *Moriton* and of *Lancaster*, afterwards King of England, confirmed by *Charter* to his Burgeses of *Lancaster*, all the liberties which he had granted unto the Burgeses of *Bristol*. And King Edward the third in the fixe and thirtieth yeere of his reign granted unto the Mayor and Bailives, and Commonalty of the towne of *Lancaster*, that *Placit* and *Sessions* should not elsewhere bee holden. This towne seeth the Pole Arcticke E (that I may note so much) elevated foure and fifty degrees and five minutes, and standeth removed from the utmost line of the West, twenty degrees and forty eight minutes in Longitude.

Fornesse.

Whiles I looked round about from the top of the said castle hill, to see the mouth of *Lone*, that issueth it selfe into the sea a little lower, *Fornesse* the other part of this shire appeared in sight, which the sea hath after a sort violently rent apart from the rest. For when as the shore did from hence shoote out a maine way into the West, the Ocean, as it were much displeased and angry herat, obstinately ceased not to slash and mangle it, nay, which is more, hath with his fell flowing at boisterous tides devoured the shore: and thereby maketh three wide creeks or bays; namely, *Kent-sand*, at which the river *Ken* powreth it selfe forth; *Leven-sand*; and *Dudden-sand*: betwene which (two) the land beareth out so much, that thereupon it took the name. For with us in our language, *For-nesse* & *Foreland* is all one with the Latine *Promontorium anterium* (that is, a *Fore-promontory*.) All this part, unlesse it be

A be hard by the sea side, mounteth up aloft with high topped hills; and huge fels standing thicke together (which they tearme *Forness-fells*). Among which the Britans lived safe a great while, trusting upon these strong naturall fences: although the victorious English Saxons made way through all in the end. For in the yeere 228. after there comming in, I gather that the Britans had their abode here; because Egfride King of Northumberland, gave unto Holy Saint *Cuthbert*, the land called *Carthmell*, and all the Britans in it (thus wee finde written in his life) and it is very well knowne that *Carthmell* is a part of this shire by *Kent-sand*, and a little towne in it retaineth yet the same name: Wherein *William Mareschall* the elder, Earle of Pembroke built a Priory, and endowed it with living. If you read in *Ptolomee* *SETANTIUM* *μυρ*, that is, *The Setantians Mere*, as some Copies have; and not *Setantiorum* *μυρ*, that is, *The Setantians Haven*, I durst boldly avouch that these Britans here were called *SETANTII*. For among these mountaines the greatest standing water in all England, now called *Winander-mere*; in the English Saxon *Winadpe-mers* (haply of his winding and turning in and out) lieth stretched out for the space of ten miles or thereabout with crooked bankes, and is all paved (as it were) with stone in the bottom: in some places of wonderfull depth, and breeding a peculiar kinde of fish found no where else, which the inhabitants there by call *A Chare*. And a little village standing hard by carrieth the name thereof: In which Eathred King of Northumberland, in the yeer of Christ 792. when he had by force fetched King *Elfwolds* somes out of Yorke, slue them, that by his owne wickednesse, and their blood, hee might secure the Kingdome to himselfe and his.

Carthmell.

Winander-mere.

The fish Chare.

Betwixt this Mere and the river *Dudden*, the promontory runneth out, which wee commonly call *Fornesse*, and hath the Iland *Walney*, as a fore-fence or countermure lying along by it, with a small arme of the sea betwene: The gullet or entry into which is defended with a fort, called *the Pile of Fouldrey*, standing in the midst of the waves upon a rocke, erected there by the Abbot of *Fornesse*, in the first yeere of King Edward the third.

As for the Promontory it selfe, there is nothing worth the sight in it, unlesse it be D the ruines of a monastery of Cistercian Monkes, called *Fornesse Abbey*, which Stephen Earle of Bullen, afterwards King of England, in the yeere of our redemption 1137. built in a place called sometimes *Bekensgill*, or translated rather from *Tulket in Alder nesse*. Out of the Monkes whereof, and from no place else (as they themselves have reported) the Bishops of the Isle of *Man* (that lieth just over against) were by an ancient custome wont to bee elected: as having bene the mother (as it were) of many Monasteries in the said *Man*, and in Ireland. More Eastward standeth *Alding-bam*, an ancient hereditament belonging to the family of the *Haveringtons*, or *Harringtons*, unto whom it came from the *Flemmings*, by the *Cancefelds*; and whose inheritance descended by a daughter unto *William Bonvill* of Somersetshire, and at last E by him unto the *Greies*, Marqueses of Dorset. And somewhat higher is *Ulverston*, in this regard not to bee passed over in silence, for that King Edward the third gave a moiety thereof unto Sir John Coupland, a most brave warriour: whom also he advanced to the dignity of a Banaret, because in the battaile at Durham, he took David the second King of the Scots prisoner. But after his decease, the same King granted it with other faire lands in this tract, and the title also of Earle of Bedford, unto *Ingelram Lord Coucy* of France, as who had married his daughter *Isabel*, and whose ancestors in right of *Christiana Lindsey*, had great renewes in England.

The booke of Fournesse.

Aldingham. Harringtons.

Touching the noble men which have borne the title of Lancaster, there were in the first infancy of the Norman Empire three stiled *Lords of the Honour of Lancaster*: namely, Roger of ** Poitou*, the sonne of Roger Mont-gomery, who was surnamed *Pitavenfis*, as William of *Malmesbury* writeth, because hee had married a wife from out of *Poitou* in France. But when he had by his perfidious disloyalty lost this honour,

Lords of Lancaster. ** Pitavenfis*, or of *Poitiers*.

Walter Hem-
mingford.
Ro. Hoveden
pag. 373. b.

Earle of Lan-
caster, King of
Sicily.

* De Cadurcis.

Dukes of Lan-
caster.

honour, William the sonne of King Stephen, and Earle of *Moriton* and *Warren*, had A the same given unto him by his Father. After whose death King Richard the first bestowed it upon his brother John, who was afterward King of England. For thus we read in an old History: *King Richard declared his singular love to his brother John. For beside Ireland, and the Earledome of Moriton in Normandy, he beaped upon him so many dignities in England, that he was in maner a Tetrarch there: Finally, he conferred upon him Cornwall, Lancaster, Nottingham, Derby, with the country adjoining, and many more beside.* A good while after King Henry the third, the sonne of John, first advanced Edmund his second sonne, called by some Crouch-backe, to the title of Earle of Lancaster, unto whom hee conveyed and made over the inheritances and B honours of *Simon Montfort* Earle of Leicester, *Robert Ferrars* Earle of Derby, and John of *Monmouth*, because they had risen, and rebelliously borne armes against him: and he gave this *Honor of Lancaster* unto him in these words, *The Honour, County, Castle and Town of Lancaster, with the Cow-pastures, & Forrests of Wiresdale, & Lownsdale, New-castle under Lime, the manour, Forrest, and Castle of Pickering, the manor of Scaleby, the towne of Gomicester, and the rems of the towne of Huntingdon, &c.* After hee the said Edmund had missed the kingdome of *Sicily*, in which the Pope had invested him in vaine by a ring, and not without ridiculous disgrace to the English nation, caused in honour of him certaine peeces of gold to bee stamped, with this title, *AIMUNDUS REX SICILIAE*, having first cunningly sucked a great masse of money C from the credulous King in this regard. This Edmund (when his first wife *Avelina*, daughter and heire to *William de Forsibus* Earle of *Albemarle*, was dead issuelesse, who neverthelesse in her Will had made him her heire) married *Blanch* of *Artois*, of the roiall family of France, to his second wife, and by her had *Thomas*, *Henry*, and *John*, that died an infant. *Thomas* was the second Earle of Lancaster, who took to wife *Alice*, the onely daughter and heire of *Henry Lacy* Earle of *Lincolne*: who by her deed passed over unto the house of Lancaster her owne inheritance, and her mothers, that which belonged to the family of *Long Espee*, who were Earles of *Salisbury*, like as her father the said *Henry Lacy* had made the like conviance before of his owne lands, in case *Alice* should dye without issue, as it afterward happened. But this *Thomas*, for behaving himselfe insolently toward his soveraigne *Edward* the second, and still supplying fewell to civill warres, being taken prisoner in the field, lost his head, leaving no issue. Howbeit, when this sentence of death pronounced against him, was afterwards by authority of Parliament reversed, because hee had not his tryall by his Peeres, according to the Law, and great Charter, his brother *Henry* succeeded after him in all his possessions and honours. Hee also was advanced inestate by his wife *Maude*, daughter and sole heire of *Sir Patrick* * *Chaworth*, who brought unto him not onely her owne patrimony, but also great inheritances in Wales, of *Mauric of London*, and of *Simard*, from whom she descended. This *Henry* left behind him *Henry* his onely sonne, whom King *Edward* the third from an Earle raised unto the honour of a Duke: and he was second man of all our Nobility E which received the name of Duke. But hee, having no issue male, departed this life, leaving behind him two daughters, *Maude* and *Blanch*, betweene whom the inheritance was divided. *Maude* was married to *William of Bavaria*, who was Earle of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Frisland*, *Henault*, and in his wives right, of *Leicester*. And when as she deceased without children, *John of Gaunt*, so called because hee was borne at *Gaunt* in *Flanders*, fourth sonne of King *Edward* the third, who had married *Blanch*, the other daughter of *Henry* aforesaid, entered upon the whole inheritance: and now being for wealth equivalent to many Kings, and created withal by his father Duke of Lancaster, he obtained also at his hands great royalties; for hee, having related what noble service he had performed to his country, at home and abroad in the warres, preferred the County of Lancaster to the dignity of a County F Palatine

A Palatine, by his letters Patent, the tenour whereof runneth in this wise. *Wee have granted for us and our heires, unto our foresaid sonne, that he may have for tearme of his life, his Chancery within the County of Lancaster, and his writs to be sealed under his own seale to be appointed for the office of the Chancellour: also Justices of his owne, as well to hold Plees of the Crowne, as also oiber plees whatsoever touching common Law: also the bearing and deciding of the same, yea and the making of all executions whatsoever, by vertue of their owne writs and officers there.*

Moreover, all oiber liberties and Royalities whatsoever to a County Palatine belonging, as freely and in as ample maner, as the Earle of *Chester* within the same County of *Chester* is known to have &c. Neither was he Duke of Lancaster onely, but also by his marriage with *Constance* the daughter of *Peter King of Leon and Castile*, hee for a time was stiled by the name of King of *Leon* and of *Castile*. But by a composition he gave this over; and in the thirteenth yeere of King *Richard* the Second, by consent of Parliament was created Duke of *Aquitaine*, to have and hold the same for tearme of life of the King of England, as King of France: but to the universall dislike of *Aquitaine*, repining, and affirming that their Seigniory was inseparably annexed to the Crowne of England. At which time his stile ranne thus, *John, sonne to the King of England, Duke of Aquitaine and of Lancaster, Earle of Derby, Lincolne, and Leicester, and high Steward of England.*

C After him, *Henry of Bollembroke* his sonne succeeded in the Dukedome of Lancaster, who when hee had dispossessed *Richard* the second, and obtained the Kingdom of England; he considering that being now King he could not beare the title of Duke of Lancaster, and unwilling that the said title should be discontinued, ordained by assent of Parliament, that *Henry* his eldest sonne should enjoy the same, and be stiled, *Prince of Wales, Duke of Aquitaine, Lancaster, and Cornwall, and Earle of Chester*: and also that the liberties and franchises of the Duchy of Lancaster, should remaine to his said sonne severed from the Crowne of England: and to make better assurance to himselfe, his heires and successours in these inheritances, by authority of Parliament he ordained in these words. *We, not willing that our said inheritance, or the liberties of the same, by occasion of this present assumption upon us of our regall state & dignity, should be in any thing changed, transferred, diminished, or impaired, will that the same our inheritance, with the foresaid rights and liberties thereof, be kept, continued, and held fully and wholly, to us & our said heires in the said Charters specified, in the same maner and forme, condition and state, as they descended and came unto us: and also with all and every such liberties and franchises, and oiber priviledges, commodities, and profits whatsoever, in which our Lord and father whiles he lived had and held it for terme of his own life, by the grant of *Richard* late King. And by the tenour of these presents, of our own certayne knowledge, with the consent of this our present Parliament, we grant, declare, decree, and ordaine for us and our heires, that as well our Duchy of Lancaster, as all oiber things and every one, Counties, Honours, Castles, Manours, Fees, or Inheritances, Advocations, Possessions, Annuities, and Seignories whatsoever, descended unto us before the obtaining of our Regall dignity, howsoever & wheresoever, by right of inheritance in service, or in reversion, or any way whatsoever, remaine for ever to us and our said heires, specified in the Charters above said, in forme aforesaid.*

After this, *K. Henry* the fifth by authority of Parliament dis severed from the crown and annexed unto this Duchy a very great and large inheritance, which had descended unto him in right of his mother *Dame Mary*, who was daughter and one of the heires of *Humfrey Bohun* Earle of *Hereford*. In this forme and estate it remained under *Henry* the fifth, and *Henry* the sixth: but King *Edward* the fourth in the first yeere of his reigne, when hee had in Parliament attained and forfeited *Henry* the sixth, appropriated it, as they use to speake, unto the Crowne, that is to say, unto himselfe, and his heires Kings of England: From which King *Henry* the seventh notwithstanding

John of Gaunt
King of Car-
tile.

King Henry
the fourth.

Parliament
Roll 1. H. 4.

notwithstanding forthwith separated. And so it continueth, having severall officers, A
 namely, A Chancellor, an Attourney, a Receiver, a Clerke of the Court,
 sixe Assistanis, a Messenger, two Auditors, 23. Receivers, and
 three Supervisors, &c.

B

There are counted in this shire, beside very many Chappels, Parishes 36. and no more:
 but those wonderfull populous, and which for multitude of inhabnans, farre
 exceed the greatest parishes elsewhere.

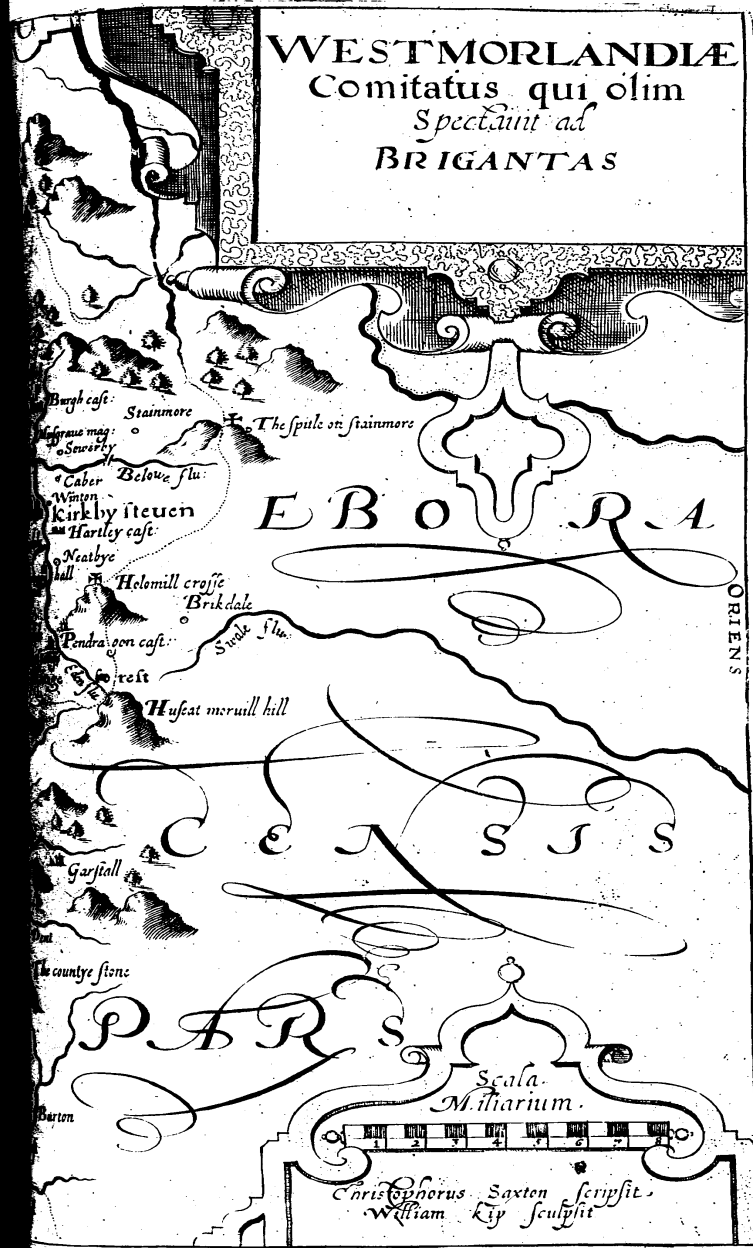
C

WEST-

D

E

F



WEST-MORLAND.

BEYOND the furthest part of Lancashire more Northward, lieth another lesser countrey of the *Brigantes*, called by late Latine writers *Westmaria*, and *Westmorlandia*, in our tongue *West-more-land*, and of some later Latine writers *Westmor*: bounded on the West and North side with *Cumberland*, on the East with *Yorke-shire*, and the Bishopricke of *Durham*. Which because it lyeth all of it among moores and high hilles reaching one to another (for our Apennine waxeth here broader and broader still as it runneth) and was for the most part un-manured, came by this name in our language. For such barren places, which cannot easily by the painfull labour of the husbandman bee brought to fruitfulness, the Northren Englishmen call *Moors*: and *West-more-land* is nothing else with us, but *A westerne moorish country*. Let that dreame therefore as touching King *Marius*, bee excluded out of the schoole of reverend antiquity, who forsooth, as our Chroniclers have dreamed, subdued the *Picts*, and called this countrey after his owne name.

The more Southerly part of this shire, contained in a narrow roome betweene the river *Lone* and *Winander mere*, is reputed fruitfull enough in the vallics, although it can shew many felles, with rough and stony rockes, lying ever bare without grasse: and is all tearmed by one name, *The Barony of Kendale* and *Candale*, that is, *The Dale by Can*: for it took name of the river *Can*, which running rough upon stones, cutteth through it. On the west banke whereof standeth *Kandale* or *Kendale*, called also *Kake by Kandale*, a towne of very great trade and resort, with two broad and long streets crossing the one over the other; and a place for excellent clothing, and for industry so surpassing, that in regard thereof it carrieth a great name: For the inhabitants have great trafficke and vent of their woollen clothes throughout all parts of England. They count it also much for their credit, that it hath dignified Barons and Earles with the title thereof. As for their Barons, they were the offspring of *Two Tuleboys*: of whose race, *William*, by consent of King Henry the second, called himselfe *William of Lancaster*, whose Niece and heire was wedded unto *Gilbert*, the sonne of *Roger Fuz-Reinfrid*, by whose daughters (after her sonne *William* was dead) the inheritance went to *Peter Bru*, Lord of *Skelion*, the second of that forename, and unto *William Lindesay*; from whom by the mothers side, as we learne out of the *Liege book of Furnesse Abbey*, *Ingelram* Lord of *Coucy* in France, fetched his descent. By which *Peter Bru* his daughter, the sister and heire of *Peter Bru* the third, came this Barony to the *Rosses of Werke*, and from them by right of inheritance this possession was devolved upon the *Parres*, of whom *Sir William Par* was made Lord *Par* by King Henry the eighth. As for the Castle, the ancient seat of these Lords, standing over against the towne, it runneth to decay through age and neglect. As for Earles of *Kendale*, there have beene three in number: *John Duke of Bedford*, advanced to that honour by his brother King Henry the fifth: *John Duke of Somerset*: and *John de Foix*, of that most noble and honorable family of the *Foix* in France, whom King Henry the sixth, for his faithfull service in the French warres, had preferred to that dignity. Whence perhaps it is, that some of this house of *Foix* in France, retain the name still of *Candale*. As for any glory else of antiquity, *Kendall* to my knowledge challengeth none. And yet I was once of opinion, that it was *CON-CA NG I*, a station place sometimes of the Romanes; but time hath now instructed me better. Somewhat beneath, in the river *Can*, are two *Catadups*, or water falls, where the waters have a downefall with a mighty noise: the one is by *Levens*, a little village; the other more Southward, neere to *Betham*; which to the neighbour inhabitants are as good as true prognostications: for when that which standeth North from them foundeth more cleere and aloud in their cares, they looke certainly for faire

The Barony of Kendale.

Lords of Kendale. History of Furnesse. The family of Lancaster.

L. Par of Kendale.

Earles of Kendale.

Catadups of Forfes.

faire weather: when that on the South side doth the same, they expect no other A than showers of raine, and foggy mists. Thus much for the South and narrower part of this region, which Westward is bounded with the river *Winster*, and the spacious Lake *Winander-mere*, whereof *Hspake* crewhile, and Eastward with the river *Lone* or *Lune*.

At the upper corner of *Winander-mere* lieth the dead carcasfe, as one would say, of an ancient City, with great ruines of walls, and many heapes of rubbish one from another, remaining of buildings without the walls yet to bee seene. The fortresse thereof was somewhat long, fenced with a ditch and rampire; for it tooke up in length 132. Ells, and in bredth 80. That it had beene the Romans worke is evident, B by the British bricke, by the mortar tempered with little peeces of bricke among, by small earthen pots or pitchers, by small cruets or vials of glasse, by peeces of Roman money oftentimes there found, and by round stones as much as millstones or quernstones, of which layed and couched together they framed in old time their columns, and by the paved high waies leading unto it. Now the ancient name thereof is gone, unlesse a man would ghesse at it, and thinke it were that *AMBOSGLANA*, whereof the booke of Notices maketh mention, seeing at this day it is called *Ambleside*.

On the East side the river *Lone* serveth for a limit, and after his name the tract lying about it is called *Lonsdale*: the principall towne whereof is *Kirkby Lonsdale*, C whither all the people round about repaire to Church and mercate. Above the Spring-head of *Lone*, the countrey spreadeth broader, and the hills shoot out with many turnings, betwene which there lye some vallies marvellous steepe and deepe withall, with many hollow places in manner of caves. Among these hills that notable river *Eden*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *TRUNA*, shewing his head first in Yorkshire, carrying a small and faint streame in the beginning, but afterwards growing by little and little bigger, with sundry becks still augmenting it, seeketh a way North-west, by *Pendragon Castle*, which hath nothing left unto it unconsumed by time, besides the bare name, and an heape of stones: From thence hee passeth by *Wharion Hall*, the seat of the Barons *Wharion*; of whom the first was Sir Thomas *Wharion*, advanced to that dignity by King Henry the Eighth, whom succeeded his sonne of the same name; and after him Philip that now liveth, the third Baron, a right honourable person. Afterwards it runneth downe by *Kirkby Stephen*, a mercate towne well knowne, and both the *Musgraves*, two little villages, which gave name unto that martiall and warlike family of the *Musgraves*: out of which in the reigne of King Edward the third, *Thomas Musgrave* flourished, and was by solemne writ of summons called to the Parliament in the ranke of Barons: and these *Musgraves* had their principall habitation in *Hearthly* castle adjoining.

Heere *Eden* doth, as it were, make stay with his streame, to give meeting unto other petty rivers: upon one of which, scarce two miles off from *Eden* it selfe, stood *VERTERÆ*, a towne of ancient memory, mentioned by Antonine the Emperour, E and the booke of Notices: wherein it is notified, that in the declining age of the Romane Empire, a Romane Captaine made his abode there, with a band of the *Direflorres*. But now the towne is decayed, and become a small poore village fenced with a little Fortresse, and the name turned into *Burgh*, for it is commonly named ** Burgh under Stanmore*. For in the time of the later Emperours (and willing I am to note so much once for all) little castles, meet for warre occasions, and furnished with store of corne, began to bee rearm'd *Burgi*, that is, *Burghs*, by a new name which after that the Empire was translated into the East, the Germans and others may seeme to have borrowed of the Greek word *burgos*. Hence also came the name of *Burgundians*, because they inhabited *Burghs*; for so in that age they used to call those dwelling places which were planted heere and there, along limits and marches. Neither have I read any thing else of that *Burgh*, but that in the beginning of the Norman government, the Northren English conspired heere against William the Conquerour. That this *Burgh* was *VERTERÆ*, I dare be bold to affirme, because

Ambleside.
Amboglana.

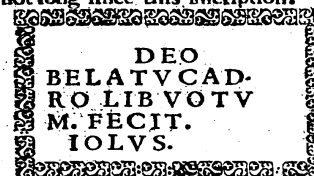
Baron Wharion.

Hearthly castle.

* *Burgus* sub-
fixeto.
Burgh under
Stanmore.
Burgus.
Vegetius lib. 4.
cap. 10.

A cause the distance thereof from *Leuatra* of the one side, and from *Brovonacum* on the other, being reduced into Italian miles, doth exactly agree with *Antonines* numbers: and for that the high street of the Romans, as yet evidently apparent by the ridges thereof, leadeth this way to *Brovonacum* by *ABALLABA*, whereof mention is made in the booke of *Notices*, which hath hitherto kept the ancient name so well, that it doth most evidently descrie and shew it selfe, yea in some fort remove all doubt. For we call it short in freed of *ABALLABA* *Apelby*. Memorable is it, for the antiquity and situation only. In the Romans time, no doubt, the *Aurelian Maurus* kept a station there. It standeth also in a pleasant site, encompassed for the most part with the river *Eden*: but so slenderly inhabited, and the building so simple, that were it not that by reason of the antiquity it had deserved to be counted the chiefe towne of the shire, and to have Sessions and *Affises* kept in the castle, which is the comongale for malefactors, it would be little better than a village. For all the beaurie of it is in one broad street, which from North to South riseth with an easie ascent of the hill: in the upper part whereof standeth the castle aloft, environed wholly almost with the river. In the nether end of it is the Church, and thereby a school, which Robert *Langton* and Miles *Spenser*, Doctors of the law founded; the Master whereof is *Reginald Bainbrige*, a right learned man, who governeth the same with great commendation; and who of his courtesie hath exemplified for mee many ancient inscriptions, and brought some hither into his garden. Neither verily was it for nought, that William of *Newborough* calleth this towne and Burgh *Princely holds*, where he writeth that William King of Scots, surprised them on the suddain, a little before himselfe was taken prisoner at *Alnewick*. Which King John afterwards having recovered, gave liberally unto Robert *Vipont*, in consideration of his singular good service to him and the state. From hence the river with his full course passeth directly North-west by *Buley*, a castle of the Bishops of Carlile; and by *Kirby Thore*, under which are seene great ruines of an old towne, and pieces of Roman coin otherwise digged up; and not long since this inscription.

Aballaba;
Apelby.



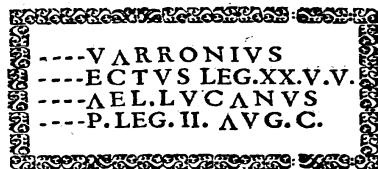
But tract of time hath quite out-worne the old name, and it is called at this day *Whelap Castle*. If I might without prejudice to the Judges of antiquitie, I would say it were *GALLAGUM* mentioned by *Ptolomee*, which *Antonine* nameth *GALLATUM*; E the distance of journeyes accord so well, and the name doth not altogether gainsay. For what words the Britans began with *GALL*, the English turned into *wall*. Thus they called *GALENA Wallingford*, and *Gall Sever wall of Sever*, *Gall-dour wall-broke*, &c. Doubtlesse it was a place in old time of better note, seeing that from hence there leadeth a paved street (*Maiden way* they call it) to *Caer Porran* neare the *Picts wall*, 20. miles or thereabouts in length, by fells, wastes, and moores. Along which street I would willingly think, were placed those Stations and Mansions mentioned by *Antonine* in the ninth journey of Britain; although no man is able precisely to say in what places they stood: and no marvaile, considering that time, which devoureth and consumeth all things, hath continually fed upon their carcases so many ages together. Not far from *Whelap*, hard by *Crawdendale*, there are evident remaines of ditches, trenches, and mounts cast up: and among them this Roman inscription (the draught whereof *Reginald Bainbrige* before named, head schoolemaster of *Appleby*, took out for me) was ingraven in a craggie rocke, the forepart of which was quite eaten out with continuance of time, or thrust out by the root of a tree there growing.

Whelap castle.
Gallatun.

Maiden way.

Sff

VAR-



That is to say, by my reading --- *Varronium Praefectum legionis vicesima valens* B
viatrix --- *Elim Lucanus Praefectum legionis secunda Augusta, castrametati sum* ---
Varronium capitaine of the xx. legion *valens viatrix* --- *Elim Lucanus* Capitaine of
the second legion *Augusta*, encamped, or did some such thing. For the twentieth
legion called *Valens viatrix*, which kept residence at *DEVA*, that is, *Westchester*;
and the second legion named *Augusta*, that abode at *ISCA*, that is, *Caer-Lenn*
in Wales, may seeme to have bene employed against the enemies in these
parts, and here to have staid and kept their standing campe for a time, and that their
Captains or Collonells in memoriall hereof engraven this upon the cragge. The just
time I may not easily set downe. Yet to the pointing out of the verie time, there re-
maine to be seen in a rocke there by, these great capitall letters engraven, CN.OCT. C
COT.COSS. But in the Consular Rolles among all the Paires of Consuls, I can
meet with no such names. Yet have I observed thus much, that from the time of *Se-*
verus unto *Gordian* and afterwards, the letter A. in all the inscriptions of that age, e-
verie where in this Iland, wanteth the overthwart little line or stroke, and is made
thus, A.

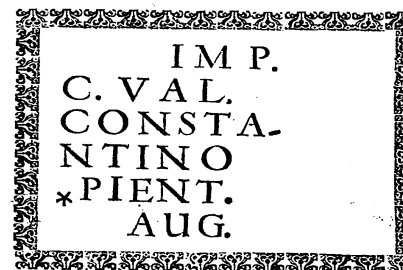
A. for A.

Northren men
call that a
whin, which
the Southern
men a burr.
Brovoniacum,
Brougham.

Eden holdeth on his course from hence, not farre from *Howgill* castle, belonging
to the family of the *Sandfords*: but the Romane high-way goeth straight into the
West by *Whinfield*, a large Parke shaded with trees, hard by *BROVONIACUM*,
standing twentie Italian miles, or severene English miles from *VERTERE*, as *An-*
tonine hath set it, who also hath called it *Brovocum*, like as the book of Notices, *Bro-*
coniacum; which specifieth, that a companie or band of *Defensors* had here their a-
bode. The beautie and buildings of this towne although time hath consumed, yet
the name remaineth almost untouched, for we call it *Brougham*. Here the river *Eimot*,
flowing out of a great lake, & for a good space dividing this shire from Cumberland,
receiveth the river *Loder* into it: neere unto the spring head whereof, hard by *Shape*,
in times past *Hepe*, a little monasterie built by Thomas the sonne of *Gospatrick*, some
of *Orms*, there is a Well or Fountaine, which after the manner of *Euripus* ebbereth and
floweth many times in a day: also there be huge stones in forme of Pyramides, some
9. foot high, and fourteene foot thick, ranged directly as it were in a row, for a mile
in length, with equall distance almost betweene: which may seeme to have bene
pitched and erected for to continue the memoriall of some act there atchieved; but
what the same was, by the injurie of time it is quite forgotten. Hard by *Loder*, there
is a place bearing the same name, which, like as *Stricland* neere unto it, hath imparted
their names to families of ancient gentrie and worship. Somewhat above, where *Lo-*
der and *Eimot* meet in one chanell, in the yeere of our Lord 1602. there was a stone
gotten out of the ground, erected in the honour of *Constantine the Great*, with these
words.

IMP.

F



* Pientissimo
Augusto.

When *Eimot* hath served a good while for a limit betweene this shire and Cum-
berland, neere unto *Isan-parles*, a rocke full well knowne unto the neighbour inhabi-
tants, whereunto nature hath left difficult passage, and there framed sundry caves,
and those full of winding cranks, a place of safe refuge in time of danger: hee lodg-
eth himselfe after some few miles, both with his owne streame, and with the waters
of other rivers also, in *Eden*, so soone as he hath entertained *Blencarne*, a brook that
boundeth this county on Cumberland side: Neere unto which I have heard there be
the strange ruines of an old Castle, the people call them the hanging walls of *Mar-*
camonib, that is, of *Marke Antony*, as they would have it.

Isan-parles.

Hanging wals
of Marke An-
tony.
Fines Term.
Mich.R.6.
H.8.
Vipounts
Armes.
Earles of West-
morland.

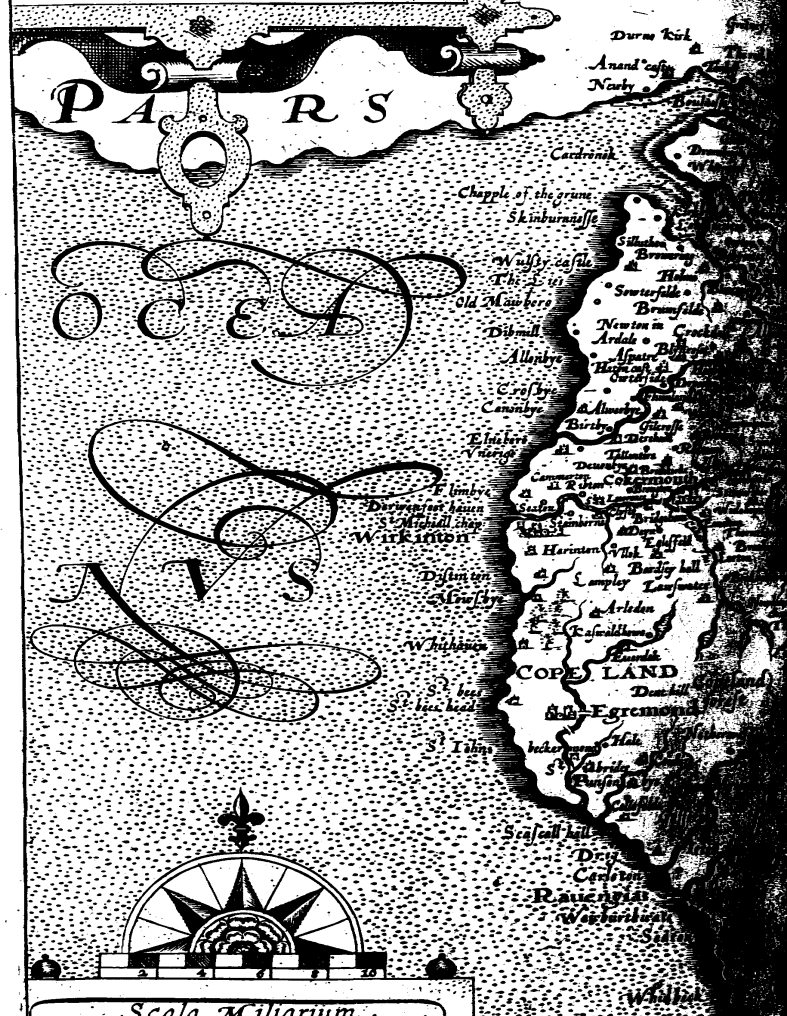
As for such as have borne the title of Westmorland, the first Lord, to my know-
ledge, was Robert de Vipont, who bare Gules, *six* Annulets Or in his coat armour.
For King John gave unto him the ballwicke and revenues of Westmorland, by the ser-
vice of foure Knights: whereupon the *Cliffords* his successors, untill our daies held
the office of the *Sherifdome of Westmorland*. For Robert de Vipont, the last of that
name, left behind him only two daughters, Isabel wife to Roger Lord Clifford, and I-
donea married unto Sir Roger Leybourne. Long time after, K. Richard the second
D created Ralph Nevill of *Raby* the first Earle of Westmorland, a man of the greatest
and most ancient birth of English nobility, as descended from Uctred Earle of Nor-
thumberland: whose heires successively by his former wife Margaret, daughter to
the Earle of Stafford, flourished in that honour, untill that Charles by his wilfull sto-
mack, and wicked conspiracy, casting off his allegiance to Q. Elizabeth, and covering
treason under the mantle of religion, most shamefully dishonoured that most noble
house, and foully steined his owne reputation by actuall rebellion, in the yeere 1599.
Whereupon hee fled into the Low countries, led a miserable life, and died as misera-
bly. The said first Earle, to note so much incidently, by his second wife Catharine,
daughter to John of *Gaunt* Duke of Lancaster, had so faire issue, and the name of
Nevill thereby so greatly multiplied, that almost at one and the same time there flou-
rished out, beside the Earle of Westmorland, an Earle of Salisbury, an Earle of War-
wicke, an Earle of Kent, Marquesse *Montacute*, a Duke of *Bedford*, Lord *Lasimer*, and
Lord *Abergevenny*, all Nevils.

In this shire are contained Parishes 26.

Sff 2

CUM.

CVMBRIA
Sive CVMBERLANDIA
Qua olim pars
Brigantium



Christophorus Saxton Descripsit
Wilhelmus filius Sculpsit



CUMBERLAND.

Westward, Northward from *Westmorland* lieth CUMBERLAND, the utmost region this way of the realme of England, as that which on the North side boundeth upon Scotland: on the South side and the West the Irish sea beateh upon it: and Eastward above Westmorland it butteth upon Northumberland. It tooke the name of the inhabitants, who were the true and naturall Britans, and called themselves in their owne language *Kumbri*, and *Kambri*. For the Histories testifie, that the Britans remained here a long time, maugre the English Saxons, howsoever they stormed thereat: yea and *Marianus* himselfe recordeth as much, who tearmed this countrey *Cumbrorum terram*, that is, *The land of the Cumbri, or Britans*: to say nothing of the places, that everie where here beare British names, as *Caer-Luel*, *Caer-dronoc*, *Pen-rith*, *Pen-rodor*, &c. which most evidently declare the same, and as cleerly prove mine assertion.

C The country, although it be somewhat with the coldest, as lying farre North, and seemeth as rough by reason of hills, yet for the varietie thereof it smilith upon the beholders, and giveth contentment to as many as travaile it. For after the rockes bunching out, the mountaines standing thicke together rich of metall mines, and betwene them great meeres stored with all kindes of wilde foule, you come to prettie hills good for pastorage, and well replenished with flockes of sheepe; beneath which againe you meet with goodly plaines spreading out a great way, yeelding corne sufficiently. Besides all this, the Ocean driving and dashing upon the shore, affordeth plentie of excellent good fish, and upbraiderh, as it were, the inhabitants thereabouts with their negligence, for that they practise fishing no more than they

p doc. The South part of this shire is called *Copeland*, and *Coupland*, for that it beareth up the head aloft with sharpe edged and pointed hills, which the Britans tearme *Copa*: or, as others would have it, named *Copeland*, as one would say *Coperland*, of rich mines of copper therein.

In this part, at the very mouth of the river *Duden*, whereby it is severed apart from Lancashire, standeth *Millum Castle*, belonging to the ancient house of the *Hoddestones*; from whence as the shore fetcheth about with a bent Northward, two rivers very commodiously enclose within them *Ravenglas*, a station or roade for ships, where also, as I have learned, were to be seene Roman inscriptions: some will have it called in old time *Aven-glasse*, as one would say, *the blew river*, and they talke much of King *Eueling*, that here had his Court and royall palace. One of these rivers named *Eske* springeth up at the foot of *Hard-knot*, an high steepe mountaine; in the top whereof were discovered of late huge stones and foundations of a castle, not without great wonder; considering it is so steep and uptight, that one can hardly ascend up to it.

Somewhat higher, *Irr* a little river maketh way toward the sea, wherein the muscles and cochles, after they have with a kinde of yawning or gaping sucked in dew, which they lust after to conceive by, bring forth pearles; or, to speake as the Poet doth, *Shell-berries*; which the inhabitants there by search after at a low water, and our Lapidaries and Jewellers buy of the poore needie people for a little, but sell again at a high rate: of these and such like *Marbodus* seemeth to speake in this verse,

Gignit & insignes antiqua Britannia baccas.

And Britanie of ancient fame

Breeds and brings forth pearles of great name.

S f f 3

Copeland.

Millum castle.

Raven-glas.

Hard-knot
near Wrinfote.

Irr a riveret.

See Plinie.
Pearles.

Now

Saint Bees.

Egremont castle.
Lords of
Copeland.
Liber Inq.The sea side
fenced.

Moresby.

Deo Sylvano
Cohors secunda
Lingonum, cui
praest G. Pompeius M. Saturninus.

DEO SILVAN. --
COH. II. LING
CVI. PRÆS. --
G. POMPEIVS M. --
SATVRNIN. --

As also this fragment, which I. Fletcher Lord of the place transcribed out for me, and sent unto mee.

OB PROSPE.
RITATEM
CVLMINIS
INSTITVTI.

Morbium.

Hay castle.

But no stone hitherto hath beene found, that assureth us that it was MORBIUM, where the *Cataphractarii* horsemen, or men at armes served, notwithstanding the name in some sort implieth as much. Neither is Hay-castle which I saw hard by, to be passed over with silence, a place verily to be regarded for antiquity sake, which by report of the inhabitants belonged successively in elder time to Gentlemen surnamed *Moresby* and *Distinton*.

After this, the river *Derwent* hideth himselfe in the Ocean, which having his first beginning in *Borradale*, a valley hemmed in with crooked hills; creepeth betwene the mountains called *Derwent Fels*; wherein at *Newlands* & elsewhere, copper mines were discovered by *Thomas Shurland*, and *Daniel Hochstatter*; a German of *Aufpurg*, in our daies; and yet the same were knowne before, as appeareth by cloffe rowles of King *Henrie* the third n. 18. Upon the discoverie of these mines, there was a memorable case in law between the late *QUEEN ELIZABETH* of sacred memorie, and *Thomas Percie* Earl of Northumberland, in whose Lordship they were found: but in regard of the *Queenes* royall prerogative, and for that there were in them veins of gold and silver, they were adjudged to the *Queen*. But hereby it is well scene how untrue it was, that *Cicero* wrote in his Epistles unto *Atticus*: *This is for certaine knowne, saith he, that there is not in the Island Britaine so much as one scruple of silver*. Neither would *Cesar*, if he had known of these mines, have written, *That the Britians had use of copper brought in to them from other parts beyond sea*, seeing that the mines not onely serve all England over, but also afford great plentie beside, that is carried yearly forth of the realme.

Here also is commonly found that minerall kind of earth, or hardned glittering stone (we call it *Black-lead*) with which Painters use to draw their lines, and make pictures of one colour in their first draughts: which whether it bee *Paigiris* or *Me-laneria*, spoken of by *Dioscorides*, or *Ochre*, a kind of earth so burnt with heat, that it becometh blacke, or whether it were unknowne unto the old writers, I cannot certainly averre, and let others for me search it out. *Derwent*, after it hath passed through these hills, spreadeth abroad into a large lake, *Bede* termeth it *pragrande stagnum*, that is, a very great poole, wherein are three Ilands eminent above the water: The one hath an house in it of the *Ratcliffes*, a family of Knights degree: the second is inhabited by the Dutch Minerall men: the third is thought to be that, wherein, as *Bede* writeth, *Saint Herbert* lived an Heremetical life. On the very skirt of this bottom, in a pleasant soile compassed about with deawie hills; and fenced on the North side with that high mountaine *Skiddaw*, lieth *Keswike*, a little towne which King *Edward* the first made a mercate, by the procurement of *S. Thomas* of *Derwent*: *Water* Lord of the place, from whom it lineally descended to the family of the *Ratcliffes*: It was well knowne many yeeres agoe by reason of the mines of copper; as we may see in a certaine Charter of King *Edward* the fourth, and is at this day much inhabited by Minerall men, who have here their smelting house by *Derwent* side, which with his forcible streame, and their ingenuous inventions, serveth them in notable speed for easie bellows workes, hammer workes, forge workes, and sawing of boards, not without admiration of such as behold it. As for that mountaine *Skiddaw* aforesaid, it riseth up to such an height with two heads like unto *Parnassus*, and with a kind of emulation beholdeth *Scruffell* hill before it in *Anandale* within Scotland, that from these two mountaines, according as the mistie clouds arise or fall, the people there by dwelling, make their prognostication of the change of weather, and commonly sing this note.

If *Skiddaw* hath a cap,
Scruffell wots full well of that.

Like as there goes also this usuall by-word concerning the heighth as well of this hill, as of other twaine in this tract.

Skiddaw, Lanquellin, and Casticand,
Are the highest hills in all England.

From hence *Derwent* sometimes within a narrow channell; other whiles with a broader streame, speedeth him very fast Northward, to entertaine *Cockar*. Which when they meete, doe encompass almost round about *Cockar* a mercate towne

Copper or
brasse mines.Veines of gold
gold and sil-
ver.See Ploiden
Reports.

Keswike.

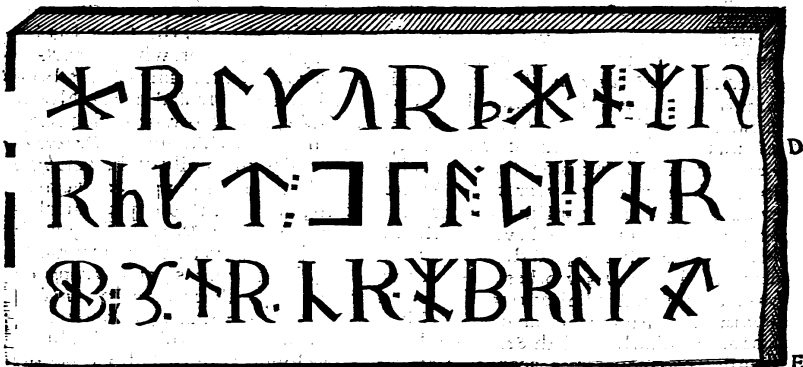
Skiddaw hill.

towne of good wealth, and a castle of the Earles of Northumberland. The town is built faire enough, but standeth somewhat with the lowest betwene two hills: upon the one of which the Church is seated, and upon the other right over against it, a very strong castle, the gate whereof carrieth in the front the Armes of the *Moltons, Humfravills, Lucies, & Percies*. Opposite unto this, beyond the river two miles off, lieth the carcase of an ancient castle, called *Papcastle*, which by a number of monuments layeth claime to bee a Romane antiquitie: whether this were *Guasimoric*, which, as *Ninnius* writeth, King *Vortigern* built neere unto *Luguballia*, and the Englishmen of old time called *Palme-castle*, I cannot so easily affirme. Where among many monuments of antiquitie, was found a broad vessell of a greenish stone, artificially engraven with little images: which whether it had bin a Laver to wash in, or a font, or as one calleth it, *Sacrum Regenerationis*, for which purpose it serveth now at *Brid-kirke*, that is, at *S. Brigids Church* hard by, I dare not say. But I have read that Fonts were adorned with the pictures of holy men, to the end that such as were baptized might afterward have before their eyes, whose deeds they were to imitate, as saith *Pontius Paulinus*. For in the first plantation of Christianitie among the Gentiles, such onely as were of full age, after they were instructed in the Principles of Christian Religion, were admitted to Baptisme; and that but twice in the yeere, at Easter and Whitsonide, except upon urgent necessitie. At which times, they which were to be baptized were attired in white garments exorcised, and exorcised, with sundrie ceremonies, which I leave to the learned in Christian antiquities: but this Font we speake of was thus inscribed.

Guasimoric.

Epist. ad Sever.

Catechumeni, or hearers.



But what they signifie, or what nations characters they should be, I know not, let the learned determine thereof. The first and eighth differ not much from that which in the time of the Emperour *Constantine* the great, Christians used for the name of Christ: the rest in forme, though not in sound, come very neere unto those which are seene in the tombe of *Gormon*, a King of the Danes, at *Telling* in Denmark, the which *Peter of Lindeberge* did put forth, in the yeere 1591.

These places which erewhile I have named, together with a fourth part of the Baronie of *Egremont, Wigton, Lonswater, Asparic, Udal, &c.* a right faire and goodly inheritance, *Maud Lucie* (who was the heire of *Anthony Molton* or de *Lucie* her brother) gave unto her husband *Henry Percie* Earle of Northumberland; and albeit she had no issue by him, yet made she the family of the *Percies* her heires, upon this condition, That they should beare quarterly the *Lucies* Armes, &c. three * *Luces Argent* in a shield, *Gules*, with their owne Armes: or that I may use the words of the original, On condition, to give their own Armes *Gules* with three * *Luces Argent*, together with the

Armes of the
Lucies and
Percies.
* Pikes.
* Lucies.

the Armes of *Percy*, Or, a *Lion Azure* quarterly; and the same condition by a finelevied.

Afterwards *Derwent* having gathered his waters into one streame, entrencheth into the Ocean at *Wirkinton*, a place famous for taking of Salmons, and now the seat of the ancient family of the *Curwens* Knights, who fetch their descent from *Gospatrie* Earle of Northumberland, and their surname they tooke by covenant and composition from *Culwen* a family in Galloway, the heire whereof they had married; and here have they a stately house built Castle-like, and from whom (without offence or vanity be it spoken) my selfe am descended by the mothers side.

Culwen, commonly Culwen.

From hence some thinke there was a wall made to defend the shore in convenient places, for foure miles, or thereabout, by *Stilico* the potent Commander in the Roman state, what time as the Scots annoyed these coasts out of Ireland. For thus speaketh Britaine of her selfe, in *Claudian*.

Under Honorius and Arcadius.

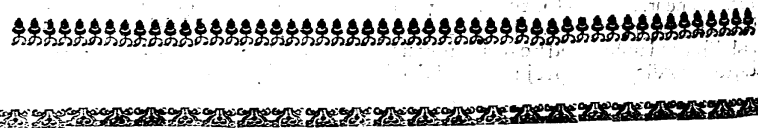
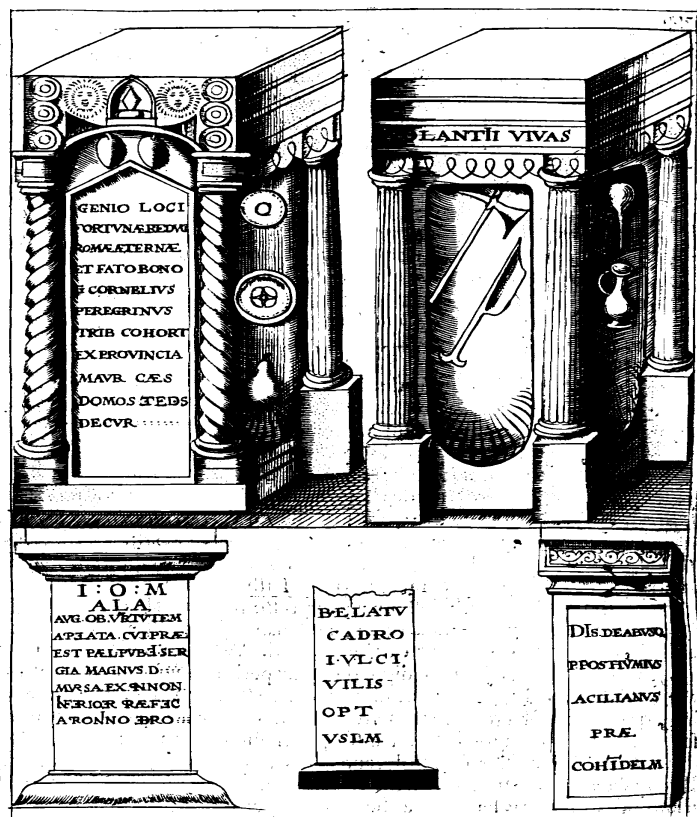
*Me quoque vicinis pereuntem gentibus, inquit,
Munivit Stilico, totam cum Scotis Hibernem
Movit, & infesto spumavit remige Thetis.*

And me likewise at hands (quoth she) to perish, through despight Of neighbour Nations, *Stilico* fenced against their might, What time the Scots all Ireland mov'd offensive armes to take, &c.

There are also as yet, such continued ruines and broken walls to bee seene as farre as to *Eln Mouth*, which river holding no long course, hath at his spring head *Jerby*, a good big mercate town standing upon it. I judge it to have bene that *ARBELLA*, where the *Baccarii Tigrienses* kept their standing guard: and at his mouth *Elenborough*, that is, the *Burgh* upon *Elen*, where the first band of the *Dolmanians* together with their Captaine in old time made their abode. The neere resemblance of the name *Elenborough* with *OLENACUM*, where the *First Herculean Wing* lay in Garrison in the time of *Theodosius* the younger, is some motive to thinke that this was y^e OL^e NACUM, but yet I dare not affirme it. Seated it was upon the height of a hill, and hath a goodly prospect farre into the Irish sea: but now Corne growes where the town stood; nevertheless many expresse footings thereof are evidently to be seene: The ancient vaults stand open, and many altars, stones with inscriptions, and Statues are here gotten out of the ground. Which *I. Sinbow*, a very honest man, in whose grounds they are digged up, keepeth charily, and hath placed orderly about his house. In the mids of his yard there standeth erected a most beautiful four square Altar of a reddish stone, right artificially in antique worke engraven, five foot or thereabouts high, with an inscription therein of an excellent good letter: but loe the thing it selfe all whole, and every side thereof, as the draught was most lively taken out by the hand of Sir *Robert Cotton* of *Connington* Knight, a singular lover of antiquity, what time as hee and I together, of an affectionate love to illustrate our native countrey, made a survey of these coasts, in the yeere of our redemption 1599. not without the sweet food and contentment of our minde. And I cannot chuse but with thankfull heart remember that very good and worthy Gentleman, not only in this regard that most kindly he gave us right courteous and friendly entertainment, but also for that being himselfe well learned, he is a lover of ancient literature, and most diligently preserveth these inscriptions, which by others that are unskilfull and unlettered be straight waies defaced, broken, and converted to other uses, to exceeding great prejudice and detriment of antiquity.

Olenacum.

VOLANTII



A In the inscription all is as plaine as may bee; onely in the last line save one (Et and *EDDS*) are read by implication of the letters: the last part being maimed, may haply be amended in this wise, *DECURIONUM ORDINEM RESTITUIT*, &c. These *Decurions* were in free townes (called *Municipia*) the same that Senators were in Rome and Colonies, so called, because they executed the office of *Curie*, whereupon they were named also *Curiales*, who had the ordering and managing of civill offices.

Decuriones.
Isidor. l. 9. c. 4.

On the back-side of this Altar in the upper edge & border thereof, are read, as you see, these two words, *VOLANTII VIVAS*; which doe perplexe me, neither can I expound them, unlesse the *Decurions*, Gentlemen, and Commons (for of these three states consisted a *Municipium*, or free Corporation) added this as a well-wishing, and votive inscription unto *G. Cornelius Peregrinus* (who restored houses, habitations and *Decurions*) that so bounteous and beneficiall a man *VOLANTII VIVET*, that is, might live at *Volantium*. Hence I suppose, if conjecture may carrie it, that *VOLANTIUM* in times past was the name of the place. Underneath are engraven instruments belonging to sacrifice, an Axe or Cleaver, and a chopping Knife. On the left side, a Mallet and a great Basen: in that on the right side, a platter, a dish, and a peare, if my sight serve mee well; or as others would have it, a drinking cup or jugge; for these were vessels pertaining to sacrifice: and others beside, as a Cruet, an incense pan or Censer, a footlesse pot, the Priests miter, &c. which I have scene expressly portraied upon the sides of other altars in this tract. The second Altar, which I have here adjoined, was digged up at *Old Carlisle*, and is now to be scene in the *Barbours* house at *Ilkirk*: an inscription it had with that intricate connexion of letters one in another, as the Grayer hath here very lively portraied, and thus it seemeth they are to be read.

Volantium

Jovi Optimo Maximo. Ala Augusta ob virtutem appellata, cui praest Publius Elius, Publi filius Sergia Magni de Mursa ex Pannonia inferiore Praefectus. Apronianus (& fortasse) Bradua Consulibus.

Under Commodus Anno Christi 193.

Unto most gracious and mightie Jupiter. The Wing named for their vertue *Augusta*, the Captaine whereof is *Publius Elius*, sonne of *Publius Magnus* of *Mursa*, from out of the lower *Pannonia*, *Praefect*. When *Apronianus*, and (haply) *Bradua* were Consuls.

The third Altar, with an inscription to *Belatucadrius* the tutelur God of the place, is in this wise to be read.

Belatucadro Julium Civilis Optio, id est, Excubiis Praefectus, votum solvit, libens, merito.
Unto *Belatucadrius*, *Julius Civilis Optio*, that is, *Praefect* over the watch and ward, hath performed his vow willingly and duly.

In the fourth Altar, which is of all the rest the fairest, there is no difficultie at all, and this is the tenour of it.

Dis Deabusq; Publii Posthumii Acilianus Praefectus Cohortis prima Dalmatarum.
To the Gods and Goddeses, *Publius Posthumus Acilianus*, *Praefect* or Captaine of the first Cohort of the *Dalmatians*.

Such Altars as these (neither neede we think much to observe those ancient rites, which now long since the most sacred Christian religion hath chased away, and banished quite) they were wont to crowne with greene branches, like as they did the beasts for sacrifice, and themselves: and then they used with frankincense and wine to make supplication, to kill, and offer their sacrifices: yea, and their manner was to smale or anoint their very altars all over. Concerning the demolishing and overthrow

Gentiles or
Heathen altars.
See in *Launce*
shire,

throw of which, as Christian religion came in place and began to prevail, Prudentius the Christian Poet wrote thus.

*Exercere manum non pœnitet, & lapis illic
Sisteit antiquum, quem cingere suaverat error
Fascioli, aut gallina pulmone rigare,
Frangitur.*

Men thought not much their hands thus to employ,
And if in place some antique stone there stood,
Which folke were wont in error, with much joy
To garnish round with ribbands, and with blood
Of Hens to imbrue, they brake it in that mood.
These inscriptions likewise hereunder I saw there.

PROSA -----
ANTONINI AVPII F.
P. AVLVS P. F. PALATINA
POSTHVMIVS ACILIANVS
PRÆF. COH. I. DELMATAR.

Publii filius.

* D M
INGENVI. AN. X.
IVL. SIMPLEX PATER
* F. C.

* Dile Manibus

* Faciendum
curevit.

D M.
MORI REGIS
FILII HEREDES
EIVS SVBSTITVE
RVNT VIX. A. LXX.

HI EX SEGRE FATA
ENVS SQ. GERMA
S REG VIX. AN.
S VIX AN.
IX.

D M
LVCA VIX
ANN.
IS XX.

D M
IVLIA MARTIN
A VIX AN.
XII III D. XL.

There is a stone also here scene, workmanly cut, and erected for some victorie of the Emperours; in which two winged *Genii* hold up betweene them a guirland, as here is represented.



That

That is, for the victorie of the *Augusti* (or Emperours) our Lords.

When the shore hath passed on right forward a little way from hence, it bendeth so backe againe with an arme of the sea retiring inward, that it may seeme to bee that *MORICAMBE* which *Ptolamæe* setteth here, the nature of the place and the name doe so just agree. For a crooked creeke it is of salt water, and *Moricambe* in the British tongue signifieth a crooked sea. Hard by this, David the first King of Scots built the *Abbeie de Ulmo*, commonly called *Holme Culrain*; and the Abbots thereof erected *Ulsey* a fortress neere unto it, for a treasure and place of suretie to lay up their books, charters, and evidences, against the sodain invasions of the Scottish: wherein the secrets workes, they say, of Michael the Scot, lie in conflict with mothes; which Michael professing here a religious life, was so wholly possessed with the studie of the Mathematicks and other abstruse arts, about the yeere of our Lord 1290. that being taken of the common people for a Necromancer, there went a name of him (such was their credulitie) that hee wrought divers wonders and miracles. Beneath this Abbey, the brooke called *Waver* runneth into the said arme of the sea; which brook taketh into it the riveret *Wiza*, at the head whereof lye the very bones and pitifull reliques of an ancient Citie: which sheweth unto us, that there is nothing upon earth, but the same is subject to mortalitie. The neighbours call it this day *Old Carlisle*. What name it had in old time I know not, unless it were

Moricambe.

Holme Culrain.

Michael Scottus.

CASTRA EXPLORATORUM, that is, *The Espials or Discoverers Castle*. The distance put downe by *Antonine* (who doth not so much seeke after the shortest waies, as reckon up the places of greater note and name) as well from *Bulgium* as *Lugdunum* suiteth thereto verie aptly, the situation also to discover and descry afar off is passing fit and commodious: for seated it is upon the top of a good high hill, from whence a man may easily take a full view of all the country round about. Howbeit, most certaine it is that the wing of Horse-men, which for their valour was named *AUGUSTA*, and *AUGUSTA GORDIANA*, kept reliance here in *Gordian* the Emperours time, as appeareth evidently by these inscriptions, which I saw hard by.

Castra Exploratorum.
See as touching the Arcans after ward in the *Picts Wall*.

Ala Augusta Gordiana at Il-Kirk.

* I O M.
ALA AUG. OB
--- RTUT. APPEL. CUI
PRÆST TIB. CL. TIB. F. P
IN- G- N JUSTINUS
PRÆF. * FUSCIANO
II SILANO II COS.

D M
MABLI
NIVS SEC
VNDVS
*EQUIS
ALE AUG
STE STIP

* Jovi optimo
maximo.

This votive altar also of a rude stone was erected for the happie health of the Emperour *Gordian* the third, and his wife *Furia Sabina Tranquilla*, and their whole family by the troupe of horsemen surnamed *Augusta Gordiana*, when *Emilius Chrispinus* a native of Africa governed the same under *Nönnius Philippus* Lievtenant generall of Britaine in the yeere of Christ 243. as appeareth by the Consuls therein specified.

T t t

* I O M

* I O M
 PRO SALUTE IMPERATORIS
 M. ANTONI GORDIANI P. F.
 INVICTI AUGET SABINIAE TUR
 IAE TRANQUILE CONJUGI EJUS TO
 TAQUE DOMU DIVIN. EORUM A
 LA AUG. GORDIA. OB VIRUTEM
 APPELLATA POSUIT: CUI PRÆEST
 AEMILIUS CRISPINUS PRÆF.
 EQQ. NATUS IN PRO AFRICA DE
 TUIDRO SUB CUR. NONNII PH
 LIPPI LEG- AUG. PROPRETO-----
 A T T I C O E T P R E T E X T A T O
 COSS.

An. Christ. 243

Wigron.

From hence also were altars brought, which are erected in the high way by *Wigron*, in the sides whereof are to be seen a drinking cup or mazar, a footstool, a mallet, a boll &c. all vessels appertaining to sacrifice. But time hath so worn out the letters, that nothing can be read. And not farre from hence just by the high street way there was digged up a long rude stone in manner of a columne which we saw at *Thoresby*, with this inscription, to the honour of Philip the Emperour and his sonne, who flourished about the yeere of our Lord 248.

Thoresby.

IMP CAES.
 M. JUL
 PHILIPPO
 PIO FELI
 CI
 AUG
 ET M. JUL. PHI
 LIPPO NOBILIS
 SIMO CAES
 TR. P. COS---

This also with others Ofwald *Dikes* a learned minister of Gods word copied out for me, and now is to be seene in the house of T. *Dikes* Gentleman at *wardale*.

DEO
 SANCTO BELA
 TUCADRO
 AURELIUS
 DIATOVA *ARAE
 X VOTO POSUIT
 LL. MM.

* For Aram in
note.

Like;

A Likewise another such like altar to a private tutelar God of the place, was there found, with this unperfet inscription.

DEO
 CEATIO AUR
 M RTI. ET MS
 ERURACIO PRO
 SE ET SUI. V. S.
 LL. M.

Besides an infinite number of pety images, statues of horsemen, Eagles, Lions, Ganimedes, and many other monuments of antiquity, which are daily discovered. C Something higher a little promontory shooteth out, and a great frith or arme of the Sea lieth under it, being now the common limit confining England and Scotland, serving in times past to make a separation betweene the Romane Province, and the Picts. Upon this standeth that ancient town, BLATUM-BULGIUM (happily of *Butch* a Britaine word, that signifieth a separation) from which, as from the most remote place, and the limit of the Roman province, *Antonine* the Emperour beginneth his journeyes through Britaine. The inhabitants at this day call it *Bulnesse*: and as small a village as it is, yet hath it a pile; and in token of the antiquity thereof, besides the tracts of streets, ruinous walls, and an haven now stopped up with mud; there led a paved high-way from hence along the sea-shore, as farre as to *Elen Bor-drugh*, if we may relie upon the report of the by-dwellers.

Which the
Scots call Sol-
way Frith.Blatum-Bulgi-
um.

Bulnesse.

The beginning
of the Picts
Wall.

Solway Frith.

Trees within
the ground.

Beyond this a mile (as is to be seene by the foundations at a nepe tide) beganne that WALL, the most renowned worke of the Romanes, which was the bound in times past of the Romane province; raised of purpose to seclude and keepe out the barbarous nations, that in this tract, were evermore *barking and baying* (as an ancient writer saith) about the Roman Empire. I marvelled at first, why they built here so great fortifications, considering that for eight miles, or thereabout, there lieth opposite a very great frith and arme of the sea: but now I understand, that at every ebbe the water is so low, that the borderers, and beast-stealers may easily wade over. That the form of these shores hath bin changed, it doth evidently appeare by the tree roots E covered over with sand a good way off from the shore, which oftentimes at a low ebbe are discovered with the windes. I know not whether I may relate here, which the inhabitants reported concerning trees without boughes under the ground, oftentimes found out here in the mosses, by the direction of dew in summer: for they have observed that the dew never standeth on that ground under which they lye.

By the same Frith, more within the land standeth *Drumbough Castle*, belonging of later time to the Lords of *Dacre*, a station in times past of the Romans. Some will have it to have beene EXPLORATORUM CASTRA, notwithstanding the distance utterly controulet it. There was also another station of the Romans beside it, which now being changed into a new name is called *Burgh upon Sands*: whence the territory adjoyning is named the *Barony of Burgh*, the which R. *Mesbines*, Lord of Cumberland, gave unto Robert *de Trivers*: but from him it came to the *Morvils*: the last of which house, named Hugh; left behind him a daughter, who by her second husband, Thomas *de Molton* had issue Thomas *Molon*, Lord of this place; whose sonne Thomas; by marriage with the heire of Hubert *de Paulx* adjoynded *Gillef-land* to his possessions: which in the end were

Burgh upon
sands.1307.
Called Mor-
vils de Burgh
upon Sands.

Liber-Ing.

T t t 2

Edward the
first.

Solway Frith.

The river Iru-
na, or Eden.
History of
Malrosse.Dacre's
Barons Dacre.

Perith.

Called in old
time Hæde
Plompton.

were devolved all unto Ranulph Dacre, who married M. the heire of *Monlon*. A But for no one thing was this little Burgh upon Sands more famous, than that King Edward the first, that triumphphant Conquerour of his enemies, was here taken out of this world by untimely death. A right noble and worthy Prince, to whom God proportioned most princely presence and personage, as a right worthy feat to entertaine so heroically a minde. For hee not onely in regard of fortitude and wisedome, but also for a beautifull and a personall presence was in all points answerable to the height of royall majesty: whom fortune also in the very prime and flowre of his age inured to many a warre, and exercised in most dangerous troubles of the State, whiles she framed and fitted him for the Empire of Britain: which he, being once crowned King, managed and governed in such wise, that having subdued the Welsh, and vanquished the Scots, hee may most justly bee counted the second ornament of Great Britaine. Under this *Burgh*, within the very Frith wherethe salt water ebbeth and floweth, the Englishmen and Scottish, by report of the inhabitants, fought with their fleets at full Sea, and also with their horsemen and footmen at the ebbe. A thing which may seeme no lesse marvellous than that which *Plinie* hath reported, not without wonder, of the like place in *Caramania*. This arme of the sea both nations call *Solway Frith*, of *Solway* a towne in Scotland standing upon it. But *Ptolomee* more truly tearmeth it *ITUNA*: For *Eden*, that notable river, which wandreth through Westmorland, and the inner parts of this shire, powreth forth into it a mighty masse of water, having not yet forgotten what adoe it had to passe away struggling and wrestling as it did, among the carcasses of free-butters, lying dead in it on heapes, in the yeere of salvation 1216. when it swallowed them up laden with booties out of England, and so buried that rabble of robbers under his waves.

This river *Eden* when it is entred into this shire, receiveth from the West the river *Eimor*, flowing out of *Ulse*, a great lake heretofore mentioned: neer unto the bank whereof, hard by the riveret *Dacor*, standeth *Dacre Castle*, of signall note, for that it hath given surname to the honourable family of the Barons *Dacre*; and mentioned anciently by *Bede*, for that it had a monastery in those dayes; as also by William of *Malmesbury*, in regard that Constantine King of Scots, and Eugenius or Ewain King of Cumberland, yielded themselves there, together with their kingdoms, unto *Athelstane* King of England, upon condition to be protected by him.

Not much higher, and not farre from the confluence of *Eimor* and *Loder*, where is scene that round trench of earth, which the country people tearme *Ariburs Table*, stands *Penrith*, which is, if you interpret it out of the British language, *The Red head or hill* (for the soile, and the stones there are of a reddish colour:) but commonly called *Perith*: a little towne, and of indifferent trade, fortified on the West side with a castle of the Kings, which in the reigne of King Henry the sixth was repaired out of the ruines of a Romane fort thereby called *Maburg*, adorned with a proper Church: and the mercate place is large, with an edifice of timber therein, for the use of those that resort thither to mercate, garnished with Beares at a ragged staffe, which was the devise of the Earles of Warwicke. It belonged in times past unto the Bishops of Durham: but when Antony Bec the Bishop, overweening himselfe with over much wealth, waxed proud and insolent, King Edward the first (as wee finde in Durham book) took from him *werk in Trivdale, Perith, and the Church of Simondburne*. But for the commodious use of this Towne, William Strickland, Bishop of Carlisle, defended from a worshipfull Family in this tract, at his owne charges caused a channell for a water-courte to be made out of *Petter-rill*, that is, the little *Petter*, which neer unto the bank had *Plumpton* park, a very large plot of ground which the Kings of England allotted in old time for wild beasts, but King Henry the eighth disparted it, and wisely appointed it for habitation of men, as being in the very merches well neere, where the Realmes of England and Scotland confine one upon the other. Just by this place I saw many remaines of a decayed towne, which they there for the vicinity thereof, doe now call *Old Perith*.

I for

A If for my part would deeme it to be *PETRIANÆ* For the fragment of an antique inscription erected by *ULPIUS TRAIANUS*, *EMERITUS* an old discharged pensionary souldier of the *Petrian* wing, doth convince and prove that the wing *Petrian* made abode here. But behold both it and others which wee copied out here.

Petriana.

GADUNO
ULP TRAI
EM. AL. PET
MARTIUS.
* F. P. C.

D M.
AICETU OS MATER
VIXIT * A XXXXV
ET LATTIO FIL. VIX
A XII. LIMISIUS
CONJU. ET FILIÆ
PIENTISSIMIS
POSUIT.

* Annos.

* Haply, Faci-
endum procu-
ravit.

D M
FL. MARITO SEN
IN * C. CARVETIOR
QUESTORIO
VIXIT AN XXXXV
MARTIOLA FILIA ET
HERES PONEN
* ----- CURAVIT.

* Peradventure
in Cohorte.

* Dum.

D M. CROTILO GERMANUS VIX
ANIS XXVI. GRECA VIX ANIS IIII.
VINDICIANUS * FRA. ET FIL. TIT. PO.

* Fratri & fi-
lie Titulum
posuit.

After that *Eden* hath now given *Eimor* entertainment, hee turneth his course Northward, by both the *Salkelds*, watering as hee goes obscure small villages, and fortresses. Amongst which at the lesse *Salkeld*, there bee erected in manner of a circle seventy seven stones, every one ten foot high, and a speciall one by it selfe before them, at the very entrance riseth fiftene foot in height. This stone the common people thereby dwelling, name *Long Megge*, like as the rest, her daughters. And within that ring or circle, are heapes of stones, under which, they say, ly covered the bodies of men slaine. And verily there is reason to thinke that this was a monument of some victory there atchieved, for no man would deeme that they were erected in vaine.

From thence passeth *Eden* by *Kirk-Oswald*, consecrated to Saint Oswald, the possession in old time of that Sir Hugh Morvill, who with his associates slew Thomas Archbishop of Canterbury: and in memoriall of this fact, the sword which hee then used, was kept here a long time: and so goeth on by *Armanthwaye*, a Castle of the *Skeltons*, by *Corby* Castle; belonging to the worthy and ancient family

Kirk Oswald.

Armanthwaye:
Corby castle.

Wetherall. family of the *Salkelds*, well advanced by marriage with the heire of *Roskill*; by *Wetherall*, sometime a little Abbey or Cell, which acknowledged the Abbey of *Saint Mary* in *Yorke* for her mother; where within a rocke are to be seen certain little habitations or cabbins hewed hollow for a place of sure refuge in this dangerous country. Thence by *Warwic* (*VIROSIDUM*, as I supposed) where the sixt Cohort of the *Nervians* in old time held their station within the limit of that wall against the *Picts* and *Scots*: and there in the latter age was built a very strong bridge of stone, at the charges of the *Salkelds* and *Richmonds*: by *Linstock* castle also belonging to the Bishop of *Carlile* in the Barony of *Crosby*, which *Waldef*, the sonne of *Earle Gospatrick*, Lord of *Allerdale* granted unto the church of *Carlile*. And now by this time *Eden* being ready to lodge himselfe in his owne arme of the sea, taketh in two rivers at once, namely, *Peterill* & *Caud*, which keeping an equall distance asunder march along from the South, and hold as it were a parallel pace just together. By *Peterill*, beside *PETRIANÆ*, which I spake of, standeth *Greifstock*, a castle belonging not long since to an honorable house, which derived their first descent from one *Ranulph Fitz-Walter*: of which line *William*, called *de Greifstock*, wedded *Mary* a daughter and one of the coheires of *Sir Roger Merley*, Lord of *Morpath*: and hee had a sonne named *John*, who being childlesse, by licence of *King Edward* the first, conveyed his inheritance to *Ralph Granthorpe*, the sonne of *William*, and his Aunts sonne by the fathers side: whose male progeny flourished a long time in honor with the title of Lord *Greifstock*, but about *King Henry* the seventh his dayes expired and came to an end, and so the inheritance came by marriage unto the Barons of *Dacre*: and the female heires generall of the last Baron *Dacre*, were married unto *Philip Earle of Arundell*, and Lord *William Howard*, sonnes of *Thomas Howard*, late Duke of *Norfolke*.

Upon *Caud*, beside the copper mines neere unto *Caudbeck*, standeth *Highgate*, a castle of the *Richmonds*, of ancient descent, and a proper fine castle of the Bishops of *Carlile*, called the *Rose castle*: it seemeth also that *CONGAVATA* was hereabout, in which the second band of the *Lergi* served in garison: for *CONGAVATA* in the British tongue signifieth, The valley by *Gavata*, which now is called *Short Caud*. But the very place where this towne stood I cannot precisely point out. Betwixt the meeting of these rivers, the ancient City *Carlile* is passing commodiously and pleasantly seated, garded on the North side with the chancell of *Eden*, on the East with *Peterill*, on the West with *Caud*: and beside these naturall fences it is fortified with strong walls of stone, with a castle and a citadell, as they tearme it. In fashion it lyeth somewhat long, running out from West to East: on the West side is the Castle of a good large compasse, which *King Richard* the third, as appeareth by his Armes, repaired. In the midst almost of the City, riseth on high the Cathedrall Church, the upper part whereof being the newer, is very artificially and curiously wrought: yet the lower part is much more ancient. But on the East side it is defended with the Citadell, that *K. Henry* the eighth built strongly with sundry bulwarks. The Romans and Britans called this city *LUGU-VALLUM*, and *LUGU-BALLIUM*, or *LUGU-BALIA*: the English Saxons, *Luell*, as *Bede* witnesseth: *Ptolomee*, as some think, *LEUCOPITIA*. *Nennius*, *Caer Lualid*: the ridiculous prophecies of the Britans, tearmed it *The City of Du-ball, we, Carlile*, and Latine writers by a newer name, *Carleolum*. For our Historiographers accord with common consent, that *Luguballia* and *Carleolum* were the same. But in searching out the Etymology thereof, good God, how hath *Leland* bestirred him, being in the end driven to this point, that he thought verily *Eden* was called *Lugus*, and *Ballum* came from *Vallis*, that is, a vale, so that *Lugu-ballum* foundeth as much as the Vale by *Lugus*. But I, if so be I may also hatch a conjecture, would rather suppose, but without prejudice, that the said termination *Vallum* and *Vallis*, are derived from that most famous military *Vallum* or Trench, that standeth apparent a little from the City. For that *Picts Wall*, which was afterwards set upon the Trench, or rampire of *Severn*, appeareth somewhat beyond the River *Eden*, which now hath a wooden bridge over it, neere unto a little village

A village called *Stanwicke*, and went over the very river just against the Castle: where within the chancell of the river, mighty stones, the remains thereof, are yet extant. Also *Lugus* or *Lucus* amongst the ancient *Celts*, or *Gauls*, who spake the same language that once the Britans did, signifieth a Tower, as we may learn by *Pomponius Mela*. For that which in *Antonine* is named *LUGO-AUGUSTI*, hee calleth *TURRIM AUGUSTI*, that is, The Tower of *Augustus*: so that *Lugu-Vallum* is as much to say, as the Tower or Fort by the wall. From this originall if the Frenchmen had derived *Lugudunum*, as it were, The tower on an hill; and *Lucotecia*, (for so in old time they called that city which we doe *Lutetia*) that is *Paris*, as it were, The faire Tower, (for so those words signifie in the British tongue) peradventure they had aimed nearer unto the marke, than in fetching the one from *Lutum*, that is, Dirt, and the other from *Lugdun* an imagined King. That this *Carlile* flourished in the time of the Romans, divers tokens of antiquity now and then digged up there, and the famous mention of it in those dayes, doe sufficiently prove. After the furious outrages also of the *Picts* and *Scots* were allayed, it retained some part still of the ancient dignity, and was counted a City. For in the yeere of Christ 619: *Egfrid King* of *Northumberland* passed a gift unto that holy Saint *Cuthbert*, in this forme, I have given unto him also the City called *Lugballia*, and 15. miles round about it: at which time also it was walled strong. The *Graecians*, saith *Bede*, brought *Cuthbert* to see the Walls of their City, and a fountain or well in it, built in times past according to the wonderful workmanship of the Romanes: who at the very sametime, as saith the book of *Durham*, ordained there a Covent of Nuns, with an Abbess and Schooles. Afterwards being defaced and brought to exceeding ruin by the Danes, it lay about 200. yeeres buried under his owne ashes: untill it began againe to flourish under the government and favour of *King William Rufus*, who repaired it with new edifices, built the Castle, and placed a Colony there first of *Flemmings* (whom streightwaies upon better advice he removed into *Wales*) but afterwards of Southerne Englishmen. Then was there seen, as *William of Malmesbury* writeth, A dining chamber after the Roman fashion, built of stone, & arched with vaults, so that no spitefull force of tempests, nor furious flame of fire could ever shake or hurt it: in the forefront whereof was this Inscription, *MARI VICTORIAE*, that is, To the victory of *Marius*. This *Marius* some will needs have to be *Arviragus* the Britan: others, that *Marius*, who being proclaimed Emperour against *Gallienus*, was named to be of wonderfull strength, that as writers report of him, He had in his fingers no veins, but all sinewes. Yet have I learned, that another, making mention of this stone, saith it was not inscribed *MARI VICTORIAE*, but *MARTI VICTORI*, that is, To victorious *Mars*, which perhaps may better content some, and seeme to come nearer unto the truth. * *Carlile* being now better peopled, and of greater resort, had, as they write, for Earle, or more truly for Lord thereof, *Ralph Meschines*: from whom came the Earles of *Chester*: and at the same time, being raised by *King Henry* the first to an Episcopall dignity, had *Arnulph* for the first Bishop: Which the Monks of *Durham* have written was prejudicial to their Church, when *Ranulph* (say they) Bishop of *Durham* was banished, and the Church had none to defend her, certain Bishops laid *Carlile* and *Frisdale* to their Dioceses. But how the Scottish under the reign of *Stephen* won this City, and *King Henry* the second recovered it: how also *King Henry* the third committed the castle of *Carlile* and the County to *Robert Vipont*: how likewise in the yeere 1292. it was burnt, together with the Cathedrall Church and the Suburbs: and how *Robert Brus King* of *Scots*, in the yeere 1315. laid siege unto it in vaine, you may finde in the common Chronicles. And yet it seemes it would quit my paines to adjoyne here two inscriptions that I saw here, the one in *Thomas Aglionby* his house, neere unto the Citadell, but made in the worse age.

Lucus and *Lugus* what they signifie among the Britans and old Gauls.

Lugdunum, *Lucotecia* or *Lutetia* in France. The old Itinerary lately imprinted, sheweth that *Lugdunum* implieth, a Desirable hill.

* Or de *Micennin*.

* Tumulum.

* Carissima.

DIIS MANIBU
SMARCI TROJANI
AUGUSTINANI * TUM. FA
CIENDUM CURAVIT
AFEL. AMMILLUSIMA
CONJUX * KARISS.

Whereunto is adjoined the image of a man of Armes on horsebacke, armed at all peeces, with a lance in his hand. As for the other, it standeth in the garden of *Thomas Middleton*, in a very large and faire letter, thus.

LEG. VI
VIC. P. F.
G. P. R. F.

Which is, as I ghesse, *Legio Sexta, Vixrix, Pia, Felix*: the rest let some other decipher.

Andrew Har-
cla Earle of
Carlisle.

The onely Earle that *Carlisle* had, was Sir Andrew de *Harcla*, whom King Edward the second created Earle (that I may speake out of the very originall instrument of his Creation) for his laudable & good service performed against *Thomas Earle of Lancaster*, and other his abettors, in vanquishing the Kings enemies and disloyall subjects, & in delivering them up into the Kings hands when they were vanquished, given with a sword, and created Earle under the honour and name of the Earle of *Carlisle*: Who notwithstanding proved a wretched Traitor himselfe, unthankfull and disloyally false both to his Prince and country: and being afterwards apprehended, was with shame and reproach paid duly for the desert of his perfidious ingratitude, degraded in this manner: first by cutting off his spurres with an hatchet, afterwards disgorged of his military * Belt: then dispoiled of his shooes and gantlets: last of all, and was drawne hanged, beheaded, and quartered.

* Or girdle.

As for the position of *Carlisle*, the Meridian is distant from the utmost line of the West 21. degrees and 31. minutes; and elevation of the North pole 54. degrees and 55. minutes: and so with these encomiasticall verses of *M. I. Jonston*, Ibid *Carlisle* adue.

CARLEOLUM.

Romanis quondam statio turissima signis,
Ultimaq; Ausonidum mea, labosq; Ducum
E specula late vicinos prospicit agros,
Hic ciet & pugnas, arcet & inde metus.
Gens acris ingenio, studiis asperrima belli,
Doctaque bellaci figere tela manu.

Scotorum

Scotorum Reges quondam tenuere beati,
Nunc iterum prisca additur imperiis.
Quid? Romane putas extrema hic lumina mundi?
Mundum retrò alium surgere nonne vides?
Sic vidisse satis; docuit nam Scotica virtus
Immensis animis hic posuisse modum.

CARLILE.

Unto the Romane legions sometimes the surest Station,
The farthest bound and Captaines toile of that victorious nation.
From prospect high, farre all abroad it lookes to neighbour fields:
Hence fight and skirmish it maintaines, and thence all danger shields.
People quicke witted, fierce in field, in martiall feats well seene,
Expert likewise right skilfully to fight with weapons keene.
Whilom the Kings of Scots it held, whiles their state stood upright,
And once againe to ancient crowne it now reverts by right.
What? Romane Cesar thinkest thou the world hath here an end?
And seest thou not another world behind doth yet extend?
Well maist thou see this and no more: for Scottish valour taught
Such haughty mindes to gage themselves, and here to make default.

If you now crosse over the river *Eden*, you may see hard by the banke *Rowcliffe*, a little castle erected not long since by the Lords de *Dacres* for the defence of their Tenants. And above it the two rivers, *Eske* and *Leven*, running jointly together enter at one out-gate into the *Solway Frith*. As for *Eske*, he rumbleth down out of *Scotland*, and for certaine miles together confesteth himselfe to bee within the English dominion, and entertaineth the river *Kirke*, where the English and Scottish parted asunder of late, not by waters, but by mutuall feare one of another, having made passing good prooffe on both sides of their great valour and prowesse. Neere this river *Kirke*, where is now seene by *Nether-By* a little village with a few cottages in it, where are such strange and great ruines of an ancient City, and the name of *Eske* running before it doth sound so neare, that wee may imagine *Æsica* stood there: wherein the Tribune of the first band of the *Astures* kept watch and ward in old time against the Northren enemies. But now dwelleth here the chiefe of the *Grayhams* family, very famous among the Borderers for their martiall disposition: and in a wall of his house this Romane inscription is set up, in memoriall of *Hadrian* the Emperour, by the Legion surnamed *Augusta Secunda*.

Grayhams.

IMP. CÆS. TRA.
HADRIANO
AUG.
LEG. II. AUG. F.

But where the River *Lidd* and *Eske* conjoine their streames, there was sometimes, as I have heard, *Liddel castle*, and the Barony of the *Estotevills*, who held lands in *Cornage*; which Earle *Ranulph*, as I read in an old Inquisition, gave unto *Turgill Brun-*
das: But from *Estotevill* it came hereditarily unto the *Wakes*, and by them unto the Earles of Kent of the blood roiall: And John Earle of Kent granted it unto King Edward the third, and King Richard the second, unto John of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*.

Barony of
Liddel.
Liddesdale.

Batable or So-
lon moult.
1542.

Batable
ground.

Leven.

fter. Beyond this river *Eske*, the land for certaine miles together is accounted Eng-
lish ground: wherein *Solom Masse* became very famous, by reason especially of so
many of the Scottish Nobility taken there prisoners in the yere 1543. What time
as the Scottish resolute to set upon Sir Thomas Wharton, Lord warden of the English
marches: so soone as they understood that their King had committed the command
of the army to *Oliver Sincler* (whom they disdained) they conceived such in-
dignation thereat, that with their owne shame and losse, breaking their ar-
raies in tumultuous manner, they made a generall confusion of all: which the English
beholding from the higher ground, forthwith charged violently upon them, and put
them to flight: many they took prisoners, who flinging away their weapons, yielded
themselves, after some few souldiers on both sides slaine, into the hands of the Eng-
lish, and of the borderers. Presently whereupon James the fifth, King of Scots was so
disiect, that weary of his life he died for very sorrow. The land thereabout is cal-
led *Batable* ground, as one would say, *Luigiu*, because the English and the Scottish
have litigiously contended about it. For the inhabitants on both sides, as borderers
in all other parts, are a military kind of men, nimble, wily, alwaies in readines for any
service, yea and by reasor of often skirmishes, passing well experienced. *Leven*, the o-
ther river whereof I spake, springing in the limir just of both kingdomes, runneth by
no memorable place, unlesse it be *Beucafle* (as they commonly call it) a Castle of the
Kings, which standing in a wild and solitary country, hath bene defended onely by
a ward of souldiers. But this in publicke records is written *Bueib-castle*, so that the
name may seeme to have come from that *Bueib*, who about King Henry the first his
dayes, after a fort ruled all in this tract. Certaine it is that in the reigne of Edward
the third it was the patrimony of Sir John of *Strivelin* a Baron, who married the
daughter and one of the heires of Adam of *Swinborne*. In the Church, now much de-
caied, there is layed for a grave-stone this old inscription, translated thither from
some other place.



In the Church-yard there is erected a Crosse about 20. foot high, all of one en-
tire foure square stone, very artificially cut and engraven, but the letters are so worn
and gone, that they cannot be read. But whereas the Crosse is chequy, in that manner
as the shield of Armes belonging to the family of *Faulx*, sometime Lords in this tract,
we may well thinke that it was erected by them.

More into the South, and farther within the countrie lyeth the Barony of *Gilles-
land*; a little region so encombred, by reason of sudden rising brookes, which they
call *Gilles*, that I would have deemed it tooke the name of them, had I not read in a
booke, belonging to the Abbey of *Lanercost*, that one *Gill Fitz-Bueib*, who is called
also *Gilbert* in a Charter of King Henry the second, held it as Lord in old time, of
whom it is probable this name was rather given to it. Through this *Gillesland*, the
wall of Severus, that most famous monument of all Britaine, runneth streight, as it
were by a line, from *Carlisle* Eastward, by *Stannicks*, a little village, by *Scalby castle*,
belonging in times past to the *Tilliols* (sometimes a name in this tract of good wor-
ship and reputation) from whom it came to the *Pickerings*; then *Cambec*, a small
brooke runneth under the wall: Neere unto which the Barons of *Dacre* built *Asker-
ton castle*, a little pile, where the Governour of *Gillesland*, whom they call *Land-Ser-
geant*, had a ward. Beneath the wall it conjoyneth it selfe with the river *Irthing*,
where standeth *Iribington* a chiefe *Manour*, as they tearme it, of this Barony of *Gil-
lesland*.

Scalby Castle.

Asker-ton.

Isleland: And great mins are here to be seen at *Castle-peed*. Neere unto it, is *Bramp-
ton* a little mercate towne, which we suppose to bee *BREMPTURACUM*, at the very
line and range of the wall, for it is scarce a mile from the said wall: where in times
past, lay the first Band of the *Tungri* out of Germanis in the declining state of the
Romane Empire, and a company of *Armatures*, under the generall of Britaine. These
were horsemen armed at all peeces. But whether these *Armatures* were *Duplar* or
Simplar, it is doubtfull. *Duplar* or *Duple Armatura* they were called in those daies,
who had double allowances of corne: *Simplar*, that had but single. Neither verily
must I overpasse in silence, that hard by *Brampton*, there mounteth up an high hill, for-
tified in the verie top with a trench; they call it the *Mote*: from which there is a faire
prospect every way into the country. Beneath this, and by *Castle-peeds*, like as at
Trederman joining unto it, were found these inscriptions, exemplified for me by the
hand of the right honourable Lord *William Howard* of *Naworth*, third sonne unto
Thomas late Duke of *Norfolke*, a singular lover of venerable antiquitie, and learned
withall, who in these parts in right of his wife, a sister and one of the heires of the last
Lord *Dacre*, enioieth faire possessions.

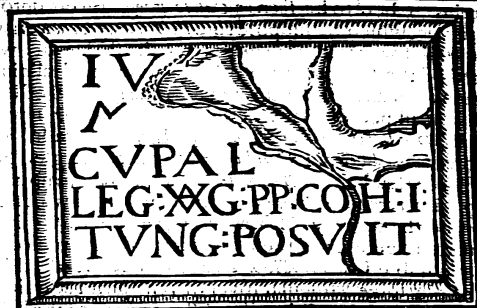
Brampton.
Brempturacum.

Armatura Ve-
get. 2. 6. 7.



This stone also was found there in an old Hot-house: wherein by ill fortune the
name of the Emperours Lievtenant, and Propretour of Britaine is worne out.

Neere

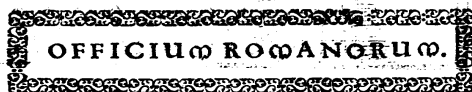


Neere to *Brampton*, *Gels* a riveret runneth downe; by the banke whereof in a crag called *Helbecke*, are read these antiquities (wherein the words hang not well together) erected, as it seemeth, by a Lieutenent of the second Legion *Augusta*, under *Agricola* the Proprætor: and others beside, which the injurie of time hath envied us:



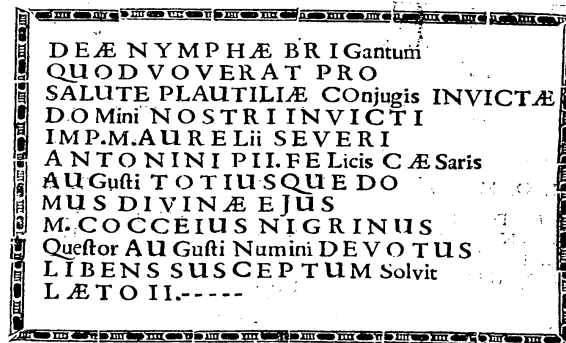
* Perhaps Proprætor.

In the same rocke these words also are read, written in a more moderne and newer letter.



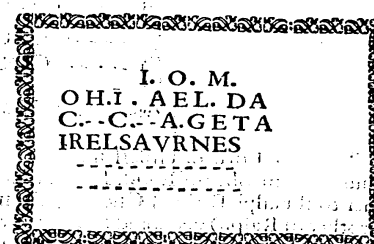
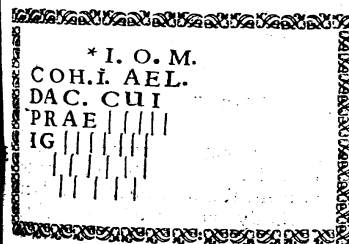
This *Gels* emptieth himselfe into the river *Iribing*, which with a *swift* and *angry* streame holdeth his course by *Naworth Castle*, belonging unto the Lord *William Howard* aforesaid, who now repaireth it: but lately to the Barons of *Dacre*, of whom when the last died in his tender yeeres, *Leonard Dacre* his Uncle, who chose rather to try the title of inheritance with his Prince by force of armes, than with his Nicces by wager of law, seized into his hands this Castle, and levied a band of rebels against his Prince: whom the Lord of *Hunsdon*, with the garrison souldiers of *Berwick* soon

A foone discomfited and put to flight: in which conflict many were slaine, but more ranne away, amongst whom *Leonard* himselfe escaped. But of him more in my *Annales*. Neerer unto the wall beyond the river *Iribing*, was lately found this faire votive altar, erected to the Goddess *Nymphæ* of the *Brigantes*, for the health of the Emperesse *Plautilla*, wife to *M. Aurelius Antoninus Severus*, and the whole Imperiall family, by *M. Cocceius Nigrinus* a Treasurer to the Emperour, when *Læmus* was second time Confull, with intricate connexion of letters, which I read thus.

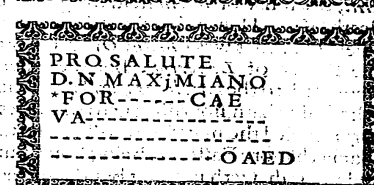
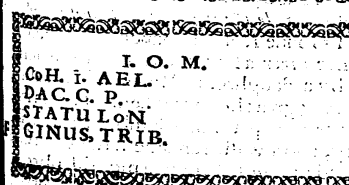


In the yeere of Christ 216.

Here by was the *Priory of Lanercost*, founded by *R. de Vaulx*, Lord of *Gillesland*: and hard by the wall *Burd Oswald*. Beneath which, where that Picts wall passed over the river *Iribing* by an arched bridge, was the station of the first band *Ælia Dacica*, or of the *Dacians* (the place is now named *Willoford*) which the booke of *Notice of Provinces*, and many altars bearing inscriptions to *Jupiter Optimus Maximus*, reared by that Cohort here, doe plentifully prove: Of which I thought good to adde these unto the rest, although time hath almost worne them out.



Jovi optimo Maximo.



* Fortissimo Cæsari.

VVV

LEG.

LEG. VI
VIC. P. F.
F.

I. O. M.
COHIAEL. DAC
TETRICIANORO
---C. P. LUTIC
---V S. DESIG
NATUS
TRIB.

I. O. M.
COH. I. AEL.
DAC. GORD.
ANA. C. P. ---EST

I. O. M.
---HIAEL. DAC.
---C. PRAE SI.
---FLIUS FA
---S TRIB.
---PETUO.
---COS.

Lords of Gillelland.
Out of an old
Mistal.
Also R. Cook
Clarencieux
callect him
Ranulph. i.
Raulph. So
doth Manu-
script bookes
of Fountaines
and Holme.

Maiden way.

The first Lord of Gillelland, that hitherto I have read of, was William Meschines, the brother of Ralph Lord of Cumberland (I meane not that William brother to Ranulph Earle of Chester, from whom came Ranulph de Ruelent, but the brother of Ralph) yet could hee never wrest it wholly out of the Scots hands: for Gill, the sonne of Bueib held the greatest part of it by force and armes. After his death, King Henry the second gave it to Hubert de Vaulx, or de Vallibus, whose shield of Armes was *Chequy Or & Gules*. His sonne Robert founded and endowed the Priory of *Lamercest*. But the inheritance after a few yeeres was by marriage translated to the *Moltens*, and from them by a daughter to Ranulph Lord *Dacre*, whose line hath flourished unto our daies in very great honour. Having now in some sort surveied the maritime coasts, and more inward parts of Cumberland, the side that lieth more Easterly, being leane, hungry, and a wast, remaineth to be viewed: and yet it sheweth nothing but the spring-head of *South-Tine* in a moorish place, and an ancient Romane high-way eight ells broad, paved with great stone (commonly called *Mayden Way*) which leadeth out of *Westmorland*; and where the riveret *Alon*, and the aforesaid *South Tine* meet together in one channell, by the side of an hill

A hill of gentle descent, there remaine yet the footings of a very great and ancient towne: which was toward the North enclosed within a fourefold rampier, and Westward, with one and an halfe: the name of the place is now *Whueley Castle*: and for to testifie the antiquity thereof, there remaineth this imperfect inscription, with letters inserted one in another, after a short and compendious manner of writing, whereby wee learne that the third Cohort of the *Nervians* erected there a Temple unto the Emperour *Antonine*, sonne of *Severus*.

IMP. CAES. Lucii Septimi Severi Arabici, ADIABENICI, PARTHICI, MAX. FIL. DIVI ANTONINI Pii Germanici SARMA. NEP. DIVI ANTONINI Pii PRON. DIVI HADRIANI ABN. DIVI TRAIANI PARTH. ET DIVI NERVÆ ADNEPOTI. M. AURELIO ANTONINO PIO FEL. AUG. GERMANICO PONT. MAX. TR. POT. -X- IMP. --- COS. IIII. P. p. --- PRO PIETATE AEDE --- VOTO --- COMMUNI CURANTE --- LEGATO AUG. PR --- COH. III. NERVIO --- RVM --- G. R. POS.

Whereas therefore the third Cohort of the *Nervii* served in this place, which Cohort the booke of *Notices* in a latter time placeth at *ALONE*, or as *Antonine* nameth it *ALONE*, and the little river running underneath is named *Ale*: if I should thinke this were *ALONE*, it might seeme rather probable than true, considering the injury of devouring time, and the fury of enemies have long agoe outworne these matters out of all remembrance.

Albeit when the State of the Romane Empire decayed most in Britain, this country had been most grievously harried and spoiled by the Scots and Picts, yet it preserved and kept long the ancient and naturall inhabitants the Britans, and late it was ere it became subject to the English Saxons. But when againe the English Saxons state, fore shaken by Danish warres, ran to ruine, it had peculiar Governors, called Kings of Cumberland, unto the yeere of our Lord 946. at what time, as the * *Floure-gatherer* of Westminster saith, *King Edmund*, by the helpe of *Leoline Prince of South-wales*, was sed and spoiled all Cumberland, and having put out the eyes of both the sonnes of *Dunmail King of the same Province*, hee granted that kingdome unto *Malcolme King of Scots*, to be holden of him, that he might defend the North parts of England by land and sea from the invasions and invasions of the common enemies. Whereupon the eldest sons of the Kings of Scotland were for a while under the English Saxons, and Danes both, called the Prefects, or Deputy Rulers of Cumberland. But when England had yeelded it selfe into the hands of the Normans, this part also became subject unto them; and fell unto the lot of *Ralph de Meschines*, whose eldest sonne *Ranulph* was Lord of Cumberland, and partly in his mothers right, and partly by his Princes favour together, Earle also of Chester. But King Stephen, to purchase favour with the Scots, restored it unto them againe, that they should hold it of him and the Kings of England. Howbeit K. Henry the second, who succeeded after him, perceiving that this over great liberality of Stephen was prejudiciall both to himself and his realme, demanded againe of the Scot Northumberland, Cumberland, and Westmorland: And the K. of Scots (as *Newbrigenis* writeth) wisely considering that the King

Kings of
Cumberland.
* Florilegus.

Captaines or
Rulers of
Cumberland.

of England had in those parts both the better right and also greater power, although he might have pretended the oath, which he was said to have made unto his grandfather David, what time hee was knighted by him: yet restored he the foresaid marches, according to his demand, fully and wholly, and received of him againe the Earledome of Huntingdon, which by ancient right appertained to him.

Earles of
Cumberland.

As for Earles of Cumberland, there were none before the time of King Henry the eighth, who created Henry Lord Clifford (who derived his pedigree from the Lords Vipont) the first Earle of Cumberland: who of Margaret, the daughter of Henry Percy Earle of Northumberland, begat Henry the second Earle: hee by his first wife, daughter to Charles Brandon Duke of Suffolk, had issue Margaret Countesse of Derby; and by a second wife, the daughter of Lord Dacre of Gilleland, two sonnes, George and Francis: George the third Earle, renowned for sea-service, armed with an able body to endure travaile, and a valorous minde to undertake dangers, died in the yeere 1605. leaving one onely daughter, the Lady Anne, now Countesse of Dorset. But his brother, Sir Francis Clifford, succeeded in the Earledome; a man whose ardent and honorable affection to vertue, is answerable in all points to his honourable parentage.

As for the Wardens of the West-marches against Scotland in this County, which were Noblemen of especiall trust, I need to say nothing, when as by the union of both kingdomes under one head, that office is now determin'd.

This shire reckoneth beside chappels, 58. Parish Churches.

VALLUM.

SIVE

MURUS PICTICUS:

That is,

THE PICTS VVALL.



Through the high part of Cumberland shooteth that most famous Wall (in no case to be passed over in silence) the limit of the Roman Province, the Barbarian Rampier, the Forefence and Enclosure, for so the ancient writers termed it, being called in *Dionysius Periegetes*; that is, a crosse Wall; in *Herodian*, *Zeua*, that is, a Trench or Fosse cast up; by *Antonine*, *Cassiodore*, and others, *VALLUM*, that is, the Rampier; by *Bede*, *MURUS*, that is, the Wall; by the Britans, *Gual-Sever*, *Gal-Sever*, *Bal-Val*, and *Mur-Sever*; by the Scottish, *Scottishwaith*; by the English, and those that dwell thereabout, the *Picts Wall*, or the *Pebius Wall*, the *Keepe Wall*, and simply by way of excellencie, *The wall*.

When the ambitious and valiant Romans, finding by the guidance of God and assistance of vertue, their successe in all their affaires above their wishes, had enlarged their Empire every way, so as that the very unwealdinesse thereof began now to be of it selfe fearefully suspected; their Emperours thought it their best and safest policie to limit and containe the same within certaine bounds: for in wisdome they saw, That in all greatnesse there ought to be a meane, like as the heaven it selfe reacheth not beyond the limited compasse, and the seas are tossed to and fro within their owne precincts. Now those limits or bounds, according to the natures of the places, were either naturall, as the sea, greater rivers, mountaines, waits and desert grounds; or artificiall, as frontier-fences, namely trenches or dikes, castles, keeps or fortresses, wards, mounds, and baricadoes by trees cut downe and plashed, bankes, rampiers and walls: along which were planted garrisons of souldiers against the barbarous nations confining. Whence it is that we read thus in the *Novella* of *Theodosius* the Emperour, *whatsoever lieth included within the power and regiment of the Romans, is by the appointment and dispose of our Ancestors defended from the incursions of Barbarians with the rampier of a Limit*. Along these limits or borders souldiers lay garrisoned in time of peace within frontier-castles and cities: but when there was any feare of waste and spoile from bordering nations, some of them had their field-stations within the Barbarian ground, for defence of the lands: others made out-rides into the enemies marches, to discover how the enemies stirred; yea, and if good occasion were offered, to encounter with them before they came to the Limits.

In this Iland the Romans, when they perceived that the farther parts of Britaine lying North were cold, and a rough barren soile, and inhabited by the Caledonian Britans and barbarous nations; in subduing whereof they were sure to take much paines, and reape very small profit, built at sundry times divers fore-fences, as well to bound, as to defend the Province. The first of these seemeth to have bene made by *Julius Agricola*, when he fortified with holds and garrisons that narrow space of ground that lieth betweene *Edenborough Friih* and *Dunbretten Friih*, which afterwards was eftsoones strengthened.

When *TERMINUS* the god of bounds, who would not give place to Jupiter himselfe, was so enforced to yeeld to *Hadrian* the Emperour, that he withdrew the Limit of the Roman Empire in the East to the river *Euphrates*, whether for envie to *Trajans* glory,

Frontier fences or Forts, writers termed *Clusura*, because they excluded the enemies; and *Præ-tentura*, because they were set against or affront the enemies. See *P. Pithæus in adversariis lib. 1. cap. 14.*

The Limits or Bounds of the Empire.

Tit. 43.

Vallo Limitis.

Hence come *Stationes Agartæ* in *Vegetius*.

The first fore-fence.

Bodotria and *Glota*.

S. Austin de Civ. Dei. l. 4. c. 19. The second fore-fence.

glorie, under whom the Empire extended furthest, or for feare; he likewise withdrew A the limits fourescore miles, or thereabout, within this Island, to the river *Tine*, and there made the second fore-fence. He, saith *Spartianus*, brought a wall on for fourescore miles in length (which should divide the Barbarians and the Romans asunder) raised with great stakes or piles pitched deep in the ground, and fastned together in manner of a mural or military mound for defence, as may be gathered out of that which followeth in *Spartianus*. And this is that fore-fence wherewith we are now in hand: for it goeth out in length Lxxx. Italian miles. About which were *PONS ÆLIUS*, *CLASSIS ÆLIA*, *COHOR ÆLIA*, *ALA SABINIANA*, which tooke their names from *Ælius Hadrianus* and *Sabina* his wife. And that Scottish Historiographer who wrote *The* B *wheele of Times*, writeth thus, *Hadrian was the first of all that made a rampier or wall of a huge and wonderfull bignesse, like unto a mountaine, all of turfs digged out of the ground, with a ditch lying to it afront from the mouth of Tine unto the river Eske, that is, from the German Sea unto the Irish Ocean; which He Æor Boetius accordingly witnesseth in the same words.*

Rota tempo-
rum.

The third
Fence.

Lollius Urbicus, Lievtenant of Britain under the Emperour *Antoninus Pius*, by his fortunate fights did enlarge the bounds againe as farre as to that first frontier fence that was made by *Julius Agricola*, and even there raised up a third fence with a wall. He, saith *Capitolinus*, vanquished the Britains, and having driven out the Barbarians, made another wall of turfs beyond that of *Hadrianus*. The honour of which war happily dispatched and finished in Britain, *Fronto*, as the Panegyricall Orator saith, ascribed unto *Antonine* the Emperour, and hath testified that he, although sitting still at home in the very Palace of Rome, had given charge and commission to another General for the war, yet like unto the Pilot of a Galley sitting at the sterne, and guiding the helme, deserved the glorie of the whole voiage and expedition. But that this Wall of *Antoninus Pius*, and of his Lievtenant *Lollius Urbicus*, was in Scotland, shalbe proved hereafter.

The fourth
Fence.

When the Caledonian Britons, whiles *Commodus* was Emperour, had broken through this wall, *Severus*, neglecting that farre and huge big Countrey, made a fortification C crosse over the land from *Solway Frith* to *Tinnmouth*, in that very place (if I have any judgement) where *Hadrian* made his wall of stakes and piles: and of mine opinion is *He Æor Boetius*: *Severus*, saith he, commanded *Hadrian's* wall to be repaired with Bul- D marks of stone and Turrets, placed in such convenient distance, as shalbe the sound of a trumpet, though against the wind, might be heard from the one unto the other. And in another place, Our Chronicles report, that the wall begun by *Hadrian* was finished by *Severus*. Also *Hierom Surita*, a most learned Spaniard, who writeth, That the Fence of *Hadrian* was extended farther by *Sept. Severus* with great fortifications, by the name of *Vallum*. Semblably, *Guidus Pancirolus*, who affirmeth, that *Severus* did but re-edifie and repaire the wall of *Hadrian* being falne downe. He, saith *Spartianus*, fenced Britain (which is one of the chiefe acts recorded in his time) by erecting up a wall overthwart the land, E to the bound of the Ocean on both sides the Ile: whereupon he got the title of *BRITANNICUS*. After he had driven out the enemies, as saith *Aurelius Victor*, he fenced Britaine so far forth as it was commodious unto him, &c. As also *Spartianus*: Againe *Eutropius*, To the end that he might fortifie with all safety and security the Provinces which he had recovered, he made a wall for 35. or rather more truly, 80. miles in length, even from sea to sea: That part of the land which he had recovered, as *Orosius* writeth, he thought good to sever from other untamed Nations by a rampier or wall: and therefore he cast a great ditch, and raised a most strong wall, fortified with many turrets for the space of an hundred and twenty two miles, from sea to sea: with whom *Bede* agreeth, who will not willingly heare that *Severus* made a wall; for that he labourerth to prove that a wall is made of stone, and a rampier, named *Vallum*, of stakes or piles that be called *Falli*, F and of turfs (whereas in very truth *Vallum* and *Murus*, that is, a wall, be indifferently used on for another.) And yet *Spartianus* called it *Murus*, that is, a wall, and should seeme to shew that he made both a wall and a trench, by these words, *Post murum et pud vallum in Britannia missum &c.*

Murus.
Vallum.

Howbeit, we gather out of *Bede*, that the said *Vallum* or Rampier was do-
thing

A thing else but a wall of turfs: and no man can truly say that the wall of *Severus* was built of stone. But have here the very words of *Bede* himselfe: *Severus* having given the victorie in civill wars at home, which had fallen out to be very dangerous, was drawne into Britain upon generall revolt almost of all the allies there. Where, after great and sore battells many times fought, when he had regain'd part of the land, he thought good to have the same divided from other wild and untamed nations, not with a wall, as some thinke, but with a rampier: for a wall is made of stones, but a rampier whereby B Camps are fortified to repell the force of enemies, is made of turfs cut out of the earth round about, but raised high in manner of a wall above ground; so that there be a ditch or trench afront it, whereout the turfs were gotten, upon which are pitched piles of very strong timber. And so *Severus* cast a great ditch, and raised a most strong rampier, strengthened with many turrets thereupon, from sea to sea. Neither is it knowne by any other name in *Antonine*, or the Notice of Provinces, than by *Vallum*, that is, a Rampier, and is in the British tongue termed *Gual-Sever*. Hereto we may annexe the authoritie also of *Ethelward* our ancientest writer next unto *Bede*, who, as touching *Severus*, hath these words, He did cast a ditch or trench crosse over the land, from sea to sea; within it also he built a wall with turrets and bulmarkes. Which afterwards he calleth *Fossam Severiam*, that is, *Sever's fosse or ditch*: like as we read in the most ancient Annales of the English-Saxons, *Sevepus Bpȳtenlāns mið ðic forȳrn þam sæ op sæ*, that is, *Severus foregirded and fenced Britain with a ditch from sea to sea*. And other later writers in this wise, *Sevepus æpȳht peal of tūpȳm þam sæ to sæ*, that is, *Severus in Britain made and finished a wall of turfs, or a rampier from sea to sea*. *William of Malmesburie* likewise nameth it a famous and most notorious trench. In which very place, two hundred yeeres after, or much thereabout, a wall of stone was set up, whereof I am to speake anon.

Whereas *Eutropius* hath set downe the length of it to be 35. miles, *Victor* 32. and other Authors 32. I suppose some faults have crept into the numbers. For the land is not so broad in that place, although a man should take the measure of the wall as it stood winding in and out, rising also and falling here and there. Nay, if one should reduce it into Italian miles, he should find little above fourescore, as *Spartianus* hath truly reckoned them. Some few yeeres after, this Munition, as it seemes, was forler. Howbeit, when *Alexander Severus* the Emperour, as we read in *Empridius*, had once given unto the Capitaines and souldiers of the marches, those grounds and lands which were won from the enemies, so that they should be their proprietie, if their heires served as souldiers, and that they should never returne to any private men, supposing they would goe to the wars more willingly, and take the better care, if they should defend their owne peculiar possessions. Note these words well I pray you: for hence may be deduced either a kind of *Fendum*, or the beginning of *Feuds*. After this the Romans marching beyond the wall, and building themselves stations within the out-land and barbarian E soile, fortifying also and furnishing them accordingly, enlarged the limits of the Roman Empire againe as farre as to *Edenborough Frith*. Nevertheless, the savage and barbarous people, never ceasing to affaile them upon advantages, drave them backe now and then as farre as to *Severus Trench*.

Dioclesian the Emperour had a provident eye to these limits, under whom when as the whole command in Britaine was committed unto *Carausius*, for that he was reputed the fitter man to warre against these warlike nations, he did set up againe the fore-fence betwene *Dunbritton Frith* and *Edenborough Frith*, as I will shew in place convenient. The first that ever had blame for neglecting these limits was *Constantine the Great*: for thus writeth *Zosimus*, whereas the Roman Empire by the providence of *Dioclesian* was in the utmost marches thereof every where surely fenced with Townes, Castles, and Burghs, and all their military companies made their abode in them, it was impossible for the barbarous nations to passe in, but they were somerewithall at every turne by forces there set to repell them backe. *Constantine* abolishing this munition of Garrisons, placed the greater part of the souldiers, whom hee had removed from out of the marches, in townes that had no need of Garrisons and defence. So hee left

Why lands
were given to
the Capitaines
of the Marches.

left the marches open to the invades of barbarous nations, without garrisons, and pestered A the Cities that were at peace and quiet with a sort of souldiers, whereby most of them are now already become desolate, and the souldiers themselves, addicted to Theatricall sports and pleasures, grew by his meanes deboshed. To conclude, and simply to speake in one word, he it was that gave the first cause and beginning that the state of the Empire runneth to wrecke and ruine.

Marcellinus
lib. 38.
About the
yeere 367.

* Magister Of-
ficiorum.

The wall be-
tweene Eden-
borrow Frith
and Dunbrit-
ton Frith.

About the
yeere of Christ
420.

Alciatus cal-
leth it the Bri-
vity of Theo-
dosius.

The Countrey that lay betwene these enclosures or fore-fences, Theodosius father unto Theodosius the Emperour recovered: he re-edified and repaired the Cities, strengthened the garrison castles and the limits with such watch, and ward, and forti- cations, yea and when he had recovered the Province, restored it to the ancient e- state, in such wise, as that it had a lawfull Governour by it selfe, and was afterward in honour of Valentinian the Emperour called VALENTIA. Theodosius also his sonne, having now by his own vertue attained unto the Imperiall Majestie, had a provident care of these limits, and gave commandement that the * Master of the Offices should yeere by yeere give advice and advertisement unto the Emperour how all things went with the souldiers, and in what fort the charge of castles, holds, and fore-fences was performed. But when the Roman Empire began once to decay apparently, and the Picts, together with the Scots, breaking through the wall of Turfes by Edenborrow- frith, cruelly waisted and over-ranne these parts, the Roman legion sent to aid the Bri- tans under the leading of Gallio of Ravenna, after they had driven away and quite removed the Barbarians, being now called backe againe for the defence of France, exhorted the Britans (these be the very words of Gildas and Bede) to make a wall over- thwart the Iland between the two seas, which might serve for a defence to keep off the ene- mies, and so returned home with great triumph. But the Ilanders fall to building of a wall as they were willed, not so much with stone as with turfes, considering they had no work- man to bring up so great a piece of work, and so they did set up one good for nothing which, as Gildas saith, being made by the rude and unskilfull common multitude, without any one to give direction, nor so much of stone as of turfe, served them in no stead. As touching the place where this wall was made, Bede proceedeth to write in this manner: They rais- ed it betwene the two friths or armes of the sea, for the space of many miles, that where the sense of water failed, there by the help of a rampier they might defend the borders D from the invasion of enemies. And such a fore-fence, reaching a great length, secured Assyria from the invades of forraigne nations, as Ammianus Marcellinus writeth. And the Sres at this day, as we read in Orosius, fortifie their vales and plaine champion with walls, that they might thereby shelter and defend themselves from the violent incursions of the Scythians. Of which worke there made (saith Bede) that is to say, a most broad and high rampier, a man may see the expresse and certaine remains to this day: which beginneith almost two miles from a Monastery called Abercurving, Eastward, at a place named in the Picts language Penvalhel, in the English tongue Penvalhel, and reaching Westward, endeith neere the Citty Alclud. But the former enemies no longer per- ceived that the Roman souldiers were returned, but presently sailing thither by water, E brake through the bounds into the marches, kill and slay all before them, and whatever stood in their way, they went downe with it under foot, they ever-trample it, as if it had bin standing corne ready for harvest. Whereupon Embassadors were dispatched againe to Rome, making piteous moan, and with teares craving aide, that their miserable countrey might not utterly be destroyed, nor the name of a Roman Province, which had so long time flourished among them, waxe contemptible, being now overwhelmed with the outrage of strange nations. Hereupon a Legion was sent over, which being arrived unlodged for a winter, made great slaughter of the enemies: as for the rest that were able to slip away and escape, they drave beyond the seas, who before time made it a practice every F yeere, while no souldiers made head against them, to passe over the said seas, and raise booties. Now by this time the Romans were retired backe unto the Wall or Ram- pier of Severus, and Perlineam Valli (as the booke of Notices termeth it, which was written toward the later end of Theodosius the younger his reigne) that is on both sides as well within as without the wall, they kept a standing watch and ward in

A in their severall Stations appointed, namely five wings of Horsemen with their Cap- taines, 15. Cohorts of footmen with their Colonels, one band, and likewise one Squadron; which I have mentioned and will againe in due place. Astouching the time immediately ensuing, Bede goeth forward to relate in these words. Then the Ro- mans denounced unto the Britans, that they could endure no longer to be out-toyled and wearied with such painfull voinges and expeditions for defence of them, advising them to take weapon in hand themselves, and endeavour to fight with the enemy, who could not by any meanes be stronger than themselves, unlesse they would give way to idlenesse, and become feeble therewith: Moreover, the Romans, because they thought this also might serve their allies in some stead, whom they were forced to leave, placed a wall of strong stone from sea to sea, directly betwene the Cities, which had bene built there for feare of the enemies (where Severus also in times past had made a rampire.) Here will I also put downe the words of Gildas, from whom Bede borrowed all this. The Romans di- rectly levell a wall after their usuall manner of building, not like unto the other, at the com- mon and private charges, adjoining unto them the poore & miserable naturall home born inhabitants, from sea to sea betwixt the cities, which chanced to have bene placed there for feare of the enemies. And now heare what Bede saith againe: Which wall, that hath bene hitherto famous and conspicuow, they with publicke and private cost, having with them the Britans helping hand also, built eight foot broad and twelve foot high, in a di- rect line from East forward to West, as is evident even at this day to the beholders. Out of which words of Bede you may see that a great learned man, whiles he thinketh to hit the bird in the eye, hath missed the marke, straining and striving mightily to prove against Boetius and other Scottish writers, that Severus his wall of turfe was in Scotland. Doth not Bede write in plaine tearmes, after hee had spoken of the Earth-wall at Abercurving in Scotland, that a wall was reared of strong stone where Severus had made his of turfe? and where I pray is that wall of stone but in this place, betwene Tine-mouth and Solwey frith? where was then that wall of Seve- rus? As for the wall, there are yet such expresse tokens of it in this place, that you may tracke it as it were all the way it went: and in the * Wafts, as they tearme them, I may selfe have beheld with my owne eyes on either side, huge peeces thereof stan- ding for a great way together, only wanting their battlements.

Verily I have seene the tract of it over the high pitches and steepe descents of hills, wonderfully rising and falling: and where the fields lye more plaine and open, a broad and deepe ditch without, just before it, which now in many places is ground- ed up: and within a banke or military high-way, but in most places interrupted. It had many towres or fortresses, about a mile distant from another, which they call Castle-steeds; and more within little fenced townes, rearmed in these dayes Chesters, E the plots or ground workes whereof are to be seene in some places foure square: al- so towres standing betwene these, wherein souldiers being placed might discover the enemies, and be ready to set upon them: wherein also the Areani might have their Stations, whom the foresaid Theodosius, after they were convicted of falshood, displaced and removed from their Stations. These Areani (as Marcellinus saith) were a kinde of men ordained in old time, whose office it was to runne a great way too and fro from place to place, to intimate or give intelligence unto our Leaders what stirre and noise there was abroad among the neighbour nations. So that the first founders of this wall may seeme to have bene directed by his counsell, who wrote unto Theodosius and his sonnes as touching military affaires in this manner. Among the commodities of F State and weale publicke, right behevfull is the care concerning the limits, which in all places doe guard and enclose the sides of the Empire: The defence whereof may be best assured by certain castles built neare together, so that they be erected with a steady wall & strong towres a mile asunder one from another, which munitions verily the Land-lords ought to arreare without the publicke charge, by a distribution of that care among them- selves, for to keep watch and ward in them and in the field forefences, that the peace and quiet of the Provinces being guarded round about therewith, as with a girdle of defence, may rest safe and secure from hurt and harme.

Souldiers plac-
ed in garisons,
and along the
Wall.

* In Wallis.
The Wafts.

Areani, certain
discoverers,
lib. 28.

The

The dwellers hereabout talke much of a brasen trunke (whereof they found peeces now and then) that set and fitted in the wall artificially, ranne betweene every Fortrefse and Towre, so as that if any one in what towre soever, conveyed the watchword into it, the sound would have beene carried straightwaies without any stay to the next, then to the third, and so to them all one after another, and all to signify at what place the assault of the enemy was feared. The like miraculous device of the Towres in *Bizantium*, *Xiphiline* relateth out of *Dion* in the life of *Severus*. But since the wall now lies along, and no pipe remaineth there, many tenants hold farms and lands of our Kings here round about in *Cornage*, as our Lawyers speake: that is, that they should give knowledge unto their neighbours of the enemies approaching, by winding of an horne: which some thinke, had the first originall from an ancient custome of the Romans: who also were bound to goe by the Kings precept in the army and service for *Scotland* (these be the words of the Record) as they marched forth in the Vanward, as they returned home in the Rereward.

But that I may follow the tract of this wall more directly in particular, it beginneth at the Irish sea, hard by *BLATUM BULGIUM* or *Bulnesse*, and goeth on along the side of *Solway frith*, and so by *Burgh upon Sands* unto *LUGU-VALLUM* of *Carlisle*, where it passeth over *Eden*. From thence it runneth forth, and hath the river *Irthing* beneath it, crossing over *Camberke*, a little brooke running crooked with many turnings in and out, where are great tokens to be seene of a fortification. After this having cut over the rivers *Irthing* and *Polarosse*, it entred into *Northumberland*, and among the mountaines hudled together, goeth along by the side of the river which they call *South-Tine* without any interruption (save only that it is divided by *North-Tine*, where in ancient time there was a bridge over it) as farre as to the German Ocean: as I will shew in due place when I am come once into *Northumberland*.

Yet this admirable worke could not avert and keepe out the tempestuous stormes of forraigne enemies: But when the Romane armies were retired out of Britaine, the Picts and Scots assaulting the wall upon the sudden with their engines and hooked weapons, plucked and puld downe the garrison souldiers, brake through the fence, and overranne Britaine far and neere, being then disarmed and shaken with civill broiles, and most miserably afflicted with extreme famine. But the most wofull and lamentable misery of these heavey times, *Gildas* a Britan, who lived not long after, penileth our lively in these words. As the Romans were returning homeward, there appear striving who could come first out of their Caroches, in which they had passed over the vale * *Sittica*, like unto dusky swarmes of wormes, comming forth of their little caves, with most narrow holes at noone day in summer, and when the heat of the sunne is at the highest, a rabble of Scots and Picts, in manners partly different, but in one and the same greedy designe of bloodshed: And having knowledge once that our friends and associates were retired home, and had denied ever to returne again, they with greater confidence and boldnesse than before time attempt to possesse themselves of all the North side, and the utmost part of the land from out of the Inlanders hands, as far as to the very wall. Against these invasions there stands placed on high in a Keepe, a lasie crew, unable to fight, unskilful (God he knows) for service, trembling and quaking at the heart, which night and day saie still as benumbed, and stirred not abroad. Mean while the hooked engines of their naked and barehanked enemies cease not, wherewith the most miserable inhabitants were plucked downe from the walls, and dashed against the hard ground. This good yet did such an untimely death unto those that thus lost their lives, that by so quicke a dispatch and end, they were freed from the view of most piteous paines and imminent afflictions of their breibren and children. What should I say more? when they had left the Cities and high wall, they were againe driven to flye and hide themselves; and being thus dispersed, in more desperate case they were than they had been before. The enemies likewise presse still sorer upon them, and semblably hasten bloody carnage and slaughters one in the necke of another. And even as lambs are torn in pieces by butchers, so are these lamentable inhabitants by the enemies; inso much as their abode and continuance together might be well compared to wild beasts. For both they preyed one upon another, and by robbing also forbore not the

Cornage.

The high-land Scots at this day call their little barges Caroches. * The Paris edition hath Scytica Vallum, and meaneth haply the Scottish sea.

A the short pittance of food that the poorer sort of the inhabitants had for their owne small sustentation: & also these outward calamities were encreased with domesticall commotions, so that by reason of so great robbing, pilling, and spoiling, the whole countrey wanted the stay of all kind of food, save onely that which they got by hunting, to comfort their poor pinning bodies.

But this is worth the observation, that as by the wisdom of the Romans this wall was so built, that it had two very great rivers neere to it on the inner side (as it were) for another defence, namely, *Tine* and *Irthing*, that are divided one from the other with a very narrow parcell of ground: So on the other side the barbarous people were so cunning, that in the same place especially they made their first entrance betwixt these rivers, where they might have free passage farther into the heart of the Province, without hinderance of any river: according as we will shew by and by in *Northumberland*. The fabulous tales of the common people concerning this wall, I doe wittingly and willingly overpasse. Yet this one thing, which I was enforced of by men of good credit, I will not conceale from the Reader. There continueth a settled persuasion among a great part of the people thereabout, and the same received by tradition, That the Roman souldiers of the marches did plant here every where in old time for their use certaine medicinable hearbs, for to cure wounds: whence it is that some Emperick practitioners of Chirurgery in Scotland, flock hither every yeere in the beginning of summer, to gather such Simples and wound-herbes; the vertue whereof they highly commend as found by long experience, and to be of singular efficacy.

The policy and wisdom of the Romans in fering of this wall.

Plants medicinalable and wholfome.

OTTADINI



OTTADINI.



After the Brigantes, Ptolomee placeth those who (according to the divers readings in Copies) are called OTTALINI, OTTADENI, and OTTADINI: In stead of all which names, I would, if I durst presume so far, with a very easie alteration substitute OTTADINI, that it might signifie, On the farther side of, or above the river Tine. And so verily would the name of the Inhabitants bee consonant with the position and site of the countrey. For these are planted beyond Tine. And the Welsh-Britans at this day call a country in Wales beyond the river Conwey, Uch Conwey: beyond the hills, Uchmynith: beyond the wood, Uch-Coed: beyond the river Gwyrrway, Uch-Gwyrrway. Neither can it be, I assure you, altogether absurd, if after the same manner they tearmed this country beyond Tine, Uch Tin: whence the Romans may seeme to have framed this name OTTADINI, by a word somewhat disjointed, but more smooth and pleasanter to the eare. And whereas Xiphilius reporteth out of Dio, that all the Britans that dwelt neere unto the wall, which we spake of even now, were called Μαράται, or ΜΑΕΑΤΑΕ, good reason it is that we should thinke these our Ottadini dwelling by the said wall, were among those Μαράται, who in that memorable revolt and rebellion of the Britans, called in the Caledonians to assist them, and take armes with them. At which time Severus the Emperour commanded his souldiers peremptorily to kill all the Britans, using these verses of Homer.

Μὴ τις ὑπερφυεῖν αἰ πὺν ὄλεθρον
Χαίρας ἢ ἡμετέρας, μὴδ' ὅν τινα γαστέρι μήτηρ
Κέρον ὄντα φέροι, μὴδ' ὅς φύροι αἰπὺν ὄλεθρον.

Let none scape cruell death,
Nor dint of sword: no nor the child unborne
In mothers womb that lies: his death is sworne.

But the tempestuous storme of this rebellion was calmed by the death of Severus, who in his very preparation for warre died at Yorke.

Long

Long after, this Countrey seemeth to have beene a part of VALENTIA. For Theodosius called it in honour of Valentinian the Emperour, after he had subdued the barbarous people, and recovered this tract or Province, which before had beene lost.

But these ancient names were quite worne out of use in the English Saxon war, and all the Countreies lying North on the other side of the Arme of the sea called Humber, began by a Saxon name to bee called Noppa-humbra-pic, that is, The Kingdome of Northumberland: which name notwithstanding being now cleane gone in the rest of the Shires, remaineth still, as it were, surviving in Northumberland onely. Which when that state or kingdome stood, was knowne to bee a part of the Kingdome of Bernicia, which had peculiar petty Kings, and reached from the River TEES to Edenborough Frith.

XXX

NORTH.

NORTH-HUMBER-LAND.



North-umber-land, which the English Saxons called Nopp-an-hum-bep-lond, lieth after a sort enclosed in fashion of a Triangle, but not with equall sides. The South side is shut in with *Derwent* running into *Tine*, and with *Tine* it selfe, where it butteth upon the Bishoprick of Durham. The East side the German sea lieth and beateth upon it. But the West side, which reacheth out from South-west to North-east, is first parted from Cumber-land, afterward with Cheviot and hills linked one to another, and lastly with the river *Twede* it affronteth Scotland, and so was the limit of both kingdomes: over which were set in this countie two Governours, the one called L. Warden of the middle Marches, the other of the East marches. The ground it selfe for the most part rough, and hard to be manured, seemeth to have hardened the inhabitants, whom the Scots their neighbours also made more fierce and hardie, while sometimes they keep them exercised in warres, and other whiles in time of peace intermingle their manners among them, so that by these meanes they are a most warlike nation, and excellent good light-horsemen. And whereas they addicted themselves as it were wholly to *Mars* and Armes, there is not a man amongst them of the better sort, that hath not his little tower or pile: and so it was divided into a number of *Baronies*, the Lords whereof in times past, before King Edward the first his dayes, went commonly under the name *Barons*, although some of them were of no great living. But a wife and politicke device this was of our Ancestours, to cherish and maintaine martiall prowesse among them in the marches of the kingdome, if it were nothing else but with an honourable bare title. Howbeit this title came to nothing among them, what time as under King Edward the first, those onely began to enjoy the name and honour of *Barons*, whom the Kings summoned unto the high Court of Parliament by speciall summons. Toward the sea and *Tine*, by diligence and good husbandrie it becommeth very fruitful; but elsewhere it is more barraine, rough, and as it were unmanurable: And in many places those stones *Liibanhraces*, which we call *Sea-coales*, are digged up in great plentie, to the great gaine of the inhabitants, and commoditie of others.

The hithermore part bending toward the South-west, and called *Hexam-shire*, acknowledged a long time the Archbishop of Yorke for the Lord thereof, and challenged unto it selfe, by what right I know not, the priviledge of a Countie Palatine. But after it became of late annexed unto the crowne land, upon an exchange made with Robert the Archbishop, by authority of Parliament it was laied unto the countie of Northumberland, that it should be subject to the same jurisdiction, and in all causes have recourse unto the high Sheriffe thereof.

South Tine (a river so called, if wee may beleeve our Britans, for that by reason of his narrow bankes hee is straight pent in, for so signifieth *Tin*, as they say, in the British tongue) having his spring head in Cumberland, neere unto *Alfen-more*, where there was an ancient copper mine, holding on his course by *Lambley*, sometime a Nunerie built by the *Lucies*, and now with floods for the most part undermined and fallen downe: also by *Feiherston-Haugh*, the seat of the ancient and well descended family of *Fetherston*, when hee is come as farre as *Bellister Castle*, turning Eastward, runneth directly forward with the *W A L L*, which is in no place three miles distant from it toward the North.

For the *wall* having left Cumberland behind it, and crossed over the *Irthing*, passed likewise with an arch over the swift river yet *Potroffe*, where I saw within the wall high mounts of earth cast up, as it were to over look and discover the country. Neer this standeth *Tbird-wale Castle*, which is not great, but strongly built, yet it gave both

Wardens of the Marches.

Rank-riders.

Very many Baronies in Northumberland.

Sea-coales.

Hexam-shire.

The river South-Tine.

habitation and surname to the ancient and noble family, which was first called *Wade*: where the Picts and Scottish made their passage into the Province, between *Irling* and *Tine* (and that verily upon good forecast) in that place where they had free entrance by reason of no river in their way, into the inmore parts of England. But you shall better understand this, and the name of the place, out of *John Fordon* the Scottish Historian, whose words it will not be amisse, as I thinke, to set downe here, because the booke is not everie where to be had. *The Scots* (saith hee) *when by conquest they had gotten the possession of those countries, which are on this side the wall, toward Scotland, began to inhabite them, and having of a suddaine raised a sort of the Country people, with their mattocks, pickaxes, rakes, three tined forkes and spades, made B* wide gappes, and a number of holes in it, by which breaches they might passe in & out readily at their pleasure. Of those holes therefore this mound of the wall afterward took the name *Thirlwall*, which it hath at this day in this place: for in the English tongue that very place is called *Thirlwall*, which is as much as a wall pierced through. Then saw we *Blenkensop*, which gave name unto a generous family, as also their habitation in a right pleasant country Southward; which was part of the *Baronie* of Sir *Nicholas of Bolteby*, a Baron of renoune in the time of King *Edward the first*.

When you are past *Thirlwall*, the said wall openeth it selfe unto the raging river *Tippall*, where in the descent of an hill, a little within the wall, is to be seene the ground worke of a Castle of the Romans, in forme foure square, everie side whereof taketh an hundred and fortie paces. The verie foundations likewise of houses, and trackes of streets still appeare most evidently to the beholders. The *Ranke-riders*, or *saking men* of the borders doe report, that a great port-way, paved with flint and bigge stone, led from hence through wastes unto *Maiden castle in Stanmore*. Certes, it passed directly to *Kirkby Thor*, whereof I spake. A poore old woman that dwelt in a little poore cottage hard by, shewed unto us an ancient little altar-stone, in testimonie of some vow, with this inscription unto *VITIRINEUS*, a tutel God, as it seemed, of the place.

DEO
VITI
RINE---
---LIMEO
ROV
* P. L. M.

Peisit libens
merito.

This place is now named *Caer Vorrán*; what it was in old time it passeth my wit to find out, seeing that amongst all the stations mentioned along the range of the wall, there is not one commeth neere to it in name; neither have wee any light out of inscriptions to lead us thereunto. What ever it was, sure the wall thereby was both strongest and highest by farre: for scarce a furlong or two from hence, upon a good high hill, there remaineth as yet some of it to be seene fifteen foot high, and nine foot thicke, built on both sides with foure square ashler stone, although *Bede* reporteth it was not above twelve foot in heighth.

From hence the wall goeth forward more aslope by *Iuerton*, *Forsten*, and *Chester* in the wall, neere to *Buse-Gap*, a place infamous for theiving and robbing: where stood some Castles, *Chesters* they call them, as I have heard (but I could not with safetie take the full survey of it, for the ranke-robbers thereabout.) As for *Chester*, the

At the neighbours told us that it was a very great building, so that we may well think it to have been that second station of the *Dalmarians*, which is called in the old booke of *Notice*, *MAGNA*, where this inscription was found upon an ancient altar.

PRO SALUTE
DESIDIENIÆ
---LIANI PRÆ
ET SUA. S.
POSUIT VOT
---AO SOLVIT LIBE
NS. TUSCO ET BAS
SO COSS.

Anno Christi.
259.

This broken and imperfect altar likewise brought from thence, wee read at *Melbrig*, where now women beat their buckes on it.

DEAE SURI
Æ SUB CALP
URNIO AG----
ICOLA. LEG. AUG
PR. PR. A. LICINIUS
---LEMENS PRAEF
---III. A. IOR----

These two inscriptions are yet to be seene in Sir Robert Cottons house at Connington.

Which if I were able to read, thus would I willingly read it, and the draught of the letters maketh well for it. *Dea Suria, sub Calphurnio Agricola Legato Augusti, Propatore Licinius Clemens Praefectus*; that is, unto the goddess *Suria*, under *Calphurnius Agricola* Lieutenant of *Augustus*, and Propatore, *Licinius Clemens* the Capitaine. This *Calphurnius Agricola* was sent by *Antoninus Philosophus* against the Britans, what time as there was likely to be warre in Britain, about the yeere of Christ 170. At which time some Cohort under his command erected this Altar unto *THE GODDESSE SURIA*, whom with a turreted crown on her head, and a Tabber in her hand, was set in a coach drawn with Lions, as *Lucian* sheweth at large in his *Narration* of the goddess *Suria*. Which goddess also *Nero*, albeit he contemned all religion, especially worshipped for a time; and soone after so aviled and despised, that he defiled her with his urine.

The goddesse
Suria.

Capitolinus.
Some will have
her to be Juno,
others Venus.

Suetonius in
Nero. cap. 56.

From hence wee saw *Willymotes-wicke*, the seat of a respected family of the *Ridleyes*; and hard by it the river *Alon*, running with a surging streame and rise of waters into *Tine*, namely, when both the *Alons* are met together in one channell. By the Easterne of the two *Alons*, there is to be seene a towne, now called *Old-towne*, but what the old name was, will not easily be found. Now to the wall againe. The next station upon the wall beyond *Buse-gap*, is called *Seaven-shale*: the name whereof, if any man would thinke with mee to come from the wing *Saviniana* or *Sabiniana*, might the more confidently say that it was that *HUNNUM* where the *Notice* of *Provinces* reporteth the wing *Sabiniana* kept watch and ward.

Alon River.

Seaven-shale.

X x x 3

Then,

Gallana.

North-Tine.

Tin-dale.

True plane.

Rheadfdale.

Lawes.

Then beyond *Carraw* and *Walton*, stands *Walwick*, which some conjecturally would have to be *GALLANA* in *Antonine*: in all which places there be evident remains of old fortifications.

Here there runneth through the wall *North Tine*, which being now come downe amaine out of the mountaines in the marches of England and Scotland, first as hee passeth Eastward, watereth *Tindale*, a place taking the name of him, and in the end receiving into his bosome the river *Rhead*, which springing out of *Readsqire*, a steep mountaine, where oftentimes was the *True place*, that is, a place of parley and conference for the East marches (for the LL. Wardens of the East marches to both Kingdomes were wont here to decide matters and controversies betweene the borderers) giveth his owne name to a dale, too too voide of inhabitants by reason of depredations.

Both these dales breed notable light horse-men: and both of them have their hills hard by, so boggy and standing with water in the top, that no horsemen are able to ride through them: whereupon (and that is wonderfull) there be many very great heapes of stone, called *Lawes*, which the neighbour inhabitants be verily persuaded were in old time cast up and layd together, in remembrance of some there slaine. In both of them also there be many ruinous remains of old Castles. In *Tindale* are *Whichester*, *Delaley*, *Tarset*, sometimes belonging to the *Comins*. In *Rheadfdale* are *Rochester*, *Green-chester*, *Rutchester*, and some others, whose ancient names are abolished and lost by the injury of long time. But seeing that at *Rochester* which standeth neerer into the head of *Rhead*, in the brow of a rocky high mountaine, that overlooketh the countrey underneath a great way (whence it seemeth to have taken this new name) there hath beene found an antique altar among the rubbish of an old castle, with this inscription,

D. R. S.

* DVPL.N.EXPLOR.
BREMEN. ARAM.
INSITVERVNT
N EIVS C CAEP
CHARITINO TRIB
V S L M.

* i. Duplaret
Numeri exploratorum
Bremeni Aram
insituerunt
Numini ejus
Capione Charitino
Tribuno
votum solvere
runt libenter
meritis.

A May wee not hence ghesse that *BREMENIUM*, for which there hath beene made so long and great search, was here, whereof *Ptolomee* hath made mention in this very site and position of the countrey, and from which *Antonine* the Emperour beginneth the first journey of Britaine, as from the utmost limit of the Romane Province in Britaine at that time? And the limits or bounds of a Dominion were seas, great rivers, Mountaines, Desert lands, and unpassable, such as be in this tract. Trenches also with their rampires, walls, mounds of trees cut downe or plashed, and Castles especially built in places more suspected and dangerous than others: to all which there are to bee seene remains here every where about. Certes, when the Barbarous nations, after they had broken through the wall of *Antoninus Pius* in Scotland, harried all over the countrey, and laid all wast before them, and the wall of *Hadrian* lay neglected unto the time of *Severus*, wee may well thinke that even here was set downe the limit of the Romane Empire: and that from hence the old Itinerary which goes about under the name of *Antoninus* began thus, *A limite*, that is, *From the Bound*. As for that which is set to it, *id est, A wallo*, that is, *From the wall or rampier*, may seeme a glosse put downe by the transcribers, considering that *BREMENIUM* is foureteene miles Northward distant from the said wall: unlesse it may seeme to have beene one of those out Field-stations, which, as I said even now, were placed within the Barbarians ground, beyond the Wall.

C Scarce five miles from old *BREMENIUM* Southward, standeth *Otterburne*, where there was a field most valiantly fought betweene the Scottish and English; in which the victory waved alternatively too and fro three or foure times, and fell in the end to the Scottish. For Sir Henry Percy, for his overforward spirit and youthfull heat by-named *Hot-Spurre*, who had the leading of the English, lost 15. hundred of his men in fight, and was himselfe led away prisoner: *William Douglas* also the leader of the Scots, with most of his company was slaine, so that the martiall valour of both nations was never more illustrious.

There is also another towne beneath of ancient memory, which *Rhead* watereth, or rather hath now well neare washed away: they call it at this day *Risingham*, which is in the ancient English and German language, *The Giants Habitation*, as *Risingberg* in Germany, *the Giants Hill*. Many shewes are there, and those right evident of antiquity. The inhabitants report that *God Magon* defended and made good this place a great while against a certaine *Soldan*, that is, an *Heathenish Prince*. Neither is this altogether a vaine tale. For that such a God was here honoured and worshipped, is plainly proved by these two altar stones lately drawne out of the river there, with these Inscriptions.

* DEO
MOGONTI CAD.
ET. N. D. N. AUG.
M. G. SECUNDINUS
B. F. COS. HABITA
NCI PRIMAS TA---
PRO SE ET SUI POSUIT

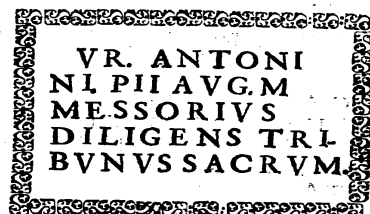
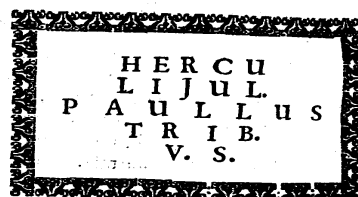
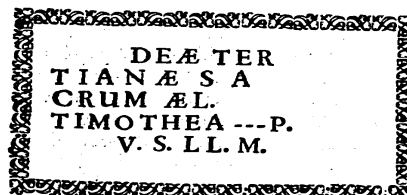
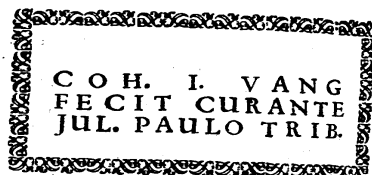
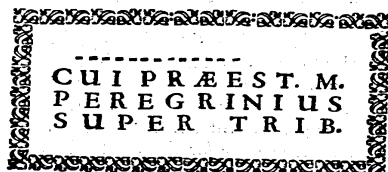
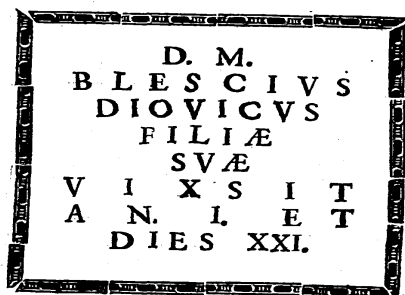
DEO
MOGONTI CAD.
INVENTUS DO
V. S.

* Deo Mogonti
Cadenerum
& numini Domini nostri
Augusti M. G.
Secundinus Beneficiarius
Confulis, Habitanci
Primas tam pro se & suis posuit.

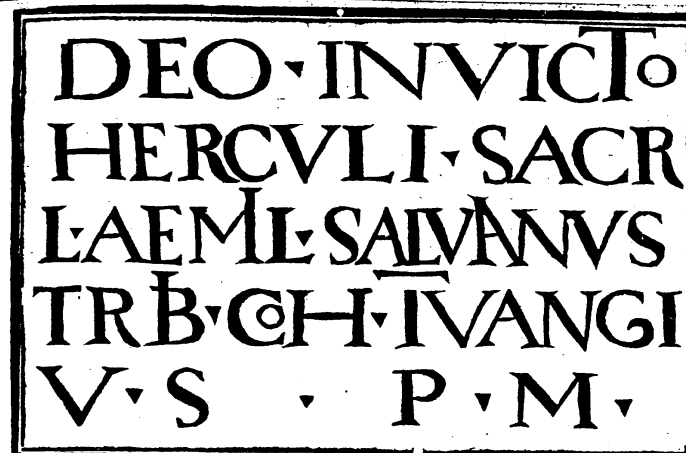
F Out of the former of these, wee may in some sort gather that the name of the place was *HABITANCUM*: and that he who erected it was *Beneficiarius* to a Conful, and Primate beside of the place. For certaine it is out of *Codex Theodosii*, that the chiefe Magistrates of Cities, Townes, and Castles, were called *Primates*. Now whether this God were the tutelar and appropriate *Genius* of the *Gadeni*, whom *Ptolomee* placed as next neighbours to the *Ottadini*, I cannot averre, let others sift and search it out. Moreover, these inscriptions also were here found: for which

Primas.
* Either promoted to that place by him, or by a dispensation exempt from soldiers services.

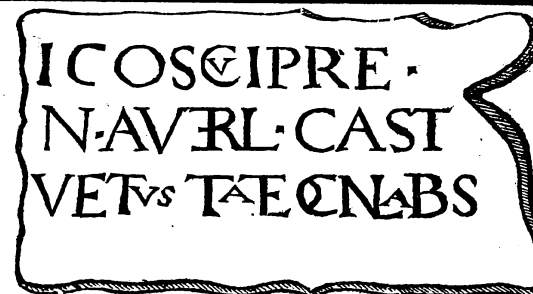
with others, we are to thanke the right worshipfull Sir Robert Cotton of Connington A Knight, who very lately both saw them, copied them out, and most kindly imparted them to this worke.



Deo F



*Cohors prima
Vangionum.*



*Vetustate con-
labsum.*

And that which farre surmountethall the rest for curious workmanship, a long table in this forme artificially engraven, set up by the fourth Cohort of the Gauls-Horimen, and dedicated to the sacred Majestie of the Emperours.



But

But now leaving these particularities, *Rhead* a little lower carrieth both his owne A
streame, and also other swelling brookes, that hee receiveth unto him by the way
into *Tine*, and so farre reacheth *Rhedesdale*. Which as we find in a book of the Kings
Exchequer, the *umfran Vills* held of ancient *seofament* by regall power and service, that
they should keep the vale from thieves and robbers.

Testa Nevilli.

* In Vastis.
Nomades.Sheales and
Shealings.
Clipches.Cilurnum.
Scilcester.
Hoveden.St. Oswald.
Cedwell, or
Caswall.Bede l. 2. c. 2.
About the
yeere 634.
Christian reli-
gion first be-
gan in Nor-
thumberland.Heafenfeld,
now Haledon.

Here every way round about, in the * *Wasts* as they tearme them, as also in *Gil-*
lesland, you may see as it were the ancient *Nomades*, a martiall kinde of men, who
from the moneth of Aprill unto August, lye out scattering and summering (as they
tearme it) with their cattell, in little cottages here and there, which they call *Sheales*
and *Shealings*. Then *North-Tine* aforesaid passing downe by *Clipches*, a towne be-
longing sometime to the *umfranvills*, afterward to the *Heron*s, and not farre from
Swinborne a little Castle or Pile, which gave name unto a worthy family, and was
in old time parcell of the *Baronie* of the *Hairuns*, now commonly called *Heron*, a war-
like generation, now a seat of the *Woderingtons*; and so commeth to the *Wall*, running
under it beneath *Collersford*, where a bridge of arches was made over, and where
now are seen the ruins of a large castle. Which if it were not *CILURNUM*, where-
in the second wing of the *Astures* lay in garrison, it was hard by at *Scilcester* in the
wall: where, after that *Sigga* a noble man had treacherously murdered *Ethwald* King
of North-Humberland, there was a Church built by the faithfull Christians, in ho-
nour of Saint *Cuthbert* and King *Oswald*; whose name so obscured the light of the o-
ther, that the old name being quite gone, it is now called Saint *Oswald*. This *O-*
wald King of Northumberland, being at the point to give battaile unto *Cedwall* the
Britan (for so *Bede* calleth him, whom the Britans themselves named *Caswallon*)
King, as it seemeth, of Cumberland, erected a Crosse, and humbly upon his knees
prayed unto Christ, that he would vouchsafe his heavenly aide unto his devoted ser-
vants: and presently with a loud voice cried unto the army in this wise: *Let us all*
kneele downe, and beseech the Almighty, living, and true God, of his mercie to defend us
from our proud and cruell enemy. No signe (saith Bede) doe we finde of Christian faith, no
Church, no altar throughout the whole nation to have bin erected, before that this new
leader & conductor of an armie, directed thereto by faithfull devotion, did set up this sign
of the holy Crosse, when he was to fight against a most savage & bloodie enemy. For when
Oswald perceived in this battell the present assistance of Christ, which he had so ear-
nestly implored, straightwaies he became a professed Christian, and sent for *Aidan*
the Scot, to catechise and instruct his people in the Christian religion. The very place
of victorie was called *heafenfiels*, that is, *Heaven-field*; which at this day in the same
sense, as some will have it, is named *Haledon*. Concerning which have here these ver-
ses, such as they be, out of the life of the said *Oswald*.

Tunc primum scivit causam cur nomen haberet
Heafenfeld, hoc est, celestis campus, & illi
Nomen ab antiquo dedit appellatio gentis
Præteritæ, tanquam belli præsaga futuri.
Nominis & causam mox assignavit ibidem
Calvis expugnans celestis turba scelestam.
Neve senectutis ignavia possit honorem
Tam celebris delere loci, tantique triumpho,
Ecclesiæ fratres Hangustaldensis adesse
Devoii, Christumque solent celebrare quotannis.
Quoque loci persistat bonos in honore beati
Oswaldi Regis, ibi construxere capellam.

Then wist he first, and not before, why this place tooke the name
Of *Heafenfield*, that is, the field of Heaven; for the same
By those that liv'd in alder time unto it given had beene,
As if by skill divine they had this future warre fore-seene.
And even the reason of this name he there straightwaies expressed,

For

For that from heaven an heavenly troupe, a wicked crew suppressed,
Now that in time through negligence the same might normilcary
Both of the place so memorable, and this so noble victory,
The Monkes of Hangustald-Church in great devoutnesse here,
Are wont to be, and Christ to praise duely from yeere to yeere.
And that the honour of this place might still remaine entire,
In honour of Saint *Oswald* King, they built a Chappell there.

And another in praise of him wrote in that unlearned age, not unlearnedly, thus.

Quis fuit Alcides? quis Caesar Julius? aut quis
Magnus Alexander? Alcides se superasse
Ferunt. Alexander mundum, sed Julius hostem:
Se simul Oswaldum, & mundum vicit, & hostem.

What was to *Oswald* *Hercules*? what *Julius* *Caesar*? what
Great *Alexander*? *Hercules* is named much for that
Himselfe he won: *Xander* the world: *Julius* made foes to flye,
Oswald at once conquer'd himselfe, the world, and enemy.

Beneath Saint *Oswald*s both *Tines* meet in one, after that *South-Tine* (which kee-
peth just pace in parallel, as it were, with the wall, about two miles from it) hath pas-
sed by *Langley Castle*, where sometimes, under King John, Sir Adam de *Tindale* had
his *Barony*, which afterwards came to Sir Nicolas Bolteby; and of late belonged to
the *Percies*: and at *Aidon* runneth under the woodden weake bridge, and shaking
through the violence of the streame *Tine*, by this time being now broader and broad-
er, continueth his course in one channell apace toward the Ocean, by *Hexham*,
which *Bede* calleth *Hangustald*, but the old English-Saxon *hexcolderham*. That this
was named in the Romans time *AXELDUNUM* (where the first Cohort of the
Spaniards had their station) both the name implieth, & the high situation upon an hill
answerable to the name, when as the ancient Britans called an hill *Dunum*. But as
touching this, heare what Richard Prior of this place saith, who flourished 500.
yeeres agoe. Not farre from the river *Tine* Southward there standeth a towne, now in
these dayes verily but of meane bignesse, and slenderly inhabited, but in times past, as the
remaines of antiquity do beare witnesse, very large and stately. This place, of the little ri-
ver *Hextold* running downe by it, and swelling otherwhiles like unto a flood, with a swift
streame, is named *Hextoldesham*: which town *Etheldreda* the wife of King *Egfrid* gave
unto Saint *Wilfrid* in the yeere 675. that hee should exalt it with an Episcopall See; who
built there a Church, that for the artificiall frame and passing beauty went beyond all the
Minsters in England. Take with you also that which William of *Malmesbury* wrote:
This was Crown-land, when *Wilfrid* the Bishop exchanged with Queen *Etheldreda* other
lands. It was wonderfull to see what buildings were erected there with mighty high walls,
and how they were set out & contrived with divers turnings in & out by winding staires,
all polished and garnished by the curious workmanship of Masons and Pargeters, whom
the hope of his liberality had allured from Rome; so that these buildings carried a shew of
the Romanes stately magnificence, and stood very long struggling with time. The fore-
said King *Egfrid* placed an Episcopall See in this little City. But that dignity, after
the eighth Bishop, vanished cleane away, whilst the Danish warres were at the hor-
rest. And so ever since it was counted onely a manour or Township belonging to the
Archbishops of *Yorke*, before the exchange made with King Henry the eighth;
wherby they resigned up their right. This place was also renowned by reason of that
bloody battaile wherein John Nevill, Marquess *Montacute*, encountered the leaders
of the Lancastrian Faction with much courage, and with greater successe put them
to flight: and therefore was created Earle of Northumberland by King Edward the
fourth. But now all the glory that it hath is in that ancient Abbey, a part whereof

is

is converted into a faire dwelling-house, belonging to Sir John Foster Knight. As A for the Church, it standeth whole and sound, save that the West end of the roof is pulled downe: and I assure you a right stately and sumptuous building it is, with in the quire whereof is to be seene an ancient tombe of a noble man, of that warlike family of the *Umfravills*, as appeareth by his Escutcheon of Armes, lying with his legges acrosse. After which fashion in those dayes were they, onely entred (that I may note so much by the way) who tooke upon them the crosse, and were marked with the badge of the crosse for sacred warfare, to recover the *Holy land* from the *Mahometans* and *Turkes*. Hard by the East end also of this Church, upon the brow of an hill, are erected two most strong bulwarks of free stone, which belong, as I have B heard, unto the Archbishop of Yorke.

From hence we went Eastward, and came to *Dilston*, a mansion house of the *Ra-* *cliffes*: In old evidence it is found, written *Dywellstone*, of a little river running into *Tine*, which *Bede* called *Dyvelsburn*, where, as he writeth, *Oswald* having the faith of Christ for his armour and defence, in a set battaile slew *Cedwalla* the Britan, that wicked and horrible Tyrant, who had already slaine two Kings of Northumber-land, and depopulated the country all over. On the other banke of *Tine* lieth *CURIA* *O T T A D I N U M*, whereof *Protonotarius* maketh mention; it may seeme by the distance thereof to be *CORSTOPTUM* in *Antonine*, called at this day of the bridge, *Corbridge*; in *Hovedons Annals*, *Corbridge*; and in *Henry of Huntingdon*, *Cure*. C It can shew nothing now but a Church, and a little tower hard by, which the Vicars of the Church build, and wherein they dwell. Howbeit, there remaine still sundry reliques of antique worke: among which King John searched for ancient treasure, supposed to have bene buried there: But he was overtaken in his owne vanity, and deceived of his great expectation, no lesse than *Nero*, when hee searched for the hidden wealth of *Dido* at Carthage. For nothing found, hee but stones signed with brasse, iron, and lead. But who so shall see the heap of rubbish that lieth there- by, and is called *Colecester*, will soon say it was some hold of a *Romane* garison. For- ward still upon the same banke, wee saw *Bewell* a proper faire castle, which in the reigne of King John was the Barony of Sir Hugh Balliol, for which he did owe to the Ward of Newcastle upon *Tine*, thirty Knights [service.] D

Beneath this Castle there is a very goodly Weare for the catching of Salmons: and two solid piles of most firme stone, which in times past supported the bridge, stand up in the midst of the river. From hence *Tine* running underneath, looketh up to *Prudbow Castle*, in ancient bookes written *Prodbow*, situate very pleasantly upon the ridge of an hill. This may I ghesse to have bene *PROCOLITIA*, which also is called *PROCOLITIA*, the station of the first band of the *Barabans*, till time tell me more, and instruct mee better. But it is famous in this regard, that in King Henry the second his dayes it valiantly gave the check unto William King of Scots laying siege unto it; when, as William of *Newborrough* writeth, *hee had taken great paines to no purpose*, to his losse and hurt. Afterwards it belonged to the *Umfravills*, men of great estimation, among whom Sir Gilbert Umfravill flourishing in the profession of armes, in right of his wife attained the title of Earle of Angus in Scotland, in the reign of K. Edward the first, and left that honour to his posterity. But Eleanor, daughter to the sister, and heire of the last Earle, was married at length into the family of *Talebois*: and afterward this castle by the Princes bountifull gift came to the Duke of Bedford.

But to retire to the wall. Beyond Saint *Oswalds* there are seene in the wall the foundations of two forts, which they call *Castle-Steeds*: then a place named *Portgate*, where there stood a gate in the wall, as may appeare by the word, that in both lan- guages importeth as much. Beneath this, more within the country, is *Halton-Hall*; where flourisheth the family of the *Carnabies*, in great name for their antiquity and military prowess: neere unto which is seated *Aidon castle*, sometimes part of the Barony of that Hugh Balliol before named. But for as much as many places about

Men buried
with their legs
a crosse.

Bede lib. 3. cap.
1.

Treasure in
vaine.
Hoveden.
Tactius.

Colecester.

A about the wall carry this name *Aidon*, and the very same signifieth a *Military Wing*, or a troupe of horsemen, in the British tongue; of which fort there were many wings placed along the Wall (as plainly appeareth by the booke of Notices) in their sta- tions; I would have the reader thoroughly to consider, whether this name was not thereupon imposed upon these places, like as *Leon*, upon those towries where the *Legions* had their standing campe: Well, hard by there was digged up the fragment of an antique stone, wherein is the expresse portraiture or image of a man lying in bed, leaning upon his left hand, and with the right touching his right knee, with these in- scriptions.

NORICI. AN. XXX.
- ESSOURIS MAGNUS
FRATER EJUS
DUPL. ALÆ
SABINIANÆ.

M. MARI
USVELLI
A LONG
US. A QUI
S HANC
POSUIT
V. S. L. M.

Then the river *Pont*, having his spring head more outwardly, and running downe neere to *Fenwick-Hall*, the dwelling house of the worthy and martiall family of the *Fenwicks*, for certaine miles together gardeth the wall, and upon his banke had for a defence in garison the first Cohort of the *Cornavii*, at a place called *PONS Æ-* *LIU*, built as it seemeth by *Ælius Hadrianus* the Emperor, now called *Pont-eland*: at which King Henry the third, in the yere 1244. concluded a peace; and neere unto this the first Cohort of the *Tungri* had their abode at *Bornick*, which in the *Notice* of *Provincies* is called *BORCOVICUS*. From *Port-gate* the wall runneth along to *E Waltonne*, which, seeing the signification accordeth so well with the name, and that it standeth twelve miles from the East sea, I beleeve verily it is the same royall town which *Bede* called *ADMURUM*, wherein *Seibert* King of the East Saxons was by the hands of *Finan* baptized and received into the Church of Christ. Neere unto this was a fortification, called *Old Winchester* (I would gladly take it to be that *VINDOLANA*) which that Booke of *Notice* so often cited, recordeth to have bene the Frontier-station in times past of the fourth Cohort of the *Gaules*. And then have yee *Rouchester*, where we beheld very plainly the expresse footings, in form four square, of a garison Castle, that joined hard to the wall. Neere unto it *Headon* sheweth it selfe, which was part of the Barony of Sir Hugh de *Bolebec*, who fetched his descent by his mother from the noble Barons of *Mont-Eicher*; and had issue none but daughters, matched in wedlock with Ralph Lord *Greistock*, J. *Lovel*, *Huntercomb*, and *Corbet*. Now where the wall and *Tine* almost meet together, *New-castle* sheweth it selfe gloriously, the very eye of all the townes in these parts; ennobled by a notable haven, which *Tine* maketh, being of that depth, that it beareth very tall ships, and so defendeth them, that they can neither easily bee tossed with tempests,

Y y

nor

Fenwick.

Pons Ælii.
Pont-Eland.

Borovicus.
Borwic.

Walton.
Ad-Murum.

Vindolana.
Old Winches-
ter.

Barony de
Bolebec.

New-castle
upon Tine.

nor driven upon shallows and shelves. It is situate on the rising of an hill, very uneven, upon the North-banke of the river (which hath a passing faire bridge over it.) On the left hand whereof standeth the Castle: after that, a steepe and upright pitch of an hill riseth: on the right hand you have the Mercat place, and the better part of the City in regard of faire buildings.

Gabrosentum.

From whence the ascent is not easie to the upper part, which is larger by farre. It is adorned with foure Churches, and fortified with most strong walls that have eight gates in them, with many towres, what it was in old time it is not knowne. I would soone deeme it to have bene GABROSENTUM, considering that *Gateshead* the suburbe, as it were, thereof, doth in the owne proper signification expresse that British name *Gabrosentum* derived from Goates, as hath been said before. The *Noice* also of *Provinces* placeth *Gabrosentum* and the second Cohort of the Thracians in it, within the range of the wall. And most certaine it is that both the Rampier and the Wall went through this City, and at *Pandon gate* there remaineth, as it is thought, one of the turrets of that wall. Surely for workmanship and fashion it is different from the other.

Moreover, whereas it was named before the Conquest *Monk-chester*, because it was as it seemeth in the possession of Monkes; this addition *Chester*, which signifieth a place fortified, implyeth that it was anciently a place of strength. But after the Conquest of the *New castle*, which Robert the sonne of William the Conqueror built out of the ground, it got this new name *New-castle*, and by little and little encreased marvellously in wealth, partly by entercourse of trafficke with the Germans, and partly by carrying out sea-coales, wherewith this country aboundeth, both into foraine Countries, and also into other parts of England. In the reigne of Edward the first a rich man chanced to bee haled way prisoner by the Scottish, out of the middle of the towne: who after hee had ransomed himselfe with a great summe of money, began with all speed to fortifie the same: and the rest of the inhabitants moved by his example finished the worke, and compassed it with faire strong walls. Since which time it hath with security avoided the force and threats of the enemies and robbers, which swarmed all over the country, and withall fell to trading & merchandise so freely, that for quick commerce & wealth it became in very flourishing estate; in which regard King Richard the second granted that a sword should be carried before the Maior, and King Henry the sixth made it a County, *incorporate by it selfe*. It is distant from the first Meridian or West line 21. degrees and 30. minutes, and from the Equinoctiall line toward the North pole 34. degrees and 57. minutes. As touching the suburbs of *Gateshead*, which is conjoynted to *New-castle* with a faire bridge over the river, and appertaineth to the Bishops of Durham, I have already written. Now in regard of the site of *New-castle*, and the abundance of sea-cole vented thence, unto which a great part of England and the Low Countries of Germanie are beholden for their good fires, read these verses of Master John Jonston, out of his Poem of the Cities of Britaine.

NOVUM CASTRUM.

*Rupe sedens celsa, rerum aut miracula spectas
Natura, aut solers distrahis illa alio.
Sedibus aetheris quid frustra queritis ignem?
Hunc alit, hunc terra suscitât ista sinu.
Non illum torvo terras qui turbine terret;
Sed qui animam terris, datque animos animis.
Eliquis hic ferrum, as, hic aurum dubile fundit,
Quos non auri illex conciet umbra animos?
Quin (aurum) auro permutat bruta metalla.
Alchimia hunc igitur predicat esse deum.
Si deus est, ceu tu dicis divine Magister,
Hæc quot alit? quot alit Scotia nostra deos?*

N. V.

NEVV-CASTLE.

Seated upon high rocke shee sees dame Natures wonders strange,
Or else to others wittily doth vent them for exchange.
In vaine why seeke yee fire to fetch from heaven to serve your turne,
The ground here either keeps it close, or quickly makes it burne.
Not that which folke with stony flash or whirlewind grim affrights,
But giveth life to earthly things, and mindes to living wights.
This melteth iron, brasse and gold so pliable and soft:
What mindes th' allective shade of gold stirres not, nor sets aloft?
Nay more than so, men say it doth dull metals change to gold,
To say therefore he is a God our Alchymists are bold.
If God he be, as thou giv'st out (Great Master) of thy word,
How many Gods then doth this place, and our Scotland afford?

Scarce three miles hence (for I over passe *Gosford*, which was the Barony in old time of Richard *Sur-Tew*, who came up under King Henry the first, and lived in great honour) standeth a village named *wall-end*. The very signification of the name sheweth, that this was a station of the second Cohort of Thracians, which in the booke of *Notices* is called *VINDOBALA*, in *Antonine* *VINDOMORA*: for it may seeme that in the provincially language of the Britans, as the latter of them betokened *The wall-end*, so the former the *Rampiers-end*, considering that long since they termed a *Wall Mur*, and a *Rampire Bal, Val, and Gual*.

Neither is it credible that the Rampire or Wall reached any farther, seeing that beyond this place there are no tokens thereof: and *Time* being now very neere unto the Ocean, with his exceeding deepe channell serveth in stead of a most strong fence. Yet some there be who thinke, that the rampire, and not the wall, went as farre as to the very mouth of *Time*, which is called *Tinnmouth*; and stily affirm that it was termed *Pen-bal-crag*, that is, the head of the rampire in the rocke, whom I will not contradict. But I durst almost avouch, that this was in the Romanes time *TUNNOCELLUM*, seeing that *Tunnocellum* soundeth as much as the Promontory of *Tunn* or *Time*, where the first Cohort *Elia Classica*, enrolled (as it is probable by the very name) by *Elia Hadrianus* the Emperour, was in pay for sea service. For the Romans had certaine light Foists or Pinnaces, termed *Lusoria*, upon the rivers in the marches: as well to repress the outrodes of them that dwelt there by, as to quit them with like inrodes, as we may see in the books of *Theodosius his Code*, under the title, *de Lusoria Danu- E* *hii*, that is, touching *The pinnaces of the river Danow*. Under the Saxons Heptarchy it was called *Tunnace-vep*, not of *Tunna* the Abbot, as *Bede* writeth, but doubtlesse of the river; and a little Monastery it had, which was oftentimes rifled by the Danes: But now it is called *Tinnmouth Castle*, and takes great glory in a stately and strong castle, which, as an ancient writer saith, *as the East and North side is impossible to be entered, by reason of a mighty high rocke over the sea, and in other places such is the bight of it, that it needs but small defence*: Whereupon Robert *Mowbray*, Earle of Northumberland, made choice of it for his strongest hold, when hee rebelled against King William *Rufus*. But, as commonly it falleth out with rebels, he had but ill successe: who being forthwith very streightly besieged, withdrew himselfe into a Monastery hard by, which was counted a Sanctuary, and therefore not to be forced and broken; neverthelesse he was drawne out thence, and kept a long time close prisoner in misery; a just reward for his so perfidious treachery.

Now must I coast along the shore. On the back side of the Promontory, on which *Tinnmouth* is situate, next unto *Seton*, which under King Henry the third was part of the Barony *Dela-wall*; *Seghill* sheweth it selfe called in old time *SEGEDUNUM*, a station of the third Cohort of the *Lergi*, by the wall or Rampire: and verily *SEGEDUNUM* in British, is all one with *Seghill* in English.

Yyy 2

Some

Barons Seton.
Teis.Vindobala.
Vindomora.
Wall-end.

Tinnmouth.

Tunnocellum.

Naves Lusoria.
viz.

Code.

Seton.
Segedunum.
Seghill.

Barons Ogle.

Some few miles from hence, the shore maketh roome for the river *Blith* to fall into the sea: which river watering *Belsay*, belonging in times past to the *Midletons*, and *Ogle*, a Castle of the Barons *Ogle*, is here, together with the river *Pont*, discharged into the sea.

These *Ogles*, from the very beginning of Edward the fourth his reigne, flourished in the dignity of Barons, enriched by marrying the heires of Sir *Bertram Boihall* of *Alan Heson*, and of *Alexander Kirkby*. The issue male of these Barons went out lately, and expired in *Cuthbert*, the seventh Baron of that house: who begat two daughters, Joan married to *Edward Talbot*, a younger sonne of *George Earle of Shrewsbury*; and *Katharine* wife to Sir *Charles Cavendish* Knight.

Wentf-beck.
Barony of Mitford.

A little higher the river *Wentf-beck* is swallowed up of the Ocean; it runneth beside *Mitford*, which King *John* and his *Ruys* set on fire, when in most grievous manner they over-ranne these Countries. That age called forraigne and willing souldiers, *Ruys*, whom *Falques de Brent*, and *Walter Buc* brought out of the Low-Countries, and from other parts, to aide King *John*. *Brent* a wilde madbraine, was at length banished out of the Realme: But *Buc* a more staid man, after hee had done the King stout service, had given unto him by the King possessions in *Yorkshire* and *Northamptonshire*: and his race flourished there, untill that *John Buc* was attainted under King *Henry* the seventh: whose great grand-son is Sir *George Buc* knight, a man well learned, of great reading, and Master of the Kings Revels; who (for I take pleasure to professe by whom I have profited) hath observed many things in history, and gently imparted the same to me. This was sometimes the Barony of *William Berthram*, whose issue male soone had an end in *Roger* his grand-sonne; and his three daughters inheritrices were bestowed in marriage upon Sir *Norman Darcy*, *T. Penbury*, and *William of Elmeley*.

Morpeth.

From thence *Wentf-beck* passeth through *Morpeth*, a famous little towne. For on the North banke of the river is the towne situate, and on the South banke standeth the Church, and the Castle by it, upon a shady hill beset with trees; which, together with the town, came from Sir *Roger Merley*, whose Barony it was, unto the Lords of *Greistock*, and so from them to the Barons *Dacre* of *Gillesland*. Nothing I have of any antiquity to say of this towne, but that in the yeere of Christ 1215, it was set on fire by the inhabitants themselves in spitefull malice to King *John*. From hence the river *Wentf-beck* passeth by *Borhall Castle*, and the Barony sometimes of *Richard Berthram*, from whose posterity it was devolved unto the Barons of *Ogle*: Upon the bank whereof, I have thought this great while (whether truly, or upon a bare supposal I know not) that in old time *GLANOVENTA* stood, which was fortified by the Romans with a garrison of the first Cohort of the *Morini*, for defence of the marches. Which the very situation doth as it were perswade; and the rivers name, together with the signification of the same, induceth me to thinke. For it is seated within the raunge of the rampire or wall, even where the booke of *Notices* placeth it: the rivers name is *Wentf-beck*, and *GLANOVENTA* in the British tongue signifieth the shore or bank of *Venia*. Whence also *Glanon*, a city in France upon the sea-shore, whereof *Pomponius Mela* hath made mention, may seeme to have drawn that appellation.

Wishrington.

Not farre hence, to let passe little piles and towres of lesse account, is to be seene neere unto the shore *Wishrington* or *Woderington*, in the English Saxon tongue of old time called *Wispington*; an ancient Castle, which gave the name unto the *Wishringtons*, Gentlemen of good birth, and Knights, whose valour in the warre hath bene from time to time remarkable. Then the river *Coquet* falleth into the sea, which springing among the rough and stony mountaines of *Cheviot*, not farre from his head, hath *Bilsedun* upon it; and whence sprang the ancient family of the *Selbies*: and somewhat lower Southward, *Harbottle*, in the English Saxons tongue *Heppowcle*, that is, *The station of the Army*, whence the family of the *Harbottles* descended, that in the ages foregoing flourished.

Halifston.

A Castle it had in times past, but in the yeere of our salvation 1314, the Scots razed it. Close unto this standeth *Halyston*, as one would say *Holy stone*, where

where the report goeth, that *Paulinus* in the primitive Church of the English nation baptized many thousands. And at the verie mouth of *Coquet*, *Warkworth* a proper faire Castle of the *Percies* standeth and defendeth the shore, where there is a chappell wonderfully built out of a rocke hewen hollow, and wrought without beames, rafters, or anie peeces of timber. This Castle King *Edward* the third gave unto *Henric Percie*, together with the Mannour of *Rochburie*. Afore time it had bene the Baronie of *Roger Fitz-Richard*, by the gift of *Henric* the second King of England, who gave also unto his sonne, *Clavering* in *Essex*, whereof at the commandement of King *Edward* the first, they assumed unto them the surname of *Clavering*, leaving the ancient maner of taking their names from the forename, or Christian name of the father: for before that time they were surnamed according to the forename of the father, as *Robert Fitz-Roger*, *Roger Fitz-John*, &c. Part of this inheritance the *Nevills* entred upon by *Fine* and *Covenant*, who afterward were Earles of *Westmorland*; and part of it a daughter named *Eve* inherited, who was wedded to Sir *Th. Clifford*; from whose posteritie it came hereditarily unto the *Fienes* Barons of *Dacres*. But from the younger sonnes branched the Barons of *Evers*, the *Evers* of *Axholme*, and the *Claverings* of *Kalaly* in this Countie, and others. Hard unto this also lieth *Morwick*, which may likewise boast of the Lords it had, whose issue male had an end about the yeere of our Lord 1258. and so the inheritance passed over by the daughters unto the *Lumleies*, *Seimors*, *Bulmers*, and *Rosells*.

Warkworth.

Rot. Parlia-
ment 5. Ed. 3.
Clavering.

Morwick.

Aulne river.

Alnewick.

1174.

1097.

Testa Nevill;

Carmelites.

Historie of
Durham.Dunstaburg.
Bebban.

Bamborow.

The shore after this openeth it selfe to give passage unto the river *ALAUNUS*, which being not yet bereft of that name, whereby it was knowne unto *Ptolomee*, is called short *Alne*: Upon the bank whereof, besides *Twissford*, that is, *A double fowrd* (where was holden a solemne Synod under King *Egfrid*) and *Eslington*, the habitation of the *Collingwoods* (men renowned for their warlike exploits) there sheweth also it selfe *Alan-wic*, in the English Saxon tongue *Caln-pic*, now commonly called *Alnewick*, a towne ennobled by the victorie of Englishmen (wherein our ancestors shewed such valour and prowesse, that they tooke *William* King of Scots, and presented him prisoner unto King *Henric* the second) and fortified besides with a goodly castle: which when *Malcome* the third, King of the Scots, had by long siege enforced to such extremitie, that it was at the point now to bee yeelded up, hee was slaine by a souldier, that making semblance to deliver unto him the keyes of the Castle hanging at the head of a spear, ranne him into the bodie with it. And withall, his sonne *Edward*, whiles to revenge his fathers death he charged unadvisedly upon the enemy, was so wounded, that hee died thereof shortly after. This was a Baronie sometimes belonging to the *Vescies*. For King *Henric* the second gave it unto *Eustach Fitz-John*, father to *William Vesci*, to be held by the service of twelve knights. Sir *John Vescy*, of this race, returning out of the sacred warre in the Holy-land, was the first that brought with him into England the Friars *Carmelites*, and built for them a Covent here in *Holme*, a desert place, not unlike to Mount *Carmel* in *Syria*. *William*, the last of the *Vescies*, made *Antonine Bec* Bishop of *Durham*: his possie upon trust, that he should deliver this Castle, with all the lands lying thereto, unto his base sonne, the onely childe that he left behind him; but the Bishop falsly conveyed away from him the inheritance, and for readie money sold it unto *William Lord Percie*: since which time it hath evermore belonged to the *Percies*.

From hence the shore making divers angles and points, passeth by *Dunstaburg*, a Castle belonging to the Duchie of Lancaster, which some have untruly supposed to be *Bebban*; for *Bebbane* standeth higher, and in stead of *Bebbanburg* is now called *Bamborow*. Our *Bede*, where hee reports that this Castle was besieged and burnt by *Penda* King of the Mercians, writeth that *Queene Bebb* gave it this name; but the *Floure-gatherer* recordeth, that *Ida* the first King of Northumberland built it, which hee fenced first with great stakes or piles of timber, and afterward with a wall. But take here with you the description thereof out of *Robert Hoveden*: *Bebba* (saith hee) is a most strong Citie, not verie great, but containing the space of two or three fields, having into it one hollow entrance, and the same

raised on high with staires after a wonderfull manner, and on the pitch of an hill, a very faire Church, and westward on the top thereof, there is a well set out with marvailous workmanship, sweet to drink of, and most pure to see to.

But in our age it is counted a castle, rather than a city, yet so bigge and large, as that it may seeme to match with a city. Neither went it for any other but a castle, when King William Rufus having raised over against it a tower called *Mal-voisin*, gave assault continually to *Mowbray*, while hee rebelled and lurked there, who at length privily stole away, & escaped by flight. The greatest part of the beauty thereof was lost long time after, in the civill warre, when *Bresie* the Norman, a redoubted souldier, who sided with the house of Lancaster, exercised his rage against it very outrageously. Since then it hath bene sore beaten with time, and the windes together, which have blowne by drifts an incredible deale of sand of the sea into the fortresses. Hereto adjoyneth *Emildon*, sometime the Barony of *John Le Viscont*, but *Rameita* the heire of that house sold away the possessions to *Simon de Monfort*, Earle of Leicester. In this was borne *John Duns*, called *Scotus*, because hee was descended of Scottish blood, who being brought up in Merton Colledge at Oxford, became wonderfull well learned in Logicke, and in that crabbed and intricate Divinity of those dayes: yet as one still doubtfull and unresolved, he did overcast the truth of religion with mists of obscurity. And with so profound and admirable subtilty, in a darke and rude stile hee wrote many workes, that hee deserved the title of the *Subtile Doctor*: and after his owne name erected a new sect of the *Scotists*. But hee died pitifully, being taken with an Apoplexy, and overhastily buried for dead; whiles upon returne of life, nature (though too late) was about to dislodge the violence of the disease, and hee, making meanes in vaine by a lamentable noise to call for helpe, after he had a long time knocked his head against the grave stone, dashed out his owne braines, and at last yeelded up his vitall breath. Whereupon a certain Italian wrote thus of him.

*Quaecunque humani fuerant, jurisque sacras,
In dubium veniunt cuncta vocant Scoti.
Quid? quod & in dubium illam sit vita vocata,
Moris illum simili ludificans strophâ.
Quum non ante virum vitâ jugularis ademptâ,
Quam vivum tumulo conditus ille foret.*

All learning taught in humane books, and couch'd in holy writ,
Dan Scotus darke and doubtfull made by subtilty of wit.
No marvaile that to doubtfull termes of life himselfe was brought,
Whiles with like wile and subtle tricked death on his body wrought.
When as her stroke to kill outright she would not him vouchsafe,
Untill the man (a piteous case) was buried quicke in grave.

That he was borne here in England, I avouch it out of his owne manuscript works in the Library of Merton Colledge in Oxford, and upon their faithfull testimony, which conclude in this manner: *Explicit Lectura, &c.* that is, *Thou endest the Lecture of the Subtle Doctor in the University of Paris, John Duns, borne in a certaine little village or hamlet within the Parish of Emildon, called Dunston, in the county of Northumberland, pertaining to the house of the scholars of Merton Hall in Oxford.*

On this shore forward there is nothing to be scene worth relation, but the *Holy Island* (whereof I will write in due place) untill a man come to the mouth of *Tweed*, which parteth England and Scotland a great way asunder, and is called the *East-Mit*: and thereupon our *Necham* thus writeth, insinuating that the higher part of Scotland was called *Pi&-land*.

*Anglosâ Pi&is sejungis limine certo
Flumen, quod Tuedam pristina lingua vocat.*

The

The river *Tweede*, a certaine bound,
Divides * *Pi&-land* from English ground.

This river breaking forth at a number of Springs out of the mountaines of Scotland, wandereth a great while with many a crooked winding in and out, among the ranke-riders and borderers (to give them no worse tearme) whose manner is, as one saith, to try their right by the swords point. But when hee is come hard to a village called *Carram*, waxing a great deale bigger by reason of many waters fallen unto him, hee begins to distinguish the Confines of the Kingdomes. And when hee hath watered *Werke*, a Castle often assaulted by the Scottish, belonging in times past to *the Rosses*, and now to the *Graies*, who by feats of armes have wonne much honour, hee is increased more with the streame of *Till*, a river that hath two names. For at the head, which is in the innermore part of this country, it is called *Bramish*, and upon it standeth *Bramton*, a little village, very obscure and almost of no reckoning: from whence it goeth Northward by *Bengeley*, which together with *Brampton* it selfe, with *Broundum*, *Rodam* (which hath given name to a stock in this tract of good note) *Edellingham*, &c. was in King Henry the third his time the Barony of *Patrick Earle of Dunbar*: who also, as we read in the book of Inquisitions, was *Inborow* and *Outborow* betwene England and Scotland, that is to say if I mistake it not, he was to allow and observe in this part, the ingresse and egress of those that travailed too and fro betwene both Realmes. For Englishmen in ancient time called in their language an Entry, and fore Court or Gatehouse, *Inbopou*. Higher somewhat standeth *Chevelingham*, now called *Chillingham*, hard by the river, which, like as *Horion* not farre distant from it, had their Castles belonging to the *Greies*, ever since that those two families of the *Greies* were conjoynd in one by marriage.

There lyeth neere unto it *Wollover*, a Barony which King Henry the first gave to *Robert * Muschampe*, who bare Azure three Butterflies or Papilions Argent: of whose race descended *Robert*, who in Henry the third his reigne was reputed the mightiest Baron in these North parts. But the inheritance was quickly dismembered and parted among the females: one of whom was married unto the Earle of *D Strathorne* in Scotland, a second to Sir *William de Huntercombe*, and a third to *Odonell Ford*. Then the river of *Glen* from out of the West augmenteth *Till* with his waters, and nameth the vale that he runneth thorow *Glendale*. Touching this little river *Bede* writeth thus: *Paulinus coming with the King and Queen into a Manour or house of the Kings, called Ad-Gebrin (at this day Teverin) abode with them 36. daies there, employed wholly in the catechizing and baptizing: during all which time he did nothing from morning but instruct the people resorting to him in the saving word of Christ, and being thus instructed, he baptised them to the forgiveness of their sinnes in the river of Glen, which was hard by. This house was in the time of the succeeding Kings neglected, and another made for it in a place called Melmin, but at this day Melfeld.*

Here within a little of *Brum-ridge*, by *Brumeford*, *K. Athelstan* fought a pitched field with *Aulase* the Dane, *Constantine K.* of Scots, and *Eugenius* or *Owein Prince* of Cumberland, with so fortunate successe, that this battaile was most famous farre and neere, yea and triumphantly described by the Historians and Poets of that time in the highest degree, with stately stile and lofty verse in the language of that age, in barbarous Latin.

Here *Bramish*, losing his owne name, comes to bee called *Till*, and first saluteth *Ford Castle*, belonging sometimes to the warlike and valiant house of the *Heron*s, now to the family of the *Carrs*: then *Etall*, where the family surnamed *De Maneris*, or *Manours* sometimes inhabited, reckoned in the ranke of worshipfull Knights, out of which flourish the right honourable Earles of Rutland at this day. Many small castles and piles in this tract I wittingly let passe: For an endlesse peece of worke it were to goe through them all one by one, considering it is certaine that in King Henry the second his time there were eleven hundred and fiftene Castles in England.

Yyy 4

Right

* Male vicina.

Viscounts.

Jo. Scotus the
subtle Doctor
flourished in
the yeere 1300.Paul. Jovius in
Elogiis Docto-
rum.The river
Tweede.

Carram.

Werke.

River Bramish.

Bramton.

Inborow and
Outborow
what they sig-
nifie.Wollover.
* De Musco
Campo.
Fin. 3. H. 3.
Glendale.
Lib. 2. cap. 14.

Melfeld.

The battaile of
Brunford.See Henry
Huntingdon;
William
Malmesbur.
and Ingulph.Fort.
Etall.Castles 1115.
in England.

Right over against this *Ford* westward, there mounteth aloft an high hill called *A Floddon* neere *Bramson*, memorable in regard of James the fourth, King of Scots, who was there slaine, and his army overthrowne: who, whiles King Henry the eighth lay at the siege of Tournay in France, marched forward in great courage, and greater hope with Banner displayed against England. But Thomas Howard Earle of Surry, arraunged in good order of battaile, valiantly in this place received him: where the fight continued sharpe and hot on both parts, untill the night came upon them, uncertaine as then whether side had the victory. But the day ensuing manifested both the Conquerour and conquered: and the King of Scots himselfe with many a mortall wound, was found among the heapes of dead bodies. And hereupon was granted a new augmentation unto the Armes of the *Howards*, as I have formerly specified.

Tweede having now entertained *Till*, runneth downe with a fuller streame by *Norham* or *Northam*, in old time called *Ubbanford*, a towne belonging to the Bishops of *Durham*. For *Egfrid* the Bishop built it, and *Raulph* his successour erected a Castle upon the top of an high steepe rocke, and fortified it with a trench: in the more wall whereof, which is of greater circuit, are placed sundry turrets in a Canon toward the river: within there is another enclosure or wall much stronger: in the midst of which there riseth up the Keepe of great height. But the secure peace of our age, hath now a long time neglected these fortifications, albeit they stand in the borders. Under it lieth the towne in a plaine Westward, and hath in it a Church, wherein was entered *Ceolwulph* King of Northumberland, unto whom *Venerable Bede* dedicated his booke of the Ecclesiastical history of England; and who afterwards renouncing the world, became a Monke in *Lindisfarn Church*, and served as a Christian souldier for the Kingdome of heaven, and his body was conveyed after that into the Church of *Norham*. Also when the Danes harried and spoiled the *Holy Island*, where *Saint Cuthbert*, whom *Bede* so highly extollet, both late as Bishop, and lay buried: and some went about by a devout and religious kind of stealth, to transport his body over; by occasion that the winds were against them, they laid the sacred body downe with due honour at *Ubbanford*, (whether it were an Episcopall See or no, it is uncertaine) hard by the river *Tweede*, and there it lay for many yeeres together, untill the coming of *K. Etheldred*. Of this, and of other things, I had information (for I will never conceale by whom I have found any good) by *George Carleton* borne here, as who was the *Castellanes* sonne of this place; whom for that I have loved in regard of his singular knowledge in Divinity (which hee professeth) and in other more delightful literature, and am loved againe of him, I were not worthy I assure you of love, if I did not acknowledge thus much. Beneath *Norham*, at *Killey* a little village hard by, were found, as I have heard old men say, in our grandfatheres remembrance, the ornaments or Harnish of a Knights belt, and the hilt of a sword of massie gold, which were presented unto *Thomas Ruthall* then Bishop of *Durham*.

A little lower appeareth the Mouth of *Tweede*; upon the farther side whereof standeth *Berwicke*, the utmost towne in England, and the strongest hold in all Britaine. Which name some derive from one *Berengarism* a Duke, whom they never heard of, unless it were in a dreame. *Leland* fetcheth it from *Aber*, which in the British tongue signifieth the mouth of a river, so that *Aberwic* should sound as much as *The towne by the rivers mouth*. But he that knowes what *Berwic* in the Charters of our Kings signifieth, wherein nothing is more common than these words, *I give C. and D.* that is, such and such townes, cum suis *Berniciis*, surely he must needs understand the true Etymologie of this *Berwicke*. For mine owne part I cannot conjecture what it meaneth, unless it be a Village or Hamlet annexed, as it were a parcell of the Demesne, unto some place of greater reckoning. For in the donations of *Edward the Confessor*, *Touhill* is called the *Berwicke of Westminster*, and *Wandleworth* the *Berwicke of Parisseie*, and a hundred such. But to what end is all this? Surely we doe but lose this labour, if, as some will have it, the name thereof were in old time *Beornica*, in

William
Malmesbury
lib. 1. de Gestis
Pontificum
In printed
books corrupt-
ly ye read
Bubbeford.

In gulph ex-
poundeth Ber-
wicke a Ma-
nour.

A in the English Saxon tongue, that is, *The towne or village of the Bernicians*. Now that these countries were named *Bernicia*, it is better knowne than can bee said, and I have already notified as much. But whence soever it hath the name, it is so situate that it shooteth farre into the sea, in so much as it is well neere compassed about with the sea, and *Tweede* together; and seated betwixt two most mighty Kingdomes, as *Pliny* hath reported of *Palmyra* in *Syria*. It was the first thing alwayes that both nations tooke care of whensoever they were at any discord: so that since the time that King *Edward* the first of that name, first wrested it perforce out of the Scots hands, the Scots have oftentimes repossessed it, and the Englishmen as often recovered it from them againe. But let us here (if you please) abridge the History thereof. Of this *Berwicke* I have read nothing of greater antiquity than this, that *William* King of Scots being taken Prisoner in the field by the English, delivered it up unto our King *Henry* the second for his enlargement out of prison, on this condition, that unless by a certaine day appointed hee paid a summe of money for his ransom, it should belong unto the Crowne of England for ever; and presently, as it is in the *Polychronicon* of *Durham*, the said King *Henry* fortified it with a Castle. Howbeit King *Richard* the first, upon payment of the money released it againe unto the Scottish. Afterwards King *John*, as we read in the history of *Melrose*, wonne both the towne and Castle of *Berwick*, what time as he with his Rutars burnt *Werke*, *Roxburgh*, *Musford* and *Morpeth*, yea and laid all Northumberland wast, because the Barons of Northumberland had done homage at *Felton* to *Alexander* King of Scots. Many yeeres after, when *John Balioll* King of Scots had broken his oath, King *Edward* the first, in the yeere of salvation 1297. brought *Berwick* under his subjection: yet within a little while after, when the fortune of warre began to smile upon the Scots, they surprisid it standing for-let and neglected, but straightwayes it was yeilded up, and the English became Masters of it. Afterward, in that loose reigne of King *Edward* the second, *Peter Spalding* betraied it unto *Robert Bruce* King of the Scots, who hotly assaulted it: and the English laid siege unto it in vaine, untill that our *Heftor*, King *Edward* the third, in the yeere of Christ 1333. setting valiantly upon it, wonne it as happily. Howbeit in the reigne of *Richard* the second, certaine Scottish robbers upon a sudden surprisid the Castle: but within nine dayes *Henry Percy* Earle of Northumberland regained it. Scarce seven yeeres were overpassed, when the Scots recovered it againe, not by force but by money: For which cause, the said *Henry Percy*, Governour of the place, was accused of high treason: but he, with money likewise corrupted both their faith and fortitude, and streightway got it in his hands againe. A great while after, when England was even pining by reason of civill warre, King *Henry* the sixth being now fled the Realme into Scotland, surrendered it up into the hands of the Scot, for to be secured of his life and safety in Scotland. But after twenty two yeeres were expired, Sir *Thomas Stanley*, not without losse of his men, reduced it under the command of King *Edward* the Fourth. Since which time, our Kings have at divers times fortified and fenced it with new works: but especially *Queen Elizabeth*, who of late, to the terrour of the enemy, and safeguard of her state, enclosed it about in a narrower compasse within the old wall, with an high wall of stone most strangely compacted together; which shee hath so forewarded againe with a counterscarpe, a banke round about, with mounts of earth cast up by mans hand, and open terraces above head, that either the forme of these munitions, or strength thereof may justly cut off all hope of winning it. To say nothing all this while of the valour of the garison souldiers, the store of great Ordnance and furniture of warre, which was wonderfull. He that was wont to be chiefe Governour of this towne (that I may note thus much also) was alwaies one of the wisest and most approved of the Nobility of England, and withall Warden of these East marches against Scotland. The Longitude of this towne, as our Mathematicians have observed, is 21. degrees and 43. minutes: the Latitude 55. degrees and 48. minutes. And by this inclination and position of the heaven, the longest day is 17. houres and 22. minutes, and the

Britaine hath
day plenty.

the night but fixe houres and 38. minutes: so that that there was no untruth in *Servum Honoratum*, when he wrote thus, *Britanni lucis dives*, &c. that is, *Britain is so plentiful of day light, that it affordeth scarce any time for the nights*. Neither is it any marvelle that fouldiers without other light doe play here all night long at Dice, considering the side light that the sunne beames cast all night long: and therefore this verse of *Juvenall* is true:

Minima contentos nocte Britannos.
The Brittaines who with least night stand content.

Concerning Berwicke, have here now for an Overdeale,
these verses of Master I. Jonston.

*Scotorum extremo sub limite, meta furoris
Saxonidum: gentis par utriusque labor.
Mille vices rerum, quæ mille est passus ruinas,
Mirum, qui potuit tot superesse malis:
Quin superest, quin extremis exhausta ruinis,
Funere sic crevit firmior usque suo:
Oppida ut exaquet jam munissima. Civis
Militis & censum, & munia Martis obit.
Postquam servitio durisque est funis periculi,
Effert lætitia signa serena sue:
Et nunc antiquo felix se jactat honore,
Cum reddit Domino debita jura suo:
Cujus ab auspiciis unita Britannia tandem
Excelsum tollit libera in astra caput.*

Afront the bound of Scottish ground, where staid the furious broile
Of English warres; and Nations both were put to equall toile.
Now won, then lost, a thousand turnes it felt of fortunes will,
After so many miseries, wonder, it standeth still.
And still it stands: although laid wast it were and desolate,
Yet alwaies after every fall it rose to firmer state:
So that for strength best fenced townes it matcheth at this day.
The Citizens were souldiers all, and serv'd in warres for pay.
But after service long performed, and hard adventures past,
Of joy and mirth the glad some signes it putteth forth at last.
And now her ancient honour she doth vaunt in happy plight,
When to her Sovereigne Lord she yeelds all service due by right.
Whose blessed Crowne united hath great Britain now at last,
Whereby her head she lifts on high, since quarrels all be past.

The Comment-
ary of *Pius Se-
cundus*, set forth
in the name of
Joan Gebellin.

That which *Aeneas Sylvius*, or Pope *Pius* the second, who when hee was a private person was Embassadour into Scotland about the yeere 1448. hath reported in his owne life, by himselfe penned, and published under the name of another, touching the borderers that dwelt there round about, I thinke good here to put downe, considering that as yet they have nothing degenerated.

There is a river (saith he) which spreading broad from out of an high hill, confineth both the lands: This river when *Aeneas* had ferried over, and turned aside into a great village about sun setting, where he supped in a country-mans house, with the Priest of the place and his host, many sorts of gruels and pottage, hens and geese, were set on the board, but no wine nor bread at all, and all the men & women of the village came running thither, as it were to see some strange sight: and as our countrymen are wont to wonder at Black-
mores

A Moors, or men of Inde, so they stood gasing & gaping, as astonished at *Aeneas*, asking of the Priest what countryman he was? upon what busines he came? and whether he were a Christian or no? Now *Aeneas* having bin enformed before what scarcity of vituals he should finde in those parts, had received at a certaine Abbey some loaves of white bread, and a runnel of red wine: which when they had brought forth, the people made a greater wonder than before, as who had never seen either wine or white bread. There approached unto the table great bellied women and their husbands, who handling the bread, & smelling to the wine, craved some part thereof, and there was no remedy but to deale and give all away among them. Now when we had sitten at supper untill it was two houres within night, the Priest and our Host, together with the children and all the men, left *Aeneas*, and made haste away; for they said they were to flye for feare of the Scots unto a certaine pile, that stood a great way off: which Scots, at a low water when the tide was past, used to passe over the river, and fall to boot-haling. But they would in no wise take *Aeneas* with them, although hee intreated them very instantly; no nor any woman, albeit amongst them there were many both young maids, and wives passing faire: For they are perswaded verily, that the enemies will doe them no hurt, as who reckon whoredome no hurt nor evill at all. So *Aeneas* remains there alone with two servants and his Guide, in company of an hundred women; who sitting round in a ring, with a good fire in the mids before them, fell to butchell and dresse hemp, sate up all night without sleep, and had a great deale of talk with his Interpreter. When the night was far spent, what with barking of dogs, and gaggling of geese, a mighty noise and outcry was made: then all the women slipped forth divers waies, his Guide also made shift to be gone, and all was of an hurry, as if the enemies had beene come. But *Aeneas* thought it his best course to expect the event within his bed-chamber, (and that was a stable) for feare lest if he had runne forth of dores, knowing not the way, he should become a prey and booty to him that should first meet him. But see, straightwaies the women returned with the Interpreter, bring word all was well, and that they were friends and not enemies were come thither.

There have been in this country certaine petty nations, called *Scovenburgenses*, and *Fisburgings*; but to point out precisely the very place of their abode, in so great obscurity, passeth my skill: Neither can I define whether they were Danes or English. But *Florentinus of Worcester*, published by the right honourable Lord *William Howard*, writeth, That when there was an assembly or Parliament holden at *Oxenford*, *Sigefrith* and *Morcar*, the worthier & mightier ministers of the *Scovenburgenses*, were secretly made away by *Edrike Streona*. Also that Prince *Edmund* against his fathers will married *Alfrith* the wife of *Sigefrith*, and having made a journey to the *Fisburgings*, invaded *Sigefrith* his land, and brought his people in subjection to him. But let others inquire farther into these matters.

E This region of North-humberland being brought under the English Saxons dominion by *Oscar Hengists* brother, and by his sonne *Jebusa*, had first official governors under the fealty of the Kings of Kent. After that, when the kingdome of the *Bernicians*, whom the Britans call *Guita Brinaich*, as it were, *Mountainers*, was erected; that which reached from *Tees* to the *Scottish Frith*, was the best part thereof, and subject to the Kings of North-humberland: who having finished their period, whatsoever lay beyond *Twede*, became Scottish and was counted Scotland; Then *Egbert* King of the West-Saxons laied it to his owne kingdome, when it was yeelded up to him. Afterwardes King *Aelfred* permitted the Danes to possesse it, whom *Athelstane* some few yeeres after dispossessed and drave out: yet after this the people set up *Eilrick* the Dane for their king, whom King *Ealdred* forthwith displaced and expelled. From which time forward this country had no more Kings over it, but such as governed it were rearm'd Earles: Amongst whom these are reckoned up in order successively in our Histories, *Osulf*, *Osake*, *Edulph*, *Walde* of the elder, *Uchired*, *Adulph*, *Alred*, *Sivard*, *Tostie*, *Edwin*, *Morcar*, *Osculph*, and that right valiant *Sivard*, who as he lived in armes, so would he dye also armed. Then his Earldome and these parts were given unto *Tostie* the brother of Earle *Harold*: but the Earldomes of *Northampton* and *Hunting-*

Scovenburgen-
ses.
Fisburgenses.
1013.

Citonen.
Prince of Fis-
burgings.
1015.

Kings, Dukes,
and Earles of
Northumber-
land.
Bernicia.

Huntingdon, with other lands of his, were assigned to the noble Earle Waldeof his sonne A and heire. These words of Ingulphus have I put downe, because some deny that hee was Earle of Huntingdon. And now will I adde moreover to the rest, that which I have read in an old manuscript memoriall of this matter in the Librarie of John Stow, a right honest Citizen, and diligent Antiquarie of the City of London. Copsa being made Earle of Northumberland by the gift of King William Conquerour, expelled Oskulph, who notwithstanding within a few daies after slew him. Then Oskulph being runne through with a Javelin by a thiefe, ended his life. After this, Gospatrick purchased the Earldome of the Conquerour, who not long after deposed him from that honour; and then succeeded after him Waldeof Siwards sonne. His fortune was to lose his head; and in his roome was placed Walcher Bishop of Durham, who (like as Robert Comin his successeur) was slaine in a tumultuous commotion of the common people. Afterwards Robert Mowbray attained to the same honour, which hee soone lost through his owne perfidious treacherie, when he devised to deprive King William Rufus of his royall estate, and to advance Stephen Earle of Albemarle, a sonne to the Conquerors sifter, thereunto. Then K. Stephen made Henrie, the sonne of David King of Scotland (as wee read in the Poly Chronicon of Durham) Earle of Northumberland: whose sonne also William, that afterwards was King of Scots, writ him selfe, William de Warrenna Earle of Northumberland: for his mother was descended out of the familie of the Earles of Warren, as appeareth out of the booke of C Brinkburne Abbey. After some few yeeres, King Richard the first passed away this Earldome for a summe of money, unto Hugh Pudsey Bishop of Durham for term of his life, scoffing that he had made a young Earle of an old Bishop. But when the said King was imprisoned by the Emperour in his returne out of the Holy-land, and Hugh for his deliverie had contributed only 2000. pounds of silver, which the King took not well at his hands, because he was deemed to have performed but a litle, whom hee understood to have raised and gotten together a huge masse of money, under pretence of his ransom and release, hee deposed and deprived him of his Earldome. After which time the title of the Earldome of Northumberland lay discontinued about an hundred and foure score yeeres.

Percies descended from Charlemaine.

But at this day the family of the Percies enjoyeth the same, which family being descended from the Earles of Brabant, inherited together with the surname of Percie the possessions also of Percie, ever since that Joscelin of Lovaine, younger sonne of Godfrey Duke of Brabant, the true issue of the Emperour Charles the Great by Gerberga, the daughter of Charles, a younger brother to Lothar, the last King of France of the line of Charles, tooke to wife Agnes the daughter and sole heire of William Percie: of which William the great grandfather William Percie, coming into England with King William the Conquerour, was rewarded by him for his service, with lands in Tascaster, Limon, Normanby, and other places. Between this Agnes and Joscelin it was covenanted, that hee should assume the name of Percies, and retaine still unto him the ancient Armes of Brabant, viz. A Lion azure (which the Brabanters afterwards changed) in a shield Or. The first Earle of Northumberland out of this family, was Henrie Percie, begotten of Marie daughter to Henrie Earle of Lancaster, who being descended of ancient blood, and renowned for his martiall prowesse, was rewarded also by King Edward the third with faire possessions in Scotland, created Earle of Northumberland by King Richard the second on the day of his Coronation, and much enriched by his second wife Dame Maud Lucie (although by her hee had no issue) upon a fine levied unto her, that hee should beare quarterly the Armes of the Lucies with his owne, and lived in great honour, confidence, and favour with King Richard the second. Yet full badly hee requited him againe for all his singular good demerits. For in his adversitie hee forsooke him, and made way for Henrie the fourth to the kingdome, who made him Constable of England, and bestowed upon him the Isle of Man: against whom within a while, hee feeling the corrosive and secret pricke of conscience, for that King Richard

A Richard by his meane was unjustly deposed, and besides, taking at the heart indignantly, that Edmund Mortimer Earle of March, the true and undoubted heire of the Kingdome, and his neere ally, was neglected in prison, hee conceived inward enmity, grievously complaining, and charging him with perjury, that whereas hee had solemnly sworn to him, and others that hee would not challenge the Crowne, but only his owne inheritance, and that King Richard should be governed during his life by the good advice of the Peeres of the realme: he to the contrary had by imprisonment and terror of death enforced him to resigne his Crowne, and usurped the same, by the concurrence of his faction, horribly murdering the said K. and defrauding Edmund Mortimer Earle of March of his lawfull right to the Crowne, whom he had suffered to languish long in prison under Owen Glendowr, reputing those traitours who with their owne money had procured his enlargement. After the publication of these complaints, he, confident in the promises of his confederates, who yet failed him, sent his brother Thomas Earle of Worcester, and his courageous sonne Henry surnamed Hot-Spurre, with a power of men against the King, who both lost their lives at the battaile of Shrewesbury. Whereupon he was proclaimed traitour, and attainted; but shortly after, by a kind of connivency, received againe into the Kings favour (unto whom he was a terrour) yea and restored to all his lands and goods, save only the Isle of Man, which the King resumed into his owne hands. Howbeit within a while after, being now become popular, and over forward to entertaine new designs, and having procured the Scots to bandy and joyne with him in armes, himselfe in person entred with banner displayed into the field, against the King, as an Usurper, and on a sudden at Baryhammore in a tumultuary skirmish in the yeere 1408. was discomfited and slaine by Thomas Rokesby the high Sheriffe of Yorke-shire. Eleven yeeres after, Henry, this mans nephew by his sonne Henry Hot-Spur (whose mother was Elizabeth, daughter to Edmund Mortimer the elder, Earle of March, by Philippa the daughter of Leonel Duke of Clarence) was restored in blood and inheritance by authority of Parliament, in the time of King Henry the fifth: which Henry Percie, while he stoutly maintained King Henry the sixth his part against D the house of Yorke, was slaine at the battell of Saint Albans, like as his sonne Henry, the third Earle of Northumberland, who married Aelenor, the daughter of Richard Lord Poinings, Brian, and Fitz-Pain, in the same quarrell lost his life in the battaile at Towton, in the yeere 1461. The house of Lancaster being now kept under, and downe the wind, and the Percies with it troden under foot, King Edward the fourth made John Nevill, Lord Montacute, Earle of Northumberland: but he after a while surrendered this title into the Kings hands, and was created by him Marquesse Montacute. After this Henry Percy, the sonne of Henry Percy aforesaid, recovering the E favour of King Edward the fourth, obtained restitution in blood, and hereditaments; who in the reigne of Henry the seventh was slaine by the cuntry people, that about a certaine levie of money exacted by an Act of Parliament, rose up against the Collectours and Assessours thereof. After him succeeded Henry Percy, the fifth Earle, whose sonne Henry by a daughter and Coheire of Sir Robert Spenser, and Eleanor the daughter likewise and Coheire of Edmund Beaufort Duke of Somerset, was the sixth Earle; who (having no children, and his brother Thomas being executed for taking armes against King Henry the eighth, in the first difference about Religion) as if now that family had beene at a finall end for ever) prodigally gave away a great part of that most goodly inheritance unto the King and others. Some few F yeeres after, Sir John Dudley Earle of Warwick, got to himselfe the title of Duke of Northumberland, by the name of John Earle of Warwick, Marshal of England, Vicount Lisle, Baron Somery, Bassett, and Ties, Lord of Dudley, Great Master and Steward of the Kings house; when as in the tender age of King Edward the sixth, the Chieftaines and leaders of the factions shared titles of honour among themselves, their fautors, and followers. This was that Duke of Northumberland, who for the time, like unto a tempestuous whirlwind, began to shake and teare the publicke peace of the

John Harding Manuscript.

State

3. & 4. Philip
and Mary.

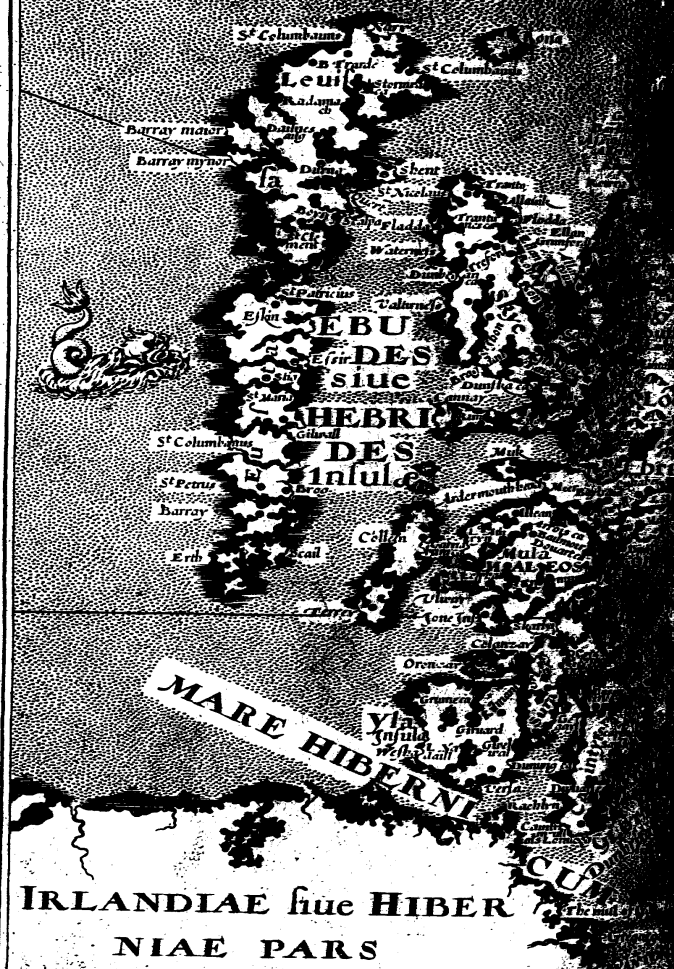
stare, whiles he with vast ambition plotted and practised to exclude Mary and Elizabeth the daughters of King Henry the eighth from their lawfull right of succession, and to set the Emperiall Crowne upon Lady Jane Grey, his daughter in law (being seconded therein by the great Lawyers, who are alwaies forward enough to humour and sooth up those that bee in highest place.) For which being attainted of high treason, he lost his head, and at his execution embraced and publicely professed Popery, which long before, either seriously or colorably for his own advantage, he had renounced. When he was gone, Queene Mary restored Thomas Percy, nephew unto Henry the sixth Earle by his brother Thomas, unto his bloud, and by a new Patent created him first *Baron Percy*, and anon *Earle of Northumberland*, to himselfe and the heires males of his body, and for defaults thereof, to his brother Henry, and his heires males. But this Thomas the seventh Earle, for his treason to Prince and country, under maske of restoring the Romish religion againe, lost both life and dignity in the yeere 1572. Yet through the singular favour and bounty of Queen Elizabeth, according to that Patent of Queene Mary, his brother Henry succeeded after him, as the eighth Earle; who in the yeere 1585. ended his dayes in prison, and had for his successor Henry his sonne, by Katherin the eldest daughter, and one of the heires of John Nevill, Lord *Latimer*, the ninth Earle of Northumberland of this family.

Parishes in Northumberland about 46.

SCOTLAND.

DEUCALEDONII

OCEANUS



MARE HIBERNI

IRLANDIAE huc HIBERNIAE PARS

Stronza
Louis Kell
Cull Kell
Cull Kell

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula

Scutrowalsa insula



MARE



GERMANI

ICUS



SCOTLAND.



Now am I come to SCOTLAND, and willingly I assure you will I enter into it, but withall lightly passe over it. For I remember well that said saw, In places not well knowne lesse while wee mult stay: as also the admonition of that Grecian, ΖΕΝΟΣ ΩΝ ΑΠΡΑΓΜΩΝ ΙΣΟΙ: that is, Art thou a stranger? be no medler. And verily I should play an unadvised part, if I would insist long in that, wherein I am but little conversant. But yet seeing Scotland also joyeth in the name of BRITAIN, let it bee lawfull for

me (reserving the due honour to the Scottissh) according to my purpose, having boldly undertaken to illustrate BRITAIN, to proceed with their good favour, leave, and licence, and by drawing aside in some sort the curtaine of obscure antiquity, to point out with my finger, if I shall be able, some places of ancient note and memory. Certes, I assure my selfe that I shall bee easily pardoned in this point, the people themselves are so courteous and well meaning, and the happinesse of these daies so rare and admirable, since that by a divine and heavenly oportunitie is now fallen into our laps, which we hardly ever hoped, & our Ancestors so often and so earnestly wished: namely, that Britaine, so many ages disjoined in it selfe and unsociable, should all throughout, like one uniform City, under one most sacred and happy Monarch, the founder of perpetuall peace, by a blessed Union be conjoynd in one entire body. Who being through the propitious goodnesse of Almighty God, elected, borne, and preserved to the good of both nations, as he is a Prince of singular wisdom and providence, and fatherly affected to all his subjects, doth so cut off all causes and occasions of feare, of hope, of revenge, complaint, and quarrell; that the dismall DISCORD which hath set these nations (otherwise invincible) so long at debate, might be sifted and crushed for ever; and sweet CONCORD triumph joyously with endlesse comfort, when (as one sometimes sung this tenour) Jam cuncti gens unumus, that is, Wee all one Nation are this day, whereunto as a Chorus both nations resound, Et simus in ævum, that is, God grant wee may be so for aye.

But before my pen commeth to Scotland, thus much I thinke it good to advertise the Reader aforehand, that I leave the first original of the Scottissh

A a a

nation

nation to their owne Historians: also the primitive derivation of their name A
to the learned among them, banishing all conjectures whatsoever of others,
which either hasty credulity or carelesse negligence hath forged, as well in the
late foregoing age, as in these our dayes. And according to the same order
which I kept before in England, I will premise some few lines touching the
division of Scotland, the States of the Kingdome, and the Tribunals or
Courts of Justice: then will I briefly touch the situations and Commodities
of the soile in every severall Region: what places there be of greater fame B
and name, and what Families more noble and notable than the rest, have most
flourished with the title and honour of Earles and Barons of the Parliament,
so far forth as hitherto I could find by reading or enquiry: And that so circum-
spectly, with such an honest desire and sincere affection to truth, that I hope
I shall not give offence to the malicious; and with so compendious brevity,
that I will not prevent their curious diligence, who are in hand to
set out these matters with a fuller pensill, and to
polish the same with more lively
and lasting colours.

THE

E

THE DIVISION OF SCOTLAND.



He North part of the Island of Britaine, was of old time inha-
bitated throughout by the Picts, who were divided into two
Nations, the DICALIDONII, and VECTURIONES: of whom
I have spoken already out of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. But
when the Scots became Lords and Rulers over all this part,
it was shared into seven parts among seven Princes, as we finde
in a little ancient pamphlet touching the division of Scotland,
in these words and old name.

- The first part contained *Enegus* and *Maern*.
- The second, *Aibeod* and *Goverin*.
- The third, *Stradeern* and *Meneted*.
- The fourth was *Foribever*.
- The fifth, *Mar* with *Buchen*.
- The sixth, *Mures* and *Ros*.
- The seventh *Cathanes*, which *Mound*, a mountaine
in the midst divideth, running on forward from
the West sea to the East.

Then afterwards the same Author reporteth, according to the relation of An-
drew Bishop of Cathanes, that the whole Kingdome was divided likewise into se-
ven territories.

- The first from Frith, in the British tongue, called by
the Romans *Worid*, now *Scotwade*, to the river *Tae*.
- The second to *Hilef*, according as the sea fetcheth a
compasse, to a mountain in the North-east part of
Strivelin, named *Athran*.
- The third from *Hilef* to *Dee*.
- The fourth from *Dee* to the river *Spe*.
- The fifth from *Spe* to the mountaine *Brunalban*.
- The sixth, *Mures* and *Ros*.
- The seventh, the kingdome *Argathel*, as it were
the border and skirt of the Scots: who were so
called of Gathelgas their Captaine.

Also according to the habitation of the people, Scotland is now divided into *High-*
land-men and *Lowland-men*: These being more civill, use the English language and
apparrell: the other, which are rude and unruly, speak Irish, and goe apparelled Irish-
like, as I have already said. Out of this division I exclude the *Borderers*, because by
reason of peace shining now upon them on every side, by a blessed and happy Union,
they are to bee ranged and reckoned in the very heart and midst of the British Em-
pire, as who begin to be weary of wars, and to acquaint themselves with the delight-
full benefits of peace.

Moreover, according to the situation and position of the places, the whole King-
dome is divided into two parts: the South, on this side the river *Tay*, and the North
beyond *Tay*; besides a number of Islands lying round about. In the South part these
countries are more remarkable than the rest.

Aaaa 2

Teifdale

Highlandmen.
Lowlandmen.

Borderers.

Teisdale.	Arran.
Merch.	Cluydesdale.
Lauden.	Lennox.
Liddesdale.	Stirling.
Eskdale.	Fife.
Annandale.	Strathern.
Niddesdale.	Menteith.
Galloway.	Argile.
Carrick.	Cantire.
Kyle.	Lorn.
Cunningham.	

In the North part are reckoned these Countries.

Loquabrea.	Buguban.
Brasdalbin.	Murray.
Perib.	Rosse.
Aihol.	Sutherland.
Anguist.	Caithnes.
Adern.	Strathnavern.
Marr.	

These are subdivided againe according to their civill government, into counties, which they call *Sherifdomes*, *Seneschalties*, commonly *Stewarties*, and *Bailiwicks*, or *Baileries*.

Edenburgh.	Perib.
Linlythquo.	Clackmannan.
Selkirk.	Kinross.
Roxburgh.	Fife.
Pebliu.	Kincardin.
Berwick.	Forfaire.
Lanark.	Aberdene.
Renfrew.	Bainff.
Dunfreu.	Elgin.
Wighton.	Forres.
Aire.	Narne.
Bute.	Inverness.
Argyle and	Cromartie.
Tarbet.	Orkney and
Dunbarton.	Shetland.

Seneschalties or Stewarties. { Menteith. { Kircudbricht.
 { Strathern. { Annandale.

Bailiwicks or Baileries. { Kile.
 { Carrick.
 { Cunningham.

Hadington a Constabulary.

Bishopricks.

As touching the administration of that divine City and commonwealth, which we terme the Church, like as the Bishops in all the world besides, had no certain dioceses, before that Dionisius Bishop of Rome, about the yeere 268. did set out dioceses for Bishops: so the Bishops of Scotland executed their Episcopall functions in what place soever they came, indifferently and without distinction, untill the time of King Malcolm the third, that is, about the yeere of our redemption 1070. at which time the dioceses were confined within their bounds and limits.

After.

Afterwards, in proceffe of time, this Hierarchie, or Ecclesiasticall government, was established in Scotland. Two Archbishops, one of Saint *Andrews*, the other of *Glasgo*; whereof the former is counted Primate of all Scotland: under whom there be eight Bishopricks.

Dunkeld.	Brechin.
Aberdon.	Rosse.
Murray.	Caithnes.
Dunblan.	Orkney.

Under the Archbishop of *Glasgo* there be onely three.

* *Candida Casa*, or *Galloway*.
* *Lismore*, or *Argile*.
The *Iles*.

* *Whiterne*.

THE STATES OR DEGREES OF SCOTLAND.



He Republicke, or Commonwealth of the Scots, like as that of Englishmen, consisteth of a King, the Nobility or Gentry, and Commons.

The King, that I may use the words of their owne Record, is *Directus totius Domini*, that is, *The direct Lord of the whole Domain*, or *Dominion*, and hath royall authority and jurisdiction over all the States and degrees, as well Ecclesiasticall as Lay or Temporall.

Next unto the King is his eldest Sonne, who is called *PRINCE OF SCOTLAND*, and by a peculiar right Duke of *Rothsay*, and Seneschall or Steward of *Scotland*. But all the rest of the Kings children are named simply *Princes*.

Among the Nobles, the greatest and most honourable were in old time, *The Thanes*, that is, those who (if my judgement be ought) were ennobled onely by the office which they administred. For the word in the ancient English Saxon tongue signifieth, *The Kings Minister*. Of these, they of the superior place were called *Abthanes*, the inferior, *Under Thanes*. But these names by little and little grew out of use, ever since that King *Malcolm* the third conferred the titles of Earles and Barons, after the manner received from the English, upon Noble men of good desert. Since when, in proceffe of time new titles of honours were much taken up, and Scotland as well as England, hath had Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons. As for the title of Duke, the first that brought it into Scotland was King Robert the third, about the yeere of Salvation 1400. like as the honourable titles of Marquess and Vicount were first brought in by our most gracious Sovereigne, King James the sixth. These are counted Nobles of the higher degree, and have both place and voice in the Parliaments, and by a speciall name are called *Lords*, like as also the Bishops.

Among the Nobles of a lower degree, in the first place are ranged Knights, who severally are dubbed with greater solemnity than in any other place throughout all Europe, by taking of an oath, and are proclaimed by the publike voice of an Herald. Of a second sort are they, who are tearmed *Lairds* and *Barons*: among whom none were reckoned in old time, but such as held immediatly from the King, lands in *Chief*, and had *ius furcaram*, that is, *power to hang*, &c. In the third place are all such as being descended from worshipfull houses, and not honoured with any especiall dignitie, be termed *Gentlemen*. All the rest, as Citizens, Merchants, Artisans, &c. are reputed among the Commons.

Aaaa 3

THE

THE JUDICATORIES, OR COURTS OF JUSTICE.

Parliament.



He supreme Court, as well for dignitie as authoritie, is accounted the Assembly of the States of the Kingdome, which is called by the very same name as it is in England, *A Parliament*: & hath the same verie power as absolute. It consisteth of three States, of Lords *Spirituall*, namely, Bishops, Abbots, and Priors: and of Lords *Temporall*, to wit, Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Viscounts, and Barons: and Commissioners for Cities & Burghs, unto whom were adjoined not long since for everie Countie also two Commissioners. It is appointed and solemnly called by the King at his pleasure, at a certain set time, before it be holden. When these States above said are assembled, and the causes of their assembly delivered by the King or the Chancellour, the Lords *Spirituall* chuse out, apart by themselves, eight of the Lords *Temporall*. Semblably, the Lords *Temporall* make choise of as many out of the Lords *Spirituall*: then the same all jointly together nominate 8. of the Commissioners for the counties, & as many of the Commissioners for the free Burghs regall, which make up in all the number of 32. And then these * *Lords of the Articles* (so they are termed) together with the Chancellor, Treasurer, Keeper of the Privie Seale, Kings Secretarie, &c. do admit or reject everie bill proposed unto the States, after they have bin first imparted unto the King. Being allowed by the whole assembly of the States, they are thoroughly weighed and examined, and such of them as passe by the greater number of voices, are exhibited unto the King, who by touching them with his Scepter, pronounceth that hee either ratifieth and approveth them, or disableth and maketh the same voide: But if any thing disliketh the King, it is razed out before.

* *Domini pro articulis.*

The Session.

The Second Court, or next unto the Parliament, is the *Colledge of Justice*, or as they call it, *The Session*, which King James the fifth 1532. instituted after the forme of the Parliament of *Paris*, consisting of a President, 14. Senatours, seven of the Cleargie, and as many of the Laity (unto whom was adjoined afterward the Chancellour, who hath the chiefe place, and five other Senatours) three principall Scribes or Clerks, and as many Advocates as the Senatours shall thinke good. These sit and minister justice, not according to the rigour of law, but with reason and equitie, every day (save onely on the Lords day and Monday) from the first of November to the fifteenth of March; and from Trinitie Sunday unto the Calends of August. All the space betweene, as being the times of sowing and harvest, is vacation and intermission of all suites and law matters. They give judgement according to the Parliament Statutes and Municipall Lawes, and where they are defective, they have recourse to the Imperiall Civill Law.

There are besides in everie Countie inferiour civill Judicatories or Courts kept, wherein the Sheriffe of the shire, or his depute, decideth the controversies of the inhabitants, about violent ejections, intrusions, dammages, debts, &c. From which Courts and Judges, in regard of hard and unequall dealing, or else of alliance and partialtie, they appeale sometime to the Session. These Sheriffes are all for the most part hereditarie. For the Kings of Scots, like as of England also, to oblige more surely unto them the better sort of Gentlemen by their benefits and favours, made in old time these Sheriffes hereditarie and perpetuall. But the English Kings soone perceiving the inconveniences thereby ensuing, of purpose changed this order, and appointed them from yeere to yeere. There be civill Courts also in everie regalltie, holden by their Bailiffes, to whom the Kings have graciously granted royalties: as also in free Burroughs, by the Magistrates thereof.

There are likewise Judicatories, which they call *Commissariats*, the highest whereof

A

is kept at Edensburgh: in which before foure Judges, actions are pleaded concerning Wills and Testaments, the right of Ecclesiasticall benefices, Tithes, Divorces, and such other Ecclesiasticall causes. In every other severall part almost throughout the Kingdome, there sitteth but one Judge alone in a place about these matters.

In criminall causes, the Kings chiefe Justice holdeth his Court for the most part at Edensburgh (which office the Earles of *Argile* have executed now for some yeeres.) And he doth depute two or three Lawyers, who have the hearing and deciding of capitall actions concerning life and death, or of such as inferre losse of limbs, or of all goods. In this Court the Defendant is permitted, yea in case of high treason, to entertaine a Counsellor or Advocate to pleade his cause.

Courts of criminall matters.

Moreover, in criminall matters there are sometimes by vertue of the Kings commission and authoritie, Justices appointed for the deciding of this or that particular cause.

Also the Sheriffes in their territories, and Magistrates in some Burghs, may sit in judgement of man-slaughter (in case the man-slayer be taken within 24. houres after the deed committed) and being found guiltie by a Jurie, put him to death. But if that time be once overpast, the cause is referred and put over to the *Kings Justice*, or his Deputies. The same priviledge also some of the Nobilitie and Gentrie enjoy against theeves taken within their owne jurisdictions. There bee likewise that have such Roialties, as that in criminall causes they may exercise a jurisdiction within their owne limits, and in some cases recall those that dwell within their owne limits and liberties from the Kings Justice, howbeit with a caution and proviso interposed, *That they judge according to Law.*

Thus much briefly have I put downe, as one that hath but sleightly looked into these matters, yet by the information of the judicious Knight, Sir *Alexander Hay*, his Majesties Secretarie for that kingdome, who hath therein given me good light. But as touching SCOTLAND, what a noble countrey it is, and what men it breedeth (as sometimes the Geographer wrote of Britaine) there will within a while more certaine and more evident matter be delivered, since that most high and mightie Prince hath set it open now for us, which had so long time beene shut from us. Meane while I will come unto the description of places, the project that I intended especially.

GADENI, or LADENI.



Upon the *Ostadini*, or Northumberland, bordered as next neighbours the *TAAENOI*, that is, *GADENI*, who also by the inversion or turning of one letter upside downe, are called in some Copies of Ptolomee, *LADENI*, seated in that countrey which lieth betweene the mouth of the river *Twede* and *Edensburgh Forth*: and is at this day divided into many petty Countries: the chiefe whereof are *Teisidale*, *Twedale Merch*, and *Lothien*, in Latine *Lodeneium*, under which one generall name alone the Writers of the middle time comprised all the rest.

TEIFIDALE.



Teisidale, that is to say, the *Vale* by the river *Teise*, or *Teviat*, lying next unto England, among the edges of high craggie hills, is inhabited by a warlike nation, which by reason of so many encounters in foregoing ages betweene Scottish and English, are alwaies most readie for service and sudden invasions. The first place among these that wee meet with, is *Jedburgh*, a Burrough well inhabited and frequented, standing neere unto the confluence

of

Roxburg.

of *Teife* and *Jed*, whereof it took the name: also *Mailros*, a very ancient Monastery, A wherein, at the beginning of our Church, were cloistered Monkes of that ancient order and institution, that gave themselves to prayer, and with their hand-labour earned their living; which holy King David restored, and replenished with Cistercian Monkes. And more Eastward, where *Twede* and *Teife* joine in one streame, *Roxburg* sheweth it selfe, called also *Roxburg*, and in old time *MARCHIDUN*, because it was a towne in the Marches; where stands a Castle, that for naturall situation and towred fortifications, was in times past exceeding strong. Which being surprisid and held by the English, whiles James the second King of Scots encircled it with a siege, hee was by a peece of a great Ordnance that brake, slaine untimely in the B very floure of his youth; a Prince much missed and lamented of his Subjects. As for the castle, it was yeilded; and being then for the most part of it layed even with the ground, is now in a manner quite vanished and not to bee seene. The territory adjoining, called of it the *Sherifdome of Roxburg*, hath one hereditary Sheriffe out of the family of the *Douglases*, who is usually called the *Sheriffe of Tervot Dale*. And now hath *Roxburg* also a Baron, *Robert Kerr*, through the favour of King James the sixth, out of the family of the *Kerrs*, a famous house, and spred into a number of branches, as any one in that tract: out of which the *Fernhersts*, and others inured in martiall feats, have been of great name.

Twede afore said runneth through the middest of a Dale, taking name of it, replenished with sheepe that beare wooll of great request. A very goodly river this is, which springing more inwardly Eastward, after it hath passed, as it were, in a streight channell by *Drimlar* Castle, by *Pebblis* a mercate towne, which hath for the Sheriff thereof Baron *Zeister*, like as *Selkirk* hard by hath another out of the family of *Murray* of *Fallohill*, entertaineth *Lauder* a river; at which appeareth *Lauder*, together with *Thirlestane*: where stands a very faire house of Sir John *Mutellan*, late Chancellor of Scotland, whom, for his singular wisdom, King James the sixth created Baron of *Thirlestane*. Then *Twede* beneath *Roxburg*, augmented with the river of *Teviot* resorting unto him, watereth the Sherifdome of *Berwick* throughout; a great part whereof is possessed by the *Humes* (wherein the chiefe man of that family exerciseth now the jurisdiction of a Sheriffe) and so passeth under *Berwick*, the strongest towne of Britain (whereof I have spoken already) where hee is exceeding full of Salmons, and so falleth into the sea.

MERCHIA, MERCH, or MERS.



MERCH, which is next, and so named because it is a march country, lyeth wholly upon the German sea. In this, first *Hume* Castle sheweth it selfe, the ancient possession of the Lords of *Hume*, E or *Hume*, who being descended from the family of the Earles of *Merch*, are grown to be a noble and faire spred family: out of which *Alexander Hume*, who before was the first Baron of Scotland, and Sheriff of *Berwick*, was of late advanced by James King of great Britaine to the title of Earle *Hume*. Neere unto which lieth *Kelso*, famous sometime for the monastery, which with thirteen others, King David the first of that name built out of the ground, for the propagation of Gods glory, but to the great empairing of the Crowne land.

Earle Hume.
Kelso.Coldingham.
Colania.

Then is to be seene *Coldingham*, which *Bede* calleth the City *Coldana*, and the City of *Coludum*, haply *COLANIA* mentioned by *Prolemee*, a place consecrated many ages since unto professed Virgins or Nunnes, whose chastity is recorded in ancient bookes. For that they, together with *Ebba* their Prioresse, cut off their owne noses and lips, choosung rather to preserve their virginity from the Dances, than their beauty and favour: and yet for all that the Danes burnt their monasterie, and them withall. Hard by is *Fast-castle*, a castle of the Lords *Humes*, so called for their firmnesse and

A and strength thereof, at the Promontory of the said Saint *Ebbe*, who being the daughter of *Edilsfrin* King of Northumberland, when her Father was taken prisoner, got hold of a boat in *Humber*, and passing along the raging Ocean, landed here in safety, became renowned for her sanctimony, and left her name unto the place. But this *Merch* is mentioned in the Historiographers, a great deale more for the Earles thereof, than for any places therein, who for martiall prowesse were highly renowned, and descended from *Gospatrice* Earle of Northumberland, whom after he was fled from *William Conqueror* of England, *Malcom Canmor*, that is, *With the great head*, King of Scotland, entertained, enriched him with the castle of *Dunbar*, and honoured with the Earldome of *Merch*. Whose posterity, besides other goodly and faire lands in Scotland, held (as appeareth plainly in an old Inquisition) the Barony of *Bengeley* in Northumberland, that they should be *Inborow* and *Niborow*, betweene England and Scotland. What the meaning should be of these tearmes let others ghesse, what my conjecture is I have said already. In the reigne of King James the first, *George de Dunbar* Earle of *Merch* by authority of Parliament, for his Fathers rebellion lost the *Propriety* and *possession* of the Earldome of *Merch*, and the *Seignorie* of *Dunbar*. And when as hee proved by good evidences and writings brought forth, that his father had bene pardoned for that fault by the Regents of the Kingdome, he was answered againe, that it was not in the Regents power to pardon an offence C against the State; and that it was expressly provided by the Lawes, that children should undergoe punishment for their fathers transgressions, to the end that being thus heires to their fathers rashnesse, as they are to their goods and lands, they should not at any time in the haughty pride of their owne power, plot any treason against Prince or country. This title of Earle of *March*, among other honourable titles, was given afterward to *Alexander Duke of Albany*, and by him forfeited. And in our remembrance, this title of honour was revived againe in *Robert*, the third brother of *Mathew Earle of Lennox*, who being of a Bishop of *Cathanes* made Earle of *Lennox*, resigned up that title soone after unto his nephew, then created Duke of *Lennox*; and he himselfe in lieu thereof received of the King the name and stile of the Earle D of *Merch*.

LAUDEN, or LOTHIEN.



LOTHIE, which is also called *Lauden*, named in times past of the *Pihs*, *Piiland*, shooteth out along from *Merch* unto the *Scottish* sea, or the *Forth*, having many hills in it, and little wood; but for fruitfull corn-fields, for courtesie also and civility of manners, commended above all other countries of Scotland. About the yeere of our salvation 873. *Eadgar* King of England (betweene whom and *Keneth* the third, King of Scots, there was a great knot of alliance against the Danes, common enemies to them both) resigned up his right unto him in this *Lothien*, as *Mathew* the * *Flourgatherer* witnesseth: and to winne his heart the more unto him, He gave unto him many mansions in the way, wherein both he and his successours in their coming unto the Kings of England, and in returne homeward might be lodged: which unto the time of *K. Henry the second* continued in the hands of the Kings of Scotland. In this *Lothien*, the first place that offereth it selfe unto our sight upon the sea side is *Dunbar*, a passing strong castle in old time, and the seat of the Earles of *Merch* afore said, who thereupon were called Earles of *Dunbar*. A peece many a time wonne by English, and as often recovered by the Scottish. But in the yeere 1567. by authority of the States in Parliament it was demolished, because it should not be an hold and place of refuge for rebels. But James King of great Britain conferred the title and honour of Earle of *Dunbar* upon Sir *George Hume*, for his approved fidelity; whom he had created before Baron *Hume of Barwick*, to him, his heires, and assignes. Hard by, *Tine* a little river

Lauden:

* *Florigeni*.Earles of *Dunbar*.

1548.

Vicount Had-
dington.

ver after it hath runne a short course, falleth into the sea; neere unto the spring-head A whereof standeth *Zeifer*, which hath his Baron out of the family of the *Haies* Earles of Aroll, who also is by inheritance Sheriffe of the little territory of *Twedall*, or *Peb- blin*. By the same riveret, some few miles higher, is seated *Hadington* or *Hadina*, in a wide and broad plaine: which towne the English fortified with a deepe and large ditch, with a mure or rampire also without, foure square, and with foure bulwarks at the corners, and with as many other at the inner wall: and Sir *James Wilford*, an Englishman valiantly defended it against *Desie* the Frenchman, who with ten thousand French and Dutch together fiercely assaulted it, untill that by reason of the plague, which grew hot among the garrison souldiers, Henry Earle of Rutland B comming with a royall army, raised the siege, removed the French, and having laid the munitions leuell, conducted the English home. And now of late, King James the sixth, hath ranged Sir *John Ramsay* among the Nobles of Scotland, with title and honour of Vicount Hadington, for his faithfull valour, as whose R I G H T H A N D was the DEFENDER OF PRINCE AND COUNTRY, in that most wicked conspiracy of the *Gowries* against the Kings person. Touching this *Hadington* thus hath Master I. *Jonston* verified.

*Planities præensa jaces prope flumina Tine,
Fluminis argui claudunt ista sinu.
Vulcani & Maris que passa incendia, fuit
Ingemir alicerno vulnere fracta vices.
Nunc tandem sapi iſta. Dei præcepta secuta
Præsidio gaudet jam potiore Poli.*

Before it lies a spacious plaine, the Tine his streame hard by,
In bofome of that river shrill, this towne enclos'd doth lie.
Which having suffered grievous smart of fire and sword by turnes,
Grones under these misfortunes much, and for her losses mournes.
But now at length selfe-harmes have made it wise, and by Gods lore
Directed, helpe it hath from heaven, which steedeth it much more.

Athelstanford.

Within a little of *Hadington* standeth *Athelstanford*, so called of *Athelstane*, a chiefe leader of the English, slaine about the yeere 815. But that he should be that warlike *Athelstane*, which was King of the West-Saxons, both the account of the times, and his owne death doe manifestly controule it.

Above the mouth of this *Tine*, in the very bending of the shore, standeth *Tanallon* Castle; from whence *Archibald Douglas* Earle of Angus, wrought James the fifth, King of Scots, much teene and trouble. Here by retiring backe of the shores on both sides, is roome made for a most noble arme of the sea, and the same well furnished with Islands, which by reason of many rivers encountering it by the way, and the tides of the furling sea together, spreadeth exceeding broad: *Polomee* calleth it *BODERIA*, *Tacitus* *BODOTRIA*, of the depth, as I guess; the Scots The *Forth*, and *Frith*; we *Edenburgh Frith*; others the *Fresian* sea, and the *Scottish* sea, and the *Eulogium*, *Morwiridh*. Upon this, after you be past *Tanallon*, are seated, first, *North-Berwick*, a famous place sometime for an house there of religious *Virgins*; and then *Dyrton*, which belonged in times past to the notable family of the *Halburtons*, and now to *S. Tho. Ereskin* Captain of the guard, whom James K. of great Britain for his happy valour, in preserving him against the traitorous attempts of *Gowrie*, first created Baron of *Dirlon*, and afterward advanced him to the honourable title of *Vicount Felton*, making him the first Vicount that ever was in Scotland. Against these places there lyeth in the sea, not far from the shore, the *Island Bar*, which riseth up as it were all one craggy rocke, and the same upright and steep on every side: yet hath it a Block-house belonging to it, a fountaine also and pastures: but it is so hollowed with the waves working upon it, that it is almost pierced thorough. What a multitude of sea-fowles, and especially of those geese which they call *Scouts* and *Soland* geese

Bodotria.

Tanallon.

Dyrton.

Vicount Fel-
ton.

A geese, focke hither at their times (for, by report, their number is such, that in a cleere day they take away the sunnes light) what a sort of fishes they bring (for as the speech goeth, a hundred garrison souldiers that here lay for defence of the place, fed upon no other meat but the fresh fish that they brought in) what a quantity of stickes and little twigges they get together for the building of their nests, so that by their means the inhabitants are abundantly provided of fewell for their fire; what a mighty gaine groweth by their feathers and oyle; the report thereof is so incredible, that no man scarcely would beleve it, but he that had seene it.

Then as the shore draweth backe *Seton* sheweth it selfe; which seemeth to have B taken that name of the situation by the sea side, and to have imparted the same unto a right noble house of the *Setons*, branched out of an English family, and from the daughter of King Robert *Bru*: out of which the Marquesse *Hunley*, Robert Earle of *Wentoun*, Alexander Earle of *Dunfirmling*, advanced to honours by K. James the sixth, are propagated.

After this the river *Eske* dischargeth it selfe into this Frith, when it hath runne by *Borthwic* (which hath Barons furnamed according to that name, and those deriving their pedigree out of Hungary) by *Newbottle*, that is, *The new building*, sometimes a faire monastirie, now the Barony of Sir Mark *Kersey* by *Dalkeith*, a very pleasant habitation of the late Earles of *Morison*, and *Musselborough*, hard under which, in the yeere C of our Lord 1547. when Sir Edward *Seimor* Duke of Somerset, with an army royall had entred Scotland, to claime and challenge the keeping of a covenant made, concerning a marriage betweene Marie Queene of Scotland, and Edward the sixth King of England, there happened the heaviest day that ever fell, to the adventurous youth of the most noble families in all Scotland, who there lost their lives. Here I must not over-passe in silence this Inscription, which *John Napier*, a learned man, hath in his Commentaries upon the Apocalyps recorded to have bene here digged up, and which the right learned Knight Sir Peter *Young*, teacher and trainer of King James the sixth in his youth, hath in this wise more truly copied forth.

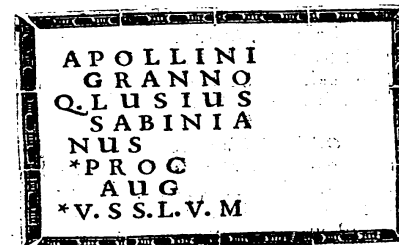
Soland Geese,
which seeme
to be *Plinius*
Picarius.

Seton

Earle of Weir-
toun.

Borthwicke

Newbottle: i.

Dalkeith.
Musselborough

* *Procurator*.
* *Votum suscep-
tum solvit lu-
bens merito.*

Who this *Apollo Granus* might bee, and whence hee should have this name, not one, to my knowledge, of our grave Senate of Antiquaries hitherto could ever tell: But if I might be allowed, from out of the lowest bench, to speak what I think, I would say that *Apollo Granus* amongst the Romans, was the same that *Ambrosius* amongst the Greeks: for *Isidor* calleth the long haire of the Gothes, *Grannos*. But here I may seem to wander out of my way; and therefore will returne to it.

Lower yet, and neere unto the Scottish *Forth*, is seated *Edenborough*, which the Irish Scots call *Dun Eaden*, that is, the towne *Eaden*, or *Eden Hill*, and which no doubt is the very same that *Polomee* named *Στεγνιδιον* *σπηλαιον*, that is, *The winged Castle*: for *Adain* in the British tongue signifieth a wing; and *Edenborough* a word

*Apollo Gran-
nus.*

Edenborough

(a word compounded out of the British and Saxon language) is nothing else but *A The Burgh with wings*. From Wings therefore wee must fetch the reason of the name: and fetched it may be, if you thinke good, either from the *Companies of Horsemen*, which are called *Wings*, or else from those *Wings* in Architecture, which the great Master builders tearme *Pteromata*, that is, as *Petrus* sheweth, *two Walls* so rising up in heighth, as that they resemble a shew of *Wings*: which, for that certaine City of *Cyprum* wanted, it was called in old time (as wee read in the Geographers) *Apiera*, that is, *Without Wings*. But if any man beleve that the name was derived from *Ebrauk* a Britaine, or from *Heib* a Pict, good leave have he for me, I will not confront them with this my conjecture.

This Citie in regard of the high situation, of the holsome aire and plentifull soile, and many Noble mens towred houses built round about it, watered also with cleere springing fountaines, reaching from East to West a mile out in length, and carrying halfe as much in bredth, is worthily counted the chiefe Citie of the whole Kingdome; strongly walled, adorned with houses as well publike as private, well peopled and frequented, by reason of the opportunity from the sea which the neighbour haven at *Leith* affordeth. And as it is the seat of the Kings, so is it the oracle also, or closet of the Lawes, and the very Palacé of Justice. For the high Courts of Parliament are here for the most part holden, for the enacting or repealing of Lawes: also the Session, and the Court of the Kings Justice, and of the Commissariat, where, of I have spoken already, are here settled and kept.

On the East side, hard unto the Monastery of *Saint Croffe*, or *Holy ruide*, is the Kings palace, which King David the first built: over which, within a Parke stored with game, riseth an hill with two heads, called of *Arthur* the Britaine, *Arthurs Chaire*. On the West side a most steepe rocke mounteth up aloft to a stately heigh every way, save onely where it looketh toward the City: on which is placed a Castle with many a towre in it, so strong that it is counted impregnable, which the Britains called *Castle Myned Agned*, the Scots, *The Maidens Castle*, and the *Virgins Castle*, of certaine young maidens of the Picts royall blood, who were kept there in old time, and which may seeme in truth to have beene that *Castrum Alatum*, or *Castle with A-v-v-i-n-g*, above said.

How Edenborrow in the alternative fortune of warres was subject one while to the Scots, and another while to the English, who inhabited this East part of Scotland, untill it became wholly under the Scots dominion, about the yeere of our salvation 960. what time the English Empire, sore shaken with the Danish wars, lay as it were gasping and dying.

How also, as an old booke *Of the division of Scotland*, in the Library of the right honourable Lord *Burghley* late high Treasurer of England, sheweth: *Whiles Indulph reigned, the town of Eden was voided and abandoned to the Scots unto this present day*, as what variable changes of reciprocall fortune it hath felt from time to time, the Historiographers doe relate, and out of them ye are to be informed. Meane while read if you please these verses of that most worthy man Master I. Jonston, in praise of *Edenborrow*.

Monte sub acclivi Zephyri procurrat in auras
Hinc arx celsa, illinc Regia clara nitet.
Inter utramque parei sublimibus ardua tellus
Urbs armis animis, clara frequensque viris.
Nobile Scotorum caput, & pars maxima regni,
Penè etiam gentis integra regna sua.
Rara artes & opes, quod mens optaverit aut hic
Inveniat, aut non Scotia tota dabit.
Compositum hic populum videas, sanctumque Senatum,
Sanctaque cum puro lumine jura Dei.
An quisquam Arctoi extremo in limine mundi

Aut

*Aut hac aut paria his cernere posse puer?
Dic hospes, postquam externas lustraveris urbes,
Hac cernens, oculis credis an ipse tuus?*

Under the rising of an hill, Westward there shoots one way
A castle high, on th'other side the Kings house gorgeous gay.
Betweene them both the citie stands, tall buildings shew it well,
For armes, for courage much renown'd, much people therein dwell.
The Scots head citie large and faire, the kingdome greatest part,
Nay, even the nations kingdome whole well heere, by just desert.
Rare arts and riches: what ones minde can wish is therein found,
Or else it will not gotten be throughout all Scottish ground.
A civill people here a man may see, a Senate grave,
Gods holy lawes with purest light of Preachers here ye have.
In parts remote of Northren clime would any person weene,
That ever these, or such like things might possibly be seene?
Say Travailer, now after that thou forraine towne hast knowne,
Beholding this, beleevest thou these eyes that are thine owne.

A mile from hence lyeth *Leith*, a most commodious haven, hard upon the river *Leith*, which when *Desley* the Frenchman for the securitie of *Edenborrow* had fortified, by reason of manie men repairing thither, within a short time from a meane village it grew to be a bigge towne. Againe, when Francis the second, King of France, had taken to wife Marie the Queene of Scots, the Frenchmen, who in hope and conceit had already devoured Scotland, and began now to gape for England, in the yeere 1560. strengthened it with more fortifications. But Elizabeth Queene of England, solicited by the Nobles of Scotland that embraced the reformed religion to side with them, by her puissance and wisdome effected, that both they returned into France, and these their fortifications were laied level with the ground, and Scotland ever since hath been freed from the French.

Where this *Forth* groweth more and more narrow, it had in the midst of it the citie *Caer Guidi*, as *Bede* noteth, which now may seeme to be the Island named *Inch-Keith*. Whether this were that *VICTORIA* which *Ptolomee* mentioneth, I will not stand to prove: although a man may beleve, that the Romans turned this *Guidi* into *Victoria*, as well as the Isle *Guith* or *Wight* into *Videssus* or *Vesla*: certes, seeing both these Islands bee dis severed from the shore, the same reason of the name will hold well in both languages. For *Ninius* hath taught us, that *Guith* in the British tongue betokeneth a separation. More within, upon the same *Forth* is situate *Abercorn*, in *Bede*s time a famous Monasterie, which now by the gracious favour of King James the sixth, giveth unto James *Hamilton* the title of the Earle of *Abercorn*. And fast beside it standeth *Blacknesse Castle*; and beneath it Southward, the ancient citie *LINDUM*, whereof *Ptolomee* maketh mention: which the better learned as yet call *Linlithquo*, commonly *Lithquo*, beautified and set out with a verie faire house of the Kings, a goodly Church, and a fishfull lake; of which lake it may seeme to have assumed that name: for *Lin*, as I have already shewed, in the British tongue soundeth as much as a *Lake*. A Sheriffe it had in times past by inheritance out of the family of the *Hamiltons* of *Peyle*: and now in our dayes it hath for the first Earle, Sir *Alexander Levingston*, whom King James the sixth raised from the dignitie of a Baron, wherein his Ancestours had flourished a long time, to the honour of an Earle: like as within a while after he promoted Mark *Ker*, Baron of *Newbottle* afore said, to the title of Earle of *Lothien*.

Bbbb

SEL-

Lyth.

Caer Guidi.

Earle of Abercorn.
Black-nesse.

Linlithquo.

Earle of Linlithquo.

Earle of Lothien.

SELGOVÆ.

Beneath the GADENI, toward the South and West, where now are the small territories of *Lidedale, Eufdale, Eskdale, Annandale*, and *Nidesdale*, so called of little rivers running through them, which all lose themselves in *Solway Frith*, dwelt in ancient times the SELGOVÆ; the reliques of whose name seeme unto mee, whether unto others I know not, to remaine in that name *Solway*.

Lidedale.

Hepburnes
Earles of
Bothwell.Brakenfey,
Backlugh,
Eufdale,
Uzellum;Eskdale:
Horefi.

In *Lidedale* there riseth aloft *Armitage*, so called, because it was in times past dedicated to a solitarie life; now it is a very strong Castle, which belonged to the *Hepburns*, who draw their originall from a certaine Englishman a prisoner, whom the Earle of March, for delivering him out of a danger, greatly enriched. These were Earles of *Bothwell*, and a long time by the right of inheritance Admirals of Scotland. But by a sister of James Earle of *Bothwell*, the last of the *Hepburns*, married unto John Prior of *Coldingham*, base sonne to King James the fifth (who begat too too many bastards) the title and inheritance both came unto his son. Hard by is *Brakenfey*, the habitation of the warlike family of *Backlugh*, surnamed *Scot*; beside many little piles or forts of militarie men everie where. In *Eufdale*, I would deeme by the affinity of the name, that old *Uzellum*, mentioned by *Prolomee*, stood by the river *Eske*.

In *Eskdale* some are of opinion that the *HORESTI* dwelt, into whose borders *Julius Agricola*, when he had subdued the Britans inhabiting this tract, brought the Roman armie: especially if we read *Horefi* in stead of *Horesti*. For *Ar-Ese* in the British tongue betokeneth a place by the river *Eske*. As for *Esica* in *Eskdale*, I have spoken of it before in England, and there is no cause wherefore I should iterate the same.

ANNANDALE.

Annandale.

Lough Maban.

The Jonstons.

The Stewarrie
of Annandale.

The Brusfes.

Unto this on the West side adjoyneth ANNANDALE, that is, *The vale by the river Annan*; into which the access by land is very difficult. The places of greater note herein are these: a castle by *Lough-Maban*, three parts whereof are environed with water, and strongly walled; and the towne *Annandale*, at the very mouth almost of the river *Annan*: which lost all the glorie and beautie it had, by the English warre in the reigne of Edward the sixth.

In this territorie, the *Jonstons* are men of greatest name; a kindred even bred to warre: betweene whom and the *Maxwells* there hath beene professed an open enmitie over long, even to deadly feud and blood-shed: which *Maxwells* by right from their ancestors, have the rule of this Seneschallie, for so it is accounted. This vale *Eadgar* King of Scots, after hee was restored to his kingdome by auxiliarie forces out of England, gave in consideration and reward of good service, unto Robert *Bruse* or *Brus* Lord of *Cliveland* in Yorke-shire; who with the good favour of the King bestowed it upon Robert his younger sonne, when himselfe would not serve the King of Scots in his warres. From him flowered the *Brusfes* Lords of *Annandale*, of whom Robert *Brus* married Isabel, the daughter of William King of Scots by the daughter of Robert *Avenall*: his sonne likewise, Robert the third of that name, wedded the daughter of David Earle of Huntingdon and of *Gariob*: whose sonne Robert, surnamed *The Noble*, when the issue of Alexander the third King of Scots failed, challenged in his mothers right the Kingdome of Scotland, before

before Edward the first King of England, (as the direct and superiour Lord of the Kingdome of Scotland (so the English give it out) or, an honourable Arbitrarour (for so say the Scots) as being neerer in proximitie, in degree and blood, to King *Alexander* the third and *Margaret*, daughter to the King of Norway, although hee were the sonne by a second sister: who soon after resigning up his own right, granted and gave over to his son Robert *Brus* Earle of *Carrick*, and to his heires (I speak out of the verie originall) all the right and claime, which he had or might have to the Kingdome of Scotland. But the action and suit went with John *Balliol*, who sued for his right, as descended of the eldest sister, although in a degree farther off: and sentence was given in these words, For that the person more remote in the second degree descending in the first line, is to bee preferred before a neerer in a second line, in the succession of an inheritance that cannot be parted. Howbeit, the said Robert, sonne to the Earle of *Carrick*, by his own vertue at length recovered the Kingdome unto himself, and established it to his posteritie. A Prince, who as he flourished notably in regard of the glorious ornaments of his noble acts, so he triumphed as happily with invincible fortitude and courage, over forme that so often crossed him.

NIDISDALL.



Close unto *Annandale* on the West side lyeth *NIDISDALE*, sufficiently furnished with corne-fields and pastures; so named of the river *Nid*, which in *Prolomee* is wrongly written *NOBIUS*, for *NODIUS* or *NIDIUS*: of which name there bee other rivers in Britaine, full of shallow foords and muddie shelves, like as this *Nid* is also. It springeth out of the Lake *Lagh-Cure*, by which flourished *CORDA*, a towne of the *Selgovæ*. He taketh his course first by *Saughuera* Castle of the *Creightons*, who a long time kept a great port, as enjoying the dignitie of the Barons of *Saughuera*, and the authoritie besides of hereditarie Sheriffs of *Nidisdale*: then by *Morton*, which gave title of Earle to some of the family of *Douglas*: out of which others of that surname have their mansion and abiding at *Drumlanrig*, by the same river: neere unto the mouth whereof standeth *Dunfreys*, betweene two hills, the most flourishing towne of this tract: which hath to shew also an old Castle in it, famous for making of woollen clothes, and remarkable for the murder of John *Commin*, the mightiest man for manred and retinew in all Scotland; whom Robert *Brus*, for feare he should foreclose his way to the kingdome, ranne quite through with his sword in the Church, and soon obtained his pardon from the Pope, for committing that murder in a sacred place. Neerer unto the mouth, *Solway*, a little village retaineth still somewhat of the old name of *Selgovæ*. Upon the verie mouth is situate *Caer Laverock*, which *Prolomee* I suppose called *CARBANTORIUM*, accounted an imprenable fort, when King Edward the first, accompanied with the floure of English Nobilitie, besieged and hardly wonne it: but now it is a weake dwelling house of the Barons of *Maxwell*, who being men of an ancient and noble lineage, were a long time Wardens of these West marches, and of late advanced by marriage with the daughter one of the heires of the Earle of *Morton*; whereby John Lord *Maxwell* was declared Earle of *Morton*: as also by the daughter and heire of *Hereis* Lord *Toricles*, whom I. a younger sonne took to wife, and obtained by her the title of Baron *Hereis*. Moreover, in this vale by the Lake side lyeth *Glencarn*, whence the *Cunninghams*, of whom I am to write more in place convenient, bare a long time the title of Earle.

This *Nidisdale*, together with *Annandale*, nourisheth a warlike kind of men, who have beene infamous for robberies and depredations: for they dwell upon *Solway Frith*, a fouldable arme of the sea at low waters, through which they made many times outrodes into England for to fetch in booties, and in which the inhabitants thereabout on both sides with pleasant pastime and delightfull fight on horse-backe

Bbbb 2

The river Nid;

Corda.

Creightons
Barons de Saughuera.
Earles of Morton.

Dunfreys;

Caer Laverock.

Barons Hereis;
Glencarn.

Salmons;

with

The behaviour
of Scottish
borderers.

with speares hunt Salmons, whereof there is abundance. What manner of cattle-
stealers these be, that inhabite these vales in the marches of both kingdomes, John
Lesley, himselfe a Scottish man, and Bishop of Rosse, will tell you in these words. They
go forth in the night by troops out of their own borders, through desert by-waies, and ma-
ny winding cranks. All the day time they refresh their horses, and recreate their owne
strength in lurking places appointed before hand, untill they be come thither at length, in
the dark night, where they would be. When they have laid hold of a bootie, back again they
returne home likewise by night, through blinde waies onely, and fetching many a compassse
about. The more skilfull any leader or guide is, so passe through those wild desarts, crooked
turnings, and steep downe-falls, in the thickest mists and deepest darknesse, hee is held in
greater reputation, as one of an excellling wit. And so craftie and wily these are, that sel-
dome or never they forgo their bootie, and suffer it to be taken out of their hands, unless it
happen otherwhiles that they be caught by their adversaries following continually after,
and tracing them directly by their footing, according as quick-fencing Slugh-bounds doe
lead them. But say they be taken, so faire spoken they are and eloquent, so manie sugred
words they have at will, sweetly to plead for them, that they are able to move the Judges
and adversaries both, be they never so austere and severe, if not to mercie, yet to admira-
tion, and some commiseration withall.

NOVANTES, GALLOWAY.



From Niddale as you goe on Westward, the NOVANTES inha-
bited in the vales, all that tract which runneth out far and wide to-
ward the West, between the sea and Dunbritain Friith, or Chyd-
forth: yet so indented and hollowed with nookes and creekes,
that here and there it is drawne into a narrow roome: and then
again in the verie utmost skirt it openeth and spreadeth it selfe
broad at more libertie: whereupon some have called it the
CHERSONESUS, that is, The Biland of the NOVANTES. But at this day their coun-
treie containeth Galloway, Carick, Kyle, and Cunningham.

Galloway.

Galloway, in the Latine Writers of the middle time Gaelwallia and Gallovidia, so
called of the Irish, who in times past dwelt there, and terme themselves short in their
owne language Gael, is a countrey rising up everie where with hills, that are better
for feeding of cattell than bearing of corne: the inhabitants practise fishing, as well
within the sea lying round about them, as in little rivers, and the Loches or meeres in
everie place standing full of water at the foot of the hills: out of which in Septem-
ber they take in Weeles and Weere-nets, an incredible number of most sweet and
favourite eeles, whereby they make no lesse gain than others do by their little nagges, E
which for being well limmed, fast knit, and strongly made for to endure travails, are
much in request and bought from hence. Among these, the first place that offereth
it selfe by the river DEA, mentioned in Ptolomee, which keeping the name still full and
whole, they call Dee, is Kircoubricht, the most commodious port of this coast, & the
second Stewartie of Scotland, which belongeth also to the Maxwells: then Cardines,
a fort set upon a craggie and high rocke by the river Fleet, and fenced with strong
walls. Neere unto it the river Ken, corruptly read in Ptolomee IENA, runneth into
the sea: after it is Wigton, an haven towne with a narrow entrance unto it, between
the two rivers, Bluidnoo and Crea, which also is counted a Sherifdome, over which
Agnew is Sheriffe. In times past it had for Earle Archibald Douglass, renowned in
the French warre, and at this day, by the favour of King James the sixth, John Lord
Fleming, who deriveth his pedigree from the ancient Earles of Wigton.

Earles of Wig-
ton.

Leucopibia.

Neere unto this Ptolomee placed the Citie LEUCOPIA, which I know not, to
say truth, where to seeke. Yet the place requireth that it should be that Episcopall
seat of Ninian, which Bede calleth Candida Casa, and the English and Scottish in the
verie

Horn a house or
habitation.
* Or Copier.

A verie samie sense whit-berne: what say you then if Ptolomee after his manner transla-
ted that name in Greek Λευκωπία, that is, white-houses (in stead whereof the * Tran-
scribers have thrust upon us Leucopibia) which the Britans tearmed Candida Casa. In
this place Ninia or Ninian the Britan, an holy man, the first that instructed the
South-Picts in Christian faith, in the reigne of the Emperour Theodosius the younger,
had his seat, and built a Church consecrated to the memorie of Saint Martin, after a
manner unusuall among the Britans, as Bede saith, who wrote that the English in his
time held this country, and when the number of the faithfull Christians multiplied, an
Episcopall See was erected at this Candida Casa. A little higher there is a Bi-land
B having the sea insinuating it selfe on both sides with two Bayes, that by a narrow
neck it is adjoined to the firme land: and this is properly called CHERSONESUS, and
PROMONTORIUM NOVANTUM, commonly, the Mull of Galloway.

Beyond this Northward, there is a Bay taking a great compassse, and full of Ilands,
into which very many rivers on everie side doe out-lade themselves. But first of all,
from the verie cape or top of the Promontarie is ABRANUS, which being set a lit-
tle out of his own place, is so called of Ptolomee, for Aber-Ruanus, that is, The mouth
of Ruan. For at this day that river is named Rian, and the lake out of which it flow-
eth, Lough-Rian, exceeding full of Herrings and Stone-fishes.

This Galloway had in times past Princes and Lords over it: of whom the first re-
corded in Chronicles was Fergus, in the reigne of Henric the first, King of England,
who gave for his Armes, A Lion rampant Arg, crowned Or in a shield Azure: who af-
ter many troubles that he had stirred, was driven to this exigent by King Malcolm,
that he gave his sonne Uubred to the King for an hostage, and himselfe wearie of this
world, tooke the habit of a Chanon at Holy Rood house in Edinburgh. As for Uu-
ubred, Gilbert his younger brother tooke him prisoner in battaile, and when hee had
cut out his tongue, and plucked his eyes forth of his head, he cruelly bereaved him
both of life and inheritance. But within some few yeeres, when Gilbert was dead,
Uubreds sonne recovered his fathers inheritance, who of a sister of William Morvill
Constable of Scotland, begat Alan Lord of Galloway, and Constable of Scotland: D
This Alan, by Margaret the eldest daughter of David Earle of Huntingdon, had Der-
colgilda wife to John Balliol, and the mother of John Balliol King of Scotland, who
coerced with Robert Bru for the Kingdome of Scotland; and by a former wife,
as it seemeth, hee had Helen, married to Roger Quincy Earle of Winchester, who
thereby was Constable of Scotland, like as William Ferrars of Groby, the Nephew
of the said Roger by a daughter and one of the heires. But these Englishmen soone
lost their inheritance in Scotland, as also the dignitie of Constable: which the Com-
mons Earles of Bucquan, descended likewise from a daughter of Roger Quincie, obtai-
ned, untill it was translated unto the Earls of Arroll. But the title of the Lords of Gal-
loway fell afterward to the family of the Douglasses.

Lords of Gal-
loway.

Constables of
Scotland.

CARRICTA, CARRICT.



Now followeth Carriit upon Dunbritain Friith, faire to be scene
with fresh pastures; supplied both by land and sea with com-
modities abundantly. In this province Ptolomee placed RARI-
GONIUM a Creeke, and RERIGONIUM a Towne. For which
BERIGONIUM is read in a verie ancient copie of Ptolomee, prin-
ted at Rome in the yeere 1480. so that wee cannot but verily
thinke it was that which now is called Bargeney. A Lord it hath
out of the family of the Kennedies, which came forth of Ireland in the reigne of Ro-
bert Bru, and is in this tract of high birth, spread into many branches, and of great
power. The chiefe of which linage is Earle of Cassile: for this is the name of a
Castle wherein he dwelleth by the river Dun: upon the banke whereof he hath also
another

Berigonium,
Bargenie.

another Castle, named *Dunmure*; and he is the hereditarie Bailiffe of this Country. A For this *Carriſh*, together with *Kyle* and *Cunningham*, are counted the three *Bailleries* of Scotland, because they that governe these with an ordinarie power and jurisdiction are called *Baillives*, by a tearme that came up in the middle times, and among the Greeks, Sicilians, and Frenchmen signifieth a *Conſervator* or *Protector*. But in the age aforegoing *Carriſh* had Earles: for, to say nothing of *Gilberts of Galloway*, sonne unto whom King William gave all *Carriſh* to bee possessed for ever, wee read that *Adam of Kilconath* was about the yeere 1270. Earle of *Carriſh*, and died serving in the Holy-land: whose onely daughter *Martha* fell extremely in love with *Robert Bru*, a beautifull young Gentleman, as she saw him hunting, and thereupon B made him her husband, advanced him with the title of Earle, and with possessions: unto whom she bare *Robert Bru*, that most renowned King of Scots, from whom the royall line of the Kings is descended. But the title of the Earle of *Carriſh* being left for a time to the younger sonnes of the family of *Bru*, afterwards among other honours encreased the stile of the Princes of Scotland.

KYLE.

More inward from *Clids-forth* followeth *KYLE*, plentifull small C things, and as well inhabited. In *Bedes Ausharium* it is called *Campus Cyel*, that is, *The Field Cyel*, and *Coil*: where it is recorded, That *Eadbert King of Northumberland annexed this with other territories unto his owne Kingdome*. In *Ptolomees* time there was known a place here named *Vidogara*, haply *Aire*, which is a *Sherisdome*, hath a townlet also of merchandise, and a well known port by a little river of the same name. Touching which I can thinke of no better thing to write, than these verses sent unto mee from Master *John Jonſoun*.

Æ R A, five Æ R I A.

*Parva urbs, aſt ingens animus in fortibus heret,
Inferior nulli nobilitate virum.
Aeris è campis haurit puriſſima cælum,
Incubas & miti mollior aura ſolo.
Aeria hinc, non Æra prius credo illa vocata eſt,
Cum duris quid enim mollia juris habent &
Infera cum ſuperis quod ſi componere fas eſt,
Aurea fors dici debuit illa prius.*

A City ſmall, but yet great mindes in valiant bodies reſt,
For nobleneſſe of Gentlemen matching the very beſt.
Out of the fields what aire it drawes is right pure, freſh, and kinde,
The ſoile is milde, and upon it there breathes a gentle winde.
Hence I ſuppoſe Æ R I A firſt, not Æra call'd it was,
For what have elements to doe with matters hard as braſſe &
But to compare low things with high if that I may be bold,
Then haply well it ſhould have beene nam'd A U R E A of old.

Besides the river *Aire* there be other two riverets that water this little territorie, F having many villages ſcattering along their bankes: namely, *Longar*, neere unto which the *Caufords*, and *Cefnocke*, by which the *Cambells*, families (in this tract) of good worſhip, dwell: upon the banke whereof ſtandeth *Uchiltre* caſtle, the ſeat of the *Stewarts* that are of the blood royall, as who iſſued from the Dukes of *Albanie*, and

Earles of Car-
rick.
Booke of Mal-
roſſe.

Aano 759.

A and thereupon are the Barons of *Uchiltrey*, out of which houſe was that noble *Robert Stewart*, who kept continually with the Prince of *Condie*, as an inſeparable companion, and was with him ſlain in France in battaile. The government of *Kyle* belongeth by an heritable right to the *Cambells* of *Louden*, as Bailiffe thereof.

CUNNINGHAM.



CUNNINGHAM adjoining to *Kyle* on the Eaſt ſide and the North, butteth upon the ſame Forth ſo cloſe, that it reſtraineth the breadth thereof, which hitherto lay out and ſpread at large. The name, if one interpret it, is as much as the *Kings Habitation*: by which a man may gheſſe how commodious and pleaſant it is. This territorie is watered with *Irwin*, that divideth it from *Kyle*: at the ſpring-head well neere whereof, *Kilmarnock* ſheweth it ſelfe, the dwelling place of the Barons *Boids*: of whom in the reigne of James the firſt, *Thomas*, by a prosperous gale of Court favour, was advanced to the authoritie of Regent or *Vice-Roy*, *Robert* his ſonne to the dignitie of Earle of *Arran*, and marriage with the Kings ſiſter. But ſoone after, when the ſaid gale came about, and blew contrarie, they were judged enemies to the State: *Robert* alſo had his wiſe taken from him, and given unto *James Hamilton*; their goods were confiscate, fortune made a game of them, and when they had loſt all they died in exile. Howbeit their poſteritie recovered the ancient honour of Barons, and honorably enjoy it at this day. At the mouth of the river *Irwin*, ſtandeth *Irwin* a Burrough, with an haven ſo barred up with ſhelves of ſand, and ſo ſhallow withall, that it can beare none other veſſels but ſmall barks and boates: *Ardrifan* alſo, a pile belonging to the *Montgomeries*, more above ſtandeth higher over the Creeke: this is a verie ancient and famous family as any other, who have to ſhew for witneſſe of their warlike prowefſe, *Pounnny*, a fort built with the ranſome mony of *Sir Henrie Percie*, ſurnamed *Hot-Spur*, whom D I. *Montgomerie* with his owne hand tooke priſoner in the battaile at *Otterburne*, and led away captive. Not farre from *Ardrifan* is *Largie*, embued with the blood of the Norwegians by King *Alexander* the third. From whence, as you follow the ſhore bending and giving in, you meet with *Eglington*, a faire caſtle, which was the poſſeſſion of certaine Gentlemen highly deſcended of the ſame ſurname: from whom it came by marriage unto the *Montgomeries*, who thereby received the title of Earles of *Eglington*. But whence the ſaid ſurname ſhould come, a man can hardly tell: this I know, that out of *Normandie* it came into England, and that divers families there were of the ſame name: but that in *Effex*, from which *Sir Thomas Montgomerie*, Knight of the order of the Garter, deſcended, in the reigne of *Edward* the fourth E gave Armes a little different from theſe.

This noble linage is faire and farre ſpread, and out of thoſe of *Geuan* was that *Gabriel de Lorges*, called Earle of *Montgomerie*, Captain of the guard of Scots (which Charles the fifth King of France inſtituted for defence of his owne perſon, and his ſucceſſors, in teſtimonie of their fidelitie, and his love toward them) who in running at tilt ſlew *Henrie* the ſecond King of France, by occaſion that a broken ſplint of his ſpeare, where the helmet chanced to be open, entred at his eye, and pierced into his brain; and afterwards in that civill war, wherein all France was in a broile, whiles he took part with the Proteſtants, he was apprehended and beheaded. But the *Cunninghams* in this tract are counted to be the greater and more numerous family, the chiefe F whereof, enjoying the honour of Earle of *Glencarn*, dwelleth at *Kilmarnock*, and fetcheth his deſcent out of England, and from an Engliſh Gentleman, who, together with other, killed *Thomas* Archbiſhop of *Canterburie*. How true this is I know not, but they ground it haply upon a probable conjecture, taken from an Archbiſhops pall, which the *Cunninghams* give in their coat of Armes.

Montgomerie
Earles of Eg-
lington.

Cunningham
Earles of Glen-
carne.

ISLE

ISLE GLOTTA, OR ARRAN.



In the fight of *Cunningham*, among sundry other Ilands, *GLOTTA*, the Isle mentioned by *Amorine* the Emperour, beareth up his head, in the very *Forib* and salt water of the river *Glotta*, or *Cluyd*, called at this day *Arran*, of a castle bearing the same name. Inwardly it mounteth up altogether with high rising hills, at the bottome and foot whereof, along the shore it is well inhabited. The first Earle hereof, that I can read of, was *Robert*

Earles of Arran.

Boide, whose wife and Earldome together, when *Boide* was banished the realme, *James L. Hamilton*, as I said erewhile, obtained, and his posteritie enjoyed the same Earldome, saving that of late *Sir James Steward*, appointed guardian to *James Hamilton* Earle of *Arran*, when hee was so defective in understanding that he could not manage his estate, tooke this title in the right of being guardian.

Rothsay Dukedom.

Neere unto this standeth *Buibe*, so called of a little religious Cell which *Brendan* founded (for so is a little Cell tearmed in the Scottish tongue.) In this Iland is *Rothsay* Castle, which giveth the title of Dukedom unto the King of Scots eldest sonne, who is borne Prince of Scotland, Duke of *Rothsay*, and *Seneschall* of Scotland, since time that King *Robert* the third invested *Robert* his eldest sonne Duke of *Rothsay*, the first in Scotland that ever was created Duke. With which title also *Queene Marie* honoured *Henrie Lord Darly* before she tooke him to be her husband. Then shew themselves *Hellan*, sometimes called *Hellan Leneow*, that it, as *John Fordon* interpreteth it, *The Saints Ilands*, and *Hellan Tinoc*, that is, *The Swines Iland*, with a great number of other Ilands of lesse note and reckoning in the same *Forib*.

DAMNII, CLUYDS DALE, &c.



Beyond the *NOVANTES*, more inward, by the river *Glotta* or *Cluyd*, and farther still even to the verie East sea, dwelt intimes past the *DAMNII*, in those countries, if I have any judgement, (for in things so farre remote from our remembrance, and in so thick a mist of obscuritie, who can speake of certaintie?) which are now called *Cluydsdale*, the Baronic of *Renfraw*, *Lennox*, *Sirivelmschire*, *Menieib*, and *Fife*.

Earles of Crawford.

Neere unto the head of *Cluyd* in *Crawford Moore*, among the wilde wafts, certaine husbandmen of the countrey, after great store of violent raine, happened to finde certaine small peeces like scrapings of gold, which have this long time given great hope of much riches, but most of all in our dayes, since that *Sir Beamis Bulmer* undertooke with great endeavour to finde out here a Mine of gold. Certes there is *Azur* gotten forth everie day, without any paines in manner at all. Now the Castle of *Crawford*, together with the title of the Earle of *Crawford*, was by *Robert* the second, King of Scots, given unto *Sir James Lindsey*, who by a single combate performed with *Baron Welles* an Englishman, won high commendation for his valour. These *Lindseys* have deserved passing well of their country, and are of ancient nobilitie, ever since that *Sir William Lindsey* married one of the heires of *William of Lancaster* Lord of *Kandale* in England, whose neice in the third degree of lineall descent, was married into the most honourable family of *Coucey* in France.

A France. *Cluyd*, after hee hath from his spring head with much struggling got out Northward by *Baron Somervils* house, receiveth unto him from out of the West the river *Duglasse* or *Douglass*, so called of a blackish or greenish water that it hath: which river communicateth his name both to the vale through which hee runneth, called *Douglasdale*, and also to *Douglass* castle therein: which name that castle likewise hath imparted unto the family of the *Douglases*. Which I assure you is very ancient, but most famous ever since that *Sir James Douglass* stucke verie close at all times as a most fast friend unto King *Robert Bruce*, and was readie alwaies with singular courage, resolution, and wisdom, to assist him, claiming the kingdome in most troublesome and dangerous times: and whom the said King *Robert* charged at his death to carrie his heart to *Jerusalem*, that hee might bee discharged of his vow made to goe to the Holy-land. In memoriall whereof the *Douglases* have inserted in their Coat of Armes a mans heart. From which time this family grew up to that power and greatnesse, and namely, after that King *David* the second had created *William* Earle of *Douglass*, that they after a sort awed the Kings themselves. For at one time well neere there were fixe Earles of them, namely, of this *Douglass*, of *Angus*, of *Ormund*, of *Wigton*, of *Murray*, and of *Morton*: among whom, the Earle of *Wigton*, through his martiall prowesse and desert, obtained at the hands of *Charles* the seventh king of France, the title of Duke of *Tourain*, and left the same to two Earles of *Douglass* his heires after him.

Baronic Somervils, Douglass.

Above the confluence of *Douglass* and *Cluyd* is *Lanric*, the hereditarie Sheriffdom of the *Hamiltons*, who for their name are beholden unto *Hamilton* castle, which standeth somewhat higher upon *Cluyds* banke, in a fruitfull and passing pleasant place; but they referre their originall, as they have a tradition, to a certaine Englishman surnamed *Hampion*, who having taken part with *Robert Bruce*, received from him faire lands in this tract. Much increase of their wealth and estate came by the bounteous hand of King *James* the third, who bestowed in marriage upon *Sir James Hamilton* his own eldest sister, whom he had taken perforce from the Lord *Boide* her husband, together with the Earldome of *Arran*; but of honours and dignities by the States of the kingdome, who after the death of King *James* the fifth, ordained *James Hamilton* grandionne to the former *James*, Regent of Scotland, whom *Henrie* also the second, King of France, advanced to be Duke of *Chateau Heraldin Poitou*: as also by King *James* the sixth, who honoured his son *John* with the title of Marquesse of *Hamilton*, which honourable title was then first brought into Scotland.

Sheriffdom of Lanric.

Marquesse Hamilton.

The river *Glotta* or *Cluyd* runneth from *Hamilton* by *Bothwell*, which glorieth in the Earles thereof, namely, *John Ramsey*, whose greatnesse with King *James* the third was excessive, but pernicious both to himselfe and the King: and the *Hepburns*, whom I have already spoken of, & so streight forward with a readie stream through *Glasgow*, in ancient times past a Bishops seat: but discontinued a great while, untill that King *William* restored it up againe: but now it is an Archbishops See, and an Universitie, which Bishop *Turnbull*, after hee had in a pious and religious intent built a colledge in the yeere 1554. first founded. This *Glasgow* is the most famous town of merchandise in this tract: for pleasant site, and apple trees, and other like fruit trees much commended, having also a verie faire bridge supported with eight arches. Of which towne I. *Jonstoun* thus verified.

Earles of Bothwell.

Non te Pomificum luxu, non Insula tantum
Ornavit, diri quæ tibi causa mali.
Gloriade quantum decorant te, Glasgwa, Musæ,
Quæ celsum attollunt clara sub astra caput.
GLOTTA decus rerum, piscosis nobilis undis,
Fœnitimi recreat jugera læta soli.
Ast Glottæ decus, & vicinis gloria terris
Glasgwa fecundat flumine cuncta suos.

The

The sumptuous port of Bishops great bath not adorn'd thee so,
Nor mitre rich, that hath bene cause of thine accursed woe,
As *Cluyds* Muses grace thee now, O *Glasgow* towne: for why?
They make thee beare thy head aloft up to the starrie skie.
Cluyd the beautie of the world, for fishfull streame renown'd,
Refresheth all the neighbour fields that lye about it round:
But *Glasgow* beautie is to *Cluyd*, and grace to countries nye,
And by the streames that flow from thence, all places fructifie.

Reinfray Bar-
onie.

Along the hithermore banke of *Cluid* lyeth the Baronie of *Reinfray*, so called of B the principall towne, which may seeme to bee *RANDVARA* in *Ptolomee*, by the river *Carbairi*, that hath the Baron of *Carbairi* dwelling upon it, carrying the same surname, and of ancient nobilitie: neere unto which (for this little province can shew a goodly breed of nobilitie) there border *Cruckston*, the seat in times past of the Lords of *Darley*, from whom by right of marriage it came to the Earles of *Lennox*, whence *Henrie* the Father of King *James* the sixth was called Lord *Darley*; *Halkead*, the habitation of the Barons of *Ros*, descended originally from English blood, as who fetch their pedigree from that *Robert Ros* of *Warke*, who long since left England, and came under the allegiance of the King of Scots: *Pasley*, sometimes a famous Monasterie founded by *Alexander* the second of that name, high Steward of Scotland, which for a gorgeous Church, and rich furniture was inferiour to few: but now, by the beneficiall favour of King *James* the sixth, it yeeldeth both dwelling place, and title of Baron to Lord *Claud Hamilton*, a younger sonne of Duke *Charles Herald*: and *Sempill*, the Lord whereof Baron *Sempill*, by ancient right is Sheriffe of this Baronie. But the title of Baron of *Reinfray*, by a peculiar priviledge doth appertaine unto the Prince of Scotland.

Barons de Ros.

Pasley.

Baron Sempill.

LENNOX.



Long the other banke of *Cluyd* above *Glasgow*, runneth forth *Levinia* or *LENNOX* Northward, among a number of hills close couched one by another, having that name of the river *Levin*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *LELANONIUS*, and runneth into *Cluyd* out of *Logh Lomund*, which spreadeth it selfe here under the mountaines twenty miles long and eight miles broad, passing well stored with varietie of fish: but most especially with a peculiar fish that is to be found no where else (they call it *Pollac*) as also with Islands, concerning which manie fables have bene forged, and those rise among the common people.

As touching an Iland here that floateth and waveth too and fro, I list not to make question thereof. For what should let, but that a lighter bodie, and spongyous with all in manner of a pumice stone, may swimme above the water? and *Plinie* writeth, how in the Lake *Vadimon* there be Islands full of grasse, and covered over with rushes and reeds, that float up and downe. But I leave it unto them that dwell neerer unto this place, and better know the nature of this Lake, whether this old *Distichon* of our *Necham* be true or no:

*Diatur fluvio Albania, saxea ligna
Das Lomund multa frigiditate potens.*

With rivers Scotland is enrich'd, and *Lomund* there a Lake
So cold of nature is, that stickes it quickly stones doth make.

Round about the edge of this Lake there bee fishers cottages, but nothing else memorable, unlesse it be *Kilmoronoc*, a proper fine house of the Earles of *Cassides* on the

A the East side of it, which hath a most pleasant prospect into the said Lake. But at the confluence where *Levin* emptieth it selfe out of the Lake into *Cluyd*, standeth the old Citie called *Al-Cluyd*. *Bede* noteth that it signified (in whose language I know not) as much as *The rocke Cluyd*. True it is, that *Ar-Cluyd* signifieth in the British tongue, upon *Cluyd*, or upon the rocke; and *Cluyd* in ancient English founded the same that a *Rocke*. The succeeding posteritie called this place *Dunbritton*, that is, *The Britans towne* (and corruptly by a certaine transposition of letters, *Dunbarton*) because the Britans held it longest against the Scots, Picts, and Saxons. For it is the strongest of all the castles in Scotland by naturall situation, towering up on a rough, craggie, and two-headed rocke, at the verie meeting of the rivers in a Greene plaine. In one of the tops or heads abovesaid, there standeth up a aloftie watch-tower or Keep: on the other, which is the lower, there are sundrie strong bulwarks. Betweene these two tops on the North side, it hath one onely ascent, by which hardly one by one can passe up, and that with a labour by grees or steps, cut out aslope travers the rocke. In steed of ditches, on the West side serveth the river *Levin*; on the South, *Cluyd*; and on the East a boggie flat, which at everie tide is wholly covered over with waters; and on the North side the verie upright steepness of the place is a most sufficient defence. Certain remaines of the Britans, presuming of the naturall strength of this place, and their owne manhood, who, as *Gildas* writeth, *gat themselves a place of refuge in high mountaines and hills, steep and naturally fenced, as it were, with rampires and ditches, in most thick woods and forests, in rocks also of the sea*, stood out and defended themselves here, after the Romans departure, for three hundred yeeres, in the midst of their enemies. For in *Bedes* time, as himself writeth, it was the best fortified citie of the Britans. But in the yeere 756. *Eadbert* King of Northumberland, and *Oeng* King of the Picts, with their joint forces enclosed it round about by siege, and brought it to such a desperate extremitie, that it was rendred unto them by composition. Of this place the territorie round about it is called the *Sherifdome of Dunbarton*, and hath had the Earles of *Lennox* this long time for their Sheriffes, by birth-right and inheritance.

Al-Cluyd.

Dunbritton.
Britannodunum.

R. Hoveden.

Earles of Lennox.

Steward.

A troupe of
Scots in
France.

As touching the Earles of *Lennox* themselves, to omit those of more ancient and obscure times, there was one *Duncane* Earle of *Lennox* in the reigne of *Robert* the second, who died and left none but daughters behinde him. Of whom one was married to *Alan Steward*; descended from *Robert*, a younger sonne of *Walter* the second of that name, High Steward of Scotland; and brother likewise to *Alexander Steward* the second, from whom the noblest and royall race of Scotland hath bene propagated. This surname *Steward* was given unto that most noble family, in regard of the honourable office of the Stewardshippe of the kingdome, as who had the charge of the Kings revenues. The said *Alan* had issue *John Earle of Lennox*, and *Robert*, Captain of that companie of Scottisshmen at *Armes*, which *Charles* the sixth K. of France first instituted, in lieu of some recompence unto the Scottissh nation, which by their valour had deserved passing well of the kingdom of France, who also by the same Prince for his vertues sake was endow'd with the Seigniorie of *Aubigny* in *Auvergne*. *John* had a sonne named *Matthew* Earle of *Lennox*, who wedded the daughter of *James Hamilton* by *Marion* daughter to King *James* the second; on whom he begat *John Earle of Lennox*: hee taking armes to deliver King *James* the fifth out of the hands of the *Douglases* and the *Hamiltons*, was slaine by the Earle of *Arran* his Unkle on the mothers side. This *John* was father to *Matthew* Earle of *Lennox*, who having sustained sundrie troubles in France and Scotland, found fortune more friendly to him in England, through the favour of King *Henrie* the eighth, considering that hee bestowed upon him in marriage his Neice, with faire lands. By the meanes of this happie marriage were brought into the world *Henrie* and *Charles*.

Henrie, by *Marie* Queene of Scots, had issue *JAMES* the sixth, King of Britain, by the propitious grace of the eternall God, borne in a most auspicate and lucky houre, to knit and unite in one bodie of an Empire the whole Island of Britaine, divided as well in it selfe, as it was heretofore from the rest of the world, and (as we hope and pray)

James King of
Britaine.

pray) to lay a most sure foundation of an everlasting securitie, for our heires, and the posteritie. As for Charles, he had issue one onely daughter *Arbella*, who above her sexe hath so embraced the studies of the best literature, that therein shee hath profited and proceeded with singular commendation, and is comparable with the excellent Ladies of old time. When Charles was dead, after that the Earledome of *Lennox*, whereof he stood enfeofed, was revoked by Parliamentarie authoritie in the yeere of our Lord 1579. and his Uncle by the fathers side, Robert Bishop of Caithanes, had some while enjoyed this title (in lieu whereof he received at the Kings hands the honour of the Earle of March) King James the sixth conferred the honourable title of Duke of *Lennox* upon *Esme Steward*, sonne to John Lord D' *Aubigny*, younger brother to Mathew aforesaid Earle of *Lennox*, which Lodowic *Esme* his son at this day honourably enioieth. For since the time of Charles the sixth, there were of this line Lords of *Aubigny* in France, the said Robert before named, and Bernard or Eberard under Charles the eighth & Lewis the twelfth, who is commended with great praise unto posteritie by P. *Jovius*, for his noble acts most valourously exploited in the warre of Naples, a most firme and trustie companion of King Henrie the seventh when he entred into England. Who used for his Emprise or devise, a Lion betweene buckles, with this Mot, *DISTANTIA JUNGIT*: for that by his means the Kingdomes of France and of Scotland, severed and dis-joined so farre in distance, were by a straighter league of friendship conjoynd: like as Robert *Steward* Lord C D' *Aubigny* of the same race, who was Marshall of France under King Lewis the eleventh, for the same cause used the royall Armes of France, with *buckles Or in a border Gueules*: which the Earles and Dukes of *Lennox* have ever since borne quarterly with the Armes of *Steward*.

Lords of Aubigny or Oubigny.

Paradise.

STIRLING Sheriffdome,

UPON *Lennox* North-eastward bordereth the territorie of *STERLING*, so named of the principall towne therein: for fruitfull soile, and numbers of Gentlemen in it, second to no province of Scotland. Here is that narrow land or streight, by which *Dunbrioun Frish* and *Edenborough Frish* (that I may use the termes of this our age) piercing farre into the land out of the West and East Seas, are divided asunder, that they meet n or the one with the other.

Which thing *Julius Agricola*, who marched hitherto and beyond, first observed, and fortified this space betweene with garrisons, so as all the part of Britaine in this side was then in possession of the Romans, and the enemies removed and driven, as it were, into another Island, in so much as *Tacitus* judged right truely, *There was no other bound or limite of Britaine to bee sought for*. Neither verily in the time ensuing, E did either the VALOUR of Armies, or the GLORIE of the Romane name, which scarcely could be stayed, set out the marches of the Empire in this part of the world farther, although with inrodes they other whiles molested and endamaged them. But after this glorious expedition of *Agricola*, when himselfe was called backe, Britaine, as saith *Tacitus*, became *for-let*, neither was the possession kept still thus farre: for the *Caledonian Britans* drave the Romans backe as farre as to the river *Tine*: in so much as *Hadrian*, who came into Britaine in person about the fortieth yeere after, and reformed many things in it, went no farther forward, but gave commandement that the GOD *TERMINUS*, which was wont to give ground unto none, should retire backward out of this place, like as in the East on this side *Euphrates*. Hence it is that P St. *Augustin* wrote in this wise: *GOD TERMINUS, who gave not place to Jupiter, yielded unto the will of Hadrianus, yielded to the ralhnesse of Julian, yielded to the necessitie of Jovian*. In so much as *Hadrian* had enough to doe, for to make a wall of turfe betweene the rivers *Tine* and *Est*, well neere an hundred mijles Southward on this side *Edenborough Frish*.

God Terminus.
Aug. de Civ.
Dei l. 4. c. 29.

But

A But *Antoninus Pius*, who being adopted by *Hadrian* bare his name, stiled thereupon *TITUS AELIUS HADRIANUS ANTONINUS PIUS*, under the conduct of *Lollius Urbicus*, whom he had sent hither Lievtenant, repelled the Northern enemies backe againe beyond *BODOTRIA*, or *Edenborough Forth*, and that by raising another wall of turfe, namely, besides that of *Hadrianus*, as *Capitolinus* writeth. Which wall, that it was reared in this verie place whereof I now speake, and not by *Severus* (as it is commonly thought) I will produce no other witnesse, than two ancient Inscriptions digged up here: of which the one fastned in the wall of an house at *Cader*, sheweth how the second Legion *Augusta*, set up the wall for the space of three miles and more: the other, now in the house of the Earle Marshall at *Dunotyr*, which implieth, that a band of the twentieth Legion *Vistrix* raised the said wall three miles long. But see here the verie inscriptions themselves, as *Servatius Rihelley*, a Gentleman of *Silesia*, who curiously travailed these countries, copied them out for mee.

The wall of Antoninus Pius.

IMP. CÆSARI
T. AELIO HADRI-
ANO ANTONINO.
AUG. PIO. P. P.
VEXILLATIO
LEG. XX. VAL. VIC. F.
PER. MIL. P. III.

IMP. CÆS. TIT. --- IO AELIO
HADRIANO ANTON.
AUG. PIO. P. P. LEG. II. AUG.
PER. M. P. III. D. CIXVIS.

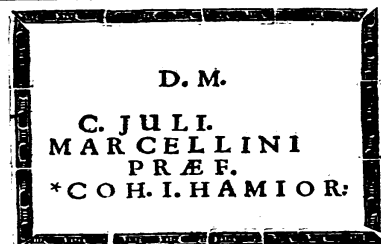
At *Cadir*, where this latter inscription is extant, there is another stone also erected by the second Legion *Augusta*, wherein within a Laurell garland, supported by two little images resembling victorie, are these letters.

LEG.
II
AVG.
FEC.

And in a village called *Mimiaburch*, out of a Ministers house there was removed this inscription into a Gentlemans house, which is there new built out of the ground:

Cccc

D. M.



* Cohors prima Hamiorum.

But when the Northerne nations in the reigne of *Commodus*, having passed once over this wall, had made much waft and spoile in the country, the Emperour *Severus*, as I have already said, repaired this wall of *Hadrian*. Howbeit afterwards the Romans brought eftsoones the country lying betweene, under their subjection. For *Ninius* hath recorded, that *Carausius* under *Dioclerian* strengthened this wall another time, and fortified it with seven castles. Lastly, the Romanes fenced this place (when *Theodosius* the younger was Emperour) under the conduct of *Gallus* of *Ravenna*. Now, saith *Bede*, they made a turfe wall, rearing it not so much with stone as with turfes (as having no cunning Artificer for so great a piece of worke) and the same to no use, betweene two Friths or Armes of the sea, for many miles in length: that where the sense of water was wanting, there by the helpe of a wall they might defend their borders from the invasion of enemies: of which worke, that is to say, a very broad and high wall, a man may see to this day most certaine and evident remains.

This wall began, as the Scots in these dayes give out, at the river *Aven*, that goeth unto *Edenborough Forth*, and having passed over the riveret *Carron*, reacheth unto *Dunbritton*. But *Bede*, as I said erewhile, affirmeth that it beginneth in a place called *Pen vaell*, that is, in the *Picts* language, as much as *The head of the wall*; in the Britans tongue *Pen Gual*, in English *Penwalton*, in Scottish *Cevall*: all which names no doubt are derived from *Vallum* in Latine: and he saith, That place is almost two miles from *Abercurvig* or *Abercurving*. And it endeth, as the common sort thinke, at *Kirk-Patrice*, the native soile (as some writeth) of Saint *Patrick* the Irish-mens Apostle, neere unto *Cluyd*; according to *Bede*, at *Alcluid*; after *Ninius*, at the Citie *Pen Alcluyt*, which may seeme all one.

Now this wall is commonly called *Grahams dyke*; either of *Graham* a warlike Scot, whose valour was especially seene when the breach was made through it, or else of the hill *Grampie*, at the foot whereof it stood. The author of *Rosa Temporum* calleth it the wall of *Aber-corneth*, that is, of the mouth of the river *Corneth*: where, in *Bede*'s time, there was a famous monasterie standing, as he hath recorded, upon English ground, but neere unto that frith or arme of the sea, which in those daies severed the lands of the English and the *Picts*.

Hard by this wall of turfe, what way as the river *Carron* crosseth this Sheriffdome of *Sterling*, toward the left hand are seene two mounts cast up by mans hand, which they call *Duni pacis*, that is, *Knolles of peace*: and almost two miles lower there is an ancient round building, foure and twentie cubits high, and thirteene broad, open in the top, framed of rough stone without lime, having the upper part of everie stone so tenanted into the nether, as that the whole worke still rising narrow, by a mutuall interlacing and clasping, upholdeth it selfe. Some call this the Temple of God

Arthurs oven. *TERMINUS*, others *Arthurs-Oven*, who father everie stately and sumptuous thing upon *Arthur*. Others againe, *Julius Hoff*, and suppose it to have been built by *Julius Caesar*. But I would thinke rather that *Julius Agricola* built it, who fortified this frontier part, were it not that *Ninius* hath already informed us, that it was erected by *Carausius* for a triumphall Arch. For hee, as *Ninius* writeth, built upon the banke of *Caron*, a round house of polished stone, erecting a Triumphall Arch in

memoriall

A memoriall of a victorie: hae wee diste also the wall, and strengthened it with seven Castles. In the middlest space betweene *Duni pacis* and this building, on the right-hand-banke of *Carron*, there is yet to be discerned a confused face of a little ancient Citie: where the vulgar people beleeveth there was sometimes a road for ships, who call it *Camelot*, by a name that is rise in King *Arthurs* booke; and they contend, but all in vaine, to have it that *Camalodunum* which *Tacitus* mentioneth. But it would seeme rather, by the name of the river *Carron* running underneath, to have beene *CORTA DAMNI TORUM*, which *Protolomee* mentioneth in this tract. And now take with you that which *George Buchanan*, that excellent Poet, wrote of the limit of the Roman Empire at *Carron*.

Coria Damni-torum.

*Roma securigenis præstendit mania Scotis,
Hic spe progressu posita, Carronis ad undam
Terminus Ausonis signat divertia regni.*

Gainst warlike Scots with axes arm'd, a mightie frontier wall
The Romans rais'd: and limit there, which *TERMINUS* they call,
Neere *Carron* streame, now past all hope more British ground to gaine,
Markes out the Roman Empires end, whence they to turne were faine.

C In this territorie of *Sterling* on the East side, there sheweth it selfe *Castle Callendar*, belonging to the Barons of *Levingston*; and the family of the Barons *Fleming* dwelleth hard by at *Cumbernald*, which they received at the hands of King *Robert Brus*, for their service valiantly & faithfully performed in defence of their country: where-by also they attained unto the hereditarie honour to be Chamberlaines of Scotland. And even very lately the favour of King *James the Sixth* hath honoured this house with the title of Earle, what time as he created I. Baron *Fleming* Earle of *Wigton*. In a place neere adjoining standeth *Elpheringston*, which likewise hath his Barons, advanced to that dignitie by King *James the fourth*: And where *Forth* full of his windings and crooked cranks runneth downe with a rolling pace, and hath a bridge over him, standeth *Sterlin*, commonly called *Strivelin*, and *Sterlin Burrough*; where on the very brow of a steepe rocke there is mounted on high a passing strong Castle of the Kings, which King *James the sixth* hath beautified with new buildings, and where of this long time the Lords of *Ereskin* have been Captaines, unto whom the charge and tuition of the Princes of Scotland during their minoritie hath been otherwhiles committed. Whereas some there be, that would have the good and lawfull money of England, which is called *Sterling* money, to take the name from hence, they are much deceived: for that denomination came from the Germans, of their Easterly dwelling termed by Englishmen *Esterlings*; whom King *John* of England first sent for to reduce the silver to the due fineness and puritie: and such monies in ancient writing are evermore found by the name of *Esterling*. But concerning *Sterlin* towne the verses that I. *Jonston* hath made shall supply all the rest.

Callendar.
Barons Le-vingston.

Fleming Earle
of Wigton.

Sterling mony.

*Regia sublimis celsa despectat ab arce
Pendula sub bisferis mania strutta jugis.
Regum augusta parens, Regum nutricula natis,
Hinc sibi Regifico nomine tota placet.
Hospita sed curvis quovis sub nomine, amicus
Sive es, seu non es, hospes an hostis item.
Pro lucro cedis damnum. Discordia tristis
Hæc quoties procerum sanguine tinxit humum?
Hoc uno infelix, at felix cætera, nusquam
Latior aut calis frons, genisque soli.*

A regall palace stately set, beholds from mount aloft,
Towne wall, built hanging on the side of hill with double cost.
Cccc 2

The

The sacred mother unto Kings, of Kings babes eke the nourse,
Hence is it that she prides her selfe in Kings names and no worfe.
But entertaineth every one, by name it skills not what,
A friend or foe, friend guest or no, she reckneth nought of that.
In steed of gaine this turnes to losse. Besides, how oft alas,
Hath discord foule with Nobles blood stain'd hence both ground and grasse:
In this alone unhappie she, else not; nor shall ye finde,
Else where the aire more mild and cleere, or soile of better kinde.

Banochbourn.

About two miles hence the *Banochbourn* runneth between exceeding high banks on both sides, and with a verie swift streame in winter, toward the *Forth*: a bourn most famous for as glorious a victorie as ever the Scots had, what time as Edward the second King of England was put to flight, who was faine to make hard shift, and in great hast and feare to take a boat and save his life: yea and the most puissant armie which England had before sent out, was discomfited through the valiant prowesse of King Robert *Bruce*; inso much as for two yeeres after the English came not into the field against the Scots. About *Sterlin* *Ptolomee* seemeth to place *ALAUNA*, which is either neere the little river *Alon*, that here entrencheth into the *Forth*; or else by *Alway*, an house of the *Ereskins*, who by inheritance are the Sherifes of all this territorie without the Burgh. But I have not yet read of any one dignified by the title of Earle of *Sterlin*.

Alauna.

CALEDONIA.



Whatsoever part of Britain lieth Northward beyond *Grahames Dyke*, or the wall of *Anoninus Pius* before named, and beareth out on both seas, is called by *Tacitus* *CALEDONIA*, like as the people thereof, *Brians* inhabiting *CALEDONIA*. *Ptolomee* divideth them into many nations, as *CALEDONII*, *EPIDII*, *VACOMAGI*, &c. who were all of them afterward, for continuing their ancient manner and custome of painting their bodies, named by the Romans and the Provinciaall people, *PICTS*: divided by *Ammianus Marcellinus* into two nations, the *DICALDONES* and *VECTURIONES*, touching whom I have spoken already before. Howbeit in the approved and best writers they goe all under the name of *Caledonians*: whom I would think to have beene so called of *Kaled*, a British word that signifieth *Hard*, and in the plurall number maketh *Kaledion*: whence the word *Caledonis* may be derived, that is to say, *hard, rough, uncivill*, and a wilder kind of people, such as the Northren nations for the most part are: who by reason of the rigor of cold of the aire, are more rough and fierce, and for their abundance of blood more bold and adventurous. Moreover, beside the position of the climate, this is furthered by the nature and condition of the soile, which riseth up all throughout with rough and rugged mountaines: and mountaineers verily all men know and confesse to be hardie, stout, and strong. But whereas *Varro* alledgeth out of *Pacuvius*, that *Caledonia* breedeth and nourisheth men of exceeding bigge bodies, I would understand the place rather of *Caledonia* the region of *Epirus*, than this of ours; although ours also may justly challenge unto it selfe this commendation. Among this was the wood *CALEDONIA*, tearmed by *Lucius Florus*, *Salmus Caledonius*, that is, the Forrest of *Caledonia*, spreading out a mightie way, and impassable by reason of tall trees standing so thicke, divided also by *Grampe* hill, now called *Granzebaine*, that is, the crooked bending mountaine. That *Ulysses* arrived in *Caledonia* (saith *F. Solinus*) appeareth plainly by a votive altar with an inscription in Greek letters; but I would judge it to have been rather erected to the honour of *Ulysses*, than reared by *Ulysses* himselfe. *Martiall* the Poet likewise in this verse maketh mention of *Caledonian* beares.

Caledon Forrest.

Ulysses his Altar.

Caledonian Beares.

Nuda Caledonio sic peiora praebeis urso.

Thus

Thus yeelded he his naked brest
To beare of Caledon Forrest.

Plutarch also hath written, that Beares were brought out of Britaine to Rome, and had there in great admiration; whereas notwithstanding Britaine for these many ages past hath bred none. What *Caledonian* monster that should bee, whereof *Claudian* wrote thus,

Caledonio velata Britannia monstro,

With monster *Caledonian* Britaine all attired,
to tell you truth, I know not. Certes, it nourished in times past a number of white wilde buls, with thicke manes in manner of Lions (but in these dayes few) and those verie cruell, fierce, and so hatefull of mankinde, that for a certaine time they abhorre whatsoever they had either handled or breathed upon: yea, they utterly scorned the forcible strength of dogges; albeit Rome in times past wondered so much at the fiercenesse of Scottish dogges, that it was thought there, they were brought thither within yron grates and cages. Well, this tearme and name *CALEDONII* grew so ripe with Roman writers, that they used it for all Britaine, and for all woods of Britaine whatsoever. Hereupon *L. Florus* writeth, that *Caesar* followed the Britans unto the *Caledonian* woods, and yet he never saw them in his life: Hence also *Valerius Flaccus* writeth thus to *Vespasian* the Emperour,

Caledonian buls.

— *Caledonius postquam tua carbasa vexis Oceanus*: that is, the British Ocean.

Hence likewise it is that *Statius* verified thus unto *Crispinus*, sonne of *Vitellius* *Propretour* of Britaine about the time of *Vitellius*.

*Quanta Caledonios attollet gloria campos,
Cum tibi longaevis referet truncus incola terrae?
Hic suum dare jura parens, hoc cespitem turmas
Affari, ille dedit, cinxitque haec moenia fossa:
Belligeris haec dona deis, haec vela dicitur,
Cernis adhuc titulos: hunc ipse vacantibus armis
Induit, hunc regi rapuit thoraca Britanno.*

How much renowned shall the fields of *Caledonia* bee,
When as some old inhabitant of that fierce land to thee
Shall in these tearmes report and say: Behold, thy father oft
Was wont in judgement here to sit: upon this banke aloft
To th'armed troupes to speak; also 'twas he that wall'd this fort.
That built thus strong, and it with ditch entrenched in this sort.
By him to gods of warre these gifts and armes were consecrate,
The titles (lo) are extant yet; himselfe this brave brest-plate
In time of battaile did put on, this cuirace, finally,
In fight he pluckt by force of armes from King of Britannie.

But in these, as in other things, I may say,

Crescit in immensum facunda licentia vatum.
Poeticall licence is boundlesse.

For neither *Caesar*, nor *Volanus* so much as ever knew the *Caledonians*. In *Plinius* time, as himselfe witnesseth, thirtie yeeres almost after *Claudian*, the Romanes with all their warlike expeditions, had discovered no farther in Britaine than to the vicinitie of the *Caledonian* wood. For *Julius Agricola* under Domitian, was the first that entred *Caledonia*: whereof at that present *Galgac* was Prince (who is named *Galgacus* in the book of ** Triplicites*, among the three worthies of Britaine) a man

Galgacus the Britan.

* Triadant

Cccc 3

of a mightie spirit and stout stomach : who having put to flight the ninth Legion, in exceeding heat of courage joyned battaile with the Romans, and most manfully defended his country so long, untill fortune rather than his owne valour failed him. For then, as he saith, *These Northern Britans, beyond whom there was no land, and beside whom none were free*, were the utmost nation verily of this Island, like as *Catullus* called the Britans the utmost of all the world, in that verse unto *Furius*.

*Cæsaris visens monumenta magni,
Gallicum Rhenum, horribiles & alti-
mosque Britannos.*

Great *Cæsars* monuments to see in his memoriall,
The Rhene in Gaul, and Britans grim, the farthest men of all:

Argesecoxus.

In the daies of *Severus*, as we read in *Xiphilinus*, *Argesecox* a pettie Princetigned over this tract; whose wife being rated and reviled as an adulteresse by *Julia* the Emperresse, frankly and boldly made this answer: *We Britaine Dames have to doe with the bravest and best men, and you Roman Ladies with everie leud base companion secretly.*

FIFE.



In this large countrey of the *Caledonians*, beyond the Territorie of *Sterlin*, whereof I wrote last, and two countries or Sheriffdomes of lesse note, *Clackmans*, over which a Knight named *de Casse*; and *Kinross*, over which the Earle of Morton are Sheriffes, *FIFE*, a most goodly Bland, wedged, as it were, betwene the two Armes of the Sea, *Forth* and *Tau*, shooteth out farre into the East. This land yeeldeth plentie of corne and forage, yea and of pit coales: the sea, besides other fishes, affordeth Oysters and

Shell-fish in great abundance: and the coasts are well bespred with prettie townlets, replenished with stout and lustie mariners. In the South side hereof by *Forth*, first appeareth Westward *Cul-ros*, which giveth the title of a Baronie to Sir *J. Colvill*: then standeth *Dunfermling*, a famous monasterie in old time, both the building and buriall place of King *Malcolm* the third. But now it giveth both name and honour of an Earle unto Sir *Alexander Seton* a most prudent Counsellor, whom lately James King of great Britain worthily raised from Baron of *Frie* to be Earle of *Dunfermling*, and Lord Chancellour of the realme of Scotland. Then *Kinghorne* standeth hard upon the *Forth*, from which place Sir Patrick *Lion*, Baron *Glamys*, lately received at the bountifull hand of King James the sixth the title and honour of an Earle. After this, there is upon the shore *Disert*, situate on the rising of an hill, from whence there lieth an open Heath of the same name, where there is a good large place which they call the *Cole-plor*, that hath great plentie of an earthie *Bitumen*, and partly burneth, to some damage of the inhabitants. Unto it adjoineth *Ravins-Heuch*, as one would say, *The sheepe hill of Ravens*, the habitation of the Barons *Seincler*. Above it the river *Levin* hideth himselfe in the *Forth*: which river running out of the Lake *Levin*, wherein standeth a Castle of the *Douglasses* now Earles of *Morton*, hath at the verie mouth of it *Wemmis* Castle, the seat of a noble family, bearing the same surname: which King James the sixth hath of late honoured with the dignity of a Baron. From hence the shore draweth backe with a crooked and winding tract unto *Fife-ness*, that is, *The Promontorie or Nose of Fife*. Above it Saint *Andrews* an Archiepiscopall Citie hath a faire prospect into the open maine sea. The more ancient name of the place, as old memorials witness, was *Regimund*, that is, *Saint Regulus mount*: in which we read thus, *Oeng or Ung King of the Picts, granted unto God and*

Clarkmans.

Dunfermling.

Earle of Dunfermling.
Earle of Kinghorn.

Disert.

River Levin.

Wemmis.

Saint Andrews.
Saint Regulus.

A Saint *Andrew*, that it should be the chiefe and mother of all Churches in the *Picts* Kingdome. Afterward there was placed here an Episcopall See, the Bishops whereof, like as all the rest within the Kingdome of Scotland, were consecrated by the Archbishop of Yorke, untill at the intercession of King James the third, by reason of so many warres betwene the Scottish and Englishmen, Pope *Sixtus* the fourth ordained the Bishop of Saint *Andrews* to be Primate and Metropolitane of all Scotland; and Pope *Innocentius* the eighth bound him and his successours to the imitation and precedent of the Metropolitane of Canterbury, in these words: *That in matters concerning the Archiepiscopall state, they should observe and firmly hold the offices, drouis, and rights of Primacie, and such like Legacie, and the free exercise thereof, the honours, charges, and profits: and that they should endeavour to performe inviolably the laudable customes of the famous Metropolitane Church of Canterbury, the Arch-bishop whereof is Legatus natus of the Kingdome of England, &c.* Howbeit before that, *Laurence Lundoris* and *Richard Corvel*, Doctors of the Civill law, publicly professed here good literature, laid the foundation of an Universitie: which now, for happie increase of learned men, for three Colledges and the Kings Professours in them, is become highly renowned. In commendation whereof Master *Jonston*, the Kings Professor there in Divinitie, hath made these verses.

Ex Camera Apostolica lib. 24. fol. 24.

FANUM REGULI, SIVE ANDREAPOLIS.

*Imminet Oceano paribus descripta viarum
Limitibus, pingui quam bene septa solo!
Magnificis opibus, staret dum gloria prisca
Pontificum, hic fulsit Pontificalis apex.
Musarum ostentat surrecta palatia caelo,
Delicias hominum, deliciasque Deum.
Hic nemus umbriferum Phœbi, Nymphæque sorores,
Candida quas inter præsit Uranie.
Quæ me longinquis redeuntem Teutonis oris
Suscipit, excelsa collocat inque gradu.
Urbs nimium felice, Musarum si bona nôset
Munera, & ætherei regna beata Dei:
pellem alas pestes urbe, & quæ noxia Musis
Alme Deus, coeant Pax pietasque simul.*

SAINT REGULUS, OR S. ANDREWS.

Seated it is hard by the sea, at even and equall bounds
Of streets, how well enclosed besides with far and fertile grounds!
Whilom, when Prelates state was great and glorious withall,
There flourish'd here in sumptuous port a See Pontificall.
Now Schooles it shewes and Colledges, both Gods and mans delight,
To Muses which be dedicate, and built to stately height.
Here *Phabus* hath his shady grove, here dwell the Sisters nine,
And chiefe of them the Ladie bright, *Uranie* divine.
Who when I was returned from farre coasts of Germanie,
With welcome kinde here did me place in chaire of high degree.

Most

Most happie towne, wist it what were the gifts of learning true,
The blessed Kingdome, if withall of God in heaven it knew.
All plagues, good God, all nocive things to Muses hence repell,
That in this Citie Godlineffe and Peace may jointly dwell.

Falkland.

Studer.

Cuper.

Hard by there loseth it selfe in the sea *Eden* or *Eshan*, a little river, which springing up neere unto *Falkland* (belonging in times past to the Earles of *Fife*, but now a reryring place of the Kings, verie well seared for hunting pleasures and disports) runneth under a continued ridge of hills, which divide this countrey in the midst, by *Struthers* (a place so called of a *Reedplot*) a Castle of the Barons *Lindsey*; and by *B Cupre*, a notable Burrough, where the Sheriffe sitteth to minister justice. Concerning which the same I. *Jonson* hath thus verified.

CUPRUM FIFÆ.

*Arva inter nemorisque umbras & pascua lata,
Lenè fluens vitreus labitur Eden aquis.
Huc veniat si quis Gallorum à sinibus hospes,
Gallica se hic iterum foris videre putet.
Anne etiam ingenium hinc & servida pectora laxis?
An potius patrius hauserit illa focus?*

By rich corne fields, by shadie woods and pastures fresh among,
The river *Eden* glideth soft with chrystall streame along.
Hither to come from coasts of France if any stranger chance,
Here haply may he thinke he hath a fight againe of France.
What? drew this place from thence their wit and spirit hot trow yee?
Or rather had the same at first by native propertie?

Now where the shore turneth inward a front Northward, hard by the salt water of *Tau*, there flourished in old time two goodly Abbeyes, *Balmerinoch*, built by *Queene Ermengard*, wife to King *William*, daughter of *Vicount Beaumont* in France. But lately King *James* of great Britaine advanced Sir *James Elphinston* to the honour of Baron *Balmerinoch*; and *Lundoris*, founded among the woods by David Earle of *Huntington*, and at this day the Baronie of Sir *Patrick Lesley*: betweene which standeth *Banbrich*, the habitation of the Earle of *Rothies*, strongly built castle wise. But as touching the townes of *Fife* planted along the sea side, have here now, if it please you, these verses of Master *Jonson*.

Balmerinoch.
Lundoris.

*Oppida sic toto sunt sparsa in litore ut unum
Dixeris, inque uno plurima juncta eadem:
Litore quot curvo Forthæ volvuntur arena,
Quoque undis refluxo runditur ora salo.
Penè tot hic cernas instratum puppibus aquor,
Urbiùm & crebris penè tot ora hominum.
Cuncta operis intentis domus, fæda ora nescit,
Sedula cura domi, sedula cura foris.
Que maria, & quas non terras animosa juvenus
Ah! fragili fidens audet adire trabes?
Auxit opes virtus, virtuti dura pericla
Juncta etiam lucro damna fuere suo.
Que fecere viris animos, cultumque dedere,
Magnanimis profunt damna, pericla, labor.*

Who sees how thicke townes stand upon this coast, will say anon,
They are but one, and yet the same all joyned in that one.
How many sands on crooked shore of *Forth* are cast by tides,

Or billowes at the seas returne beat hard upon bankes sides.
So many ships well neere you may here see to saile or ride;
And in those townes so thicke, almost as many folke abide.
Ineverie house they ply their worke, no idle drones they are:
Busie at home with diligence, busie abroad with care.
What seas or lands are there to which a voiage for to make,
In brittle barks will not their youth courageous undertake.
By valour be they growne to wealth, yet valour meet with paines;
And perils too; some losses too have they had with their gaines.
These things have made them valiant, civill withall and courteous:
Losses, perill, painfull toile availe all such as be magnanimous.

The Governour of this province, like as of all the rest in this Kingdome, was in times past a *Thane*, that is, in the old English tongue, *The Kings Minister*: as it is also at this day in the Danish language: but *Malcolm Canmore* made *Macduffe*, who before was *Thane of Fife*, the first hereditarie Earle of *Fife*; and in consideration of his good desert and singular service done unto him, granted that his posteritie should have the honour to place the King, when hee is to be crowned, in his chaire; to lead the Vant-guard in the Kings armie; and if any of them should happen by casualty to kill either Gentleman or Commoner, to buy it out with a peece of money. And not farre from *Lundoris* there is to be seene a Crosse of stone, which standing for a limitt betweene *Fife* and *Strathern*, had an inscription of barbarous verses, and a certain privilege of *Sanctuarie*, that any Man-slaier allied to *Macduffe* Earle of *Fife* within the ninth degree, if he came unto this Crosse, and gave nine kine with an * heifer, should be quit of manslaughter. When his posteritie lost this title I could never yet find: but it appeareth out of the Records of the kingdome, that *K. David* the second gave unto *William Ramsay* this Earldome, with all and everie the immunities and law which is called *Clan-Mac-Duffe*: and received it is for certaine, that the linage of the *Wemessies* and *Donglasse*, yea and that great kined *Clan-Hatan*, the chiefe whereof is *Mac-Intoskech*, descended from them. And the most learned I. *Skerne* Clerke of the Kings Register of Scotland, hath taught mee in his significations of words, that *Isabel* daughter and heire to *Duncane* Earle of *Fife*, granted upon certain conditions unto Robert the third King of the Scots, for the use and behoofe of *Robert Stewart* Earle of *Menteith*, the Earldome of *Fife*: who being afterwards Duke of *Albanie*, and affecting the Kingdome, with cruell ambition caused *David* the Kings eldest son to be most pitifully famished to death, which is highest extremitie of all miserie. But his son *Murdac* suffered due punishment for the wickednesse both of his father, and his owne sonnes, being put to death by King *James* the first for their violent oppressions, and a decree passed, that the Earldome of *Fife* should be united unto the Crown for ever. But the authoritie of the Sheriffe of *Fife* belongeth in right of inheritance to the Earle of *Rothies*.

Earles of Fife.

* Coplandath.

1424.

Earles of
Rothies.

STRATHERN.



As farre as to the river *Tau*, which boundeth *Fife* on the North-side, *Julius Agricola*, the best Propretour of Britaine under *Domitian* the worst Emperour, marched with victorious armes in the third yeere of his warlike expeditions, having wasted and spoiled the nations hitherto. Neere the out-let of *Tau*, the notable river *Ern* interminglith his waters with *Tau*: which river beginning out of a Lake or Loch of the same name, bestoweth his owne name upon the countrey through which he runneth: For it is called *Straith Ern*, which in the ancient tongue of the Britans, signifieth the *Vale along Ern*. The banke

The river Ern.

Barons of
Dromund.Earles of Tul-
bardin.Duplin.
Baron Oli-
phant.

banke of this *Ern* is beautified with *Drumein* Castle, belonging to the family of the Barons of *Dromund*, advanced to highest honours ever since that King *Robert Stewart* the third took to him a wife out of that linage. For the women of this race have for their singular beautie and well favoured sweet countenance won the prize from all others, inso much as they have beene the Kings most amiable paramours. Upon the same banke *Tulibardin* Castle sheweth it selfe aloft, but with greater jollitie, since that by the propitious favour of King James the sixth, Sir *John Murray* Baron of *Tulibardin*, was raised to the honour and estate of Earle of *Tulibardin*. Upon the other bank, more beneath, *Duplin* Castle, the habitation of the Barons *Oliphant*, reported yet what an overthrow (the like to which was never before) the Englishmen that came to aide King Edward *Bathol*, gave there unto the Scots; inso much as the English writers in that time doe write, that they won this victorie not by mans hand, but by the power of God: and the Scottish writers relate, how that out of the family of the *Lindseies* there were slaine in the field fourescore persons, and that the name of the *Haies* had bin quite extinguished, but that the chiefe of that house left his wife behind him great with child. Not farre from it standeth *Invermeth*, well knowne by reason of the Lords thereof, the *Stewarts* out of the family of *Lorn*. *Insh-Chafra*, that is in the old Scottish tongue, the *Ile of Masses*, hereby may bee remembered when as it was a most famous Abbey of the order of Saint *Augustin*, founded by the Earle of *Strathern* about the yeere 1200.

When *Ern* hath joined his water with *Tau* in one streame, so that *Tau* is now become more spacious, hee looketh up to *Aberneith* seated upon his banke, the royall seat in old time of the *Picts*, and a well peopled Citie: which, as we read in an ancient fragment, *Ne Eane King of the Picts gave unto God and S. Brigide until the day of Doom, together with the bounds thereof, which lye from a stone in Aberneith, unto a knigh to Carfull, that is, Loughfoll, and from thence as farre as to Eihan*. But long after it became the possession of the *Douglasses* Earles of *Angus*, who are called *Lords of Aberneith*; and there some of them lye entred.

Earles of Stra-
thern.
Finis 35 H. 3.
n. 1.

The first Earle of *Strathern*, that I read of, was *Malisse*, who in the time of King *Henrie* the third of England married one of the heires of *Robert Muschamp*, a potent Baron of England. Long afterward *Robert Stewart*, in the yeere 1380. Then, *David* a younger sonne of King *Robert* the second, whose onely daughter given in marriage to *Patrick Graham* begat *Malisse* or *Melisse Graham*, from whom King *James* the first tooke away the Earledome as escheated, after that he understood out of the Records of the Kingdome, that it was given unto his mothers grandfather, and the heires males of his bodie. This territorie, as also that of *Menteith* adjoining, the Barons *Dromund* governe hereditarily by *Seneschals* authority, as their *Stewarts*.

Menteith
Stewartie.
Dunblan.

Menteith hath the name of *Teith*, a river which also they call *Taich*, and thereof this little province they tearme in Latin *Taichia*; upon the banke of which lieth the Bishopricke of *Dunblan*, which King *David* the first of that name erected. At *Kirk-Ebird*, that is, Saint *Brigids* Church, the Earles of *Menteith* have their principall house, or Honour: as also the Earles of *Montrose* coming from the same stocke, at *Kinkardin* not farre off. This *Menteith* reacheth, as I have heard, unto the mountaines that enclose the East side of the *Lough* or Lake *Lomund*. The ancient Earles of *Menteith* were of the family of *Cumen*, which in times past being the most spread & mightiest house of all Scotland, was ruined with the over-weight and sway thereof: but the latter Earles were of the *Grahams* line, ever since that Sir *Malisse Graham* attained to the honour of an Earle.

Earles of Men-
teith.

ARGA-

ARGATHELIA, OR ARGILE.



Beyond the Lake *Lomund* and the West part of *Lennox*, there spreadeth it selfe neere unto *Dunbrion Forth* the large countrey called *Argathelia*, & *Argadia* in Latin, but commonly *Argile*, more truly *Argathel*, and *Ar-Gwihil*, that is, Neere unto the *Irish*; or, as old writings have it, *The edge or border of Ireland*: For it lyeth toward Ireland, the inhabitants whereof, the Britans tearme *Gwihil* and *Gaoshel*. The countrey runneth out in length and breadth, all mangled with fishfull pooles, and in some places with rising mountaines, very commodious for feeding of cattell; in which also there range up and downe wilde kine and red Deere: but along the shore it is more unpleasant in sight, what with rockes, and what with blackish barraine mountaines. In this part, as *Bede* writeth, *Britain received after the Britans and Picts, a third nation of Scots, in that countrey where the Picts inhabited: who coming out of Ireland under the leading of Reuda, either through friendship, or by dint of sword, planted here their seat amongst them, which they still hold. Of which their leader they are to this very day called Dalreudini: for in their language Dal signifieth (a part). And a little after, Ireland (saith hee) is the proper Countrey of the Scots, for, being departed out of it, they added unto the Britans and Picts a third nation in Britaine. And there is a very great Bay or arme of the sea, that in old time severed the nation of the Britans from the Picts, which from the West breaketh a great way into the land, where standeth the strongest Citie of all the Britans even to this day, called Alchiuh. In the North part of which Bay, the Scots afore said when they came, got themselves a place to inhabit. Of that name *Dalreudini*, no remains at all, to my knowledge, are now extant; neither finde wee any thing thereof in Writers, unlesse it bee the same that *Dalrieta*. For, in an old Pamphlet, touching the division of *Albanie*, wee read of one *Kinnadie* (who for certaine was a King of Scots, and subdued the Picts) these very words; *Kinnadie two yeeres before hee came into Pictavia (for so it calleth the countrey of the Picts) entred upon the Kingdome of Dalrieta*. Also in an historie of later time, there is mention made of *Dalreia* in some place of this tract, where King *Robert Brus* fought a field unfortunately.*

Dalreudini
Dal.Dalrieta
Dalreia

That Justice should be ministred unto this Province by Justices Itinerant at *Perth*, whensoever it pleased the King, King *James* the fourth by authoritie of the States of the Kingdome enacted a law. But the Earles themselves have in some cases their royalties, as being men of very great command and authoritie, followed with a mightie traine of retainers and dependants: who derive their race from the ancient Princes and Potentates of *Argile*, by an infinite descent of Ancestours, and from their castle *Cambell* tooke their surname: but the honour and title of Earle was given unto them by King *James* the second, who, as it is recorded, invested *Colin Lord Cambell*, Earle of *Argile*, in regard of his owne vertue, and the worth of his family. Whose heires and successours standing in the gracious favour of the Kings, have bin Lords of *Lorn*; and a good while Generall Justices of the Kingdome of Scotland, or, as they use to speake, *Justices ordained in General*, and Great Masters of the Kings royall house- hold.

Earles of Argile.

CANE

CANTIRE.

Logh Fin.

Epidium.

Plinius.



*L*ogh Fin, a lake breeding such store of herrings at a certaine due season, as it is wonderfull, fevereth *Argile* from a Promontorie, which for thirtie miles together growing still toward a sharpe point, thrusteth it selfe forth with so great a desire toward Ireland (betwixt which and it there is a narrow sea, scarce thirtene miles over) as if it would conjoine it selfe. *Ptolomee* B termeth this, the Promontorie *EPIDIORUM*, betweene which name, and the Islands *EBUDÆ* lying over against it, there is, in my conceit, some affinitie. At this day it is called in the Irish tongue (which they speake in all this tract) *CANTYRE*, that is, *The lands Head*; inhabited by the *Mac-Conells*, a family that here swayeth much, howbeit at the pleasure and dispose of the Earle of *Argile*: yea and otherwhiles they make out their light pinnaces and gallies for Ireland, to raise booties and pillage, who also hold in possession those little provinces of Ireland, which they call *Glines* and *Rowts*. This Promontorie lyeth annexed to *Knapdale* by so thin a necke (as being scarce a mile broad, and the same all sandie) that the mariners finde it the neerer way to convey their small vessels over it C by land. Which I hope a man may sooner beleve, than that the *Argonaus* laid their great ship *Argos* upon their shoulders, and so carried it along with them five hundred miles, from *Æmonia* unto the shores of *Theffalia*.

LORN.

Beregomum.

Logh-Aber.



Omwat higher toward the North lyeth *LORN*, bearing the best kinde of barley in great plentie, and divided with *Leane* a vast and huge lake: by which standeth *Beregomum* a castle, in which sometime was kept the Court of Justice, or *Sesson*: and not farre from it *Dunstaffag*, that is, *Stephens Mount*, the Kings house in times past: above which *Logh Aber*, a Lake insinuating it selfe from out of the Westerne sea, winderh it selfe so farre within land, that it had conflowed together with *Nesse*, another Lake running into the East sea, but that certaine mountaines betweene kept them with a verie little partition asunder. The chiefeft place of name in this tract is *Tarbar* in *Logh Kinkoran*, where King James the fourth ordained a Justice and Sheriffe, to administer justice unto the Inhabitants of the out Islands. These countries and those beyond them, in the yeere of our Lords Incarnation 655. the *Pi&ts* held: whom *Bede* calleth the *Northern Pi&ts*, where hee reporteth, that in the said yeere *Columbane* a E *Priest* and *Abbat*, famous for his *Monkish* profession and life, came out of Ireland into *Brutaine*, to instruct these in *Christian religion*, that by meanes of the high rough ridges of the mountaines were sequestred from the Southerne countries of the *Pi&ts*: and that they, in lieu of a reward, allowed unto him the *Iland Hii*, over against them, now called *I-Comb-Kill*, of which more in place convenient. The Lords of *Lorna* in the age aforegoing were the *Stewarts*: but now, by reason of a female their heire, the Earles of *Argile*; who use this title in their honourable stile.

1503.
Lib. 3. cap. 4.

BRAID F

BRAID ALBIN, or ALBAN Y.



*M*ore inwardly, where the uninhabitable, loftie, and rugged ridges of the Mountaine *Grampius* begin a little to slope and settle downward, is seated *BRAID-ALBIN*, that is, *The highest part of* Albanie. Scotland: for they that are the true and right Scots indeed, call Scotland in their mother tongue *Albin*; like as that part where it mounteth up highest, *Drum Albin*, that is, *the Ridge of* Scotland. But in an old booke it is read *Brun Albin*, where wee finde this written: *Fergus filius Eric*, &c. that is, *Fergus the sonne of Eric was the first of the seed or line of Chonare, that entred upon the Kingdome of Albanie, from Brun-Albain unto the Irish sea and Inch-Gall. And after him the Kings descended from the seed or race of Fergus reigned in Brun-Albain or Brunhere unto Alpin the sonne of Eochall.*

But this *Albanie* is better knowne for the Dukes thereof, than for any good gifts that the soile yeeldeth. The first Duke of *Albanie* that I read of, was Robert Earle of *Fife*, whom his brother King Robert the third of that name advanced to that honour: yet he (ungratefull person that he was) pricked on with the spirit of ambition, famished to death his sonne David, that was heire to the crown. But the punishment due for this wicked fact, which him selfe by the long-sufferance of God felt not, his son Mordac, the second Duke of *Albanie*, suffered most grievously, being condemned for treason and beheaded, when hee had seene his two sonnes the day before executed in the same manner. The third Duke of *Albanie* was Alexander, second sonne to King James the second, who being *Regent of the Kingdome, Earle of March, Marr, and Garioch, Lord of Annandale and of Man*, was by his own brother, King James the third outlawed, and after hee had bene turmoiled with many troubles, in the end, as hee stood by to behold a Justs and Tourneament in Paris, chanced to bee wounded with a peece of a shattered lance, and so died. His sonne John, the fourth Duke of *Albanie*, Regent likewise and made Tutour to King James the fifth, taking contentment in the pleasant delights of the French Court, after hee had wedded there the daughter, and one of the heires of John Earle of *Auverne* and *Lauragvaze*, died there without issue: Whom in a respective reverence to the bloud royall of the Scots, Francis the first King of France gavethus much honour unto, as that hee allowed him place betweene the Archbishop of *Langres*, and the Duke of *Alençon*, Peeres of France. After his death there was no Duke of *Albanie* untill that Queene Marie in our memorie conferred this title upon Henrie Lord *Darby*, whom within some few daies after shee made her husband, like as King James the sixth granted E the same unto his owne second sonne Charles being an Infant, who is now Duke of *Yorke*.

There inhabit these regions a kinde of people, rude, warlike, readie to fight, quarrelous, and mischievous: they bee commonly tearmed *High-landmen*, who being in deed the right progenie of the ancient Scots, speak Irish, & call themselves *Albinich*; their bodies be firmly made and well compact, able withall and strong, nimble of foot, high minded, inbred and nuzzled in warlike exercises, or robberies rather, and upon a deadly feud and hatred most forward and desperate to take revenge. They goe attired Irish-like, in stript or streaked mantles of divers colours, wearing thicke and long glibbes of haire, living by hunting, fishing, fowling, and stealing. In the warre their armour is an head-peece or Morion of iron, and an habergeon or coat of maille: their weapons bee bowes, barbed or hooked arrowes, and broad backe-swords: and being divided by certaine families or kinreds, which they terme *Clannes*, they commit such cruell outrages, what with robbing, spoiling, and killing, that their savage crueltie hath forced a law to bee enacted, whereby it is lawfull, That if any person out of any one *Clanne* or kinred of theirs hath trespassed

D d d d

passed

Parliament.
1581.

passed ought and done harme, whosoever of that Clanne or linage chance to bee taken, he shall either make amends for the harmes, or else suffer death for it; when as the whole Clan commonly beareth feud for any hurt received by any one member thereof, by execution of lawes, order of justice, or otherwise.

PERTHIA,
OR
PERTH Sherifsdome.

The river Tau.



Ut of the very bosome of Mountaines of *Albany*, *Tau* the greatest river of all Scotland issueth: and first runneth amaine through the fields, untill that spreading broad into a lake full of Islands, hee restraineth and keepeth in his course. Then gathering him selfe narrow within his bankes into a channell, and watering *Perib*, a large, plentifull and rich countrey, he taketh in unto him *Amund*, a small river coming out of *Athol*.

Athol.

Caledon
wood.

This *Athol*, that I may digresse a little out of my way, is infamous for witches and wicked women: the countrey, otherwise fertile enough, hath vallies bespread with Forrests: namely, where that *WOOD CALEDONIA*, dreadfull to see to for the sundrie turnings and windings in and out therein, for the hideous horrour of dark shades, for the burrowes and dennes of wild bulls with thicke manes (whereof I made mention heretofore) extended it selfe in old time farre and wide everie way in these parts. As for the places herein, they are of no great account, but the Earles thereof are verie memorable.

Earles of A-
thol.Chroniron
Vailroile.

Thomas, a younger sonne of *Rolland of Galloway*, was in his wives right Earle of *Athol*, whose sonne *Patrick* was by the *Bissops* his concurrents murdered in *Hadington* in his bed-chamber, and forthwith the whole house wherein hee lodged burnt, that it might be supposed he perished by casualltie of fire.

In the Earldome there succeeded *David Hastings*, who had married the aunt by the mothers side of *Patrick*; whose sonne that *David* surnamed of *Straibhogie* may seeme to be, who a little after, in the reigne of *Henrie the third King of England*, being Earle of *Athol*, married one of the daughters and heires of *Richard*, base sonne to *John King of England*, and had with her a verie goodly inheritance in *England*. She bare unto him two sonnes, *John Earle of Athol*, who being of a variable disposition and untrusting, was hanged up aloft on a gallows fiftie foot high; and *David Earle of Athol*, unto whom by marriage with one of the daughters and heires of *John Comin of Badenoch*, by one of the heires of *Aumar de Valence* Earle of *Penbroch*, there fell great lands and possessions. His sonne *David*, who under *King Edward the second* was otherwhiles amongst *English Earles* summoned to the *Parliaments* in *England*, and under *King Edward Balliol* made *Lord Lievtenant* *Generall* of *Scotland*, was vanquished by the valerous prowesse of *Andrew de Murray*, and slaine in battaile within the Forrest of *Kelblen* in the yeere of our Lord 1335. And his sonne *David* left two young daughters only, *Elizabeth* wedded unto *Sir Thomas Percie*, from whom the *Barons of Burrough* are descended: and *Philip*, married to *Sir Thomas Halsham* an *English Knight*. Then fell the title of *Athol* unto that *Walter Stewart*, sonne to *King Robert the second*, who cruelly murdered *James the first*, King of *Scotland*, and for this execrable crueltie suffered most condigne punishment accordingly: in so much as *Aeneas Sylvius*, Embassadour at that time in *Scotland* from *Pope Eugenius the fourth*, gave out this speech: That hee could not tell whether hee should give them greater commendations that revenged the Kings death, or brand them with sharper censure of condemnation, that distained themselves with so heinous a parricide.

After some few yeeres passed betweene, this honour was granted unto *John Stewart*

B

D

E

F

A warre of the family of *Lorne*, the sonne of *James*, surnamed *The Black Knight*, by *Joan* the widow of *King James the first*, daughter to *John Earle of Somerset*, and Niece to *John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster*, whose posteritie at this day enjoy the same.

Tau bearing now a bigger streame, by receiving *Almund* unto him, holdeth on his course to *Dunkelden*, adorned by *King David* with an *Episcopall See*. Most writers grounding upon the signification of that word, suppose it to be a towne of the *Caledonians*, and interpret it, *The Mount or hill of Hazeles*, as who would have that name given unto it of the *Hazel trees* in the wood *Caledonia*. From hence the *Tau* goeth forward by the carkasse of *Berib*, a little desolate Citie, remembering well enough what a great losse and calamitie hee brought upon it in times past, when with an extraordinarie swelling flood, hee surrounded all the fields, layed the goodly standing corne along on the ground, and carried headlong away with him this poore Citie, with the Kings childe and infant in his cradle, and the inhabitants therein. In steed whereof in a more commodious place, *King William* builded *Perib*, which straightwaies became so wealthy, that *Necham*, who lived in that age, verifified of it in this manner:

Dunkelden.

Berth.

Perth.

Transis ample Tai per rura, per oppida, per Perth,
Regnum sustentant istius urbis opes.

C By villages, by townes, by *Perth*, thou runn'st great *Tay* amaine,
The riches of this Citie *Perib* doth all the realme sustaine.

But the posteritie ensuing called it of a Church founded in honour of *Saint John*, *Saint Johns towne*: and the *English*, whiles the warres were hot betweene the *Brasses* and the *Balliols*, fortified it with great bulwarks, which the *Scots* afterwards, for the most part overthrew, and dismantled it themselves. Howbeit it is a proper pretie Citie, pleasantly seated betweene two Greeces: and for all that some of the Churches be destroyed, yet a goodly shew it maketh; ranged and set out in such an uniforme maner, that in everie severall street almost there dwell severall artificers by themselves, and the river *Tau* bringeth up with the tide sea commodities by lighters: whereupon *J. Jonston*, so often now by me cited, writeth thus.

Saint John
Towne.

PERTHUM.

Propter aquas Tai liquidas, & amana vineta,
Obtinet in medio regna superba solo.
Nobilium quondam regum clarissima sedes,
Pulchra situ, & pinguis germine dives agri.
Finitimis dat jura locis, moremque modumque,
Huic dare, laus illi hæc meruisse dari.
Sola inter patrias incincta est mœnibus urbes,
Hofibus assiduis ne vaga præda foret.
Quanta virum virtus, dextra quæ præmia, nōrunt
Cimber, Saxo ferox, & genus Hebrorum.
Felix laude novâ, felix quoque laude vetustâ,
Perge recens præscum perpetuare decus.

PERTH.

F Neere to the waters cleere of *Tay*, and pleasant plaines all greene,
In middle ground betweene them stands *Perib* proudly like a Queene.
Of noble Kings the stately seat and palace once it was,
Faile for the site, and rich with all for spring of corne and grasse.
To neighbour places all it doth lawes, customes, fashions give,
Her praise to give; theirs to deserve the fame for to receive.

Dddd a

of

Of all the Cities in these parts walled alone is she,
Left she to foes continuall a scrambling prey might be.
What Knights she bred, and what rewards they won to knighthood due,
Danes, Saxons fierce, bold Britans eke the Trojans off-spring knew.
Happie for praises old, happie for praises new of late,
New as thou art, thine honour old strive to perpetuate.

Earle of Perth. And now of late King James the sixth hath erected it to the title of an Earldome, having created James Baron *Dromund* Earle of Perth.

Baron Methuen.

Unto *Perth* these places are neere neighbours, *Methuen*, which Margaret an English Ladie, widow unto King James the fourth, purchased with readie money for her third husband *Henrie Steward* descended of the royall blood, and for his heires; and withall obtained of her sonne King James the fifth for him the dignitie of a Baron. More beneath is *Rethuen*, a castle of the *Rethuens*, whose name is of damned memorie, considering that the three states of the kingdome hath ordained, that whosoever were of that name, should forgoe the fame, and take unto them a new; after that the *Rethuens*, brethren in a most cursed and horrible conspiracie, had complotted to murder their soveraigne King James the sixth, who had created William their father Earle of *Gourie*, and afterward beheaded him being lawfully convicted, when he would insolently prescribe lawes to his soveraigne. But of men condemned to perpetuall oblivion I may seeme to have said overmuch, although it concerneth posteritie also for a Caveat, that wicked generations be notified, as well as noisome weeds and venomous plants.

Gourie.

As for the countrey *Gourie* aforesaid, famous for the corn-fields, and singular fertilitye of the soile, it lyeth more plaine and flat along the other banke of *Tay*. In this tract over against *Perth*, on the farther side of *Tay*, standeth *Scone*, a renowned monastrie in old time, and of reverend respect for the coronation thereof of the Kings of Scotland: since that time *K. Kenneth* having hard by put the Picts for the most part to the sword, placed a stone here enclosed within a chaire of wood for inauguration of the Kings of Scotland, that had bene transported out of Ireland into *Argyle*: which stone Edward the first King of England, caused to be conveyed unto Westminster. Touching which I have put down this prophesie, so rise in everie mans mouth, since it hath now proved true and taken effect; as verie few of that sort doe.

Scone.

*Ni fallit fatum, Scoti quocunque locatum
Inveniunt lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.*

Except old lawes be vaine,
And wits of wifards blind,
The Scots in place must raigne,
Where they this stone shall finde.

Baron of Scone.

But now *Scone* giveth title of Baron of *Scone* to Sir David *Murray*, whom *K. James* E for his good service advanced lately to that honour.

Arrol.
Earls of Arrol.

Where *Tay* now growne bigger enlargeth himselfe, there appeareth over it *Arrol*, the habitation of the noble Earles of *Arrol*, who ever since the *Bruses* daies have bene by inheritance the Constables of Scotland: and verily they deduce an ancient pedigree from one *Hay*, a man of exceeding strength and excellent courage; who together with his sonnes, in a dangerous battaile of Scots against the Danes at *Longcartie*, caught up an Oxe yoke, and so valiantly and fortunately withall, what with fighting, and what with exhorting, re-enforced the Scots at the point to shrink and recule, that they had the day of the Danes, and the King, with the States of the kingdome, ascribed the victorie and their owne safetie unto his valour and prowess. F Whereupon in this place, the most battle & fruitfull grounds were assigned unto him and his heires; who in testimony hereof have set over their coat a yoke for their crest, over their Armes, *Three Escutcheons Geules in Argent*. Touching *Humley* castle, that joyneth unto it, I have nothing to write, but that it hath given title to a very potent, great, and honourable family, whereof I am to speake hereafter.

Humley castle.

ANGU:

ANGUSIA, or *ANGUS*.

BY the out-let or mouth of *Tay*, and more within, beside the river *North-Eske*, *Angus* called by the naturall and true Scots *Aeneia*, lyeth extended with goodly fields bearing wheat and corne of all kinds plentifully, with large hills also and pooles, forrests, pastures, and meadows, and also garnished with many forts and castles. In the very first entry into it from *Goury*, standeth *Glamis*, a castle, and the Baronie of a family surnamed *Lions*, which arose to honour and reputation, ever since that Sir *I. Lion* standing in the high favour of King Robert the Second, received this and the dignity of a Baron with the Kings daughter, for her marriage portion, and therewith, as I finde written, the surname of *Lion*: with a Lion in his Armes, within a Treasfure Flourey, as the Kings themselves doe beare, but in different colours: like as Sir *Patrick Lion*, Lord *Glamis*, who now liveth, was advanced very lately by King James the Sixth of that name to the honour of the Earle of *Kinghorn*.

Barons Glamys.

Not farre hence standeth *Forfar*, where for the administration of justice, the Barons *Greies* are hereditary Sheriffs, who being descended from the *Greies* of *Chillingham* in the county of Northumberland, came into Scotland with King James the first, at his returne out of England: upon the first of whom named *Andrew*, the King of his bounteous liberality bestowed the Seigniorie of *Foullis*, together with *Helen Mortimer* in marriage for his advancement.

Forfar Sheriff-dome.

Hard by the mouth of *Tay* is situate *Dundee*, sometimes called *Alectum*: others tearme it in Latin *Taodunum*; a towne verily of great resort and trade, and the Constable whereof by a speciall priviledge is Standard-bearer to the King of Scots. *Heitor Boetius*, who was here born, expoundeth this name *Dundee* by way of allusion, to *Donum Dei*, that is, *Gods gift*. This *Heitor*, in the flourishing time of learning, wrote the Scottish historie elegantly, and that out of such hidden and farre fetched monuments of antiquitie, that *Paulus Jovius* wondered in his writings, there should be records extant for above a thousand yeeres, of these remote parts of the world, Scotland, the *Hebrides*, and the *Orcades*: considering that Italy, the nource of fine wits, for so many ages after the Goths were cast out, was defective of writers and records. But of this place Master *Jonston*, borne not farre from it, writeth thus.

Jo. Skene de Verbor. signif.

Heitor Boetius.

TAODUNUM, OR DEIDONUM.

*Qua Notus argatis adspirat molliter auris,
Hac placide coeunt Taus & Oceanus.
Hic facili excipiens venientes litore puppes
Indigenis vasti distrahit orbis opes.
Sape dolis tentata, & belli exercita damnis,
Invictis animis integra praestat adhuc.
Fama vetus crevit cum Religione renata,
Lucis & hinc fulsi pura nitela aliis.
Alectum duxere prius; si maxima spes
Commoda, fors Donum dixeris esse Dei.
Tu decus aeternum gentisque urbisque Boeti,
Cetera dic patria dona beata tua.*

Dddd 3

DONDEE

DONDEE, or DUNDEE.

Where South wind with his whistling blasts aloft doth mildly blow,
There *Tay* with streame, and sea with tide doe friendly meet below.
And here *Dundee*, ships under saile harbring in gentle road,
The wide worlds wealth to Inlanders both sells and sends abroad.
By wiles betrayed, by force assailed oft times like to have beene,
With heart undaunted to this day it stands found to be seene.
With new spring of religion her old fame more did grow:
Hence shone pure light, hence to the rest cleere beames full bright did show.
At first *Alethum* clep'd it was: but if you marke withall
Her gifts so great, perhaps you will it * *Donum Dei* call.

* Gift of God.

Brochty Crag.
1547.

Arbroth.

* Red-head,
a Promontorie.Brechin.
Mont-Rose.

From hence standeth within sight *Brochty-cragge*, a good fortresse, which the English garrison souldiers manfully defended and made good for many moneths together, what time as in their affectionate love to a perpetuall peace, they desired and wished for a marriage betweene Marie, heire apparent of Scotland, and Edward the sixth King of England; and upon promise thereof, demanded it by force of armes: and in the end, of their owne accord abandoned the said piece. Then there lieth full against the open Ocean *Aberbroth*, short *Arbroth*, a place endowed with ample revenues, and by King William dedicated in old time to Religion, in honour of Thomas of Canterburie; beside which the * *Red-head* shooteth into the deepe sea, and is to bee seene a farre off: Hard by *South Eske* voideth it selfe into the Ocean; which river flowing amaine out of a lake, passeth by *Finnevin* Castle, well knowne by reason of the *Lindeseies* Earles of *Crawford* keeping residence there; of whom I have already written. Then upon the said river standeth *Brechin*, which King David the first adorned with a Bishops See; and at the very mouth thereof *Mont-rose*, as one would say the *Mount of Roses*; a towne in times past called *Celurca*, risen by the fall of *D* another towne bearing the same name, which is seated betweene the two *Eskes*, and imparteth the title of Earle to the family of the *Grahams*. Concerning which towne *Jonston* hath these verses.

CELURCA, five MONS
ROSARUM.

*Aureolis urbs picta rosis, mons molliter urbi
Imminet, hinc urbi nomina facta canunt.
At veteres perhibent quondam dixisse Celurcam,
Nomine sic prisco & nobilitata novo est.
Et prisca atque nova insignis virtute, virumque
Ingeniis, patria qui perperere decum.*

MONT-ROSE.

With *Roses* gay the towne is deckt, an easie Mount withall
Stands neere the same, and hence they say *MONT-ROSE* folke did it call.
In former times by ancient name *Celurca* men it knew,
Ennobled thus you see it is by name both old and new:
Both old and new renowne it hath for prowesse and for wit,
Of men that have their countrey grac'd and honour won to it.
Not farre from hence is *Boschain*, belonging to the Barons of *Ogilvy*, of very ancient nobilitie, lineally descended from *Alexander* Sheriffe of *Angus*, who was slaine in the bloodie bartail at *Harley* against the *Mac Donald* of the out Isles.

Boschain.

As

As touching the Earles of *Angus*; *Gilchrist* of *Angus*, renowned for his brave exploits under King Malcolm the fourth, was the first Earle of *Angus* that I read of. About the yeere 1242. *John Comyn* was Earle of *Angus*, who died in France; and his widow (happily inheritor to the Earldome) was married to Sir *Gilbert Umfranvill* an Englishman. For, both hee and his heires successively after him, were summoned to the Parliaments in England (untill the third yeere of King Richard the second) by the title of Earles of *Angus*. Howbeit the Lawyers of England refused in their Brieves and instruments to acknowledge him Earle, for that *Angus* was not within the kingdome of England, untill hee had brought forth openly in the face of the Court, the Kings writ and warrant, wherein he was summoned to the Parliament by the name of Earle of *Angus*. In the reigne of *David Bru*, *Thomas Stewart* was Earle of *Angus*, who by a suddaine surprise won *Barwicke*, and (treightwaies lost it; yea, and within a while after died miserably in prison at *Dunbrumion*. But the *Douglasse*, men of haughtie mindes and invincible hearts, from the time of King Robert the third have beene Earles of *Angus* (after that *George Douglass* had taken to wife the Kings daughter) repured the chiefe and principall Earles of Scotland, and to whom this office belongeth, to carrie the regall Crown before the Kings at all the solemne assemblies of the kingdome. The sixth Earle of *Angus* out of this stocke, was *Archebald*, who espoused *Margarer* daughter to *Henrie* the seventh K. of England, and mother to *James* the fifth King of Scots, by whom he had issue *Margarer* wife to *Matthew Stewart* Earle of *Lennox*; who after her brothers decease, that died childlesse, willingly resigned up her right and interest in this Earldome, unto Sir *David Douglass* of *Peteindreich*, her uncles sonne by the fathers side, and that with the consent of her husband and sonnes; to the end that she might binde the surer unto her selfe, by the linke also of a beneficiall demerite, that family, which otherwise in blood was most neere; what time as *Henrie* her son went about to wed *Marie* the Queen: by which marriage King *JAMES* our Sovereigne, the mightie Monarch of great Britaine, was happily borne to the good of all Britaine.

Earles of Angus.

MERNIS.

These regions were in *Ptolomees* time inhabited by the *VERNICONES*, the same perhaps that the *VICTURIONIS* mentioned by *Marcellinus*. But this their name is now quite gone, unlesse wee would imagine some little peece thereof to remaine in *Mernis*. For many times in common speech of the British tongue, *V.* turneth into *M.*

This small province *Mernis* abutting upon the German Ocean, and of a rich and battle soile, lieth very well, as a plaine and levell Champion. But the most memorable place therein is *Dunnotyr*, a Castle advanced upon an high and unaccessible rocke, whence it looketh downe to the underflowing sea; well fenced with strong walls and turrets, which hath beene a long time the habitation of the *Keiths*, of an ancient and verie noble stock; who by the guidance of their vertue became hereditarie Earles *Mareschals* of the kingdome of Scotland, and Sheriffes of this province. In a porch or gallerie here, is to bee seene that ancient inscription which I mentioned even now, of a companie, belonging to the twentieth legion, the letters whereof the right noble and honourable Earle now living, a great lover of antiquitie, caused to be guided. Somewhat farther from the sea standeth *Fordon*, graced in some sort and commendable in regard of *John de Fordon*; who being borne here, diligently and with great paines compiled *Scoti Chronicon*, that is, *The Scottish Chronicle*: unto whose laborious studies the Scottish Historiographers are very much indebted: but more glorious and renowned in old time, for the reliques of *St. Palladius*, bestowed and shrined sometime, as is verily thought, in this place; who in the yeere 431. was by Pope *Celestinus* appointed the Apostle of the Scottish nation.

Dunnotyr.

Keith.
Earles Mareschals.Fordon.
Sherifdome of
Kinkerdin, or
Mernis.

St. Palladius;

MARRIA

MARRIA, or MAR.

From the sea in the mediterranean or inland parts above *Merni*, *MAR* enlargeth it selfe, and runneth forward threescore miles, or thereabout: where it lieth broadest Westwards, it swelleth up with mountaines, unless it bee where the rivers *Dee*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *DIVA*, and *Done* make way for themselves, and enfertile the fields. Upon the bank of *Done*, *Kildrummy* standeth as a faire ornament to the countrey, being the ancient seat of the Earles of *Marre*: and not farre distant from it the habitation of the Barons *Forbois*, who being issued from a noble and ancient stocke, assumed this surname; whereas before time they were called *Bois*, after that the heire of that family had manfully killed a savage and cruell Beare. But at the very mouth of this river, there be two townes that give greater ornament, which of the said mouth, that in the British tongue they call *Aber*, borrowing one name, are divided asunder by one little field lying betweene: the hithermore of them, which standeth neerer to *Dee* mouth, is much ennobled by an Episcopall dignitie (which King David the first translated hither from *Muriblake* a little village) by faire houses of the Canons, an Hospital for poore people, and a free Grammar schoole; which *William Elphinston*, Bishop of the place in the yeere 1480. consecrated to the training up of youth, and is called *New Aberdon*: The other beyond it, named *Old Aberdon*, is most famous for the taking of Salmons. But *J. Jonston*, a native hereof, in these his verses depainteth *Aberdon* thus.

Kildrummy.

Barons Forbois.

Salmons.

ABERDONIA.

*Ad Boream porrecta jugis obfessa superbis,
Inter connatas eminet una Deas.
Mior algens Phœbus sic temperat auras,
Non æstum ut rabidum, fragora nec metuas.
Fecundo ditat Neptunus gurgite, & amnes
Pisces: gemmis aliter adauget opes.
Candida mens, frons læta, hilaris, gratissima tellus
Hospitiis: morum cultus ubique decens.
Nobilitas antiqua, opibus subnixæ vetustis,
Martiaque invictæ pectore corda gerens.
Justitiæ domus, & studiorum mater honoris
Ingenio ars, certant artibus ingenia.
Omnia ei cedunt, meritis generisq; honores
Pingere non ulla Ars, ingeniumq; valet.*

Beset with loftie tops of hills, and Northward lying spread,
Among her sister-townes alone she beareth up her head.
The warme sun-beames such temper give to sharpnesse of the aire,
That neither scorching heat you need, nor pinching cold to feare.
The sea, the fishfull rivers eke, with plenteous gulfes and streames,
Make this place rich, and one of them enriches it with gemmes.
Plain-hearted men, of lightsome lookes, and cheerfull, passing kind
To strangers: decent everie thing and neat you shall there finde.
Their noble gentrie ancient, their livings ancient were
And their demesnes: undaunted hearts and martiall mindes they beare.
The Justice Hall, as mother kinde, she honours due doth daigne
Professions all; art strives with wit, and wit with arts againe.
All short of her. But praises all of this my genitresse
That she deserves, no wit nor art is able to expresse.

A It is almost incredible what abundance of * Salmons as well these rivers, as others also in Scotland on both sides of the realme, doe breed. This fish was altogether unknowne unto *Plinie*, unless it were that *Esox* of the Rhene: but in this North part of Europe passing well known, shining and glittering (as he saith) with his red bowels. In Autumne they engender within little rivers, and in shallow places for the most part, what time they cast their spawn, and cover it over with sand: and then are they so poore and leane, that they seeme to have nothing else in a manner but their small bones. Of that spawn in the spring next following there comes a frye of tender little fishes, which making toward the sea, in a small time grow to their full bignesse: and in returning backe againe to seeke for the rivers wherein they were bred; they strive and struggle against the streame: and looke whatsoever lyeth in their way to hinder their passage, with a jerke of their taile, and a certaine leape (whence haply they had their name Salmons) to the wonder of the beholders, they nimbly whip over; and keepe themselves within these rivers of theirs untill they breed. During which time it is enacted by law they should not bee caught; namely, from the feast of the Assumption of our Ladie, to the feast of Saint Andrew in winter. And it should seeme they were reputed among the greatest commodities of Scotland, when likewise it was ordained that they should not be sold unto Englishmen, but for English gold, and no other contentation. But these matters I leave for others.

* Bede, and our writers called them in Latin *Eschii*.

C To come now unto the Earles of *Marre*. In the reigne of Alexander the third, William Earle of *Marre* is named among those that were sore offended and displeased with the King. Whiles *David Bruce* reigned, *Donald* Earle of *Marre*, Protector of the Kingdome, was before the battaile at *Dyplin* murdered in his bed, by *Edward Balliol*, and the Englishmen that came to aide him: whose daughter *Iabel* King *Robert Bruce* tooke to be his former wife, on whom he begat *Marjorie* mother to *Robert Stewart* King of Scots. Under the same David there is mention also made of *Thomas* Earle of *Marre*, who was banished in the yeere 1361. Likewise in the reigne of Robert the third, *Alexander Stewart* is named Earle of *Marre*, who in the battell at *Harley* against the Ilanders lost his life, in the year 1411. In the daies of King James the first we read in *Scots-Chronicon* thus: *Alexander* Earle of *Marre* died in the yeere 1435. the base son of *Alexander Stewart* Earle of *Bucquan*, sonne to *Robert* the second King of Scots, after whom, as being a bastard, the King succeeded in the inheritance. John the second sonne of King James the second afterwards bare this title; who being convict for attempting by art magicke to take away the King his brothers life, was let blood to death. And after him *Robert Cockeran* was promoted from a Mason to this dignitie by King James the third, and soon after hanged by the Nobilitie. Since which time this honourable title was discontinued, untill that Queen Marie adorned therewith James her bastard brother: and not long after, when it was found that by ancient right the title of Earle of *Marre* appertained to John Lord *Ereskin*, in lieu of *Marre* she conferred upon him the honour of Earle *Murray*, and created *John Ereskin*, a man of ancient and noble birth Earle of *Marre*; whose sonne bearing the same Christian name, now enioieth also the same dignity, and is in both realmes one of the Kings Privie Council.

Earles of Mar.

Scots-Chronicon lib. 12. cap. 23.

BUCHANIA

BUQUHAN.



THE *TAIZALI* mentioned by *Ptolomee*, in ancient times inhabited where now *Buquhan*, in Latin *Roghania* and *Buchania*, above the river *Done* beareth forth toward the German sea. Some derive this latter name a *Bobus*, that is, *From Oxen and Kine*; whereas notwithstanding the ground serveth better to feed sheepe, whose woole is highly commended. Albeie the rivers in this coast everie where breed

River Ratra.

An admirable
waters.

Claik-geefe.

Amber.

Concerning
the manners of
the Germans.Earles of Bu-
quhan.The valour of
Scots in the
wars of France.

breed great store of Salmons, yet doe they never enter into the river *Ratra*, as *Buchanan* hath recorded. Neither let it be offensive if I cite his testimonie, although his bookes by authoritie of Parliament in the yeere 1584. were forbidden: because many things in them contained are to be dashed out. Who also hath written, That on the banke of *Ratra* there is a cave neere unto *Stangs Castle*, the nature whereof seemeth not to be passed over. The water distilling by drops out of a naturall vault, presently turneth into *Pyramidall stones*, and were not the said cave or hole otherwhiles rid and cleansed by mans labour, the whole space as far as up to the vault would in short time be filled therewith. Now the stone thus engendred is of a middle nature betweene yce and hard stone: for it is brittle and easie to crumble, neither groweth it ever to the soliditie and hardnesse of marble. Concerning those *Claik-geefe*, which some with much admiration have beleevd to grow out of trees, both upon this shore & elsewhere, and when they be ripe to fall downe into the sea, it is scarce worth the labour to mention them. That there be little birds engendred of old and rotten keeles of ships, they can beare witnesse, who saw that ship wherein *Francis Drake* sailed about the world, standing in a docke neere the *Tamis*; to the outside of the keele whereof a number of such little birds without life and feathers stuck close. Yet would I gladly thinke that the generation of these birds, was not out of the logges of wood, but from the very Ocean, which the Poets tearmed the *Father of all things*.

A mightie masse likewise of Amber, as bigge as the bodie of an horse, was not many yeeres since cast upon this shore. The learned call it *Succinum*, *Glessum*, and *Chryso-Eletrum*: and *Soracm* supposed that it was a certaine juice or liquor which distillith out of trees in Britain, and runneth downe into the sea, and is therein hardened. *Tacitus* also was of the same opinion, when he wrote thus: *I can verily beleve, that like as there be trees in the secret and inward parts of the East, which sweate out frankincense and balme, so in the Islands and other countries of the west, there be woods and groves of a more fastid and firme substance, which melting by the hot beames of the Sunne approaching so neere, runneth into the sea hard by, and by force of tempest floateth up to the shores against it.* But *Serapio*, and the Philosophers of later times write that it cometh out of a certain clammy and bituminous earth under the sea, and by the sea side; and that the billowes and tempests cast up part thereof a land, and fishes devour the rest. But I digresse extravagantly, I will into my way againe, and since I acknowledge my fault, let my confession purchase pardon.

In the reigne of King *Alexander* the second, *Alexander Comin* rose up to the honour of Earle of *Buguban*, who married the daughter and one of the heires of *Roger de Quincie* Earle of Winchester in England, and his Niece by a sonne brought the same title unto *Henrie de Beaumont* her husband: for he, in King *Edward* the third his daies had his place in the Parliament of England, by the name of Earle of *Buguban*. Afterwards, *Alexander Stewart*, sonne to King *Robert* the second, was Earle of this place; unto whom succeeded *John*, a younger sonne of *Robert Duke of Albanie*, who arriving in France with seven thousand Scottisshmen to aide *Charles* the seventh King of France, bare himselfe valiantly, and performed singular good service against the Englishmen, and that with so great commendation, as having victoriously slaine *Thomas Duke of Clarence* brother to *Henrie* the fifth King of England at *Baugie*, and discomfited the English, he was made Constable of France. But in the third yeere following, when the fortune of warre turned, hee, with other most valiant Knights, to wit, *Archibald Douglass* Earle of *Wigton*, and *Duke of Touraine*, &c. was vanquished at *Vernoil* by the English, and there slain. Whom notwithstanding, as that Poet said,

—*eternum memorabit Gallia cives*
Grata suos, titulos que dedit & summos.

France thankfully will ay recount, as citizens of her owne,

On whom both titles glorious, and tombes she hath bestowne.

Certes, whereas under the K.K. *Charles* the sixth and seventh France was preferred, and *Aquitain* recovered, by thrusting out the English, the Frenchmen cannot chuse

A chuse but acknowledge themselves much beholden to the fidelitie and fortitude of the Scottissh. But afterwards King *James* the first gave the Earldome of *Buguban* unto *George* of *Dunbar*, moved thereto upon pitie and commiseration, because hee had deprived him before of the Earldome of *March* by authority of Parliament, for his fathers crime: and not long after, *James* the sonne of *James Stewart of Lorn*, surnamed the *Black Knight*, whom he had by *Q. Joan* sister to the Duke of *Somerfer*, and widow to King *James* the first, obtained this honour, and left it to his posteritie: but for default not long since of heires male, it came by a daughter married to *Robert Douglas*, a younger brother of *Douglas* of *Lochlevin*, to the family of the *Douglasses*.

From *Buguban*, as the shore bendeth backward and turneth full into the North, lieth *Boena*, and *Bamff* a small Sherifdome, also *Ajuza* a little territorie of no especiall account, and *Rothamay* castle, the dwelling place of the Barons of *Salton*, surnamed *Aberneiby*. Beneath these lieth *Strath-bolgy*, that is, the vale by *Bolgy*, the habitation in times past of the Earls of *Athol*, who of it assumed their surname, but now the principall seat of *Marquess Huntly*. For this title *K. James* the sixth conferred upon *George Gordon*, Earle *Huntly*, *Lord Gordon* and *Badzeneth*, a man of great honour and reputation for his ancient noblesse of birth, and the multitude of his dependants and followers: whose ancestors descended from the *Setons*, by Parliamentary authoritie took the name of *Gordon* (when as *Sir Alexander Seton* had taken to wife the daughter of *Sir John Gordon* Knight, by whom he had a large and rich inheritance) and received the honour of the Earle of *Huntly* at the hands of King *James* the second, in the yeere 1449.

Boen.
Barons of Sal-
ton.
Strathbolgy.Marquess
Huntly.

MORAVIA, or MURRAY.

He *Vacomagi*, remembered by *Ptolomee*, anciently inhabited on the further side of *Craniz-baine* mountain, which, as it were in a continued range, by hills hanging one by another, driveth out his ridge with many a winding as far as to *Murray frish*, where now lieth *Murray*, in Latin *Moravia*, celebrated for the fertilitie, pleasant site, and commoditie of fruitfull trees. By this Province, *Spey* a famous river maketh his issue into the sea, wherein he lodgeth, when hee hath watered *Roths Castle*, whence the family of the *Lesleys* tooke the title of Earle, ever since that *K. James* the second conferred the honour of Earle of *Roths* upon *Sir George Lesley*. Concerning this *Spey* our Poet *Necham* hath thus written.

Vacomagi.
Murray bay.
Sinus Pararisi.The river
Spey.
History of
John Lesley
Bishop of
Ross.

Spey loca mutantis præceps agitator arena,
Inconstans certas nescit habere vias.
Officium limris corbis subit, hunc regis audax
Cursus labemnis nauta fluentia sequens.

Spey raising heaps of sand amaine, that shift oft times their place,
Inconstant he doth change oft soones, and keeps no certaine race.
A panier serves here for a boat, some ventrous swaine it guides,
Who followeth still the rivers course, while downe the streame it glides.

The river *Loxa* mentioned by *Ptolomee*, which now is called *Losse*, hideth himselfe in the sea hard by, neere unto which *Elgina* appeareth, in which and in *Forres* adjoining I. of *Dunbar* of *Cummock*, descended from the stock of the Barles of *March*, hath his jurisdiction as Sheriff by inheritance. But where it is now readie to enter into the sea, he findeth a more plaine and soft soile, and spreadeth abroad into a Meere full of swans, wherein the herbe *Olorina* plentifully groweth; hee hath *Spiny Castle* standing upon it, whereof now the first Baron is *Alexander*, of the lineage of the *Lindseys*; like as *Kinloss* also a neighbour by, sometime a famous Monasterie (some call it *Kill flos*, of certaine flowers miraculously there springing up on a sudden, when the carcase of King *Duff*, murdered and hidden in the same place, was found) hath also for the Lord thereof *Edward Bryn*, M. of the Rolls in England, & of the Kings Majesties Privie Counsell, whom King *James* the sixth created Baron *Bryn* of *Kinloss*.

The river
Loxa.

Baron of Spiny.

Baron Kinloss.

Thus

Banatia.

Narne Sherif-
dome.

Logh-Nesse.

Innerneffe.

Thus much for the shore. More inward, where now standeth *Bean Castle* (thought to bee *BANATIA* that *Prologues* mentioneth) there was found in the yeere 1466, a vessell of marble artificially engraven, and full of Roman coine. Hard by is *Nardin*, or *Narne*, an hereditable Sherifdome of the *Cambels* of *Lorne*; where there stood within a Biland, a fortresse of a mightie heighth, built with wonderfull bulwarks, and in times past defended by the Danish forces against the Scottis. A little off is *Logh-Nesse*, a very great Lake, as reaching out 23. miles in length; the water whereof is so warme, that even in this cold and frozen climate it never freezeth: from which, by a verie small *Isthm* or partition of hills, the *Logh-Lorne* or *Louthea*, which by *Aberket* teth it selfe forth into the West sea, is divided. Neere unto these *Loghs*, there stood in old time two notable fortifications, the one named *Innerneffe*, the other *Innerlothea*, according to the names of the said *Loghs*. *Innernes* hath for Sheriffe thereof by right of inheritance the *Marquesse Huntly*, who is of great command hereabout. But have here what *M. Jonston* hath written jointly of these two.

I N N E R N E S S E S,

&

I N N E R L O T H E A.

*Imperii veteris duo propugnacula quondam,
Primæque regali mania structa manu.
Turribus oppositis adverso in limine spectat
Hæc Zephyrum, Solus illa orientis equos.
Amnibus hinc atque hinc cincta, utraq; piscibus amnes
Fecundi, hæc portu perperè intapatæ.
Hæc fuit, ac jacer heu, jam nunc sine nomine tellus,
Hospita quæ Regum, est hospita facta feris.
Altera spirat adhuc renais sufflaminavite,
Quæ dabit & furi turbine vitæ manus.
Dic ubi hæc Carthago potens? ubi Martia Roma?
Trojæque, & immensa diu opes Asia?
Quid mireris enim mortalia cedere furis
Corpora? cum videas oppida posse mori.*

I N N E R N E S S E,

A N D

I N N E R L O T H E A.

Two mightie forts and holds these were in ancient kingdomes daies;
The first wall'd fences, as they say, that hand of Kings did raise.
Affront with towres oppos'd they stand, for one of them regards
The Westerne winde, but th'other looks the Sun-rising towards.
On both sides they their rivers have, and rivers full of fish:
One hath an haven frequented aye, and safe as heart can wish.
Such was it once; but now alas to wast and desert fields
Is turn'd, and that which lodged Kings to wild beasts harbour yeelds.
The other yet draw's breath, though deepe, and shewes that it doth live;
But over match'd, to destinie at length doth bucklers give.
What's now become of Carthage great? where is that martiall Rome?
Where Troy? of wealthie Asia the riches all and some?
No marvaile now that mortall wights to death be subject, why?
Because you plainly see that Townes and Cities great may dye.

Earles of Mur-
ray.

Under the reigne of *Robert Brum*, *Thomas Randolph* his sisters sonne, who in his Countries behalfe undertooke exceeding great paines, and most grievous quarrels, was highly renowned by the title of Earle of *Murray*. Under King *Robert the Second*, *John of Dunbarre* tooke to wife the Kings daughter, to make amends for

After her devirgination, received this Earldome of *Murray* with her in marriage. Under King *James the second* *William Creighton* Chancelour of the Realme, and *Archibald Douglas* grew to great variance and eagre contention about this Earldome, when as against the lawes and ancient customes, *Douglas* who had married the younger daughter of *James of Dunbar* Earle of *Murray*, was preferred to the Earldom before *Creighton* who had wedded the elder, and that through the powerfull authoritie that *William Earle Douglass* had with the King; which was so great that he advanced not onely him to the Earldom of *Murray*, but also another brother to the Earldome of *Ormund*; and made two cousins of his Earles, the one of *Angus*, and the other of *Morton*. But this greatneffe of his, not to be trusted upon because it was excessive, turned soone after to his owne confusion. Under King *James the fifth*, his own brother, whom he appointed his Vicegerent in the government of the Kingdome, enjoied this honour: and within our remembrance, *James the base sonne* of King *James the fifth* received this honour of *Queene Mary* his sister: but he requited her basely, when conspiring with some few of the Nobilitie, he deposed her from her Royall estate and kingdome; a foule president, and prejudiciall to all Kings and Princes. Which notwithstanding was revenged, for shortly after hee was shot through with a bullet. His onely daughter brought this title unto her husband *Sir James Stewart of Downe*, who was also of the blood royall from the Dukes of *Albany*: who being slain by his concurrents left his sonne *James* to succeed him in this honour.

L O Q H U A B R E.



Whatsoever beyond the *Nesse* bendeth to the West coast, and adjoineeth to the Lake *Aber*, is thereupon called *Loquhabre*, that is in the ancient tongue of the Britans, *The mouth of the Lakes*, as what lieth toward the North is commonly called *Rosse*.

Loquhabre is full of fresh pastures and woods, neither is without yron mines, but not so free in yeeld of corne; but for most fishfull pooles, and rivers scarce inferiour to any country thereabout. At *Logh-Lothey*, *Innerlothey*, fenced with a fort, and well frequented with Merchants, was of great name and importance in times past, but being razed by the piracies and warres of Danes and Norwegians, it hath lien for these many ages so forlorn, that there remaineth scarce any shew of it; which those verses that I alledged even now doe imply. *Loquhabre* hath had, so farre as I have read, no Earles: but about the yeere of our salvation 1050. there was a *Thane* over it of great fame, and much spoken of, named *Banquo*, whom *Macbeth* the bastard, when with murder & bloodshed he had usurped the crowne, being fearfull and suspicious, caused to bee made away; for that he had learned by a Prophecie of certaine wise women, that his posteritie, when the line of *Macbeth* was expired and extinct, should one day obaine the Kingdome, and by a long successive descent reigne in Scotland. Which verily hath fallen out accordingly. For *Fleance* the sonne of *Banquo*, who unknowne in the darke escaped the traines laid for him, fled into Wales, where for a time hee kept himselfe close: and having taken to wife *Nesta* the daughter of *Griffith ap Lewellin* Prince of *North-wales*, begat *Walter*, who returning into Scotland, with so great fame of his fortitude repressed the rebellion of the Islanders; and with as great wisdom managed the Kings revenewes in this tract, that the King made him *Seneschall*, whom they commonly call *Stewart* of the whole Kingdome of Scotland. Whereupon this name of Office imposed the surname *Stewart* unto his posteritie: who spreading throughout all parts of Scotland into a number of noble branches, after many honours heaped upon them, have flourished a long time, and from out of them, three hundred yeeres agoe and thirtie, *Robert Stewart* by *Marjorie* his mother, daughter to King *Robert Brum*, obtained the Kingdome of Scotland:

Eccc

and

Innerlothe:

Thane of Lo-
quhabre.
Banquo.The beginning
of the Stewart
family.

and now lately James *Stewart* of that name the sixth King of Scots, by Margaret his great grandmother, daughter to King Henrie the seventh (the divine power of that most high and almighty Ruler of the world so disposing) is ascended with the generall applause of all nations, to the height of Monarchicall majestic over all Britaine, and the Isles adjacent.

ROSSIA.

THe Province *Ross*, so called by an old Scottish word, which some interpret to be a *Promontorie*, others a *Biland*, was inhabited by the people named *CANTÆ* (which terme in effect implieth as much) in the time of *Ptolomee*. This extendeth it selfe so wide and large, that it reacheth from the one sea to the other. What way it beareth upon the *Vergivian* or Western Ocean, by reason of huge swelling mountaines advancing their heads aloft; and many woods among them, it is full of staggess, roe buckes, fallow Deere; and wilde foule: but where it butteth upon the German sea, it is more lovely bedect with corne fields and pastures, and withall much more civill. In the very first entrance into it *Ardmanoch*, no small territorie, whereof the second sonnes of the Kings of Scotland beare the title, riseth up with high mountaines, that are most trustie preferers of snow. As touching their height, some have reported unto me strange wonders: and yet the ancient Geometers have written, that neither the depth of sea, nor height of hills exceed by the plumbe line ten stadia, that is, one mile and a quarter. Which notwithstanding, they that have beheld *Tenariffe*, amongst the *Canarie* Islands, which is fiftene leagues high, and sailed withall the Ocean neere unto them, will in no wise admit for truth. In this part standeth *Lover Castle*, and the Baronie of the worthy family of the *Frasers*, whom for their singular good service for the Scottish kingdome, King James the second accepted into the ranke of Barons: and whom the *Clan-Ranalds*, a most bloodie generation, in a quarrell and braule between them, had wholly destroyed every mothers sonne, but that by the providence of God, fourescore of the principall persons of this family left their wives at home all great with child, who being delivered of so many sonnes, renewed the house, and multiplied the name againe. But at *Nesse mouth* there flourished sometimes *Chanonie*, so called of a rich Colledge of Chanons, whiles the Ecclesiasticall state stood in prosperitie, in which there is erected a See for the Bishop of *Rosse*. Hard by is placed *Cromartie*, where *Ferghuart*, a Gentleman of noble birth, by hereditarie right from his ancestours, ministrerth justice as Sheriffe to this Sherifsdome: and this is so commodious and safe an harbour for any fleet, be it never so great, that both Sailers and Geographers name it *PORTUS-SALUTIS*, that is, *The Haven of safetie*.

Above it is *LITTUS ALTUM*, whereof *Ptolomee* maketh mention, called now, as it seemeth, *Tarbarih*: for there indeed the shore riseth to a great height, enclosed on the one side with *Cromer* a most secure and safe haven; and on the other with *CELNIUS*, now *Killian* the river: and thus much of the places toward the East Ocean. Into the west sea the river *LONGUS*, mentioned in *Ptolomee*, at this day named *Lough Longus*, runneth: then the *CERONES* anciently dwelt where now is *Assinshire*, a countrey much mangled with many inlets and armes of the sea inbofoming it selfe with manifold commodities.

As for the Earls of *Rosse*, it is full of difficulty to set them down in order successively out of writers. About foure hundred yeers past, we read that *Ferghuard* flourished & enjoyed this title: But for default of issue male, it came by a daughter to *Walter Lesley*, who for his noble feats of armes courageously achieved under *Lewis* the Emperour, was worthily named *The Noble Knight*: he begat *Alexander* Earle of *Rosse*, and a daughter married unto *Donald* Lord of the *Islands Hebrides*. This *Alexander* had issue one onely daughter, who made over by her deed all her owne title

and

The people
Cantæ.Baron of Ard-
manoch.The height of
hills, and depth
of sea.
Plutarch. in
Pub. Æmilius,
concerning O-
lympus.Portus Salutis.
Littus Altum.The river Cel-
nio.
Ceronas.

Earls of Rosse.

and right unto *Robert Duke of Albany*: whereat the said *Donald* of the Islands being highly enchaifed and repining, stiled himselfe in the reigne of James the third, *King of the Islands*, and *Earle of Rosse*, having with fire and sword laied waste his native country far & neere. At length, the said K. James the third by authoritie of Parliament, in the yeere 1476, annexed the Earldome of *Rosse* to the crowne, so as it might not be lawfull for his successours to alienate by any meanes from the crowne, either the Earldome it selfe, or any parcell thereof; or by any device to grant the same unto any person, save onely to the Kings second sonnes lawfully borne: whence it is that *Charles* the Kings second sonne, *Duke of York*, at this day holdeth and enioieth the title of *Earle of Rosse*.

SUTHERLAND.

BEyond *Rosse*, *Sutherland* looketh toward the East Ocean; a land more meet to breed cattell than to beare corne: wherein there be hills of white marble (a wonderfull thing in this so cold a climate) but of no use almost, considering excesse in building, and that vain ostentation of riches, is not yet reached to these remote regions. Here is *Dunrobin*, a castle of very great name, the principall seat of the ancient Earles of *Sutherland*, descended, if I be not deceived, out of the family of *Murray*. Among whom, one *William* under King *Robert Brus* is most famous, who married the sister of the whole blood to K. *David*, and had by her a son, whom the said *David* declared heire apparant of the crown, and compelled his Nobles to sweare unto him alleageance: but he within a little after departed without issue, and the Earldome in the end came by a daughter and heire hereditarily unto *A. Gordon*, one of the line of the Earles of *Huntly*.

Mountains of
white marble.

Dun-robin.

Earles of Su-
therland.

CATHANES.

Higher lieth *CATHANES*, butting full upon the said East sea bending inward with a number of creakes and compasses, which the waves as it were indent: In which dwelt in *Ptolomees* time the *CATINI*, but written falsly in some copies *CARINI*, among whom the selfe same *Ptolomee* placeth the river *Ila*, which may seem to be the *Wisle* at this day. The inhabitants of this province raised their greatest gaine and revenues by grazing and raising of cattell, and by fishing. The chiefe castle therein is called *Girnego*, in which the Earls of *Cathness* for the most part make their abode. The Bishops sea is in *Dornock*, a little meane town otherwise; where also King James the fourth appointed the Sheriffe of *Cathness* to reside, or else at *wik*, as occasions should require, for the administration of justice.

Catini a people.

The Earles of *Cathness* in ancient times were also Earles of the *Orcades*, but at last they became distinct, and by the eldest daughter of one *Malise* given in marriage to *William Seindler* the Kings Pantler, his heires successively came to be Earls of *Cathness*, and doe still enjoy the same honour.

Earls of
Cathness.

STRATHNANERN.

He utmost and farthest coast of all Britaine, which with the front of the shore looketh full against the North point, and hath the midst of the greater Beares taile, which, as *Cardan* was of opinion, causeth translations of Empires, just over head, was inhabited, as wee may see in *Ptolomee*, by the *CORNABII*, among whom he placeth the river *NABEUS*, which names are of so

Cornabii.
The river
Nabe.

Eccc 2

Wolves.

The longest
daies.

Berubium.

Virvedrum.
Orcas.Tarvisium, or
Tarvodunum
in Marcianus.
Tarvis what it
is.
Shetland.

neere affinitie; that the nation may seeme to have drawne their denomination from A the river that they dwelt by: neither doth the moderne name *Strath-Navern*, which signifieth the *Valley by Navern*, jarre altogether in sound from them. The country it selfe is for the soile nothing fertile, and by reason of the sharpe and cold aire, lesse inhabited; and thereupon fore haunted and annoied with most cruell wolves. Which in such violent rage not only set upon cattell, to the exceeding great dammage of the inhabitants, but also assaile men with great danger; and not in this tract onely, but in many other parts likewise of Scotland, in so much as by vertue of an act of Parliament, the Sheriffs and inhabitants in every countrey, are commanded to goe forth thrice a yeere a hunting, for to destroy the wolves and their whelpes. But (if in this B so Northerly a countrey this be any comfort to speak of) it hath of all Britain again the shortest night, and the longest day. For, by reason of the position of heaven here distant from the Equinoctiall line 59. degrees and fortie minutes, the longest day containeth 18. houres and 25. scruples: and the shortest night not above five houres and 45. scruples. So that the Panegyrist is not true in this, who made report in times past, *That the sunne in manner setteth not at all, but passeth by, and lightly glanceth upon the Horizon: haply relying upon this authoritie of Tacitus, for that the extreme points, and plaine levels of the earth, with their shade so low raised up no darknesse at all.* But more truly Plinie (according to true reason) where hee treateth of the longest dayes, according to the inclination of the sunnes circle to the Horizon. *The longest daies (saith he) in Italy are 15. houres, in Britaine 17. where the light nights doe prove that undoubtedly by experience, which reason forceth credibly, that in Midsummer daies, when the sunne approacheth neer to the Pole of the world, the places of the earth under the Pole have day 6. months, though the light having but a narrow compasse, the night contrariwise when he is farre remote in middle winter.*

In this utmost tract, which *Ptolomee* extendeth out farre East, whereas indeed it beareth full North (for which *Roger Bacon* in his Geography taxed him long since) where *Tacitus* said, *That an huge and enorme space of ground running still forward to the farthest point, groweth narrow like a wedge.* There run out three Promontories, mentioned by the old writers, namely *BERUBIUM*, now called *Urdehead*, neere to *Bernswale* a village: *VIRVEDRUM*, now *Dunsby*, otherwise named *Duncansby*, which is thought to be the most remote promontorie of Britain: *ORCAS*, now named *Howburn*, which *Ptolomee* setteth over against the Islands *Orcades*, as the utmost of them all: this also in *Ptolomee* is called *TARVEDRUM*, and *TARVISIUM*, and so named, if my conjecture faile me not, because it is the farthest end of Britaine: for *Tarvis* in the British tongue hath a certaine signification of ending. With which I accordingly will end this booke, purposing to speake of the out-Isles, *Orcades*, *Hebudes* or *Hebrides*, and of *Shetland*, in their due place.

THus have I briefly run over Scotland, and verily more briefly than the worth of so great a kingdom requireth: neither doubt I but that some one or other will set it forth more at large, and depaint it (as I said) with a more flourishing penfill, in greater certainty, and upon better knowledge; when as our most mighty Monarch now openeth those remote places, hitherto fore-closed from us. Meane while, if I have at any time dropt asleepe (for the most watchfull may sometimes bee taken napping) or if some error in this unknowne tract hath misled mee from the truth (as nothing is more rife and easie than error) I hope the courteous Reader will pardon it upon my acknowledgment; and of his kindnesse recalling me from error, direct me in the right way to the truth.

IRELAND

IRELAND;
AND
THE SMALLER
ISLANDS IN THE
BRITISH OCEAN.

Eccc 3



THE BRITISH OCEAN.

Now have I rather passed over than thoroughly surveyed all BRITAIN, namely, those two most flourishing Kingdomes, ENGLAND and SCOTLAND: And whereas I am now to crosse the seas for IRELAND, and the rest of the Isles, if I premise some few lines touching the British sea, I hope it shal not seem a crooked course, or an extravagant digression.

The British sea

BRITAIN is encompassed round about with the vast open and main Ocean, which ebbeth and floweth so violently with main tides, that, as Pytheas of Marfiles hath reported, it swelleth 80. cubits about Britaine: and St. Basile hath termed it Mare Magnum, &c. The great sea and dreadfull to Sailers: yea and S. Ambrose wrote thus of it; The great sea not adventurous on by sailers, nor attempted by Mariners, is that which with a roaring and furling current environeth Britaine, and reacheth into far remote parts, and so hidden out of sight, as that the fables have not yet come hither. Certes this sea sometimes overfloweth the fields adjoining, other whiles again it retireth & leaveth all bare: and that I may use the words of Plinie, by reason of this open largenesse, it feeleth more effectually the force and influence of the Moone, exercising her power thereupon without impeachment: and it floweth at waies up within the land with such violence, that it doth not onely drive back the streames of rivers, but also either overtaketh and surpriseth beasts of the land, or else leaveth behind it those of the sea. For there have bin seen in everie age, to the great astonishment of the beholders, so many and so huge Seamonsters left on dry land on our shore, that Horace sang this note not without good cause:

Lib. Hexamet.
ron. cap. 3.

British sea in
times past un-
knowne.

Belluosus qui remotis
Obstrepat Oceanus Britannis.

The Ocean of sea-monsters freight with store,
Upon the Britans farre remote doth roare.

And Juvenal in the like tune.

Quanto Delphino Balæna Britannica major.

As much as Whales full huge, that use to breed
In British Sea, the Dolphins doe exceed.

And

And so great an adventure and exploit it was thought, but to crosse only this our sea, that Libanius the Grecian sophister, in a Panegyricall oration unto Constantinus Chlorus, cried out in these words: *ἡ ἀποβασις ἡ εἰς τὴν βρετανίαν*: that is, This voiage into Britain seemed comparable to the greatest triumph. And Julius Firmicus, not that famous Astrologer, but another that was a Christian, in a little treatise of the error of profane religions, written unto the Emperours Constant & Constantius, brake out into this exclamation. In winter time (a thing that never was done before, nor ever will be done again) ye trampled under your oares the swelling and raging billowes of the British Ocean. The waves of the sea, unknown in a manner before times unto us, then trembled and quaked, and the Britans were terrified at the sudden presence of the Emperor: What will ye more? the very elements yielded themselves as conquered unto your valerous vertues.

Jul. Firmicus.

The winde
Caurus.

The famous learned man Julius Scaliger in his Poeticalls, affirmeth that Caurus the North-west winde arise and bloweth out of this British sea, and that against the opinion of Lucan, who wrote thus:

Primus ab Oceano caput exeret Atlantæo,
Caurus, movens ætus.

From Ocean call'd Atlantick, Caurus thou first
Thy head dost shew, making seas fell and curst.

Certes in Ireland he keeps foule work, and plaies the tyrant; and Cæsar writeth that a great part of the yeere he stands in this coast.

But whereas some write that in this our sea ships were first devised & used, I am not disposed to beleieve them. But Plinie witnesseth that the Britans used small wicker vessels, covered over with hides (which at this day they tearm *Corraghs*) and with Plinie accordeth Lucan, who versifieth in this wise.

The old twi-
gen or wicker
ships of the
Britans.

Primum cana salix madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim, cæloque induta juvenco,
Vectoris patiens tumidum super emicat, annem:
Sic Venetus stagnante Pado, fuso que Britannus
Navigat Oceano.

At first wet twiggies of willow grey, that long in soake had laine,
And covered over close with hide of Oxe or Bullocke laine,
(But wrought before unto the forme of little barke or boat)
Used to carrie passengers, the swelling streames afloat.
Thus over Po, that river large, sailes the Venetian,
And thus the Britan maketh way upon the spacious Ocean.

Semblably Solinus Polyhistor. In the sea between Britain and Ireland they saile in wicker bottomes, which they cover round about with Oxe

A Oxe hides. And how long soever as the course holdeth, so long the sailers forbear food.

As for the commodities which this sea affordeth, the warmth whereby it comforteth and cherisheth the earth, the vapours wherewith it nourisheth the aire, and bedeweth the fields: touching also the great varietie of fishes that it breedeth, as Salmons (which Bede calleth *Ilcios*, as Plinie *Esox*) Plaice, Pungers, Cods, Hadocks, Whittings, Herrings, Basse, Maccarell, Mullets, Turbits, Seales or Sea-calves, Rochets, Soles, Pilchards, Raifish or Scale, Thorn-back, Oysters, Lobsters, Crab-fish, and an infinite number of others, whereof it maintaineth and feedeth innumerable skuls and beds, it is not materiall to speake, they are so well knowne. Yet the pearles are not to bee overpassed in silence, which King Iubas reporteth to be shaped round, and to swim in the British sea by flocks or swarms, in manner of bees, following their Captaine and Leader.

Pearles.

And Marcellinus, when he had spoken of the Persian and Indian pearles; which kind of gemme (saith he) we are not ignorant to be engendred and gathered in the creekes of the British sea, although they bee not of that beautie and worth. Which although they be accounted by Plinie small ones, and ill coloured, yet Suetonius writeth, that Cæsar made his voiage into Britaine in hope of them; and that they were of such bignesse, as he took the peise of some of them by hand, and dedicated a brest-plate made of them unto Venus Genitrix, which he also witnessed by a subscription. Origen likewise as touching these pearles writeth thus: Sea-pearles, such as be most notable, are found among the Indians, but the best are bred in the Red-sea: In the next place are those pearles which are taken in the British Ocean: but of a third sort, and inferiour in goodnesse not to those first only, but also to these of the second degree, are they that be found in Bosphorus neere Scythia. And after a few lines: But that kind which they say is gotten in Britain, for the superficiall colour verily somewhat resembleth a golden hew, but cloudie it is and troubled, and for the lustre with the dimmest. Furthermore, our Venerable Bede writing of the Shell-fishes of this our sea: Among them (saith he) there bee * Muscles, wherein they find enclosed oftentimes the best pearle of all colours, of purple, violet, and greene, but especially of bright white. There be cochles also in exceeding great abundance, wherewith they die a scarlet colour: the most beautifull red hew whereof, no heat of sunne, nor injurie of raine is ever able to make pale; but the * older it is, the fairer it sheweth. And Tertullian reproving the lavish expence and superfluitie in his time: If ambitious pride (saith he) may be maintained from the British or Indian seas, there is a kind of shell-fish more pleasant in taste, I say not than the purple fish or oyster, but than the very scallop it selfe.

* Muscles

* Verruor
Venustior

This sea, which generally is called MARE BRITANNICUM, and OCEANUS CALEDONIUS, according to the divers situation of places hath sundry and distinct names.

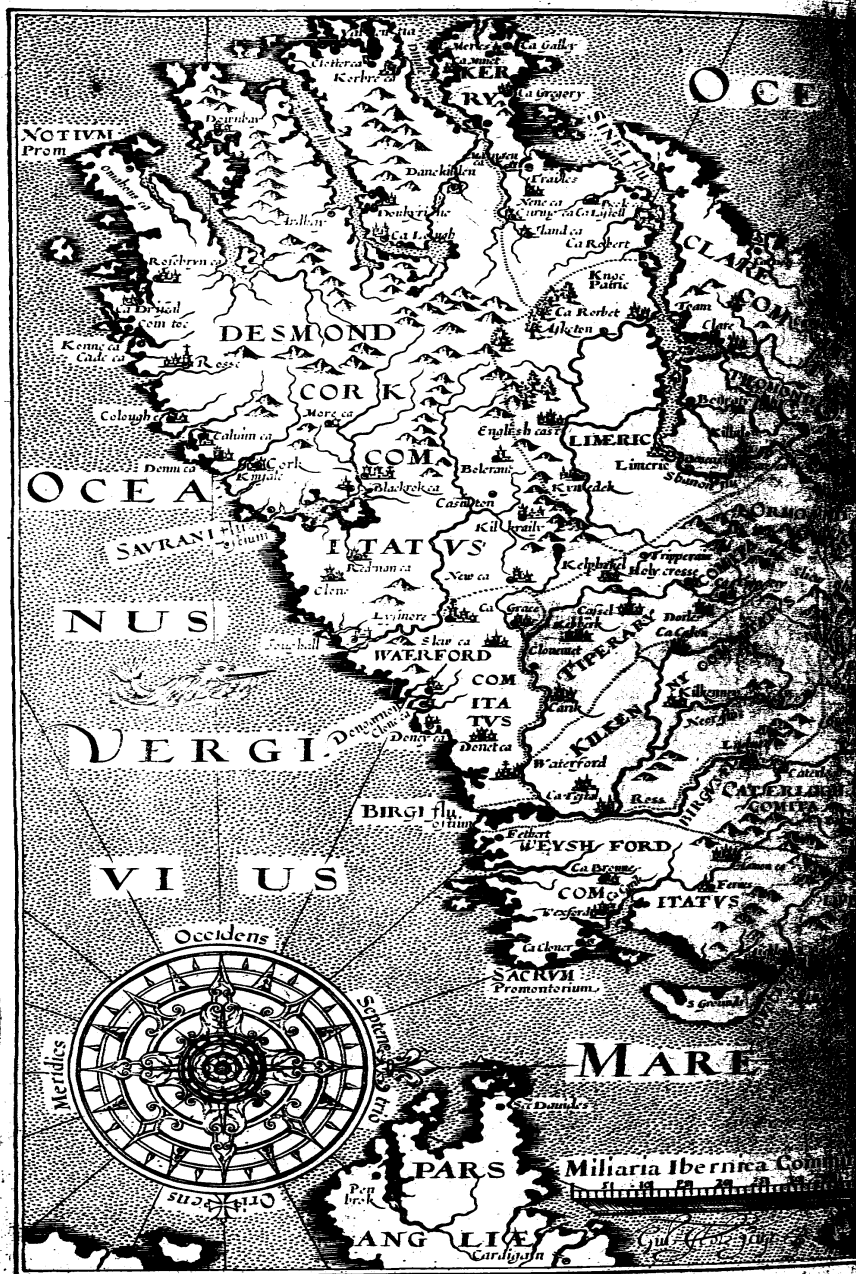
Eastward

Eastward, where it bath Germanie opposite unto it, they call it the GERMAN A
 sea: Northward, it is tearmed the Hyberborean sea, which ancient writers
 reported untruely, to be dead, dull, and heavie for the oare, and in that
 respect not raised with winds: and Tacitus beleev'd it was so, belike,
 because, as he writeth, the Lands and Mountaines be rare, which mini-
 ster cause and matter of tempests, and for that a deep masse of continuat
 sea is more slowly stirred to work and rage. On the West side it is named
 OCEANUS DEUCALEDONIUS, and VERGIVIVS, both South and West from
 Ireland: but all the way that it runneth between Britain and Ireland, the Hi-
 BERNICUS, that is, Irish sea, and by Sea-men at this day S. Georges Chanel,
 And ancient writers have recorded that it rageth all the yeer long, with
 surging billowes and counter seas, and never is at rest nor navigable,
 unlesse it be in some few summer daies. But Southward, where it inter-
 floweth France and Britain, it is properly called the BRITISH sea, and by the
 common mariners, the Chanel, by English sailers the SLEEVE; and in the
 same sense Le Manche in French, because it groweth narrow in manner of a
 sleeve. And this name of the BRITISH sea extended as farre as to Spaine, as C
 writeth Pomponius Mela, being himselfe also a Spaniard, where he repor-
 teth that the Pyrene Mountain runneth forth into the BRITISH OCEAN.

Moreover, there be certain Ilands, which, as it were for a shew, Nature hath
 besprinkled along these seas, fewer toward the East and South parts, but West-
 ward and Northward more in number. For there, by their thick standing to-
 gether, they do after a sort garnish the sea, yea and depaint it as it were with
 their colours, in most pleasant sort. But for as much as Ireland farre excelleth
 all the rest, in regard of the greatnesse thereof, and frequencie of resort there-
 to, it requireth by due right, that it should first be treated of.

HIBER-
 E

F



HIBERNIA, IRELAND.



IN the *Vergivian* sea, which name is derived, not à *vergendo*, that is, of bending towards, as some are of opinion, but of *Mor-veridibz* for this name the Britans gave it: or else of *Farigi*, by which name the Irish men call it, the most famous Iland *HIBERNIA*, that is to say, *IRELAND*, encloseth the West side of Britain; an Iland which in times past challenged the third place amongst all the Isles of the then knowne world. For thus as touching Ilands writeth the an-

The Ocean
Vergivius.

cient Geographer. *Τὸν νῦν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ΤΑΠΡΟΒΑΝΗ καλεῖσθαι τὴν Ἰνδοῦ ἢ ΒΡΕΤΑΝΝΙΚΗ.* *Οὐτὴν ἑστὶν Ὀτὴννία*: that is, Of all Ilands for greatnesse the Indian *TAPROBAN* is prime and principall; next after it *BRITAIN*; and in a third degree another British Iland, named *HIBERNIA*, that is, Ireland; and thereupon *Ptolomee* called it *LITTLE BRITAIN*.

Libro magne
constructionis.

This Isle by *Orpheus*, *Aristotle*, and *Claudian* is named *IERNA*; by *Juvenal* & *Mela* *JUVERNA*; by *Diodorus Siculus* *IRIS*; by *Martian* of *Heraclea* *JOYEPNIA*; by *Eustathius* *OYERNIA* and *BERNIA*; by the native inhabitants *Erin*; by the Britans *Tuerdon*, and of English men *Ireland*. Whence these names have had their originall, sundry and divers opinions have beene conceived from time to time, as in a doubtfull matter. Some derive *Hibernia* from *Hibernio tempore*, that is, from the Winter season; others from *Hiberus* a Spaniard; and some againe from the river *Iberus*: the author of the booke entituled *Eulogium*, from Duke *Irinalph*: *Possellus*, a fancifull man, when he read *Pomponius Mela* publikely in Paris, because hee would seeme to have a reach beyond other men, fetcheth the originall thereof from the Hebrewes: so that *Irin* should bee as much as *Jurin*, that is, the Jewes land: *The Jewes*, forsooth saith he, being most wise Sages, and learned Philosophers, knowing by their learning that the Empire of the world should be settled in the strongest Angle, which lieth west, seized upon those parts, and Ireland with the first: *The Syrians also and Tyrians*, to lay the foundation of their future Empire, endeavoured all they could to inhabit those Regions. Pardon me I pray you if I dare not subscribe hereto, no nor give my consent to that opinion most received, as touching the winter season aforesaid: although I have read, that in this Iland the aire upon every winde is cold and winterlike. As for *Hibernia*, *Juverna*, and *Ouernia*, they came doubtlesse from *IERNIA*, spoken of by *Orpheus* and *Aristotle*: and the same *Ierna*, as also *Iris*, *Tuerdon*, and *Ireland*, from *Erin*, the tearme that the inhabitants use. From this *Erin* therefore, a word proper unto the nation, the originall must be deduced. Here I, with those great Philosophers, *inter*, that is, hold off and suspend my judgement: neither know I what to divine and ground my conjecture upon, unlesse peradventure that name may come from *Hiere*, an Irish word, which with them signifieth the West, or a Western coast; whence *Erin* may seeme to bee derived, as one would say, a Western countrey. Of this opinion have I been a good while since, induced thereto with my owne conceit and flattering conjecture, both because it lieth furthest Westward of any region in all Europe (as being no more than twelve degrees distant from the utmost West point) as also for that the river running in the most remote West part of this Iland, is in *Ptolomee* called *IERNUS*, like as the Promontorie or Cape bearing out farthest West in Spaine (from whence our Irish-men came) is named by *Strabo* *IERNES*, and as the next river unto it, which also is most West of all the rivers in Spaine, is called by *Mela* *IERNA*. Moreover, by reason of the Western situation Spaine is named *Hesperia*, and that West Cape in Affrick, *Hesperium cornu*.

cornu, yea and even in Germanie these countries, *Westrich, Westphalen*, &c. have A their denomination from that position and site: so that it is no marvaile if Ireland were tearmed *Erin* of the Western situation. Besides, these names of Ireland which I have spoken of, the Irish *Bards* or Poets have usually taken up in their ballads these tearmes, *Tirvolas*, *Toiidanan*, and *Banno*, as the most ancient names of this Iland, but upon what reason I wot not, unlesse *Bannow* were that *Bannomanna* which *Plinie* mentioneth out of *Timaeus*, whiles his pen coasteth along the outmost fides and skirts of Europe, and the shore of the Northren Ocean on the left hand from *Scythia*, even as farre as *Cadis* in *Spaine*. For what countrey that same *Bannomanna* should bee, the Geographers have not yet found out But *Biaun* in Irish signifieth *Sacred* or *Holy*, and verily *Festus Avienus* calleth Ireland *SACRAM INSULAM*, that is, *The holy Iland*, in that little booke intituled *ORÆ MARITIMÆ*, that is, *The Sea coast*, which he compiled out of most ancient Geographers: namely, *Hecataeus* of *Mileum*, *Hellanicus* of *Lesbos*, *Phileas* of *Athens*, *Caryandaeus*, *Pausymachus* of *Samos*, *Damasius*, *Eusemon*, and others. But I will write downe his verses: for when he had spoken of the Ilands *Ostryades*, thus he versifieth:

*Ast hinc duobus in SACRAM, sic insulam
Dixere prisca, solibus cursus raris est.
Hac inter undas multum cespitem jactis,
Eamque latè gens Hibernorum colit.
Propinqua rursus insula Albionum patet.*

But to the *SACRED* Isle (for so They us'd to call it long agoe)
From hence a course who so desires,
Just two dayes sailing it requires.
Much turfe it casts the waves among,
And Irish dwell therein along.
Now very neere to it againe,
The Albions Isle is kened plaine.

Ogygia. In his book *De macula in Luna*, that is, *Of the spot in the Moone*.

Isle Cerne.

Hibernia called *Scotia*.

The state of *Ireland*.

If that *O GYGIA*, which *Plutarch* placed on the West side of our Britaine were not *ivap*, but *Imap*, not a vaine dream, but a matter in truth, hee may seeme by that name plainly to point at Ireland, although the reports that he so sadly telleth of it, be meer poeticall fictions & *Milesian toies*. Neither can any man readily tell, why they called it *Ogygia*; unlesse haply of the antiquitie: For the Grecians tearmed nothing by the name of *Ogygia* but that which was very ancient. And *Robert Constantine* seemeth to have shot wide all the world over, when he affirmeth that *CERNE*, mentioned in *Lycophron*, was our Ireland: for *Lycophron* himselfe, and *Tzetzes* that commenteth upon him, doe place *Cerne* toward the sunne rising: and all the best learned men thinke it to be *Madagascar*, situated as it were in another world, right under the Tropique of *Capricorne*, right over against *Ethiopia*. Thus much touching the names of Ireland, yet so, as we remember withall to take this by the way, that in these later times it was called also *SCOTIA*, that is, *Scotland* by *Isidor* and *Bede*, of the Scots who inhabited it: and that thence the name of Scotland, together with the Scots themselves, came into Britaine. But of this we have spoken already once before, and therefore have no cause to repeat here.

This Iland is stretched out from South to North not broader than it is long, as *Sirabo* hath recorded, but shaped in forme of a lentile, or an egge; nor of twentie dayes sailing, as *Philemon* in *Psolomee* hath set it downe: but according to the later writers, it taketh up three hundred miles and no more in length, and is scarcely one hundred and twentie miles broad. On the East side it hath England severed from it with a troublous and tempestuous sea, which is called the *Irish sea*: on the West the huge

A huge maine Western Ocean; on the North the Deucaledonian sea, and on the South the Vergivian sea worketh upon it.

The country, if you would heare *Giraldus Cambrensis* to speak, is uneven, full of hills, fosi, waterish, and boggie, wild and overgrowne with woods, lying open to the winds, and so full of meeres or lagoes, that a man may see ponds and standing waters even upon the mountaines. The aire (as *Mela* saith) is nothing good and favourable for ripening of corn: but the ground is so ranke of grasse, and the same not onely fresh and long, but sweet also withall, that the cattell may fill their bellies in a small piece of the day, and unlesse they be kept from grazing, and not suffered to feed long together, their bellies will burst. Hence B it is that they have such an infinite number of cattell, as being indeed the chiefe and principall wealth of the inhabitants, and many goodly flockes of sheepe, which they sheare twice a yeere, and make of their course wooll, rugges or shagge mantles, cad-dowes also or coverlets, which are vented into forraine countries. They have likewise excellent good horses (we tearme them *Hobbies*) which have not the same pace that other horses in their course, but a soft and round amble, setting one legge before another very finely. Their haukes also are right commendable, but these, as all other living creatures (besides men, women, and greyhounds) are smaller here than in England. Now as well the aire as the ground is excessive moist; whence it is that very many there be fore troubled with loosenesse, and rheumes, but strangers especially: yet for the staying of the same they have an *Aqua vite* of the best, which inflameth a great deale lesse, and dryeth much more than ours. Whereas *Giraldus* writeth, that those which are borne here sicken never of any of the three kinds of feavers, it is daily found by experience to be false. As for the land it selfe (that I may use the testimonie here of the said *Giraldus*) it is of all countries most temperate; neither doth any frying heat of Cancer drive folke to seeke shade, nor chilling cold of Capricorne call them in to the fire: but all times in manner, by reason of the pleasantnesse and tempered disposition of the aire, have a gentle kinde of warmth.

Of Bees there are such numbers, that they bee found not onely in hives, but also within the bodies of trees, and holes of the earth. Likewise it hath vines, but more D for shade, than for any fruit they yeeld. For no sooner is the sunne passed out of *Leo*, but cold blasts here in this our climat are wont presently to follow, and in Autumne the after-noonne heats are lesse effectuall and shorter, both here and in our Britaine, than to give the full and kinde ripening unto Grapes. Besides this, there is no snake in this countrey, nor any venomous thing whatsoever: howbeit much noisance they have every where by wolves. And that I may speake all at a word, whether a man respect the fertilitie of the soil, or the commodiousnesse of sea and havens, or the inhabitants themselves, who are stout, hardie, warlike, wittie, proper men of bodie, and goodly feature, of a wondrous soft skin, by reason also of the tendernesse of muscles passing nimble; the Iland aboundeth in so many blessings, that *Giraldus* said E not without just cause, That nature had cast into this western kingdome of *Zephirus*, a more gracious eye than ordinarie. Now that otherwhiles there goeth of it an ill name, it is for that the inhabitants are in some places wilde and very uncivil, who in a marvellous contrarietie of nature, both love idlenesse, and withall hate quietnesse: who also are immoderately given to fleshly lust, and that over soone. For among the wildest sort they bestow their maidens in marriage, as ripe and readie for husbands, when they be once ten or twelve yeeres of age. Neither will they by any meanes stay for a competent maturitie of yeeres, a thing observed in all other countries. But as touching the manners and qualities of the Irish nation, I will discourse more at large in the end of this booke. And now, if it please you, give Ireland the hearing, whiles she speaketh of her selfe and her commodities, in these verses of that most learned man *Hadrianus Junius*.

*Illa ego sum Graiis olim glacialis Ierne
Diisa, & Iasonis puppis bene cognita nautis:
Qua Tariffiacopropior se tingere soles
Ffff*

Flumine

Giraldus Cambrensis in *Topographia Hibernia*.

Cattell.

Irish mantles and rugges. Horses called Hobbies, Haukes.

*Diseases. * Uskebah.*

Why grapes are not ripe in Britaine.

*Flumine conspicio, Cauro subiecta procaci :
Cui Deus, & melior rerum nascentium origo
Ius commune dedit cum Creta altrice tonantis,
Noxia ne nostris diffundant sibila in oris
Terrifica creti tabo Phorcynidos angues :
Et forte illati compressis faucibus aëris
Viroso pariter vitam cum sanguine ponant.
En ego cum regni scepro, Mavoria bello
Peiora, & horriferas hominum, nil fingo, figuras,
Qui cursu alipedes norint præverere cervos,
Dedico, piscososque lacus, volucrumque paludes
Omnigenum lustris fœtas, stannique fodinas,
Et puræ argenti venas, quas terra repositis
Visceribus manes imos visura recludit.*

I am that frozen Isle, which Greekes once did *Ierne* call,
Well knowne to Argo Jasons ship, and to her sailers all.
Which subiect unto *Caurus* curst have sunne more neer in fight,
When in *Tartessus* floud he sets and seemes to drench his light.
Whom God and better Nature hath secured from this feare
(A gift imparted eke to *Crete* which Jupiter did reare)
That snakes of grim Medusa's blood so filthie that were bred,
Should dare in these my coasts to hisse, and hurtfull venom spread.
And say, that some by chance there were brought thither of that brood,
Throtled anon they lose at once their life with poison'd blood.
Lo here with regall scepter I present most martiall mindes,
And dreadfull shapes (I fable not) of men who harts and hinds
So swift of foot in running can out-strip and leave behind.
With fishfull lakes besides and fennes, where fowles of everie kinde
Their eeries have and harbours safe: moreover Delfes of tin,
Rich Mines likewise of silver pure, which wondrous farre within
The earth hath kept, whose bowels now digg'd up for men to prie,
As if she meant even hell to see, she shew's them to the eye.

If that be true which the Irish Historiographers record, this Island was not without cause by *Plutarch* tearmed *Ogygia*, that is, *very ancient*. For they fetch the beginning of their histories from the most profound and remote records of antiquitie, so that in comparision of them, the antientnes of all other nations is but novelty, and, as it were, a matter of yesterday. They write that one *Casaria* Noah his Niece, inhabited it before Noahs flood: Then that *Bartholomæus* a Scythian came hither about three hundred yeeres after the said Noahs flood, and fought right doughtie battels with giants: That many yeeres after *Nemethus* a Scythian arrived here, and forthwith was cast out by the Giants: After this, that *Dela* with certaine Grecians seized upon this Island; and soone after, that *Gaothel* with *Scota* his wife, daughter to Pharaoh King of Egypt landed here, and nominated after his wives name the Island *Scotia*, and according to his owne name the language *Gaothela*; and that, about the time of the Israelites departure out of Egypt. And the British historie reporteth how some few ages after, *Hibernus* and *Hermion* (*Ever* and *Erimon* the Irish writers terme them) the sonnes of *Milefius* King of Spaine, by the sufferance of Gurguntius King of the Britans, planted colonies in this countrey, after it had bene dispeopled by a pestilence. My purpose is not either to averre these reports for true, nor yet to refuse them: In such things as these let Antiquitie bee pardonable, and enjoy a prerogative.

Surely, as I doubt not but that this Island became inhabited even of old time, when as man-kinde was spread over all quarters of the world: so it is evident, that the first inhabitants thereof passed thither out of our Britaine: For (to say nothing of an infinite number of British words in the Irish tongue, together with the ancient

Ireland why
called Ogy-
gia.

A ancient names which favour of a British originall); the natures of the people, and their fashions, as *Tacitus* saith, differ not much from Britain: of all ancient writers it is called *A British Island*: *Diodorus Siculus* termed *Irin* a part of Britaine: and *Ptolomee* named the same *BRITANNIA PARVA*, that is, *little Britaine*, as you may see, if you list to compare his *Geographickes* with his book of *Great Construction*. And the Epitome of *Sirabo* calleth the inhabitants in plaine words, *BRITANS*: the old Geographers also named it *The Britans Island*: yea and *Festus Avenius* sheweth this out of *Dionysius Afer*, when he treateth of British Islands, in these verses.

Britans the
first inhabi-
tants of Ire-
land.
Little Britain.

*Eminus hic alia gelidi prope flabra Aquilonis
Exuperant undas, & vasta cacumina tollunt,
Hæ numero gemina, pingues sola, cespitis ampli,
Conditur occidui quæ Rhæni gurgitis unda,
Dira Britannorum sustentant agmina terris.*

Here other Islands neere unto the chilling North winds blast,
The waves of sea surmount aloofe, and shew their mountaines vast,
In number twaine, their foile is far, their ground both large and wide
What way the Western Rhene his gulfes and waters deepe doth hide:
These Lands fierce Britan troupes maintaine, and thereon they abide.

C Neither is there any other countrey, out of which by reason of the vicinitie they might passe over more commodiously into Ireland than out of Britaine: from whence there is the like passage thither, in respect of the space of sea betweene, as is out of France into Britaine. But afterwards, when the Romanes had enlarged their Empire every way, many there were no doubt who out of Spaine, Gaule, and Britaine withdrew themselves hither, that they might shake off that intolerable yoke of the Romans slavery: Neither do some otherwise understand these words of *Tacitus*: *Ireland being situate in the middest betweene Spaine and Britanie, lying also very nighly for the French sea, would aptly have united, to the great use & advantage of the one and the other, the strongest members of the Empire together: the landing places and ports whereof, by intercourse of trafficke, were better known than those of Britain.* And albeit *Julius Agricola* also kept with him a pettie King or Prince of Ireland, who was driven thence by occasion of civill dissention, that hee might have the more advantageous opportunitie thereby to invade the Island, which he thought would be subdued and held with a legion, and a small power of aide forces; and was perswaded withall, that the same would availle much for the affaires of Britaine, in case the Roman forces were planted everie where, and hope of libertie banished, as it were, farre out of sight: yet wee read not that the Romans gave any attempt that way. Notwithstanding some are verily perswaded that they assaied the conquest of it, and doe gather the same hardly out of this place of *Juvenal*.

*Arma quid ultra
Littora Juvæna promovimus, & modò captas
Orcadas, & minimâ continens nocte Britannos?*

Why warred we past Irish coasts, and the *Oxknæ* lately wonne,
Beyond the Britans eke that have least night and longest Sunne?

Yet the Panegyricall oration pronounced before *Constantinus* the Emperour, implieth that Ireland was under his government: *Britaine* (saith he) *is so recovered, that even those nations also which join upon the coasts of the same Island, are become subiect and obedient unto your command.* Also we find written in the Chronicles of later historians, that Ireland, together with Britain and Thule, at the division of the Empire fell unto *Constantine*, the sonne of *Constantine* the Great. And that very fond fable of *Casaria* Noahs Niece, carrieth before it the name of *Cæsars*, so as that therein may seeme covertly couched the coming of some *Cæsar* into Ireland. Howbeit I can hardly

Cæsarea.

Romane
Conquests.

perswade my selfe to beleeve, that this country at any time became subject to the Romans. But a blessed and happie turne had it beene for Ireland, if it had at any time beene under their subjection: surely, it had then beene reduced from barbarisme to civilitie. For wheresoever the Romans were victors, they brought them whom they conquered to civilitie: neither verily in any place else throughout Europe was there any civilitie, learning, and elegance, but where they ruled. And very inconsiderately also they may seeme to have neglected this Island. For from hence (to the plague and spoile of Britaine) brake out most dangerous enemies: which *Augustus* seemeth to have foreseene, when he tooke so small care of Britaine, for the danger which hee prefaged to hover and approach from the nations round about adjoyning. But when the Roman Empire began now to decay, the nation of the Scots or Scythians (for, in times past, as *Sirabo* writeth, all people westward were termed Celto-Scythæ) grew mightie in Ireland, and began to be renowned. Furthermore, under the Emperours *Honorius* and *Arcadius* it was inhabited by the Scottish nations, as *Orosius* hath written. Whereupon *Claudian* living in the same age, wrote thus:

Scotorum cumulos flevit glacialis Ierne.
Yce-frozen Ireland wept amaine,
To see the Scots on heaps lye flaine.

And in another place,

Totam cum Scotus Hibernem
Movit
What time as Scots did make,
All Ireland armes to take.

Irishmen out
of Spaine.
In other copies
Tholanus.

For from hence it was that the Scots made their forcible invasions into Britaine, and hither they were otherwhiles with great losses and overthrowes repulled. But whence they came into Ireland, *Ninnius* a disciple of *Evodugus*, an author of good antiquitie, shall enforme you by his own words; who lived, as himselfe wimeth, in the yeere 830. under Anaraugh King of Anglesey and Guineib, or North-Wales. For after he had related, that in the third age of the world the Britans came into Britain, and in the fourth age, the Scythians or Scots into Ireland, hee proceedeth thus: Last of all came the Scots, from the parts of Spain into Ireland. But the first that arrived there, was *Paribolanus*, with a thousand men and women together, and they grew after to be four thousand: and there fell a mortalitie among them, so that in one week they all died, and there remained of them not so much as one alive. The second that landed in Ireland was one *Nemeth*, the son of *Aguomenes*, who, by report, sailed upon the sea one yeere and an halfe; and afterward, when he had suffered shipwrack, fell with an haven in Ireland, and he returned into Spain. And after that came three sonnes of a Spanisb knight, with thirrie Ciules with them, and in every Ciule thirrie wives; and they continued there for the space of one yeere. Last of all came *Elam-Hoior*, and dwelt there with all his progenie and generation, even to this day. With this *Ninnius* accordeth *Henry of Huntingdon*. The Britans (saith he) in the third age of the world came into Britain, and the Scots in the fourth into Ireland.

And how ever these reports be not most certaine, yet sure it is that they came out of Spaine into Ireland: and part of them departing thence, came and added a third nation unto the Britans & Picts in Britaine. The received opinion of the Irish is agreeable hereunto, for they most willingly acknowledge themselves to be an off-spring of the Spaniards. Neither verily can it bee a marvaile, that a number of them withdrew themselves into Ireland out of the North part of Spaine, which, as *Sirabo* writeth, is most barren, and wherein men live most miserably. Out of those words of *Ninnius* a man may see, that those entries made of *Paribolanus* and *Nemethus*, which fabulously they fetch so farre off, out of most profound and remote antiquitie, are to be drawne backe unto later times. Neither is it needfull for me to note againe, that this Island was of the Scottish inhabitants called *Scotia*.

Nor

Not many yeeres after, these Scots in Ireland began to professe Christianitie, although they would needs appropriate unto themselves that historie out of *Rufinus*, concerning the conversion of the Hiberians in Asia, and *Celestin* Pope of Rome sent unto these Scots *Palladius* the Bishop. Whereupon *Prosper Aquitanus* writeth in this manner against *Collator*. *Celestin* delivered the Britans from the Pelagians heresie, when he secluded certain enemies of grace, who held their own native country, even from that unknown part of the Ocean: and having ordained a Bishop among the Scots, whiles he laboured to keep an Island of the Romans in the Catholike faith, he brought also a barbarous nation to be Christian. Yet *Ninnius* writeth, that *Palladius* being taken away by untimely death in Britaine, effected nothing: who also reporteth out of the Irish writers, that Christian religion was published and preached throughout Ireland by *Saint Patrick*. For he being a Britan borne, and that as some will in *Cluidsale*, allied also to *Sir Martin* of *Tourain*, and a disciple of *Saint German*, was appointed successour by Pope *Celestin* to *Palladius* deceased; who with so good successe taught and sowed the seed of Christian religion over all Ireland, that hee converted the greatest part by farre thereof unto Christ, and deserved the name of the Apostle of the Irish nation. Touching whom an ancient writer, *Hiericus Antisiodorensis* in his booke of *Saint Germans* miracles; For as much as (saith he) the glory of a Father appeareth bright in the governance of his owne sonnes, among many sons whom we beleeve *S. German* had in Christ, and Disciples in religion, it shall suffice by way of compendium brevitie to insert here the mention of one only, and the same of all others most famous: namely *Patrick*, as the whole course of his acts declareth, the peculiar Apostle of the Irish nation, wholly addicted for 18. yeeres unto his most holy discipline, out of the veins of so worthie a fountaine drew no mean knowledge & learning in the heavenly scriptures. Whom also that most divine and godly Bishop, considering to be in religion magnanimous, in vertues excellent, and in learning powerfull: and deeming it meere folly, that so strong and able an husbandman should live idle in the tillage and ordering of the Lords cornfield, directed him unto holy *Celestin* Pope of Rome, by *Segetius* a Priest of his, who should give testimonie unto the Apostolicall See, of Ecclesiasticall honestie in the behalfe of that right excellent man. Being therefore approved with the judgment, supported with the authority, and lastly strengthened with the blessing of him, he made a voiage into Ireland, and being peculiarly appointed an Apostle of that nation, as he then lightened them with his doctrine & miracles, so now also and for ever adorneth them with wonderful priviledges of his Apostleship. The Irish scholars of *Patrick* profited so notably in Christianitie, that in the age next following, Ireland was termed *Sanctorum patria*; that is, The native country of Saints; and the Scottish Monks in Ireland and Britaine highly excelled for their holinesse and learning, yea and sent out whole flocks of most devout men into all parts of Europe, who were the first founders of *Luxeuil* Abbey in Burgundie, of *Bobie* Abbey in Italy, of *Wirzburge* Abbey in Francland, of *St. Gallus* in Sweitzerland, of *Malmesburie*, *Lindisfarn*, and of many other Monasteries in Britaine. For out of Ireland came *Celius Sedulius* a Priest, *Columba*, *Columbane*, *Colman*, *Aidan*, *Gallus*, *Kiwan*, *Maidulph*, *Brendan*, and many other celebrated for their holy life and learning. Of these Monks is that *Hieric* above named of *Auxerre* to be understood, when he writeth thus to the Emperour *Charles the Bald*: what should I speake of Ireland, which setting light by the dangers of sea, fluteth all of it well neere with whole flocks of Philosophers unto our shores? of whom so many as are more skilfull and learned than the rest, doe voluntarily banish themselves, to attend dully upon the most wise *Salomon*, and be at his command.

This Monasticall profession, although but then newly come up, was farre different in those daies from that of our time. They desired to be that indeed which they were named to be: they were farre from colourable dealing or dissembling: Erred they in any thing: it was through simplicitie, not through lewdnesse, much lesse of wilfull obstinacie. As for wealth and these worldly things, they so highly contemned them, that they did not only not seeke after, but also refused the same, though they were offered unto them descended by inheritance. For a notable apophthegme

Ffff 3

was

Anno Christi
431.
Palladius.
Vincent. l. 9. c. 7

Monks of Ire-
land holy men
and learned.

was that of Columban (a Monke of Ireland) who, as the Abbat *Walafride* writeth, *A* when *Sigebert King of the Franckners* dealt very earnestly with him, and that by way of many large and faire promises, that he should not depart out of his kingdome, answered him after the same sort, as *Eusebius* hath reported of *Thaddæus*, namely, *That is be- came not them to embrace other mens riches, who for Christi's sake had forsaken their own.* And the Bishops of Britain seemed no lesse to have despised riches, seeing they were so poore, that they had nothing of their owne. For, as we read in *Sulpitius Severus*, *three Bishops of Britaine, in the Councell holden at Rimine, for want of their owne lived of the publick charges.* The English Saxons also in that age conflowed and resorted from all parts into Ireland, as it were to the mart of good learning: and hence it is *B* that we read so often in our writers, concerning holy men thus, *Such a one was sent over into Ireland, for to be trained up in learning:* and in the life of *Sulgen*, who flourished 600. yeeres agoe.

Contempe of
riches,

*Exemplo patrum commotus, amore legendi,
Ivit ad Hibernos, sophia, mirabile, claros.*

The fathers old he following, for love to read good works,
Went unto Irish men, who were (O wonder) famous Clarke.

English Saxons
seeme to have
had their let-
ters and writ-
ting from the
Irish.

And from thence it may seeme our forefathers the ancient English learned the *C* manner of framing their letters, and of writing; considering that they used the selfe same character, which the Irish commonly use at this day.

And no cause have wee to marvaile that Ireland, which now for the most part is rude, halfe barbarous, and altogether void of any polite and exquisite literature, was full of so devout, godly, & good wits in that age, wherein good letters throughout all Christendome lay neglected and halfe buried, seeing that the divine providence of that most gracious and almightie ruler of the world, soweth the seeds and bringeth forth the plants of sanctitie and good arts, one whiles in one nation and o- *D* ther whiles in another, as it were in garden beds and borders, and that in sundry ages: which being removed and translated hither and thither, may by a new growth come up one under another, prosper, and bee preserved to his owne glory, and the good of mankind.

But the outrage of warres by little and little quenched these hot affections and studies of holinesse and good literature. For in the yeere 644. after Christs nativ- *E* tie, Egfrid King of Northumberland with fire and sword made spoile and havock of Ireland, a nation most friendly unto England; for which cause *Bede* chargeth him after a sort, in most grave and important tearmes. Afterward the *Norwegians*, under the leading of *Turges* their Captaine, spoiled and wasted the countrey in most lamentable manner for the space of 30. yeeres: But when he was once slaine by a train and ambush laid for him, the inhabitants fell upon the *Norwegians*, and made such a *F* bloodie massacre of them, that scarce any one survived to be a messenger of so great a slaughter. These *Norwegians* were no doubt those *Normans*, who, as *Rheginus* saith, in the time of Charles the great, setting upon Ireland, an Isle of the Scots, were by the Scots put to flight. After this the *Oustmans*, as one would say *Esterlings*, or *Eastmen*, came out of the sea-coasts of Germanie into Ireland; who having entred into certain Cities under the pretence of great trafficke, in a short space raised a most dangerous warre. About the very same time in manner, *Eadgar* that most puissant King of Eng- land, conquered also a great part of Ireland: For thus we read in a certaine Charter of his: *Unto whom God of his gracious favour hath granted, together with the Empire of England, dominion over all the kingdomes of the Isles lying in the Ocean, with their most flour and fierce Kings, even as farre as to Norway, yea and to subdue under the English Empire, the greatest part of Ireland, with her most noble Citie Dublin.*

After these tempestuous forraigne warres were alliaied, there followed a most grie- *C* vious storme of civill dissention at home, which made way for the English to con- quer Ireland. For Henrie the second King of England, taking occasion and opportu- *nitie*

Arts and picie
fowed among
nations in sun-
dry ages.

Oustmanni,
who haply are
those that *Ta-
citus* nameth
Aestiones, and
Egiptus
Aiffi.

A tunitie, by the privie dislikes, heart-burnings, and malicious emulations among the Irish Princes, grew into a serious deliberation with the Nobles of England, in the yeere of Salvation 1155. about the conquest of Ireland, for the behoof of his brother *William of Anjou*: But through the counsell of his mother *Maud* the Emperesse, this project was rejected unto another time. Howbeit not many yeeres betwene, *Der- micus*, the son of *Murchard* (*Dermot Mac Morrog* they call him) who reigned over the East part of Ireland, which in Latin is called *Lagenia*, and commonly *Leinster*, being for his tyrannie and lustfull leudnesse thrust out of his kingdome (for hee had ravished the wife of *O Rorke*, a pettie King of *Meib*) obtained aide and forces of *Hen- rie* the second King of England, to be restored into his kingdome againe: and made *B* a covenant with *Richard Earle of Pembroke*, surnamed *Strongbow*, of the house of *Clare*, that he for his part should aide him in the recovering of his Kingdome, and that himselfe would assure unto the Earle, together with his daughter *Eva*, the said Kingdome in succession after him. Hereupon the said Earle having forthwith muste- red up and raised an armie of Welsh and English together, and joined unto him to accompanie him in the warres, the *Fitz-Giralds*, *Fitz-Stephans*, and other Gentle- men out of England and Wales, restored his father in law *Dermot* into his former Kingdome againe: and within few yeeres gat by conquest so great a part of Ireland into his owne hands, that his power became now suspected to the King of England; *C* who by proclamation, and that with grievous menaces, recalled home the said Earle and his followers out of Ireland, and unless they obeyed without delay, pronounced them traitours, and their goods confiscate. Whereupon the Earle granted unto the King by covenant and writing, whatsoever he either inherited in right of his wife, or won with his sword, and as his tenant in vassallage received from him the Earldomes of *Wexford*, *Offorie*, *Caterlogh*, and *Kildare*, with certain Castles. Then King *Henrie* the second, having gathered a power together in the yeere of Christ 1172. failed over in- to Ireland, and obtained the Princely title of soveraigne rule of the Iland.

*Dermot Mac
Morrog.*

*Richard
Strongbow.*

*Henrie the se-
cond entred
Ireland.*

*Girald. Cambri
and a Manu-
script in the
hands of Ba-
ton Houth.*

For the States of Ireland passed over unto him all their rule and power, namely, *Rothericke O Conon Dun*, that is, *The Browne*, *Monarch of Ireland*, *Dermot Mac Carti* King of *Corke*, *Donald O Bren* King of *Limiricke*, *O Carell* King of *Uriel*, *Macshaglin* King of *Ophaly*, *O Rorke* King of *Meib*, *O Neale* King of *Ulster*, with the rest of the Nobles and their people, and the same under their Charters sub- scribed, signed, delivered, and transmitted to Rome. Which was ratified and confir- med moreover by a Patent of Pope *Hadrian*, by a ring delivered unto him in token of his investiture, and also by the authoritie of certaine Provinciall Synods. This King *Henrie* afterward delivered up the *Seigniorie of Ireland*, into the hands of his sonne *John*; which conveyance Pope *Urban* confirmed by his Bull, and in testimonie of *E* his confirmation sent him a Coronet of Peacocks feathers broided and embroidered with gold. Whom, after hee was once established in his Kingdome, divers authors as- firme to have granted by his Charter or Patent, Ireland and England both unto the Church of Rome, to be held of it ever after in fee, and to have received it againe from the Church, as a *Fendatarie*: also to have bound his successours to pay three hundred Markes unto the Bishop of Rome: But that most worthie and famous Sir *Thomas Moore*, who tooke the Popes part even unto death, affirmeth this to be false: For hee writeth that the Romanists can shew no such grant; that they never demanded the foresaid money, and that the Kings of England never acknow- ledged it. But by his leave, as great a man as hee was, the case stood otherwise, as evi- dently appeareth by the Parliament Records, the credit whereof cannot bee im- pugned. For in an assembly of all the States of the Realme, in the reigne of *Edward* the third, the Lord Chancellour of England proposed and related, that the Pope would judiciously sue the King of England, as well for the *Homage* as the tribute, which was to be yeelded for England and Ireland, to the performance whereof King *John* in times past had obliged himselfe and his successours: and of this point which hee put to question, required their opinion. The Bishops desired to have a day by them selves for to consult about this matter: the Nobles likewise and the people or *Com- munalitie*

munaltie. The day after, they all met, and with one generall accord ordained and enacted: That forasmuch as neither King John, nor any other King whatsoever, could impose such servitude upon the Kingdome, but with the common consent and assent of a Parliament; which was not done: and whatsoever he had passed was against his oath at his coronation by him in expresse words religiously taken before God: Therefore in case the Pope should urge this matter, they were most readie, to the uttermost of their power, to resist him resolutely with their bodies and goods. They also who are skilfull in scanning and sifting everie pricke and tittle of the lawes, cry out with one voice, That the said Grant or Charter of King John was void in Law, by that clause and reservation in the end thereof; Saving unto us and our heires, all our Rights, Liberties, and Regalities. But B this may seeme beside my text.

Ever since King Johns time, the Kings of England were stiled *Lords of Ireland*, untill that King Henrie the eighth in the memorie of our fathers was in a Parliament of Ireland, by the States thereof declared *King of Ireland*, because the name of *Lord* seemed in the judgement of certaine seditious persons, nothing so sacred and full of majestie as the name of *King*.

This name and title of the Kingdome of Ireland were by the Popes authoritie (what time as Queene Marie in the yeere 1555. had by her Embassadours in the name of the Kingdom of England tendred obedience unto the Pope Paul the fourth) confirmed in these words. *To the laud and glorie of almighty God, and his most glorious mother the Virgin Mary: to the honour also of the whole Court of heaven, and the exaltation of the Catholike faith, at the humble request and suite made unto us by King Philip and Queen Marie about this matter, wee, with the advice of our breithren, and of plenarie power Apostolicall by our Apostolicall authoritie, erect for ever Ireland to bee a Kingdome, and endow, dignifie, and exalt with the title, dignitie, honour, faculties, rights, ensignes, prerogatives, preferments, preeminencies royall, and such as other Realmes of Christians have, use, and enjoy, and may have, use, and enjoy for the times to come.* C

And seeing that I have hapned upon those Noblemens names, who first of all English gave the attempt upon Ireland, and most valiantly subdued it under the imperial crowne of England, lest I might seeme upon envie to deprive both them and their D posteritie of this due and deserved glorie, I will set them downe here out of the Chancerie of Ireland, according as the title doth purport.

The names of them that came with Dermot Mac Morrog into Ireland.

Richard Strongbow Earle of Pembroke, who by Eve the daughter of Morrog the Irish pettie King aforesaid, had one only daughter, and she brought unto William Marshal the title of the Earldome of Pembroke, with faire lands in Ireland, and a goodly issue, five sonnes, who succeeded one another in a row, all childlesse: and as many daughters, which enriched their husbands, Hugh Bigod Earle of Norfolk, E Guarin Montchensey, Gilbert Clare Earle of Gloucester, William Ferrars Earle of Derby, and William Breose, with children, honours, and possessions.

Robert Fitz-Stephen.

Harvey de Mont-Marish.

Maurice Prendergest.

Robert Barr.

Meiler Meilerine.

Maurice Fitz-Girald.

Redmund nephew of Fitz-Stephen.

William Ferrand.

Miles de Cogan.

Richard de Cogan.

Gualter de Ridensford.

Gualter and

Alexander

{ sonnes of Maurice Fitz-Girald.

William

William Notte.

Robert Fitz-Bernard.

Hugh Lacie.

William Fitz-Aldelm.

William Maccarell.

Hunfrey Bohun.

Hugh de Gundevill.

Philip de Hasting.

Hugh Tirell.

David Walfh.

Robert Poer.

Osbert de Herloter.

William de Bendenges.

Adam de Gernez.

Philip de Breos.

Griffin, nephew of Fitz-Stephen.

Raulfe Fitz-Stephen.

Walter de Barry.

Philip Walfh.

Adam de Hereford.

To whom may be added out of Giraldus Cambrensis,

John Curcy.

Hugh Contilon.

Redmund Cantimore.

Redmund Fitz-Hugh.

Miles of S. Davids, and others.

The Government of the Kingdome of Ireland.



Ver since that Ireland became subject unto England, the Kings of England have sent over thither, to manage the state of the Realme, their Regents or Vice-gerents, whom they tearmed in those writings or letters Patents of theirs (whereby authoritie and jurisdiction is committed unto them) first, * *Keepers of Ireland*: then afterwards, according as it pleased them, *Justices of Ireland, Lieutenants, and Deputies*. Which authoritie and jurisdiction of theirs is very large, ample, and royall; whereby they have power to make warre, to conclude peace, to bestow all Magistracies and Offices, except a very few; to pardon all crimes, unlesse they be some of high treason, to dub Knights, &c. These *letters Patents*, when any one entreth upon this honourable place of government, are publickly read, and after a solemne oath taken in a set forme of words before the Chancellour, the sword is delivered into his hands, which is to be borne before him; he is placed in a chaire of estate, having standing by him the Chancellour of the Realme, those of the Privie Councell, the Peeres and Nobles of the kingdome, with a King of Armes, a Serjeant of Armes, and other Officers of State. And verily there is not (looke throughout all Christendome againe) any other Vice-Roy that commeth neerer unto the majestie of a King, whether you respect his jurisdiction and authoritie, or his traine, furniture and provision. There bee assistant unto him in counsell, the Lord Chancellour of the Realm, the Treasurer of the Kingdome, and others of the Earles, Bishops, Barons, and Judges, which are of the Privie Councell. For Ireland hath the very same degrees of States that England hath, namely, Earles, Barons, Knights, Esquires, &c.

The Vice-roys of Ireland.
* *Custodes*, or Wardens.

The States of Ireland.

The

The Courts of Justice, or Tribunals of Ireland.

Parliamentum
claus. anno 12.
The Tribunals
of Ireland.

The supreme Court of the Kingdome of Ireland is the *Parliament*, whichat the pleasure of the Kings of England is usually called by the Deputie, and by him dissolved: although in the reigne of King Edward the second, a Law was enacted, *That every yeer there should be Parliaments holden in Ireland*, which seemeth yet not to have been effected. There be likewise foure Tearmes kept, as in England, yeerely: and there are five Courts of Justice; *The Star-chamber, the Chancerie, the Kings Bench, the common Pleas, and the Exchequer*. There are also *Justices of Assizes*, of *Nisi prius*, and of *Oyer and Determiner*, according as in England: yea and *Justices of Peace* in every countie, for the keeping of peace. Moreover, the King hath his Serjeant at law, his Attorney Generall, his Sollicitour, &c.

Over and besides, in the more remote Provinces there be Governours to minister Justice; as a principall Commissioner in Connaught, and a President in Mounster: who have to assist them in Commission certaine Gentlemen and Lawyers, and yet every of them are directed by the Kings Lieutenant Deputie. As for the common lawes, Ireland is governed by the same that England hath. For we read in the Records of the Kingdome thus: *King Henry the third, in the 12. yeere of his reigne, gave commandment to his Justice of Ireland, that calling together the Archbishop, Bishops, Barons, and Knights, he should cause there before them to be read the Charter of King John; which he caused to be read accordingly, and the Nobles of Ireland to be sworn, touching the observation of the lawes and customes of England, and that they should hold and keepe the same*. Neverthelesse the meere Irish did not admit them, but retained their owne *Brehon* lawes and leud customes. And the Kings of England used a connivence therein upon some deepe consideration, not vouchsafing to communicate the benefit of the English lawes, but upon especiall grace to especiall families or sects; namely, the *O Neales, O Conors, O Brien, O Maloghblins, and Mac Murrough*, which were reputed of the blood roiall among them. The *Parliamentary* or *Statute lawes* also of England being transmitted, were usually in force in Ireland unto the time of K. Henrie the seventh. For in the tenth yeere of his reign, those were ratified & confirmed by authoritie of Parliament in Ireland, in the time of Sir *Edw. Poinings* government, but ever since they have had their Statutes enacted in their owne Parliaments. Besides these civill Magistrates, they have also one militarie officer, named the *Mareschal*, who standeth here in great stead, to restrain as well the insolencie of souldiers, as of rebels, who otherwhiles commit many & great insolencies. This office the Barons de *Morley* of England bare in times past by inheritance, as appeareth by Records: for King John gave it to bee held by right of inheritance, in these very expresse words, *We have given and granted unto John Mareschal for his homage and service, our Mareschalship of Ireland, with all appurtenances. We have given also unto him for his homage and service, the Cantred in which standeth the towne of Kilbunny, to have and to hold unto him and his heires of us and our heires*. From whom it descended in the right line to the Barons of *Morley*. This Mareschal hath under him his *Provost Marshall*, and sometime more than one, according to the occasions and troubles of the time, who exercise their authoritie by limitation under the great seale of Ireland, with instructions. But these, and such like matters, I will leave to the curious diligence of others. Touching the order of justice and government among those more uncivill and wilde Irish, I will write somewhat in place convenient, when I shall treat of their manners.

THE DIVISION OF IRELAND.

Division of
Ireland.



IRELAND, according to the maners of the inhabitants, is divided into two parts: for they that refuse to be under lawes, and do live without civillie, are termed *the Irishbry*, and commonly *the wild Irishb*; but such as being more civill do reverence the authoritie of lawes, and are willing to appeare in Court, and judicially to be tried, are named *Englishb Irishb*.

A *Irishb*, and their country goeth under the tearm of *The English Pale*, because the first Englishmen that came thither did empale for themselves certaine limits in the East part of the Iland, and that which was most fruitfull: Within which there bee even at this day, those also that live uncivillly enough, and are not very obedient unto the lawes: like as others without the pale are as courteous and civill as a man would desire. But if we look into higher times, according to the situation of the country, or the number rather of governors in old time, it containeth five portions (for it was sometimes a *Pentarchie*) namely, *Mounster* Southward: *Leinster* Eastward: *Connacht* in the West: *Ulster* in the North: and *Meth*, well neere in the very middest.

In Mounster are
these Counties,

{ *Kerry.*
Desmond.
Cork.
Waterford.
Limericke.
Tipperary, with the
county of holy Crosse
in Tipperarie.

In Leinster be these
Counties,

{ *Kilkenny.*
Caserlough.
Queenes County.
Kings Countie.
Kildare.
Wexford.
Dublin.

In Meth are these Counties, { *East Meath.*
West Meath.
Longford.

In Connaught are
these Counties,

{ *Clare*
Galloway.
Majo.
Slego.
Leitrim.
Roscoman.

In Ulster be these
Counties,

{ *Louth.*
Cauon.
Fermanagh.
Monaghan.
Armagh.
Down.
Antrim.
London-Derry.
Tir-Oen.
Tir-Conell, or Do-
negall.

The Ecclesiasticall State of Ireland was ordered anciently by Bishops, whom either the Archbishop of Canterburie consecrated, or they themselves one another. But in the yeere 1152. as we read in *Philip Flatesburie*, *Christianus* Bishop of *Lismore* Legate of all Ireland, held a most frequent and honourable Councell at *Mell*, whereat were present the Bishops, Abbats, Kings, Captaines, and Elders of Ireland. In which, by authoritie Apostolicall, and by the counsell of Cardinals, with the consent of Bishops, Abbats, and others, there in Confitorie he ordained foure Archbishopricks in Ireland, *Armagh, Dublin, Cashile, and Tuem* or *Toam*.

The Bishopricks which were Diocessans under these, seeing that now some of them are by the covetous iniquitie of the times abolished, others confounded, and conjoined, others againe translated another way, I am disposed here to put downe (according as they were in old time) out of an ancient Roman *PROVINCIAL*, faithfully exemplified out of the originall.

Under

Ecclesiasticall
Jurisdiction.

Under the Arch-
Bishop of Ar-
magh, Primate
of all Ireland, are
the Bishops of

Meath, or — Elnami-
rand.
Dune, alias — Dunda-
lethglas.
Cblacor, otherwise
— Lugundun.
Conner.
Ardachad.
Rathbor.
Rathbluc.
Daln-Liquir.
Dearrib or Derrie.
Cloemacnois.
Dromor.
Brefem.

To the Archbi-
shop of Dublin
are subject the
Bishops of

Glendelach.
Fern.
Offory, alias — De
Canic.
Lechlin.
Kil-dare or Dage.

Under the Arch-
bishop of Caffile
are the Bishops
of

Láonie, Or — De Kendal-
nan.
Limric.
The Isle Gashay.
Cellumabrab.
Melise or of Emileth.
Rofsi, alias Rosfree.
Waterford, alias — De
Baltifordian.
Lismore.
Clon, alias — De Clua-
nan.
Corcage, that is, Cork.
De Rosaliber.
Ardeferi, or Kerry.

Unto the Arch-
bishop of Tuam
or Toam are sub-
ject the Bishops
of

Duac, alias — Kil-
macdoo.
Mage.
Enachdun.
De Celaia.
De Roscommon.
Clonsferi.
Achad, or Achonry
Lade or Killaleh.
De Conary.
De Kilmunduach.
Elphin.

MOMONIA, or MOUNSTER.

MOMONIA, in Irish *Mown*, and in ordinarie construction of speech *woun*, in English *Mounster*, lieth Southward open to the *Vergivian* sea; separated in some place from *Connaghi* by the river *Siney* or *Shanon*, and elsewhere from *Lemster* by the river *Neor*. In times past it was divided into many parts, as *Towoun*, that is, *North Mounster*, *Deswoun*, that is, *South Mounster*; *Hier woun*, that is, *West Mounster*; *Mean woun*, that is, *Middle Mounster*; and *Ur woun*, that is, *The Front of Mounster*: but at this day into two parts, that is, into *West Mounster*, and *South Mounster*. In the *West Mounster* there dwelt in old time the *LUCENI*, the *VELABRI*, and *UTERINI*: in the South, the *ODIÆ* or *VODIÆ*, and the *CORI ONDI*: but at this day it is distinguished into seven Counties, *Kerry*, *Desmund*, *Corke*, *Limiric*, *Tipperary*, *Holy Croffe*, and *Waterford*.

Where Ireland lieth out most Westward, and treanding toward the Cantabrian Ocean, looketh as farre off South-west, with a large interpace, to *Gallia* in *Spaine*, there inhabited in old time the *VELABRI* and *LUCENI*, as *Orosius* writeth. The *LUCENI* of Ireland (who may seeme to have had their name and beginning from the *LUCENII* of *Gallia*, in the opposite coast of *Spaine*, and of whose name some reliques still remain in the Barony of *Lyxnaw*) were seated as I suppose in the Countie of *Kerry*, and in *Conoglogh* hard by upon the bank of the river *Shanon*.

Luceni.

THE

THE COUNTIE OF KERRY.



The Countie of *Kerry* neere unto the mouth of *Shanon*, runneth forth like a little tongue into the sea; beaten on with barking billowes on both sides: a country mounting aloft with woody wild, and solitary mountaines; between which there lye many vallies, in some places garnished with corn-fields, in others beset also thicke with woods. This is reputed a Countie *Palatine*, and the Earles of *Desmund* had in it the dignitie and priviledges of a Count-*Palatine*, and that by the bountifull gift of K. Edward the third; who granted unto them all *Regall liberties*, except *four* pleas, namely, of *Burning*, *Rape*, *Forfall*, and *Treasure trove*, with the profit growing *de Croccis*, reserved for the Kings of *England*. But through the licentious iniquitie of the men, who neither would nor knew how to use this liberie, it became of late a very sinke of mischiefs, and a common receptacle for rebels. In the entrance into this countie there is a territorie called *Clan-Moris*, of one *Moris* descended from the stocke of *Raimund le Grosse*, whose heires successively were called the Barons of *Lixnaw*. A little river now namelesse (which the situation in some fort implieth to be *Dun* in *Ptolomee*) cutteth through the midst of this, running by *Trayle*, a small towne, laid now in manner desolate, (where the Earles of *Desmund* had an house.) Hard by standeth *Ardar*, where the Bishop called of *Ardeferi*, a poore one God wor, hath his poore See. In the farthest point well neere of this, where it maketh a promontorie, there sheweth it selfe on the one side *Dingle*, a commodious port, on the other side *Smerwic* Sound a road for ships, for so they teame it short in steed of *S. Mary-wic*: at which of late, when *Girald Earle* of *Desmund*, a man notorious for deep treacherie to his Prince and countrey, wickedly wasted *Mounster* with continuall harrying and raising booties out of the fields, there arrived certaine companies of *Italians* and *Spaniards*, sent under-hand to aide him from Pope *Gregorie* the thirteenth, and the King of *Spaine*; who here fortifying a place which they called *Fort del Ore*, made their bragging bravadoes, and thundred out many a terrible threat. But the most noble and martiall Baron, *Arthur Lord Grey*, Lord Deputie, with his very comming and first onset that he made upon them, decided the matter, and ended the quarrell. For immediately they yeilded themselves, and the most part of them were put to the sword, which was in policie thought the wisest and safest course, considering in what ticklish tearmes the state of this Realme then stood, and how the rebels in every place were up in armes. And the Earle of *Desmund* himselfe at length in his fearefull flight being forced to take the woods hard by for his refuge, was soone after in a poore cottage by a souldier or two rushing in upon him, first wounded, and afterwards being knowne, cut shorter by the head, and so paid worthily for his perfidious treason, and the wasting of his countrey.

Here some man happily would thinke it not correspondent to the gravity of this worke, if I should but relate what a ridiculous opinion hath fully possessed the minds of a number of the Irishry, yea and perswaded them verily to beleve that he who in that barbarous Pharaoh and out cry of the Souldiers, which with great straining of their voice they use to set up when they joine battaile, dorth not cry and hout as the rest doe, is suddenly caught up from the ground, and carried as it were flying in the aire, into these desert vallies, out of any country of Ireland whatsoever: where he eateth grasse, lappeth water, knoweth not in what state he is, good or bad, hath some use of reason but not of speech, but shall be caught at length with the help of hounds and the hunters, and brought home to their owne homes.

Clan-Moris.

The river Dur.

Bishoprick of
Ardar.

Dingle.

Smerwic.

Arthur Baron.
Grey.

1583.

A ridiculous
conceit.

Gggg

DES-

DESMONIA, or DESMOND.

Velabrie.

Beneath those ancient *LUCENI* lieth *DESMOND*, stretched out farre and wide toward the South, called in Irish *Desmown*, in Latine *Desmonia*, inhabited in ancient times by the *VELABRI* and *IBERNI*, which in some copies are written *U YERNI*. As for these *VELABRI*, they may seeme so named of *AZER*, that is, *salt water washes*, for that they dwelt upon such Friths, divided one from another by many and those notable armes of the sea running betweene: whence also the *Ariabri* and *Caniabri* in Spaine had their denomination. Among these armes of the sea, three promontories, beside *Kerry* aforesaid, with crooked and winding shoares run out into the Southwest, and those the inhabitants termed in old time *Hierwoun*, that is, *west-Mounster*. The first of them betwene *Dingle* bay and the river *Mair*, is named *Clan-Car*, and hath a castle built at *Dunkeran* by the *Carews* of England. In this dwelt *Donald Mac Cury* More, a Lord of the Irish blood, who in the yeere 1566. resigned up unto *Queen Elizabeth* his possessions and lands, and tooke them againe of her, to hold the same after the English manner by fee, doing homage and fealtie. And at the same time he was created Baron of *Valentia* (an Island adjoining) and Earle of *Clan-car*. A man in this tract of great name and power, a most deadly foe in times past of the *Fitz-Giralds*, who disseized his ancestours, Kings (as hee stiffly avoucheth) of *Desmond*, of their ancient seat and habitation. But long enjoied not hee this honour: and having but one onely daughter legitimate, he matched her in marriage with *Florence Mac Cury*, and departed out of this life an aged man.

1565.
Barons of Valentia.
Earle Clan-Car.

Beare.
O'Swiliuane.

The second promontorie enclosed within two baies, *Maire* and *Bantre*, is named *Beare*, standing for the most part upon hungry gravell, and a leane stony soile: In which live *O'Swiliuane Beare*, and *O'Swiliuane Bantre*, descended both of one and the same stocke, men of great nobility in their country.

O Mahon.

Notum Promontorium.
The river Iernus.

Earles of Desmond.

The third is called *Eraugh*, lying betweene *Bantre* and *Balimore* or *Baltimore*, a Bay or Creeke passing well knowne by reason of the abundance of Herrings taken there: whereunto resorteth every yeere a great fleet of Spaniards and Portugals, even in the mids of winter, to fish for Cods. In this the *O Mahons* by the beneficial gift of *M. Carew* received faire lands and Lordships. This is that *Ptolomee* calleth *NOTIUM*, that is, the *South-Promontorie*, at this day named *Missen-head*, under which (as we may read in him) the river *IERNUS* is disgorged into the Ocean. But what name the said river now hath, in so great obscurity I hardly dare divine, unlesse it be that which they call *Maire*, and runneth hard under *Dunkeran* aforesaid. Neither wot I how to ghesse at those people, whom the same *Ptolomee* placeth upon these promontories, seeing that according to the varietie of copies they have sundry names, as *IBERNI*, *OUTERNI*, *IBERI*, and *IVERNI*, unlesse peradventure, like as their neighbours the *LUCENI* and *CONCANNI* did, they sitted hither from among the *Iberi* of Spaine. Well, this name of *Desmond* in the foregoing ages stretched farre and wide in this tract, even from the sea unto the river *Shannon*, and was called also *South-Mounster*. The *Fitz-Giralds* descended out of the house of *Kildare*, having subdued the Irish, became Lords here of very large and goodly possessions: and of them *Maurice Fitz-Thomas* (unto whom *T. Carew* heire unto the Seigniory of *Desmond*, had before passed away his right of *Desmond*) was in the third yeere of King Edward the third created the first Earle of *Desmond*. Among whose posterity many there were, great men for their valour and wealth, whose credit also and reputation reached farre. But a bad name there went, and still doth, of James; who having excluded his nephew from the inheritance, entred himselfe by force upon it, and imposed upon the people those most grievous tributes of *Coyne*, *Livery*, *Cocherings*, *Bonaghry*, &c. for the maintenance of Galloglasses and Souldiers to spoile and harry the country. Which when his sonne Thomas exacted and gathered of the poore people, hee was by the commandement of *John Tiptoft* Deputy Lievtenant beheaded

beheaded in the yeere 1467. and so suffered due punishment for his owne and his fathers wickednesse. Howbeit when his children were restored againe, in their offspring this honour continued, and descended in right of inheritance unto *Girald* that rebell, whom erewhile I named, who wilfully overthrew a most noble and potent family. And when hee was attainted by Parliamentary authority, *Desmond* was adjudged and annexed to the Crowne land, reduced into the ranke of counties, and a Sheriffe was ordained to governe it from yeere to yeere. Neverthelesse in the last rebellion the rebels erected a titularie Earle; and against him *Queene Elizabeth* granted the title of Earle of *Desmond* unto *James Fitz-Girald*, sonne to the foresaid rebell, who shortly after died issuelesse in the yeere 1601. They that herein beare the greatest name and most puissance are of the race of the *Giraldines*, or *Fitz-Giralds*, although they have for sundry respects assumed unto themselves divers surnames.

VODIÆ, and CORIONDI.



fter the *Iberi*, there dwelt farre in the countrey the *OTAI*, who are termed also *VODIÆ*, and *UDIÆ*: the footing of which name doth more expressly shew it selfe in *Idou* and *Idowib*, two small territories: like as the name of *CORIONDI*, in the countie of *Corke* bordering upon them. These nations inhabited the counties of *Corke*, *Tipperary*, *Limericke*, and *Wexford*.

Vodie a people,

Coriondi a people.

COMITATUS CORCAGIENSIS,
commonly called
THE COUNTY OF CORKE.

He County of *Corke*, which in old time was repured a Kingdome, comprised the whole tract along the sea from *Lismore* unto *Saint Brend*, where it affronteth *Desmond* Westward, hath in the midland parts thereof *Munkerray*, a wild and woody country; wherein *Cormac Mac-Tege* is of great name: and toward the sea coast *Carbray*, in which the *Mac-Carties* beare the most sway. By the sea side, the first place that we meet with is *Rosse*, a road and port in times past well frequented, but now lesse resorted unto by reason of a bar of sand. From thence with a narrow neck runneth out a biland, called the *Old head of Kinsale*, neere unto which the family of the *Curcies* flourished in ancient times, famous for their wealth; descended from a brother of *John Curry* the Englishman that subdued *Ulster*; and out of which there remaineth here still *Curcy* E Baron of *Ringrom*; but at this day (this is the world) of weak and meane estate. After it, at the mouth of the river *Bany*, in a fertile soile and well woodded, standeth *Kinsale*, a very commodious port, and a towne fortified with old walls: under which in the yeere 1601. the kingdome of Ireland lay a bleeding, and put it was upon the hazzard, as it were, of one cast of a die, whether it should be subject to England or Spaine: what time as the Iland was endangered both with forraigne and domestick warre, and eight thousand old trained souldiers under the conduct of *Don John D'Aquila*, had of a sudden surprized and fortified it, confident upon the censures and excommunications of *Pius* the fifth, *Gregorie* the thirteenth, and *Clement* the eighth, Popes of Rome, discharged like thunderbolts upon *Queene Elizabeth*, and presuming confidently upon the aides of rebels, who had sent for them, under a goodly shew of restoring religion (which in this age and variance about religion, is every where pretended for to maske and cloak most ungracious and wicked designs.) But Sir *Charles Blunt* Baron *Mounjoy*, L. Deputy, presently belaid it round about both by sea and land, albeit his souldiers were tired, toiled out, and the season of the yeere most incommodious, as being midwinter: and withall, made head also against a rabble

Muskerry.
Carbray,

Spaniard landed in Ireland, and from thence driven,

ble of rebels, whom the Earle of *Tir-Oen, O-Donel, Mac-Gwyre, and Mac-Mahound* had raised and gotten thither; and with such valour and fortitude so fortunately daunted and repressed their malapert boldnesse, that with one victory hee both had the towne with the Spaniards in it yeelded unto him, and also wrested, as it were, out of the hands of all Ireland throughout, now at the point of revolt, (for they that deliberate are revolted already) both sword and fire. On the other side of the river from *Kinsale* lieth *Kerry-wherry*, a little territorie of late belonging to the Earles of *Desmond*. Just before which runneth the river that *Ptolomee* calleth *DAURONA*, *Giraldus Cambrensis*, by changing onely one letter, *Sauranum* and *Saveranum*, which issuing out of *Mukerey* mountaines, passeth along by that principall Citie of the countie, graced with an Episcopall dignitie (whereunto is annexed the Bishops See of *Clon*) which *Giraldus* nameth *Corragia*, Englishmen *Corke*, and the naturall inhabitants of the country *Coreach*: enclosed within a circuit of walls in forme of an egge, with the river flowing round about it and running betweene, not passable through but by bridges, lying out in length, as it were, in one direct broad street, and the same having a bridge over it: Howbeit a pretty towne of merchandise it is, well peopled, and much resorted unto; but so beset on every side with rebels neighbouring upon it, that they are faine to keepe alwaies a set watch and ward, as if they had continual siege laid unto their Citie, and dare not marrie their daughters forth into the country, but make marriages one with another among themselves; whereby all the Citizens are linked together in some degree or other of kined and affinity. Thereport goeth that *Brioc* that most devout and holy man (who in that fruitfull age of Saints flourished among the Gauls, and from whom the Diocese of *Sanbroich* in Britaine *Armorica*, commonly called *S. Brien* tooke the name) was borne and bred here.

Beneath *Corke* the river parting in twaine, environeth a large and very pleasant Iland, over against the principall dwelling house of that most ancient and noble family of the *Barries*, which thereupon is called *Barry Court*. For that family is derived from *Robert de Barry* an Englishman, a personage of great worth, and renowned: who notwithstanding chose rather among the first to be chiefe indeed, than to be chiefe; who in the winning of Ireland received wounds and hurt, and the first man he was in Ireland that manned and brought the Hawk to hand. His posterity by their long approved loyaltie and martiall prowesse, deserved to receive of the Kings of England, first the title of *Baron Barry*, afterwards of *Vicount Butiphani*, & for their great lands and wealth, gat among the people the surname *Barry more*, that is, *Barry the great*. Below *Barry-court*, the river *Saveren*, hard by *Imokelly* a faire possession long since of the Earle of *Desmond*, loseth it selfe in the Ocean, affording at the very mouth commodious harbours and havens.

As *Saveren* watereth the neather part of this countrey, so *Broodwater*, called in times past *Aven-more*, that is, *The great River*, moisteneth the upper: upon which inhabiteth the Noble family of *Roch*, which being transplanted out of England hath growne up and prospered here very well, and now enioieth the title of *Vicount Fermoy*. Certaine it is, that in the reigne of Edward the second, they were entituled with the honour of Parliament-Barons, considering that *George Roch* was fined in two hundred Markes, because upon summons given, hee came not to the Parliament at *Dublin*: where *Broodwater* (which for a good while runneth as a bound between this county and the county of *Waterford*) entering into the sea maketh an haven, standeth *Yoghall*; no great towne, but walled round about, built in fashion somewhat long, and divided into two parts: the upper, which is the greater part, stretching out Northward, hath a Church in it, and without the wall a little Abbey which they call *North Abbey*: the neather part reaching Southward, called the *Base-towne*, had also an Abbey called *South Abbey*; and the commodiousnesse of the haven, which hath a well fenced *Kay* belonging unto it, and the fruitfulnessse withall of the country adjoining, draweth Merchants unto it, so as it is well frequented and inhabited, yea and hath a Mayor for the head Magistrate.

Thus

Kerry-wherry.

Vicount Butiphant.

Baron Roch
Vicount
Fermoy.

Yoghall.

The Kay.

Thus farre in these daies reacheth the countie of *Corke*, which in times past, as I said even now, was counted a kingdome; and went farther, as which contained within it *Desmond* also. This kingdome King Henry the second gave and granted unto Sir Robert Fitz-Stephen, and to Sir *Maler de Cogan* in these words: Know ye that I have granted the whole kingdome of *Corke*, excepting the City and Cantred of the Oustmans, to hold for them and their heires, of mee and John my sonne, by the service of 60. knights. And the Carews of England were heires to that Fitz-Stephen, from whom Sir *George Carew*, now Baron *Carew* of *Clopton*, lineally and directly deriveth his descent, who not long since was the Lord President of *Mounster*, and in some of these obscure Irish matters (which I willingly acknowledge) hath directed me by the light of his knowledge.

The kingdome of Corke.

THE COUNTY OF WATERFORD.



IN the East coast of Ireland the county of *WATERFORD* extendeth it selfe between the rivers *Broodwater* West, *Shour* East, the *Ocean* from the South, and the county of *Tipperary* Northward: a goodly country, as well for pleasant site as fertile soile. Upon *Broodwater*, so soone as it hath left *Corke* county behinde it, *Lismore* sheweth it selfe, well knowne for an Episcopall See in it, where Christian late sometime the Bishop, and Legate of Ireland about the yeere 1148. a Prelate that deserved passing well of the Irish Church, trained in his youth at *Clarevall* in the same cloister with *St. Bernard* and *Pope Eugenius*.

Lismore.
Christian a Bishop.

But now, since that the possessions in manner all have beene alienated, it is united unto the Bishopricke of *Waterford*. But neere unto the mouth of the said river, standeth *Ardmore* a little towne, so called because it standeth neere the sea, of which, and of this river *Necham* long since verified thus.

urbem Lismor pertransit flumen Avenmor,

Ardmor cernit ubi concium aquor adit.

Ard-mor,

The river named *Aven-Mor* through *Lismore* towne doth runne, *Ardmor* him sees, and there apace to sea he speeds anon.

The little territory adjoining unto it is called *Dessee*, the Lord whereof, one of the family of *Desmond*, received in our remembrance the honourable title of *Vicount Dessee*: but for that he had no issue male, it vanished with him in a short time. Not farre from hence standeth *Dungarvan* upon the sea, a towne well fortified with a castle, and as commodious by reason of the roade for ships: which together with the Baronie of *Dungarvan* King Henry the sixth bountifully granted unto *John Talbot* Earle of *Shrewsbury*: but afterward, seeing it stood hand somely to that part of *Mounster* which was to be brought under and reduced to order, it was by authority of Parliament annexed to the Imperiall Crowne of the Kings of England for ever. Neer unto it flourished the *Poers* of ancient nobility (from the very first time that Ireland was conquered by the English) and afterward advanced to the honourable title of the Barons of *Curraghmore*. But upon the banke of the river *Suyr*, *Waterford* the chiefe and principall city of this county maketh a goodly shew. Concerning which old *Necham* writeth in this wise.

Dessee.

Dungarvan.

Poers Barons
of Curragh-
more,
Waterford.

Suirius insignem gaudet diare Waterford,

Aquoreis undis asoriatu ibi.

The river *Suyr* hath great desire,

Faire *Waterford* rich to make:

For in this place he hies apace,

His course with sea to take.

This city which the Irish and Britans call *Porihlary*, the English *Waterford*, was buile by certaine Pirates of Norway; and although it standeth in an aire somewhat grosse, and upon a soile not very fruitfull, and the streets therein bee with the narrowest, thrust close and pent together; yet such is the convenience and commodiousnesse

G g g g 3

of

of the haven, that for wealth, fresh trading, and frequent resort it is the second City A in all Ireland, and hath alwaies shewed a singular loialty, fidelitie, and obedience to the Imperiall Crowne of England. For ever since that Richard Earle of Pembroke wanne it, it hath continued so faithfull and quietly disposed, that it performed all times safe and secure peace unto the English on their backs, whiles they went on in the conquering of Ireland. Whence it is that the Kings of England have granted unto it very many, and those right large Franchises, which King Henry the seventh augmented, and confirmed, because the Citizens had demeaned themselves most valiantly and wisely against that *Mock-Prince Perkin Warbeck*, who being a young man of base condition, by hoisting up the full sail of impudence went about B to mount up aloft unto the Imperiall diadem, whiles he a meer suborned counterfeit tooke upon him to be Richard Duke of *Torke*, the second sonne of King Edward the fourth.

Earle of Waterford.

This countie of *Waterford* together with the city, King Henry the sixth gave unto John Talbot Earle of *Shrewsbury* aforesaid, by these words, which because they testify the valorous vertue of that most martiall Knight, to the end that vertue might have the due honour thereto belonging, I thinke it worth my labour, and haply any man else would deeme no lesse, to put downe out of the Record; which may be Englished thus. *We therefore, saith the King, (after other eloquent termes penned by the Secretaries of that age, when there was but simple Latin) weighing with due consideration the valiant prowesse of our most deere and faithfull cousin, John Earle of Shrewsbury and of Weisford, Lord Talbot, Furnivall, and Le Strange, sufficiently tried and approved even unto his old age in the warres aforesaid, upon his body no lesse bedewed with sweat many a time than embued with blood; and considering in what sort our Countie and Citie of Waterford in our land of Ireland, the Castle, Seigniorie, Honour, Land, and Baronie of Dungarvan, and all the Lordships, Lands, Honours, and Baronies with the pertinences within the same Countie, which by forfeiture of rebels, by reversion or decease of any person or persons, by escheat, or any other title of law ought to come into our hands or our progenitors, or in the same to be by reason of the hostile invasions of our enemies and rebels in those parts, are become so desolate, and lye so much exposed to the D spoiles of warre, wholly as it were wasted, that they turne us to no profit, but have and doe redound oftentimes to our detriment: in this regard also, that by the same our Cousin our foresaid land of Ireland may be more valiantly be defended in those parts against such attempts and invasions of our enemies and rebels, doe ordaine, promote, and create him Earle of Waterford, together with the stile, title, name, and honour thereto belonging. And because as the highnesse of his state and degree groweth, all things consequently of necessity grow withall, upon our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, and for the estate of the Earle himselfe our Cousin to be maintained in more decent manner, we have given, granted, and by these our letters confirmed unto the same Earle the Countie aforesaid, together with the foresaid stile, title, name, and honour of E Earle of Waterford; yea and the foresaid City, with the feeferme of the same, the Castles, Lordships, Honours, Lands and Baronies, with the pertinences within the Countie: likewise all and every for the Manors, Hundreds, Wapenakes, &c. all along the sea coast, from the towne of Toghball unto Waterford City aforesaid, To have and to hold the foresaid Countie of Waterford, the stile, title, name, and honour of Earle of Waterford, and the City Waterford aforesaid, the Castle, Seigniorie, Honour, Land, and Baronie of Dungarvan, and all other Lordships, Honours, Lands and Baronies within the said countie: as also all and every the foresaid Manors, Hundreds, &c. unto the above named Earle and the heires males issuing out of his body (to have I say and to hold) of us and our heires, by homage, fealty, and the service of being and to be our Seneschall or Steward, and that his heires be the Seneschalls of Ireland to us and our heires, throughout our whole land of Ireland, to do and that hee doe, and ought himselfe to doe in the same his office, that which his predecessors Seneschalls of England were wont to doe hitherto in that office, for ever. In witness whereof, &c.*

Steward of Ireland.

But when as (whiles the Kings of England and the Nobles, who had large and goodly

A goodly possessions in Ireland, were much busied and troubled a long time; first, with the warres of France, and afterward with civill warres at home) Ireland lay in manner neglected, and the State of English there falling still to decay, was now in manner come to nothing: but the Irishry, by occasion of the others absence, grew exceeding mighty: for to recover these losses, and to abate the power of the Irish, it was ordained and enacted by the States of the Realme in Parliament, that the Earle of *Shrewsbury*, for his absence and carelesnesse in maintaining of his owne, should surrender into the hands of the King and his successors the Earldome and towne of Waterford: the Duke of *Norfolke* likewise, the Baron *Barkley*, the heires generall of B the Earle of *Ormond*, and all the *Abbats, Priors, &c.* of England, who had any lands, should surrender up all their possessions unto the King and his successors for the same absence and neglect.

An. 18. H. 8.

THE COUNTY OF LIMERICK.

Hitherto have wee gone over the Maritime counties of *Mounster*: two there remaine yet behind that bee in-lands, *Limericke* and *Tipperary*, which wee are now to goe unto. The countie of *Limerick* lieth behinde that of *Corke* Northward, betweene *Kerry*, the river *Shanon*, and the countie of *Tipperary*. A fertile countrey, and well peopled, but able to shew very few places of any good account and importance. The more Western part of it is called *Conilagh*; wherein among the hills, *Knock-Patric*, that is *Patricks hill*, mounteth up of a mighty height, and yeelding a pleasant prospect into the sea, beholdeth asfarre off the river *Shanon*, falling with a wide and wast mouth into the *Vergivian* or *Ocean*. Under which hill a sept of *Fitz-Giralds*, or *Giraldines*, lived honourably a long time, untill that Thomas, called the *Knight of the Valley*, or of the *Glin*, when his gracelesse sonne that wicked firebrand suffered death (for to set villages and houses a fire is by the lawes of Ireland high treason) because himselfe advised his sonne, and set him on to enter into these lewd actions, by authority D of the Parliament was disseized of his goodly and large possessions. The head City of this countie is *Limerick*, which *Shanon*, a most famous river, by parting his chanel compasseth round about.

Conilagh.
Knock-Patric.

Knight of the
Valley.
Anno 11. Reg.
Eli'z.

The Irish call it *Loumeag*, and the English *Limirick*. A Bishops See this is, and every famous mart towne of *Mounster*; first forcibly won by *Reimundo the Grosse*, an Englishman, the sonne of *William Girald*, afterwards burnt by *Duvenald* an Irish petty King of *Thurmond*: and then in proceesse of time *Philip Breos* an Englishman was enfeofed in it, & King John fortified it with a castle. At this day it is counted two townes. The upper (for to they call it) wherein stand the Cathedral Church and the castle, hath two gates opening into it, and each of them a faire bridge unto it off stone, E with bulwarkes and little draw bridges: the one leading into the West, the other into the East, unto which the nether towne joineth, fenced with a wall, with a castle also thereto, and a foregate at the entrance into it. More into the East standeth *Clan-William*, so named of the sept or kined of *William*, who came out of the family de *Burgo* (the Irish call it *Burke*) which dwelleth therein: and out of which house Queene Elizabeth conferred upon *William*, who slew *James Fitz-Morris* that tempestuous troubler of his country, the title and honour of Baron of *Castle-Connell*, (where *Richard the Red Earle of Ulster*, had strengthened a castle) together with a yeerly pension, as a reward of his valour, and to his comfort and meed for the losse of his sonnes, flaine in that encounter.

Limerick.

Clan-William.

Baron of Castle-Connell.


F In the South part of this countie is *Kil-Mallo*, the second towne next to *Limerick* both for wealth and for number of inhabitants, enclosed also with a wall about it: likewise *Adar*, a little towne in old time fortified, standing upon the same river; which straightwaies emptieth it selfe into *Shanon*: hard unto which lieth *Clan-Gibbon*, the Lord whereof *John Fitz-Girald*, called *John Oge Fitz-John Gibbon*, and for the gray haire of his head, *The white Knight*, was attained by Parliament

Clan-Gibbon.

for

for his wicked acts : but his sonne through the clemency of Queene Elizabeth was A restored to his full estate. Of great note and name above the rest in this tract, besides those *Bourks, Giraldines, and Fitz-Giralds*, are the *Laceys, Browns, Hurleys, Chaceys, Sapells, and Pourcels*, all of the English race : also the *Mac-Shees, Mac-Brien O-Brian, &c.* of Irish breed.

THE COUNTY OF TIPPERARY.

 He county *Tipperary* Westward is bounded with *Limerick-shire* afore- said and the river *Shanon*, Eastward with the county of *Kilkenny*, toward the South with the counties of *Corke* and *Waterford*, and North with the territorie of the *O-Carolls*. The South part is an exceeding fertile country, and yeeldeth corne abundantly, furnished also sufficiently with good and frequent buildings. The West part of it the river *Glason* passeth through, and watereth with a long course : not farre from the banke whereof standeth *Emely*, or *Awne*, a Bishops See, which hath beene in times past, by report, a City very populous and of great resort. Through the midst of it runneth the noble river *Shower*, or *Smire*, which streaming out of *Bladin hill*, speeding through the lower *Ossery* (which by the bountifull favour of King Henry the eighth entuled the *Butlers* Earles of *Ossery*) and through *Thurles*, which honourath them with the dignity of Vicounts, C first goeth unto *Holy Crosse*, a right famous Abbey in times past (whence the County also adjoining is commonly termed the Countie of the *Holy Crosse of Tipperary*) and enioieth certaine peculiar freedoms, granted in honour of a peece of Christs crosse there sometimes preserved. *The whole world* (saith Saint *Cyrrill*) *is full of peece of this wood*, and yet by a continuall miracle (as *Paulinus* saith) *it hath never beene impaired*.

Thus were Christians perswaded in ancient times. And incredible it is what a confluence there is even yet of people continually upon devotion hither, as unto a holy place. So firmly doth this nation persevere in the old Religion of their forefathers, which the carelesse negligence of their Prelates, and ignorance together, hath beyond all measure encreased, when as there be none to instruct and teach them otherwise. Then *Shour* passeth beside *Cassile*, beautified with an Archiepiscopall dignity by *Engenium* the third Bishop of Rome, which had under it in times past many Bishops as Suffragans. From thence runneth the river downe, sprinkling Islands here and there in the way, and fetcheth a compass about *Cahir Cassile* : which out of the family of the *Butlers* hath a Baron advanced to that dignity by Queene Elizabeth : but his sonne stained himselfe with perfidious disloyalty, and suffered for it, when as the Castle was by the Earle of Essex taken in the yeere 1599. and himselfe cast into prison. Then holding on his course by *Clomell*, a mercate towne well frequented and fenced, as also by *Carick Mac-Griffin*, situate upon a rock, whereof also it rooke name (the habitation of the Earles of *Ormond*, which together with the honour of Earle of *Carrick* King Edward the second granted unto Edmund *Boteler* or *Butler*) it leaveth *Tipperary* behinde it, and serveth in stead of a limit to confine the Counties of *Waterford* and *Kilkenny*.

Thus much of the places in the South side of this county. As for that which lieth Northward, leane it is and very barren, peaking up with high tops of mountaines, and twelve above the rest, as it were, huddled up together, which they terme *Phlem-ge Modona*. This part in Latin is called *Ormondia*, in Irish *Orwown*, that is, *the Front of Mounster*, in English *Ormond*, and most men name it very corruptly *Wormewood*. All the name and glory whereof ariseth from the Earles, of whom there hath beene a number since *James Butler*, upon whom and his heires King Edward the third conferred this title of honour for terme of life, *with the Royalty also and other liberties with Knights fees in the county of Tipperary*, the which his posterity through the favour of the Kings of England still enjoy : whence this County is reputed *Palatine*, and he of some was stiled Earle of *Tipperary*.

The

The ancestors of this James were in old time the *Butlers* (an honourable office) of Ireland ; and from thence came this surname *Le Boteler* or *Butler* imposed upon them : and certaine it is that they were linked in most neere alliance unto St. *Thomas Becket* Archbishop of Canterbury (as who derive their descent from his sister) : and that after hee was murdered, they were by King Henry the second removed into Ireland, who supposed that hee should disburden himselfe of the worlds hatred for that fact, in case he advanced the kinsfolkes and allies of the said Thomas to rich revenues and high honours.

The first Earle of Ormond in this family, was James sonne to Edmund Earle of *Carricke*, who wedded the daughter of *Humfrey Bohun* Earle of *Hereford*, whom he had by a daughter of King Edward the first : and here was his first step unto this honour. Hereupon James his sonne by this marriage came to be commonly named among the people, *Thenoble Earle*. The fifth Earle of these named James (that I may not stand particularly upon every one) received at the hands of King Henry the sixth the title and honour of Earle of *Wiltshire*, to him and to the heires of his body : who being Lord Deputy of Ireland, as divers others of this race, and Lord Treasurer of England, standing attainted by King Edward the fourth, was straightwaies apprehended and beheaded : but his brethren John and Thomas, likewise proclaimed traitors, kept themselves close out of the way : John died at Jerusalem without issue. C Thomas, through the speciall favour of King Henry the seventh, was in the end restored to his blood : who departed this life in the yeere 1515. leaving behinde him two daughters, Anne married to Sir *James de sancto Leodegano*, called commonly *Selenger* and Margaret unto Sir *William Bollein*, who bare unto him Sir *Tho. Bollein* : whom King Henry the eighth created first Viscount *Rochfort*, afterwards Earle of *Wiltshire* and of *Ormond*, and afterward took *Anne Bollein* his daughter to wife ; who brought forth for England Queene Elizabeth, a Prince of most happy memory, and with all thankfulnessse to be alwaies remembred by the English and Irish. When *Thomas Bollein* was dead leaving no issue male, Sir *Pierce Butler*, a man of great power in Ireland, descended of the Earles race, whom Henry the eighth had before time created Earle of *Osserie*, attained also to the title of *Ormond*, and left the same unto his sonne James, who had issue by the daughter and heire of James Earle of *Desmond* a sonne named Thomas Earle of *Ormond* now living ; whose faith and loyaltie hath been passing well tried and approved in many troubles and dangerous affaires : who also hath joined in marriage his only daughter unto *Theobald Butler* his brothers son, whom King James hath advanced lately to the title of Vicount *Tullo*.

Whereas some of the Irish, and such as would be thought worthy of credit, doe affirme, that certaine men in this tract are yeerely turned into Wolves : surely I suppose it be a meere fable : unlesse haply through that malicious humour of predominant unkind Melancholy, they be possessed with the malady that the Physicians call *Lycanthropia*, which raiseth and engendereth such like phantasies, as that they imagine themselves to bee transformed into Wolves. Neither dare I otherwise affirme of those metamorphosed *Lycaones* in *Liveland*, concerning whom many Writers deliver many and marvellous reports.

Thus farre as touching the Province of *Mounster*, for the government whereof Queene Elizabeth, when shee bethought herselfe most wisely, politickly, and princely, which way she might procure the good and wealth of Ireland, ordained a Lord President to be the reformer and punisher of inconsiderate rashnesse, the director also and moderator of duty, together with one Assistant, two learned Lawyers, and a Secretary : and the first President that shee made was Sir *Warham S. Leger* Knight, a man of great experience in Irish affaires.

LAGE

Wolf-men.

The disease
Lycanthropia.13. Elizab.
Fitz-Geralds.

Emely.

The lower Of-
fery.The county of
Holy Crosse of
Tipperary.
Wood of the
Crosse.

Cassile.

Baron de Ca-
hir.

Clomell.

Earle of Ca-
ricke.
Anno 9. Ed. 2.

Ormond.

Butlers Earles
of Ormond.
Anno 2. Ed. 3.Earle of Tip-
perary.

LAGENIA, or LEINSTER.

L He second part of Ireland, which the inhabitants call Leighnigh, the Britans Leim, the English Leinster, and Latine writers Lagenia, and in the ancient lives of the Saints, Lagen, lieth all of it on the Sea-side Eastward, bounded toward Mounster with the river Neor (which notwithstanding in many places it passeth beyond) on Connaght side for a good space with Shanon, and toward Meash with the peculiar knowne limits. The Countrey is fertile and fruitful, the aire most milde and temperate, and the people there inhabiting come neereſt of aliother to the gentle disposition and civill conversation of England their neighbour Island, from whence they are for the most part descended. In Ptolomees dayes therein were seated the BRIGANTES, MENAPII, CAUCI, and BLANI: and peradventure from these Blani are derived and contracted these later and moderne names, Lein, Leighnigh, and Leinster. But now it is divided into the Counties of Kilkenny, Caterlogh, Queenes County, Kings County, Kildare, Wexford, and Dublin: to say nothing of Wicklo and Fernes, which either be already, or else are to be laid thereto.

BRIGANTES, or BIRGANTES.

B He BRIGANTES seeme to have planted themselves betweene the mouth of the river and the confluence of Neor and Barrow, which in Ptolomee is called BRIGUS. Now because there was an ancient City of the Brigantes in Spaine, named BRIGANTIA, Florianus del Campo labourerh with and naile to fetch these BRIGANTES out of his owne countrey Spaine. But if such a conjecture may take place, others might with as great probability derive them from the Brigantes of Britaine, a nation both neere and also exceeding populous. But if that be true which I finde in certaine copies, that this people were called BIRGANTES, bubbee and the other have missed the marke: For, that these tooke their denomination of the river BIRGUS, about which they doe inhabit, the very name is almost sufficient to persuade us. These BRIGANTES, or BIRGANTES, whether you will, dwell in the Counties of Kilkenny, Offery, and Caterlogh, watered all with the river BIRGUS.

THE COUNTIE OF KILKENNY.

County of Kilkenny.

K He Countie of Kilkenny is bounded West with the countie of Tipperary, East with the counties of Wexford and Caterlogh, South with the countie of Waterford, North with Queenes Countie, and Northwest with upper Offerie. A countrey that with townes and castles on every side maketh a very goodly shew, and for plenty of all things surpasseth the rest. Neere unto Offerie the mighty and huge mountaines Sleiew Bloemy, which Geraldus calleth Bladina Montes, with their rising toppes mount up to a wonderfull heighth: out of the bowels whereof, as from their mothers wombe, issue the rivers Shour afore-named, Neor, and Barrow: which running downe in severall chanelles, before they enter into the Ocean joine hand in hand all together, whereupon they in oldtime teamed them The three sisters.

Upper Offerie.
Baron of upper
Offerie.

The Neor, commonly called also Neure, runneth in manner through the midst of Kilkenny countie: and when it is passed with a forward course by the upper Offerie, the first Baron whereof was Barnabas Fitz-Patrick, promoted to that honor by King Edward the sixth, and hath watered many fortresses on both sides, floweth beside Kilkenny, which is as much to say, as the Cell or Church of Canic; which for the sanctimony of his solitary life in this country, was highly renowned: a proper, faire, and wealthy

A A wealthy Burrough towne this is, and far excellling all other midland Boroughs in this Island: divided into the Irish towne and the English towne. The Irish towne is, as it were, the Suburbs, and hath in it the said Canicks Church, which both gave name unto it, and now also affordeth a See unto the Bishop of Offerie. But the English towne is nothing so ancient, built, as I have read, by Ranulph the third Earle of Chester, and fortified with a wall on the West side by Robert Talbot a Nobleman, and with a castle by the Butlers. And sure it is that in the division of lands between the daughters of William Mareschal Earle of Penbroch, it fell unto the third daughter; whom Gilbert Clare Earle of Glocester married.

B Somewhat beneath the same Neore, standeth a little walled towne, named in English Thomas Towne: in Irish, Bala-Mac-Andan, that is, The towne of Antonies sonne: For it tooke both names of the founder Thomas Fitz-Anthonie, an Englishman, who flourished under King Henry the third, whose heires are yet acknowledged the Lords thereof. Beneath this towne the river Callan voideth his streame into Neore: upon which standeth the third Burrough or incorporate towne of this country, bearing the same name Callan. Like as Inise-Teog, which is the fourth.

Thomas
Towne.

Callan.

Inise Teog.

The family of Butlers hath spread and branched farre and wide throughout this County, men that with much honour bare a great part, and for their worth and virtues were adorned with the titles of Earles of Carick, Ormond, Wiltshire in England and of Offorie, as is before said: and at this day there remaine of their line, beside the Earle of Ormond, Vicount Thurles, and Knight of the Order of Saint George, Vicount Montgarret, Vicount Tullo, the Barons of Dunboyn and of Cahir, a goodly race also and progenie of Noble Gentlemen. The rest of the Gentry in this Tract that are of better birth and parentage be likewise of English descent, as the Graces, Walshes, Lovells, Foresters, Shortels, Blanch-felds, or Blanchevelstons, Drilanás, Comerfords, &c.

THE COUNTY OF CATERLOGH.

C He County of CATERLOGH, by contraction Carlogh, toward the Sunne rising adjoineth to the County of Kilkenny, wholly, in manner, situate betweene the rivers Barrow and Slane; of a fertile soile and shaded well with woods; hath two townes in it of better note and importance than the rest, both standing upon the West banke of Barrow: namely, Caterlogh, which Leonel Duke of Clarence began to wall; and Bellingham a most renowned Lord Deputy fortified with a castle; Also Leighlin, called in Latine Lechlinia, where there was an Episcopall Chaire, now united to the See of Fernes. These townes have both of them their wards or garrisons, and Constables over them. And whereas the greatest part of this County belonged in right of inheritance unto the Howards Dukes of Norfolk (who by the Earles of Warren drew their descent from the eldest daughter of William Mareschal Earle of Penbroch) King Henry the eighth by ageneral consent of the States of the Realme tooke unto himselfe, both from them and also from other Noblemen, yea and from Monasteries in England, all their lands and possessions in Ireland; for that the Lords thereof by neglecting in their absence their owne private estates carelesly, brought therewith the publike state into danger, as is already shewed.

The Statute of
Absentees.

From hence Barrow passeth through the Baronie Ydron, which by right belonged to the Carews: for Sir John Carew an English Knight, died seized thereof in the time of King Edward the third: and which Peter Carew within our memorie recovered, as it were by a writ of remitter, after it had been unlawfully usurped, and a long time in the occupation of unjust detainers.

Barony Ydron.

Upon the river Slane appeareth Tullo, memorable in this regard, that King James hath lately honoured Theobald Butler, the Earle of Ormonds brothers sonne, with the title of Vicount Tullo. The Cavanaghs dwell a great many of them every way hereabouts, who being descended from Dovenald a younger sonne, as they say; the Bastard of Dermot the last King of Leinster, are spread and branched out into a very

Cavanaghs.

very great sept or linage, a warlike generation renowned for their good horse-man-ship, and who as yet, though they bee exceeding poore, beare themselves in spirit, answerable to their ancient nobilitie. But being at deadly feud amongst themselves, for I wot not what man slaughters, which many yeeres agoe they committed one upon another, they daily work their owne mischief by mutuall wrongs and hurts. When as the English had set some of these to oversee and manage the possessions they had in this part of Ireland, about King Edward the seconds time, they by little and little usurped the whole country unto themselves, and assumed the name of *O-Mores*, and taking into their societie the *Toles* and *Brenes*, by little and little dis- seized the English of all the territorie betweene *Caterlogh* and the Irish sea.

O More.
Out of a pam-
phlet of Pa-
trick Bingham.

Hook-Tower.

Among these is the confluence of *Neore* and *Barrow*, which after they have tra-vailed in a joint streame some few miles from hence in one channell, present both their name and their waters unto their eldest sister the *Shour*, which straightwaies is swallowed up at a mouth full of rockes within the gulfes of the Ocean: where on the left hand there shooteth out a little promontorie with a narrow necke, that sheweth a prettie high tower unto the sailers, erected by the merchants of *Rosse*, whar time they were in their prosperity, for their direction and safer arrivall at the rivers mouth.

QUEENES COUNTIE.

Lease.

Mary Burgh.

Donemaws.

Rheba.

Baronet of
Rheban.

Above *Caterlogh*, toward the North-west there spreadeth out a little country full of woods and bogs, named in Irish *Lease*, and *Queens Countie* in English: which *Queene Mary* ordained to be a Countie by Commission given unto *Thomas Rastelisse* Earle of *Suffex*, then Lord Deputie, who reduced it into the tearmes of civill order and government: whence it is that the chiefe towne thereof is called *Mary-Burgh*: where certaine garrison fouldiers with their Seneschall keep ward, and have much adoe to defend themselves against the *O-Mores* (who beare themselves as the ancient Lords thereof) against *Mac-Gilpatrick*, the *O-Dempsey*, and others, a mischievous and tumultuous kind of people, who daily practise and plot all they can to annoy the English, and to shake off the yoke of lawes. For to subdue this wilde and hostile part of the country, at the first entrie of the English thither, *Meilere* was sent: For whom *Hugh Lacie* governour of Ireland, erected one Castle at *Tahmelio*, like as a second at *Obowy*, a third likewise upon the river *Barrow*, and a fourth at *Norrach*. But among the rest, he fortified *Donemaws*, an ancient Castle standing in the most plentifull part of the territorie, which came hereditarily unto the *Breoses* Lords of *Brecknocke*, by *Eua* the younger daughter of *William Mareschall* Earle of *Pembroch*, and what way as *Barrow*, which rising out of *Slew Blomey* hills Westward, runneth solitarie alone amongst the woods, he visiteth that ancient *Rheban*, mentioned by *Ptolomee*, which keeping the name still intire is called at this day *Rheban*: but instead of a citie it is altogether, E as one faith, *non citias*, that is, *A citie civillisse*, or, *The remains of that which was a citie*; even a few little cottages with a fortresse. Notwithstanding it giveth the title of a Baronet unto that Nobleman *Nicholas* of *Saint Michael*, the Lord thereof, who is commonly called *the Baronet of Rheban*.

KINGS COUNTIE.

Offaly.

Philips towne.

Like as the *Queenes Countie* aforesaid was so named in honour of *Queene Marie*, so the territorie bordering next unto it Northward, divided with *Barrow* running betweene, and called in times past *Offalie*, was in honour of *Philip King* of *Spaine* her husband, tearmed *Kings Countie*, and the principall towne in it *Philips Towne*; where is placed a *Seneschall* with a ward: and divers Gentlemen of English blood are here planted, namely, the *Warrens*, *Herberys*, *Colbies*, *Mores*, and *Leicesters*: amongst the Irish septs of *O-Conor*, unto whom a great part hereof in old time belonged; *Mac-Coghlan*.

Coghlan, *O-Maisy*, *Fox*, and others stand stoutly in defence of the lands wonne by their ancestors, and left unto them. Now these naturall Irish inhabitants grumble and complaine that their livings and patrimonies have beene taken from them, and no other lands assigned and set out for them to live in: Hence it is that taking hold of every occasion to make uprores, they put the English dwelling among them to much trouble ever and anon: yea and oftentimes in revengefull minds festered and poisoned with hostile hatred, they breake out furiously into open and actuall rebellions.

THE COUNTY OF KILDAR.



Ver against these all along Eastward, affronteth the county of *Kildar* a most rich and plentifull country: concerning the pastures whereof *Giraldus Cambrensis* useth these verses of *Virgill*.

*Et quantum longis carpunt armenta diebus,
Exiguam tantum gelidum ros nocte reponit.*

And looke how much when daies are long the beasts by grazing ear,
So much cold dewes make good againe by night when 'tis not great.

C The chiefe and head towne of the shire is *Kildar*, much honoured and graced in the first infancy of the Irish Church, by reason of *Saint Brigid* a Virgin right venerable and highly esteemed of for her devotion and virginity (I meane not that *Brigid* which about 240. yeeres agoe erected that order of the sisters or Nunnes of *Saint Brigid*: namely, that within one Monastery both Monkes and Maidens should live, divided asunder by walls, and suffered onely one to see another) but another *Brigid* of greater antiquity by farre, as who was a Disciple of *Saint Patrick*, of great fame and renowne throughout Ireland, England, and Scotland. Whose miracles and fire never going out, but kept by Nunnes, as it were, in that secret Sanctuary of *Festa*, and of the ashes that never encrease, are mentioned by writers. This *Kildar* is adorned with an Episcopall See, named in the Popes letters in old time, *Episcopatum Darenfis*. After the entrance of the English into Ireland, it was the habitation of *Richard Earle of Pembroch*, then of *William Mareschall* his sonne in law, that married his daughter, Earle of *Pembroch* likewise: by whose fourth daughter *Sibyll* it came to *William Ferrars* Earle of *Derby*, and by his daughter likewise begotten of her, unto *William Lord Vesey*: whose sonne *William Vesey*, Lord chiefe Justice of Ireland, standing in termes of disfavour and disgrace with King Edward the First, for certain quarrels arising between him and John the sonne of *Thomas Fitz-Girald*, and being bereft of his only sonne lawfully begotten, granted and surrendered *Kildare* and other his lands in Ireland unto the King, so that he might enfeoffe his base sonne surnamed *De Kildare*, in his other lands in England. And a little while after, the said John sonne of *Thomas Fitz-Girald*, whose ancestors (descended from *Girald Windsor*, *Castellan of Pembroch*) had with passing great valour performed most painefull service in the conquest of this Island, was by Edward the second King of England endowed with the castle and towne of *Kildar*, together with the title and name of Earle of *Kildar*.

Kildar.
S. Brigid.

These *Fitz-Giralds*, or as they now tearme them, the *Giraldines*, are a right noble family, and for their exploits highly renowned: by whose valour, as one said, *The Englishmen both kept the sea coasts of Wales, and also forced and won the walls of Ireland*. And verily this house of *Kildare* flourished a long time without taint of honour and name (as which never bare armes against their Prince) untill that *Thomas Fitz-Girald*, the sonne of *Girald Fitz-Girald* Earle of *Kildare*, and Lord Deputy of Ireland under King Henry the eighth, hearing that his father sent for into England, and accused for misgoverning Ireland, was put to death; upon this light and false rumour, unadvisedly and rashly carried away with the heat of youth, put himselfe

Ch. 9. Ed. 2.
N. 12.

H h h

into

into armes against Prince and countrey, solicited the Emperour Charles the fifth to A enter and seize upon Ireland, wasted the land farre and neere with fire and sword, laid siege to Dublin, and killed the Archbishop thereof: For which outrages shortly after he with five of his uncles were hanged, when his father for very sorrow was dead before. Howbeit Queene Mary restored the family unto their blood and full estate, when shee advanced *Girald* brother unto the aforesaid Thomas to bee Earle of *Kildare*, and Baron of *Offaly*. He ended this life about the yeere 1558. His eldest son *Girald* died before his father, leaving one onely daughter married to Sir *Robert Digby*: *Henry* his second sonne succeeded, who when he had by his wife L. Francis daughter to *Charles* Earle of Nottingham only two daughters, *William* the third son succeeded in the Earledome, who was drowned in passing into Ireland in the yeere 1599. having no issue. And then the title of Earle of *Kildare* came to *Girald Fitz-Girald* sonne to Edward their Uncle, who was restored to his blood in lineage to make title by descent lineall or collaterall from his father and brother, and all his ancestours, any attaindour or corruption of blood to the contrary notwithstanding. There be also in this Countrey these places of better note than the rest; *Nas* a mercate towne, *Athie* upon the river *Barrow*, *Mainosh* a castle belonging to the Earles of *Kildare*, and a towne unto which King Edward the first, in favour of *Girald Fitz-Moris* granted a mercate and Faire: *Castle Martin*, the chiefe seat of the family of *Fitz-Eustace*; which descending from the *Peers* in the Countrey of *Waterford*, for C their valour received the honour of a Parliament Barons, bestowed upon *Rowland Fitz-Eustace* by King Edward the fourth, together with the Manour of *Port Lester*, and the title of Vicount *Balinglas*, at the hands of King Henry the eighth: which dignities with a faire patrimony *Rowland Fitz-Eustace*, seduced by the religious pretext unto rebellion, and flying his countrey lost by attaindour under Queene Elizabeth. The families here remaining, besides the *Giraldines*, that be of higher birth above others, fetch their descent also out of England, namely, the *Ougans*, *De-la-Hides*, *Ailmers*, *Wasbes*, *Boisels*, *Whites*, *Sustons*, &c. As for the Giants dance, which they talke of that *Merlin* by art magick translated out of this territorie unto *Salisbury* plaine, as also of that most bloody battell which shall be one day betweene the D English and the Irish at *Molleaghmast*, I willingly leave unto the credulous lovers of fabulous antiquity, and the vaine beleivers of prophesies. For my purpose is not to give fond tales the telling. These bee the midland counties of Leinster now are we to goe unto those by the sea side.

THE COUNTY OF WEISFORD.

Beneath that mouth, at which *Barrow*, *Neore*, and *Shoure*, the sifter-like rivers, having embraced one another and joynd hands, are laid up in the Ocean, there sheweth it selfe Eastward in a Promontorie E where the shore fetcheth a compasse round, the County of *Weisford* or *Wexford*. In Irish, County *Reogh*, where *Protemee* in times past placed the *Menapii*. That these *Menapians* came hither from the *Menapii*, a nation in low Germany that dwelt by the sea coasts, the name doth after a sort imply. But whether that *Carauisus* were of this or that nation, who taking upon him the imperiall purple robe seized upon Britaine against the Emperour Dioclesian, I leave to others. For *Aurelius Victor* calleth him a Citizen of *Menapia*; and the Citie *Menapia* is placed by the Geographers not in those Low-countries of Germany but in Ireland. In this county, upon the river *Barrow*, there flourished sometimes *Rosse*, a great Citie, well traded by merchants and peopled with inhabitants, fenced with F a wall of great compasse by Isabell daughter to the Earle *Richard Strongbow*: and that is the only monument which now it sheweth. For by reason of discord and home broiles betweene the Citizens and the religious orders, it is a good while since brought in manner to nothing.

More East, *Duncannon*, a castle with a garrison, standeth over the river, so as that it

Barons Fitz-Eustace.
Pat. 2. Ed. 4.

Carauisus.

A it is able to command the river, that no ships should passe either to *Waterford*, or to *Rosse*: and therefore it was thought good policie, to fortifie this place when the Spaniards hovered and gaped for Ireland, in the yeere 1588. From thence at the very mouth of the river, there runneth out a narrow necke of land, which presenteth unto the sailers an high Turret, erected by the Citizens of *Rosse* when they were in flourishing estate, that they might more safely enter into the rivers mouth. A little from hence standeth *Tintern*, upon the shore with many winding creekes, where *William Marechal* Earle of *Penbroch* founded a notable Abbay, and called it *de Voto*, for that he had vowed to God to erect an Abbay, when hee was tossed in a fore and B dangerous tempest: and being after shipwracke cast up a land in this place, performed it here according to his vow.

Tintern Monastery.

This very Promontory *Protemee* calleth *Hieron*, that is, *Holy*: and in the same signification, I would make no doubt but the inhabitants also called it. For the utmost towne thereof, at which the Englishmen landed, and set first foot in this land, they named in their native language *Banna*, which foundeth all one with *Holy*.

Hieron a Promontory.

From this *Holy point*, the shore turning full upon the East, runneth forth along Northward; over against which there lye flats and shallows in the sea, that indanger many a ship, which the Mariners call *The Grounds*. In this place *Protemee* setteth out of their names, that I am out of all hope in so great darkenesse to discover any twy-light of the truth. But seeing there is one onely river that voideth it selfe in this place, which cutteth this county as it were just in the mids, and is now called *Slane*: seeing also at the very mouth thereof, where it maketh a Poole, there is a towne by a German name called *Weisford*, the head place of the whole county, I may the more boldly conjecture that *Slane* was that *MODONA*, and *Weisford* *MENAPIA*; and so much the rather, because this name is of a later date, to wit, a meere German, and given unto it by those Germans, whom the Irish tearme *Quistmans*. This towne is for the bignesse inferiour to many, but as memorable as any; because it was the first in all Ireland that when *Fitz-Stephen*, a most valiant Captaine, assaulted it, yielded D it selfe unto the protection of the English, and became a Colonie of the English: Whence this whole territorie is passing well peopled with English, who to this very day use the ancient Englishmens apparell and their language; yet so, as that they have a certaine kinde of mungrell speech between English and Irish. *Dermot*, who first drew the Englishmen over into Ireland, granted this and the territorie lying to it unto *Fitz-Stephen* for ever, who beganne a Burgh hard by at *Carricke*: and albeit the place were strong by naturall situation, yet hee helped it by art. But when as the said *Fitz-Stephen* had surrendered up his right into the hands of King Henry the second, he made it over to Richard Earle of *Penbroch*, that he should hold it in Fee from him and the Kings of England as superiour Lords. From whom by the Earles E *Marechals*, the *Valences* of the *Lusignian* line in France, and the *Hastings*, it descended to the *Greies* Lords of *Rushin*, who commonly in ancient Charters are named Lords of *Weisford*; although in the reigne of King Henry the sixth, *John Talbot* is once called in the Records Earle of *Shrensbury* and of *Weisford*. Touching this river, take with you this verse, such an one as it is, of *Nechams* making.

Dicit Eniscortum flumen quod Slana vocatur,

Hunc cernit Weisford se sociare sibi.

The river which is called *Slane* enricheth *Eniscort*,
And this said river *Weisford* sees gladly with him to sort.

For *Eniscourt*, a Burrough or incorporate Towne, is seated upon it. More inward by the same rivers side, ye have *Fernes*, known onely for the dignity of an Episcopall See in it; which in old time the *Giraldines* fortified with a Castle. Hard by, but beyond the river *Slane* dwell the *Cavenaghs*, *Donels*, *Montaghs*, & *O-Mores*, Irishmen of a stirring and tumultuous spirit: and among them the *Sinottes*, *Roches*, and *Pepards*, Englishmen. On this side *Slane* the men of greatest name bee the *Vicounts* *Mont-Garret*: of whom the first was *Richard Butler*, a younger son of *Pierce* Earle

H h h h 2 of

of Ormond, adorned with that title by Edward the sixth, and many more of the same A surname; the *Devereuxes*, *Staffords*, *Chevers*, *Whites*, *Forlongs*, *Fitz-Harris*, *Browns*, *Hores*, *Haies*, *Cods*, *Maylers*, all of the English race and blood, like as be most of the common people.

CAUCI.

Cauci.

O Tooles.
O Birns.

Arklo.



He CAUCI, who were likewise a people inhabiting the sea coast of Germany, seated themselves next unto the *Menapii*, but not so farre distant a sunder as those in Germany. Their country lying upon the sea was that which the *O Tooles* and *O Birns*, families of Irishry dwel in, men fed and maintained by wickednesse and bloodshed, impatient of rest and quietnesse; and who presuming upon the strength of their holds and fastnesse, carry an obstinate minde against all lawes, and implacable hatred to English. For the repressing of whose audacious outrage, and to strengthen the authority of lawes, there hath been serious consultation had by most prudent and politicke persons in the yeere 1578. that these small territories should be reduced into the forme of a county: and set out they were into fixe Baronies within certain appointed limits, which should make the county of *Wicklo* or *Arklo*. For a place this is of greatest name, and the Earle of *Ormonds* castle, who write themselves among other honourable titles in their stile, *Lords of Arklo*: under which castle that river which *Protemee* calleth *OVOCA* fallerth into the sea, making a creeke, and as *Giraldus Cambrensis* writeth, *The nature of this river is such, that as well when the sea floweth, as when it ebberth, in this creeke it retaineth still the taste of the naturall freshnesse, saving his owne water entire and void of all brackishnesse, even as far as to the maine sea.*

COMITATUS DUBLINIENSIS,

The Countie of Divelin.

Glynnes.

Beyond the CAUCI inhabited the *EBLANI*, where now lieth the D county of *DUBLIN* or *DIVELIN*; which on the East side is wholly washed with the Irish sea, on the West bounded with the county of *Kildare*, on the South joyning to the little territories of the *O Tooles* and *O Birns*, and those which they tearme the *Glynnes*, and limited Northward with the county of *Meth* and *Nanny* a little river: the soile thereof bringeth forth corne abundantly, and yeeldeth grasse and fodder right plentifully, besides it is well stored with all sorts of living creatures that are gotten by hunting and hawking for the table: but so destitute, for the greatest part, of woods, that in most places they use a clammy kind of fat turfe, or Sea-coale out of England for their fewell. In the South part thereof, which is lesse inhabited and more uncivil, and riseth up here and there with an hilly ridge, full enough of woods, and under which lye hollow vallies shaded with trees, which they call *Glynnes*; every place is fore annoied with the two pernicious and mischievous septs or kindreds of the *O Tooles* and the *O Birns*. Among these *Glynnes* appeareth the Bishopricke of *Glandilaw*, but utterly desolate, ever since it was annexed to the Archbishopricke of *Divelin*. All this county besides is passing well replenished with inhabitants and townes, and for wealthy port, and a certain peculiar finenesse and neatnesse that they use, surpasseth all other parts of Ireland, and is divided into five distinct Baronies, namely, *Rath down*, *New castle*, *Castle-Knoc*, *Comloc*, and *Bal rodry*, which notwithstanding I am not able to goe through as I would, for that their bounds are unknown E to mee.

Wicklo lately
made a county,
1606.

First therefore I will runne along the sea coast only, and from thence, as the courses of the rivers lead me, survey the more in-land places; for there is no part of this county twenty miles from the shore. To beginne then at the South side, the first place that sheweth it selfe upon this coast is *Wicklo*: where there standeth over the narrow

A narrow haven a rocke, enclosed within a strong wall in stead of a castle, over which, as divers other castles besides of this kingdome, there can none by authority of Parliament bee set as Constable, but an Englishman borne, because to the hurt of the State, the Irishmen that were Constables had both defended the same badly, and also by a certaine connivencie suffered the prisoners to make escapes. As touching this haven hearken what *Giraldus* saith, who tearmeth it *Winchilgillo*. *There is an haven at Winchilgillo, on that side of Ireland where it lieth neerer unto Wales, than ordinarily and usually at every ebbe of the sea receiveth waters flowing into it; and againe at every return of tide, dischargeib and voideth the said water which it entertained: and when as the sea in the ebbe hath now by the going away of the tide forsaken the creeke, yet the river that runneth in by every chinke and winding cranke, becommeth bitter and salt with continuall brackishnesse.*

Then from the toppe of an hill *New-castle* looketh into the sea, and seeth the shelves of sand, which they call *The Grounds*, lying opposite a great way in length: Howbeit betwene them and the shore it is reported to bee seven fathom deepe of water. A little higher, where the riveret *Bray* commeth into the sea, appeareth *Old-Court*, the possessions of the *Walshes* of *Caryckmain*, who as they are of ancient stocke and gentry, so their family hath shot forth many branches in this tract. Next unto it is *Powers* or *Poers-Court*, belonging in times past, as appeareth by the name, C unto the *Poers*; a large and great castle, untill that *Tirlough O Toole*, after hee had revolted and rebelled, undermined and overthrew it. From *Bray* mouth the shore for to let in a creeke bendeth and windeth it selfe inward, and at the very bent of the elbow lieth a little Island called *Saint Benets*, belonging to the Archbishop of *Divelin*.

This creeke or Bay is called *Dublin Haven*, into which *Liffy* the noblest river of this county out-powreth his streame: who albeit his spring head where hee riseth bee but fiftene miles from his mouth, yet with so many winding cranks he fetcheth such a compasse, that first hee turneth into the South by *Saint Patrickes* land; then Westward, afterwards North, watering the county of *Kildare*, and at length into the East by *Castle Knoc*, the Barony in times past of the *Tiruls*, whose inheritance by the females was devolved upon other about the yeere 1370. and so by *Kilmairnam*, an house in old time of *Saint Johns* Knights of Jerusalem, now converted to a retiring place of the Lords Deputies. This *Liffy* doubtlesse is mentioned by *Protemee*, but through carelesnesse of the transcribers banished out of his owne due place. For the river *L. BENIUS* is set downe in the copies of *Protemee* at the very same latitude or elevation of the Pole, in the other part of the Iland, where there is no such river at all: but let him, if it please you, by a writ of recovery returne out of exile now to his owne city *EBLANA*, from whence unjustly he hath been for a time alienated: and take withall, if you think good, these verses of *Necham* as touching this river.

*Vifere Castle-Knoc non dedignatur * Aven-Liff,*
Istum Dublini suscipit unda maris.

* That is, the
river Liff.

To see and visit *Castle Knock Liffy* doth not disdain,
At *Dublin* ready is the sea this streame to entertaine.

For seated it is seven miles from his mouth, which alone fame may celebrate for all the cities of Ireland. This is that very city which *Protemee* called *EBLANA*, we *DIVELIN*, the Latine writers *Dublinium* and *Dublinia*, the Welsh Britans *Dinas Dalin*, the English Saxons in times past *Duplin*, and the Irish *Bala-cleagh*, that is, *The towne upon Hurdles*: for men say when it was built the foundation was laid upon Hurdles, the place was so fennish and moorish: like as *Hispalis* or *Sivill* in Spaine, F which *Isidore* reporteth to have been so named, because it stood in a marish ground, upon piles and stakes deeply pitched into the earth. For the antiquity of *Dublin* I finde no certainty; but that very ancient it is the authority of *Protemee* perswadeth me to thinke. *Saxo Grammaticus* writeth, how it was pitifully rent and dismembered in the Danish warres: afterwards it came under the subjection of Edgar King of England, which his Charter before mentioned confirmeth, wherein hee calleth it

Eblana.
Dublin.

H h h h 3

the

the most *Noble City* of Ireland. Then the Norwegians possessed themselves of it: A Whence in the life of *Gryffib Ap Cynan* Prince of Wales, we read that *Harald* of Norway when he had subdued the greatest part of Ireland, built *Develin*. This may seeme to be that *Harald Harfager*, that is, with the faire lockes or tresses, who was the first King of Norway, whose line in descent goeth thus in the life of *Gryffib: Harald begat a sonne named Auloed: Auloed begat another Auloed; he had a sonne named Siiric King of Develin: Siiric begat Auloed, whose daughter Racwella was mother to Gryffib Ap Cynan borne at Dublin, whilst Tirlough reigned in Ireland*. But this is extravagant. *Develin* at length when the English first arrived in Ireland, yeelded unto their valour, and by them was manfully defended, when *Ausculph* Prince of the Dublinians, and afterwards *Gottred* King of the Isles fiercely on every side assaulted it: within a while after a Colony of Bristow-men was deduced hither, unto whom King Henry the second granted this City (happely at that time dispeopled) for to inhabite, *with all the Franchises and free Customes, which the men of Bristow have*, and that by those very words which I have alledged. Since which time it hath flourished every day more and more, and in many tumultuous times and hard streights given notable proofe of most faithfull loyaltie to the Crowne of England.

This is the roiall City and seat of Ireland, a famous towne for Merchandize, the chiefe Court of Justice, in munition strong, in buildiags gorgeous, in Citizens populous. An old writer calleth it, *a City in regard of the people noble, of the site most pleasant, by reason of the sea and river meeting together, rich and plentifull in fish, for trafficke famous, for the green plain delighfull and lovely, beset with woods of mast-bearing trees, environed about with Parkes harbouring Deere*. And William of Newbrough of it writeth thus: *Develin a maritime citie is the mother citie of all Ireland, having to it a haven passing well frequented, for trafficke and emercourse of Merchants matchable with our London*. Seated it is in a right delectable and wholsome place: for to the South yee have hills mounting up aloft, Westward an open champion ground, and on the East the sea at hand and in sight; the river *Liffy* running downe at North-East affordeth a safe roade and harbour for ships. By the river side are certain wharves or Kaies, as we terme them, whereby the violent force of the water might be restrained. For this verbe (*Caiare*) in old writers signified to *Keep in, to restrain and repress*: which that most learned *Scaliger* hath well noted. A very strong wall of rough building stone reacheth hence along by the sides of it (and the same toward the South fortified also with rampires) which openeth at six gates, from whence there runne forth suburbs of a great length.

Toward the East is *Dammes* gate, and hard by standeth the Kings castle on high, most strongly fenced with ditches, towers, and an Armory or Store-house built by *Henry Loundres* the Archbishop, about the yeere 1220. In the East suburbs neere unto Saint *Andrew* the Apostles Church, Henry the second King of England, as *Hoveden* reporteth, caused a roiall palace (or rather a banquetting house) to be erected for himselfe, framed with wonderfull workmanship most artificially of smoothed wailes after the manner of this country, wherein himselfe with the Kings and Princes of Ireland kept a solemne feast upon Christmas day.

From hence is to bee seene just over against it a beautifull Colledge (in which place there stood in old time the Monasterie of *All-Hallowes*) consecrated unto the name of the holy and indivisible Trinity, which for the exercise and polishing of good wits with good literature, *Queene Elizabeth* of most happy memory endowd with the privileges of an University; and being furnished of late with a notable Library, giveth no small hope that both religion, and all the exquisite and liberall sciences will return eftsoones after their long exile to Ireland, as to their ancient home (unto which, as unto a Mart of Arts and good learning, strangers sometime used to flocke and repaire.) And verily in the reigne of Edward the Second *Alexander Bicknor* Archbishop of *Develin* began to recall the profession of learning hither, having obtained from the Pope the privileges of an University, and erected also publicke Lectures: but the troublesome times that presently ensued, interrupted the laudable

Who also is named *Abloius*. *Aulafus* and *Olovus*.

Jofcelin of *Furnes* in the life of *S. Patrick*. *Lib. 2. verum Anglicar. c. 26.*

Kaies.

* Upon *Aufonius* *Lib. 2. c. 22.*

Dammenis.

All-Hallowes. An University begun 1597. 13. May was the foundation laid, 1593. Scholars were first admitted.

1320. A Manuscript of Baron Hoults.

A dable enterprise of that good man. The North gate openeth at the bridge built with arched work of new hewen stone by King John, and this joineth *Oustmanstowne* to the City. For here the *Oustmans*, who came over, as *Giraldus* writeth, out of Norway and the parts of the Northern Islands, planted themselves, as the *Annales* beare record, about the yeere of salvation 1050.

In this suburbe stood in times past the goodly Church of Saint *Maries* of *Oustmanby* (for so in a Charter of King John it is called) an house also founded for preaching Friars, called of them *Black Friars*, unto which of late daies have beene tranflated the Judiciall Courts of the kingdome. In the South quarter of the City stand two gates, *Ormonds gate* and *Newgate* (which is their common house of correction.) These lead unto the longest suburbe of all, called *Saint Thomas street*, and a magnificent Abbey of the same name, called *Thomas Court*, founded and endowed in times past with very ample revenues by King Henry the second for the expiation of the murder of *Thomas* Archbishop of *Canterbury*. Into the South openeth *Pauls gate*, and that which taketh the name of Saint *Nicolas*, making way into Saint *Patrickes* suburbe, wherein standeth the Archbishops Palace, knowne by the name of Saint *Sepulchres*, and a most stately Church dedicated unto Saint *Patrick*, right goodly to bee seene, with faire embowed workes, stone pavements, an arched rooffe over head of stone worke, and a very high tower steeple. What time this Church was first built, it is, to say truth, uncertaine. That *Gregorie* King of the Scots came unto it about the yeere 890. the Scottish Historie doth record. The same afterward being much enlarged by John King of England, was ordained first to be a Church of Prebends by *John Comyn* Archbishop of Dublin in the yeere 1191. and Pope *Celestine* the third confirmed the same. Then after him, *Henry Loundres* his successour in the Archbishopricke augmented it with dignities of Personages (for I may be bold to use here the founders words) and framed it conformable to the immunities, orders, and approved customes of the Church of *Salisbury*. But in our daies it maintaineth a Deane, a Chanter, a Chancellor, a Treasurer, two Arch-Deacons, and two and twenty Prebendaries; *The only light and lamp* (that I may not conceale the most ample testimony which the Parliament of the kingdome giveth unto it) of *all godly and Ecclesiasticall discipline and order in Ireland*.

There is another Cathedral Church also standing in the very heart of the City, which being consecrate unto the *Holy Trinity*, is commonly called *Christs Church*; touching the building thereof thus we read in the ancient records of the same Church: *Siiric King of Dublin, the sonne of Ableb Earle of Dublin, gave unto the blessed Trinity, and to Donatus the first Bishop of Dublin, a place to found a Church in unto the holy Trinity; and not onely so, but gold and silver also hee bestowed sufficiently for the building of the Church and the whole close*. This was done in the yeere 1012. in which, as *Lancarvanensis* avoucheth, *Siiric* the sonne of *Abloie* (for so he calleth him) lived and flourished in great name. The worke begun by *Donatus*, *Laurence* Archbishop of Dublin, *Richard Strongbow* Earle of *Penbroch*, commonly called Earle of *Strigulia* (whose tomb is here to be seene, repaired by Sir *Henry Sidney* Lord Deputy) *Robert Fitz-Stephen*, and *Reimund Fitz-Girald* finished. Hard at the South side of this Church there standeth a stately Towne hall, built of foure square stone, and called the *Tollesale*, where causes are tried before the Maior of the City, and where the Citizens use to hold their Sessions and publicke assemblies, for it enjoyeth many immunities. In times past this Citie had for the chiefe Magistrate a *Provost*; but in the yeere of our redemption 1409. King Henry the fourth granted them licence to chuse every yeere a *Maior* and two *Bailifs*: also that the *Maior* should have a gilt sword carried before him for ever. But afterwards, King Edward the sixth changed the *Bailiffs* into *Sheriffes*. Neither wanteth any thing here which a man can wish for in a most flourishing City, save only that an heape of sand, which the ebbing and flowing of the sea casteth up into the mouth of *Liffy*, doth so dam up and bar the haven, that it is not able to bring up any great vessels but at high water. Thus much of *Dublin*, for the most part of which I acknowledge my selfe beholden unto the

Thomas Court.

Statut. Parli. 18. H. 8. c. 15.

Tollesale.

the diligence and learning of *James Ussher* Chancellor of S. Patricks Church, whose A variety of knowledge and judgement are far above his yeeres.

Marquesse of
Dublin.

Pr. p. Pat. anno
9. Rich. 2. m. 1.

As touching *Robert Vere* Earle of Oxford, whom King Richard the second, a Prince too too lavish in giving honourable titles, made Marquesse of *Dublin*, and afterwards Duke of Ireland, I have spoken already, and reason I have none to repeat the same here. Yet will I note thus much, which I have since happened upon in the Records. When as King Richard aforesaid had advanced that *Robert Vere* Earle of Oxford to bee Marquesse of Dublin, and had given to him the Seigniorie of Ireland during his life: hee, desirous to augment his honour by more ennoblising him with honourable Armes, granted also that as long as hee should live, and hold the said Seigniorie, he should beare these Armes, *Azure 3. Crownes Or in a Bordur*, in his Standards, Pennons, Coat-armours, and other things wherein Armes are to be shewed in all Marshall matters, and elsewhere at his pleasure. But this grant was soone after recalled, and those Armes abolished.

Saint Laurence
Barons of
Houth.

Malchid.

Fingall.

Where the river *Liffy* lodgeth himselfe in the Ocean, *Houth* standeth, compassed in manner round about with the sea: of which the Noblemen surnamed *Saint Laurence*, and dwelling there, become named *Barons of Houth*; men of rare felicity, for that in so long a descent of their line (for they are able to derive their pedigree from the time of King Henry the second) there hath of them, by report, none bene attainted of high treason, none left ward in his minority. And within a little of this place is *Malchide*, or *Molachid*, ennobl'd by the Lords thereof the *Talboys*, English by their first originall.

More within the country, Northward there adjoineth hard to the country of *Dublin*, *Fingall*, that is, if you interpret it out of the Irish language, *a nation of forerimers*, (for they use to nominate the English *Gall*, as one would say, strangers; and *Saxones*, as it were, *Saxons*) a little country, but very good and passing well husbanded; even the garner and barn of this kingdome, so great store of corne it yeeldeth every yeere. And here the soile striveth after a sort with the painfull labour of the husbandman, which in other places throughout this Island lying neglected, without tillage and manuring, seemeth to make a very grievous complaint of the inhabitants sloth and laziness. There are planted every where throughout this country right worshipfull families, nobly descended of English blood; and namely, besides those which I have already mentioned, the *Plonkeys*, *Barnwells*, *Russels*, *Talboys*, *Dillons*, *Nettervils*, *Holywoods*, *Lusterels*, *Burnels*, *Fitz-Williams*, *Gouldings*, *Usshers*, *Cadleys*, *Finglases*, *Sarfelds*, *Blackneys*, *Cruceys*, *Baths*, &c.

Th. Stukely.

Marquesse of
Leinster.

Thus farre forth summarily of *Leinster*, which in old time reached no farther. Now I wor not whether it bee worth the laughing at or the relating, that *Thomas Stukely*, when hee had in England and Ireland both made shipwracke of his good name, credit, and fortunes, having wound himselfe out of the danger of the lawes, curried such favour with Pope Gregory the thirteenth, what with making many faire promises, and what with bragging of great matters, that hee received at his hands these titles, *Marquesse of Leinster*, *Earle of Weisford* and *Caterlogh*, *Vicount Murrumb*, and *Baron of Rosse and Taron*. With which titles hee being puffed up in pride, whiles he thought to conquer Ireland, went aside into Africk, and there with the three Kings that were slaine in one battell, made up the enterlude of his life with an honest close and catastrophe.

MIDIA, OR MEDIAMETH.



Labecus.

He rest of the Countrey of the *Eblani* was in ancient time a kingdome, and the fifth part of Ireland, which in their owne native language they call *Mish*, the English *Meth*, *Giraldus* nameth it in Latin *Midia* and *Media*, perhaps, because it is in the very middle of the Island. For they say that *Killair* a castle in these parts, which seemeth to be in *Psolomee* *LABRUS*, is as it were the Navill of Ireland. And

And the very name implieth no lesse: For *Lair* in the Irish tongue signifieth *The Middle*. This *Meth* lieth stretched out from the Irish sea as farre as to the river *Shanagh*: For the soile thereof, as saith *Bartholomew Anglicus*, *Fertile it is in corne, pasture ground, and cattell, plentifull in fish, fesh, and other victualls of white meat, as butter, cheese, and milke, watered also with rivers. The situation is delectable to the eye, and an wholesome aire. In regard of woods and marishes in the skirts and borders, it hath a very hard access and entry unto it: And therefore, considering the multitude of people, the strength of castles and townes, it is commonly called for the peace thereof, the CHAMBER OF IRELAND.* Within the memorie of our fathers, because the country was too large for to be governed by one Sheriffe, and to the end that justice might with more facility be ministred, it was divided by authority of Parliament in the 38. yeere of King Henry the eighth into two parts, namely, the county of *East Meth*, and the county of *West-Meth*.

THE COUNTY OF EAST-METH.



The County of *EAST-METH* is environed round about with the county of *Kildar South*, with the county of *Dublin* and the sea East, with the territorie of *Louth North*; and with the county of *West Meth* on the West. The whole is divided into 18. Baronies: *Dueleke*, *Scrine*, *Slane*, *Margallen*, *Navan*, *Kenles*; halfe the Barony of *Fower neer* to *Kenles*, *Killalou*, *Demore*, *Cloue*, *Moylagh*, *Loghern*, *Oldcastle*, *Lwyn*, *Moyseurarah*, *Deefe*, *Rath-touth*, and *Dunboyn*.

Boyn, which *Psolomee* calleth *BUVINDA*, *Giraldus* *BOANDUS*, a noble river springing out of the North side of the *Kings county*, runneth through this county. In the hither part on this side *Boyn*, these are the places memorable: *Galtrim*, where the *Husseys* have dwelt a long time: *Killin Castle*, which *Hugh Lacy Custos* of Ireland under King Henry the second built; and *Dunsany*, which have their Parliament Barons, Noblemen of ancient descent out of the family of the *Plonkeys*, which others fetch out of *Denmark*: but they beare the very same Armes in sundry colours, which *Alan Plonket* of *Kilpecke* in England did: who also under King Edward the first lived in the dignity and port of a Baron. Now this house of the *Plonkeys* in Ireland came up and grew to bee of high estimation, ever since that Sir *Christopher Plonket*, a valiant and wise man (Deputy, as they terme him, unto Richard Duke of Yorke, Lord Lievetenant in King Henry the sixth his time) was advanced to the dignity of Baron of *Killin*, which fell unto him by his wife, heire to the family of the *Cusakes*: and his second son by his own worth & valour obtained the title of Baron *Dunsany*. On the farther side of *Boyn*, are *Trimletstown*, which hath his Baron out of the family of the *Barnwells* (for King Edward the fourth promoted Sir *Robert Barnwell* to the honour of a Parliamentary Baron; *Gormanston*, which now hath had honourable Vicounts, men of good desert in the Common-wealth, descended from the line of the *Prestons* (as it is verily thought) in Lancashire; and *Slane*, which is able likewise to shew Barons thereof, out of the family of the *Flemings*: and amongst them stands *Aboy*, a mercate towne well inhabited and of good resort, upon the river *Boyn*: which when it hath passed beside *Glan-Jores*, that is, *The land of the sonnes of George* (this George was of the *Birminghams* progeny, whose heire by marriage brought a faire inheritance with the castle of *Carbray* unto the *Prestons*) runneth under *Trim* a pretty towne of trade, and one of the better fort, where *William Pepard* erected a castle. This was an ancient Barony of the *Lacies*, which accrewed unto the titles of the Dukes of Yorke, who stiled themselves *Lords of Trim*. Then floweth it beside *Navan*, which hath a Baron or Barones, but not of the Parliament house, and affordeth for the most part a dwelling house unto the Bishop of the Diocesse, who hath now no Cathedrall Church, but doth all with the assent of the Clergy of *Meth*.

His See seemeth to have bene at *Cluanavard*, which is called also *Clunari*, where *Hugh Lacy* in times past built a castle: For in the letters Apostolicall we read him thus

Barnwell.
Baron Trimlet
stown.

Baron Slane.

Navan.
B:ronet of Na-
van.

Bishop of
Meth.

thus, *Episcopus Midenfis, five Cluanarardenfis*, that is, *The Bishop of Meib or Cluana-rard*, and corruptly, as it is to be thought, in a Roman *Provinciall Elnamirand*. *Boyn* now by this time carrying a fuller streame, after it hath with an hasty course swiftly passed on certain miles; neere unto *Drodagh* emptieth himselfe into the sea. Of this swift running what if I should thinke this *Boyn* tooke his name: for *Boan* both in Irish and British also signifieth *swift*, and our Poet *Necham* of this river hath thus verified.

*Ecce Boan qui Trim celer influat, istius undas
Subdere se salsis Drogheda cernit aquis.*

Lo *Boin* that swiftly unto *Trim* doth run, and marke withall,
How at *Tredagh* his streame into the salt sea gulfe doth fall.

The men of greatest reputation and name in this county, besides those whom I rehearsed before, to wit, the *Plunkets, Flemings, Barnwells, and Huffsays*, are the *Darcys, Cusakes, Dillons, Birminghams, De-la-bides, Neiterwils, Garvies, Cadels*, and others: whom if I doe not name at all, or if I reckon either these or others elsewhere not in their owne ranke, according to their worth and degree, I desire no imputation may be laid upon me therefore.

THE COUNTY OF WEST-MEATH.



He county of WEST-MEATH, so called in respect of the other above said, unto which it adjoineth on the West side, reacheth unto the river *Shanon*, and lieth betweene the *Kings County South*, and *Longford County North*; unto which it is not willing to give place either in fertilitie of soile, multitude of inhabitants, or any thing else whatsoever, unless haply it bee inferiour in civility of manners. *Molingar* by authority of Parliament was ordained to

be the head and principall shire towne, because it lieth, as it were, in the very middle: and the whole county is laid forth into twelve Hundreds or Baronies, viz. *Ferriugh*, where the *Tirels, Ferbille*, where the *Darcies* dwell; *Delvin* which adorneth the noble stock of the *Nogents* (who came first out of England) with the title of a Parliament Baron. These are descended from that Sir *Gilbert Nogent*, whom *Hugh Lacy* the Conqueror of *Meib*, for his courageous and valiant service in the wars of Ireland, rewarded both with these lands and those also of *Furry*, as that most learned Gentleman *Richard Staniburgh* hath recorded: *Fourry* aforesaid, as also *Corkery*, where the *Nogents* dwell; *Moyassell*, where the *Tuis* and *Nogents*; *Magbertiernen*, where very many of the *Petuis* and the *Tuis*; *Moigossy*, where the *Tuis* and *Nangles*; *Rathcomire*, where the *Daltons*; *Magirquirk*, where the *Dillons*, all propagated from English blood do inhabit; *Clonlolan*, where the *O-Malaghlins*, of the old roiall line of *Meib*; *Moyassell*, where the *Magobigans*, meere Irish beare sway: and others whose very names carry an harsh sound of more barbarousnesse: which notwithstanding, even as *Martiall* the Poet when hee had reckoned up certaine barbarous Spanish names of places, being himselfe a Spaniard, said, *That he liked them better than British names*, so the Irish love these rather than the English: in so much as one of their Potentates gave it out, that he would in no wise learne the English tongue, for feare he should in speaking English get a wry mouth. Thus the crow thinkes her owne birds fairest; and we all are given to like our owne too well, even with the disdain and contempt of others.

This *Meib* had in times past Kings, or pety Princes rather to rule it. And, as we read, that Monarch or sole King of Ireland, *Slany*, caused the revenues of *Meib* to bee assigned and appropriat to the furnishing of his royall table. But when the Englishmen had once set fast footing in Ireland, *Hugh Lacy* subdued a great part thereof, and King Henry the second enfeofed him in it, and made him Lord of *Meib*, who while he was building of a castle at *Derwarth*, and holding his head downe to prescribe a Carpenter somewhat that he would have done, had by him his head stricken off with his axe.

This

A This *Hugh* begat two sonnes, *Hugh Earle of Ulster*, of whom I will speake hereafter: and *Walzer Lord of Trim*, who begat *Gilbert* that died before his father. By the daughters of this *Gilbert*, *Margaret* and *Maud*, the one part by the *Genevils*, who were (as they write) of the house of *Lorrain*; and by the *Morimers*, came to the Dukes of *Rouk*, and so to the Kings domain or Crowne: for *Peter de Genevile*, sonne to that *Maud*, begat *Joan* espoused to *Roger Morimer Earle of March*: and the other part by *Margaret* wife to *John Lord Verdon*, and by his heires who were Constables of Ireland, was devolved at length upon divers families in England, as *Furnivall*, *Burghersb*, *Crophul*, &c.

Genevile.

Constables of Ireland.

THE COUNTY OF LONGFORD.



Unto west *Meath* on the North side joyneth the County of LONGFORD (reduced into this ranke of Countries a few yeeres since by the provident policy of Sir *Henry Sidney* Lord Deputy) called before time *Anale*, inhabited by a numerous Sept of the *O-Pharols*: of which house there be two great men and Potentates; one ruleth in the South part, named *O-Pharoll Boy*, that is, *The yellow*: the other in the North, called *O-Pharall Ban*, that is, *The white*. And very few Englishmen are there among them, and those planted there but of late.

Anale.

O-Pharoll.

Along the side of this County passeth *Shannon*, the noblest river of all Ireland, which as I have said runneth between *Meib* and *Conaught*. *Ptolomee* nameth it *Sennus*, *Orosius* *Senna*, and some copies *SACANA*, *Giraldus Flumen Senense*: but the people dwelling there by call it *Shanon*, that is, as some expound it, *The ancient river*. He springeth out of *Thern hills* in the county *Le Trim*, and forthwith cutting through the lands Southward, one while overfloweth the bankes, and enlargeth himselfe into open Pooles: and otherwhiles drawes backe againe into narrow straights, and after he hath run abroad into one or two Lakes, gathering himselfe within his bankes, valedth bonnet to *MACOLICUM*, now called *MALC* (as the most learned Geographer *Gerard Mercator* hath observed) whereof *Ptolomee* hath made mention; and then by and by is entertained by another broad Mere (they call it *Lough Regib*) the name and situation whereof doth after a sort imply, that the City *RIGIA*, which *Ptolomee* placeth there, stood not farre from hence. But when hee hath once gotten beyond this Poole, and draweth himselfe to a narrower channell within the bankes, there standeth hard upon him the towne *Athlon*, of which I will write in place convenient.

River Sennus or Sineus, Shannin and Shannon.

Macolicum; Malc.

Rigia.

From thence *Shannon* having gotten over the Water-fall at *Killolo* (whereof I must speake anon) being now able to beare the biggest ships that are, in a divided channell, as it were with two armes clasped about the city *Limrick*, whereof I have spoken already. From hence *Shannon* passing on directly for threescore miles or thereabout in length, bearing a great breadth, and making many an Island by the way, speedeth himselfe Westward; and in what place soever he becommeth shallow and affordeth fords at an ebbe or low water, there were planted little forts with wards (such was the careful providence of our forefathers) to restrain the inrodes of preying robbers. And so at length he runneth and voideth out at an huge mouth into the West Ocean beyond *Knoc Patric*, that is, *Patricks hill*: for so *Necham* termeth that place in these his verses of *Shannon*.

Which others call *Mare Bre-dunium*.

Fluminibus magnis latatur Hibernia, Sineus

Inter Connauiam, Momomiamque fluit.

Transit per muros Limirici, Knoc Patric illum

Oceanus clausum sub ditione videt.

Ireland takes joy in rivers great, and *Shannon* them among,
Betwixt *Connaught* and *Munster* both holds on his course along,
He runneth hard by *Limrick* wayes: *Knoc Patric* then at last
Within the gulfe of th' Ocean doth see him lodged fast.

CON-

CONNACHTIA, OR CONAGHT.



Nagnarz.
Gangani.
Concanni.
Auteri.

The fourth part of Ireland, which beareth Westward, closed in with the river *Shannon*, the out-let of the Lake or *Lough Erne*, which some call *Trovi*, others *Bana*, and with the maine Western sea, is named by *Giraldus Cambrensis* *Conachia* and *Conacia*, in English *Conaght*, and in Irish *Conaghty*. In ancient times, as we may see in *Ptolomee*, it was inhabited by the *GANGANI*, who are also named *CONCANNI*, *AUTERI* and *NAGNATÆ*. Those *CONCANNI* or *GANGANI*, like as the *LUCENI* their next neighbours that came from the *Lucensis* in Spaine, may seeme by the affinity of name and also by the vicinity of place to have bene derived from the *CONCANNI* in Spaine, who in *Sirabo* are according to the diversity of reading named *CONIACI* and *CONISCI*: whom *Salinus* testifieth in these verses following to have bene the first Scythians, and to have usually drunke horses blood (a thing even of later daies nothing strange among the wild Irish.)

*Et qui Massagetem monstrans feris ac parentem,
Cornipedis fusa sarras Concane vena.*

And *Concane* though in savagenesse that now resembling still
Thy parents old the *Massagets*, of horse-blood drinkst thy fill.

And beside him *Horace*,

Et letum equino sanguine Concannum.

And *Concane*, who thinks it so good
To make his drinke of horses blood.

Unlesse a man would suppose this Irish name *Conaghty* to be compounded of *CONCANNI* and *NAGNATÆ*. Well, this Province as it is in some place fresh and fruitful, so by reason of certain moist places, yet covered over with grasse, which of their softnesse they usually tearme *Boghes*, like as all the Iland besides every where is dangerous, and thicke set with many and those very shady woods. As for the sea coast, lying commodious as it doth with many baies, creeks, and navigable rivers, after a fort it inviteth and provoketh inhabitants to navigation: but the sweetnesse of inbred idlenesse doth so hang upon their lazie limbes, that they had rather get their living from doore to doore, than by their honest labours keepe themselves from beggery. *Conaghty* is at this day divided into these counties, *Twomond* or *Clare*, *Galway*, *Maio*, *Slego*, *Leirrim*, and *Roscoman*.

The ancient *CONCANNI* above said, held in old time the more Southerly part of this *Conaghty*, where now lye *Twomond* or *Clare*, the county *Galway*, *Clan-Richards* country, and the Barony of *Atterish*.

TWO MOND, OR THE COUNTRY CLARE.



Twomond or *Twomond*, which *Giraldus* calleth *Thuesmonia*, the Irish *Twomond*, that is, *The North-Mounster* (which although it lye beyond the river *Shannon* yet was counted in times past part of *Mounster*, untill *Sir Henry Sidney* Lord Deputy laid it unto *Conaghty*) shootheth out into the sea with a very great Promontory growing by little and little thin and narrow. On the East and South sides it is so enclosed with the winding course of the river *Shannon*, which waxeth bigger and bigger, like as on the West part with the open maine sea, and on the North side confineth so close upon the county *Galway*, that there is no coming unto it by land, but through the *Clan-Richards* territory. This is a country wherein a man would wish for nothing more, either from sea or soile, were but the industry of the inhabitants correspondent to the rest; which industry

A industry *Sir Robert Muscegros* an English Nobleman, *Richard Clare* and *Thomas Clare*, younger brethren of the stock of the Earles of *Glocester* (unto whom King Edward the first had granted this country) stirred up long since by building townes and castles, and by alluring them to the fellowship of a civill conversation; of whose name the chiefe towne *Clare*, now the dwelling place of the Earle of *Twomond*, tooke denomination, as also the whole tract, of it called the county of *Clare*. The places of greater note and name than the rest, are *Kilfennerag* and *Killaloe* or *Laon*, the Bishops seat. This in the Roman Provinciall is tearmed *Episcopatus Lidenfis*, where there stands a rocke in the mid channell of the river *Shannon*, from which the water rusheth downe a maine with a great fall and noise, and by standing thus in the way as a bar, hindreth the river that it can carry vessels no further; which if it were cut down, or a draine made about it, the river were able to bring up vessels much higher, to the great commodity of all the neighbour inhabitants.

Not far from the banke of *Shannon*, is seated *Bunratty*, for which *Sir Robert Muscegros* obtained from King Henry the third the libertie of a Mercate and Faire, and when he had fortified it with a castle, gave it at length unto King Edward the first, who granted both this towne and the whole territory unto *Richard Clare* aforesaid. And seven miles from thence, appeareth *Clare* the principall towne, at a Creeke (flowing up out of *Shannon*) full of Islands: and these twaine are the onely mercate townes here, and those but small ones. Most of the English who were in times past brought hither to inhabite, are either rooted out, or become degenerate and growne Irish: but they who carry the whole sway here at this day, be of the Irish blood; as *Mac-Nemors*, *Mac-Mahon*, *O-loughlin*, and the mightiest by far of all other, the *O-Briens*, descended from the ancient Potentates or Kings of *Conaghty*, or as themselves give it forth, from the Monarchs of Ireland. Of these, *Merogh O-Brien* was the first Earle of *Twomond*, created by King Henry the eighth for terme of life, and after him to *Donough* his brothers sonne, and his heires; who at the same time being made Baron of *Ibargan*, succeeded in the Earldome, and was slain by his brother *Sir Donel O-Brien Connaghty*, *O-Brien Donaghs* son, was the third Earle, and father to *Donaghs* now the fourth Earle, who hath shewed singular good prooffe of his faithfull loialty and courageous valour unto his Prince and country in most dangerous times, to his singular commendation.

THE COUNTY OF GALLWAY.



The county of *GALLWAY* meereth South upon *Clare*, West upon the Ocean, North upon the county *Maio*, and East upon the river *Shannon*. A land very thankfull unto the industrious husbandman, and no lesse profitable unto the Shepheard. The West shore endented in with small in-lets and out-lets, or armes of the sea, hath a border all along of greene Islands and rugged rockes, set orderly, as it were, in a row: among which, foure Islands called *Arran*, make a Barony, and many a foolish fable goes of them, as if they were the Islands of the living, wherein none doe dye: also *Inis Ceath*, well knowne in times past by reason of the Monastery of *Colman* a devout Saint, founded for Scots and Englishmen: and *Inis-Buind*, which *Bede* interpreteth out of the Scottish tongue to signifie, *The Isle of white Heifers*; whereas it is a meere British word. But the Englishmen soone forooke the Monastery, when the Scots and they could not well agree together. Further within lieth a Lake, called *Lough-Corbes* (where *Ptolomee* placeth the river *Ausobla*) spreading out twenty miles or thereabout in length, and three or foure in bredth, being navigable, and garnished with 300. petty Islands full of grasse, and bearing Pine-trees; which Lake when it reacheth neere the sea, growing narrow into a river, runneth under *Gallway*, in the Irish tongue *Gallua*, named so (or else I cannot tell) of the *Gallers* in Spaine, the very principall city of this Province, and which would thinke hardly to be reckoned the third in Ireland: Surely a very proper and faire City it is, built almost round, and in manner tower-like, of en-

Killaloe.

Catarafta.

Bunratty.

Clare.

Earles of Twomond.

Islands of Arran.

Bede l. 4. c. 4. Ecclesiast. hist.

Lough-Corbes.

Gallway.

try, and some stone, and hath beside to set it out a Bishops See: and withall, through A the benefit of the haven and rode above said under it, being well frequented with merchants, hath easie and gainfull trafficke, by exchange of rich commodities both by sea and land.

The battell of
Knoc Doe.

1516.

Asterith.

Birminghams.

Clan-Ricard.
Earles of
Clan-Ricard.

Archbishop-
rick of Toam,
or Tuen.

Not full foure miles from hence standeth *Knoc-toe*, that is, *the hill of Axes*; under which that noble *Girald Fitz-Girald*, Earle of *Kildare*, and by times, for the space of three and thirty yeeres Lord Deputie of Ireland, discomfited and put to flight, after a bloody overthrow, the greatest rabble of rebels that ever was seen before in Ireland, raised and gathered together by *William Burk*, *O-Bren*, *Mac-Nemare*, and *O-Carrall*. Not farre from hence Eastward standeth *Asterith* (in which remaine some footings) of the name of *AUTERIT* commonly called *Athenry*, enclosed round about with a wall of great circuit, but slenderly inhabited. It glorieth much of that warlike Baron thereof, *John de Birmingham* an Englishman; out of which family the Earle of *Lomb* descended: but these *Birminghams* of *Asterith*, being now as it were degenerate into barbarous Irishry, scarce acknowledge themselves to have beene English originally. The septes or kinreds of the Irish here, that be of the better sort, are *O Kelleh*, *O Mar*, *den*, *O Flaits*, *Mac Dervis*, &c.

Clan-Ricard, that is, *The sonnes, kinred, or Tube of Richard*, or *the Land of Richards sonnes*, confineth upon these, and lieth to this county. The name it tooke, after the Irish manner, from one *Richard* of an English family, called *de Burgh*, that became afterwards of most high renowne and name in this tract, and out of which King Henry the eighth created *Ulrich Burgh* Earle of *Clan-Ricard*, whose eldest sonne carrieth the title of Baron *Dun-Kellin*. His sonne *Richard* was the second Earle, whose children, begotten of sundry wives, stirred up many troubles, to the grieve of their father, the overthrow of their owne country, and themselves. After *Richard*, who died an old man, succeeded his sonne *Ulrich* the third Earle, and father to *Richard* the fourth Earle now living, whose fast fidelity and singular fortitude hath, to his great praise, evidently appeared, when the English, and their whole estates in Ireland, were in great danger. In this territory is the Archbishoprick of *Toam*, unto which in old times many Bishops were subject; but at this day the Bishopricks of *Anaghy*, *Dun*, and *Maio* are annexed unto it. The Bishoprick likewise of *Kilmacough*, which in the old Provinciall, unless the name be corrupt, is not mentioned, as also of *Clonfert*, are seated in this part, and, as I have heard, united to the See of *Toam*.

THE COUNTY OF MAIO.

The county *Maio*, on which the Western Ocean beareth, lies bounded South with the county of *Galway*; East with the county *Rescoman*, and North with the county of *Slego*. A fertile country and a pleasant, abundantly rich in cattell, Deere, Hawkes, and plenty of hony: taking the name of *Maio*, a little city with a Bishops See in it, which in the Roman Provinciall is called *Mago*. But that Episcopall seat is now annexed to the Metropolitane of *Toam*, and the neighbour inhabitants repaire for Ecclesiasticall jurisdiction to the Bishop of *Killaley*, in the Barony of *Tir-Auley*.

In this *Maio*, if I deceive not my selfe, *Colman* a Bishop of Ireland built, as *Bede* writeth, a Monastery for thirty men or thereabout of the English Nation, trained in the profession of the Monasticall life, whom he brought out of England into Ireland. But heare what *Bede* saith. *Colman found a place in the Isle of Ireland, meet for building of a Monastery, named in the old Scottish tongue Magia. And he bought a part of it, which was not much, of the Earle, unto whose possession it belonged, to found a Monastery therein: but with this condition annexed unto the sale, that the Monks, when they should pray unto the Lord for him also that permitted them to have the place. Now when hee had straightwaies erected this Monastery, with the helpe of the said Earle and all the neighbour inhabitants, hee placed the Englishmen there, leaving the Scots behind in the Isle Boynd. which very Monastery is inhabited at this day by Englishmen: for the*

Maio.

Killaley.
Bishoprick of
Killaley.

Lib 4. cap. 4.

A the same it is, which now of a small one grown to be great, is usually termed, In *Mago*. And having now this good while turned all to better orders, it containeth a notable convent of Monkes, who being assembled there together out of the Province of England, according to the example of the reverend fathers, under Regularity and a Canonick Abbat, live in great continency and sincerity with the labour of their owne hands.

About the yeere of our Lord 1115. this monasterie was re-edified, and flourished in King Johns time, who by his Patent confirmed many farmes and faire lands unto it. Neither verily is there any other place, that I can finde memorable, unless it be *Logh-Mesk* a good large and fishfull Lake, in two small Islands whereof stand B sure forts, that belonged to the familie of *Burke*. This county is not so famous for the townes therein as the Inhabitants, who are either of the Irish race, as *O-Mayles*, *Joies* and *Mac-vadus*; or of the Scottish out of the Islands *Hebrides*, and out of the sept of *Donell*, whereupon they bee called *Clan-Donells*, all *Galloglasses*, and as it were, doughty mercenary souldiors, who fight with two edged axes, and be armed with habergeons or coats of maile, procured in times past to come hither by the rebels, and endowed here with lands: or else of English blood, as the said *Burkes*, *Jordans*, descended from one *Jordan* of *Excester*, *Nangles* of *Castlough*, *Prendergast* of *Clan-Morris*. But the most puissant be those *Burkes*, who after a fort are beholden both for their first beginning, and also for their glory unto William a younger brother of *Walter de Burgo* or *Burk* of *Ulster*. This William, highly renowned for his militarie prowess, being led away prisoner into Scotland, and leaving his wife behind him for an hostage, when he was restored to his owne home, by his manhood recovered *Conaught* (out of which in his absence all the English had been expelled by *Phelim O Conor*) having slaine in the field the said *Phelim O Conor*, *Mac Dermond*, *Tego* and *Kelly*, and was himselfe at last, in revenge, killed by *Cormac Mac-Dermond*. His grandson *Thomas*, by his son *Edmund* surnamed *Albanach* (because he was borne in Scotland) when he saw the goodly and rich inheritance of his owne familie, translated by a female unto *Leonell Duke of Clarence*, tooke it to the heart, and therefore raising a power of lewd lawlesse and desperate persons (who will be never wanting

Logh-Mesk.

Galloglasses.

D in Ireland nor else where) by force and wrong seized the Patrimony of the Earles of *Ulster* in this County into his owne hands, and after the name of that Grandfather of his, whose glorious fame and gracious authority was then fresh in remembrance, called himselfe *Mac-william*, that is, *the sonne of William*. And his posterity under that name and title usurped a tyrannie in these parts, raging upon themselves other whiles, with mutuall injuries, and oppressing the poore people a long time with extorting, pillling and spoyling: insomuch as they left scarce one village or house in the Country unrased and unruined. This powerfull violence of theirs Sir *Richard Bingham* principall Commissioner, or Governour of *Conaught*, a man resolute, severe and valiant, fit for such a fierce and fell Province, thought not to be endured. For he well understood being prudent and politicke, that these unjust oppressions, pilllings and pillings were the principall causes of the rebellions, of barbarousnesse, and base beggary of Ireland, yea and that they drew the people away from their due obedience and allegiance to their Prince, so as that they would acknowledge no other sovereigne than their owne Lords and Captaines: he therefore to establish (what hee might) the royall power and authority there, and to overthrow this tyrannicall government of this *Mac-william* and of others getting head, employed with all diligence his whole care and cogitations to the uttermost: and albeit he had from time to time many imputations, suggestions, and complaints eagerly urged upon him, both before *Queene Elizabeth* and also the Lord Deputy, yet proceeded hee in his purpose. Contrariwise, those of the familie of *Burke*, their followers and dependants, that refused to obey the lawes, tooke armes and drew to band, and side with them, the Septes of the *Clan-Donells*, *Joies* and others, who distrusted themselves and their owne power, whom *Bingham* the Governour soone scattered: and having forced their forts, drave them into woods and lurking hooles, untill the Lord Deputy taking pittie of them, upon their hum-

Mac-William
who also is
called Mac-
William
Eugher.
Cuttings,
Coyne, Live-
rey, &c.
Cause of Re-
bellions in
Ireland.
Richard
Bingham.

ble supplication, commanded by his Missives that they should bee received upon A
 termes of peace. But they who by warre had troubled the peace, and knowing not
 how to lay downe warre for sweetnesse of peace, were no sooner relieved and raised
 as it were from death, but they tooke armes againe, entred afresh into actual rebellion,
 on, drave booties every where, and made foule uprores in all places, crying out, *That they would
 they would set up their Mac-William, or else send for one out of Spaine: That they would
 not admit a Sheriffe, nor yeeld obedience to lawes.* And herewith they closely procured
 the Scottish Ilanders from out of the *Hebrides*, to come over for to aide them, promi-
 sing them faire lands and possessions: whereupon the Lord Deputy commanded the
 Governour to repress and bridle this their excessive and malapert insolence. He then
 immediately, when they rejected all equall and indifferent conditions offered unto B
 them, assembled an army, and pursued them so hotly through the woods and forests,
 that after six or seven weeks being grievously hunger-bitten, they most humbly sub-
 mitted themselves. At which very time the auxiliary forces of the Scots aforesaid,
 came seeking through desert by-waies, and untravelled out waies, as closely as they
 could, to come into the county of *Maio*: but the Governour with continuall journeyes
 affronted them by night and day so neere, and followed upon them so hard, that in the
 end he intercepted them at *Ardnary*, & valiantly giving the charge, put them to flight,
 after he had killed and drowned in the river *Moyn* about three thousand of them. A
 happy victory this was, and of great consequence both for the present & future times: C
 whereby the rebellion, together with the title of *Mac-William*, was extinguished. *De-
 nell Gormy*, and *Alexander Carrrough*, the sons of *James Mac-Conel*, and those Ilanders
 who most of all had plagued Ireland were slaine. These occurrents have I briefly let
 down out of my *Annales* (impertinent though they be to my intended purpose) which
 for their worthinesse ought more at large to be penned by some Historiographer.

THE COUNTY OF SLEGO.

Somewhat higher lieth the county of *Slego*, a plenteous and battle coun-
 try for feeding and raising of cattell, wholly also coasting upon the sea. D
 Betweene it and *Ulster* Northward runneth the river *TROBIS*, which
Ptolomee calleth *RAVIUS*, as an out-let of the Lake *Erne*: it is severed
 from the neighbour counties, *Le Trim* and *Roscoman*, by the comberous
Curlew hills; and the river *Suc* divideth it in twaine. In some place hereabout *Ptolo-
 mee* setteth the city *NAGNATA*; but what city it was it passeth my wit to find out.
 He hath placed also the river *LIBNIUS* in this tract, which through the retchle-
 nesse of the transcribers, I reduced even now from out of exile to Dublin his owne ci-
 ty. But that place which *Ptolomee* here pointeth out, is now called *THE BAY OF
 SLEGO*, a rode full of harbours under *Slego* the principall place of this county: where
 standeth a castle, the seat at this day of the Sept of *O-Conor*, who of it take their ad- E
 dition of *Slego*, and fetch their pedigree, as they say themselves, from that *Ratherick
 O-Conor Dun*, who being a great man and of much puissance, bare himselfe as Mo-
 narch of Ireland, what time as the English entred first into Ireland, & hardly yeelded
 himselfe unto King Henry the second, although in words he professed submission,
 and oftentimes raising tumults (as an author without name of that age writeth) used
 ever and anon to cry out and say, That these words following of *Adrian* the Pope,
 in his Patent or Charter made unto the King of England, were prejudiciall unto him:
*Enter you into that Iland, and execute whatsoever shall concerne the glory of God, and the
 salvation of that land: and let the people of the said land receive you and honour you as
 their Lord: untill such time as Pope Alexander the third by a new Bull or Charter F
 of his, had confirmed in like manner unto the Kings of England their right to Ireland:*
 for then became he more tractable, and condescended unto more equall conditions, as
 I shall shew anon. After these *O Conors*, the greatest men of name in this territory
 are *O Don*, *O Haru*, *O Ghar*, and *Mac-Donagh*.

Nagnata.

Diplomat. l. 2.
 c. 6 Girald.
 Cambren. de
 expugnatio.
 Hibern p. 787.

THE

THE COUNTY OF LETRIM.

The County of *Slego* Eastward is enclosed with *Breany*, the possession
 of the ancient family of *O-Rorck*, which drew their descent from *Ra-
 therick* Monarch of Ireland, whom they by contraction (which they
 take pleasure in) terme *Rorck*, untill that *Brien O Rorck*, Lord of *Brea-
 ny* and *Minterolife*, fed with vaihe hopes by Pope Sixtus Quintus, and
 the King of Spaine, had perfidiously cast off his allegiance to Queene Elizabeth, and
 taken armes: who being streightwaies chased into Scotland, and sent backe into
 England, suffered for his inconsiderate rashnesse due punishment upon the gallowes,
 and his lands were adjudged to the Crown. This *Breany*, by *John Perot* Lord Depu-
 tie was made a county, and of the chiefe towne called *Le-Trim*, which riseth up
 throughout with hills, full of ranke grasse; yet not so, as that it should be altogether
 true which *Solinus* reporteth of Ireland: namely, *that it is so full of forage, that unlesse
 cattell were kept other whiles from grasing, their fulnesse would endanger them.* And
 so much cattell it feedeth, that within the little circuit which it hath, it may rec-
 kon at one time above a hundred and twenty thousand head of beafts. In this stan-
 deth *Athony* Bishopricke, united now to the See of *Elphin*. And *Shannon*, the So-
 veraigne of all rivers in Ireland, hath here his spring-head; which being one while
 narrower, and another while broader, with divers turning and winding reaches that
 he makes, washeth and watereth of either side, as I have said, many a country. The
 principall families be *O Rorck*, *O Murreies*, *Mac Lochleims*, *Mac Glanchies*, and *Mac
 Graneller*, all meere and stark Irish. Whereas *John Burgh*, sonne to *Richard* the Earle
 of *Clan-Ricards*, was created by Queene Elizabeth Baron *Le-Trim*, who was after-
 ward slaine by his envious concurrents, I cannot say whether he had that title of this
Le-Trim, or of some other place in this kingdome.

THE COUNTY OF ROSCOMAN.

Under the county of *Leirim* Southward lieth *ROSCOMAN*, ordained
 to be a county by *Henry Sidney* Lord Deputy; lying out a good length,
 but narrow; closed up between the two rivers *Suc* Westward, and *Sha-
 non* Eastward, and on the North side bounded with *Curlew* mountaines.
 A territory it is for the most part plaine, fruitfull, feeding many herds of cattell,
 and with meane husbandry and tillage yeeldeth plenty of corne. Where it beareth
 Northward, the steepe mountaines of *Curlew* perke up aloft, and those impassable
 untill by the carefull industry of *George Bingham* there was a way cut out: which
Curlews not long since became more notorious, for the disastrous death of Sir *Comi-
 Eers Clifford*, and (by his default) for the slaughter with him of most valiant and expe-
 rienced souldiers. In this county are reckoned foure Baronies. Under *Curlew hills*,
 by the river *Shanon*, the Baronic of *Boyle* first commeth in view: where was founded
 in times past a famous Abbey, in the yeere 1152. together with the Abbey of *Beati-
 tude*, and *Mac Dermot* ruleth all there as Lord; then by the river *Suc* lieth the Baro-
 nic *Balin Tober*, where *O Conor Dun* is of the greatest command: and upon it joineeth
Elphen an Episcopall See. Somewhat lower is *Roscoman*, the Baronic of *O Conor
 Roo*, that is, *Conor the red*, wherein is seated the chiefe towne of the whole countie,
 fenced in times past with a castle by *Robert Ufford* Lord Justice of Ireland; but all
 the houses are mean and thatched; and more Southward, *Aibloné* the Baronic of the
F O Kellies, so named of the head towne, which hath a castle and ward in it, also a most
 beautifull bridge of hewen stone, which to the great terrour of seditious rebels,
 Queen Elizabeth in our memory appointing *Henry Sidney* Lord Deputy of Ireland
 overseer thereof, caused to be built, with a purpose to constitute in that place (as most
 fit of all others in Ireland to repress seditious) the seat of residence for the Lords
 Deputies: and thus much for the Counties of *Conaght*.

Curlew hills.

Barony of Boyle.

Balin Tober.

Iiii 3

LORDS

LORDS OF CONAGHT.



For the Lords of *Conaght*, wee finde it recorded in the Irish histories, that *Turlough O Mor O Conor* ruled absolutely in old time this country, and divided it wholly betweene his two sonnes, *Cabel* and *Brien*. But at the Englishmens first arrivall into Ireland, *Roshericke* bare rule, who stiled himselfe Monarch of Ireland, yet being put in feare

with the great preparation for the English warre hanging so neere over his head, he betooke himselfe into the protection of King Henry the second, without trying the hazzard of battell. But when as forthwith he brake his allegiance, and revolted, *Miles Cogan* was the first Englishman that gave the attempt upon *Conaght*, yet sped hee not in his enterprise. Howbeit that King of *Conaght* above said, was driven to this exigent, as to acknowledge himselfe the King of Englands *Liege-man*, to serve him faithfully as his man, and to pay unto him yeerely of every tenth best, one hide mercable, &c. And King John granted that the third part of *Conaght* should remaine unto him still, to be held hereditarily for an hundred Markes. But *William Fitz-A-delme*, whose posterity are called in Latin *de Burgo*, and *Burke* or *Bourke* in Irish, *Robert Muscegros*, *Gilbert Clare* Earle of *Gloster*, and *William de Birmingham* were the first English that fully subdued this country, and laboured to bring it to civill government. And *William Bourk* and his lineall posterity, being called Lords of all *Conaght*, governed that province, together with *Ulster*, for a long time in great peace and tranquillity, yea and raised thereout rich revenues, untill the onely daughter of *William Burke*, sole heire in grosse of *Conaght* and *Ulster* both, was matched in marriage with *Leonell Duke of Clarence*, King Edward the thirds sonne. But when as he abode for the most part in England, and the *Mortimers* his heires and successours looked but negligently to their patrimony and inheritance in Ireland, the *Bourkes* there allies, whom they had appointed as overseers of their lands, taking the advantage of their Lords absence, and presuming upon the troubles in England, despising the authority of lawes, entring into alliance with the Irish, and contracting marriage with them, seized upon all *Conaght* to their owne behoofe, and degenerating by little and little, have laid downe English civility, and taken up Irish behaviour. Whereof some, who fetched their pedigree from *Richard Burke*, were called *Clan-Ricard*; others, *Mac William Oughier*, that is, *The upper*; others, *Mac William Eughier*, that is, *The lower*; even as they who in the countie of *Maio* were of greatest power and authority, affected to be tearmed simply *Mac-William*, as being a name full of honour, glory, and authority, because they descended from *William de Burgo*, or *Burke*, whom I mentioned erewhile: under countenance of which name, they for a long time tyrannized over the poore inhabitants with most grievous exactions.

ULTONIA,

OR

ULSTER.



LL the land beyond the mouth of the river *Boyn*, *Meath*, the County *Longford*, and the mouth of the river *Kavie* that stretcheth Northward, is counted the fifth part of Ireland, called in Latin *Ultonia*, and *Ulidia*, in English *Ulster*, in Irish *Cui Guilly*, that is, *The Province Guilly*, and of our Welsh Britans *Ulsw*. Which Province was wholly inhabited in *Ptolomees* time by the *VOLUNTII*, *DARNI*, *ROBOGDII*, and *ERDINI*: A large country, bespiced with many, and those very large loghes and lakes, shaded with many and thicke woods, in some places fruitfull, in others barren, howbeit fresh and green to see to in every place, and replenished with cattell. But as the country for want of manuring is growne to be rough,

Rog. Hoveden.
Anno 1175.
pag. 112.

A rough, so the naturall dispositions of the people, wanting civill discipline, are become most wild and barbarous. Yet to the end that they might be kept within the bounds of their duty, who were wont to breake in funder all bands of equity, of honesty, and of duty, the hecher part of it was in times past divided into three counties, *Louth*, *Downe*, and *Antrim*: and now the rest is laid out into seven new counties, that is to say, *Cavan*, *Fermanagh*, *Monaghan*, *Armagh*, *Calran*, *Tyr-Oen*, and *Donegall* or *Tir-Conell*, by the provident care of Sir *John Perot* L. Deputy: who being a notable and worthy man, well acquainted with the humours and haughty spirits of the Province, foreseeing that no policy would serve better to appease the tumults of Ireland, than to reduce these parts of *Ulster* into order, and to keepe them downe; going thither in a dangerous and ticklish time, when the King of Spaine hovered and gaped both for Ireland and England; with his gravitie and authority, whiles by barring all wrongs, hee did cut off the causes and quarrells of warre, brought all the Potentates or Captaines of *Ulster* to this passe, that willingly they suffered their Seignories to be divided into Counties, and Sheriffes to be appointed for the government thereof. But he being within a while after recalled home, and climbing still higher unto honours, the heave displeasure and envie of some, whom hee was not able to counterpoise, and his owne lavish tongue together (for unadvisedly he had let flye somewhat against the Princes Majestie, which to impaire in word is a capitall matter) plunged him headlong ere he was aware upon his owne destruction, as I have declared elsewhere more amply.

John Perot
Lord Deputy.
1585.

THE COUNTIE OF LOUTH.



HE county of *Louth*, in ancient bookes written *Luvu* and *Luda*, called in the Irish tongue *Iriel* or *Uriel* (if that be not rather a part of this territory situate beyond *Meath* and the mouth of the river *Boyn*, turning full upon the Irish sea, runneth out with a shore much winding into the North; the soile whereof is so full of forage and so fruitfull, that it soone answereth and recompenseth the husband mans toile and charges.

Uriel, in Latin
Urgalia.

Neere unto *Boynes* mouth is seated *Drogheda*, or *Droghda*, in English *Tredagh*, a fine towne, well peopled and frequented, so called of the bridge, and divided by the river *Boyne* running through it. Unto which King Edward the second, for *Theobald Verdons* sake, granted licence for a mercate and faire; the Kings confirmed many and great liberties, and among other a Mint. Neere unto this standeth *Mellifont* Abbey founded by *Donald* a King of *Uriel*, and much praised by *Saint Bernard*: which Queene Elizabeth (when as the religious Monkes were before thrust out) gave unto Sir *Edward More* of Kent, for his good deserts both at home, and abroad in the warres.

Tredagh.

Mellifont Ab-
bey.

Ardeib seven miles from hence is a dry in-land towne well knowne: and above it *Dundalk*, with a commodious haven, and in times past strongly walled; which *Edward Bruu*, brother to the King of Scots, who had proclaimed himselfe King of Ireland, burnt: but hee within a while after was with eight thousand two hundred of his men slaine neere thereabout. And in our remembrance *Shan O Neale* laied siege unto it, but straightwaies hee was forced with shame enough to dislodge. Eight miles from hence standeth *Carlingford*, a port also of good request and resort: neither be there, to my knowledge, any other places in this county worth the naming.

Dundalk.

Carlingford.

F This *Louth* had for Earle Sir *John Birmingham* an Englishman, whom in reward of his martiall valour, when hee had discomfited and in a pitcht field slaine that *Edward Bruu*, who assuming the title of King of Ireland for a time, had made foule work with fire and sword in Ireland, King Edward the second advanced to the honour of Earle of *Louth*, to have unto him and his heires males, and withall, the dignity of *Baron of Arberny*, so him and his heires. But this honourable title, as it began, so it ended in

Birmingham,
who also is
called Brimi-
cham.

Earle of
Louth.

in him; for he that in warre vanquished his enemies, was soone after in a tumult of A rebellious people vanquished and slaine by his owne men in this territory, with many other of his surname, leaving no issue behinde him. But in our fathers remembrance King Henry the eighth honoured Sir *Oliver Plunket* with the title of Baron of *Louth*. There remaine in this county, the *Ferdons, Tates, Clintons, Belles, Dowdals, Gernons, Hadfors, Wottons, Brandons, Mores, Warrens, Chamberlanes* and very many besides of English blood; and of the Irish the *Mac-Mahons, &c.*

Baron Louth.

THE COUNTY OF CAVON.

East Breany.

O Reily.

Kilmore Bishopricke.

Poore Bishops.

The county of CAVON lieth next unto *Louth* to the West, called in times past East *Breany*, the habitation of the *O-Reileys*, who vaunt themselves to have had their beginning of the *Ridleys* in England, whereas in their whole course and manner of life they be mere Irish. These *O-Reileys* not long since were of great power in horsemen: but to the end they might be that way lesse powerfull, Sir *Henry Sidney* in his policy divided their county into seven Baronies; whereof the Lords out of that family should immediately hold the same by service, in fee from the Crowne of England. They dwell scattering in piles and ferts, not in towns. A Bishop they have of their own, and him a poore one, God he knoweth, whose See is at *Kilmore*: and yet is not he so poore as those Irish Bishops were, who had no other rents and revenues than three milch kine, which the parishioners exchanged for others new milch when they went dry, according as *Adam Bremenfis* from their owne relation, when they returned by Germany out of Italy, learned and put downe in writing.

THE COUNTY OF FERMANAGH.

Lough-Erne.

Bal-tarber.

Belek.

Beyond *Cavan* West and North FERMANAGH presenteth it selfe, where sometimes the *ERDINI* dwelt, a country full of woods, and very boggyish. In the midst whereof is that most famous and the greatest Meere of all Ireland, *Lough Erne*, stretching out 40. miles, bordered about with shady woods, and passing full of inhabited Ilands: whereof some containe an hundred, two hundred, and three hundred Acres of ground: having besides such store of Pikes, Trouts, and Salmones, that the fishermen complain oftner of too great plenty of fishes, and of the breaking of their nets, than they doe for want of draught. This Lake spreadeth not from East to West (as it is described in the common Maps) but as I have heard those say who have taken a long and good survey thereof, first at *Bal-Tarber*, which is a little towne farthest North of any in this county of *Cavan*; it stretcheth from South to North foureteene miles in length, and foure in bredth. Anon it draweth in narrow, to the bignesse of a good river, for six miles; in the chanell whereof standeth *Inis Killin*, the principall castle in this tract, which in the yeere 1593. was defended by the rebels, and by *Dowdall* a most valiant Captaine won. Then turning Westward, it enlargeth it selfe most of all, twenty miles long, and ten broad, as far as to *Belek*: neere unto which is a great downefall of water, and as they terme it, that most renowned *Salmons Leape*. A common speech is current among the inhabitants there by, that this Lake was once firme ground, passing well husbanded with tillage, and replenished with inhabitants; but suddenly, for their abominable buggery committed with beasts, overflowne with waters, and turned into a Lake. The Almighty God (saith *Giraldus*) Creator of Nature, judged this land privie to so filthy acts against Nature, unworthy to hold not only the first inhabitants, but any others for the time to come. Howbeit this wickednesse the Irish *Annales* lay upon certaine Ilanders out of the *Hebrides*, who being fled out of their owne Countrey lurked there. Among the Lords in this tract, *Mac-Gwir* was most noble and powerfull, untill he overthrew himselfe and his state in the late rebellion. And they that be of that Sept dwell on both sides, yet so as that those beyond the Lake are reckoned of *Ulster*, and they on this side of *Conaght*.

THE

THE COUNTY MONAGHAN.



Long the *Lough-Erne*, on the East side, stretcheth out the Countie *Monaghan*, mounting aloft with hills, well attired with woods, but knowne by no towne at all (unlesse it be *Monaghan*, which imparted the name unto the whole country.) It is divided into five Baronies, & containeth *Iriel, Dartre, Ferey, Loughy* (which by authority of Parliament were for rebellion, given away from the *Mac-Mahons*) with the little territory *Donemain*, which Queen Elizabeth bestowed upon *Walter D'Evereux* Earle of *Essex*.

Those *Mac-Mahons*, that is, if we interpret it out of the Irish language, *The Sons of Ursu*, or the *Beare*, ruled here as tyrannicall Lords a long time, and derive their Genealogy from *Walter Fitz-Urse*, who imbrued his hands with the bloody murdering of Thomas Archbishop of Canterbury. The most puissant of these, after the manner of that nation, tooke upon him to Lord it over the rest, and by way of excellency was termed *Mac-Mahon*. About which preheminance, when as of late daies they of that Sept or Family were at most bitter debate, by way of hard words, open armes, foule practises, yea and close corruptions, Sir *William Fitz-William* the Lord Deputy came hither among them, and judicially convened *Hugh-Roe, Mac-Mahon*, whom he by his authority had set up in this Seigniori, and being upon his triall condemned of treason, caused him to be hanged: and to the end that he might suppress for ever both the name and sovereignty of *Mac-Mahon*, he divided the territory betwene the kindred of the said *Hugh*, and certaine Englishmen, to have and to hold after the English tenure, to them and theirs.

Mac-Mahon.

Fitz-Urse.

1590.

THE COUNTY ARMAGH.

In the East side again lieth out in length the county of *Armagh*, so as that it is compassed as it were about with the river *Neury* by East, with the county of *Louth* by South, and with the *Black-water* by North. A County, as I have sundry times heard the Earle of *Denshire* Lord Lieutenant Generall say, that for a most rich and battle soile passeth all other parts of Ireland, inasmuch as if any compost be laid upon it to make it more fruitfull, it scornereth and disdaineth, as one would say, the same, and becommeth barren. The first place in it that we meet with, is *Fewes*, a little territory belonging to *Turlough Mac-Henry*, one of the family of *O-Neale*, thicke set with woods, and by reason of loughs and bogs unpassable. Then have you *Orry*, as scarce of woods, where dwelleth *O-Hanlan*, and the fort *Mont-Norris*, built by *Charles* Baron *Mont-joy* when he was Lord Deputy, and so named in honour of Sir *John Norris*, under whom he had served first, and was trained in military discipline. Eight miles from hence, neere unto the river *Kalin*, *Armagh* maketh a poore shew, albeit it is the Archiepiscopall See, and Metropolitane of the whole Iland. The Irish talke much, that it was so called of Queen *Armacha*: but in mine opinion it is the very same that *Bede* nameth *Dearmach*, and out of the Scottish or Irish language interpreteth it, *The field of Okes*. But it was named *Drumfai-lich*, before that Saint *Patrick* had built there a proper faire City, for sue, forme, quantity, and compasse, modelled out, as hee saith, by the appointment and direction of Angels. That *Patrick* I say, who being a Britan borne, and Saint *Martins* sisters sonne, named at his Baptisme *Sucas*, was sold into Ireland, where he became Heardman to King *Miluc*, afterwards was named by Saint German, whose disciple hee was, *Magonius*, as a Nurse-Father, out of a British word: and by Pope *Celestine*, *Patrick*, as a Father of the Citizens, and by him sent over to catechize Ireland in the Christian faith: which notwithstanding some had received there before, as wee may gather out of an old Synodall, wherein is urged the testimony of *Patrick* himselfe, against that consure or shaving of Priests which had bene used before his time in Ireland; whereby they were shaven only on the fore part of the head, and

Charles Blunt.
L. Mont-joy.

Fewes.

Orry.

Mont-Norris.

Armagh.

S. Patrick.
Vita Patricii.
Marianus
Scotus.

The Irish shaving.

See Bed. l. 5. c.
22.

S. Bernard in
the life of Ma-
lachy.

and not on the Crowne. Which manner of having he seemeth by way of contempt A
to father upon a certaine Swineherd of King *Lagerius* the sonne of *Nell*: and the writ-
ters of that age cried out, that it was *Simon Magus* his having, and not *S. Peters*: In
this place about the yeere of our salvation 610. *Columbane* built a most famous Mo-
nastery, out of which very many Monasteries afterwards were propagated by his disciples,
both in Britain and in Ireland. Of this *Armach S. Bernard* thus writeth. In honour of
S. Patrick the Apostle of Ireland, who here by his life time ruled, and after death rested;
it is the Archiepiscopall seat and Metropolitane City of all Ireland, and of so venerable esti-
mation in old time, that not only Bishops and Priests, but Kings also and Princes in gene-
rall, were subject to the Metropolitane thereof in all obedience, and he alone governed them
all. But through the diabolish ambition of some mighty Potentates, there was taken up a
very bad custome, that this holy See should be obtained and held in hereditary succession;
neither suffered they any to be Bishops, but such as were of their owne Clan, Tribe, and
Family. Neither prevailed this execrable succession a little, but continued this wicked
manner for the space well neere of fifteen generations.

When in proceffe of time the Ecclesiasticall discipline in this Iland was growne
loose, so as in townes and cities, there were translations and plurality of Bishops,
according to the will and pleasure of the Metropolitane; for reformation of this
abuse, *John Papyrio* a Cardinall was sent hither from Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, as
a namelesse writer then living wrote in these words. In the yeere of our Lord 1142. C
John Papyrio, a Cardinall sent from *Eugenius* the fourth Bishop of Rome, together with
Christian Bishop of *Lismore* Legate of all Ireland, came into Ireland. The same *Christi-*
an held a solemne Counsell in Mell, at which were present all the Bishops, Abbats, Kings,
Dukes, and Elders of Ireland: By whose consent there were established foure Archbi-
shopricks, namely, of *Armach*, of *Dublin*, of *Casile*, and *Toam*. wherein *Sae* and ruled
at the same time, *Gelasius*, *Gregorius*, *Donatus*, and *Edanus*: and so the Cardinall be-
stowing his blessing upon the Clergie, returned to Rome. For before that time, the Bi-
shops of Ireland were wont to be consecrated by the Archbishops of *Canterbury*, in
regard of the Primacy which they had in Ireland. This did the Citizens of *Dublin* ac-
knowledge, when they sent *Gregory* elect Bishop of *Dublin*, unto *Ralph* Archbishop D
of *Canterbury* for to be consecrated, by these words, *Antecessorum vestrorum Magi-*
sterio, &c. that is, *Unto the Magistracy of your Predecessors we willingly submitted our*
(Prelats) from which we remember that our Prelats have received their dignity Ecclesi-
asticall, &c. which appeareth for certain out of letters also bearing date of greater an-
tiquity, namely, of *Murchertach* King of Ireland, written unto *Anselm* Archbishop of
Canterbury, for the ordaining and entalling of the Bishops of *Dublin* and of *Water-*
ford: likewise of King *Gothrich* unto *Lanfrank* his predecessor, in the behalfe of one
Patrick a Bishop: of *Lanfrank* also unto *Therdeluas* a King of Ireland, unto whom he
complaineth, *That the Irishmen forsake and leave at their pleasure their wedded wives,*
without any canonick cause, and march with any others, even such as be neere of kinne,
either to themselves or the said forsaken wives; and if another man with like wickednesse
hath cast off any wife, her also rashly and hand over head they joine with, by law of marri-
age, or fornication rather: an abuse worthy to be punished. With which vices if this na-
tion had not bin corrupted even unto these daies of ours, both the right of lineall suc-
cession among them had been more certain, and as well the gentry as the communal-
ty had not embred themselves so wickedly with the effusion of so much blood of
their owne kinred, about their inheritances and legitimation, neither had they become
so infamous in these respects among forraigne nations. But these matters are exorbitant
of themselves, and from my purpose.

Long had not that Archiepiscopall dignity and Primacy beene established, when F
Pravian the Popes Legate confirmed the same againe; so that their opinion may
seeme to be worthy of discredit and refutation, who affirme that the Archbishop
of *Armach* had in regard of antiquity the priority and superiour place of the Arch-
bishop of *Canterbury* in the Generall or Oecumenicall Councils; whereas by the
first institution hee is by many ages the latter. Neither according to the antiquitie
of

A of places are the seats in Councils appointed. But all Prelates, of what degree soever
they be, sit among their Colleagues, according to their owne ordination, entalling, and
promotion.

What time as that *Pravian* was Legate in Ireland, Sir *John Currey* subdued *Armach*
and made it subject to the English: and yet did he no harme then, but is reported to
have beene very good and bountifull unto the Churchmen that served God there,
and he re-edified their Church, which in our memory was fired and foulely defaced
by the rebell *Sham O Neale*, and the city withall, so that they lost all the ancient
beauty and glory, and nothing remaineth at this day but very few small warled cor-
B tages, with the ruinous walls of the Monastery, Priory, and Primates palace. Among
the Archbishops of this place, there goes the greatest fame and name of *S. Malachy*,
the first that prohibited Priests marriage in Ireland, a man in his time learned and de-
vout, and who tooke no lesse of the native barbarousnesse of that country, than sea fi-
shes salinesse of the seas, as saith *S. Bernard*, who wrote his life at large: also *Richard*
Fuz-Raffe, commonly called *Armachanus*, is of famous memory, who turned the
edge of his stile about the yeere 1355. against the mendicant Friars, as detesting in
Christians such voluntary begging. Neere to *Armach*, upon a rising hill, remain the
reliques of an old castle (*Owen-Maugh* they call it) which was, as they say, the an-
cient habitation of the Kings of *Ulster*. More East glideth the *Black-water* (in the Irish
C tongue *More*, that is, *Great*) which is the limit betweene this shire and *Tir-Oen*,
whereof I am to speak in dae place. In this country and about it *Mac-Genis*, *O Han-*
lan, *O Hagan*, and many of the sept of *O-Neal*, assuming unto them fundry additions
and by-names, carry all the sway after a sort, and over-rule the rest.

THE COUNTY OF DOWNE.



Asward now followeth the county of DOWNE, and that very large
and fertile in soile, stretched out even as farre as to the Irish sea, reach-
ing on the North side to the Lake *Eaugh*, by a new name called *Lough*
Sidney, and on the South to the county of *Louth*, from which the ri-
ver *Newry* severeth it. Upon this river, in the very first entrance into
this shire, within our remembrance Sir *Nicolas Bagnall* Marchall of Ireland, who
by his conduct achieved here divers exploits, and reduced the country to more civi-
lity, built and fortified a towne of the same name. Hard by it, the river called *Ban-*
belesse, issuing out of the desert mountaines of *Maurne*, passeth through the coun-
try of *Eaugh*, which belongeth to the family of *Mac Gynnis*. Betweene whom and
the *O Neals*, who tyrannized in *Ulster*, there fell in times past a controversy, whether
they were vassals to *O Neale*, and whether they should find their followers and soul-
diers victuals, &c. (this kind of service they call *Bonaghey*). This hath unto it an Epi-
F scopall See at *Dromore*, above which at the edge of *Lough Eaugh*, are the tracts of
Kilwha and *Kilmarny*, much encombred with woods and bogges. These lye inward-
ly: but by the maritime coast the sea doth so wind it selfe in, and with sundry Creeks
and Bayes encroach within the land, yea and the Lough and Lake dilate it selfe be-
side *Dyffrin*, a valley full of woods, the inheritance in old time of the *Mandevils*, af-
terwards of the *Whites*, in such sort that it maketh two bilands; *Leall* Southward,
and *Ardes* Northward. *Leall*, a rich and harte ground, beareth out farthest into the
East of any part of Ireland, and is the utmost Promontory or cape thereof, which the
Mariners now terme *Saint Johns Foreland*, *Prolema* calleth it. *Leall* is a name perhaps
of the British word *Ips*, which signifieth *Lanest*. In the very streight whereof flow-
F rished *Dunam*, whereof *Prolema* also made mention (though not in the right place)
now named *Down*, a towne of very great antiquity, and a Bishops See, renowned by
the tombe of *Saint Patrick*, *Saint Brigid*, and *Saint Columba*, upon which was writ-
ten this rude riming distichon:

*Matres in Bonocumulo immolantur in uno,
Brigida, Patricium, acque Columba pium.*

Lib. 1. Ceterma-
norum sacra-
Sed. 14.

Isantium the
Promontory.

Dunum.
Downe.

At Down these three lie buried in one tombe,
Brigid, Patrick, and that devout Colum.

A

Saint Patrick's
Sepulcher.

Which monument of theirs, as the bruit runneth, was demolished by the Lord Leonard Grey, Deputy under King Henrie the eighth: and sure it is, that when he was arraigned for misgoverning, and condemned therefore to death, among other imputations he was charged, that he had profaned this Cathedral Church of Saint Patrick. But as touching the Sepulcher of Saint Patrick, the religious Priests were at variance, like as the Cities of Greece in times past strove about the native country of the Poet Homer: These of Downe challenge it to themselves, and that upon the authority of the verses aforesaid: Those of Armagh put in their claime out of the words of Saint Bernard, which erewhile I alledged: The Monkes of Glasfenbury in England averred it to be with them, and that out of the old Records and Evidences of their Abbey: and some Scots have likewise avouched, that as he was borne nere unto Glasco, so likewise he was enterr'd there at Kirk-Patrick. Into this Down, Sir John Curcy, that Martiall Englishman, and (for a Warrior) extraordinarily devout to Godward, after hee had brought this country in subjection unto him, was the first that brought in the Benedictine Monkes: and he translated the Monasterie of Cariche, which Mac Neal, Mac Eulef King of Ulster had founded in Erinach neere unto S. Finins Fountaine, into the Isle called after his name Ynis-Curcy, and endowed the same with lands assigned for it. For before time the Monkes of Ireland, as those of ancient times in Egypt, whose maner and order that devout man Congell, that is by interpretation, *A faire pledge*, brought over into Ireland, being wholly givento prayer, earned for themselves and the poore their living, with the labour of their own hands. Howbeit, these Monasticall orders and customes (as all humane things) continued not long, when their maners and carriage grew to be worse, and riches had by little and little polluted piety, which as a mother, had formerly bred them. Robert Abbat of Molisime in Burgundie studied and endeavoured earnestly in times past to reduce and set on foot againe the said ancient Discipline: and perswaded his Disciples to live with their handy labour, to leave Tithes and Oblations unto the Priests that served in the Diocesse, to forbear wearing of Breeches made of woven cloth, or of leather. But they labouring to the contrary, refused flatly to goe from the customes observed in the Monasteries of the west parts of the world, which were knowne for certaine, to have been instituted and ordained by Saint Maure scholar to Saint Benet, and by Saint Columban. But I have digressed too farre, now will I returne againe. By the sea-side stand Arglas, where Saint Patrick, by report, founded a Church: and Strangford, called in old time Strandford, a safe harbour, where the river Coyn with a great and violent streame breaketh into the Sea. Neere unto which, in the Biland Lecale, Queene Mary in her great bounty unto Noblemen liberally gave lands unto the Earle of Kildare. And here, of the English race the Russells, Audleys, Whites, and the Bagnells who came thither last, stoutly defend, among the wild and fierce Irish, not without danger, what they and their ancestours won in these parts.

Robert de
Monts, de Im-
mutatione Or-
dinis Monach-
orum.

Ardes, the other Biland called The Ander, lieth over against it to the North, severed with a small chanell out of the Logh-Coim, which on the West side encloseth it, like as the sea on the East side, and the Bay of Knock-Fergus on the North. You may resemble it to the bent of the arme, which by a very narrow Isthmus or necke of land groweth to the rest of the Island, like as an arme to the shoulder. The soile is every where passing good and bountifull, but only in the mids, where lieth our fortwelve miles or thereabout in length, a moist, flat, and boggy plaine. The shore is sufficiently beset with small villages, and in times past had a most renowned Monasterie at the Bay of Knock-Fergus, of the same institution, order, and name, as was that right ancient and famous Abbey in England neere unto Chester, I meane, Banbor. Out of whether of these twaine that Arch-hereticke Pelagius came, it is uncertaine, whiles some will needs have him to spring from hence, others from that in Britaine: but neither of them grounding upon any certaine warrant of authority. Howbeit, cer-
taine

Banbor
Abbey.

A certaine it is that he was of Britaine, as may appeare by other testimonies, as also by this distichon of Prosper Aquitanus, inveying against his impiety.

Pelagius the
Arch-hereticke.

*I procul insana impietas, artesque malignas
Aufer, & auctorem comitare exclusa Britannum.*

Avaunt far hence impiety, and lewd Arts take with thee,
Once gone, with British fire of thine keep alwaies company.

But touching this place, heare what S. Bernard saith: *A rich and mighty man gave a place called Banbor unto Malachy, to build, or rather to re-edifie there a Monastery. It had been ywis a most noble house before time, under the first founder and father Congel, breeding many thousand Monkes, and the head likewise of many Monasteries. A holy place in truth, and a breeder of many Saints, most plentifully fructifying unto God: so that one of the sons of that holy congregation, named Luan, is reported to have been the founder of an hundred Monasteries. Which I have bene more willing to relate, that by this one the reader may give a ghesse what a mighty multitude there was beside. Thus at length the sprouts thereof replenished Ireland and Scotland. From out of which S. Columban comming up to these parts of ours here in France, built the Monastery of Luxovium, which grew to a mighty multitude. And so great an Abbey by report this was, that the solemnity of divine service held out continually in one quire after another: so that there was not one moment of time, night or day, without singing praises. Take all this to be spoken of the ancient glory of Banbor Monastery. Malachia both in regard of the noble name that it bare, and of the ancient dignity, especially liked this place, although it was destroyed; as minding to replant it, like unto a certain garden or Paradise; as also because many bodies of Saints slepe there. For, to say nothing of those that were buried in peace, it is reported that 900. in one day were slaine by Pirats. Verily the possessions belonging to that place were great: But Malachias contenting himselfe only with the site of the holy place, surrendered the possessions and lands wholly to another: for from the time that the Monastery was destroyed, there wanted not one to hold it with the livings thereto belonging: For they were ordained by election also, and called Abbats, keeping still in name, though it were not so in deed, as it had been in old time. And when many gave advice not to alienate the possessions, but to retaine the whole together unto themselves, this professor of poverty agreed not thereto, but caused, according to the custome, one to bee chosen for to hold the same, reserving onely to himselfe and his the place, as I have before said. Moreover, within a few daies there was the Oratory or Church finished, of timber peeces made smooth but firmly and firmly knit together (a Scottish kind of work, faire and beautifull enough.) Afterwards Malachy thought it good to have a Church built of stone, proportioned like to those which he had seene built in other countries. And when hee had begun to lay the foundation, the native inhabitants of the counrey began to make a wonder thereat, because there were not found in that land as yet such maner of buildings: and thereupon one cried out, O good Sir, what meane you to bring in this new fashion into our countries? Scots we are and not French. What vanity is this? what need was there of such worke, so superfluous, so proud, and so glorious?*

In the life of
Malachias.

More inward, hard by the Lake is the Bishops See of Conereth or Coner, where sat the said Malachy as Bishop. But what manner of flock this so holy a Pastor fed, listen unto S. Bernard. Malachy in the thirtieth yeere almost of his age, was brought in and presented a consecrated Bishop of Conereth, for this was the cities name. Now when as he began to execute his function according to his office, then perceived this man of God, that it was his lot to come not unto men, but unto beasts. No where had he to that time experience of such, in the most barbarous parts that ever he came unto: No where had he found for manners so forward, for rites so dwellish, for faith so impious, for lawes so barbarous, for discipline so stiffe necked, and for life so slishy. Christians they were in name, and Pagans in deed. Tithes and first fruits they gave none, lawfull marriage they contracted none, confessions they made none, to crave or to give pennance there could be found none: And Ministers of the Altar there were very few or none: But what needs many

Bishoprick of
Coner.

Kkkk

words &

words? where the very paucity and fewnesse among the lay persons, was in manner idle and A
 imploied about nothing, no fruit was to be expected by their dauses and sanctitions among
 so leud a people. For in the Churches there was heard neither voice of Preacher nor sound
 of singing. What should the Lords champion doe in this case? either wee must yeeld with
 shame, or bicker in jeopardy. But he who acknowledged himselfe to be a Shepherd, and not
 an hireling, chose rather to stand to it than to flye, ready to give his life for his sheep if it so
 behoved. And albeit they were all wolves and no sheepe, in the midst of wolves he stood as
 a fearlesse Shepherd, by all meanes casting about how to make of wolves sheepe. Thus
 wrote Saint Bernard; and little better can he that is Bishop there at this day say, as
 I heare, of his wilde flocke hereabout.

Savage.

This *Ardes*, the *Savages*, an English family in times past held in possession: a
 mongst whom there goeth a great name of him, who said no lesse stoutly than plea-
 santly, when he was moved to build a castle for his defence, *That he would not trust to*
a castle of stones, but rather to a castle of bones, meaning thereby his owne bodie. Af-
 terward the *O-Neals* wrekted it out of their hands: who being attainted of high
 treason, by permission of Queene Elizabeth, Sir *Thomas Smith* Knight, and the
 Queenes Secretary planted a Colonie there not long since: a worthy adventure, but
 it sped unhappily. For after great expences defraied, the Irish by a traine caught
 his base sonne, whom hee had made Captaine and ruler thereof, and cruelly cast
 him to hungry dogges: for which barbarous cruelty, those most wicked wretches
 suffered afterward most grievous punishment accordingly, being killed and given C
 unto Wolves to bee devoured. Above *Ardes* Westward the more Southerne
Clan-boy, that is, the *Yellow Nation* or *Sept*, or the kinred of *Hugh the Yellow*, a
 country very full of woods, reacheth as farre as to the bay of *Knock-Fergus*, inhabi-
 ted by the *Sept* of the *O-Neales*, and is counted the farthest territorie of this county
 of *Downe*.

Upper Clane-
Boy.

THE COUNTY OF ANTRIM.

ANTRIM, the next County in order unto *Lough* Northward, is that of AN-
 TRIM, so called of *Antrim* a base townelet of small reckoning at all, had
 it not imparted the name unto the whole countrey, which lieth betwene
 the Bay of *Knock-Fergus*, *Lough Eaugh*, and the river *Ban*. This Bay of
Knock-Fergus which *Ptolomee* termeth *VINDRIS*, took name of a towne situ-
 ate upon it, which the English call *Knock-Fergus*, the Irish *Carig-Fergus*, that is, the
 Rock of *Fergus*, of that most renowned *Fergus*, who first brought the Scottish out of
 Ireland into Britaine, there drowned. This is well inhabited and more frequented
 than the rest in this coast, by reason of the commodious haven, although the block-
 houses thereto be unfinished, having a fortresse pitched upon an high rocke, a ward
 of garrison souldiers to keepe the countrey in awe and good order, with an ancient E
 palace converted now into Magazin. Hard by it lieth the *Nether Clane-Boy*, which
 also was the habitation of *O-Neales*, notable for the death of that most leud rebell,
Shan or *John O-Neal*, who after many robberies and sacrileages committed, being in
 one or two skirmishes under the leading of Sir *Henry Sidney* Lord Deputy, vanqui-
 shed and weakened, was brought to that exigent, that hee was resolved to goe unto
 the Deputy with an halter about his neck and submissely to crave pardon: but being
 perfwaded by his Scribe first for aide of certaine Scots of the Islands, who
 under the conduct of *Alexander Oge* had encamped themselves here, and preyed
 in the countrey, hee came unto them, who gave him friendly entertainment, and pre-
 sently massacted him and all his company in revenge of their kinsfolke whom hee F
 had before slaine. By whose death the warre being ended, and himselfe with all
 those that went with him into the field attainted, Queene Elizabeth granted this
Claneboy unto *Walter D'Eureux* Earle of *Essex*, who crossed over the seas hither,
 and, I wot not, whether under a goodly colour of honour (for chosen he was Gover-
 nour of *Ulster* and Marechal of Ireland) hee was by the politicke praedice of some
 Courtiers

Knock-Fergus.

Nether Clane-
Boy.

A Courtiers finely packed away into a Country alwaies rebellious and untamed. But
 whiles with the exence of a mighty masse of money hee went about to reduce it
 to good order, after hee had beene crossed and tossed with many troubles both at
 home and abroad in the warres, hee was by untimely death taken out of this world,
 leaving unto all good men a wonderfull misse of himselfe, and this Country unto
 the *O-Neales* and *Brian Carragh*, of the *Mac-Conells* race, who since that time have
 gone together by the eares, and committed many murders one upon another, about
 the sovereignty of this Seigniory.

Neere unto *Knock-Fergus* there is a By-land, with a narrow necke (as it were) an-
 nexed to the maine, which notwithstanding is called the *Isle of Magie*, taking up
 foure miles in length and one in bredth: wherein, as some suppose, flourished that
 Monasterie of *Magio* so highly praised by *Bede*: whereof I have made mention be-
 fore in the County of *Majo*.

Isle of Magie.

Then the *Glinnes*, that is, the *Valleys*, begin at *Older-Fleet*, a bad road for ships,
 and run out a great length upon the sea. This country belonged in ancient times
 to the *Bissers* Noblemen of Scotland, who when upon private grudges and quarrels
 they had made away *Patrick* Earle of *Athol*, were banished hither, and through
 the beneficiall favour of Henry the Third King of England, received Lands here.
 For *John Bisset*, who died in the beginning of Edward the First his reigne, had
 large possessions heere, and under King Edward the Second, *Hugh Bisset* for re-
 bellion lost some of them. But in our fathers daies, the Highland Irish Scots, out
 of *Cantire* and the *Hebrides*, under the leading of *James Mac-Conell* Lord of *Cantire*
 in Scotland, made an entry upon the same, and he laying claime thereto challenged
 it as descended from the *Bissers*. Howbeit *Shan O-Neale* having slaine their Cap-
 taine easily chased them away. Yet returned they, and in this tract committed con-
 tinually robberies and outrages in cruell manner, yea and maintained feditious com-
 motions, untill that even of late Sir *John Perot* Lord Deputy of Ireland brought first
Donell Goran (who together with his brother *Alexander* was slaine by *Sr. Richard*
Bingham in *Conaght*) and afterward *Agnus Mac-Conel*, the sonnes of *James*
Mac-Conel, to that passe, that they betooke themselves to the Queene of Englands
 protection, and upon their humble suite received at her hands this county to bee
 held of her by service under certaine conditions, namely, to beare armes within Ire-
 land under none other but the Kings of England, and to pay yeerely a certain number
 of cowes and hawkes, &c.

Glinnes.

Bissers.

James Mac-
Conell.

Above this, as farre as to the river *Bann*, all the tract is called *Romte*, the seat of the
Mac-Guillies, a familie of good reputation in their county: which, notwithstanding
 the violence of the Islander Scots, and their continuall depredations, hath driven
 them into a narrow corner. For, *Surley Boy*, that is, *Charles the Yellow*, brother unto
James Mac-Conel, who possessed himselfe of the *Glines*, became also in some sort
 Lord hereof; untill that Sir *John Perot* Lord Deputy, having won *Donluse* Castle,
 a very strong pile, seated upon a rocke that hangeth over the sea, and severed from
 the Land with a deepe ditch, dispossessed him and all his. Which for all that, hee re-
 covered the next yeere following by treason, after he had slaine *Carie* the Captaine
 thereof, who manfully defended himselfe. But the Lord Deputy sending against
 him Captaine *Meriman* an approved warrior, who slew the two sonnes of *James*
Mac-Conell, and *Alexander* this *Surley Boys* son, so coursed him from place to place,
 and drove away his cattell the onely riches he had (for hee was able to number of his
 owne stocke 50000. cowes) so that *Surley Boy* rendred *Donluse*, came to *Dublin*, and
 in the Cathedrall Church openly made his submission, exhibited a supplication cra-
 ving mercy, and afterwards being admitted into the Lord Deputies Great Cham-
 ber, so soone as he saw the Picture of Queene Elizabeth upon a table, once or twice
 flung away his sword, fell downe at her feet, and devoted himselfe unto her Majesty.
 Whereupon being received into favour, and ranged among the subjects of Ireland,
 he abjured and renounced openly in the Courts of Chancery and Kings Bench all
 service and allegiance to any forraigne Kings whatsoever: and he had given unto
 him

The Romte.
Mac-Guilly.
Surley Boy.
Chairly Boy.

Donluse.

K k k k 2

him by the bounteous liberality of Queene Elizabeth, foure territories (*Toughes* A they call them) lying from the river *Boys* unto the *Bay, Don severig, Loghill,* and *Balla-moyne*, with the Constableship of *Donluse Castle*, to him and the beires males of his body, to hold of the Kings of England, with these conditions, That neither hee nor his, nor yet his posterity serve in the warres under any forraigne Prince without Licence; That they keepe their people from all depredations; That they furnish and finde twelve horsemen, and fortie footmen, at their owne charges for fortie daies in time of warre; and present unto the Kings of England a certaine number of cowes and hawkes yeerely, &c.

THE COUNTIE OF COLRAN.



Beyond the *Glynnes* West, standeth *Krine*, which now they call the county *COLRAN*, of the principall towne therein. It lieth between the river *Ban* and *Lough-foile*, and confineth South upon the county of *Tir-Oen*. This *Ban*, a passing faire river, as *Giraldus* saith (which the name also witnesseth) rising out of the mountaines of *Mounin* in the county of *Downe*, carrieth himselfe and his name into *Lough E. C* *augh*, or *Lough-Sidney*, a large Lake: which name for all that, after thirty miles or thereabout (for of so great length that Lake is esteemed to be) at his going forth in the end he resumeth againe at *Tome* castle, and being beset and shadowed along the sides with woods, by *Glan-colkein*, where by reason of thick woods, and unpassable bogges there is the safest place of refuge for the Scottish Ilanders and the rebels (and which the English felt, who pursued *Surley Bay* whiles hee lurked here) carrying a proud streame, entrencheth into the sea, breeding Salmons in abundance above any other river in all Europe: because, as some think, it passeth all the rest for cleerenesse, in the which kinde of water Salmons take speciall delight. In this part the *O Cabans* were of greatest authoritie; the principall person of which family *O Caban* is thought to be one D of the greatest of those Potentates, or *Uraighs* as they terme them, that ought service unto *O Neal* the Tyrant of *Ulster*: as who in that barbarous election of *O Neal*, which with as barbarous ceremonies is solemnized in the open aire upon an high hill, performed this honourable service forsooth, as to sling a shooc over the head of the elected *O Neal*. Howbeit he is not of power sufficient to restrain the Scottish Ilanders, who to save charges at home, every yeere in Summer time flocke hither out of those hungry and barren Ilands (where is nothing but beggery) to get their living; ready upon every occasion and opportunity to maintain rebellions; in so much as provided it hath been by law, under paine of high treason, that no person call them into Ireland, nor give them lodging or entertainment.

But this county with other confining is escheated to the King, who gratiofully purposing a civill plantation of those unreformed and waste parts, is pleased to distribute the said lands to his civill subjects, and the city of London hath undertaken to plant Colonies here.

THE COUNTIE OF TIR-OEN.



Beneath *Colran* lieth Southward the county of *TIR-OEN*, in old books F named also *Tir-Eogain*, that is, if a man interpret it, *The land of Eugenius*, which name the Irish have contracted into *Eogain* and *Oen*. This is altogether upland from the sea, divided towards the funnes setting by the river *Liffey* from *Tir-Conell*, toward the rising with the *Lough Eaugh* from the county of *Antrim*, and Southward with the *Blackwater*, which in Irish they call *Aven More*, that

A that is, *The great waier*, from the county of *Armagh*. A country though rough and rugged, yet fruitfull and very large, as which lieth out threescore miles in length, and thirty in bredth: divided by the mountaines called *Sliew Gallen*, into the *Upper Tir-Oen* Northward, and the *Neiber* Southward.

In it are first *Cloghar*, a Bishopricke, and that a slender one; then *Dunganon*, the chiefe habitation of the Earles; which through the favour of King Henry the eighth gave the title of Baron unto *Matthew Sonne* to the first Earle of *Tir-Oen*. And verily this is an house fairer built than commonly they bee in this county, but hath bene oftentimes by the Lords themselves defaced with fire, because it should not be burnt by the enemy: also *Ablogahell*, where *O-Neal* that most proudly ruleth and oppres- B seth *Ulster* was wont to be inaugurated after that barbarous manner and tradition of the country: and the fort at *Black-water* on the river *More*, which hath sustained the variable changes and chances of warre, whiles there was no other way into this country, being the place of refuge for the rebels: but now it is neglected, ever since there was found another Ford more below, at which on both sides of the river Charles Lord Mount-joy Deputy erected new Sconces, when with hot warre hee pursued the rebels in these parts. Who likewise at the same time raised another garri- son fort, called by his owne name Mount-joy, at the Lake *Eaugh* (*Lough Sidney* in honour of *Henry Sidney* souldiers now terme it) which encloseth the West side of this C shire, and is made, or much encreased by the river *Bann*, as I have said. Surely this is a goodly and beautiful Lake, passing fishfull, and very large, as stretching out thir- ty miles or thereabout, as the Poet saith.

Upper Tir-Oen.

Bishopricke of Clogher. Dunganon. Baron of Dunganon.

Fort of Black-water.

— *Dulci mentitur Nereus fluviu.*

Fresh water though it bee,
A sea folke thinke they see.

And considering the variety of shew upon the bankes, the shady groves, the meadows alwaies greene, the fertile corne fields; if they be well manured; the bending D and hanging hills, and the rills running into it, fashioned and shaped for pleasure and profit even by Nature her selfe, who seemeth as it were to be very angry with the inhabitants there by, for suffering all to grow wild and barbarous through their laziness. In the upper *Tir-Oen* stands *Seraban*, a Castle well knowne, wherein dwell in our daies *Turlogh Leinigh* of the sept of *O-Neals*, who after the death of *Shan O-Neal*, as I shall shew anon, by election of the people attained to the dignity of *O-Neal*: also some other Piles and fortresses of smaller reckoning, the which (like as else where in this Iland) be no more but towers with narrow loope-holes rather than windowes, unto which adjoine Hauls made of turfes, and roofed over head with thatch, having unto them belonging large Courts or yards fenced round about with E ditches and hedges of rough bushes for defence of their cattell against Cow-stealers. But if this country have any name or glory at all, it is wholly from the Lords thereof, who have ruled here as Kings, or Tyrants; rather: of whom there were two Earles of *Tir-Oen*, namely, *Con O-Neale*, and *Hugh* his nephew by his son *Matthew*. But of these I will speake more at large by and by, when I am to treat of the Earles and Lords of *Ulster*.

THE COUNTIE OF DONEGALL OR TIR-CONELL.



A L that remaineth now behind in *Ulster* toward the North and South, was possessed in ancient times by the *ROBOGHII* and *VENNICHII*: but at this day it is called the County of *DONEGALL* or *TIR-CONELL*, that is, as some interpret it, *The land of Cornelius*, or as others, *The Land of Conall*, and in truth, *Marius* plainly nameth it,

Kkkk 3

Conallea.

Conallea. The county is all in a maner champion and full of havens, as bounded with A the sea on the North and West sides beating upon it, and dis-joined on the East from **Tir-Oen** with the river **Liffer**, and from **Conaght** with the Lake **Erne**. **Liffer** neereunto his spring head, enlargeth his stream, and spreadeth abroad into a Lake, wherein appeareth above the water an Island, and in it hard by a little Monastery, a very narrow vault within the ground, much spoken of by reason of I wot not what fearefull walking spirits, and dreadfull apparitions, or rather some religious horror: which cave, as some dreame ridiculously, was digged by **Ulysses** when hee went downe to parley with those in hell.

Patrick's Purgatory.

Regia. Reglis.

The inhabitants terme it in these daies **Ellan u' Frugatory**, that is, **The Isle of Purgatory**, and **Saint Patrick's Purgatory**. For some persons devoutly credulous, affirme that Patrick the Irishmens Apostle, or else some Abbat of the same name, obtained by most earnest praier at the hands of God, that the punishments and torments which the godlesse are to suffer after this life, might here bee presented to the eye: that so he might more easily root out the finnes which stucke so fast to his Countymen the Irish, and withall their heathenish errours. But seeing that this place is named in Saint Patrick's life, **Reglis**, I would deeme it to be the other **Regia**, that **Protemee** mentioneth: and the very situation of it in the Geographer implieth no lesse. Besides this **Patrick's Purgatory**, there was another Purgatorie also of Sir **Brendan** in this Island; but since I could not finde out the place, take here with you that only which I found, namely, **Nechams Tetraſtichon** of it.

*Afferis esse locum solennis fama dicarum
Brendano, quo lux lucida sepe micat.
Purgandas animas datur hic transire per ignes,
Ut digna facie Judicis esse queant.*

If common fame say true, a place of Brendan taking name
There is, and often times cleere lights doe shine within the same.
The foules have licence here to passe through Purgatory fire,
That worthily before that Judge, they may at length appeare.

Where this river **Liffer** augmented by other waters comming unto it, approacheth neerer to the sea, it spreadeth out againe into a Lake, which **Protemee** called **LOGIA**, and now they usually terme it **Logh Foile** and **Logh Der**, whereupon **Necham** hath these verses.

*Logh Der aquis dives Lacus est, Ultonia novis,
Commodum indigenis utilitate placet.*
Logh Der a Lake in waters rich, this **Ulster** knoweth well,
Commodious, and pleasing much those that about it dwell.

Deny.

Hard by this, there flourished sometime **Derry** a Monasterie and Episcopall See; where in the yeere 1566. **Edward Randolph**, renowned for his long service in the warres, spent his life in the behalfe of his country to his everlasting fame, and gave **Shan O-Neal** (who had then assembled and armed all the power he could possibly against the English) such an overthrow, as that he could never after recover the losse he then sustained. But now of late Sir **Henry Docwra** knight, who in the warres of Ireland quit him so well, that with great praise he hath approved his singular valour and martiall skill, brought hither first a garison, and afterward planted here a Colony, to bridle the Earle of **Tir-Oens** insolent pride: and established and settled the same with so good orders, that it both standeth in good speed for helpe against the rebels, and also traineth the barbarous people to their duties. The **ROBODII** placed above **LOGIA** held all that Northern sea coast of Ireland, where **O-Degberry** an obscure Potentate had great sway. Amongst these, **Robogh** a little Episcopall towne retaineth the expresse footings of the old name **Robogdii**. Which should be that promontory **ROBODIUM**, unless it be **Faire Foreland**, I know not. From

Robogdii.

Robogdium Promontory.

henc

A hence the utmost shores all rockie bend backe againe by the mouth of **Swilly Lake**, which **Protemee** seemeth to call **ARGITA**.

Beyond these more Westward were the **VENNICNII** seated, where **Mac Rwyn** **Vennicni.** **Faid**, **Mac Swyn Necoeth**, and **Mac Swyn Bannigh** have great lands and large possessions. Among these **Protemee** placeth the river **VIDUA**, which now is called **Crodagh**, and the Promontory **VENNICNIUM**, which they now call **Rams-head**, and the Foreland **BORÆUM**, now **S. Helens head**. **River Vidua. Boreum Promontory.**

Upon the shores it twineth backe from hence Southerly, **Calebeg** affordeth an Haven and commodious harbour for sailers: then appeare the ruins and rubbish of **Sligah Castle**, which **Maurice Fitz-Gerald** Lord Justice of Ireland built about the yeere 1242. when he had made himselfe Lord of this country. But **John Fitz-Gerald** the first Earle of **Kildare** was dispossessed of this castle and a goodly inheritance in this tract, fined also in a great sum of money, for that hee had raised a civill and dangerous war against the Earle of **Ulster**.

Sligah.

Lower yet, and not far from the mouth of **Logh Earne**, **Donegal**, that is, the towne of the **Gallicians** of Spain, with an Abby sheweth it selfe, whence this country when it was made a county tooke the name. **Donegal.**

There have beene rulers over this territory for these many ages they of the house of **O-Donell**, and those extracted from the same stock that the family of **O-Neals**, neither had they any other title than **O-Donell**, and Lords of **Tir-Conell**. For the getting of which title, and that they might be by a certaine election of the people inaugurated with their due complements at a stone beside **Kilmacrenan**, they were at deadly discord, and committed outrages one upon another, untill that King James not long since by his honourable Letters Patents conferred the honour, title, and stile of Earle **Tir-Conell** upon **Rory O-Donell**, the brother of that **Hugh** the rebell, who being fled out of his country died in Spain; and this **Rory** his successour practising new treason against King James his advancer, upon the terrour of a guilty conscience fled the realme in the yeere 1607. and died at **Rome**. **O-donell.**

The ancient inhabitants of this **Ulster**, like as the rest of all Ireland throughout, D were by one name in times past called **SCOTI**, and from hence carried they over with them the name of Scots into the North parts of Britain. For as **Giraldus** writeth, about the yeere of salvation foure hundred, six sons of **Mured King of Ulster** seized upon the North parts of Britain, whereupon it was by a speciall and peculiar name called **SCOTIA**. And yet it appeareth by the Scottish Annales that this happened long before. Also **Fergus** the second, who re-established the kingdome of Scots in Britain, came from hence, unto whom **Patrick** had prophesied by way of divination or Soothsaying, in these words: *Although thou seemest at this day base and contemptible in the eyes of thy brethren, thou shalt shortly be the Prince and Lord of them all.* And to avow the credit and authority of this prediction, the said writer addeth moreover and saith: **E No long space of time after this, Fergus, according to the Holy mans prophesie, obtained the sovereignty in all that land, and his seed reigned for many generations together. From his stemme proceeded that most valerous King Edan, the sonne of Gabran, who subdued Scotland that is called Albanach, whose posterity in lineall descent and succession reigneth there still.** **Scoti.**

In the life of S. Patrick.

The first Englishman that in the reigne of King Henry the second attempted this country was Sir **John Curcy**, who having by force won **Downe** and **Armagh**, either by dint of sword conquered, or by surrender gat the whole into his owne hands, and was the first that was stiled Earle of **Ulster**: but when his great exploits and fortunate achievements had wrought him such envie, that through his owne vertues and other mens vices he was banished out of the Realme; **Hugh Lacy**, the second sonne of **Hugh Lacy** Lord of **Meib**, who had commandement to pursue him by force and armes, was by King John appointed his successour, being created Earle of **Ulster**, by the sword, of which honour notwithstanding the same King afterward deprived him for his tumultuous insolvency: and hee was in the end received into favour againe. But for the sounder testimony hereof, it were good to exemplifie the same word for

Earles of Ulster.

An. 7. Joannis.

for word out of the records of Ireland. Hugh de Lacy sometime Earle of Ulster, held all A
 Ulster (except and separate from all other countiees whatsoever) of the Kings of England
 in chiefe by service of three Knights so often as the Kings service was proclaimed:
 and he held all Pleas in his owne Court, that pertained to a Justice and Sherriffe, and held
 a Court of Chancery of his own, &c. And afterward all Ulster came into the hands of our
 Sovereigne Lord K. John, by the forfeiture of the foresaid Hugh: unto whom after that
 K. Henry the third demised it for terme of the said Hughs life. And when Hugh was de-
 ceased, Walter de Burgo did that service unto Lord Edward K. Henries son, Lord of Ire-
 land before he was King. And the same Lord Edward feoffed the foresaid Walter in the
 said land of Ulster, to have and to hold unto the same Walter and to his heires, by the ser-
 vice aforesaid, as freely and wholly as the above named Hugh de Lacy held it, excepting
 the advowsons of Cathedrall Churches and the demesne of the same, also the Pleas
 of the Crowne, to wit, Rape, Forfeall, Firing, and Treasure Trowe, which our sove-
 raigne Lord K. Edward retained to himselfe and his heires. This Walter de Burgo, who
 was Lord of Conaght, and Earle of Ulster, begat of the only daughter of Hugh de La-
 cy, Richard Earle of Ulster, who after hee had endured many troubles and calamities
 died in the yeere 1326. Richard had issue John de Burgo, who departed this life be-
 fore his father, having begotten upon Elizabeth, sister and one of the heires of Gil-
 bert Clare Earle of Gloucester, William, who succeeded after his grandfather. This Wil-
 liam being slain by his own men when he was young, left behind him a little daughter
 his only child, who being married unto Leonell Duke of Clarence bare one daughter
 likewise, the wife of Edmund Mortimer Earle of March, by whom the Earledome of
 Ulster and Seigniory of Conaght came unto the Mortimers, and from them together
 with the kingdome of England unto the house of Yorke: and afterward Edward the
 fourth King of England adjoined it unto the Kings Domaine or Crowne land.

And when as at the same time England was divided into fides and factions, whiles
 the civill warre grew hot, and the English that abode here returned out of Ulster into
 England to follow the factions, O-Neale and others of Irish blood seized these coun-
 tries into their own hands, and brought them to such wildnesse and savage barbarisme,
 as it exceeded: In so much as this province which in times past paid a mighty masse
 of money unto their Earles, scarcely ever since yielded any coin at all unto the Kings
 of England.

And verily in no one thing whatsoever (pardon this my over-boldnesse) have the
 Kings of England bene more defective in piety and policie, than that they have for
 these so many ages seen so slightly to this Province, yea and to all Ireland, in the pro-
 pagation of religion, establishing the weale publike, and reducing the life of the inha-
 bitants to civility: whether it was for carelessse neglect, sparing, or a fore-cast of
 dammage, or some reason of state, I am not able to say. But that the same may bene
 longer thus neglected, it seemeth of it selfe by good right to importune most carnest-
 ly, being an Island so great, so neere a neighbour, so fruitfull in soile, so rich in pastures
 more than credible, beset with so many woods, enriched with so many mineralis (if
 they were searched) watered with so many rivers, environed with so many havens,
 lying so fit and commodious for sailing into most wealthy countries, and thereby
 like to bee for impost and custome very profitable: and to conclude, breeding and
 rearing men so abundantly as it doth, who considering either their mindes or their
 bodies might be of singular employment for all duties and functions as well of warre
 as of peace, if they were wrought and conformed to orderly civility.


See pag. 624.
 and 725.

Ireland negle-
 cted.

IF

A Intimated even now, that I would speak touching the O-Neals, who carri-
 ed themselves as Lords of Ulster; and I promised not long since a friend of
 mine, that I would write of their rebellions raised in our age. And verily I
 will performe my promise to his Manes, whom whiles he lived I observed with
 all respect, and being now in heaven I will not forget. Thus much onely I will
 promise by way of Preface, that I have compendiously collected these matters
 out of my Annales, and here conjoined them, which there are severed and divi-
 ded according to their severall times: and withall, that whatsoever I shall
 write, is not upon uncertaine rumours, but gathered summarily from out o
 their owne hand writings who managed those affaires, and were present in the
 actions: And this will I doe with so sincere an affection to the truth, and so
 uncorrupt fidelity, that I doubt not but I shall have thanks at their hands who
 love the truth, and desire to understand the late affaires of Ireland, and not in-
 curre the blame of any, unlesse they be such as having done ill, take it not well
 if themselves be accordingly censured.

THE O-NEALES. AND THEIR REBELLIONS IN OUR TIME.

D  O say nothing of that GREAT NEALE, who ruled by force
 and armes in Ulster, and a great part of Ireland, before the
 coming of Saint Patrick; nor of those in the middle times,
 who were but of meane note and memoriall to speake of;
 this family, after the arrivall of the English in Ireland, lay
 close and obscure in remote lurking corners, unlesse it were
 when Edward Brus brother to Robert King of Scotland, nam-
 ed himselfe King of Ireland. For then in a troublesome
 time Dovenald O-Neale started and rowled himselfe out of his lurking holes, and in
 E his misstives unto the Pope used this title in his stile, Dovenald O-Neale King of Ulster,
 and in right of inheritance the undoubted heire of all Ireland: But after these stirres and
 troubles were laid, this new King soone vanished away; and Dovenalds posterity
 plucked in their hornes and hid their heads, untill that, whiles England was all in a
 combustion, kindled by the furious firebrands of civill warres betwene the houses
 of Yorke and Lancaster for the Imperiall Crowne, those English that served and li-
 ved here, abandoning Ulster, and committing it to the keeping of the O-Neals, re-
 turned home to follow the factions. For then Henry O-Neale, the sonne of Oen or
 Eugenius O-Neale, espoused the daughter of Thomas Earle of Kildare: and his son
 Con-More, that is, Con the great, married the daughter of Girald Earle of Kildare his
 F mothers brother.

These supported by the powerfull authority of the Earles of Kildare (who verily
 for many yeeres were Deputies of Ireland) carried their heads aloft, tyrannizing cru-
 elly upon the people, & transported with the insolent spirit of pride, disdained all the
 titles of Prince, Duke, Marquesse, and Earles, in comparison of the name of O-Neale.
 Con the sonne of Con, surnamed Bacco, because hee halted, succeeded his father in the
 the

Scoto-Chroni-
 con lib. 12. cap.
 26.

the dignity of *O-Neale*, who cursed all his posterity, in case they either learned to *A* speake English, or sowed wheat, or built houses: being fore affraid, left by these inducements the English might bee allured to enter againe into their Lands and possessions: often saying that language bred conversation, and consequently their confusion; that wheat gave sustenance with like effect: and by building they should doe but as the crow doth, make her nest, to be beaten out by the hawk.

When as the greatnesse of this *Con O-Neale* became very much suspected of King Henry the Eight, and the Kings power having now troden under foot the familie of *Kildare*, in whose rebellion *O-Neale* had engaged himselfe deepe, grew dreadfull to *O-Neale* also: into England he comes, and there renouncing the name of *O-Neale*, put his whole estate into the Kings hands: which within a while after was granted againe by letters Patent under the great seale of England, to hold as in fee, together with the title of the Earle of *Tir-Oen*, to him and to Matthew his false reputed sonne, and to the heires of their bodies lawfully begotten. And Matthew at the same time was created *Baron of Dunganon*. This Matthew being taken untill he was fiftene yeeres old for the sonne of a blacksmith in *Dundalk*, was by the said Smiths wife, whom *Con* had sometime kept as his concubine, tendred unto *Con* as his owne sonne, and hee accepting him for his owne sonne in deed, rejected *John* (*Shan* they call him) with the rest, whom he had begotten on his owne lawfull wife. Hereupon *Shan*, seeing a bastard preferred before him, so much made of, and highly honoured, suddenly set his heart wholly against his father, and withall burned in such hatred with most bitter malice against Matthew, that hee murdered him out of the way, and so plagued and vexed his father with injurious indignities, whiles he went about to deprive him of his Seigniorie, disseized him of his dwelling house, and stript him out of all he had, that the old man for very thought and griefe of heart pined away, and died. Straightwayes *Shan* being chosen, proclaimed and inaugurated *O-Neale* by an old shooe cast over his head, seized upon his fathers inheritance, and with all diligence fought after the sonnes of Matthew, that he might be secured from them; but they were fled and gone. Howbeit *Brian* the eldest sonne not long after was slaine by *Mac-Donel Totan* one of the *O-Neals* race, suborned as *D* some give it out, by *Shan* to doe that feat. *Hugh* and *Cormack* by the meanes and helpe of the English escaped, and yet remaine alive. *Shan* having thus gotten all into his owne hands (as hee was a man cruell and barbarous) began to exercise excessive cruelty over the great men of *Ulster*, and made his vaunt, that *Mac-Genrys*, *Mac-Guyr*, *Mac-Mahon*, *O-Real*, *O-Hanlon*, *O-Cahan*, *Mac-Brien*, *O-Hagan*, *O-Quin*, *Mac-Canna*, *Mac-Carion*, and all the *Mac-Donels*, the *Galloglasses*, were his subjects and vassels.

And when as Sir Henry Sidney Justice for the time being, in the absence of the Earle of *Suffex* Lord Deputy, expostulated with him about these points, he answered, that hee, the undoubted and lawfull sonne and heire of *Con O-Neale*, as being *E* borne of his lawfull wife, had entred upon his fathers inheritance: that Matthew was a Blacke-Smiths sonne of *Dundalk*, and by the said Smith begotten, and borne after his marriage with *Alison* his Wife, yet craftily obtruded upon *Con* as his son, thereby to intervert another way, and to alienate the inheritance and honour of *O-Neale*: which howsoever he would endure, yet none besides of the Sept of *O-Neals* would ever beare and digest. As for the letters Patent of King Henry the eighth, they were of no validity, considering that *Con* had no right in that hee surrendered into the Kings hands, longer than his owne life: neither could he surrender up the same without the consent of the Nobles and people of *Ulster* by whom hee had bene elected *O-Neale*: Neither were such Patents of any force, unlesse there were an undoubted heire apparent of the family authentically signified before by inquisition and the oath of twelve men, which in this matter was never certified. Also, that himselfe was by law both of God and man the true heire, as being the first begotten sonne of his father, lawfully borne in wedlocke; that with the generall assent and consent of Peeres and people he was chosen, declared, and proclaimed *O-Neale*,
O-Neale,

Shan or *John*
O-Neale.

O-Neale according to the ancient law of *Tanistry*, whereby a man at his full yeeres is to be preferred before a boy, and an uncle before that nephew, whose grandfather survived the father: neither had he arrogated unto himselfe any authority over the Peeres or Nobles of *Ulster*, other than his ancestors (as hee was able to prove by plaine proofes produced) had exercised in times past out of minde most rightfully.

Howbeit, soone after he outraged and overthrew *O-Railly* in the field, tooke *Calagh O-Donnell* Lord of *Tir-Conell* prisoner, and cast him with his children into prison, carried away his wife, on whom hee begat children in adultery, seized upon his fortresses, lands, and goods, and bare himselfe as absolute King of all *Ulster*.

But so soone as Thomas Earle of *Suffex* the Lord Deputy came with a power into the field for to abate this insolency of his, hee was strangely terrified, and by the perswasion of Gerald Earle of *Kildare*, whom Queene Mary had restored to his former estate, came into England unto Queene Elizabeth, cast himselfe prostrate at her feet in all submissive and humble manner, and being received with all curtesie, after he had promised his allegiance, returned home, and for a while in his feeding and apparell conformed himselfe to all kind of civility: he assailed the Scottish and drave them quite out of *Ulster*, slew *James Mac-Conell* their leader, kept himself and all his people in good order, and the poorer sort he carefully protected from wrongs: Howbeit he tyrannized most cruelly and insolently over the Nobility: who when they had craved aid of the L. Deputy for to repress his intolerable violence, hee thrust upon growing more outrageous, in furious manner with fire and sword drave *Mac-Guir* Lord of *Fermanagh* (who underhand had accused him) out of house and home, set fire upon the Metropolitan Church of *Armagh*, and burnt it, yea and laied siege unto *Dundalk* on every side: but his enterprise was made frustrate through the valour of the souldiers there in garrison, and William Sarfield Maior of *Dublin*, who went forth against him with the very floure of choise Citizens. Howbeit the neighbour Countries round about he harried and spoiled in all manner of hostility.

Then Sir Henry Sidney the Deputy, to restrain and bridle the boldnesse of the *D* man, came himselfe in person with an army into the field against him, and by politicke forecast sent before *Edward Randolph*, an old approved and renowned Coronell, with seven ensignes of foot-men, and a cornet of horsemen, by sea into the North side of Ireland; who encamped at *Derry* by Logh-foil, that he might charge upon the backe of the Rebels. Which hee fearing, came thither speedily with all the power and forces that hee had, to remove him: But *Randolph* in a pitch field gave him battell, and there manfully fighting, with honour lost his life in his Countries service, but gave him withall such an overthrow, that never after he was able to make head againe: and being elsewhere in light skirmishes foiled, and by little and little forsaken of his owne followers, hee was minded with an halter tyed about his necke humbly to beseech the Lord Deputy his protection and mercy. But being by his Secretarie perswaded first to try the friendship of the Scots, who under the conduct of *Alexander Oge*, that is, the younger, held their standing Summer Campe in *Claneboy*, having sent before *Surley Boy* Alexanders brother, whom hee had kept prisoner a long time, to prepare the way, hee came unto them with the wife of *O-Donell* whom hee kept, was kindly welcomed, and admitted with some few into a tent: where after they had bene in their cups, they brake out into a brawle about *James Mac-Conell* Alexanders brother, whom *Shan* had slaine, and also about the honesty of *James* his sister, whom *Shan* had married and cast off: by which time *Alexander Oge*, and his brother *Mac-Gillaspie* being hot set upon revenge, after a signall given, with their drawn swords set upon *Shan*, and with many a wound hacked and hewed him to death: whereby the Province recovered, after grievous oppressions and warre, the benefits of wished peace.

Within a while after a Parliament was holden at *Dublin*, where by the authority of all the States of the Realme there assembled, *Shan* was attainted, and all the
Seig-

Thomas Earle
of *Suffex* Lord
Deputy.

Sir Henry Sidney
the Lord Deputy.

1565.

1567.

Seignories, lands, and goods which hee and his followers had, were invested in A
Queene Elizabeth, her heires and successours. And a law was enacted, that from
that day forward no man should assume unto him the name and title of *O-Neale*.
And yet shortly after *Turlough Leinigh*, a brothers sonne of *Con-Mor O-Neale* afore-
said, tooke it upon him by a popular election, being a man farre steep in yeeres, and
therefore more calme and quiet, and so much the rather, because hee stood in feare
of *Shan O-Neale* sonnes, and *Hugh Baron of Dunganon*, the sonne of *Matthew*, al-
though he had given unto the said *Hugh* his daughter in marriage; whom hee not-
withstanding quickly after did cast off and repudiate, taking another wife. This
Turlough being most obsequious and dutifull unto the Queene of England, put B
the English to no trouble at all; but hee molested *O-Donell* his neighbour and the
Scots of the Ilands, and in an encounter slew *Alexander Oge*, who had killed *Shan*
O-Neale.

Hugh O-Neal
Earle of Tir-
Oen.

Hugh the sonne of *Matthew*, commonly called Baron of *Dunganon*, who had lived
a long time one while concealed in his owne countrey, other whiles in England in
the retinue of Noble men, began now to put himselfe forth, and to raise himself out
of that obscure condition, when Elizabeth had given him command of a company of
horsemen in the warre against the Earle of *Desmond*, then in rebellion, and assigned
to him a pension of a thousand Markes by the yeere. In that warre hee acquitted
himselfe valiantly in all places against the rebels; and at length exhibited a suppli- C
cation in the Parliament house; That by vertue of letters patents, granted into his
Grandfather by King Henry the eighth, he might be admitted to the title and place
of Earle of *Tir-Oen*, and settled in his ancestours inheritance. The title and place
of Earle of *Tir-Oen* was presently granted: but as touching the inheritance, conside-
ring that upon the forfeiture and attainure of *Shan O-Neale* the Kings of England
were invested therein, the matter was referred unto Queene Elizabeth: who most
bountifully granted the same to him, for his faithfull service performed, and so be-
performed. Yet so, as that the country should be first surveied, and laied out into severall
divisions, one or two places fit for garisons reserved, and namely, the fort at *Blackma-
ser*, that good order might be taken for the maintenance of the sons of *Shan* and *Tur-
lough*, and that he should not be permitted to have any authority at all against the no-
blemen his neighbours without the county of *Tir-Oen*. These conditions he most
willingly accepted, and rendred very great thanks, accordingly promising to perform
whatsoever he was able, with diligence, authority, study, and endeavour, in regard of
so great benefits received: and verily he failed not in his promise, nor omitted any
duty that might be expected from a most loiall subject. A body he had able to en-
dure travell, watching and fasting: his industry was singular, his courage in warre
great, and answerable to the most important affaires: good skill he had in martiall
feats, and a profound wit and deep reach to discemle and carry his business closely:
in so much as even then some there were who gave this prediction of him, That he E
was born either to the exceeding good, or as great hurt of Ireland. And such proofes
he made of his valour and fidelity, that *Turlough Leinigh* at the Queenes intercession
resigned up unto him his government upon certaine conditions. After whose decease
he usurped unto himselfe the title of *O-Neal*, which by law was a capitall crime; but
excused himselfe colourably, because others should not enter upon the same: and
promised solemnly to renounce it quite, yet laboured hee most earnestly, that hee
might not be urged thereunto by any oath.

1588.

Not long after, when that most puissant *Armada* of Spaine, which had in vaine
given the attempt upon England, was put to flight, many ships in their returne home-
ward were cast away and lost in the *Vergilian* sea, and many of the Spaniards F
after shipwracke were cast on shore; some of whom *Tir-Oen* is reported to have en-
tertained and lodged, yea and to have consulted and complotted with them about en-
tring into a secret confederacy with the King of Spaine. For which practice *Hugh*
Ne Gaveloc, that is to say, *Hugh in the fetters* (surnamed so because he had been kept
so long in fetters) a base sonne of *Shan O-Neal* informed against him, and that upon
no

A no light but pregnant presumptions: whom the Earle afterward intercepted, and
commanded to be strangled, but hardly could he finde any one, that for the re-
verent regard of the *O-Neale* blood, would lay hands upon him. For which barba-
rous and inhumane murdering of his cousin german, he was charged in England;
but the Queene of her royall clemency, and for the hope that she had conceived
of the Earle, craving with repentance forgiveness of this fault, and submitting him-
selfe to divers good orders, for his obedience, pardoned him, to the great griefe of
some good men. But this soone after more grieved him, yea pricked (as it were)
and foregalled him, that the Deputy had suppressed the name of *Mac Mahon* in the
country next adjoining unto him; and withall to abate and weaken the power of
that mighty family, had divided the country among many. He I say hereupon con-
ceived a feare, lest the same would befall unto him, and other Chieftanes of *Ulster*.
At which very time, there began some secret grudges, and heart burnings to arise be-
tween the Earle and Sir *Henric Bagnall* the Marshall, whose sister the Earle had car-
ried away and married. The Earle complained, that whatsoever he had with the
losse of his blood and painfull travell reduced to the obedience of the Prince, the
Marshall, and not he, reaped the fruit and gaine thereof: that the Marshall by subor-
ning most base and vile persons as witnesses, had falsely brought him into question
for high treason, had incited Sir *William Fitz-Williams*, then Lord Deputy, his dead-
ly enemy, by corruptions and bribery to worke his destruction; and that he lay in
waite to take away his life. And in very truth the Deputies information against the
Earle found credit in the Court of England, untill the said Earle wrote his letters, and
offred judicially to be tried either in England or in Ireland. This is for certain known;
that much about this time, he together with the chiefties, or greatest men of *Ulster*, by
secret parties combined in an association, that they would defend the Romish religi-
on (for Religion now a daies is made the mantle for all rebellion) that they would in
no wise admit Sheriffes or Garrison souldiers in their Territories, and mutually main-
tain one anothers right, yea and withstand all wrongs offered by the English. The first
Champion thrust forward to sound the alarum, was *Mac-Gwyr*, a man of a turbulent
D spirit: he by way of preying all before him maketh a road into *Conaght*, accompa-
nied with *Gauran* a Priest, who being ordeined by the Pope Primate of Ireland,
commanded him in the name, and with the helpe of God to try his fortune, and to
fight the Lords battell, assuring him of most happy successe: yet fell it out otherwise;
for *Mac-Gwyr*, through the valour of Sir *Richard Bingham*, was discomfited and put
to flight, and the Primate with others slaine. Soone after, *Mac-Gwyr* brake out into
open rebellion; whom the Earle himselfe (together with the Marshall) in a shew of du-
tiful attendance pursued; and in this service, with great commendation of his for-
wardnesse, was wounded in the thigh. Howbeit wholly intentive to provide for his
own security, he intercepteth the sons of *Shan O-Neale*, and makes them sure for do-
E ing any harme: neither would he by any meanes (being requested thereto) set them
at liberty, but minding another matter, maketh most grievous complaints of the inju-
ries offered unto him by the Deputy, the Marshall, and the garrison souldiers: which
notwithstanding, within a while after he carried so covertly, that as if he had forgot-
ten all quarels, he came under safe conduct unto the Deputy, submitted himselfe, and
after hee had professed all manner of dutifull obedience, returned home with great
commendation. When as now Sir *William Fitz-Williams*, the Lord Deputy was re-
voked home out of Ireland, Sir *William Russell* succeeded in that office. Unto him
repaired the Earle of his own accord, exhibited an humble submission, upon his knees
to the Lord Deputy, wherein he dolefully expressed his great griefe that the Queen
F had conceived indignation against him, as of one undutifull and disloyall. Hee ac-
knowledgeed that the late absenting himselfe from the state was disagreeable to his
obedience; albeit it was occasioned by some hard measures of the late Lord Depu-
tie, as though he and the Marshall had combined for his destruction.

He acknowledged that the Queene advanced him to high title, and great livings,
that she ever upheld him, and enabled him, that shee, who by grace had advanced
him,

L 111

him, was able by her force to subvert him, and therefore if he were void of gratitude, yet he could not be so void of reason, as to worke his owne ruine. Furthermore, he made liberall promises that he would most willingly do whatsoever should be enjoyed him, (which hee also had promised in his letters sent unto the Lords of the Councell in England) and earnestly besought that he might be received into favour againe with the Queene, as before time, which he had lost, not by any desert of his owne, but through the forged informations and suggestions of his adversaries. At the same time, *Bagnall* the Marshall was present in the place, who exhibited articles against the Earle, and accused him, that hee had underhand suborned and sent *Mac-Guir*, with the Primate above named into *Conaght*, that hee had complotted secretly with *Mac-Guir*, *O-Donel* and other conspirators, and had aided them by *Cor-mac-Mac-Baron* the Earles brother, and *Con* the Earles base son, and some of his servants, in the waisting of *Monaghan*, and besieging of *Inis-Kelshin*, and by means drawn away the Captaines of *Kilulio* and *Kilwarny*, from their loyalty and obedience to the Queen. Hereupon it was seriously debated among the Councillors of the kingdome, whether the Earle should be staied to make his answer or no. The Deputy thought good that he should be detained. But when it was put to question generally, the more part, either upon a vaine feare, or forward inclination to favour the Earle, were instant to have him dismissed, & the matter to be put off unto a further day of hearing, pretending certaine waighthy considerations, and that the Articles exhibited were without proofe or time. Thus the Deputie in a sort was forced to yeeld to the experience of the Councell, and the Earle was permitted to depart, and his accusers there present had no audience. Which troubled and disquieted the Queen not a little, considering that his wicked designements and acts were now apparent to every one, and the Queene her selfe had given warning afore hand, that he should be detained untill he had cleared himselfe of those imputations.

The Earle being now returned home, when he heard that a new supply of souldiers was comming out of England, and thirteene hundred besides of old servitors out of the Low-countries, who had served in litle Britaine under Sir John *Norris*, and that the English intended now to possesse themselves of *Balahannon* and *Belik*, Castles upon the mouth of *Lough-Earn*, he being privie to himselfe of his own evill purposes, and carrying a guilty conscience, on a sudden assaileth the fort at *Blackwater*, by which the entry lay into *Tir-Oen* his owne country, and had it surrendred up unto him. And at the very same instant in manner, hee (waverling in his minde) with one breath (as it were) by his letters offereth unto the Earle of *Kildare*, his helpe against the wrongs done by the Deputy, and withall, promisseth the Earle of *Ormond*, & Sir *Henry Wallop* Treasurer of the kingdome, to continue firme in his allegiance, yea and beseecheth in his letters Sir John *Norris* appointed Lord Generall, that he might be more mildly dealt with, nor against his will be driven headlong upon the dangerous rocks of disloyalty. But these letters unto *Norris* *Bagnall* the Marshall intercepted, and (as the Earle complained afterward) suppressed, to his greatest prejudice and hurt. For immediately he and his confederates were proclaimed traitors, both in Irish and English, and pardon offered to all such as had been seduced by false perswasions to take their parts, & would now relinquish them and submir themselves to the Queen. At which time there were accounted to be with the Rebells in *Ulster*, about a thousand horsemen, and 6280. footmen: and in *Conaght* 2300. who were all at the Earles command, very many of them trained souldiers: as who had been exercised in armes, ever since that Sir John *Peroi* Lord Deputy had appointed to every Lord and Chieftain of *Ulster*, a certain number to be exercised in their weapons, for to resist the Irish Scots of the Islands: or else had been employed in the warres of the Low-countries, whom he in no provident policie for the future time, had caused to be transported thither.

And verily the English forces were equivalent in numbers, which were commanded by Sir John *Norris*: for the Queene had selected him as a man of especiall trust and reputation, to be used martially in such journeyes as the Deputie himselfe in person could not undertake, in consideration that hee had performed divers honourable

A honourable services was now President of *Mounster*, and had formerly commanded the Brittain companies, which were to serve principally in this action. Yet achieved heno memorable exploit, by reason of private misconstruction, suspicious surmises, and dislikes conceived betwene him and the Deputy. Onely the time was spent in preying, truce-making, and frivolous parlies. And without doubt the martiall men on both sides were well content to have the war drawne out in length, and the Earle fed himselfe every day with hope of succour out of Spaine.

But among all these parlies, that was most memorable, which the two Commissioners, Sir *Henry Wallop* Treasurer of that Realme, and Sir *Robert Gardener* chiefe Justice, most grave personages and of approved wisdom, had with the Earle of *Tir-Oen* and *O-Donell*: at which they and others of the rebells both laied open their grievances, and exhibited also their petitions.

The Earle complained, that Sir *Henry Bagnall* the Mareschall had cunningly withdrawn unto himselfe the fruit of his labours; that with lyes and indirect meanes and subtle fetches, he had thrust him out of the Queenes favour, and after a sort brought him into disgrace: that to his great hinderance and prejudice, he had intercepted his letters written unto the Lord Deputy, unto *Norris*, and others; and still detained and withheld from him his wives portion: and herewith he protested, that he never negotiated with forraign Princes, before he was proclaimed Traitor.

C Now he exhibited his petitions in most humble manner, That hee and all his followers might be pardoned for their crimes; That they might be restored to their former estates, That they might exercise freely their own religion (and yet that had been alwaies tolerated) That the Mareschall should pay unto him a thousand pounds of lawfull mony of England for the dowry of his wife now deceased, That no garrison souldiers, Sheriffs, or other officer should be appointed within his countie and Earledome, That the company of fifty horsemen which he had led, with the Queenes pay thereunto, might be restored unto him, and that those who had robbed and spoiled his people might be punished accordingly.

D *O-Donell* for his part, when he had rehearsed his fathers and ancestours fidelity to the Kings of England, complained nevertheless, that Captaine *Bain* was sent from *Peroi* the Lord Deputy, with a band of souldiers into his Province, under a colour of teaching his people civility, who being kindly entertained by his father, and having certain townes assigned unto him, offered all maner of injurious indignity and rigour unto his father, and advanced a certaine bastard to the dignity of *O-Donell*: Also that the said Deputy by sending a Barke secretly intercepted him; thrust him (innocent man) into prison, and there unjustly kept him in duresse, untill that by the Almighties goodnesse he was delivered: Item that the Deputy *Fitz-Williams* laid up fast in close prison for seven yeeres together Sir *Owen O-Toole*, the second man next to *O-Donell* in this tract, notwithstanding he was guiltlesse, and sent for upon promise of his safe conduct: and that he oppressed his neighbours in *Fermanagh* with intolerable wrongs: neither could himselfe devise any other meanes for his owne safety and security, than to releeve his next neighbours thus vexed and molested. Hee likewise made the same request that the Earle did, and moreover demanded certaine fortresses and lands in the countie of *Slego*, which he challenged in right to be his inheritance. *Shan Mac Brian Mac Phelim O-Neal* laid downe his complaints, That *Walter Earle of Essex* had wrongfully taken from him the Isle of *Magy*, and Sir *Henry Bagnall* the Barony of *Maughery-Mourn*, both of them his ancient inheritance: That he was himselfe imprisoned, untill that by enforcement he had resigned his right unto *Bagnall*; beside other infinite injuries done unto him by the Garrison souldiers of *Knock-Fergus*. *Hugh Mac-Guir* made a great matter of the insolent outrages committed by the Garrison souldiers next unto him, in driving away his cartell as booties, and withall that the Sheriffe who was sent into his Territories, had cut off the head of his next kinsman, and spurned it under foot.

Brian Mac-Hugh-Oge, *Mac Mahon* and *Ever Mac-Cowley* came in with these their complaints, That over and above other wrongs Sir *William Fitz-Williams* the Deputy

for great gifts and presents, had settled *Hugh Roe* in the dignity of *Mac-Mahon*: and A
 soone after, for that with banner displayed after the manner of the country he deman-
 ded a mulct or fine which hee had imposed, hanged him up, and granted his inheri-
 tance unto strangers, thereby to extinguish the name of *Mac-Mahon*. In a word,
 they were petitioners every one severally for the same things that I have above re-
 herfed. When some of these their demands were thought reasonable, and others
 againe to be referred unto the Queenes consideration; the Commissioners also on
 the other side proposed certaine Articles unto the Rebels, that they should lay
 downe their armes, disperse their forces, acknowledge submissively their disloyalties,
 admit Sheriffes in their governments, re-edifie the Forts they had defaced, suffer B
 the garrisons to live without disturbance, make restitution of spoiles taken, confesse
 upon their oath how farre they have dealt with forraign Princes, and renounce all for-
 raine aide, &c.

But these seemed so unreasonable to them in their conceit, being now grown in-
 solent, that after agreement of a cessation from armes for a short time, they depar-
 ted on all hands; whereas the Queene both then and afterwards, as well to spare
 the effusion of blood, as to save expence of money, was willing enough to condescend
 unto any conditions of peace, that might have stood with the honour of her Maje-
 stie.

Lord Generall
 of the Army.

The time of cessation once expired, *Norris* (unto whom alone by the Queenes C
 commandement, the command of the military forces was conferred in the Deputies
 absence) marched with his armie against the Earle. Howbeit the Deputie joyned
 with him, and so with great terrour to the rebels, went forward as farre as *Armagh*:
 so that the Earle leaving the fort at *Blackwater*, set fire upon the villages all round
 about, and the towne of *Dungannon*; yea and plucked downe a great part of his owne
 house there, who bewailing now his owne estate, as quite undone and past all reco-
 very, he thought of nothing but how to hide his head: when as they had marched so
 farre, they stayed there for default of victuals, and having proclaimed the Earle trai-
 tour within his owne territorie, and placed a garrison in the Church of *Armagh*, re-
 turned backe. In their returne, the Earle diligently attendeth and accosteth them D
 farre off (yet they strengthened the garrison at *Monaghan*) and when they were come
 neere unto *Dundalke*, the Deputy, according to the purport of her Majesties Com-
 mission, rendred the prosecution of the warre unto *Norris*, and after many words
 passed too and fro betweene them, with all the complements of kindnesse and custe-
 mie that might be, he retireth to *Dublin*, and providently looketh to the state of *Lein-*
ster, *Conaght*, and *Mounster*.

Norris staid in *Ulster*, but achieved no exploit answerable to the expectation rai-
 sed of so worthy a Warriour: whether it were upon emulation to the Deputy, or that
 Fortune altered and went backward (as who in the end is wont to crosse great Com-
 manders) or in favour of the Earle, unto whom he was as forward in kind affection, as E
 the Deputy was estranged from him. For *Norris* seemed to blame the Deputy in
 some measure, for that entertaining an hard opinion of the Earle, his resolution was
 to make no peace with him: for he in no wise would be otherwise perswaded, but
 that hee trifled out the time, and made delaies for the nonce, expecting aide and suc-
 cour still out of Spaine: whereas *Norris* in the meane while more favourable to him,
 and credulous withall, had conceived very good hope to bring the Earle to conditi-
 ons of peace: which hope he working under hand sofed and fomented still in *Nor-*
ris, as that he also presented unto him a fained submission, subscribed with his owne
 hand and signed, yea and humbly upon his knees craved pardon. Yet for all this in
 the meane time he dealt by his spying Agents and Curriers earnestly and secretly F
 with the King of Spaine, what with writing, and what with praying to have aide
 from him; so farre forth, as that there were secretly sent one or two messengers
 from the Spaniards to the Rebels, with whom it was agreed, that in case the King
 of Spaine sent at the prefixed time a competent Armie, able to vanquish the
 English, they would joine their owne forces, and if in the meane time he furnished
 them

A them with munition and provision for warre, they would reject all conditions of
 peace, whatsoever. To these covenants, *O Rorke*, *Mac-William*, and others set to their
 hands, but not the Earle himselfe, being providently cautelous, and yet no man
 doubts but his consent was thereto. And the letters which the King of Spaine wrote
 backe full of great promises, hee in outward shew of dutifull service, sent unto the
 Deputy, and withall relying himselfe upon assured hope of helpe from Spaine, star-
 ted backe from that written submission aforesaid, and faithfull promise made to
Norris: for which, *Norris* through his owne credulity thus deluded and engaged,
 taketh him up in hot and bitter termes, as if he had gulled him. But he knowing well
 enough how to temporize and serve the time, entreth againe into a parlie with *Nor-*
ris and *Fenton* the Secretary: and so by giving hostages, a peace such as it was (or ra-
 ther covenants of agreement) was concluded: which soone after with the like levi-
 tie as before, he brake; alledging for his reason and excuse, that he could not other-
 wise thinke, but hee was deceitfully dealt with, because the Deputie and *Norris* a-
 greed so badly; because also the Deputie was discontented with them that in his be-
 halfe travelled with him about peace, as though the Deputie desired nothing but
 warre, considering that the troups of horsemen were supplied out of England, the
 King of Spaines letter aforesaid detained, and the Marechall his most heavey enemy,
 even then was returned with new commission out of England.

C Hereupon therefore hee falleth to harrie and waste the countries confining, to
 burne townes and villages, to rouse and drive away booties: but within a while
 pricked with some remorse of conscience for such outrages committed, and hearing
 besides, that there was a peace like to be treated between England and Spaine, hee
 sued once againe for a parlie, and conditions of peace: it yrkes mee to run through
 all the cloakes of his dissimulation in particular. But to be short, when he was in any
 danger of the English, in semblance, countenance, and words from teeth outward
 he so masked himselfe under the vizard of submission, and pretended such repen-
 tance for his former misdemeanors, that he shifted off and dallied with them still, un-
 till they had forslipt the opportunitie of pursuing him, and untill of necessity the for-
 ces were to be dissolved and withdrawn. Againe, such was the sloathfull negligence
 of the Captaines in Ireland, the thrifty sparing in England, the inbred lenitie of the
 Queene, who wished that these flames of rebellion (for warre it was not to be cal-
 led) might be quenched without blood, that his faire words and pretences were be-
 lieved, yea and hope otherwhiles was offered unto him of pardon, left his peevish
 perversicacie should be more and more enkindled.

In the yeere 1597. when as by this time all *Ulster* throughout beyond *Dundalke*,
 except seven Castles with wards, (namely, *Newry*, *Knock-Fergus*, *Carlingford*, *Greene*
Castle, *Armagh*, *Dondrom*, and *Oldersfleet*) yea and in manner all *Conaght*, was revol-
 ted; Thomas Lord *Burrough*, a man full of courage and politike withall, was sent
 E Lord Deputie into Ireland. And about that time Sir *John Norris* distasting himselfe
 and the new Deputie, ended his life.

At which time the Earle beseeched by his letters a Cessation of armes; and verily
 it seemed good policie to grant it for a moneth. After the moneth expired, the
 Deputie brought his forces together, and which was thought to stand with his pro-
 fit and honour both, at his first entry into government, aranged them in order of bat-
 tell against the Earle: and albeit hee was welcomed by the Earle with a doubtfull
 and dangerous peece of service within the space of the *Moiry*, yet made hee way
 through by his valor, and most valiantly won the Fort at *Blackewater*, repaired
 and re-enforced by the Rebels, by which the way lieth into the Countie of *Tir-Oen*,
 F and which besides woods and marshes, was the onely strength that the Rebels had:
 and by this first attempt gave good proofe, that if the warre were well prosecuted,
 they might easily be vanquished. The very same day whereon this Fort was taken,
 while the Deputie together with his armie were giving thanks unto God for this
 victorie, suddenly an allarum was given, and the enemy shewed himselfe from an
 hill hard by: against whom, *Henric Earle of Kildare* presently marched, with a cor-
 net

Baron Bu-
 rough, Lord
 Deputie,
 1597.

net of horse and certaine of the better sort of Gentlemen voluntaries, and setting A upon them, put them to flight. Yet were there slaine of the English part, Francis *Vagham* brother to the Lord Deputies wife, R. *Turner* Serjeant Major a doughty and approved servitour, two of the Earle of *Kildares* foster brethren: whose death he tooke so heavily, that himselfe within few daies after for griefe of heart ended his life. For there is no love in the world comparable by many degrees to that of foster-brethren in Ireland.

But many more were wounded, and among the rest Sir Thomas *Waler*, highly commended for his Martiall forwardnesse. After that this Fort was with new munitions re-enforced, no sooner had the L. Deputy withdrawn his army from thence, but the Rebels waving now betwene hope, feare, and shame, thought it their best B and safest course straightly to besiege it: For the Earle supposed it was the most important place to offend and annoy them, as that both his honour and fortunes were for ever at their down-set if he might not recover it. With a strong power therefore he beleaguered it round about. Against whom the Deputy straightway setteth forward and marched without intermission: but alas, marching on thus in his full pace to victory, hee was arrested by violence of sicknesse, and cut off by untimely death, leaving a great misse of him to the State, and security to the ranging Rebels. Certes, if he had lived longer, by the judgement of wisemen, he had abated their insolencies, and the State had not beene plunged into so great perils.

The Rebels understanding of the Deputies death, became exceeding stout and bold, and so oft-soones with mighty out-cries and furious violence assaulted the Fort, but repulsed alwaies they were with the greater losse: they that gave the Scallado were thrown down headlong, and most of them, by the Garrison souldiers sallying resolutely upon them borne downe and troden under foot, in so much as distrusting now to maine force, they changed their copy and determined to protract the siege, being perswaded that they within had victuals but for few daies; and besides, they conceived good hope that the Garrison souldiers for very want would bee wavering in their allegiance and turne traitours. But through the singular valour of Thomas *Williams* the Captaine, and of the band within, the place was manfully defended: who having suffered hunger, sharp fights, and all extremities, after they had eaten D up their horses, were driven to pluck up the weeds growing among the stones for their food, and endured all the miseries that might be.

Now by this time the government was by authority from the Queene committed unto the Earle of *Ormond*, under the title of *Lieutenant General of the Armie*, unto the Chancellor, and Sir Robert *Gardiner*. Then *Tir-Oen* recapitulateth in a long letter unto the said Lievtenant all his greivances afore specified: and not leaving out the least insolencie either of souldiers, or of Sheriffes, coldly excuseth his breach of Covenants with Sir John *Norris*. But principally he complaines, that *Feogh Mac-Hugh*, a neere associate and kinsman of his, had been persecuted and executed: and in E the end, That his letters unto the Queen were in England intercepted and suppressed: as also, that those impositions and compositions laid both upon the Nobles and Commons were intolerable. He addeth moreover and saith, he saw full well, that all the Territories of the Nobility and Gentry of Ireland, would shortly bee parted and shared among the Councillors, Lawyers, Souldiers, and Notaries. And herewith he closely fendeth succour unto the sonnes of *Feogh Mac-Hugh*, that they might kindle new coales in *Leinster*. So that now, every man might see that this war was begun to no other end (whatsoever was pretended) but to extirpate the English quite out of Ireland.

1598.

All this while the Earle continued his siege about the Fort at *Black-water*, for the F raising whereof, the Lievtenant General of the Armie (for there was no Deputy as yet substituted) sent the most choice troupes, fourteene Ensignes, under the conduct of Sir Henry *Bagnall*, the Marefchall, and the bitterest adversary the Earle had: upon whom as he marched with divided troupes, the Earle, edged with fretfull malice, assailed most furiously neere unto *Armagh*, and forthwith (the Marefchall against whom

A whom he had bent all his force, being slaine amongst the thickest of his enemies) as he obtained a most joyous triumph over his private adverstary, so he went away with a glorious victory over the English.

And verily, since the time that they set first footing in Ireland, they never had a greater overthrow; wherein thirteene valiant Capitaines lost their lives, and fiftene hundred of the common souldiers; who being routed and put to shamefull flight, as they were disparted all over the fields were cut in pieces: and such as remained alive, laid the fault reproachfully, not upon their owne cowardice, but their chiefe leaders unskilfulnesse (a thing now a daies ordinary.) Immediately upon this, followed the B yeelding up of the Fort at *Black-water*: when as the garrison souldiers having held out with loyaltie in heart, and weapon in hand, unto extreme famine, being now driven to exceeding great distresse, saw all hopelesse of succour and reliefe. A notable victory this was, and of great consequence to the Rebels, who furnished themselves hereby with armour and victuals: and now the Earle renowned all Ireland over, and magnified in every place as the founder of their freedome, above all measure swelled with haughty arrogancy: and sent into *Mounster*, *Ouny-Mac-Rory-Og-O-More*, and *Tirell* (who although by his first originall he were of English blood, yet none so maliciously bent against the English name as hee) with 4000. preying rogues: against whom Sir Thomas *Norris*, President of that Province, advanced forward with a strong C power as far as to *Kilmalock*: but before hee saw the enemy he disperfed his forces, and retired backe to *Corcke*.

Which when the Rebels understood, having a great rabble of most lewd rascals flocking from all parts unto them, they fell to waste the country, to drive booties before them, to ransack and burne where ever they went, the castles, houses, and farme places of the English, and most cruelly in all places to kill them: *James Fitz-Thomas*, one of the family of the Earles of *Desmond*, they set up as Earle of *Desmond*; yet so, as he should hold as tenant in fee of the *O-Neal*, or Earle of *Tir-Oen*. And thus after a month, when they had kindled this fire, and set all in a flame in *Mounster*, they returned backe laden with rich booties. The Earle by this time in his letters to the King D of Spaine faileth not to recount his owne victories with full mouth; and therewith beseecheth him not to give eare and beleve, if happily hee should heare any Englishmen report that he desired peace: for why? hee had hardened his heart against all conditions of peace were they never so indifferent, and would most firmly keep his faithfull promise made unto the said King. Yet in this while wrought he meanes of intercession, by letters and messengers oft-soones sent unto the Earle of *Ormond*, (but all colourably) about a submission, and his demands withall were most unreasonable.

In this desperate estate stood Ireland when Queene Elizabeth chose *Robert Earle of Essex* (then glorious for the winning of *Cadiz* in Spaine) in regard of his approved E wisdome, fortitude, and fidelity, Lievtenant and Governour generall of Ireland, to repaire the detriments and losses there sustained, with most large and ample authority added in his Commission, *To make an end of the war*; and that which by importunity, as it were, hee wrested from her, To remit and pardon all crimes, even of high treason: which alwaies in the Patents of every Lord Deputy were thus in these very words before time restrained (*All treasons and treacheries touching our own person, our beires and successours excepted*.) And verily with good and provident forecast he obtained the authority to pardon crimes of this kinde, considering that Lawyers doe resolve and set downe, That all Rebellions whatsoever touch the Princes person. There was committed to his charge as great an army as he required, royally furnished and provided, and such as Ireland had never seen the like before: that is, sixteene thousand footmen, and thirteene hundred horsemen: which number was made up after twenty thousand compleat. And he had speciall charge given him, without regard of all other Rebels whatsoever, to bend the whole puissance and force of the war upon the Arch-Rebell the Earle of *Tir-Oen*, as the head of all the rest, and with all speed to presse hard upon him with garrisons planted at *Lough-Foile*, and *Bala-*

Shanon;

Robert Earle
of Essex Lord
Lievtenant.
1599.

Shanon: a thing that himselfe had alwaies thought most important, and in accusatory A terms charged and challenged the former Deputies for their neglect in that behalfe.

Thus he, honourably accompanied with the flower of Noble gallants, and well wishing acclamations of the common people, yet with a strange thunder-clap in a cleare sun-shine day, hee setteth forward from London, toward the end of March: and being sore tossed and rejected with an adverse tempest, at length arrived in Ireland. Where having, after the manner, received the sword, presently contrary to his charge and commission, by the advice of some of the Councell of State there (who too much regarded their owne particular) he, neglecting the Arch-rebell, advanced forward with all his power against petty Rebels in *Mounster*; and having taken *Cahir*, a castle of *Thomas Butlers* Baron of *Cahir* (into which, being environed about with the river *Shawr*, certaine seditious persons had betaken themselves) and driven away a number of cartell, he made himselfe terrible to all the country farre and wide, and dispersed the Rebels every way into woods and forrests. Yet in this while he received no small foile and overthrow by the cowardile of some who served under Sir *Henry Harrington*, whom he punished very severely by martiall discipline. Neither returned he before the latter end of July, with his souldiers wearied, sickly, and their number more than a man would beleieve, diminished.

When upon his returne he understood that the *Queene* was displeased at this expedition of his, so costly, and yet damageable, and that she urged still a journey into *Ulster* against the Earle, and no other; in his missives unto her Majesty he transferred all the fault from himselfe upon the Councell of Ireland, unto whom for their manifold experience in the affaires of Ireland, he could not choose but condescend: promising and protesting most faithfully, to set forward with all speed into *Ulster*. Scarce were these letters delivered, when he dispatcheth others after them, wherein he signifieth, that upon necessity he must turne his journey aside into *Ophaly*, neere to *Dublin*, against the *O-Conors*, and the *O-Moils*, who were there risen and in armes, whom he quickly and fortunately vanquished with light skirmishes.

Now returning, and having taken a review of his army, he found it so weakened and impaired, that by his letters subscribed with the hands of the Councillers of Ireland, hee craved a new supply of a thousand souldiers for his expedition into *Ulster*, which he promised to undertake speedily with solemne protestations.

Being now fully resolved to turne the whole warre upon *Ulster*, hee commanded Sir *Coniers Clifford* Governour of *Conaght*, to goe with certain bands lightly appointed toward *Bellike*, to the end that the Earles forces might bee distracted one way, whiles he himselfe set upon him another way. *Clifford* forthwith putting himselfe on his journey with a power of 1500. commanded his souldiers out-toiled with traveling so farre, and having but small store of gun-powder, to passe over the mountaines of *Curlew*. And when they had gotten over the most part of them, the Rebels under the leading of *O-Rorke* assailed them on the sudden. The English easily at the first caused them to recule, and marched on forward in their journey: but when the enemies perceived once that they were at a default already for gun-powder, they charged them afresh, and for that they were tired with so long a march, and not able to make resistance, put them to flight, slew many of them, and among the rest *Clifford* himselfe, together with Sir *Alexander Ratcliffe* of *Ordsall*. Mean while, that supply which the Lord Lievtenant required was levied in England, and transported: some few daies after, hee gave the *Queene* to understand by other letters, that hee could for this yeere performe no more, than with a thousand and three hundred footmen, and three hundred horse goe to the frontiers of *Ulster*. Thither came hee about the thirteenth day of September; before whom the Earle with his forces two daies together from the hills made a Bravado, and shewed himselfe: and in the end sending *Hagan* before, he requested the Lievtenant that they might parlie together: which hee refused to doe, answering, that if the Earle would talke with him, he should finde him the next morrow in the head of his troopes. On which day, after a light skirmish made, a horseman from out of the Earles troopes with a loud voice delivered

as a message, that the Earle was not willing to fight, but to parly with the L. Lievtenant: yet in no wise at that instant. The day following as the Lord Lievtenant was marching forward, *Hagan* meeteth him, who declareth that the Earle humbly desired to have the *Queenes* mercy and peace, and besought withall, that he might have but audience for a while: which if he would grant, then would he with all reverence and observance expect him at the Foord of the river hard by (*Balla-Clinch* they call it.)

This Foord is not far from *Louth*, the head towne of the County, and neere unto the Castle of *Gerard Fleming*. Thither sent the L. Lievtenant before some of purpose to discover the place; who found the Earle at the said Foord, and he told them, that although the river was risen, yet might a man be easily heard from one side to the other. Hereupon the Lord Lievtenant having bestowed a troupe of horsemen in the next hill there by came downe alone; the Earle riding his horse into the water up to the belly, in dutifull and reverent sort saluteth the Lievtenant being on the banke side, and so with many words passing to and fro betweene them; without any witenesse by to heare them, they spent almost an houre. Then both of them retire unto their companies: and *Con* a base sonne of the Earles following hard after the L. Lievtenant, besought him in his fathers name that certaine principall persons of his traine might bee admitted to a conference. The L. Lievtenant assented thereto, so they were not above six. Then forthwith the Earle taking with him his brother *Cormac*, *Mac Gennys*, *Mac Guir*, *Ever Mac Conley*, *Henry Ovington* and *O-Quin*, sheweth himselfe at the Foord. Unto them the L. Lievtenant came down, accompanied with the Earle of *Southampton*, Sir *George Bouchier*, Sir *Warrham St. Leger*, Sir *Henry Danvers*, Sir *Edward Wingfeld*, and Sir *William Constable* Knights. The Earle saluteth them every one with great courtesie; and after some few words between them passed, thought good that certaine Commissioners should the next day following treat of peace: between whom it was agreed, that there should be a truce from that very day for six weeks, and so forward from six weeks to six weeks unto the first of May: yet so, as it might be free for both sides, after fourteen daies warning given aforehand, to begin warre afresh. And if that any Confederate of the Earles would not yeeld his assent hereto, he left him unto the L. Lievtenant to prosecute him at his pleasure.

While these things were a doing, those letters of the Lord Lievtenant which I spake of erewhile, were delivered to the *Queen* by *Henrie Cusse* (a man very learned, but as unfortunate.) Which when she had perused through, and understood thereby, that her Lievtenant, with so great an armie, in so long time, and with the expence of so much money, had effected just nothing, nor would doe ought that yeeres; shee being highly offended thereat, writeth backe againe to himselfe; and to the Councillers of Ireland in these termes: That his proceeding answered neither her direction, nor the worlds expectation; that shee could not but marvel much, why the Lievtenant by prolonging thus from time to time, and by finding meanes still of further delay, had lost those excellent opportunities which he had of prosecuting war upon that Arch-rebell: considering that himselfe, whiles he was in England, advised nothing else, but to prosecute the Earle himselfe, and none but him; yea and in his letters otherwhiles seriously promised to doe the same. She expostulated, wherefore hee had made those unprofitable journeyes (even against his owne judgement when it was found) into *Mounster* and *Ophaly*, whereof he had not certified her, nor given so much as any notice before they were undertaken: which otherwise shee would expressly have countermanded. If his armie were now broken, weak, and much empaiied, why undertooke hee not the action upon the enemies whiles it was entire, strong, and complete? If the spring had not been a fit season for to make war in *Ulster*, wherefore was the summer, wherefore was the autumn neglected? what was there no time of the yeere meet for that war? Well, shee now foresaw that her Kingdome of England must be impoverished beyond all measure by such expences, her honour blemished among forrain Princes, and the Rebels encouraged by this unfortunate successe: yea they that shall pen the Story of this time, will deliver unto posterity, that she for her part was at great charge to hazzard her Kingdome of Ireland,

8 September
1599.

land, and that he had taken great paines, and had left nothing undone, to prepare for A many purposes which perished without undertaking, if now at length he took not a course for the maine prosecution of the war. In tart termes therefore she admonisheth both him, and the Councillers of the Kingdome, to look more considerably to the good of the State, and not from thence forward to be transported contrary waies by indirect counsell; commanding them withall, to write into what case they had brought the Kingdome of Ireland; and carefully to foresee, that all inconveniences from thenceforth might be diligently prevented.

The Lord Lievtenant startled, or rather galled with these letters, speedeth in all B haste, and sooner than any man would have thought, into England, accompanied with some men of quality, and well and early in a morning comming upon the Queene at unwares, while she was most private and in her bed chamber, presents himselfe upon his knees unto her; who after she had welcomed him with a short speech (and not with that countenance as heretofore) commanded him to withdraw himselfe unto his owne chamber, and there to keepe. For the Queene was highly offended with him, both because hee, contrary to her commandement, had left his charge so suddenly without her leave, and before he had settled the State; and also had treated with the Rebels to her dishonour privately, and upon equall termes, with condition of toleration of Religion, and to her disservice, when as the Rebels made profit of all cessations: and moreover, that hee had agreed upon such a cessation as might every fourteenth night be broken, whereas it was in his power by the authoritie that he had, C to make a finall end with the Rebels, and to pardon their treason and rebellion.

What befell him afterwards in England, and how it appeared by pregnant presumptions, and some evidence, that he aimed at other matters than war against Rebels, whiles hee could not finde in his heart to remit private distastes for the publicke good; and relied too much upon popularitie (which is alwaies momentary, and never fortunate) it is impertinent to this place, neither take I pleasure so much as to remember the same.

The said cessation was scarcely once or twice expired, when the Earle of Tir-O D drew his forces together, and addresseth himselfe againe to war. Unto whom there was sent from the State Sir William Warren, to know of him wherefore he brake the Cessation that was made: Unto whom in the swelling pride of his heart he haughtily answered, That he had not broken the Cessation, considering he had given foure daies warning before, that he ment to renew the warre; and that he had just cause to war a freesh: for why? he understood that the Lord Lievtenant, in whom he had reposed all his hope and whole estate, was committed in England: Neither would he have any thing to doe from thence forth with the Councillours of the Kingdome, that had dealt before time so craftily and deceitfully with him. And as for the Cessation, would he never so faine, he could not revoke it, because he had already entered another course, and appointed O-Donel to goe into Conaught, and other of his confederates into other parts. E

In this meane space, there ran among the Rebels rumours very rife (and the Earle of Tir-O questionedle was the authour) that there should be within a while the greatest and strangest alteration that ever was in England; and lewd persons began daily to encrease both in number and in courage. For they that were of the Irishry, aspired now to their ancient freedome and Nobility; contrariwise good and honest men of the English blood were much dejected and discouraged, seeing so great hopes of the Prince came to nothing: who also complained one unto another, that they had been of late excluded as meere strangers from bearing offices in the common-Weale. But the Earle, all in a glorious jollity giveth it out every where, and F that with open mouth, That he would recover the liberty both of Religion and of his Country; he receiveth in every place busie and tumultuous persons into his protection, he sends them succour and aide, strengthneth and comforteth the distressed, stoutly streineth and setteth to his helping hand to subvert the English government in Ireland, being drawne on and fed with hope which the King of Spaine, by lending

A ding now and then munition, and some money made shew of; and the Pope by promises and indulgences maintained, as having sent unto him before the plume of a Phoenix, haply because Pope Urban the third had sent in times past a little Coronet, platted with peacocks feathers, unto John, King Henries the second his sonne, when he was invested Lord of Ireland.

And now triumphantly glorying of his victories, to the end that he might make a goodly shew of his greatnesse in every place, and by his personall presence set that fire to burne out light, which in his absence hee had kindled in Mounster; under a faire and religious pretence of visiting a little peece of wood of Christs Crosse (which is B thought to be kept in the Monastery of the Holy Crosse in Tipperary) in mid-winter thither hee goes on Pilgrimage, and sent out into the grounds of true and faithfull subjects a number of preying robbers, under the conduct of Mac-Guir: he by chance hapned upon Sir Warrham Saint Leger, who runne him through with his lance, and was withall at the same instant himselfe runne through by him. Whose funeralls when the Earle had performed, he hasteneth home sooner than all men looked for, as having heard, that the Earle of Ormond, appointed General of the Army, was raising of a power from all parts, and that Sir Charles Blunt Baron Monjoy, appointed the Lord Deputy, was comming; unto whom the Queene before time had purposed in her minde this government: but Robert Earle of Essex (who for to please C sure military men, and to deserve the better of them, into whose love he studiously insinuated himselfe, fought, though covertly, to compasse the same himselfe) wholly opposed against him, as if he, the said Lord Monjoy, had scene no service, nor bene experienced in the warres, more than in the Netherlands, had no followers and dependants, nor much aforehand with the world, and overmuch bookish. He arriveth in Ireland in the moneth of February, without any great noise and stirre, accompanied with a small traine, and so entred upon the Government. Now hee found the state of Ireland very distressed, or rather desperately sick, and past all hope of recovery, yea at the point, as it were, to give up the ghost: for every good and honest meaning minde was dismayed to see such a confluence of calamities, without all D hope of remedy, or any alleviation at all: but the worst sort seeing all to goe well on their side, and prosper still to their desire, rejoiced and applauded one the other; and the Earle himselfe without any resistance had passed through the whole length of the Iland in triumphant manner, even from the utmost part of Ulster, into Mounster. The Rebels moreover, to terrifie the Deputy now at his first comming, stricke up an Al'arme in the very suburbs of Dublin. But he, full of good courage, desired nothing more than to set upon the Earle himselfe, who, as hee had intelligence given him, was to returne out of Mounster. Mustering up therefore in all haste such a power as hee could (for the companies of choice souldiers were in Mounster already with the Earle of Ormond) he hastened to stop the Earles passage in Fereale, and there E to give him battell. But the Earle by celerity and quicke speed prevented him, being privily enformed of the Deputies designs: for certaine there were even of the Queens Councill there, who alwaies highly favoured and tendered his proceedings.

The Deputy being returned to Dublin, was wholly busied in mustering of the old souldiers, that should be sent by shipping to Logh-Foile and Bala-Shanon neere unto the mouth of Logh-Earn, that by placing garrisons there, they might make sallies upon the Earle both on backe and sides; as also about sending aide unto the garrison souldiers in Leafe and Opbaly, a matter by reason of so many enemies round about, of great danger and difficulty.

F In the beginning of May, the Deputy put himselfe on his march toward Ulster, with this purpose, to divert the Earle another way, whiles Sir Henry Docwra at Logh-Foile, and Sir Matthew Morgan at Bala-Shanon planted the garrisons: which they with small adoe effected; for Sir Henry Docwra tooke Logh-Foile, and Sir John Bolle who accompanied him, tooke Don-a-long and Lhiffier castles, suppressing the rebels with divers overthrowes.

Charles Blunt
Lord Deputy.
1600.

Whiles

Whiles the Earle was every day kept occupied by the Deputy with light skirmishes, wherein he evermore had so bad successe, that hee perceived now the fortune of warre was turned, and himselfe driven back into his owne corners. The Lord Deputy being returned in Mid-June, when as the garrisons aforesaid were placed accordingly, required out of England certaine companies of souldiers and victuals, for to besett and planta a garrison also in these parts at *Armagh*, thereby to bring the Rebels within a straighter compasse.

Meane while hee tooke a journey into *Lease*, which was the place of refuge and receipt of all the Rebels in *Leinster*: where he slew *Ony-Mac-Rory-Og*, the chiefe of the *O-Mores* family, a bloody, bold, and most desperate young man; who of late had made so foule a stirre in *Mounster*; him I say he slew, with other most wicked and mischievous Rebels: and after he had layed their fields waste, hee chased them into woods and forrests, so as that in those parts they were scarcely ever after seene. When as now new succours were come out of England, although he wanted both corne and money, the Equinoxe was past, and winter weather began already in that climate, yet marched hee forward to the very entrance of *Moyery*, three miles beyond *Dondalk*. This passage is naturally the most comberfome of all others well neere in Ireland, which the Rebels had fortified and blocked up with pallisadoes and fences, with stakes pitched into the ground, with hurdles joynted together, and stones in the midst, and turfes of earth, betwixt the hills, woods, and bogges quite overthwart on both sides, with great skill and greater industry, yea and manned the place with a number of souldiers. Besides these difficulties in his way, the weather also was passing rigorous, by reason of much raine that fell continually for certaine daies together, whereby the rivers swelling high and overflowing their banks, were altogether unpasseable.

But when the waters were fallen, the English courageously brake through those pallisadoes or fences aforesaid, and having beaten backe their enemies, and overcome all difficulties, the Lord Deputy placed a garrison eight miles from *Armagh* (for at *Armagh* the Rebels had eaten up and consumed all) which in memory of Sir *John Norris*, under whom he had his first rudiments in the profession of Arms, he commanded to be called *Mount-Norris*; over which he made Captaine *E. Blany*, a stout and valiant Gentleman, who afterwards in this part, like as Sir *Henry Dourra* in the other, troubled the Rebels sore, and withall kept them forcibly in awe. In his returne (that I may passe over with silence the skuffling skirmishes which happened every day) the Rebels in the passe neere unto *Carlingford*, where they had stopped up the way, in a memorable overthrow were discomfited, and put to fearefull flight.

Some few daies after, the Lord Deputy, because hee would lose no time, entered in the very middest of winter the *Glynnes*, that is, the vallies in *Leinster*, a secure receptacle of Rebels; where having wasted the countrey, he brought *Donell Spanioh*, *Phelim Mac-Feogh*, and that tumultuous and pernicious Sept of the *O'Tuils* unto submission, and tooke hostages of them. Afterward hee went as farre as *Fereall*, and drave *Tirell*, the most approved warrior of all the Rebels, out of his own holds, or as they call it, *Fassnesses* (a place full of bogges, and beset thicke with bushes) into *Ulster*. Now by this time by fetching many a compasse was he come victorious in every place, as farre as to the frontier of *Ulster*: which he entered, and first having slaine the two sôhnes of *Ever Mac Cowley*, he laied the territory of *Fernes* waste, and sent out Sir *Richard Morison* to spoile the *Fues*. In *Breany* he placed a garrison, by the conduct of Sir *Oliver Lambard*: and turning downe to *Tredagh*, hee received into his protection and mercy such of the principall Rebels as submitted themselves; namely, *Turlough Mac-Henry*, a great man and Potentate in *Fues*, *Ever Mac Cowly*, *O-Hanlan*, who glorieth in this, that by inheritance hee is Standard-bearer to the Kings of *Ulster*, and many of the *Mac-Mahons*, and *O-Realies*, who delivered up for hostages their dearest friends and kinsfolke. The spring now approaching, before all the forces were assembled and come together, the Lord Deputy marcheth to

A to *Moyery*, where by cutting down the woods, he made the way passable, and there erected a fort: out of *Lecall* he expelled the *Mac-Geniffes*, who usurped lands there, and reduced all the Rebels fortreffes and holds about *Armagh* to his obedience: *Armagh* also he fortified with a garrison. And so farre went he forward, that hee removed the Earle from *Black-water* (who had very artificially encamped himselfe there) and purposed somewhat lower to set up a fort.

About which time many signified unto him by letters for certainty, that which he had heard before bruited by a common rumour still more and more encreased, namely, that the Spaniards were arrived in *Mounster*. So that now he was of necessity to desist and give over this prosecution in *Ulster*, and Ireland was to be defended, not so much from inward rebellion, as from forraigne enemies. And yet, left what he had already recovered should be lost againe, after he had strengthened the garrisons, he speedily posteth into *Mounster*, journeying continually with one or two companies of horse, commanding the Captaines of the footmen to follow hard after.

For whiles he was earnestly busied about the warre in *Ulster*, the Earle, and his associates the Rebels of *Mounsters* by their Agents, a certaine Spaniard elect Archbishop of *Dublin* by the Pope, the Bishop of *Clonfort*, the Bishop of *Killaloe*, and *Archer* a Jesuite, had obtained at length, with praying, intreating, and earnest beseeching at the King of Spaines hand, that succour should bee sent into *Mounster* to the Rebels, under the conduct of Don John D' Aquila, upon assured hope conceived, that all *Mounster* would shortly revolt, and the titular Earle of *Desmond*, and *Florens Mac-Cary* joine great aides unto them. But Sir George Carew the Lord President of *Mounster*, had providently before intercepted them, and sent them over into England.

Thus D' Aquila arrived at *Kinsale* in *Mounster* with two thousand Spaniards, old souldiers, and certaine Irish fugitives, the last day of October: and straightwaies having published a writing, wherein hee gloriously stileth himselfe with this title, [MASTER Generall and Captaine of the Catholick King in the warre of God, for holding and keeping the Faith in Ireland] endeavoureth to make the world beleeve, That Queene Elizabeth by the definitive sentences of the Popes was deprived of her kingdomes, and her subjects absolved and freed from their oath of allegiance, and that hee and his men were come to deliver them out of the devils clawes, and the English tyrannie. And verily with this goodly pretence, he drew a number of lewd and wicked persons to band and side with him.

The Lord Deputie, having gathered together all the Companies of souldiers that he could, prepareth himselfe to the siege: and Sir Richard *Levison* the Vice-Admirall, sent out of England with one or two of the Queenes ships to impeach all access, fore-closeth the haven. The English, when they had now encamped themselves, began from land and sea to thunder with their ordnance upon the town, and more straightly to beleaguer it round about: which siege notwithstanding was by and by not so forcibly urged; for that, on the one side, *Levison* with the sea souldiers was sent before against two thousand Spaniards newly landed, at *Bere-haven*, *Baltimor*, and *Castle Haven*, of whose ships hee funke five: on the other side the President of *Mounster*, at the same time was dispatched with certaine troupes to get the start of *O-Donell*, who was now approaching, that hee should not joyne with that new supplie of the Spaniards. But hee, when as now all the Country was over frozen, had by speedie journeyes in the night, through blind by-waies, gotten to those Spaniards newly arrived, and was not so much as once seene.

F Some few daies after, the Earle of *Tir-Oen* also himselfe came with *O-Rork*, *Raimund Burk*, *Mac-Mahon*, *Randall Mac-Surley*, *Tirell*, the Baron of *Lixnaw*, and the most select and choice of all the Rebels, unto whom when *Alphonso O Campo*, the leader of the new-come Spaniards, had joynted his forces, they mustered themselves fixe thousand footmen, and five hundred horse strong, in a confident hope of victory, because they were more in number, fresh and better furnished with all kinde of

M m m m

meanes:

meanes : whereas contrariwise the English were out-wearied with the inconvenient that follow a winter-siege, excluded from victuals ; and their horses besides, with travell and hunger together, altogether unserviceable.

In these difficulties and distresses, the Deputy consulteth with the Captaine what was to be done : Some thought the best way was to break up the siege, to retire into *Corke*, and not to hazard the whole Realme upon the fortune of one battell. Contrariwise, the Deputy adviseth and perswadeth to persist, and not to degenerate from the approved vertue of their ancestors : adding, that valiant men could not have a more wished opportunity presented unto them, than that which was now fallen into their laps; namely, either to spend their lives with glory, or to vanquish their enemies with honour. He urgeth therefore and plith the siege with all the power he had, with raising platformes, and continuall battering he plaied upon the towne, and withall, fortifieth his Campe with new trenches.

Upon the one and twentieth day of December, the Earle of *Tir-Oen* sheweth himselfe with his horse upon an hill about a mile from the campe : and there encamping himselfe, maketh a bravado likewise the next day in the same place : the night following, both the Spaniards sallied forth of the towne, and the Irish also assayed to steale into the towne, but both were forced to retire. On the three and twentieth day, the Englishmen discharge their greater peeces upon the towne, as if they had not cared for the Earle now so neere at hand, and the very same day were the letters of *D' Aquila* unto the Earle intercepted : wherein he importuned *Tir-Oen*, that the Spaniards newly arrived might bee put into the towne, and that they might assaile the campe on both sides. When the Moore was ready to rise over the horizon, the Deputy commanded Sir Henry *Poor* to leade forth into the field eight ensignes of old souldiers, and to make a stand on the West side of the campe. Sir Henry *Greame*, who that night had the charge of the horsemen that watched, very carely in the morning advertised the Deputy, that the enemies for certaine would advance forward, for that a great number of their matches were lighted. Hereupon the alarme was given throughout the campe, and companies placed wheresoever there was any way to the towne.

The Lord Deputy himselfe, with the President of *Mounster*, and Sir Richard *Wingfeld* Marshall, marched toward the watch, and withall by the advise of Sir *Olivar Lambart*, chooseth out a plot, wherein he might give battell to the enemies : Thither were brought the Ensignes and Regiments of Sir Henry *Follin*, and Sir *Olivar Saint John*, with sixe hundred sea souldiers under the conduct of Sir *Richard Levison*. But the Earle of *Tir-Oen*, who resolved (as afterwards it was knowne) to have brought into *Kinsale* by darke night the new supplie of Spaniards, and eight hundred Irishmen, when hee saw now the day to breake, and beheld withall the Marshall and Sir *Henrie Danvers* with the power of horsemen, and *Poor* with the Companies of old souldiers at the foot of the hill, being disappointed of his hope, stood still, and soone after by his bag-pipers sounded the retreat. No sooner was the Deputy certified of this retreat of his, so confused and disordered, but hee commanded the pursuitt, and himselfe advanced before the vanguard, to marke the manner of their retreat, and according to the present occasion to resolve what to doe : but so thicke a mist with a storme beside fell upon the earth, that for a time they could not see before them.

Within a while after, the weather cleering up againe, hee observed that they retired hastily for feare in three great battalions, and with the horsemen placed behind at their backs : hee fully determined therefore to charge upon them, having sent backe the President of *Mounster* with three companies of horsemen into the campe, to restraine the Spaniards, if haply out of the towne they should sallie and breake out upon them. And the Lord Deputy himselfe followed after the Rebels, with such speed in their retreat, that hee forced them to stand in the brinke of a bogge, whereunto there was no acceffe but at a foord : but when those horsemen that kept the foord were by the valour of the Marshall and

and the Earle of *Clan-Ricard* discomfited, and put to rout the other, and courageously gave the onset upon the maine troupes of the enemies horsemen, which charge when Sir *William Godolphin*, who had the leading of the Deputies horse, Sir *Henry Danvers*, *Minslow*, *Taff*, *Fleming*, and Sir *John Barkly* Sergeant Major of the Camp, who joyned with them, redoubled with so great alacrity, that the Rebels presently brake, and fell in disorder. But it was not thought good to follow the chase, but gathering their forces and power together, they charged upon the maine battell now in feare and waverings, which they also brake. *Tirell* with his company and the Spaniards all this while kept their standing, and made their ground good : against whom the Deputy putteth forward his rereward ; and that he might accomplish not onely the part of a leader in commanding, but also of a souldier in fighting, with three companies of *Oliver S. Johns*, whereof Captaine *Roe* had the conduct, chargeth violently upon them, and so brake their arraies, that in great disorder and confusion they retreated backe and betooke themselves to the Irish, by whom they were presently left unto the edge of the sword, and routed by the troupe of the Deputies horsemen, whereof Sir *William Godolphin* had the leading. Then *Tir-Oen*, *O-Donell* and the rest on all sides put to flight, slung away their weapons, and made what shift they could to save themselves. *Alphonso O Campo* was taken prisoner with three other Captaines of the Spaniards, and six ensigne bearers ; slaine there were one thousand and two hundred, nine ensignes taken, whereof six were Spanish. Of the English part scarce two men lost their lives, many were wounded, and among them Sir *Henry Danvers*, Sir *William Godolphin*, and *Croft* : so little cost this so great a victory. The Lord Deputy after he had founded the retreat, and rendred thanks unto almighty God for this victory among the dead bodies of the enemies lying thicke in heapes, gave the order of Knight-hood to the Earle of *Clan-Ricard* for his right valiant service in this battell : and thus with lucky acclamations returned victor into his Campe, which he found safe and sound from all dangers. For the Spaniards within the towne, seeing all places every way made sure with guardes, and having experience before time, that all sallies were to their losse, kept themselves at home in carefull expectation of the event.

A noble victory this was, and in many regards important, whereby Ireland most miserably distressed and ready to revolt, was retained, the Spaniards ejected, the Arch-rebell *Tir-Oen* repulst into his starting holes in *Ulster*, *O Donell* driven into Spaine, the rest of the rebellious rable scattered into sundry parts, the Princes regall authority by daunting the lawlesse insolency recovered, and within a while after a secure peace throughout the land firmly established.

The morrow after, the Lord Deputy commanded Captaine *Bodley* the Trench-master, who both in the fortifications and also in the battell had manfully borne himselfe, to finish the Mount begun, and to raise bankes and rampires neerer unto the enemy : about which when there had bene six dayes spent, *D' Aquila* in his letters sent by his Drum Major to the Deputy, craved that some Gentleman of credit might be sent into the towne, with whom he might parly.

For this purpose was Sir *William Godolphin* chosen : Unto whom *D' Aquila* signifieth, that he had found the Lord Deputy, although he were his most eager enemy, yet an honourable person, the Irish of no valour, rude and uncivil, yea and (that which hee feared) perfidious and false : That he was sent from the King of Spaine his Master, to aide two Earles, and now he doubted whether there were any such in *Retum Nanya*, considering that one tempestuous puffe of warre had blown the one of them into Spaine, the other into the North, so as they were no more to be seene. Willing therefore he was to treat about a peace, that might be good for English, and not hurtfull to Spaniards : albeit he wanted nothing requisite to the holding out of a siege, and expected every day out of Spaine fresh supplies to finde the English worke and trouble enough. To bee briefe, being as they were on both sides distressed, and weary of siege, they grew to this agreement upon the second day of January, That the Spaniards should yeeld up *Kinsale*, the Forts, and Castle at *Bahinmore*, *Berehaven*, and

and *Castle Haven*, unto the Lord Deputy, and so depart with life, with goods, and their Banners displayed; that the Englishmen should allow them shipping, paying the full price therefore, wherein they might at two severall passages saile over into Spaine: Also if they hapned in their returne homeward to arrive at any Port in England, that they might be kindly entertained: and in the meane time whiles they remained in Ireland waiting for windes, have all necessaries for sustenance ministred unto them, for their ready mony.

These things thus concluded, the Spaniards after certaine daies fitted with a good gale of winde set saile from the coast of Ireland with dishonour, as having their companies much impaired, and weake. Meane while the Earle of *Tir-Oen* in fearefull flight got him away, making as great journeyes as possibly he could, through unknown by-waies, and recovered his lurking holes in *Ulster*, after he had lost most of his men, whom the rivers risen and running violently by reason of Winter floods had swallowed up. And afterwards hee could not take his rest without care, no nor so much as breath without feare; whiles carrying an evill and burthened conscience he dreaded the due reward of his deserts, and distrusted every one; insomuch as hee fought from day to day new blind corners, and the same straightwaies he abandoned. The Deputy to refresh his wearied souldiers, bestowed them abroad in garrisons, and after he had settled the State in *Mounster*, returneth to *Dublin*. And when the winter season was past, hee by a gentle and easie march (thereby to spread a greater terrour all abroad) returneth into *Ulster* with an army well appointed, that he might with Forts and garrisons planted round about, belay the Rebels on every side, as it were, within net and toile. When he was come as far as to *Black-water*, hee transported his army upon floats; and having found a Foord unknowne before, beneath the old Fort, he erected a Fort upon the very banke, which after his owne Christian name he called *Charle-mont*. At which time the Earle of *Tir-Oen* being affrighted, set fire on his owne house at *Dunganon*. Then marcheth the Deputy forward from thence to *Dunganon*: and after hee had encamped himselfe, so soone as Sir *Henry Docwra* was come unto him from *Lagh-foile* with his company, he sent out his souldiers every way. Then might you have scene the corn-fields spoiled, the villages on every side and houses, so many as they could descry, set on fire and burned, and booties out of all parts harried. The Forts in *Lagh-Crew*, *Lagh-Reogh*, and *Mogher-Le-cowe* (where Sir *John Barkley*, a most valiant martiall man was shot through with a bullet) were yeilded up, hee planted a garrison at *Lagh-Eaugh*, or *Lagh-Sidney*, which after the title of his owne honour he named *Mont-joy*, and gave unto Sir *Arthur Chichester* (who by the demerit of his vertue is now Lord Deputy of Ireland) the charge and command thereof; another likewise at *Monaghan*, which hee committed unto Sir *Christopher St. Laurence*: who being leaders of great experience, and greater courage, what with often sallies, and what with traverse journeyes made too and fro, so coursed and crossed the rebels, that they seeing themselves environed with E garrisons planted round about them, and every day hemmed in and penned in more streightly, that now like wilde beasts of a rascall kinde they must seeke holes and lurk among the thickets, in forrests and woods; most of them changed their copie, and as their fortune, so their fidelity altered, and every one of them began secretly to submit themselves to the Deputy, striving a vic who should be first; muttering and complaining closely of *Tir-Oen*, that he had engaged the ruine of the whole nation for his own private discontentments; that this war was only necessary to him, but most pernicious to them: neither was the Earle ignorant that both the force and fidelity also of his people and followers was now sore shaken: he determined therefore to prevent the worst, as being weary of misery and calamity, and yet in some hope also of life, F which sometimes overmatch the stoutest. By most submissive letters therefore sent now and then to the Queen, wherein with earnest praier and teares he besought pardon for his fault, casting himselfe downe in humble and lowly wise; and she observed in him such tokens of true repentance, that (as she was a most milde and mercifull Prince) shee gave authority unto the L. Deputy to take him to mercy and favour, in case

A case he earnestly craved it. And craved it he did (when hee had heard so much from those that affected and loved him) continually by the most earnest mediation of *Arish Mac Baron* his brother, and others: and being often rejected, at length in the moneth of February, after he had promised absolutely, and without any condition, to submit his life and all that he had unto the Queene, the Deputy, who had some intelligence out of the Court in England from his inward friends, that the Queene, now farre steep in yeeres, was dangerously sicke, condescended that the Earle might repaire unto *Mellifont*: and thither forthwith came he out of his lurking holes in all speed, accompanied with one or two, and no more. Being admitted into the chamber of B presence (where the L. Deputy with a number of martiall men about him was set in a chaire of estate, in the very entry of the place) he in poore and foule array, with a dejected countenance, bewraying his forlorne estate, falleth downe upon his knees, and when hee had so kneeled a while, the Lord Deputy signified unto him that hee should approach neerer: whereupon he rose up, and after he had stepped in lowly manner some few paces forward, he kneeled downe againe, and cast himselfe prostrate like a most humble suppliant. He acknowledgeth his sinne to God, and fault unto his most gracious Prince and soveraigne Lady Queene Elizabeth, in whose royall clemency and mercy lay the onely hope that he had now remaining, to whose pleasure he submitte wholly and absolutely his life and whole estate. He most demisely beseecheth, that whose bound C isfull favour in times past, and mighty power now of late he had felt and found, he might now have experience of her mercifull lenity, and that he might be for ever the example of her Princely clemency. For neither was his age as yet so unserviceable, nor his body so much disabled, ne yet his courage so daunted, but that by his valiant and faithfull service in her behalf, he could expiate and make satisfaction for this most disloyall rebellion. And yet, to extenuate his crime, he began to say, that through the malicious envy of some, he had bin very hardly and unreasonably dealt with. As he was enforcing this point further, the Deputy interrupted him, and cut off his speech; and after a few words, delivered with great authority (which in a martiall man doth stand in stead of eloquence) to this effect, that there was no excuse to be made for so grievous and hainous a crime, with D few other words, he commanded him to withdraw himselfe: and the next day carried him away with him toward *Dublin*, purposing to bring him from thence into England before Queene Elizabeth, that shee might determine at her pleasure what to doe with him. But in this meane time, that most excellent Princeesse, a little after that she had intelligence (that nothing might be wanting to the accomplishment of her glory) how this rebellion was extinguished, which had not a little disquieted her, departed godly and peaceably out of this transitory life into the eternall.

Thus the warre of Ireland, or the rebellion rather of the Earle of *Tir-Oen*, begun upon private grudges and quarrels intermeddled with ambition, cherished at first by contempt, and sparing of charges out of England, spread over all Ireland (under E the colourable pretence of restoring libertie and Romish Religion) continued by untoward emulation of the English, and covetousnesse of the old souldiers, protracted by the subtil wiles and fained submissions of the Earle, by the most cumbrous and disadvantageous difficulty of the countrey, and by a desperate kinde of people, saving themselves more by good footmanship than their valour, confirmed through the light credulity of some, and the secret favour of others that were in place of authority, heartened with one or two fortunate encounters, fed and fomented with Spanish money and Spanish supplies, in the eighth yeere after it first brake out, under the happy direction of Queene Elizabeth of sacred memorie, and the fortunate conduct of the Lord Deputy Sir *Charles Blunt* Baron of *Mont-joy* (whom afterwards in regard F hereof King *James* created Earle of *Devonshire*) was most happily dispatched, and firme peace, as we hope, for ever established.

THE MANERS OF THE IRISHRY, BOTH OF OLD AND OF LATER TIMES.

The manners of the Irishry, or wild Irish.



He place requireth now, that I should adde somewhat of the maners of this people: and that verily will I doe, as touching their ancient behaviour, out of ancient Historiographers: and concerning the latter, out of a moderne writer both learned and diligent, who hath set downe these matters most exactly.

As concerning the Irish of ancient times, when as they were, as all other nations beside in this tract, barbarous and savage, thus much have old authors recorded.

Strabo in his fourth booke of Ireland, saith, *I can deliver nothing for certaine, but that the inhabitants thereof are more rude than the Britains, as who both feed upon mans flesh, and also devoure exceeding much meat; yea and they thinke it a point of honesty to eat the bodies of their dead parents, and wantonly to have company not onely with other mens wives, but even with their owne mothers and sisters. Which things verily we relate so, as having no witnesses hereof that be of sufficient credit. Certes the report goes, that the manner of the Scythians is to eat mans flesh; and it is recorded of the Gauls, Spaniards, and many more besides, that by occasion of urgent necessity and extremities of siege, that they have done the same.*

Pomponius Mela in his third book writeth thus: *The inhabitants are uncivil, ignorant of all virtues, and utterly void of religion.*

Solinus in the 24. chapter, *when they have achieved any victory, the blood of those that are slaine they first drinke, and then besmeare their faces with it. Right and wrong is allone with them. A woman lying in childbed, if she have at any time brought forth a man childe, laicth the first meat she gives it upon her husbands sword, and with the very point thereof putteth it softly into the infants mouth, in as much as it were of the nourishment it shall have hereafter; and with certaine heathensh vowes wisheih, That it may dye no otherwise than in warre and by the sword. They that endeavour to be more handsome and civill than the rest, make their sword handles gay with the teeth of great whales, and such sea monsters, for they be as white as Ivory. And why? the men take a principall pride and glory in the keeping of their weapons faire and bright.*

But these fashions favour of greater antiquity. Their conditions of the middle time Giraldus Cambrensis hath here and there treated of, and out of him others. But now for their later demeanour, take them here with you out of that foresaid Moderne writer, a studious and painefull man, and that in his owne words: who, as I collect, was named *I. Good*, brought up in Oxford, by profession and calling a Priest, and who about the yeere of our Lord 1566. taught the Schoole at *Limrick*. But first I will briefly premise, according to my promise made even now, somewhat as touching the manner of the jurisdiction that is used among the meere Irish, out of others.

Their great men and Potentates, whose names have the fourth vowel (O) put before them, as a mark of prehemincence & excellency, as *O-Neal, O-Rork, O-Donel, &c.* and many of the rest, to whose name (*Mac*) is prefixed, have peculiar rights and privileges of their owne, whereby they domineere and Lord it most proudly, and what with tributes, exactions, payments, and impositions upon their subjects, for their souldiers, *Gallglasse*, *Kernes*, and horsemen, whom they are to finde and maintaine, they so prey upon their goods and estates, and oppresse them at their owne pleasure, that the condition of all those which live under them is most miserable: and so often as there be any civill wars risen among them, they sucke out of them their very marrow and heart blood.

These Nobles or Potentates aforesaid have their Lawyers belonging unto them, whom they terme *Brehons*, like as the Gothes named theirs *Belagines*: who being

O prefixed to the names of the Noblest men in Ireland, by way of excellency.

Brehons.

ing a sort of most unlearned men, upon certaine set daies, on the top of some exceeding high hill, sit to minister justice unto the neighbour inhabitants, betweene such as are at variance and goe to law. Before which Judges, the Plaintiffs with a pitifull voice make moane, and complaine of the wrongs offered unto them: the defendants stand firmly upon their deniall. If any bee convict evidently of theft, they give sentence either to make restitution of the same, or recompence by a fine imposed upon them. These Potentates also have their Historians about them, who write downe their acts and deeds; they have their Physitians also, and Rimers, whom they call *Bards*; yea and their Harpers, who have every one of them their severall livelods and lands set out for them: and of these, there be in each territorie, severall professours and those liable to some certaine and severall families: that is to say, the *Brehons* bee of one stocke and name, the Historians of another, and so of the rest, who instruct their owne children or kinsmen every one in their owne art, and have some of them alwaies to be their succellors. Now, among these great Lords and Nobles, there is no hereditarie right of succession observed, but whosoever of any principall house is of greater puissance in regard of strength, retinewes of followers, and boldnesse, he by a certaine faction or election of the people in that province, usurpeth the Lordship and soveraigntie over the rest, quite excluding the sonnes, nephewes, and next in blood of the party deceased: and so with certaine complements of barbarous ceremonies is enthronized in the open aire, upon a little hill for that purpose appointed, upon a Stone for a chaire of estate. At which time also, by a certaine law called *Tanistry*, there is sometime nominated and declared a succellour, who is termed *Tanist*, I wote not whether by a word borrowed from the Danes, among whom, as among the Northren inhabitants of Britaine, *Thane* was a long time used for a noble man, and the Kings especial officer.

Professions hereditary.

Tanistry.

But whereas I have incidently hapned of better observations concerning this *Brehon* law and *Tanistry*, diligently collected by Sir *John Davis*, his Majesties Attorney generall in Ireland, I hope I may, with his good leave, impart some of them to publicke knowledge in his owne words.

The severall countries or territories possessed by the Irishrie were in number 60. and upwards, and some being greater and some lesse, did in extent and scope of land contain two parts of the Kingdome at least: in every one of these countries there was a chiefe Lord or Captaine, and under him a *Tanist*, which was his successor apparent: both these were elected of the country, who commonly made choice of such as were most active, and had most swordmen and followers depending upon him. The chiefe Lord had certaine lands in Demesne, which were called his *Loghtii*, or menfall lands in Demesne, where he placed his principall officers, namely, his *Brehon*, his *Marshall*, his Cupbearer, his Physitian, his Surgeon, his Chronicler, his Rimer, and others: which offices and professions were hereditarie and peculiar to certaine septs and families.

Hee had also small rents of money, and Cowes, and customarie duties of Oate-meale, Butter, and the like, out of the lands in the Countrey, except the lands of the Church, and such of his kinsmen and followers to whom he granted a speciall discharge or freedome. Besides he had a generall tallage or cutting high or low, at his pleasure upon all the inheritance, which hee tooke commonly when he made warre either with his neighbours, or against the Crowne of England, or made a journey to the State, or gave any entertainment; so as the whole profits of the countrey were at his disposition when hee listed: and so made the inhabitants like the viliaines of England, upon whom their Lords had power *Tallier Haut* and *Bas*, as the phrase of our law is, whereupon the English call this kind of exaction by the name of cutting. This chiefe Lord had his Cosharies upon his tenants, that is, he and his would lie upon them untill they had eate up all their provisions; he would likewise employ upon them his horsemen, his kernes, his horse boyes, his dogges boyes, and the like, to be fed and maintained by them, which kept the poore people in continuall slavery and beggerie.

The

" The *Tanist* had also a speciall portion of land, and certaine Chiefrie proper to the *A*
 " *Tanist*, and within the limits of his portion he had also his cuttings and his *Colburies*.
 " the rest of the land being distributed among severall septs, every sept had a Chiefe
 " or *Caninie*, as they called him, with a *Tanist* of that sept, both which were chosen by
 " the chiefe Lord or Capitaine of the countrie, and had likewise their severall portions
 " and Chiefries. These Captainships or Chiefries were not partable, but were entire-
 " ly enjoyed by such as were elected thereunto.

" All the rest of the lands, except the portions of the Cheifes and *Tanists*, descended
 " in course of Gavelkind, and were partable among the Males onely; in which division
 " the Bastards had their portions as well as the Legitimate.

" For offences and matters criminall, none was so hainous or of so high a nature as
 " that it was capitall, for treason against the chiefe Lord, and murder were fineable,
 " the fine they called an *Erick*, which was assessed by the Lord and his *Brehons*.

" In case of treason the Lord had all the fine, in case of murder the Lord had one
 " moitie, and the kindred of the partie slaine the other moitie: so as they never for-
 " feited their possessions or their lands for any offence. Howbeit their lands were sei-
 " zed by the Lord for their fines, untill the same were levied thereupon, and then resto-
 " red. Rape was finable in like sort, but theft deserved praise and reward, if the stealth
 " were brought into the countrie; because the Lord had a share, and the countrie there-
 " by became the richer.

" But the theft committed in the countrie and carried out, if the thiefe were appre-
 " hended before his friend made offer of his fine, hee was commonly punished with
 " death. But the Lord in that case might take an *Erick* if he would.

" Upon the stealth of any cattell, if the owner followed the tract (wherein the Irish
 " are incredible cunning, insomuch as they will find the same by the bruising of a
 " grasse in the summer time) if the party unto whose land the tract is brought cannot
 " make it off to some other land, he is to answer the stealth to the owner. And this be-
 " ing an Irish law or custome, is at this day observed both by the English and Irish, the
 " same being ratified by an act of Counsell in the Earle of Suffex his government, as
 " fit and necessarie for that Kingdome.

" The *Brehons*, assisted by certaine Scholars, who had learned many rules of the ci-
 " vill and Canon law, rather by tradition then by reading, gave judgement in all cau-
 " ses, and had the eleventh part of the thing adjudged for their fee, and the chiefe
 " Lords Marshall did execution.

" These are the principall rules and grounds of the *Brehon* law, which the makers of
 " the Statutes of *Kilkenny* did not without cause call a lewd custome; for it was the
 " cause of much lewdnesse and barbarisme. It gave countenance and encourage-
 " ment to theft, rape, and murther, it made all possessions uncertaine, whereby it came
 " to passe that there was no building of houses, and townes, nor education of children
 " in learning or civility, no exercise of trades, or handicrafts, no improvement or ma-
 " nuring of lands, no industry or vertue in use among them, but the people were bred
 " in loosenesse and idlenesse, which hath beene the true cause of all the mischeifes and
 " miseries in that Kingdome.

" Now forward, take with you the observations of the said *Good*: and thus much
 " will I speake before hand for the man, that in nothing he shooeth at reproach, but
 " aimeth all at truth, and speaketh onely of those uncivill and meere Irish, that lie
 " shrowded in the utmost coasts, and have not as yet suited themselves with civill
 " qualities and conditions.

" And to speake in generall of them all, this Nation is strong of bodie, and pas-
 " sing nimble, stout and haughty in heart, for wit quicke, martiall, prodigall, and care-
 " lesse of their lives, enduring travell, cold and hunger, given to fleshly lust, kind and
 " courteous to strangers, constant in love, in enmitie implacable, light of believe, gree-
 " die of glorie, impatient of abuse and injurie, and as hee said in old time, in all affecti-
 " ons most vehement and passionate? If they be bad, you shall no where meet with worse:
 " if they be good, you can hardly find better.

Generally

Girald, Cam-
 bren.

" Generally, they give unto their children when they come to holy baptisme profane
 " names, adding alwayes somewhat to the name, taken either from some event, or an old wife,
 " or else some colour, as red, white, blacke: or else from a disease, scab, and peeldnesse, or
 " from one vice or other, as these, proud, &c. and albeit they be of all men most impatient
 " of reproach, yet these noble men of theirs, even they that have the letter [O] prefixed to
 " their names, disdaine not those additions. The name of the Parent, or any of the same
 " kinred then living, it is not lawfull to give unto children: for they are perswaded that
 " their death is hastened thereby. But when the father is dead, then the sonne assumeth his
 " name, lest the name should be lost: and if any Ancestour of that name were a redoubted
 " B warrior, the like prowesse and valour is expected from him. This opinion is increased
 " by their Poets, Bardes, or Rimers, who keepe the exploits of those ancient Progeniours
 " recorded in writing, which they peece out with many high praises and fables devised of
 " their owne braines; whereby these Rimers or Bardes grow rich. For newwedded brides,
 " and women in childbed thinke themselves discredited, if they bestow not upon one of these
 " Praise-prayers, the best garments they have. Mothers, after six daies that they be brought
 " a bed, companie with their husbands afresh, and put forth their young babes to nurse.

" They that be of the more noble parentage shall have a number of nourses repaire unto
 " them streight waies from far, which make suit for the nourcing of the infant; and of these
 " foster children they make more account than of their own which they beare. And although
 " C they are most intemperate, by reason of the distemperature of the aire, and the moisture
 " both of the ground, and of their meates; in regard also that all law is exiled; and albeit
 " they thinke it is a shame for themselves to give their owne children the breast, yet for this
 " their nurcelings sake, both man and wife abstaine from carnall company together. And if
 " they doe otherwise, they entertaine another nourse under them at their owne charges. And
 " nourses there be among them as many well neere as there are young wenches for their ser-
 " vants: and to have the suckling of the little child, they count a sufficient reward for being
 " naught of their bodies. Now if this infant fortune to bee sicke, they all to besprinkle it
 " with the stalest urine they can get; and for a preservative against all misfortunes, they
 " hang about the childrens neckes, not onely the beginning of Saint Johns Gospell, but also a
 " D crooked naile taken out of an horses shooe, or else a piece of a wolves skin. And for that
 " purpose, as well nourses as infants, wear girdles platted of womens haire. To their lovers
 " also, it is knowne, they send bracclets finely wrought of these haire: whether their minde
 " is herein of Venus girdle called Cestus, I wote not: The Foster-fathers take much more
 " paines, bestow more goods by farre, and shew greater love unto their foster children than
 " they doo to their owne children: From them, these children not so much by due claime of
 " right receive, as by force wrest, even with taking stresses, and driving away booties, appa-
 " rell, maintenance for their pleasures, money wherewith to buy them armour, yea and to spend
 " in all kind of their lewdnesse; their dowries also and stockes of cattell. All those that have
 " been nourced by the same woman, love one another more deerely, repose greater trust in
 " E them, than if they were their naturall whole brethren and sisters; insomuch as in compari-
 " son of these and for their sakes, they even hate their naturall brethren and sisters.

" Be they reproved at any time by their own parents, they flie to these their foster-fathers,
 " and being heartened by them, breake out oftentimes even unto open war against their said
 " parents; taking instructions from them to all lewd and villanous pranks, they become most
 " ungracious and desperate. Semblably, the nourses traine up those maidens which they
 " reare, to all obscenity and filthinesse. If any of these foster children chance to fall sicke, a
 " man would not beleve how quickly their nourses heare of it, yea though they dwell many a
 " mile off, how pensively they attend and watch by the sicke body night and day. To conclude,
 " the greatest corruptions of Ireland, are thought to spring from these foster-fathers and
 " F nourses, and from nought else.

" That these Irish people are both of an hotter and moisture nature than other nations, we
 " may well conjecture. And thus we gather by their wonderfull soft skin: which doubtlesse
 " cometh as well by the nature of the soile, as by certaine artificiall bathings and exercise
 " that they use. By reason also of the same tendernesse of their muscles, they so excell in nim-
 " blesse and flexibility of all parts of the body, as it is incredible. Given they are to idleness
 " above

above all things : they reckon it the greatest riches to take no paine, and count it the most A pleasure to enjoy liberty. Delighted they are above measure in musick, but especially in the harpe with wire-strings, which they warble upon with their nimble fingers most melodiously. Doe any of them betake themselves to religion, a wonder it is to see how they mortifie and keepe their bodies under, with a devout kind of austerity, watching, praying, and making themselves leane with much fasting : so that it is no marvell which is written of their monkes in the age afore going. Yea the very women and young maidens fast duely upon every Wednesday and Saturday throughout the whole yeere. Some of them also fast upon Saint Katharines festivall day : and thus they faile not to doe upon Christmas day, if so fall out, even when they be most grievously sicke. Some make this to bee the cause for B maidens, that they may be sped with good husbands; for wives, that they may change for a better marriage, either by the death of their husbands, or by forsaking them, or at leastwise by alteration of their conditions. But they that have once given themselves over to lewdnesse, are more lewd than lewdnesse it selfe. Their garments they die with the barkes of trees, that English men name Alders : they use also Elder-berries to colour their wooll yellow. With the boughes, barke and leaves of the poplar tree bruised and stamped, they staine their large wide shirts with a saffran colour, which now are almost out of use, and adding therunto the rine of the wild Arbut tree, salt together with saffran. And whate- ever they die, they doe not so much boile it long over the fire, as drench and keepe the same for certaine daies together among other things in cold urine of man or woman, that the C yellow colour may be more durable.

They account it no shame or infamie to commit robberies, which they practise every where with exceeding cruelty. When they goe to rob, they poure out their prayers to God. That they may meet with a booty : and they suppose, that a cheat or booty is sent unto them from God as his gift : neither are they perswaded, that either violence, or rapine, or manslaughter displeaseth God : for in no wise would be present unto them this opportu- nity, if it were a sinne; nay a sin it were if they did not lay hold upon the said opportunity. You shall heare these Cut-throats and Incendiaries come out with these words, Gods mercifull, and will not suffer the price of his blood to be of no eff. A in me. More- over, they say, that they walke in their fathers steps; that this manner of life was left unto D them : also, that it were a disparagement of their nobility, if they would get their living by handie labour, and forbear committing such faults. As they are setting forth to a bur- haling, or to doe any other businesse, they marke whom they meet first in the morning : if they speed well, they lay for to meet with him oft : if otherwise, they heedfully avoid him. To sleepe and snore in a most stormie night, and not to dispatch a very long way by night on foot, nor to adventure upon any danger whatsoever in spoiling and robbing, they take to be tokens of a base and abject minde.

Of late daies, they spare neither Churches nor hallowed places, but thence also they fill their hands with spoile : yea and sometimes they set them on fire, and kill the men that there lie hidden : And the cause hereof, is the most filthy life of their Priests, who of E Churches make profane houses, and keepe harlots, who follow them whithersoever they goe; but when they are cast off, seeke cunning devices to doe mischief by poisons. The Priests Lemans and their bastards abide within the circuit of a Church, drunke untill they be drunke, lie together, shed blood, and keepe up their cattell there.

Among those wild Irish, there is neither divine service, nor any forme of Chappell but outwardly : no Altars at all, or else they be filthy polluted : the image of the Rood or Crosse defaced, if there be any at all. The sacred vestiments are so foule and nasty that they would make one to cast up his stomacke : The altar portable, without any crosses emprinted upon it, and by some abuse or other polluted : The Massal or Masse booke all torne, and bereft of the Canon; yet the same is sendred to all oaths and perjuries; the Chalice of lead, with- out a cover to it, the samll vessels for wine made of a borne. The Priests mind nothing but gathering of goods and getting of children.

The Parsons play the Vicars, and that of many Parishes together : they make a great shew of the Canon Law, but have never a jot of learning.

They have their children to succeed them in their Churches, for whose illegitimation they are

are dispenced with. These will not take the order of Priest-hood, but commit the charge to the Curates without any stipend, that they may live by the booke, that is, upon some small gift or oblation at the baptisme, inunction, and buriall, wherewith God wor, they live most bare and miserable.

These Priests sonnes that follow not their studies, prove for the most part notorious thieves. For they that carry the name of Mac-Decan, Mac-Pherfon, Mac-Ospac, that is, the Deanes or Dracons son, the Parsons son, and the Bishops sonne, are the strong- est thieves that be, and the more able by their Parents liberality to raise a power of unruly rebels; and the rather, because following their fathers steps, they maintaine hospitality. B As for the daughters of these Priests, if their fathers be living, they are set forth with good portions; in case they wed : but if their fathers be dead, either they bregge or prostitute their bodies.

At every third word is ordinary with them to lash out an oath, namely, by the Trinity, by God, by S. Patrick, by S. Brigid, by their Baptism, by Faith, by the Church, by my God-fathers hand, and by thy hand. And albeit by these they sweare, with the sacred Bible or Missal laid most religiously upon their bare heads, yea and be forsworne, yet if one say they stand in danger of damnation for perjury, you shall heare them straightwaies cry aloud, The Lord is mercifull, and will not suffer the price of his blood shed for me, to be of no effect in me. Never shall I goe to hell, repent I or repent I not. But for the C performance of promise, and that a man may beleve them, these three points with them be of greatest weight to bind them. First, if one sweare at the altar, touching the booke lying open, and the same laid on the crown of his head. Secondly, if he take to record some Saint, whose crooked staffe or bell he touche and kisseth. Thirdly, if he sweare by the band of an Earle, or of his owne Lord, or some mighty person : for then, if he be convicted of perjury by the two former, he incurres infamy; but in case hee be forsworne by the third, the said mighty man will wring from him perforce a great summe of mony, and a number of Cowes; as if by that perjury the greatest abuse and injury that might be were offered unto his name. For cowes are their only wealth, and of greatest esteeme. Touching which cattell, this seemeth not unworthy the observation.

D Most certain it is (as hee writeth) that cowes in Ireland give no milke, unlesse their own calfe be set by their side alive, or else the skin of the dead calfe staffed with straw, so as it may carry the resemblance of a live one, for in that skin they acknowledge the sent, as it were, of their owne wombe. If a cow goe dry or hold up their milke, they send for a witch, who by herbes may cause her to cast her love upon another cowes calfe, that so she may give downe her milke.

Town-dwellers seldome make any contract of marriage with them of the country, and these passe their promise not for present, but for the future time; or else give assent without any deliberation. Whence it is, that for every light falling out they part asunder, the hus- band to another woman, the wife to another husband; neither is it ever knowne for cer- E tainty whether their contracts have been true or false, before they give up their last gaspe. Hence rise contentions about the possession of lands, hence grow robberies, depredations, slaughters, and deadly hatred. The women that are cast off goe to witches for counsell, who are thought verily to bring upon the former husband, or his new married wife, either barrennesse or impotency in the act of generation, or else most dangerous diseases. For all of them are marvellously prone to incest, and nothing is there so common as divorces under pretence of conscience. The women as well as the men make great account of the haire or gibbes of their heads, especially if they be of a golden colour, and long withall : for they shew and lay them out platted to the full length in a bravery, and suffer them when they are finely and trimly curled to hang downe : when in the meane time they wrap in foldes and F rolls about their head many ells of the finest linnen or sendall. This kinde of coronet or head-tire they all weare that are able to get it, after their child-birth, wheiber it bee in wedlocke, or by playing the whores.

To these may be added a number of superstitions. I cannot tell wheiber the wilder sort of the Irishry yeeld divine honour unto the Moone; for when they see her first after the change,

change, commonly they bow the knee, and say over the Lords prayer, and so soone as they have made an end, they speake unto the Moone with a loud voice in this manner: Leave us as whole and sound as thou hast found us. They take unto them themselves to be their Gods, whom they tearme Chari Christi, praying for them and wishing them well, and so they are not afraid to be hurt by them. The shoulder blade bone of a sheep, when the flesh is cleane taken from it, they use to looke through, and thereby foretell of some course shortly to be carried out of that house, if they see any darke or dusky spot in it. They take heed for a wicked woman and a witch, what ever she be, that commeth to fetch fire from them on May day (neither will they give any fire then, but unto a sick body, and that with a curse): for because they thinke the same woman will the next Summer steale away all their butter. If they finde an hare amongst their beads of cattell on the said May day, they kill her, for they suppose shee is some old trot that would filch away their butter. They are of opinion, that their butter if it be stolen will soone after bee restored againe, in case they take away some of the batch that hangeth over the doore of the house, and cast it into the fire. And upon these Calends, or first day of May, they fully beleve that to set a greene bough of a tree before their houses, will cause them to have great abundance of milke all summer long.

In their townes, when any Magistrate entreth first upon his office, the wives along the streets, and the Maidens out of windowes, bestrew them and their followers with wheat and salt. And before they sow their seed in the corne field, the Goodwife or Maistresse of the house sendeth salt to the said field. That the Kites may not swoope away their chickens, they hang up in some place of the house-roofe the egge-shells out of which the said chickens were hatched. To rubbe their horse beeles, or to curry their bodies with a curry-combe, or to gather grasse to meat them with, it is not lawfull upon a Sunday; whereas they will not sicke to doe all this upon other dayes, be they never so high and festivall.

If they never give fire out of the house unto their neighbours, they are perswaded their horses shall live the longer, and continue sound.

If the owners of horses eat egges, they must looke unto it that they be even in number, otherwise their horses will be in danger. Horse-breakers and horse-keepers are forbidden to eat egges. A custome there is also among them, that horsemen after they have eaten egges doe wash their hands. When an horse is dead, they hang up his feet and legges in the house, yea their very hoofes are esteemed as an hallowed and sacred relique.

In no case must you praise an horse or any other beast, untill you say, God save him, or unlesse you spit upon him. If any harme befall the horse within three dayes after, they seeke him out that praised him, that he may mumble the Lords Prayer in his right care. They thinke there bee some that bewitch their horses with looking upon them: and then they use the helpe of some old haggis, who saying a few Prayers with a loud voice, make them well againe. There is a certaine small worme breeding in their horses feet, which creeping on still by little and little, breedeth a great many of the same kinde, and corrupteth the body: Against this worme they send for a wise woman, who is brought to the horse on two severall Mondais, and one Thursday. She breatheth upon the place where the worme lieth; and after shee hath rehearsed a charme, the horse recovereth. This charme they teach many for a piece of money, making them to sweare that they will not reveale it to any body.

Against all maladies and mischiefs whatsoever, the women have effectuall enchantments or charmes, as they suppose, divided and parted amongst them, each one her severall enchantment, and the same of divers forces; unto whom every man, according as his mischance requirith, speedeth himselfe for helpe. They say alwaies both before and after their charmes, a Pater Noster and an Ave Maria.

When any man hath caught a fall upon the ground, forthwith hee starteth up againe on his feet, and turneth himselfe round three times toward his right hand, with his sword, skeine, or knife hee diggeth into the earth, and fetcheth up a turf, for that, they say, the earth doth yeeld a spirit: and if within some two or three daies

A diuer he of this kinde, there is found a woman skilfull in this kind unto the said place, and there shee saith unto his wife, I call thee Ra. From thence Eastward unto South and North, from the forests, woodes, rivers, meeres, the wilde wood fayries, white, red, black, &c. and with all, holdest out certaine flouds of waters: then returneth shee home unto the sicke party, and whistereib shee this disease called Efaues, which they are of opinion is sent by the Fairies; and whistereib a certaine odde prater with a Pater Noster in his ear, puerib some cauls into a pus stufte paine murther, and so giveth more certain judgement of the disease, than many of our Physicians can.

There were not fewe confidant of horsemen, of souldiours set in the rene-guard, whom they terme Gallloghassies, who fight with most keene hachets, and of light armed footmen called Kernes, whose service is to combat and skaners. To give an acclamation, and shout unto a party footmen or horsemen as they goeth out of the gate, is counted lucky and fortunate: he who hath no such apparitions thought to have some mischance portended unto him. In war they use the bagpipe in stead of a trumpet, they carry about them Amulets, they recite certaint prayers, or maintaining their cry as loud as possible they can, Pharroh (I suppose this to be the military Barritus which Ammianus speaketh of) with this perswasion, that he who crieth not as loud as the rest, shall have this accident befall unto him, suddenly to be taken up from the ground, and carried, as it were, flying in the aire, avoiding ever after the sight of men into a certaine vale in Kerry, as I have said before.

Such as refuse and sit by one that lieth sicke in bed, never speake word of God, nor of his salvation, or his soules, nor yes of making his will, but al to put him in hope of his recovering: If any one call for the sacraments, him they count past hope and recovery. The women passe not for any milk-making, because it is growne now to be a common custome that a third part of the goods shall be given unto them, and the rest to be divided by even portions among the children, saving that when they come to enter upon the inheritance, be that it might itselfe be a third part of the best share. For he that is strongest, he he uncle or nephew, most times searceh upon the inheritance, and thrusteth the children out of all, when one lieth ready to die, before he is quite gone, certaine women, hired of purpose to lament, standing in the meeing of crosse high-wayes, and holding their hands all abroad, call unto him with certain out-cries fitted for the moene, and goe about to stay his soule, as it laboureth to get forth of the bodie, by reckoning up the commodities that be enjoyers of worldly goods, of wives, of beauty, fame, kinsfolke, friends, and horses; and demanding of him why he will depart? and whither? and to whom? yea they expostulate with his soule, objecting that he is unthankfull. At length they piteously make moane, and say, that the soule now ready to leave the body is going away to these kinde of haggish women that appeare by night and in darknesse: but after it is departed once out of the body, they keepe a mourning and wailing for it, with loud howling and clapping of their hands together. Now they follow the corps when it goes to buriall with such a peale of out-cries, that a man would thinke the quicke as well as the dead past all recoverie. In these wailings and lamentations the nurses, daughters and concubines make the greatest adoe, and are most vehement. Neither doe they mourne with lesse sorrow and heavinesse for those that are slaine in battaile, than such as die of sicknesse: although they affirme, that they have an easier death who lose their lives in fighting in the field, or in robbing. Yet notwithstanding they raile upon their enemies with most spitefull words, and continue for a long time deadly hatred against all of that sect and kindred.

They suppose that the soules of such as are deceased goe into the company of certaine men, famous in those places, touching whom they retaine still fables and songs, as of Giants, Fin-Mac-Huyle, Osker Mac-Othin, and they say that by illusion they often times doe see such.

As for their meats, they feed willingly upon herbs, and watercreffes especially, upon mushromes, shamroots, and roots: so that Strabo not without good cause said they were *mushromi*, i. Eaters of herbes, for which in some copies is falsly read *mushromi*. Great Eaters. They delight also in butter tempered with oate-meale, in milke, whey, beefe-broth, and flesh oftentimes without any bread at all. As for the corne that

Gallloghassies,
Kernes.

Barritus.

Water-creffes.
Shamroots.

Nann

that

that they have, they lay it up for their horses provender, for whom verily they are especially carefull. When they be hunger bitten in time of dearth, they disdain not to devour raw flesh, after they have pressed out the blood thereof: and for to concoct and digest it, they swill in and poure down the throat Uskebah draught after draught. They let their kine blood also, which when it is growne to a gelly, and strewed over with butter, they eat with good appetite.

They goe for the most part bare headed, unlesse it bee when they put on an head-piece. The haire of their head they weare long, and nothing set they greater store by than the glibbes or tresses of their haires; and to have the same plucked or twitched, they take it for a contumelious indignitie. They use linnen shirts, and those verily exceeding large, with wide sleeves, and hanging side downe to their very knees, which they were wont to staine with saffron. Little Jackets they have of woollen, and those very short: breeches most plaine and close to their thighes. But they cast over these their mantles or shagge rugges, which *Isidore* seemeth to call *Heteromalle*, with a deepe fringed purple, and the same daintily set out with sundrie colours; within which they lappe themselves in the night, and sweetly sleepe on the very ground. Such also doe the women cast over the side garment that they weare downe to the foot, and with elnes (as I said) of Sendall rolled up in wreathes, they rather load than adorne their heads; like as they doe their neckes with chaines and carkaneth, their armes also with bracelets. These are the manners of the wild Irish, out of our Author: In the rest, for the most part all that inhabite the English Pale (as they tearme it) there is no point of curtesie and civilitie wanting: for which they are beholden to the English conquest: and for much more might the whole Island bee beholden unto it, in case upon a certaine peevish and obstinate love they beare unto their owne country fashions, they had not stopped up their eares and shut up their hearts against better governance. For the Irishry are so stiffly settled in observing of the old rites of their country, that not onely they cannot be withdrawn from them, but also are able easily to draw the English unto the same (so prone is mans nature to entertain the worst) that one would not beleeve in how short a time some English among them degenerate and grow out of kinde.

THE

A PRAEFACE TO THE ANNALES OF IRELAND.

Hus far forward was the Printers presse a going when the Honourable Lord William Howard of Naworth, for the love that he beareth unto the studies of Antiquity, willingly imparted unto me the Manuscript Annales of Ireland, from the yeere of our Salvation MCLII. unto the yeere MCCCLXX. Which I thought good to publish; considering that after Giraldus Cambrensis, there is nothing to my knowledge, extant better in this kind; and because so noble and worthy a person, whose they were by right in private before, permitted so much. Unto whom, the very same thanks in manner are duly to be yeilded for bringing them to light, that were to be given unto the authour himselfe, who first recorded them in writing. And albeit they are penned in a stile somewhat rude and barrain (as those times required) yet much matter is therein contained, that may illustrate the Irish Historie, and would have given good light unto mee, if they had not come to my hands so late. Take them here therefore truly and faithfully exemplified, even as I found them, with all their imperfections and faults; and if you have any better, impart them with semblable courtesie unto us; if not, make use of these with us, untill some one come forth and shew himselfe, that will helpe us to a fuller Chronicle, and happilie continue the same in length even unto our daies with more elegancie of phrase, which verily would be no painfull work to be performed.

Nnnn 2

THE

THE ANNALES OF IRELAND.

- A** **N**no Domini MCLXII. Gregorie the first Archbishop of Dublin, a man praise worthy every way, slept in the Lord: after whom succeeded holy *Laurence O-Thobis*, who was Abbat of St. Kemnus de Glindelagh. Thomas is made Archbishop of Canterbury.
- MCLXVI. Rothericke *O-Conghir*, Prince of Connaght was made King and Monarch of Ireland.
- MCLXVII. Died Maud the Empreffe. The same yeere Almaricke King of Jerusalem tooke Babylon. And in the same yeere Dermoc *Mac-Murrough* Prince of Leinster, whiles *O-Rorke* King of Meth was in a certaine expedition, carried away his wife, who was willing enough to be ravished. For her selfe made meanes to be taken as a prey, as we find in *Cambrensis*.
- MCLXVIII. Donate King of *Uriel*, founder of Mellifont Monasterie, departed in Christ. In the same yeere Robert *Fitz-Stephen*, neither unmindefull of his promise, nor a breaker of his faith, came into Ireland with thirtie Knights.
- MCLXIX. Earle Richard of Strogul sent before him into Ireland a certaine young Gentleman of his owne family, named Remund, with ten Knights about the Calends of May. The same yeere the said Earle Richard, accompanied with two hundred Knights or thereabout, and others to the number as one would say of a thousand, arrived on the even of S. Bartholmew the Apostle. Which Richard verily, was the sonne of Gilbert Earle of Strogul, that is, Chippestow, sometime Strogul. This Richard also was the sonne of Isabell, Aunt by the mothers side of K. Malcome, and William King of Scotland, and of David the Earle, a Gentleman of good hope: and the morrow after the same Apostles day they tooke the said Citie; and there **D** *Eva*, Dermots daughter, was lawfully joined in marriage unto Earle Richard, and her father gave her.
- MCLXXI. S. Thomas Becket Archbishop of Canterbury was slaine. In the same yeere the Citie of Dublin was by the Earle and his companie taken. And the same yeere was founded the Abbey *de Castro Dei*, that is, of Gods Castle.
- MCLXXI. Dermot *Mac-Murrough* full of dayes was taken out of this world at Fernys, about the Calends of May.
- MCLXXII. The courageous King Henrie with 500. Knights arrived at Waterford, and among other things gave Meth unto Sir Hugh Lacie. The same yeere was founded the Abbey *de Fonte vivo*.
- MCLXXIV. Gelasius Archbishop of Armagh, the first Primate of Ireland, an holy man, aged and full of daies, rested in Christ. This Gelasius is said to bee the first Archbishop that wore the first pale; but others before him were in name onely called Archbishops and Primates, for the reverend regard and honour of St. Patricke, as being the Apostle of that nation: whose See was from the beginning had of all men in so great reverence, that not onely Bishops and Priests and those of the Cleargie, but Kings and Princes univerally were subject to the Bishop thereof in all obedience. After whom succeeded in the Archbishopsricke Gilbert a Prelate of good memorie.
- MCLXXV. William King of Scotland was taken prisoner at Alnewicke.
- MCLXXVI. Bertram Verdon founded the Abbey of Crokifenne.
- MCLXXVII. Earle Richard about the Calends of May died at Dublin, and was buried in the Church of the holy Trinitie at Dublin. The same yeere Vivian a Priest, Cardinall entituled of S. Stephan in Mount Caelius, came as Legat of the Apostolicall See into Ireland, sent from Pope Alexander.

MCLXXVIII.

- A** MCLXXVIII. The ninth day before the Calends of December, the Abbey *de S. maria* was founded. The same yeere was founded *Rose Vale*, that is, *Roseglass*.
- MCLXXIX. Miles Cogan, and Ralph the sonne of Fitz-Stephen, his daughters husband, were slaine betwene Waterford and Lismore, &c. as we read in *Cambrensis*. The same yeere Hervie Mont-Marish entred the Monasterie of Saint Trinitie in Canterbury, who founded the Monasterie of Saint Marie *de Porta*, that is, *Of Donbrois*.
- MCLXXX. The Abbey of the Quire of Benet was founded. The same yeere was founded the Abbey of Geripount. The same yeere Laurence Archbishop of Dublin, upon the 18. day before the Calends of December happily slept in the Lord **B** within the Church of Saint Marie of Aux. After whom succeeded John Cumin, an Englishman borne in England at Evesham, chosen with good agreement and accord by the Cleargie of Dublin (the King by his industry procuring the same) and confirmed by the Pope: which John afterwards founded the Church of Saint Patricke in Dublin.
- MCLXXXIII. The order of the Templars and Hospitallers is confirmed. The same yeere is founded the Abbey *de Lege Dei*, that is, *Gods Law*.
- MCLXXXV. John the Kings sonne, Lord of Ireland by his fathers gift, came into Ireland in the 12. yeere of his age, in the thirteenth yeere after his fathers comming, **C** after the comming of Fitz-Stephen the fifteenth, in the 14. yeere from the comming of Earle Richard, and in the same fifteenth yeere returned.
- MCLXXXVI. The order of the Cartusians and of the Grandians is confirmed. In the same yeere Hugh Lacie was killed at Dervath treacherously by an Irishman; because the foresaid Hugh would build a castle there: and as he was teaching of an Irishman how to labour with an iron toole, to wit, a *Pykax*; when Hugh bowed himselfe forward, he stroke him to the ground with both hands, and as he held down his head, the said Irishman with an axe chopt off Hugh Lacie his head, and there was an end of the conquest. In the same yeere Christian Bishop of Lismore, sometime Legate of Ireland, an earnest follower of the vertues which he had seen and heard of his devout father Saint Bernard, and Pope Eugenius, a venerable man, with whom hee was in the Probatorie at Clarevall, who also ordained him to be the Legate in Ireland, after his obedience performed, within the monasterie of *Kyrieleson*, happily departed to Christ. Jerusalem was taken with the Lords Crosse, by the Soldan and the Saracens, after many Christians slaine.
- MCLXXXVII. Upon the Calends, or first day of July, was the Abbey of Ynes in **D** Ulster founded.
- MCLXXXIX. Henry Fitz-Empresse departed this life, after whom succeeded his sonne Richard, and is buried in Font-Ebrard. In the same yeere was founded the Abbey *de Colle victorie*, that is, *of Cnokmoy*.
- E** MCXC. King Richard and King Philip make a voiage into the holy land.
- MCXCI. In the Monasterie of Clarevall, the translation of Malachie Bishop of Armagh was honourably celebrated.
- MCXCII. The Citie of Dublin was burnt.
- MCXCIII. Richard King of England in his return from the holy land, was taken prisoner by the Duke of Austrich, and he made an end by composition with the Emperor, to pay for his ranfome one hundred thousand markes, and with the Empreffe, to pay thirtie thousand: also with the foresaid Duke 20. thousand markes, in regard of an obligation which he had made unto them for Henrie Duke of Saxonie. Now hee remained in the Emperours prison a yeere, sixe moneths, and three daies: For **F** whose ranfome all the Chalcies in manner throughout England, were sold. In the same yeere was founded the Abbey *de Jugo Dei*, that is, *of Gods yoke*.
- MCXCIII. The reliques of S. Malachie Bishop of Clareval, were brought into Ireland, and with all honour that might be, received in the Monasterie of Mellifont, and the rest of the Monasteries of the Cistercian order.
- MCXCV. Matthew Archbishop of Casfile Legate of Ireland, & John Archbishop of Dublin

Nnn 3

« Dublin carried away the corps of Hugh Lacie, the conquerour of Meth, from the I-A
« rish, and solemnely entered it in the Monasterie of Blessednesse, that is, *Beby*. But
« the head of the said Hugh was bestowed in the Monastery of Saint Thomas in Dub-
« lin.

« MCCCXVIII. The order of Friars Preachers began in the parts about Tolouse, by
« Dominicke the second.

« MCCCXIX. Richard King of England died: after whom succeeded John his brother,
« who was Lord of Ireland and Earle of Mortaigne: which John slew Arthur the law-
« full heire, sonne of Geoffrey his whole brother.

« And in this manner died Richard. When K. Richard besieged the Castle of *Cha-B*
« luz in little Britaine, wounded he was to death with an arrow by one of those in the
« said Castle, named Bertram Gurdon. And when he dispaired of his life, hee demi-
« sed the Kingdome of England, and all his other lands unto his brother to keep. All
« his Jewels, and one fourth part of his Treasure he gave unto his Nephew Orho, and
« another fourth part of his Treasure he gave, and commanded to be dealt among his
« servants and the poore. Now when the said Bertram was apprehended and brought
« before the King, the K. demanded of him in these termes: what harme have I done
« thee that thou hast slaine me? Unto whom without any manner of feare he answered
« thus. Thou killedst my father, and two of my brethren with thine owne hand,
« and me also thou wouldest now have killed: Take therefore what revenge so ever
« thou wilt of me, for I passe not, so thou maist be slaine, that hath wrought so many
« mischiefes to the world. Then the King forgave him his death, and commanded
« that hee should be let goe at libertie, and to give him besides one hundred shillings
« sterling. But after the King was dead, some of the Kings ministers slayed the said
« Bertram, and hung him up. And this King yeelded up his vitall breath the eighth
« day before the Ides of April, which fell out to be the fourth day of the weeke before
« Palme-Sunday, and the eleventh day after he was wounded: and buried hee was at
« Font Ebrard, at the feet of his father. Touching whose death a certaine versifier saith
« thus.

Isim in morte perimit formica leonem,

Prob dolor! in tanto funere mundus obit.

In this mans death, as is well scene, the Ant a Lion slaies,
And in so great a death (alas) the world doth end her daies.

« The Corps of which King Richard is divided into three parts. Whence was this
« verse made.

Viscera Carceolum, Corpus Fons servat Ebrardi,

Et Cor Rhoibomagus magne Richardis tum.

Thy bowels onely Carceol keeps, thy Corps Font-Everard, E
And Roan hath keeping of thy heart O puissant Richard.

« When King Richard was departed this life, his brother John was girt with the
« sword of the Duchy of Normandie by the Archbishop of Rhoan, the seventh day
« before the Calends of May next ensuing after the death of the aforesaid King: which
« Archbishop did set upon the head of the said Duke a Circle flower with golden ro-
« ses in the top round about. Also upon the sixth day before the Calends of June hee
« was anointed and crowned King of England, all the Lords and Nobles of England
« being present, within the Church of Saint Peter in Westminster upon the day of the
« Lords Ascension: and afterwards was John King of England called to a Parliament F
« in France by the King of France, to answer as touching the death of his Nephew
« Arthur, and because he came not, he deprived him of Normandy. The same yeere
« was the Abbey of Commercy founded.

« MCC. Cathol Cronerg King of Conaght founder of the Monastery *de Colle*
« *Victoria*, that is, of the Hill of Victorie, is expelled out of the Conaght. The same yeere
« was

A was founded, the Monasterie *de Voto*, that is, Tynterne, by William Marshall, Earle
Marshall and of Pembroke, who was Lord of Leinster, to wit, of Weisford, Osfory,
Caterlagh, and Kildare, in regard and right of his wife: who espoused the daughter of
Richard Earle of Strogghul, and of Eve the daughter of Dermot-Mac-Murogh. But
because the foresaid William Earle Marshall was in exceeding great jeopardy both
day and night in the sea, he vowed a vow unto our Lord Jesus Christ, that if he might
be delivered from the tempest, and come to land, hee would make a Monasterie unto
Christ and Marie his mother: and so it came to passe when hee was come safe to
Weisford, he made I say the Monasterie of Tynterne, according to his vow, and called
B it the Monasterie *De voto*, that is, Of the vow. In the same yeere was founded the
Monasterie *de Flumine Dei*, that is, Of Gods river.

« MCCII. Cathol Cronerg or Corrobayr, King of Conaght, was set againe in his
kingdome. The same yeere is founded the house of Canons or Regular Priests of St.
Marie, by Sir Meiler Fitz-Henrie.

« MCCIII. The Abbey of S. Saviour, that is, *Dowisly*, being founded, was in this
yeere and the next following built.

« MCCIV. There was a field fought betweene John Curcie Earle of Ulster, and
Hugh Lacie at Doune: in which battell many on both sides lost their lives. But John
Curcie had the upper hand in fight. Afterwards, upon the sixth day of the weeke,
C being Good-friday, when the foresaid John was unarmed, and went by way of pil-
grimage bare foot and in his linnen vesture a visiting the Churches, as the manner is,
treacherously he was taken prisoner by his owne people for a piece of money given
in hand, and for a greater reward to be given afterward for a recompence; and so was
delivered unto Hugh Lacie. But hee bringeth him unto the King of England, who
gave unto Hugh Lacie the Earldom of Ulster, and the Seigniorie of Conaght, which
belonged unto John Curcie. Then Hugh Lacie being Earle, rewarded all the foresaid
Traitors that had betrayed John Curcie, and gave unto them gold and silver, more
or lesse: but straightwayes hung up all the Traitors aforesaid, and tooke away all
their goods: and so Hugh Lacie ruleth over all Ulster, and John Curcie is condem-
D ned to perpetuall prison, because he had before time beene a Rebelle to John King of
England, and would not doe him homage, and besides, blamed him about the death
of Arthur the rightfull heire unto the Crowne. But whiles hee was in prison and in
extreme povertie, having but little allowance, and the same course and simple, for to
eat and drinke, he said, O God, wherefore dealest thou thus by me, who have built
and re-edified so many Monasteries for thee and thy Saints? Now when he had ma-
ny times wailed and made loud moane in this wise, and therewith fell asleep, the ho-
ly Trinitie appeared unto him, saying: Why hast thou cast me out of mine owne fear,
and out of the Church of Doune, and placed there my S. Patrick the Patron of Ireland?
E (Because indeed John Curcie had expelled the Secular Canons or Priests out of the
Cathedrall Church of Doune, and brought the blacke Monks of Chester, and placed
them in the said Church: And the holy Trinitie stood there in a stately shrine or
seat, and John him selfe tooke it downe out of the Church, and ordained a Chappell
for that Image, and in the great Church set up the image of S. Patrick, which displea-
sed the most High God:) therefore thus said God, Know thou well that thou shalt
never enter into thy Seigniorie in Ireland.

Howbeit, in regard of other good deeds that thou hast done, thou shalt with ho-
nour be delivered forth of prison: which also came to passe. And now by this time
there arose a contention betweene John King of England, and the King of France,
about a Seigniorie and certain Castles: and this suit or controversie still depending,
F the King of France offered unto him a Giant or Champion to fight for his right.
Then the King of England called to remembrance his most valiant Knight John
Curcie, whom upon the information of others he had before cast into prison. The
King therefore sent for John Curcie, and asked him if he were able to help and stand
him in stead in a combat: then John answered and said, I will not fight for thee, but
for the right of the Kingdome: for which afterward hee undertooke to doe his en-
devour

deavour in single fight: and so refreshed himselfe with meat, drink, and bathing, and A
 tooke the vertue of his owne fortitude and strength: and a day was appointed be-
 tweene these Giants or Champions, namely, betweene John Curcie and the other.
 But when the Champion of France heard of his exceeding great feeding, and of his
 strength, he refused the combat, and then was the said Seigniorie given unto the
 King of England. Then the King of France requested to see a stroke given by the
 hand of John Curcie: and he set a strong and doughtie good morion full of maile up-
 on a great blocke or log of wood: and the foresaid John taking his skene or sword,
 and looking back round about him with a stern and grim countenance, smote the mo-
 rion through, from the very crest downward into the blocke, and the sword stucke B
 in the wood so fast, that no other man but himselfe was able to plucke out the
 sword: then John at the request of the Kings easily plucked it forth. And the Kings de-
 manded of the foresaid John, wherefore he looked behind him with so grim a coun-
 tenance before he gave the stroke; who answered, that if he had failed in giving that
 stroke, he would have slaine them all, as well Kings as others. And the Kings gave
 unto him great gifts, yea and the King of England rendred unto him also his Seignio-
 rie of Ulster. But John Curcie attempted 15. times to saile over sea into Ireland, but
 was alwaies in danger, and the wind evermore against him: wherefore hee waited a
 while among the Monkes of Chester. At length he returned into France, and there
 rested in the Lord.

MCCV. The Abbey of Wertheny in the countie of Limericke was founded by C
 Theobald the sonne of Walter Butler, Lord of Karryke.

MCCVI. The order of Friars Minors was begun neere the citie Affisa, by Saint
 Francis.

MCCVII. William Breos is expelled out of England, and commeth into Ireland.
 England is interdicted for the tyrannie of King John of England. Likewise a great
 overthrow and slaughter hapned at Thurles in Mounster, committed upon the Lord
 Justice of Irelands men, by Sir Geffery Mareys.

MCCX. John King of England came into Ireland, with a great fleet and a puissant
 armie: and for that the sons of Hugh Lacie, to wit, the Lord Walter Lord of Meth, D
 and Hugh his brother, exercised tyrannie upon the Commons, and especially becau-
 se they slew Sir John Curson, Lord of Rathenny and Kilbarrocke (for they heard that
 the foresaid John accused them unto the King) therefore I say the King drave the
 foresaid sonnes of Hugh Lacie out of the land: and they fled into France, and served
 in the Monasterie of Saint Taurin as unknowne, working about clay and bricke,
 and sometime in gardens as Gardiners: but at length they were knowne by the
 Abbat of the said Monasterie: and the said Abbat entreated the King for them,
 because he had baptized his sonnes, and was Godfith unto him as a Godfather many
 times: and Walter Lacie paid two thousand and five hundred markes: and Hugh
 Lacie payed a great summe of money unto the King for his ransome: and at the re- E
 quest of the said Abbat restored they were againe unto their former degree and
 Seigniorie. And Walter Lacie brought with him John the sonne of Alured, that is,
 Fitz-Acory, sonne to the foresaid Abbats whole brother, and he made him Knight,
 and gave unto him the Seigniorie of Dingle, and many other Lordships. Item, hee
 brought Monkes with him out of the same Monasterie, and gave unto them many
 fermes, and the Cell called Fourie, in regard of charitie, thankfulness, and counsell:
 and Hugh Lacie Earle of Ulster made a Cell for Monkes, and endowed them in Ul-
 ster in a place called But John King of England having taken many pledges and
 hostages as well of English as of Irish, and hanged a number of malefactours upon
 Jebbits, and felled the State of the land, returned into England the same yeere that he F
 came thither.

MCCXI. Sir Richard Tuit by the fall of a towre at Alone was crushed and whindred
 to death. This Richard was founder of the Monasterie de Grenard.

MCCXII. The Abbey of Grenard was founded. In the same yeere died John Co-
 myn Archbishop of Dublin, and was buried within the quire of the Church of the
 Holy

A Holy Trinitie, who was founder of Saint Patricks Church of Dublin: after whom
 succeeded Henrie Londres, who is called Scorch Villeyn, by occasion of a certaine
 act of his: for that one day he called his tenants before him, to answer by what te-
 nure they held of him. And those tenants shewed their deeds and charters: but he
 commanded the charters or deeds of these husbandmen his tenants to be burned: and
 then the Freeholders evermore called him Henrie Scorch-Villein: which Henrie
 Archbishop of Dublin was Justice of Ireland, and built Dublin castle.

MCCXIII. William Petit and Petre Messet departed this life. This Petre Messet
 was Baron of Luyn hard by Trym; but because he died without heire male, the in-
 heritance passed unto three daughters: the eldest of whom the Lord Vernail married,
 the second Talbot wedded, and the other Lounders espoused, and so they parted
 the inheritance betwene themselves.

MCCXIX. The Citie of *Damietta*, in the Nones of September was about the still
 time of midnight miraculously wonne, so that in the forcing and taking thereof there
 was not one Christian lost his life. In the same yeere died William Marechal the el-
 der, Earle Marehall and of Pembroke, who began on the daughter of Richard
 Strongbow Earle of Strohul five sonnes; the name of the first sonne was William,
 the named of the second Walter, the name of the third Gilbert, the name of the
 fourth Anselme, the name of the fifth Richard, who was slaine in the warre of
 C Kildare: and everie one of these five sonnes was Earle after their father by succession
 in their fathers inheritance, and none of these had issue: wherefore the inheritance
 went away unto the sisters, namely, the daughters of their father: the first was na-
 med Maud Marechal, the second Isabel Clare, the third Eva Breos, the fourth Johan
 Mount Chensley, the fifth Sibill Countesse Ferrers. Hugh Bigod Earle of Norfolk
 espoused Maud Marechal, & he in the right of his wife was Earle Marechal of Eng-
 land: which Hugh begat Ranfe Bigod, father of John Bigod, who was the sonne of
 the Ladie Bertha Furnival: also Isabel Lacie, wife to Lord John Fitz-Gefferey: and
 when Hugh Bigod Earle of Norfolk was dead, she bare John de Guaren Earle of
 Surrey, and his sister Isabel Albeney Countesse of Arundell. Gilbert Clare Earle
 D of Gloucester espoused Isabel the second sister, who between them had issue Richard
 de Clare Earle of Gloucester; and she was mother to the Ladie Anise Countesse of
 Deneshire, who was mother to Isabel wife of the Lord Robert Brus Earle of Car-
 ricke in Scotland, and was afterwards King of the same Scotland. Of Eva Brus the
 third sister was begotten Maud, who was the mother of the Lord Edmund Morti-
 mer, and mother to the Ladie Eve Cauntelow, mother of the Ladie Milford Mohun,
 who was mother of Dame Eleanor, mother to the Earle of Hereford.

The Lord Guarin Mont Chensley espoused Johan Marechal the fourth sister, of
 whom came Johan Valens. Sibyll the Countesse of Ferrers, to wit the fourth, had is-
 sue five daughters: the first Agnes Vescie, mother to the Lord John, and the Lord
 E William Vescie: the second Isabel Basset: the third Joan Mohun, wife to the Lord
 John Mohun, son of the Lord Reginald: the fourth Sibyll Mohun, wife to Lord
 Francis Bohun Lord of Midhurst: the fifth Eleanor Vaus, who was wife unto the
 Earle of Winchester: the sixth Agatha Mortimer, wife to the Lord Hugh Mortimer:
 the seventh Maud Kyme Lady of Carbury. All these above said, as well males as fe-
 males, are of the genealogie of the said William Earle Marechal.

MCCXX. The translation of St. Thomas of Canterburie. In the same yeere died
 the Lord Meiler Fitz Henrie, founder of the house of Connall, who is buried in the
 Chapter house of the same house.

MCCXXIV. The Castle of Bedford was besieged, and the Castle of Trim in
 F Ireland.

MCCXXV. Roger Pippard died. And Anno MCCXXVIII. died William Pippard,
 sometime Lord of the Salmons-leap. There departed likewise Henrie Londres, alias
 Scorch villeyn Archbishop of Dublin, and is interred in the Church of the Holy
 Trinitie at Dublin.

MCCXXX. Henrie King of England gave unto Hubert Burk the Justiceship of Ire-
 land

This place is
 corrupted in
 the copie.

land, and a third pennie of rent, and made him Earle of Kent. And afterward the same
 " Hubert was imprisoned; and great trouble arose between the King and his subjects,
 " because he adhered to strangers more than to his owne naturall people.
 " MCCXXXI. William Mareſchall the younger, Earle Mareſhall and of Pem-
 " broke died, who is buried within the Quire of the Friars Preachers in Kilkenny.
 " MCCXXXIV. Richard Earle Mareſhall and of Pembroke or Strogull, on the first
 " day before the Ides of April was wounded in battell, upon the plaine of Kildare;
 " and some few dayes after died in Kilkenny, and there, hard by his naturall whole
 " brother, to wit, William, lieth buried within the Quire of Friars Preachers, of whom
 " it is thus written:

Cujus sub fossa Kilkenia continet ossa.

Whose bones bestow'd in grave so deep,
 Kilkenny towne doth safely keepe.

" MCCXLI. Walter Lacie Lord of Meth departed this life in England, leaving be-
 " hind him two daughters his heires: whereof Sir Theobald Verdon married the first,
 " and Geffery Genevile espoused the second.

" MCCXLII. The Castle of Slegah was built by Morice Fitz-Gerald Justice of
 " Ireland. King Edward the first marched into Wales with a great army, and sent to
 " the said Justice that he would come to him with some forces out of Ireland, who ac-
 " cordingly came with the flower of the English in Ireland, and Phelin O-Conor, who
 " was then King of Conacht in his company, and shortly returned with victorie & ho-
 " nour. Afterward the said Justice preied the countrey Tirconnell, and gave a moitie
 " thereof to Cormac Mac-Dermot Mac-Rory, and carried with him pledges for the
 " other moitie, and left them in the castle of Slegah. Another expedition was made
 " by the said Justice and the English; first he came to Sleigagh, thence to Hohossro-
 " vie Mac Morin the Tuesday after the feast of Peter and Paul, and Cormac-Mac-
 " Dermot Mac-Rorie accompanied them. At that time O-Donnell assembled all Ki-
 " neoil Conail against them at the ford of Ath-Shany, so that hee permitted neither
 " English nor Irish to passe over the ford: whereupon the English resolved to send
 " Cormac Mac-Rory O-Conor with a company of horse into the champion West-
 " ward, and they returned by an higher plaine over the moores Eastward to the ford
 " of Quilvain upon the water Earne, so that O-Donnell knew nothing of those com-
 " panies of horse, untill he saw them on that side of the river that he himselfe encamped:
 " and when he saw the English at his backe, hee encountred them; but his army was
 " put to rout, & Moyle Haghlin O-Donnell, commonly called King of Kineoil Conail,
 " was slain, with Gylly Cavinelagh Obugill, and Mac-Derley King of Oresgael, with
 " the principall men of Kineoil Conail. And many of the army of the said Justice were
 " drowned as they passed over the water of Fin Northward, and among them in the
 " rescuing of a prey there were slaine *Atarmanudaboge*, Sir W. Brit Sheriff of Conacht
 " and the young knight his brother. And afterward the said army spoiled the coun-
 " try, and left the Seigniorie of Kineoil Conail to Rory O-Conor for that time.

" There was another expedition also by the said Justice into Tirconnell, and great
 " spoiles made, and O-Canamayn was expelled out of Keneilgain, & he left the territo-
 " ry of Kenail Conail with Gorry Mac-Donald O-Donnell.

" There was another expedition also by the said Justice into Tireogaine against O-
 " Neale, but he gave pledges for the preservation of his countrey.

" There was another expedition by the said Justice in Leinster against the Irishry,
 " whom he pitifully outraged, and spoiled their land.

" In another expedition also the said Justice destroyed Keneilgain, and all Ulster in de-
 " spite of O-Neale, tarrying three nights at Tullaghoge.

" MCCXLIII. Hugh Lacy Earle of Ulster died, and is buried at Crag-fergoun in the
 " covent of the Friars Minours, leaving a daughter his heire, whom Walter Burk, who
 " was Earle of Ulster, espoused. In the same yeere died Lord Girald Fitz-Morris, and
 " Richard Burk.

MCCXLVI.

The whole
 yeere out of
 an old frag-
 ment.

A MCCXLV. An earthquake over all the West about 21 of the clocke.

" MCCXLVI. Sir John Fitz-Geffery knight came Lord Justice into Ireland.

" MCCXLVII. Lewis King of France and William Long Espée, with many other, are taken
 " prisoners by the Saracens. In Ireland Maccanewey, a sonne of Beliol, was slaine in
 " Leys, as he well deserved.

" MCCXLVIII. The Lord Henry Lacie was borne. Likewise upon Christmas day, Alex-
 " ander King of Scotland, a childe eleven yeeres old, espoused at Yorke *Margaret* the
 " King of England's daughter.

" MCCXLIX. *Alandela Zouch* is made Lord Justice, and commeth into Ireland.

B MCCLVII. The Lord Morris, or Maurice Fitz-Gerald deceaseth.

" MCCLVIII. Stephen Long Espée commeth Lord Justice of Ireland. The Greene
 " castle in Ulster is throwne downe: Likewise William Dene is made Lord Justice of
 " Ireland.

" MCCLXI. The Lord John Fitz-Thomas, and the Lord Maurice his son are slaine in
 " Desmond by *Mao-Karibh*: likewise William Dene Lord Justice of Ireland dejected,
 " after whom succeeded in the same yeere Sir Richard Capell.

" MCCXLII. Richard Clare Earle of Gloucester died: Item, Martin Maundevile left
 " this life the morrow after Saint Bennets day.

" MCCXLIII. Maurice Fitz-Gerald, and Maurice Fitz-Maurice took prisoners *Rish-
 " Capell*, the Lord Theobald Boniller, and the Lord John Cogam at Tristel-Dermot.

" MCCXLVII. David Barrie is made Lord Justice of Ireland.

" MCCXLVIII. Comin Maurice Fitz-Maurice is drowned. Item, Lord Robert Ufford
 " is made Lord Justice of Ireland.

" MCCXLIX. The castle of Roscomon is founded. Richard of Excester is made Lord
 " Justice.

" MCCCLXX. The Lord James Audeley came Lord Justice into Ireland.

" MCCCLXXI. Henry the Kings sonne of *Almain* is slaine in the Court of Rome. The
 " same yeere reigned the plague, famine, and the sword, and most in Meth. Item,
 " Nicholas de Verdon and his brother John are slain. Walter Burk or de Burgo Earle
 " of Ulster died.

D MCCCLXXII. The Lord James Audeley Justice of Ireland was killed with a fall
 " from his horse in Twomond: after whom succeeded Lord Maurice Fitz-Maurice in
 " the office of chiefe Justice.

" MCCCLXXIII. The Lord Geffery Genevile returned out of the holy land, and is
 " made Justice of Ireland.

" MCCCLXXIV. Edward the sonne of King Henrie, by the hands of Robert Kelwayby a
 " Frier of the order of Preaching Friars, and Archbishop of Canterburie, upon S. Mag-
 " nus the Martyrs day, in the Church of Westminster was anointed K. of England, and
 " crowned in the presence of the Lords and Nobles of all England; whose protestation

E and oath was in this forme: I Edward son and heire to King Henrie, professe, protest,
 " and promise before God and his Angels, from this time forward to keep without re-
 " spect the law, justice, and peace unto the holy Church of God, and the people subject
 " unto me, so far forth as we can devise, by the counsell of our liege and loiall ministers:
 " also to exhibite condigne and canonically honour unto the Bishops of Gods Church,
 " to preserve inviolably whatsoever hath bin bestowed by Emperors and Kings upon
 " the Church committed unto them, and to yeeld due honour unto Abbats & the Lords
 " vessels, according to the advice of our lieges, &c. So help me God, and the holy Gos-
 " pels of the Lord. In the same yeere died the Lord John Verdon, likewise the Lord Tho-
 " mas Clare came into Ireland. Item, William Fitz-Roger, Prior of the Hospitalers, with
 " many others, are taken prisoners at Glyndelory: and more there slaine.

" MCCCLXXV. The castle of Roscomon is erected againe. In the same yeere *Moydagb*
 " was taken prisoner at Norragh by Sir Walter Faunte.

" MCCCLXXVI. Robert Ufford is made Lord Justice of Ireland the second time: Gef-
 " frey Genevile gave place, and departed.

" MCCCLXXVII. O-Brene is slaine.

MCCCLXXVIII.

M C C L X V I I I . The Lord David Barry died. Likewise the Lord John Cogan.
 M C C L X X I . The Lord Robert Ufford entered into England, and appointed in his
 roome Frier Robert Fulborne Bishop of Waterford, in whose time the money was
 changed, likewise the Round table was holden at Kenilworth by the Lord Roger
 Mortimer.
 M C C L X X X . Robert Ufford returned out of England, Lord Justice as before. Also
 the wife of Robert Ufford deceased.
 M C C L X X X I . Adam Cusack the younger slew William Barret, and many others in
 Connaght. Item, Frier Stephen Fulborne is made Justice of Ireland. Item, the Lord
 Robert Ufford returned into England.
 M C C L X X X I I . Moriagh and Arse Mac-Murgh his brother are slaine at Arslowe,
 on the Even of Saint Marie Maudlen. Likewise the Lord Roger Mortimer died.
 M C C L X X X I I I . The citie of Dublin was in part burnt, and the Belfray of Saint Tri-
 nity Church in Dublin, the third day before the Nones of Januarie.
 M C C L X X X I I I I . The castle of Ley was taken and burnt by the Potentates or
 Lords of Offaly, the morrow after Saint Barnabe the Apostle his day. Alphonsus the
 Kings sonne twelve yeeres old; changed his life.
 M C C L X X X V . The Lord Theobald Botiller died the sixth day before the Kalends
 of October in the castle of Arslowe, and was buried there in the convent of the Friers
 preachers. Item, Girald Fitz-Maurice was taken prisoner by his own Irish in Offalie,
 and Richard Pettis and Saint-Doges, with many other: and a great overthrow was gi-
 ven at Rathode with much slaughter.
 M C C L X X X V I . Norragh and Arstoll, with other townes, were one after another con-
 tinually burnt by Philip Siantha, the 16. day before the Calends of December. In
 these daies Alianor Queen of England, mother of King Edward, tooke the mantle and
 the ring at Ambresburie, upon the day of Saint Thomas his translation, having her
 dower in the kingdome of England confirmed by the Pope to be possessed for ever.
 Likewise Calmagh is taken prisoner at Kildare. The Lord Thomas Clare departed
 this life.
 M C C L X X X V I I . Stephen Fulborn, Archbishop of Tuam died: after whom there suc-
 ceeded in the office of Lord chiefe Justice for a time, John Sampford archbishop of
 Dublin. In the same yeet the King of Hungary forsaking the Christian faith, became
 an Apostata: and when hee had called fraudulently, as it were, to a Parliament, the
 mightier potentates of his land, Miramomelius a pusillat Saracene came upon them
 with 20000. souldiers, carrying away with him the King, with all the Christians there
 assembled on the even of Saint John Baptists day: as the Christians therefore jour-
 nied, the weather that was cleere and faire turned to be cloudie, and suddenly a tem-
 pest of haile killed many thousands of the Infidels together: The Christians return-
 ed to their owne homes, and the Apostata King alone went with the Saracenes.
 The Hungarians therefore crowning his sonne King, continued in the Catholike
 faith.
 M C C L X X X I X . Tripolis a famous citie was laied even with the ground, not without
 much effusion of Christian blood, and that by the Soldan of Babylon who comman-
 ded the images of the Saints to bee drawne and dragged at horses tailes, in contempt
 of the name of Christ, through the citie newly destroyed.
 M C C X C . Inlyta Stirps Regis Sponsis datur ordine legi.
 In lawfull guise (by hand and ring)
 Espoused is the Kings off-spring.
 The Lord Gilbert Clare tooke to wife the Ladie Joan, a daughter of the Lord King
 Edward, in the Abbey or Covent Church of Westminster; and the marriage was
 solemnely celebrated in the Moneth of May: and John, the Duke of Brabant his
 sonne, married Margaret the said Kings daughter also in the Church aforesaid, in the
 moneth of July. The same yeere the Lord William Vescie was made Justice of Ire-
 land, entering upon the office on Saint Martins day. Item, O Molaghelin King of
 Meth is slaine.

M C C X C I .

A M C C X C I . Gilbert Clare, the sonne of Gilbert and of the Ladie Joan of Acres, was
 borne the 11. day of May, in the morning betimes. Item, there was an armie led into
 Ulster, against O-Hanlon and other Princes hindering the peace, by Richard Earle of
 Ulster, and William Vescie Justice of Ireland. Item, the Ladie Eleanor, sometime
 Queene of England and mother of King Edward, died in the feast of St. John Baptist,
 who, in the religious habite which she desired, led a laudable life for the space of
 foure yeeres, eleven moneths, and fixe dayes, within the Abbey of Ambresby, where
 she was a professed Nun. Item, there refounded certaine rumours in the eares of the
 Lord Pope Martin, on the even of St. Mary Maudlen, as touching the Citie Acon
 in the holy land, which was the only refuge of the Christians; namely, that it was be-
 sieged by Milkador the Soldan of Babylon, & an infinite number of his souldiers; and
 that it had been most fiercely assaulted about fortie daies, to wit, from the eighth day
 before the Ides of April unto the fifteene Calends of July. At length the wall was
 plucked down by the Saracens that assaulted it, and an infinite number of them entred
 the Citie, many Christians being slaine, and some for feare drowned in the sea. The
 Patriarch also with his traine perished in the sea. The King of Cyprus and Oies Gran-
 dison, with their companies, pitifully escaped by a ship. Item, granted there was unto
 the Lord Edward King of England by the Lord Pope Martin, the tenth part of all
 the profits of Ecclesiasticall benefices for seven yeeres in Ireland, toward the reliefe
 of the holy land. Item, the eldest sonne of the Earle of Clare was borne.
 M C C X C I I . Edward King of England estfoones entred Scotland, and was elected
 King of Scotland. Lord John Balliol of Galwey obtained the whole kingdome of
 Scotland in right of inheritance, and did homage unto the Lord Edward King of Eng-
 land at New-castle upon Tine on S. Stephens day. Florentius Earle of Holland, Ro-
 bert Brus Earle of Carrick, John Hastings, John Comyn, Patrick Dunbar, John Vescie,
 Nicolas Soules, and William Roos, who all of them in that kingdome submitted
 themselves to the judgement of the Lord King Edward.
 Item, a fifteene of all secular mens goods in Ireland was granted unto the sovereign
 Lord King of England, the same to be collected at the feast of S. Michael. Item, Sir
 Peter Genevile Knight died. Item, Rice ap Meredyke was brought to York, and there
 at horses tailes drawne, &c.
 M C C X C I I I . A generall and open war there was at sea against the Normans. Item,
 no small number of the Normans by fight at sea was slain by the Barons of the Ports
 of England, and other their co-adjutors, between Easter and Whitson-tide. For which
 cause there arose war between England and France: whereupon Philip King of France
 directed his letters of credence unto the King of England, that he should make perso-
 nall appearance at his Parliament, to answer unto Questions which the same King
 would propose unto him: whose mandate in this behalf being not fulfilled, straight-
 waies the King of France declaring by the counsell of the French the King of Eng-
 land to be outlawed, condemned him. Item, Gilbert Clare Earle of Glocester entred
 with his wife into Ireland about the feast of S. Luke.
 M C C X C I V . William Montefort in the Kings counsell holden at Westminster before
 the King, died suddenly: which William was the Dean of S. Pauls in London, in whose
 mouth the Prelates, Bishops, and Cleargy putting their words which he was to utter,
 and doubting how much the King affected and desired to have of every one of them,
 and willing by him to be certified, in whom also the King reposed most trust, being
 returned to the King, and making hast before the King to deliver expressly a speech
 that he had conceived, became speechlesse on a sodain, and fell downe to the ground,
 and was carried forth by the Kings servants in their armes in piteous manner. In re-
 gard of which sight that thus happened, men stricken with feare gave out these
 speeches: Surely this man hath bene the Agent and Procurator, that the Temples
 of Ecclesiasticall benefices should bee paid to the King, and another author and
 procurer of a scrutinie made into the fold and flocke of Christ, as also of a contribu-
 tion granted afterward to the King crying against William. Item, the Citie of Burde-
 aux with the land of Gascoigne adjoining, was occupied or held by the ministers of
 the

O o o o

the King of France conditionally; but unjustly and perfidiously detained by the King of France: for which cause John Archbishop of *Dublin* and certaine other Lords of the Nobilitie were sent into *Almaine* to the King thereof: and after they had their dispatch and answer in *Tordran*, the Lord Archbishop being returned into England, ended his life upon *S. Leodegaries* day. The bones of which John Sampford were entered in the Church of *Saint Patrick* in *Dublin*, the tenth day before the Calends of March.

The same yeere there arose debate betweene Lord William *Vesey*, Lord Justice of Ireland for the time being, and the Lord John *Fitz-Thomas*; and the said Lord William *Vesey* crossed the seas into England, & left Sir William Hay in his stead Justice of Ireland: but when both of them were come before the King to fight a combat, under an Appeal for treason, the foresaid William *Vesey* fled into France, and would not fight. Then the King of England gave all the Seigniories and Lordships which were the Lord William *Vesey's* unto Sir John *Fitz-Thomas*, to wit, *Kildare*, *Rathemagan*, and many others.

The same yeere Gilbert *Clare* Earle of Gloucester returned out of Ireland into England: likewise *Richard* Earle of Ulster soon after the feast of *S. Nicholas* was taken prisoner by Sir John *Fitz-Thomas*, and kept in ward within the Castle of *Ley*, unto the feast of *Saint Gregorie* the Pope: whose enlargement was then made by the counsell of the Lord the King in a Parliament at *Kilkenny*: for the taking of whom, the foresaid Sir John *Fitz-Thomas* gave all his lands, to wit, *Slygh* with the pette-nances, which he had in *Connaght*.

Item, the Castle of *Kildare* was won. *Kildare* and the country round about it is spoiled by the English and Irish. *Caluagh* burnt all the Rolls and Tallies of the said Earle. Great dearth and pestilence there was throughout Ireland this yeere, and the two next ensuing. Item, Lord William Odyngzele is made Justice of Ireland.

MCCXCV. Edward King of England built the Castle de Bello-Marisco, that is, Beaumaris in Venedocia, which is called mother of *Cambria*, and of the common fort *Anglesey*: entering unto the said *Anglesey* straight after Easter, and subduing the Venodotes, that is, the able men of *Anglesey* under his dominion: and soone after this time, namely, after the feast of *S. Margaret*, *Madock* at that time the elect Prince of Wales, submitting himselfe to the Kings grace and favour, was brought by *John Haverings* to London, and there shut up prisoner in the towre, expecting the Kings grace and benevolence. This yeere died Lord William Odyngzele Justice of Ireland, the morrow after *S. Mary of Egypt*: whom succeeded Sir Thomas *Fitz-Maurice* in the Justiceship.

Item, about the same time the Irish of *Leinster* wasted *Leinster*, burning New-castle with other townes. Item, Thomas *Torbeville* a traitor of the King and the realm being convicted, was drawne through the middest of London lying along prostrate, guarded with foure tormentors disguised under vizzards, taunting and reviling him, and thus in the end was hanged upon a gibbet in chaines, so as his carcase might not be committed to sepulture, but kites, carrion crows and ravens celebrated his funerals. This Thomas was one of them which at the siege of the Castle of *Rions* were taken prisoners and brought to Paris. Who spake unto the Peeres of France, and said, that he would betray the King of England into their hands: and leaving there his two sonnes for hostages, returned from the parts beyond-sea, joining himself unto the King of England and his counsell, relating unto them all how craftily he escaped out of prison: and when hee had gotten intelligence of the Kings designement, and the ordering of the kingdome, hee put all in writing, and directed the same unto the Provost of Paris. For which being in the end convicted, he received the sentence of judgement aforesaid.

Item, about the same time the Scots having broken the bond of peace, which they had covenanted with the Lord Edward King of England, made a new league with the King of France: and conspiring together, rose up in armes against their owne soveraigne Lord and King John Balliol, and enclosed him within the in-land

A inland parts of Scotland; in a castle environed and fenced round about with mountaines. They elected unto themselves, after the manner of France, twelve Peeres, to wit, foure Bishops, foure Earles, and foure Lords of the Nobilitie, by whose will and direction all the affaires of the kingdome should be managed. And this was done in despite, and to disgrace the King of England, for that against the will and consent of the Scots, the said John was by the King of England set over them to be their Sovereigne. Item, the King of England brought an armie againe toward Scotland in Lent following, to repress the rash arrogancie and presumption of the Scots against their owne father and King. Item, Sir John Wogan was made Justice of Ireland, and the Lord Thomas *Fitz-Maurice* gave place unto him. Item, the said John Wogan Justice of Ireland made peace and truce to last for two yeeres betweene the Earle of Ulster, and John *Fitz-Thomas*, and the *Geraldines*. Item, in these dayes about the feast of Christ his Nativitie, Gilbert *Clare* Earle of Gloucester finished this life. Item, the King of England sendeth his brother Edmund with an armie into Gascoigne.

MCCXCVI. The Lord Edward King of England the third day before the Calends of April, to wit, upon Friday, that fell out then to be in Easter weeke, wonne Berwicke, wherein were slaine about 7000. Scots, and of the English one onely Knight, to wit, Sir *Richard Cornwall*, with seven footmen and no more. Item, shortly after, namely, upon the fourth of May, he entred the Castle of *Dunbar*, and tooke prisoners of the enemies about fortie men alive, who all submitted themselves to the Kings grace and mercie, having before defeated the whole armie of the Scots, that is to say, slaine seven hundred men of armes: neither were there slaine of the English men in that service, as well of horsemen as of footmen, but ... footmen onely.

Item, upon the day of Saint John before Port-Latin, no small number of Welshmen, even about fiftene thousand, by commandement of the King went into Scotland to invade and conquer it. And the same time the great Lords of Ireland, to wit, John Wogan Justice of Ireland, *Richard Bourk* Earle of Ulster, *Theobald Butler*, and John *Fitz-Thomas*, with others, came to aide, and sailed over sea into Scotland. The King of England also entertaining them upon the third day before the Ides of May, to wit, on Whitunday, made a great and solemne feast in the Castle of *Rokeburgh* to them and other Knights of England. Item, upon the next Wednesday before the feast of Saint Barnabe the Apostle hee entred the towne of *Edenburgh*, and wonne the Castle before the feast of Saint John Baptist: and shortly after, even in the same summer, were all the Castles within the compasse of Scotland rendred up into his hands. Item, the same Lord John Balliol King of Scotland came, though unwilling, upon the Sunday next after the feast of the translation of Saint Thomas the Archbishop, to the King of England, with Earles, Bishops, and a great number of Knights beside, and submitted themselves unto the Kings grace and will, saving life and limbe: and the Lord John Balliol resigned up all his right of Scotland into the King of England his hand, whom the Lord the King sent toward the parts about London under safe conduct.

Item, Edmund the King of Englands brother died in Gascoigne.

MCCXCVII. Lord Edward King of England sailed over into Flanders with a power of armed men, against the King of France for the warre that was raised betweene them: where after great expences and much altercation, a certaine forme of peace was concluded betweene them, with this condition, that they should submit themselves unto the ordinance of the Lord the Pope.

From the one side and the other were sent certaine messengers to the Court of Rome, but whiles King Edward abode in Flanders, William Wallais by the common counsell of the Scots came with a great armie to the bridge of *Strivelin*, and gave battle unto John Earle Warren: in which battell on both sides many were slaine; and many drowned. But the Englishmen were discomfited and defeated. Upon which exploit all the Scots at once arose and made an insurrection, as well Earls

* as Barons against the King of England. And there fell discord betweene the King of A
 * England, and Roger Bigod Earle Mareſchall; but ſoone after they were agreed.
 * And Saint *Lewis* a Frier minor ſonne of the King of *Sicily*, and Archbiſhop of Co-
 * lein died. Alſo the ſonne and heire of the King de *Maliagro*, that is, of the *Majoricke*
 * *Ilands*, intituled the order of the Friers minors, at the information of Saint *Lewis*,
 * who ſaid, *Goe and doe ſo*. Item, in Ireland, *Leghlin*, with other townes, was burnt by
 * the Irith of *Slemergi*.

* Item, *Calwagh O-Hanlan*, and *Tneg Mac-Mahon* are ſlaine in *Urgale*.
 * MCCXCVIII. Pope Boniface the fourth, the morrow after the Feaſt of the Apo-
 * ſtles Peter and Paul, after all tumults were appeaſed, ordained and confirmed a B
 * peace betweene the King of England and the King of France, with certaine condi-
 * tions that after followed. Item, *Edward* King of England ſet forth with an armie
 * againe into *Scotland*, for to ſubdue the Scots under his dominion. Item, there were
 * ſlaine in the ſame expedition, about the feaſt of Saint *Marie Maudlen*, many thou-
 * ſands of the Scots at Fawkirke. The ſunne the ſame day appeared as red as bloud over
 * all *Ireland*, ſo long as the battell continued at Fawkirke aforeſaid. Item, about the
 * ſame time the Lord King of England feoffed his Knights in the Earldomes and Baro-
 * nies of the Scots that were ſlaine. More, in Ireland peace and concord was concluded
 * between the Earle of Ulſter, and Lord *John Fitz-Thomas*, about the feaſt of the A-
 * poſtles *Simon and Jude*. Alſo on the morrow after the feaſt of the 7. Saints ſleepers,
 * the ſun-beames were changed almoſt into the colour of bloud even from the morn-
 * ning, ſo that all men that ſaw it wondred thereat. Moreover, there died Sir *Thomas*
 * *Fitz-Maurice* Knight, and Sir *Robert Bigod*, ſometime Lord chiefe Juſtice of the
 * Bench. Item, in the Citie *Ariha*, as alſo in *Reasbe* in the parts of *Italie*, whiles Pope
 * Boniface abode there at the ſame time there happened ſo great an Earthquake, that
 * towres and palaces fell downe to the ground. The Pope alſo with his Cardinals
 * fled from the Citie much affrighted.

* Item, upon the feaſt of the *Epiphany*, that is, *Twelve day*, there was an earthquake,
 * though not ſo violent, in *England* from *Canterburie* as farre as to *Hampton*.

* MCCXCIX. Lord *Theobald Botiller* the younger departed this life in the Manour de D
 * *Turby* the ſecond day before the Ides of May: whole corps was conveyed toward
 * *Weydeney*, that is, *Weney* in the countie of *Limeric* the ſixth day before the Calends of
 * June.

* Item, *Edward* King of England tooke to wife the Ladie *Margaret*, ſiſter to the
 * noble King of France, in the Church of the holy Trinitie in *Canterburie*, about the
 * feaſt of the holy Trinitie. Item, the Soldan of *Babylon* was defeated with a great ar-
 * mie of Saracens, by *Caffian* King of the *Tartars*.

* MCCXCIX. The day after the feaſt of the Purification of the bleſſed Virgin *Marie*,
 * there was an infinite number of the Saracens horſemen ſlaine, beſides the footmen,
 * who were likewiſe innumerable. Item, in the ſame yeere there was a battell or fight E
 * of dogges, in *Burgundie* at *Genelon* caſtle: and the number of the dogges was 3000.
 * and everie one killed another, ſo that no dogge eſcaped alive but one alone. Item,
 * the ſame yeere many Irithmen came to trouble and moleſt the Lord *Theobald Ver-*
 * *don*, to the Caſtle of *Roch*, before the feaſt of the Annuntiation.

* MCCC. The Pollard money is forbidden in *England* and *Ireland*. Alſo in the Au-
 * tumne *Edward* King of England entred *Scotland* with a power of armed men: but at
 * the commandement of Pope Boniface hee was ſtayed, and he ſent ſolemne meſſen-
 * gers unto the Court (of Rome) excuſing himſelf of doing any injurie. Item, *Thomas*
 * the Kings ſonne of England was the laſt day of May born at *Brotherton*, of *Margaret*
 * ſiſter to the King of France. Item, *Edward* Earle of *Cornwall* died without leaving F
 * behind an heire of his owne bodie, and was entered in the Abbey of *Hales*.

* MCCC. *Edward* King of England entred into *Scotland* with an armie: unto
 * whom failed over ſea Sir *John Wogan* Juſtice of *Ireland*, and Sir *John Fitz-Tho-*
 * *mas*, *Peter Bermingham*, and many others, to aide the King of England. Alſo a great
 * part of the Citie *Dublin* was burnt, together with the Church of Saint *Warburga*, on
 * S. *Colombs*

A S. *Colombs* day at night. More, Sir *Geffrey Genevil* eſpouſed the daughter of Sir *John*
 * *Montefort*: and Sir *John Mortimer* eſpouſed the daughter and heire of Sir *Peter Ge-*
 * *nevil*. And the Lord *Theobald Verdon* eſpouſed the daughter of the Lord *Roger*
 * *Mortimer*. At the ſame time the men of *Leinſter* made warre in winter, burning
 * the towne of *wykynlo* and *Rathdon*, with others: but they eſcaped not unpuniſhed:
 * becauſe the more part of their ſuſtenance was burnt up, and their cattell loſt by de-
 * predation: and the ſame Irith had bene utterly almoſt conſumed, but that the ſedi-
 * tious diſſention of certaine Engliſhmen was an hinderance thereto. Item, a defea-
 * ture and ſlaughter was made by the *Toolans*, upon a ſmall companie aſſembled of the
 * B *Brenies*, in which were ſlaine almoſt three hundred robbers. Item, *Walter Power*
 * waſted a great part of *Mounſter*, burning many ferme houſes.

* MCCCII. There died the ladie *Margaret*, wife to Sir *John Wogan* Juſtice of *Ireland*,
 * the third day before the Ides of *April*: and in the week following *Maud Lacy*, wife to
 * Sir *Geffrey Genevil* died: alſo *Edward Botiller* recovered the manour de * S. *Eſco*, with
 * the pertenanances, from Sir *Richard Ferenges* Archbiſhop of *Dublin*, by a concord
 * made between them in the Kings bench, after the feaſt of S. *Hilarie*.

* Item, the Flemings gave an overthrow at *Courteray* in *Flanders* unto the army of
 * the French, the Wedneſday after the feaſt of the Tranſlation of S. *Thomas*, wherein
 * were ſlaine the Earle of *Arthois*, the Earle of *Aumarle*, the Earle of *Hue*, *Ralph*
 * C *Neel* Conſtable of France, *Guy Nevil* Mareſchal of France, the ſonne of the Earle of
 * *Hennauud*, *Godfrey Brabant* with his ſonne, *William Fenys* and his ſon, *James S. Paul*
 * loſt his hand, and fortie Baronets loſt their lives that day, with Knights, Eſquires, and
 * others ſans number.

* Item, the tenths of all Eccleſiaſticall benefices in *England* and *Ireland* were exacted
 * by Boniface the Pope for 3. yeeres, as a Subſidie to the Church of Rome againſt the
 * King of *Aragon*. Alſo upon the day of the Circumciſion Sir *Hugh Lacie* raiſed boot-
 * ies from *Hugh Vernail*. In the ſame yeere *Robert Bru*, then Earle of *Carrick*, eſpou-
 * ſed the daughter of Sir *Richard Bourk* Earle of *Ulſter*. Item, *Edward Botiller* eſpouſed
 * the daughter of Sir *John Fitz-Thomas*: alſo the Citie of *Burdeaux*, with other Ci-
 * ties lying round about it, which by the ſedition of the Frenchmen had been at any
 * D time alienated from *Edward* King of *England*, were reſtored unto him againe upon
 * St. *Andrewes* even, by the induſtrie of the L. *Hastings*.

* MCCCIII. The Earle of *Ulſter*, to wit, *Richard Bourk*, and Sir *Euface Power*, entred
 * *Scotland* with a puiſſant armie: but after that the Earle himſelfe had firſt made thir-
 * tie three Knights in the Caſtle of *Dublin*, hee paſſed over into *Scotland* to aide the
 * King of *England*.

* Item, *Gerald* the ſonne and heire of Sir *John Fitz-Thomas* departed out of this
 * world. In the ſame yeere Pope Boniface excommunicated the King and Queene of
 * France and their children. Hee renewed alſo all the priviledges granted at any time
 * E unto the Univerſitie of *Paris*: and ſtraight after the Pope was taken priſoner, and kept
 * (as it were) in priſon three whole daies. And ſoone after the Pope died: likewiſe the
 * Counteſſe of *Ulſter* deceaſed. Alſo *wulfrane welleyſy* and Sir *Robert Percivell* were
 * ſlaine the 11. day before the Calends of November.

* MCCCIII. A great part of *Dublin* was burnt, to wit, the Bridge ſtreet, with a
 * good part of the Key, and the Church of the Friers Preachers, and the Church of the
 * Monks, with no ſmall part of the Monaſterie, about the Ides of June, to wit, on the
 * Feaſt day of S. *Medard*. Alſo the firſt ſtone of the Friers Preachers Quire in *Dub-*
 * *lin* was laid by *Euface* Lord *Power* on the Feaſt of S. *Agatha* Virgin.

* Likewiſe after the Feaſt of the Purification of the bleſſed Virgin *Marie*, the King
 * F of France invaded *Flanders* againe in proper perſon, with a puiſſant armie. Then
 * bare he himſelfe bravely in the war, and fought manfully ſo long, untill two or three
 * horſes of ſervice were ſlaine under him: but at laſt he loſt his cap that under his hel-
 * met was put upon his head; which the Flemings taking up carried by way of ſcorn-
 * full deriſion upon a lance as a banner, and in all the famous *Faires of Flanders*, put it
 * out

out at the high window of some place or stately house, like the figure of an Inne or a Taverner, and shewed it in token of victorie.

MCCV. Jordan Comyn with his complices slew *Morinagh O-Conghir* King of *Offalie*, and *Calwagh* his whole brother, and certain others in the Court of Sir *Piers Brynneham* at *Carrick in Carbery*: likewise Sir *Gilbert Sutton* Seneschal of *Weisford* was slaine by the Irish neere unto a village (or House) of *Haymund Grace*, which *Haymund* verily in the said skirmish manfully carried himselfe, but stoutly escaped.

Item, in Scotland the Lord *Robert Brus* Earle of *Carricke*, forgetting his oath made to the King of England, slew Sir *John Rede Comyn* within the cloisture of the Friers Minors of *Dunfrese*, and soone after caused himselfe to be crowned King of Scotland by the hands of two Bishops, to wit, of *S. Andrewes* and of *Glaseo*, in the towne of *Scone*, to the confusion of himselfe and of many others.

MCCVI. A great discomfiture was made in *Offaly*, neere unto the Castle of *Geffill*, on the Ides of Aprill, upon *O-Conghorby O-Dympcies*, in which was slaine *O-Dympey* Leader of the *Regans*, with a great traine accompanying him. Also *O-Brene* King of *Towmond* died. Item, *Donald Oge Mac Carthy* slew *Donald Ruff*, that is, the Red King of *Desmund*. Item, a lamentable defeature fell upon the part of *Piers Brynneham* the fourth day before the Calends of May, in the Marches of *Meth*. Item, *Balymore* in *Leinster* was burnt by the Irish, where at the same time *Henry Calfe* was slaine: and there arose war betweene the English and the Irish in *Leinster*: for which cause there was assembled a great armie from divers parts of Ireland to bridle the malice of the Irish in *Leinster*: in which expedition Sir *Tho. Mandeuil* Knight, and a brave warriour, had a great conflict with the Irish, neere to *Clenfell*; in which conflict he behaved himselfe valiantly, untill his horse of service was slaine, and won much praise and honour by saving many a man, and himselfe also. Item, *M. Thomas Cantock* Chancelour of Ireland was consecrated Bishop of *Emelafen*, in the Church of the holy Trinitie at *Dublin* with great honour: at whose consecration were present the Elders of all Ireland, where there was so sumptuous and so great a feast made, first unto the rich, and afterwards to the poore, as the like had never been heard of before in Ireland. Item, *Richard Feringes* Archbishop of *Dublin* died in the Vigile of Saint Luke, after whom succeeded Master *Richard Haverings*, who occupied the Archbishopricke almost five yeeres by Apostolicall dispensation. Who also resigned up his Archbishopricke: after whom succeeded *John Leib*.

The occasion and cause of his giving over (as the Arch-deacon of *Dublin* of good memorie, his Nephew hath reported) was this, for that one night he dreamed, that a certaine Monster heavier than the whole world stood eminently aloft upon his brest: from the weight whereof he chose rather to be delivered, than alone to have all the goods of the world: but when he wakened hee thought with himselfe, this was nothing else but the Church of *Dublin*, the fruits whereof hee received, and tooke no paines for the same. As soone as hee could therefore he came unto the Lord the Pope, of whom hee was much beloved, and there renounced and gave over the Archbishopricke. For hee had, as the same Arch-deacon avouched, fatter benefices and livings than the Archbishopricke came unto.

Item, Edward King of England in the feast of *Pentecost*, that is, *Whitsontide*, made Edward his son Knight in London; at which feast were dubbed about 400. Knights, and the said Edward of *Caernarvan* newly knighted, made threecore Knights of those abovesaid, and kept his feast in London at the New Temple, and his father gave unto him the Dutchy of *Aquitaine*.

Item, the same yeere in the feast of Saint *Potenziana*, the Bishop of *Winchester*, and the Bishop of *Worcester*, by commandement from the Lord the Pope, excommunicated *Robert Brus* the pretended King of Scotland, and his confederates, for the death of *John Rede Comyn*. In the same yeere, upon *S. Boniface* his day, *Aumarde* *Valence* Earle of *Pembroch*, and Lord *Guy Earle*..... slew many Scots, and the Lord

A Lord *Robert Brus* was defeated without the town of *S. Johns*. And the same yeere about the feast of the Nativitie of *St. John Baptist*, King *Edward* went toward Scotland by water from *Newarke* to *Lincolne*.

Item, the same yeere the Earle of *Afcele*, and the Lord *Simon Freysell*, and the Countesse of *Carricke*, the pretended Queene of Scotland, daughter of the Earle of *Ulster*, were taken prisoners. The Earle of *Afcele* and the Lord *Simon Freysell* were first torne and mangled. As for the Countesse, she remained with the King in great honour, but the rest died miserably in Scotland.

Item, about the feast of the Purification of the blessed Virgin *Marie*, two brethren of *Robert Brus* professing pyracie, went out of their gallies a land to prey, and were taken with sixteen Scots besides: and those two themselves were torne and tormented at *Carlele*, the rest hanged upon jebbits.

Item, upon *St. Patricks* day there was taken prisoner in Ireland *Mac-Nochi* with his two sonnes, neere unto New castle, by *Thomas Sueterby*: and there *Lorran O-bon* a most strong thiefe was beheaded.

MCCVII. The third day preceding the Calends of Aprill, was *Murcora Ballagh* beheaded neere unto *Marton* by Sir *David Cauntton* a doughtie Knight: and soon after was *Adam Dan* slaine.

Also a defeature and bloodie slaughter fell upon the English in *Connaght* by *Offcheles*, on *Philip* and *Jacob* the Apostles day.

Item, the preading Brigants of *Offaly* pulled down the Castle of *Cashill*, and upon the Vigill of the translation of Saint *Thomas* they burnt the towne of *Ly*, and besieged the Castle: but soone after they were removed by *John Fitz-Thomas*, and *Edward Botiller*.

Item, Edward King of England departed this life: after whom succeeded in the kingdome his sonne *Edward*, who most solemnly buried his father at *Westminster*, with great reverence and honour.

Item, the Lord *Edward* the younger took to wife the Ladie *Isabel*, daughter of the French King, in *St. Maries* Church at *Bologne*: and shortly after they were both crowned in the Church of *Westminster*.

Item, the Templars in the parts beyond sea, being condemned (as it was said) of a certaine heresie, were apprehended and imprisned by the Popes Mandat. In England likewise they were all taken the morrow after the feast of the *Epiphany*. Also in Ireland they were arrested the morrow after the feast of the Purification and laid up in prison.

MCCVIII. The second day before the Ides of April died Sir *Peter* or *Piers Bermingham*, a noble vanquisher of the Irish.

Item, on the fourth day before the Ides of May was burnt the Castle of *Kenir*, and certaine warders in it slaine, by *William Mac-Balthor*, and *Cnygnismi Oisothiles*, and his abettors.

More, on the sixth day preceding the Ides of June, Lord *John Wogan* Justice of Ireland was defeated with his armie neere *Glyndelory*; where were slaine *John* called *Hogelyn*, *John Northon*, *John Breton*, with many other. Also, the sixteenth day going before the Calends of July, were burnt *Dolovan*, *Tobyr*, and other townes and villages bordering upon them, by the foresaid malefactors.

Item, in England shortly after was holden a great Parliament at London; where in arose a dissension, and in manner a mortall conflict betweene the King and the Barons, occasioned by *Piers Gaveston*, who was banished out of the kingdome of England the morrow after the feast of Saint *John Baptist* his Nativitie: and he passed over sea into Ireland about the feast of the Saints *Quirita* and *Julita*, together with his wife and sister, the Countesse of *Glocester*, and came to *Dublin* with great pomp, and there made his abode.

Moreover, *William Mac-Baltor*, a strong thiefe and an Incendiarie, was condemned, and had judgement in the Court of the Lord the King in *Dublin* before the chiefe Justice Lord *John Wogan*, upon the twelfth day preceding the Calends of

Septem-

September : and was drawne at horses tailes unto the gallows, and there hanged according to his deserts.

Item, in the same yeere there was erected a certaine cisterne of marble, to receive water from the conduit head, in the Citie of Dublin, such an one as never was there before, by the dispose and providence of Master John Decer then Maior of the Citie of Dublin, who of his owne money defraied the charges for the building thereof : and the same John a little before the time caused a certaine bridge to be made beyond the river *Aven-Liffy*, neere unto the Priorie of St. Wolstan : also the Chappell of Saint Marie to the Friers Minours, and therelieth he buried : the Chappell like wife of Saint Marie, to the Hospitall of Saint Johns in Dublin, &c.

Item, the same John Decer was very beneficiall to the Covent of the Friers Preachers in Dublin : to wit, in making one Colunne of stone in the Church, and giving one great broad altar-stone, with the ornaments thereto belonging.

More, upon the sixth day of the weeke hee entertained the Friers, and tabled them at his owne charges (thus say Elders to the younger) in regard of charitie.

More, in the Autumne, Lord *John Wogan* sailed over the sea unto the Parliament of England : in whose place the Lord *William Burke* was made Custos of Ireland.

Item, the same yeere, in the Vigill of Simon and Jude the Apostles day, the Lord Roger Mortimer arrived in Ireland with his wedded wife, the right heire of *Meib*, the daughter of the Lord Peter, sonne of Sir Gefferie *Genevil* : they entred I say into Ireland, and took seisin of *Meib*, Sir Gefferie *Genevil* yeelding unto them, and entering into the order of the Friers Preachers at *Trym*, the morrow after the day of St. Edward the Archbishop.

Also, *Dermot Oadymoy* was slaine at *Tully* by the servants of Sir Peter or Piers *Gaveston*.

More, Richard *Burgo* or *Burk* Earle of Ulster kept a great feast at Whitfontide in *Trym*, and dubbed Walter *Lacie* and Hugh *Lacie* Knights. And on the even of the Assumption, the Earle of Ulster came against Piers *Gaveston* Earle of Cornwall, at *Tradag*. And at the same time he went backe againe, and tooke his passage into Scotland.

Item, in the same yeere Maud the Earle of Ulsters daughter sailed over into England, to contract marriage with the Earle of Gloucester : and soone after within one moneth the Earle and she espoused one the other.

Also, Maurice *Caunton* slew Richard *Talon* : and the Roches killed the foresaid Maurice.

Item, Sir David *Caunton* is hanged at Dublin.

Item, Odo the sonne of Catholl *O-Conghir* slew Odo *O-Conghir* King of *Connaght*.

Item, *Athi* is burnt by the Irish.

Item, Piers *Gaveston* subdued the *O-Brynnies*, Irishmen, and re-edified the new Castle of Mackingham, and the Castle of Kemny : he cut downe and cleasfed the Pas betweene Kemny Castle and Glyndelaugh, mawgre the Irish, and so departed and offered in the Church of Saint Kimny.

The same yeere Lord Piers *Gaveston* passed the seas over into England on the Vigill of S. John Baptists Nativite.

Item, the wife of the Earle of Ulsters sonne, daughter unto the Earle of Gloucester, upon the 15. day of October arrived in Ireland.

Also on Christmas even the Earle of Ulster returned out of England, and landed at the Port of *Tradag*.

More, on the feast of the purification of the blessed Virgin Mary, Sir John *Boneville* neere unto the towne of *Arfoll* was slain by Sir Arnold *Pover* and his complices, and buried at *Athy* in the Church of the Friers Preachers.

Item, a Parliament was held at *Kilkenny*, in the Outas of the purification of the blessed Virgin Mary, by the Earle of Ulster, and John Wogan Lord Justice of Ireland, and other Lords : wherein was appeased grear discord risen betweene certaine Lords of Ireland :

A Ireland : and many Provisoies in maner of Statutes were ordained, commodious and profitable to the land of Ireland if they had been observed.

Item, shortly after that time returned Sir *Edmund Borellor* out of England, who there at London was before Knighted.

Item, there crossed the seas into England out of Ireland, the Earle of Ulster, Roger Mortimer, and Sir John Fitz-Thomas.

Item, Sir *Thiobald Merdon* died.

MCCCX. King Edward and Sir Piers *Gaveston* tooke their journey toward Scotland, to fight against Robert *Bru*.

Item, in the said yeere great dearth there was of corn in Ireland : aneranc of wheat was sold for 10. shillings and above.

Also the Bakers of Dublin for their false waight of bread, suffered a new kinde of torment, which was never seen there before : for that on S. *Sampson* the Bishops day they were drawne upon hurdles through the streets of the Citie at horse-tailes.

More, in the Abbey of S. Thomas Martyr at Dublin died Sir *Neile Bruin* Knight, Echeator to the Lord the King in Ireland : whose bodie was committed to the earth at the Friers minors, with so great a pompe of tapers and waxe lights, as the like was never seene before in Ireland.

The same yeere a Parliament was holden at Kildare, where Sir Arnold *Pover* was acquit for the death of the Lord *Boneville*, because he had done this deed in his owne defence.

Likewise, on S. *Patricks* day, by assent of the Chapter, M. *Alexander Bickenore* was elected Archbishop of Dublin.

Item, the Lord Roger Mortimer returned into Ireland within the Octaves of the Nativite of the blessed Virgin Marie.

Also the same yeere the Lord *Hermie Lacie* Earle of Lincoln died.

MCCCXI. In Thomond at Bonnorathie there was a wonderfull and miraculous discomfytur given by the Lord Richard Clare unto the side of the Earle of Ulster : Which Lord Richard aforesaid tooke prisoner in the field the Lord *William Burke* and John the sonne of the Lord Walter *Lacie*, and many others : In which battaile verily there were slaine a great number as well of the English as the Irish, the 13. day before the Calends of June.

Item, *Tassagard* and *Kathcance* were invaded by the robbers, to wit, the *O-Brynes* and *O-Torbiles* the morrow after the Nativite of S. John Baptiste. Whereupon soon after in Autumne, there was a great armie assembled in *Leinster*, to make head and fight against the said robbers, lurking in Glindelory and in other places full of woods.

Also, a Parliament was holden at London in August, betweene the King and the Barons, to treat about the State of the kingdome, and of the Kings household, according to the ordinance of fixe Bishops, fixe Earles, and fixe Barons, as they might best provide for the good of the Realme.

Item, on the second day before the Ides of November, the Lord Richard Clare slew fixe hundred of Galegalaghes.

More, on All-Saints day next going before, Piers *Gaveston* was banished the Realme of England by the Earles and Barons : and many good Statutes necessarie for the commonwealth were by the same Lords made. Which Piers abjured the Realme of England about the Feast of All-Saints ; and entred into Flanders : foure moneths after the said Piers returned presently upon the Epiphanie, and by stealth entred into England, keeping close unto the Kings side, so that the Barons could not easily come neere unto him. And hee went with the King to Yorke, making his abode therein in the Lent : whereupon the Bishops, Earles, and Barons of England came to London for to treat about the State of the kingdome : for feare lest by occasion of Piers his returne, the Common wealth should bee troubled with commotions.

Item,

Item, Sir John Cogan, Sir Walter Faunt, and Sir John Fitz-Rerie Knights died, A and were buried in the Church of the Friars Preachers at Dublin.

Item, John Mac. Goghedan is slaine by O-molmoy.

Item, William Roch died at Dublin with the shot of an arrow by an Irish mountaineer.

Item, Sir Eustace Power Knight died.

Item, in the Vigill of Saint Peters Chaire began a riot in Urgaly by Robert Verdon.

Item, Donat O-Brene is traiterously slaine by his owne men in Tothomon:

MCCXXII. Sir Peter or Piers Gaveston entred the castle of Scardeburgh, re- B sisting the Barons. But soone after the Calends of June hee yeelded himselfe unto Sir *Anmare Valence*, who had besieged him, yet upon certaine conditions named before hand: who brought him toward London. But by the way he was taken prisoner at Dedington by the Earle of Warwicke, and brought to Warwicke: whereupon, after counsell taken by the Earles and Barons, he lost his head the thirteenth day before the Calends of July: whose bodie lieth buried in the conventuall Church of the Friars Preachers at Langley.

Item, John Wogan Lord Justice of Ireland led forth an armie, to bridle the malice of Robert Verdon and his abettors: which was miserably defeated the sixth day before the Ides of July: in which fight were slain *Nicolas Avenel*, *Patrick Roch*, and many others. For this fact the said Robert Verdon, and many of his complices yeelded themselves unto the Kings prison at Dublin, in expectance of favour and pardon.

Also, on Thursday, the morrow after Saint Lucie Virgin, in the sixth yeere of King *Edward*, the Moone was wonderfully seene of divers colours: on which day determined it was, that the order of Templars should be abolished for ever.

More, in Ireland Lord *Edmund Botiller* was made the Lievtenant of Lord John Wogan Justice of Ireland: which *Edmund* in the Lent following besieged the O-*Brynges* in *Glindelorie*, and compelled them to yeeld, yea and brought them almost to confusion, unless they had returned the sooner unto the peace of the Lord the D King.

Item, the same yeere, on the morrow after Saint Dominickes day, Lord *Maurice Fitz-Thomas* espoused *Katherine* daughter of the Earle of Ulster, at Green-castle. And *Thomas Fitz-John* espoused another daughter of the same Earle, the morrow after the Assumption, in the same place.

Also, the Sunday after the feast of the exaltation of the holy Crosse, the daughter of the Earle of Gloucester, wife to the Lord *John Burke*, was delivered of a sonne.

MCCXXIII. Frier Roland Joice Primate of Ardmach arrived at the Iland of Houth the morrow after the annuntiation of the blessed Virgin Marie: and rising in the night by stealth, tooke up his Crosier, and advanced it as farre as to the Priorie of E Grace Dieu: whom there encountred certaine of the Archbishop of Dublins servants, debasing and putting downe that Crosier, and the Primate himselfe of Ardmagh they chased with disgrace and confusion out of Leinster.

Item, a Parliament was holden at London, wherein little or nothing was done as touching Peace: from which Parliament the King departed, and tooke his journey into France, at the mandate of the King of France: and the King of England with many of his Nobles tooke the badge of the Crosse.

Also the Lord John Fitz-Thomas knighted *Nicolas Fitz-Maurice*, and Robert Clonhull at Adare in Mounster.

More, on the last day of May Robert Brus sent certaine Gallies to the parts of Ul- F ster with his rovers to make spoile: whom the men of Ulster resisted and manfully chased away. It is said that the same Robert arrived with the licence of the Earle to take truce.

Item, in the same summer Master John Decer, a Citizen of Dublin, caused a need-
of
farie bridge to bee made from without the towne of Batiboght, unto the Causey

A of the *Mal-poule* of *Clontarf*, whereas before time the passengers that way were much endangered. But after he had defraied great charges thereabout, by reason of a mightie inundation and flood the bridge with the arches fell downe.

Also, Master John Leeks Achbishop of *Dublin* in the feast of St. *Laurence* ended this mortall life. Then in a schisme and division of sides were elected for to bee Archbishop of *Dublin*, Master *Walter Thornbury* the Kings Chancellor in Ireland, and Master *Alexander Bicknore* Treasurer of Ireland: but *Walter Thornbury* was drowned, and many others, to wit, about one hundred fiftie and fixe took the sea, and the night following were all drowned. At the time of the foresaid Walters death, B Alexander Bicknore expected at home the Popes favour. The same Alexander was made Archbishop of *Dublin*. Item, the Lord *Miles Verdon* espoused the daughter of the Lord *Richard Excester*. Item, the same yeere the Lord *Robert Bryu* overthrew the Castle of *Man*, and vanquished the Lord *Donegan*, O. Dowill on S. *Barnabes* day. And the Lord John Burck, heire unto *Richard* Earle of Ulster, died at Galwey on the feast of St. *Marcellus* and *Marcellianus*.

Also, the Lord Edmund Botiller dubbed thirtie Knights in *Dublin* Castle on Sunday and St. Michaels day.

MCCXXIV. The Knights Hospitallers had the lands given unto them of the Templars in Ireland.

C Item, Sir John Parice is slaine at Pount. Also, Lord Theobald Verdon came Lord Justice of Ireland on Saint Sylvesters day.

Item, Sir Gefferey Genevile a Frier died the twelfth day before the Calends of November, and was buried in his owne order of the Friars Preachers of Trym: who was Lord also of the libertie of Meth.

More, in the same yeere, and upon S. Matthew the Apostles day, Loughfeudy was burnt: and on the friday following the Lord Edmund Botiller received his Commission to be Lord Justice of Ireland.

MCCXXV. On St. John Baptists day the Earle of Gloucester had his death wound given him, and died, when many others, as it were, without number, were slaine in D Scortland, and more taken prisoners by the Scots. For which cause the Scots became bold, and carried their heads aloft, and gat good land and tributes out of Northumberland.

Item, shortly after this came the Scots and besieged the towne of *Carlyle*, where James *Douglas* was squized to death by misfortune of a certaine wall falling upon him.

The same yeere the Scots not contented with their owne land, arrived in the North part of Ireland at Clondonne, with fixe thousand fighting men and expert warriours: to wit, Edward *Bru* whole brother to Robert King of Scots, and with him the Earle of Morreff, John Meneteth, John Steward, the Lord John Cambel, *Thomas Randolfe*, *Fergus Andressan*, John *Bosco*, and John *Biffer*, who seized Ulster into their hands, and drave the Lord Thomas *Mandevile* and other liege men out of their owne possessions.

The Scots entred Ireland first on St. Augustines day, that was the Englishmens Apostle, in the moneth of May, neere unto *Crag-fergu* in *Ulster*: betweene whom and the English the first conflict was neere unto Binne, in which the Earle of *Ulster* was put to flight: there were taken prisoners *William Bark*, *John Stanton*, and many others, and the Scots having slaine a number of the English, prevailed and had the day.

The second conflict was at *Kinrys* in *Meth*, wherein Roger Mortimer with his fol-
lowers was put to flight.

The third conflict was at Sketheris hard by *Arstoll*, the morrow after the conversion of S. Paul, wherein the Englishmen were chased, and the Scots had the better hand. And the foresaid *Edward Bru* soone after the feast of Philip and Jacob caused himselfe to be crowned King of Ireland: and they tooke Greene Castle, and left their men there, whom the Dublinians quickly after expelled, and recovered the said

saïd Castle to the Kings behoof, and finding Sir Robert Couraghe the Keeper of the Castle there, brought him with them to Dublin: who being imprifoned and put to short diet, ended his dayes.

Item, upon Peter and Paul the Apostles day came the Scots before Dundalk, and won the towne, spoiled and burnt it, killing as many as made resistance: and a great part of *Urgale* was burnt by the Scots. The Church of the blessed Virgin Mary in *Atterish*, being full of men, women, and little children, was burnt by the Scots and Irish.

In the same yeere the Lord *Edmund Botiller*, Justice of Ireland, about the feast of S. Mary Maudlen, assembled together a mightie power out of *Mounster*, *Leinster*, and other parts: and the Earle of *Ulster* on the contrarie side, as it were, comming from the parts of *Connaght* with an infinite army, met all together about *Dundalk*, and consulted among themselves to kill the Scots; but how it is not knowne: the Scots fled, otherwise, as hope was, they had been taken prisoners.

Which done, the Earle of *Ulster*, with the foresaid Justice and other great Lords, tooke in hand, after they had slaine the Scots, to bring the Lord *Edward le Brus* quicke or dead to Dublin: which Earle followed them in chase as far as to the water of *Branne*, and afterwards the said Earle retired backe toward *Coyners*: which the said *Brus* perceiving, warily passed over the said water, and followed him: whom with some other of the Earles side hee put to flight, having wounded *George Roth*, and slaine others, namely, Sir *John Stanton*, and *Roger de sancho Bosco*, that is, *Holly-wood*: likewise on the part of *Brus* many were slaine, and the Lord *William Burk* was taken prisoner the tenth day of the moneth of September: and the Earle was defeated neere unto *Coyners*: and then the Irish of *Connaght* and *Meth*, rose up in armes against the King, and against the Earle of *Ulster*, and burnt the Castle of *Artholon* and of *Raudon*, and many other Castles in the said war of *Coyners*. The Baron of *Donell* bare himselfe there right valiantly: but he lost much goods there, and the said Scots manfully chased them as far as to *Cragfergus*: and there on the Earls side they fled, and some entred the Castle and valiantly kept it: and afterwards came mariners from the havens and Port townes of England, and on a night surprised the Scots, and slew fortie of them, and had away their tents, and many things else. And the morrow after the exaltation of the holy Crosse, the Earle of *Morreff* passed the seas into Scotland, and took the Lord *William Brus* with him, seeking for more warlike and armed men, with foure Pirats ships full of the goods of Ireland: whereof one was sunke; all which time the said *Brus* laid siege to the Castle of *Cragfergus*. At the same time, *Carhil Roge* razed three Castles of the Earles of *Ulster* in *Connaught*, and many townes in the same *Connaught*: he burnt and sacked. And at the same time the said mariners went to the said Castle, and the Lords there skirmished, and in the meane time slew many Scots; at which time *Richard Lande O-ferivill* was by a certaine Irishman slaine.

Item, afterwards upon St. Nicolas day the said *Brus* departed out of *Cragfergus*, unto whom the Earle of *Morreff* presented himselfe with 500. men unto the parts about *Dundalk*: they came together: and to them many fled, and some gave unto them their right hands: and from thence they passe on to *Nobee*, where they left many of their men about the feast of S. Andrew the Apostle: and *Brus* himselfe burnt *Kenlys*, in *Meth*, and *Grenard Abbey*: and the said Monastery he rifled and spoiled of all the goods in it: Also *Finnagh* and *New-castle* he burnt, and all that country: and they kept their Christmas at *Loughfudy*, and then burnt it. And after this they marched forward by *Tormoy* unto *Rathymegan* and *Kildare*, and the parts about *Tristeldermor*, and *Athy* and *Reban*, not without losse of their men. And then came *Brus* to *Skeshby*, neere *Arscoll* in *Leinster*: where there encountered him in fight the Lord *Edmund Botiller* Justice of Ireland, and Sir *John Fitz-Thomas*, and *Thomas Arnald Power*, and other Noble-men of *Leinster* and of *Mounster*: inso much as one of those Lords, with his army, was sufficient to vanquish the said *Edw.* and his forces. But there arose a discord among them, and so being disordered and in confusion, they leave the field unto the

A the said *Edward*, according to that which is written, *Every kingdome divided in it selfe shalbe made desolate*. There also was slaine a noble esquire, and faithfull to the King and the Realme, *Haymund Grace*, and with him Sir *William Prendregest*, Knight. On the Scots part were slaine Sir *Fergus Andressan*, Sir *Walter Morrey*, and many others, whose bodies were buried at *Athy*, in the Covent of the Friars Preachers.

Afterwards, the said *Brus* in his returne toward *Meth* burnt the castle of *Loy*: and then the said Scots depart away from *Kenlis* in *Meth*, against whom the Lord *Roger Mortimer* came with a great armie, well neere 15000. but, as it is thought, not true; and faithfull among themselves, but now confederate with the Lord *Roger*, who about three of the clock began to fle, and turned their backs: and principally the *Lacies*, leaving the Lord *Roger* alone with a few: whom it behoved then to fle toward *Dublin*, and to Sir *Walter Cusake* at the Castle of *Trim*, leaving with the Scots that country, and the towne of *Kenlis*.

Also, at the same time the Irish of the South, to wit, the O-Tothiles and the O-brynnes, burnt all the South-country, namely, *Arche*, *Newcastle*, *Bree*, and all the villages adjoining. And the O-Morghes fired and wasted part of the *Leys* in *Leinster*, whom for the most part the Lord *Edmund Botiller* Justice of Ireland slew, whose heads to the number of fourescore were brought to the castle of *Dublin*.

Item, in the same yeere about the feast of the purification of the blessed Virgin Marie, certain Lords of Ireland, and the Lord *Fitz-Thomas*, the Lord *Richard Clare*, Lord *John Pover*, and the Lord *Arnald Pover*, for to establish peace & greater securitie with the King of England, came to Sir *John Hothom*, assigned there by the said King of England, which said Lords and Nobles sware to hold with the King of England come life come death, and to their power to quiet the country and make peace, and to kill the Scots. For the performance whereof by the leave and helpe of God, they gave hostages and so returned: which forme if other Nobles of the land of Ireland would not keepe, they were generally held for the Kings enemies.

Item, there died Sir *John Biffer*. And the Church of the new towne of *Leys* with the steeple and bellfray was by the Scots burnt. The Scots won the Castle of *Northburgh* in *Ulster*.

Also *Fidelmic O-Conghir* King of *Connaght* slew *Rorke* the sonne of *Cathol O-Conghir*.

More, Sir *William Maundeve* died: and the Bishop of *Conere* fled to the Castle of *Crag-fergus*, and his Bishoprick was liable to an interdiction: and Sir *Hugh Antonie* is killed in *Connaght*.

Item, in the same yeere, on Saint *Valentines* day, the Scots abode neere *Geshil* and *Offaly*: and the armie of the English about the parts of *Kildare*: and the Scots endured so great famine, that many of them were starved to death: and for the same cause they tooke their way closely toward *Fowier* in *Meth*. The Sunday following so feeble they were, what with hunger, and what with travaile, that most of them died.

And afterwards the Nobles came unto the Parliament, and did nothing there; but as they returned, spoiled all the country: and the Lord *Walter Lacie* came to *Dublin*, for to cleere himselfe of an imputation (touching his credit) laied upon him, and to tender hostages unto the Lord the King, as other Nobles had done: and the same time *Edward Brus* peaceably abode in *Ulster*.

Item, the O-Tothiles and O-Brynnes, the Archibaulds and Harolds conspired and banded together: the towne of *Wicklo*, and the whole country they laied waste.

And in the first weeke of Lent the Earle of *Morreff* sailed over into Scotland, and *Brus* held plects in *Ulster*, and caused many to be hanged.

Also in the midst of Lent *Brus* held Plects, and slew the *Logans*, and took Sir *Alan Fitz-warin*, and carried him into Scotland.

* Also in the same yeere *Fennyngber O-Conghir* slew *Cale-Rothe*, and with him of *A*
 * *Galloglaghes* and others about three hundred. The same yeere in Mid-Lent wheat
 * was sold for 18. shillings, and at Easter following for 11. shillings.

* MCCCXVI. Lord Thomas Mandevile, with many others, came from *Tredagh* to
 * *Crag-fergus* upon Maunday Thursday, and joynd battaile with the Scots, put them
 * to flight, and slew thirtie of the Scots: and afterward on Easter even the said Lord
 * Thomas with his men charged upon the Scots, and slew many of them about the
 * Calends: and there was slain the said Lord Thomas Maundevile in his own country,
 * in defence of his right.

* Item, in the parts of Connaght many Irish were slaine by Lord *Richard Clare*, and *B*
 * Lord *Richard Bermingham*.

* Item, on Saturday after the Lords *Ascension*, *Donnyger O-Bryne* a strong thiefe,
 * with twelve of his confederates, was slain by Sir William Comyn and his followers,
 * keepers of the peace, whose heads were carried to Dublin.

* Item, the Dundalkers made a rode against O-Hanlan, and slew of the Irish about
 * two hundred: and *Robert Verdon* a warlike esquire there lost his life.

* Item, at Whitsonde the same yeere *Richard Bermingham* slew of the Irish in
 * Mounster about three hundred or more: and afterwards at the feast of the Nativite
 * of S. John Baptist came Brus to the Castle of *Crag-fergus*, and commanded the kee-
 * pers to render up the Castle unto him, according to the covenant between them made, *C*
 * as he said: who answered, that they ought indeed so to doe, and willed him to send
 * thirtie of his men about him, and required that he would grant them within life and
 * limbe; who did so: but after they had received thirtie Scots into the Castle, they
 * shut them up and kept them in prison.

* At the same time the Irish of O-mayl went toward the parts of Tullogh, & fought
 * a battell: whereupon of the Irish were slaine about foure hundred, whose heads were
 * sent to Dublin: and wonders were afterwards seene there. The dead, as it were, arose
 * and fought one with another, and cried out *Fennokabo*, which was their signal. And
 * afterward, about the feast of the translation of S. Thomas, there were rigged and made
 * ready eight ships, and set out from *Tredagh* to *Crag-fergus* with victuals. Which *D*
 * were by the Earle of Ulster much troubled for the delivery of William Burk, who
 * had been taken with the Scots: and the Saturday following there were made friends
 * and united at *Dublin* the Earle of Ulster and the Lord John Fitz-Thomas, and many
 * of the Nobles sworne and confederate to live and die for the maintenance of the
 * peace of Ireland.

* The same yeere newes came out of Connaght, that O-Conghir slew many of the
 * English, to wit, Lord *Stephen* of Excester, *Miles Cogan*, and many of the Barries and
 * of the Lawlies, about fourescore.

* Item, the weeke after Saint Laurence feast, there arose in *Connaght* foure Irish Prin-
 * ces to make warre against the English: against whom came the Lord William Burk, *E*
 * the Lord *Richard Bermingham*, the Lord of *Anry* with his retinue of the country, and
 * of the same Irish about eleven thousand fell upon the edge of the sword neere unto
 * *Anry*; which town was walled afterwards with the mony raised of armor and spoile
 * gotten from the Irish: because every one of the English that had double armours of
 * the Irish, gave the one halfe deale toward the walls of the towne *Anry*. Slaine were
 * there *Fidelmic O-Conghir*, a petty King or Prince of *Connaght*, & O-Kelley, and ma-
 * ny other Princes or Potentates. John Husee a butcher of *Anry* fought there, who the
 * same night at the request of his Lord of *Anry* stood among the dead to seek out and
 * discover O-Kelley: which O-Kelley with his *Cofreil* or esquire rose out of their lur-
 * king holes, and cried unto the foresaid man, to wit Husee, come with mee and I will
 * make thee a great Lord in my country. And Husee answered, I will not goe with
 * thee, but thou shalt goe to my Lord *Richard Bermingham*. Then said O-Kelley,
 * Thou hast but one servant with thee, and I have a doughtie esquire, therefore
 * come with mee that thou maist bee safe: unto whom his owne man also said,
 * Agree and goe away with O-Kelley, that wee may be saved and enriched, because
 * they

* they are stronger than we. But the said John Husee first killed his owne servant, and
 * O-Kelley and his Esquire: and cut off all their three heads, and carried them to his
 * Lord *Richard Bermingham*: and that *Bermingham* gave unto the said John Husee
 * faire lands, and dubbed him Knight, as he well deserved.

The same yeere about the feast of S. Laurence came O-Hanlan to *Dundalk*, for to
 * destitine, and the *Dundalkers* with their men killed a number.

* Item, on Monday next before the feast of the nativite of Saint Mary, came *David*
 * O-Tohill with foure more, and hid himselfe secretly all night long in *Coleyn* wood:
 * which the *Dublinians* and Sir William Comyn perceiving, went forth and manfully
 * B pursued them for fixe leagues, and slew of them about seventeen, and wounded many
 * to death.

Also, there ran rumors to *Dublin* that the Lord Robert Brus King of Scotland en-
 * tred Ireland to aid Edward Brus his brother, and the Castle of *Crag-fergus* in Ulster
 * was besieged by the foresaid Scots. The Monasteries of St. *Patrick of Dune*, and of
 * *Seball*, and many other houses as well of Monkes as of regular preaching Friars and
 * Minors, were spoiled in Ulster by the Scots.

* Item, the Lord William Burk, leaving his son for an hostage in Scotland, is set free.
 * The Church of Brought in Ulster being in manner full of folke of both sexes, is burnt
 * by the Scots and Irish of Ulster.

* At the same time newes came from *Crag-fergus*, that those which kept the Castle,
 * for default of victuals, did eat hides and leather, yea and eight Scots who before were
 * taken prisoners: great pity and griefe that no man relieved such.

And the Friday following newes were brought that Thomas the sonne of the Earle
 * of Ulster was dead.

Also the Sunday following the feast of the nativite of the blessed Virgin, died Lord
 * John Fitz-Thomas at *Laraghbrine* neere unto *Mayneib*, and he was buried at *Kildare*
 * among the Friars Minors. Of which Lord John Fitz-Thomas, it is said, that a little
 * before his death he was created Earle of *Kildare*: after whom succeeded his sonne and
 * heire the Lord Thomas Fitz-John, a prudent and wise personage.

* And afterwards newes came that the Castle of *Crag-fergus* was rendred to the
 * Scots, and granted there was to the keepers of it life and limbe.

Also upon the day of the exaltation of the holy Crosse, *Conghar* and *Mac-keley*
 * were slaine, with five hundred of the Irish, by the Lord William Burke and Richard
 * Bermingham in *Connaght*.

* Item, on Monday before *Holloughmas* happened a great slaughter of the Scots in
 * Ulster, by John Loggan, and Hugh Bisset; to wit, one hundred with double armour,
 * and two hundred with single armour.

The number of those men of armes that were slaine in all, was three hundred be-
 * side footmen.

* And afterward, in the Vigill of Saint Edmund King there fell a great tempest of
 * winde and raine, which overthrew many houses, and the Steeple of Saint *Trinitie*
 * Church in *Dublin*, and did much harme on land and sea. Also in the Vigill of S. *Ni-*
 * *cholas*, Sir Alan Stewart, taken prisoner in Ulster by John Loggan and Sir John San-
 * *dale*, was brought unto the Castle of *Dublin*.

In the same yeere newes arrived out of England, that the Lord King of England
 * and the Earle of Lancaster were at variance, and that they were desirous one to sur-
 * prize the other: for which cause the whole land was in great trouble.

* Item, in the same yeere, about the feast of St. Andrew the Apostle, sent there were
 * to the Court of Rome the Lord Hugh Despencer, & the Lord *Bartholomew Baldesmere*,
 * F the Bishop of Worcester, and the Bishop of Ely about important affaires of the Lord
 * King of England, for Scotland: who returned into England about the feast of the pu-
 * rification of the blessed Virgin Mary.

Also, after the said feast the *Lacies* came to *Dublin*, and procured an inquisi-
 * tion to prove that the Scots by their meanes came not into Ireland: which inquisi-
 * tion acquitted them. Whereupon they had a charter of the Lord the King, of peace

and upon the Sacrament given unto them, they tooke an oath to keepe the peace of A
the Lord King of England, and to their power to destroy the Scots.

And afterwards, even in the same yere after the feast of Shrovetide, the Scots
came secretly as farre as to Slane, with twenty thousand armed men; and the armie
of Ulster joynd with them, who spoiled the whole countrey before them.

And after this, on munday next before the feast of *S. Mathias* the Apostle, the Earle
of Ulster was taken in the Abbey of *St. Mary*, by the Maior of the Citie of Dublin,
to wit, Robert Notingham, and brought to the castle of Dublin, where he was kept
in hold a long time, and the chamber wherein hee lay was burned, and seven of the
said Earles men were there killed.

In the same weeke, and upon the Vigill of *St. Mathias*, came Brus with his armie B
toward Dublin: and because he had quickly intelligence of the said Earles apprehen-
sion, he tooke his journey toward the castle of Knocke, and entred the said castle, and
tooke the Lord Baron of the same, namely, the Lord Hugh Tirell and his wife, who
for a peece of money were delivered.

And the same night, by common consent, the men of Dublin for feare of the Scots
burnt *St. Thomas* street; and with the said fire the Church of *St. John*, with the chap-
pell of *S. Marie Maudlen* was by casualtie burnt: yea and all the suburbs of Dublin
were set on fire, together with the Monasterie of *S. Mary*, and the Church of *St. Pa-
tricke* in Dublin was by the said villaines spoiled.

Item, the said Maior with the Communalitie destroyed the Church of *St. Saviour*, C
which is the place of the Friers Preachers: and carried away the stones of the same
place toward the building of the Citie wall, which hee then enlarged on the North
side above the Key: because the wall at first went along by the Church of *St. Owen*,
where a tower is to be seene beyond the gate; and in the Vintners street appeareth
another gate. But afterwards the King of England commanded the Maior and Com-
munality to make a covent Church of Friers as before. And after the feast of *Saint
Matthias*, Brus understanding that the Citie was strongly walled and fortified, took
his journey toward the Salmon leape, and there they pitched their tents, namely,
Robert Brus King of the Scots, Edward Brus, the Earle of Morrey, *John de Men-
teith*, the Lord *John Steward*, the Lord Philip Mountbray, and abode there foure
daies, and burnt part of the towne, brake downe the Church and spoiled it, and after-
wards marched on toward the Naas, and the *Lacies* against their oath conducted
them and gave them counsell: and Sir *Hugh Canon* appointed *Wadin White* his
wives brother to be their guide through the countrey, and they came to the Naas,
and sacked the towne, brake into the Churches, opened the tombes in the Church-
yard to seeke for treasure, and did much mischief while they remained there for two
daies together. And afterwards they went on toward *Tristeldermot*, in the second
week of Lent, and destroyed the Friers minors, the books, vestiments, and other or-
naments they had away, and then departed from thence to *Baligaveran*: and from E
Baligaveran leaving the towne of *Kilkenny*, they came as far as to *Kallan*, about the
feast of *St. Gregorie* the Pope.

At the same time there came letters from the Lord Edmund Botiller Justice of Ire-
land, the Lord Thomas Fitz-John then Earle of Kildare, the Lord Richard Clare,
the Lord *Arnald Pover*, and the Lord Maurice Fitz-Thomas, for the delivery of the
Earle of Ulster by mainprise, and by a writ of the Kings: about which nothing was
then done.

And afterward the Ulster men came with an armie, about two thousand, and craved
the Kings aide for to destroy the Scots, as they said: for which cause the Kings stan-
dard was delivered unto them: and when they had it, they did more harme than the F
Scots, and fell to eating of flesh all Lent long, and wasted in manner the whole coun-
trei, whereby they purchased the curse of God and man.

Item, a great overthrow was given unto the Irish, neere unto the desert of *Dermot*,
that is, *Trofil-Dermot*, by Edmund Botiller.

Also the same Edmund Botiller Lord Justice of Ireland for the time being, gave a
great

A great overthrow to O-Morgh at Balilethan. Then Brus with the Scots marched for-
ward as farre as Limericke. But after that the bravest forces of the English in Ireland
were assembled together at Ledyng, they retired privily by night from the castle of
Conniger.

And about Palme-sunday there came newes to Dublin, that the Scots were at
Kenlys in Offory, and the Nobles of Ireland at Kilkenny, and there levied a power to
set forward against Brus: and the munday following the King gave commandment
to the men of Ulster to speed them against the Scots, whose leader and head the
Earle of Kildare, to wit Thomas Fitz-John was appointed to bee: and so they put
B themselves on their journey: and then was Brus at Cahill, and hee marched from
thence to Nanath, and there abode, and all the lands of the Lord Butler hee burnt
and destroyed quite.

MCCCXVII. Upon Mandie thursday the Lord Edm. Botiller the Lord Justice of Ire-
land, and Sir Thomas Fitz-John Earle of Kildare, because the King gave unto them
the jurisdiction and liberty of the countie of Kildare, also Richard Clare with the ar-
my of Ulster, Sir Arnold Pover Baron of Donnoyll, Maurice Roch-fort, Thomas Fitz-
Moris, and the *Caunions* with their retinue assembled themselves together about the
Scots: and for one whole weeke abode about them, and did nothing: whose forces
were reckoned to be about 30000. strong. And afterwards upon thursday in Easter
C weeke, arrived Roger Mortimer at *Togball* with the Kings power, because hee was
Lord Justice, and the munday following speedily took his journey toward the army,
and sent his letters unto Edmund Botiller late (as it hath beene said) Justice, that hee
should attempt nothing against the Scots before his comming. But before that Mor-
timer came, Brus was forewarned by some to depart from thence: who the night
following tooke his journey toward Kildare, and afterwards in the weeke following
every one of the English returned hence into their countrey: and the army of Ulster
came to the Naas.

And at the same time two messengers were dispatched from the city of Dublin,
who passed the seas toward the King of England to aske advice, and to advertise as
D touching the State of Ireland, and about the deliverance of the Earle of Ulster.

Also at the same time the Lord Roger Mortimer Justice of Ireland, and the Nobles
of Ireland were at Kilkenny to dispose of Brus, but nothing effected they there at that
time.

And about a moneth after Easter Brus advanced with his army about 4. leagues
neere unto Trim in a certain wood, and there staid a weeke and more to refresh his
men, who with hunger and travaile were almost perished, and for that many of them
died there.

And afterwards on Philip and Jacob the Apostles day the said Brus entred on his
journey toward Ulster: and after the said feast came the Lord Roger Mortimer Justice
E of Ireland to Dublin, accompanied with the Lord John Wogan, and Sir Fulk Warin,
with thirtie Knights and their traines: and they held a Parliament with all the Lords
and Potentates of the land at *Kylmainan*; but did nothing there save onely treat a-
bout the deliverance of the Earle of Ulster.

And on the sunday before the feast of our Lords ascension, there repaired again unto
the Parliament at Dublin the said Nobles of the land, and there they delivered the
Earle of Ulster by mainprise and hostages, and upon an oath. And the said Earle ha-
ving an oath tendered unto him, swore upon the Sacrament that hee would never
worke or procure by himselfe or by any of his friends and followers, harme or grie-
vance upon the occasion of his apprehension unto the Citizens of Dublin, but that
F which himselfe might by order of law obtaine or get against the offenders or trans-
gressours in that behalf, and thereupon hee had time and day untill the feast of the
Nativitie of *S. John Baptist*: at which day he came not.

Also in the same yere Corne and other victuals were exceeding deere. A Cra-
nok of wheat was sold for three and twenty shillings, and wine for eight denires: and
the whole land in maner was wasted by the Scots and Ulster-men: yea many house-
holders

holders, and such as had sustained and relieved a number of folk were driven to begge: A
and a number were famished. So great also was the death and dearth together, that the
poore were pined with famine, and many died.

At the same time came messengers to Dublin out of England, with grants of pardon which they had at their will and pleasure: but before their coming, the foresaid
Earle was delivered. And at the feast of Pentecost, Mortimer the Lord chiefe Justice
took his journey towards *Tredagh*, and from thence to *Trim*, and sent his letters for
the *Lacies* to repaire unto him, who contemptuously refused to come.

And afterwards Sir *Hugh Crofts* Knight was sent unto the *Lacies* to treat about a
peace, who by them was slain, the more the pity. And after that Mortimer L. Justice B
assembled his army against the *Lacies*, who seized upon their goods, cattell, and treasure,
and brought them to finall destruction, slew many of their men, and chased them
into the parts of *Connaght*.

And it was said, that Sir *Walter Lacie* went forth as farre as to *Ulster* to seeke
Brum.

Item, in the towne of *St. Cinere* in *Flanders*, about the feast of Pentecost, the
Lord *Aumar Valence* and his sonne were taken prisoners, and conveyed into *Almaini*.
And the same yeere, on Munday after the feast of the nativite of *S. John Baptiste*, the
Potentates of *Ireland* assembled themselves to the Parliament at *Dublin*: and there
was the Earle of *Ulster* enlarged, who tooke his oath, and found mainprisers or
sureties to answer the writs of law, and to pursue the Kings enemies, both Irish and C
Scots.

Item, upon the day of the Saints *Processe* and *Martinian*, Sir *John Ash* encountered
at sea *Thomas Dover* a right strong thiefe, and took him, and about forty of his men
well armed he slew, and his head he brought with him to *Dublin*.

Also upon the day of the translation of *S. Thomas*, Sir *Nicholas Bole* came out of
England with newes, that two Cardinals were come from the Court of Rome into
England, to treat concerning a peace, and they brought a Bull to excommunicate all
the troublers of the peace of the Lord the King of England.

Likewise, the Thursday next before the feast of *S. Margaret*, *Hugh* and *Walter* D
Lacie were proclaimed seducers and felons to the King, because they had advanced
their banner against the peace of the Lord King of England.

More, on the Sunday following, the Lord *Roger Mortimer* Justice of *Ireland*, took
his journey to *Tredagh* with all his souldiers.

At the same time the *Ulster*-men raised a bootie neere unto *Tredagh*: and the men
of *Tredagh* went out and fetched the bootie backe againe: where was slaine *Miles*
Cogan with his brother, and sixe other great Lords of *Ulster* were taken prisoners,
and brought to the castle of *Dublin*.

And afterwards *Mortimer* the Lord Justice assembled his army against *O-Fervill*,
and commanded the *Mal-passe* to be cut downe, and destroyed all his houses: and afterwards
the said *O-Fervill* rendred himselfe to the peace, and put in hostages.

Also the Lord *Roger Mortimer* Justice tooke his journey toward *Clony*, and made
an inquisition or inquest, as touching Sir *John Blount* (to wit, *White*) of *Rathregan*:
which inquest accused the said *John*; whereupon he was of necessity to fine for two
hundred marks: and afterward on Sunday after the feast of the nativite of blessed *Mary*,
the said *Mortimer* with a great power marched against the Irish of *O-Mayl*, and
came to *Glinfely*, where many were slaine both of Irish and English, but the Irish
went away with the worst: and soone after came *O-brynn*, and rendred himselfe
to the peace of the King. And *Roger Mortimer* with his company came to the
castle of *Dublin*.

And upon the day of *Simon* and *Jude* the Apostles, the Archbales had peace by
mainprife of the Earle of *Kildare*.

And at the feast of Saint *Hilary* following there was a Parliament holden at *Lin-*
colne, about a treaty of peace betweene the Lord King of England, and the Earle of
Lancaster, and between the Scots: and the Scots continued in peace, and by reason
of

A of that Parliament, the Archbishop of *Dublin*, and the Earle of *Ulster* staid in Eng-
land by the Kings commandement. And about the feast of the Epiphany there came
newes to *Dublin*, that Sir *Hugh Canon* the Kings Justice in his bench, was slaine by
Andrew Bermingham, between *Naas* and *Castle-Martin*.

Item, at the feast of the purification of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, there came the
Popes Bulls, so that *Alexander de Bicknor* was confirmed and consecrated Archbishop
of *Dublin*: and those Bulls were read and published in the Church of the holy *Trini-*
ty. And at the same time was read another Bull, that the Lord Pope ordained peace
between the Lord King of England, and the Lord *Robert Bru* King of Scotland for
two yeeres: to which time the said *Bru* refused to condescend and agree. These
things passed about the feast of *St. Valentine*.

Item, the Sunday following came the Lord *Roger Mortimer* to *Dublin*, and dubbed
John Mortimer Knight, with foure of his fellowes: and the same day *Mortimer* kept
a great feast in the castle of *Dublin*.

Item, at the same time a great slaughter was made of Irishmen in *Conaght*, through
a quarrell betweene two Lords or Princes there: and slaine there were of both sides
about foure thousand men: and afterwards there was taken great revenge upon the
men of *Ulster*, who in the time that the Scots spoiled and preaded in *Ireland*, had
done much harme, and eate flesh in Lent not of necessity: therefore much tribulation
came upon them, inso much that they did eat one another; so that often thousand
there remained about 300. and no more, who escaped in maner all for to be punished.
And here appeared the vengeance of God.

Item, it was reported of a truth, that some of the foresaid evill doers were so hun-
ger-starved, that in Church-yards they tooke the bodies out of their graves, and in
their skuls boiled the flesh and fed thereupon; yea and women did eat their owne
children for starke hunger.

MCCCLXVIII. In the Quinden of Easter newes out of England arrived in *Ireland*,
that the towne of *Berwicke* was betrayed and taken by the Scots: and afterwards in
the same yeere Master *Walter Islep*, the Kings Treasurer in *Ireland*, landed, and
brought letters to the Lord *Roger Mortimer*, that he should adresse himselfe to re-
D paire unto the King; who did so, and substituted the Lord *William* Archbishop of
Cashil Custos of *Ireland*, who at one and the same time was Lord Justice of *Ireland*,
Lord Chancellor, and Archbishop.

And afterward, at the three weekes end after Easter, there came newes to *Dublin*
that the Lord *Richard Clare* was slaine, and with him foure Knights, namely, Sir
Henry Capell, Sir *Thomas Naas*, Sir *James Cannon*, and Sir *John Cauntton*: also *A-*
dam Apilgard, with 80. other men, by *O-Brene* and *Mac-Carthy*, on the feast of Saint
Gordian and *Epimachus*. And it was reported that the said Lord *Richard* his body
was in despightfull malice cut into small peeces; but his reliques were entered in
E *Limerick* among the Friars Minors.

Item, on Sunday in *Mense Pasche*, that is, a moneth after Easter, *John Lacy* was led
forth of the castle of *Dublin*, and brought to *Trim*, for to be arraigned and to heare
and receive his judgment there: who was adjudged to be strait dieted, and so he died
in prison.

Item, the Sunday before the Lords Ascension, Lord *Roger Mortimer* sailed over
into England: but paid nothing for his victuals that he had taken up in *Dublin* and
elsewhere, which amounted to the value of one thousand pounds.

Also, the same yeere about the feast of *S. John Baptiste* the great grace and mercy of
God was shewed, in that wheat which before was sold for 15. shillings, was now not
F worth above seven shillings, and oates were bought for five shillings: great plentie
there was of wine, salt, and fish: and that in such sort, that about *St. James* day there
was new bread to be had of new corne, a thing that never or seldome had been seen a-
fore in *Ireland*: and this was a signe of Gods tender mercy, and all through the prai-
er of the poore, and other faithfull folke.

Item, the Sunday after the feast of Saint *Michael*, newes came to *Dublin*, that
Lord

Lord Alexander Bykenore then the Kings Justice in Ireland and Archbishop of Dub-
lin was arrived at Yoghall. On S. Denis day he came to Dublin, and with great pro-
cession and honourable pompe of the religious persons and of others, as well of the
Clergy as the Laity, he was received.
Item, on Saturday falling out to be the feast of Pope Calixtus, a field was fought
betwene the Scots and English of Ireland, two leagues from the towne of Dun-
dalk: to which battell came of the Scots part, the Lord Edward Brus (who named
himselfe King of Ireland) the Lord Philip Mowbray, the Lord Walter Soules, the
Lord Alan Stewart, with his three brethren: also Sir Walter Lacy, Sir Robert and
Sir Aumar Lacy, John Kermerdyne, and Walter White, and about 3000. others. A-
gainst whom came into the field of the English side, the Lord John Bermingham, Sir
Richard Tuit, Sir Miles Verdon, Sir Hugh Tripton, Sir Herbert Sutton, Sir John Cu-
sack, Sir Edward and Sir William Bermingham, and the Primate of Armagh, who af-
foiled them all: Sir Walter Larpulk: and certain came from Tredagh, to the number
of twenty, well appointed and choice souldiers, whom John Maupas accompanied:
and so they joined the said battell. The English were the first that entred with great
vigour upon the front and vaward, where the said John Maupas manfully and with
much honour in this conflict slew the Lord Edward Brus: which John also was found
slaine upon the body of the said Edward: and all the Scots in manner were killed up,
even to the number of two thousand or thereabout: whereby few of the Scots esca-
ped, beside the Lord Philip Mowbray, who also was wounded to death: and Sir
Hugh Lacy, Sir Walter Lacy, with some few others that were with them, made shift
hardly to save themselves. This fortuned between Dundalk and Faghird. Now the
head of the foresaid Edward, the said Lord John Bermingham brought unto the said
Lord King of England: upon whom the King bestowed at the same time, the Earle-
dome of Louth to him and to his heires males, and the Barony of Ateribh. And one
quarter, with the hands and heart of the foresaid Edward, were carried to Dublin, and
the other quarters divided and sent to other places.
MCCCXIX. The Lord Roger Mortimer returned out of England, and is eftsoones
made Lord Justice of Ireland. The same yeere at the feast of All-Saints came a Bull
from the Pope to excommunicate Robert Brus King of Scotland at every Masse. Al-
so the towne of Athifell, and a great part of the country, was burnt by the Lord John
Fitz-Thomas, whole brother of the Lord Moris Fitz-Thomas. In this yeere the fore-
said John Bermingham was created Earle of Louth. Also the Stone bridge of Kil-
dare. Coleyn was built by Master Moris Jacke, Canon of the Cathedrall Church of Kil-
dare.
MCCCXX. In the time of Pope John the 22. and of the Lord Edward sonne to King
Edward, which Edward after the comming of Saint Austen into England was the
25. King; also under Alexander Bickmore then Archbishop of Dublin beganne the
Univerfite of the said Citie of Dublin. The first that proceeded Master in the same
Univerfite, was Frier William Hardite, of the order of preaching Friars: which
William under the said Archbishop solemnly commenced Doctor in Divinity. The
second Master that proceeded in the same faculty, was Frier Henry Cogry, of the or-
der of the Friars Minors: the third Master that went forth was William Rodyard
Dean of the Cathedrall Church of Saint Patrick in Dublin, who solemnly com-
menced Doctor in the Canon law. And this William was made the first Chancel-
lour of the said Univerfity. The fourth Master in sacred Theologie or Divinity, that
went out, was Frier Edmund Kermerdin. Item, Roger Mortimer Lord Justice of Ire-
land returned into England, leaving in his place the Lord Thomas Fitz-John then
Earle of Kildare.
Item, the Lord Edmund Botiller entred into England, and so came to Saint
James.
Also the bridge of the towne of Leghelyn was built by Master Moris Jack Canon
of the Cathedrall Church of Kildare.
MCCCXXI. A very great overthrow, with much slaughter of the O-Connors, was
given

A given at Balibogan the ninth day of May, by the men of Leinster and of Meth.
Item, the Lord Edmund Botiller died in London, and lieth buried at Balygaveran
in Ireland. Also John Bermingham Earle of Louth, is made Lord Justice in Ireland.
Likewise John Wogan departed this life.
MCCCXXII. Andrew Bermingham, and Nicolas de La-Lond Knight, and many o-
thers are slaine by O-Nalan on St. Michaels day.
MCCCXXIII. A truce is taken betwene the King of England, and Robert Brus
King of Scotland for 14. yeeres. Also John Darcie came chiefe Justice of Ireland.
Item, John the first begotten sonne of the Lord Thomas Fitz-John Earle of Kildare,
in the ninth yeere of his age ended this life.
MCCCXXIV. Nicolas Genevile, sonne and heire to the Lord Simon Genevile, depar-
ted out of this world, and was buried in the Church of the Friars Preachers of Trym.
Item, there hapned a great wind on twelfe day at night.
Item, a generall murrain there was of oxen and kine in Ireland.
MCCCXXV. Richard Lederede Bishop of Ossorie cited Dame Alice Keryll upon her
perverse hereticall opinion, and caused her to make personall appearance before him:
and being examined as touching sorceries, he found by an enquest that she had practi-
sed sorceries: among which this was one foule fact of hers, that a certaine spirit na-
med Robyn Artysson lay with her: and that she offered unto him nine red cockes at a
stone bridge, in a certaine foure crosse high way.
Item, that she swept the streets of Kilkenny with beesomes, between Complin and
Courtesew, and in sweeping the filth toward the house of William Ullaw her sonne, by
way of conjuring mumbled these words:
Unto the house of William my sonne,
Hie all the wealth of Kilkenny towne.
Now the complices of the said Alice, and those that agreed unto this divellish and
wretched practise of hers, were one Pernill of Meth; and Basilia the daughter of the
same Pernill. When the above named Alice was by inquisition attainted of these fore-
said imputations, the Bishop punished her by the purse, and caused her utterly to ab-
jure all forcerie and witch-craft. But when afterwards shee stood convict eftsoones
of the same crime, herselfe with the foresaid Basilia fled, but was never after found.
As for the said Pernill, she was burnt at Kilkenny: but at the houre of death shee a-
vouched that the foresaid William deserved death as well as her selfe, affirming that
he for a yeere and a day wore the divels girdle upon his bare bodie. Whereupon the
Bishop caused the said William to bee apprehended and laid in prison for eight or
nine weekes within the Castle of Kilkenny: and by the Bishops decree and appoint-
ment hee had two men to give attendance and to minister unto him, with expresse
commandement, not to speake unto him but once a day, nor to eat or drinke with
him: At length the said William, by the helpe of the Lord Arnald Esq. Seneschall
of the Countie of Kilkenny, was delivered forth of prison: and the foresaid William
gave a great summe of money unto the abovenamed Arnald, to imprison the Bishop
afore said. The Lord Arnald before named caused the Bishop afore said to lye in pri-
son about three moneths.
Now among the goods and implements of the said Alice, there was a certaine
holy Wafer-cake found, having the name of the Divell imprinted upon it: there was
found also a boxe, and within it an ointment, wherewith she used to besmeare or grease
a certaine piece of wood called a Coultree: which being thus anointed, the said
Alice with her complices could ride and gallop upon the said Coultree whether soe-
ver they would, all the world over through thick & thin, without either hurt or hin-
drance. And because the foresaid things were so notorious, Alice was cited againe
to appeare at Dublin, before M. Deane of the Church of St. Patrick, there to finde
greater favour. Who there made her appearance, and craved a day of answer, under
a sufficient mainprife and suretiship, as it was thought. But shee was no more to
be seene: for by the counsell of her sonne, and others that were not knowne, was she
kept hidden in a farme house or village, untill the winde served for England, and so she
passed

passed over: and never was it knowne whither she went. Now because it was found by the inquisition and recognizance of the said Parnell condemned to be burnt, that William *Uslaw* was consenting to his mother in her forcerie and with-craft: the Bishop caused him to be arrested and taken by the Kings writ, and to be kept in prison: who in the end through the supplication of great Lords was set free: yet with this condition, that he should cause the Church of S. Maries in *Kilkenny* to be covered all over with lead, and to doe other almef-deeds by a certaine time; which almef-deeds if he performed not within the said terme, then he should be in the same state where in he stood when he was taken by vertue of the Kings Proceffe.

MCCCXXVI. A Parliament was holden at *Whitlontide* in *Kilkenny*: unto which Parliament came the Lord *Richard Burk* the Earle of *Ulster*, although he was somewhat weake and crazie: thither repaired also all the Lords and Porentates of *Ireland*: and there the said Earle made a great and noble feast unto the Lords and the people. Afterwards the Lord Earle taking his leave of those Nobles and Lords, went to *Atchisell*, where he ended his life. And a little before the feast of S. John Baptist he was there entered. The Lord *William Burk* became his heire.

MCCCXXVII. There arose a quarrell and a fray betweene the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* and the Lord *Arnald Pover*: and the Lord *Moris* had in his traine and company, the Lord *Botiller*, and the Lord *William Bermingham*: and the Lord *Arnald* had in his retinew the *Bourkeins*: of whom the said Lord *Morris Fitz-Thomas* slew many, and some he chased into *Connaght*.

In the same yeere after Michaelmas the Lord *Arnald* came to aide the *Bourkeins*: and by occasion of certaine rude and uncivill tearmes which the Lord *Arnald* had given out, in calling him *Rymour*, the said *Moris* raised an armie againe, and together with *Botiller* and the said *William Bermingham* with a puissant hoast burnt the lands and possessions of the said Lord *Arnald* in *Ofash*. Also the said *William Bermingham* fired the lands and manoir houses of the Lord *Arnald Pover* in *Mounster*; and *Kenlys* in *Offerie* he burnt: so that the Lord *Arnald* was forced to fly with the Baron of *Donnyl* to *Waterford*, and there they remained a moneth, untill that the Earle of *Kildare*, then Lord Justice of *Ireland*, and others of the Kings Counsell took a day betweene them: which day the Lord *Arnald* kept not, but came to *Dublin*, and passed the seas into *England* about the feast of the Purification: and after that *Arnald* had failed over, the said *Moris Botiller* and the Lord *William Bermingham* with a great armie came, spoiled, harried, and burnt the lands of the said *Arnald*: and by reason of those puissant forces that they had led, and the many mischiefs which they had done, the Kings ministers of his Counsell feared lest he would besiege *Cities*: and therefore the *Cities* made provision with more warding and watching the while betweene. And when the said Lord *Moris Botiller*, and *William* heard that the *Cities* made such provision and preparation before hand, they gave intelligence unto the Kings Counsell that they would come to *Kilkenny* and there cleere themselves, that they never thought to doe any noisance to the lands of their soveraigne Lord the King, but onely to be revenged of their enemies. Unto which Parliament came the Earle of *Kildare* then Justice of *Ireland*, the Prior of *Kilmaynon*, to wit, *Roger Outlaw* Chancellour of *Ireland*, *Nicholas Fastoll* Justice in the Bench, and others of the Kings Counsell: and the foresaid (*Moris* and *William*) demanded the Kings Charter of peace, but they of the Kings Counsell warily making answer,ooke day unto the month after Easter, that they might with their fellowes of the Counsell, treat upon this point.

In the same yeere before Lent the Irish of *Leinster* gathered themselves together, and set up a certain King, namely *Donald* the sonne of *Arte Mac-Murgh*. Who being made King, determined to set up his banner two miles from *Dublin*: and afterwards to passe through all the lands of *Ireland*. Whose pride and malice God seeing, suffered him to fall into the hands of the Lord *Henry Trarburn*; who brought him to the *Salmons* leaps, & had of him 200. pound for his lives ransome, & then led him to *Dublin*, to wait there untill the Kings Counsell could provide and take order what

to

A to doe with him: and after his taking many infortunities lighted upon the Irish of *Leinster*, to wit, the Lord *John Wellesley* took *David O-Thothiel* prisoner, and many of the Irish were slaine.

The same yeere *Adam Duff* the sonne of *Walier Duff* of *Leinster*, and of the kindred of the *O-Tohiles*, was convicted; for that against the Catholike faith, hee denied the Incarnation of *Jesus Christ*, and held that there could not bee three persons and one God: and hee affirmed that the most blessed *Virgin Mary*, mother of our Lord, was an harlot: hee denied also the resurrection of the dead, and avouched that the sacred Scriptures were fables; and nothing else: and he imputed falsitie upon the sacred Apostolicall See. For which and for every of these articles the same *Adam Duff* was pronounced an hereticke and blasphemor: whereupon the same *Adam* by a decree of the Church was on the Munday after the Outas of Easter the yeere 1328. burnt at *Hoggis* (*Greene*) by *Dublin*.

MCCCXXXII. On Tuesday in Easter week *Thomas Fitz-John* Earle of *Kildare* and Justice of *Ireland* died: after whom succeeded in the office of Justice, *Frier Roger Outlaw* Prior of *Kilmaynok*. The same yeere *David O-Tophil*, a strong thiefe and enemy to the King, a burner of Churches and destroyer of people, was brought forth of the Castle of *Dublin* to the Tolstale of the Citie, before *Nicholas Fastoll* and *Elias Ashbourne* Justices in the (Kings) bench: which Justices gave him his judgement, that he should first be drawne at horses tailes through the midst of the Citie unto the gallows, and afterward be hanged upon a jebbit, which was done accordingly. Item, in the same yeere the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* raised a great army to destroy the *Bourkeins* and the *Poers*. The same yeere also the Lord *William Bourk* was knighted at *London* on *Whitfunday*, and the King gave unto him his Seignory. Also in the same yeere *James Botiller* in *England* espoused the daughter of the Earle of *Hereford*, and was created Earle of *Ormund*, who before was called Earle of *Tipery*.

The same yeere a Parliament was holden at *Northampton*, where many of the Lords and Nobles of *England* assembled: and a peace was renewed betweene *Scotland*, *England* and *Ireland* by marriages betweene them: and it was ordained that the Earle of *Ulster*, with many Nobles of *England*, should goe to *Barwick upon Tweed*, to the espousals and assurance making.

The same yeere after the said espousals and contract made at *Barwicke*, the Lord *Robert Brus* King of *Scotland*, and the Lord *William Burk* Earle of *Ulster*, the Earle of *Meneteth*, and many of the Scottish nobility arrived at *Cragfergus* peaceably, and sent unto the Justices of *Ireland* and to the Counsell, that they would come to *Green Castle*, to treat about a peace of *Scotland* and *Ireland*. Now because the said Justices of Counsell failed to come as the said King desired, he took his leave of the Earle of *Ulster*, and returned into his owne country after the feast of the assumption of the blessed *Virgin Mary*. And the Earle of *Ulster* came to *Dublin* unto the Parliament, and there stayed fixe dayes, and made a great feast, and after this went into *Connaght*.

The same yeere, about the feast of *Saint Katherin Virgin*, the Bishop of *Offerie* certified the Kings Counsell there, that *Sir Arnald Pover* was convicted before him upon divers articles of perverse heresie. Whereupon, at the suit of the said Bishop, the said *Sir Arnald* by vertue of the Kings writ was arrested and layed up in the Castle of *Dublin*: and a day was given unto the Bishop for to come unto *Dublin*, to follow the foresaid suit and action against the foresaid Lord *Arnald*: who made his excuse, that hee could not then come, because his enemies lay in wait for his life in the way: whereupon the Kings Counsell knew not how to make an end of this businesse, and so the Lord *Arnald* was kept in duresse within the Castle of *Dublin* untill the Parliament following, which was in *Mid-lent*, where all the Nobles of *Ireland* were present.

In the same yeere *Frier Roger Uslaw*, Prior of the Hospitall of *St. John* of *Jerusalem* in *Ireland*, Lord Justice and Chancellour of *Ireland*, was disamed by the said Bishop, and slandered to bee a favourer of heresie, a Counsellour also and abetter of the

the

* the said Lord Arnold in his hereticall naughtinesse. And because his person was thus A
 * villanously defamed, the said Prior went to the Counsell of the King, and put up a
 * petition that hee might purge himselfe. Whereupon they of the Kings Counsell
 * tooke advice, and upon consultation had, granted unto him that he might make his
 * purgation: And they caused it to be proclaimed for three dayes, That if there were
 * any person, who would follow suit and give information against the said Frier Roger,
 * he might come in and put in his pursuitt: But no man was found to follow the mar-
 * ter. Whereupon at the procurement of Sir Roger the Frier, there went out the
 * Kings writ to summon the Elders of Ireland, to wit, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, and
 * foure Maiors of foure Cities, namely, Dublin, Corke, Limerick and Waterford, and B
 * of Tredagh: also the Sheriffes and Seneschals, yea and the Knights of the shire, with
 * the Free-holders of the countie that were of the better sort, for to reparaire unto Dub-
 * lin. And there were chosen fixe examiners in the said cause, to wit, M. William Rod-
 * yard, Deane of the Cathedrall Church of St. Patrick in Dublin, the Abbat of Saint
 * Thomas, the Abbat of St. Maries, the Prior of holy Trinitie Church in Dublin, M.
 * Elias Lawles, and M. Peter Willebey: These Inquisitours convented those that were
 * cited, and they examined every one severally by himselfe: which examiners all up-
 * on their oathes depofed, that he was honest and faithfull, a zealous embracer of the
 * faith, and readie to die for the faith: and in regard of this great solemnity of his pur-
 * gation, the said Frier Roger made a royall feast to all that would come.

* Also the same yeere in Lent died the said L. Arnold Pover in the Castle of Dublin, C
 * and lay a long time unburied in the house of the preaching Friars.

* MCCCXXIX. After the feast of the Annuntiation of the blessed Virgin Mary, the
 * Nobles of Ireland came unto the Parliament at Dublin, to wit, the Earle of Ulster,
 * the Lord Thomas Fitz-Morris, the Earle of Louth, William Bermingham, and the rest
 * of the Lords: and a peace was renewed there betwene the Earle of Ulster, and the
 * Lord Morris Fitz-Thomas: & the said Lords with the Kings Counsell ordained there
 * that the Kings peace should be fully kept: so that every Nobleman and Chieftaine
 * should keep in his owne sept, retinew, and servants, and the said Earle of Ulster made
 * a great feast in the Castle of Dublin: and the Lord Morris Fitz-Thomas the morrow D
 * after kept a great feast within the Church of St. Patrick in Dublin: and Frier Roger
 * Outlaw Justice of Ireland feasted likewise upon the third day at Kilmaynon, and so
 * they departed.

* The same yeere on the Vigill of St. Barnabee the Apostle, Sir John Bermingham
 * Earle of Louth was slaine at Balybragan in Uragal, by those of Uragal: and with him
 * Peter Bermingham the said Earles legitimate and whole brother, also Robert Ber-
 * mingham the same Earles putative brother, Sir John Bermingham the son of his brother
 * Richard Lord of Anry, William Finne Bermingham, the Unkles sonne by the
 * mothers side of the foresaid Lord of Anry, Simon Bermingham the same Williams
 * sonne, Thomas Bermingham the son of Robert of Conaght, Peter Bermingham the E
 * sonne of James of Conaght, Henry Bermingham of Conaght, and Richard Talbot of
 * Malaghide a valiant man at armes, and two hundred with them whose names are not
 * knowne.

* Item, after the foresaid slaughter the Lord Simon Genevile his men invaded the
 * country of Carbury, for to spoile and harry them, in regard of their robberies and man-
 * slaughters committed many times in Meib: but before the said invasion, they of Car-
 * bury arose, and slew of the said Simons men threescore and sixteen.

* Also the same yeere on the morrow after holy Trinitie Sunday there came to Dub-
 * lin, John Gernon and Roger Gernon his brother in the behalfe of those of Uragal, and
 * made humble request, that they might stand to be tried at the Common Law. And F
 * on Tuesday, which was the morrow after the feast of St. John Baptist, John and Ro-
 * ger hearing that the Lord William Bermingham was coming, departed out of Dub-
 * lin. The same yeere on the Vigill of St. Laurence, the Lord Thomas Botiller went
 * with a great power into the parts of Ardnorwith, and there encountered the said Lord
 * Thomas Williams Mac-Goghgan with his forces: and there was the said L. Thomas
 * slaine

A so the great losse of the land of Ireland, & with him were killed the Lord John Lede-
 * wich, Roger Ledewich, Thomas Ledewich, John Nangle, Meiler Petit, Simon Petit,
 * David Nangle, Sir John Waringer, James Terel, Nicholas White, William Freines,
 * Peter Kent, John White, and together with them one hundred and forty men whose
 * names are unknowne. And on the tuesday next before the feast of St. Bartholomew,
 * the body of the said Lord Thomas Botiller was conveyed to Dublin, and bestowed
 * in the house of the preaching Friars, but as yet not buried: and the funday next ensu-
 * ing the feast of the beheading of St. John Baptist, the said Lord Thomas his corps
 * was very honourably carried through the city, and entered in the Church of the
 * B preaching Friars, and the wife of the said Lord John that day made a feast.

In the same yeere John Lord Dracy came Justice of Ireland the second time: and
 * the said Lord John espoused the Lady Joande Burk Countesse of Kildare, the third
 * day of July, at Maynoth.

* Item, Philip Stanton is slaine. Also Henry Lord Trahern is treacherously taken in
 * his owne house at Kilbego by Richard the sonne of Philip Onolan.

* More, the Lord James Botiller Earle of Ormond burnt Foghird against Onolan, for
 * the foresaid Henries fake brother of Botiller.

* The same yeere, on wednesday next after the feast of the Ascension of the blessed
 * Virgin Mary, John Lord Dracy Justice of Ireland went toward the parts of New-
 * castle, of Mac-Kingham and Wickelaw, against the O-Brynnys: and the monday follow-
 * C ing certain of Lawles were slaine, and many wounded, and namely, Robert Locam was
 * hurt, and of the Irish the better sort were slaine, many likewise wounded, and the rest
 * fled. But Markad O-Brynnie yeelded himselfe an hostage together with his son, un-
 * kle, and unkles sonne, and they were brought to the castle of Dublin. But afterwards
 * delivered for other hostages the better sort of their sept and kin.

The same yeere the Lord Justice, namely, the Lord John Dracy and those of the
 * Kings Counsell in Ireland, about the feast of the Circumcision of our Lord, charged
 * the Lord Morris Fitz-Thomas of Desmond, that himselfe should come into the field
 * with his forces for to vanquish the Kings enemies: giving him to understand, that
 * D their soveraigne Lord the King would provide for to defray the charges of him and
 * of his army: and the said Morris came with his power, and Briene O-Brene was in his
 * company: and their army consisted of ten thousand men: and the said Lord Morris
 * advanced with his army first against the O-Nolanes, vanquished them, gat a great
 * bootie, and wasted their lands with fire: and the O-Nolanes fled, and afterwards de-
 * livered hostages, who were sent unto the castle of Dublin. And afterwards the said
 * Lord Morris made a journey against the O-Morches, who did put in their hostages for
 * to keepe the Kings peace. The same time the castle of Ley which O-dympey had
 * won and kept, was rendred up to the said Morris. The same yeere after the Epiphany
 * of our Lord, Donald Arts Mac-Murgh made an escape out of the castle of Dublin by
 * E a cord, which one Adam Nangle had bought for him: which Adam afterwards was
 * drawne and hanged.

* MCCCXXX. Mighty winds were up in divers places, about the feast daies of St. Ka-
 * therine, S. Nicolas, and of the Nativitie of our Lord: by which wind part of the wall
 * of a certain house fell downe, and killed the wife of Sir Miles Verdon with his daugh-
 * ter, on S. Nicolas even, such winds as the like were never seene in Ireland.

* Item, there was such an inundation of the water of Boyn, as never had been known
 * before: by which flood all the bridges, as well of stone as of timber, standing over
 * the said water, were utterly cast downe, unlesse it were Babe bridge. The water also
 * carried away divers mills, and did much hurt to the Friars Minors of Trym, and Tre-
 * F dagh, in breaking down their houses. The same yeere, about the feast of S. John Bap-
 * tist, there began a great dearth of corne in Ireland, and continued untill Michaelmas.

* Item, a cranoc of wheat was sold for 20. shillings: also a cranoc of oats for eight shil-
 * lings, and one cranoc of peason, beanes, and of barley for 8. shillings. And this dearth
 * hapned by occasion of abundance of raine, so that much of the standing corne could
 * not be reaped before the feast of St. Michael.

« The same yeere, the English of Meth made a slaughter of the Irish (to wit, of *Mac-A-Goghig* and people) about Lent, neere unto Loughnerthy, whereupon the said *Mac-Goghig* in anger burnt in those parts 15. small villages, and sacked them: which the English seeing, gathered themselves together against him, and of his men slew one hundred, and among whom were slaine three Lords sons of the Irish.

« *Item*, the Lord William Burgh Earle of Ulster led forth an army out of Ulster into Mounster against Briene O-Brene.

« Also the Lady Joan Countesse of Kildare, was at Maynoth delivered of William her first sonne, that the Lord John *Darcy* had by her, whiles the Lord John abode in England.

« *Item*, Reymund Lawles is slaine treacherously at Wickelow.

« More, a Parliament was holden at Kilkenny, by Frier Roger Utlaw the Prior of Kylmainon, then Lieutenent under the Lord Justice, at which were present *Alexander* Archbishop of *Dublin*, the Lord William Earle of Ulster, the Lord James Earle of Ormond, the Lord William Bermingham, and Walter Burk of Conaght: and every of them with a great power set forward to expell Briene O-Brene out of Urkiff neere Cashill.

« Also, Walter Burk, with his army of *Connaght*, harried the lands of the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas*, bringing back with him the booty to Urkiff.

« *Item*, the Lord Earle of Ulster, and the Earle of *Desmund*, namely, the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* (for this is the first time that I call him Earle) are appointed to the safe keeping of the Marshall at Lymeric, by Frier Roger Utlaw Justice of Ireland. But the Earle of *Desmund* by a wile escaped out of the custody of the said Marshall, and went his way.

« *MCCCXXI*. The Lord Hugh Lacy with the Kings pardon and peace entred Ireland. Also the Earle of Ulster entred England.

« Also there was given an overthrow to the Irish in Okenfeley by the English the one and twenty day of April.

« *Item*, the same day on the Vigill of Saint Marke the Evangelist, the O-Tothely came to Tanelagh, and robbed *Alexander* Archbishop of *Dublin*, tooke away three hundred sheepe, and slew Richard White and other honest men of his company.

« Then ran rumours to *Dublin* of that depredation and slaughter: and Sir *Philip Brye* knight, and Frier *Moris Fitz-Gerald* Knight of the order of Knights Hospitalers, *Hamud Archdeken*, *John Chamberlane*, *Robert Tyrell*, and the two sons of *Reginald Bernewall*, and many others, but especially of the retinew of the Lord Archbishop of *Dublin*, were by a traine or ambush slaine by *David O-Tothill* in *Culiagh*.

« Also the Lord William Bermingham led forth a great army against the foresaid Irish, and did much harme unto them, but more would have done, had he not bene empached by the false promises of the Irish.

« *Item*, those of the English pale at Thurles gave a great overthrow unto Briene O-Brene, and slew many of the Irish in the moneth of May.

« *Item*, at Finnagh in Meth the English of the said pale defeated the Irish upon the eleventh day of June.

« Also, when famine encreased much in Ireland, the mercy of God so disposed, that upon the seven and twenty day of June there came to land a mighty multitude of great sea fishes, to wit, Thurlhedis, such as in many ages past had never bene seene, which by the estimation of many men amounted to the number of five hundred: and this hapned neere unto *Connyng*, and the water called *Dooyz* in the haven of *Dublin*, about evening: and *Anthony* Lord *Lacy* then Justice of Ireland, with his owne people and certain citizens of *Dublin*, amongst whom was *Philip Cradock*, killed of the foresaid fishes above 200. and no man was forbidden to carry away, the same Justice giving order therefore.

« *Item*, *Anthony* Lord *Lacy* Justice of Ireland ordained a common Parliament at *Dublin*, in the Utas of Saint *John Baptist*: unto which certaine of the Ancients of the land came not. Then the said Justice removed to Kilkenny, proroging the said

A said Parliament, from the foresaid Octaves unto the feast of Saint *Peter ad Vincula*. Unto which place there repaired the Lord Thomas Fitz-Thomas, and many other Nobles of the land, who came not in before, submitting themselves to the Kings grace and mercy. And the King for his part as much as concerned himselfe under a certaine forme of pardon graciously forgave all the mischiefs committed by the foresaid persons in the land.

« Also the castle of Fernis is taken by the Irish perfidiously, and burned in the month of August.

« *Item*, the said Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* of *Desmund* is taken by order from the counsell at Lymeric by the said Lord Justice, the morrow after the assumption of the blessed Virgin Mary, and with the Justice brought to the castle of *Dublin*, the seventh day of October.

« *Item*, Henry Mandevile is apprehended in the month of September, and led to the castle of *Dublin*, by vertue of a warrant from *Simon Fitz-Richard* Justice in the Kings Bench.

« *Item*, Walter Burck, who with his two brethren of whole blood are taken in *Connaght*, by the Earle of Ulster in November, and conveyed by the same Earle unto the castle of North-burg, in the month of Februarie.

« Also, the Lord William Bermingham, with his son Walter Bermingham, are attached at *Clomell*, by the said Justice in the month of February, notwithstanding the Kings charter or pardon given unto them before by the Justice above named, and are brought unto the Castle of *Dublin* the nineteenth day of April.

« *Item*, the Irish of Leinster made spoile of the English, and burnt Churches: and in the Church of Freineston they burnt about fourescore men and women, and a certain Chaplain of the said Church, arraied in his sacred vestiments and with the body of our Lord, they repelled backe with their javelins when he would have gone forth, and burnt him with the rest in the Church. These newes came unto the eares of the Lord Pope, who sent his Bull or briefe unto the Archbishop of *Dublin*, commanding him to excommunicate the said Irish, and all their adherents, together with their retinue and followers, and to interdict their lands. Now the Archbishop fulfilled the commandment of the Lord Pope: but the said Irish, contemning the said Bull, excommunication, interdiction, and chastisement of the Church, and continuing still in their wickednesse, drew themselves againe together, and invaded all the county of Weisford, as farre as to *Carcarne*, and spoiled the whole country. Whom the English made head against, to wit, *Richard White* and *Richard Fitz-Henry*, with the Burgessees of Weisford and other English, slew of the Irish about 400. and many others of them as they fled were drowned in the river which is called *Slane*.

« *MCCCXXII*. William Bermingham is put to death and hanged at *Dublin* by the said Lord Justice, the eleventh day of July, and Walter his sonne is set free. The foresaid Sir *William* was a noble Knight, and among many thousand knights most renowned and excellent for feats of armes: Alas the day! great pity it was of him; for who relating his death can forbear teares? But at length entered hee was in *Dublin* among the preaching Friars. Also the castle of *Bonraty* was forced and rased to the very ground by the Irish of Totomon in July. Also the castle of Arco by the said Justice, with the citizens of *Dublin* and the help of the English within the pale, was won from the Irish, and in the Kings hand, on the eighth day of August, & in part is newly erected. Also the Lord *Antony Lucy* Justice of Ireland is put out of his office, and returneth into England with his wife and children in the month of November. In whose place also is set *John* Lord *Darcy* Justice of Ireland: and he entred Ireland the thirteenth day of February. *Item*, the English of the pale gave a great overthrow to Briene O-Brene and Mac-Karthy, and slew many Irish in the parts of Munster. *Item*, there deceased *John Decer* a citizen of *Dublin*, and lieth buried in the Church of the Friars Minors: a man that did many good deeds. Also, a certain *Maister* named *Manfes* reigned all over Ireland, as well in old men and women, as in young and little ones.

Item, the hostages abiding in the castle of *Lymericke* slew the Constable of the same castle, and seized the castle into their owne hands: but after that the castle was recovered by the citizens, the same hostages were put to the sword and killed. Likewise the hostages tooke the castle of *Nenagh*, and when part of it was burnt, recovered it was againe, and the hostages were reserved.

Also one P... of wheat about Christmas was commonly sold for 22. shillings: and straight after Easter, and so forward, for twelve pence.

Item, the towne of New-castle of Lions was burnt and sacked by the *O-Toshiles*. MCCCCXXIII. The L. John Darcy arrived Lord Justice of Ireland at *Dublin*. Item, *O-Conghirs* lost a great bootie, two thousand cowes and above, by the *Berminghams* B of *Carbery*.

Item, the Lord John Darcy Justice of Ireland caused the Pas at *Ethergovil* in *Offaly* to be cut downe, against *O-Conghir*.

Item, the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmond* is taken forth of the prison of *Dublin*, after he had bene imprisoned one yeere and a halfe, having gotten many mainprisers first, even the greatest and noblest personages of the land to be bound for him, in the forfeiture of life, losse of all their goods, if then the said Lord *Moris* attempted ought against the King, and if those Nobles above said presented not his person unto the King for his demerits.

Also *William Burk* Earle of *Ulster*, betweene the New-towne and *Cragfergum* in C *Ulster*, was traiterously (the more pittie) slaine by his owne company, in the twentieth yeere of his age, and the sixth day of the month *June*: Robert the sonne of *Maurison Maundevel* was hee that gave him his first wound. Upon the hearing of which rumours, the Earles wife being then in the parts of *Ulster* with her daughter and heire, presently embarked and went over into England. After whose murdering, John L. Darcy Lord chiefe Justice of Ireland, to revenge the Earles death, by advice of all the States of the land assembled in the said Parliament, forthwith with his army took his journey, and by ship arrived at *Cragfergum* upon the first day of July. Now the people of the country rejoicing at the Lord Justice his coming, and thereby taking heart unto them against the murderers of the said Earle of *Ulster*, with one assent rose up to D revenge the killing of him, and in a pitched field obtained victory: some they tooke prisoners, others they put to the sword. The things thus dispatched, the said Justice with his said army went into Scotland, leaving in his place M. Thomas *Burgh* Treasurer at that time of Ireland.

Item, many Nobles of the land and the Earle of *Ormond* with their retinue and followers assembled together at the house of the Carmelite Friers in *Dublin*, the 11. day of *June*: and during this said Parliament, whereas they were going out of the Court-yard of the said Friers, sodainly within the presse of the people *Murchard* or *Moris* the sonne of *Nicolas O-Toibil* was there murdered. At whose sodaine killing E all the Elders of the land fearing and supposing there was some treason, were stricken with an extraordinary and strange affright, and much troubled. And he that killed the same *Murchard* stoutly escaped all their hands: but neither the party himselfe nor his name they ever knew.

Also John Lord Darcy returned Justice of Ireland.

Item, Sir *Walter Bermingham*, sonne to the Lord *William Bermingham* is delivered out of the castle of *Dublin*, in the month of February.

More, the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmond* by a fall off his Palfrey brake his legge.

Item, it fell out to be a faire and dry summer, in so much as at the feast of St. *Peter* *ad vincula* bread made of new wheat was eaten, and a peck of wheat was sold for six- pence in *Dublin*.

Also Sir *Reimund Archdekon* Knight, and many others of the same kinred, were flaine in *Leinster*.

MCCCCXXVII. In the Vigill of S. *Kalixt* Pope, seven partridges (and unknown it is what spirit moved them) leaving the plaine field, made way directly unto the City of

A of *Dublin*, and flying most swiftly over the mercate places, settled on the top of the Brew-houses, belonging to the Capons of holy Trinity in *Dublin*. To which sight some Citizens came running, and wondered much at so strange a prodigie. But the boyes of the city caught two of them alive; a third they killed: and the rest scared therewith mounting up higher took their swift flight and escaped into the fields over against them. Now what this accident (not heard of in the ages before) did portend, I leave to the judgement of those that are cunning and skilfull.

Also Sir John Charleton Knight and a Baron, with his wife, sonnes, and daughters, and his whole family, came at the feast of S. *Calixtus* Pope, as chiefe Justice of Ireland: and of his sonnes and household somedied.

Also Lord Thomas Charleton, Bishop of Hereford, & brother in the whole blood unto the said Justice, came the same day with his brother as Chancellour of Ireland; together with Master John Rees Treasurer of Ireland; and Doctor in the Decretals, bringing with them many Welshmen, to the number of two hundred, and arrived in the haven of *Dublin*.

Also whiles John Charleton was Lord Justice and held a Parliament at *Dublin*, Doctor David O-Hirraghey Archbishop of Ardmagh being called to the Parliament made his provision for housekeeping in the Monastery of S. Mary neere unto *Dublin*: but because hee would have had his *Crozier* before him, hee was impeached by the C Archbishop and his Clerkes, and permit him they would not.

Item, the same yeere died the same David Archbishop of Ardmagh: after whom succeeded Doctor *Richard Fitz-Ralfe* Deane of *Lichfield*, a notable Clerke; who was borne in the towne of *Dundalke*.

Item, James Botiller the first Earle of Ormond departed this life the sixth day of January, and lieth buried at Ballygaveran.

MCCCCXXVIII. Lord John Charleton at the instigation of his whole brother, to wit, Thomas Bishop of Hereford, is by the King discharged of his office, and returneth with his whole household into England, and Thomas Bishop of Hereford is by the King ordained *Custos* and Justice of Ireland.

D Item, Sir Eustace Pover, and Sir John Pover his Uncle, are by the said Justice brought out of Mounster to *Dublin*, and committed to prison in the castle the third day of February.

Also, in the parts of Ireland the frost was so vehement, that *Aven-Liffie*, the river of *Dublin*, was so frozen that very many danced and leaped upon the Ice of the said river, they played at foot-ball, and ran courses there: yea and they made fires of wood and of turfe upon the same Ice, and broyled herrings thereupon. This Ice lasted very many dayes. And as for the snow also in the parts of Ireland that accompanied the same frost, a man need not speake any more, seeing it was knowne to lye on such a wonderfull depth. This hard time of weather continued from the second E day of December unto the tenth day of February: the like season was never heard of before, especially in Ireland.

MCCCCXXIX. All Ireland was generally up in armes. Item, an exceeding great slaughter there was of the Irish, and a number of them drowned, even 1200. at the least, by the meanes of the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmond*, and the rest of the *Geraldines* in the parts of *Kernige*.

Item, the Lord *Moris Fitz-Nicolas*, Lord of *Kernige*, was apprehended and imprisoned by the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmond*, and died in prison, being put to strait diet, for that he openly went out and rebelled with the said Irish against the Lord King of England, and against the Lord Earle.

F Item, a number of the *O-Dyncies* and other Irish were killed and drowned in the water of Barrow by the English, and the hot pursuit of the Earle of *Kildare*.

Also a great booty of cattell of sundry sorts, and such a booty as had not been seen in the parts of *Leinster*, by the said Lord Thomas Bishop of Hereford and Justice of Ireland, and with the helpe of the English of that country, was taken from the Irish in the parts of *Odrone* in the end of February.

“ MCCCXL. The said Bishop of Hereford and Justice of *Ireland*, being sent for by A
“ the King, returned into England the tenth day of April, leaving in his place
“ Frier Roger Outlaw Priour of Kylmaynon. Also this Sir Roger Lord Priour of
“ Kylmainon, Justice and Chancellour of the said land, died the thirteenth day of Fe-
“ bruary.

“ Item, the King of England granted by his letters patents unto *John Darcy* the office
“ of Lord Justice of *Ireland* for terme of life.

“ MCCCXLI. Sir John Moris Knight came Lord Justice of *Ireland* in the moneth of
“ May, as Lievtenant unto *John Darcy* in the foresaid land.

“ Item, this wondrous prodigie following, and such as in our age had not been heard B
“ of before, hapned in the country of *Leinster*: where a certain waifaring man as he tra-
“ velled in the Kings high way, found a paire of gloves, fit, as he thought, for his owne
“ turne: which as he drew upon his hands, forthwith in stead of a mans voice and speech,
“ he kept a strange and marvellous barking like unto a dogge: and from that present,
“ the elder folke and full growne, yea and women too throughout the same country,
“ barked like bigge dogges; but the children and little ones waughed as small whelpes.
“ This plague continued with some 18. daies, with others a whole moneth, and with
“ some for two yeeres. Yea this foresaid contagious malady entred also into the neigh-
“ bour shires, and forced the people in like manner to barke.

“ Also, the King of England revoked all those gifts and grants that by him or his fa- C
“ ther had bin conferred by any meanes upon any persons whatsoever in *Ireland*, were
“ they liberties, lands, or other goods: for which revocation great displeasure and dis-
“ content arose in the land: and so the land of *Ireland* was at the point to have bene
“ lost for ever out of the King of Englands hand.

“ Item, by the Kings Councell there was ordained a generall Parliament of *Ireland*
“ in the moneth of October. To the same Parliament *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of
“ Desmond came not. Before which time there was never knowne so notable and
“ manifest a division in *Ireland*, between those that were English by birth, and English
“ in blood. The Maiors besides of the Kings cities in the same land, together with all
“ the better sort of the Nobility and Gentry of the said land, with one consent upon D
“ mature deliberation and counsell had, among other their conclusions, decreed and ap-
“ pointed a common Parliament at *Kilkenny* in November, to the utility and profit
“ both of the King and the land before named: without asking any counsell at all of the
“ Lord Justice and the Kings officers afore said in this behalfe.

“ Now the Lord Justice, and the rest of the Kings Ministers, in no wise presumed to
“ come unto the same Parliament at *Kilkenny*. The Elders therefore of the land a-
“ foresaid, together with the Ancients and Maiors of the cities, agreed and ordained as
“ touching solemne Embassadors to be sent with all speed unto the King of England,
“ about relieving the State of the land, and to complaine of his Ministers in *Ireland*, as
“ touching their unequall and unjust regiment of the same, and that from thenceforth E
“ they neither could nor would endure the realme of *Ireland* to be ruled by his Mini-
“ sters, as it had wont to be. And particularly they make complaint of the foresaid Mi-
“ nisters, by way of these Questions.

“ *Imprimis*, How a land full of warres could be governed by him that was unskillfull
“ in warre?

“ Secondly, how a Minister or Officer of the Kings should in a short time grow to so
“ great wealth?

“ Thirdly, how it came to passe that the King was never the richer for *Ireland*?

“ MCCCXLII. The eleventh day of October, when the moone was eleven dayes old,
“ there were seen by many men at *Dublin* 2. moones in the firmament well and early F
“ before day. The one was according to the course of nature in the West, and appea-
“ red bright: the other to the quantity of a round loose appeared in the East, casting
“ but a meane and slender light.

“ MCCCXLIII. St. Thomas street in *Dublin* was casually burnt with fire upon the
“ feast of S. Valentine Martyr.

Item,

A Item, the 13. day of July, the Lord *Ralph Ufford*, with his wife the Countesse of
“ *Ulster*, came Lord chiefe Justice of *Ireland*: Upon whose entring, the faire weather
“ changed sodainly into a distemperature of the aire, and from that time there ensued
“ great store of raine, with such abundance of tempestuous stormes, untill his dying
“ day. None of his predecessours in the times past, was (with griefe be it spoken) com-
“ parable unto him. For this Justicer bearing the office of Justice-ship, became an op-
“ pressor of the people of *Ireland*, a robber of the goods both of Clergy and Laity, of
“ rich and poore alike: a defrauder of many under the colour of doing good: not ob-
“ serving the rights of the Church, nor keeping the lawes of the kingdome, offering
“ B wrongs to the naturall inhabitants, ministring justice to few or none, and altogether
“ distrusting (some few onely excepted) the inborne dwellers in the land. These things
“ did hee still, and attempted the like, misled by the counsell and perswasion of his
“ wife.

“ Item, the said Justice entring into *Ulster* in the moneth of March through a Pas,
“ called *Emerdullan*, was fiercely set upon by *Mac-Carion*, the which *Mac-Carion* veri-
“ ly having encountered with the said Justice, spoiled him of his clothes, mony, utensils,
“ silver, plate, and horses, yea and slew some of his men. But in the end, the foresaid
“ Justice with the helpe of the men of *Ergale* got the victory, and entred into the parts
“ of *Ulster*.

C MCCCXLV. The seventh of June a common Parliament was holden at *Dublin*, un-
“ to which the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* came not.

“ Item, the Lord *Ralph Ufford* Justice of *Ireland*, after the feast of S. John Baptist,
“ with the Kings standard railed (yet without the assent of the Elders of the land) a-
“ gainst the Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmond*, marcheth forthwith into
“ Mounster, and there seized into the Kings hands the Earles lands: and these lands so
“ seized letteth out to farme unto others for a certain yeerly rent, to be carried unto the
“ King.

“ Item, the said Justice being in the parts of Mounster, delivered unto Sir William
“ *Burton* Knight, two writs: the one whereof the said William should deliver unto the
“ D Lord *Moris Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Kildare*: the contents of which was this; That
“ upon paine of forfeiting all his lands, he should with all speed repaire unto him, to aid
“ the King and him with a strong power. Now in the other writ contained it was, that
“ the said Sir William should apprehend the said Earle of *Kildare*, and so apprehended
“ commit him to prison. But Sir William seeing that this could not possibly be brought
“ about and effected accordingly by himselfe, with colourable words framed for the
“ nonce, perswaded the said Earle, whiles he was preparing himselfe with his army,
“ and levying a power unto the foresaid Justice, that before his departure out of the
“ countrey, hee should repaire unto the Kings Counsell at *Dublin*, and that by the una-
“ nimity and joint counsell of the same to deale, as to provide for the safe keeping of
“ E his owne lands in his absence: and if after that any hurt should befall unto his lands
“ whiles he was absent, it should be imputed unto the Kings counsell, and not to him.
“ The Earle therefore giving credit unto the Knights words, and thinking of no trea-
“ cherous practice in this behalfe, disposed and addressed himself to come unto *Dublin*.
“ When he was come, altogether ignorant of any treachery toward, whiles himselfe sat
“ in consultation with others of the King Councell in the Exchequer-court, sodainly he
“ was by the said Sir William betrayed, attached or arrested and apprehended, and
“ brought to the castle of the said city, and there clapt up in prison.

“ Item, the said Justice entred with his army the parts of *O-Comill* in Mounster, and
“ by a treacherous device taked two castles of the Earle of *Desmonds*, to wit, the ca-
“ F stle of *Tunkilly*, and the castle of the *Iland*: in which castle of the *Iland* thus taken, the
“ Knights being within the said castle, namely, Sir *Eustace le Pore*, Sir *William Graunt*,
“ and Sir *John Coverell*, were first drawne, and afterward in October openly hanged
“ untill they were dead.

“ Also the said Earle of *Desmond*, with some other of his Knights, were by the said
“ Justice banished. The foresaid Justice having atchieved these exploits in Mounster,
“ returned

returned in the moneth of November with his company unto his wife then great A with child, remaining at *Kilmaynon*, which is neere to *Dublin*: over and beside those things which had beene done against the Laity, by inditing and imprisoning some of them, and turning them out of their goods, he also caused the Ecclesiasticall persons, as well Priests as Clerkes, to be endited; and standing endited, attached and imprisoned them, and fetched no small summes of money out of their purses.

Item, as touching the grants and demises of their lands, to wit, whom before hee had deprived of their lands, he bestowed the same upon divers tenants (as hath beene said) as also the very writings concerning those grants, so sealed as they were by him and with the Kings seale, he revoked, tooke the same from them, cancelled, defaced, B and wholly annulled them.

Item, all the mainpernours of the said Earle of *Desmond*, in number twenty fixe, as well Earles as Barons, Knights and others of the countrey, whose names be these, to wit, Lord *William Burke* Earle of *Ulster*, Lord *James Botiller* Earle of *Ormond*, Sir *Richard Tuit* Knight, Sir *Eustace Le Poer* Knight, Sir *Gerald De Rochfort* Knight, Sir *John Fitz-Robert Poer* Knight, Sir *Robert Barry* Knight, Sir *Morus Fitz-Gerald* Knight, Sir *John Wellesley* Knight, Sir *Walier Lenfaunt* Knight, Sir *Roger de la Rokell* Knight, Sir *Henry Traharn* Knight, Sir *Roger Pover* Knight, Sir *John Lenfaunt* Knight, Sir *Roger Pover* Knight, Sir *Matthew Fitz-Henry* Knight, Sir *Richard Wallis* Knight, Sir *Edward Burk* Knight, the sonne of the Earle of *Ulster*, *David Barry*, *William Fitz-Gerald*, *Fulke Ash*, *Robert Fitz-Morus*, *Henry Barkley*, *John Fitz-George Roch*, and C *Thomas de Lees de Burgh*, their own travels and proper expences, which some of them with the said Justice in his warre had beene at, and in pursuing the said Earle of *Desmond* notwithstanding, he by definitive sentence deprived of their lands, and disinherited, and awarded their bodies to the Kings pleasure, excepting foure persons only of all the foresaid sureties, whose names be these, *William Burk* Earle of *Ulster*, *James Botiller* Earle of *Ormond*, &c.

MCCCXLVI. Upon Palme-Sunday, which fell out to be the ninth day of *Aprill*, the above named Lord *Ralph Ufford* Justice of *Ireland* went the way of all flesh: for whose death his owne dependants, together with his wife, sorrowed not a little: for whose death also the loiall subjects of *Ireland* rejoyce no lesse. The Clergy and people both of the land, for joy of his departure out of this life, with merry hearts doe leap, and celebrate a solemne feast of Easter. At whose death the floods ceased, and the distemperature of the aire had an end, and in one word, the common sort truly and heartily praise the onely Son of God. Well, when this Justice now dead was once fast folded within a sheet and a coffin of lead, the foresaid Countesse (with his treasure not worthy to be bestowed among such holy reliques) in horrible grieve of heart conveyed his bowels over into *England*, there to be entered.

And againe, in the month of *May*, and on the second day of the same month, behold a prodigious wonder, sent, no doubt, miraculously from God above. For lo, she that E before at her comming entred the city of *Dublin* so gloriously, with the Kings armes and ensignes, attended upon with a number of souldiers in her guard and traine along the streets of the said city, and so from that time forward (a small while though it were) living royally with her friends about her, like a Queen in the Iland of *Ireland*, now at her going forth of the same city privily by a posternegate of the castle, to avoid the clamour of the common people calling upon her for debts, in her retire homeward to her owne countrey departed in disgrace, sad and mournfull with the dolefull badges of death, sorrow and heavinesse.

Item, after the death of the said Justice of *Ireland*, the Lord *Roger Darcy*, with the assent of the Kings Ministers and others of the same land, is placed in the office of Justice for the time.

Also the castles of *Ley* and *Kylmebede* are taken by the Irish and burnt, in the month of *Aprill*.

Item, Lord *John Moris* commeth chiefe Justice of *Ireland* the fifteenth day of *May*.

Also

A Also the Irish of *Ulster* gave a great overthrow unto the English of *Urgale*, wherein were slaine three hundred at the least, in the moneth of *June*. Also, the said Lord *John Moris*, Justice of *Ireland*, is discharged by the King of *England* from that office of Justiceship, and the Lord *Walter Bermingham* set in the same office by the foresaid King: and a little after the foresaid slaughter committed, entrench with Commis- sion into *Ireland* in the month of *June*.

Item, unto the Lord *Morus Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmond* the maintenance of peace for a certain time is granted by the King of *England*. Which being granted upon the Vigill of the exaltation of the holy Crosse, hee together with his wife and B two sonnes take sea at the haven of *Yoghal*, and crosseth over into *England*; where he followeth the law hard, and requireth instantly to have justice for the wrongs done unto him by *Raulph Ufford*, late Lord Justice of *Ireland* above named.

Item, unto the said Earle, by commandement and order from the Lord King of *England*, there are granted from his entrance into *England* twenty shillings a day, and so day by day still is allowed for his expences.

Also, the Lord *Walter Bermingham* Justice of *Ireland*, and the Lord *Morus Fitz-Thomas*, Earle of *Kildare*, rose up in armes against *O-Morda* and his complices, who burnt the Castle of *Ley* and *Kilmebed*: and they with their forces valiantly set upon and invade him and his complices, spoiling, killing and burning, in so much as the said C *O-Morda* and his complices (although at the first they had manfully and resolutely made resistance there with many thousands of the Irish) after many wounds and a great slaughter committed, were constrained in the end to yeeld; and so they submitted to the Kings grace and mercy, and betake themselves full and whole unto the said Earles devotion.

MCCCXLVII. The Earle of *Kildare* with his Barons and Knights goeth unto the King of *England* in the moneth of *May*, to aide him lying then at the siege of *Caleys*.

Also the towne of *Caleys* was by the inhabitants upon the fourth day of *June* rendered up into the King of *Englands* hands.

D Item, *Walter Boneville*, *William Calfe*, *William Welesley*, and many other noble Gentlemen and valiant Knights as well of *England* as of *Ireland*, died of the sicknesse in *Caleys*.

Also, *Mac-Murgh*, to wit, *Donald Mac-Murgh* the sonne of *Donald Art Mac-Murgh* King of *Leinster*, upon the fifth day of *June* is treacherously slain by his own people.

More, *Morus Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Kildare* is by the King of *England* made Knight.

Also the towne called *Monaghan*, with all the territorie adjoining, is by the Irish burnt on the feast day of *S. Stephen Martyr*.

E Item, Dame *Joane Fitz-Leoues*, sometime wife to the Lord *Simon Geneville* departed this life, and is buried in the Covent Church of the Friars Preachers of *Trim*, the second day of *Aprill*.

MCCCXLVIII. And in the 22. yeere of King *Edward* the third, reigned the first pestilence, and most of all in *Ireland*, which had begunne afore in other Count- ries.

Item, in this yeere *Walter Lord Bermingham*, Lord Justice of *Ireland* came into *England*, and left *John Archer* Prior of *Kylmainon* his Lieutenent in his roome. And he returneth againe in the same yeere Justice as before: and the King conferred upon the same *Walter*, the Barony of *Kenlys* which is in *Offerie*, because he led a great ar- F my against the Earle of *Desmond*, with *Raulfe Ufford*, as before is said: which Barony belonged in times past unto the Lord *Eustace Pover*, who was attainted and hanged at the castle of the Isle.

MCCCXLIX. Lord *Walter Bermingham*, the best Justice of *Ireland* that ever was, gave up his office of Justiceship; after whom succeeded the Lord *Carew* Knight and Baron both.

MCCCL.

mcccc. And in the 25. yeere of the foresaid King Edward, Sir Thomas Rokesby A
 Knight was made Lord Justice of Ireland.
 Item, Sir Walter *Bermingham* Knight Lord *Bermingham*, that right good Justice
 sometime of Ireland, died in the Even of S. Margaret Virgin in England.
 mcccci. Kenrick *Sherman* sometime Maior of the Citie of Dublin died, and was
 buried under the Belfray of the preaching Friers of the same City: which Belfray
 and Steeple himsele erected, and glazed a window at the head of the Quire, and cau-
 sed the roofof the Church to be made, with many more good deeds. In the same
 Coventhe departed I say the sixth day of March: and at his end he made his Will or
 Testament, amounting to the value of three thousand Marks: and bequeathed many B
 good Legacies unto the Priests of the Church, both religious and secular, that were
 within twenty miles about the City.
 mccccii. Sir Robert *Savage* Knight began in *Ulster* to build new castles in divers
 places, and upon his owne Manours: who while he was a building said unto his sonne
 and heire Sir Henry *Savage*, let us make strong walls about us, lest happily the Irish
 come and take away our place, destroy our kinned and people, and so we shall be re-
 proached of all Nations. Then answered his sonne, where ever there shall be valiant
 men, there is a Castle and Fortresse too, according to that saying, *The sonnes encam-*
ped, that is to say, valiant men are ordained for warre, and therefore will I be among
 such hardy men, and so shall I be in a castle: and therewith said in his vulgar speech, C
 A castle of *Bones* is better than a castle of *Stones*. Then his father in a fume and chafe
 gave over his worke, and swore an oath that he would never build with stone and
 mortar; but keepe a good house, and a very great family and retinue of servants a-
 bout him: but he prophesied withall, that hereafter his sonnes and posterity should
 grieve and waile for it: which indeed came to passe; for the Irish destroyed all that
 country for default of castles.
 mcccciv. And in the thirty yeere of the same King, Sir Thomas *Rokesby* Knight
 went out of his office of Justice the fixe and twenty day of July: after whom succe-
 ded Moris *Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Desmund*, and continued in the office untill his
 death.
 Item, on the day of Saint Pauls conversion, the same Lord Moris *Fitz-Thomas* D
 died Justice of Ireland in the castle of *Dublin*, not without great sorrow of his friends
 and kinsfolke, and no lesse feare and trembling of all other Irish that loved peace.
 First, he was buried in the quire of the preaching Friers of *Dublin*: and at last entred
 in the Covent Church of the Friers Preachers of *Traly*. This man was a righte-
 ous Justicer, in that hee stucke not to hang up those of his owne blood for theft and
 rapine, and misdemeanours, even as soone as strangers: and chastised the Irish very
 well.
 mccccvi. And in the one and thirty yeere of the foresaid King, Sir Thomas
Rokesby was made the second time Justice of Ireland, who tamed the Irish very well, E
 and paid as well for the victuals he tooke, saying, I will eat and drinke out of Treen
 vessels, and yet pay both gold and silver for my food and apparel, yea and for my pen-
 sioners about me.
 The same yeere died that Sir Thomas Justice of Ireland, within the Castle of
Kilka.
 mccccvii. Also in the two and thirty yeere of the same Kings raigne, Sir Alma-
 rick de *Saint Aimund* was made chiefe Justice of Ireland, and entred into it.
 At this very time began a great controversie between Master Richard *Fitz-Ralfe*
 Archbishop of *Armagh*, and the foure Orders of the begging Friers: but in the end
 the Friers got the mastery, and by the Popes meanes caused the Archbishop of *Ar-* F
magh to hold his peace.
 mccccviii. In the 33. yeere of the same King Sir *Almarick* Sir *Amund* chiefe
 Justice of *Ireland* passed over into England.
 mcccclix. In the 34. yeere of the same King, James *Boillier* Earle of *Ormond* was
 made chiefe Justice of Ireland.

Item;

A Item, the Lady *Joan Burke* Countesse of *Kildare* departed this life on St. Georges
 day: and was buried in the Church of the Friers Minors of *Kildare*, neere unto her
 husband the Lord *Thomas Fitz-John* Earle of *Kildare*.
 mcccclx. And in the 35. of the foresaid King, died Master *Richard Fitz-Ralfe*
 Archbishop of *Armagh* in *Hanault*, the sixteenth day of December: whose bones
 were conveyed into *Ireland* by the reverend father *Stephen* Bishop of *Meib*, to be be-
 stowed in S. *Nicolas* Church at *Dundalk*, where he was born: But doubted it is whe-
 ther they were his bones or some other mans.
 Item, Sir Robert *Savage*, a doughty knight dwelling in *Ulster*, departed this life:
 B who with a few Englishmen slew of the *Irish* three thousand neere unto *Antrim*: but
 before that he went forth to that battell, he tooke order that there should be given
 unto every Englishman one good draught or pot of wine or ale, whereof hee had a
 number of hogheads and barrels full: and the rest he saved against the coming of
 his friends: he caused also to be killed sheepe, oxen, tame foule crammed fat, wilde
 foule, and for venison red Deere: that they might bee dressed and made ready for
 such as returned winners out of the field, whosoever they were. And he was wont to
 say, a shame it were if guests should come and not finde what to eate and drinke. But
 when it pleased God to give the English victorie, he invited them all to supper, and
 they rejoiced with thanksgiving: and himsele said, I give God thanks: For better it
 C is thus to keep it, than to let it run forth upon the ground, as some gave me counsell.
 Buried he was in the covent Church of the preaching Friers of *Coulrath*, neere to the
 river of *Banne*.
 Also, the Earle of *Ormond*, Lord Justice of Ireland entred England: in whose
 place Moris *Fitz-Thomas* Earle of *Kildare* was made Lord Justice of Ireland, by this
 Charter and Commission as appeareth: *Omnibus ad quos, &c.* that is, *To all whom*
these letters shall come unto Greeting: Know ye that we have committed to our sweet
 and faithfull subiect, Moris Earle of *Kildare*, the office of our L. Justice of our land of
 Ireland: and our land of Ireland, with the Castle and all pertences thereto, to keep
 and governe so long as it shall please us: and to receive at our Exchequer in *Dublin*
 D yeerely, so long as hee shall remaine in that office, five hundred pounds: for which
 he shall keep that office and land, and he shall be himsele one of the twenty men in
 armes (whom he shall finde) with as many horses armed continually, during our fore-
 said commission. In witnesse whereof, &c. Given by the hands of our beloved in
 Christ Frier Thomas *Burgey*, Prior of the Hospitall of S. John of *Jerusalem* in *Ire-*
land, our Chancellour of Ireland, at *Dublin* the thirtieth day of March, and of our
 reigne the thirty five yeere. Also James *Boillier* Earle of *Ormond* came again out of
 England Lord Justice of Ireland, as before, unto whom the Earle of *Kildare* resigned
 up the office of Justiceship.
 mccccxli. Leonell Earle of *Ulster* in right of his wives inheritance, and being the
 E Kings sonne of England, came into Ireland as the Kings Lievtenant, and arrived at
Dublin the eighth day of September being the feast of the blessed Virgins nati-
 vity, bringing his second wife Elizabeth, daughter and heire of the Lord William
 Burke Earle of *Ulster*.
 In the same yeere was the second pestilence. There died in England Henry Duke
 of Lancaster, the Earle of March, the Earle of Northampton.
 Also on the sixth day of January, Mons *Doncref* a Citizen of *Dublin* was buried in
 the Churchyard of the Friers Preachers of the same City: unto which covent or
 brotherhood he gave forty pounds, toward the glazing of their Church.
 Item, there departed out of this life the Lady *Joan Fleming*, wife to the Lord *Gef-*
 F *fery Trevers*, and the Lady *Margaret Bermingham*, wife to the Lord Robert *Preston*,
 on the Vigill of St. *Margaret*, and were buried in the Covent Church of the prea-
 ching Friers of *Tredagh*.
 Also, the Lord Walter *Bermingham* the younger, died on S. *Laurence* day, who
 divided his inheritance between his sisters, the one part thereof the foresaid *Preston*
 had for his share.

Item,

" Item, the foresaid Lord Leonell, after hee was entred into Ireland and had rested A
 " some few daies, made warre upon O-Bryne, and proclaimed throughout his army,
 " that no man borne in Ireland should come neere unto his campe : and an hundred of
 " his owne Pensioners were slaine. Leonell seeing this, forthwith reduced the whole
 " people as well of England as of Ireland into one, and so hee prospered, and stricke
 " many battailes round about in all places with the Irish, by the helpe of God, and the
 " people of Ireland. Hee made also many Knights of English and Irish : and among
 " them Robert Preston, Robert Holmwood, Thomas Talbot, Walter Cusacke, James de La
 " Hyde, John Ash, or de Fraxim, Patricke and Robert Ash, or de Fraxim, and many
 " besides.

" Also, he removed the Exchequer from Dublin to Carlagh, and gave five hundred B
 " pounds to the walling of that towne.

" Item, on the feast of Saint Maury Abbat, there rose a mighty wind, that shooke and
 " overthrew pinnacles, battlements, chimneys, and other things higher than the rest,
 " trees without number, divers Steeples, and namely, the Steeple of the Preaching
 " Friars.

" MCCCXLII. Also in the 36. yeere of the same King, the Church of St. Patricke in
 " Dublin through negligence was set on fire and burnt, the eighth of Aprill.

" MCCCXLIV. And in the 38. yeere of the foresaid King, the Lord Leonel Earle of
 " Ulster entred England the 22. of Aprill, and left his Deputy-Justice of Ireland, the
 " Earle of Ormond : and the same Leonell Duke of Clarence returned the eighth of C
 " December.

" MCCCXLV. Also in the 39. yeere of the said King, the same Leonell Duke of Cla-
 " rence passed over into England, leaving behind him Sir Thomas Dale Knight his De-
 " puty-Custos, and Justice of Ireland.

" MCCCXLVII. Great warre began between the Berminghams of Carbury and the men
 " of Meth, because many robberies by the foresaid were committed in Meth. Then Sir
 " Robert Preston Knight, and Lord chiefe Baron of the Exchequer, set a strong guard in
 " the castle of Carbury, and laid forth a great deale of money against the Kings enemies,
 " to defend his owne right, in regard of his wife.

" Item, Gerald Fitz-Moris Earle of Desmond was made Lord Justice of Ireland. D

" MCCCXLVIII. And in the 42. yeere of the same King, in Carbury, after a certaine
 " Parliament ended betweene the Irish and English, there were taken prisoners Frier
 " Thomas Burley Prior of Kylmaynon, the Kings Chancellour in Ireland, John Fitz-
 " Reicher Sheriffe of Meth, Sir Robert Tirell Baron of Castle-knoke, with many besides,
 " by the Berminghams and others of Carbury. Then James Bermingham, who had been
 " kept in the castle of Trim in yron manacles and fetters as a traytour, was delivered
 " out of prison, in exchange for the foresaid Chancellour, the other were put to their
 " ranfomes.

" Item, the Church of Saint Maries in Trim was burnt with the fire of the same Mo- E
 " nastery.

" Also in the Vigill of St. Luke the Evangelist, the Lord Leonell Duke of Clarence
 " died at Albe in Pyemont. First he was buried in the City of Papie, hard by St. Au-
 " gustin the Doctor ; and afterward entred at Clare in the covert Church of Austen
 " Friars in England.

" MCCCXLIX. And in the 43. yeere of the foresaid King, Sir William Windefore
 " Knight, a doughty man in armes and courageous, came as the Kings Lievttenant into
 " Ireland the twelfth day of July : unto whom gave place in the office of Justice-ship
 " Gerald Fitz-Moris Earle of Desmond.

" MCCCCLXX. And in the 44. yeere of the same King, began the third pestilence, and F
 " the greatest in Ireland, in which died many Noblemen and Gentlemen, Citizens also
 " and children innumerable.

" The same yeere Gerald Fitz-Moris Earle of Desmond, the Lord John Nicolson and
 " the Lord Thomas Fitz-John and many other noble persons were taken prisoners up-
 " on the sixth of July, neere unto the Monastery of Maio, in the county of Limerick by
 " O-Breen

A O-Breen and Mac-Comar of Thomond ; and many were slaine : in regard of which
 " occurrent, the said Lievttenant went over to Limericke to the defence of Mounster,
 " leaving the warres against the O-Tothiles, and the rest in Leinster.

" In this yeere died Lord Robert Terel Baron of castle Knock, the Lady Scolastica
 " his wife, and their sonne and heire : by reason whereof Joan Terel and Maud Terel,
 " sisters of the said Robert, parted the inheritance between themselves.

" Item, there departed this life Lord Simon Fleming Baron of Slane, Lord John Cu-
 " sake Baron of Colmlyn ; and John Tailour sometime Maior of Dublin, a rich and migh-
 " ty monied man.

B That which followeth was copied out of the Manuscript Chronicles of
 " Henry Marleburgh.

" MCCCXLXII. Sir Robert Asheton came Lord Justice of Ireland.

" MCCCXLXIII. Great warring there was between the English of Meth, and O-Fer-
 " dle, in which warre many of both sides were slaine.

" Item, in May Lord John Huse Baron of Galtrim, John Fitz-Richard Sheriffe of
 " Meth, and William Dalton, in Kynaleagh were killed by the Irish.

" MCCCXLXV. Thomas Archbishop of Dublin died : and in the same yeere was Ro-
 " bert of Wickford consecrated Archbishop of Dublin.

C MCCCXLXXI. There departed this life Edmund Mortimer the Kings Lievttenant in
 " Ireland, Earle of March and Ulster, at Cork.

" MCCCXLXXIII. There was a great pestilence in Ireland.

" MCCCXLXXV. The bridge of the city of Dublin fell downe:

" MCCCXCV. Robert Wickford Archbishop of Dublin died.

" The same yeere Robert Waldeby Archbishop of Dublin, of the order of Austen
 " Friars, was translated.

" MCCCXCVII. There hapned the translation and death of Frier Richard Northale
 " Archbishop of Dublin, one of the Carmelites order.

" Also in the same yeere Thomas Crauley was consecrated Archbishop of Dublin.

D The same yeere the Lord Thomas Burgh, and the Lord Walter Bermingham slew
 " fixe hundred of the Irish, and their captain Mac-Con.

" Item, Roger Earle of March, Lievttenant of Ireland wasted the country of O-Bryn,
 " with the help of the Earle of Ormond, and dubbed there seven Knights, to wit, Chri-
 " stopher Preston, John Bedeleu, Edmund Loundris, John Loundris, William Nugent,
 " Walter dela Hyde, and Robert Cadell, at the forcing and winning of a most strong
 " Manor house of the said O-Bryn.

" MCCCXCVIII. Upon the Ascension day of our Lord, the Tothils slew forty English,
 " among whom John Fitz-William, Thomas Talbot, and Thomas Comyn were kil-
 " led, which was a pitifull mishap.

E In the same yeere on St. Margarets day, Roger Earle of March the Kings Lieve-
 " nant was with many others slaine at Kenlys in Leinster, O-Bryn and other Irish of
 " Leinster, in whose place and office Roger Grey is chosen Justice.

" In the same yeere upon the feast of S. Marke Pope and Confessor, came to Dublin
 " the noble Duke of Sutherey, as the Kings Lievttenant in Ireland : with whom at the
 " same time arrived Master Thomas Crauley, Archbishop of Dublin.

" MCCCXCIX. And in the 23. yeere of King Richard, upon Sunday which fell out to
 " be the morrow after S. Petronill or Pernill the Virgins day, the same glorious King
 " Richard arrived at Waterford with two hundred saile.

F Item, the sixth day of the same weeke, at Ford in Kenlys within the county of Kil-
 " dare, were slaine of the Irish 200. by Jenicho and other English : and the morrow af-
 " ter the Dublinians made a rode in the country of O-Bryn, and slew of the Irish 33.
 " and fourescore men and women with their little children they took prisoners.

" The same yeere, the said King came to Dublin the fourth day before the
 " Calends of July : where hee heard rumours of Henrie the Duke of Lancaster.

R r r

his

his coming into England, whereupon himself passed over with speed into England. A
 mcccc. In the first yeere of King Henry the fourth, at Whirfontide the Constable
 of Dublin castle and many others encountred the Scots at sea before Stranford in
 Ulster: whereupon fell out a lamentable accident, for that many of the English were
 slaine and drowned there.

mcccci. In the second yeere of King Henry the fourth, Sir John Stanley the K.
 Lievtenant passed over into England in the month of May, leaving in his roome Sir
 William Stanley.

In the same yeere, upon the Vigill of Saint Bartholomew, there entred into Ireland
 Stephen Scroop, as deputy to the Lord Thomas of Lancaster, the Kings Lievtenant B
 in Ireland.

The same yeere, on the day of S. Brice Bishop and Confessor, the Lord Thomas of
 Lancaster the Kings sonne, arrived at Dublin, Lievtenant of Ireland.

mccccii. On the fifth of July was the Church of the Friers Preachers at Dublin
 dedicated by the Archbishop of Dublin: and the same day John Drake the Maier of
 Dublin, with the citizens and men of the countrey, slew in battell of the Irish neere
 unto Bree 493. and were victorious over the Irish.

The same yeere in the moneth of September, a Parliament was holden at Dublin:
 at which time in Uriel Sir Bartholomew Verdon, James White, Stephen Gernon,
 and their complices, slew John Dowdal Sheriffe of Louth.

mcccciii. In the fourth yeere of King Henry the fourth, and in the moneth of C
 May, was killed Sir Walter Beterley a valiant Knight then Sheriffe there, and with
 him thirty men.

In the same yeere about the feast of S. Martin, there passed over into England Tho-
 mas the Kings sonne, leaving Stephen Scroop his Deputy, who also himself upon the
 first day of Lent returned into England: and then the Lords of the land chose the
 Earle of Ormond Lord Justice of Ireland.

mcccciv. In the fifth yeere of King Henry died John Cowlton Archbishop of
 Armagh the fifth of May, whom Nicholas Fleming succeeded. The same yeere on
 S. Vitalis day began a Parliament at Dublin, before the Earle of Ormond then Lord D
 Justice of Ireland: wherein were confirmed the Statutes of Kilkenny and of Dub-
 lin: also the charter of Ireland.

In the same yeere Patrick Savage in Ulster was treacherously slaine by Mac-Kil-
 mori, and Richard his brother given for an hostage, who likewise was murdered in pri-
 son, after he had payed two hundred Marks.

mccccv. In the sixth yeere of King Henry, and in the month of May, were taken
 three Scottish Galions or Barkes, two at Green-castle, and one at Dalkey, with the
 captaine Thomas Mac-Golagh.

The same yeere the merchants of Tredaght entred Scotland, tooke pledges and
 preies.

The same yeere Stephen Scroope crossed the seas into England, leaving the Earle
 of Ormond Lord Justice of Ireland.

And the same yeere, in the month of June the Dublinians entred Scotland at Saint
 Ninians, and there behaved themselves manfully: then landed they in Wales, and did
 much hurt to the Welshmen there; yea and carried away the Shrine of S. Cubie unto
 the Church of the holy Trinitie in Dublin.

Also, the same yeere on the Vigill of the blessed Virgin, died James Botiller Earle
 of Ormond, whiles he was Lord Justice (to the griefe of many) at Baligauran; unto
 whom there succeeded in the office of Lord Justice, Gerald Earle of Kildare.

mccccvi. And in the seventh yeere of King Henry, on Corpus Christi day the Dub- F
 linians with the people of the Countrey about them, manfully overcame the Irish,
 and killed some of them: they tooke three ensignes, and carried away divers of their
 heads to Dublin.

The same yeere, the Prior of Conall fought valiantly in the plaine of Kildare,
 and vanquished two hundred Irish well armed, killing some, and putting others to

A to flight: there were in the Priors company not above twenty English: and thus God
 regardeth those that repose trust in him.

In the same yeere, after the feast of S. Michael, Sir Stephen Scroop Deputy Justice
 under the Lord Thomas the Kings sonne Lievtenant of Ireland, entred into Ireland.

The same yeere died Pope Innocentius the seventh, after whom succeeded Pope
 Gregory.

The same yeere beganne a Parliament at Dublin on Saint Hilaries day, which
 ended at Trym in Lent: and Meiler Bermingham slew Cathol O-Conghir in the end
 of February, and Sir Gesserey Vaulx a noble Knight in the countie of Carlagh
 B died.

mccccvii. A certaine Irishman, a most false villaine, named Mac-Adam Mac-
 Gilmori (who caused fortie Churches to be destroyed) one that was never christened,
 and therefore termed Corbi, tooke Patrick Savage prisoner, and received of him for
 his ranfome two thousand Marks, and yet killed him afterwards with his brother Ri-
 chard.

The same yeere, in the feast of the exaltation of the Holy Crosse, Stephen Scroop,
 Deputy under Thomas the Kings sonne Lievtenant of Ireland, accompanied with the
 Earles of Ormond and Desmond, and the Prior of Kylmaynon, with many out of
 Meth, set forth from Dublin: and in hostile manner invaded the land of Mac-
 Murgh: where the Irish had the better of the field in the forepart of the day; but af-
 C terwards they were manfully by the said Captaines repulsed: where O-Nolam with
 his sonne and others were taken prisoners. But hearing then and there, that the
 Burkeins and O-Keroll in the countie of Kilkenny had for two daies together done
 much mischief, sodainly the said Captaines rode in all haste with bridle on horse
 necke unto the towne of Callan, and there meeting with the said enemies, manfully
 put them to flight. O-Keroll, and to the number of eight hundred they killed in the
 place.

The same yeere Stephen Scroop sailed over into England, and James Butler Earle
 of Ormond was by the country chosen Lord Justice of Ireland.

D mccccviii. The said L. Justice held a Parliament at Dublin, in which Parliament
 were confirmed the Statutes of Kilkenny and of Dublin: and a Charter granted un-
 der the great seale of England against Purveyours.

The same yeere, the morrow after S. Peters day ad Vincula, the Lord Thomas of
 Lancaster the Kings sonne arrived as Lievtenant of Ireland at Carrington, and in the
 weeke following came to Dublin: and arrested the Earle of Kildare as he came unto
 him, with three of his house and all his goods he lost by the servants of the said Liev-
 tenant: and in the castle of Dublin he imprisoned him, untill he made payment of 300.
 Marks for a fine.

The same yeere on Saint Marcellus day died the Lord Stephen Scroop at Tristel-
 E Dermot.

The same yeere the said Thomas of Lancaster was wounded at Kylmainon, and
 hardly escaped death: and afterwards caused Proclamation to be made, that whofo-
 ever by his renures owed service to the King should appeare at Rosse: And after Saint
 Hilaries feast he held a Parliament at Kilkenny, for to have a tallage granted. And af-
 terwards upon the third day before the Ides of March, he passed over into England,
 leaving the Prior of Kylmainon his Deputy in Ireland.

In this yeere Hugh Mac-Gilmory was slaine at Cragfergus, within the Oratory or
 Church of the Friers Minors: which Church he before had destroyed, and broken
 the glasse windowes thereof, for to have the iron-barres therein: at which his ene-
 F mies, to wit, the Savages, entred.

mccccix. In the tenth yeere of King Henry, and in the month of June, Janico of
 Artoys with the English slew fourescore of the Irish in Ulster.

mccccx. On the thirteenth day of June began a Parliament at Dublin, and conti-
 nued three weeks, the Prior of Kylmainon sitting as Lord Justice.

The same yeere, on the tenth day of July, the same Justice beganne the castle of
 Rrrr z Mibracly

* Mibracly in O-Feroll, and built De la Mare: and a great dearth there was of corne. A
 * In the same yeere the Justice entred the land of O-brin with a thousand and five
 * hundred kernes, of whom eight hundred departed unto the Irish: and had not the
 * Dublinians beene there, there would have beene wailing and many a woe; and yet,
 * John Derparrick lost his life there.
 * MCCCCXII. About the feast of Tiburce and Valerian, O-Conghir did much harm
 * to the Irish in Meth, and tooke prisoner 160. men.
 * The same yeere O-Doles a knight, and Thomas Fitz-Moris Sheriffe of Limerik,
 * killed one another.
 * In the same yeere, the ninth of June, died Robert Moneyn Bishop of Meth, after B
 * whom succeeded Edward Dandisey sometime Archdeacon of Cornwall.
 * MCCCCXIII. The seventh of October there landed in Ireland at Cloncarfe, John
 * Stanley the Kings Lievtenant in Ireland, who died the sixth of January in Aterub.
 * The same yeere, after the death of John Stanley Lord Lievtenant, Thomas Cranley
 * Archbishop of Dublin was chosen on the eleventh day of February Lord Justice of
 * Ireland. A Parliament effoons began at Dublin the morrow after Saint Matthias the
 * Apostles day, and lasted fiftene daies: during which time the Irish fell to burning in
 * divers places, as they had done often in Parliament times; wherefore a tallage was
 * demanded, but not granted.
 * MCCCCXIII. The English slew of the Irish the O-Mordries and O-Dempfies C
 * neer to Kilka, even whiles the Justice of Ireland Thomas Cranley Archbishop of Dub-
 * lin went in Procession at Trisfeldermot, praying with his Clerks: and his servants with
 * their countreine overthrew of the Irish an hundred.
 * Upon the feast day of Saint Gordian and Saint Epimachus a foile or discomfiture
 * was given to the English of Meth, and there was slaine Thomas Maureward Baron of
 * Scrin: and taken prisoners there were Christopher Fleming, John Dardis, and many o-
 * thers slaine by O-Conghir and the Irish.
 * In the vigill of Saint Martin arrived the Lord John Talbot Lord Furnivall, as
 * Lievtenant of Ireland, at Dalkay.
 * MCCCCXV. In the moneth of November died Robert Talbot a Nobleman, who D
 * walled the Suburbs of Kilkenny.
 * Item, after the feast of All-Saints died Frier Patricke Baret Bishop of Fernae, and a
 * Canon of Kenlis, where he was buried.
 * MCCCCXVI. On the feast day of Gervasse and Prothasius the Lord Furnivall had
 * a sonne borne at Finglas. About this time the reverend Lord Stephen Fleming
 * Archbishop of Armagh departed this life: unto whom succeeded John Swanig. And
 * at the same time the Lord Bishop of Ardachard, Frier Adam Lyns of the order of
 * preaching Friars.
 * Item, on Saint Laurence day died Thomas Talbot Lord of Furnivall, lately borne
 * at Finglas, &c. is interred in the quire of the preaching Friars Church of Dublin, with-
 * in the Covent of the said Preachers. A Parliament was holden at Dublin, in the time E
 * whereof the Irish fell upon the English and slew many of them, among whom Tho-
 * mas Balimore of Baliquelan was slaine.
 * This Parliament lasted in that place fixe weekes, and then was removed to Trym
 * the eleventh day of May, and there it continued eleven daies: and granted there was
 * unto the Lievtenant a subsidy of foure hundred Markes.
 * MCCCCXVII. On the Eve of Philip and Jacob Apostles, Thomas Cranley Arch-
 * bishop of Dublin passed over into England, and died at Farindon: he was buried
 * in the New Colledge at Oxford: a liberall man he had beene, and an almes-giver,
 * a great Clerke, a Doctor in Divinity, and excellent Preacher, a builder of the places F
 * whereto he dwelt, beautifull, sumptuous, of sanguine complexion, and tall of stature:
 * so that in his time it might well be said unto him, Faire art thou, and of a goodly pre-
 * sence above the sons of men, grace is seated all over thy lips for the eloquence of thy
 * tongue. Fourescore yeeres old he was, and for the space almost of twenty yeeres he
 * governed the Church of Dublin peaceably.

MCCCCXVIII.

A MCCCCXVIII. The feast of the Annuntiation of our Lady fell out to be on good
 Friday, and straight after Easter the Lord Deputy spoiled the tenants of Henry Crus
 and Henry Bethar.
 Item, at Slane on the day of S. John and S. Paul, were arrested the Earle of Kildare,
 Sir Christopher Preston, and Sir John Bedleu, and committed to ward within the cas-
 tle of Trym, because they were desirous to common with the Prior of Kilmalmon.
 The fourth of August died Sir Matthew Hufee Baron of Galtrim, who lieth buried
 at the Preaching Friars in Trim.
 MCCCCXIX. The eleventh of May, Edmund Brel sometime Maior of Dublin de-
 parted this life, and was buried at the Friars preachers of the same Citie. A Counsell
 B royall was holden at Naas: and there a subsidy of 300. Markes was granted to the
 Lord Lievtenant.
 At the same time died Sir John Loundres. On the fifth day of the week, falling out
 to be Maunday Thursday, O-Thoill tooke 400. kine that belonged to Balimore, so
 breaking the peace against his oath.
 The fourth of May Mac-Morthe chiefe Captaine of his owne Sept, and of all the
 Irish in Leinster, was taken prisoner. And the same day Hugh Cokesey was made
 knight.
 The last day of May, the Lievtenant, the Archbishop of Dublin, and the Maior to-
 C gether rased the castle of Kenini.
 The morrow after the feast of Processus and Martinian, the Lord William
 Burgh, and other of the English slew 500. of the Irish, and tooke O-Kelly priso-
 ner.
 On the feast of Mary Magdalen, the Lievtenant John Talbot passed over into
 England, leaving for his Deputy the Archbishop of Dublin: carrying with him the
 curies of divers, for that he paid a little or nothing for his victuals, and was indebted
 unto many.
 About the feast of Saint Laurence, divers there were that died in Normandy, and
 by name, Frier Thomas Botiller Prior of Kilmalmon, with many others.
 D After whom succeeded in the Priory Frier John Fitz-Henry. The Archbishop
 being Deputy fell upon the Scohties, and slew of the Irish thirty neere unto Rodi-
 fton.
 Item, upon the Ides of February died Frier John Fitz-Henry Prior of Kilmalmon:
 whom succeeded Frier William Fitz-Thomas, elected and confirmed the morrow af-
 ter S. Valentines day.
 Also the morrow after the feast of Saint Peter in Cathedra, the Lord John Talbot
 Lord of Furnivall yeilded the place into the hands of the Lord Richard Talbot Arch-
 bishop of Dublin, who afterward was chosen Lord Justice of Ireland.
 MCCCCXX. Upon the fourth day of April, the Lord James Butler Earle of Ormond
 E arrived at Waterford, Lievtenant of Ireland, and quickly caused a combat to bee
 fought between two of his cousins: of whom the one died in the field, and the other
 was carried forth of the place sore hurt and lamed unto Kilkenny. On St. Georges
 feast day, the same Lievtenant held a Counsell at Dublin, and summoned a Parliament
 there. And in the meane while he raised great booties from O-Raly, Mac-Mahon,
 and Mac-Guyr: And the eighth day of June began a Parliament at Dublin, and there
 were granted unto the Lievtenant 700. Markes: and that Parliament continued for
 16. dayes: and the same was prorogued unto the munday after St. Andrewes day:
 also in the foresaid Parliament were cast up the debts of the Lord John Talbot late
 Lievtenant, which arose to a great summe.
 F Also the morrow after St. Michaels day died Michael Bodley.
 On the Vigill of Saint Francis, there departed this life Frier Nicholas Talbot, Ab-
 bot of St. Thomas the Martyr in Dublin. After whom succeeded Frier John Whi-
 ting.
 The morrow after the Apostles Simon and Jude day, was the castle of Colnolinta-
 ken by Thomas Fitz-Geffery.

Rrrr 3

Also

* Also in the Vigill of S. Katherine Virgin, Botiller the sonne and heire of the Earle A of Ormund was borne.

* Item, on munday after the feast of S. Andrew the Apostle, the said Parliament began at Dublin, and continued 13. daies: and granted there was to the Lievtenant there 300. markes: and the Parliament was adjourned effoones unto the munday after St. Ambrose day.

* Then rumours refounded, that the Lord Thomas Fitz-John Earle of Desmond died at Paris on St. Laurence feast day, and was buried there at the Friers Preachers convent, the King of England being present at his funerals. After whom succeeded in that Seigniorie James Fitz-Gerald his Unkle by the fathers side, who had three B times thrust him out of his patrimonie: and laid an imputation upon him that he was a prodigall spend-thrift, and had wasted his patrimony both in Ireland and England, and that he gave or would givelands to the Abbey of St. James at Kernisham. 1421.

* The Parliament began upon prorogation the third time at Dublin the munday after the feast of S. Ambrose: and there certain persons were ordained to be sent in message to the King, as touching the redresse of the land, namely, the Archbishop of Armagh, and Sir Christopher Preston Knight.

* At the same time Richard O-Hedian Bishop of Caffell was accused by John Gefe Bishop of Lismore and Waterford, upon thirtie Articles laid to his charge. After all that, hee charged him that hee made very much of the Irish, and loved none of the English: that hee bestowed no benefice upon any Englishman, and gave order like- C wise unto other Bishops, that they should not conferre the least living that was upon them.

* Item, that hee counterfeited the King of Englands seale, and the Kings letters patents, that he went about to make himselfe King of Mounster: also that he tooke a ring away from the image of S. Patrick, which the Earle of Desmond had offered, and bestowed it upon an harlot of his: beside many other enormities, which he exhibited in writing. And the Lords and Commons were much troubled betwene these twaine.

* Now in the same Parliament, there was debate between Adam Pay Bishop of Clon D and another Prelate: for that the said Adam went about to unite the others Church unto his, but the other would not: and so they were sent and referred unto the Court of Rome, and this Parliament lasted 18. daies.

* In the Nones of May there was a slaughter committed by O-Mordris upon the family or retinue of the Earle of Ormund, Lievtenant, neere unto the Monastery of Leys, where were slaine of the English 27. The principall parties were Purcell and Grant. Then Gentlemen of good birth were taken prisoners, and 200. fled unto the foresaid Monastery, and so were saved.

* In the Ides of May died Sir John Bodley Knight, and Geffery Galon sometime Maier of Dublin, and was buried in the house of the preaching Friers of the same E City.

* About this time Mac-Mahon an Irishman played the divell in Urgal, wasting and burning where ever he went.

* The seventh of June the Lievtenant entred into the country, to wit, of Leys against O-Mordris, and led thither a most puissant army, having the killing of his enemies for four daies together, and untill the Irish promised all peace and quietnesse.

* Upon the feast of Michael the Archangel, Thomas Stanley, accompanied with all the Knights and Squires of Meth and Iriel, took Moyle O-Downyll prisoner, and slew others, in the 14. yeere of King Henry the sixth his reigne.

Thus far forth were continued the Annales of Ireland which came to my hands, and upon which I have bestowed these few pages,

A pages, to gratifie them that may delight therein. As for the nice and dainty readers, who would have all writings tried to the touch of Augustus his daies, I know they can yeeld no pleasing relish to them, in regard of the harsh words, and the saplesse dry stile, familiar unto that age wherein they were penned. Nevertheless, I would have those to remember, That HISTORIE B both beareth, brooketh, and requireth the Authors of all ages: Also, That they are to look as well for reall and substantiall knowledge from some, as for the verball and literal learning from others.

THE SMALLER ISLANDS IN THE BRITISH OCEAN.

Now will I at length waigh anchor and set saile out of Ireland, and lanching forth take survey of the Islands scattered here and there along the coasts of Britaine. If I durst repose any trust in my selfe, or if I were of any sufficiencie, I would shape my course to every one. But sith it is my purpose to discover and lighten Antiquity, such as are obscure and of lesse account I will lightly coast by: and those that carry any ancient name and reckoning above the rest, I will enter and visite, yea and make some short stay in them, that now at last in a good and happy houre they may recover their ancient againe.

E And that in this voiage I may at first set out orderly, and take a straight and direct course, I will, to begin, saile out of Ireland into the Severn sea, and by the Irish sea (after I have doubled the utmost point of Scotland) follow my course down into the German Ocean, and so from thence through the British sea (which extendeth as far as to Spaine) hold on my race as prosperously as I can. But I am afraid lest this my ship of Antiquity, steered by me so unskilfull a Pilot, either run and be split upon the rockes of errors, or else be overwhelmed with the waves of ignorance, yet venter I must. To wit, saith Antiphilus, νῆς ἀπὸρῶς, that is, Adventure is a good sea Caprain: and he that sailerh the same voiage a second time, may haply speed much better, and finish his desired course.

First and formost, because it seemeth not impertinent to my matter, I will set down what Plutarch, out of a fabulous narration of Demetrius (who seemeth to have lived in Hadrians time) reporteth generally as touching the Islands lying neer to Britain. Demetrius made report, that most of those Islands which coast upon Britain, lie desert, desolate and scattering here and there; whereof some were dedicated to the Dæmones, and Heroes: also that himself by commission from the Emperour, sailed toward one that was neere of those desert Isles, for to know and discover somewhat: the which he found to have in it few inhabitants, and those he understood were reputed by the Britans sacred and inviolable. Within a while after he was landed there, the aire and weather (as he said) be- came

came foully troubled, many portentous signes were given by terrible tempests, with extraordinary stormes, flashing and violent lightnings and fiery impressions: which after they were appeased, the Islanders certified him that some one of great eminency was dead. And a little after: Now he said moreover, that there was a certain Island there, wherein *Saturn* was by *Briareus* closed up and kept in prison sound asleep (for sleep was the means to hold him captive) about whose person there were many *Damones* at his feet, that stood attending as servants. Thus they took pleasure in old time, as now also at this day, boldly to devise strange wonders and tales of places far remote, in a certain secure vein of lying, as it were by authority.

In the narrow sea of Severn there peep up first of all two small Islands, whereof the one, because it lieth flat and with an even ground, is by us called *Flatholme*, in the same sense that *Planarie* is named Italy: the other *Steep-holme*, because it riseth steep, in the British tongue *Reoric*: both of them, when the Britans bare rule, were tearmed *Echni*, like as in our age *Holmes*, for so the Anglo-Saxons called greene plaines enclosed within water: neither were they in ancient times famous for any thing else, but for that the Danes lay there at road: and for the tomb of one *Gualchus*, a Britan of singular devoutnesse, whose Disciple *Barruch* left his name to the Island *Barry* in Wales (as an ancient monument of the Church of *Landaff* witnesseth) which Island in like manner hath given name to a noble house of the *Barraies* in Ireland.

This hath lying hard to it the little Island *Silly*, upon the coast of the ancient *Silures*, of whose name it seemeth to retaine still more than a shadow, like as a small town over against it in *Glanorganshire*: yet dare I not avouch it to be *Silura*, or *Insula Silurum*, the Island that *Solinus* mentioneth, seeing there be other Islands bearing the same name; yet farre distant from the *Silures*.

From thence we come to *Caldey*, in the British *Imis-Pix*, lying neer unto the shore; and to *Londoy* farther within the sea, over against *Caldey*, &c. belonging unto *Devonshire*, from the promontory or cape whereof, named *Hert-nesse*, it lieth 14. miles. Larger this is counted of the twaine, howbeit reported to be not much more than two miles long, and one mile broad, so encircled with rocks and cliffes round about, that there is no avenue unto it but in one or two places. A fort or fonce it had: the ruins whereof, like as of *S. Helens Chappell*, are yet to be scene. That it had beene in time past cared with the plough, the ridges and furrowes in it doe evidently shew: now all the commodity and profit that it yeeldeth doth arise from sea-fowle, whereof it hath great store. Trees it hath none but stinking Elders, which the Stares haunt in such multitudes, that uneth for their dung there is any coming unto them. But what meane I to stand hereupon? considering that Sir *Thomas Delamere* Knight (in reporting how that silly king *Edward the second*, when his froward and unreasonable wife, together with the unruly Barons thundred out threats, and denounced terrible menaces, was minded to withdraw himselfe hither, as to a place of refuge) hath in old time described it in this wise. *Londoy* (saith he) is an Island lying in the mouth of Severn two miles long over way, full of pleasant pastures: it affoordeth Connies in great store: doves and stares (which *Alexander Necham* tearmeth *Ganimedes birds*) it hath continually from time to time ready to lay: it serveth the inhabitants besides, with fresh water, warming abundantly out of springs, though it selfe be on all sides compassed with the sea. One way of entrance it hath into it, wherein two men can hardly goe afront together on foot: on every part besides the dreadfull rocks bearing out a mighty beight, hinder all ingresse. But scarcely doe our Historians make any mention of it, save only how *William de Marisco*, a most lewd and mischievous rover in the reign of king *Henry the third*, from hence fore infested these coasts in times past: and that in King *Edward the third* his daies it was part of the *Lutterels* inheritance.

From thence in the very bent and turning of *Pembrochshire*, we meet with *Gresholme*, *Stockholme*, and *Scalmey*, in which is plentie of grasse, and wild thyme groweth very fresh and pleasant. The day was when I thought *Scalmey* to have been that *SILIMNUS*, which *Plinie* in old time wrote of: but the truth hath now made me change my opinion. For that *SILIMNUS* of *Plinie* (as the affinity of the word implieth)

Gresholme,
Stockholme,
and Scalmey.
Silimnus.

A implieth, seemes to be *Ptolomee* his *LIMNI*. That this here is the Britans *Lymen*, the word it selfe (if I should say nothing) sheweth evidently, which the Englishmen by a new name have now a daies termed *Ramsey*. This lieth full against the Episcopall Sea of Saint *David*, whereunto it belongeth, and was in the foregoing ages very famous for the death of one *Justinian* a most holy man; who after he had withdrawn himselfe hither out of little Britaine in France, in that age that brought forth so many Saints, and led a long time an *Eremit*s life, wholly devoted to the service of God, being in the end slaine by a pike, was registred in the roll of Martyrs. In whose life we finde it oftentimes written, *Lemencia Insula*. Which denomination B verily, together with the British name *Limen*, by which name it is knowne unto the Britans themselves, checketh and taxeth his drowinesse who maketh this Island lying next above it to be *Ptolomees Limnon*: which the Britans now name *Enhly*, and English *Berdsey*, as one would say the Isle of Birds. But that this should be it that *Ptolomee* calleth *EDRI*, and *Plinie ANDROS* or *ADROS* (as it is in some place read) I durst more boldly ghesse by the signification of the word: for *Ader* in the British tongue signifieth a Bird, and in the very same sense the Englishmen afterward called it *Berdsey*. As for *Enhly*, it is a name of a later stampe, and came by occasion of a certain holy and devout man, who here lived as an *Eremit*.

For this Island, which toward the East mounteth aloft with an high promontory, C but Westward lieth plaine, and is of a fertile mould, harboured in old time so many holy men, that beside *Dubriuh* and *Merlin* the Caledonian, ancient histories record there were twenty thousand Saints buried here. Next unto this lieth *MONA*, that is, *Anglesey*, which the Britans also name *Mon*, *Tir-Mon*, and *Tnu Donyll*, that is, *A darke or shady Island*, the Saxons *Donegey*, whereof I have treated already in the page 671.

To *Mone* or *Anglesey* there adjoine three smaller Islands, *Moyl-Rhoniad*, that is, *The Isle of Seales*, upon the North-west; which after it had beene withheld by certain that unjustly seized upon it, from the Bishops of *Bangor*, unto whom it belonged, *Henry Deney* Bishop of *Bangor* (as we read in the history of *Canterbury*) with a fleet manned with souldiers in King *Henry the seventh* his time, recovered. Eastward lieth *Tnu Ligod*, that is, *The Isle of mice*: and more beneath, *Prest-home*, that is, *The Isle of Priests*: and nothing saw we in it but the tower steeple of Saint *Cyriades* chappell, which sheweth it selfe to the beholders afarre off. Incredible it is what the neighbours report of the infinite multitude of sea fowle that here doe breed: as also what they tell of a causy or banke which went from hence through the sea to the foot of that huge mountaine *Pen-Maen-Maur*, for their use who of devotion went on pilgrimage to visit this place, held in times past so holy and religious. I passe over *Lambey* a little Island opposite unto this toward the coast of Ireland, although our Metall-men have to their great charges fought there of late for *Alum*.

E More Northward lieth that *Mona* whereof *Cesar* maketh mention, in the mids of the cur, as he saith, betweene Britaine and Ireland.

Ptolomee termeth it *MONEDA*, as one would say *Mon-eiha*, that is, if I may be allowed to conjecture, *The more remote Mona*, to put a difference betwene it and the other *Mona*, that is, *Anglesey*: *Plinie* *MONABIA*, *Orosius* *MENAVIA*, and *Bede* *Menavia secunda*, that is, the second *Menavia*, where he termeth *Mona* or *Anglesey*, *Menavia prior*, that is, the former *Menavia*, and calleth them both, *Islands of the Britans*: in which writers notwithstanding it is read amisse *Mevania*: *Ninius* who also goeth abroad under the name of *Gildas*, nameth it *Eubonia* and *Manaw*; the Britans *Menow*, the inhabitants *Maning*, and we Englishmen, *The Isle of Man*: stretched out just in the mid levell (as saith *Girald Cambrensis*) betweene the Northren coasts of Ireland and Britaine; about which Isle, and namely to whether of the two countries it ought of right to appertaine, there arose no small doubt among those in ancient times. At length the controversie was taken up in this manner. For as much as this land fostered venomous wormes brought over hither for triall, adjudged it was

was by a common censure and doome to lye unto Britain. Howbeit the inhabitants A both in language and manners come nighest unto the Irish, yet so as they therewith favour somewhat of the qualities of the Norwegians.

It lieth out in length from North to South much about thirty Italian miles: but reacheth in bredth where it is widest, scarce above fifteen miles, and where it is narrowest eight. In *Bedes* dayes it contained in it three hundred families, like as *Anglesey* 96. but now it numbeth seventeen Parish Churches. Flaxe and hempe it beareth abundantly: it hath fresh pastures, and fields by good manuring plenteous of Barley, and Wheat, but of Oates especially: whence it is that the people there eat most of all Oaten bread. Store of cattell every where, and mighty flockes of B sheepe: but both their sheepe and other cattell also bee smaller of body there, like as in Ireland neighbouring upon it, than in England, and nothing so faire headed. And considering it hath few or no woods at all, they use for fewell a kind of clammy turfe, which as they are digging out of the earth, they light many times upon trees buried under the ground.

In the middest it riseth up with hills standing thick, the highest whereof is *Scaefull*, from whence a man may see on a cleere and faire day, *Scotland*, *England* and *Ireland*. Their chiefe towne they count *Rusfin*, situate on the South-side, which of a castle wherein lieth a Garison, is commonly called *Castle-Towne*: where, within a little C land Pope Gregory the fourteenth instituted an Episcopall See: the Bishop where of named *Sodorenfis* (of this very Iland as it is thought) had jurisdiction in times past over all the Ilands, *West Irish* Iles or *Hebrides*, but exerciseth it now onely upon that Iland, and is himselfe under the Archbishop of *Torke*. Howbeit, he hath no place nor voice in the assembly of the States of England in Court of Parliament. *Daglasfe* is the best peopled towne, and of greatest resort; because the haven is commodious, and hath a most easie entrance: unto which the Frenchmen and other forrainers use to repaire with their bay-salt, having trafficke with the Ilanders, and buying of them againe, leather, course wooll, and poudred beefe.

But on the South side of the Ile stand *Bala-Curi* (where the Bishop for the most part is resident) and the *Pyle*, a Block-house standing in a little Iland; where also there D are fouldiers in garison. Also before the very South point there lyeth a pretty Iland, called the *Calfe of Man*, wherein are exceeding great store of sea-foule called *Puffins*, and of those ducks and drakes which (breeding of rotten-wood, as they say) the Englishmen call *Bernacles*, the Scots *Clakes* and *Soland geese*.

That which here followeth I will set downe out of a letter, which that learned and reverend father in God John Meryk Bishop of this Ile wrote unto me. *This Iland*, for castell, for fish, yea and for corne, rather through mens industry than by any goodnesse of the ground, hath not only sufficient for it selfe, but also good store to send into other countries. Yet happier it was for the government thereof, as being defended from neighbour enemies by souldiers prest and ready, at the expences of the Earle of Darby, upon which E he employed the greatest part of his yeerely revenue in this Isle. All controversies are decided without writings or any charges, by certaine Judges, whom they chuse from among themselves, and call *Deemsters*. For the Magistrate taketh up a stone, and when he hath given it his mark, delivereth it unto the plainiffe, who by vertue thereof cueth his adversary and winnesse: if there fall out any doubifull case & of greater importance, it is referred to twelve men, whom they terme, *The Keyes of the Iland*. It hath certaine Coroners, and those they call *Annos*, who stand in stead of Sheriffes, and execute their office. The Ecclesiasticall Judge doth cite persons and determine causes, within eight dayes they stand to his award, or they are clapt up in prison.

They had, as I have heard say, as a peculiar language of their own, so also their peculiar lawes, which are signes of a peculiar seigniory. Their Ecclesiasticall lawes, next after this Canon Law, come neereft unto the Civill. Upon any Judge or Clerks of the Court for making of Proceffe or drawing Instruments, the people never bestow so much as one penny. As for that which English Writers report of mischiefs done by witchcraft and sorcery, it is meer false. They that are of the wealthier sort and hold faire possessions, and for their good

A good housekeeping, and honest carriage, are conformable to imitate the people of Lancaster. The women whithersoever they go out of their doores, gird themselves about (as mindfull of their mortality) with the winding sheet that they purpose to be buried in. Such of them as are by law condemned to die, are sewed within a sack, & slung from a rock into the sea. They are all of them in this Isle as far from the customary practice of theiving or begging from doore to doore, as may be: wonderfull religious, and most ready every one to entertain the forme of the English Church. The disorders, as well Civill as Ecclesiasticall, of their neighbour nations they desest: and whereas the whole Isle is divided into two parts, South and North; this in common speech resembleth the Scottish, the other the Irish.

B Haply it were worth my labour, if I should here insert a little History of this Iland, which truth of due demandeth at my hands, that so I may keepe alive and in remembrance still, the Acts heretofore achieved: which if they bee not buried, yet are waxen old, and have as it were one foot in the grave of oblivion. That the Britans held this Iland, as they did all Britaine, it is confessed by all. But when the Nations from the North, like violent tempests, overflowed these South parts, it became subiect to the Scots. For under the Emperours *Honorius* and *Arcadius* (as wee read in *Orosius*) it was inhabited as well as Ireland by the Scottish Nations: and *Ninnius* hath written that one *Biule* a Scot was Lord of it. But (as the same writer recordeth) the Scots were driven out of all the British countries and Ilands by *Cunedu*, Grandfather of *Maglocunus*, whom *Gildas* (for the foule work that he made in these Ilands) termed the *Dragon of the Iles*. After this, *Edwin* King of *Northumberland* brought this Iland, like as the foresaid *Anglesey*, under the subjection of the English, if we understand them both by the name of *Menavia*, as writers perswade us: at which time it was reckoned an Iland of the Britans. But when the North had sent abroad his brood the second time, I meane the Normans, Danes, and Norwegians: these Norwegians, who with their manifold robberies and roveries did most hurt from the Northren sea, tooke up their haunt into this Iland and the *Hebrides*, and therein created Lords and Petty Kings, whose briefe history I will here put downe word for word out of an old Manuscript, lest it should be utterly lost, which is intituled, *The Chronicle of Man*, seeming to have been written by the Monks of the Abbey of *Rusfin*, which was the principall place of religion in this Isle.

A CHRONICLE OF THE KINGS OF MAN.

E



Nno Domini M.LXV. Edward of blessed memory King of England departed this life: after whom succeeded in the kingdome *Harald* the son of *Godwin*; against whom *Harald Harfager* King of *Norway* came into the field, and fought a battell at *Stainford-bridge*; and the English obtaining the victory, put them all to flight: out of which chace *Godred* surnamed *Crovan*, the son of *Harald the black* of *Iseland*, came unto *Godred* the sonne of *Syrrie*, who then reigned

in *Man*, and by him was honourably received.

The same yeere, William the BASTARD conquered England: and *Godred* the F sonne of *Syrrie* died, after whom succeeded his sonne *Fingal*.

M.LXVI. *Godred Crovan* assembled a great fleet and came to *Man*, fought with the people of the land, but was overcome and put to rout. A second time hee rallied his forces and his fleet, failed into *Man*, joined battell with the Manksmen, was vanquished and driven out of the field. A third time he gathered a great multitude together, and by night arrived in the haven called *Ramsa*, and hid three hundred men within

" within a wood, which stood upon the hanging hollow brow of an hill called *Seacafel*. A
 " Now when the funne was risen, the Mankmen put their people in order of battell,
 " and with a violent charge encountred with *Godred*. And when the fight was hot,
 " those three hundred men starting out of the ambush behind their backs, began to
 " foile the Mankmen and put them to the worst, yea and forced them to flye. Now
 " when they saw themselves discomfited, and no place for them of refuge to escape,
 " (for the sea water comming in with the tide had filled the channell of *Ramsa* river,
 " and the enemies on the other side followed the chace hard) they that then remained
 " alive tooke up a pitifull cry, and besought *Godred* to save their lives. And he moved
 " with compassion, pitying their wofull calamity (as who for a certain time had bene
 " nursed and brought up among them) founded the retrain, and forbad his host to
 " pursue them any longer.

" *Godred* the morrow after proposed this choice unto his owne army, whether they
 " would rather divide *Man* among themselves, and therein dwell, or only take the sub-
 " stance and pillage of the countrey, and so returne unto their owne homes? But they
 " chose rather to waite and spoile the whole Iland, and with the goods thereof to enrich
 " themselves, and so returne home. But *Godred* himselfe, with those few Ilanders that
 " remained with him, inhabited the South part of the Iland, and granted to the re-
 " maines of the Mankmen the North part, with this covenant and condition, That
 " none of them should at any time venture and presume to challenge any part of the
 " land by right of inheritance. Whereby it came to passe that even unto this day the
 " whole Ile is the Kings domain alone, and all the revenues thereof belonging unto the
 " crown. *Godred* then reduced *Dublin*, and a great part of *Leymishir* under his subjection.
 " As for the Western Scottish, he so over-awed them, as that no man who built ship or
 " cog-boat durst drive into it above three nailes. Now he reigned 16. yeeres, and died
 " in the Iland that is called *Re*. He left behind him verily three sons, *Lagman*, *Harald*,
 " and *Olave*.

" *Lagman* the eldest taking upon him the kingdome, reigned seven yeeres. And *Har-*
 " *ald* his brother a great while rebelled against him; but at length being taken priso-
 " ner by *Lagman*, he had his members of generation cut off, and his eyes plucked out
 " of his head. After this *Lagman* repenting himselfe that he had pulled out his brothers
 " eyes, gave over the kingdome of his owne accord, and wearing the badge of the
 " Lords Croffe, took a journey to Jerusalem, in which he died.

" MLXXV. All the Nobles and Lords of the Islands, hearing of the death of *Lagman*,
 " dispatched their Embassadors to *Murecard O'Brien* King of Ireland, requesting that
 " hee would send some industrious and worthy man of the blood royall to be their
 " King, untill *Olave*, *Godreds* sonne, came to full age. The King very willingly yeelded
 " to their requests, and sent unto them one *Dopnald* the sonne of *Tade*, warning and
 " charging him to govern the kingdome (which by right belonged unto another) with
 " all gentleness and modesty. But he after he was come to the Crowne, not weighing
 " of the charge that his Lord and M. gave him, abused his place, and lorded with great
 " tyranny, and so committing many outrages and villanies, reigned cruelly three yeeres.
 " Then all the Princes of the Islands agreed together in one conspiracy, rose up against
 " him, and expelled him out of their coasts. Who fled into Ireland, and never looked
 " them in the face after.

" MLXXVII. One *Ingemund* was sent from the King of Norway, to take upon him the
 " dominion of the Islands: and when he was come to the Isle *Leodun*, he sent messengers
 " to all the Nobles of the Islands, with a commandement that they should meet toge-
 " ther and ordain him their King: Mean while, himselfe with his companions did no-
 " thing else but rob, spoile, make good cheere and banquet, dishonour and abuse marri-
 " ed wives, deflowre young maidens, yea and give himselfe over to filthy pleasures and
 " fleshly lusts. But when tidings hereof came to the Nobles of the Islands, now assem-
 " bled to make him King, they were set on fire with furious wrath, and sped themselves
 " in all hast toward him: and surprising him in the night, burnt the house wherein hee
 " was, and with fire and sword made a quick dispatch of him and his company.

MXXVIII.

" ANOTHER. The Abbey of S. Mary at *Cisterium* or *Cisteaux* was founded. Anti-
 " och was won by the Christians: and a Comet or blazing star appeared. The same
 " yeeere there was a field fought between those of the Isle of *Man*, and *Sienswa*: and the
 " Northern men got the victorie. In which battell were slaine Earle *Oliver* and *Adic-*
 " *Mann*, Generals of both the sides. In the same yeeere *Magnus* King of Norway, the
 " son of *Olave*, (son of *Harald Harfager*), desirous to try whether the corps of S. *Olave*
 " King and Martyr remained incorrupt, commanded that his tombe should be ope-
 " ned: and notwithstanding the Bishop and Clergy withstood it, the King himselfe
 " came boldly thither; and by force that he brought with him caused the coffin to be
 " opened. Now when he had both seene and handled the body incorrupt and nothing
 " perished, suddenly there was a great feare fell upon him; and in all haste he departed
 " thence. The next night following *Olave* King and Martyr appeared unto him in a
 " dreame, saying thus: Chuse thou one of these two things, either to lose thy life and
 " kingdome both within thirty daies; or to depart from Norway and never see it againe.
 " When the King awakened, he called unto him his Princes and Elders; and declared
 " unto them his dreame and vision: and they being fore-affraid gave him this counsell,
 " to depart with all speed out of Norway. He without delay caused a fleet to be rigged
 " and put in readinesse, of an hundred and threescore sailes, and cutteth over to the Isles
 " of *Orkney*, which he forthwith subdued; semaking way by dint of sword thoroughout
 " all the Isles, and bringing them to his subjection; went forward still as far as to *Man*,
 " and when he was arrived and landed he came unto St. *Patrickes* Isle, to see the place
 " wherein the field had bene fought a little before between the Mankmen; because
 " as yet many of their bodies that were slaine lay there buried. Now when he saw
 " this most goodly and beautifull Iland, he pleased his eye; and he chose it to see him-
 " selfe therein, built fortresses in it, which unto this day carry his name: And those of
 " Galway he hold in so great awe, that he compelled them to cut downe wood for tim-
 " ber, and to bring it unto the shore, that therewith he might build his Forts and Bul-
 " warks. To *Anglesey*, then called *Manu* (an Iland in Wales) hee sailed, and found
 " in it two Earles by the name of *Hughes*: the one he slew, the other he put to flight,
 " and subdued the Iland. But the Welshmen presented him with many gifts, and so he
 " bad them farewell, and returned unto *Man*. Unto *Murchad* King of Ireland he sent his
 " shoes, and commanded him to carry them on his shoulders through the middlest of
 " his house on Christmas day, that he might thereby understand he was subject unto
 " King *Magnus*. Which the Irishmen as soone as they heard of it took grievously, and
 " disdained exceeding much. But the King following a wiser course, I had rather, saith
 " he, not only carry his shoes, but also eat them, than King *Magnus* should destroy
 " one Province in Ireland. Hee fulfilled therefore his commandement, and honoura-
 " bly entertained his messengers. Many presents also hee sent over by them unto King
 " *Magnus*, and entered into league with him. These messengers being returned unto
 " E their Lord, related unto him many things touching the situation of Ireland, the plea-
 " santnesse thereof, the abundance of corne and wholsomnesse of aire. When *Magnus*
 " heard this, straightwaies he thought of nothing else but to conquer Ireland, and
 " bring it wholly under his dominion. He commanded therefore his men to prepare a
 " navie; and himselfe in person setting forward with sixteene ships, desirous to take a
 " view of the countrey, as he unwarily departed aside from his shipping, was suddenly
 " compassed about by the Irish, and so lost his life, together with all those in manner
 " that were with him. And he was buried hard by S. *Patrickes* Church in Down. Hee
 " reigned sixe yeeres: after whose death the Princes of the Islands sent for *Olave* the son
 " of *Godred* surnamed *Crovan*, who lived in the Court of Henry King of England, son
 " F of King William.

" ANOTHER. *Olave*, the sonne of *Godred Crovan* aforesaid, beganne his reign, and
 " reigned forty yeeres: a peaceable Prince, having all the Kings of Ireland and Scotland
 " to be his confederates. Hee tooke to wife *Africa* the daughter of *Fergus* of *Gall-*
 " *way*: of whom he begat *Godred*. By his concubines he had *Regnald*, *Lagman* and
 " *Harald*, beside many daughters, whereof one was wedded to Summerled Prince
 " of

Sfff

of

of *Herergaidel*, who was the cause of the ruine of the whole Kings of the Ilands. On A
her he begat foure sonnes, *Dulgall*, *Raignald*, *Engu*, and *Olave*.

MCCXXXIII. There hapned so great an Eclipse of the Sun, upon the fourth Nones of
August, that the day was turned into night.

MCCXXXIV. *Olave* gave unto *Tuo* Abbat of *Furnes* a plot of his land in Man, to build
an Abbey, in a place called *Ruffin*: and both enriched with revenues, and endowed
with privileged the estate of the Church in the Ilands.

MCCXLIII. *Godred*, *Olaves* son, saileth over sea to the King of Norway, whose name
was *Hinge*, and did his homage unto him, and staid there being honourably enter-
tained of him. The same yeere three sonnes of *Harald*, *Olaves* brother (who had been B
brought up in *Dublin*) raising a great number of men together, and all those who
were fled from the King, came to Man, demanding of the same King to have the one
moity of the whole kingdome of the Ilands to bee given unto them. But the King,
when he had heard their demand, being willing to pacifie them, answered, That hee
would take counsell of the matter. Now when they had appointed the time and
place where the counsell should bee held, in the meane while those most leud and
wicked villaines complotted among themselves the Kings death. At the day appoint-
ed both parts met at the haven which is called *Ramsa*, and sat in order by rowes, the
King with his counsell on the one side, and they together with their company on the
other, and *Reginald* (who was to dispatch him) was in the midst between, and stood C
talking apart with one of the Peeres of the land. But when the King had called him
and he was come unto him, he turned toward the King as though hee would salute
him, and therewith lifting up a glittering axe a great height, at one blow cut off the
Kings head. And forthwith as soone as they had committed such a bloody murder,
they divided the land among themselves: and after some few daies, having garhe-
red a navie together, sailed over to Galway, desirous to bring it also under their sub-
jection: But those of Galway sticking close and round together, gave a faire onset,
and joined battell with them. They by and by turning their backs fled in great dis-
order to Man: And as for all the Galwaymen that dwelt therein, some of them they
slew, others they expelled.

MCCXLIII. *Godred*, *Olaves* son, returning out of Norway was created King of Man, D
and to avenge his fathers death, he caused two of *Haralds* sons to have their cies pul-
led out, and slew the third.

MCCXLIV. *Godred* begun his reigne, and reigned thirty yeeres. In the third yeere
of his reigne, the people of *Dublin* sent for him and created him King of *Dublin*, a-
gainst whom *Mure-card* King of Ireland raised war, and encamping himselfe before
the Citie which is called *Coridelis*, sent his halfe brother (by the mothers side) *Osibe-
ley*, with three thousand men of armes to *Dublin*, who was by *Godred* and the *Dublini-
ans* slaine, and all the rest put to flight. These exploits atchieved, *Godred* returned to
Man, began to use tyranny, and turned Noblemen out of their inheritances, whereof E
one called *Thorfin*, *Oiers* Son, mightier than the rest, came to *Sumerled* and made
Dubgall, *Sumerleds* son, King of the Ilands, subduing unto him many Ilands. When
Godred had intelligence of these things by one Paul, he prepared a navie, and setteth
forward to meet with *Sumerled*, who was coming with a fleet of 80. saile. And in
the yeere 1156. there was a battell fought at sea on Twelke day at night, and after
many a man slaine on both sides, the next day after they grew to a pacification, and
divided among themselves the kingdome of the Ilands: and so it became two seve-
rall kingdomes from that very day unto this present time. And this was the cause of
the overthrow of the kingdome of the Isles, since time that *Sumerleds* son seized
upon it.

MCLVIII. *Sumerled* came to Man with a fleet of 53. saile, put *Godred* to flight, & wa-
sted the Iland. *Godred* then crossed over to Norway, to seek for aid against *Sumerled*.

MCLXIV. *Sumerled* gathered together a fleet of 1060. ships, and arrived at *Rhinfrin*,
covering to subdue all Scotland. But by the just judgement of God hee was vanqui-
shed by a few, together with his sonne and an infinite number of people there slain.

The

A The same yeere there was a field fought at *Ramsa* betweene *Reginald* brother of
Godred, and them of Man: and by the deceitfull practice of a certaine Earle, those of
Man were put to flight.

Then *Reginald* began to reigne, and on the fourth day after came *Godred* upon
him out of Norway with a great multitude of armed men, and tooke his brother *Re-
ginald*, whom he bereft both of his eyes, and of his genitall members. The same yeere
died *Malcolm* King of Scotland, and his brother William succeeded him in the king-
dome.

MCLXVI. Two Comets or blazing stars appeared before Sun-rising in the Mo-
neth of August, the one in the South, the other in the North.

MCLXXI. Richard Earle of *Penbrock* sailed over into Ireland, and subdued *Develin*
with a great part of Ireland.

MCLXXVI. John *Curcy* conquered *Ulster*, and *Vivian* Legate of the Apostolicke
Sea came into Man, and caused King *Godred* to bee lawfully espoused unto his wife
Phingola, daughter of *Mac-Lotlen*, son to *Murkariac* King of Ireland, to wit, the mo-
ther of *Olave* then three yeeres old. *Sylvan* the Abbat married them: unto whom the
very same day *Godred* gave a piece of land at *Miriscege*, where he built a Monastery:
but at length the ground was together with the Monkes granted to the Abbey of
Ruffin.

C *Reginald* sonne to *Enc-Marcat*, one of the royall blood, comming into Man with a
great band of men in the Kings absence, at the first conflict put to flight certain war-
ders that kept the shore, and killed about 30. men. Afterwards the Mankmen gather-
ing their forces together, the same day slew him and almost all his company.

MCLXXXIII. O-*Fogolt* was Sheriffe of Man.

MCLXXXV. There fell out to be an Eclipse of the Sun on Saint Philip and Jacobs
day.

MCLXXXVII. On the fourth Ides of November died *Godred* King of the Ilands:
and the next Summer was his body translated to the Isle of *Hy*. He left behind him
three sonnes, *Reginald*, *Olave*, and *Tuar*. In his life he ordained his sonne *Olave* to be
D his heire, because hee onely was borne in lawfull wedlock. But the people of Man,
seeing that *Olave* was now scarce ten yeeres old, sent for *Reginald* out of the Isles, and
set him up for their King.

MCLXXXVIII. *Reginald* *Godreds* son began to raigne over the Ilands: and *Mur-
chard*, a man of great power throughout all the kingdome of the Isles, was slaine.

MCCXII. A battell was fought betweene *Reginald* and *Engu* the sonnes of *Su-
merled*, but *Engu* won the victory. The same yeere was the Abbey of *Ruffin* tran-
slated to *Duffglas*: but after foure yeeres the Monks returned to *Ruffin*.

MCCIII. Michael Bishop of the Isles died at *Fontans*, after whom succeeded *Ni-
colas*.

E MCCIV. Hugh *Lacy* came with an army into *Ulster*, and gave John *Curcy* battell,
tooke him prisoner, and conquered *Ulster*. Afterward hee set John at liberty, who
came to King *Reginald*: and he honourably entertained him, because he was his brother
in law: for John *Curcy* had taken to wife *Africa* *Godreds* daughter, who found-
ed the Abbey of *S. Mary de Jugo Domini*, and was there buried.

MCCV. John *Curcy* and *Reginald* King of the Isles having entred into *Ulster* with one
hundred ships, in the haven which is called *Stranford*, slackly besieged the fortresse
of *Rath*: but Walter *Lacy* comming upon them with an army, purthem to flight: af-
ter this *Curcy* never recovered his land.

MCCX. *Engu*, *Sumerleds* son, was with three of his sonnes slaine.

F John King of England at the same time brought a navie of 500. saile to Ireland, &
subdued it: who sending a certaine Earle named *Fulk* unto Man, in one fortnight and
a day wholly in a manner wasted it: and taking hostages, returned thence into their
country. King *Reginald* and his Nobles were not in Man.

MCCXVII. Nicolas Bishop of the Isles departed this life and was buried in *Ulster*
within the house of *Benchor*, after whom succeeded *Reginald*.

SSff 2

Here

*Here I thinke good to write somewhat againe of Olave
and Reginald, Brethren.*

Reginald gave unto his brother Olave the Ile called *Lodhus*, which is said to be larger than the rest of the Ilands, but slenderly inhabited, because it stands much upon mountaines, is stony besides, and almost all unfit for tillage. The inhabitants thereof live for the most part by hunting and fishing. Olave therefore went to possesse himselfe of this Iland, and dwelt in it, leading a poore life. And when he saw it would not suffice to maintaine himselfe and his army, he came boldly unto his brother Reginald, who then made his abode in the Ilands, and spake unto him in this maner. Brother, faith hee, my Sovereigne Lord the King, thou knowest that the kingdome of the Ilands belonged unto me by inheritance; but since the Lord hath elected thee to sway the Scepter thereof, I envie thee not, nor take it grievously that thou art exalted to that royall dignity. Now thus much I heartily beseech thee, that thou wouldest provide me some portion of land in the Iles, wherein I may live honestly according to mine estate: for the Iland *Lodhus* which thou gavest unto me is not sufficient to sustaine me. Reginald his brother after he had given him the hearing, said he would take counsell upon the point: and the morrow after, when Olave was sent for, and came in place to parley of the matter, Reginald commandeth that hee should be apprehended and brought unto William King of Scotland, that with him he might be kept in prison. And Olave lay prisoner in irons and chaines almost seven yeeres. In the seventh yeere died William King of Scotland, after whom succeeded his sonne Alexander. Now before his death he gave commandement that all prisoners should be set free. Olave therefore being enlarged and at liberty came to Man: and soone after, accompanied with no small traine of Noblemen, he went to S. James: and after he was thus returned Reginald his brother caused him to marry a Noble mans daughter of *Kentyre*, even his owne wives whole sister, named *Lavon*, and gave him *Lodhus* in possession to enjoy. Some few daies after Reginald Bishop of the Ilands having called a Synod, canonically divorced Olave the sonne of Godred, and *Lavon* his wife, as being the cousin german of his former wife. After this Olave wedded *Scristine* daughter of *Ferhar* Earle of *Rosse*. For this cause Reginalds wife Queene of the Ilands was wroth, and directed her letters in the name of Reginald the King, into the Ile *Sky*, unto Godred her sonne that he should kill Olave. As Godred was devising meanes to worke this feat, and now entering into *Lodhus*, Olave fled in a little cog-boat unto his father in law, the Earle of *Rosse* aforesaid. Then Godred wasterh and spoileth *Lodhus*. At the same time *Pol* the son of Boke Sheriffe of *Sky*, a man of great authority in all the Ilands, because he would not give his consent unto Godred, fled, and together with Olave lived in the Earle of *Rosse* house: and entering into a league with Olave they came both in one ship to *Sky*. At length having sent forth their spies and discoverers, they learned that Godred lay in a certain Iland called *St. Columbs* Ile, having very few men with him, misdoubting nothing. Gathering therefore about them all their friends and acquaintance, with such voluntaries as were ready to joine with them, at midnight with five shippes which they drew from the next sea-shore, distant from the Iland aforesaid some two furlongs, they beset the Isle round about. Godred then, and they that were with him, rising by the dawning of the day, and seeing themselves environed on every side with enemies, were astonied: but putting themselves in warlike armes, assailed right manfully to make resistance, but all in vaine. For about nine a clocke of the day Olave and *Pol* the foresaid Sheriffe set foot in the Iland, with their whole army, & having slain all those whom they found without the enclosure of the Church, they tooke Godred, put out his eyes, and gelded him. Howbeit to this deed Olave did not yeeld his consent, neither could he withstand it, for *Boke* sonne, the Sheriffe aforesaid. For this was done in the yeere 1223.

The

A The Summer next following Olave, after he had taken hostages of all the Lords and potentates of the Isles, came with a fleet of 32. saile toward Man, and arrived at *Regnolswath*. At this very time Reginald and Olave divided the kingdome of the Ilands between themselves, and Man was given to Reginald over and beside his owne portion, together with the title of King.

Olave the second time, having furnished himselfe with victuals from the people of Man, returned with his company to his portion of the Iland. The yeere following, Reginald taking with him *Alane* Lord of *Galway*, went with his souldiers of Man to the Iland parts, that hee might disseize his brother Olave of that portion of land which hee had given unto him, and bring it under his owne dominion. But because the Mankmen were not willing to fight against Olave and the Ilanders, for the love they had to them, Reginald and *Alan* Lord of *Galway* returned home without achieving their purpose. After a little while, Reginald under pretence of going to the Court of his Sovereigne the Lord King of England, tooke up of the people of Man an hundred Markes, but went in very deed to the Court of *Alan* Lord of *Galway*. At the same time he affianced his daughter unto the son of *Alan* in marriage. Which the Mankmen hearing, tooke such snuffe and indignation thereat, that they sent for Olave, and made him their King.

C *mcxxxvi.* Olave recovered his inheritance, to wit, the kingdome of Man and of the Ilands, which his brother Reginald had governed 38. yeeres, and reigned quietly two yeeres.

mcxxxviii. Olave accompanied with all the Nobles of Man, and a band of the strongest men of the country, failed over into the Ilands. A little after *Alan* Lord of *Galway*, and *Thomas* Earle of *Athol*, and King Reginald, came unto Man with a puissant army: all the South part of Man they wasted, spoiled the Churches, and slew all the men they could lay hold of, so that the South part of Man was laid in manner all desolate. After this returned *Alan* with his army into his owne country, and left his bailiffes in Man, to gather up for him the tributes of the country. But King Olave came upon them at unwares, put them to flight and recovered his owne kingdome.

D Then the people of Man, which before time had been disperfed every way, began to gather themselves together, and to dwell with confidence and security.

In the same yeere came King Reginald out of *Galway* unlooked for, at the dead time of night in winter, with five ships, and burnt all the shipping of his brother Olave, and of the Lords of Man at *Saint Patrickes* Iland: and suing to his brother for peace, stayed forty daies at the haven of *Ragnolswath*. Meane while he won and drew unto him all the Ilanders in the South part of Man, who sware they would venture their lives in his quarrell, untill hee were invested in the one halfe of the kingdome. On the contrarie part, Olave had the Northren men of the Isle to side with him: and upon the 14. day of February, at a place called *Tingualla*, there was a battell stricke

E betweene the two brethren, wherein Olave had the victorie: and King Reginald was by some killed there without his brothers knowledge. And certaine rovers comming to the South part of Man wasted and harried it. The Monks of *Ruslin* translated the body of King Reginald unto the Abbey of *S. Mary de Fournes*, and there entered it was in a place which himselfe had chosen for that purpose. After this went Olave to the King of Norway; but before that hee was come thither, *Haco* King of Norway ordained a certaine Noble man named *Hubac*, the sonne of *Ommand* for to bee King of the Sodorian Ilands, and called his name *Haco*. Now the same *Haco*, together with Olave, and Godred Don Reginalds son, and many Norwegians came unto the Ilands: and at the winning of a fort in the Iland Both, *Haco* chanced to be smit with a stone, whereof he died, and lieth buried in *Iona*.

F *mcxxx.* Olave came with Godred Don and the Norwegians to Man: and they divided the kingdome among themselves: Olave held Man, and Godred being gone unto the Ilands, was slaine in the Isle *Lodhus*. So obtained Olave the kingdome of the Isles.

mcxxxvii. On the twelfth Calends of June died Olave the sonne of Godred King

Stff 3

- King of Man, in S. Patricks Iland, and was buried in the Abbey of *Rusfin*. He reigned A eleven yeeres, two by his brothers life, and nine after his death.
- Harold his sonne succeeded him being 14. yeeres of age, and reigned 12. yeeres. In the first yeere of his reigne he made a journey to the Ilands, and appointed Loglen his cousin, Custos of Man. In the Autumne following Harald sent three sonnes of *Nell*, namely, Dufgald, Thorquill Mormore, and his friend *Joseph* to Man, for to consult about affaires. On the 25. day therefore they meet at *Tingull*: and by occasion of a certaine envious quarrell that arose between the sonnes of *Nell* and Loglen, there was a fore fight on both sides, wherein were slaine Dufgald, Mormore, and the fore-said Joseph. In the spring ensuing King Harald came to the Ile of Man, and Loglen, B as he fled toward Wales, perished by Shipwracke, with Godred Olaves sonne his foster child and pupill, with 40. others.
- MCCXXXVIII. Gospatricke and Gillefcrist the sonne of *Mac-Keribac* came from the King of Norway into Man, who by force kept Harald out of Man, and tooke tributes to the Kings behoofe of Norway, because he refused to come unto the King of Norwaies Court.
- MCCXL. Gospatric died, and is buried in the Abbey of *Rusfin*.
- MCCXXXIX. Harald went unto the King of Norway, who after two yeeres confirmed unto him, his heires and successeurs under his seale, all the Ilands which his predecessors had possessed.
- MCCXLII. Harald returned out of Norway to Man, and being by the inhabitants C honourably received, had peace with the Kings of England and of Scotland. Harald, like as his father before him, was by the King of England dubbed Knight, and after he had been rewarded with many gifts returned home. The same yeere he was sent for by the King of Norway, and married his daughter.
- And in the yeere 1249. as he returned homeward with his wife, and Laurence King elect of Man, and many other Nobles and Gentlemen, he was drowned in a tempest neere unto the coasts of Radland.
- MCCXLIX. Reginald the sonne of Olave and brother to Harald, began his reigne the day before the Nones of May, and on the thirtieth day thereof was slaine by one D Yvar a Knight and his company, in a meadow neere unto the Holy Trinity Church, on the South side, and lieth buried in the Church of Saint Mary of *Rusfin*.
- At that time Alexander King of Scots rigged and brought together many ships, meaning to subdue the Iland: and in the Ile Kerwaray he died of an ague.
- Harald the sonne of Godred Don usurped the name of King in the Ilands: all the Nobles of Harald King Olaves sonne hee banished, and placed in their stead all the Princes and Peeres that were fled from the said Harald.
- MCCCL. Harald the sonne of Godred Don, being by missives sent for, went unto the King of Norway, who kept him in prison, because he had unjustly intruded himselfe into the kingdome.
- E The same yeere there arrived at *Roghalwath* Magnus the son of Olave, and John the sonne of Dugald, who named himselfe King: but the people of Man taking it to the heart that Magnus was not nominated, would not suffer them to land there: many of them therefore were cast away and perished by shipwracke.
- MCCCLII. Magnus the sonne of Olave came to Man, and was made King: The next yeere he went to the King of Norway, and stayed there a yeere.
- MCCCLIV. Haco King of Norway ordained Magnus, Olaves sonne, King of the Isles, and confirmed the same unto him and his heires, and by name unto his brother Harald.
- MCCCLVI. Magnus King of Man went into England, and was knighted by the King F of England.
- MCCCLVII. The church of S. Maries of *Rusfin* was dedicated by Richard of Sodore.
- MCCCLX. Haco King of Norway came unto the parts of Scotland, and without any exploit done turned to the Orkneys: where at Kirwas he ended his daies, and lyeth entered at *Bergh*.

MCCCLXV.

- A MCCCLXV. Magnus, Olaves sonne King of Man and of the Ilands, departed this life at the Castle of *Rusfin*, and was buried in the Church of S. Mary de *Rusfin*.
- MCCCLXVI. The kingdome of the Ilands was translated, by reason of Alexander King of Scots.

*That which followeth was written in another hand,
and of a later charaſter.*

- MCCCLXX. The seventh day of October, a navy set out by Alexander King of Scots, arrived at Roghalwath: and the next morrow before sun rising a battaile was fought between the people of Man and the Scots, in which were slain of the Manckmen 537. whereupon a certaine versifier played thus upon the number.

L. decies, X. ter, & penia duo cecidere,
Mannica gens de te, damna futura cave.
L. Ten times told, X. thrice, with five beside and twaine,
Ware future harmes, I reed, of thy folke Man were slaine.

- MCCCLXIII. Robert King of Scots besieged the Castle of *Rusfin*, which Dingawyl C Dowyll held against him: but in the end the King won the castle.
- MCCCLXVI. On the Ascension day, Richard le Mandevice and his brethren with other Potentates of Ireland, arrived at Ramaldwath, requesting to be furnished with victuals and silver, for that they had been robbed by the enemies warring upon them continually. Now when the commonalty of the country had made answer, that they would not give them any: they advanced forward against those of Man with two troops or squadrons, untill they were come as far as to the side of Warthfell hill, in a field wherein John Mandevice remained, and therein a fought: himselfe the Irish vanquished the Manckmen, spoiled the Iland, and rifled the Abbey of *Rusfin*: and after they had continued in the Iland one whole moneth, they returned home with their ships fraught with pillage.

- D Thus endeth the Chronicle of the K.K. of Man.

*The Proceſſe or course of the Historie following, I will now
continue ſummarily out of other Writers.*

- E W Hen Alexander the third King of Scots had gotten into his hands the Western Ilands, partly by way of conquest, and in part for ready money paid unto the King of Norway, hee attempted the Ile of Man also, as one of that number, and through the valiant prowesse of Alexander Stewart brought it under his dominion: yea and placed there a petty King or Prince, with this condition, that hee should be ready alwaies at his command; to serve with ten ships in his warres at sea. Howbeit Mary, the daughter of Reginald King of Man (who was become the Liege-man of John King of England) entred her suit for the Iland before the King of England: but answer was made unto her; that shee should demand it of the King of Scots, for that he then held it in possession. And yet her grand-child John Waldeboef (for the said Mary married into the house of Waldeboef) sued for his ancient right in Parliament, holden in the 33. yeere of King Edward the first, before the K. of England, as the superiour Lord of the kingdome of Scotland. But none other answer could he have than this (if I may speake the words out of the very authentical Records) *Sequatur coram Justitiariis de Banco Regis, &c.* that is, *Let him sue before the Justices of the K. Bench, let him be heard, and let justice be done.* But that which he could not obtaine,

tain by right, Sir William Montacute, his kinsman (for come he was of the race of A the Kings of Man) wonne by his sword. For with a band of English mustered up in hast, he drave all the Scots out of the Iland. But being by this warre plunged deeply in debt, and not having wherewith to make some paiement thereof, he mortgaged it for seven yeeres to *Antonie Bee* Bishop of Durham, and Patriarch of Jerusalem, and made over the profits and revenues thereof unto him: yea and soone after the King granted it unto the said *Antonie* for tearme of life. Afterwards, King Edward the second passed a grant thereof unto his minion *Piers Gaveston*, what time as he created him Earle of Cornwall: and when the said *Piers* was rid out of the way, hee gave it unto *Henry Beaumont*, with all the domaine and regall jurisdiction thereto belonging. But shortly after the Scots under *Robert Bru* recovered it; and *Robert Randolph* that right warlike Scot, like as a long time after *Alexander Duke of Albany*, used to stile themselves *Lords of Man*, and bare the same coat of Armes, as did the later Kings of Man; namely, three armed legges of a man linked together, and bending in the hannes: such for all the world as the Isle *Sicilia* gave, the three legges naked, in like forme in her coines of money in old time, to signifie three Promontories. Notwithstanding, before time the Kings of Man used for their armes, as we have seene in their Seales, a ship with the saile hoisted up, with this title in the circumference, *Rex Mannie & insularum*, that is, *King of Man and of the Islands*. Afterward, about the yeere 1340. *William Montacute* the younger, Earle of Salisbury wrested it by strong hand C into the hands of Henry the fourth King of England: who granted this Iland unto *Henry Percy* Earle of Northumberland (as a conqueror triumphing over *William Scrope*, whom he as yet a private person had intercepted and beheaded, when he aspired to the crowne) with this condition: that himselfe and his heires should when the Kings of England were enstalled and crowned, carry before them that sword, which the said Henry wore by his side, what time he came backe againe out of exile into England, commonly called *Lancaster sword*. But I think it good to set this down D out of the Record, in the very words of the K. himselfe: *De nostra gratia speciali dedimus*, that is: Of our speciall grace we have given and granted unto *Henry Earle of Northumberland*, the Isle, Castele, Pile, and Seigniorie of Man, and all the Ilands and Lordships to the said Isle belonging, which were *Sir William le Scropes*, Knights, now deceased, (whom in his life time we conquered, and have decreed him so to be conquered) and which by reason of our conquest of him we tooke into our hand as conquered: which conquest verily and decree in our present Parliament, with the assent of the Lords Temporal in the same Parliament being, as touching the person of the foresaid *William*, and all the lands, tenements, goods, and chattells of his, as well within our kingdome as without, at the petition of the Communalty of our kingdome, stand confirmed, &c. To have and to hold unto E the said Earle, and his heires, &c. by service of carrying at the daies of our coronation, and of our heires, at the left shoulder, and the left shoulder of our heires, either by himselfe or a sufficient and honourable Deputy of his, that sword naked which we ware, and were girt with, when we arrived in the parts of Holderness, called *Lancaster sword*, &c.

But in the fifth yeere following the said *Henry Percy* entred into open rebellion, and the King sent *Sir John Stanley* and *William Stanley* to seize the Isle and castle of Man, the inheritance whereof he granted afterward to *Sir John Stanley* and his heires by letters Patents, with the patronage of the Bishopricke, &c. And so his heires and successours, who were honoured with the title of Earles of Derby, were commonly called *Kings of Man*.

From Man, untill we come to the *Mull of Gallaway*, we meet with none but very small Ilands. But after we be once past it, in the salt water of *GLOTTA*, or *Dunbrison Frith* appeareth the Iland *GLOTTA*, whereof *Antoninus* maketh mention, which the Scots now call *Arran*, whereof the Earles of *Arran* in Scotland were stiled: and neighbouring unto it is that which was in times past named *Rathesia*, now *Buibe* of

A of a sacred Cell which *Brendan* erected (for so they terme a little Cell in Scottish) thence come we to *Hellan*, in times past called *Hellan Leneaw*, that is, as *John Fordon* interpreteth it, *The Isle of Saints*, and to *Hellan Tinoc*, that is, *The Isle of Swine*: and these Ilands are seene in the same Frith or Forth. But of these I have spoken before.

Without this Bay or Frith lye a number of Ilands very thicke together, which the Scots themselves that inhabite them call *Inch-Gall*, that is haply, *The Isles of the Galicians*: the English and the rest of the Scots, *The Western Isles*: the writers of the former age *HEBRIDES*; but the ancient *Ethnickes* *Bettorice*, and *Giraldus* other where *Inchades* and *Leucades*: *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Ptolomee* name them *EBUDAS*, B *HEBUDAS*, and *EBUDAS*, which names have some consonant affinity with *Epidium* the promontory of Britain opposite unto them, and an Isle among these so named. The reason of the name I cannot picke out, unlesse I should thinke they were so called, because there groweth here no corne or graine.

For *Solinus* writeth, that the inhabitants of these Ilands are not acquainted with corne, and live onely upon fish and milke: and *Ebeid* in British foundeth as much as without corne. The inhabitants, as saith the same *Solinus*, have no skill or knowledge of corne, they live of fish and milke onely. They all have but one King: For how many soever they be, they are severed one from another by a narrow enterflow of the Sea betweene.

Scottish orwe-
sterne Isles.

C The King hath nothing that hee may say is his owne, all things are common to them all: and held hee is to equity by certaine lawes: and left hee should for covetousnesse swarve aside from the truth, by his poore estate he leareth justice, as who hath no house, furniture, and provision of his owne, but all his maintenance is from the common coffe.

No woman is he allowed to have in propriety; but by turnes hee taketh for to use whomsoever hee fancieth, whereby hee neither can have his wish, nor hope of children.

Of these Islands, the common people affirmeth there bee 44. whereas in truth there are many more. *Pliny* wrote that there were 30. of them. But *Ptolomee* D reckoneth up but five. The first is *RICINA*, *Pliny* calleth it *RICNEA*, *Antoninus* *RIDUNA*, now termed *Racine*: and I think it should be read in *Antonine Riclina*: for (c) easily maketh a (d) by joining a (c) at the backe unto it. A small Iland this is, butting full upon Ireland, knowne unto the ancient writers, for that it lieth in the very narrow sea betweene Ireland and Scotland: famous at this day for no cause else, but for the overthrow and slaughter of the Scottish Irish, who otherwhiles possessed themselves of it, and were thrust out by the English, under the conduct of *Sir William Norris* in the yeere 1575. The next is *EPIDIUM*, which by the name I would ghesse, with that excellent Geographer *Gerard Mercator*, lay neere unto the promontorie of the *Epidis*, and to the shore. And seeing there standeth apparently in E the same situation an Iland called *Ila*, of good largenesse, and of a fruitfull, plaine, and champion soile, I dare avouch that this was *Epidium*, or the Isle of the *Epidis*; for in some places it is read *Emdlov*. This carrieth in length 24. miles, and is 16. miles broad, so plentifull of cattell, wheat, and heards of red deere, that it was the second feat next unto Man, for the King of the Islands, as it is at this day of the *Mac-Connells*, who herein have their Castle at *Dunyweg*. Betwixt *Ila* and Scotland lieth *Tona*, which *Bede* tearmeth *Hy* and *Hu*, given by the *Picts* unto the Scottish Monkes, for propagating and preaching of the Gospell among them: where stood a Monasterie, famous by reason of the Scottish Kings tombes and the frequent conversing of holy men therein: among whom *Columba*, the Apostle of the *Picts*, was the principall: of F whose Cell the Iland also is called *Columb-Kill*, like as the man also himselfe, by a compound name was termed *Columbkill*, as *Bede* witnesseth. And here at length, as some will have it, a Bishops seat was ordained in *Sodore*, a little towne, whence all the Isles were also called *Sodorensis*, for that it is reckoned to be in his Diocesse. Then have you *MALBO*, that *Ptolomee* writeth of, now called *Mula*, whereof *Plinie* seemeth to make mention, when hee saith, *Mella* is reported to bee 25. miles larger than

than the rest. For so we read in the most ancient edition of *Plinie*, printed at Venice, A whereas in the Vulgar copies, in steed of *Reliquarum Mella*, is read *Reliquarum nall*, that is, *None of the rest*, &c. The Eastern H *B A U D A*, now called *Ske*, from hence lieth out in a great length over against the shore or coast of Scotland: the Western H *B A U D A* bending more Westward, is now called *Lewis* (the Lord whereof is *Mac-Cloyd*) and in the ancient history of Man is named *Lodhu*, full of steep and craggie little hills, stony and very slenderly inhabited: howbeit the largest of them all; from which *Eust* is dis-joined with a very narrow wash. All the rest, save onely *Hyriha*, are of small account, being either very stony, or else inaccessible by reason of craggie clifffes, & scarce clad with any green-ford. Yet the Scots purchased all these with their ready money of the Norwegians (as I have said before) as if they had bene the very buttresses or pillars of the kingdome, although they reape very small commodity thereby: considering that the inhabitants, the ancient true Scots or Irish, being men of stout stomackes and desperate boldnesse, will by no meanes be subject to the severity of lawes, or awed by justice. As touching their manners, apparell, and language they differ nothing at all from the wild Irishry, of whom we have spoken before: so that wee may easily know thereby that they be one and the selfe same nation originally. They that beare the sway and doe rule in these Ilands are the families of *Mac-Conel*, *Mac-Alen*, whom others terme *Mac-len*, *Mac-Cloyd* of *Lewis*, and *Mac-Cloyd* of *Harich*. But the mightiest house of them all is that of the *Mac-Conels*, who glory in their pedigree, as derived from *Donald*, who in the reigne of *James* the third stiled himselfe *King of the Ilands*, and with all kinde of cruelty in most savage and barbarous manner plagued Scotland: which notwithstanding, his sonne being outlawed paid deerely, as forced to submit his whole estate absolutely unto the Kings will and pleasure, and had of his gift some possessions assigned to him in *Cantire*. In the foregoing age, of this stocke there flourished *Donel Gormy*, *Mac-Conell*, that is, *The blew*, haply so surnamed of his apparell. He had issue two sonnes, *Agnum Mac-Conell*, and *Alexander*, he who leaving this barren and hungry *Cantire*, invaded the *Glinnes* in Ireland. *Agnum Mac-Conell* afore said, was father of *James Mac-Conell* slaine by *Shan O-Neale*, and of *Surley Boy*, upon whom Queene Elizabeth of her bounty bestowed lands in *Rout* within Ireland. *James Mac-Conell* had issue *Agnum Mac-Conell*, of whom I have spoken before, between whom and *Mac-Clen* there was such a deepe and inveterate hatred, that the force of consanguinity was never able to quench the feud, but that they polluted themselves most wickedly with one anothers blood. From the *Habudes*, if you hold failes along by the shore toward the North-east, you may at length discover the *ORCADES*, now called *ORKNEY*, being thirty Ilands or thereabout, sundred by the Ocean which hath his walke and current betwene them. A certain ancient fragment so calleth them, as one would say, *Argat*, that is, as the same interpreteth it, *Above the Geies*: but I would rather expound it, *Above Cath*: for it lyeth over against *Cath*, a countrey of Scotland, which of the Promontory they use to call *Cathness*: the inhabitants whereof seeme to be named amisse by Ptolomee, *CARINI* for *CATINI*. In *Solinus* his time no man dwelled in them, but overgrowne they were *Vincetis*, or *Junceus herbus*, that is, with binding or rusty weeds: but now inhabited indeed they are, yet destitute of woods, bearing barley good store, and altogether without wheat. Among these *Pomonia*, famous for an Episcopall See, is the principall, called by *Solinus* *POMONA DIUTINA*, for the length of the daies there: now the inhabitants tearme it *Mainland*, as if it were the continent or maine, adorned with the Bishops seat in *Kirkwale* a little towne, and with two castles: it yeeldeth plenty of tinne and of lead. *OCEtis* also is reckoned by Ptolomee in number of these, which now we ghesse to be named *Heibhy*.

But whether *Hey*, which is counted one of these, be *Plinies* *DUMNA* or no, I could never yet resolve. Surely if it be not, I would thinke that *Faire Isle*, the onely towne whereof (for it hath but one) they call *Dumo*, is that *Dumna* rather than with *Becannus* judge *wardhuys* in *Lapland* to be it. *Julius Agricola*, who first of all sailed round about Britaine with his fleet, discovered out of these Isles of *Orkney*, which till that time

A time were unknowne and subdued them, if we may beleeve *Tacitus*: but questionlesse they were knowne in the time of *Claudius* the Emperour; for *Pomponius Mela* who then lived mentioneth them. Yet doubtlesse *Orosius* is untrue, in that he writeth that *Claudius* conquered them: and so farre is it off that *Claudius* should conquer them (which is avouched in *S. Hieroms* Chronicles) that *Juvenal* in *Hadrians* time, not long after *Agricola*, wrote thus of them.

Arma quid ultra
Littora Juverna promovimus, & modò captas
Orcaes, & minima contentos nocte Britannos?

Why warred we past Irish coasts, and Orkneys lately won,
Beyond the Britans, where there is least night and longest Sun?

Afterward when the Romans Empire in Britaine was utterly decayed, now the Saxons, as it seemeth, were seated in them: for *Claudian* the Poet plaied upon them in these termes.

Maduerunt Saxone fuso
Orcaes.

With Saxons blood that there were slaine
The Orkneys was imbrued againe.

Ninnius also writeth, that *Obba* and *Ebissus* Saxons, who served for pay under the Britans, failed round about the *Picts* with 40. *Ciules*; that is, *Flyboats* or *Roving Pinnaces*, and waisted the *Iles of Orkney*. After this, they came into the hands of the Norwegians (whence it is that the inhabitants speake the *Goths* language) by the grant of *Donald Ban*, who after the death of his brother *Malcom Can-Mor*, King of Scots, by excluding his nephewes, had usurped the kingdome, that by their helpe he might be assisted in that intended ambition: and the Norwegians held the possession of them unto the yeere of salvation 1266. For then *Magnus*, the fourth of that name, King of *Norway*, being by the Scots that warred upon him brought to distresse, surrendered them up againe unto *Alexander*, the third King of the Scots, by covenant and composition, which *Haquin* King of the Norwegians confirmed unto King *Robert Bru*, in the yeere 1312. And at length in the yeere 1498. *Christian* the first, King of *Norway* and of *Denmark*, renounced all his right for himselfe and his successours, when he affianced his daughter unto *James*, the third King of Scots, and made over all his interest to his said sonne in law and his successours: and for the stronger assurance thereof, the Popes confirmation was procured to ratifie the same.

To say nothing of the Earles of *Orkney* that were of more ancient times, who also in right of inheritance obtained the Earldomes of *Cathness* and of *Sirrahern*, at the last the title of *Orkney* came by an heire female unto Sir *William Sent-cler*: and *William* the fourth of this line, called *The Prodigall Earl*, for waisting his patrimony, was the last Earle of this race. Howbeit, his posterity enjoyed the honour to be Baron *Sent-cler*, unto these daies. And the title of *Cathness* remaineth still in the posterity of his brother. But within our remembrance this honourable title of the Earle of *Orkney* and Lord of *Sheland* was conferred upon *Robert*, a base sonne of King *James* the fifth; and *Patrick Steward* his sonne enjoyeth the same at this present.

Beyond the *Iles of Orkney*, and above Britaine, the author of that ancient Commentary upon *Horace*, placeth the *Fortunate Ilands*, wherein, as they write, none dwell but devout and just men; and the Grecians in their verses celebrate the pleasantnesse and fertility of the place, calling them the *Elysian fields*. But as touching these *Fortunate Isles*, take with you, if you please, another relation of that old fabulous Grecian, *Isacius Tzetzes* out of his notes upon *Lycophron*: In the Ocean (saith he) there is a

British

British Island, between west Britain and Thule that looke toward the East. Thither men A say the foules of the dead are translated over : for on the shore of that sea wherein the land of Britaine lieth, there dwell fisher-men, subject unto the French, but paying them no tribute, because (as they say) they ferry over the foules and folk departed when these fisher-men returne home in the evening, within a while after they heare some knocking at the door, and heare a voice calling them unto their work. Then rise they, and to the shore they goe, not knowing what causeth them for to goe; where they see boats prepared, but none of their owne, and no men in them : which when they be entered into, they fall to their oares, and feele the weight of the said boats as if they were laden with men, but see no body. After that, with one push they come to a British Island in a trice, whereas otherwise in ships of B their own they could hardly get thither with a day and nights sailing. Now when they are come to the Island, then again they see no creature, but heare a voice of those that receive them that are a shipboard, and count them by the kindred of father and mother, yea and call them one by one according to their dignity, art, and name. But they, after that the ship is discharged of her load, returne home againe with one yerre of their oares. Hence it is that many men thinke these be the Islands of blessed ghosts.

Of the same stampe also may that Poeticall Geographer seeme to be, of whom Muretus maketh mention in his variety of readings : who hath written that C. Julius Caesar went thither once in a great galley, with an hundred men aboard : and when he was willing to have seated himselfe there (as being wondrously delighted with the incredible pleasantness of the place) he was full against his will, and struggling C what he could to the contrary, throwne out by those invisible inhabitants.

Five daies and nights sailing from the Isles of Orkney, Solinus placeth THULE : An Island, if any other, often celebrated by the Poets, whensoever they would signify any thing very remote and farre off, as if it were the furthest part of the whole world. Hereupon saith Virgil, *Tibi serviat ultima Thule*, that is, Let Thule most remote thee serve : Seneca, *Terrarum ultima Thule*, that is, Thule the furthest land that is Juvenal, *De conducendo loquitur jam Rhetoze Thule*, that is, Now Thule speaks, how Oratours to hire : Claudian, *Thulen procul axe remotam*, that is, Thule far remote under the Pole, and in another place, *Ratisbusq; impervia Thule*, And Thule where no ships D can passe : Statius, *Ignorant vincere Thulen*, that is, To conquer Thule all unknowne : And Ammianus Marcellinus, by way of an Adage or Proverbiall speech, useth in these words, *Etiam si apud Thulen moraretur*, that is, Although he made his abode even in Thule. To passe over other testimonies, give me leave yet to note thus much more over, that the said Statius used Thule for Britaine, in these his verses.

*Ceruleus haud aliter cum dimicat incola Thules,
Agmina falcifero circumvenit alta covino.*

Even so the blew inhabitants of Thule when they fight,
Environ battels, marching on with fished chariots might.

As also in this place of his Poem entituled *Sylva*, as it seemeth :

*—reflue circumfusa gurgite Thule.
Thule that doth resound amaine,
With sea that ebbes and flowes againe.*

Suidas writeth, that it tooke the name of Thules a King of Egypt : Isidore, of the Sunne : Reynerus Renecius, of the Saxon word *Tell*, that is, *A limis*, as if it were the bound of the North and West.

But yet for all this, Synesius doubteth whether there were any Thule or no; and our Giraldus Cambrensis writeth, that it is no where extant to be scene : and the better sort of learned men are of sundry judgements concerning it. Most of them have affirmed Island, that is subject to extreme sharpe cold and continuall winter, to have beene called in times past Thule.

But

A But Saxo Grammaticus, Crantzium, Milium, Jovius, and Peucerus are of a contrary opinion. Neither am I ignorant, that the vast and huge country of Scandia is described by Præcapium under the name of Thule. But if that be true which the most learned Pencer hath recorded in his book entituled *De dimensione terra*, that is, *Of the measuring of the earth*, that failers call Shetland Thulenst (neither dare I impeach his credit) then surely wee have found Thule, and the matter is now at an end and questionlesse. For this Shetland is an Isle under the Scottish dominion, environed with other Illes, and the same is nipped with frost and chilly cold, lying open on every side unto bitter storms; the inhabitants whereof, like as those of Island, use in steed of bread-corne dried fish, and the same braied and beaten, which we call stock-fish. And although it have not the North pole so elevated, that there is continuall day fixe moneths together, as Pithæus of Marsili hath fained of Thule (for which hee is justly taxed by Strabo;) and this hapneth not to Island it selfe, where there is in manner a continuall Winter, and an intolerable settled cold. Yet that a man should thinke this Shetland to have been Thule, first the situation thereof in Ptolomee may induce him, being set 63. degrees from the Equinoctiall, as Thule is in Ptolomee : again, for that it lieth between Norway and Scotland, where Saxo Grammaticus placeth Thule; then, because it is two daies sailing distant from the point of Caledonia or Caithnes, according to which distance Solinus placeth Thule : also, Tacitus saith that the Romans kened C Thule afar off, as they sailed round about Britain by the Orcades : lastly, because it faeth the shore of Bergæ in Norway, against which place Thule lieth according to Pomponius Mela : in which Author the reading is corruptly, *Belgarum littori* in stead of *Bergarum*. For Bergæ a citie in Norway lieth over against Shetland : and Pliny nameth in this tract BERGOS, which I doubt not but it is that little country wherein BERGÆ flourisheth, like as no man will deny that Norway is NERIGON specified by Pliny. But enough of this Thule, which snow and winter weather, as one saith, hath hidden from the ancient writers, and from us too I assure you : neither is any of them able to say, which of the Northren Islands they meant, when they spake so much of Thule. As touching the length of daies in that unknowne Island, Festus Avienus, when hee D treated of Britaine, translated out of Dionysius these verses.

*Longa dehinc celeri si quis rate marmora currat,
Inveniet vasto surgentem gurgite Thulen;
Hic cum plaustro Poli tangit Phæbeum ignis,
Nocte sub inlustris rosa solis fomite flagrat
Continuo, clarumque diem nox amula ducit.*

From hence if one with pinnace swift along the sea doth saile,
Thule above the Ocean vast to finde he shall not faile :
Here when about the Northren pole the Suns fire doth sejourne,
The night is light some, and his wheelles continually doe burne,
The night, I say, resembling day faire light makes soone returne.

Which Pomponius Mela likewise hath noted in these words. Opposite unto the coast of Bergæ lieth Thule, an Island much renowned both in Greek Poems, and in ours also. In it, for that the Sun riseth and is to set farre off, the nights verily are short; but in winter time, as elsewhere dark, in summer light : because all that time hee mounteth very high, although his body be not seen, yet with his neere brightness he doth lighten the parts next unto him. But about the solstice there be no nights at all, by reason that hee being then more apparent, not onely casteth bright beames from him, but sheweth also the greatest part of himselfe.

Above these Islands the sea is tearmed, The slow, frozen, and Ice sea; for that it is so rough by occasion of heaps of Ice, and scarce navigable.

T t t t

The frozen sea, or Cronium.

It

Lib. 2. belli Gothici.

Shetland, which some call Hethland.

Bergos.
Nerigon.

Thule.

Thule for Britaine.

Island.

It is also named of ancient writers *Cronium*, or *Cronian sea*, of *Saturne*; because *A* here in a British Island, as *Plutarch* recordeth, there goeth a tale, how *Saturne* is kept sleeping in a deepe cave, or bottom of a golden pumish stone: that he is by *Jupiter* cast into a most deepe and dead sleepe, which serveth in stead of bonds: that birds bring him *Ambrosia* the divine meat, with the odoriferous smell wherof all the place is perfumed. Also that he hath many spirits or daemons attending upon him as servants, who reverence him, serve him, and attend upon him. By which pretty fable, (unlesse I be deceived) is covertly couched by a *Mythology*, that there lye hidden in these Islands, veins or mines of Metals, over which *Saturne* is president: which notwithstanding are forlet and out of request, for want of wood to maintaine the for-
naces.

Now beneath *Thule* Southward, the German sea spreadeth it selfe wide, wherein, as *Pliny* affirmeth, there lye disperfed the seven *Aemodæ*, *Mela* tearmeth them *Hæmodæ*: But seeing it is knowne for certaine, that these be Islands belonging to Denmark in the Codan Gulfe, namely, *Zeland*, *Fynen*, *Lagland*, *Muen*, *Falstor*, *Layland*, and *Femerem*, there is no cause wherefore I should say any more; neither of the Isle *Glessaria* or *Electrida*, so called of *Amber* cast up there out of the Sea: which *Sotacus* supposed to drop forth of trees in Britain. But seeing that the ancient Germans called *Amber Glesse*, willing enough I am to thinke with that most learned man, *Erasmus Michael Læmus*, that the Island *Lesse*, hard by *Scagen*, or Promontory of Denmark, was in times past called *Glessaria*. Now within the German sea on that side where it beareth upon Britaine, appear very few Islands, unlesse they be those that lye in *Edenburrrough Frith*, namely, *May*, *Basse*, *Keib*, and *Inche Colme*, that is, *Columbs Isle*. On the coast of Northumberland, over against the river *Lied*, one sheweth it selfe, namely *Lindisfarn*: the Britans call it *Inis Medicane*, which, that I may use *Bede's* words, as the sea ebbereth and floweth at his tides, twice a day inundated and compassed about with water in manner of an Island, and twice likewise made conimont to the land, as the shore is laid bare again: whereupon he aptly termed it a *Demy Island*. The West part of it being the narrower, and left unto conies, joineeth to the East side by a very small sponge of land: and this part which bendeth toward the South is much broader, having a pretty towne in it, with a Church and a castle: where sometimes had bene that Episcopall See, which *Aidan* the Scot (called thither to preach the Christian faith unto the people of Northumberland) instituted, as being much delighted with the solitary situation, as a most fit place of retire. In this small Island there sat eleven Bishops. But afterwards when the Danes rifled and robbed all the Sea-coasts, the Episcopall See was translated to *Durham*. Under the towne there is a good commodious haven, defended with a Block-house situate upon an hill toward the South-East.

This, for the habitation therein of holy Monks, is called in English *Holy Island*. Concerning which *Alcuin*, in an Epistle unto *Egelsed* King of Northumberland, writeth thus. *A place more venerable than all the places in Britaine, is left to the spoile of Pagans and Miscreants: and where after the departure of S. Paulinus from York, Christian religion in our nation first began, there it hath felt the first beginning of misery and calamity.*

Seven miles from hence South-Eastward, *Farn Isle* sheweth it selfe, distant almost two miles from *Banborrow* castle, enclosed within the most deep Ocean, and encircled about with craggy cliffs, and this hath also in the middle well neere, a Fort belonging unto it; even in that place, as the report goeth, where *Cuthbert* Bishop of *Lindisfarn*, that tutelar St. and Patron of the Northren Englishmen, to the end he might wholly give himselfe to the service of God, built, as *Bede* saith in his life, a city fitting for his government, and erected houses in this city, foring well thereto. For the whole building stood almost round in compasse, reaching from wall to wall the space of foure or five perches. The wall it selfe on the coast side was more than a mans height: for on the inside with hewing downe into a mighty rocke he had made it far higher, sufficient to with-hold and keep in the mansion lasciviousnesse either of eyes or thoughts, and so elevate the whole
invention

Lindisfarn.

Moly Island.

Farn Isle.

Bede in the life of Cuthbert.

intention of the mind up so heavenly desires, in such sort as that the devout inhabitants thereof could out of his mansion place behold nothing but the heaven. Which wall verily he made not of cut squared stone, or of bricke; nor laid the same with strong mortar, but raised altogether of coble and unpolished rough stones, and turfe betweene, which with digging he had taken out of the midst of the place. Of which stones verily some were of that huge bignesse, as foure men were uneth able to lift one of them. Within this mansion hee had two houses, a Chappell, and a dwelling roome for common uses. The walls whereof he brought up of very naturall earth, by digging much of it within and without round about, or else by paring it up. And roofes over them of timber without all forme, and straw thereupon. Moreover, at the haven of this Island there stood a greater house, wherein the brethren that came to visit him might be entertained and lodged, and not far from it a fountain meet for their uses. Upon this there adjoine other smaller Islands toward the North, as *Widopens*, *Staple Island*, which lieth two miles off, *Bronfman*, and two lesser than these, which they call the *Wambes*.

After these the Island commonly called *Coquet* lieth right before the mouth of the river *Coquet*, wherein is a plentifull veine of Sea-coale. Neither are there any more Islands to be seen in this coast: but over against it be the *Saxonian Insule*, that is, *The Saxons Islands*, now called *Heilich lant*, that is, *The Holy-Islands*, and they lie, as it were, in a continued range along East and West Frilands: Among which that was best knowne unto the Roman Captaines which *Strabo* called *Birchanis*,
Saxon Islands.

Pliny *Birchana*, and the Romans *Fabaria*, of the resemblance of a certain Graine or Pulse comming up there of the owne accord: which that I may restore it againe to the due place (although it be nothing pertinent to my purpose) the very name it selfe witnesseth to beethat *Borkun* which lieth over against the mouth of *Ems*. Somewhat lower upon the shore of Holland, where in ancient time was the mouth of *Rhene*, the foundations of a most ancient Store-house, Magazin or Armory, are covered over with the waves, which being very feldome discovered and laide bare at a low ebbe of the Ocean, sheweth both an admirable spectacle of reverend antiquitie, and also a most noble modell and forme of building; which, *Abraham Ortelius*, the repaire of ancient Geography, and my entire and inward friend, hath preferred out of the maine Ocean by his exact description thereof. I have mentioned this the more willingly, because the Hollanders call it in their language *Huis se Britten*, that is, *the British house*, so that it belongeth at least wise in name to Britain, and therefore not impertinent to my purpose. For as it is evident and confessed of all, that the Emperour *C. Caligula*, when he intended the conquest of Britaine, in that ridiculous voiage of his, built it for a watch-tower: so an ancient Inscription there digged up doth testifie, that the Emperour *Septimius Severus*, after it was fallen to decay rebuilt it. But whence it was named *Britten*, let him tell that best can ghesse. Probable it is that it tooke this name from the Britans: for that *Bretta* the natall place of *Philip Melanchthon* tooke name of the Britans, he himselfe was fully perswaded: and that *Mounts* in *Heinault* were of the Britans termed *Breten*, we have read elsewhere. But yet (that I may speake as *Plinie* doth) seeing he marvelleth why the Herbe that is peculiar unto Holland, as growing no where else, is called *Britannica*, unlesse perhaps those that bordered upon the Ocean dedicated it unto Britain so neere unto it: so for my part I wonder as much, why this tower should be termed *Britannica*, or *Breten*, unlesse the Hollanders consecrated it to our Britaine, lying opposite unto it. *Plinie* calleth a place in *Picardy*, *Portum Morinorum Britannicum*, that is, *The British haven or port of the Morines*, either for that they took ship there to passe over into Britain, or because it kenneed Britaine over against it on the other side of the sea. Why then should not this tower by the same reason be called *Britannica* or *Breten*? for that the Britans often arrived here, and that from hence out of Germany there was a common passage into Britain, it is most certain; considering that *Zosimus* hath given the just measure of the sea betwixt Britaine and this mouth of *Rhene*, to be 900. stadia over, as though it had bene an usuall passage: and written beside; that corne was wont to be brought by ships out of Britaine to this place, and from thence with barges and boats haled up the *Rhene* against the streame to serve the Roman garrisons:
seeing

Lib. 7. Birchanis.

Borkun.

The British Armory or Store-house.

Holland coast. Britten huis.

Portus Morinorum Britannicus.

The Chamavi dwelt thereby, as appeareth out of the Embassages of Eunapius.

seeing that *Julian* the Emperour built garrisons, as *Marcellinus* saith, wherein might be A
 inned and kept the corne that the Britans usually transported thither.

At which time this said Armory may seeme to have beene converted into a
 Garner or Store-house for corne, and of the said British corne tearmed *Britannicum* : and so much the rather, because in the old Records of Holland, we finde it
 written *Britanburg* : for that age termed castles standing commodiously, and such
 as were stored with plenty of corne, *Burghs*, as we read in the history of the Burgun-
 dians. Moreover, what if the Britans (that in this doubtfull matter I may run out of
 one conjecture to another) sometimes held it in their owne hands, and so adopted it
 into their owne name : considering they invested *Magnus Maximus*, whom some
 name *Clemens Maximus*, in the purple robe, and proclaimed him Emperour against B
Gratian. For he arrived at this mouth of Rhene. If againe, it had not as yet taken this
 name *Britannicum*, what if the Saxons tearmed it *Huis se Britten*, for that they tooke
 ship from hence into *Brittain*, when they annoied our shores with their *Cyales* : for so
 they tearmed their pinnaces or Brigantines. Verily *Zosimus* sheweth that the Sax-
 ons, after they had driven out the *Frankers* called *Salii*, planted themselves in *Bata-*
via, that is, *Holland* : and that from thence they put over by multitudes into *Britain*,
 it is most cleere and evident. Which also as I said before, *Janus Douza*, a noble
 Gentleman indeed, and passing well learned, in his *Ode of Leyden* seemeth to imply : yet
 here againe, lest I might seeme too forward and lavish in setting forth the glory of C
 Britaine; considering that the right learned *Hadrian Junius*, borne and bred in Hol-
 land, hath fetched the originall of the herbe *Britannica* from *Britten* a word of his
 owne country, because it groweth plentifully upon those turfs which they call *Bri-*
ten, and whereof they raise great banks and dikes against the violence of the encro-
 ching Ocean; it will be no absurdity if one should reduce this *Huis se Britten*, unto the
 same originall: and suppose it to have been so called, because it was fenced with banks
 of turfe, or of *Britten*, set opposite against the forcible surges of the waves; which
 when the surges of the sea had once pierced and overthrowne, it may seeme to have
 borne downe this house also. But let them see to these matters who have a deeper in-
 sight into the nature of the word, and the situation of the place, and pardon me with-
 all, if here I have thrust my sickle into anothers harvest. D

In that coast there be also Illes of *Zeland* compassed about with the rivers *Scaldi*,
Maese, and the *Ocean* : Touching which I will onely adde thus much, that the name
 of *Valachria* (for of these this is the chiefe) as *Lemnius Levinus* conjectureth, came
 from our Welshmen. Over against *Zeland*, *Tamis* the goodliest and noblest river of
 Britaine dischargeth himself into the sea : in which place *Ptolomee* setteth *TOLIAPIS*
 and *CAUNAS*, or *CONVENNON*. Of *Toliapis*, which I suppose to be *Shepey*, see in
 Kent. Of *Convennon* I have spoken in Essex in the page 441.

More Eastward without *Tamis* mouth, there lieth along before the Iland *Tenet*,
 a place full of shelves and sands, and very dangerous for saylers, which they call *Good-* E
wins Sands, where our *Annales* doe record that in the yeere 1097. an Iland which
 was the patrimony of *Goodwin* Earle of Kent, was quite swallowed up and sunk in the
 sea : concerning which *John Twyn* writeth thus. *This land was very fruitful, and*
full of plenteous pastures, lying somewhat lower and more flat than Tenet; out of which
there was a passage by boat or barge three or foure miles long. This Iland in an unusuall
tempest of windes, and boisterous fury of stormy raines, and uncooth rage of the sea, was
drowned, and lieth overwhelmed with sand cast up after an incredible manner, and with-
out all recovery is turned into a middle or doubtfull nature of land and sea. For I wot wel
what I say, because one while it wholly floateth, and another while at a low water after an
ebbe, it beareth walkers upon it. Haply this is *Toliapis*, unlesse you had rather read F
Thanatos, for *Toliapis*, and in some copies we read it *Tolatis*, of which we have trea-
 ted in Kent. See the 345. page.

In this very place, the huge vastnesse of the sea gathereth into such a straight, that
 the gullet of the Ocean betweene the firme land of France and Britaine, is not above
 thirty miles over, which Streights some call the *Narrow sea* of Britaine, others of
 France (and the bound it is of the British sea) which by little and little removeth the
 shores.

Burgus what
 it is.

Zosimus l. 4.
 Saxons in Hol-
 land.
 Janus Douza
 in his Nomen-
 clator.

Britten an
 herb.

Zeland.
 See pag. 333. &
 441.
 Toliapis.
 Caunus.
 Canvey.
 See in Essex,
 Shepey.

Goodwin
 Sands.

Some call it
 Lomea.

The British
 narrow sea.

A shores farther asunder, that were in manner meeting together, and by the driving
 backe of the lands on both sides equally, floweth between Britaine and France from
 East to West. At this beginneth the *British sea* : wherein first you meet with the I-
 land, or byland rather, *Selisy*, in the English Saxon tongue, *Seolp-æa*, that is, according
 to *Bede*, *The Iland of Sea-calves*, which in our tongue we call otherwise *Seales*. But
 hereof I have spoken already in the page 308.

Somewhat higher lieth the Isle *Veſſa*, in the British tongue *Guisb*, in the Saxon,
Wirc-lanð, and *Wicp-æa*, for the Saxons tearmed an Iland *Æa*, wee *The Isle of Wight*,
 and *Wight*. Whereof also I have written before in the 273. page.

B Of *Poriland* likewise, which now is no Iland, but annexed to the continent, I have
 treated heretofore in Dorsetshire in the page 210.

Hence will I cut over to the shore of France just against it; where from *Beer-slees*
 in Normandy unto the midst of the Channell, the sea, by the Mariners saying, is pa-
 ved, as it were, and overspred with rocks and craggies : among which, William sonne
 to King Henry the first, and heire both of England and of Normandy, whiles he crof-
 sed the seas out of Normandy into England, in the yeere of salvation 1120. was by
 woefull shipwracke, together with his sifter, his base brother, and others of the
 floure of the nobility, drowned. Whereupon a Poet of that age thus verified.

C
Abstulit hunc terræ maris unda noverca,
Proh dolor ! occubuit Sol Anglicus, Anglia plora :
Quæq; prius fueras gemino radiata nitore,
Extincto nato vivas contemna parente.

Him, from the land his mother kind, the Sea a stepdame caught;
 Now Englands Sunne, alas, is set : weepe England, weep for thought:
 And thou that didst enjoy the beames of twofold light before,
 Since Sonne is gone, content thy selfe with father and no more.

D
Funus plangendum, prius lapis æquoris unum,
Et raris una suo principe regna duo.
 O dolefull day, one rocke in Ocean maine,
 One barke of Prince bereaveth kingdoms twain.

And another Poet at the same time hammered out these verses touching that ship-
 wracke.

E
Dum Normannigenæ Gallis clavis superatis,
Anglica regna petunt, obstitit ipse Deus :
Aspera nam fragili dum sulcant æquora cymba,
Intulit excito nubila densa mari.
Dumque vagi cæco rapiuntur tramite nauta,
Ruperunt imas abdita saxa rates.
Sic mare dum superans tabulata per ultima serpsit,
Mersit rege satos, occidit orbis honos.

Whiles Normans after victories of Noble Frenchmen won,
 Make saile for England, God himselfe withstood them all anon.
 For as the rough and surging waves they cut with brittle barke,
 He brought upon the troubled sea thicke fogges and weather darke:
 Whiles sailers then in coasts unknowne were driven and bal'd astray,
 Upon blind rockes their ships were split and quickly cast away.
 Thus when salt water entred in, and upmost hatches caught,
 Drown'd was that royall progeny, worlds honour came to naught.

More Westward, certaine Ilands affront France, yet under the Crowne of Eng-
 land : and first of all upon the coast of Normandy, or the *Lexobii* (whom our Britans
 or Welshmen tearme *Leuw*, as one would say *Littorales*, that is, *Coast-men*) lieth
 Alderney,

Alderney.

Alderney, which in the Records is named *Aurney*, *Aureney*, and *Aurigny*: so that it A may seeme to be that *ARICA*, which in *Antonine*, according to the King of Spaines copie, is reckoned among the Isles of the British sea. Others hold it to be that *EODIA*, or *EVODIA*, whereof *Paulus Diaconus* only hath made mention, who had small skill of this coast; which he placeth thirty miles from the shore of *Seine*, and telleth of a rumbling & roaring noise of waters, falling into a gulf or *Charybdis*, that is heard a far off. This *Alderney* lieth in the chiefe trade of all shipping passing from the Easterne parts to the West: three leagues distant from the coast of Normandy, thirty from the nearest part of England, extended from South East to the North West, and containeth about eight miles in circuit, the South shore consisting of high cliffes. The aire is healthfull, the soile sufficiently rich, full of fresh pastures and corn-fields: yet the inhabitants poore, through a custome of parting their lands into small parcells by Gavelkind. The towne is situate well neere in the midst of the Isle, having a parish Church, and about 80. families, with an harbour called *Crabbie* some mile off. On the East side there is an ancient fort, and a dwelling house built at the charge of the Chamberlans: for the fee farme of the Isle was granted by Queene Elizabeth to G. Chamberlane, son to Sir Leonard Chamberlane of Shirburne in Oxfordshire, when he recovered it from the French. And under this fort, the sand with violent drifts from the Northwest overlaid the land, so that now it serveth thereabout most for conies.

I know not whether I were best to relate of a Giants tooth, one of the grinders, C which was found in this Island, of that bigge size that it equalled a mans fist; seeing Saint Augustine writeth of one that himselfe saw, so bigge, that if it were cut in small peeces to the proportion of our teeth, it seemed it might have made an hundred of them.

Casquettes.

Hence Westward there runneth out a craggy ridge of rockes, which have their severall eddies, and therefore feared of the Mariners, who tearme them *Casquettes*. Out of one of the which properly named *Casquer*, there gusheth a most sweet spring of fresh water, to the great comfort of the Island-fishermen beating up and downe hereabout. At these, to remember incidently (that the memorie of a well-deserving Patriot may not perish) the fleet which *John Philips* D Citizen of London set forth and manned at his owne private charges, had a glorious victorie over a rabble of Pirates, who impeached all trafficke, taking their Capitaine, and fifteene Spanish ships that conformed with them. Which worthy man also maintained 1000. souldiers at his owne pay for defence of the Realme against the French, who fore infested the Southern coast in the beginning of the reigne of King Richard the second, to omit his great loanes to the King, and other good and laudable offices to his country. Under these lieth Southward *CÆSAREA*, whereof *Antonine* hath written, scarce twelve miles distant from *Alderney*, which name the Frenchmen now have clipped so short, as the Spaniards have *CÆSARAUGUSTA* in Spaine: for they call it *Gearzey*, like as *Cherburgh* for *Cesarisburgum*, and *Saragose* for *Cesar augusta*. *Gregorius Turonensis* calleth it, the Island of the sea that lieth to the City *Constantia*, where hee reporteth how *Prætextatus* Bishop of Roan was confined hither: like as *Papirius Massonius* tearmeth it, the Isle of the coast of *Constantia*, because it butteth just upon the ancient city *Constantia*, which may seeme in *Ammianus* to be named *CASTRA CONSTANTIA*, and in the foregoing ages *Morionium*. For *Robert Montensis* writeth thus: *Comes Morionii, id est, Constantiarum*, if that be not a glosse of the transcriber. For *Morionium*, which now is *Mortaigne*, is farther distant from the sea.

Gerzey.

Castra Constantia.
Moritavum.

This Isle is thirty miles or thereabout in compass, fenced with rockes and shelves, which are shallow places, dangerous for such as saile that way. The ground is fertile enough, bearing plenty of fundry sorts of corne, and breeding cattail of divers kinds, but sheepe especially, and most of them with faire heads, carrying foure hornes a peece. The aire is very wholesome and healthy, not subject to any other diseases but agues in September, which thereupon they tearme *Settembers*, so that there is no being for Physicians here. And for that it is scarce of fuell, in stead of fire

A fire wood they use a kind of Sea weed which they call *Uraic*, deemed to be that *Fucus marinus*, which *Plinie* mentioneth, and groweth every where about in craggy Islands, and on rockes most plenteously. This being dried at the fire, serveth for to burne; with the ashes whereof (as it were with Marle and the fat of the earth) they dung commonly their fields and fallows, and thereby make them very barle & fruitful. Neither are they permitted to gather it but in the spring and summer season; and then upon certaine daies appointed by the Magistrate. At which time, with a certaine festivall mirth, they repaire in numbers from all parts to the shore with their carres, as also to the rockes neere unto them they speed themselves a vie with their

Uraic.
Fucus marinus.

B fisher-boats. But whatsoever of this kind the sea casteth up, the poore may gather for their owne use. The inward parts of the Isle gently rise and swell up with pretty hills: under which lye pleasant vallies watered with riverets, and planted with fruitful trees, but apple trees especially, of which they make a kind of drinke. Well stored it is with farme places and villages, having within it twelve Parishes, and furnished on every side with creeks and commodious rodes: among which the safest is that in the South part of the Isle, betwene the two little townes, Saint *Hilaries* and Saint *Albans*: which harbour hath also a little Island belonging to it, fortified with a garison, having no way of access unto it: wherein, by report, Saint *Hilarie* Bishop of *Poitiers*, after he had beene banished hither, was entered. For the towne dedicated to his name just over against this Island is accounted the principall towne, both in regard of the mercate and trafficke there, as also of the Court of Justice which is there established. On the East-side, where it faceth the citie *Constantia*, there is seated upon a steep rocke a most strong castle, with an haughty name called *Mont Orgueil*, which is much beholden unto King Henry the fifth, who repaired it. The Governour of the Isle is Captain thereof, who in times past was called the *Custos* of the Isle, and in Henry the third his reigne had a yeerely pension of 200. pound. On the South side, but with longer distance betwene, Saint *Malo* is to be seene, having taken that new name of *Maclou* a very devout man, where before time it was called the city *Diablinum*, and in the ancient Notice, *ALBETUM*: for in a Manuscript of *Isidorus Mercator*, we read thus in expresse termes, *Civitas Diablinum &c.* that is, the city *Diablinum*, which by another name is called *Alatum*. As for the inhabitants, they freshly practice the feat of fishing, but give their minds especially to husbandry: and the women make a very gainfull trade by knitting of hofe, which they call *Jarsey Stockes* or *Stockings*.

As touching the politicke state thereof, a Governour sent from the King of England is the chiefe Magistrate: hee appointeth a Bailiffe, who together with twelve Jurats or sworn Assistants, and those chosen out of the twelve severall parishes, by the voices of the Parishioners, sitteth to minister justice in Civill causes: in criminall matters he sitteth but with seven of the said sworn assistants, and in causes of conscience to be decided by equity and reason with three.

Twenty miles hence North-west, lieth another Island, which *Antonine* the Emperour in ancient time named *SARNIA*, we at this day *Garnsey*, lying out East and West in fashion of an harpe, neither in greatnesse nor in fruitfulness comparable to *Jersey*; for it hath in it only ten parishes, yet is this to be preferred before it, because it fostereth no venomous thing therein, like as the other doth. It is also better fortified by naturall fences, as being enclosed round with a set of steepe rockes, among which is found that most hard and sharpe stone *Smyris* (which we terme *Emerill*) wherewith Goldsmiths and Lapidaries cleanse, burnish, and cut their precious stones, and glaziers also divide and cleave their glasse. Likewise it is of greater name for the commodiousness of the haven, and the concourse of merchants resorting thither. For in the farthest part well neere Eastward, but on the South side, it admitteth an haven within an hollow Bay bending inward like an halfe Moone, able to receive tall ships; upon which standeth Saint Peters, a little towne built with a long and narrow street, well stored with warlike munition, and ever as any warre is toward mightily replenished with Merchants. For by an ancient priviledge of the Kings of England, here

Sarnia.
Garnsey.
Haply Granonaby, a transposition of letters, which the Norritia placeth in the Tract of Armorica. Smyris.

is

is alwaies a continuall truce, as it were: and lawfull it is for Frenchmen and others, A how hot soever the warre is, to have repaire hither too and fro without danger, and to maintaine entercourse of trafficke in security. The entry of the haven, which is rockie, is fortified on both sides with castles. On the left hand there is an ancient bulwarke or block-houſe, and on the right hand over againſt it ſtandeth another (called *Cornet*) upon an high rocke, and the ſame at every high water compaſſed about with the ſea. Which in Queene Maries daies, Sir *Leonard Chamberlane* Governour of the Iland, as alſo under Queene Elizabeth, Sir *Thomas Leighion* his ſucceſſour, cauſed to bee fortified with new workes. For here lieth for the moſt part the Governour of the Iland, and the Garriſon ſouldiers: who will in no hand ſuffer Frenchmen and women to enter in. On the North ſide there is *La-vall*, a biland adjoining unto it, which had belonging thereto a covent of religious perſons, or a Priory. On the Weſt part neere unto the ſea, there is a lake, that taketh up a mile and halfe in compaſſe, replenished with fiſh, but Carpes eſpecially, which for bigneſſe and pleaſant taſte are right commendable. The inhabitants are nothing ſo induſtrious in tilling of the ground as thoſe of *Jarſey*, but in navigation and trafficke of merchandiſe, for a more uncertaine gaine they be very painfull. Every man by himſelfe loveth to huſband his owne land, ſo that the whole Iland lieth in ſeverall, and is divided by enclouſures into ſundry parcels: which they find not onely profitable to themſelves, but alſo a matter of ſtrength againſt the enemye. Both Ilands ſmile right pleaſantly upon you, with much variety of greene gardens and orchards: by meanes whereof, they uſe for the moſt part a kinde of wine made of apples, which ſome call *Siferia*, and we *Sydre*. The inhabitants in both places are by their firſt originall either Normans or Britans, and ſpeake French: yet diſdaine they to be either reputed or named French, and can very well be content to be called Engliſh. In both Ilands likewiſe they burne *uraic* for their fuell, or elſe ſea-coals brought out of England: and in both places they have wonderfull ſtore of fiſh, and the ſame manner of civill government.

Normandy loſt. Theſe Ilands, with others lying about them, belonged in old time to the Dukedom of Normandy, but when as Henry the firſt King of England had vanquiſhed his brother Robert, in the yeere of our Lord 1108. he annexed that Dukedom, and theſe Ilands unto the kingdom of England. Since which time they have continued firme in loialtie unto England, even when John King of England being ended for murdering Arthur his Nephew, was by a definitive ſentence or arreſt of conſiſcation, deprived of his right in Normandy, which he held in chiefe of the French King: yea moreover when the French had ſeized upon theſe Iſles, hee through the faithfull affection of the people twice recovered them. Neither revolted they when Henry the third King of England had, for a ſumme of money, ſurrendered his whole intereſt and right in Normandy. And ever ſince they have, with great commendation of their conſtancy, perſiſted faithfull unto the Crowne of England, and are the onely remains that the Kings of England have of the ancient inheritance of William the Conquerour, and of the Duchy of Normandy: although the French otherwhiles have ſet upon them, who from the neighbour coaſt of France have hardly this long time endured to ſee them appertaine not to France but to England. And verily *Evan*, a Welch Gentleman, deſcended from the Princes of Wales, and ſerving the French King, ſurprized *Garneſey* in the time of King Edward the third: but ſoone loſt it. And alſo in the reigne of King Edward the fourth, as appeareth by the records of the Realme, they ſeized upon the ſame: but through the valour of *Richard Harleſton*, vane of the Crowne (for ſo they termed him in thoſe daies) they were ſhortly diſſeized: and the King, in recompence of his valorous ſervice, gave unto him the Caprainſhip both of the Iland and of the caſtle. And in the yeere 1549. when F England, under King *Edward* the ſixth a child, was diſtreſſed with domeſtick troubles, *Leo Strozzi* Captaine of the French Gallies gave the attempt to invade it, but with the loſſe of many of his men had the foile, and deſiſted from his enterpriſe.

As touching the Eccleſiaſtickall juuriſdiction, they were under the Biſhop of *Conſtance* in Normandy, untill that hee in our remembrance reſuſed to abjure the Popes authority

A authority in England (as our Biſhops doe). Since which time they were by Queene Elizabeth ſevered from the Dioceſſe of *Conſtance*, and united for ever to the Dioceſſe of Wincheſter, ſo as the Biſhop of Wincheſter and his ſucceſſours execute every thing appertaining to the Episcopall juuriſdiction: yet their Eccleſiaſtickall diſcipline is conformable to the Church of *Geneva*, which the French Miniſters have brought in. As for the civill cuſtomes of theſe Ilands, I could now note ſome of them out of the Kings records: namely, *How King John inſtituted twelve Coroners ſworn to keepe the pleas and rights belonging to the Crowne, and granted for the ſecurity of the Ilanders, that the Bailiffe henceforth by advice of the Coroners, might plead without writ of a new diſſeiſin made within the yeere, of the death of any anceſſours and predeceſſours within a yeere, of dowry likewiſe within a yeere, &c.* Moreover, that the ſaid *Juries* may not delay their judgements beyond the tearme of one yeere: likewiſe that in Cuſtomes and other things they ſhould be dealt withall, as naturall inborn inhabitants, and not as ſtrangers or ſorrainers. But theſe points I think good to leave unto others, who may ſearch more curiouſly into particulars. Generally, the cuſtomes of Normandy take place here in moſt caſes.

Touching *Serke*, a little Iland that lieth betweene theſe above named, walled about, as it were, with mighty ſteepe rockes, in which *I. de S. Owen* of *Jarſey* (whoſe antiquity of deſcent ſome avouch (I know not upon what credit and authority) from before Saint *Owens* time) by commiſſion from Queene Elizabeth, and for his owne commodity, as the report goeth, made a plantation, whereas before time it lay deſolate. As touching *Jethow*, which for the uſe of the Governour of *Garneſey* ſerveth in ſteed of a parke, to feed cattell, to keepe Deere, conies, and pheſants: as alſo touching *Arme*, which being larger than the other, was firſt a ſolitary place for Regular Chanons, and after for the Franciſcan Friars; ſeeing they are not mentioned by the old writers, I have no reaſon to ſpeake much of them.

After theſe, upon the ſame coaſt, *L I O A*, whereof *Antonine* maketh mention, ſhooteth up his head, which retaineth the name ſtill, and is now called *Ligon*. Then lye there ſpread and ſcattered ſeven Ilands, termed by *Antonine* *S I A D A E*, of the number: for *Saiib* in the Britiſh tongue betokeneth ſeven; which the Frenchmen at this day terme *Leſer Iſles*. And I ſuppoſe theſe *Siades* to be corruptly called *Hiadate* by *Sirabo*: for from theſe, as hee ſaith, it is not a daies ſailing into the Iland of Britaine. From theſe *S I A D A E* to *B A R S A*, whereof *Antonine* alſo hath made mention, there is the diſtance of ſeven furlongs. The Frenchmen call it the *Iſle de Bas*, and the Engliſh *Baſepole*: For the Britans tearme that *Bas* which is ſhallow, and the Mariners by ſounding finde the ſea in this place to be more ebbe and ſhallow: as which lieth not above ſeven or eight fathomes deepe: whereas along all the ſhore beſide, the ſea carrieth 12. 18. and twenty fathoms of water, as we may ſee in their Hydrographical cards. Howbeit betweene theſe Ilands and *Foy* in Cornwall this our Britiſh ſea, as Mariners have obſerved, is of a mighty depth, which they meaſure to be in the channell fifty eight fathoms deepe, or thereabout. From hence I will now cut over to the coaſts of our owne Britaine, and keeping along the ſhore, as I paſſe by *Ideſton*, *Moulſhole*, and *Longſhips* (which be rather infamous and dangerous rocks than Ilands) at the very utmoſt point of Cornwall, lieth *Antonines* *L I S I A*, now called of them that dwell thereby *Leihonſow*, but of others *The Gulfe*, ſcene onely at a low water when the tide is returned. I take this to be that *Liſia* which ancient writers doe mention; becauſe *Lú* (as I have heard among our Britans in Wales) ſigniſieth the ſame. For *Liſo* foundeth as much as to make a noiſe with a great rumbling or roaring, ſuch as commonly we heare in *Whirlepiis*: and in that place the current or tide of the Ocean ſtriveth againe with a mighty noiſe both Northward and Eaſtward to get out, as being reſtrained and pent in, betweene Cornwall and the Ilands which *Antonine* calleth *S I G D E L E S*, *Sulpius Severus* *S I L L I N A E*, *Solinus* *S I L U R I S*, Engliſhmen *Silly*, the low country Sea-men *Sorlings*, and the ancient Greeke writers tearme *H E S P E R I D E S* and *C A S S I T E R I D E S*. For *Dioniſius Alexandrinus* named them *Hesperides* of their Weſterne ſituation, in theſe verſes.

Serke.

Set-Iles.

Barſa.

Baſepole.

Where the Britiſh ſea is deepeſt.

Liſia by tranſpoſition of letters *Silia*.

αὐτὸς δὲ ἄλλος
 Ἰσλὸν, ἢ ἐν τῇ μὲν ἑσπέρῳ
 Νῆος δ' ἑσπέρῳ, τῶν ἡγεμονῶν τῶν ἡσπέρων.
 Ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡσπέρων ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡσπέρων Ἰσπέρων.

Which Priscian translated thus:

* Sacrum Pro-
 montorium.

Sed summam contra Sacram cognomine dicunt,
 Quam caput Europa, sunt stanni pondere plena
 Hesperides; populum tenuit quas fortis Iberi.*

Which may be englished thus.

Now just beneath that Isle which Sacred, High,
 And head of Europe men are wont to call,
 The Islands nam'd Hesperides do lie,
 And those well stor'd with Tin, a rich metall.
 But would ye know the people? then note well,
 The glorious wealthy Spaniards therein dwell.

These also Festus Avienus, in his poeme entituled *Ora Maritima*, that is, *The sea coasts*, called *Ostrymnides*: touching which he inserted these verses, as they are found in the Paris edition, and the notes upon the same.

Non usque na-
 vibus, ve read
 in the notes of
 Paris.

*In quo insula sese exerunt Oestrymnides
 Laxe jacentes, et metallo divites
 Stanni atque plumbi: multa vis hic gentis est,
 Superbus animus, efficax solertia,
 Negotiandi cura iugis omnibus
 Nolusque cumbis turbidum late fretum
 Ex belluosi gurgitem Oceani secans;
 Non hi carinas quippe pinu texere
 Facere morem non abiete, ut usum est,
 Curvant phasello: sed rei ad miraculum
 Navigia junctis semper aptant pellibus,
 Corioque vastum saepe percurrunt salum.*

Wherein the Isles Oestrymnides doe spread,
 And shew themselves broad lying all about,
 In metals rich as well of tin as lead:
 The people strong, their stomachs high and stout,
 Active and quick, fresh merchants all throughout:
 No troublous waves in Frith or Ocean maine,
 Of monsters full, with ships cut they in twaine.
 For why? no skill at all have they to frame,
 Of Pinetree keels for barke or gallion:
 Nor know they how to make oares to the same,
 Of fyrrer or maple wood, where sailes are none,
 As others use: But which is wonder one,
 Of stitched hides they all their vessels make,
 And oft through sea in leather, voiage take.

Like vessels unto which were used in this our sea, in the yeere of salvation 914.
 For we read of certaine devout men, that in a *Carab* (or carogh) made of two tanned
 hides onely and an halfe, sailed out of Ireland into Cornwall. Afterwards also of the
 said Islands the same Avienus wrote thus:

*Tartessusque in terminis Oestrymnidum
 Negotiandi mos erat, Carthagini
 Etiam colonis.*

Those of Tartessus eke, as well
 As they in Carthage towne that dwell,
 Were wont to trade for merchandise,
 To skirts of Isles Oestrymnides.

Other

A Other Greeke writers tearmed these *Cassiterides*, of Tinne: like as *Strabon* nameth
 a certaine place among the *Drangi* in *Asia*, *Cassiteron*, of *Tinne*: and *Stephanus*
 in his booke of Cities, reporteth out of *Dionysius*, that a certaine Iland in the Indian
 sea was called *Cassiteria*, of Tinne. As for that *Mictis*, which *Pliny* citeth out
 of *Timaeus*, to bee fixe dayes sailing inward from Britaine, and to yeeld Mines of
 white lead, that it should be one of these, I dare scarcely affirme. Yet am I not ig-
 rant, that the most learned *Hermolam Barbarus* read it in manuscript books, *Mitteris*
 for *Mittis*, and doth read for *Mitteris*, *Cartiteris*. But that I should avouch these to be
 those *Cassiterides* so often fought for, the authority of the ancient writers, their
 site, and the mines of Tinne, are motives to perswade me. Full opposite unto the *Ar-
 tabri*, saith *Strabo* (over against which the West parts of Britain doe lye) appeare those
 Islands Northward which they call *Cassiterides*, placed after a sort in the same clime with
 Britaine. And in another place: The sea between Spaine and the *Cassiterides* is broader
 than that which lieth between the *Cassiterides* and Britain. The *Cassiterides* look toward
 the coast of Celtiberia, saith *Solinus*: And *Diodorus Siculus*, in the Islands next unto
 the Spanish sea, which of Tinne are called *Cassiterides*. Also *Eustathius*, There be ten
 Islands called *Cassiterides* lying close together Northward. Now, seeing these Isles of
 Silly are opposite unto the *Artabri*, that is, *Gallitia* in Spaine, seeing they bend direct-
 ly North from them, seeing they are placed in the same clime with Britaine, seeing
 C they looke toward the coast of *Celiberia*, seeing they are dis-joined by a faire broad
 der sea from Spaine than from Britaine, seeing they are next unto the Spanish sea,
 seeing they lye hard one by another toward the North, and ten onely of them bee
 of any good account, namely, *Saint Maries*, *Annois*, *Agnes*, *Sampson*, *Silly*, *Breffer*,
Russo or *Trescam*, *Saint Helens*, *Saint Martins*, and *Aribur*, and that which is most
 materiall, seeing they have veines of Tinne, as no other Iland hath beside them in this
 tract, and considering that two of the lesse sort, to wit, *Minanwulham*, and *Minuiss-
 sand*, may seeme to have taken their names of *Mines*, I would rather think these to be
Cassiterides, than either the *Azores*, which beare too far West, or *Cisarga* with
Olivarius, that lieth in manner close unto Spaine, or even Britain it selfe with *Ortelius*;
 D considering there were many *Cassiterides*; and *Dionysius Alexandrinus* after he had
 treated of the *Cassiterides*, writeth of Britaine apart by it selfe.

If any man by reason of the number deny these to be *Cassiterides*, for that
 they be more than ten, let him also number the *Hebudes* and the *Orcades*, and if after
 the account taken, he finde neither more nor fewer with *Proton* than five *Hebudes*,
 and 30. *Orcades*, let him search in any other place but where they are now extant, and
 with all his searching by reckoning of the numbers, I know for certaine he shall not
 easily finde them. But the ancient writers had no certaine knowledge of these most
 remote parts and Islands of the earth in that age, no more than wee in these daies of
 the Isles in the Streights of *Magellane*, and the whole tract of *New Guiney*.

E And that *Herodotus* had no knowledge of these, it is no marvell: for himselfe con-
 fesseth that hee knew nothing for certaine, to make report of the farthest parts of
 Europe. But lead was brought first from hence into Greece. Lead, saith *Pliny*, in his
 eight Booke, and in the Chapter of the first Inventours of things, *Midacrus* first
 brought out of the Iland *Cassiteris*. But as touching these Islands, listen what *Strabo*
 saith in his third Booke of Geography, toward the end. The Islands *Cassiterides*
 be in number ten, neere one unto another, situate in the deepe sea, Northward from
 the haven of the *Artabri*. One of them is desert, the rest are inhabited by men wearing
 blacke garments, clad in side-coats reaching downe to their ankles, girt about the breast,
 and going with slaves, like unto the *Furies* in Tragedies. They live of their castell,
 F straggling and wandring after a sort, as having no certaine abiding place. Metall
 mines they have of tinne and of lead, in lieu whereof and of skins and furses they receive
 by exchange from the Merchants, earthen vessels, salt, and brasen workes. At the be-
 ginning the Phoenicians only traded thither from Gades, and concealed from others this
 their navigation.

But when the Romanes followed a certaine Master of a Shippe (that they themselves
 might

might learne this trafficke of merchandise he, upon a spitefull envie, ran his ship for the A
 nonce upon the sands; and after hee had brought them that followed after into the same
 danger of destruction, himselfe escaped the shipwracke, and out of the common Treasury
 received the worth of the commodities and wares that he lost. Howbeit the Romans, after
 they had tryed many times, learned at length the voiage thither. Afterwards Publius
 Crassus when hee had sailed thither, and scene how they digged not very deepe in these
 Mines, and that the people were lovers of peace and lived quietly, desired also to saile up-
 on the sea, he shewed the feat thereof to as many as were willing to learne: although they
 were to saile a greater sea than that which reacheth from thence to Brittain.

But to discourse no farther whether these were the ancient *Cassiterides* or no, and B
 to returne to *Silly*. There bee about an hundred forty and five Ilands carrying this
 name, all clad with grasse, or covered with a greenish mosse, besides many hideous
 rockes, and great craggy stones raising head above water, situate as it were in a cir-
 cle round, eight leagues from the lands end, or utmost point of Cornwall West-
 South-West. Some of them yeeld sufficient store of corne, but all of them have a
 abundance of conies, cranes, swannes, herons, and other sea-foule. The greatest of
 them all is that which tooke the name of Saint *Marie*, having a towne so named,
 and is about eight miles in compasse, offereth a good harbour to Saylers in a sandie
 Bay, wherein they may anchor at fixe, seven, and eight fathom; but in the entry lye
 some rockes on either side. It hath had anciently a castle, which hath yeilded to C
 the force of time. But for the same Queene Elizabeth in the yeere 1593. when the
 Spaniards, called in by the Leaguers of France, began to nestle in little Brittain, built
 a new castle with faire and strong ravelines, and named the same *Stella Maria*, in re-
 spect both of the ravelines, which resemble the raies of a starre, and the name of the
 Isle; for defence whereof thence there placed a garrison under the command of Sir
 Francis Godolphin.

Stella Maria.

Doublelesse these are those Ilands, which (as *Solinus* writeth) a troublous and rough
 narrow sea separate by the space of two or three houres sailing from the coast of the *Dan-*
mony, and the inhabitants whereof observe the custome of ancient times. They have no
 faires nor mercates, and refuse mony; they give and take one thing for another, they pro- D
 vide themselves of necessaries by way of exchange, rather than by prising and giving of
 money, they serve the gods devoutly: both men and women will be counted wizzards, and
 skilfull foretelling things to come.

Eustathius out of *Sirabo* termeth the inhabitants *Melanichlanos*, because they were
 clad in blacke garments reaching downe to the ankles: and as *Sardus* was perswaded,
 they depart out of this world for the most part so long livers, that they desire to live
 no longer. For from the top of a rocke (as he saith) they throw themselves into the
 sea, in hope of a more happy life: which doubtlesse was the perswasion of the Britain
Druides.

Hither also the Roman Emperours were wont to send persons condemned to work E
 in the Mines. For *Maximus* the Emperour, when he had condemned *Priscillianus* to
 death for heresie, commanded his sectaries and disciples, *Justianus* a Bishop of Spain,
 and *Tiberianus*, after their goods were confiscate, to be carried away into the Ilands of
Silly: and *Marcus* the Emperour banished him, that in the commotion of *Cassius*
 had prophesied and uttered many things, as it were by a divine instinct of the gods,
 into this Iland, as some are verily perswaded, who willingly for *Syria Insula* read *Sy-*
lia Insula, that is, *The Isle of Silly*, considering the Geographers as yet know no such
 Iland as *Syria*. This confining or packing away of offenders into Ilands, was in those
 daies a kind of exile; and the Governours of Provinces might in that manner banish,
 if they had any Ilands under them: if not, they wrote unto the Emperour, that him- F
 selfe would assigne some Iland for the party condemned: neither was it lawfull with-
 out the privy of the Prince to translate else whither, or to bury the body of him
 that was thus banished into an Iland.

In the Writers of the middle time wee finde not so much as the name of
 these

Stipian lib. 7. de
 Mathematicis.

A these Ilands of *Silly*, but onely that King *Athelstane* subdued them, and after his re-
 turne built a Church in honour of S. *Beriana* or *Buriana*, in the utmost promontory
 Westward of Brittain, where he landed.

Full against these on the French coast, lyeth *Plinius* *AXANTOS*, an Isle right be-
 fore the *Ossismi*, or Brittain *Armorica*, which keeping still the name whole, is called
Uthant: *Antonine* rearmeth it *UXANTISSENA*, in which one word two Ilands
 grew together, to wit, *UXANTIS* and *SENA*. For this Iland lieth somewhat lower,
 now called *Sayn*, which butting full upon *Bress*, is named in some copies *SIAMBIS*,
 and of *Pliny* corruptly *Sounos*: about which from East to West, for seven miles to-
 B gether or thereabout, there shoore forth a number of rockes rather than Ilands, stand-
 ing very thick together. Touching this *Sain*, take with you that which *Pomponius Me-*
la reporteth. *SENA*, saith he, lying in the British sea opposite unto the shores of the *Ossis-*
mi, is famous by reason of the Oracle of a French God, whose *Shee-Priests* vowing perpe-
 tuall virginity, are said to be nine in number: the Frenchmen call them *Zenas* or *Lenas*,
 (for so read I with *Turnebus*, rather than *Gallitenas*) and men are of opinion, that they be-
 ing endued with especiall endowments of nature, are able by enchantments to trouble the
 sea, and raise up windes, so turne themselves into what living creatures they list, to heale
 all those maladies, which with others are incurable, for to know also and to foretell things
 to come, &c.

Axantos.

Uthant.

Siambis.

Mariners call
 it the Seame.

C Beneath these there lie other Ilands in length, namely, *Isles aux Motions*, neere un-
 to *Pen-Mac*, that is, the horse head: *Gleran* over against old *Blavie* (which at this day
 is *Blavet*) *Grois* and *Bellisle*, all which *Pliny* calleth *VENETICÆ*. For they lye oppo-
 site unto the *Venetis* in little Brittain, who I wot not whether they were so named, as
 one would say, *Filhermen*: for *Venna* in the ancient language of the *Galls* seemeth to
 signifie so much. These *Sirabo* supposeth to have been the founders and stockfathers
 of the *Venetians* in Italy: who writeth also, that they intended to have given *Cesar*
 battell at sea, when he minded the conquest of Brittain. These Ilands *VENETICÆ*,
 some out of *Dionysius* Afer terme *NESIDBS*, whereas in the Greek book we read
Nootadon *rip*, that is, the Traile of the Ilands. Of which, *Priscian* out of him writeth
 D thus;

*Nec spatio distant Nesidum littora longe,
 In quibus uxores * Amnitem Bacchica sacra
 Concelebrant hedera foliis, et laque corymbis.
 Non sic Bisfionides Absynthi ad flumina Thraces,
 Exeris celebrant clamoribus uicinia.*

* Samnitum.

Nor distant farre from hence the shores doe lye
 Of Ilands, which *Nesides* many call,
 Wherein the wives of *Amnites* solemnly
 Concelebrate their high feasts *Bacchanall*
 E With *Ivie* leaves and berries covered all.
 The *Thracian* dames make not so loud a cry,
 At *Bacchus* feast, the river *Absyntis* by.

Which *Festus Avienus* also hath expressed in these verses:

*Hinc spumofum item ponti liquor explicat astum,
 Et brevis è pelago voricex subit: hic choros ingens
 Faminei cœtus pulchri colit Orgia Bacchi,
 Producit noctem ludus sacer: æra pulsant
 Vocibus & crebris laet sola calcibus urgent.
 Non sic Absynthi propè flumina Thraces, & alma
 Bisfionides, non quâ celeri ruit agmina Ganges,
 Indorum populi flata curant festa Lyæo.*

F From hence likewise the foaming sea displaies his swelling tide,
 And from the deep short whirl puffs rise. Here by the water side,
 A mighty sort of women meet, the feast of *Bacchus* faire
 To celebrate: their sacred sports last all night long. The aire

V v v v

Rings

Rings over head with voices shrill : and under foot, the ground
With many a friske and stampe of theirs in dancing doth resound.
Like noises make not Thracian Dames, the *Biston* wives, I say,
Along *Abysinus* river, while they use to sport and play :
Nor Indians neere swift *Ganges* streame farre in such frantick wise.
What time to God *Liam* they their set feasts solemnize.

Bacchus.

Now that *Bellis* is one of these foresaid *Nesides*, the authority of *Strabo*, from the faithfull report of other, doth prove sufficiently. For it lieth before the mouth of the river *Loire* : and *Ptolomee* placed the *SAMNITÆ* in a coast of France opposite unto it. For thus writeth *Strabo*. Moreover (they say) there is a little Island in the Ocean, lying not far into the deep sea, full against the mouth of *Ligeris* : that in it inhabit the wives of the *Samnitæ*, which are inspired with the infinit or divine power of *Bacchus*, and by ceremonies and sacrifices procure the favour of *Bacchus* : that no man cometh thither, but themselves taking their barks saile away and company with their owne husbands, and so returne againe into the Island. Also that a custome it is among them, to take away the rooffe of their temple yearly, and to cover it againe the very same day before the sunne setteth ; every one of the women bringing their burden : and look which of them letteth her burden fall, she is by the others torne in pieces : and that they gathering together the pieces as they goe unto the temple, make not an end before they be out of this furious fit : and that it alwaies usually happeneth, that one of them by falling downe of her burthen is thus torne peccemeale.

Thus old Authors, writing of the utmost parts of the world, took pleasure to insert pretty lies and frivolous fables. But what things are reported of *Ceres* and *Proserpine*, they carry with them, saith he, more probability. For the reports goeth of an Island neere unto *Britaine*, where they sacrifice to these Goddesses after the same manner that they doe in *Samothrace*.

Then follow the *Isles aux Mottouns*, *Gleran*, *Grois*, *Belle-isle*, upon the coast of little *Britaine*, *Niermoufrier*, and *L'isle de Dieu* upon the coast of *Poitou*, and *Lisle de Re*, Islands full well knowne, and much frequented for the plenty that they yeeld of bay salt : but for as much as they are not once mentioned by the ancient Geographers, it may be sufficient for me that I have named them. Onely the next Island, at this day knowne by the name of *Oleron*, was knowne to *Pliny* by the name of *ULIARUS*, which lieth, as he saith, in the Bay of *Aquitaine*, at the mouth of the river *Charonton*, now *Charent*, and had many immunities granted from the Kings of England, then Dukes of *Aquitain*. At which time it so flourished for marine discipline and glory, that these seas were governed by the lawes enacted in this Island in the yeere 1266. no lesse than in old time the Mediterranean sea by the lawes of *Rhodes*.

Hitherto have I extended the *British* sea, both upon the credit of *Pomponius Mela*, who stretcheth it to the coast of Spaine ; and upon the authority of the Lord Great Admirall of England, which extendeth so far. For the Kings of England were, and are rightfull Lords of all the North and West sea-coasts of France (to say nothing of the whole kingdome and crowne of France) as who, to follow the tract of the sea-coast, wan the county of *Guines*, *Merk*, and *Oye* by the sword, were true heires to the county of *Pontibieu* and *Monstreuil* by *Eleanor* the wife of King *Edward* the first, the onely heire thereof. In like manner most certain heires to the *Dutchy of Normandy* by King *William* the Conquerour, and thereby superiour Lords of *Little Britaine* dependant thereof ; undoubted heires of the counties of *Anjou*, *Tourain*, and *Maine*, from King *Henry* the second, whose patrimony they were : likewise of the county of *Poitou*, and *Dutchy of Aquitaine* or *Guyenne*, by *Eleanor* the true heire of them, wife to the said *Henry* the second ; to omit the counties of *Tholouse*, *March*, the homage of *Auvergne*, &c. Of all which the French by their arrefts of pretended forfeitures and confiscations have disseized the crowne of England, and annexed them to the Crowne of France ; taking advantage of our most unhappy civill dissentionis : whereas in former ages the French Kings were so fore-closed by these territories, as they had no access at all to the Ocean.

Nothing

Oleron.
Uliarus.

Lex Rhodia.

Admirall of
England.Hereditary
territories in
France belong-
ing to the
Crowne of
England.

A Nothing remaineth now, seeing my pen hath with much labour struggled and failed at length out of so many blind shelves and shallows of the Ocean, and craggy rocks of antiquity, save onely this, that as sea-men were wont in old time, to present *Neptune* with their torn sails, or some saved planks, according to their vow : so I also should consecrate some monument unto the ALMIGHTY and MOST GRACIOUS GOD, and to VENERABLE ANTIQUITY : which now right willingly and of duty I vow, and God willing in convenient time I will performe and make good my vow. Meane while I would have the Reader to remember, that I have in this worke wraisted with that envious and ravenous enemy *TIME*, of which the Greeke Poet
B Bung very aptly in this note.

Αγαλέως φέρε πολὺς χρόνον, ἀλλὰ παρέργων,
Καὶ φανὰς κλέπτει φθογχομένων μερόπων.
Καὶ μὴ φανομένης τὸς φανομένους ἀφανίζῃ,
Καὶ μὴ φανομένης εἰς φανερὸν ποσοφεί.

Hore-headed *TIME* full slowly creeps, but as he flye doth walke,
The voices he as flyely steales of people as they talke :
Unscene himselfe, those that be scene he hides farre out of sight,
And such againe as are not scene he bringeth forth to light.

But I for my part am wont ever and anon to comfort my selfe with this Distichon of *Mimnermus*, which I know to be most true.

Τὴν σ' αὐτὸ φρένα τέρπει, δυσεργίαν δὲ πολίταν,
Ἀλλὸς τις σὲ κραῶς, ἄλλος ἄμεινον ἔρει.

Heart take thine ease,
Men hard to please
Thou haply maist offend:
Though one speake ill
Of thee, some will
Say better, there an end.

SOLI DEO GLORIA.



A



B

PHILEMON HOLLAND
THE TRANSLATOUR
TO THE
READER.

C



This is now almost thirty yeeres agoe, since I enterprised the translation of this *Master Camdens* worke, entituled *Britannia*: and it is full twenty sixe yeeres since it was printed in *English*. In which former Impression, I being farre absent from the Presse, I know not by what unhappy and disastrous meanes, there passed, beside ordinary and literall *Errata*, many grosse and absurd mistakings and alterations of my translation, which was done precisely and faithfully according to the Authors Originall. VVhereof to give you but a touch or taste: Page 23. line 11. the Latine is, *quàm Cambrica, i. Britannicagens*, is printed, *Than the British Britain*, without all sense, for, *E* *Than the Welch, that is, the British Nation*. Page 38. line 15. *Purple Tapestry* remove, for, *Purple Tapistry* ridde, as it ought to bee. Page 200. line 14. of *Saint Nicholas*, for, *Saint Michael*, as it ought to be according to the Latin. Page 266. line 10. the Latine is, *Aerem insalubrem*, is crept in, *Wholesome aire*, for, *Unwholesome aire*, as it should bee. Besides, whole Verses and Lines left out, and eftsoones other VVords and Sentences foisted in: *Substantives* used for *Adjectives*, *Adjectives* for *Substantives*; *Passive* words used for *Active*, *Actives* for *Passive*; and so divers other passages

D

E

F

To the Reader.

passages, against the *Law* of *Priscian*, and *Rules* of *Gram.* ^A
mar. Moreover, that *Hiatus* and want of number in some
Verfes, in other some *Hypermeter*, all by mee translated
with full feet and muscally measure: and in some places,
for *Sense*, ^{use of} or down right *nonsense*, and such like stufte
in above a hundred places. All which now by my means, ^B
and command of the higher Powers, care of some of the
Partner-Printers of this second Impression, and not with-
out the industry and helpe of my onely Son *H. H.* a mem-
ber of the Society of *STACIONERS*, are rectified, sup-
plied, and amended, to the better illustration of the work,
contentment and solace of the future diligent Readers,
and perusers of the said *VVorke. Vale. 85. Ætat. suæ, Anno C*
Dom. 1636.

Φ.

D

E

F

THE SHIRES OF ENGLAND.

B Arke-shire,	279	Middlesex,	419
Bedford-shire,	399	Monmouth,	631
Buckingham-shire,	393	Northfolke,	471
Cambridge-shire,	485	Northampton-shire,	505
Ches-shire,	601	Nottingham-shire,	547
Cornwall,	183	Northumberland,	799
Cumberland,	765	Oxford-shire,	373
Darby-shire,	553	Richmond-shire,	727
Devon-shire,	199	Rutland-shire,	525
Dorset-shire,	210	Shrop-shire,	589
Durham,	735	Somerset-shire,	220
Essex,	439	Stafford-shire,	581
Glocester-shire,	357	Suffolk,	459
Hant-shire,	258	Sussex,	306
Hereford-shire,	617	Surrey,	294
Hertford-shire,	405	Warwick-shire,	561
Huntington-shire,	497	Westmorland,	759
Kent,	324	Wilt-shire,	241
Lanca-shire,	745	Worcester-shire,	573
Leicester-shire,	517	Yorke-shire,	689
Lincoln-shire,	529		

THE SHIRES OF VVALES.

A nglesey,	671	Flint-shire,	679
Brecknocke,	627	Glamorgan-shire,	641
Cardigan-shire,	657	Merioneth-shire,	665
Carmarden-shire,	649	Montgomery,	661
Carnarvon-shire,	667	Penbroke-shire,	651
Denbigh-shire,	675	Radnor-shire,	623

The first Index or Table, serving from the beginning of
BRITAIN to the end of ENGLAND.

A		<i>Edward Meaw, that is to say,</i>	73f. 409f
<i>The first letter, thus sh-</i>		<i>white,</i>	126
<i>ped, A</i>	762c	<i>Eneus Sylvius, that is, Pope</i>	408e
<i>Aaron a martyr,</i>	73f. 636f	<i>Pius Secundus,</i>	410c
<i>Ab-adam a Baron,</i>	364d	<i>Equity courts in England,</i>	412d
<i>Aballaba,</i>	761a	<i>Equivocation of Adam bishop</i>	413c
<i>Abandon or Abington,</i>	279d	<i>of Hereford,</i>	320e
<i>Aber,</i>	21f	<i>Ætica,</i>	126
<i>Aber Avon,</i>	645f	<i>Ætlii,</i>	24b
<i>Aberbury castle,</i>	592f	<i>Æternalis Domus, what it is,</i>	Albinus created Caesar, 68. hee
<i>Aber Conwey,</i>	669e		usurpeth the Empire, 69. is
<i>Aberford,</i>	696b		staine, ibid.
<i>Aberfraw,</i>	672f	<i>Ethelbald the good King of the</i>	<i>Albion, 1, 23. whence it tooke</i>
<i>Abergevenny,</i>	635a	<i>Mercians, 554 a. stabbed</i>	<i>name,</i>
<i>Abergevenny castle defamed for</i>	635b	<i>to death,</i>	594a
<i>treason,</i>	635b	<i>Ethiopians why sommed,</i>	377b
<i>Abergevenny Lords,</i>	ibid.		<i>Alcester,</i>
<i>Abbots, a family,</i>	579b	<i>Ethling, that is, the Prince,</i>	Alwin a learned English Saxon,
<i>Abus, the same that Humber,</i>	710d		137f. 704c
<i>Academia in Attica,</i>	486f	<i>Eton,</i>	Albrow, 701 c. 731 c. 466 a
<i>Accabler,</i>	21f	<i>Eton or Eton Schoole,</i>	Aldelme Abbat, 244. a singular
<i>Ackmancester,</i>	234d		scholar and a devout man, ibid.
<i>Acmunderness,</i>	752e	<i>Agelocum,</i>	<i>Aldersgate in London,</i>
<i>Altons,</i>	364a		423d
<i>Alton Burnel,</i>	591f	<i>Jul. Agricola Lieutenent of the</i>	<i>Algate in London,</i>
<i>Adam de Portu,</i>	269a	<i>twentieth legion in Britaine,</i>	423e
<i>Ad Ansam,</i>	448c	<i>53 c. Propretor in Britain,</i>	<i>Aldingham,</i>
<i>Adeliza a Queene her praises,</i>	309a	<i>54 b. discomfitteth the Ordo-</i>	755d
<i>Aden what it signifieth,</i>	117c	<i>vices, 54 c. d. conquereth</i>	<i>Ale the ancient Englishmens</i>
<i>Aderborne a river,</i>	245d	<i>Anglesey, ibid. his cruill and</i>	<i>drinke,</i>
<i>Adington,</i>	510b	<i>politicke government in Bri-</i>	554f
<i>Ad Lapidem,</i>	262d	<i>tain, 54 f. his martiall skill,</i>	<i>Alen a river,</i>
<i>Adminius,</i>	418c	<i>55. his other vertues and be-</i>	676f. 681f
<i>Admirals court,</i>	180b	<i>haviour, 55. 56. hee vanqui-</i>	<i>Alexander of Hales a great</i>
<i>Ad murum,</i>	819c	<i>sheth the Caledonians, 57. his</i>	<i>Clerke,</i>
<i>Adraste a goddesse among the</i>		<i>patience, 57. his Oration to</i>	365a
<i>Britains,</i>	31c	<i>his souldiers, 59. his victorie,</i>	<i>Alexander the homisfull Bishop</i>
<i>Adrian the Emperor in Britain,</i>	65d	<i>61. his modestie,</i>	<i>of Lincolne, 383 e. 539 d</i>
<i>Ad Rotum, &c.</i>	449c	<i>62</i>	<i>profuse in building, 549 d</i>
<i>Adalph re-edifieth Peterburgh</i>		<i>Agrippina the Empresse her</i>	<i>King Alexander the Great never</i>
<i>Abbey,</i>	512f	<i>haughtie mind,</i>	<i>in Britain,</i>
<i>Eleonor K. Edward the First</i>		<i>Aidon castle,</i>	32d
<i>his wife,</i>	397a	<i>Ailesburies gentlemen,</i>	555e
<i>Eleonor K. Henry the Third</i>		<i>Ailesburie,</i>	379a
<i>his widow liveth in a Nunnerie,</i>		<i>Ailesford,</i>	14d
	254c	<i>Ailwin Healf Koning,</i>	<i>Alford in Lincolnshire,</i>
<i>Eleonor Cobham,</i>	304a	<i>Ainsbury or Ainsulphsbury,</i>	542b
<i>K. Ælfred, a Prince much trou-</i>		<i>Ainulph a religious man, ibid.</i>	<i>Alingtons a familie,</i>
<i>bled, 224 b. c. First Mo-</i>		<i>Airmins a family,</i>	489e
<i>narch of England, 158 c. Se-</i>		<i>Akemanstreet-way,</i>	406d
<i>cond founder of Oxford Uni-</i>		<i>Alabaster stone,</i>	79
<i>versitie,</i>	376b	<i>Alabaster stone about Burton</i>	<i>Alabany,</i>
<i>Ælfstitha K. Edgars wife, 254 c</i>		<i>upon Trent,</i>	126
<i>262 b. a cruell and hatefull</i>		<i>Alan a river,</i>	<i>Alectus his treachery 73. is van-</i>
<i>stepdame,</i>	211d	<i>Alan the son of Flaold, 589 f</i>	<i>quished and slaine, ibid.</i>
		<i>Alaticus King of the Goths, 86 b</i>	<i>Allobroge,</i>
		<i>Alauna a river, 259 c. 813 c</i>	19
		<i>Alban a country,</i>	<i>Almans whence they tooke their</i>
		<i>Albanes whence they tooke their</i>	<i>name,</i>
		<i>name,</i>	26 b. 124
		<i>S. Alban of Verlam our Stephen</i>	<i>Almondbury,</i>
		<i>and Protomartyr of Britaine,</i>	692d
			<i>Alne river,</i>
			566 a. 813 c
			<i>Alnwick or Anwick,</i>
			813 c
			<i>Alon a river,</i>
			801 e
			<i>Alone,</i>
			794 c
			<i>Alpes of Britain,</i>
			667 c
			<i>Alpes why so called,</i>
			24
			<i>Alresford,</i>
			262 e
			<i>All-souls Colledge in Oxford, 38a</i>
			<i>Alsten more,</i>
			799 f
			<i>Alt a river,</i>
			748 e
			X x x
			<i>Althorp,</i>

The Table of England.

Althorp, 508 d
 Altars of the Gentiles and their Religion, 751 d
 Alteryannis, 617 c
 Altmouth a towne, 748 e
 Alvertonshire, 723 e
 Alum made, 217 a
 Alum earth discovered by Sir Th. Chaloner, knight, 711 d
 Alured, See Elfred.
 Alwena a devout woman, 494 d
 Ambacht, 16
 Amboglana, 760 b
 Ambleside, ibid.
 Ambresbury, 254 b
 Ambro. what it is, 127
 Ambroses, ibid.
 Ambrosius Aurelius, 128
 Ambrosius Aurelianus, 254 b
 Amerham, 394 e
 Amphibalus a martyr, 636 f
 Ampthil, 401 d
 Anas a river, 297 a. why so called, 245 c
 Ancafter, 537 b
 Ancafter heath, ibid. d
 Andate or Andates a goddesse among the Britains, 31. 457 e
 Andradswald, 306 c
 Andragathius a traitour drowned himselfe, 83
 Anderida the weald, 329 d
 Anderneffe, 752 e
 Androgeus, Cynobelimus his sonne, the same that Mandrubatius, why so called, 417 e
 Anesty in Hertfordshire, 405 f
 Angel a Province in Dania, 130
 Angels, 610 c
 Ri. Angervil Philobiblos, 381 f
 Angles or Englishmen whence they came, 130
 Anglesey, 671. why so called, 672 c
 conquered by king Edward the first. ibid. d. invaded by Suetonius Paulinus, 49
 Angotby, 545 a
 Angre, 440 b
 Ankam a river, 543 a
 Ankyre the river, 569 c
 Anne wife to King Richard the Second, 297 d
 Anne Bullen mother to Queene Elizabeth, 256 f
 Anna a Christian King, 466 a
 Annius Viterbiensis, 24
 Anselm against Priests marriage, 201 b
 Anty or Antient liberty, 707 a
 Ant or Anton a river, 260 e
 Antivestium, 187
 Anthony, 193

Antoninus Pius Britannicus, 66
 Philosophus, ibid.
 Anubis Latrans, 17
 Apelby, 761 a
 Apennini, 18
 Apollinaris an herbe, 98
 Appropriat Churches what they be, and how many, 161
 Aptorp, 514 e
 Aquila his prophesie, 214 e
 Aquileia the city commended, 83
 Aquitania why so called, 27
 Ara, 21
 Arar, ibid.
 Arar, 20
 Araris a river in France, 694 a
 Arat, 20
 Arbeia, 769 c
 Arches a court, 181
 Archbishop of Canterbury, 136
 Archbishops three in Britaine, 155. in England two, 160
 Arconfield, 618 a
 Archdeacons, 222 e
 Archdeacons in England how many, 161
 Archigubernius, 66
 Arduwy, 665 e
 Areol, 594 e
 Are a river, 693 f. why so called, 694 a
 Arians what they were, 81
 Arelate, 21
 Aremorica, 19
 Arfist Bishop of East England, 471 f
 Arden forest, 358 b
 Arden a forest in Warwickshire, 565 c
 Arders a family, 604 b
 Argentons, 406 d. 489 e
 Arians condemned, 77
 Arianisme in Britaine, 78
 Ariconium, 618 d
 Arifobulus mentioned by Saint Paul, in Britaine, 68
 Arlech castle, 665 e
 Armanthwaite, 777 f
 Armatura what they were, 783
 Armes of Ailsburies, 395 d
 Armes of Will. de Albeny, 320 c
 Armes of the Alfretons Barons, 555 e. of the Bainsards, 271. d
 of the Argentons, 406 d.
 of the Bardolps, 481 e. of the Blewets, 271 d. of the Bowes, 737 b. of the Bohuns, 311 f.
 of Brabant, 820 e. of Charleton Lord of Powis, 663 c. of Colchester, 451 a. of Cusan., 271 d. of Ela Countesse of Salisbury, 249 d. of the Ferrars,

526 a. of Sir Hen. Guildford, 352 b. of Harold, 617 d. of Hollands Knights, 749 d. of Th. Howard Duke of Norfolk, 483 c. Of the first Kings of England of Norman blood, 724. of the Lucies, 768 f. of Lumleys, 742 b. of the Mauleis, 719. of Montfichets, 453
 of the Monthauls, 690 e. of the Mortimers de Attilborough, 473 b. of the Musfards, 555 f. of the Muschamps, 815 c. of Saier Quincy and Roger his sonne, 267
 Armes of the Percies, 768. of the Percies and Lucies, ibid. of Redvers Earles of Denhire, 207 e. of the Scales, 405 e. of the Segraves, 563 f. of the Sturmes, 254 f. of the Lord Seurton, 245 b. of Vaulx, 786 e. of Vermadors, 304 b. of Vesey, 723 a. 722 f. of Viponts, 763. of Warren Earle, 304 b
 Armie of God and Holy Church, Arduwy, 665 e
 Armorica, 19. 12
 Armoric Britons whence they came, 5
 Arnulph of Montgomery conqueror of Penbrochsh. 655 a
 Arrow a river, 565 d
 Arrow a towne, 566 a
 Arthur a British Prince, 128
 Arthurs place of Nativitie and death, 194
 Ap. Arthur a writer, 632 f
 Arthurs battell against Moradred, 194
 Arthurs sepulchre, 227 f
 Arthurs Epitaph, 230 a, b
 Arthurs table, 776 d
 King Arthurs Palace, 221 b
 Artisans or Craftsmen, 177
 Arvandus his children killed, 262 d. 276 a
 Arveragus, 62
 Arundell Earles, 309. 310
 Th. Arundell Baron of Wardour, 245 a. Count of the Empire, ib.
 Arundale, 308 d
 Arundels Knights, 193
 Arwerton, 463 e
 S. Alaph a Bishops See, 679 d
 S. Alaph a goodly and npright man, ibid.
 Alfohes Knights, 543 a
 Ascor, 396 a
 Ashbie Mares, 507 b
 Ashbie

The Table of England.

Ashbie de la Zouch, 519 a
 Ashburnham, 317 e
 Ashburne in the Peake, 553 d
 Ashle manour, 481 f
 Ashdown, 442 f
 Ashridge, 395 a
 Ashford, 335 d
 Ashwell, 406 n
 Ashwell Thorp, 472 d
 Askerton castle, 782 f
 Askes a family, 729 f
 Asserius a learned Monk, 378 c
 Assises what they are, 445 e
 Astbury, 608 f
 Astley castle, 609 b
 Astleies Barons, ibid. b
 Astleies a noble family, 581 d
 Astleis Knights, 217 a
 Astons a family, 584 e
 Th. Aston the first head-schoole-master of Shrewsbury, 596 b
 Astroites a stone, 536 c
 Astwell, 505 e
 Athelney, 224 b
 Athelwold murdered by Edgmr, 262 b
 Atbyrston, 569 d
 Attrebatii, 278
 Attacotti, 79. 127
 Attal-Sarisin, 185
 Attilbridge, 473 d
 Attilburgh, ibid. b
 Attila the scourge of God, 197 a
 Atton a place and family, 722 b
 Atvallon an Island, 125 e
 Aubrey a family, 628 e
 Audience court, 181
 Audre causey, 459 d
 Audre, 492 e
 S. Audre or Etheldreda, ibid. f
 S. Andries Liberties, 493 c
 Avenon, 258 d
 Aven a river in Hantsire, 258 e
 Avens a family, 485 d
 Averbam or Aram a place, 549
 Aufon river, See Nen.
 Augusta, See London.
 Augusta what they be, 424 d
 Augustus Cesar intended a voyage into Britaine, 39. he neglected Britaine, ibid.
 Augustine Apostle of the English nation, 336 d. 135. where entered, 337 f. S. Augustines crosse, 342 a. Augustines oke, 578 d. e
 Aulus Atticus laine, 61
 Aulus Plantius sent into Britaine, 40. his exploits there, 41
 Mercate Auln, 269 a
 Awdleys or Aldeleghs, Barons, 583 e

Henry Awdley, 583 f. 584 a
 James Lords Awdley, 584 a
 Awdley end, 452 a
 Baron Awdley of Walden, 452 d
 Awkenbury, 501 c
 Awkland, 738 d
 Aulaf the Dane adopted, 261 f
 Aulmarie Earles, 715 b
 Auldy, 709 e
 Aulcester, 566 b
 Aulion castle, 587 c
 Avon a river in Somersetshire, 236 c
 Avon what it signifieth, 358 a
 Avon a river in Wiltshire, 242 a
 Avon river the lesse, 515 b. 517
 Avon a river in Wales, 665 e
 Avon-well, 515 b
 Aure a yellow or golden colour, 26
 Aurelius Conanus a tyrant, 113
 Aurelius Ambrose, 259 a
 Auvanches or de Abrincis, 349 b
 Austley castle, 588 e
 Aust-clive, 363 d
 S. Aulins Church in Canterbury, 337 e
 Ax a river, 206 f
 Axan minister, ibid. f
 Axelholme an Isle, 544 b
 B
 Ablac, 373 c
 Babithorp, name of a place and family, 710
 Babithorps father and sonne, ib. b
 Bacons a family, 405 f
 Sir Nicholas Bacon, L. Keeper, 461 f
 John Baconthorpe the resolute Doctor, 479 b
 Bad, 21
 Baddbury hill, 216 e
 Baddeley, 607 e
 Bartholmew Lord Badilmeere, 331 d
 Badesley, 564 d
 Baggington, 562 e
 Bagots, 586 e
 Bagmere Poole, 609 b
 Baines or Bathes much used, 732
 Bainsards castle in London, 424 b
 Bainsards, 24. f
 Basilth Colledge in Oxford, 381 c
 Baine a river, 727 f
 Bainhams, 359 a
 Baintbrig, ibid.
 Baskewell a river, 557 b
 Bala a towne, 666 e
 Baldach, 473 f
 Baldoock, 406 c
 Baldwin a Justice, 395 e
 Baldwin le Pertour, 464 b

Balshall a Commander of the Templars, 566 d
 Bamborow, 813 e
 Bampfilds a family, 203 e
 Bampton, 207 b
 Ban a river in Lincolnshire, 541
 Banbury, 376 a
 Banchor or Bangor Monastirie, 603 a
 Bannavenna, that is, Wedon, 508
 Bannes Downe, 234 b
 Bandogs or Mastives, 434 e
 Banerets, what title of Gentrie, 171 a
 Baram Down, 345 a
 Barangi, 154
 Barbacan in London, 433 d
 Bard, 4. 14. 15
 Bard, 19
 Bardolps Lords, their tenures of certaine Lands, 302 d
 Bardus, 19
 Bardney Abbey, 540 f
 Bardolps Barons, 481 e. 548 f
 Bariden a river, 473 d
 Barkley Barons, 229 a
 William Vicount Barkley Earle of Nottingham, 551 e
 Barklow, 452 e
 Barkshire, 129
 Barkway, 405 f
 Barnard castle, 736 e
 Saint Barnard Colledge in Oxford founded, 382 b. re-edified, 383 b
 Barley a towne and family, 405 f
 Barley the best, 485 b
 Barnwel Abbey, 487 f. Castle, 510 c
 Barnes, 415 e
 Barnes field, 415 d
 Barry an Island, 643 a
 Barries Vicounts in Ireland, 643
 Baringtons a family, 453 d
 Barington Hall, ibid.
 Bara what it signifieth, 168
 Barons what degree of honor, ib.
 Baronies many in Northumberland, 799 c
 Barons to Count-Palatine, 601
 Barons to the Count Palatine of Chester, 612 a. their office, ib.
 Barow, 521 b
 Barows or Burrows, 255 b
 Barton upon Humber, 542 f
 Baruch a holy man, 643 a
 Bascaads or Baskets, 491 e
 Baslica, 743 f
 Basile, 473 f
 Basing, 269 b. the honour of the Barons S. John Poinings and Powlets, 464 b

X x x x 2 Basing

The Table of England.

Basing Stoke,	269 b	Beauforts Dukes of Sommerfet,	414 c	Bellafse a family,	723 b
Basing Werk,	680 b	Beaulieu,	260 b	Bellers a noble family sometime,	522 f
Bakervills worthy knights,	620 c	Beaumanour parke,	521 d	Bellotmadrus,	691 d
Bassets a notable familie,	581 f	Beaumarish,	672 d	Benefician, what towne,	478 f
Bassets of Wellesdon,	514 d	Beaumeris,	594 a	Benedictine Monks,	226 d
Bassets of Brailesford,	553 d	John Beaumont the first Vicount		Benington,	407 f
Baston,	21	in England,	521	S. Benno,	680 c
Batable ground,	782 a	Beaumonts of Cole Orton aunci-		S. Bennaventa's Wedon,	508 c d
Batean,	21	ently and highly descended,	519	S. Bennit in the Holme an Ab-	478 c
Batersey,	303 a	Beaumont a family in Yorkeshire,	693 a	Bengley,	815 b
Batherton,	607 e	Rob. Beaumont of Pont Ando-		Ben-Gorion,	125
Bath gate,	557	mar Earle of Mellent and of		Bensford a family,	407 f
Bath Earles,	235 a	Leceister,	523 c	Bensbury for kyebensbury,	302 f
Bath Knights, 172. their dub-	ibid.	his race or progenie,	ibid. e	Benson,	388 d
Bath Citie, 233 b. the hot Wa-	ibid.	Beauvoir or Belvoir castle,	536 b	Bentley,	463 e
ters thereof,	ibid.	Beauvoir or Belvoir vale,	535 d	Bere park or Bean park nere to	
Battell Bridge, alias Stanford		Bebba,	813 f	Durham,	741
Bridge,	709 e	Bebham,	ibid. e	Bericus a travour to Britaine,	40
Battell Abbey founded,	317 b	Ant. Bec or Beck Bishop of Dur-		Berengarius le Moigne, that is,	
Battell of the Standard,	724 a	ham. nutrusty to his Ward,	328 a. 723 a	Monke,	510 e
Battell field,	596 c	Tho. Becket slaine by Courtiers,	337 b	Berkhamsted,	414 c
Battell at Nevils crosse,	741 b	Becco,	20	Bermingham or Bremicham, a	
Battell at Solon Mosse,	782 a	Beda, 6. a learned Englishman,	137	towne and family,	567 b
Battell a towne,	317 c	Beda venerabilis,	744 a	Bermondsey Abbey,	434 b
Bauchade,	19	Bedw.	19	Bernack,	514 e
Baydes a family in Essex,	426 b	Beddington,	392 e	Benners a family,	405 d
Bawdsey haven,	465 d	Bedfordshire,	399	Bernicia,	817 a. 797 b
Beachy point,	313 d	Bedford towne,	ibid. e	Bernwood,	393 a. 395
Beacons,	272 d	Bedford Lords, Earls and Dukes,	402 f	Berabdon or Baradon,	525 f
Beavons of Southampton,	250 c	John Duke of Bedford his style		Berofus confuted,	10
Beamsfleet,	441 b	and monument,	403 a	Berry by Wicomb,	393 c
Beare the badge of the Earles of		Bedford,	408 a	Berfaple,	208 b
Warwicke,	570 b	Bedingfeild a place and family,	468 b	Bertelin an Eremitte,	584 d
Beafield,	695 a	De la Beech Knights,	282 e	Berwick towne,	816 c
Beachamps,	399 d	Beefon a castle and family,	607 b	Berwick what they be,	ibid. f
Henry Beauchamp Earle of War-		Saint Bees,	756 a	Berwic in Elmet,	696 b
wicke his stile. 570 b. Duke,		Saint Bega a devout Irish woman		Bery,	594 d
also of Warwicke,	ibid.	ibid.		Bery Pomerie,	202 a
John Beauchamp Baron of Ked-		Beichiad,	19	Betula or Betulla,	19
dermister,	574 b	Belerium what cape,	1	Betheny, See Stafford.	
Richard Beauchamp Earle of		Belge in Gault and Britaine,	219 b. whence so named, ibid. d	Betony,	20
Warwicke, 563 c. his tombe		King Belem his Habergeon,	11	Beverley a towne,	711 d
and epitaph,	564 a	Robert de Belesmo rebellte,	599 b	John of Beverley,	ibid.
Beauchamps Barons, Lords		591 d. a cruel man,	599 b	Beverly in Tivy river what crea-	
Brooke,	223 f	Bellima a ftuarium, a frith,	752	tures they be,	657 e
William Beauchamp the blind		Bellister castle,	799 e	Beverston castle,	364 d
Baron,	574 b	Belin, Melin & Phelin, all one,	98	Bewfes of Lancashire,	745 c
Beauchamps court,	565 f	Belingsgate in London,	423 c	Bevils a family,	192. 562 a
Beauchamp Baron of Powich,		Belinnutia,	98	Bezants or Bezantines what	
Beauchiefte Abbey,	555 e	Belinus a god, ibid. what it signi-		they be,	421 a
Beauchiffte,	313 d	feth,	391 e	Bibroc,	286 d
Beaudley,	573 e	Belleland or Biland,	723 b	Bie what it signifieth,	543 b
Beaufert,	585 a			Beglefwade,	401 c
Sir Thomas Beaufoe of ancient				Bigod, the name of Rollo the	
descent,	564 e			Norman,	144
John de Beaufort Earle of				Hugh Bigod, Lord chiefe ju-	
Sommerfet, 230. refuseth the				stice of England,	482 c
title of Marquess Dorset,	217 d			Hugh Bigod Earle of Norfolk,	482 b
				Bigod, the name of hypocrites	and

The Table of England.

and superstitious persons,	144	Blith,	551 a	Botereux a family,	566 b
Bigods a family,	405 d	Blith a river,	586 d. 466 e	Botherwic,	544 d
Bigots a family,	633 c	Blithborough,	486 e	Botontines,	515 d
Bigrames a family,	501 c	Blithfield,	586 e	Bottlebrig or botolph Bridge,	502
Billesdon,	812 f	Chayles Blount or Blunt. Lord		Boughton,	510 a
Biland or Belleland,	723 b	Montjoy Earle of Devonshire,		Bovium,	643 c
Th. Billing Lord chiefe Justice		of the Kings bench,	505 e	Bourchiers Earls of bath,	598 c
Bindon,	212 b	Blounts or Blunts of Kinlet,	574		207 e
Binchefer,	738 e	why so called,	591 b	Bourchier Baron of Berners,	405 d
Binchefer penie,	ibid.	Blunts Barons Montjoy,	555 e	Bourchiers de Berners Lords,	472 d
Binbrige Isle,	274 a	Gilbert Blund,	461 d	Bourchiers an honorable family	450 d
Birdlip bill,	365 f. 366 c	Boadicia or Bunduica wife to			450 d
Pirinus the Apostle of the West-		King Prasutagus,	49	Bowes or Bough a worshipfull fa-	
Saxons,	384 c	Boadicia, or Bunduica a noble		mily, 731 c. 737 a. why so cal-	
Birling,	332 d	and warlike Lady,	406 e. 51	led,	732 e
Birthin a river,	636 c	is vanquished and poisoneth		Bowlan forest,	750 b
Birtpore or Buriport,	210 e	herselfe,	52	Bowletors a family,	465 b
Biscaw wonne,	188	Bocking a fat Personage,	446 a	Boxley,	332 c
Bisham,	286 b	Bofton Malherb,	331 b	Brache,	19
Bishops of Durham,	735	Bodine what he conceiveth of the		Bradenham,	393 e
Bishops of Bath and Wells,	232 c	name Britaine,	5	Brace,	19
Bishops castles,	189 e	Sir Th. Bodley a singular bene-		Briti,	ibid.
Bishops Thorps,	707 c	factor to Oxford Librarie,	382 c	Bridburn a place and family,	553
Bishops whether they might hold		Bodman, 191. Bodmarie,	679 c	Bradford,	244 f
castles,	244 c	Boeth what it signifieth,	732 c	Bradwardin a place,	618 c
Bishops gate in London,	423 d	Bobuns Earles of Hereford, &c.	621 e	Bradwardin the profound Doctor,	618 c
Bishops their place and preceden-		Humsfey de Bebum Earle of Ef-			
cy in England,	161	sex,	454	Bradstons Ancestors of Vicount	
Biffmed,	401 b	Hugh de Bolebec,	396 a	Montacute and Barons Went-	
Biffets an honourable familie,	245. 574 a	Bolebec Baronic,	809 c	worth,	364 a
Bittlefen,	396 d	Bolebec Castle,	396 a	Braibroke castle,	1512 e
Bitumen, that is, Sea cole,	735 c	Boleringum,	187	Braibrookes Barons,	ibid. e
Bitwell castle,	808 c	Bollin a river,	610 b	Brackley,	505 d
Biban castle,	537 a	Bollingbrooke,	341 f	Brackbrook,	329 e
Bitbric Lords of Gloucester,	368	Bolfover Castle,	556 c	Brakenbake,	724 e
Bizacium in Africke,	478 e	Bonafus a notorius bibber hang-		Brackenburies a family of good	
Blackborne,	752 d	est himselfe,	71	note,	737 e
Blackburne shire,	ibid. e	Boniface, See Winifride.		Brambles,	274 e
Blacklow hill,	564 d	Bonvill Lord, 206 c. 231 b. his		Brampton,	783 a
Blacklead,	767 b	calamities,	ibid. c	Bramton,	815 b
Blackemere a Baronic,	598 d	Bolton castle,	729 a	Bramton Brian castle,	619 c
Blackemore forest,	213 f	Borradale,	767 a	Bramsthariver,	815 b
Blackemore,	717 b	Bone-well,	619 f	Bancaster,	408 a
Blacketaile Point,	213	Bonhommes a religious order,	395 a	Brian de Brampton,	619 c
Blackewater a Creeke,	443 e	Bonhommes Colledge,	244	Brand,	568 e
Rob. Blanchmains,	518 b	Bonium,	602 e	Brandons a family Suffolke,	465 e
Blackney,	479 a	Booth a family,	610 c	Branspeth castle,	739
Mercate Blandford,	215 c	Borfarfe alias Brentwood,	442	Brannonium,	575 a
Blatum Bulgium,	775 c	Borwick,	809 d	Charles Brandon Duke of Suff-	
Bleau Leveney castle,	628 d	Borroviens,	ibid.	folke,	470 c
Blatberwicke,	514 b	Bofcastle,	199	Brannodunum,	480 a
Blechindon,	377 a	Bofham,	306 f	Bransford or Bensford-bridge,	517 e
Blencarn a brooke,	763 c	Bofoke a place and family,	609 d	Brafen weapons,	188
Blendenjop a place and family,	800 b	Boston,	532 c	Brafen nose Colledge in Oxford,	383 a
Bleffium,	617 c	burnt and ransacked,	532 d		
Blicking,	478 b	Borhal castle,	812 d	Brafmatias, a kinde of Earth-	
Blesing,	399 d	Borworth towne,	518 d	quake,	620 e
Blewets,	224 c	Bosworth field,	ibid. d	Bray, 286 d. Lord Bray, 297 b.	
Blisworth,	507 a	Botereux castle,	195	Tha	

The Table of England.

The breach by Greenwich, 328 a	Earle of Bridgewater, 225 c	Britans of Wales and Cornewale, 112. 113
Nicolas Breakspere, That is, Pope Adrian the forth, 414 f	Bridkirk, 768 b	Britans send Embassadors to the Saxons, 128
Breakspere a place and family, 419 b	Briewer Baron, 222 e	Britans retain their ancient language, 23
Brechanus his 24. daughters all Saints, 627 a	Bristol or Bristow, a Citie, 237 a	Britans long lived, 555 b
Breden forest, 224 a	the reason of the name, <i>ibid.</i>	Britans painted themselves blue with wood, 20
Bredon hills, 577 e	Bret the Primitive of the Britains, 26	Britans maners and customes out of Julius Caesar, 29. out of Strabo, <i>ibid.</i> out of Diodorus Siculus, 29. out of Pomponius Mela, <i>ibid.</i> out of Cernelius Tacitus, 30. out of Dio Nicæus, <i>ibid.</i> out of Herodian, <i>ibid.</i> out of Pliny, 31. out of Solinus, <i>ibid.</i>
Breedon a village, <i>ibid.</i>	Britch, what it signifieth, 26	Britannica the herbe. See Scorby or Scurvigrasse, 428 d
Breertons a family, 608 f. their death foretold, 609 b	Britaine or Britannie whence it tooke name, 27. why late discovered and knowne, 33. mentioned by Lucretius, first of any Latin writer, <i>ib.</i> twice Schoole-Mistres to France, 138	Britanniciani what they were, 111
Breerton a place, 609	Britaine the great, that is, England, 155	Briten hui, 40
Brechnockshire, 627	Britaine the lesse, that is, Scotland, <i>ibid.</i>	Brithin a kind of drinke, 5
Brechnock towne, 638 a	Britaine how divided, 154. 155	British tongue full of Greeke words, 28
Brechnock meere, <i>ibid.</i>	Britaine what names it hath, 1. the site thereof, 1. the forme of it, <i>ibid.</i> why called another world, 24. the division and compasse of it, 24	British States submit to Caesar, 37
Brechnock Lords, <i>ibid.</i>	Britain hath sundry names, 23	British Isles mentioned by Polibi- us, 33
Brechnock made a shire, 677 e	the position thereof in respect of the Heavens, 4. how fruitful and commodious, 3. her first inhabitants, 4. the name, 5	Of British Perle a breastplate, 38
Bremenium, 803	Britain under what signe or Planets, 182	British names import colours, 26
Brember castle, 313 c	Britain portraited in womans habite, 24. the Roman world, 45	British townes what they were, 29
Bremetonacum, 753 c	discovered to be an Island, 61	Britwales or Welshmen, 113
Bremicham or Bermingham a town and familie, 567	a province Presidial, 62. How it was governed under and after Constantine the Great, 62	Briva what it signifieth, 414
Bren what it signifieth, 677	76. how it became subject to the Romans, 62. infected by Barbarians, 79. brought to civilitie, 63. called Romania, and Romaine Ile, 88	Broekers knights, 406 f
Bremen, 677	Britains ruin and downfall, 107	Brocovum, 762 d
Brennus a renowned King, 33	Britaine and France whether ever conjoynd, 346 a	Broge, 19
Bretnham, 463 b	Britains came first out of Gaul, 11. 12	Brokesby a place, 522 f. a family, 523 a
Bretton a river, <i>ibid.</i>	Britans in Religion language and maners agree with the Gauls, 13. 14. 15. 16. 17	Brome, 467 f
Brent a river, 421	Britans employed by Caesar in base services, 38	Bromesgrave, 574 e
Brent, See Falkes de Brent.	Britans generally rebell, 49. their grievances, <i>ibid.</i>	Bromesfield, 677 a
Brentmarsh, 230 e	Britains cast off the Romans yoke, 86	Wolter Bronscorn Bishop of Ex- cester, 190
Brentford, 421	Britains how they may derive their descent from the Tro- ians, 88	Brookes a family of ancient de- scend, 611 a
Brentwood, 442 a	Britains in Armórica, 110	Brooke, L. Cobham, 329 c
Brentwell or Brounswell, 421		Barons Brooke, 244 c
Breos Barons, 113 c. 201 f		Bronholme, 478 e
Breoses a family, 553 d		Brougham, 762 d
Will. de Breos, or Brans, a strong Rebell, 629 b		Brotherton, 695 b
Breoses Lords of Brechnock, 623		Sir Anthonie Browne first Vi- count Montacute, 482 b
Brettons a family, 555 b		Sir Ant. Browne Marquesse Montacute, 222 d
Bretts, 128 f		Broughton, 376 e
Brenfais, 138 f		Broughton in Hantsire, 262 c
Brian, who so called, 117		Brundenels a family, 514 b
Bridlington, 714 d		Bruges Baron Chandos, 365 b
John of Bridlington, <i>ibid.</i>		Brusa a family, 442 b
Brewood, 583 a		Burg-morse
Bricols, 400 e		
Bridge Casterton, 534 b		
Bridford by Nottingham, 548		
Brig for Glauisford, 543 a		
Brigantes in Britaine rebelled, 43		
Brigantes, 685. whereof they took name, <i>ibid.</i>		
Brill for Burhill, 395 b		
Breint Fitz Conty, 282 a		
Brients, 202 c. d		
Brients Barons, 215 d		
Brinlo, 588 f		
Briensford, 215 e		
Brimsfeld, 365 f		
Bridgewater, 225 a		

The Table of England.

Burg-morse or Bridg-North, 591 b	Burnels a family, 591 f	Caer Cysteineeth, 668 d
Robert Brus the noble, 591 b	Burrowes what they are, 515 e	Caerdiff, 642 d
Baron Brus of Skelton, 720 c	Burrowe banks, 452 e	Caerfise, 661 e
Brufes a noble family, 526 b	Burrow hill, 522 a	Caer Gai, 666 a
Brutus 5. why so called, 8	Burrowe bridge, 701 a	Caer Gaby, 673 a
Bucken, that is, Beech trees, 393	Burrow a town, 522 b	Caer Guortigern, <i>ibid.</i>
George Buck, 22 d	Baron Burrow or Burgh, 303 f	Caerhean, <i>ibid.</i>
Buchonia and Buckenham, 393 a	Burrough a towne and family, 522	Caer Leon, <i>ibid.</i>
Buckinghamshire, 393	Burrough of Southwarke, 303 d	Caermardenhire, 649
Buers a family, 463 b	Burthred the last King of Mer- cians, 554 a	Caernarvonshire, 667
Walter Buc and his race, 812 b	Burse of London or Roiall Ex- change, 439 b	Caernarvon towne, 668 e
Buckingham town, 396 c. Earles, 397 d	Burgh upon Sands, 775 e	Caer Palladur, 270 a
Buckhurst Baron, 627 e	Burgundians brought into Bri- taine, 71	Caer Phillicastle, 642 a
Buelth, 497 d	Burton Lazars, 522 a	Caer Segonte, 270 a
Bulchobandes, 79	Burton upon Trent, 586 b	Caer Vorrán, 800 e
Buldewas or Bildas, 593 e	Burley castle, 490	Caer wick, 633 d
Bulkley a towne and family, 607	Buriall of men with legs a crosse, 808 a	Caer wisk, 679 d
Anne Bullen or Bollen Marchia- nesse of Penbroch, 655 e	Bury Abbey, 460 e	Caibaignes a family, 395
Bullen or Bollen Earle of Wilt- shire, 256 e	Bustlers a family, 489 e	Caius Caesar ment to invade Bri- taine, 40. his vanity, his voi- age thither, 41. his triumph over Britaine, 42
Bullen or Bollogne in France, the same that Gessoriacum and Bonota, 348 d	Bustles or Busties a family, 535	Cainsham, 236 e
Th. Bullen Earle of Wiltshire di- ed for sorrow, 257	Busy Gap, 800 f	Calaterium nemus, 723 d
Bulleum Silurum, 627 e	Butlers of Wem, 592 c	Caishtoberry, 415 a
Bulley or Busley a noble Norman, 551 a	Butler of Woodhall, <i>ibid.</i> c	Calc. i. lime, Calcaria, 699 a
Bulverith, 316 e	Butler Earle of Wiltshire, 256 d	Calder the river, 691 a
Buly castle, 761 c	Butlers a family, 748 b	Caldwell, 731 c
Bulnesse, 775 c	Butlers or Botelers of Ireland, 752 f	Caledonians make head against the Romans, 56
Bumsted Helion, 452 a	Butterby, 739	Caloughdon, 568 b
Bungey, 468 b	Butjet, 20	Calphurnius Agricola, 66
Burdos or Burdelois, 473 a	Butlington, 662	Calshot or Caldshore, 260 d
Burford in Shropshire, 590 f	Burtonwell, 557 c	Calveley a place and worthy fa- mily, 608 d
Burnt Elly, 463 d	Byliricay, 442 e	Sir Hugh Calveley a valiant knight, 608 d
Burgesses, 177		Callais no ancient towne, 348 b
Burgh under Stanemore, 760		Calthrops a family, 463 e
Burgh castle, 468 e		Cam a river, why so called, 486 a
Burgh Cleve, 72 c		Cam, 21
Burgi what they were, 760 f		Camale, 221 b
Burly a faire place, 526 b		Camale townes, <i>ibid.</i> c
Burons an ancient family, Burrium, 636 c		Camalodunum, 43. lost, 50
S. Buriens in Cornwal, 188. why so called, <i>ibid.</i>		Cambodunum 449. Camb-alan- river, 194
Burnel Baron, 330 c		Camborithum, 486 a
Burcester, 337 b		Camden or Camp den, 364 f
Burdet, 566 c		Camden the Author his opinion of the name of Britania, and the originall of Britans, 9
Bunbury for Boniface burry, 607		Cambridge in Gloucestershire, 362 c
Burghers alias Burgwalsh, 320		Cambridgeshire, 485
Bartholomew Burgwalsh a Baron 320 b		Cambridge defaced and burnt, 488 b
Burghley, 514 e		Cambridge town and Universtie, 486 e
Burgh, 727 f		When it became an Universtie, 489 a
Burghsted, 442 e		Camillus a God, 446 e
Burgh or Burrow Barons, 543 f		Camell
Burne a Barony, <i>ibid.</i>		

The Table of England.

Camell ariver,	194	Caries,	202 e	Castor,	542 d	
Camelsford,	ibid.	R. Carew,	193	Castadune or waterfalls,	759 f	
Candish or Cavendish,	554 b	Carew Baron of Clopton,	565 b	Castellan Denis,	194	
Camois Barons,	312 e	Careston,	517 c	Cateby of a towne,	508 b. an ancient family, ib. tainted by Rob. Cateby of Albion Saint Leger, ibid. 431 d	
Candocus see Cadocus.		Carlisle, 778 d. Old Carlisle,		Catherin Hereticke,	84	
Cambridge Earles,	495 e	773 b. Carlisle had one Earle,		Catlidge,	498 b	
Camvills a family,	569 a			Catmose a vale,	525 f	
Camus, 21. Candetum,	20	Carnabies a family,	808 f	Caterna,	18	
Cangi a people in Britaine,	611 b	Carthimandua wife to Venusius a stout Lady, 48. her loose life and adultery,	53	Caterua,	ibid.	
231 a. subdued,	43	Carmelite Friars, 351 e. brought first into England,	813 d	Cattienchiani,	391	
Cank-wood,	583 e	Carthmell,	755 a	Caticark,	730 c, d	
Canterium, 19. Cantroed,	20	Caribec,	121	Caturactonium,	730 e	
Canterlowes an honorable family,		Carisbrook,	275 c	Caturia,	18	
		Carewell a castle and family,	587	Cauda river,	778 b	
Cantlow,	201 f	Carausius usurper the Empire 72. governeth Britaine well, ib. slain by Allectus,	72	Candebek,	ibid. c	
Th. Cantlow a Bishop and Saint,	619 c	Carus and Carinus Emperours,	73	Sir Will. Cavendish or Candish Baron of Hardwick,	556 a	
Cantium what cape,	1	Carminow,	199	Caves, a family,	515 b	
Canterbury Colledge in Oxford,	381 a	Carrs a family,	815	A Cave wonderfull in Glamorganshire,	643 b	
Canterbury, 336 c. Canterbury Archbishops Primates of Britaine,	338 e	Carr a river,	210 c	Cause castle,	592 e	
Cantried what it is,	650 b	Carmonth,	210 b	Causeies or highwaies in Britaine,	63. what names they have in divers authors, 64. by whom and how they were made, 64. in Italy and else where,	64
Cantried Bitham,	ibid.	Carram,	815 a	Cawood,	707 d	
Cantried Maur,	650 c	Carvills a family,	481 a	Caxon,	485 c	
Can a river,	759 c. 445 d	Carvilins,	37	Cecily Nevill, mother to King Edward the fourth,	511 b. an unfortunate Lady, ibid. b. c. her tomb subverted, 510 c. Rob. Cecil Baron of Essendon, Viscount Cranburn, 217 c. Rob. Cecil Earle of Salisbury,	250 e
Cancefields a family,	755 d	Henry Cary Baron of Hunsden,	408	Thomas Cecil Earle of Excester	206 a	
Candale or Kendale a Barony,	759 c	his high and noble descent,	409	Sir Wil. Cecil baron Burghley,	514 e	
Canel Cole,	735 d	Sir Edmund Cary knight of high descent,	414 e	Cedros, Cesar,	18	
Canonium is Chelmsford,	445 d	Casibellinus Generall of the Brittaines armie,	36	Centuries, see Hundreds.		
Cantabri and Scythians of like manners,	121	Cassibellinus or Cassiavelanus encountereth Cesar and the Romans, 37. is repulsed, ibid. treateth about peace with Cesar,	37	Celce, whence derived,	20	
Canvey Isle,	441 a	Cassibellinus or Cassiavelanus encountereth Cesar and the Romans, 37. is repulsed, ibid. treateth about peace with Cesar,	37	Cerdick a warlike Saxon,	477 d	
Cantaber a Spaniard founder of Cambridge Universitie,	487 a	Caster,	473 d	Cerdick land,	ibid.	
Canutus his Apophth.	261 e	Caster in Huntingdonshire,	502 a	Cerdick shire,	ibid.	
Canvills a family,	515 c	Castigand an high hill,	501 d	Cerafriz,	184	
Capgrave his legends,	646	Castle in the Peake,	ib. 502 a	Cerealis vanquished 50. see conquered the Brigantes,	54	
Capitatio a Tribute,	100	Castle Acre,	481 c. 557 d	Cerne Abbey,	212 b	
Caradauc Urichfas,	590 c	Castle Alby,	509 e	Cerryg Drudion,	675 c	
King Caradock, 633 e. f. delivered unto Ostorius,	590 a. taken prisoner by Queen Casticimana, 44. his undaunted courage,	Castle Camps,	488 f. 489 f	Cestef an addition to cities,	517	
		Castle Cary,	606 b	Cestef Over,	ibid.	
Caranton,	220	Castle Coch,	662 b	Cley-Cester,	518 b	
Cardiganshire, 657. Lord thereof,	658 c	Castle Colwen or of Maud in Colewent,	623 b	Chad a famous Bishop of Lichfield,	585 e. 441 a	
Cardigan a towne,	657 e	Castle Cress by Lichfield,	582 e	canonized a Saint,	ibid.	
Carreg castle,	650	Castle Comb,	243 c	Sir Thomas Chaloner a learned knight,	721 d	
Carlston a towne and family,	472 d	Castle Dinas Bran,	677 c	Chamber		
Carews of Surry,	302 c	Castle Dinas,	628 d			
Carews a family,	652 c	Castleford,	695 a			
Carew castle,	ibid.	Castle Gard,	345 a. 201 c			
Carew of Anthony,	198 d	Castle Paine,	623 b			
Carewes a noble family,	202 e	Castle Reeds, 783 b. 793 d. 808				

The Table of England.

Chambers in the forest,	607 a	Chesil a banke or sandrige,	210 b	Civitas or Citie what it signifiesh in Cesar,	417. d
Chamberlaines sometimes Tun-kervils,	389. d	Chesles of the best,	801	Cities by what ceremonies built by Romans,	102
Chamberlainship of England,	489. f	Cheshire,	ibid.	John Clipham a brave warrior,	697. b
Rob. Chamberlain in Ardenbo-bet,	531. c	Conutic Palatine,	601. b	Clare a noble village,	482. a
Champtownes or Camperdowns,	201. c	Chesham bois,	394. f	family of Earles,	ibid. b
John. Chaudas made Baneris,	171. 365. b	Cheshfield 452. c. in Scardale,	556	Clarence, 462. b. Dukes thereof,	ibid.
Chandos Baron,	365. b	Chester Earles,	611. f	Claridon,	240. b
Chariot fight of the Britains,	36	Chester Earle Count Palatine,	612. a. what Barons hee had under him,	Clares Earles of Gloucester,	330
Charing crosse,	432. c	Cheshire made a prin-cipality,	612. f	Richard de Clare his commenda- tion,	416. d
Charles the eight king of France his Apophthegm.	403. a	Chesler, or West-Chester city,	604. e	Earles of Clare whence so stiled,	415. d
Charleston in Worcestershire,	578. b	Chester, and Cheshiremen de- scribed,	602. a	Claudia Rufina, a British Ladie,	62. 68
Charleton Castle,	594. a	Chesters what they are,	793. d	Claudius Cesar honoured as a God in Britaine,	448. b
Charltons Lords of Powis,	ib.	Chester in the wall,	800. f	Claudentum,	261. a
Charlecot a place,	564. f. a family,	Chester upon the street,	742. c	Claudius Cesar first that van- quished the Britains, 45. hee brought the South part of Bri- taine to be a Province,	101
Charwood or Charley forest,	565. a	Little Chester,	554. c	Claudianus Contentus,	341. e
Chavertwood or Charley forest,	521. d	Chesterston under Lime,	583. c	Clavering,	453. b
Charta de Foresta,	293. e	Cheshwoods a family,	399. d	Clavering the name of Fitz Ri- chard,	81. a
Chartet house in London,	433. d	Chevalry court,	190	Claxton,	738. d
Charley castle,	584. f	Chevin,	698. d	Claxtons a family,	ibid.
Chere, a fish,	755. d	Chesviot hills,	812. e	Clay-Hill,	245. d
Chateries or Chetrish,	494. d	Chio, or Chick, the old name of Saint Osth,	451. c	Clemens Maximus an usurper,	341. c
Charmoffe,	747. a	Chidleys,	203. e	Clee Hill,	591. d
Charmsworth,	554. b	Chicheley, Archbishop of Can- terbury,	510. b	Cleres a family,	478. b
Chaucer, our English Homer born at woodstock,	375. f	Chichester, 307. c. Earles of Chi- chester,	ibid. f	Cley brooke,	518. b
Chancombs, a family,	568. e	Chicksand,	401. c	Cliftons a family in Nottingham,	547
Chammonds,	196. b	Chillingham,	815. c	Sir Gervase Clifton, Baron Clif- ton,	502. d
Chancerie,	80	Chilterne 389. c. 393. c. why so called,	ibid.	Cliff a towne,	329. d
Chancellor,	180	Chippenhams,	243. d	Clifford castle,	618. a
Chaworths, a family, 395 e. 555. d descended from Cahors in Quercy,	549. c	Chirke,	677. c	Cliffords Earles of Cumberland,	618. b
Cheapen what it signifiesh,	243. d	Christs Church in Hantsire,	529. c	Cliftons a family, Earles of Lin- colne,	545
Cheardley,	395. f	Christs Church in Oxford,	383. a	Clipsby a town and family,	478. d
Cheasford hundred,	442. c	Christianity flourisheth in Bri- taine,	75. 67. 68.	Clishero castle,	710. a
Cherkley,	587. d	Christs Church in Oxford,	383. a	Clives ad Hoo,	329. d
Cheadle,	587. d	Chrisanthus Bishop of the No- vations,	84	Cleveland,	720. b
Chellington,	581. e	Churne the river,	366. a	Clopton a towne & family,	565
Chelmer river,	444. d	Churnet a river,	587. e	Eloctus Albinus propertor in Britaine,	67
Chelmerford or Chenceford,	445	Cholmondeley a towne and family,	607. d	Cloudesbury,	749. e
Chesley,	421. c	Chopwel a riveret,	735. b	Cluid a river in Wales,	676. c
Cheney Baron of Horsford,	466	Chrif Church in Canterbury,	337. b	Cluid a river,	ibid. d
Chencies or Chienies an house,	394. a	Cirncester,	366. b	Clun castle,	589. e
Sir Henry Cheiney Baron,	401	Cinqe ports, 318. a. which they be,	324	Clun or Colun, a river,	ibid. e
Chepstow, 633. b. Lords thereof ibid. c	ibid. c	Citurnum,	806. b	Clyto, that is, the Prince, 164. an addition given to all the Kings Somes,	ibid.
Cherry trees brought into Bri- taine,	324. b	Cimbric Chersonesus,	129	T y y y y	Chobersburg;
Cheriford,	258. e	Citizens,	177		
Cherifey, 294. the monastery whereof founded,	294. d	Cisbury,	312. d		
Chornel the river,	373. b. his head,	Chiltern Monkes,	295. a		
	507. e	Civilis a deputy in Britaine,	80		

The Table of England.

Cnobersburg,	468.e	Calne a towne,	ibid.	Constantine (Chlorus) ridden by	300.c
Cnouts or Canuts delf,	501.b	Coln Engain,	ibid.	Constantine of Usurpers, 73. elected	504
Cobham towne,	329.c	Colepepers a family,	526.b	Emperor, 74. espoused Helena	661.b
Cobham Barons,	ibid.b	Colonies,	703.a	mother of Constantine the	32
Lords Cobham of Sterborow,	303.e	Colonie what it is,	448.a	great, 74. puttest her away,	614.500
Coc, a river,	696.b	Colwils,	537.a	ibid. weddeth Theodora, ib. a	184
Coch or Cocciu,	19	Columbe a river,	203.a	godly Emperour, ibid. died at	787.a
Coch what colour,	26	Columbrton,	ibid.	Torke, ibid. buried there,	467.f
Coccium,	745.f	Saint Columbs,	193		703
Cockar a river,	767.f	Comata,	20	Constantine the Great Emper,	74
Cockington,	202.e	Comati,	ibid.	his warlike exploits, 75. ad-	75
Cockley Chappell,	745.f	Comb what it signifieth,	207.b	vanceth Christian religion, 75	198.c
Cockscies a worshipfull family,	574.a	Comb Marton,	20.a	proclaimed Emperour in Torke,	184
Codanus Sinus, that is, the Oost	141	Comb,	21	703. c. f. his renowned titles,	184
Sea,	555.d	Comb Abbey,	569.a	76. first entisuled Dominus	114
Codenor castle,	603.c	Comb appointed between Hen-	ibid.	Nolter, 76. taxed for subver-	383.a
Canobies what they are,	207.c	rie of Lancaster and Thomas	ibid.	sing the Roman Empire, ibid.	168
Cogans,	446.a	Adowbray duke of Norfolk,	ibid.	altereth the state of the go-	186
Cogeshal a towne,	446.b	428. f. Betweene Roger Bi-	ibid.	vernment, ibid.	188
Cogeshal a family,	446.b	shop of Salisbury, and William	ibid.	Constantine the younger ruler	729
Coine antique of Emilianus &	643.e	Montacute Earle of Salisbu-	ibid.	Britaine, 77. slaine by his bro-	808.b
Marinus &c.	65.a.d	ry, 249. a. Betweene Edmond	ibid.	ther Constant,	777.f
Coined pieces of embased silver,	88.&c.	and Cnute,	ibid.	Corby Castle,	59.c
Coines British and Roman in	186	Comes Britanniorum,	76	Corftopitum,	ibid.
Britain,	737.d	Comes Littoris Saxonici,	ibid.	Corve a river,	ibid.
Coinage of Tinn,	ibid.	Comes Sacrarum Largitionum, 77	ibid.	Corvedale,	296.a
Coigniers a noble family,	643.e	Comes privatarum,	ibid.	Coway stakes,	329.d
Coigniers Barons,	553.d	Comes a title of dignity,	166	Cowling Castle,	243.e
Coitie,	753.c	Comites what they were at first	ibid.	Colham,	565.e
Cokains a family,	767.f	165. See more in Earles,	ibid.	Coughton,	18
Coker a river,	753.c	Comitatus Cesaris,	ibid.	Covinus,	18
Cokerland Abbey,	ibid.	Cominus Atrebas or of Arras,	ibid.	Custrells, See Esguives.	ibid.
Cokermouth,	767.f	Cominus 35.37	ibid.	Coy-fi a convert Bishop of the	711.c
Sir Edward Cooke Knight, 481.c	753.c	Commodus the Emperour,	66	beathen,	364.c
his commendation,	542.c	Common Ples Court,	178	Cotefwold why so called,	206.a
Cokerington,	394.a	Compton in the Hole,	561.c	Henry Courtney Marquesse of	206.a
Cole a river,	414.a	Sir Henry Compton Baron, 561	ibid.	Excefter,	206.b
Cole a river,	394.a	Sir Henry Compton Baron, 561	ibid.	Courtney knights, 206.b. Earls	207.108.
Cole a river neere Saint Albans,	414.a	Compton Murdock,	565.a	of Denfbire, 207.108. Court-	190.f
Colbrook,	394.a	Composition betweene King Ste-	ibid.	neyes,	313.e
Colepits on fire,	581.d	phen and Henrie Duke of	482.b	Cottons knights,	ibid.
Coles give evidence of ancient	515.d	Anjon,	482.b	Coverts knights,	ibid.
mere-markes,	681.d	Composition of names,	27	Cottons of Cambridge-shire	491.a
Coles-Hull or Hill,	567.c	Concani a Nation in Cantabria,	121	knights,	526.c
Coleshal,	567.c	Condade,	608.e	Cottons of Cunnington,	526.c
Cole Overton, or Cole Orton why	519.c	Condercum,	742.c	Sir Robert Cotton of Cunnington	447.b
so called,	267.a	Condever,	592.a	a learned knight, highly de-	500.d
Colbrand the Giant,	514.d	Congar,	231.d	scended,	562.e
Collimewston,	450.e	Congerbury,	231.d	Covetousnesse complained of.	567.c
Colcheffer,	808.c	Congleton,	608.x	Covetousnesse complained of.	567.c
Colecefter,	419.c	Conquefts a family,	401.e	Coventry,	567.c
Colham,	419.c	Wil. Cannings his monuments,	237.f	Coventry Lords,	568.a
Colingwoods a warlike family,	813.c	Coningsbees, 415.d. a family of	ibid.	Councell of the Marches,	500.e
Collerford,	806.b	good name and worth, 620.d	ibid.	Cow a Towne West and East,	274.c
Colne a river,	450.a	Connisborow castle,	689.f	Cowbridge,	643.c
Charles Coln,	ibid.	Constable Burton,	714.b	Cradiden,	493.a
Wakes Coln,	ibid.	Constables a great family,	ibid.	Cranburn,	217.b
Whites Coln,	ibid.	High Constables of England,	622.e	Creacan or Crey a river,	328.f
				Crete Lade,	241.e
				Credendon or Credon,	396

The Table of England.

Corineus and Gogmagog,	300.c	Creplegate in London,	423.d	Cworw,	20
Coritani,	504	Cressy a family,	550.e	Cwurwens knights,	769.a
Cornden hill,	661.b	Crevequeurs,	331.c	Custodes or capitaines in every	159
Cornelius Nepos, for Joseph of	32	Crawdundale,	761.f	shire,	373.f
Exceftre,	32	Crew a place and notable family,	608.c	Cuthred King of the West Sax-	184
Cornavii,	614.500		203.d	ons,	18
Cornovaille in little Britaine,	184	Creden a river,	694.b	Cyprus called Keraftis,	21
Cornage,	787.a	Credeantun or kirtom,	723.e	Cyrb,	
Cornwallies a family,	467.f	Craven,	21	Cytharistes,	
Cornwales of Burford highly	590.f	Creake in Cliveland,	609.b		
descended,	198.c	Le Craux,	532.f		
Cornwall a dukedome,	184	Creco or Croke a river,	537.b		
why so called,	184	De Croeun or de Credonio a Ba-	302.b		
Cornwallians soone subjected to	114	rony,	497.d		
the Saxons,	186	Crococalana,	526.b		
Corpus Christi Colledge in Ox-	383.a	Croidon,	454.e		
ford,	188	Crommells knights,	479.a		
Court Barons,	729	Sir Th. Cromwell,	619		
Cornishmens manners,	808.b	of Essex,	721.f		
Cornish Chough,	777.f	Cromer,	544.c		
Corham in Coverdale,	59.c	Croft Castle,	608.d		
Corbridge,	ibid.	Crofts knights, an ancient family	126		
Corby Castle,	296.a	Leonard D'acre a Traitor and	608.d		
Corftopitum,	329.d	Rebel,	721.f		
Corve a river,	243.e	Dacor a river,	446.b		
Corvedale,	18	D'airells or D' Hairrells,	690.b		
Coway stakes,	537.e	Daleale castle,			
Cowling Castle,	ibid.	Dalison or D'alanson a family,			
Colham,	565.e				
Coughton,	18				
Covinus,	18				
Custrells, See Esguives.	ibid.				
Coy-fi a convert Bishop of the	711.c				
beathen,	364.c				
Cotefwold why so called,	206.a				
Henry Courtney Marquesse of	206.a				
Excefter,	206.b				
Courtney knights, 206.b. Earls	207.108.				
of Denfbire, 207.108. Court-	190.f				
neyes,	313.e				
Cottons knights,	ibid.				
Coverts knights,	ibid.				
Cottons of Cambridge-shire	491.a				
knights,	526.c				
Cottons of Cunnington,	447.b				
Sir Robert Cotton of Cunnington	500.d				
a learned knight, highly de-	562.e				
scended,	567.c				
Covetousnesse complained of.	567.c				
Coventry,	568.a				
Coventry Lords,	500.e				
Councell of the Marches,	274.c				
Cow a Towne West and East,	643.c				
Cowbridge,	493.a				
Cradiden,	217.b				
Cranburn,	328.f				
Creacan or Crey a river,	241.e				
Crete Lade,	396				
Credendon or Credon,					

D

D Abernoun,	297.b
D'acre Barons of Gillef-	594.c
land,	776.c
Dacre castle,	ibid.
D'acre Baron,	ibid.
Leonard D'acre a Traitor and	784.f
Rebel,	776.c
Dacor a river,	369.e
D'airells or D' Hairrells,	593
Daleale castle,	544.c
Dalison or D'alanson a family,	126
	608.d
Dalreudini,	721.f
Dan or Davena river,	446.b
Danby,	690.b
Danbury,	
Dancastre,	
Danewort, See Watwort.	
Danes in the coasts of Eng-	
land, 139. why so called, 141	
they land in England, &c.	142
Danes massacred by the English,	143
Their detestable sacrifice,	142
Danegelt a tribute,	ibid.
Danmonii, 183. whence their	ibid.
name cometh,	608.e
Daning-ichow a riveret,	243.c
Dantejey a town,	ibid.
Dantejey knights,	508.a
Danrey townes, 508.a. the fort	ibid.
there,	ibid.
Henry Baron Danvers of Dante-	243.c
sey,	553
Darbyshire,	554.c
Darby townes,	558.d
Darby Lords and Earles,	543.e
Darcies de Nolton, &c.	451.c
Darcies Barons de Chich,	328.d
Darent river,	328.e
Darenford or Dartford,	709
Darwent a river and city,	609.a
Davenport or Dampport a place	653.c
and notable family,	653.d
Saint Davids land,	657.b
Saint Davids an Archbishops	
See,	
David bishop refuseth the Pela-	
gians,	
X x x x 2	Davery

The Table of England.

Davery, or de alta rupe, 312 b	Devenbach, 603 c	De Divitis a Monastery, 513 c
Dawnes of Wkinton, forefathers of	Deping, 534 c	Division of Countreies threefold, 154
Delamere, 607 a	Derlington, 737 d	Divils or Devilsburne a river, 808 b
Deben a river, 465 b	Derwen a river, 752 d	Divils or Devils dike, 459, 490 c
Depenham or Dapenham, ibid.	Derwent a river, 553 b	Divils or Devils, 609 c
Dee a river, 594 c. whence so called, 602 c. Dee-mouth, 604 b	Derwent fells, 767 a	Divils or Devils bolts, 701 b
Dee head, 666 b	Deorhirs, 360 a	Divona, 17
Devonshire or Denfshire, 199 a	Deorham or Derham, 364	Divitiacus a mighty Prince, 34
Walter, and Robert Devreux Earles of Essex, 455 a	Dercoma, 20	Dobuni, 354. whence so named, ibid.
John Dee a famous Mathematician, 746 c	Derechel, 21	Dodo or Dudo an English Saxon, 581, 359 c
Decimes, See Tithings.	Dereham, 482 a	Dod of S. Quintins a writer, 142
Decuman a Saint, 220 c. murdered, ibid.	Derchefe, 21	Dodington, 607 e
Decuriones what they were, 771	Dert a river, 201 d	Dogs of Britaine, 263 d. 126. of Scotland, 607 e
Saint Decombs, 220 c	Dertintin, 201 c	S. Dogmacel, or S. Tehwell, 654 d
Deale or Dole, 343 a	Dertmore, 201 d	D'oilies of Hoch Horton Barons, 375 b
Deanries how many in England, 161	Dertmouth, 202 c	Dolofeghle, 665 e
Deanforest, 358 b	Despencer a noble family, 322 b	Dolphins, 164
Deane a place, 514 a	Hugh le Despencer, 267 c	Doomesday booke, 153
Deanes a family, ibid.	Despensers Barons, 636 a	Domitian tormented with envie, 61
Deiffing of Roman Emperours, 70	Devi a river, 258	Don or Dune a river, 689 d
Deiri, that is, Hol-der-Nesse, 136	Devy Bishop of Saint Davids, 226	S. Donats Castle, 643 c
De la-mares, 233 a	Deverril, why so called, 245	Dor a river, 176 d
De la mere forest, 607 a	Dewsborough, 693 a	Dor-macester, 501 e
De-la-prec, a Nunnery, 509 b	Devonshire Earles, 207 c	Dormers knights, 395 f. 396 a
D' eincourts Barons of Blankenay, 535 f	Despote, 164	Dornford, 501 e
Edmund Baron D' eincourts famous to perpetuate his name, 536 a	Dianaes chamber, 426 a	K. Dorne his pence, 212 e
De la cres Abbey, 787 c	Digbys an ancient race, 535 e	Dorchester, 384 b. 212 e
John De la Pole Earle of Lincolnne slaine, 549 a. 388 f	Sir Everard Digby, 535 f	Dorsetshire, 209
De la bere, an ancient family, 620 c	Alane de Dinant Baron of Bur-ton, 510 a	Dorset Marqueses and Earles, 217 c
D'elveseyes, a family, 607 e	Dimeta, 647	Dotterell, a bird, 217 c
Delgovitia, 711 b	Dimocks a worshipfull familie, 535 f. 541 c	Dove or dow a river, 587 b
Delgwe what it signifieth, 711 b	Dimocks the Kings champions, 541 c	Dover, 344 b
De la val Baronic, 811 f	Dilston a town, 808 b	Dover Castle, ibid.
De la ware, 364 c	Dinevor Castle, 649 e	Dovy a river, 665
Dench-worth townes, 281 a	Dinleys or Dingleys a familie, 578 b	Dowbridge upon Watlingstreet, 408 d
Denelage, 153. 159	Dishmarch, 690 e	Dowgate or dourgate in London, 423 c
Dengy, or Dauncing hundred, 443 c	Ditches or fore-fenses in Cam-bridge shire, 490 a	Downes, 313 d
Dengy towne, ibid.	Dinhams a familie, 395 f. 207 b	Downham, 494 c
Dengy Nesse, 352 a	or Dinants, 408 d	Draicot a towne in Staffordshire, and a familie, 587 e
Demington castle, 284 a	Aul. Didius Lieutenant in Bri-tain, 48	Dragons in Barmers, 195
Edward Deny Baron of Wal-tham, 439 b	Dicalidones, or Deucalidones rather why so called, 117	Sir Francis Drake, 200 e. where he born, ibid. his navigation, ibid.
Deniffes, 206 c	Dignities ecclesiasticall how many in England, 161	Draiton, 419 c
Denbigh-shire, 675	Diamonds in Cornwall, 186	Draiton in Shropshire, 594 b
Denbigh towne, 675 d	Diamonds or Diamants neere Bristol, 239 a. b	Draiton Beauchamp, 394 f
Denbigh Baron, 676 b	Didum, 660 f	Draiton Bassett, 581 f
Denbigh made a shire, 677 e	Diganwy, ibid.	Draiton in Northamptonshire, 510 b
Depford, 326 c	Diocesses under every severall Bishop, 160. 161	Drax a village, 707 e
	Disce or Dis a towne, 472 e	Driby a towne and familie, 542 c
	Difentons Gentlemen, 766 f	Driffild, 711 d
	Disart Castle, 680 b	Droit
	Dive a familie, 399 e	

The Table of England.

Droit-wich or Durtwich, 574 e	Durosponte, 491 d	disasterous to Shrewsbury, 598 a
Dropping well, 700 a	Durotriges whence derived, 209	Edelfleda or Elfleda, a noble Ladie, 610 d
Druide, 4, 12, 13, 14. the Etymologie of their name, 14	Du, what colour, 26	Eden a river, 776, 760 c
Druida in Britain did service in war, 49. they held one God, 68	Dutton a place and worthy family, 602 f	Edenburgh frith, 56
Druide feated in Anglesey, 671 d	Dux Britannie, 76	Edgecombs, 193
Drumbough castle, 775 e	Dux or Duke what title of honor, 164. under a Count or Comes, ib.	Edge an hill, 561 b
Druries a familie, 461 e	Dux and Comes the same, ibid.	Edgar Earling or Aethling, 146
Dryflocke, 325 c	Dux or Duke a title of charge, ib.	Edinodon, 244 e
Duddenland, 754 f	a title of honour, 165	Edith virgin, a Saint, 582 b
Dudden a river, 581 c	Dukes investiture or creation, ibid.	Edith King Eadgars daughter, 246 d
Ambrose Dudley Earle of Warwick, 571 a	Dukes hereditary, ibid.	Edith a Lady professed, 395 c
John Dudley Earle of Warwick beheaded, ibid.	E	Edmund of Langley his devise and preface, 510
Dudleys, 280 e	Eadburga a Lady professed religious, 395 c	Edmund Crouchbacke King of Sicily deluded by the Pope, 756 b
John Dudley duke of Northumberland his stile and demeanor, 821 e. f	Eadburton a towne, ibid.	K. Edmunds martyrdome, 467
Rob. Dudley Earle of Leicester, 524 b	Eadclinton or Edmunt, 437 d	Saint Edmund a most Christian King and martyr, 460 c
Dulcitus a redoubted captaine, 80	King Eadgar stiled Monarch of whole Albion, his triumph, 605 b	S. Edmunds liberty, 459 c
Dulverton, 220 c	K. Eadgar the peaceable, 130 a	S. Edmunds bury, ibid.
Duina first Bishop of Lichfield, 585 d	Eadred stiled King of Great Britain, 139 a	S. Edmunds dike, 490 f
Duglesse a riveret, 749 c	Ealburg, 701 e	Edmund King of England pi-ously slaine, 364 a
Dun a notorious theefe, 403 d	Ealdermen, 164	K. Edmund Ironside, 143
Dunbryton frith, 56	Ealphege a learned Priest mar-ried, 201 b	Edmund of Woodstocke Earle of Kent, 353 a
Dunham, 610 c	Ealpheg Archbishop of Canter-bury executed, 326 d	Edrick Streona, 595 d
Dunmaw, 444 e	Earle what title of honour, 165	Edrick Sylvaicus, 624 e
Dunnington, 521 f. 567 c	Earles by office, 502 c	K. Edward the Confessor where borne, 377 a
Dunstable, 402 a the crosse there	Earles or Eorles hereditary, 166	Edward Confessor, 143 b
ibid.	Earles how created, 239 e	Edward Earle of Warwick be-headed, 670 e
Dunster castle, 220 d	Earle Apostolicall, 239 e	Edward the First, King of Eng-land his praises, 776 a
Dunstan Abbot, 227 d	Earle Imperiall, ibid.	Edwardston, 463 a
Dunstan putteth downe married Priests, 576 b. 243 d	Earles Coln, 450 d	K. Edward the Second entombed, 361 a. murdered, 363 b
Dunstaburg, 813 e	Earles dikes, 714 d	K. Edward the Third his ver-tues, 297 d. a most renowned Prince, 278
Dunsley, 718 d	Earth, 155	Edwin the Prince made away by his brother Athelstan, 213 e
Dunseavill, 243	Earth turning wood into stone, 401 e	Egbert calleth his kingdom Eng-land, 138. vanquisheth the Danes, 143
Dunum, 212, 247	Earth a rampier in Cornwall, 189	Effingham, 296 f
Dunwich, 466 c. a Bishops See, ibid.	Easton Nesse, 467 a	Egtricke a wealthy Bishop of Durham, 742
Dunus Sinus, 718 d	East-riding, 709	Egerton whence descended, 603
John Duns alias Scotus, 814 b	East-Angles, 456, 458	Egleston, 736 e
Durobriva, 501 e	Eaton in Bedfordshire, 401 a	Egremond an arch-rebell, 724 d
Dur and Dour, beginnings and terminations of places what they signifie, 209 d	Earth by divers occasions altered, 1	Egremont castle, 766 a
Durham citie, 739 e	Eatons what they be, 63	The Eight, 360 b
Durham Colledge in Oxford founded, 381 f. reedified, 383	Eaye, 467 f	Eimot a river, 762 d
Durham Bishopricke a County Palatine, 736 a	Saint Ebba an holy virgin, 743 a	Ela Countesse of Salisbury, 244 a
Dursley, 364 c	Ebbefer, ib.	Quene Elizabeth an excellent Prince, 256 f. her vertues, 297, 113
Durance an house of the Wroths, 437 e	Ebisla, 128	
Durocobrivaz, 413 e	Eboracum, or Eburacum, that is, Yorke, why so called, 702 d	
Durnovaria, what it signifie, 212 e	Eccles, 478 e	
	Eccleshall, 584 c	
	Ecclesiasticall livings heredita-rie, 595 f	
	Echingham Baron, 320	
	Eclipses of the Sunne in Aries, 212 e	

The Table of England.

292. 297. 298. her tombe,	Equites Aurati, that is, Knights,	Everingham a Baron,	550.d
430.b	whereupon so called,	Evers Barons whence descended,	
Ellandunum,	446.d	Erdburrow,	522
Elen a river,	769.c	Erdesley,	620.e
Elden hole,	557.e	Erdeswick,	583.e
Elenborough,	769.c	Eriry mountaines,	667.d
Elephants bones found in Britaine,		Ernald Bois or de Besco,	396.b
447.c		Erernash river,	555.
Ellen hall,	584.c	Eryngum in Cornwal,	186
Eliot his conceit of the name of Britaine,	5	Esrick,	707.e
Ellesmer a Baronie,	592.a	Eske a river,	765.e. 781.c
Sir Th. Egerton Baron Ellesmer		Estinton,	813.c
ibid.		Espringolds,	400.d
North Elmham a Bishops See,		Eresby,	541.e
456.d		Ermin-streets,	64
Elmeley,	650.e	or Erming-streets, 485.c. 501.f	
Elmesley,	722.d	Erminful or Irmunful,	64
Elmer a territory,	694.e	Esquires what degree of Gentry,	176
Elmore,	362.b	Esquires of five sorts,	ibid.
Elseley,	485.d	Steph. de Eschalers a Baron,	485.e
Elsmouth,	769.c	Essex,	439
Eleutherus Pope,	67	Essex Earles,	453
Elrich roads,	532	Essex Cheefes,	443.c
Elsing,	482.a	Essexes Knights,	283.f
Eltham,	327	Henry de Essex became a Monk,	681.d
Elton,	501.e	Essex, a family,	443.a
Elwan,	67	Essendum,	18
Elwy a river,	679.d	Essendon,	526.d
Emildon,	814.b	Efterford or East-Sturford,	446
Emme Mother to King Edward		Efter or Easter celebrated on the	
Confessor cleareth her selfe of		Lords day onely,	118
incontinency,	211	Efton alias Estannes ad turrim,	444.e
Enderbie,	401	Efton Nelson,	506.e
Hugh Enrmeve of Deping,	533	Eftotovils an honourable family,	714.a
Englishmen converted become		Eftre aliàs Plaisy,	445.a
zealous Christians, 137. Stud-		Ethered vanquished and slaine,	
iums in Liberrall Sciences, ib.		533.b	
Enfield,	437	Ethelbert King, Martyr,	618.e
English names what they signifie		Ethelbert an insufficient King,	
and imply,	139	143	
Engelrame de Concy first Earle		Ethelbert King, Martyr,	618.e
of Bedford,	402.f	Ethelburg,	728.d
England,	138	K. Etheldred, a vertuous Prince	
English Saxons retorne into Ger-		216.b. his tombe,	ibid.
many, ibid. brought thither		Ethelward a writer,	130
military knowledge, learning		Covefham, Evesham or Eisham,	
and religion,	ibid.	577.e	
Engins to assault in old time,	400	Endo Sewer to K. Henry the first,	
England full of vices,	143	name,	459.e
England divided into Counties		Endo a noble Norman,	541.d
or Shires by Alfred,	158	Evel a towne,	221.b
Little England beyond Wales,	652	Evelmouth,	225.d
English men whence they took		Evenlode a river,	376.b
name,	138	Vale of Eisham or Evesham,	577
Englishmen the guard of the Em-		Ever or Eure a towne,	394.b
perors of Constantinople, 154		Evers Barons,	ibid.c
English tongue of what contin-			
uance,	133		
English Maior,	681.e		
Entweissel name of a place and			
Gentlemen,	746.a		

F.

OF Faculties the Court, 181
 Faifex a family of gen-
 tlemen, 692.b. 723.d
 Falco or Falques Brent a faith-
 lesse men, 400.c. 812.b
 Falcons of the best kind, 644.b
 Falkesley bridge, 582.a. d
 Falemouth, 189
 Fanhop Baron, 401.d
 Farendon, 279.e
 Farnors Knights, 506.e
 Fastineog, 666.a
 Fastidius a Bishop of Britaine, 84
 Faulconbergs Barons, 714.a
 Faustus a good sonne of a bad fa-
 ther, 642.c
 Fawey, 190
 Fawley, 508
 Faux what it signifieth, 692
 Pekenham Forest, 574.f
 Feldings Knights, 519.f
 Fenwick Hall, 809.d
 Fenwicks a family, ibid.
 Ferrars Barons of Grooby, 520.f
 Henric Ferrars of Baddisley a
 gentleman well descended, and
 as well scene in Antiquities,
 568.d
 Rob. Ferrars how entered, 569
 Lords Ferrars of Chartley, 584.f
 Fernham Roiall, 394.d
 Fernham why so called, 294.e
 Fetherston Haugh, 799.e
 Fetherstons a family, ibid.
 Fetherplaces a family, 220.e. 281.
 Feverfham, 334.d
 Fielden a part of Warwickshire,
 561.b. 223.a
 Feldon

The Table of England.

Feldon,	561.b	Fleming,	202.d. 755.d	stone-fish,	363.e
Fenis or Fienlesse, 223.a. 316.b		Flemingston or Flemston a towne		Framlingham castle,	465.d
Fienes, Barons Dacres,	813.b	646.e		Fraomarius K. of the Almans,	
Sir Richard Fienes or Fenis		Flemings planted in Wales,	654.	Frankers in Britaine,	72. de
Baron Say and Sele,	376.f	652.d		stroied,	73
The File,	713.a	Flemish high way in Wales,	652	Fredrick the first Emperour,	
File what it signifieth,	715.a	Flintshire,	679	held Pope Adrian the fourth	
Files,	ibid.	Flint castle,	680.d	his stirrup,	415.a
Filioll,	217.c	Flint Earles,	681.f	Franks a people of Germany, 122	
Finborow,	607.b	Flixton or Flixton,	468.b	where they dwelt,	130
Finchdale,	742.a	Floddon an hill,	816.a	Freedstol,	712.a
Firr trees found in Axelholm,		Floddon field,	ibid.	French or Gantish provinces cast	
544.b		Florus a Poet,	ibid.	off the Roman joake,	86
Fisburgings,	819.c	Flores a kind of boates,	597.b	Free wares what it was,	604.d
A Fish poole or Mere by Saint		Felix Bishop of East England,	466.c. 480.c	Frea or Frico a Saxon Goddesse,	
Albans dried up,	411.c	135. how powtraied,	ibid.	Fremond vilanously slaine,	561.e
Fishes with one eye a peece,	667	Fluer found in Darbyshire,	557	regifted a Saint,	ibid.
Fishgard,	654.c	Foix a family,	759	Fremantle,	272.e
Fish pond forefheuing the death		Foliams a great family,	556.b	Frechevils or Freshwells a fa-	
of Monks,	609.c	Foliams a familie,	575.c	mily,	555.f
Fittons a family,	610	Folkington,	482.a	Freshwater Isle,	274.a
Fitz-Alans Earles of Arundel,		Folkstone,	535.a	Fretherick Abbat of Saint Al-	
309. 310. 589.f		A Font of Brasse in Saint Al-	349.b	bans,	414.e
Fits-herberts an ancient family,		bans Church,	412.d	Frevis a family,	582.c.d
553.d		Forcatulus his conceit of the		Friday,	135
Sir Anthony Fitz-herbert, ibid.		name Britaine,	5	Fredeswide a Saint,	378.a
a most famous Lawier,		5		Frisones come into Britaine,	
359.b		Fordington,	212.d	131	
Fitz-Hugh, Baron,	730.d	Ford castle,	815.e	Frodesham Castle,	610.a
Fitz-Harding Lord of Berkeley,		The Foreland of Kent,	342.d	Frome river, or FRAN,	212.a
362.d		Fornesse,	754.e	Frompton,	ibid.
Robert Fitz-Haimon slaine,	368	Fornesse Fels,	755.a	Jul. Frontinus his exploit against	
Fitz-Teke,	406.c	Sir John Fortescue,	396.e	the Silures,	54
Robert Fitz-Stephen the first of		Foxes or waterfalls,	759.f	Freshwel a river,	443.d. 444.d
Norman race that attempted		Forefenses, 780. the first. ibid. the		Fromen Shoale,	347.c
Ireland by way of Conquest,		second. 790. a. the third. ibid.		Fulham,	421.e
657.f		b. the fourth,	16.c	Funarius, a name of Gratianus,	
Rob. Fitz-Walter de Clare, 407		Forefwhat it is, and why so called,		77	
Fitz-Walters Barons,	446.c	293.c		Furnivalls a noble family,	587.e
Fitz-Walters ensigne-bearers of		ibid.		Furnivall Barons,	394.d
London,	215.d	320.d			
Fitz-Lewis a family,	442.e	Fortunie a Tourneament,	407.d		
Geffrey Fitz-Peter Earle of Es-		4			
sex, 454.b. a worthy Justicer		Fortunate Ilands,			
of England,	ibid.c	Forty foot way,	511.f. 515.a. 64		
Fitz-Stephen a writer,	427.b	Fosse dike,			
Fitz-Paine Baron,	215.d	Fossewad what it is,	537.f		
Fitz-Warins,	281.b	Fosse a river,	569.c		
Sir Fulque Fitz-Warin,	598.b	Fosse way,	702.b		
Fitz-William an ancient family,		The fosse,	366.a. 64		
690.a		Foules delicate,	543.b.c		
Rich. Fitz-Punt a Norman,	618	Fossards a family,	709.b		
Henry Fitz-Roy, Earle of Nor-		Fortheringhay Castle,	510.d		
ingham & Duke of Richmond,		File of Fouldrey,	755.e		
551.d		Foulness a river,	711.b		
Flamborough head,	714.e	Foulness an Isle,	443.c		
Flambread,	414.b	A fontaine ebbing and flowing,	643.f. 650.b		
Flabury,	578.b	Fountaines Abbey,	700.e		
Plavins Sanctus,	341.d	Fow,	190		
Flamee dike or Flight dike,	490	Fraccastorius his opinion of			
Fleet a riveret in London,	422.f				
Flemings a family,	646.c				

G

Abbrantovici, why so called,
 Gabrosenum, 714.d
 743.c. 810.a
 Gael, 121
 Gafata, 18
 Gages, 315.e
 Gaidelach, 121
 Gaideli, that is, Scots, 123
 Gainsborough, 543.e
 Gaiotbel, 121
 Gaiotblac, ibid.
 Gal a sweet smelling shrub, 544
 Gallash why so called, 23
 whence derived, 20
 Galba, ibid.
 Galle, 22
 Galls, ibid.
 Galls

The Table of England.

Gauls commended, 22. their exploits, <i>ibid.</i>	Gerrards Bramley, an house and Barone, 584 b	Glendal, <i>ibid.</i>
Gauls named Gomori and Cimabri, 11. their religion, 12	Gerrard de Rodes, 541 c	Glocester shire, 351 a
Galgacus a valiant Britain, 47 his oration, 58	Gerrard a Baron, 584 c	Glocester Citie, 360 d
Gallans, 802 a	Gessi, 18	Glocester Earle, 368. c. d. & c.
Gallatun, 761 d	Gessum, <i>ibid.</i>	Glocester Dukes, 369 c
Galtres forest, 723 d	Gessoriacum, 348 a. d. it is Bollone or Bullen, <i>ibid.</i>	Glocester Hall in Oxford built and enlarged, 382 a
Galun, 20	Geveny or Gevenny a river, 635	Gluis, 20
Gamages, a family, 643	Gevisse, 294 c	Godiva the wife of Earle Leofric, 543 d. she freed Coventry from Tributes, 568 a
Gamlinghay, 485 d	Giants in Cornwall, 186	Gods house, 268 c
Ganoc, 669 f	Giants teeth and bones, 451 d	Godstow Nunnery, 376 b
Gaol, 22	Giddy hall, 441 f	Godmanchester, 498 b
Gargraves, knights, 691 a	Giffards a family, 581 c	Godmanham, 711 c
Garianonum, 477 a. b	Giffards, 365 f	Godolcan or Godolphin hill, 189
Garlick growing in plenty, 213 d	Giffards Earles of Buckingham, 397 d	Godrick or Goodrick a good and devout man, 74 a
Order of the Garter, 278 c	Giffards Barons, 396 a. 541 b	Godrus a Danish K. Christened, 223
Garumna, 20	Gilbertines a religious order, 534 c	Godwin or Goodwin Sands, 740 f
Garw, <i>ibid.</i>	Gildas, S. a learned professor, 378 f	Godwin or Goodwin the Earle of Kent his treachery, 295 c
Gascoignes an ancient family, 698 f	Gilden vale, 617 e	his equivocation, 307 a. his fraudulent fetch to get Barkley, 362 e
Gasheound, 263 f	Gillesland Barony, 782 e	Gold-Cliff, 634 e
Gastenoies, a family, 553 c	Gillesland Lords, 786 e	Gold and silver veins, 767 b
Gatehead, 743 b	Gilling, 730 a	Golden Harnish found, 816 e
Gavelkind, 325 d	Gillingham forest, 214 d	Gold and silver Mines in Cornwall, 186
Gaunlesse a riveret, 738 d	Gilbourgh, 507 f. a fort there, 508 a	Gomer and his posterity, 10
Gaunt Barons of Folkynham, 535 a	Gipping see Ornell, 463	Gomer what it signifieth, <i>ibid.</i>
Gawthorpe, 698 f	Gipping a village, 463	Goodwick, 481 c
Geat or Black Ambre, 719 d	Giralde of Windsor a valiant Captaine, 652 a	Gorlois Prince of Cornwall, 195
Gebenna, 21	Giralds or Giralduines a noble and renowned family, 652 b	Gorlston, 468 d
Geddington, 509 f	Giraldus Cambrensis Archdeacon of Brecknock, 627 b	Gorges a family, 364 e
Geaway or Godney Moore, 230 c	Giraldus Cambrensis, 8	Gormo or Guthrum the Dane, 463 d
Geduch, 18	Girwy, 743	Gormod, 21
Geffray ap Arthur, or of Monmouth, 5. his narration of Brutus and the name of Britaine discussed, 5 b	Gervus what people, 491 c	Gormon the Dane, 498 d
Geldable a part of Suffolke, 459 c	Gisburgh, 721 b	Goromberry, 413 d
Gelt a river, 783 b	Gises a family, 362 b	Goropius Becanus what he thinketh as touching the name of Britaine, 5
Geneu what it signifieth, 190	Gisleberi of Clare Earle of Hereford, 407 b	Goths language hath some resemblance of welsh and Dutch, 123
Saint Genovefs Fernham, 461 e	Githa Earle Goodwins wife, 207 b	Government of the Roman Empire under and after Constantine the Great, 76
Genounia a Province in Britain, 66	Glanoventa, 812 d	A Goth depainted, 123
Gentlemen, 177	Glanvils a family, 469 a	Goths a noble Nation, 123
George Duke of Clarence murdered, 462 e. drowned in a butt of Malvesey, 510 e	Glasse, 19	Goths and Vandals the same, <i>ib.</i>
Saint Germain in Britain, 132	Glasse houses, 306 e	they came from the Gete, 130
192. 410 c. he rebuketh Vortiger, 624 d. preached against Pelagians, 378 f. 707 d	Glamorgan shire, 641 a	Gowrmand, 21
Germans called Scythians, 122	Glanford a towne, 543 a	Gowrnates or Gornayes, 222 e
Germans whence they tooke their name, 26	Glasters first brought into England, 743 a	Matthew Gornay, 222 f. 364
German words agreeing with the Persian, 129	Glastenbury Abbey, 226 a	Hugh de Gornay a traitour, 472
Gernegans knights, 729 d	Glastum, that is, wood, 19	Gottes what they are, 237 b
Gernons a family, 537 b	Glawn, <i>ibid.</i>	Gower, 646 a
Gernston, 472 f	Gledaugh, 652 c	Grace Dieu, sometime a Nunnery, 521 f
	Glediau, 215 f	Grafton, 663 d
	Glemham, a towne and familie, 465 e	
	Glen, a river, 534 d. 815 d	

The Table of England.

Grafton, 506	Greystock Castle, 778 b	Hadley, 463 d
Grafton in Worcestershire, 574 e	S. Grimbold, 378 c	Pope Hadrian the fourth choked with a sie, 415 a
Grandebeef a Baron of Normandy, 712 c	Grimby, 542 c	Hadugate a Duke or Leader of the English Saxons, 138
Grandison Lord his descendant, 286 b	Grimstons-garth, <i>ibid.</i>	Hammond Abbey, 594
Grandison Lords, 617 d	Grimstons a family, 714 a	Haile a river, 193
John Grandison Bishop of Excester, 203 b. 206 d.	Gripbins a family, 507 b. 607 e	Haduloba, 138
	Grismunds tower, 366 d	Haimon Dentasus, 641 c
	Gron and Gronnes what they signify, 486 b	Robert Fitz Haimon subdueth Glamorganshire, 641 d
Grand-Sergeant, 406 c	Grooby, 520 f	Haked a kind of Pikes, 499
Grant a river, 486 a	Grosceff Castle, 630 b	Haledon, 805 d
Granceffer, 486 b	Grosceffours, commonly called Gravenour, a famous family, 604 b	Hales Monastery, 197 e. 365 a
Grantam, 537 d		Halefworth, 467 c
Hugh Grantmaismill, or Grantmaismill, 518 c	Grosthead or Grosfest a worthy Bishop of Lincoln, 540 b. c	Halfax, 691 f
Granvil, 645 f	Groun must fat and battle, 478	Halfax law, 692 b
Granvils a family, 646	Ground burnt for tillage, 674 c	Halton hall, 808 f
Gratianus surnamed Fanarius, and why, 77. perfidiously slaine by Andragathius, 81	Gruffin ap Conan a noble Prince of Wales, 670 a	Halyson, 812 f
Gratianus a Britain declared Emperour by the Army, 84	Guadiana, 297 a	Hamden a towne and family, 395
Gravefend, 329 b	Guaine, 21	Hameldon hills, 215 c
Grabams a family, 781	Gruain, <i>ibid.</i>	Hamon, 200 f
Gregory the great a means of the Englishmens conversion to Christ, 136	Gualt what it signifieth, 20	Sir Hamon Mascy, 610 e
Greleyes a family, 746 b	Guarth what it signifieth, 563 b	Hampton in Herefordshire, 620
Greeklade, see Creeklade.	Guarthenion why so called, 624	Hampton Court, 420 b
Greeks inhabited the Coasts, and along the Isles, 27	Gualth, see wath.	Hanged hills, 421 b
Greeks arrived in Britain, 28	Gueda wife to Earle Goodwin, 763 c	Hanging walls of Mark Antony, 763 c
Griesley Castle, 553 c	Guenliana a woman of many courage, 649 c	Hanley Castle, 577 b
Griesley an ancient family, <i>ib.</i> e	Guerif, 21	Hannere a place and family, 681
Grenvils, 196 a	Guerir, <i>ibid.</i>	Hannibal never warred in Britain, 92
West Greenwich, 326 d. Greenwich, 326 d	Gwif, 19	Hans a river, 587 c
Greenes a wealthy family, 507 a	Guild hall in London, 435 a	Hansacres a family, 578 b
Greenes Noyton, <i>ibid.</i>	Guilford, 195 b	Hansards a family, 543 a
Greenes noble Gentlemen, 510 c	Guilford a family, 352 b	Hantshire, 258
Grenhaugh Castle, 753 a	Guinech Urave, 19	Hanwell, 376 e
Gresbams Colledge, 415 b	Guineth, 659 f	Hanworth, 420 b
Gresbhamst, 482 a	Guiniad fishes, 666 b	King Harald slaine, 317 a
Greve what it signifieth, 330 a	Guiscard of Engolism, 502 c	Harald Lightfoot, 379 b
Sir Foulk Grevil a worthy knight, 517 e	Gundulph Bishop of Rochester, 333 a	Harald Haardred, 707 d
Sir Foulk Grevil father and son worshipfull knights, 565 f	Gunora a Norman Lady, 620 c	Harald Goodwins sonne usurpeth the crowne of England, 145
Greys of Grooby, 520 f	Gunpowder treason, 754 a	His worthy and Princely parts, 145
Sir Henry Grey Baron Grey of Grooby, 521 a	Gunters a family, 628 f	Harborrow or Haanburgh, 517 c
Greys of Sandacro, 553 d	Gworum what it signifieth, 325 c	Harbotle a place and familie, 812 f
Greys Earles of Kent, 553 c	Guortimer defeateth Hengist & the Saxons, 332 a. where buried, 340 n	Andrew of Harcla Earle of Carlile a traitour, degraded, 780 c
Th. Grey of Ruthin Marquesse Dorset, 217 e	Guvia, 19	Harcourts, 584 e
Henry Grey Marquesse Dorset and Duke of Suffolk, 217 f	Gwin, a colour, 26	Harden or Hawarden, 680 e
470 c. beheaded, 217	Gvoloppum, 132	Harde ancient Gentlemen, 339 d
Greys Barons of Wilton, 396 d	Guy Briens a Baron, 212 e	Harde-Cnus his death, 303 b
their badge, 621 a. 396 d	Sir Guy of Warwick, 267 a. 564	his immoderate feasting, <i>ibid.</i>
John Grey Earle of Tankervill, 663 d	Guy clifford Gibcliff, 564 e	Th. Harding, 298 e
	Gynacia, 263 c	Pitt Hardings Barons of Barkley, 223 a
Greystocks Barons, 778 c		Hard Knot a mountain, 765 e
		Hardwick a towne, 555 f. and a family,

The Table of England.

family,	ibid.	Haulton a towne and castle, 611	King Henry the second his fa-
Harefield,	419 c	Hauve,	ther, 465 a
Harford West,	653 b	The Haw,	Henry the seventh proclaimed
Haringtons or Haveringtons a		Hawsted,	King, 514 e
family,	795 d	Hawthorn at Glasfenbury, 227 e	King Henry the sixth twice taken
Haringtons Barons, 526 b. of old		Hay a towne,	prisoner by his owne subjects,
defcent,	ibid.	Hay castle,	509 e
Harington Lord,	226 e	Headon a towne,	Heorton,
Sir John Harington. Baron Ha-		Healy castle,	Heorthu,
rington of Exton,	ibid.	Healy castle,	135
Haringworth the honour of the		Healy castle,	Heptarchie of the Saxons decri-
Zouches Barons,	414 a	Heavenfield,	bed with severall fires under
Harleston,	472 e	Hebrews called Hues wherefore,	every Kingdome, 157
Harlestone a family,	ibid.	Heidons or Heydons Knights,	Heptarchie of the Saxons, 136
Harold Ewias,	617 d		reduced to a Monarchie, 138
Harold a Gentleman,	ibid.	Sir Christopher Heidon,	Herbert Bishop of Norwich,
Harprece,	223 d	Heil an Idol of the Saxons, 212	475 a
Harrow on the hill,	420 a	Heilston or Hellas,	Herbert Losenga Bishop, 472 a
Harrowden,	510 a	Heina a religious votary,	Herbert Baron of Shurland,
Hartle pole,	738 b	H. itbury,	334 b
Harts hall in Oxford,	381 d	Hien a religious woman,	Herberts Earles of Penbroch,
Havewich,	451 e	Helbeck,	559 a
Hawwood castle,	698 e	Helbeck a crag,	Sir Philip Her. rt Baron of
Hastlingbury,	453 d	Helena the mother of Constantine	Shurland, & Earle of Mont-
Hastings a noble family in times		the Great borne at Colchester,	gomery,
past,	584 c		663 b
Hastings Lords of Abergevenny,	568 e	Helena a devout Empreffe,	Herberts an honourable family
		Helennum,	in Wales, 555 d
		Helion a family,	Le Herbert away in Wales, 665 f
Hastings Baron of Loughborow,	394 c	Hell-Kettles deepe pits,	Hercules whether ever any,
Sir Edward Hastings sole Baron		Helmet of gold found,	207 c
thereof,	521 b	Helvius Pertinax employed in	Herefordshire, 617
Baron Hastings and Hoc, 3. 10 b		Britan, 66. Proprietor in Bri-	Hereford Citie, 618 e
Sir William Hastings Lord Ha-		tan,	Hereford Earles, 621 b. c. & c.
stings,	318 f	Hemingston,	Hereford Duke,
Hastings great Gentlemen in		ibid.	Hereford Viscounts,
Suffex,	ibid.	Hempe the best,	ibid.
Hastings a towne whence it tooke		Hempsted,	Herring fishing by Hollanders,
the name,	317 f	Hen-Dinas,	& c. 717 f
Rape of Hastings, 318 d. Lords		Henets whence they tooke name,	Herrings in Yarmouth, 488 a
thereof,	ibid.		Herrings frequent our coast,
George L. Hastings first of that		Hengham Lords,	Herlaxton,
name Earle of Huntingdon,	503 a	Hengist and Horsa brethren,	Herons or Heirons a family,
		127. they signifie an horse,	806 b. 815 e
Hatfield Bradock,	453 e	ibid.	Herlotta,
Bishop Hatfield,	406 f	Hengrave,	Herma,
Hatfield Poveril,	445 c	Herst hill,	Perst Monceaux,
Hatherton,	607 e	Henningham,	Herst what it is,
Hatfield Chace,	6. 00 e	Henly in Arden,	ibid.
Hatley S. George,	485 d	Henly hundred,	Hertlebury castle,
Hatterel hills,	611 c	Henly upon Tamis,	574 b
Sir Christopher Hatton Lo d		King Henry the sixth his vertues,	Hertfordshire,
Chancellor of England, 508		entered and translated, 294 d	405
his commendation, ib. d. his		King Henry the seventh his ver-	Hertford towne,
Monument,	509 a	ties,	407 a
Havelock a foundling,	547 d	Henry the fourth Emperour en-	Hertford Earles,
Haverds a family,	628 e	tered in Chester,	415 e
Handels Lord Burnell,	330 c	Henry of Lancaster claimeth the	called Earles of Clare, ibid.
Havering,	441 e	crowne of England, 680 d	Herty point,
Hawthorn Congreft,	401 e	Henry Fitz-Roy,	207 b
Hawthlee Castle,	464 a	King Henry the second his com-	Dofter Hervey his Causey,
Sir John Hawkywood,	450 b	mendation,	297 f
		Henry Prince rebelleth against	299 c
			Hervey first Bishop of Ely,
			493 d
			Herward a valiant Englishman,
			531 a
			Heston,
			Hefus,
			Hefelwood,
			695 c
			Hens,
			17
			Heve-

The Table of England.

Heveningham a towne and fami-		Holcroft a place and family,	Hotbams a family, 711 d. 722
ly,	467 c		747 d
Hexhamshire,	799 d	Holdernesse a promontorie,	Howards a Noble Family,
Hexold ariver,	807 d	Holdenby house,	472.0
Hexoldelham,	ibid.	Holdernesse a promontory,	Henrie Lord Howard, Earle of
Heyford warin,	377 a		Northampton,
Heyford Purcell,	377 a	Holdernesse honour,	516 e
Hides a family,	281 a	Holes within the Ground,	Henry Baron Howard, of Marn-
Hide what it is,	158.339 e		hil,
Highgate Castle,	778 c	Holland a part of Lincoln-shire,	215 e
High Crosse,	518 a	529. why so called,	Charles Lord Howard Earle of
High Dike a streete-way,	534 a	ibid.	Nottingham,
	64	Hollands a great family,	551 d
		and most noble,	Tho. Vicount Howard of Bindon,
High ridge,	ibid.	749	213 a
Highham a towne and family,	463 c	John Holland of Denhire, 205 a	Howards Earles of Surrey,
		his coat of armes,	304 e
Highham Ferrars,	510 b	John Holland Duke of Exce-	Thomas Lord Howard of Wal-
High-land men,	119.126	ter and Earle of Huntingdon,	den, 452. e. 470. d. Earle of
Higra 707. c. What it is,	357 e		Suffolke,
Saint Hilda a shee Saint, and her			ibid.
miracles,	718 e	Henrie Holland Duke of Ex-	Williams Lord Howard of Na-
Hills erected, for what purpose,	406 e	cester ibid. his miserable case,	worth,
		ibid f	783 b
Hilderham,	489. e	John Holland halfe brother to	John Lord Howard, duke of Nor-
Hildeards ancient Knights,	713 f	King Richard the second, be-	folk the first of that house, 483
		headed at Plaisir,	ibid.
Hilton a Castle and familie,	742 e	Hollands Knights,	Thomas Howard his sonne van-
		Hollands Earles of Kent,	quished the Scotts,
		ibid.	483 c
		John Holland the younger his	Henrie Howard Earle of Sar-
		stie,	ry a learned Nobleman,
		502 f	ibid.
Himilco never in Britaine,	33.	Henrie Holland Duke of Exce-	Tho. Howard last duke of Nor-
Hinchbrook,	497 d	ster his fall,	folke,
Hinderskel or Hunderdskell a		502 f	ibid.
Castle,	723 e	Thomas Holland Earle of Kent	Houden and Houden-shire,
Hinkley a Barowie,	518 c	and Duke of Surrey, 304. e. be-	710 c
Hith or Hide a towne,	349 b	headed,	480 a
Hith what it signifieth,	ibid.	Holme Cultraine Abbey, 773 a	Hongill castle,
Hitching,	406 c	Holmesdale,	762 c
Ho,	329 c	294 b	Howley,
Baron Ho,	318. 319.	Holme Pier Point,	693 e
Hoes a family,	541 c	548 f	Howy, a brooke,
Hobarts Knights, and Attorneys		Holme castle,	608 e
Generall to Kings,	476	Holmes Chappell, a towne,	Hubert de Burge Earle of Kent,
Sir Edward Hoby Knight,	286 b	609 a	352
		Holme Lacy,	208 f
		Holt in Denbighshire,	ibid.
		Holt castle,	Huck new forest,
		Holly head,	592 c
		Holy Island,	Huddleston,
		814 e	696 e
		Hooten,	Hues,
		606 e	23
		Hope castle,	Hugh the Norman, 212. d. a
		681 a	traitour,
Hobelars,	272. 275 b	Horne church,	205 a
Hocke and Hocks old English		441 f	Hugolin, or Hugh Spenser,
for mire and dirt,	402 a	Horne castle,	642 b
Hoch Norton,	375 a	541 c	Hugh Earle of Shrewsbury slain,
Hockley in the bole,	402 c	Hornby castle,	672 d
Hodde hills,	215 c	753 f	Hull the river,
Hoddeson,	408 d	Honorius Emperour, 83. succour-	711 c
Hodington,	578 c	eth the distressed Britains a-	712 d
		gainst invasion of Barbarians,	Humsfrey Duke of Gloucester and
		86	his stiles, 369 c. The good duke
Hoddestons an ancient familie,	699. e. 765 d	Honoriaci what Souldiours,	and a favourer of learning, 382
		118	his death,
Hodens a family,	394 c	Honoriani,	561 c
Hodnet a towne and family,	594 b	127	Humber an arme of the Sea, 689
Hodney a river,	628 a	Horse running,	542 e
Hoel the good Prince of Wales,	650 c	723 d	Hamel or Hymell castle,
		Horse, the badge or cognisance	514 b
		of the old Dukes of Saxonic,	Hundreds or Centuries appoin-
		135	ted,
Holburne or Oldburn,	432 f	Horse beat,	158 d
Holcrofts an ancient family,	608 d	489 e	Hungerbourns,
		691 f	255 c
		596 c	Hungerfords,
			195
			Hungerford towne,
			282 e
			Hungerford Barons, 245. d. 182
			Hani-

The Table of England.

Hunbald a bald writer, 6	Ilands of what use, 478.d	Iscaw, 1
Hunthill a Fort, 509.d	An Island floating, 478.d	Isis haire or Isidis plocamus, 211
Hunstanton, 418.b	Isle of Ely, 485.c. why so called, 492.f	Isis a river, 241.c
Hunsdon, a Barons seate, 408.c	Il-bre, an Isle, 607.a	Isis a river in Gloucestershire. See Onfe.
Hunt Cliffe, 720.e	Ilcester, or Iwelcester, 221.e	Islip, 377.a
Huntercombe, a family, 394.c	Ilfarcomb, 207.a	Simon Islip, 332.c
Huntingdon castle in Herefordshire, 815.d	Ilkeley, 697.c	Is-trium Brigantium, 701.c
Huntingdonshire, 680.c	Il-freet, 603.e	Isbancester, 443.d
Huntingdonshire, 497.e	K. Ina, 226.c	Itium is whitsun, not Callan, 348
Huntingdon towne, 497.d	Innes of Court and Chancery in London, 427.c	Judeal de Totenais, 201.f
Huntingdon Earles, 502.c	Inborow what it is, 815.b	Ivel the river, 221.b
Huntingfeld towne and Baron, 467.c	Incubi, 17	Julham or Chilham, 336.b
Huntly Nab, 710.f	Infants of Spaine, 164	Julia freet, 639.c
Hurling, 186	Inglebeys a family, 535.f. 699.f	Julian the Apostata a usurper the Empire, 79. is declared Cesar, 78
Hurlers, 192	Ingleborne, 742.c	Julius Caesar attempteth Britaine, 34
Hurst castle, 260.d	Ingleborrow Hill, 749.e	Julius a Martyr in Britaine, 73
Huscarles what they be, 576.e	Inglefields an ancient family, 284.c	Juluber, 336.b
Hussy the first and last Baron of that name, 535.d	Inglini bipenniferi, 154	Ivo Talboys of Anjou, 532.f
Hyeritha a Shee-Saint, 208.b	Inus men, 24	Ivo a Persian Bishop, 499.a
I.	Insula Caruli, ibid.	A Jury of 12. men, 153
Iames the sixth of Scotland, styled King of great Britaine, 141. a mild and gracious Prince, 298.b	Inundations in Monmouthshire, and Somersetshire, 634.d	Justices of the Forest, 293.c
James the fourth King of Scotland, 483.c	Joan the faire maide of Kent, 353.b	Justices ordained by Ælfred, 158
Tho. James of Oxford a studious Antiquarian, 639.e	Joan de Acres, 369.b	Justices of Peace instituted by Edward the third, 160
Janus with two foreheads, 97	Johannes de Sacro bosco, 692.c	Justices of Assise, 160. 179
Japhets progenie how it was propagated, 10	John of Wearhamstvd., 7	Justice, or chiefe Justice of England, 178
Jarrow, 743.d	John Earle of Arbol cruelly executed, 336.a	Justices Itinerant, 179
Jberi whence they tooke name, 26	John of Gaunt his stile, 757.b	Justices in Eyre, ibid.
Iccius portus, in France, a port townelet, 36	King John called judicially into question in France, and ended for murdering his Nephew Arthur, 733.d	Justices of Gaule delivery, ibid.
Iccni, 456	Saint Johns Knights of Jerusalem, 428.a. 433.a	Justices of Nisi prius, ibid.
Ichnild-street, 456.d	Joseph of Arimathea, 68	Jute a people in Germany, 128
Iccni in Britaine discomfited, 43	Joseph Iscaucus a Poet, 204.d	why so called, 130
Ide a river, 550.d	Joseph Scaliger, 10	Juxing, 459.d
Iermis Knights, 461.d	Ispre towre, 319.d	K
Iermegans Knights, 468.e	Wilde Ispre, 332.c. Earle of Kent, 352.e	K Aderne, 18
Ierby a towne, 769.c	Ispswich or Gipwich, 464.c	Kainho a Barony, 401.d
Ierov or Jorvalle Abbey, 729.c	Ireland, the site thereof, 56	Katharine Dowager of Spaine entered, 513
Ierusalem in hand to be rededified, 79.	Irke a river, 746.a	Keian a Scot, 649.b
Jefstine a rebell against Prince Rhes, 641.e	Irchenfeld or Archenfield, 617.e	Kedelfton, 553.e
Jesu of Bethlems house, 297.e	Irt a riveret, 765.e	Keimes a Barony, 654.c
420.f	Irmsusfull. See Ermin, 64	Keina, a devout Virgin, 236.f
Jesus Colledge in Oxford, 383.b	Irthing a river, 782.f	Keirch, 20
John Jewell Bishop of Salisbury, 208. e. a profound Clerke, 248.e	Irtlington, 745.e	Kilhop a riveret, 738.c
S. Jies, 193	Irtwell a river, 745.e	Kelney, 714.a
Ikborowgh, 482.b	Iron or Tron mynes, 581.b	Kelley, 543.a
Ikenild freet, 64	Isa, a river. See Usa.	Ken a river, 753.f
Ikening street, 402.d	Isabel de Fortibus, 207.e	Kencheffer, 618.d
Ikesworth, 461.d	Isan parles a rock, 763.b	Kendale, or Kirkby Kendal, 759
	Iservier. See Ex.	Kendale Barons and Earles, ibid.
	Isca Danmoniorum, 203.f	K. Kenelm a Saint, 365.e
	Isca Silurum, 204.a	Kenelworth or Killingworth, 566
		Kenelworth castle, ibid.
		Dictum de Kenelworth, 567
		Kenei

The Table of England.

Kenet the river, 255 a
Keningbal, 472 c
Kenwalch vangunisheth the Brit-
tans, 221 d
Kent, 323 why so called, *ibid.*
Kentishmen right courteous and
valiant, 324 c
Kent Earles, 352 d
Kentish Percy-kings or Potentates,
37
Kent-sand, 713 f
Kentigern Bishop of Glasco, 679 c
a great Clerke, 378 f
Kernaw, 183
Kernellare, what it is, 753 f
Kesar, for Casar, 326 c
Kesteven a part of Lincolnshire,
533 b
Keston, 326 c
Keswicke, 763 c
Ket a rebell, hanged, 473 b
Ketel, the name of a familie,
543 b
Kettleby, 543 a
Kettering, 510
Keven, 21
Keven Caer, 661 c
Kevenles Castle, 624 a
Kevin, 21
Saint Kibie an holy man, 673 a
Kidderminster, 573 f. a Barony,
514 a
Kidwelly, 649
Kildale Castle, 721 e
Kighley, a place and familie, 693
Kilgarth, 192
Killey, 816 e
Kilgarran, 654 e
Killingworth, See Kenelworth,
Kilmaln Lhoyd, 650 d
Kilnsay Crag, 697 b
Kilpeck a castle and familie, 617
The Kings Champions, *ibid.*
Kilton castle, 720 c
Kime a noble familie, 535 e
Kimbolton or Kinnibantum Ca-
fle, 501 c
Kindreton, 510 b
Kindreton Barons, 609 b
Kined a Saint, 646 c
Kinefage Castle, 644 d
King what it signifieth, 163. his
soveraigne power, &c. *ibid.*
his roial prerogatives, 163
Kings of England made heires to
their subjects, 485 e f
Kings in Britain during the Ro-
mans Empire there, 67
The Kings Courts of Justice,
177
Kings Bench, 178
Kingston Lacy, 216 f
Kings Cleare, 255 a
Kings knight or Taine, 293 e
Kingston upon Tamie, 297 b
Kings Delfe, 500 b
Kingston upon hull, 712 d
Kings Ditch by Cambridge,
488 c
Kings wood Abbey, 364 c
Kinnoburga, 502 b
Kinnerfley, 620 c
Kinton, 561 c
Kirkham, 709 d
Kirkby Bellers, 522 f
Kirkby Morfide, 722 c
Kirkby the same that Pontreifet,
695 c
Kirkby Lonsdale, 760 c
Kirkby Stephen, *ibid.*
Kirkby Thore, 761 c
Kirk Oswald, 777 f
Kirkton, 532 c
Kirklop a river, 781 d
Kirklings, 491 b
Kirton, 203 d
Kits Coty house, 332 b
Kitions knights, 461 e
Knariborow Castle, 699 f
Knebworth, 406 e
Knevers a familie, 472 c f
Knevet or Knivet, Baron of Ef-
crick, 707 e
Knight what degree of Gentry,
170
Knights simply so called, 173
Knights of fower sorts, 171
Knights Banerets, *ibid.*
Knights of the Bath, 172
Knights dubbed Earles, 174
Knight a title of dignity, 175
Knights bow dubbed, 176
Knights Bachelars, *ibid.*
Knights twelve, employed in the
Conquest of Glamorgan-shire,
641 e f
Knightles ancient knights, 508
Knighton, 623 e
Kniveton a place and familie,
553 e
Knocking Castle, 597 b
Knoll, 328 a
Knolls Barons de Rotherfield,
389 e
Knots a dainty fowle, 543 c
Knotsford a towne, 610 c
Knute the Hardie, or Hardie
Knute, 143
Knute King of the Danes van-
quisheth Ethelbert, 143
Kowain, 18
Kumero, 10
Kumbri or Kamby, 765 b
Kumari, *ibid.*
Kumeraeg, *ibid.*
Kwma a British drinke, 31
L
L Aberius Durus slaine by
Kenilsmen,
Lac a riveret, 753 d
Lacie, 213 d
Lacies Conquerours of Ireland,
631 c
Lacie the Norman, 695 f
John Lackland, who hee was,
255 f
Laclos a family, 591 d
Laclozdam seemeth to be Stony
Stratford, 397 b
Lalianns an usurper in Britaine
murdered, 71
Latavia, 111
Lati, *ibid.*
Latsu a valiant Captaine, 69
Leford, by contraction, Lord,
168
Lane, 19
Lakes in Staffordsh. of a strange
nature, 588 b c
William Lambard commended,
323 b
William Lambard his hospitall,
303 b
Lambith, 327 f
Lambley Nunnery, 799 e
Lamborne, 283 f
Lambourn Manour, 440 c
Lampreies, 574 c
Lane the name of a familie, 509 f
Lanadiffry, 649 d
Lancashire, 745
Lancaster or Loncaster towne,
754 b
Lancaster Lords, 755 f
Lancaster Earles, 756
Lancaster Dukes, 757
Lancamb, 463 d
Lanchester, 742 e
Landaff, 642 d
Lands end, 188
Lanercost Abbey or Priory, 782 c
Langerston, 785 e
Abbers Langley, 465 a
Kings Langley, 414 f
Langley, *ibid.*
Langho, 592 a
Langtons a familie, 750 a
Langnam, 752 e
Lanbeath, 668 b
Lapis Tituli. See Stonar,
Lacelles a familie, 707 e. 724 e
Latham, 749 a
Latimer what it is, 598 c
Latimers, a towne, 394 e
Z z z z Latimers

The Table of England.

Latimers de Corby, a family,	507 b	Leofrike first Bishop of Excester,	204 a	John Lidgate a Monke,	ibid.
Latimers, Lords, 721 f.	729 d	Leofrike Lord of Brane or Burne,	533 a	Liesnes Abbey,	328 b
Latimer a surname,	598 c	Leofstane Abbot of S. Albanes,	393 c	Lieutenants in every County or	Shire instituted by King ÆL.
Lavatre,	732 d	Leolin Prince of Wales his beha-	viour to King Edward, 363 e	Lime river and towne,	210 b
Laver a river,	ibid. e	Lean Vaur a fabulous Giant,	604	Limestone great store,	694 f
Lavellin an high hill,	767 f	Laws of England in a tripartite	division,	Limits of the Roman Empire,	789 e, d. see Scotland.
Lawleyes, a family,	591 f	Leon Vaur what it signifieth, ib.		Limfries a family,	567 e
Lawlesse Court,	441 e	Leonell Duke of Clarence, 462 d		Lime a port towne,	549 e
Laws of England in a tripartite	division,	Leprosie why termed Elephantia-	sis, 522 d. when it came first	Line or flax of the best,	620 a
Law-courts of England,	177	into England,	ibid.	Lillinstone,	396 c
Laws, that is, Heapes of stones,	802 b	Leftoff,	468 d	Lincolnsire,	529
De la Lawnds, a family,	542 c	Leisterd,	191	Lincoln City, 538 b. whence the	name is derived,
Laurence Noel, repayer of our	188	Leisthriel,	190	ibid.	
Saxons language,	188	Lettuy what it is,	399 f	Lincoln Earles,	544 e f
Laxton or Lexinton a towne and	name of a family,	Leuca,	21	Lindsey a part of Lincolnshire,	537 f
Layth,	21	Leven a river,	781 c. 782 b	Robert of Lincoln,	313 d
Lea or Ley a river,	406 e	Leveney a river,	628 c	Lincolne Colledge in Oxford,	381
Lea, the name of a family,	592 d	Levensand,	754 f	Linslock Castle,	778 a
Leach,	21	Lever Manr,	67	Lingeins a family,	665 d
Lead of Darbyshire,	556 e	Leventhorps a family,	408 c	Lin 480 d. why so called,	ibid.
League,	21	S. Lewis King of France taken	prisoners,	Old Lin,	480
Leakes Knights,	556 b	249 e		King Lin,	ibid.
Leam, the river,	507 e	Lewis of France his pretended ti-	tle to the Crowne of England,	Linnun Episcopi,	ibid.
Leama brooke,	561 d	ibid.		Linsperis poole,	668 d
Leamington,	ibid.	Lewis a towne,	312 e	Lina a river,	547 e
Leanminster,	17	Lewkyors,	312 e	De la Linde,	213 f
Leckhamsted,	396 e	Ley-mouth,	440 a	Linton or Lenton a towne,	547 d
Leddets, a family,	507 b	Lhan what it signifieth,	631 d	Lionesse,	187
Long-Leat,	245 a	Lhan Beder,	657 d	Lisls a family in the Isle of Ely,	494 d
Ladden a river,	620 e	Lhan Badern vaur,	658 a	Lisle a family,	276 a
Ledbury a towne,	ibid.	Lhan Stephen,	650 c	Lisle of Rougemount,	490 b
Lee, Knight,	280 c	Lhan Devi Brevi,	657 b	Listers a family,	592 e
Lee a place and family,	610 c	Lhanthony Abbey,	631 c	Viconet Lisle,	280 d
Sir Henry Lee,	395 f	Lhan Vaur,	672 e	Liver a river,	192
Leeds Castle,	331 c	Lhan Vethlin,	662 d	Littons a family,	406 e
Leeds,	694 e	Lhan Heron,	193	Litchfield in Hantsire,	272 c
Leegh,	441 c	Lhan Stuphadon or Lannstave-	ton,	Littleborough,	549 e
Leez,	445 c	196 c		Lites Cary,	224 f
Legeolium,	695 a	Lheir,	668 b	Littletons a family,	574 d
Leibourne,	332 c	Llewellyn ap Siffl Prince of Wales,	680 a	Littleton alias Westcot a learned	Lawyer and a famous,
Leiden Castle built by Hengist,	130	Llewellyn ap Gryffith the last	British Prince of Wales, 670 b	ibid.	
Leightons knights,	593 a	Lhwellyn last Prince of Wales of	Brittishrace, 624 c. flaine. ib.	Llwyd his opinion concerning the	name of Britain,
Leighton Buzard,	402 e	524		Library in Oxford furnished,	381
Leighton in Huntingdonshire,	501 d	Lichfield, 585 b. an Archbepif-	copall See,	Lid what it is,	491 d
Leiton,	439 f	Lickey Hill,	574 d	Lidriver,	199 d. 781 f
Leightons a family,	667 d	Lid a towne,	351 a	Lid Castle, 781. Liddeisdale, ibid.	
Leicestershire,	517	Lidgate a village,	461 f	London	
Leicester towne,	519 d				
Leike a towne,	587 c				
Lemfer or Leinster,	619 f				
Lemfer Ore,	620 a				
Lemfer bread,	620				
Lena,	17				
Lenham,	331 a				
Leofrike Earle of Mercians,	567 e				

The Table of England.

London highway from Saint Al-	banes turned out of Watling-	streets,	415 b	Luthingland,	442 a	Maltravers Barons,	217 a
London or Londres, a family,	649 d	Lutter worth, 517 f. an Episco-	pal See,	Lygons a family,	577 b	ibid.	577 b
Manrice de Londres or London,	ibid. c	Th. de la Lynde,	213 f	Lygnorice in great plenty grow-	ing,	550 f	577 b
Lonchamps a family,	532	Lyrpoole or Litherpoole,	748 d	Maclesfield, a towne and	forest,	610 b	814 a
Longford a place and family,	553 d	M		Madin-boure or Madningbourne,	ibid.	Mamignot,	326 d
Long-Meg a stone,	777 e			Madning money,	ibid.	Maminots Barons,	332 d
Longvils a family,	397 c			Madock falsly dealt withall by	his Guardian John Earle of	Manchefer,	746 a
Lonisdale,	760			ware,	677 b	Manchet the finest,	420 a
Loa a river,	192			Maate,	796 d	Manchefer why so called,	747 a
Lophamford,	467 d			Magicke practised in Britaine,	234 a	Mandrubatius, See Andro-	gens oppressed by Castibili-
Lora Countesse of Leicester, a	forest,			Magnavills, alias, Mandevill,	452 b. Earles of Essex,	37	
Lortie the name of a family,	221 d			ibid.	453 e	Mandruites a family,	591 e
Lothbrooke the Dane,	207 a			Magnavil his end,	ibid. f	Mangonells,	400 d
Lortery used by Saxons,	135			Magnentius an usurper, 77. cal-	led Taporus, ibid. a fortu-	Mannours or de Maneris a fa-	815 e
Lovain a family,	444 e			nate Prince, 77. killed him-	selfe,	ibid.	
Lovels, 374. a family,	505 d			Magnus a Dane, 314 c. his mo-	numnt,	ibid.	
Lords of Castle Cary,	514 a			Magoclanus a tyrant in Britain,	113	Margan Castle,	644 e
Lovers a family,	553 d			ly,	564 f	Marga,	20
Loughborough,	521 d			Magon a god,	803 d	Margaret Countesse of Rich-	mond,
Lowland-men,	126			Mabel Earle of Hereford,	358 f	216 d	
Louth,	542 c			Maiden Castle,	212 c	Margaret Countesse of Salisbu-	ry beheaded,
Lowy of Tunbridge,	330 a			Maiden Bradley,	24	250 d	
Lowy of Briony,	ibid.			Maiden way,	761 e	Lord Marchers,	589 c. 165
Luceni in Ireland,	121			Maiden-head or Maiden-Hith,	286 c	Marecley hill,	620 b. moveth
Lucensii in Spaine,	ibid.			Maidstone,	330 e	ibid.	
Sir Rich. Lucy Lord Justice of	England became a Chanon,			Maidulph the Irish Scot,	242 c	Marcu made Emperour in Bri-	taine by the armies,
Lucies a family,	769 f			Main, what it signifieth,	569 c	84	
Lucius King of Britaine,	67			Maioir of London first ordeined,	188	Marefchall Earle of Harlows,	294 b
Lucies Knights an ancient fami-	ly,			Main Amber,	328 e	Marefchall Earle of Penbroch	why so named,
Lucullea certaine speares,	63			Malcolm Can Mor, King of	Scots,	500 c	655 b
Ludgate,	423 c			Maldon, 446 e. forced by Queen	Boadicia,	448	
Ludham,	478 d			Maldwit or Manduit,	570	Mary Hall in Oxford,	381 d
Ludlow,	590 c			Mallers a family,	223 e	Mary Magdalen Colledge in	Oxford,
Ludlowes a family,	594 b			Malliveries,	700 b	382 b	
Luffelds,	396 f			Malmesbury,	422 b	S. Maries of Radcliff,	237 e
Luffenham or Lessingham,	525			Malpas, 603 e. Barons thereof,	ibid.	779 d	
Lug, a river,	619 d			ibid.		Markham an uncorrupt judge,	Z z z z z Markham
Lugus, what it signifieth,	779 a						
Lullington, a town and family,	184						
Lumley Castle,	742 b						
Lumleys Barons,	ibid.						
Lune or Lone a river,	753 c						
Lupicinus sent into Britaine,	78						
Lupus Earle of Chester,	611 a						
Lusorie naves,	811 d						
Luthing, a lake,	468 d						

The Table of England.

Markham a village and name of family,	550 e	Medeshamstede, alias Medeswold hamsted,	ibid.	Middletons a family,	698 d	
Markham lord chiefe Justice of England,	550 e	Medeswold, a gulfe,	512 b	Middlewich,	607 f	
Marle,	20.393 c	Medley,	693 f	Mikel barr,	701 f	
Marleborough,	255 d	Medvan,	67	Milburga a devout virgin,	591 e	
Marleborough statute,	256 a	Medway river,	329 d	Sir Walter Mildmay a worthy knight,	514 e	
Marlow,	393	Meermarkes in old time,	515 c	Mildred a Saint,	340 b	
Marmions a family,	729 e	Melbourn castle,	554 a	Milfons,	681 a.556 f	
Marmions the kings Champions,	582 c	Melcomb Regie,	211 c	Milford haven,	651 d	
Marney Baron,	213 a	Melfield,	815 d	Milsum castle,	765 d	
Marnhill,	215 c	Long Melford an hospitall,	462	Mimmes,	415	
Marquesites found,	720 f	Melienith,	624 a	Mineran what towne,	407 f	
Marquesse what degree of honour,	165	Melin, what colour,	26	Minchins, that is, Nuns,	362 b	
Marquesse how created,	ibid.	Melitus a Roman, Bishop of London,	426 c	Minshul a place and family,	608	
Marchland,	690 e	Melkin a great professor of learning,	378 f	Minster,	334 a	
Martin Bishop of Tours, against putting heretikes to death,	82	Melton Mowbray,	522 e	Minster what it signifieth,	245 c	
Martin Vicegerent in Britaine, flabbeth himselfe,	78	Menai,	668 c	Minster Lovell,	373 f	
Martins, lords of Keimes,	654 d	Mendip hill,	230 d	Missenden a towne,	394 e. de	
Martins a family,	654 d	Mendlesham,	465 b	Missenden, Gentlemen,	394 e	
Martys in Britaine,	73	Menev,	189	Mitford,	812 b	
Masons first brought into England,	743 a	Menevia,	653 d	Milton,	731 b	
Massages, Scythians,	121	Menils Barons,	721 b	Mittons a family,	665 d	
Massham,	729 c	Merbury a place and familie,	609 f	Mixon,	274 e	
Matrafall,	662 d	Mercians of the North,	559 b	Modwena or Mowen a religious Virgin,	569 e. 586 b. ber Epi- taph,	586 c
Mawde the Emperesse, Lady of the English, 453 e. King Henry the First his wife,	284 d	Merchenlage,	153	Mogontus,	196 a. 221 c	
Mawde of Saint Valeri a fountaine,	623 c	Merworth,	330 d	Mohuns,	691 d	
Saint Maudit Castle,	189	Mercury had the charge of waies,	64	Mohuns or Moions,	190 f	
Maugre Llewellyn a Castle,	623 c	Mergate,	413	Moignes or Monkes of Essex a family,	245 b	
Mauleies Barons,	709 c	Merionethshire,	667	Moielenly,	676 c	
Peter Mauley,	719 c	Merivale,	569 d	Moinglath,	ibid.	
Mault of Abbingdon,	280 a	Merkin,	188	Mole a river, why so called,	297	
Mault how made,	485 b	Merlin the Britans Tager, where borne,	649 f	Mold,	681 a	
Mannbury,	212 c	Mersey a river,	745 e	Molineaux a family,	748	
Manwells,	641 e	Mesey mouth,	610 b	Mona Taciti, an Isle,	671	
Maxey castle,	515 a	Merthland,	481 a	Mona subdued by Julius Agri- cola,	ibid.	
Maximus usurper the Empire, 82. his vertues, ib. styled Tre- vericus Emperour,	ibid.	Merton a poole,	749 d	Monastical life or Monkerly when first professed,	603 a	
Maximus the usurper vanquish- ed and put to death by Theo- dosius,	83	Merton Colledge,	302	Monasteries what they were,	603 c	
Maxflock castle,	567 c	Statute of Merton,	302 e	Monasteries suppressed,	163	
Meales what they be,	479 e	Merton brooke a riveret,	554 d	Monkchester,	810 b	
East-Mean Hundred,	268 f	Metham a place and familie,	710	Monks, See Exceter,		
West-Mean Hundred,	ibid.	Metaris or Maltraith,	529 c	Monks Laymen,	603 c	
Meansborow Hundred,	ibid.	Mettingham,	468 c	Monkes a family,	208 a	
Meanuari,	ibid.	Merlin Sylvester, the British Apollo,	640 a	Monkes regular or of the Cler- gie,	ibid.	
Meaux Abbey,	712 e	Michael de la Pole Earle of Suffolke,	712 e	Monkes Weremouth,	742 f	
Walter Medantinus an Official Earle,	621	Saint Michaels mount,	188	Monmouthshire,	61	
Medaghom,	634 b	Michelham,	315 d	Monmouth towne,	632 b. the natall place of King Henry the Fifth,	632 e
Medcasses a numerous family,		Michael Scotus a great Mathe- matician,	773 b	Monmouth an Academy,	632 e	
		Middlesex,	419	Monow, a river,	617. 611 c	
		Middleton Abbey built by King Athelstane,	213	Montacute a place, why so called,	222 b	

Montacutes

Montacutes

The Table of England.

Montacutes Knights,	510 a	The Mosses, 745 d. whence they come,	747 b	Needles,	274 e
Montacutes a family,	222 c	The Moto,	783 b	Needhams a family,	464 a
Earles of Salisbury, ibid.	349	Mont Sorel or Mount Soar Hill,	521 a	Needwood,	598 c
Th. Montacute Earle of Salisbu- ry slaine before Orleans,	250	Mowbray,	304 f	Neirford a town and family,	586 e
Mont Agle Barons,	753 f	Mowbraies a family, the originall of their race,	723 c	Neirborough,	481 d
Montchenfyes Barons,	329 a	Mowbray much affected the Templars,	566 d	Nen the river his head,	507 c
Guarin Montchenfye another rich Crassus,	463 b	Mowbraies whence descended,	481 c	Nen river,	497 a
Montferrant Castle,	709 b	Thomas Mowbray Duke of Norfolke,	482 e. banished,	Nen or Auson river overfloweth the flat Country,	513 c
Montfichets Barons,	453 c	Montfort Earle of Leicester,	523 e	Nesse, 351. a Promontory,	451 d
Montfichei Baron, 440 a. 809 e		Simon de Montfort the younger disloyall to his Prince,	523 e	Nesta a welsh Lady and a re- vengefull woman,	628 e
Montforts,	566 a	Simon Montfort another Car- line, 577 f. slaine,	578 a	Netherby,	781 d
Simon de Montfort		Montgomeryshire,	661	Netherwent,	640 b
Leicester,	523 e	Montgomery towne and Castle,	661 f	S. Neoth,	378 e
Simon de Montfort the younger disloyall to his Prince,	523 e	Montgomerie Earle,	663 b	S. Neots or Needs,	497 c
Simon Montfort another Car- line, 577 f. slaine,	578 a	Montgomerie made a shire,	677	Neotus an holy man,	191. 497 a
Montgomeryshire,	661	Mont-Turold a fort,	513 a	Neotflow,	101
Montgomery towne and Castle,		Montjoy,	555	Nero the Emperour how he stood affected to Britaine,	48
		Montthault Barons,	680 e	Nettlested,	463 e
		Monuments or Tombs in Pauls Church in London,	426 d. & c.	Neuern river,	654 d
		The Moore in Monmouthshire,	694 d	Nevills a family, their descent,	737 c
				Nevill Lord Faulconberg Earle of Kent,	353 c
				Rich. Nevill Earle of Warwick,	415 d
				John Nevill Marquesse Monta- cute,	222 c. 403
				Rich. Nevill Earle of Warwick,	ibid.
				Rob. Lord Nevill killed in adu- tery,	729 c
				Nevills an honorable name,	769
				Nevin a mercate village,	668 b
				Newark upon Trent,	549 e
				Newburg,	672 f
				Newborough Abbey,	723 b
				Newboroughs or de Novo Bur- go,	213 a
				Will. of Newborough,	723 b
				Newbury,	283 d
				New Castle upon Tine,	809 f
				New Castle upon Tivy in Wales,	650 e
				New Colledge in Oxford,	381 e
				Newenden,	351 b
				Newenham Abbey,	207 a
				Newgate in London,	423 c
				New forest,	259 b
				Newhall,	446 c
				Newlands,	767 a
				New-leame,	495 b
				Newmerch,	364 b
				Bernard Newmarch a valiant and Politicke Norman,	618 e
				New-market or Newmercate towne,	459 d
				New-market Heath, ibid. c. 490 d	

Z z z z 3

The Table of England.

Newmarch the name of a family,	221 c	Northamptonshire,	505	Okenyate,	593
Newham,	401	North Elmham,	481 f	Oldbury,	269 d
Newham Regis,	562 d	North Leach,	366 b	Old man of Bullen,	345 c
Newham well,	ibid. e	Northwales,	659 c	Old Castle executed,	325 c
Newport Paine,	397 c	Northfolke,	471	Old street or Ould street,	540 e
Newport in Monmouthshire,	639 d	Northwich,	607 f	Old Towne,	617 c
Newport in Penbrockshire,	654	Norfolk men wrangling Law- yers,	471 c	South Okindon,	442 d
Newports a family,	605 d	Norwich a Bishops See,	472 a	O-Neall great Monarch of I- reland,	126
Newports Knights,	594 f	Norwich what it signifieth,	473 e	Onions hole,	271 b
Newsted,	547 c	Norfolk Earles and Dukes,	482 b	Onions Pennies,	ibid. a
Newstrambat country,	144	Norton in Suffolke,	464 a	Orbeies a family,	607 e
Newton in Northamptonshire,	509 f	Norton Dany,	507 a	Orcas what point,	x
Newton in Glamorganshire,	643	Norwich a City much endange- red,	475 c	Orchard the Honour of certaine Barons,	223 c
Newton in Montgomeryshire,	661	North-Riding,	717	Ordalium, what trial,	211 a
Nicen Creed established,	77	Northampton, 509 a. why so na- med,	ibid.	Ordutph his tomb,	199 c
S. Nicolas Isle,	200	Northamptonfield fought,	509 a	Ordgar,	ibid.
Nicolas of Tenkshury,	202 c	Northamptonshire,	ibid. f	Ore a river,	465 d
Nicolaus Fabricius de Petrico a good Antiquarian,	97	Northamptonshire Earles,	515 e	Oreford,	ibid.
Nicolaus de Albeniac an Inhe- ritrix,	364 f	Northumberland,	799	Orell a family,	748 a
Nid or Neath a river,	645 f	Norththil,	690 f	Oriall Colledge in Oxford,	381 d
Nidherdale,	ibid. e	Notley Abbey,	395 a	Originall of Nations and their names,	4
Niding a name of Reproach,	333 b	Nottinghamshire,	547	Ormesby a towne and family,	542 e
Niger usurper the Empire in Siria, 68. slaine by Septimius Seuerus,	ibid.	Nottingham, 547 d. why so cal- led,	ibid.	Ormeskirke,	744 a
Ninnius a learned professor,	378 f	Nottingham Earles,	511 b	Orthotes,	139
Ninius,	6	Northumberland Kings, Dukes, and Earles,	819 d	Orton or Overton,	502 b
Ninius or Ninian an holy Bri- taine,	118	Novatian hereticks,	84	Orwell a river,	463 f
Nobilis Caesar, what title,	104	Nun Eaton,	569 a	Orwell Haven,	465 a
Nobilissimus the sonne of Con- stantine an Emperour,	85	The first English Nun,	339 c	Orewood,	184
Nobility in England of two sort,	164			Osgodby,	543 a
Noels a family,	284 c			Ostib a virgin,	451 c
Nonestuch,	287 c			S. Ostiths a towne,	ibid. b
Normanton Fields for Dorman- ton fields,	511 f			Osney Abbey founded,	375 c
Norris,	384 a			Ostorius Lieutenant for the Re- mans,	590 a
Norris of Ricot,	384 a			Ostorius his adventures, and ser- vice in Britaine, 42. 43. his victorie, 44. honoured with Triumphant Ornaments,	45
Normans, why so called,	144			Oswald Bishop of Worcester, a maintainer of Monasticall life,	576 b
what outrages they commit- ted,	144			Oswald slaine by Penda,	597
Normans renowned for Marti- all Prowesse,	153			Oswald gloriously entombed,	540 f
Normans Conquest set downe at large,	145 &c.			Oswald,	690 f. 806 c
Normandie given to Rollo,	144			Oswald his Epitaph,	748 c
Normandy awarded away from the Kings of England,	733 d			Fables going of him,	540 f
Norrham a towne,	816 b			Oswaldslaw Hundred,	578 c
North Allertonshire,	723 f.			Oswestre,	597 c
saire there,	ibid. b			Otherhalfe stone,	191
North, Barous,	491 b			Otelands,	295 e
North, Hall,	415 d			Oxford,	328 c
				Otley,	698 d
				Ottadini,	796
				Ottery river,	206 c
				Otteryborne field,	803 c
				Ottery S. Maris,	ibid.
				Ottery pip in Kent,	335 a
				Okeham,	526 a
				Ouerburn,	640 b
				Oulney,	

The Table of England.

Oulney,	397 c	Pasfham,	397 b	Britain,	156
Oundale, for Avondale,	510 c	Paston, a townlet and family,	478 f	Pennahel, what it signifieth,	117
Ounbery Hill,	721 d	Paston,	21	Pen-Elin,	187
Ousley,	505 e	Patern a Bishop in Wales,	668 b	Penfants,	188
Ouse a river in Gloucestershire,	367 a	Patishul, a towne and familie,	507 a	Pennant,	191
Ouse river first called Ure and Tour,	689	Patishulls,	399 d	Penal,	66 f
Ouse or Ouze river,	241	Pauls or Poul Church in Lon- don founded,	425 c	Penbroch or Pembroke,	551
Ouse the greater,	471 b	Pauls steeple burnt,	425 c	Penbroch towne,	555 a
Ousbourne a riveret,	701 d	Paul,	68	Penbroch Earles,	19
Owen Justice of the common Pleas,	592 a	Paul the Notarie, surnamed Arna,	78 b	Pen Maer,	669 c
Owen Glendowerdwy, or Glen- dour, a notable Rebel,	623 c	Paulinus first Archbishop of Torke,	693 d	Pen Maer Khan,	ibid.
Owers,	274 e	Paulinus preached Gods word in Lindsey,	539 e	Pen Maer,	811 d
Omeborow what it is,	815 b	Paunton, a towne,	53 a	Penbally Castle,	760 c
Oxfordshire,	373	Payn Peverell,	389 d	Penbally,	582 f
Oxford,	377 e	Penda a Christian prince dared,	512 e	Pkridge, a towne,	583 a
made an University,	380 f	Peag-Kirk,	515 a	Penfeth chace,	581 d
Oxford Earles,	389 d	Peake in Darbysh., 553. why so called,	556 c	Penhurst,	329 e
Oxney,	351 f	Peasen growe of themselves,	351 b.	Penworth or Penverdant,	752 d
		Peasen growe of themselves, 351 b. growing out of rocks,	466 b	Pentaphyllon,	19
		Peche's Court,	182	Pentney Abbey,	481 e
		Pecklers Court,	222 a	Peperking alias Peverell,	443 f
		Pecklers Court,	19	Percies a family,	312 b
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perciahes a family,	722 d
		Pecklers Court,	19	Percy Hotspur,	803 c
		Pecklers Court,	19	Percy Earle of Northumberland slaine by rebels,	724 d
		Pecklers Court,	19	Percepierre, an herbe,	237 a
		Pecklers Court,	19	Percegrine Berry, Lord Wil- longbie of Eresby,	541 f
		Pecklers Court,	19	Percegrines, Falkons,	654 b
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perennius a Minion of the Em- perour Commodus, 67. be- headed,	67
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perin,	190
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perith or Petriana,	777 a
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perles shell fish,	669 d
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perles,	765 e
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perkin Warbeck,	205 b
		Pecklers Court,	19	Perthor,	578 b
		Pecklers Court,	19	Pertinax, Emperour,	68
		Pecklers Court,	19	Peter in Britain,	ibid.
		Pecklers Court,	19	Peters Post a delse or quarry of stone,	696 e
		Pecklers Court,	19	Petre of Writtle Baron,	442 d
		Pecklers Court,	19	Saint Peters upon the Wall,	443 e
		Pecklers Court,	19	Sir William Petre his commen- dations,	446 a
		Pecklers Court,	19	Peterpence,	226 c
		Pecklers Court,	19	Peterburgh,	512 a
		Pecklers Court,	19	Peterril, a river,	ibid.
		Pecklers Court,	19	Petor,	19
		Pecklers Court,	19	Petorum,	ibid.
		Pecklers Court,	19	Petrarie,	400 d
		Pecklers Court,	19	Petrocks,	194
		Pecklers Court,	19	Petronius Turpilianus sent as propretor	

The Table of England.

Proprietor into Britain,	52	Polesworth,	569 e
Pevensey or Pemsey,	213 e	Wil. de la Pole, Duke of Suffolk,	469 d. banished, 469 f. be-headed, ibid.
Peverells Lords of Darby,	558 d	Henry Pole Lord Mountacute,	222 d. 453 d
Peverells a family,	445 c	Pole, Cardinal,	206 a
Peveer a river and place,	609 e	Polsimore,	203 e
Pewter vessel,	184	Poltroffe a river,	799 f
Philips or Philips a family,	467	Pole,	193
Philbert,	269 c	Policletus a favorite of Nero sent into Britain,	52
q. Earle of Flanders, Earle	352	Pontes,	394 a
Pickers,	782 b	Poole, 606 f. Pontsbine County or Earldome in France how it came to the Kings of England,	394 b
Pickeringtowne,	782 b	Pomeries,	202 a
Pickert and Pickering a Li-	722 b	Pomponius Latius his opinion of the name of Britain,	5
bert and Sheriff,	722 b	Poph. on hill tops,	667 e
Picot Sheriff,	722 b	Pontfr.	223 e. 256 c
shire,	485 e	Pomfret, 695 c. in-	118
Pills wall,	789	famous in the blondshed of	118
Pills what it signifie,	789	Princes,	695 f
British,	789	Pont. a river,	809 d
Pie,	16	Port Gate,	808 f
Pills whence descended,	114	Port a Saxon,	210 d
the progeny of ancient natural	114	Portland,	210 e
Britains, 115. why so called,	114	Portchester,	768 a
when the Northern Britains,	114	Port Peris,	268
became so called, 116. divided	114	Portsey Island,	268
into two nations,	114	Portsmouth,	268 b
Pills, what become of them,	118	Portsway,	313 d
Piddle a riveret,	213 d	Potheridge,	208 a
Pier Gaveston,	198	Potton,	401 c
Pierpont a family,	548 f	Portleis,	603 d
Pigot,	401 c	Portmen,	477 e
Pilchards,	186	Portogan,	603 d
Pilgrimage to our Lady of Wal-	479 c	Portholme,	498 a
ingham,	479 c	Portkeveith,	633 f
Pimble mere,	666 b	Ponderbach Castle,	592 c
Pimbecnos,	15	Poultney a family,	517
Pinkneys Barons,	505 e	Povers a family,	377 a
Pinson a Noble Norman,	541 d	Powder treason of Rob. Catesby,	447
Pitt,	334 e. 440	Powick a Baronie,	445 a
Pitchford a village and family,	592 b	Powis Lords,	663 c
Placence,	327 b	Princes of Powis,	663
Plague in Tarmouth,	477 f	Powise Land,	659 c
Plaines of Salisbury,	245 d	Powlet Lord S. John Earle of	257 a
Planarat,	20	Wiltshire,	257 a
Plantius a governour in Britain,	447	Powlet his honorable titles,	267
Pleshi Plais, or Estre,	445 a	Powderham,	206 b
Plime river,	200 a	Powndbury,	212 c
Plimouth,	ibid. a	De Praetris a family,	607 e
Plimpton,	201 b	Prasutagus King of the Iceni,	457 a
Plin Limon an high hill,	658 b	Præfetti Prætorio under Con-	76
Plin Lin mere,	666 b	stantine the Great,	76
Plugenet a Baron,	618 a	Præfeturæ what it is,	422
Plumpton Parkes,	776 f		
Pannius Posthumus killeth him-	52		
selfe,	52		
Poinings Barons,	215 d		
Pointz Barons,	223 f		
Points a family,	364 b		
Poleland, why so called,	27		
John de la Pole Earle of Lincoln	469 f. executed,		
	470 b		

Prerogative Court,	181
Præfidium,	563 a
Priests forbidden marriage,	201
Priests married,	576. 201 b
Priscus Licinius Propertor in	66
Britaine,	66
Priscillianists the first hereticks	82
condemned to death,	82
Priests marriage debated of in a	243 d
Synode,	243 d
Prifom,	623 e
Prichards, a family,	628 e
Probus Emperour,	71
Prefton in Anderneffe,	752 d. e
Prideaux,	194
Protolitia,	808 d
Prittelwel,	441 c
Provincial Latin affected by the	116
Britains,	116
Provinces 2. in England,	160
Prowes,	203 a
Princes of Wales,	683
The Prince, his place, and stile,	163. 164
Prudbow Castle,	808 d
Pseudocomites,	167
Puckerich,	408 a
Puclechurch,	364 a
Pudsey Bishop of Durrham and	741 f
Earle of Northumberland,	741 f
Pulein a professour in Divinity	379 e. 380 c
and favourer of learning,	379 e. 380 c
P-thealy,	668 b
Purbeck Isle,	211 e
Purcell, or de Porcellus,	377 a
Puseies,	280 f
Putney,	303 a
Pym,	19
Pyramides of Glaffenbury,	229
Pyramidall stones,	701 a
Pyran,	193
Pyrry, a drinke,	573 d

Q Matremans men of good	383 f
note,	383 f
Qeene Borough,	334 a
Queenes Colledge in Oxford	381 t
Querendon,	395 e
Quicke-sands in Holland,	529 f
Quincy Saer Earle of Winche-	267 b
ster,	267 b
Quintinus,	82
Quintins a family,	731 a

R Aby Castle,	737 b
Raculph Minster,	335 b
Radcliffes a family,	767 d
Radcliffe	767 d

The Table of England.

Radcliffe or Redcliffe,	437 d	Rerecrosse,	732 f	Robert Earle of Leicester,	466 c
Radcliffe in Bristow,	237 e	Renda,	126	Robert Crouchbacke Earle of	519 f
Radegund,	349 a	Rheda,	18	Leicester,	519 f
Radmilds,	312	Rheder,	ibid.	Robert Consul or Earle of Glo-	368 d
Radnorshire,	623	Rhedec,	ibid.	cester,	368 d
Radnor town,	623 c	Rhedecsa,	ibid.	Robert Fitz Haimon,	359 d
Radnore made ashire,	677 e	Rhead a river,	802 a	Rebin Hood,	693 a
Radwinter,	446 a	Rheadfale,	ibid. c	Robin Hoods bay,	718 c
Ragland,	636 c	Rheadiad,	18	Rech, a river,	745 f
Rahader Gowy,	623 a. b	Rhegium, why so called,	347 d	Roch Dale a towne,	ibid.
Raleghs,	208 e	Rhefe ap Gruffin,	623 a	Recheſter a caſtle,	802 c
Ralegh a town,	443 a	Rhefe ap Thomas a valiant	650 e	Recheſter city,	332 c
Ramsey Isle and Abbey,	499 b	knight,	650 e	Recheſter or Roſſes a family,	405 d
Ramsey mere,	499 d	Rbie a river,	722 d		
Rammes foreheads, that is, Pro-	184	Rhidale,	ibid.	Rochford towne, and Hundred,	472
monories,	184	Rhia, Baron,	472	Rochford Barons,	ibid.
Ramesbury,	256 b	Rhre where of so called,	319 d	Recheſford Vicount,	ibid.
Rank-riders,	799 c	Rhodanus,	21	Rockingham Caſtle and Foreſt,	513
Ranulph Earle of Cheſter,	607 b	Rutupina littora what they bee,	342	Rock-Savage,	610 a
Rapes in Suſſex,	306 e	Ribel a river,	749 d	Roden a river,	594 c
Ratis,	20	Ribelcheſter,	750 b	Roding a river,	40 b
Ratcliffes Earles of Suſſex,	321 a	Ribald Liſle,	485 f	Roger the magnificent Biſhop of	243 a
Ravenglaſſe,	765	Ricall,	707 d	Salisbury,	243 a
Ravensburne river,	326	Richard the Second renounceth	680 d	Rogers Knight,	215. ibid.
Ravenſwath caſtle,	730 b	the crowne,	680 d	Roſſe a Lady,	405 b
Reads a family,	577 b	Richard Duke of Yorke claimeth	725 b	Roſſon,	ibid.
Reading,	284	the crowne,	725 b	Roſſes Croſſe,	ibid.
Readquire a mountaine,	802 a	Richard a renowned Earle of	197 d. his death and	Roſſe ſtones,	374 c
Reaſon the Danes Baner,	195	Cornwal,	197 d. his death and	Rollo the Norman, 144. his dream	144
Reche a towne,	490 c	ſepulchre, his ſonne Henry	197 f	and converſion,	144
Recall a river,	722 d	murdered,	197 f	The Roll of Wincheſter,	153
Rech dike,	ib.	Richard Cœur de Lion,	380 a	Rome called Conſtantina,	85
Reculver,	335 b	Richard the Third, a bad man	212 a	Romania,	24
Redcaſtle, or Caſtle Rou,	594 d	and a good Prince,	212 a	Romeswork,	343 f
Redin,	20	Richard, Duke of Gloceſter an	369 f. his praifes to many	Romans ſoiled and maſſacred in	51
Redhorſe vale,	561 c	uſurper,	369 f. his praifes to many	Britaine,	51
Redcolour giueſh name to many	525 d	win the crowne,	370	Roman Empire in Britaine at an	87
places,	525 d	Richard the Firſt his praifes,	285	end,	87
Redbourne,	413 d	Richard the Second his Reliques	translated to Weſtminſter,	Romans in Britaine,	34
Redbridge,	262 d			Romeſcot,	411 a
Red roſe and white, for Lanca-	725 e			Romara a Norman, Earle of	544 e
ſter and Yorke,	725 e			Lincoln,	544 e
Redthames,	126	Richard King of Romans, &c.	414	Roos Barons,	532 f
Redvers or Rivers Earles of	207 d	Richborow,	341 a	Roſamund Clifſord King Henry	375
Denſhire,	207 d	Richborow decayed,	ibid f	the Second his paramour,	375
Redverſes or de Ripariis,	201 c	Riches Barons,	441 d	Roſamunds bones translated, and	375
Redwald King of the Eaſt Sax-	465 c	Richard Lord Chancellour of	445	afterwards reduced againe,	376 c
ons,	465 c	England,	445		
Reforming errorrs a Court,	180	Richards Caſtle,	619 e	Roſered and white for Lancaſter,	725 e
Reginald Pole his commendati-	216 b	Richmond ſhire,	727	and York,	725 e
on,	216 b	Richmond towne,	729 f	Roſſe,	190. 714 a
Religious houſes diſſolved,	163	Richmond Earles,	733	Roſſeland,	190
Remney arver,	631 b. 642 a	Richmond the Kings houſe,	297	Roſſe in Penbrochſhire,	652 d
Remni what it ſignifieth,	642 a	Richmonds a family,	778 a	Roſſe in Cardiganſhire,	657 c
Remigins Biſhop of Dorcheſter,	539 c	Rickmansworth,	415 c	Roſſe Barons,	714 a
	539 c	Riſing Caſtle,	481 c	Roſſe Topping,	721 d
Rendleſham,	465 c	Riſingham,	803 d	Roſe Caſtle,	778 c
Renimed,	419 e	Riſh what it ſignifieth,	485 a	Rota temporum, that is, The	790 b
Reptaceſter or Richborow,	341 a	Rivers had Divine honours, be- heaped upon them,	698 a	webele of Times, an Hiſtory,	790 b
Repton,	553 f				320 a
Requeſts Court,	181	Robert bridge,	320 c	Rother a river,	320 a

Roſerfeld

The Table of England.

Rotherfield,	ibid.	Salt stones,	739 d	Scots whence they took name,	119
Rotherham,	689 e	Saltpit,	573 b,c	Scots of West Scotland are High-	ibid.
Rotherham Archbishop of Can-		Saltry Abbey,	500 b	land men,	ibid.
terbury,	689 e	Salt pits in Cheshire,	608 a,b	Scots came first out of Ireland,	120
Romcliff Castle,	781 c	Salutim Lucullus in Britaine,	62	Scots when they came to be of	125
Rouchefer,	809 e	Saltwood Castle,	349 c	name,	125
Round table,	265 b	Salwarp a river,	574 d	Scot what it signifieth,	124
Rowles in London,	428 c	Salmonds or S. Amands,	283 c	Scots a family,	349
Rouffes a family,	467 c	Salmonds or S. Amands Barons,	244 a, 366 e	Scotus, alias, Duns,	814 b
Routon Castle,	592 e, 662	Samorhea,	24	his pitifull death,	ibid.
Rugby,	562	Sampier growing abundantly,	434 a	Scovies,	20
Rudbeath Sanctuary,	609 a	Sandal Castle,	693 d	Screkingham,	535 c
Ruffes, fishes,	476 c	The Sand, part of Nottingham-	550 a	Screven a place and family,	700
Rugemond or Richmond Greies		shire,	19	Scroby,	551 b
in Bedfordshire,	734 d	Sandalum,	349 e	Scropes Barons,	729 b
Rugemont,	204 c	Sandgate Castle,	555 d	Scruffel hill,	767 e
Rumalds shrine,	396 d	Sandisacre or S. Diacre,	269 b, c, e	Scudamores a family,	621 a
Rumford,	441 f	Sandon,	343 a	Scutlon,	473 a
Rumon,	199 e	Sandy, See Saludica.	260	Scutary,	176
Rumney Marsh,	350 b	Sanctuaries,	342	Scythica vallis,	120
Rumney towne,	ibid.	Sandwich,	317 e	Scythians in Spaine,	121
Runkborne,	510 d	Sanguelac,	317 e	Scythicum a promontory in Spaine,	121
Rushbrooke,	461 d	Sapcots a family,	501 e	Seaton,	206 e
Ruston,	509 f	Sarajins-heads,	695 a	Sea Holly, See Eryngium.	
Russel Lord Russel of Thornough		Sarmatians are Scythians,	121	Sea heard to grone,	720 c
Russels, Knights,	514 c	Sarn Helen a Portway in Wales,	666 a	Sea land good for ground,	199 e
Russels Earles of Bedford,	394 e	Sasson,	23	Sea is warme,	2
	403	Saxon language maintained by	200 a	Sea coles,	735 c, 799 d
Ruthin, 676. Ruthlan,	679 f	English-Saxons called into Bri-	100, 127	Seamen caught,	466, 720 b
Rutlandshire, 525. why so called,	525 b, c, d	tain,	100, 127	Seales how they sleepe and are	720 c
Rutland Earles,	426 f	Saxons, 119. their valour and	556 e	caught,	720 c
Rutters what they were,	812 b	cruelty,	134	Seavenshale,	801 f
		Saturn well affected to Britaine,	556 e	Seckinton,	569 e
		Savages a great family,	610 a	Seftron,	748 d
		Saulden,	396 c	Seghil,	ibid.
		Scarborough Castle,	717	Segonax,	37
		Scardale,	556 a	Segrave a towne, 523 b. a fami-	ibid.
		Schilpor, See Esquires,	176	ly,	ibid.
		Seava his valour and advance-	37	Segraves Barons,	568 c
		ment,	37	Stephen Segrave his rising and	501 c, d
		Scalbie Castle,	782 e	fall,	501 c, d
		Scilicester in the wall,	806 b	Jane Seimor mother to King	224
		Scipio Africanus, where buried,	340 a	Edward the sixth,	224
		Sclate-stones digged,	514 d	Seimors or Saint Maurs Earles	416
		Scorby or Scurvie-grasse,	328 b	of Hertford,	240 b
		Scordium an herbe growing plen-	491 f	Seimor Duke of Somerset,	240 b
		tously,	491 f	Seimor or Saint Maur Earle of	634 d
		Scotene a Barony,	542 c	Hertford,	634 d
		Scottishmen of East-Scotland,	129	Seneca a great Usurer in Britaine,	457 c
		right English-Saxons,	133	Sejont a river,	668 d
		their fashions,	133	Selwood,	233 a
		Scots wild or Highlanders ha-	737 e	Sel what it signifieth,	271 c
		bit fort well with the Gothes,	255 a	Selbeies a family,	812 f
			123	Selbittenden,	351 c
				Selaby,	737 e
				Selbury,	255 a
				Semarc or de S. Medardo a fa-	milij

The Table of England.

Emly,	714 d	Heningham or Heveningham,	239 c
Sempringham,	534 d	Sicily the Isle out from Italy,	220 c
Serjeanties,	213	Snite a brooke,	549 e
Seovenburgenses,	829 c	Sowrey,	724 e
Seton,	811 f	Sow a river in Staffordshire,	583 e
Sevenoke,	328 d	Sider a drinke,	20
Sevenoke Alderman of London		Sidius Geta his good service in	Southam,
his Hospitall and Schoole,	328 d	Britain,	41
Severn river, his head,	661 c	Sidmanton,	272 c
commended,	357 d	Sidnacester,	543 f
a noble river,	573 d	Sidneys,	329 e
Severus Propetor in Britaine,	65	Sir Robert Sidney Baron of Pen-	herets and Vicount Lisle,
Severus Emperour, his exploits,	67. hec entreteth Britaine,	69. fenster Britaine with a wall,	69. died at Yorke, 70. 703 b
his funerals,	ibid.	canonized a god,	70
Seward a Poet,	632 d	Sinbrech or Simon Brech,	126
Sexwulph first Abbot of Peter-	burgh Abbey,	512 c	Sion,
Sezay,	724 e	Sisters kirke,	714 b
Shafts,	184	Simards a family,	646 e
Shafisbury,	214 d	Simard Earle of Huntingdon,	502 c
Sharnborne,	480 c	Skales, Barons,	405 e
Shavington,	607 e	Skeffington a towne and family,	522 e
Scheaths,	609 d	Skeldaw an hill,	767 c
Sheafelds,	689 c	Skinffrith Castle,	694 b
Shene,	297 c	Skippton in Craven,	521 b
Sheep devour men, &c.	505 c	Skipwiths a family,	652 c
Sheffelds Barons,	544 d	Slebach a Commandery,	535 d
Shengay a Comm. undery,	485 e	Sleford,	498 f
Shelford a Barony,	472 e	Sleepe a towne,	607 e
Shepey Isle,	333 c	Smiths a family,	729 d
Ship of King Hiero,	32	Snath,	617 d
Shipston,	561 c	Snodhil Castle,	667 a
Shirburne a brooke running		Snowdon Forest,	ibid.
through Shirbourne,	696 b	Snowdon hills,	517 b
a towne and Castle,	214 a. A	Soar a river,	737 d
Bishops See,	214 b	Sockburne,	448 b
Shirley a place, and family,	313 c	Sodates Augustales,	364 c
Shires divided into Hundreds,	158	Sodbury,	493 a
Shirewood forest,	547 b	Soham,	775
Shires how many in England,	159	Solway frieb,	267 e
Shoad,	184	Solente frieb,	20
Shobery,	441 c	Soldarii what they are,	99
Shorne,	329 b	Solidarii,	171
Shobery Nefse,	ibid.	Solidus, a coyne of Gold,	567 a
Shochlach,	604 b	Solyhill,	782 a
Shoreham,	313 b	Solom Mosse,	397
Shorwich Castle,	606 e	Somerles Barons of Dudley,	581
Shrawerden Castle,	597 b	a noble family,	468 e
Shrewsbury,	595 a	Somerley,	499 a
Shrewsbury Earles,	599 b	Somerham,	220. whence it
Shropshire,	589	Somerfetshire,	took name,
Shugbury a towne and family,	561 d	Somerfet Dukes and Earles,	Simon
Shurland,	334 a		
Sible Hemingham,	450 b, See		

The Table of England.

Simon, Saint Liz or Selis the first Earle of Northampton,	509	in his minority,	73	Stratford upon Avon,	365 a
Simon de Saint Liz the second,	515 f	Stipper stones hill,	592 c	Stony stratford,	396 f
Saint John his knights,	241 f	Stoke battell, there fought,	549 a	Strait of Callais,	345 e
Saint Swithins feast rainie,	265 d	Stonars what place,	339 f	Stratfleur,	657
Staffords of Blatherwic knights,	514 b	Stoke Curry,	221 a	Strath what it signifieth,	117
Staffords of Grafton,	395 e	Stoke Pogeys,	394 c. 521 c	Stratton,	196 a
Staffords Dukes of Buckingham,	397 e	Stockepont a petty Barony,	610	Stream works,	184
Stafford of Suthwick Earle of Devonshire,	208	Stoke Fleming,	202	Strelleys knights, and Sturleys the same,	550 d
Staffords Earles of Wiltshire,	256 c	Stokesley,	521 a	Strelley Sturley or Strelleg a towne and family,	550 a. b
Staffordshire,	581	Stone a towne: why so called,	783	Sirenham,	578 c
Staffordtowne,	584 d	Stones made by art,	253 a. b	Strettons,	593 a. d
Stafford holdeth Carborough Castle,	717 e	Stoneheng,	251	Strettham,	737 a
Stafford a Citizen of London,	208	Stoneham,	261 d	Strighall castle, or Struggle,	633
Standard, what it was,	724	Stonely Abbey in Huntingdonshire,	501 c	Strigulia,	633 c
Standon,	408 a	Stonely,	562 e	Strigulia Earles,	ibid.
Standrop or Stainthorp,	737 b	Stonely Holme,	ibid.	Strickland a place and family,	762 e
Stanford upon Avon,	515 b	Stony serpents of S. Hilda,	718 e	Strongbow first Earle of Penbroch,	655 b
Stanford rivers,	440	Stones with stony serpents in them,	721 a	Strangbow,	633 c
Stanford upon Welland,	533 e	Stonie street,	349	Stroud a river,	362 b
an Universitie begonne at this Stanford,	533 e	Stones resembling Cochles &c.	363 c	Studia the same that Universities,	379 c. 381 a
Stanford destroyed,	ibid.	Stony stroud,	21	Sudbroke,	633 f
Stanes,	419 d	Stonors a family,	389 a	Sudley the Barony of Chandos,	365 b
Stanes forest or waven,	421 c	Store a river,	408 c	Sudbury,	462 e
Stanley the Expensifull Bishop of Ely,	499 a	Bishop Stortford,	ibid.	Suffolke,	459
Stanlaw,	606 f	Stow on the would,	366 a	Suffolke Cheeses,	459 b
Stanleies a noble family,	583 f	Stow in Lincolnshire,	543 d	Suffragans to the Archbishop of Canterbury,	344 d
Stanleies whence descended,	606	Stomphs or Hoxe houses used much,	681 d	Suerby,	714 b. c
Stanleies Earles of Darby,	749 f	Stow in Suffolke,	464 b	Simon Sudbury Archbishop of Canterbury,	337 b
Stanemore,	732 e	Stour river in Suffolke,	462 a	Sully an Island & name of a man,	642 f
Stamaries, and their Lord Wardens,	185	Stour river in Dorsetshire,	214 c	Sueno King of Danes subdueth Ethelbert and England,	143
Stanhopes,	549 a	Stour mere,	462 a	Swining a Bishops See,	286 a
Stantons a family,	553 d	Stour a river,	573 f	Superstition of the Britans,	182
Stanwel,	419 c	Stour a river in Kent,	335 d	Surrey Earles,	304 a
Stanwicks,	782 e	called Wantsume and Inlade,	339 e	Suria the goddesse,	801 e
Star Chamber,	179	Stourbridge faire,	496 b	Susana in Spaine,	12
Stations or Mansions in Antoinine,	399 f	Stourminster,	215 c	Sussex,	306
Stansford,	547 c	Stourton,	245 a	Sussex Earles,	320 c. f
Steele,	187	Stourton Castle,	581 c	Suit in law betweene Edward Nevill and Dame Mary Fane determined in Parliament,	636
Steele point,	201 d	Stourton the Honour of the Barons de Stourton,	214 c	Sutton Colfeld,	567 b
Stewes,	434 d	Stourtons Barons,	245 b	Suthwicke, See Earle of Devonshire,	208 b
Stephanides, See Fitz Stephen,	406 e	their Crest,	245 b	Suthwell,	549 b
Steven Hauk a towne,	406 e	Stradlings or Esterlings a family,	641 f	Sutton Vantort,	200 a
Stibium found in Darbyshire,	556 f	Stradling knight,	641. 643 e	Sutton Prior,	ibid. a
Stiliard,	435 c	Strange a family of knights de-gree,	480 b	Suttons a family,	581 c
Stilton or Stichilton,	501 f	Strange de Blackmere,	365 f	Suttons Gentlemen of worth in Nottinghamshire,	549 e
Stilicho protector to Honorius	481 f	598 f. de Knocking,	597 c	Sutton in Darbyshire,	556 b
		Strangbow Conquerour of Ireland,	397 d	Swaffham,	481 f
		Strat Clud,	676 d		Swallow
		Strangwaies a family,	721 b		
		Strangwaies,	212 f		
		The Crosse there,	397 a		

The Table of England.

Swallow hole,	297 a	Tanet Isle why called Thanatos,	honoured for his service,	81
Swale river,	729 e	Tanet inhabitants industrious,	Theodosius his sonne Emperor,	81. he triumpheth over Maxi-
Swaldale,	ibid. f	Tanet inhabitants industrious,	mus the usurper,	83
Swale the river used for Rap-		Tanfeld,	Theon the last British Bishop of	
tisme,	136	Tania what it signifieth,	London,	425 b
Swancomb,	329 a	Taranis,	Theophilus Antiochenus,	9
Suene Tiugs Kege a Danish Ty-	543 e	Taranis,	Ther a brooke,	471 d
rant,		Tarian,	Thetford, 471 d. a Bishops See,	ibid. f
Swerds desse,	501 a	Taseta what it signifieth,	Thin studious of Antiquities,	160
English Sweet whereof it comes,	24. 596	Task what it is,	Thins a family,	245 a
Suetonius Paulinus Propretor in		Taterhall a Barony,	Thireos,	18
Britain, 49. His oration and		Tasbai a British Saint,	Thirlwal Castle,	799 f
battell with Quene Boadi-		Tasfals a family,	Thirlwal a familie first called	
cia,	51	Tavistoke Abbey,	Wades,	800
Swidelm King of the East An-		Taw river,	Thirlwall, why so called,	ibid.
gles,	465 c	Tawstock,	Thirty tyrants or usurpers at	
Swines pennies,	550	Tawton,	once,	71
Swift river,	517 d	Taxea,	Thirstleworth,	420 e
Swinborne a place and family,	806 b	Taximagulus,	Thonder dach,	17
Swinsey or Sinsey,	646 b	Teage river,	Thone river,	223 b
Synodes,	181	Tees or Teis a river head,	Thomas of Woodstocke Duke of	
Syrack tongue mother of all lan-		Tees mouth or Teis mouth,	Glocester smothered at Calais,	
guages,	204 b	Teg what colour,	Thoneton or Taunton,	222
		Teg-Engle,	Thongcaster,	542 d
		Teigne river,	Thora a god, how portrayed,	135
		Tein a brook,	Thoresby,	774 c
		Teis or Tees river,	Thornangb,	514 c
		Telean,	Thornbury,	363 f
		Telen,	Thornndon,	442 e
		Temesford,	Thorney Abbey,	494 d
		Temd, a river,	Thornhills,	693 d
		The Temple at Brisflow,	Thornton,	396 e
		Temple,	Thornton in Lincolnshire,	542 f
		Temple Bruer a Commandery,	Thorps a family,	472 d
		Templars,	Thorpston, alias Thrapston,	510
		Tenby,	Thredling See Deben,	
		Tenham,	Thresk castle,	724 c
		Terminations of places names,	Throcknortons a family,	565 e
		Terne a river,	Throgey a river,	634 e
		Terringham a towne and family,	Thurgarton,	549 a
		Test a river,	Thurkil,	326 e
		Teinal, or Theotenhal,	Thurland Twinstalls,	753 e
		Tetrachie erected by Alfrid	Thwengs a family,	721 e
		in his Monarchie,	Thwengi,	196 a
		Tevertan or Swifordton,	Thyrna river,	478 b
		Tentates,	Tibba a free Saint and patronesse	
		Ten,	of Falcony,	526 d
		Tenkisbury,	Tiberius Caesar medled not with	
		Thanes,	Britain,	4
		Thaxted,	Tibetosts or Tiptosts Earles of	
		Thelsty a river,	Worcester,	549 c
		Thellesford,	Tibury or Tiburbury hil.	262 a
		Thelwall, 610 c. why so called, ib.	Tichburnes,	262 f
		Theobalds a stately house,	Tickhil,	699
		Theocus an Eremit,	Ticks hal,	584 e
		Theodosius an expert warrior	Tidswell,	558 c
		sent into Britaine, 79. his ex-	Tikenhal by Beaudly,	573 f
		ploits there, 80. he recovereth	Till a river,	815 b
		the Roman provincethere, 80		

A a a a

Tilbury

The Table of England.

Tilbury,	440 d	Treboeth,	605 f	Valeff what hee is, 663. a wor-	
Tillio's a family,	782	Trederman,	783 b	shipfull title,	713 c
Tilney a towne,	481 b	Trees under ground,	745 d	Valois a family,	465 f
Tilney's a family,	471 d	Tregon,	657 d	Valtoris,	193
Tilney's Knights,	481 b	Tregone,	190	Valuasores,	168
Tilney's smeth,	ibid.	Tregian,	ibid.	Vandals and Burgundians in	
Tilney Abbey,	444 e	Tregoz Barons,	617 d	Britaine,	114
Tilnood castle,	614 a	Trelawnies,	192	Vandals brought into Britaine	
Times of the world,	334	Trematon,	193	by Probus,	71
Timothie an heriticke in Britan,		Trenewith,	661 e	Vandelberia,	489 d
	87	Trent a riveret,	213	Vargæ,	19
Tin in Cornwall,	184	Trent a river,	547	Varia what it signifieth,	679 e
Tin of two sorts,	185	Trentham a Monastery,	583	Vaulx Barons,	786 b, 510
Timworkers common wealth,		Treshams a family,	509 c	Ubhanford,	816 b
	185	Trevilians,	196 c	Uchel,	21, 190
Tindagel,	194	Triadum, a British booke,	33	Vellius Bolanus,	53
Tindale,	802 a	Tribet,	29	Venables Barons of Kindreton,	609 b
Tine,	799 e	Tribunals or Courts of Justice in		Vandraeth Vehan, a river,	649
Time,	802 a	England,	177	Venedocia,	659 f
Timonth,	81	Tribunitian authority,	101	Venudius a Potentate of Britaine,	
Tio, vel, Finga-Ceſter,	549 b	Tribine what it was,	159	Venudius a Potentate of Britaine,	
Tippall, a river,	800 b	Trimarcia,	18	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tirells a family,	396 e	Triperia,	20	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tirbings or Decimes ordained,		Trophee in Cornwall,	188	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
	158	Trubridge,	244 e	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Titus his warlike service in Bri-		True-place,	802 a	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
taine,	42	Trusbut,	540 e	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Titus the worlds joy dieth,	56	Tuddington,	401 f	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Trove the river, 949 b. where he		Tufa a Banner,	195	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
springeth,	657 c	Tuſco the Saxons ſtock-father,		Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Todenay, or Tony,	536 b		135	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Todenay or Tony,	412 b	Tuſday,	ibid.	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Todington,	365 c	Tunbridge why ſo called,	330 a	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tong caſtle,	594 a	Tunſall a worthy Prelate, 744 d		Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Toiſure or ſhaving the Crowne,		Turbervell, or de Turbida villa,		Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
	118		213 c	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Topcliff,	731 a	Turbervell a family,	643 c	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Torbay,	202 d	Turkil a Coward,	464 c	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Torceſter,	505 f	Turkils of Arden,	565 d	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Torkſey,	538 a	Turkil the Dane,	500 b	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Torneaments,	407 d	Turuld Abbot of Peterborough,		Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Toſto vanquiſhed,	145		513 a	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Totnes,	201 e	Turton Chappell and tower,	745	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Totneſſe ſhore,	202	Turpins Knights,	517	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Touchets a family, 584 b. Ba-		Turets a family,	594 e	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
rons de Audley,	ibid.	Turoy,	399 b	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tovie the Kings Standard bea-		Tuſcets or Touchets Barons Au-		Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
rer,	439 d	deley,	609 a	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tovie, the river,	649 d	Tutbury Caſtle,	587 f	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tower d'Ordre,	345 c	Twede the river,	814 e	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tower of London,	423 e	Twifford,	813 c	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Towridge river,	207 f	Twinamburue,	259 c	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Towrington,	208 b	Tyrants in Britaine,	23	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Town battell,	696 d	Tzerzes a fabulous Greeke wi-		Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Trabucks,	400	ter,	32	Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tracies,	365 d			Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Tratford a place and family,	747			Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Traith Maur,	666 a			Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Traith Biſchan,	395 c			Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Traith Taſſ,	642 c			Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Trebellins Max. Propretor in				Venus what it signifieth,	679 e
Britaine,	52			Venus what it signifieth,	679 e

V

Vale a river, 189
Vale, 393 b
Vale of Ailesbury, 395 c
Vale Roiall, 608 d
Vallachians why ſo called, 11
Vale Crucis, 677 a

The Table of England.

Victoria,	271 b	Uſpianſ their venturous and me-		Walſſ a family,	364
Vitorinus a commendable go-		morable ſalt,	57	Walſſ, what it ſignifieth,	112
vernour under Honorius in		Uſke a river,	628 a	Walſingham,	470 e
Britaine,	85	Uſke a towne,	636 c	Walſingham a towne,	479 c
Vitorie what names it hath in		Uſceſter,	587 e	Walſingham Knights,	ibid.
divers languages,	457 e	Uſther Pendragon, 195. why ſo		Walter de Hemingford,	721
Vitoriones who ſo called,	117	called,	410	Walter,	752 f
Velloctus Ceſtrell to Venutius		Uxbridge,	459 e	Walter Eſpec,	709 d
marieſh his wife,	53			Waltham Croſſe,	437 d
Villocatus a Legion,	604 c			Waltham Foreſt,	439 e
Via,	244 a			Waltham Abbey or Waltham	
Villa forinſeca what it is,	391 e			Croſſe a towne,	439 c
Villiers a family,	523 a			Walton in Darbyſhire,	556 b
Vineyards in Britaine,	71			Walton a place and familie,	
The Vine,	269 d				572
Vines in England,	ibid. e			Watwick,	802 a
Vinyards in Glouceſterſhire,	357 f			Watworth a herbe called Dances	
Vincent's Rocke,	239 a			blood,	452 b
Virus Lupus Propretor,	69			Wandleſworth,	303 a
Virgins eleven thouſand Mar-				Wandle a river,	287 f
tyrs,	197 a, 286 e			Wandſike,	241 d
Viſigothi,	294 e			Wantage,	281 a
Viſi Saxones,	ibid.			Wanſum, or Wentfar a riveret,	
Viſcounts a family,				473 c. See Stour in Kent.	
Viſan,	347 d			Ware a towne,	407 c
Vitruvius,	19			Wapentakes, what they bee,	
Vitermus,	691 d				159
Ulpian Marcellus a brave marri-				Ware a Prieſt and Baron of the	
our, 66. his vigilancy and				Parliament,	746 a
temperance,	ibid.			Waſt, Barons de la Ware,	
Ulpus his horne,	704 e				312
Uſe a lake,	776 c			Warburgton a place, and familie,	
Uſley,	773 a				610 b
Ulyſſes whether ever in Britaine,				Wards,	179
	32			Wardens of the Marches,	799 b
Ulyſſippo, that is, Liſbon whence				Warden of the Cinque ports,	
it tooke name,	32				325 b
Ulverſton,	755 c			Wardon,	401 c
Umfravills a family, 806 b. 535				Wardon Hundred in Northamp-	
University Colledge in Oxford,				tonſhire,	507 b
	381 c			Wardow a Caſtle,	246 a
University, a publicke ſchoole,				Wardſtaff,	440 c
	381 b			Warham towne,	213 c
Unſtrote a river,	138			Warkworth,	813 a
Uoſy Biſhop of Exceſter,	567			Warington,	748 b
Uortigern the laſt Monarch of				Warſford,	269 a
Britiſh blood, and the bane				Warre civill betweene Torke	
of his country, 624 b. burnt				and Lancaſter determined	
with Lightning,	ibid.			in the death of Edward the	
Uortigern alias Gourtigern ſen-				young Earle of Warwicke,	
deth for Saxons,	128				570
Uortimer a valiant Britaine				Warwaſt,	201 e
where buried,	538 e			Warwickſhire,	561
Uppingham,	525 e			Warwick towne,	562 f
Upton,	577			Warwick Earles,	569 f
Uortiporius a Tyrant of the Di-				Warwicke in Cumberland,	
meta,	113				778 a
Urſula, an holy Virgin,	197			Waſh a river, or Gnaſh,	525 e
Urſus de Abrot, 570. Sheriffe of				Waſhes a dangerous arme of the	
Worceſterſhire,	578 e			Sea,	480 d
Uſaſor Iſa, that is, Onſe a river,				Waſhburnes, villages and fami-	
	296			lies,	577 d
				Waſts,	

A a a a a 2

The Table of England.

Watts,	806 a	Monuments therein,	429 f	Wheatthamsted,	406 c
Waterfall,	730 c	Westminster hall,	431 c	John of Wheatthamsted,	ibid f
Water divided,	399 c	Westmorland,	759	Wherfe the river, 696 d. why so	ibid f
Water Germaner. See Scordium,		Westmorland Earles,	763 d	Whetstons,	339 c
Watford,	415 a	Westriding,	489 d	Whitehart forest,	213 f
Watch-tower erected by C. Caligula,	40	West Saxons bring the Heptarchie to a Monarchie,	138	whereupon so called,	214 a
Watesbury,	592 f	Westsexenlage,	153-159	Whitehart silver,	ibid,
Watling-street highway,	64	West Saxons kingdome,	294 c	Whitechurch in Shropshire,	598
Watling-street a towne,	593	West wales,	647 b	Whitgaraburge,	275 c
Wavency, a river,	467 d	West weales,	184	Whitgift Archbishop of Cambrury,	542 d. his good deeds,
Waver a river,	773 b	Wetherby,	699 a	Whitby,	718 b
Wauburn,	479 a	Wetherill,	778 a	White Hall the Kings house,	432
Wauburnham,	ibid.	Wever a river,	601 c	Whitbam,	446 b
Weaby,	620 b	Wever an hill,	586 f	Whitcheorse vale,	279 c
Weaby Ale,	ibid.	Wey river,	294 c	Whitney aplace and family,	618
Weald in Kent,	329 d	Whaddon,	396 d	Whitlan,	348 b
Weare a towne,	205 c	Wiatts a family,	331 c	Whitespurrer,	176
Weares the Decay of Excester haven,	205 c	Wiat his unfortunate end,	ibid.	Whittington,	598 b
Wedderborrow,	581 f	Wic what it signifieth,	326.355	Whorwel,	262 a
Wedenfay,	135	Wiceii,	354 f-573 d	Williams of Newborough,	8
Weden in the Street,	508 c	Wiches, that is, Salt pit,	573 b	William or Wilcock of Monthbury,	665
Weimouth,	211 b	Wich a towne,	575 b	William of York,	695 c
Well ebbing and flowing,	558 c	Wich wood forest,	374 b	William of Malmesbury,	242 f
Welles medicinable,	497 d	Wich a learned Canonist,	575 a	William Long-Eslee,	145.249 d
Welch Poole a towne,	662 b	Wichliff died,	517 f	Waine neere Damiaata,	249 e
Welles Barons,	541 c. 542 b	Wickham Bishop of Winchester,	265 c. his praise; 266 c. d. his equivocant mot,	Wiccombe, or wickham a towne,	393 d
Welles vicount,	542 b	Wiccombe, or wickham a towne,	393 d	Widdevoile or Woodvill a family,	506 c
Welles the City,	223 d	Widdevoile or Woodvill a family,	506 c	Widdevill Lord Rivers,	ibid.
Welland river,	505 b	Widdevill Lord Rivers,	ibid.	Earle Rivers, ibid. High Constable of England, ibid. & c. beheaded,	ibid.
Wellledon,	514 d	Widdevill, Earles rivers,	405 e	Widdevill, Earles rivers,	405 e
Welhop a riveret,	738 c	Wie river,	358 e. 618 a	Wie river,	358 e. 618 a
Wellingtonborow,	509 f	Wife demised to another,	312 f	Wigenball,	481 b
Wenlock,	591 c	Wigenball,	481 b	Wight Isle,	273 c. & c.
Wemme,	594 c	Wight Isle,	273 c. & c.	why so called, ibid. the Lords thereof,	276 c. d
Wenmans, a family,	384 a	Wight Isle,	273 c. & c.	Wiggin,	749 c
Went a river,	690 f	Wiggin,	749 c	Wigmore,	619 c
Wentbeck a river,	812 b	Wigton,	774 b	Wigton,	774 b
Wentdale,	727 e	Wilberhams or Wilburhams a family,	607 d	Wilberhams or Wilburhams a family,	607 d
Wentworth a place, and familie,	689 e	Wilberham,	490 b	Wilberham,	490 b
Wentworths Barons,	463 c	A wild man caught in the Sea,	466 a	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Weorth what it signifieth,	582	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Were a river,	738	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werbura or Warburga an holy virgin,	508 c. 583	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werburs Church in Chester,	605	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werith, what colour,	26	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werke Castle,	815 a	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werlam or Verlam Citie in great distresse,	51	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werlam-street,	64	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werminster,	245 c	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Werymall,	754 d	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
West Barons de la Ware,	312 d	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Westminster, sometime Thorney,	428 e	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137
Westminster Church,	428 f	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137	Willebrode a learned Englishman,	137

The Table of England.

Wimondly,	406 c	Woden,	241 d	shire,	522 c
Winander mere,	755 b	Woden a Saxons god,	135	Wreken an hill,	593 d
Winburne what it signifieth,	216 a	Woderington. See Witherington,		Wreshill castle,	710 a
Winburne minster,	215 e	Wold in Leicestershire,	523 a	Wrexham,	677 b
Wincaunton,	221 d	Wollaton,	547	Wriothelleys or Wriothelleys,	273 a
Winchelcombe towne & Abbey,	365 d	Woodvil. See Widvil,		Earles of Southamton,	273 a
Winchelsey,	319 b	Wolpher a Pagan King killeth his two sonnes,	583. became a Christian,	Wringecheffe,	192
Winchel. See Ore,		Wolsey Cardinal a Butchers sons,	512 d	Writtle, a large parish,	445 c
Old Winchester,	809 e. 269 a	Wolfebunts a family,	556 d	Wrotesley or Wrothesley a place and family,	581 d
Winchester,	262	Wolverton a towne and family,	397	Wrotham,	593 b
Winchester bishops,	265 e	Wolves destroyed,	665	Wroxhall,	566 d
Winchester tower in windfor Castle,	288 d	Wondy,	634 c	Wulfrune a devout woman,	581
Winchester Earles and Marquesses,	267 b. d	Woodbridge,	465 d	Wulfrunes Hampton or Wulver Hampton,	581 e
Winchendon,	395 f	Wooden, how portrayed,	135	Wulper,	463 f
Windlefor Barons,	289 a. 320 c	Woodball,	407	Wyre forest,	573 c
Windlefor a family,	419 c	Woodham Walters,	446 b		
Windlefor towne,	285 d. e	Woodland a part of Warwickshire,	561 b		
Windlefor Castle,	288 d	Woodnoths,	607 e		
Windlefor forest,	293 b	Woodstock,	375 d		
Windrush river,	374 a	Wooton Bassett,	473 a		
Wingfeld in Darbyshire,	555 e	Woodrising,	573		
Winfeilds Knights,	512 a	Worcester,	575 e		
Winifride a learned Englishman,	137. the Apostle of Germanie,	Worcester Earles,	578 f		
Winkles or cockles on Hil-tops,	203 d	Workefop,	550 f		
Winster a river,	760 a	Workefop,	550 f		
Winterton a Cape,	478 d	Workefop,	550 f		
Winwidfield,	694 e	Workefop,	550 f		
Winwicke,	748 b	World how it began to be peopled,	11		
Wipped fleet,	340 a	Wormhill,	556 d		
Wire a river,	753 a	Wormleighton,	561 d		
Wire-dale,	ibid.	Wormgay or Wrongey,	481 e		
Wirkington,	769	Worsted a towne,	478 c		
Wurral,	601 e. 606 d	Worsted stuffe whence so called,	478 c		
Wiske a river,	723 e	Wortley a place and family,	586		
Withburga a Saint,	482 a	Wotton under Wever,	586		
Witherington or Woderington a castle and name of a martiall familie,	812 e	Wottons a familie, and Baron Wotton of Merlay,	331 a		
Wittlemere,	500 d	Wotton under Edge,	364 c		
Witton a Castle,	738 c	Wounds what they be,	364 e		
Wiza a riveret,	773 b	Wragby,	540 e		
Wye a towne in Kent,	335 d	Wreke a river,	517 b		
Wood,	19	Wreke a river in Leicestershire,	522 c		
Woburn,	401 e				

A a a a 3

THE

X. No British letter, 97

Y

Y Ale, 676 e
Y Tanesbury castle, 245 e
Yardley Hasting, 509 e
Yare, 721 a. a river, 468 d
Yarmouth, 476 f
Yarmouth, 177
Yeverin, 815 d
Y-kil what it signifieth, 714 n
Yorkes mold, 709 b
Yorkes City, 701
Yorkeshire, ibid.
Torke Earles and Dukes, 724 e
Tron Mynes and workes, 306 d
Ystwith, 658 a
Two Ellar, 675 c
Two Bach, 642 e

Z

Z Onches, 201 f. 202 c. whenae descended, 519 a
Zouches of Haringworth and Ashby de la Zouch, 224 e
Zouch Mortimer, 514 a
Zouch killed in Westminster hall, 519 b
Zyithum, 20

THE NAMES OF SEVERALL Nations, Cities, and great Townes, Rivers, Pro-

montories or Capes, &c. of Britaine in old time; such as *Caesar, Tacitus, Ptolemæus, Antoninus, Notitia Provin-*
ciarum, and other Authours, have made mention of:
together with the later and moderne
names.

A

A Ballaba,	<i>Appleby in Westmorland.</i>	761
Abone,	<i>Avington or Avenon in Gloucestershire.</i>	358
Abus æstuarium,	<i>Humber in Yorkshire.</i>	710
Æfica,	<i>Netherby upon Eike in Cumberland.</i>	781
Ad Anſam,	<i>Neere Coggeshall in Essex.</i>	449
Ad Pontem,	<i>Paunton in Lincolnshire.</i>	537
Adurni Portus,	<i>Ederington.</i>	313
Agelocum.	<i>Little-borough upon Trent.</i>	549
Alone,	<i>Whitley in Northumberland.</i>	794
Alannius flu.	<i>Avon in Wiltshire.</i>	243
Alaunus flu.	<i>Alne in Northumberland.</i>	813
Amboglanna,	<i>Ambleside, haply.</i>	760
Ancalites,	<i>The Hundred of Henley.</i>	389
Amnitum vel Samnitum Inſulæ,	<i>Iſles upon the Weſt coaſts of Britaine in France, 221.p. 2</i>	
Andates Lucus,		
Anderida,	<i>Newenden in Kent.</i>	351
Angli, ſive Anglo-Saxones,	<i>Engliſhmen or Engliſh-Saxons.</i>	127
Antona ſive Aufona,	<i>Auſon.</i>	507-508
Antiveſtæum,	<i>The Cape of Cornwall.</i>	187
Aquæ Solis,	<i>Bath in Somerſetſhire.</i>	233
Arbeia,	<i>Ierby.</i>	769
Ariconium,	<i>Kencheſter neere Hereford.</i>	618
Atacoti, or Attacotti,		127
Atrebatii, or Attrebatii,	<i>Barkſhire.</i>	278
Augusta,	<i>See Londinum.</i>	
Axelodunum.	<i>Hexham in Northumberland.</i>	807

B

B Adiza,	<i>Bath.</i>	233
Bannavenna, or Bannaventa,	<i>Weedon on the ſtreet.</i>	508
Belerium,	<i>The ſame that Antiveſtæum.</i>	
Belgæ,	<i>Sommerſetſhire, Wiltſhire, and Haſtiſhire.</i>	219
Bellifama flu.	<i>Rhibell in Lancaſhire.</i>	749
Bennotes,	<i>High-Croſſe.</i>	518
Bibroci,	<i>The Hundred of Bray in Barkſhire.</i>	289
Binovium,	<i>Bincheſter.</i>	738
Blatum Bulgium,	<i>Bulneſſe in Cumberland.</i>	775
Bleſtium,	<i>Old towne in Herefordſhire.</i>	787.617
Bonium,	<i>Banchoir in Fliſſhire.</i>	602.681
Bononia,	<i>Bollonge in France.</i>	349
Borcovicus,	<i>Borwick in Northumberland.</i>	809
	<i>Brannodunum,</i>	

Names of antiquitie.

Brannodunum,	<i>Brancerſter in Norfolke.</i>	488
Brcmenium,	<i>Brampton in Northumberland.</i>	803
Bremeturacum,	<i>Brampton in Cumberland.</i>	783
Bremetonacum,	<i>Overborrow in Lancaſhire.</i>	753
Brigantes,	<i>Torkſhire, Lancaſhire, E. of Durham, Weſtmoreland,</i> <i>Cumberland.</i>	685
Brovonacum,	<i>Brougham.</i>	762
Bullaum,	<i>Buelib in Brecknockſhire.</i>	627
Burrium,	<i>uſke in Monmouthſhire.</i>	636

C

C Æſarromagus,	<i>Neere Brentwood in Eſſex, fontè.</i>	442
Calcaria,	<i>Tadcaſter in Torkſhire.</i>	698
Callena,	<i>See Gallena.</i>	
Camboriturum,	<i>Cambridge.</i>	486
Camalodunum,	<i>Maldon.</i>	446
Camundolunum,	<i>See Cambodunum.</i>	
Cambodunum,	<i>Ruins neere Aldmonbury in Torkſhire.</i>	692
Calagum,	<i>See Galacum.</i>	
Canonium,	<i>Chenſford in Eſſex.</i>	445
Cantum,	<i>Kent.</i>	324
Cantium Promontorium,	<i>The foreland of Kent.</i>	342
Cangi,		231
Caſtra Exploratorum,	<i>Burgh upon Sands.</i>	773
Caſtra Conſtantia,	<i>Conſtance in Normandy.</i>	224
Caffii,	<i>The hundred of Caſlow in Hertfordſhire.</i>	393
Caffiterides,	<i>The Iles of Syth.</i>	227
Caturaſtonium,	<i>Cataſtike in Torkſhire.</i>	730
Cartiuechiani,	<i>Buckingham, Bedford, and Hertfordſhires.</i>	391
Caulennæ,	<i>See Gaufennæ.</i>	
Cenio flu.	<i>The river by Tregeny in Cornwall.</i>	190
Ceni-magni,	<i>See Iceni.</i>	
Cilurnum,	<i>Colterford in Northumberland.</i>	806
Claſentum,	<i>South hanton.</i>	261
Clevum,	<i>Gloceſter.</i>	360
Coccium,	<i>Riblechoſter in Lancaſhire.</i>	752
Colonia,	<i>Colcheſter in Eſſex.</i>	450
Candate,	<i>Congleton in Cheſhire.</i>	608
Concangii,	<i>Baronie of Kendale.</i>	759
Condercum,	<i>Cheſter upon the ſtreete in the Biſhopricke of Dur-</i> <i>ham.</i>	742
Combretonium,	<i>Brettenham in Suffolke.</i>	463
Conovius flu.	<i>The river Conway in Wales.</i>	669
Conovium urbs,	<i>Caer hean upon Conway in Caernarvonſhire.</i>	ibid.
Convonnos inſula,	<i>Canvey at the Tamis mouth.</i>	441
Congavata,	<i>A place upon Caudbecke in Cumberland.</i>	778
Corinium,	<i>Circeſter or Cirenceſter in Gloceſterſhire.</i>	366
Coritani,	<i>Northamptonſhire, Leiceſterſhire, Rutlandſhire, Lin-</i> <i>colnſhire, Nottinghamſhire, Darbyſhire.</i>	504
Cornavii,	<i>Warwickſhire, Worceſterſhire, Staffordſhire, Shropſhire,</i> <i>and Cheſhire.</i>	560
Corſtopitum,	<i>Adorpit in Northumberland, fontè.</i>	808
Coffini,		833
Croco-calana,	<i>Ancaſter in Lincolnſhire.</i>	537
	<i>Cunctio</i>	

Names of antiquitie.

Cunetio,	Marlborow or Kenet in Wiltshire.	255
Curia,	Corebridge in Northumberland.	808

D

Danmonii,	Cornwall and Denbire.	183
Danmoniorum Promontorium,	The Lizard in Cornwall.	189
Danum,	Danaster in Yorkshire.	690
Delgovitia,	Godmundham in Yorkshire.	711
Derventio,	Auldby upon Derwent in Yorkshire.	709
Deva flu.	Dee in Cheshire.	
Devana five Deva urbs,	Chester or West-chester.	604
Dictum,	Diganwey.	669
Dimetæ,	Westwales, Caermardinsbire, Penbrochshire, and Cardigansbire.	647
	Glocestersbire and Oxfordbire.	354
Dobuni, five Boduni,	See Dorovernum.	
Dorobernia,	Dover.	344
Dubris,	The Creeke at Dunesby neere whiuby in Yorksbire.	718
Dunum finus,	See Corinium.	
Ducornovia,	Dorsetsbire.	209
Durotriges,	Redborn.	413
Dur-co-brivæ,	See Durnovaria.	
Durnium,	Caster neere Wandleworth in Huntingdonshire.	501
Durobrivæ,	Dorchester.	212
Durnovaria,	Rochester.	332
Durobrovæ,	Leueham in Kent.	331
Durolenum,	Old foord upon Lee in Essex.	439
Durolitum,	Gormonchester,	498
Durofiponte,	Canterbury,	336
Durovernum,		

E

Eboracum,	Yorke.	701
Epiacum,	Papcastle in Cumberland.	768
Etoletum,	The wall in Staffordbire.	587
Extensio Promont.	Easton Nesse in Suffolke.	467

F

Fretum Britannicum,	The streight of Callis.	345
---------------------	-------------------------	-----

G

Gabranto vicorum portuosus finus.	Sureby in Yorksbire.	114
Gabrocentum,	Gateshead in the Bishoprick of Durham.	743.818
Gallatium,	Whealp-Castle in Westmorland.	762
Gallana,	Walle-wic.	802
Gallena,	Wallingford.	761
Ganganorum Promont.	Lbeyn in Caernarvonshire.	668
Garianonum,	Tarmouth.	477
Garienis flu.	Tare river in Norfolk.	476
Gauferonnæ,	Brig-Casteron upon Walsb.	534
Genuia,	Northwales.	660
Glannoventa,	Upon Wensbeck in Northumberland.	812
	Gleffaria,	

Names of Antiquitie.

Gleffaria,		220
Glevum,	Glocester.	366
Gobannium,	Abergevenny.	635
Gefforiacum,	See Bononia.	

H

Herculis Promont.	Hertypoint in Denbire.	207
Hunnum,	Sevenshale in Northumberland.	801

I

Iamefa,	See Tamefis.	
Iccni,	Suffolke, Norfolk, Cambridgesbire, and Huntingdonshire,	456
Icianus,	Icborrow in Norfolk.	482
Idumanus flu.	Blackwater river in Essex.	448
Ilannavaria,	See Banavenna, for they seeme to be the same.	
Isca flu.	Ex river in Denbire.	203
Isca Danmoniorum,	Excester.	ibid.
Isca, Legio Augusta,	Caer Lheon in Monmouthshire.	636
Iscaalis,	Iwelcester.	221
Isurium,	Aldburge in Yorksbire.	701
Jugantes, whom Tacitus mentioneth,	I wore not who they be, unless they were the Cantiani, that is, Kentishmen, whom the Welsh Britans were wont in their language to call Y-Gant. And yet it may seeme as probable, to read Brigantes, for Jugantes.	688
Itium Gallia,	Vissan.	348
Ituna flu.	Eden river in Cumberland.	760.776

L

Lactodurum, five Lactorodum,	Siony-Stratford.	397
Lagecium, vel Legeolium,	Castleford neere Pontfreit.	695
Legio II. Augusta,	See Isca.	
Legio II. Victrix,	See Eboracum.	
Legio xx. Victrix,	See Deva.	
Lavatres,	Bowes upon Stanemore.	731
Leucarum,	Laghor in Southwales.	646
Lirtus Saxonicum,	East and South coast.	325
Lemanis,	Limehill or lime in Kent.	349
Lindum,	Lincolne.	538
Londinum,	London.	421
Longovicum,	Lanchester.	754
Luguvallum,	Carlisle.	778
Loventium,	Leveny in Brecknockshire.	628

M

Madus,	Maidston in Kent.	330
Magi,	Old Radnor.	623
Maglona,	Maclenish in Monigomerishire.	661
Magna,	Chester in the wall neere Halkwessell.	800.801
Magnus Portus,	Portsmouth, or Portchester.	268
Malcos,	Mula among the Westerne Isles.	215
Mancunium,	Manchester in Lancashire.	746
Mandeveffedum,	Manchester in Warwickshire.	569
	Magni,	

Names of Antiquitie.

Magni,	See Magi.	
Mediolanum,	Lhan Vellin in Monigomerishire.	662
Magioninium,	Dunstable.	402
Mearæ,	Northumberland.	796
Margid unum,	Neere Bever-Castle.	536
Mena,	Meneg in Cornwall.	186
Metaris æst.	The Washes betweene Lincolnshire and Norfolk.	480
Mictis,	See Vesta.	
Morbium,	Morsby in Cumberland.	766
Maridunum,	Caermarden.	649
Moridunum,	Season in Devonshire.	206
Moricambe æst.	The Bay of Caerdronack.	773
Morini,		
Morinorum Portus Britannicus,		

N

N Idus,	Neash in Glamorganshire.	645
Neomagus, five Noviomagus.	Woodcote neere Croyden in Surrey.	302
Novus portus,	See Lemanis.	

T

O Cropitarum prom.	S. Davids head in Penbrocksire.	653
Ocellum prom.	Kelmsley in Yorksire.	714
Olicana,	Ilkeley in Yorksire.	697
Olenacum,	Elenborrow in Cumberland.	778
Ocrinum,	See Danmonium.	
Ordovices,	Northwales.	615.659
Ostidamni,		183
Otradini,	Northumberland.	796
Othona,	Ishan-cestre in Essex.	443

P

P Arifi pop.	Holderness in Yorksire.	709
Pennocrucium,	Penkridge in Staffordshire.	583
Pettuaria,	Beverley.	711
Pettriana,	Some place neere Peterill in Cumberland.	777
Picti,	The Picts.	114
Præfidium,	Warwicke.	563
Prætorium,	Patrington in Yorksire.	713
Pontes,	Colebrook in Buckinghamshire.	394
Pons Ælii,	Pont-eland in Northumberland.	809
Procolitia,	Coleceaster in Northumberland.	808

R

R Atæ,	Leicester.	519
Ratostibius flu.	Taf in Glamorganshire.	642
Regni pop.	Surrey, Sussex, and the sea coasts of Hantsire.	295
Regnum,	Ringwood in Hantsire.	259
Regulbium,	Reculver in Kent.	335
Ribodunum,	Riblecheste.	752
Rhurupia,	Richborrow neere Sandwich.	340
Rutunium,	Rouson in Shropshire.	592
	Sabrina	

Names of antiquitie.

S

S Abrina flu.	Severn.	664
Salenæ,	Salady in Bedfordshire.	401
Segodunum,	Seion in Northumberland.	817
Segontium,	Caer Seion neere Caernarvon.	66
Segontiaci,	In Hantsire.	26
Setantiorum Palus,	Winandermer.	119
Scoti,	Scots.	684
Seræia æstuar. pro Deia,	Deemouth.	604
Segelocum,	See Agelocum.	
Silures,	Southwales.	615
Sitomagus,	Therford in Norfolk.	471
Simeni,	See Icem.	
Sinus salutaris,	See Gabrantovicorum.	
Sorbiadunum,	Old Sarisbury.	246
Spinæ,	Spene neere Newbury.	283
Stuccia flu.	Stuyth in Cardiganshire.	658
Sulloniaca,	Brockley hill neere Ellestrey.	415

T

T Amarus flu.	Tamar.	196
Tamara,	Tamarion.	ibid.
Tamisis,	Tamis, or Teamis.	384
Tanatos,	Tanet.	339
Tefis flu.	Tese.	736
Tina flu.	Tine in Northumberland.	799
Toisobios,	See Conovius.	
Tobius flu.	Tovy in Wales.	649
Toliatis,	Shepey.	333
Trajectus,	Passage neere Aust.	359.363
Trinobantes,	Middlesex, and Essex.	417
Tripontium,	Torcester.	505
Trifantonis Portus,	Southanton.	260
Tucis,	Berwick upon Twede.	816
Tucrobis flu.	Trove in Wales.	657
Tunocellum,	Tin-mouth.	811
Truxulensis Portus,	See Rhurupia, Tacitus named Trutulentis, for Rurupensis: as B. Rhenanus supposeth.	

V

V Agniacæ,	Maidstone.	330
Valentia,		797
Vallum,	The Pits wall.	789
Varis,	Bod-vary in Flinshire.	679
Viroconium,	Wroxester.	593
Vedra flu.	Were in the B. of Duresme.	738
Veneti,	Guineh, or Northwales.	660
Venta Belgarum,	Winchester.	263
Venta Iccnorum,	Caster neere Norwich.	473
Venta Silurum,	Caer Went in Monmouthshire.	633
Vennones,	High-Crosse.	518
	Verlucio,	

The Table of Scotland.

Verlucio,	Werrminster.	245
Verometum,	Burrow hill in Leicestershire.	522
Verolamium,	Verulam neere S. Albons.	408
Vertera,	Burgh upon Stanemore.	760
Uzella æstuar.	Ivel-moub.	221
Vicônia,	See Vinovium.	
Vinonium aut Binonium,	Binchester in the Bishopricke of Duresme.	738
Villa Faustini,	S. Edmunds Bury.	459
Vindelis,	Haply old Winchelsey.	319
Vindobala,	See Vindomora.	776
Vindomora,	Wallefend in Northumberland.	811
Vindonium,	Silceaster.	270
Vindolana,	Winchester in the wall.	809
Vindogladia,	Winburne in Dorsetshire.	215
Virecium,	Wrocester in Shropshire.	593
Virofidum,	Werewic upon Eden neere Carlile.	778
Voluba,	Volemoub.	189
Voreda,	Old Perub.	776
Ufocona,	Okenyate.	593
Uzella,	Loft-Uthiel.	190.221.225

A Table or Index to Scotland.

A

A Berbroth or Arbrot, 44c	noble Ladie,	26a
Abercorn, 15d	Archibald Duglasse Earle of	
Abercorn or Abercynning, 28d	Anguis,	12d
Abercorneth, ibid.d	Ar-Cluid what it is,	25a
Aberdon new and old, 46c	Armanoch,	52b
Ab-Thanes, 7d	Arrossan,	21c
Adain what it signifieth,	Argathelia or Argile,	37a
Aire a Sherifdome,	Argile Earles,	ibid.e
Ainza,	Argetorix a pety Prince,	32b
Albainy,	his wife how she answered Julia	ibid.b
Dukes thereof,	the Emperre,	ibid.b
Albinich who they be,	Argonauts,	38c
Alclith,	Armitage,	16c
Al-cluid,	Arran Isle,	22a
Alclum,	Arran Earles,	22b
Alexander Duke of Albanie kil-	Arrol, 42c. Earles thereof, ibid.	
led,	Arthurs Chaire,	14c
Amber, 48b. name thereof, ibid.c	Arthurs Oven,	28f
Amund, or Almund a river,	Affshire,	52a
Andrews an Archbishopsrick, 7a	Athelftanford,	12d
Andrews,	Athol infamous for witches, 40b	
Anguis or Angus,	Earles thereof,	40c
Earles thereof,	John Earle of Athol hanged on	ibid.
Annan a river,	high,	40d
Annandale,	Aubigni or Obigni Lords,	26b
Annandale a Territorie,	Eberad de Aubigni his de-	ibid.
Apollo Grammus,	vise and coat of Armes,	28c
Aptera,	Aven a river,	ibid.c
Arbella Steward a learned and	Azur gotten,	22c

190.221.225

Boides

The Table of Scotland.

Reides Barons,	21c	Coldingham, 10c. Colledge of	Dromund Barons, 36a. Women
Borderers, their behaviour,	18a	Justice,	of that race right beautifull,
Borthwick a Baronie,	13b	Columban,	ibid.
Boschain,	44f	Combat between Sir James Lin-	Drum Albin,
Borthwell Earles,	23d	deley and Baron Wels,	39b
Braid Albin,	39a	Comin or Cumena a mighty fami-	Drumem Castle,
Brankeney,	16b	ly,	36a
Brechin,	44c	Comin a mighty man murdered	Drumlanrig,
Brendanus,	22c	by Robert Brus,	17d
Brochty Crag,	43b	Commissioners,	Duff a King murdered,
Brun-Albin,	39b	Commissioners,	49f
Brus Lord of Annandale,	16c	Constabulary,	Duglasse or Duglasse a river,
Brus discomfisth the English,	30b	Constables of Scotland,	23a
Buchanan,	29a	Corner a river,	ibid.
Beavis Bulmer,	22c	Contry, the same that Sheriff-	Duglasse Earles of Angus,
Bugaban,	47f	dome,	36c
Bugaban Earles,	48d	Country Courts,	Duglasse Earles of Mortom,
Buth,	22c	Courts Civil,	17d
		Courts of criminal causes,	Duglasse a fast friend unto King
		Crawford Moore,	Rob. Brus,
		Crawford Castle and Earldedom,	23a
		Creightons a family,	Duglasse Earle of Wigton, Duke
		Cromarty,	of Tourain,
		Cromer,	23b
		Cross,	Duke a rite, when first brought
		Cruickston,	into Scotland,
		Culros, a Barony,	Dun a river,
		Cumbernald,	19f
		Cunningham a towne,	Dunbarre,
		Cunninghams a numerous family,	11c
		21f. their coat of Armes, ibid.	Dunbarton Sherifdome,
		Cunninghams Earles of Glencarn,	25c
		17c. 21f	Dunblan a Bishopricke,
		Cupre,	36c
			Dunbritton or Dunbarton,
			25a
			Dunbrittain frith, /
			18c
			Duncaves bay,
			54d
			Dun Dee,
			43c
			Dunfermling,
			32d
			Dunfermling Earle,
			32d
			Dunfrew,
			17d
			Dun pacis what they be,
			28c
			Dunkelden,
			41a
			Dunotry Castle,
			45d
			Dunnur a Castle,
			20a
			Dunsby,
			54d
			Dunstaffag,
			38d
			Duplin Castle,
			36b
			Dyrlton,
			12c

D

D Al,	37c
Dalkeith,	13b
Dalrea,	37c
Dalreudini,	ibid.
Dalrieta,	37d
Darly Lords,	24b
L. Darly husband to Mary	22c
Queen of Scots,	22c
David heire to the Crowne of	39c
Scotland, famished,	39c
David the first King of Scotland	10c
a religious Prince,	10c
Dales longest,	54b
Dee a river,	18c. 46a
Depth of the sea,	12c
Desic a french Captaine,	12a
Dicalidonis,	5a. 30c
Disert,	32c
Discesser first set out by Diony-	65
sius Bishop of Rome,	65
Donald of the Isles,	53a
Done a river,	46a
Dornock,	53c
Douglass. See Duglasse.	

E

E bba Prioresse of Coldingham	
Nunnery, 10f. Her chasti-	
ty and her Nunnes ib. daugh-	
ter of Edelfrid king of North-	
umberland,	11a
Saint Ebbes promontory, ibid a	
Eden or Eshan a river,	10c
Edenburgh,	13f
Edenburgh Frith,	ibid.
Eglington a Castle and family,	21d
Elfeingston a Barony,	39c
Elgina,	49c
John Eriskin earle of Mar,	47c
Th. Eriskin, Baron of Dryden	
Vicomte Felton: first Vicount	
in Scotland,	12c
Ern a noble river,	35f
Esk a river,	13b
Esther-	

B b b b

The Table of Scotland.

<i>Esterlings,</i>	29 d	<i>Hamilton Castle, 23 c. a family,</i>	<i>Kello,</i>	10 e
F		<i>ibid. their originall,</i>	<i>Ken a river,</i>	18 e
<i>Falkland,</i>	34	<i>James Hamilton Earle of Aber-</i>	<i>Kennedies a noble family,</i>	19 f
<i>Fast-castle,</i>	10 f	<i>corn,</i>	<i>Kennedie Earle of Castille,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Fergus,</i>	39 b	<i>Hamilton of Peyle,</i>	<i>Kerrs a family,</i>	10 b
<i>Fergus Lord or Prince of Gal-</i>		<i>James Hamilton Regent of Scot-</i>	<i>Kerr Baron,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>loway, 19 b. His Armes; ibid. c</i>		<i>land, and Duke of Chastean,</i>	<i>Kerr Earle of Lothien,</i>	15 f
<i>became a Chanon,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Herald in Poitoun,</i>	<i>Kilconath,</i>	20 a
<i>Fernherfts a Barony,</i>	10 b	<i>John Marquesse of Hamilton, 23</i>	<i>Kildrummi,</i>	46 a
<i>Fleanch the Sonns of Banquo,</i>		<i>Hay a strong and valiant man,</i>	<i>Kile,</i>	20 c
	51 e		<i>Kilflor,</i>	49 f
<i>Fleet a river,</i>	18 e	<i>Helior Boetius, an Elegant Hi-</i>	<i>Kilian a river,</i>	52 e
<i>Flemings, Barons,</i>	29 c	<i>toriographer,</i>	<i>Kilmarnocke,</i>	21 b
<i>John Lord Fleming Earle of</i>		<i>Height of Hills,</i>	<i>Kilmonerock,</i>	24 f
<i>Wigton,</i>	18 e	<i>Hellan Leneoc,</i>	<i>Kincardin,</i>	36 e
<i>Fife,</i>	32 c	<i>Hellan Tinoc,</i>	<i>King of Scotland,</i>	7 e
<i>Fife-Nesse,</i>	<i>ibid. f</i>	<i>Hepburnes a family,</i>	<i>Kinghorn Earle,</i>	32 e
<i>Fife Earles their priviledge,</i>	35	<i>Earles of Bothwell, ibid. 23 d</i>	<i>Kinlosse,</i>	49 f
<i>Forces,</i>	49 e	<i>Herris Baron,</i>	<i>Kinnadie,</i>	37 d
<i>Forbois Barons,</i>	46 b	<i>Hii an Island,</i>	<i>Kimroffe,</i>	32 c
<i>Fordon,</i>	45 e	<i>Highlandmen, 39 e. their de-</i>	<i>Kirkbird,</i>	36 c
<i>John de Fordon,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>scription,</i>	<i>Kirkonbright,</i>	18 e
<i>Forth or Frith,</i>	12 e	<i>Holy Ruid house,</i>	<i>Knapdale,</i>	38 c
<i>Frefianssea,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Horesci a people,</i>	<i>Knights solemnly dubbed,</i>	7 e
G		<i>Henry Percy Hotspurre taken</i>	<i>Kyle, See Kile.</i>	
<i>Algacoe Galauc,</i>	31 f	<i>prisoner by Montgomery, 21 d</i>	L	
<i>Galloway,</i>	18	<i>Howburn,</i>	<i>Ladeni,</i>	9
<i>Galloway Eeles,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Hume Castle,</i>	<i>Lairds,</i>	7 e
<i>Galloway nagges,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Humes a great and noble family,</i>	<i>Lauric a Sheriffs dome,</i>	
<i>Galloway Princes & Lords, 19 b</i>		<i>Hume created Earle,</i>	<i>Largis,</i>	21 d
<i>Gentlemen,</i>	7 f	<i>Hume Earle of Dunbarre,</i>	<i>Lauden or Lothien,</i>	11 d
<i>George of Dunbarre Earle of</i>		<i>Castle,</i>	<i>Lauber ariveret and towne,</i>	10
<i>Mersch,</i>	11 b	I	<i>Leave a lake,</i>	38 d
<i>Girnego,</i>	53 d	<i>James the second, King of</i>	<i>Leeth a river,</i>	15 e
<i>Glamys a Baron,</i>	43 b	<i>Scots untimely slaine and</i>	<i>Lennox,</i>	24 d
<i>Glasco an Archbishopricke,</i>	7	<i>much missed,</i>	<i>Lennox Earles,</i>	25 d
<i>Glasco an University and Arch-</i>		<i>James: the sixth, King of great</i>	<i>Lennox Dukes, their Armes,</i>	26
<i>bishops See,</i>	23 d	<i>Brittaine,</i>	<i>Lesley the noble Knight,</i>	52 f
<i>Glencare,</i>	17 e	<i>Jed a river,</i>	<i>Leith an Haven town.</i>	15 c
<i>Glines,</i>	38	<i>Jedburgh,</i>	<i>Levin a river,</i>	29 d
<i>Glotta, See Arran,</i>	22	<i>I-comb-kij,</i>	<i>Levinia,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Gordons Earles of Huntly,</i>	49	<i>lland floating,</i>	<i>Levin a lake and river,</i>	32 e
<i>Gospatrick, Earle of Northum-</i>		<i>Inberow and Outborow,</i>	<i>Levingfions Barons,</i>	29 c
<i>berland,</i>	11 b	<i>Inch-Chafra,</i>	<i>Levington first Earl of Lithgo,</i>	
<i>Goury a Country,</i>	42 c	<i>Inch Keith an Island,</i>		15 c
<i>Gouryes conspiracy,</i>	12 b	<i>Inverlothban,</i>	<i>Lin what it signifieth,</i>	<i>ibid. e</i>
<i>Grahams dike,</i>	28 d	<i>Inermeth,</i>	<i>Lindeseies a noble family, 22 f. 36</i>	
<i>Granni, what they are,</i>	13 e	<i>Innermeth,</i>	<i>Lindum,</i>	15 e
<i>Grannzbain or Gramphil,</i>	30 e	<i>Innernes,</i>	<i>Lions a family,</i>	43 b
<i>Gries of Chillingham,</i>	43 c	<i>Johns towne,</i>	<i>Lithgo or Lindlithgo,</i>	15 e
<i>Guth what it signifieth,</i>	15 d	<i>John Duke of Albany honoured</i>	<i>Logh Aber a lake,</i>	38 d
H		<i>by the French,</i>	<i>Logh Cure a lake,</i>	17 c
<i>Hadinne or Hadington,</i>	12	<i>Johnstons a warlike family, 16 e</i>	<i>Logh Erre a lake,</i>	35 f
<i>Vicomte Hadington, ibid.</i>		<i>Irwin a river,</i>	<i>Logh Fin,</i>	38 a
<i>Haies Earles of Arol,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Irwin a burrough,</i>	<i>Logh Kinkgram,</i>	38 d
<i>Haies family almost extingui-</i>		<i>Julius Hoff,</i>	<i>Logh Lomond,</i>	24 d. 36 e
<i>shed,</i>	36 b	K	<i>Logh Luthea or Louthea,</i>	50 a
<i>Haliburtons a family,</i>	12 e	<i>Aledon,</i>	<i>Logh Lorbes,</i>	51 d
<i>Haskhead,</i>	24 b	<i>Keiths a family ancient and</i>	<i>Logh Nefse,</i>	50 a
		<i>noble,</i>	<i>Logh Rbian,</i>	19 b
			<i>Lough Maaban,</i>	16 d
			<i>Loghquabrie,</i>	

The Table of Scotland.

Loghuabrie, 51 c
Longas a river, 20 f
Longus longus, 52 e
Lards who they be, 7 e
Lorigs slew Henry the Second K.
of France running at Tilt, 5 a
Lorn a family, 38 c
Lorn, ibid.
Loret Castle, 52 c
Loxa or Loxe a river, 49 e
Lowland men, 5 e
Loundoris a Monastery and Ba-
rony, 34 d

M
Ac-Consels, 38 b
Mac-Duff first Earle of
Fife, 35 b
Maden Castle, or Virgins Castle,
14 c
Maitroff, 10 a
Malcolm Canmor, 11 a
Mar. 46 a. Earles, 47 c
Marchidun, 10 a
Marechals of Scotland, 45 e
Q. Mary deposted by her base
brother James, 51 b
Marquess a title, when first
brought into Scotland, 7 e
Maribha enamoured upon Robert
Brw, made him her husband,
20 a
Maxwell Earle of Morton, 17 e
Maxwels a family, 16 e
Menteith, 35 d. Earles thereof,
ibide
Merch or Mers, 10 d
Merch Earles, 11 a
Mernis, 45 d
Methuen or Methuen a Barony,
42 b
Metellan Baron Thirlestean, 10
Monkes living upon their owne
band labor, 10
Montgomeries a family, 21
Monuments of stone, with their
inscriptions, 27-28
Montrosse, 44 c
Montrosse Earles, 36 e
Morton a place, 17 d
Mor wiridh, 12 e
Mull of Galloway, 19 b
Murduck executed, 35 d
Murray, 49 c
Murray Earles, 50 f
Murth-lake, 46
Muscamp, 36 b
Musselborow a towne, 13 b
Musselborow field, ibid. c

N
Abe a river, 53 f
Napier a learned man, 13 c

Nardin or Nan Sheriffdoms, 50
Nesse mouth, 52 d
Nesse a Lake, 38 d
Newbottle a Monastery and Ba-
rony, 13 b
Nid a river, 17 c
Niddisdale, ibid.
Nights shortest, 54 b
Ninian Bishop of Candida casa,
18 f
North Berwick, 12 e

O
Gilvi Barons, 44 f
Olipphant Barons, 36 b
Olorina an hearb, 49 e

P
Palladius Apostle for the
Scottish Nation, 45 f
Parliament, 8 a
Pasley a Monastery and Barony,
24 b
Peblic a Towne, 10 c
Pennaet or Pennallon, 28 d
Perib the City, 41 b
Perth Sheriffdome, 40 b
Perth Earle, 42 a
Pitts divided into two Nations,
5 a
Pitts, 30 d
Pitland, 11 d
Pollac a fish, 24 d
Portus Salutis, 52 e
Ponny a fort, 21 c
Princes simply, 7
Prince of Scotland, ibid.
Prophecie of a Stone, 42 d

R
Ramsay, Vicount Hadington
12 b. his faithfulness and
valour, ibid.
Ramsey Earle Bothwell, 21 d
Ratra a river, 48 a
Ravinstrench, 32 e
Redhead a Cape, 44 e
Reginnud, 32 f
Reinfray a towne and Baronie,
24 a
Retbuen the name of a Castle and
Barony, 42 b
Reghuens Conspiracy, ibid b
Rhenda, 37 c
Rian a river, 19 b
Robert Bishop of Cathanes, Earle
of Lennox and of Merch, 11 c
Rosburg or Roxburg, 10 a
Rossia or Rosse, 52 a
Rosse Earles, ibid. f

Roshe Barons, 50
Rothamay Castle, 49 b
Rothies Earle, 35 e 49 d
Rothies Castle, 49 d
Rothsay Castle, 22 c
Rothsay Dukedome, ibid. a
Ronts, 38 b

S
Salmons, 47 a
Salmons breed, ibid. a
Salmons hunted, 17 f
Salton Barons of Abernethy, 45 b
Sanctuary, 35 c
Sambquer Castle, 17 e
Barons Sambquer, ibid.
Scone 42 c. a Baronie, 42 e
Scottish Sea, 12 e
A troupe of Scotts in France, 25 e
Scotland divided into seven
parts, 56 d
Scouters, 12 f
Seimeler Barons, 32 e
Seikirk, 106
Sempil a place and Barony, 24 c
Sensschallies, 6 c
The Selson 8 d. by whom insti-
tuted and when, ibid.
Seton, 13. a towne and noble fa-
mily, 13 a
Sheriffdomes, 6 e
Sheriff, 8 c
Sheriff of Teviot Dale, 10 b
Slugh boundis, 186
Soland geese, 12 f
Solway a village, 17 d
Somervill Baron, 23 a
South Esk a river, 44 d
Spey a river, 45 d
Speyny castle, 49
Sterling Stewarty or Territory,
26 c
Sterling towne, ibid.
Sterlin or Strivelin a towne, 29
Sterling or Esterling money, ib.
States or Degrees of Scotland,
7 c
Stewarties, 6 c
Stewarts family how it began
and arose, 51 f
Stewards a noble family of the
bloodroyall, 20 f
Sir James Stewart gnardian to
James Hamilton, 22 b
Stewarts the royall line of Scot-
land whence descended, 25 d
Walter Stewart Earle of Athol
for his parricide cruelly exe-
cuted, 40 f
Straith bolgy, 49 b
Strathern, 35 e
Straith Ern, ibid. f. Earles there-
of, 36 d

B b b b b 2
Straths

The Table of Scotland.

<i>Strath Naver,</i>	53 f	<i>honour,</i>	10 c	<i>Water of an admirable nature</i>	
<i>Struthers,</i>	34 b	<i>Tine a little river,</i>	11 f	<i>Wemefcies a kinred,</i>	48 a
<i>Suit between Robert Bruce</i>		<i>Torricles, Barony of the Lord</i>		<i>Wemmie a Castle and noble fa-</i>	35 c
<i>John Bailioll,</i>	17 a	<i>Hercis,</i>	17 e	<i>mily,</i>	32 e
<i>Sutherland,</i>	53 b	<i>Tulibardin castle, 36 a. a Baro-</i>		<i>Whitberne, that is, Candida ca-</i>	
		<i>nybid., and Earldome, ibid.</i>		<i>sa,</i>	19 a
		<i>Tweede a river,</i>	10 c	<i>Wifie, a river,</i>	53 d
		<i>Twededale,</i>	ibid.	<i>Wigton an Haven-towne,</i>	18 e
			V	<i>Wilford a valiant English Cap-</i>	12 a
T		<i>Turned into M.</i>	45 d	<i>taine,</i>	54 a
<i>Tichia, a Territory,</i>	36 e	<i>Uchiltrey Castle,</i>	20 f		
<i>Tantallon Castle,</i>	12 d	<i>Uchiltrey Barons,</i>	21 a		
<i>Toodunnm,</i>	43 c	<i>Ulbbred Fergus his sonne mar-</i>			
<i>Tarbarth,</i>	52 e	<i>ried by his brother Gilbert,</i>			
<i>Tarbar,</i>	38 d				
<i>Tarus what it signifieth,</i>	54 d				
<i>Taw the river,</i>	35 e				
<i>Taw overfloweth,</i>	41 a				
<i>Teifdale,</i>	9 e				
<i>Teith or Taith, river,</i>	36 d				
<i>Tenariff, an exceeding high hill,</i>	52 c				
<i>God Terminus, 26 e. his temple,</i>	28 f				
<i>TeViot a river,</i>	10 d				
<i>Thames; d. what they are,</i>	35 b				
<i>Thirlestean a place and Barons</i>					

A Table of the names of severall people and places
of more ancient record in Scotland.

A Bravanus, Rian the river and Logh-Riantbe Lake,	Renfram Barony, Lenox, Stri- velin, Mensther and Fife,	22	Novantes. People of Galloway, Carick, Kyle & Cunningham,	18	
19	Dea flu. Theriver Dee,	18	Merta, in Sutherland,		
Alanna, about Sterlin,	30	Diva flu. The river Dee,	46	Novantum. Chersonesus five Promontorium. The Mull of Galloway,	19
Bodoera flu. The forth and frith, Edenborough Frith,	12	Epidii, people of Caledonia,	30	Nodius flu. Theriver Nid,	17
Caledonia and Caledonii, Cante, the people inhabiting Roffe,	52	Gadeni or Ladeni, Teifdale, Tweeddale, Merch and Lo- thien,	9	Orcas five Tarverdum. How- burne,	54
Carbantorigum, Caerlaverock,	17	Glota inf. The Isle Arran,	22	Randuvra. Reinfram,	24
Catini. The inhabitants of Ca- thaneffe,	53	Grampius Mons, Grantzbaire,	28, 30	Reinigonum. Bargen,	19
Cornabii. The people of Strath- navern,	53	Horefcii, haply the people inhabi- ting Esk-dale,	16	Selgorva. The people of Lidesdale Evesdale, Eskdale, Annandale and Nidsdale,	16
Castra alata or Castrum alatum, 52. Edenborough,	13	Iena. Theriver Ken,	18	Tamea, haply Tanea in Roffe.	
Cerones, Afsimbive,	52	Ila flu. may seeme to be the river Wife,	53	Tatizali. The people of Bagnahan	47
Colonia Coldingham,	52	Ladeni, See Gadeni.		Tarverdum promont. See Orcas.	
Colnie, flu. The river Killian,	22	Lelanonif flu. The river Levin,	24	Taus flu. Taus the river,	35, 41
Corda a town neere Logh-Cure,	17	Lencopibia, haply Candida Cafa or Whitherne,	18	Vacomagi. The people of Mur- ray,	49
Coria Damniorum, haply Came- lot,	29	Lindum, Linlithquo or Lithquo,	15	Vararis. Murray,	ibid.
Creones, See Cerones.		Littus altum seemeth to be Tar- barth,	52	Vermicones, haply Mernis,	45
Dampii, people of Clydsdale,		Longus flu. Loughlonges, ibid.		Victoria, haply Inch-Keith,	15
		Loxa flu. Theriver Loffe,	49	Vidogara, haply Aire,	20
				Vivodrum, See Orcas.	
				Ucellum, a place in Enfdale,	16

THE

The Families of greater worth and honour in Scotland
in this Booke mentioned.

[illegible]

A Table of Ireland, and the Isles adjoyning
to BRITAIN.

A		<i>Cassiles Archbishop,</i>	82	<i>Dunganon Baron,</i>	115
<i>Asbenties,</i>	85	<i>Casness,</i>	224	<i>Dunraguan Baron,</i>	79
<i>Admirall of England, ex-</i>		<i>Casle-Connell Baron,</i>	81	<i>Dunkellin Baron,</i>	100
<i>tent of his authority,</i>	232	<i>Caterlough County,</i>	85	<i>Dansany Baron,</i>	95
<i>Alderney,</i>	214	<i>Cattell,</i>	63		216
<i>Anglesey,</i>	203	<i>Cavanagh,</i>	85	E	
<i>Antrim County,</i>	112	<i>Causes of rebellion,</i>	101	<i>Englishmen first entred Ire-</i>	
<i>Annals of Ireland,</i>	150	<i>Caurus the winde,</i>	59	<i>land,</i>	70
<i>Annales of the Isle of Man,</i>	205	<i>Chamberlan,</i>	214	<i>Eastmeath,</i>	95
<i>Arran,</i>	99.214	<i>Cerne Island,</i>	62	<i>Essex Earle, 12. Lord Deputy,</i>	117
<i>Armagh County,</i>	107	<i>Chamber of Ireland,</i>	90		216
<i>Arkle, Lords thereof,</i>	90	<i>Chevers,</i>	113		
<i>Arts and piety sowed among</i>		<i>Chairly Boy,</i>			
<i>nations in sundry ages,</i>	85	<i>Clany-boy,</i>			
B		<i>Clan-Morris,</i>	75	F	
<i>Bagnall,</i>	121 &c.	<i>Clancar Earle,</i>	76	<i>Farn Island,</i>	120
<i>Bannomanna,</i>	62	<i>Clan-Donels,</i>	101	<i>Fermoy Vicount,</i>	78
<i>Barry,</i>	78	<i>Clan William,</i>	81	<i>Farn, Isle,</i>	106
<i>Base poole,</i>	227	<i>Clan Gibbon,</i>	ibid.	<i>Fermanagh County,</i>	120
<i>Bernacles,</i>	204	<i>Clogher Bishopricks,</i>	115	<i>Fitz Eustace Barons,</i>	88
<i>Barnwell,</i>	94-95	<i>Clare County,</i>	98	<i>Fitz-Parrie,</i>	8
<i>Bermingham,</i>	100	<i>Clan Richard Earles,</i>	100	<i>Fitz-Gerals,</i>	82.87
<i>Bingham,</i>	101.103	<i>Cogan,</i>	70.79	<i>Fitz-Stephens,</i>	70.79.89
<i>Biffes,</i>	113	<i>Connachs or Conaught,</i>	98	<i>Fitz-William Lord Deputy,</i>	121. &c.
<i>Bishopricks of Ireland, 73. Poore,</i>	106	<i>Colby,</i>	86	<i>Fitz Urse,</i>	107
<i>Blunt, Lord Montjoy,</i>	77.105	<i>Conaught Lords,</i>	104	<i>Fortunate Isles,</i>	217
<i>107. Deputy,</i>	133. &c.	<i>Constables of Ireland,</i>	97	<i>Frozen sea,</i>	219
<i>Boyle Barony,</i>	103	<i>Colran County,</i>	114		
<i>Brebon Law,</i>	140	<i>Columb Saint,</i>	215	G	
<i>Britainer inhabite Ireland,</i>	65	<i>Corke, County, 77. a kingdom,</i>	79	<i>Garney,</i>	224
<i>Britain herbe,</i>	222	<i>Courts of Ireland,</i>	72	<i>Gallaglasser,</i>	101.147
<i>Brittain Huis,</i>	221	<i>Coner Bishopricks,</i>	111	<i>Galloway County,</i>	99
<i>Brittish Armory,</i>	ibid.	<i>Curraghmore Barons,</i>	79	<i>Gavalock,</i>	122
<i>Brittish sea, 57. where deepeff,</i>	227	<i>Croft Sir Hugh flaine,</i>	179	<i>Genevill,</i>	97.163
		<i>Cwrcy,</i>	71.77.53.209	<i>Gersey,</i>	124
		<i>Cwrthbert a Saint,</i>	220	<i>Glinne,</i>	90.113
		<i>Cwirings, Coyne, Liverie,</i>	76.101	<i>Goodwin sands,</i>	222
B				<i>Gormanston Vicount,</i>	95
<i>Bark, 81. 100. 101. 104. 117</i>		D		<i>Lord Grey,</i>	75
<i>&c.</i>		<i>Darcy,</i>	96		
<i>Burgus, what.</i>	222	<i>Deemstert,</i>	204	H	
<i>Burb,</i>	22	<i>Delton,</i>	96	<i>Hawkes,</i>	63
<i>Busiphant Vicount,</i>	78	<i>Delvin Baron,</i>	ibid.	<i>Hereditarie territories of</i>	
<i>Butler,</i>	82.88. &c.	<i>Deputies of Ireland,</i>	71	<i>England in France,</i>	132
<i>Burrough Baron, Lord Deputy,</i>	115	<i>Desmond Earles,</i>	76	<i>Hy, Island,</i>	216
		<i>Deslie Vicount,</i>	79	<i>Hirb,</i>	ibid.
		<i>Disenles in Ireland,</i>	63	<i>Hobies,</i>	63
C		<i>Deveraux,</i>	90	<i>Holy Crosse of Tipperary,</i>	82
<i>Celarea,</i>	65	<i>Dillon,</i>	96	<i>Holy Island,</i>	62.220
<i>Caven County,</i>	106	<i>Donell Gormy,</i>	102	<i>Holy-wood,</i>	94
<i>Cabir Baron,</i>	82	<i>Docwra,</i>	133. &c.	<i>Horles,</i>	63
<i>Carew,</i>	76.79.85	<i>Dublin County, 91. Citie and U-</i>		<i>Houth Barons,</i>	94
<i>Carick Earle,</i>	82	<i>niversity, 92. Marques,</i>	94	<i>Hussey,</i>	95
<i>Caransui,</i>	88	<i>Duke of Ireland,</i>	ibid.		
		<i>Dunboin Baron,</i>	85		
				<i>Ibarcan</i>	

The Table of Ireland, and the lesser Isles.

I		Mac Donells,	120	O-Tooles,	89
I Barcan Baron,	99	Mac Guir,	106.121	P	
Ila,	215	Mac Genis,	109.120	P Alladius,	67
Jenevill, see Genevill.		Mac Mahon,	107	Pearles,	59
Jena,	ibid.	Mac Morogh,	69	Pelagius, an Arch-hereticke,	111
Iniskellin,	106.112.108	Mac William,	101.104	Perot,	103
Ireland called Ogygia, 64. called		Mac Tge,	77	Philipot, a good Patriot,	224
Scotia, 66. 117. inhabited by		Man Isle,	203.Lords, 213	Poëtz; Barons of Curraghmore,	79
Britaines, 65. not conquered by		Mac Swin,	117	Preßholm,	203
Romans, 66. entred by Henrie		Mac Shees,	83	Preslon,	91
the second, 69. devided, 71.		Majo County,	100	Professions hereditarie,	141
neglected,	118	Mandeviles,	109.213	Plonckets,	94.95.96
Irishmen out of Spaine,	66	Marshall E. of Penbrocke,	70.86		
Irish Monkes, 67. 110. taught		Marshall of Ireland,	72	Q	
the English to write, 68. their		Malachie a Saint,	108	Queenes County,	86
Manners,	140	Meth, 94. the Bishop, 95. the			
Ireland neglected,	218	Lords,	96	R	
K		Messier,	155	R Heban Barones,	86
K Erry County,	75	Monaghan County,	107	"Ridiculous conceit,	75
Kilkenny County,	84	Mont-Garret Vicount,	89	Ringrom Baron,	77
Kildare County, 87. Earles,		Mont-Norris,	107.134	Roeb. Baron,	78
Killalo Bishoppicke,	100	More,	105	Roscomon County,	103
Killin Baron,	95	Morley,	72	Russell Lord Deputy,	121
Kinfale,	135	Munster,	74	Rugge,	63
Kings County,	86	Muscogros,	99	S	
Kernes,	147	N		S Almons,	59.114
Knight of the Valley,	81	N Angle,	96	Savage,	112
Konifoe battell,	100	N Navan a Baront,	95	Saint Bernard,	108
L		Negente or Nugent,	96	Saint Brigid,	87
L Acy,	82.95.96.&c.	Norris Sir John,	122.&c.	Saint Lawrence, Baron of Houn,	
Leinster,	203	Normandie left,	226	94. Saint Michael,	86
Leinster Marquesse,	84	O		Saint Patrick Sepulcher,	110
Leicestre,	94	O'Brien,	82	Purgatory,	116
Lertrim County,	86	O-O-Brius,	89	Saint Owen,	227
Lertrim Baron,	103	O-Caban,	114	Saxons Islands,	220
Leisefon,	ibid.	O-Carell,	69	Sealmey,	202
Limerick County,	135	O-Conor Dnn,	102.104	Serk,	227
Lewis,	81	O-Donell,	117	Scotts,	117
Lewie,	216	O-Hagan,	109	Shaving of Irish,	107
Lindisfarn,	220	O-Hawton,	ibid.	Shires of Ireland,	37
Lixnaw Baron,	75	O-Kelly,	103	Shetland,	219
Lovell,	85	Ogygia,	62	Sidy, Lord Deputy,	97.121
Longford County,	97	O-Mahon,	76	Silly Isles,	227 &c.
Londry,	202	O-Mailly,	86	Slane Baron,	95
Louth County, 105. Earle, ibid.		O-More,	ibid.	Slego County,	102
Baron,	106	O-Mcale election,	114.120	Small Island,	201
Lycanthropia a disease,	83	Earle of Tir-Oen,	122.&c.	Smrys a stone,	225
M		Oleron,	232	Steward of Ireland,	80
Ma Andan,	85	O-Pharoll,	97	Spaniards in Ireland,	75.77
Mac Carry,	77	O-Quin,	131	Stanburff a learned man,	66
Mac-Clen,	216	O-Ryley,	106	Stepholme,	202
Mac Connell,	102.113.216	Orcaes Isles, 216. Earles,	217	Stella Maria,	230
Mac Gnilly,	113	Ormond,	82	Stockholme,	202
		O-Rorkes,	103	Strongbow,	69.87
		O-Smilivants,	76	Stukeley,	94
		Ossery Earle,	82	Surley Boy,	113
		Ongant,	88	Suffex Earle Lord Deputy,	121

T		Turlogh Lenigh, Tates,		115 96		W	
T Albet,		79,80,94,155		V		VV Alsh,	
Tanistry,		141		V Alensia Baron,		Warren,	
Thule,		218		Verdon,		86,132	
Three sisters,		84		Vernayle,		Waterford County, 79. Earles,	
Tipperary County, 82. Earle,		ibid.		Verrard,		88	
Tireconel County,		115		Vergivian Sea,		West Meath County,	
Tirell,		91,96		Vesey,		61	
Tiroen County,		114		Vines why not in Britain,		87	
Teams or Tuon Archbisshopricke,		100		Ulster, 104. Earles,		63	
Trimletstown Baron,		95		Upper Ossery Baron,		117	
Twomond Earles,		99		Uringhts,		84	
Tullo Vicount,		85 c. & f		Ushant,		114	
				Usher,		231	
				Uike-bab,		94	
						63	
						Y	
						Y Dron Baronia,	
						85	

Ancient names of Places and Rivers in Ireland.

A Rgita flu.		117	Erdini,	106	Notium Prom.	76
Aufoba flu.		99	Gangani,	98	Oveca flu.	90
Anteri,		100	Hieron Prom.	89	Ravins flu.	102
Bingus flu.		84	Ibemi,	76	Rheba,	8
Boreum Prom.		117	Iernus flu.	ibid.	Rhobogdii,	115
Brigantes, or Brigantes,		84	Isannium Prom.	109	Rhobogdium Prom.	116
Buvinda flu.		95	Laberns,	94	Rigia,	97
Cauci,		90	Libinus flu.	91	Rigia altera,	116
Concani,		98	Logia flu.	116	Senns flu.	97
Coriandi,		77	Luceni,	74	Velabri,	76
Darnii neere Dorrie,		104, 116	Macolicum,	97	Vennicium Prom.	117
Daurona,		78	Menapia,	89	Vennicini,	115, 117
Dunum,		109	Medona flu.	84	Vidua flu.	117
Duri flu.		75	Nagnata,	89	Vinderns flu.	113
Eblana,		91	Nagnata,	102, 103	Vodia,	77
Eblani,		84	Nagnata,	ibid.	Voluntii,	104

Ancient names of the Isles adjacent to Britaine.

A Cmode,	220	Dumna,	216	Hebrides,	215
Amnitum, See Samnitum		Ebude,	215	Hesperides,	228
insule,	231	Ebuda prima,	216	Jera,	223
Adros called also Andium,	203	Ebuda secunda,	ibid.	Limnos,	202
Axantos, See Uxantifa,	231	Evodia,	214	Liga,	227
Barfa,	227	Eleutride,	220	Lifa,	ibid.
Berge,	218	Epidium,	215	Milia, haply Vellia,	223
Birchanis,	221	Edri,	203	Menavia,	203, 205
Ca/area,	214	Fortunate Islands,	217	Monas,	203
Cassiterides,	227	Gleffaria,	220	Monada,	ibid.
Cannes,	222	Glotta,	22, 214	Mula, or Malcos,	215
					Nerigon,

Nerigon,	218	Saxorum insula,	221	Thule,	218
Nessiada,	231	Sena,	231	Tolapio,	223
Ocetis,	216	Siambis,	ibid.	Veila or Vella,	223
Orcades,	ibid.	Siade,	227	Venetica insula,	231
Pomona,	ibid.	Sicdelis,	ibid.	Vindelis. Old Winchelsey,	
Rigina, or Rieluna,	215	Silimnus,	203	Uliarus,	233
Sanitum insule,	231	Silina,	227	Uxantifa,	231
Sarnia,	225	Tanatos,	222		

FINIS.

